









# BOTANOLOGIA.

## THE ENGLISH HERBAL: OR, History of PLANTS.

CONTAINING

- I. Their Names, *Greek, Latine and English.*
- II. Their Species, or various Kinds.
- III. Their Descriptions.
- IV. Their Places of Growth.
- V. Their Times of Flowering and Seeding.
- VI. Their Qualities or Properties.
- VII. Their Specifications.
- VIII. Their Preparations, Galenick and Chymick.
- IX. Their Virtues and Uses.
- X. A Complete FLORILEGIUM, of all the Choice FLOWERS Cultivated by our FLORISTS, interspersed through the whole Work, in their proper Places; where you have their Culture, Choice, Increase, and Way of Management, as well for Profit as Delectation.

*Adorned with Exquisite ICONS or FIGURES, of the most considerable Species, representing to the LIFE, the true Forms of those several PLANTS.*

The whole in an Alphabetical Order.

By WILLIAM SALMON, M. D. *K*

LONDON:

Printed by I. DAWKS, for H. RHODES, at the *Star*, the Corner of *Bride-Lane*, in *Fleet-Street*; and J. TAYLOR, at the *Ship* in *Pater-noster-Row*. M. DCC. X.



1750





---

---

# T O T H E Q U E E N.

M A D A M,

I Account it more a *Duty* than a *Presumption*, to appear to *Your Majesty*, though with such a *Trifle* as the following Book; and therefore chose to break through that *Difficulty*, rather than to be guilty of such a *Fault*, of letting slip any Opportunity in which I might let *Your Majesty* know, with what a *Profound Respect* I approach *Your Great Presence*.

Our *Great Island*, which ever since the *Memory of Man*, has been divided into two distinct Kingdoms, of different Names, Powers, Governments, Religions, Customs, Affections and Interests, your Majesty has *United and Made one*. It was what your Great and Royal Ancestors, with all their Power and Industry, were never able to perform: But it was a Work, the Honour of which, the *Supreme Powers* reserv'd for You. This *U N I O N* of the *British Nations*, was an Undertaking so *Great* in its Performance, so *Noble* in its Kind, so *Admirable* in its Effects, so *Desirable* in its Good, so *Singular* in its Appearances, and so *Profound* in its Structure; that none could have been able to have done it, but a *Greatness of Mind* like Yours: One of a *Superlative Prudence and Resolution*, of an *Unwearied Industry*, of an *Unmatchable and Unshaken Zeal* for the *Publick Good*; of a *Magnanimous Soul*, *Inspir'd* with the *Holy Spirit* of the *Immortal GOD*.

You have *Madam* by this *U N I O N*, shut up the *Back-Door*, by which *Great Britain* was always liable to be *Affaulted*; and thereby have added a *Jewel more to the Imperial Crown*; and Adorn'd it with an *Illustration*, the *Greatest* and most  
desirable



---

## T H E D E D I C A T I O N .

---

desirable in its Kind, which will be, both to the *British Isles*, and to *Your Majesty* also, not only an *Important Security*, but an *Everlasting Ornament of Glory*.

Surely *Madam*, You who could *Unite Hearts in an Eternal Bond of Friendship*, was the most fit Instrument to *Unite Kingdoms* in one Bond of Interest and Duty. To make those who were so different in *Climate, Sovereignty, Religion and Manners*, *One People*, in the Bonds of *Nature and Affection*: And to make them, with one *Joint Design, Intention and Will*, to become *One United and Faithful People*, to so *Desirable and Generous a Mistress*. But what might not be expected from such a *Lady, so Great and so Good a Queen?* Whose *Conjugal Friendship* was, and is still the *Wonder of Mankind*, (a Noble Pattern to all the Sex) which exceeded even to *Admiration*, whatever has been yet seen upon Earth: Who is it that has *Sense and Gratitude* in his Soul, would not even lay down his *Life* for such a *Friend*?

When I consider the *Admirable Hand of Providence*, which has brought *Your Majesty* to the *Throne of the British Kingdoms*, and has put their *Crowns* upon *Your Imperial Head*, which has made *Glorious Your Reign*, with a *Series of Wonderful Successes*, and even *Amazing Victories*, over the *Most Formidable Tyrant of the Earth*; rendring his *mighty Attempts* against You, *Vain and Foolish*; notwithstanding his *Confederacy with Destruction*, his *Covenant with Death*, and his *Agreement with Hell*; to the *Delivering You and Your People* out of *his Snare*, and the *Establishing of Your Just Title*, upon *Everlasting Foundations*, against all *Pretenders whatsoever*: I humbly prostrate my self to that *Tremendous Being*.

What can I say, but that *G O D* is with You, and that You are an *Especial Object* of his *Care*, who thus stedfastly holds You as in the *Palm of his Hand*: Your *Sincerity*, and *Generous Love* to *Mankind*, have prevail'd with that *Almighty Power*, who has given You a *Transcendent Portion of Wisdom*, to *Conduct You* through the *Labyrinths of Dominion and Government*; even whilst You have been *Fighting the Publick Enemy of all E U R O P E*; and putting a *Hook into his Jaws*, by which You have already *Tamed the Monster*, fill'd him with *Shame and Contempt*, and cover'd him with *Confusion of Face*.

What may I call the *Instruments* of Your *Warfare*, which have made You thus to prevail? Who is it that has set Your  
Feet



---

## T H E D E D I C A T I O N .

---

*Feet upon the Necks of Your Enemies, and given You Strength to humble the Pride of the Lofty? Who is it that has Established Your Strength, to break in Pieces the Invincible Powers, (as they were Foolishly called,) by which You have given a Demonstration to the World, of that Prophanity and Vanity? Who is it that has thus made Your Majesty to Triumph, and adorned you with the Palms of Victory?*

*'Tis the Great and the Holy One, the Mighty God of Jacob, who has done all these things for You; to whom I make my Daily Addresses, that he may yet Defend and Support the Righteous Cause in which You are engaged; Direct Your Counsels with Wisdom and Prudence; Prosper Your Arms wherever they are engaged; and that the Angel of his Presence may Attend and Conduct You in all Your Ways: So that making You the Restorer of the Breaches, You may Establish such an Universal Peace in Europe, as may Recognize Your Happy Reign, and cause it to shine with a most Resplendent Lustre, to all Succeeding Ages of Time.*

*You Contemn Madam, the Poor and Little Artifices of Tyrants; You have a Soul too Great to think of such Meanness, and a Spirit too Noble for the bare Thoughts of such Depraved Vileness: You act with the Magnificence of Grandure, made Illustrious with Piety, and an Unbounded Goodness, repleat with all the Ornaments of Sincerity and Vertue, by which You will Live in After-Ages, and Your Name be made Immortal. So that instead of the Diadems being an Honour to Your Majesty, You are become the Exalted Honour of Royalty, and the Glory of the Purple; which makes Your Sovereignty Shine as the most Splendid Brightness, among the Heroes of Time.*

*G O D has not only made You a Great Queen, but even the Greatest of Princes; and Your Early Piety, as it has advanced You above the best of Women Kind; so it has Exalted You above the Greatest of Crowned Heads. Your Vertues merit a perpetual Encomium, and your Excelling Goodness to your People, is that which is never to be forgotten; whom you have been pleas'd to Oblige with Transcendent Acts of Kindness; so Extraordinary and Superlative in their kind, as all Succeeding Generations, under an Eternal Sense of Gratitude, will be forced for ever to acknowledge.*

*You carry with You Madam, Majesty and Honour, and Your Sword determines the Successes of War, making with Your Thunder, the World afraid; giving Laws as far as*  
*Your*



---

## T H E D E D I C A T I O N .

---

*Your Dreaded Name* does reach ; which makes the *Tyrants of the Earth*, those *Barbarous Murtherers of Mankind* to tremble, and affrightens the *Obsequious Slaves to Villany*. *Your Triumphs* are not in the Ruin of Nations and Kingdoms, not in Victories of Blood and Cruelty, not for Dominion and Sovereignty ; but to give *Freedom and Ease* to Mankind, and set the World at Liberty.

May the High and the Lofty One, the *Almighty G O D*, He by whom *Kings and Queens* Reign, and *Princes* decree Justice, give *Your Majesty* a Long and a Happy Life ; may He Prolong it to an *Accomplish'd Period*, for the Good of *Your People*, to whom *You* have shewn *Your Self* so exceedingly Kind. May he Bless *You* with *Prosperity*, and give *You* that *inward Consolation and Peace of Mind*, which may as Infinitely exceed all the Enjoyments of this Life, how Great and Magnificent soever, as the *Heavens are high above the Earth* ; and make *Your Great and Illustrious Soul*, enjoy the Fullness of Satisfactions, to the *Ultimate* of whatever *You* can desire. So that *Crowning You* with *Glory and Honour* here, *You* may very late Ascend, as on *Eagles Wings*, to those *Eternally Serene Habitations of Peace and Tranquility*, where *You* may be for ever *Transcendently Happy*.  
So Ardently Prays

Madam,

Your Majesties

Most Humble,

Most Faithful,

A N D

Most Obedient

Subject and Servant,

W I L L I A M S A L M O N .



# T H E P R E F A C E : O R, I N T R O D U C T I O N .

## C H A P. I. Of the W O R K it self.

**I.** **W**E Pretend not here to an universal History of Plants, but chiefly to such as are most Known, and Virtuous, most Experimented, and Useful in Physick. 'Tis a Work highly of Use for Physicians, Chyrurgians, and Apothecaries, and for their Sakes, and the Publick Good it was principally Designed and Intended.

**II.** As to the Authors made use of in this Undertaking, we shall not be so vain as to enumerate them all, 'twould be to no Purpose; and yet it will be Necessary for the Credit of the Book, to give you an Account of the Chief of those, in Treating of each Plant, whose Leaves we were obliged continually to turn over.

**III.** The Authors we made most use of in Composing this Herbal, were these following, viz. Bauhinus, Brunfelsius, Cæsalpinus, Camerarius, Clusius, Dioscorides, Dodonæus, Durantes, Fuchsius, Johnson on Gerard, Lobel and Pena, Lonicerus, Lugdunensis, Matthiolum, Parkinson, Ruelius, Schroder, Tabernæmontanus, Theophrastus, and Tragus. These, I say, were those which were chiefly consulted, and without whom, we passed not off from the Discourse of any Plant: But we cannot say these were all, for occasionally as it fell in our way, and where some particular Occurrences required it, we had recourse to many others, more than twice that number besides, without the Help of which we could not have so Compleatly performed what we here Present you withall.

**IV.** As to the Historical Part, we could not much deviate, but were obliged to follow the most celebrated Authors of this Subject, viz. in their Names, Kinds, Descriptions, Places of Growth, and Times of Flowering and Seeding. In their Names, we have given you the most usual, and those chiefly by which the Plant (in all Ages) has been most known and called, whether Arabick, Greek, Latine, or English; in doing of which, we hope we have in some measure rectified the Latine Nomenclature, which, even in all our Dictionaries, has hitherto been very Faulty and Imperfect.

**V.** As to the Kinds of any Plant, we own we have not given you all that you will find in Parkinson, and many other Authors, because those which we have Omitted, an English Reader, may not possibly come to the Knowledge or Sight of in many Ages, they growing in Foreign and Far-distant Countries, as Turkey, Persia, East India, the Moluccas, China, &c. Besides, having no known Virtues or Uses assigned to them, but only their Names and Descriptions, we thought they would only take up room, and rather encumber the Book, than add any real Excellency or Advantage to it; considering it was chiefly design'd for the Benefit and Use of the Practicall Physician.

**VI.** As to the Descriptions, we say they are the same as in other Authors, little or nothing differing from those in Bauhin, Clusius, Dodonæus, Fuchsius, Gerard, Johnson, Lugdunensis, Matthiolum, Parkinson, Tabernæmontanus, and Tragus: But we have almost every where revers'd the Order of Describing; for whereas they many times begin at the top or upper parts of a Plant, and so go downwards to the Root, we on the contrary, generally begin at the Root, first Describing it, and so ascend upwards to its Stalks, Leaves, Branches, Flowers and Seed, or Fruit, which we take to be the most natural Order or Method.

**VII.** As to the Places of the Growth of Plants, they may be very uncertain, because, where they have been found to Grow in great plenty, in former Ages or Times, the footsteps of the same Plant is not to be found now. In some places where I have found several Plants to Grow as Natives of the same, when I was a Youth, now in my present declining Years, there are no remainders of them to be found. The Egyptian Arum, or Pseudocolocasia, which we now call the Carolina Eddo, (because there every where planted) did formerly Grow plentifully in Egypt, which I suppose was its Native place of Growth, and was there planted for their use in Meats, and for Food: Now our late Travellers say, it has not for some Ages been known to Grow there at all. But 'tis possible that it has been neglected and disused: Yet I am of Opinion, that if it were diligently sought after, some remains of it might be found again. It grows in vast plenty



n Carolina, where it is a great part of their Food and Living; but it prospers only as under the Planters Hands; for should they neglect it, it would quickly be totally lost in that Country too.

VIII. We have every where given the various Qualities of each Plant, by which an Estimate may be given in Grofs, of their Virtues, and to what Diseases they may be properly applyed, or may be helpful against: The consideration of which alone, is of mighty a Use to the Practicall Physician; because they indicate to the Mind or Understanding, to what various Purposes and Intents they may be converted, and in what Diseases they may be specifically useful.

IX. How these Qualities are to be applyed to Diseases, may be easily exemplified: I know it may be objected by such as are Ignorant of Medical Qualities and Indications, that a great many Virtues are ascribed to most Plants, for the Curing of Diseases, which they can never perform, nor any Author before ever signified: To which I answer; That I do not affirm nor say, that every Herb is a Specifick for the Cure of all Diseases, which in the particular Preparations and Virtues thereof, I may ascribe to it; but he that reads me, ought to read me with a Medical Mind, or Soul, and with a good Understanding; I will exemplify the Matter. Suppose it to be Rosemary. As to its first Qualities, it is Hot and Dry in the third Degree; and that it is Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomack, Alexipharmick: From these Qualities, we conclude that it must be helpful against all cold and moist Diseases, of the Head, Brain, Nerves, Stomach, and Poison; then when we consider what Diseases are apt to afflict those parts, from a hot and dry Cause, we fix the Virtues to be such as may resist those Diseases, not to be an absolute and specifick Cure for the same, but to be very helpful in those Cases, and so may be drawn into Compositions, with other Ingredients for the same purposes. And thus I desire every Genuine Son of Art to understand me. What I have said in this Paragraph, may be of admirable Use, if it be rightly understood and applyed.

X. Thro' the whole Book in every Chapter, we have given you the various Preparations of each Plant, both Galenick and Chymick, which may be made of them, which is a thing never performed by any other Author before me. This being rightly considered, gives you the whole Result of the Plant, and in a few Words teaches you how it is to be used and applyed, in all the Cases, and to all the Distempers to which it may be appropriated: But that this may be more perfectly understood, we particularly Exemplify the whole thereof, in this present Introduction; in those several Forms, both Galenick and Chymick, and that to the Capacities of such as are Ignorant of the Medical Arts.

XI. Having done all this, when we come to explicate upon the Virtues, we do not give you the Virtues of the Plant in Grofs (for that is before done in its Specification) but shew you particularly, how all these several Preparations are (in every Disease) to be used and applyed, which as it never was done before me, by any other Author, so I think it is of universal Use in the Art and Practice of Physick: It is performed so as to answer every particular and singular Preparation, and in a Stile so full and plain, that the meanest Understanding cannot easily mistake me; by which means it is accommodated to the Use of the Vulgar, tho' they understand little or nothing of the Art of Physick.

XII. The last thing which I shall here take notice of, is more matter of Ornament, than any thing of Necessity, which I have done for the sakes of all such as are lovers of Flowers, and of a Flower-Garden: It is a compleat FLORILEGIUM, of all or most of the Choice Flowers, which are Cultivated in England by our FLORISTS: This is not done as a particular Work by it self, but is interspersed thro' the whole Book, each Flower in its proper place of the Alphabet; where you will have their Culture, Choice, Increase, and several ways of Management, as well for Profit as Delightation; a noble Subject it is, but never brought into any Herbal before this.

## CHAP. II.

### Of the Greek Names of Plants.

AT First entrance upon this Work, we thought to have given you the known Greek Names of all the Herbs and Plants described in this Herbal, in the order they were treated of; but finding that it would have been too tedious a Labour, and an Undertaking that would not have answer'd the End, and that withall, besides the taking up of room, it would have mightily encombr'd the Discourse; we in a manner wholly declined the same: However, for the sakes of all such as are Lovers of the Greek Tongue, and desirous to call the Species of each Plant by its proper Appellation in that Language, we have in the body of this Work, given you the known Greek Name or Names of each Genus, and the various Latine Epithites, by which the differing Species of that Plant ought to be distinguished; by which, applying to those several and various Latine Epithites, (which are in this place ranked Alphabetically) the Greek Words answering to them, you will have the complicated Greek Names, as full and compleat, as if we had severally perfected them, in the order of their several Chapters.

A.

1. Acer, cris, cre.  
Δειμύς, μέλα, μύ.
2. Aculeatus, a, um.  
κεντρώδης, τή, τόν.  
κεντητικός, κή, κόν.
3. Agrestis, tis, te.  
πιδινός, νή, νόν.
4. Agrius, a, um.  
ἀγρίος, ια, ιον.
5. Albus, a, um.  
λευκός, κή, κόν.
6. Angustus, a, um.  
στενός, νή, νόν.
7. Angustifolius, a, um.  
στενόφυλλος, λη, λον.
8. Aquaticus, a, um.  
ἐνυδρής, ερ, ερν.  
ὕδατινός, ης, ες.  
φίλυδρος, ερ, ερν.
9. Arboreus, a, um.  
Δενδρικός, κή, κόν.
10. Aromaticus, a, um.  
ἀρωματικός, κή, κόν.

II. A.



11. Arvus, a, um. (ager incultus.)  
ἀγρός, ης, εν.  
12. Asper, era, erum.  
τρεχάδης, ης, εν.  
13. Autumnalis, lis, le.  
ὀπωρενός, ης, εν.

## B.

14. Bambacinus, a, um.  
βαμβάκιος, ης, εν.  
15. Barbatus, a, um.  
ἐκπύγων, ης, εν.  
16. Basilicus, a, um.  
βασίλικός, ης, εν.  
17. Benedictus, a, um.  
εὐλογητός, ης, εν.  
18. Bromosus, a, fum. i. foetidus.  
βρωμάδης, ης, εν.  
19. Bulbosus, a, um.  
βολβώδης, ης, εν.  
20. Byssinus, a, um.  
βύσσινος, ης, εν.

## C.

21. Cæculus, a, um.  
θαλασσικός, ης, εν.  
22. Cæculus, a, um.  
κυάνεος, ης, εν.  
23. Campestris, ris, re.  
ποδιαίος, ης, εν.  
24. Caninus, a, um.  
κυνικός, ης, εν.  
25. Cavus, a, um.  
κοῖλος, ης, εν.  
26. Circularis, ris, re.  
κυκλικός, ης, εν.  
27. Communis, nis, ne.  
κοινός, ης, εν.  
28. Coronarius, ia, ium.  
σεφανοπλόκος, ης, εν.  
29. Crematus, a, um.  
πρεσβυτικός, ης, εν.  
30. Cyaneus, a, um.  
κυανικός, ης, εν.

## D.

31. Declivis, vis, ve.  
κατάκλιος, ης, εν.  
32. Densus, a, um.  
πυκνός, ης, εν.  
33. Dentatus, a, um.  
ὀδοντώδης, ης, εν.  
34. Dulcis, cis, ce.  
γλυκύς, ης, εν.  
35. Duplex, lex, lex.  
διπλός, ης, εν.  
36. Duplus, a, um.  
διπλός, ης, εν.  
37. Dumosus, a, um.  
ἀμυγδαλώδης, ης, εν.  
38. Durus, a, um.  
κλητός, ης, εν.

## F.

39. Falsus, a, um.  
ψευδής, ης, εν.

40. Flavus, a, um.  
ξανθός, ης, εν.  
41. Fœmineus, a, um.  
θηλυκός, ης, εν.  
42. Fœmininus, a, um.  
θήλειος, ης, εν.  
43. Fontalis, lis, le.  
πηγαίος, ης, εν.  
44. Fruticosus, a, um.  
θαμνώδης, ης, εν.  
45. Fungosus, a, um.  
μυκητοειδής, ης, εν.  
46. Gibber, a, um; *quasi*  
Tuberus, a, um.  
κυφός, ης, εν.  
47. Glaber, a, um.  
αγλαυκός, ης, εν.  
48. Gladialis, lis, le; *quasi*  
Mucronatus, a, um.  
ἐξυθηκτός, ης, εν.  
49. Gramineus, a, um.  
χορτώδης, ης, εν.  
50. Guttatus, a, um.  
σταλαχτής, ης, εν.

## H.

51. Hirsutus, a, um.  
λάσχος, ης, εν.  
52. Hirtus, a, um.  
δασύς, ης, εν.  
53. Hortensis, fis, fe.  
κηπευτικός, ης, εν.  
54. Hortensius, a, um.  
ήμερος, ης, εν.  
55. Humilis, lis, le.  
ταπεινός, ης, εν.

## I.

56. Incanus, a, um.  
πολτός, ης, εν.  
57. Incomparabilis, lis, le.  
ἀσύγκριτος, ης, εν.  
58. Infrequens, ens, ens.  
σπάνιος, ης, εν.  
59. Incultus, a, um.  
ἀγέωργος, ης, εν.  
60. Indicus, a, um.  
ινδικός, ης, εν.  
61. Juncus, a, um.  
κουνιώδης, ης, εν.  
62. Juncifolius, a, um.  
κουνιόφυλλος, ης, εν.

## L.

63. Laciniatus, a, um.  
Laciniosus, a, um.  
κολπώδης, ης, εν.  
64. Læteus, a, um.  
γαλακτικός, ης, εν.  
65. Lævis, vis, ve.  
λείος, ης, εν.  
66. Latifolius, a, um.  
πλατύφυλλος, ης, εν.

67. Latus,



67. Latus, a, um.  
εὐρύς, ρεῖα, ρύ.  
πλαῦς, τεῖα, τύ.
68. Litoralis, lis, le.  
Litoreus, a, um.  
αἰγιαλώδης, ης, ες.
69. Lignosus, a, um.  
ξύλινος, οῦς, ἐς.
70. Longus, a, um.  
μακρός, εἰς, ἐόν.  
δολιχός, ης, χόν.
71. Luteus, a, um.  
κλωρός, εἰς, ἐόν.  
κροκώδης, ης, ες.  
ξανθός, θη, θόν.  
ώχρος, εἰς, ἐόν.

## M.

72. Maculosus, a, um.  
εὐπαρής, εἰς, ἐόν.
73. Magnus, a, um.  
μέγας, αλη, γα.
74. Major, ior, ius.  
μεῖζων, ων, ον.
75. Maximus, a, um.  
μέγιστος, τη, τον.
76. Marinus, a, um.  
ἐλώδης, δης, ες.
77. Maritimus, a, um.  
θαλάσσιος, ια, ον.  
ἐλώδης, δης, ες.
78. Masculus, a, um.  
ἀνδρεῖος, ῖα, ῖον.
79. Masculinus, a, um.  
ἀρρενικός, ης, κόν.
80. Minor, nor, nus.  
μειον, ων, ον.  
ῥιττων, ων, ον.  
ἐλάττων, ων, ον.
81. Minimus, a, um.  
ἐλάχιστος, τη, τον.
82. Montanus, a, um.  
ὄρεος, νη, ῥόν.
83. Multiplex, lex, lex.  
πολλάπλος, οη, ὄον.

## N.

84. Nemoralis, lis, le.  
ὑδαίνος, εἰς, ἐόν.  
ὕλωδης, δης, ες.
85. Nemorensis, is, e.  
ἀλσώδης, δης, ες.  
ὕλινος, νη, ῥόν.  
ὕλινόμτος, μη, μον.
86. Nemorosus, a, um.  
ὕλωδης, δης, ες.  
ἀλσώδης, δης, ες.
87. Niger, gra, grum.  
μέλας, λαινα, λα.
88. Nothus, a, um.  
νόθος, θη, θόν.
89. Nudus, a, um.  
γυμνός, νη, ῥόν.  
φιλός, λη, λόν.

## P.

90. Paluster, tris, tre.  
Palustris, tris, tre.  
ἐλώδης, δης, ες.  
ἐλειος, ια, ιον.
91. Parvus, a, um.  
μικρός, εἰς, ἐόν.  
ἀπαλός, λη, λόν.

92. Planus, a, um.  
λειώδης, δης, ες.
93. Pratenfis, fis, fe.  
λειμώνιος, ια, ιον.
94. Pumilus, a, um.  
νάμτος, νη, νον.  
νανώδης, δης, ες.
95. Purpureus, a, um.  
πορφύρεος, ρεα, ρε.

## Q.

96. Quadratus, a, um.  
τετραγώνος, νη, νον.
97. Quinquefolius, a, um.  
πεντάφυλλος, λη, λον.

## R.

98. Racematus, a, um.  
κοτρυνώδης, δης, ες.
99. Ramosus, a, um.  
ῥαμώδης, δης, ες.  
κλαδώδης, δης, ες.  
πολύκλαδος, δη, δον.
100. Rarus, a, um; *quasi*, infrequens.  
σπάνιος, ια, ιον.
101. Repens, ens, ens.  
ῥεπων, ων, ον.
102. Rotundus, a, um.  
ρογγύλος, λη, λον.
103. Ruber, bra, brum.  
ῥουβρός, εἰς, ἐόν.
104. Rubeus, a, um.  
ῥοβευθής, θης, ες.

## S.

105. Sativus, a, um.  
κηπευτός, τη, τόν.  
σπερμιος, μη, μον.
106. Saxatilis, lis, le.  
πετραῖος, ῖα, ῖον.
107. Scaber, bra, brum.  
ψωραλέος, ῖα, ῖον.
108. Serratus, a, um.  
πριονωτός, τη, τον.
109. Siliquosus, a, um.  
λοβώδης, δης, ες.
110. Simplex, lex, lex.  
ἀπλῆς, λη, λόν.
111. Spicatus, a, um.  
σταχυειός, εἰς, ἐόν.
112. Spinofus, a, um.  
ἀκανθώδης, δης, ες.
113. Spurius, a, um.  
ὑπόκλητος, τη, τον.
114. Stellarus, a, um.  
ἀστέρειος, εἰς, ἐόν.  
ἀστερικός, ης, κόν.
115. Suavis, vis, ve.  
ῥόδος, δεῖα, δέ.
116. Sylvestre, } tris, tre.  
Sylvestris, }  
ὄρειος, ια, ιον.

## T.

117. Tenuis, is, e.  
λεπτός, τη, τον.
118. Tenuifolius, a, um.  
λεπτόφυλλος, λη, λον.
119. Terrestre, ris, re.  
χερσαῖος, αῖα, αῖον.  
ἐπίγειος, ια, ιον.



120. Terrenus, a, um.

γῆινος, γῆ, γόν.  
χρῆστος, κῆ, κόν.

121. Tuberosus, a, um.

φυρῶδης, δης, δες.

## V.

122. Verus, a, um.

ἀληθής, θής, θές.  
ἀληθινός, νή, νόν.

123. Vernalis, lis, le.

Vernus, a, um.

ἐαρινός, νή, νόν.

124. Vulgaris, ris, re.

δημιόδης, δης, δες.  
κοινός, νή, νόν.  
πῶδημος, μῆ, μόν.  
ἐγκύκλιος, ια, ιόν.

## C H A P. III.

### Of the First Qualities of MEDICINES.

**I.** THE Qualities of Medicaments are five-fold, according, 1. To their Temperaments. 2. As they are Alteratives. 3. As they are Appropriate. 4. As they Diminish something. 5. As they Add or Restore something; all which Qualities we come now to explicate in order.

**II.** The Temperaments of Medicaments are five-fold, considered, 1. As they are perfectly Temperate, viz. neither Hot nor Cold, Dry nor Moist. 2. As they are Hot. 3. As they are Cold. 4. As they are Dry. 5. As they are Moist. In the four last of which, there are said to be 4 Degrees, receding from their principal, ver. gr. An Herb which is Hot, may be hot in the first, second, third, or fourth Degree of heat. Again, from the four prime Qualities, these also proceed, viz. that a Medicament, 1. as it is Hot, may be hot and dry, or hot and moist. 2. As it is Cold, also cold and dry, or cold and moist; and these likewise in all the four Degrees of Temperature.

**III.** Temperate Medicaments are such which work no change at all, in respect of heat, coldness, dryness, or moisture.

And these may be Temperate in some respect. 1. As being neither hot nor cold, and yet may be moist or dry. 2. As being neither moist nor dry, and yet may be hot or cold. Their Use is, where there are no apparent Excesses of the four other Qualities; to preserve the Body Temperate, conserve Strength, and restore decayed Nature.

**IV.** Hot Medicaments (and so also Cold) are considered in respect of our Bodies, and not of themselves: For those Simples are called Hot, which heat our Bodies.

Their Uses are, 1. To make the offending Humour thin, to be expell'd by Sweat, or thro' the Pores. 2. To help Concoction. 3. To warm and comfort the Viscera. 4. And by outward application, to discuss Tumors. 5. Or raise Blisters, make Cauterics, &c. according to the degrees of Heat.

**V.** Cold Medicaments are such, as cool our Bodies being over-heat, by any adventitious or accidental Causes.

Their Uses are, 1. To cool the Parts or Bowels. 2. To condense Vapours. 3. To thicken Humours. 4. To abate the heat of Fevers. 5. To refresh the Spirits almost suffocated. 6. Allay Inflammations. 7. Repress Sweating. 8. Ease violent Pains.

**VI.** Drying Medicaments, are such as make dry the Parts overflowing with moisture.

They are used, 1. To stop Fluxes. 2. To comfort and strengthen Nature. 3. To consume a superfluity of Humours. 4. To fortify the Bowels. 5. To restore in Consumptions, where great fluxes of the Bowels have been.

**VII.** Moist Medicaments, are such as are opposed to drying, which moisten, loosen, are lenitive, and make slippery.

They are used, 1. To moisten an over dry and constipated Habit of Body. 2. To ease Coughing. 3. To help the roughness of the Wind-pipe. 4. To loosen the Belly. 5. To relax Parts contracted or hardened.

**VIII.** Things hot in the first Degree, gently warm the Body being over cooled, and outwardly open the Pores. Hot in the second Degree as much exceed the first, as the first exceed Temperature, and these cut tough Humours, open Obstructions, and the Pores also outwardly. Hot in the third Degree, more powerfully heat, and are able (if much used) to inflame the Body, and cause Fevers, provoke Sweat exceedingly, and resist the malignity of the Plague or Pestilence, and more powerfully also cut tough Humours. Hot in the fourth Degree, burn the Body if outwardly applied, raise Blisters, corrode the Skin.

**IX.** Things cold in the first Degree, qualify the heat of the Stomach, and refresh the Spirit. Cold in the second Degree, are chiefly of use to abate Inflammations. Cold in the third Degree, are Repressive, and drive back the Matter, repress Sweat, and keep the Spirits from Fainting. Cold in the fourth Degree, stupify the Senses, ease violent Pains, and are used in extream Watchings.

**X.** Things dry in the first Degree, Strengthen. In the second Degree, Bind. In the third Degree, stop Fluxes, and restore in Consumptions. In the fourth Degree, stop Catarrhs, and all Fluxes of Blood and Humours; are highly Stiptick, and dry up a super-abundancy of moisture.

**XI.** Things moist in the first Degree, are opposed to drying in the same Degree: They moisten the Body, and Parts dried. In the second degree, they Lenify, loosen the Belly, and make slippery. In the third degree, they smooth the roughness of the Wind-pipe. In the fourth degree, they cure a constipation of the Bowels.

**XII.** Thus Medicines alter according to their Temperature: Whose active Qualities are Heat and Cold; and by them Diseases are said to be eradicated. The Passive are dryness and moisture, and they are subservient to Nature.



## C H A P. IV.

## Of the Second Qualities.

I. **T**HE second Qualities of Medicaments are such as are Alterative; which alter the Habit and Constitution of the Body, as it has a respect to the Blood, Lympha, Serum, and other Humours of the same; and these Alteratives are considered as they are Medicaments Internally used, or Externally applied.

II. Of Internal Alteratives Authors have made many Titles; but the Whole of the Matter is comprehended under the thirteen following Appellations, viz. 1. Aperitives. 2. Abstersives. 3. Astringents. 4. Digestives. 5. Incisives. 6. Carminatives. 7. Anodyns. 8. Narcoticks. 9. Bechicks. 10. Solutives. 11. Attenuaters. 12. Coagulatives. 13. Confortatives.

III. Of External Alteratives, we have these following fourteen, viz. Stypticks, Hemopticks, or Antihæmorrhagicks. 2. Anodyns. 3. Repercussives. 4. Discussives. 5. Emollients. 6. Attractives. 7. Suppuratives. 8. Corrosives, or Pyroticks. 9. Digestives. 10. Abstersives. 11. Incarnatives. 12. Agglutinatives. 13. Cicatrizers. 14. Cosmeticks: Of all which we shall treat in order.

## I. Of Internal ALTERATIVES.

IV. 1. **APERITIVES.** These are such Medicaments as open the Obstructions of the Viscera, as Stomach, Lungs, Liver, Spleen, Glands, Mesentery, Intestines, Reins, and Womb. They are all hot at least in the second Degree, for the most part in the third, and many times in the fourth degree; of very subtil and thin parts, for without heat there can be no rarefaction, and without rarefaction, no opening of the obstructed Bowels.

V. 2. **ABSTERSIVES.** These are cleansers, which after opening Obstructions of the affected Parts, cleanse them, by taking away the Recrements which obstructed them, being the superfluities of the Blood, Lympha, and other Juices, and without which work be done, all that Aperitives or Openers do, is done in vain. They have a sharpness and tenuity of Substance, and it is not any great matter whether they be Hot or Cold, by reason neither quality (if not excessive) hinder their Action. They also remove glutinous and clammy Humours in the Superficies, or adhering to the Pores of the Skin and Ulcers.

VI. 3. **ASTRINGENTS.** These are Binders, and are generally dry in the second and third Degrees, whether they be hot or cold; they are Stypticks, and in some measure constipate the Bowels in Fluxes, dry up Fluxes of Humours, help Catarrh, and strengthen the Tone of the Stomach and other Bowels, when over Lax, or weakened by long Defluxions, over much moisture, or the vehemency of any inveterate Disease; and are therefore often given in the end of a Cure.

VII. 4. **DIGESTIVES.** These are such as Concoct the Food in the Stomach, and are all naturally hot; for it is Heat which causes Concoction, and excites the natural Fermentation in the Stomach, by which a good Chylus is made, in order to Sanguification, and Nourishment of the Body: Yet some things may cause Digestion, which are not naturally hot, but cold, and may excite the natural heat, by way of Antiperistasis, whereby the sulphureous Particles in the Stomach are more fermented and heat, or set a boiling.

VIII. 5. **INCISIVES.** They are such things as pierce into and cut tough Matter, which is not easy to be broken, or separated into parts; such are Juice of Limons, Vinegar, and all acid things which by their points enter into and make a division, not a dissolution, whereby tough Flegm, and tartarous or viscous Matter, is prepared for Abstersives, and so made fit either to be expectorated by the Mouth, or expell'd by Urine and Stool. These, whether hot or cold, are of very thin and subtil Parts.

IX. 6. **CARMINATIVES.** These are Medicaments which spread, discuss, or expel Wind, and are generally hot and dry, and of very thin and subtil Parts, proper in Pains of the Stomach and Bowels, the Cholick, and other Indispositions whatever caused of Wind, as Vapours, Hypochondriack Pains, Hysterick Fits, &c.

X. 7. **ANODYNS, or PAREGORICKS.** These are easers of Pain; which tho' they do not often Cure Diseases, yet act in order thereto, they regarding the Pain chiefly, while both Cause and Disease are remaining. They are of thin Parts, and are moderately hot, seldom exceeding the first Degree, and rarefacient; and so Digesting, Concocting, Dissipating, Extenuating, and in some measure Evacuating, whatever Humour is sharp, tough, or gross; by it alcalious property absorbing the acritude of the Matter, contain'd in any Cavity, or its Pores.

XI. 8. **NARCOTICKS.** These are stupifying Medicines, and ease Pain, not by mitigating it, but by Stupifaction; not by taking away the Cause, but by Obstruction of the Animal Spirits for the time. Yet Stupor is something less than Insensibility, or the provocation of Sense: They are also called Hypnoticks and Somnificks, because they induce Sleep. These being taken too liberally, or to excess, cause Death, as all Opiates, if immoderately dosed. They are to be administered at such times, when the Symptoms are so grievous, as to threaten a greater danger than the Disease.

XII. 9. **BECHICKS.** These are such as abate or ease Coughing. And they are things which incrassate thin Humours, stop Defluxions, and so ease the Cough. Narcoticks of the middle kind, are agreeable to the Brest and Lungs; which if they are cold, they incrassate thin Humours, and stop Coughing, and especially such as are much Narcotick, or Stupifying: But such things as are hot and of thin parts, and extenuating, which expectorate tough Humours, oftentimes ease it.

XIII. 10. **SOLUTIVES.** These are Loosning Medicines, not such as are Purging, but by their hot and moist Qualities, keep the Body soluble; they not only open the Pores of the Viscera or Entrails but in some measure removing Obstructions,



*tions, they open the inferiour Duetus of the Bowels; as do Nitrous Salts, Soluble Salt of Tartar, Oat-Meal, &c. and this they may do, altho' they may have some small Astringion, and by reason of Substance, do not differ from those which are Absterfive, but in degree. For these things which cleanse the Pores and inward Passages, have a great tenuity of Parts, and are moderately Astringive, which cleanse, and as it were seemingly Purge the greater Passages, yet withall strengthen the same. Some things are Soluble by lenifying, as Fat things; and some by washing and absterfion, as Whey, Solutive Waters, New Beer and Ale, &c.*

**XIV. 11. ATTENUATERS.** *These are such things as make thin, and are of hot and thin Parts, and so extenuate gross and tough Humours, and are for the most part hot and dry in the second and third degrees, as things Sharp, Picquant, and Aromatical, generally they are strong provokers of the Terms, because they make the Blood and Lympha, more thin and fluid: They also facilitate the Delivery of Women in Labour, bringing forth both Birth and Afterbirth. Hereto belong Incisers of Viscid Humours, which are more strong. And Dissolvers of what is Grumous and Coagulated, as Sal Volatile Oleosum, and all Alcalious and Volatile Salts and Spirits. Also Extenuants; or wasters of the Fat Substance, and Gross Parts of the Body. And Laxatives, which are Solutives, and moderately hot, moist, and thin. The use of Attenuating Medicines, is previously in order to open the Obstructions of the Bowels, Lungs, and Womb.*

**XV. 12. COAGULATIVES.** *These are such as make thick, being contrary to those things, which make thin or rarefy. They make Rheum and Humours, tough and thick.; and so are accounted either cold or temperate. They are given in Colds, Coughs, and vehement Catarrhs and Distillations, whereby the Flegm or Rheum being coagulated or thickned, it is made more fit for Expectoration: They also take away the sharpness of the Blood and Lympha, and thicken it, whereby they stop the overflowing of the Loches and Terms in Women, and perfectly prevail against a Diabetes. They also stop too much Sweating, and the disposition of the Spirits, which often happen to such as are Weak, and in Consumptions.*

**XVI. 13. CONFORTATIVES.** *These are Strengtheners of the universal Man, of the Spirits as well as the Body; and are generally of hot, dry, astringing, and subtil Parts, that they may warm those Parts which are cold; dry and confirm those which are weakned by too much moisture; bind or stop the too openness of the Pores, by which the Spirits are dissipated; and of subtil and volatile Parts, that they may unite with or join, the Natural, Vital, and Animal Spirits, to revive and exhilarate them. But sometimes, when the Body is weakned by heat and dryness, cold things may become Confortatives, by overcoming those Qualities by which the Body is weakned; and so we see the Spirits and Oils of Nitre, Salt, Sulphur, and Vitriol, Lime Juice, Juice of Limons, &c. Confortatives in the highest degree, where the Body has been weakned by Heetic and continual Fevers, and other hot and dry Indispositions, not easily to be expressed in few words.*

## II. Of External ALTERATIVES.

**XVII. 1. STYPTICKS, HÆMOPTOICKS,** *or Antihæmorrhagicks. These are such things, as stop Bleeding in what part of the Body soever. They are for the most part cold, at least temperate, exceeding drying and repulsive: For things which are cold, repel, and many of them coagulate, or thicken; and so if they have a crassitude of Parts, as things acerb and austere. And Medicines vehemently drying, which are Astringent, repel also, because they thicken the Blood and Lympha: These, if they be of thin parts, much conduce to Astringion: Some Stypticks have a crassitude of Body, for which reason they then cannot easily penetrate the more remote Parts, precluding the Passages; therefore those which have a thinness of Substance, are rather to be chosen, unless the cause lies in the superficies, as in all fresh and bleeding Wounds. Stypticks are indeed the highest Astringents, and Binders, and if joined with Narcoticks, transcend in the highest degree.*

**XVIII. 2. ANODYNS, or PAREGORICKS.** *These are easers of Pain; and are moderately hot, viz. in the first degree, not much exceeding temperate, and of thin Parts, and rarefacient: So by opening the Pores, they Evacuate, Rarefy, Extenuate, Digest, and Concoct; equally encountering whatever Humour, is either sharp, cold, gross, or tough, inhering in the Pores, or near adjacent grieved Parts, which by reason of the obstruction of the Pores, could not find a way out; besides, they are aqueous or moistening, and acreal or of subtil Substance, not in the least Astringent. But there are some Cold Anodyns, which are such as give ease in Tumours, or Pains caused from great heat. Again, Anodyns are said to be Proper or Improper. Proper, are such as we have already been speaking of: Improper, are such as they call Narcoticks, made of Opiates, Henbane, Hemlock, Mandrakes, Nightshade, &c.*

**XIX. 3. REPERCUSSIVES.** *These are Repelling Medicaments, which drive back the Humour. They are generally cold and drying, and of gross Parts; for that which is cold, repels, and if it has a crassitude of Parts also, it acts with more force, as that which is acerb or austere. Those things also repel which are Astringent, if they have also a tenuity of Parts, for the thinness of their Substance, does much conduce to Astringion. And therefore other things which are Astringive, by reason of the thickness of their Substance, cannot easily penetrate the more remote Parts, precluding the Passages. And hereto Defensatives, and Intercipients may be reduced, being Cold, Astringent, and Repulsive. These, by their Coldness, repel the Humour; and by their Astringency, strengthen the Part afflicted.*

**XX. 4. DISCUSSIVES.** *These are such as resolve the Matter contained in the Part. They are moderately hot, with a tenuity of Parts, and very little resiccant or drying: For as Discussives rarefy and make thin, causing the Matter to be dissipated, so excessive heat does condensate and dry; whereas moderate heat opens the Pores, or Passages, and deeply penetrating, by the tenuity of its Substance, opens the Pores, attenuates the Matter, and so eases the Pain. Their use therefore is,*  
 1. To open the Pores. 2. To attenuate the Matter.



or make it thin and fluid. 3. And to evacuate it for the most part by Perspiration.

**XXI. 5. EMOLLIENTS.** These are such things as mollify or soften any hard Tumour or Part. These are generally hot and moist; hot in the first degree, and moist in the first or second degree. Their heat is a little beyond the Proportion of Nature, and they are of thin and humid Parts, that they may pierce into the Matter, and mollify or soften it. For which reason it is of use in Strumous or Scirrhus Tumours, Oedema's, and others of like Nature; to soften the hardness, and reduce it to its pristine heat: And these are either Common, or Proper. 1. The Common are such whose general Operation is to soften hard Swellings, and such parts and places of the Body, as are hardened by Congelation. 2. The Proper, are such as are applied or appropriated to peculiar Humours, which being either hot or cold, the Emollient must be opposite to them, in those active Properties, but retaining its due humidity.

**XXII. 6. ATTRACTIVES.** These are drawing Medicines, which attract or draw the Humours from the Center to the Circumference. They are hot, and of thin Parts: For that which is hot, attracts, and that more strongly, if it has conjoin'd with it a tenuity of Parts. Those which are hot and dry in the second degree, moderately attract; if in the third, more effectually; but most those which are hot in the fourth, for the attraction is according to the strength or degree of heat: Yet some things attract Specifically, and not by any manifest Quality, as Emeticks, Catharticks, &c. These are contrary to Repercussives, for their Nature is to drive from the Circumference to the Center; but Attractives draw from the Center to the Circumference. They are of use in Wounds, made by the Bittings of Mad Dogs, Serpents, and other Poisonous Creatures; in Burnings, Venereal and Pestilential Tumours, &c. where it is absolutely necessary to draw the Poison and Malignity outwards, in order to the saving of Life.

**XXIII. 7. SUPPURATIVES, or Maturatives.** These turn into Matter, contused Flesh, and Humours, as also the Substance, of which many Tumours or Swellings consist, and bring it to perfect ripeness. They are moderately hot, and next to Emollients, yet differing in this, that Suppuratives have an Emplastick faculty, where, by obstructing the Pores, they produce heat, most like unto that of the Body, without any Consumption or Addition of the Humidity. These are friendly to Nature, and conspire together with it, to bring the superfluous Matter to form, and to such a form, as that it may be separated and cast out, and the afflicted Part thereby eased.

**XXIV. 8. PYROTICKS, or CORROSIVES.** These are threefold. 1. Cathereticks. 2. Septicks. 3. Causticks, or Escharoticks. I. Cathereticks, or Eaters. These are meanly strong; they by their corrosive Properties, consume Excrecencies, and eat away proud and dead Flesh. II. Septicks. They are Corrosives, vehemently hot and dry, of thin Parts, and consistence, which by their vehement heat, eliquate the Part, and are called Putrefactives; and their use is to draw Blisters; these are Vesicatories. III. Causticks, or Escharoticks. These are vehemently hot and burning, being the strongest of all, so that they consume all they come near. They cause Crusts upon the place they are applied

to, and are chiefly of use to make Issues, or open Apostems.

**XXV. 9. DIGESTIVES.** These are a kind of Maturatives, which bring laudable or well digested Pus, or Matter, into Complex or contused Wounds, and ill natured eating Ulcers; without which the Pain can neither be taken away, nor the Wound or Ulcer healed, or a stop put to the eating, &c. Of these we have largely discoursed in our *Ars Chirurgica*, where you may find a plentiful number of Prescripts in exemplification thereof.

**XXVI. 10. ABSTERSIVES.** These are Cleansers, which separate and remove the glutinous, clammy, or putrid Matter, adhering to Wounds and Ulcers, which hinders their healing. They have a power to exsiccate with tenuity of Substance; and they may be either hot or cold; nor is it of any great moment, which of them, by reason neither Quality can hinder their action, except Excessive. Yet some count them chiefly hot and drying, with a certain thickness of Parts to compact the Humours: And because they cannot be defined, by either heat or coldness, since some of both sorts cleanse, they are to be understood to have a terrene Substance, which may take away the filth with them; and must a certain roughness, or nitrous Quality, to carry away the compacted filth.

**XXVII. 11. SARCOTICKS, or Incarnatives.** These generate Flesh in hollow Wounds and Ulcers, and fill up their cavities, as far as Nature will admit. They are hot in the first degree, a little Deterfive, and that without Biting or Astringent. Also moderately drying, viz. under the second degree. And such as Impinguate, or breed Fat, are Heating, Nourishing, Impulsive, Attractive, Retentive, or Specifick; as Hemp-Seed, Powder of Sarcocol, Kernel of the Indian Nut. They dry, and change the Blood that comes to any part into Flesh. Their degree of dryness must be according to the Part: If the Ulcer happens in a dry part of the Body, the Sarcotick must be very dry, and therefore some of them are drying, even in the fourth degree. But if the part of the Body is moist in which the Ulcer is, the Incarnatives are to be less drying: They ought not to exceed the first degree, unless the Ulcer be very moist. They breed not good Blood, nor correct the intemperature of the place affected; they only defend the Blood from ill Symptoms, and the Ulcer from Corruption in breeding Flesh; for Nature in breeding Flesh, produces either ferous or purulent Recrements, and these Medicines which cleanse and consume those Excrements, by their drying Quality, are said to breed Flesh, because by their help, Nature performs that Office.

**XXVIII. 12. AGGLUTINATIVES.** These are such as glew the Lips of Wounds, and separated Parts together. They are also called Symphitica, which is the reason that Comfry is called Symphitum, because of its glewing Quality. They are generally drying in the second degree; and are in a mean between Incarnatives, and Cicatrizers. They are not Absterfive, but Astringent, and prohibit the Flux of Humours, to the Lips of Wounds, Ulcers, and Fistula's. They are temperate, in respect of heat, and of a thick Substance. By their dryness, they absorb that humidity, which intervenes between the Lips of Wounds, that thereby they may be conjoined: And that is the true Cure



*Cure of an Ulcer, which conjoins the sides of an Ulcer, before brought together. And Ulcers require a greater degree of drying than Wounds, not only to consume what flows out, but also what remains liquid in the Flesh.*

XXIX. 13. **CICATRIZERS**, or Epuloticks. These are such things as skin a Wound, Sore, or Ulcer. They dry and bind without biting; absorbing the humidity of the Flesh, contracting it with a Skin, or a thin Callus like unto a Skin, and therefore are more drying than Incarnatives or Glutinatives: For these bind, contract, constipate, and indurate; being cold, and of a thick Substance. There is also a sharp and biting Epulotick, which consumes dead Flesh, as Cathereticks; and a third sort, which dries without astringent. The last part of the Cure of a Wound or Ulcer, is to cover it with Skin, and restore the place to its pristine beauty: Now these Medicines meddle with the Flesh, no farther than only to convert it into Skin.

XXX. 14. **COSMETICKS**, or Beautifiers. These adorn the Body by adding beauty to it, by absterging or cleansing it from defilements, as Leprosie, Leuce, Scabs, Itch, Pimples, Redness, Wrinkles, Freckles, Yellowness, Tanning, Sun-burning, and the like. Those which proceed from heat, are to be remedied by cooling things: If the defilement is impacted in the Skin, extenuating Medicines are to be applied; if Freckles or Worms affect it, the Skin it self is to be absterged by Emplasters of Soap, or Oil of Tartar per deliquium, diluted with Water; if Leprosie, Scabs, or Pustules, constantly breaking out, the Cuticula must be taken off by Epispasticks, &c.

## CHAP. V.

### Of the Third Qualities.

I. **THE** third Qualities of Medicines are such as are Appropriate, that is to say, which are appropriated to some principal and noble Parts of the Body, the knowledge of which Physicians have learned and obtained, either, 1. From the signatures of the Medicaments themselves. 2. Or from a long series of Practice and Experience.

II. And therefore as Medicines are said to be appropriate, to the most noble and principal Parts of the Human Frame, so from them they take their Denominations or Names, and accordingly are said to be, 1. Cephalicks. 2. Neuroticks. 3. Stomachicks. 4. Pulmonicks, or Pectorals. 5. Pleuriticks. 6. Cardiacks, or Cordials. 7. Hepaticks. 8. Spleneticks. 9. Mesentericks, or Hypochondriacks. 10. Nephriticks. 11. Hystericks. 12. Arthriticks. Of which in their respective order.

III. 1. **CEPHALICKS**. These Medicines are said to be appropriated to the Head, and have respect chiefly to the Brain, the Medulla oblongata, and the Membranes called Pia & Dura Mater, but have very little to do with the Tongue, for that is a very warily Member. The Brain is the seat of Apprehension, Judgment, and Memory, and by Nature moderately hot; and so is very easily affected by either too much heat or cold, but

chiefly by the latter, and for the most part by too much moisture, and therefore the Medicaments appropriated to the Head and Brain, are generally hot and dry, and of very subtil, thin, and volatile Parts, for otherwise they could have no affection upon those Parts. To these some add Ptarmicks, and Sternutatories; 'tis true, these will purge the Brain and Head from a world of pituitous, cold, and moist Recrements, but these are not proper Cephalicks, for what they do, is by the Virtue of their violent heat, and strong attractive power. Whether there be any cooling Cephalicks is a doubt, if cooling things affect the Head and Brain, they do it simply, either by their cold Quality, or by cooling other Parts over-heated, which by Sympathy or Consent, affect the Head.

IV. 2. **NEUROTICKS**. These are Nervous Medicaments, and are all hot and dry, from the second even to the fourth degree, of a very thin Substance and penetrative Parts, without which they could not pierce and affect the Nerves, to ease their extravagant Pains, as in Cramps and Convulsions, or to warm, comfort, and strengthen them, as in Palsies, &c. they ought to be very subtil and volatile, that they may agree with the Animal Spirits, and as it were recuperate them. Their use is both Internal, given in some proper vehicle; and External, being applied to the Parts affected, and all along down the Spine or Back-Bone, from whence all the Nerves of the extreame Parts, as well as some others spring. They very much agree in their Qualities with Cephalicks, because the Root or Original of all the Nerves thro' the whole Body, arise from the Brain.

V. 3. **STOMACHICKS**, or Stomach Medicaments. These are such as open Obstructions in the Stomach, ease its Pains, and strengthen its Tone. They may be either hot or cold, and so affect the Part, according to the Indisposition which attends it. 1. When it is obstructed, the Appetite is diminished or depraved, with a kind of nauseousness concomitant: And this is remedied chiefly by acid Aperitives. 2. When it is pained, or there is a sickness at Stomach, it is commonly from being either over-heated, and then cooling Stomachicks are to be given; or over-cooled, and then hot Stomachicks are to be exhibited; or from vehemently acid or sharp Humours in it, and then Absorbents, or fixt Alcalies, will be chiefly of use. 3. When its Tone is weakened, or hurt, then the Digestion is bad, the Concoction is weak, and so a bad Chylus is generated; whence the Retentive Faculty is also many times profligated, and whence proceed sometimes the Scurvy, and Rheumatick Pains, or the Gout; and if it be of long continuance, it induces a Consumption, because the Body will want a suitable Nourishment. And these things are remedied (after due evacuation) by Stomaticks, of a hot and dry Quality, of thin Parts, and Confortative withall, which have power to warm, comfort, and strengthen it, and have likewise an Astringent property, which strengthens the Retentive Faculty.

VI. 4. **PULMONICKS**, or Pectorals. These are Medicaments appropriated to the Lungs, and have regard either to the Part afflicted, or to the Matter afflicting. 1. Those which regard the Part afflicted, are such as stop bleeding, if any Vessel is broken in the Lungs, and by a kind of Styptic Quality, have power to conglutinate or heal it; or if there be any Ulcer in the Lungs, have the power of cleansing it, and healing it withall, which



is done by either a Balsamick Property; or by a Specifick, of which Nature is Cinnabar of Antimony, and all sweet Preparations of Mercury, which entering into the mass of Blood, and being dissolved in it, give such a healing property to it, that by its continual passage thro' the Lungs, it does at length perfectly heal them. 2. Those which regard the Matter; and these are such as digest and thicken the Rheumatick or pituitous Matter, stuffing them (which causes Asthma's, Wheezing, Hoarseness, loss of Voice, Coughs, &c.) and cause it to be expectorated, and those are they which are most usually called Pectorals. Besides, they many times clear the Stomach of what sticks to it, causing it in some measure to be spit up.

VII. 5. PLEURITICKS. These are such things as are appropriated to the Pleura; and generally give present ease to Pains and Swellings in the Sides, Stitches, the Pleurisie, &c. and they are either Anodyns or Narcoticks. The Anodyns, are such things as are hot and dry, and abound with an admirable volatile Spirit and Salt, such as Salt of Urine, volatile Sal Armoniack, volatile Salt of Tartar, volatile Salts of Beans, Pease, and other Pulses, as also Sal Volatile Oleosum. The Narcoticks, are such things as are made of the Wild or Corn Poppy Flowers and Heads, and of Opium; so that Opiates, especially such as are repleat with volatile Sal Armoniack, Salt of Hartshorn, of Tartar, &c. all immediately affect the Pleura, and give present ease in the disaffections thereof.

VIII. 6. CARDIACKS, or Cordials. These are Medicines appropriated to the Heart; the Fountain of Life, and Seat of the Vital Spirit; the Original of Innate Heat, and of Vigor and Action. And therefore Cordials ought to abound with Subtily and Volatility, to revive the Spirits, and with Heat to strengthen the Heart, and make it perform its action. Those Cordials which revive and refresh the Spirits, must be Spirituous, as Wine, and Spirit of Wine: And those which strengthen the Heart, are either Hot, when its natural heat is decayed or wasted: Or Cold, when it is heat above Nature, by either Fevers or any violent Passion, or by Poison; the first of which are Antifebriciticks. The second, Comfortatives. The third, Alexipharmicks, or Antidotes against Poison.

IX. 7. HEPATICKS. These are Medicaments appropriated to the Liver. And these are considered in a three-fold respect, 1. As they open its Obstructions. 2. As they resist its Diseases. 3. As they strengthen it. As to the first, Hepatick Aperitives are to be chosen, which may open its Vessels, and keep them free from Obstruction, without which it is impossible that the Person should be Well, but must at long run fall into a Consumption: These cut and extenuate without any vehement heat, and yet cleanse. As to the second, Hepaticks opposite to the Disease afflicting the Liver, are to be chosen: So if there is an Inflammation, cooling, cleansing, and extenuating things are to be used: If a Scirrhus, things softening and dissolving. With a Decoction of Juniper-berries in Water, drank for a Year together as ordinary Drink, I cured a vastly great Scirrhus of the Liver, outwardly to be felt, hard, and as large as a great twopenny Loaf. As to the third. The Liver after all is to be strengthened, and this is done by Hepaticks, gently Astringent, for seeing its use is to help towards the perfection of the Blood, it needs some adstriction to preserve its beat, and strengthen it.

Yet the Liver requires not so great astringents as the Stomach, because the passages of the Stomach are larger, and more open, than those of the Liver; so that if they be very Binding, they may be hurtful to the Liver, and cause Obstructions.

X. 8. SPLENETICKS. These are Medicines appropriated to the Spleen. Spleneticks are considered in a threefold respect also. 1. To such as open its Obstructions, and they are Aperitives, which ought to be so powerful, as to penetrate into its most inward recesses; for the whole Substance of the Spleen, is a kind of Animal Honeycomb. 2. To resist its Diseases; and these in an Inflammation, ought to be cooling and discussing: In a Scirrhus, to be highly Resolutive, not in the least binding; and outwardly Emollients may be applied. 3. To strengthen it. And these are such as are temperate, in respect to heat or driness; yet they ought to have so much adstriction, as to confirm its natural and healthful Tone.

XI. 9. MESENTERICKS, or Hypochondriacks. These are Medicines dedicated to the Mesentery: Its grand failure is from Obstructions, which are either from viscous or clammy Humors, or from Wind, which induce a profound Pining, or universal Consumption of the whole Man; and in the end (if not removed) Death. Upon this Axle-tree, the whole Orb of Life turns; and when it breaks, the Man sinks, and the Body returns to its first Principles. And therefore the most powerful Deobstructors or Aperients, are specifick Mesentericks; and these in the Mineral Kingdom, are deduced from Chalybeates: In the Animal, from Volatil Salts, as Sal Volatile Oleosum Sylvij: And in the Vegetable Kingdom, such things as have power to dissolve congelation of the Juices, as Volatil Salts of Beans, and of Tartar; or to cut the viscid and clammy Matter, as Cresses, Horse Radish, Mustard, Rocket, in cold habits of Body; or Juices of Citron, Limons, or Lime Juice, and their Syrups, in hot Constitutions joined with other proper Aperients, which may have a power to penetrate into the most inward recesses of this Bowel. Add to these Carminatives, conjoined with Sylvius's Spiritus Anticolicus, where Wind seems to have the predominancy.

XII. 10. NEPHRITICKS. These are Medicines appropriated to the Reins and Bladder. In the Reins, a separation is made of the Serum from the Blood, without which Man could not live, and the Bladder, of a sufficient magnitude, is the receptacle to contain it: Therefore it is necessary by appropriate Medicaments, to keep those parts clear, and free from Obstruction, and to retain their strength, that they may the better perform their Offices. The Diseases afflicting the Reins and Bladder, are chiefly, 1. Obstructions by a tartarous or viscid Mucilage. 2. Stones, Gravel, or Sand. 3. Inflammation. 4. Pissing Blood. 5. Ulcers. The first, is cured by Aperients and Diureticks. The second, by Lithontripticks. The third, by cooling Diureticks, as Sal Prunellæ dissolved in a Diuretick Wine. The fourth, by Stypticks and Narcoticks, as Catechu, and Opiates prepared with Acids. And the last, by Balsamicks, as Balsams of Chili, Gilead, Peru, Capivij, Venice, Strasburg, and Chio Turpentine, and sweet prepared Mercury, which transcends all other things.

XIII. 11. HYSTERICKS. These are Medicines appropriated to the VVomb. It is a Part



Part which one would think had some Sense in it, because it is pleased and delighted with some things, as Aromatics, Perfumes, and the like; and displeased (so as to fly from them) with stinking and ill-scented things, as Turds, *Assa foetida*, and other stinking things of like nature. Therefore since Vapours, Hysterick Fits, and Hysterick Convulsions, proceed from the Womb, those things which alleviate them, suppress the Fumes, and reduce the Womb to its place, ease its Pains, and profligate it. Convulsive Motions are properly called Hystericks, so Musk, Ambergrise, Aromatics, applied to the Nose, induce Vapours, Fits, Convulsions, &c. Whereas applied to the place of Conception, suppress them all. But *Assa foetida*, and other stinking things applied below, bring those Diseases; whereas held to the Nose, or taken inwardly by the Mouth, they frustrate and Cure them. Medicines which provoke the Terms, or Loches, &c. or which suppress or stop them, are accounted Hystericks; but of them we shall treat in the fourth Qualities.

XIV. 12. ARTHRITICKS. These are Medicines appropriated to the Joints. And seeing that they consist chiefly of tendinous and nervous Parts, therefore they are chiefly composed of Neurotick Medicaments, which have a heating and drying Quality, gently astringent or binding, and withall having a peculiar strengthening Property: But because the Joints are the extrem parts of the Body, and more remote from the Vital Center, they require the stronger Medicaments. Pains are eased by Anodyn Arthriticks, mixed with Narcoticks, as a mixture of Camphir, and Spirit of Wine, with Opiates. Inflammations are abated by Arthritick Baths: And the Arthritick Tumour is removed either by Epispasticks, or Burning; or by the application of Arthritick Repercussives, mixed with Camphir, or Opium, or both.

## C H A P. VI.

### Of the Fourth Qualities.

I. **T**HE fourth Qualities of Medicaments are such as are Abstractive, to wit, such as by their Power or Operations, take away some thing from the Body; or from some of its Bowels or Parts.

II. And these receive their Names from the variety of their Operations, which they each perform in the respective parts of the Body, to which they are adapted; which are the Nine following, viz.  
1. Emeticks. 2. Catharticks. 3. Salivaticks.  
4. Ptarmicks. 5. Emmenagogicks. 6. Diureticks.  
7. Lithontripticks. 8. Sudorificks. 9. Veneficks.

III. 1. EMETICKS, or Vomitories. These by giving a reluctance to the nervous Fibres of the Stomach, cause their Relaxation and Stimulation, whereby afterwards as the reluctance grows more and more, and the nauseousness encreases, those nervous Fibres before relaxed, suffer a kind of Convulsion, or Contraction, and so eject the offending Matter upwards, or by the Mouth, whereby that Viscus, by such a discharge, comes to be restored to its pristine Health. Nor is the Stomach otherwise to be cleansed, for ten Catharticks, or

Purges, how strong soever, will not so well cleanse the Ventricle, as one proper and well-design'd Emetick. The Stomach therefore is to be cleansed upwards by Vomiting; the Entrails, or Intestines, downwards by Purging, which is according to the Law of Nature.

IV. 2. CATHARTICKS, or Purging Medicines. These peculiarly cleanse the Entrails, but withall draw the Peccant Matter from all parts of the Body, as has been seen in some who have for many Months lost all the Uses of their extrem Parts, or Limbs, by violent and inveterate Rheumatisms, and Colicks; who by only Purging with proper Catharticks, have been perfectly restored; for which purpose, the Pulvis Cornachini has been notoriously known. They remove Obstructions, not only by opening the Pores of the Skin, but the interior Ductus of the Bowels, as in those things Nitrous and Bitter, altho' they have some small attraction. They are also Absterfive in degree; for those things which open the Pores and cleanse the Passages, must have a power of Attraction, and a great tenuity of Parts, moderately hot, nitrous, and bitter, and so have a power of absterging and purging the greater Passages; but some purge by lubricating, as Fat things. Some by washing and absterfion, as Whey impregnated with Sena and Beets. And some by resolving, penetrating, and pricking, as several Salts.

V. 3. SALIVATICKS. These are salivating or spitting Medicines, which resolving all the Lympha of the Body, into a pituitous or serous Substance, it is conducted from all parts of the Body to the Head, and passing thro' the salivatick Glands, is spit forth. This is only or chiefly perform'd by Mercury, and some of its Preparations, which melting the coagulated Juices, and carrying them with it, causes this Operation. The order of it, and how it is to be performed, is not our Business here. They who would know more of this, may see what I have said at large upon this Subject, in the Third Edition of my Synopsis Medicinæ, in my Ars Chirurgica, and in my Praxis Medica; the Second Edition of my Annotations upon Dr. Sydenhams Processus, lib. 3. cap. 28. sect. 113. ad sect. 155. to which I refer you.

VI. 4. PTARMICKS, or Errhines. These are for the most part hot and dry in the third degree, and are endowed with a very piercing Acrimony, by which they extremely irritate, or shrivel up as it were the Membranes of the Brain, (as Emeticks do the Tunicles of the Stomach;) and by means whereof, the Head and Brain are cleansed or freed from their Recrements, and the viscid and pituitous Humour, or Matter, is expelled thro' the Nostrils, in a very extraordinary measure: If these Nasaes, as some call them, cause Sneezing, they are then called Sternutatories. But proper Errhines, which only attract the Recrements from the Brain, are of mighty use in curing Apoplexies, Lethargies, Megrims, Vertigo's, Epilepsies, and other Cephalick Diseases of like nature, proceeding from Cold and Moisture.

VII. 5. EMMENAGOGICKS. These are such as provoke or draw forth the Terms. They are hot in the third degree, and of thin parts, concoct and digest crude Humours, extenuate and incise the Gross and Tough, and remove Obstructions, by opening and cleansing the Passages. And such are all proper Diureticks, for that they pro-



note the expurgation of the Menfes; and if they are bitter as Aloes, and fetid as *Affa foetida*, stinking Arach, &c. they are so much the more effectual; stinking things depressing the Womb, and bitter things purging it. There are also accidental Emmenagogicks, which refrigerate and humect the Body, dried by too much heat: And these things, which by their potency expel the Secundine and dead Child, as also a Mola, or false Conception, which are stinking, bitter, with Acrimony, and thinness of parts, and are to be given often, and in pretty large quantities.

VIII. 6. DIURETICKS. These are Medicaments provoking Urine. They may be either hot or cold, but moist, liquid, thin consistence, and easy penetration, that they may encrease the quantity of Urine, as it were by Accident. 2. But in things cleansing, attenuating, and aperient, they open the Passages; and these may be cold, and of thin parts, as *Sal Prunellæ*, which sometimes expels what sticks in the Passages; or operate after a middle-way, allaying the extream Heat, and causing the Serum and Humours, to be more easily attracted by the Reins, and descend to the Bladder. 3. By things which cleanse the Passages, and open the same, having a Quality of extenuating gross Humours, attenuating or thinning the Blood, and separating what is extenuated from the grumous Parts, by which the protrusion of the Serum into the Reins, will be made more easy, as also its passage thro' the urinary Parts; which kind of Diureticks are hot and dry in the third degree, sharp, of very thin parts, coactive and separating. Diureticks then are of two sorts. 1. Such as conduce to the separation of the Serum from the Blood; and they are very hot, sharp, biting and cutting, whence they penetrate to the Reins, and cut the gross Humours there. 2. Such as open the Urinal Passages. And these are generally cold things, which provoke Urine, but bite not, yet have a nitrous Quality, by which they open and cleanse, as Nitre, *Sal Prunellæ*, Winter Cherries.

IX. 7. LITHONTRIPTICKS. These are such as break and expel the Stone, Gravel, Sand, or tartarous Mucilage; and they have a power of dissolving, cleansing and expelling the same: Being Diuretick, hot and dry, and of thin parts, sharp and cutting, and somewhat bitter. Also some do it by Incision and Deterfion, without heat, as Spirits and Oils of Nitre, Salt, Sulphur and Vitriol, some by asperity, or by some occult property.

X. 8. SUDORIFICKS, or Hydroticks. These are Medicaments provoking Sweat. They are generally hot, and of thin parts, yet some are said to be astringent and cold, working occultly: But the hot being of thin parts, are subtil and volatilis, thinning the Blood and Humours, and giving them a piercing volatility; so that being forced by the native heat, excited into action, they penetrate thro' all the coats of the Vessels and Glands, thro' Flesh, Fat and Skin, to the superficies or most external parts, of the whole Body, from the crown of the Head to the soles of the Feet, expelling all noxious Fumes, malign and venene Humours, and pestilential Miasmata, from the Center, viz. from the Heart and Vital Parts, and so defending them from their deleterious assaults.

XI. 9. VENEFICK, or Poisoning. These are things which take away Life, being wholly

inimical to Human Nature, and they are in the extremities of heat or cold; now they poison not from being in the extrems of intemperature, but from another peculiar property, by which they corrupt the Vital Juices, and by a malign and pestiferous Gas or Steem, smite both the Animal and Vital Spirits; but which Property is excited or stirr'd up into action, by those extream degrees of intemperature. Of the Hot Kind, are Bears-foot, Hellebor, Leopards-bane, Monks-hood, Wolfs-bane, &c. Of the Cold Kind, are Hemlock, Hen-bane, Nightshade, &c. There are Poisons also which act by a Narcotick Property, as Poppies, and Opium. Add to these Poisons which do it by a Congelation of the Blood, whence proceed a Stagnation, and almost immediate Death; as the biting of a Viper, Rattle-Snake, &c. There are also burning Mineral Poisons, as Arsenick, &c. And Poisons which are only so by Accident, as Corrosive Sublimate, Spirits and Oils of Antimony, Nitre, Salt and Sulphur; which diluted and prudently given, are Salubrious and Healthful.

## C H A P. VII.

### Of the Fifth Qualities.

I. **T**HE fifth Qualities of Medicaments are such as are Adductive, to wit, such as by a peculiar Property, add something to the Body, or to some of its Juices or Parts.

II. And these are such as restore, or daily add to the principal Juices and Parts of the Body, even to the whole Body, without which Human Life, or its Generative Powers, could not be conserved; and they are, 1. Chylificks. 2. Analepticks. 3. Galactogeneticks. 4. Spermatogeneticks. 5. Alexipharmicks.

III. 1. **C**HYLIFICKS, or Breeders of the Nutritive Juice. These are such things as conserve the natural heat of the Stomach, so that it may be able to concoit and digest the Food received in, without which a good Chylus could not be bred. They are generally hot in the second, third and fourth degrees, so that they may not only preserve but restore the Tone of the Stomach if hurt; and these are proper Stomachicks, hot, dry, and of thin parts, sharp and attenuating. But when the Stomach is over-heated, and so the Concoction is hurt, as also the Appetite in a great measure destroyed. Then cold Chylificks are to be chosen, which may allay the preternatural heat, and reduce it to its just Temperament; and these are Cowcumers, Lettice, Purslane, and generally Acids, as all ripe Fruits, Lime Juice, Limon Juice, Vinegar, Spirits of Nitre, Salt, Sulphur and Vitriol; all which not only allay the preternatural heat, but also excite the Appetite, and help the Digestion.

IV. 2. **A**NALAPTICKS, or Restorers. These are such things as breed a Restorative Chylus, which is of absolute necessity in such as are in Consumptions. The Stomach may breed Chyle, and that plentifully, yet it may not be good, or restorative; such a nutritious Juice is to be educed from those things, which have naturally in them a restoring Virtue; which as they ought to be Stomachicks, or



or mixed with Stomachicks, so they ought to warm the Stomach if cold. They are hot in the first and second degrees, and for the most part of a fat or glutinous Substance, yet spirituous withall; of this kind are Meats made of Wheat Flower, as thick Milk, Hasty Pudding, also Parsneps, Turneps, Potatoes, &c. and a Liquor called Punch, thus made. Take choice Brandy, fair Water, of each a Quart, Lime Juice, a Pint, or three quarters of a Pint, double refined Sugar, a Pound; mix and dissolve: Of which the Consumptive may drink half a Pint at a time, in the Morning; just before Dinner; at four in the Afternoon; and at Bed-time. To these things you may add Milk-meats, Cheese-cakes, Custards, Oysters, &c.

V. 3. GALACTOGENETICKS. These are things which breed Milk in Nurfses. This is done partly by Meats, and partly by Medicine. For Food it is such as is Euclymick, and Polytrophick, of good Juice, and of much Nourishment, a little hotter and drier than the Blood, if it is chilly and pituitous; but more moist, and less hot, if affected with Choler. Medicaments breeding Milk, are hot and of thin parts, and of affinity to those things which gently provoke Urine. But such things as are strong, and provoke the Courses, hinder its Generation by too much eliquation of the Humours. Things also too cold, thickning, digesting, or drying, do the same.

VI. 4. SPERMATOGENETICKS. These are things generating Sperm or Seed. They are hot, and not very dry, but flatulent and spirituous, and breed of the purest and most spirituous parts of the Blood; and therefore all such things as encrease a strong and good Chylus, and from thence much and good Blood, encrease the quantity of Seed. It is also stimulated by things hot, volatil, thin of substance, penetrating and sharp; and hindered by things cold, insipid, non-nutritive, and discutient.

VII. 5. ALEXIPHARMICKS, or Anti-dotes. These are Medicaments adding Vigour to the Vital and Animal Spirits, to resist and overcome Poison, and are antipathetical to it. They are hot and dry in the second, third and fourth degrees, subtil and volatil, confortative to the Stomach and Heart, and homogene with the Spirits, enlivening the Human Body. They 1. Strengthen Nature, that it may be the more able to encounter the Poison. 2. They oppose the Poison, just by its opposite Quality. 3. By their potency, volatility and expulsive force, they violently expel it. Vomits, Catharticks and Sudorificks, immediately used, and in this order, are good expedients. If in the Stomach, Vomiting. In the Entrails, Purging; but if in the Spirits, (as in the Plague) Sweating.

## CHAP. VIII.

### Of Preparations Galenick Internal.

**A**uthors have made a great number of them, we have reduced them to the following ten Heads.

- |                |                      |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. Juices.     | 6. Electuaries.      |
| 2. Infusions.  | 7. Lozenges.         |
| 3. Decoctions. | 8. Pills.            |
| 4. Syrups.     | 9. Troches.          |
| 5. Pouders.    | 10. Salts Essential. |

I. JUICES. 1. They are to be pressed out of Herbs, when they are young and tender, or rather, when they are just come to their flowering, because then the Juice is in its greatest Vigour, and gathered withall in a fair and dry Season. 2. They are made by beating the Roots, Herbs and Flowers, in a Stone or Iron Mortar, with a Wooden Pestle, and expressing the Juice with a Press. 3. They are either Liquid or Inspissate. 4. The Liquid are either from hot Herbs, and such as are volatil; or from cold: If from hot Herbs, they are to settle 6, 8, or 10 Hours, then to be decanted from their settlings, and put into a Glass or Bottle, putting Oil Olive upon them 2 or 3 Inches thick, to preserve them. 5. If cold Herbs, after settling, the clear is to be decanted, and clarified by boiling and scumming, or with Whites of Eggs, and then Bottled, with Oil put over the same. 6. Inspissate Juices, are never made from hot, dry, and volatil Plants, but from such as have a more glutinous or clammy Juice, such as Acatia, Aloes, Camhogium, Catechu, Comfrey, Elaterium, Liquorice, Meconium, Opium, Scammony, Sloes, &c.

II. INFUSIONS. 1. They are made from such Plants, Roots, Barks, Leaves, Flowers, Seeds, which are of hot, dry, and volatil Parts, and of such a Substance, as being rare, easily yield their Tincture. 2. They are very rarely or never made of cold Herbs and Plants, such as are of a thick Substance, and it may be Resinous withall. 3. If their Substance is thin and rare, a cold Infusion, or Digestion, (if in Summer-time) may do. 4. But if of a more compact, solid or tenacious Substance, after being reduced into a gross Poudre, they are to be digested in a warm Oven, or in a Sand heat for some days, shaking the Bottle once or twice a Day; then being settled, the clear is to be decanted, and kept close stoppt for use. 5. The Infusion may be made in Water, Wine, or Vinegar, according to the Design and Intention of the Physician: If in Simple Water, it is then called by the bare Name of an Infusion: If in Wine, it is called a Medicated Wine: If in Wine Vinegar, a Medicated Vinegar.

III. DECOCTIONS. 1. They are never made of hot, dry, subtil, spirituous and volatil Parts, because, in boiling, all those fine Particles would be lost. 2. Or if they are decocted, it ought to be always in an Alembick, with a Receiver luted to it, to receive its spirituous and volatil Parts; that when the Decoction is made and clarified, they may afterwards be mixed therewith. 3. The Boiling is half an Hour, an Hour, or two, more or less, according to the crassitude of the Body; as they may be either Herbs, Roots, Barks, Woods, &c. 4. It is made either in Water, Broth, Wine, or Vinegar, according to the Intention and Design; but for the most part in Water. 5. It is a Medicament for present use, and therefore there needs no Directions for its keeping or preservation.

IV. SYRUPS and JULEPS. They are made, 1. Of Infusions. 2. Of Decoctions. 3. Of Juices, of Herbs, Plants, Flowers, Seeds, &c. 2. Those



2. Those made by Infusion, are chiefly from Flowers, as of Balaustians, Blewbottle, Clovegilliflowers, Damask Roses, Peony, Peach Flowers, Poppies Wild, Rosemary, Saffron, Violets, &c. by being digested one whole Night close covered, either in the heat of a Bath, or Sand heat, often repeating the Infusion. 3. Those made by Decoction, are from such Herbs, Plants, Roots, Barks, &c. as will admit of Boiling, as we have declared in the former Section. 4. Those by Juices, are made of all your succulent Herbs and Plants, freed from their faces or impurities, by settling or clarifying with Whites of Eggs. 5. The way of making. To every Pint of clear Infusion, Decoction, or Juice, put two Pounds of Double refined Sugar, which mix together by melting only in Balneo, not at all Boiling it. 6. All Syrups will keep a Year, if kept close stoppt in Glasses; but stop them not with Cork or Bladder, for then they will be apt to break the Glass, only bind a piece of thin Leather, or Paper, prickt with a few small holes over the mouth thereof. 7. Juleps, are thin, or half Syrups, being made of Infusions, Decoctions, or Juices, with but half the quantity of Sugar; and these will keep but a little while, viz. 2 or 3 Months, being apt to grow sour.

V. POWDERS. 1. The Ingredients, whether Roots, Barks, Leaves, Flowers, Seeds, Rosins, &c. are to be made very dry, either by Sun, a warm Oven, or some other Artificial heat. 2. By the help of a proper Mill, they are to be ground into Powder. 3. But where a Mill is not to be met with, or it is but a small matter, which is to be reduced; it must be done by beating in a Brass or Iron Mortar, with an Iron Pestle, and then made to pass thro' a fine Searce; beating the remainder which will not pass, and searcing it, so long till it is all, or very near all past thro'. 4. Resinous Bodies, such as Scammony, &c. will not easily be reduced without the help of a little Oil; anointing the bottom of the Mortar now and then, as also the end of the Pestle with a little Oil Olive, by which means, it will with much more ease and speed be reduced. 5. Camphir, tho' it may be reduced with a few drops of Oil; yet it is much better done, by adding to it a very small quantity of Brandy, or Spirit of Wine, and then to grind it in a Mortar. 6. All Powders ought to be kept in Glass Bottles, close stoppt with good Corks, but rather with Glass Stoppers; otherwise they presently loose themselves, and will be good for nothing.

#### VI. ELECTUARIES and LOHOCHS.

1. They are made of subtil, or levigated, or fine searced Powders, mixed with Honey, or a Syrup of double refined Sugar, made into Syrup with Water or Wine, of the thickness of Honey. 2. The Proportion for a good bodied Electuarie, is 3 Ounces of clarified Honey to an Ounce of Powder, or 3 Pounds of clarified Honey, or as much double refined Sugar dissolved and reduced to the Substance of Honey, to one Pound of Powder, which are to be mixed well together, either by beating in a Mortar, or over a very gentle Heat; then to be put into Gally-Pots, and to be tyed over with White Paper and Leather, and so kept for use. 3. A Lohoch, or Licking Medicine, is only a thin kind of Electuary, in which to every Ounce of Powder, there is to be put 5 or 6 Ounces of clarified Honey, or Sugar: These are used chiefly as Pectorals, in all Diseases of the Breast and Lungs. 4. Electuaries, (if well lookt after) will keep

nearly a Year, but Lohochs will keep twice that time.

VII. LOZENGES. 1. A thick Mucilage is to be made of Gum Tragacanth, with Water, or rather with equal parts of Water and Spirit of Wine, or Juice of Limons: This is to be thickned with double refined Sugar in very fine Powder, and beat together in a Mortar, till it comes to a stiff Paste. 2. Or fine Sugar may be dissolved in Brandy to a Candy height, and then mixed with the Mucilage aforegoing. 3. Lozenges are made either for Vomits, and then you may put to each half Dram 3 Grains of Emetick Tartar, which may be made into one Lozenge, and so the Patient may take either one, two, or three Lozenges, according to Age and Strength. 4. Or the Lozenges are Opiates, in which one or two Grains of choice Opium in fine Powder, may be mixed, to make one Lozenge of half a Dram, or a Dram, to be given as a Dose according to Age, Strength, Necessity, and other Circumstances, in vehement Coughs, Catarrhs, &c. 5. Or as Common Pectorals, against Asthma's, Wheezings, Hoarseness, shortness of Breath, and then Powders of Liquorice, of Catechu, Cloves, Ginger, Mace, Nutmegs, &c. may be mixed with the Mucilage and Honey, or Sugar, in such proportions, as the Physician shall think fit. 6. Then being well beaten, or wrought together, the Paste is to be rowled out into thin Plates or Cakes, and so with a straight Ruler and a Knife, to be cut out into quadrangular Lozenges, which are to be carefully dried, and kept for use.

VIII. PILLS. 1. The ingredients are severally to be reduced to a subtil Powder, by first beating in a Brass or Iron Mortar, and then to be passed thro' a fine Searce. 2. To this Powder so much choice Honey, or some proper Syrup is to be added, as may make it (by well beating it in a Mortar) into a Paste, of such a stiffness as may be made into Pills; which Paste, is not to be so hard or stiff as to crumble; nor yet so soft as to fall flat, and not keep up the roundness of its form. 3. Some Gum-Resinous Bodies, as Aloes, Cambogia, Scammony, &c. being reduced into a fine Powder, are rather to be made up into Pills with fair Water, than with Honey or Syrup; for they will as soon dissolve in the Stomach, and keep a long time without mouldiness: But then they are immediately to be formed into Pills, as soon as the Mass is made; otherwise it will grow hard, and not afterwards to be done.

IX. TROCHES. 1. These are in form like little Cakes, much about the bigness of a Copper Farthing, being only designed, that Powders, which of themselves are not able to resist the intromission of the Air, might be kept a long time pure, and free from spoiling. 2. Take half an Ounce of pure white Gum Tragacanth, put to it half a Pint or more of fair Water: Let it stand warm for 24 Hours, till it becomes a Mucilage, or Gelly. 3. Take the Powders (being made impalpable) and mix with this Mucilage, by beating in a Mortar, so much as may make a stiff Paste; which rowl out into thin Plates, and with a round hollow thin edged Brass, Silver, or Steel Instrument, cut it out into little Troches, or Cakes. 4. These you are to dry either in the Sun, or a warm Oven, after the Bread is out; and being through dry, put them up into a Gally-Pot, or other proper Vessel, for use, tying



tying them over with a Paper and Leather, to keep them from the Air.

**X. SALTS ESSENTIAL.** 1. Take a Plant when it is full of Juice, viz. in its Flowering time, a sufficient quantity; bruise it in a Wooden Mortar, and add a pretty deal of fair Water: Boil till half be consumed: Strain the Decoction by strongly pressing it out; and then Boil it to the thickness of Honey. 2. Take this mucilaginous Magma, put it into a Glass or glazed Vessel, and set it in a cold place for 8 or 10 Days; so will a Crystal Salt arise like Sal Gem, which gather, and wash it with the distilled Water from the same Plant, which dry and keep it for use. 3. Thus is made Salt of Carduus, Mugwort, Wormwood, and other bitter Herbs; but of other Herbs with much difficulty. 4. But such as yield a sweet Juice, give a plentiful quantity of Essential Salt, as the Sugar Cane: For Sugar is the Essential Salt of that Plant; so also do Figs, Raisins of the Sun, and other like sweet things; for Figs and Raisins, when old and dried, will shew some small quantity of that Essential Salt on their outsides, hard, dry, and of a white colour.

## CHAP. IX.

### Of Preparations Topical, or External.

**T**H<sup>O</sup> Authors have multiplied the Titles of these Topical Preparations, yet these following are all that we think necessary for External Uses, or Outward Application.

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. Lotions.   | 5. Pouders.    |
| 2. Oils.      | 6. Emplasters. |
| 3. Ointments. | 7. Cataplasms. |
| 4. Balfams.   | 8. Clysters.   |

**I. LOTIONS, or WASHES.** I. Washes are made 1. Of fair Water. 2. Of Infusions, or Decoctions. 3. Of Wines. 4. Of Vinegars; of which a choice is to be made, according to the Purpose or Design for which it is intended. II. The general Intentions of Lotions, or Washes, are five-fold, viz. 1. To beautify the Skin. 2. To ease Pain. 3. To discuss Tumours. 4. To cleanse old putrid Sores or Ulcers. 5. To attract or draw-forth any Poison, Venom, or Malignity, in the Part. III. First fair Water is used either simply by it self, as hot as the Patient can bear it, either to bathe with it, or to let the whole Arm, or Leg, to lie in it for half an Hour, or 3 quarters of an Hour, more or less, which repeat as need may require, twice or thrice a Day: It opens the Pores, abates Inflammations, and absterges old putrid Sores and Ulcers, making them apt for healing. Or it is used with Castile or Genoua Soap, a quarter of a Pound dissolved in 3 Gallons of it, by a gentle Heat. This opens the Pores, and absterges more potently. IV. Secondly, Infusions or Decoctions. These are made of such Herbs as are appropriate to the intention; and which the Physician

shall advise, in which also Castile or Genoua Soap may be dissolved, and may serve for easing of Pain, discussing of Tumours, &c. V. Thirdly, Wine simply of it self, is used to comfort and strengthen weak Parts, discuss Tumours, ease Pain, &c. by fomenting therewith as hot as the Patient can endure it, once, twice, or thrice a Day: And so it is of use (viz. Red Wine) to cure the falling-down of the Fundament. But mixed with Camphir, a Dram or Dram and half, dissolved in a little Brandy, to a Quart of Wine, it will be yet more powerful to all those Intentions, as also to prevent a Mortification. VI. Fourthly, Vinegar, simply of it self, used hot, is excellent to ease Pain, stop Bleeding, and take away Deformities of the Skin; but used with Honey dissolved in it, it absterges putrid Ulcers, and heals Ulcers of the Mouth and Throat. If it is used with dissolved Camphir, and Saccharum Saturni, it not only cleanses the Skin, but cures most of its Deformities, and also beautifies it. These are some of the things which Lotions perform; and in imitation of these Examples, you may make a thousand others, which may have admirable Effects.

**II. OILS.** I. They are made 1. by Expression. 2. By Insolation. 3. By Boiling. II. Those which are made by Expression, are either Oil Olive, which if it is made out of Ripe Olives, is said to be temperate, in respect of heat, coldness, driness, or moisture; or Oils out of Nuts, as Oil of Almonds, Sweet and Bitter, of Wallnuts, Oil of Ben, which has that Property with it, never to grow Rank; or Oils out of Seeds, as Aniseed, Linseed, Rapeseed, &c. III. Oils by Insolation. Take Oil Olive, or rather Oil of Ben, a Gallon; of the Herbs or Flowers, or Seeds you design to make the Oil of, 24 Handfuls well bruised; mix them, cover the Pot with a Paper, and set it in the Sun (in the hottest Season) for 14 Days or more, stirring it every Day: Then having warm'd it over a gentle Fire, press out the Oil from the Ingredients in a wooden Press. Repeat this Insolation with more bruised Ingredients, three times at least; at last pressing out the Oil as before, let it stand to settle or defecate, and pour off the clear, which keep in Glass Bottles close stoppt for use. Where note, that Oils by Insolation, ought to be made only of Herbs and Seeds which are hot and dry, of very thin, subtil and volatil parts, as of Cranes-bill Musked, Hyssop, Lavender, Marjoram, Mint, Rosemary, Sage, Savory, Southernwood, Thyme, &c. of Aniseeds, Carraways, Coriander, Cloves, Fennel, Mace, Nutmegs, Parsly-seed, &c. IV. Oils by Boiling. Take Oil Olive, a Gallon; of the Herbs, Flowers, Seeds, &c. bruised, 20 or 24 Handfuls: Boil all over a gentle Fire to Crispness; and press out the Oil strongly in a wooden Press. Repeat this Cotion to Crispness, and expressing at least 3 times: Then letting it defecat or settle for a Day or two, decant the clear Oil and keep it for use.

**III. OINTMENTS and LINIMENTS.** 1. Ointments are made three ways, viz. first by making the Ingredients into an Oil by the former Section. Secondly, Of the Ingredients themselves by Insolation. Thirdly, Of the Ingredients by Cotion or Boiling. 2. The first way, by making the Ointment of the Oil. Take a strong Oil made of the designed Herbs, 2 Quarts; Strasburg, Venice, or Chio Turpentine, Bees Wax, of each 12 Ounces:



Ounces: melt and mix them well together, and put the Mass into Gally Pots for use. 3. The second way by Insolation. Take such Roots, Herbs, Flowers, Seeds, &c. which are hot and dry, of very thin, subtil and volatil parts, bruised, eight Handfuls; Hogs Lard, four Pounds: Beat them well together in a Stone Mortar, with a Wooden Pestle; put the Mass into a broad Stone or Earthen Glazed Pot, tie it over with a Paper, and insolate it for 14 Days, or for want of a hot Sun, digest it as long in a mild Sand heat, that the Lard may be all that time perfectly melted; and whilst hot, strain out the matter by pressing. Repeat this Insolation or Digestion, 3 or 4 times, in the same manner; and at length, take the expressed Substance, and add thereto; Venice or Strasburg Turpentine, Bees Wax, of each 8 Ounces: melt and mix them over a gentle Fire without boiling, and keep the Ointment for use. 4. The third way, by Coction or Boiling. Take of the bruised Ingredients 8 Handfuls; Hogs Lard, 4 Pounds, boil over a gentle Fire to Crispness, and strain out by pressing: Repeat this work 3 or 4 times; and lastly, to the expressed Matter, add Turpentine, Bees Wax, of each 8 Ounces; boil and mix, and keep the Ointment for use. 5. Sometimes Pouders are added to Ointments for particular Uses, the chief of which, are of Aloes, Birthwort-Roots, Camphir, Coloquintida, Opium, Rosin, Scammony, Stavesacre, Tobacco, &c. of Minerals, Burnt-Alum, Burnt-Lead, Flowers of Sulphur, Mercurius Dulcis, Saccharum Saturni, Turbith Mineral, Red Precipitate, White Precipitate, Verdigrise, &c. 6. Liniments, They are Soft Ointments, and made in all respects as Ointments are, saving, that they are generally made without Wax; or with only the half quantity of Turpentine and Wax.

IV. BALSAMS. 1. These are Artificial, and made in Imitation of the Natural, by mixing such Ingredients together as may constitute a body of equal Density or Substance. 2. Take Oil of the Ingredient you would add to your Balsam, as strong Oil of Hypericon, or strong Oil of the yellow of Orange Peels by Insolation, 10 Pints; Oil of Nutmegs by Expression, Balsam of Peru, choice Chio Turpentine, of each 4 Pounds; mix, melt over a gentle Fire, and keep it for use. 3. Take Oil of Ben, 12 Pounds; Chio Turpentine, 6 Pounds; Balsam of Peru, 5 Pounds; Oil of Nutmegs, 4 Pounds: mix and melt over a gentle Fire, and keep it close stoppt for use.

V. POUDERS. 1. Those intended in this place, are only such as are for External use, applicable to the Eyes, stopping Blood, Wounds, Ulcers, &c. 2. They are made of Ingredients perfectly dried, and then reduced to a subtil kind of Flower, either by grinding in a Mill, or beating in a Mortar, and so passed thro' a fine Searce. 3. Pouders for the Eyes, as Alabaſter calcin'd and levigated, or Lapis Calaminaris calcin'd and levigated, or Flints calcin'd, beaten and levigated; any of which Pouders being blown into the Eye, consume Pearls, Films, &c. so also fine Powder of Rice, which with ones Finger may be daily and several times a day rubbed upon Films, Pearls, &c. which in time wears them off. 4. Pouders for stopping Blood, are chiefly Catechu, Vitriol calcin'd with fine Bole and Camphir, Powder of Puffs or Fuss Balls, of Mans Blood, of Alcanet Root, &c. 5. Pouders for digesting, cleansing, and healing old Ulcers, as Aloes, of

Rosin, of Scammony, of Tobacco, &c. which two last things are without comparison.

VI. EMPLASTERS, and CERATS, or CERECLOTHS. 1. Emplaſters are made first with Oil Olive. Secondly with Hogs Lard, or some other Fat or Grease, adding the other proper Ingredients. 2. First with Oil. Take Oil Olive a Quart, some proper Gum or Gums, from 10 to 16 Ounces, Bees-Wax 4 Ounces, melt, mix, and boil to the Consistence of an Emplaſter. 3. Where Turpentine, and any proper Pouders of Vegetables are added, Bees-Wax will be needless, and if any proper Juices be added, it is to be boiled to the Consumption of the Juices. 4. Some Mineral Pouders, as Red Lead, White Lead, Litharge, &c. being added to the Oil with Vinegar, will sufficiently bring the Oil to the Body of an Emplaſter, without the addition of Gums or Wax, by a pretty long boiling and constantly stirring, with a wooden Spatula till it is perfected. 5. Secondly with Hogs Lard, or some other Fats or Greases. It is made altogether as the former, save in this case it needs much less boiling, and a smaller quantity of Gums or Pouders. 6. Cerats or Cerecloths. They are soft Emplaſters, which will spread without melting in a Pan, or the help of Fire; being for the most part made with Oil Olive, and in a much larger quantity. 7. The Emplaſter being brought to its due Consistency, it is then made up into Rows, and so kept for Use.

VII. CATAPLASMS, or PULTICES. They are made with Oil or Fats, adding the boiled Pulps of Roots, or Figs, and the other proper Ingredients according to the Intention; as baked or boiled white Lilly Roots, Turneps, Onions, Garlick, Leeks, Comfrey Roots, &c. and so bringing it to a due Consistency with Flower of Oatmeal, Barley-Flower, Orobus-Meal, Crumbs of White Bread, Milks, &c. boiling all to a due softness. 2. Some Pultices are made to discuss Tumors which will not probably break; some to ease Pain, some to allay Inflammations, and some to Maturate Tumors which tend to breaking; so that according to the Intention of the Cataplasma, such ought the Ingredients to be, to answer the same. 3. It ought to be laid on as hot as the Patient can well endure it; and to be renewed 2 or 3 times a day, or as often as the Nature of the Malady afflicting requires it.

VIII. CLYSTERS. 1. They are Liquids made with Posset drink, or Meat-Broths, with the addition of such other Ingredients as are proper to the Intention of Cure. 2. The chief Purposes for which they are used are, First, to ease Pain in the Bowels from the Colick or sharp Humors. Secondly, for the Cure of Fluxes of the Belly, and Bloody Fluxes. Thirdly, to remedy Costiveness, Fourthly, to purge the lower Bowels. 3. Clysters for easing Pain, are made with Carminative Decoctions adding half, 3 quarters, or an Ounce of Strasburgh Turpentine, well mixed with 1 or 2 Yolks of Eggs, and then with the Decoction, and so exhibited something more than Blood warm. 4. For the Cure of the Bloody Flux, or other Fluxes of the Belly; to a strengthening Decoction in Whey, a quarter Part of Brandy ought to be added, and the Clyster to be several times repeated: If the Flux is Inveterate, and not easy to be stoppt, 6, 8, or 10 Grains more or less of Laudanum, ought to be dissolved in the Brandy and mixt with the Decoction. 5. For an extream Costiveness. The Clyster ought to be made of Lubrificatives, as a Decoction of Althea Roots, in which



which a small quantity as 2, or 3 Drams of Castile, Genoa, or Venice Soap ought to be dissolved, or a quarter part of Oil to be mixed therewith, well seasoned with Table Salt. 6. For purging the Belly and giving Stools. It may be made of Carminative Decotions, or Meat Broths, or Posset-drink; to a Pint of which, a quarter of a Pound of brown Sugar or Honey, and half an Ounce of Salt are to be added, and dissolved in the same, without the Addition of any Oil; because Oil will Obtund the points of the Salts, and so hinder the Operation or Working. 7. As to the Quantity to be exhibited at a time, to little Infants, give a quarter of a Pint or 6 Ounces; to Children from 5 to 10 Years Old, half a Pint; to bigger Children from 10 to 16 Years Old, 3 quarters of a Pint; to Men and Women, from a Pint, to a Pint and half.

## C H A P. X.

### Of Preparations Chymical.

**T**HE chief Chymical Preparations, as they may have respect to this present Work, are these ten here enumerated, viz.

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. Essences.  | 6. Oils.    |
| 2. Tinctures. | 7. Balsams. |
| 3. Extracts.  | 8. Powers.  |
| 4. Waters.    | 9. Elixirs. |
| 5. Spirits.   | 10. Salts.  |

**I. ESSENCES.** 1. By Essences here, we do not mean those highly rectified and sublime ætherial Chymical Oils, which Perfumers and others use, and so call, but another Preparation which is taken from the whole Substance of the Plant. 2. Take Angelica, Bawm, Mint, or any other like fitting Herb; beat it in a Marble Mortar with a Wooden Pestle, to a Pulp or Mass; put it into a Matrafs or Bolt-head, which Seal up Hermetically, (or otherwise stop it up with Cork dipt in Wax, then closed fast with Sealing-Wax, and after that luted over) set it to digest in a Horse Dung-hil, or some other analogous Heat, as Balneo, Sand, &c. for 40 or 50 Days; so will the whole be reduced almost to an uniform Substance: Afterwards take out the Matter, which is now more liquid than it was before, or reduced into a Liquor; which press from the Fæces. Digest it again in a gentle Balneo, that the remaining grosser parts may subside: decant the clear Liquor, or filter it thro' Brown Paper, or Cotton, in a Glass Funnel. And from the former Fæces, being dried and calcin'd, extract a fixed Salt, which add to the filtrated Liquor. This is Le Febure's Essence of Plants; and may be given in any proper Vehicle, from one Spoonful to two, or three. 3. Some add to this Essence, when it is for long keeping, to every Quart, a quarter of a Pint of the best Brandy, or Spirit of Wine. 4. But if you would exalt this Essence to a higher degree of purity and excellency, the said Le Febure proceeds thus. Take of the former Essence, Water of decripitated common Salt, made

per deliquium, of each equal parts; put them into a Matrafs or Bolt-head, which Seal up Hermetically, or stop up as before: Digest in the Sun, or in Balneo, or a Sand heat, for 40 or 50 Days more, so will this saline Liquor, without any other Operation, separate all the heterogeneous and slimy Matter, or Substance, which hindred its purity and exaltation: And there will swim upon the top, the pure exalted Essence of the Plant, either green and transparent as an Emerald, or of a reddish color, according to the nature of the Plant; which separate and keep for use. This exalted Essence, may be taken from half a Spoonful to a Spoonful, Morning and Night, in a Glass of Canary, or other proper Wine. 5. The Essences of Cold Herbs. Take the whole Plant well beaten in a Mortar, Juice and all; add to it an equal quantity of Spirit of Wine, or Brandy: put them into a very large Bolt-head, which stop close as aforesaid, so that nothing may breath forth: set it to digest in Horse-dung, or its equal heat in Balneo, or Sand, for 40 or 50 Days, or more; then strain out all the Liquor by hard pressing; which put into the Bolt-head again: being stop close up as before, digest in a gentle Sand heat for 40 or 50 Days more; so will the Essence meliorate, supernate the Fæces, and grow fine; which decant and keep for use, adding to it the fixt Salt of the Pressings. Dose from one Spoonful to three, in some proper Vehicle.

**II. TINCTURES.** 1. There are several sorts of Tinctures, which are to be drawn out with such Menstruums, as are most proper to the Disease afflicting; the chief of which are these four following. First, A Spirituous Tincture. Secondly, An Acid Tincture. Thirdly, An Oily Tincture. Fourthly, A Saline Tincture. 2. The Spirituous Tincture. Take any Root, Bark, Wood, Herb, Flower, or Seed, being dried, and reduced into gross Powder in a hot Iron Mortar, with an eighth part of Salt of Tartar or Pot-Ashes: affuse thereon, in a large Matrafs, the best rectified Spirit of Wine, so much as may over-top the Ingredients 4 or 5 Inches, shake them well together, and stop the Vessel very close: digest 20, 30, or 40 Days, (the longer the better) in a place naturally warm, or in a gentle Sand heat, shaking the Vessel once every Day: then decant the clear Tincture, and keep it close stop for use. Dose 1, 2, or 3 Drams, if prepared from Alteratives. 3. The Acid Tincture. The Ingredients being prepared as in the former, affuse thereon the dulcified Spirit, either of Nitre or of Salt, Sulphur or Vitriol, so much as to supernate 4 or 5 Inches: digest as before, then decant the clear Tincture, and keep it in a Glass close stop for use. Dose from 40 to 60 Drops, or so much as to give the Vehicle a little acidity. 4. The Oily Tincture. Take the Ingredients as before directed to be prepared, which put into a Matrafs, or Bolt-head, and affuse thereon pure ætherial Oil of Turpentine, so much as may over-top it 4 or 5 Inches; stop it close up, and digest only in a warm heat for 14 or 21 Days, shaking the Vessel once every Day: strain out the Tincture by pressing; let it stand till it is fine, and then decant the clear, and keep it for use. Dose from 6 to 12, or 18 Drops; first dropt into Sugar, and then mixt with any proper Vehicle, and so taken. 5. The Saline Tincture. First make the Spiritus Intimus thus. Take Spring Water, 6 Quarts; choice Pot Ashes, 2 Pounds; Sal Armoniack, one Pound: mix, digest



digest close stopp 3 Days, strain, filter, and keep it for use. Then take the Ingredients as before prepared, which put into a Matraass or Bolt head, and affuse thereon of the former Spiritus Intimus, as much as may over-top the Ingredients 4 or 5 Inches: digest cold (being close stopp) for 2 or 3 Days, shaking the Vessel twice a Day; let it settle for one or two Days; decant the clear from the Feces, which filter thro' Brown filtering Paper, and keep it in a Glass close stopp for use. Dose from half a Dram, to 1 or 2 Drams, Morning and Night, in a Glass of Canary, or some other proper Vehicle. Where note, that by this Menstruum, you may extract the Tincture from any Root, Bark, Herb, Flower, or Seed, as well green as dry, and that in a manner extemporaneous.

**III. EXTRACTS.** 1. Take the Spirituous Tincture of any thing you design to have the Extract of; put it into a Bolt-head, with its Alembick and Receiver, and luting the Joints well; by a gentle heat abstract the Spirit in Balneo; the Magma at bottom is the Extract. 2. Extracts are either soft, fit either to be dissolved in any proper Vehicle, or to be made up with Pouders, if very soft, into an Electuary; but if of a more thick body, to be made with Pouders into Pills: Or they are of a solid body, so that they may be formed into Pills of themselves, without any addition. 3. And therefore according to the consistence you design the Extract to be of, to such a degree you must abstract the Spirit. 4. The abstracted Spirit is something more than the simple Spirit of Wine, and may very well be called the Spirit of that Ingredient, or Matter, of which the Extract is made, and contains some of the most volatill Spirits and Particles thereof.

**IV. WATERS.** 1. They are Distilled in Common Stills, putting good Store of Ashes underneath, to avoid an Empyreuma, or Smell and Taste of Burning; or in an Alembick, in Balneo. 2. If you Distil in an Alembick, it will be good that the Roots, Herbs, Flowers, be bruised, and by adding common Salt, or Leven, to be mixed with them to be digested; then putting Spring Water to them, to Distil them in an Alembick with its Worm or Refrigeratory, till the change of the Taste shews the Virtue to be drawn off, separating the Oil if any be. 3. By adding the Salt or Leven, or Yest, and digesting the Herbs therewith, till they have a kind of Winey Smell; by which means the Water is made twice or thrice as strong, and Smells much stronger of the Herbs, Flowers, &c. 4. Waters from dried Herbs. Let them be cut and infused a while in hot Water, and digested with Salt, Leven, or Yest, and then distilled in Balneo; and if it be cohobated upon more dried Herbs, it will be so much the better and more noble. 5. Waters from tender Herbs and Flowers, and from cold Plants, are distilled in Balneo, with Cohobation upon fresh Herbs. 6. Waters from hot Seeds, Spices, &c. beat or bruise them grossly, infuse them in a little warm Water, then distil them by a Copper Vesica, Tin'd within: You may also steep them in Wine, so will the Water be more excellent, with some Oil. 7. If from green Roots or Barks, bruise or shave them; but if from dried Roots, Barks, rasp them, or grossly beat them in a Mortar, and infuse them in a little warm Water, &c.

**V. SPIRITS.** 1. Take the Herbs, Flowers, &c. beat them in a Mortar, and Pickle them

with Salt, in an Earthen Vessel, by mixing the Salt therewith; put all into a well glazed Earthen Jar, pressing them well down: stop the Vessel very close, and put it into a Cellar for 3 or 4 Months, till they have a sharp or Wine-like Smell; then distil in a Vesica, in Balneo, or Sand, or Ashes, to driness: cohobate the Spirit and distil again, after which rectify it in a Glass Matraass, in a gentle Balneo, or Sand-heat. 2. Spirits from Juices. Beat the Roots, Herbs, Flowers, Fruits, if Juicy, and press forth their Juice: But if they be not Juicy, sprinkle hot Water on them, and then express the Juice. Steep in this Juice fresh Herbs, and press out again, which work repeat till you have Juice enough; this Juice ferment with Sugar, Leven, or Yest, dissolved in a little Water, and then distil it as before. Where note, that the Fermentation of the Juice, is best done in Wooden Vessels. 3. Spirits from Fruits which have a Pulp, as Black Cherries, Elderberries, Goosberries, Mulberries, Raspberries, Strawberries, &c. Either make a Wine of them, which let grow a little Acid; and distil it as before directed, or as you distil Brandy, or Spirit of Wine from Wine: Or else take their Pulp, freed from their Stones or Kernels, to which put warm Water, to make it thin; then with Leven, Yest, or Sugar, dissolved also in warm Water, cause them to ferment; after which distil. 4. Spirits from hot Seeds, Spices, &c. Bruise them well, and macerate the Mass with Wine, cause them to ferment with Leven, &c. and then distil; so will you have a Spirit mixt with a great deal of Water: cohobate and distil again, so will the Spirit be much better; which after separate from the Water by Distillation: reserve the Spirit by it self, and the Water by it self, as Water of the same Seeds, Spices, &c.

**VI. OILS Distilled.** 1. Oils from green or dry Roots, Herbs, Flowers. Bruise them well in a Stone or Iron Mortar, digest them 14 days or more in Water, and let them putrify; then distil by a Vesica with a great Fire; so will you have Water and Oil come over, which you are to separate. 2. If you distil Oils from Angelica, Anise, Bawm, Caraway, Dill, Fennel, Lavender, Marjoram, Mint, Origanum, Pennyroyal, Rosemary, Sage, Savory, Southernwood, Thyme, Wormwood, and the like hot Herbs: It is to be done when in Flower, and you are only to take the upper Branches with the Flowers, for then they yield the greatest plenty of Oil, and those parts of the Plants the most; the Leaves, Stalks, &c. little or none at all. 3. Oils from hot Seeds, as Annise, Cardamoms, Cubebs, Caraways, Coriander, Dill, Fennel, Mustard, Parsly, Rocket, &c. Bruise them grossly, affuse on them hot Water; add some Salt, or Crude Tartar in Pouders, digest 10 or 20 Days, then distil with a Copper Vesica, with its Head and Receiver well luted; so will you have Water and Oil together, which you are to separate, keeping the Oil by it self; and the Water for Anisced Water, Cardamom, Caraway Water, &c. 4. Oils from Roots being dried. Bruise them well; or beat them into gross Pouders, digest them with Water and Salt, then distil: cohobate the distilled Water, digest and distil again; separate the Oil from the Water: and in that Water, digest more fresh Roots, and so on continually. 5. Oils from Citron, Limon, and Orange Peels. Let them putrify or rot; add Water to them; then distil them as the former Roots, so will you have Oil and Water, which separate. The Water may be used in



*in like manner to more prepared Peels.* 6. Oils from Spices. Bruise them grossly, (for Pouders yield less Oil;) digest them 8 or 10 Days in the Menstruum you intend, adding Nitre, Salt, or Tartar: then distil in a Vesica; so will you have Water and Oil, which separate: cohobate the Water upon the Faces several times, so will all the volatil Oil ascend: The Water reserve to make more Oil with, upon fresh Spices. The weighty Oils (as of Cinamon) will separate from the Water, in 14 or 16 Days, by sinking to the bottom. 7. Oils from Aromatick Woods, as Cassia Lignea, Cedar, Cypress, Juniper, Rhodium, Sanders Yellow, Sassafras, Xyloaloes, &c. Take their raspings, or let their Chips be exceedingly well bruised in an Iron Mortar, which digest a good while in Water, then distil by a Vesica: cohobate, and continue distilling for some Days; at length the noble odoriferous Oil will come forth very subtil and volatil. 8. Oils from Rosins, Turpentine, &c. Add to them a good quantity of Water, and distil by a Vesica; so will you have Water, and an Oil swimming upon it, (which Oil is called Spirit;) continue the distillation, and by degrees it will be Yellow; then change the Receiver: Separate this yellow Oil, and keep it by it self, distilling till no more appears. This is called Oil. The Matter remaining is called Colophony. 9. The Rectification of Chymical Oils. They are rectified by distilling them by a Cucurbit, or Vesica, with much Water; so will the pure aetherial Oil ascend, with some Water, which separate. They are also rectified in a Bolt-head, with its Receiver, in which the pure aetherial Oil will ascend, the thicker Substance remaining at bottom.

**VII. BALSAMS.** 1. The true difference between Chymical Oils and Chymical Balsams lies chiefly in two things, viz. first the Oil contains the principal or chief of the sublime and volatil parts. Secondly, That it is of a thicker Consistence or Substance, than the Balsam; which as this latter is less subtil and thicker, so it is more fit for old Sores and Ulcers. 2. Hence it appears that as Oils are the more thin, pure, and aetherial parts, so they rise first in Distillation, from the Matter they are separated from; but the Balsam is that other thicker Oily Matter, which by the force of a stronger Fire, ascends next after the former pure, aetherial, volatil Oil is drawn off; which as it is of a thicker body, so it is also of a deeper color. 3. Balsams Chymical, are oftentimes also made in Rectification of Chymical Oils; when drawing off the thin, subtil, volatil Parts, or Oil, the thick Balsam is left at bottom. 4. But they are properly Balsams which (the thin Oil being drawn off in a Vesica) are afterwards drawn from the Colophony by a Retort. 5. Take the Colophony remaining after the Oil is drawn from Rosins and Turpentine; put it into a Retort, and distil with a gradual Fire, first soft and gentle, then greater, and so encreasing the Heat, till the Colophony has given up all its Oily or Balsamick parts, which will be of a body thick and red. And this is that which is properly called Balsam; which if it be rectified again in a Glass Retart, in a Sand-heat, will be much more fine and pure.

**VIII. POTESATES, or POWERS.** 1. Take the rectified Spirit of the Plant, suppose of Mint, or Pennyroyal, a Pint; Chymical Oil of the same Plant, an Ounce, or so much as the Spirit will absorb, or swallow up: mix them together, and keep them for use. 2. But if you take the

fixt Salt of the same Plant, and grind it with an equal quantity of the volatil Sal Armoniack; subliming and re-subliming so long till the fixt Salt ascends with the Volatil; and add 2 Drams thereof to the former mixture, it will be so much the more powerful to all the Intentions for which the said Potesates are used. 3. And many times for want of the particular Spirit of the Plant, whose Powers you would make, the best rectified Spirit of Wine is used as a Succedaneum; to which may also be added, if you please, the volatilized Salt of the same Plant, or a volatil Salt of Tartar.

**IX. ELIXIRS.** 1. An Elixir is the sulphureous Tincture of any Vegetable, drawn out of the dried Vegetable, (ground grossly with Salt of Tartar in a hot Mortar) with the rectified Spirit of the same Vegetable. 2. Or thus. Take any dried Herb or Plant, beat it into gross Powder; which put into a Matrafs or Bolt-head: Take the Powers of the same Plant, six Pints; rectified Spirit of Nitre, 12 Ounces: mix, and digest for 10 Days; affuse so much of this Mixture upon the former Powder, as may supernate 4 or 5 Inches: digest cold for 20 Days, shaking the Glass every Day; then decant the clear Liquor, and keep it for use. 3. But you are not always necessitated to use Spirit of Nitre; but may in place thereof, as the nature of the Disease may require, take Oils of Salt, of Sulphur, or of Vitriol, and digest with the Powers as above directed. 4. Again, by Infusion of any Vegetable (suppose Rosemary) in Powers of the same, acuated with Oil of Salt, and Salt of the same, you shall have the Elixir thereof.

**X. SALTS.** 1. Salts Chymical are either Volatil or Fixed: And tho' all Plants have indeed a volatil Salt, yet the most of them having but little, and that little very difficult to be gotten, Authors have taken little or no notice thereof: Those which really abound with it are but few, of which Beans, Pease, and Tartar, are chief. The way of making their Volatil Salts, we shall not declare here, having taught it fully and at large in their proper places, in the following Book. 2. Fixed Salt of Vegetables is thus made. First burn or calcine the Herb you would make a Salt of, into white Ashes; yet avoiding a too fierce or hasty Burning, lest it should vitrify. Boil these Ashes in fair Water, to make a Lixivium of them; which filter thro' filtering Brown Paper, by help of a Glass Funnel. This filtered Liquor Boil in a Glass Vessel, with a gentle Fire, to the consumption of all the Water; so will the fixt Salt of the Plant be left at bottom. 3. If the Salt be not purely White and Fine, you must dissolve it again in more fair Water; filter and coagulate by an absorption of the Water; which work you are so often to repeat, till it is freed from all Impurity, and is very White. 4. These alcalious Fixt Salts, are very apt to melt in the Air; but if they be first calcined with Sulphur, it much preserves them from that Accident, and makes them withall somewhat more grateful to the Palate.



## CHAP. XI.

## Of the Virtues of Medicines.

I. **T**HAT some Plants Heat, some Cool, and some Dry, and some Moist, is manifest; and this is from their First Qualities, which are found out, first by their Taste. Secondly, by their Smell. Thirdly, by their Operations, or Effects. Fourthly, by Experience.

II. **T**HAT some Plants open Obstructions, and some stop, as in Catarrhs and Fluxes of Blood; some Bind, and some Relax; some Attract, and some Repercuss; some Maturate, and some Absterge, &c. These Virtues, which are their Second Qualities, they draw from their First Qualities, but are more perfectly known and found out by Experience, and a continued Series of Observations.

III. **T**HAT the Appropriation of Medicaments to the several principal Parts of the Body, has been found out partly by their Signatures, and partly by Experience, and sometime by both of them together: And so this Appropriation of them to the Head and Brain, Nerves, Stomach, Lungs, Pleura, Heart, Liver, Spleen, Mesentery, Reins, Womb, and Joints, is called their Third Qualities.

IV. **N**OW IF a Plant is hot and dry, it naturally follows, that it must resist and be helpful against Diseases, proceeding from cold and moisture: So also if a Plant is cold and moist, it must resist and be helpful against Diseases proceeding from heat and dryness: The same may be said of Plants hot and moist, or cold and dry, which doubtless resist, and are helpful against Diseases proceeding from the opposite Qualities.

V. **T**HIS being said, if we consider what Diseases afflict those principal Parts of the Body, and from what Causes they proceed; it follows that those Plants, which are endowed with those First Qualities, and withall are in the predicament of the Third Qualities, must generally resist and be auxiliaries in the Curing those Distempers, afflicting those particular Parts; and therefore in giving you the Virtues of the Medicament, tho' there are in almost every Plant, and in the Variety of their Preparations, a great number of Diseases enumerated, against which they be Good or Helpful, yet we do not intend thereby, that they are Specificks, and absolute Cures for all the Diseases there named, but chiefly helpful against the same; and in Compositions framed against such Maladies, may as a Vis duplicata, add to their Force and Effects.

VI. **A**S FOR Example, take Angelica, Lavender, or any other Plants, which are hot and dry in the second, third, or fourth degrees, as to their First Qualities; and withall are appropriated to the Head, Brain, and Nerves: We say that those Plants, and their Preparations, are good for and helpful against all the Diseases of those Parts, proceeding from cold and moisture, and accordingly we enumerate them, as Catarrhs, or Defluxions, Megrims, Vertigo's, Apoplexies, Epilepsies, Leturgies, Carus, Coma, Palsies, Gramps, De-

fluxions into the Eyes and Nose, heaviness of the Head, weakness of the extrem Parts, thro' the hurts of the Nerves, &c. more especially if the Habit of the Body be cold and moist too. These and other like Diseases of those Parts, proceeding from a cold and moist Cause, we say, these and the like Plants are proper for, and helpful in their Cure, tho' we do not say they will absolutely do the Work: And yet a great deal is to be said, if Alteratives be given in a full Dose, assiduously used, not by fits and girds, and continued for a good length of time; for so Nature acts in conjunction with the Medicine, and the Cure is performed and perfected at length, which otherwise could not be either expected or hoped for.

VII. **A**GAIN, those Plants which are in the Fourth Qualities of Medicines, are Abstractives, which abstract or take away all superfluous Humours, Recrements, and Excrements out of the Body, its Ventricles, or principal Viscera, and Vessels, which are Emeticks, Catharticks, Salivaticks, Ptarmicks, Emmenagogicks, Diureticks, Lithontripticks, and Sudorificks, and these are said to be Curative, at least helpful in Curing all Diseases of Repletion.

VIII. **T**HE KIND of the Abstractive is to be chosen, according to the site of the Part, or Parts afflicted; and nature of the Diseases afflicting. So if it be the Head, stult with pituitous, cold and moist Humours, Ptarmicks are to be chosen: If the Stomach, by Surfeits, Fulness, Obstructions, sharp Humours, &c. then Emeticks. If the Entrails, with sharp Humours, Colicks, Worms, &c. then Catharticks. If all the Juices of the Body are contaminated, as in the French Disease, Leprosie, Leuce, Elephantiasis, &c. then Salivaticks. If the Womb be obstructed, or the Courses stop, then Emmenagogicks. If there be a repletion of Urine, thro' an Obstruction of the Reins, and Urinary Vessels, then Diureticks. If Gravel, Stones, &c. in Reins or Bladder, then Lithontripticks. If Universal Obstructions over the whole Body, with a repletion of Watery Humours, as in Dropsies, then Catharticks first, and Sudorificks afterwards.

IX. **A**ND SO the Diseases proceeding from Repletion, are enumerated according to the Part or Parts afflicted; and accordingly the proper Abstractives are applied, which taking away the superfluous Humours, or Recrements, causing, or some ways contributing to those Diseases; those particular Medicaments according to their Kind, are said to cure, or be helpful, or contributory to the removal, or cure of those Diseases.

X. **T**HOSE HERBS, or Plants, which add something to the Body, or its principal Parts, are in the Fifth Qualities of Medicines, and are Adductives, and said to cure, or be helpful in curing, all Diseases of Ablation, viz. such Distempers as are caused from the want of some Nourishment, Juices, or Humours, in order to the conservation of the whole Body, or of some particular and respective Parts: And so they are said to be Chylificks, Analepticks, Galactogeneticks, Spermatogeneticks, and Alexipharmicks; that is to say, to cure, or to be helpful in curing, all Diseases and Weaknesses, caused by a deficiency of what Nature requires, for preservation of the Body and its Principal.

XI. **A**ND THEREFORE the Kind of the Adductive



is to be chosen, according to the nature of the Matter deficient, the Parts affected and the approaching Evils to be feared: So if the Tone of the Stomach is hurt, that it cannot breed good Chylus, whereby an Atrophy or Pining may be feared, Chylificks are to be administred, which are withall Stomachick, or Stomachicks are to be added to them. If a grand Wasting of the Flesh be, as in a Phthisis, or deep Consumption, Analepticks are of use. If a deficiency of Milk, then Galactogeneticks. If a deficiency of Seed, then Spermatogeneticks. If Poison be taken, then the Vital Powers are to be strengthened and augmented by Alexipharmicks.

XII. AND SO the Diseases proceeding from Ablation, are enumerated, according as the whole Body, or its Parts may be affected, and accordingly the proper Adductives are chosen; which adding to Generating, or encreasing the Nutrient, or Juices defective, are said either to cure, or some ways contribute to the cure, of the prevailing Illnesses, either present, or intruding upon the Patient.

XIII. THIS IS the Method, joined with Experience, [and a long Series of Observations, thro' all preceeding Ages from the first beginnings of the Art of Physick, by which the Virtues of Medicaments have been investigated and found out; and according to which, the Virtues ascribed to Herbs and Plants in this our Herbal, are rationally to be accounted for.

## C H A P. XII.

### Of Doses, Uses and Application.

I. THE DOSES of Alteratives. 1. Pouders, if temperate, or hot, or cold in the first degree, may be given from one Dram to two Drams; in the second and third degrees, from half a Dram to a Dram, or more: In the fourth degree, from half a Scruple to half a Dram. 2. Infusions, Decoctions and Waters, from two Ounces to four, six, or eight. 3. Extracts, from one Dram to two Drams. 4. Electuaries, from one Dram to four, or half an Ounce. 5. Elixirs and Powers, from 30 Drops to 60, or 80 Drops. 6. Clysters, a Pint at a time to a Man or Woman; but to Infants and Children, from a quarter of a Pint to half a Pint.

II. DOSES of Abstractives. 1. Emeticks, if of Antimony, as Tartar Emetick, from three Grains to eight: If Infusions of Crocus Metallorum, Vitrum Antimonij, or Regulus Antimonij, from half an Ounce to an Ounce; and if strong, from an Ounce to an Ounce and half, or two Ounces: Emetick Decoctions of Herbs, from half a Pint to three quarters of a Pint, or Pint. 2. Catharticks, if Pouders, from a Scruple, or half a Dram, to a Dram, or Dram and half, according to the strength of the Species, and the Age and Strength of the Patient; the Strongest may be given from half a Scruple to half a Dram. 3. Lenitive Electuaries,

from half an Ounce to two Ounces: Purging Electuaries, from half an Ounce to an Ounce. 4. Purging Infusions and Decoctions, from an Ounce to six Ounces, according to their Strength; the Strong, from an Ounce to four Ounces; the Strongest, from an Ounce to two Ounces. 5. Purging Extracts, from half a Scruple to two Scruples. Purging Pills, from a Scruple to a Dram. 6. Purging Salts, from half an Ounce to an Ounce, or Ounce and half. 7. Salivaticks, according to the Discretion of the Learned Physician. 8. Emmenagogicks, if Infusions or Decoctions, from a quarter of a Pint, to half a Pint, or more. If Tinctures or Elixirs, from two Drams to three Drams, or half an Ounce. 9. Diureticks and Lithontripticks, if Pouders, from a Dram to two Drams: If Infusions or Decoctions, from a quarter of a Pint to half a Pint, or more: If Salts, from ten Grains to a Scruple, or half a Dram. 10. Sudorificks, if Infusions, from half a Pint to three quarters of a Pint, or more: If Electuaries, from a Scruple to a Dram, two Drams, four Drams, or an Ounce. But if an Opiate, you must be regulated according to the quantity of Opium which is in it. If Salts, from half a Scruple to half a Dram.

III. BUT IN ALL these Cases you are to observe, that these Rules, nor any other, can be absolutely General, but that different Accidents which may be, as to the Age, Habit, and Strength of the Patient, Recency or Inveteracy of the Disease, together with the different Strengths or Weaknesses of the Medicine, may cause some Exceptions, or particular Cautions and Observations necessary to be known, and which we could not comprehend in these general Directions; so that notwithstanding the Limitations of these Doses in this place, they must be proportioned from hence, according as the Accidents may be, in respect both to the Patient and the Preparation; giving to Grown Persons the larger and more compleat Doses; whilst to Weak Persons, Children and Infants, they are to be diminished, according to their Weaknesses, Disabilities, and tender Years.

IV. THE USES of Internal Medicaments. And they are to be considered, 1. As to the Time of Giving. 2. As to the Way and Manner of Giving. FIRST, as to the time of Exhibition, Alteratives may be given in the Morning Fasting; but without doubt, all Aperitives are best given at Night, (but upon an Empty Stomach) because there will be the less fear the next Day of taking Cold. Catharticks and Emeticks, are best given in the Morning, because as the Stomach is then most Empty, so they will the easier act upon the Offending Matter, and the sooner Operate; besides, the better Attendance may be given, in the time of their Working.

V. SECONDLY, As to the Way and Manner of Giving them. And this is taken for the most part from their Form. 1. Waters Distilled, Syrups and Juleps, are used chiefly as Vehicles, to convey other things down the Throat in. 2. Infusions, Decoctions and Wines, are generally given by themselves, dulcified with White Sugar, or some proper Syrup. 3. Essences and Juices, are generally mixed with some proper Syrup, or with Wine (as the nature of the Disease may require) sweetned with White Sugar, Honey, or Syrup. 4. Tinctures, if Spirituous, Acid, or Oily, are almost always given in a Glass of dulcified Wine.

But



But Saline Tinctures, are generally given in some Diuretick Decoction, sweetned with Syrup of Althea, or of Parsly, Winter Cherries, &c. 5. Poultices and Extracts, if soft, are made into Bolus's with Honey, Pulp of a Roasted Apple or Pear, or some proper Lohoch. 6. But Extracts, if stiff enough to be made into Pills, (while Recent) are swallowed as Pills by themselves: If kept till they are hard, they will scarcely dissolve in the Body, but must be reduced to a soft Electuary. 7. Troches, are to be reduced into a Powder, and made into a Bolus with some proper Syrup, or Honey. 8. Lozenges are held in the Mouth, and swallowed down only as they melt. 9. Electuaries are swallowed either as a Bolus, or dissolved in some proper Infusion, Decoction, or Wine, sweetned with some Syrup, Honey, or Sugar. 10. Pills are swallowed by themselves, washing them down with some proper distilled Water, Infusion, Decoction, Wine, Julep, Posset-drink, or Broth. 11. Spirits are dulcified with some proper Syrup, or mixt with Wine sweetned with Syrup, or White Sugar, and so taken. 12. Potestates and Elixirs, are always given in a Glass of dulcified Wine. 13. Oils and Balsams, are always dropt into soft White Sugar, and so well mixt with it, then put into a Glass of some proper Wine and so drank. 14. Salts Essential, Elementary, or Fixt, and Volatil, are generally dissolved in some proper distill'd Water, Infusion, Decoction, or Wine, and dulcified with Syrup, Honey, or Sugar, and so swallowed.

VI. THE APPLICATION of Topicks or Externals. 1. Lotions are either for Bathing in, or for Washing old Sores and Ulcers; for Gargarisms, for Sore Mouths and Throats; or for Injections into Fistula's, the Yard, or Womb, to be used with proper Syringes. 2. Oils, they are to be anointed upon the Parts affected, rubbing them well in, Morning and Night, or two or three times a Day. 3. Ointments and Balsams; these may be anointed withall; also they are spread upon Pledgets, and applied to Green Wounds, Old Running Sores and Ulcers. 4. Poultices; these are either mixed with some Ointment or Balsam, and so applied; or simply strewed upon the Wound, Sore or Ulcer. 5. Emplasters and Cerates, are to be spread upon supple Cloth or Leather, and so applied simply upon the naked Tumor, Wound, Sore or Ulcer, or laid over Pledgets, drest or arm'd with Balsam, to keep them on. 6. Cataplasms are put upon Cloth or Leather, to be applied to Tumors and Apostems, to discuss, soften or suppurate. 7. Clysters are to be used either with a Clyster-Pipe and Bladder, or with a Clyster-Syring, to force it up the Intestinum rectum, by the Anus.

VII. WHERE NOTE, that Clysters are either Anodyn, or Healing, or Purging: If Anodyn, some choice Opiate is dissolved in it. If Healing, they are mixed either with Spirit of Wine, or some Oil, Balsam, or Liquid Rosin. But if Purging, they have always a proportional quantity of Brown Sugar in them, with some Common Salt; but no Oil or Oily body by any means, because they always blunt the points of the Saline Particles.

## C H A P. XIII.

## Conclusion of the Introduction.

I. **T**HUS HAVING given you a short Explanatory Introduction to our History of Plants, without the Knowledge of which, this Work could not well be understood, and upon which principles a great part of the Practise of Physick is founded and built; the Observation of which, is truly a practising according to Art, and not a going hand over head, and a doing of things at all adventures, as Empiricks do, by which the Life of a Patient is not only put into Danger, but by such Empirical Practises, a thousand Miscarriages are daily committed, to the great prejudice of the Sick, and disreputation of the Medical Arts.

II. **M**ANY GREAT things have been performed by simple Medicines and Preparations; and by that prime and simple Practise, the Qualities and Virtues of Simples were first investigated or found out. This was the first step of Art. Afterwards when the Faculties and Virtues of many things were discovered, the succeeding Practisers began to add one thing to another, which they thought to have like Virtues; believing, that two things of equal strength being conjoin'd, the Power and Force of that Medicine must be doubled; and indeed it many times succeeded according to expectation.

III. **F**ROM THESE beginnings, Artists began to redouble their Forces, and to multiply Ingredients; making continually Complex Compositions, and from the belief of a Vis unita, to form Compounds, which in process of many Ages, became a Magazine or Store-House, as it were, of Remedies for all Diseases; which they formed into a method of Prescriptions, and under proper Titles, and particular forms of Preparations; they made at length a Repository for general Practise, consisting of a great number of Prescripts, serving for all Indications, and for the Cure of the most common and reigning Diseases; which they called by the name of a Pharmacopœia or Dispensatory.

IV. **T**HUS THE Medical Arts, under this natural and primitive Simplicity, continued for many hundred Years; and obtained the name of Hippocratical and Galenical Physick, without any considerable or manifest advantage, alteration, or advance of Reputation; except in forming a Farrago of not only Compound, but decompound Recipes, which being a Hodge-Podge of Complications, tended rather to the Detriment and Reproach of our Art, than the adding of any Honour or Glory to it; and thereby reduced the Science from Natural and Simple Empiricism, into an Artificial and Reputable Art of Quackery.

V. **T**HE ART THUS groaning under this Labyrinth of Misfortunes, by the ill Practises of supposed Learned Men; or rather Empiricks, began to sink under the Burthen, and indeed would in a short time have been reduced into the most profound Mystery of Empiricism, or Quackery; had it not pleased God, to make the Light of Chymistry to Arise and Shine upon us, by the Means of



of that wonderful Spirit, and great Man, Paracelsus: who not only shew'd the weakness of Empiricism, of Galenick Medicines, and Medicafters, but unvailed and brought the Arts of Medicine out of their Rubbish, and set them in a true light, for the general Good of Mankind.

VI. IF IT BE OBJECTED, that Chymistry was in being long before Paracelsus was Born. To this we answer, so was the Circulation of the Blood before our Great Harvey: But as it was Harvey, who first brought the Circulation to Light, for the reforming, and more full elucidating the Art of Physick; so we say, that it was Paracelsus who brought the Light of Chymistry to arise and shine in our Horizon; and let us into its Secret Recesses, shewing us all its hidden Treasures, and brought them forth for the Glory of our Art, the Increase of true Medical Knowledge, and an Universal Good.

VII. YET WE DO NOT SAY, that the Old Physick is wholly to be cast away: There are many (tho' Simple) excellent things in it; which by a Skilful and Prudent Physician may be excerpted, and collected together; and which if conjoined with the Chymical, open into a great Field of Knowledge, and wonderful Productions, that not only shew us the Genesis, but also Analysis of all natural things; and with what an amazing Harmony they sympathize with Human Bodies, and how admirably they conspire to Operate in Mankind, to the extirpation of Diseases, and support of Life, against whatever may be opposite to Health, and the well-being of a Living Man.

VIII. THE NEXT thing then which the Physician had in his View, was the Composition and Structure of the Human Frame, that thereby he might know how the Body grew, and was nourished, and by what means it might fall to decay, and so fail. And since the Growth and Nourishment was from the Matter received in by the Mouth into the Stomach, they considered that there was an innate Property in that Viscus, viz. Natural Spirits, to convert the received Food into a kind of nourishing Juice, which the Greeks (our first Physicians) were pleased to call Chylus, which being more perfected in the Entrails, was thence conducted by proper Vessels, and conveyed to the Heart; where being converted into Blood, it was thence by the Arteries distributed over the whole Body, to contribute to its encrease of Magnitude, and nourishment of all its Parts, that it might not fall to decay. The Meanders, or Ways, by which this Bloody Juice past and repast, was discovered by Dissection of the Human Carcase; how it past from the Heart by the Arteries, to almost every individual Part of the Body, for its Nutrition; and how, what was more than was fit for that Purpose, was returned by the Veins to the Heart again; which for that reason seems to be the Fountain of the Vital Spirits, and so by a perpetual Circulation, conserves the Microcosm in a habitual State of Life and Strength. And by the same Art, they came to a discovery of the Nervous System, (whose Original is in the Head) by which the Animal Spirits, generated in the Brain, were conveyed thro' the whole Man, giving Sense or Feeling, Life and Motion, to every part of the same.

IX. HOW THE Body fell to decay, or failed, was the next Consideration, which was either, I. By External Accidents, by Blows, Falls, Cuts, Punctures, Gunshot, &c. from whence came Contusions, Wounds, Fluxes of Blood, Ulcers, Fractures, Luxations, Dismembrings, and loss of Substance, which directed them to Topicks, or External Applications, whence from a long Series of Experiences, arose the Practice and Art of Chirurgery. II. Or Internal, from a defect of Natural Spirits in the Stomach and Bowels, whereby their Tone, or innate concoctive Property being hurt, they either 1. generated a bad Chylus, which did not Nourish as it ought to do, but either profligated the Blood and Lympha, by depauperating them; or otherwise created a tartarous kind of Mucilage, by which not only the Vessels thro' which it was to pass were obstructed, but the Viscera also themselves were perturbed in their Operations, by glutinous Slime, Sand, Gravel, Stones, &c. Or 2. They generated not Chylus enough to nourish and sustain the External Man, whereby the Body falls into Lassitudes or Weaknesses, Pinings, and a lingering Consumption; which if not prudently remedied, and that in time, reduces the poor Patient to a meer Skelton, and so making him past hopes of Cure, sends him decently to his Grave. An indigested Chylus, or defective in its quantity, as it creates a depauperated Blood and Lympha, so it makes either weak Vital Spirits, or a deficiency of them, whence comes Faintness, Languishings, and the like, and an universal decay of the Strength of the whole Man. And according to the poverty of the Blood and Lympha, such also are the Animal Spirits proceeding from it, from whose weakness or decay, proceed all the Nervous Diseases afflicting the Body, as Tremblings, Numbness, loss of Strength and Motion, Convulsions, Palsies, &c.

X. THE BODY being thus afflicted with Diseases, it was natural to believe, that they could not be without their proper Signs, by which they might be known, as also several attendant Symptoms; all which must arise from some certain Cause, or Causes; the Signs of which Causes, (which they call Diagnosticks) they daily learnt from Observation. These Causes, whether Original or Accidental, they gradually searched out, that the Sources whence they were derived, might be at length discovered. All which was absolutely necessary towards the investigation of the Cure: For that without the Cause was known and removed, the Effects thereof, viz. the Disease, could not cease, or be taken away. As Diseases then appeared in the World, they observed the Signs accompanying them, and the Symptoms which many times accrued, which they set down in Writing, under the Names of those several Diseases. And enquiring into the Course of the Patients Life, and what Accidental Matters might also happen, at the introitum of the Disease, the antecedent Causes of the Malady, became in some measure manifest. Whence by a great number of Remarks, not only the Antecedent and Remote Causes came to be discovered, but also the conjoined and near Causes, were at length brought to Light: From whence the Diagnostick part of the Art, received its Illustration. Again, from the Greatness or Lightness of the Causes; from the impending Symptoms, as they seem'd more or less dangerous; and from attending to the end of the Disease, thro' a long Series of Observations; being all rationally considered together, the Prognostick Precepts were educed. And if the Disease was thought Curable, the Indi-



Indications of Cure, voluntarily flowed from the morbid state of the Sick, which proceeded 1. From the Causes Antecedent and Present. 2. From the nature of the Disease, whether Similar, Organick, or Common. 3. From the Symptoms, as being Dangerous or not. 4. From the Vital Powers, respecting the Strength or Weakness of the Diseased Body.

XI. ART BEING by these Advances, and so many Degrees, or Steps, brought on towards Perfection; what remains for the Learned Professor to do? Truly to know what Disease it is which afflicts the Person, and by the Crisis, and manifest Symptoms, to make his Medical Prognosticks, whether the Patient be Curable or not; that he may do every thing for the Reputation of his Art, and of himself. So that if he sees the Sick past hopes of Recovery, he may decline his Attacks, and let the Relatives and Attendants know the Danger impending. But if there be Hopes of Life, (tho' but small) he may make his Artful and Masterly Prescriptions, according to the Indications of Cure, which with a Rational and Modest assurance, he may hope and conclude, will not go without their desired Effects.

XII. LIKE AS THE Art of Rhetorick was not the foundation of Oratory, or of the first Orators, Demosthenes, Cicero, &c. but the Orators the foundation of the Art, out of whose unexampled Orations, all its Precepts and Rules

were Excerpted, or Gleaned, and by Wise Men reduced into the form of an Art, by which all succeeding Rhetoricians regulated and made their Orations: So the Medical Art, and all its Rules, even the Fabrick of the whole Art, was Reared and Built out of Empiricism, or Quackery; and its Original or Foundation, was laid by Empiricks, or Quacks, (as the Learned are pleased to phrase it) and that the first Physicians were no other than Empiricks, Quacks, or Tryers of Skill; out of whose Tryals, Observations and Practises, some Wise Men collected a Set of Precepts and Rules; which being reduced into Method, we now call the Art of Physick. But all the to be deplored Misfortunes of the Art is, that it makes not a great many Real Physicians, but too many Ignorant or Conceited Doctors, and too great a number of Formal and Rattle-headed Empiricks or Quacks.

XIII. WHAT WE have farther to say is, to commend the sincere Lovers of Art, to the good Providence of God. That in their Search and Enquiries into Nature, and unravelling (as it were) the Rules and Precepts of Medicine, they may find the Answer of their Expectations; and have their Minds or Souls, enlightened with the Splendor and prevailing Excellencies, of true Wisdom and Knowledge; so as to be able to perform the Great things, wrapt up in the Mysteries of this Science they are Professors of; for the Good of the Sick, their own Benefit, and the Reputation of the ART of PHYSICK.

W. SALMON.

Black-Friers, London.

#### ADVERTISEMENT.

I Request all those Gentlemen and others, who send Letters to me, about their own Concerns, to be so Civil, as to pay Postage for them; or else they may expect to go without an Answer. It is not reasonable that I should be at Charge for Persons, I have no Acquaintance withall, and the Business their own. I should not say this, was it but now and than a Letter. But to receive about two thousand Letters a Year (as I have formerly done) upon other Peoples Affairs, or some trifling Matter, and to pay Postage for them, makes a considerable Sum. And besides, it is as Burthensome and Troublesome to Answer them, as it is Chargeable to Receive them.



# BOTANOLOGIA: THE HISTORY OF PLANTS.

*Liber Primus.*

## OF English Herbs and Plants.

### CHAP. I. Of ADDERS-TONGUE.

**I.** **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Ὠφιογλωσσον*; in Latin, *Lingua Serpentina*, *Lingua Serpentina*, *Lingua Vulneraria*, *Argentina*, *Lancea Christi*, *Herba Lucciola*, *Ophioglosson*: in English, *Adders Tongue*, and *Serpents Tongue*.

**II.** The Kinds. There is properly but One Species, which is sometimes *misshapen*, and therefore are called the *Common* and *misshapen*: and differ only in one or two things: the latter has sometimes two or three stalks, and sometimes but one stalk; and sometimes two or three Crooked Tongues.

**III.** The Description. The Root is small and Fibrous, abiding under Ground all Winter, from which rises up but one leaf, which with the stalk, arises not above five or six Inches from the Ground, being flat or thick, and of a fresh green colour, not much unlike in-form to the head of a broad Favelin, or rather the leaves of Water Plantane, but lesser, without any middle rib in it: from the bosom or bottom of which leaf, on the inside, rises up ordinarily one small slender stalk, about two or three, and sometimes four Inches long, the upper part of which is somewhat bigger, and dented with small round dents, of a yellowish green colour, much resembling an Adders-Tongue (whence the name) which never shews any other flower, and vanishes away without yielding any Seed.

**IV.** The Places. It grows in moist Meadows in most parts of England; in the Meadows by Colebrook; in the Fields in Waltham-Forrest; in a Meadow near Barton, as you go from Oxford to Stow-Wood: in a Close near Botely on the West-side of Oxford; and in many Meadows in Kent, Sussex and Surrey, as also near London, and several other parts of this Kingdom.

**V.** The Times. It is in its Prime in April and May, and flourishes sometimes till the beginning of June: but a little heat quickly makes it vanish.

**VI.** The Qualities. It is hot in the first degree, and dry in the second degree. It is Cleansing, Astringent, Sarcotick, and Traumatick, or Vulnerary; by appropriation, it is Arthritick and Hepatick. It is also an Alterative, and Antifebritick.

**VII.** The Specification. It is Vulnerary, good to heal Wounds, broken Bones and Ruptures. Mr. Ray saith, that Baptista Sardus affirms that the Pouder of the Herb, being given Inwardly for some time, will Cure all Ruptures whatsoever. And Matthiolus in his Epitome says, that the fresh leaves being applied, not only heal Wounds after a wonderful manner, but also Cure Ruptures, Burnings and Scaldings.

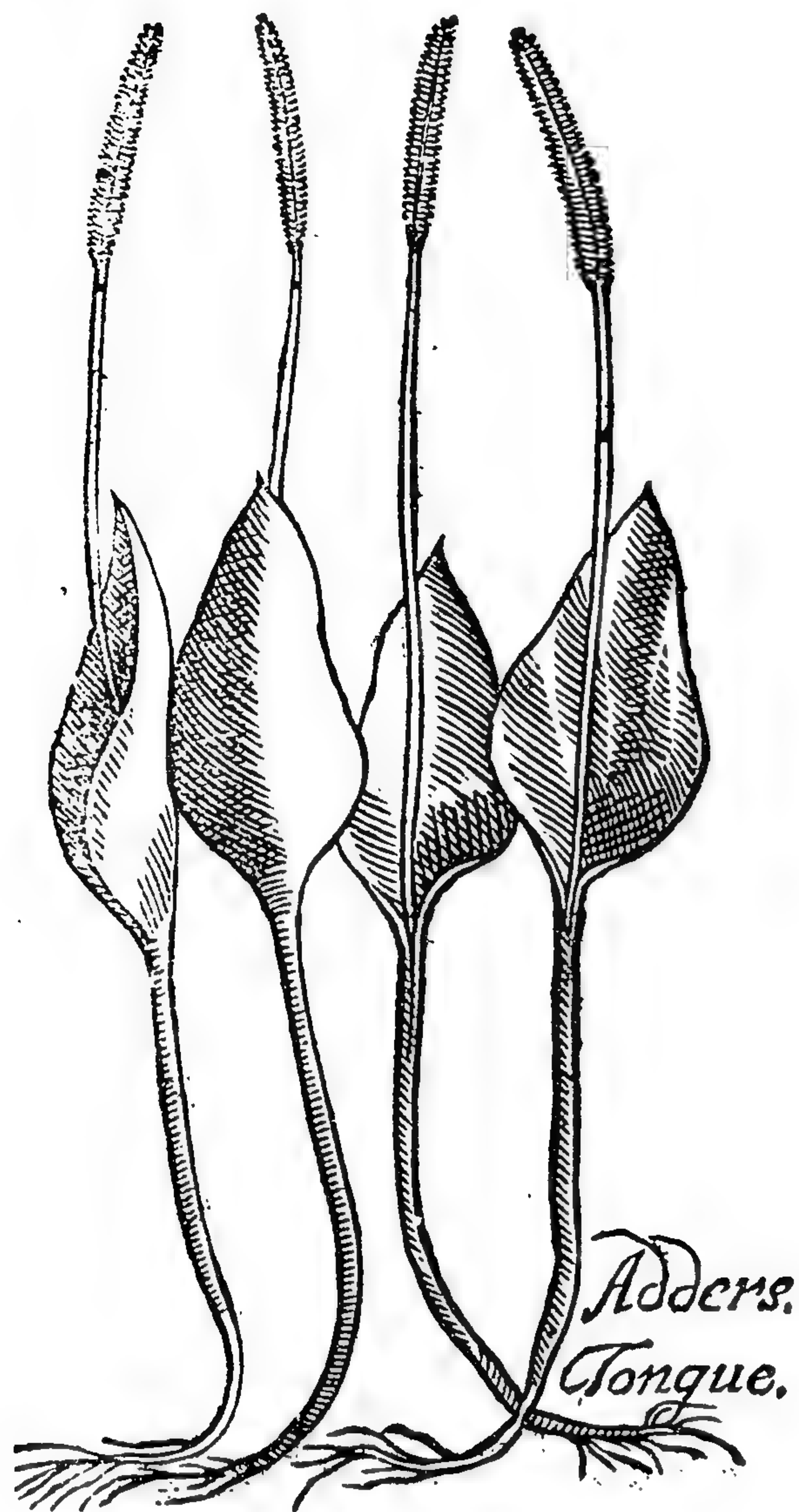
**VIII.** The Preparations. There are no Preparations of it kept in the Shops: but if you please you

B

may



may make from it, 1. *A Juice.* 2. *A Pouder.* 3. *A Saffarous Tincture.* 4. *A Saline Tincture.* 5. *An Oily Tincture.* 6. *An Essence.* 7. *An Ointment.* 8. *A Balsam.* 9. *A Cataplasim.*



*The Virtues*

IX. *The Juice Clarified,* cleanses Ulcers outwardly, and heals Ulcers in the Lungs, which it the sooner performs, if digested with Spirit of Wine: it also stops Vomiting; and a little Nitre being dissolved in it, it is profitable against the Gout; and so drunk inwardly takes away the heat of Fevers.

X. *The Pouder of the leaves, &c.* given from half a Dram to a Dram, stops bleeding inwardly, overflowing of the Terms, as also bleeding at Mouth and Nose, and other fluxes of Blood, being applied: strewed upon Ulcers, it cleanses and dries them, and disposes them to healing.

XI. *The Tincture of the dried Herb in Spirit of Wine,* heals Wounds admirably, being washed therewith mixed with Wine, and dries up Ulcers: so also being taken inwardly from a Dram to 2 Drams.

XII. *The Saline Tincture,* drawn with *Spiritus Universalis,* allays all Inflammations, and discusses hot Tumors: taken inwardly it is good against burning Fevers, is Traumatick, and heals all inward Wounds and Ulcers, as also bruises of Brest, Stomach, and other *Viscera.*

XIII. *The Oily Tincture,* drawn with Oil of Turpentine, Cures not only all Green Wounds of the Nerves and Tendons, but also a Cold Gout, as also Aches, Pains, and Lameness, from a cold Cause by anointing therewith: it also discusses Tumors and the beginning of Apostems, and puts a stop to the Itch, and spreading Ulcers.

XIV. *The Essence.* It is Vulnerary, good against the bitings of Mad Dogs, Serpents, or any other venomous Creature. It resists Poysons, and all sorts of burning Fevers. Dose from a quarter of an ounce to half an ounce, mixt in any proper Vehicle.

XV. *The Ointment.* It is made by boiling the green leaves shred 2 Pounds, Sheep Suet, Oil Olive, of each half a Pound, till the Herb is crisp, which

press out, putting in as much more fresh Herbs, boiling and pressing out as before, then adding to the strained matter 12 Ounces of Turpentine, which mix together. It Cures not only Green Wounds but also cleanses and heals Inveterate and Putrified Ulcers; also Burnings and Scaldings in a very short time.

XVI. *The Balsam,* made of the Juice, and Strasburgh Turpentine, is as good a Vulnerary as can ordinarily be used; for it commonly heals any Simple Wound at first dressing: and applied with a Truss is good against Ruptures, the Pouder of the Herb being also given inwardly.

XVII. *The Cataplasim,* made of the Green Herb, and pure Yellow Sweet Palm Oil, Cures the Gout, or any Pain in the Joynts, being applied for some time.

## CHAP. II.

### Of ADONIS - FLOWER.



I. **T**he Names. It is called in Greek *Ἑράνθημος*, in Latin, *Eranthemum*, *Adonis*, *Flos Adonidis*, & *Flos Adonis*: in English, *Adonis flower*, *Red Camomil*, *Red Maithes*, *Pheasants Eye*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is numbred among those Herbs which are *semine nudo polysperma*: and it seems there are two chief Species of it, viz. that with Red Flowers, called *Flos Adonis flore Rubro*: the other with yellow flowers called *Adonis flore Luteo*.

III. *The Description.* It has a root with very many slender, weak, small and thready strings, perishing every year; from this root rises up several slender weak stalks, trailing or leaning to the Ground, set on every part with fine jagged leaves, very deeply cut, like those of Camomil, or rather those of Mayweed; upon which Stalks, arising a foot higher or better, do grow small red flowers, consisting of 6 or 8 round leaves, almost like Field Crowfoot, having a blackish green head, or pointel in the middle, set round about with many blackish threads, without any smell at all; after the flowers are past, there grows up heads with many roundish white seeds at the tops of them, set close together, very like



like unto the heads or seeds of the great Ox Eye, or not much unlike to a little Bunch of Grapes: The Plant rises of its own Seed again, many times before Winter, which will abide till the next year. That with the yellow flower is much like the former, but its stalks and leaves are of a more dilute Green.

IV. *The Places.* The Red grows in the West part of England amongst Corn, just as Mayweed does in other parts, and is likewise an enemy to Corn, as Mayweed is: from thence (for the Beauty of the flower sake) the Seed has been brought into some Gardens: The Yellow is a stranger in England, unless Nursed up in Gardens.

V. *The Times* They flower in the Summer Months, as May, June, July and August, as the Year falls out to be early or late: and the seed is ripe soon after, and presently falls away, if not Gathered.

VI. *The Qualities.* They are hot and dry in the first degree; but *Bauhine* and *Tabermontanus* say they are hot and dry in the second; yet by the taste we can hardly judge so. They are Discussive, Digestive, Aperitive and Carminative: and by appropriation they are Stomack, Hepatick and Nephritick, and of the kind of Alteratives.

VII. *The Specification.* They are said to be Specificks against Colick, and Stone, which *Parkinson* says has been confirmed by Experience; a dram of the seed being given in some specifick Vehicle.

VIII. *The Preparations.* The Shops keep nothing of it, but you may make, 1. *A Pouder of the Seed.* 2. *A Sulphureous Tincture.* 3. *A Saline Tincture.* 4. *A Chymical Oil of the Seed.* 5. *An Essence of the Herb.* 6. *A Bath of the Herb.*

*The Virtues.*

IX. *The Pouder of the Seed.* It powerfully expels Wind, is good against Gripping of the Bowels and Colick, and expels Sand and Gravel from the Reins and Bladder: it also strengthens the Stomach, and causeth a good Digestion.

X. *The Sulphureous Tincture.* It is made of the Seed, and is Stomack and Carminative, good against pains of Head, Stomach and Belly: helps in the Vertigo, and cures a violent Flux. Dose from one Dram to two Drams in some fit Vehicle.

XI. *The Saline Tincture.* It is made both of Seed and Herb, and has all the virtues of the former: besides which it is an excellent thing against most Diseases of the lower Ventricle: it powerfully opens all Obstructions, and expels both Wind and Water out of the Bowels; and has a more singular and Specifick force against Stone and Gravel, whether in the Reins or Bladder, or any other matter obstructing those parts. The Dose is from half a dram to a dram, or dram and half in White Wine.

XII. *The Chymical Oil.* It gives present ease in the Stone and stoppage of Urine, if given from six drops to twelve in a Glas of White Wine, or Parsley or Arsmart Water. Drop it first into Sugar, which mix well together, and then mix it with the Liquor, and so let it be taken morning and evening. It provokes Urine powerfully, gives immediate ease in the Pain, expels the Gravel, and is an admirable thing against the Colick.

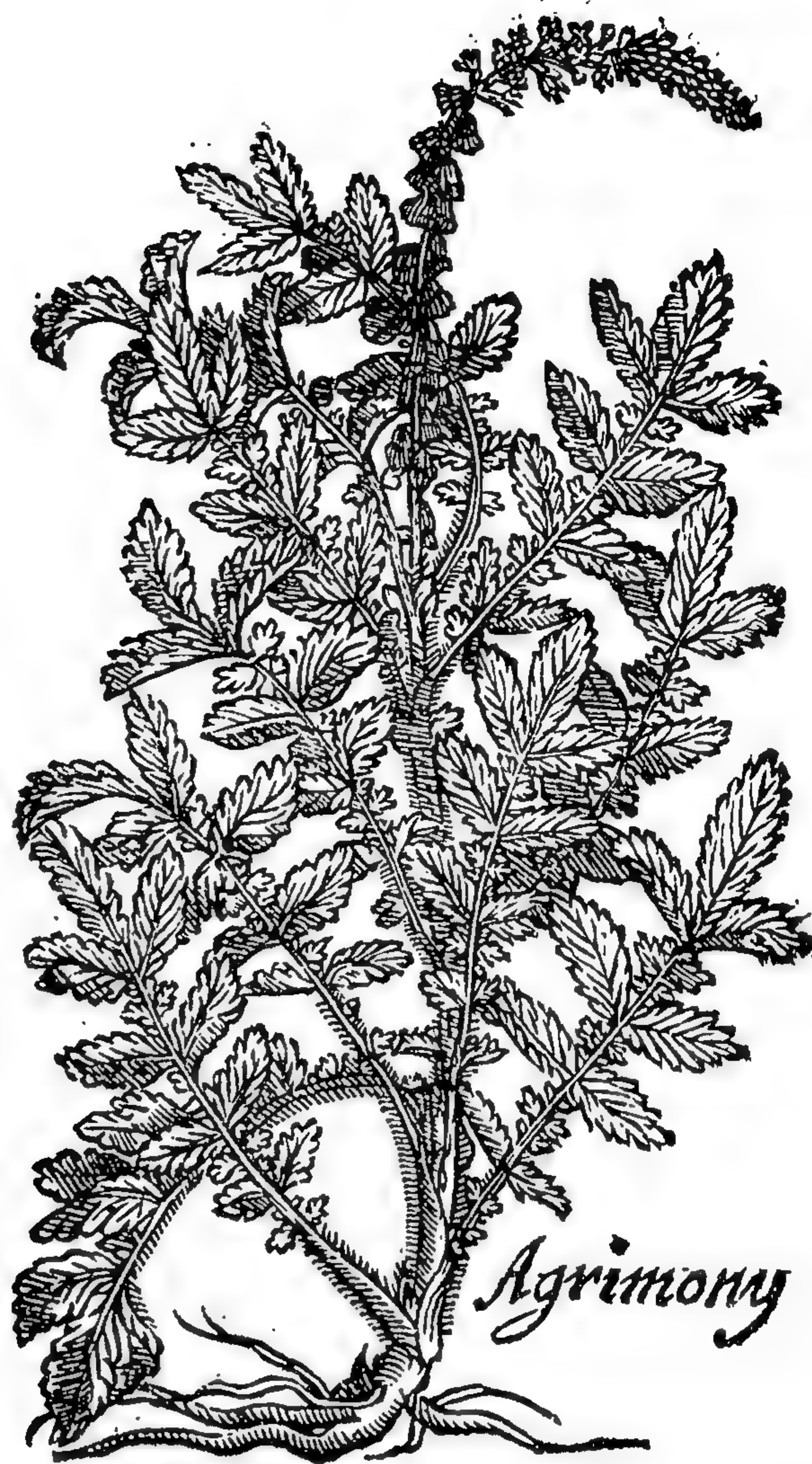
XIII. *The Essence.* It has the Virtues of the Seed, but not altogether so powerful: daily taken, it strengthens the Stomach, and is good against the Scurvy in a cold Habit of Body: Dose one Spoonful or better, in Ale, Beer, Wine, or in some proper Water.

XIV. *The Bath.* It is made of the Herb boiled in a sufficient quantity of Water, in which a little Castile or Venice, or Genoua Soap is dissolved. It opens the Pores, cleanses the Skin, and is good against a Rheumatism, and pains of the Bowels and Joints, by sit-

ting for some time in the Bath something more than Blood Warm, and several times repeating of the same.

CHAP. III.

Of AGRIMONY Common and Bastard.



I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Arabick *Gnaphat*, *Gnatzfat*: in Greek *Ευπατόριον*. (of *Eupator* the first Founder of it, as *Pliny* saith:) in Latin *Eupatorium*, *Hepatorium* (as being good for the Liver,) *Agrimonia*: and in English *Agrimony*. The *Bastard Agrimony* knows no Greek name: and is called in Latin *Agrimonoides*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is accounted amongst the number of Spiked Plants, and has several Species; as, 1. *The Common Agrimony.* 2. *The Bastard.* 3. *The Water Agrimony*, which is both male and female. The Common again is either sweet scented, or not sweet scented.

III. *The Description.* Common Agrimony has a root black, long, and somewhat Woody, abiding many years, and shooting out afresh every Spring; from which arises one stalk somewhat hoary and whitish, hard and round, half a yard high (plus minus) from whence comes forth divers long Leaves, some greater, some lesser, set upon a stalk, all of them dented about the edges, somewhat greyish underneath, and hairy withall: and from the main stalk also arises some smaller leaves set here and there; towards the top whereof grows many small yellow flowers, one above another in long spikes, after which comes many rough seeds, hanging down like to small Burrs, which when they are ripe, will catch hold and stick upon Garments, or any thing which shall rub against them: the whole Plant is of a pretty pleasing smell.

IV. *The sweet scented or Aromatick* differs little or nothing from the former, except in the smell, so that he that knew the one may certainly know the other; but the Plant is somewhat less, with rounder and whiter leaves, and the root of a darkish red, but the taste



and smell of this much surpasses the common, as being Aromaticall and Astringent.

V. The Agrimonoides, or Bastard Agrimony has a root small, reddish and Woody, abiding all the Winter, from whence arises many long, soft and hairy Leaves next the Ground, every one upon a long hairy Footstalk, which are cut and divided into many parts and Leaves, seven for the most part, three on each side, and one at the end, but having some smaller ones between them, much like to Common Agrimony, yet somewhat rounder than they, and all of them smaller dented, and sharper pointed, of a dark green Colour on the upper side, and Greyish underneath. Amidst these Leaves rises up several Stalks, not fully standing upright, but leaning downwards, on which are placed very sparingly such like Leaves as before described, but smaller and rounder, with small pieces at the joints of every of them. At the Top comes forth three or four hairy green husks like Cups, dented at the Brims, out of which comes forth a small yellow Flower, like to Common Agrimony, yet sometimes scarcely appear above the husks, in which, after they are fallen and past, small long and round Seeds appear like Grains of Wheat, two standing together, like to small Lumps, which fall out of the husks themselves when they are ripe, leaving the husk empty and gaping. The Taste of the Plant is bitter and absterging, and smells like sweet Agrimony.

VI. The Places. The Common grows near the sides of Hedges in Meadows, and by Borders of Groves and Copses, in most parts of England and Germany, and in many other Countreys: I have found both the Common and sweet Scented, growing Wild in the Plantations of South Carolina. The sweet Scented grows with us only in Gardens, but is Natural to Italy in many Places.

VII. The Bastard is found in some places of this Land by dry Ditch sides, where the Earth is light, hollow, loose and sandy: Columna found it in Naples: and Bauhinus says he found it in many Places of Italy: It grows generally in Untill'd places, among Briars, Brambles, and such like.

VIII. The Times. The Common and Sweet Scented Flower in July and August, and their Seed is ripe in a short time after; but in warmer Climates it comes to its Perfection much sooner, The Bastard Flowers in April and May, and comes to Perfection the latter end of May, or beginning of June, and the Seed is ripe soon after.

IX. The Qualities. They are all of them hot and dry in the first Degree, but the Aromatick something hotter. They are Discussive, Aperitive, Cleansing, a little Astringent, Traumatick or Vulnerary, and Strengthening: And by appropriation, Stomatick, Hepatick, Splenetick, and Nephritick: and of the stock of Alteratives.

X. The Specification. They are Specificks in curing old Ulcers, Pissing Blood, and the Hepatick Flux: and indeed are good against most Diseases of the Liver, for which reason they are accounted Noble Hepaticks: The Bastard is said to be excellent in drying up Catarrhs, its Fume (burnt green) being received into the Mouth and Throat by a Funnel.

XI. The Preparations. The Shops keep of the Common Agrimony, 1. The dried Leaves and Tops. 2. A Distilled Water of the whole Plant, gathered in June. 3. A Syrup of the Juice. But besides these you may make from all the Plants, the following Preparations. 4. An Inspissate or Liquid Juice of Leaves and Flowers. 5. An Essence of the whole green Plant. 6. A Pouder. 7. A Sulphureous Tincture. 8. A Saline Tincture. 9. An Oily Tincture. 10. A Balsam. 11. A Fixed Salt of the whole Plant Calcined.

### The Virtues.

XII. The dried Leaves and Tops. They are Hepatick, and good against any inward weakness of the Bowels; and are kept mostly to make Infusions, Decoctions, Wines of, &c

XIII. The Distilled Water. It is used as a Vehicle, to give any other of the Preparations of this Herb in, in any of the following Cases: Dose is from ij. ounces to iv. or vj.

XIV. The Syrup. It is an excellent Pectoral, good against Coughs, Colds, Asthma's, Wheezings, and most other Distempers of the Brest and Lungs; and is commended against the Rickets in Children. Dose from j. ounce to ij. morning, noon, and night.

XV. The Juice Liquid and Inspissate. It Powerfully opens Obstructions of all the Viscera, and has all the Virtues of the Essence: The Liquid may be given from ij. ounces to iv. in a Glass of Wine: The Inspissate to iij. drams, dissolved in Wine, and so taken fasting.

XVI. The Essences of the whole Plants. They are approved to be good against Putrefaction of the Blood, Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and other Viscera; against the yellow, black, and green Jaundice, Dropsies, (by strengthening the Bowels and parts affected, after Purges and Diureticks) inward Wounds and Bruises, bitings and stings of Serpents or other Venomous Creatures, the Flux of the Liver, Strangury, Colick, Coughs, Asthma's, Diseases of the Brest and Stomach, salt and thin Catarrhs, all sorts of Agues, Palsies, pains of the Spleen and Hypochonders, the Plague or Pestilence, bitings of mad Dogs, Greenickness, Tertian and Quartan Agues. They contribute much, being taken inwardly, to the healing of old Sores, and long continued Rebellious and running Ulcers. Dose is from iij. drams to j. ounce, in Wine, Mead, Cyder or Ale: Dropt into foul running Ears it cures them; and dropt into the Eyes it strengthens the Eye-sight. They stop all Fluxes of the Bowels and Fluxes of Blood, open Obstructions of the Reins, and Urinary Passages. Taken Dietetically they are Traumatick or Vulnerary.

XVII. The Pouder is made of the dried Herbs. Being applyed it stops Bleeding in Wounds of any Part: If it is thus Compounded it will be better. Take of the Pouder of the dried Herbs, j. ounce; Catechu, Pouder of Toads, Man's Blood dried and Pouder'd, of each half an ounce; mix them for a Pouder to stop Bleeding internally or externally, which it does incomparably: It dries up Catarrhs, and is good against the Dropsy. Dose from half a dram to a dram, at night.

XVIII. The Sulphureous Tincture. It has all the Virtues of the Essence, besides which it is more drying and healing. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams. It strengthens the Stomach admirably, resists Vomiting, and causes a good Digestion.

XIX. The Saline Tincture. It has also all the Virtues of the Essence, but is much more powerful against all obstructions of the Viscera, as Liver, Spleen, Womb, Reins, &c. It opens the stoppages of the Urinary Passages, bringing away Sand, Gravel, Filth, Matter and Slime. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams or more. Outwardly it is good against old Sores, running Ulcers, inveterate Scabs, Cankers, and the like in any part of the Body.

XX. The Oily Tincture. It cures Palsies, Lame-ness, Numbness, and all Pains and Aches, proceeding from a cold Cause: it gives ease in the Sciatica, and helps the cold Gout; it strengthens the Nerves, Muscles, Vessels and Weakned Joints, after Dislocations, and stops a Flux of Blood in any Part. Inwardly taken it is good against the Colick, Gravel, Stone,



Stone, and obstruction of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, and may be given from x. drops to xx. in a Glass of White Wine.

XXI. *The Balsam.* It cures green Wounds sometimes at first dressing, more especially if to ij. ounces hereof, half an ounce of Balsam de Chili is mixed, and so applied to the Part, the Blood and Filth being first washed away with a little Spirit of Wine or Brandy. It cures also old Sores, Ulcers, Scurf, Morpew, inveterate Scabs, stubborn and rebellious Fistula's, and other like affects of the fleshy parts. It draws forth Nails, Thorns, and Splinters of Wood, or other things gotten into the Flesh, strengthening much the Nerves, Ligaments and Joynts; it is a singular thing to cure wounds of the Head.

XXII. *The Fixed Salt.* It Purifies the Blood and Viscera by Urine, destroys the Acidities of the Lungs, and the acritude of the first Digestions, Fevers, &c. Dose is j. scruple or more, in any fit Vehicle.

## CHAP. IV.

### Of Water AGRIMONY the Male Kind.

#### *Water Agrimony male.*



I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Εὐπατόριον ἑνυδάριον ἢ ἀγρίμονον γένος*, In Latin, *Eupatorium aquaticum mas*, *Eupatorium Cannabinum mas*, *Agrimonia aquatica mas*: In English, *Water Agrimony Male*, also *Agrimony Hemp-like*, and by Gerrard, *Dutch Agrimony*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is of the third Species of *Agrimony*; and of the *Water Kind* it is the first, which is the *Male*, of which it is the *Genus* to

three other Kinds, viz. 1. Our *English Male Water Agrimony*. 2. The *New-England*, or *Hemp-like Agrimony*. 3. The *Virginian Kind*.

III. *The Description.* The Root is full of thready strings of a mean Bigness; from whence spring up long round Stalks and somewhat reddish, about a Yard high or more, which are beset with long green Leaves, indented about the edges; whereof you shall commonly see five or seven, hanging upon one Stem, like Hemp Leaves, but yet softer. The Flowers are Little, of a pale reddish Colour, consisting of Round soft Tufts, which stand upon the top of the Sprigs, and at length vanish away into Down.

IV. *The New-England Kind*, is like the former, but has a hairy brittle Stalk, and narrow Leaves, some dented, and some not, two, three, or four Inches long a Piece, and half an Inch broad, or less: the Flowers consist of Mossie pale Threads on every Branch, out of small green Husks or Heads, which with the Seeds is almost insensibly carried away with the Wind, so that one would think it to have no Seed at all.

V. *The Virginian* has a great, hard, solid, brown, round Stalk, of three, four, or five Foot high, is wonderfully full of Long Branches, from the bottom, set with Joynts, spotted red, on the younger green ones, with large green Leaves on them, having below five Leaves on a Stalk, those upwards but three, yet larger than the former; the Flowers and Seed are also larger, not rough but smooth, blackish, and flat, without sharpness of Taste.

VI. *The Places.* The *English* grows about the brinks of Ditches, and in Plashe, as also on the edges of wet Grounds, and standing and running Waters, almost every where.

VII. *The Times.* It Flowers in July and August; and in Winter the Stalks and Leaves wither away, but the Root is said to continue.

VIII. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the first Degree: Is Aperitive, Absterfive, and Vulnerary: It is by appropriation *Hepatick* and *Splenetic*; and of the number of *Alteratives*. But the Root as *Gesner* thinks is *Emetic*.

IX. *The Specification.* I am Informed by a Worthy Gentleman, that it particularly cures the *Kings-Evil*, and all sorts of *Ulcers* and *Fistula's*: which peculiar properties he knew it had by Experience.

X. *The Preparations.* The Shops keep nothing hereof; but you may Prepare therefrom, 1. *A Juice*. 2. *A Pouder of the Herb*. 3. *A Decoction*. 4. *A Balsam*. 5. *A Sulphureous Tincture*. 6. *A Saline Tincture*. 7. *An Oily Tincture*. 8. *An Essence*. 9. *A Fixed Salt*. 10. *A Wine of the Root*.

#### *The Virtues.*

XI. *The Juice.* It attenuates and makes thin gross Humors, cleanses and purifies the Blood, is good against the *Scrophula* in Men, and the *Rickets* in Children. Dose from j. Ounce to iij. mixt with Ale or Wine, in the Morning Fasting: It is also good against *Tertian Agues*.

XII. *The Pouder.* It has the same Virtues, and may be given from j. dram to ij. drams, Morning and Evening, in a Glass of new Beer or Wine.

XIII. *The Decoction.* It is *Traumatick*, more especially if to every Pint of it ij. or iij. ounces of strong Cinnamon Water be added; and then be drunk Morning and Evening from iv. ounces to viij. ounces.

XIV. *The Balsam.* The Juice being inspissate to the thickness of new Honey, is mixt with an equal quantity of Turpentine, and Incorporated with a little Oil, over a gentle Fire. It is *Vulnerary*, and cleanses and heals Wounds, either inward or outward; admirably.

XV. *The*



XV. *The Sulphureous Tincture.* It is a singular Traumatick, and effectual against Poyson and Malignity. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams.

XVI. *The Saline Tincture.* It is an extraordinary thing against the Kings-Evil, and all Scrophulous Symptoms, as also against the Cachexia, Dropfie, and Rickets in Children, and opens obstructions of the *Viscera*, expelling gross Humors by Urine. Dose from j. dram to iij. drams, in White Wine.

XVII. *The Oily Tincture.* It cleanses Wounds, helps Lameness, strengthens the Sinews, and is of good use against Palsies, Numness, Pains and Aches from a Cold cause, being anointed on the part afflicted, Morning and Night. Inwardly taken from x. drops to xij. or xv. in Wine, or Parsley, or Arsmart Water.

XVIII. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues, cleanses the Blood, and is of good use to such as have scabby and filthy Skins; it takes away hardness of Liver and Spleen, and prevails against the Jaundice: Dose from j. ounce to ij. Wounds and Ulcers being washed therewith, it heals them.

XIX. *The Fixed Salt.* It opens the obstructions of the Reins and Urinary Passages and causes a separation of the Morbifick matter of a Struma, sending it forth by Urine. Dose in Arsmart Water or Wine, from viij. grains to xx.

XX. *The Wine.* Gesner in his Epistles, affirms that a Pugil of the Fibres of the Root, boiled in Wine, and the Wine Drunk, gave him in an hours time one Stool, and afterwards ten Vomits, whereby he cast out much Flegm; that it works (says he) like white Hellebor, but much more easily and safely, and that it did him much good.

## CHAP. V.

### Of Water AGRIMONY, the Female Kind.

I. **THE Names.** It is called in Greek, *Ευπατι-ειον ενυδρον το θηλυ γένος*, In Latin by Fuschius, *Eupatorium Adulterinum*; by Gesner, *Eupatorium Aquaticum*; by Matthiolus, *Eupatorium Vulgare*; by Lobel, *Eupatorium Cannabinum Femina*; by Bauhinus, *Cannabina aquatica folio tripartito diviso*; by Tabermontanus, *Eupatorium Cannabinum Chrysanthemum*; by Dodoneus, *Pseudo-hepatorium Femina*; by Sardus, *Terzola*; and by Camerarius, *Eupatorium Avicennae*; in English, Female Water Agrimony, and Hemp-like Agrimony.

II. *The Kinds.* This is the second Species of Water Agrimony; to wit, the Female Kind, as you may see, chap. 3. Sect. 2. foregoing.

III. *The Description.* The Root consists of many long slender Strings, and is of long continuance, from whence Stalks grow up about two Foot high, or higher, and are of a dark purple Color. The Branches are many; growing at distances nearly equal one from the other; the one from one side of the Stalk, the other from the opposite Point. The leaves are winged, and much indented on the edges. The Flowers grow at the Tops of the Branches, of a brown yellow Color, spotted with black spots, having a Substance within the midst of them, like that of a Daisy. If you rub them between your fingers, they will smell like to Gum Elemi, Rosin or Cedar, when they are burnt. The Seeds are long, and easily stick to any Woollen thing. It plainly differs from our Common Agrimony, because it wants the interposed little Leaves: and its Flowers are much unlike.

IV. *The Places.* It grows in cold Grounds, by Ponds and Ditch sides, as also by running Waters; and sometimes you shall find it to grow in the very Water it self.



V. *The Times.* It Flowers in July and August; and the Seed is ripe not long after the fading of the Flower.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the first Degree: it is opening, cleansing, Pectoral, and Traumatick; and by appropriation is Hepatick, and Pulmonick, or Pectoral; it is Sudorifick and Alterative.

VII. *The Specification.* It is said to be a peculiar cleanser of the Blood; and restorer of its Crasis; and has a singular Property in curing of old Ulcers and Fistula's.

VIII. *The Preparations.* The Shops prepare nothing from it; but there may be made thereof, 1. A Decoction. 2. A Juice. 3. A Balsam of the Juice. 4. An Essence. 5. A Spirituous Tincture, 6. A Saline Tincture. 7. An Oily Tincture. 8. Ashes.

#### The Virtues.

IX. *The Decoction in Wine.* It is Traumatick, and a restorer of the Blood; attenuates and makes thin, gross, tough, and viscous Humors; and is a singular thing against Scabs, Itch, and other Salt Humors, being given from ij. ounces to vj. morning, noon, and night.

X. *The Juice.* It provokes the Terms in Women; and taken with the Juice of Fumitory, rectifies the saltness and sharpness of the Blood: it is good against Scabs, Itch, salt and sharp Humors, Apoplems, &c. Dose from j. ounce to ij. morning, noon, and night.

XI. *The Balsam.* Take of the Juice vj. ounces, Turpentine iij. ounces, Oil ij. ounces, Bees Wax j. ounce, Rosine half an ounce, mix and make a Balsam, by Evaporating to a Consistence, or till the watry part of the Juice is gone. It is an excellent thing, for the curing of Wounds, Ulcers, old running Sores and Fistula's: Fills Ulcers with Flesh, and brings them to a speedy healing: Applied also in the



the Gout, it abates the Tumor, and gives ease in a little time.

XII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is singular good against Agues, taken to the quantity of an ounce: It also heals all green Wounds and old Sores, inwardly taken, and outwardly wash't therewith.

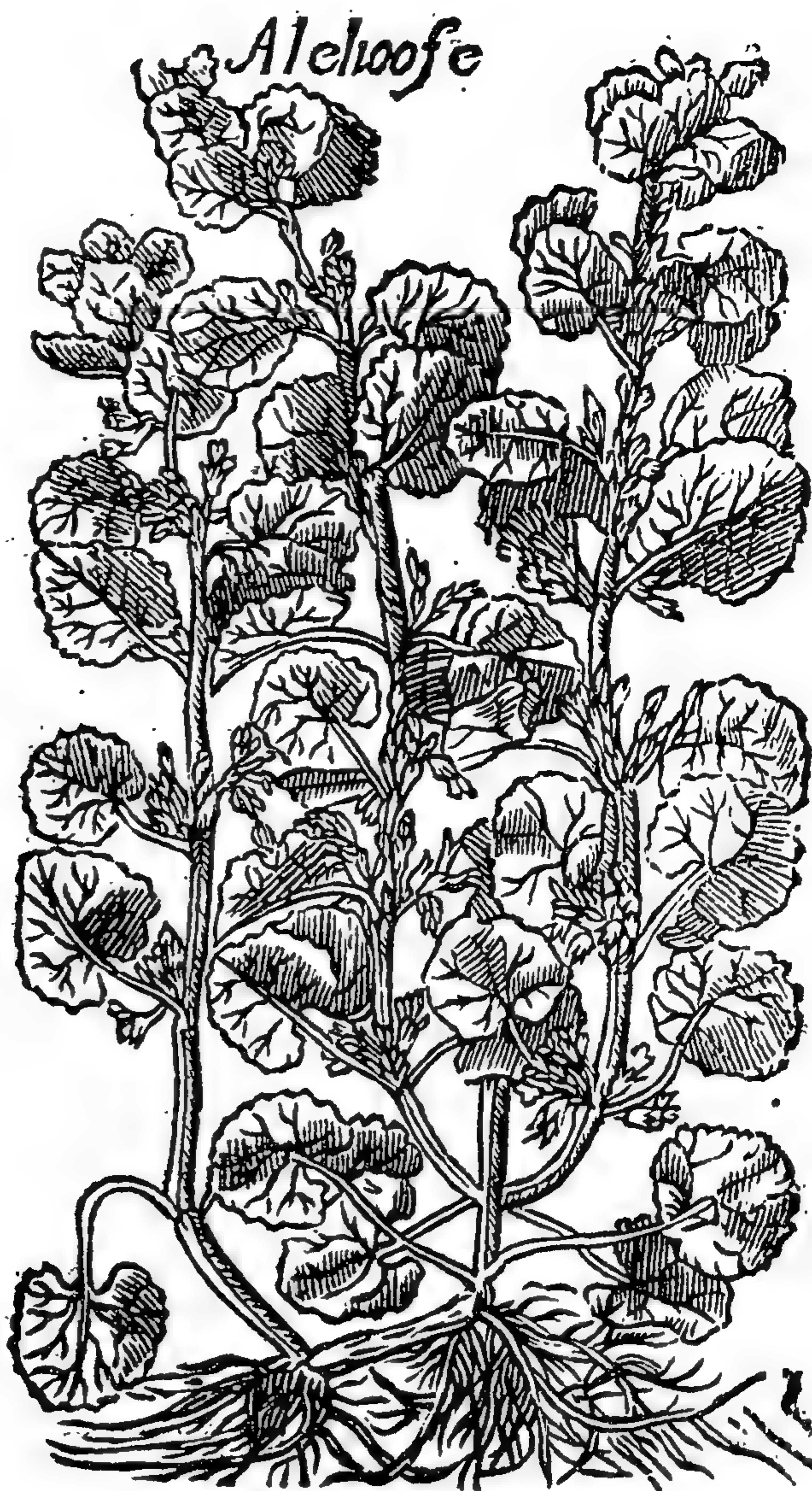
XIII. *The Saline Tincture.* Taken inwardly it is good against the Stone, opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and is good against Leprosies, Cachexies, Dropsie and Yellow Janndice: It removes stoppages of the Lungs, provokes Urine, and prevails against Gravel and Tartarous Matter, whether in the Reins or Bladder. Dose from j. dram to ij. or more, in Ale or Wine.

XIV. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against the Stone in the Reins, being taken from iv. drops to xx. in a Glass of Ale, Wine, or some Nephritick Water, as Parsly, or Arsmart water. Outwardly used, it is of Excellent Service against a Cold Gout, and all manner of Aches and Pains proceeding from a Cold Cause, in what part of the Body soever; it warms and Comforts the Part, and prevents a Gangrene and Sphacelus; and is good against Scurf, Morpew, Itch and the like, being anointed on the Part.

XV. *The Essence.* It is Traumatick, and an excellent thing to open Obstructions of the *Visera*, cleanse the Blood, and heal Ulcers of the Lungs, and has been approved of by some to be good against the Leprosie, inwardly taken from j. ounce to ij. twice a day in some proper Vehicle: things proper being also outwardly applyed for the same purpose.

XVI. *The Fixed Salt.* It Dissolves Tartar in the Blood, and Urinary Passages, absorbs and evaporates sharp and malign Humors, which are the cause of Scabs, Itch, Leprosy, and other breakings out of the Skin: it also cuts and makes thin those Humours which are tough and thick. Dose j. Scruple in a Glass of White Wine.

*Lips which hang down: the whole Plant is of a strong Smell and bitterish Taste.*



IV. *The lesser Alehoof is altogether like the former, save that the Leaves are every way smaller, the Flowers of a paler blew colour; the Plant it self is shorter or grows lower, but more upright.*

V. *The Mountain Alehoof is like the first kind, but yet larger in all the parts thereof, as Stalks, Branches, Leaves and Flowers; but the Leaves are more rough and hairy, and the Flowers of a more deep purple colour.*

## CHAP. VI.

### Of ALEHOOF, Great, Small, &c.

I. **T**HE Names. This Plant is called in Greek, *Χαμαίκιστος*, *ἡ Κισσὸς γαϊώδης*, *ἡ Κισσὸς χερσαία*. In Latin, *Hedera terrestris*, *Chamaecissus*, *Corona Terra*: and in English, *Ground-Ivy*, *Alehoof*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are four sorts, 1. The Common Ground Ivy, or Alehoof, called *Χαμαίκιστος μέγας*, *ἡ τῆς εἰσῆς*. *Hedera terrestris*, *Corona Terra*, common or large Ground Ivy, or Alehoof. 2. *Χαμαίκιστος μικρός*, *Hedera terrestris Minor*, the lesser Ground Ivy. 3. *Hedera terrestris montana*, Mountain Ground Ivy. 4. *Hedera terrestris Saxatilis*, Stone Alehoof, or Ground Ivy.

III. *The Description.* The large Alehoof has a very large and thready Root, from which rises many Stalks of an uncertain height, from 8. to 14. or 15. Inches long, it being but a low Herb, creeping and spreading upon the Ground, hither and thither, all about: the Stalks are slender, something cornered, and green, sometimes a little reddish: from whence grow Leaves somewhat broad and round, hairy, and a little nicked in the edges, for the most part, two Leaves out of every Joynt. At the Joynts likewise with the Leaves, towards the end of the Branches come forth hollow long Flowers, gaping at the ends, of a blewish purple colour, not much unlike to those, of *Germander*, with white spots upon the Label or



VI. *The Stone Alehoof creeps and spreads all about the Ground, with its slender weak Branches, set with Leaves like the former by couples, but larger and*



and more unevenly dented, or rather waved at the edges: the Flowers which stand at the Joints with the Leaves, are longer, the hoods larger, and of a paler purplish colour than the former.

VII. *The Places.* The first sort grows under Hedges, and by Ditch sides, High-ways, and by Houses, in shaded Lanes, and the borders of Meadows, and other waste Grounds in most places of the Kingdom. The second kind is found at the feet of old Trees in England and Germany, and many times in old Orchards. The Mountain grows upon Hills and Mountains. The last kind grows in Narbone and Provence in France; and in some places of Somersetshire, as Lobel says.

VIII. *The Times.* They all begin to Flower in April, and continue flowering for a long time, even till the Summer is far spent, and remain green not only in Summer, but also in Winter, and abiding the Winter, if it is not too vehement or sharp.

IX. *The Qualities.* They are all of one nature, hot and dry in the first degree: but the two latter are dry in the second degree. They are Aperitive, Absterfive, Bechick, Attenuaters and Vulnerary: by Appropriation, they are Pectoral, Nephritick and Arthritick: and operate only as Alteratives.

X. *The Specification.* They are peculiar against vehement Coughs and Catarrhs: the Mountain prevails against the Gout, and the Saxatile against Stone and Gravel.

XI. *The Preparations.* The Shops have only the Herb and Flower; but from them you may prepare, 1. A Juice. 2. An Infusion. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Syrup. 5. A Mixture. 6. A Conserve. 7. A Lohoch. 8. An Ale. 9. A Powder. 10. Troches. 11. A Balsam. 12. A Cataplasma. 13. An Essence. 14. A Spirituous Tincture. 15. A Saline Tincture. 16. An Oily Tincture. 17. A Distilled Water. 18. A Spirit. 19. An Extract. 20. A Fixed Salt. 21. An Ophthalmick.

#### The Virtues.

XII. *The Juice.* It is bitter, cleansing and opening the Obstructions of the Viscera: put into the Ears, it helps the Noise in them, as also their Ringing and Deafness, and is profitable against the Jaundice, Catarrhs and Rheumatisms; it has Cured many (says *Hollerius*) at point of Death. Dose from j. ounce to iv. ounces, according to Age and Strength.

XIII. *The Infusion.* Made in fair Water, or a weak Lime Water, and Drank three or four times a day, from iv. to viij. ounces, it Cures Coughs, Colds, Spittings and Wheezings.

XIV. *The Decoction.* It is a good Vulnerary and Bechick, more especially if ij. ounces of Spirit of Wine or Brandy be added to every pint thereof: it disposes old Sores, running Ulcers and Fistula's to a healing. Dose from iij. ounces to vj. 3. or 4. times a day. This Decoction mixt with Honey and a little burnt Alum, is good to wash Sore and Ulcerated Mouths, as also Ulcers in the Privy parts of Man or Woman.

XV. *The Syrup.* It is peculiar against an old Cough, and other Distempers of the Breast and Lungs, as Catarrhs, Wheezings, Asthma's, Ulcers of the Lungs, spitting of Blood, &c. Let it be often taken with a Liquorice Stick: or it may be taken a large spoonful at a time, as oft as need requires.

XVI. *The Mixture.* Take of the Juice ij. ounces, Honey j. ounce, burnt Alum iij. drams, purified Verdigrise half a dram, mix them well together: It Cures Sore Mouths and Throats, Ulcers of the Gums and Tonfils, as also other Ulcers and running Sores in other parts of the Body.

XVII. *The Conserve.* It opens the Breast and Lungs, and gives relief in Coughs, Colds, shortness of Breath, Wheezings, and foreness of Breast and Stomach.

XVIII. *The Lohoch.* It is made of the clarified Juice, mixed with clarified Honey in equal proportions: and is good against the most vehement and violent Coughs, very powerful against Phthicks, or Ulcerations of the Lungs, causing a speedy healing; let it be taken with a Liquorish Stick oftentimes in a day.

XIX. *The Ale.* You may put iij. large handfuls of the green Herb to every Gallon of Ale, whilst Working: it is said to clarify and make fine the Drink in about 24 hours time, from whence came the name of *Ale-hoof*, or *Tun-hoof*; and in old Time supplied the use of Hops: it makes the Drink very opening and Diuretick.

XX. *The Powder.* It is made of the dried Leaves, and is given from half a dram to a dram: it may be taken in iv. or v. ounces of its own distilled Water; it is said to Cure the Yellow Jaundice in 7. or 8. days, and in 40. or 50. days the Sciatica.

XXI. *The Troches.* They are made of the Powder foregoing, with Ising-glass and white Sugar Candy: and are of excellent Use against Coughs, Colds, Phthicks, Consumptions, Wheezings and shortness of Breath, being held often in the Mouth, and suffered gradually to dissolve, the Sick also drinking Milk every day, in a pretty large quantity.

XXII. *The Balsam.* It is made of the Juice Boiled to the thickness of new Honey 4 Ounces, mixed with Turpentine of Chio, and Oil of sweet Almonds, of each ij. Ounces. It heals green Wounds, running Sores, old Ulcers, Fistula's, &c. after an admirable manner, being applied to the Part.

XXIII. *The Cataplasma.* Take Turpentine ij. ounces, Yolks of three new-laid Eggs, mix them well together, then add of the green Herb, cut small and beaten in a Mortar, iij. large handfuls, mix and apply it; it gives excellent relief in the Gout, and other Pains of the Joints; applied hot to the Region of the Liver or Spleen, it eases their Pains: and upon the Abdomen, it is said to be a present Remedy in the Colick.

XXIV. *The Essence.* It is excellent good against weak and aching Backs, Coughs, Wheezings, Asthma's, shortness of Breath, spitting Blood, Ulcers of the Lungs; and is singular good for all Wounds, inward or outward, it cleanses and rarifies, and is good against any griping Pains, or windy Cholerick Humors in Stomach, Spleen or Belly: it helps the Yellow Jaundice, by opening the Obstructions of the Viscera, and is good against Poison and Plague: it provokes Urine, and the Terms in Women; and being Drunk with Wine for some considerable time, it is said to Cure the Sciatica, as also the Gout in Hands, Knees or Feet, dissolves and disperses the Peccant Humors, and so gives ease. Dose from j. ounce to ij. ounces in Wine, Mead, &c.

XXV. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It prevails against Catarrhs, coldness of the Stomach, spitting Blood, Wind, Pains, Gripings, and other like Difficulties of Stomach, Liver, Spleen and Bowels. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams, in its own distilled Water, or other fit Vehicle.

XXVI. *The Saline Tincture.* It helps the Yellow Jaundice, opens Obstructions of the Viscera, provokes Urine and the Courses, facilitates the Birth, expels Poison and the Plague, and has all the Virtues of the Essence, but operates more by Urine. Dose from j. dram to ij. in any fit Liquor.

XXVII. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good for the Sciatica or Hip Gout, as also the Gout in any other Part, proceeding from a cold Cause, being anointed very hot upon the part twice a day.

XXVIII. *The*



XXVIII. *The Distilled Water.* It is made from the Green Herb in *April* or *May*, and used chiefly as a Vehicle with most of the former Preparations.

XXIX. *The Spirit.* It is made of the Fermented Juice, and is of singular Use against the Scurvy, whether in a hot or cold Constitution; it strengthens the Stomach, and causes a good Appetite. Dose from half an ounce to j ounce, mixt with Wine, or with the Syrup of the Juice.

XXX. *The Extract.* It Cures Diseases of the Brest and Lungs, and opens Obstructions of the Reins and Womb. Dose j. dram or more, dissolved in Sack. It contributes as a Traumatick to the healing of Wounds and Ulcers.

XXXI. *The Fixed Salt.* It is Diuretick and Nephritick, opens Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, dissolves Tartarous Humors in those parts, or in the other *Viscera*, and is found by Experience to be good against Stones, Sand, Gravel, &c. being given from xij. grains to xxiiij. in its own distilled Water, Parsley Water, Arsmart or Onion Water, and repeated twice a day.

XXXII. *The Ophthalmick, or Eye-Wash.* R. Juice of Alehoof iij. ounces, Juice of Celandine, Juice of Daisies, Rose Water, Honey, of each j. ounce, mix and dissolve, then drop it into the Eyes: It helps all Inflammations, Spots, Pin and Web, Itch, Smarting, and most other Disaffections of that part; and Cures, tho' almost Blind. Use it 5 or 6 times a day, or oftner.

CHAP. VII.

of ALEXANDERS.



I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *ἵπποσελίνον*, *ἢ Σμύρνον*. in Latin *Hippocelinum*, *Smyrnum*, *Equapium*, *Oliv atrum* (from making the Potage black:) in English *Alexanders*, *Alifanders*, and *Horse Parsley*.

II. *The Kinds, or Species.* It seems to be a Spe-

cies of the *Apia* or *Parsleys*; this being the largest of all, and therefore called *Hippocelinum* or *Horse-Parsley*. This Species is said to be twofold, 1. The *Common* or *English Alexanders*. 2. The *Cretick*, or that which grows in *Candy*, but with us in some Gardens.

III. *The Description.* The Root is great, thick and long, blackish on the outside, and white within, of a hot and bitterish Taste, spreading under Ground. From thence rises up a Stalk or Stalks, thick and round, a Yard high, more or less, with sundry Leaves on them, parted into smaller divisions: from the Joints issue Branches, from whence, upon foot Stalks, proceed Leaves, cut out into many parts, somewhat resembling *Smallage*, but greater, broader and rounder, and more cut in about the edges, smooth also, and of a deep green colour, having a somewhat hot and spicy Taste, and a little bitter withal. At the extremities of these Branches, grow large tufts or umbles of white Flowers: after which come great blackish Seed, almost round, but a little straked on the back, of a hot Taste, not much unlike that of the Root.

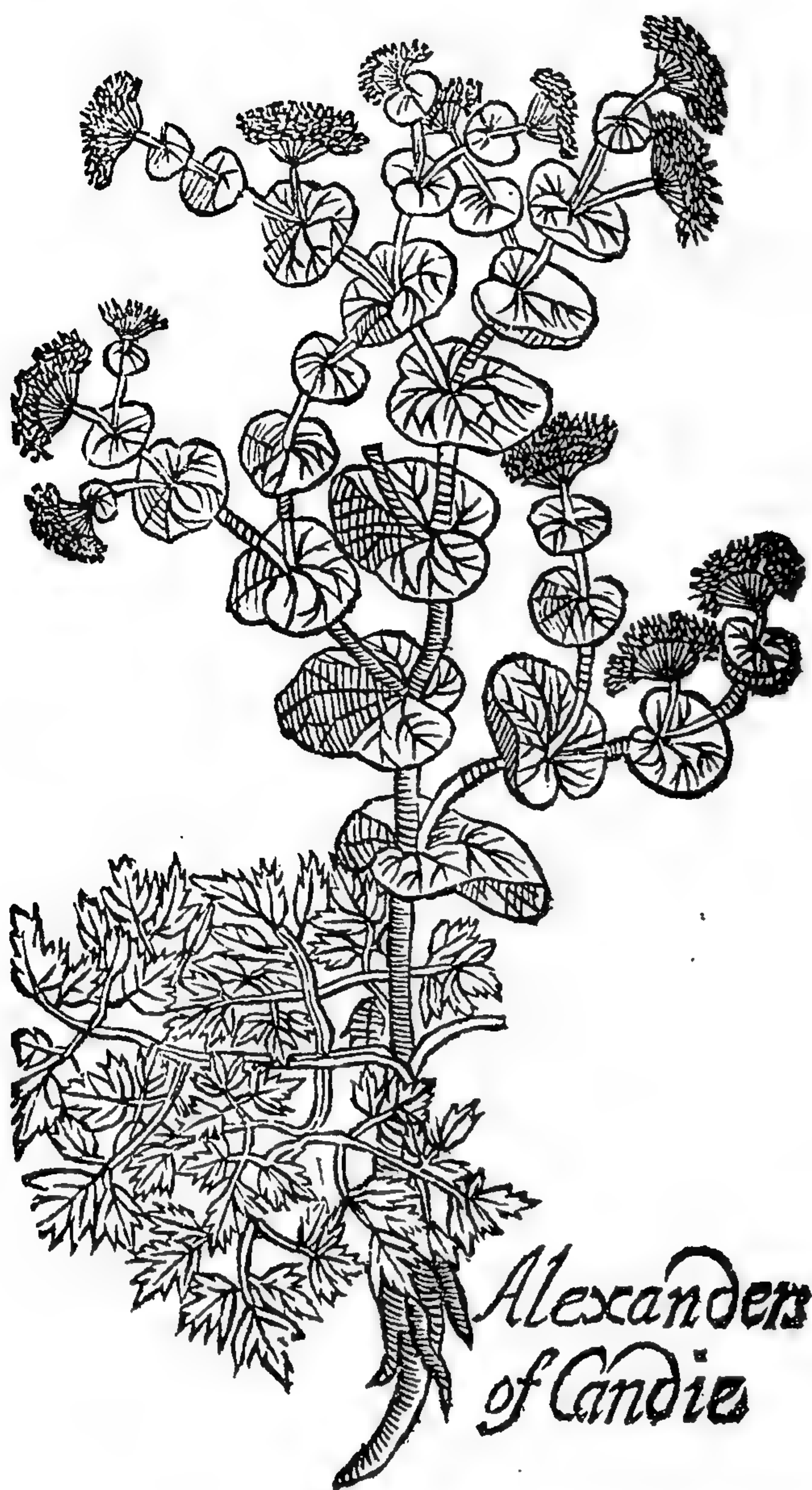
SMYRN-VM.



IV. *The Cretick or Candy Alexanders* has a Root almost round, yet a little long withal, white on the outside, which afterwards grows thicker and longer, and greatest at top, ending small, and perishing after it has born Seed. From whence rises up Leaves like some kind of *Selinum*, the whole Leaf being large, and more divided into smaller parts than the former, as if it were some great *Parsley*, of a dark green shining colour, and dented about the edges, from the midst of which Leaves rises up a Stalk, round and stiff, firm and not hollow, 4 feet high or higher, having commonly at all its Joints whole and almost round Leaves, yet something longer than round, and here and there cut in on the edges, of a yellowish green colour, which do not so much compass the Stalk, at the bottom of them, as that the Stalk in a manner grows through them: from the Joints likewise rise sundry Branches, with the like yellowish round Leaves on them, and the Stalks running thro' them to the top, resembling *Through-wax*, or *Through-leaf*; where stand thick tufts



*tufts or umbles of yellowish Flowers, which afterwards yield small round blackish Seed, about the bigness of Radish Seed.*



V. *The Places.* They are commonly Sown in Gardens throughout all *Europe*, but the first is also found Wild in several Places in *England*, as at *Prestholm*, an Island on the North of *Anglesey*; on the Rocks near the Sea-shoars in many places, in some places on the Rocks near the *Scotch* Shoars, not far from *Berwick*, and about *Scarborough* Castle.

VI. *The Time.* It Flowers in *June* and *July*, and the Seed becomes ripe in *August*: But *Gerard* will have it, that the Seed is not ripe till the second year, which I confess I have not observed. Yet being an annual Plant, I see not why its Seed should not be annual.

VII. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the third degree: Attenuating, Carminative, Diuretick and Lithontriptick: by Appropriation, it is Stomackick, Hysterick and Nephritick; and operates as an Alterative.

VIII. *The Specification.* It effectually provokes Urine, helps the Strangury, and prevails against Gravel and Tartarous Matter in Reins and Bladder.

IX. *The Preparations.* The Shops keep nothing of this Plant. But you may prepare from it, 1. A Powder from the Seed. 2. A Decoction of the Roots and Leaves. 3. An Expressed Juice. 4. A Conditte of the Roots. 5. A Balsam of the Juice or green Herb. 6. A Cataplasme. 7. A Distilled Water of the Plant. 8. An Oil of the Seed. 9. A Spirit from the Seed or Plant. 10. A Spirituous Tincture. 12. An Oily Tincture. 13. A Salt from the whole Plant. 14. An Essence.

#### *The Virtues.*

X. *The Powder from the Seed.* Being taken from half a dram to j. dram in white Port or Rhenish Wine, or distilled Water of the Plant, it powerfully provokes the Terms, expels the Birth, moves U-

rine, helps the Strangury and Cholick, breaks Wind, and is good against the bitings of Serpents, Mad Dogs, or other Venomous Creatures.

XI. *The Decoction.* It opens Obstructions, provokes Urine and cleanses the Blood admirably: it is good also for such as have stoppages in their Urine, or are troubled with the Strangury. Dose from iv. to viij. ounces.

XII. *The Expressed Juice.* Given from iij. to vj. ounces mixt with Rhenish Wine, or white Port, it is a Specifick against Stone and Gravel, eases the Strangury, and brings away Urine or Matter obstructing the Urinary passages, when almost all other things fail.

XIII. *The Conditte, or Pickled Roots.* They are Eaten raw as a Sallet, with Oil, Vinegar and Pepper: they strengthen the Stomach, create a good Appetite, cause Digestion, resist Crudities, and expel Tartarous and Viscous Juices from the Stomach.

XIV. *The Balsam.* It is an excellent Vulnerary, curing all sorts of green Wounds in a short time: it cleanses running Sores, and old rotten and putrified Ulcers, and causes them speedily to heal.

XV. *The Cataplasme.* It is made of the bruised Leaves, and applied hot to the part afflicted: being made of the Leaves boiled, it dries up old Sores and fatid Ulcers, without any pain, and heals them; and either discusses or maturates Scrophulous Tumors: if it is made of the raw Herb, beaten in a Mortar with the Yolks of Eggs, and applied cold, it stops bleeding in Wounds new made.

XVI. *The Distilled Water.* It may be Distilled either from the Seed, or from the whole green Plant: it is a Specifick against Gravel and stoppage of Urine.

XVII. *The Distilled Oil of the Seed.* It is given from iij. drops to x. in any convenient Vehicle, and comforts and warms a cold Stomach, strengthens it, causes a good Appetite and Digestion, expels Wind, gives ease in the Colick, provokes the Terms in Women, and facilitates the Birth; opens Obstructions of the Brest, Lungs, Liver, Spleen, Reins and Womb, helps shortness of Breath, and comforts the Head, Brain and Nerves, being singular good against Megrims, Vertigo's, Lethargies, Apoplexies, Palsies, Convulsions, and the like; you may give it in Extremity, as also morning and evening.

XVIII. *The Spirit.* It is weaker than the Oil, but much pleasanter, and has all the same Virtues, but operates not in so powerful a manner. It is Carminative and Cordial, and given against fainting Fits. Dose j. ounce.

XIX. *The Spirituous Tincture.* The Virtues are the same with the Oil, but more penetrating; and is indeed much more powerful than the Spirit, for that it abounds much more with the Sulphur of the Vegetable: it may be given in the distilled Water, from j. dram to iij. drams, morning and night.

XX. *The Saline Tincture.* It is a Lithontriptick, or Stone-breaker, opens all Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder; attenuates, cleanses, brings away Sand, Gravel and Tartarous Slime, opens the Womb, provokes the Terms, and strengthens that part, so as to cause Fruitfulness in Women, and brings away both Birth and After-birth: it eases the Spleen, and removes its stoppages. Dose from j. dram to iij. drams.

XXI. *The Oily Tincture.* It has the Virtues of the former, but is particularly good against the Palsie, being outwardly anointed on the part, and inwardly taken from vj. drops to xx. in a fit Vehicle.

XXII. *The Salt of the whole Plant.* It is Diuretick and Nephritick in a peculiar manner, provokes Urine, brings away Sand and Gravel; and is good against Diseases of the Brain and Nerves, by powerfully



fully opening Obstructions. Dose from x. grains to j. scruple, in its own distilled Water.

XXIII. *The Essence.* It prevails against Phlegm, and a Phlegmatick habit of Body, opens Obstructions of the *Viscera*, cleanses and purifies the Blood, warms a cold Stomach, is Carminative, provokes the Courses, and brings away both Birth and After-birth. Dose j. ounce, more or less, according to the Necessity and Age of the Patient, in a Glass of Wine.

## CHAP. VIII. Of ALKANET.



I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Άγχυσα*. in Latin *Anchusa*, *Onocleia*, *Buglossa Hispanica*, and in English *Alkanet*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is said to be a Species of *Bugloss*; but of this there are several kinds, as, 1. The great yellow *Alkanet*, called simply *Άγχυσα*, *Anchusa*. 2. The lesser *Alkanet*, with purple Flowers, called *Άγχυσα έτέρα*, *Anchusa altera*. 3. The small *Alkanet*, with yellow Flowers, called *Άγχυσα τρίτη*, *Anchusa tertia*. 4. *Anchusa Lignosior*, Woody *Alkanet*. 5. *Anchusa humilis Cretica*, Low *Alkanet* of *Candia*. 6. *Anchusa arborea*, Great or Tall *Alkanet*. Of these, we shall only discourse of the three first, as being only useful for our purpose.

III. *The Description.* The first kind has a great and thick Root, of a dark reddish colour, with many Branches from the same. The Leaves are long, narrow, hairy and green, like the Leaves of *Bugloss*, which lye very thick upon the Ground: the Stalks rise up, and are compassed round about thick with Leaves, which are lesser and narrower than the former; they are tender, and slender, not much above a foot and half high, at the tops whereof stand small yellow Flowers, with a small Leaf at the foot of every Flower, which are somewhat long and hollow, very like to *Comfrey* Flowers, but a little opening themselves at the brims like unto *Bugloss* Flowers, with a Pointel in the midst,

after which come in their places, small, long, blackish Seed, not unlike to *Bugloss* and *Comfrey* Seed. The Root is as big as ones Finger or Thumb, and about two Fingers long, whose outward Bark is somewhat thick, and of an excellent orient red colour, ready to colour ones Hands and Fingers with its red colour, if handled: its inner Pith is white and woody, and the whole Plant is of a Styptick or Astringent Taste.

IV. The second kind has a Root pretty large and thick, and of a dusky red colour, with many Branches from the same; the Leaves are greater and longer than the next kind, narrow, hairy and green, like *Bugloss* Leaves, and somewhat like to the former, but yet lesser and narrower, but more plentiful, as well those which lye upon the Ground, as those which rise up with the Stalks, which are many, slender and tender, of about a foot and half high; whose Flowers are like the others, save that they are of a reddish purple colour, and the Seed following more gray, the whole being of a rough and astringent Taste.

V. The small yellow *Alkanet* is like unto the first, having a Root great in respect to the Plant, red, and tender whilst it is young, but growing blackish and woody when it is old, and lives and abides after Seed time, which some others do not; its Leaves also are narrower and shorter than the first, and covered with an Hoaryness, as are also the Stalks, which in some are but a foot, in others a foot and half high, with smaller Leaves thereon: the Flowers are hollow and yellow like the first, but lesser, the Seed also is like the Seed of the first. These Plants are famously known throughout all Europe, for the beautiful red colour contained in the Roots, which will colour White Wine of the delicate colour of deep Clarret.

VI. *The Places.* They are nourished up with us, chiefly in Gardens, but the second of them, *Lobel* says, grows near *Rochester* in *Kent*; as also in the West of England, as in *Devonshire* and *Cornwall*.

VII. *The Times.* They flower in *July* and *August*, and the Seed is ripe not long after; and the Roots yield their glorious red or purple Juice or Tincture in Harvest time, as *Dioscorides* saith.

VIII. *The Qualities.* It is Temperate as to heat and cold, but is dry in the second degree. It is Repercussive, Absterfive, Styptick, Astringent, and Traumatick or Vulnerary. And by Appropriation it is Stomack, Cardiack, Hysterick and Nephritick: of the Stock of Alteratives.

IX. *The Specification.* It is peculiar in resisting of Poyson, of all kinds, and stopping Fluxes.

X. *The Preparations.* The Shops keep nothing hereof, but the Root; but these Preparations may be made therefrom, 1. An Essence of the whole Plant. 2. A Juice. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Wine. 5. A Vinegar. 6. A Spirituous Tincture. 7. A Saline Tincture. 8. An Oil. 9. A Cataplasme. 10. A Cerote. 11. A Pessary. 12. *Sanguis Veneris*.

### The Virtues.

XI. *The Root.* It is used to colour Wines with, Syrups, Waters, Gellies, and such like things: and boiled in Wine, and taken with sweet Butter, it helps Bruises by falls, &c.

XII. *The Essence of the whole Plant.* It is binding and strengthening, and stops Fluxes of all kinds, and allays the heat of Choler: and by its Traumatick Property, is good for the healing of Wounds, running Sores and old Ulcers, prevails against the Yellow Jaundice, the Spleen, Agues, and Diseases of the Reins and Bladder: it is good against all sorts of Inflammations, burning Heats, Erysipelas, and the bitings of Venomous Beasts; it strengthens a weak Back, and is good against Fits of the Mother. Dose j. or ij. ounces.



XIII. *The Juice.* It has the Virtues of the Effence, but not so pleasant to be taken, because it is not of so fine and pure a body: it may be kept either in a liquid form or inspissated, as is the *Spanish Juice of Liquorice.*

XIV. *The Decoction.* It has the Virtues of the Effence, but not so powerful; it is of good Use in the Yellow Jaundice, and stopping Fluxes of the Bowels or of the Womb. Dose iv. vj. or viij. ounces, sweetned with treble refined Sugar.

XV. *The Wine.* It is made by Infusion of the Root, either fresh or dry, so long or so often, till the Tincture is as deep as Blood. It is a Specifick in the Heparick Flux, and in stopping all other kinds of Fluxes whatsoever. It is also a most singular Wound-drink, scarcely inferior to any other. It is good against the bitings of Mad Dogs, Serpents, and other Venomous Creatures: it strengthens a weak Back, and stops the Whites in Women, and helps to bring forth the Measles and Small-Pox in Children. Dose ij. iij. or iv. ounces.

XVI. *The Vinegar.* It has the Virtues of the Wine, but is peculiar against Morpew, Scurff, Leprosie, and other Defilements of the Skin; and prevails against the bitings of Venomous Creatures, being inwardly taken, and outwardly applyed: Dose j. or ij. ounces in any fit Vehicle.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* This is made only of the red part of the Root; and has all the Virtues of the Effence and Wine; but is much more fit in cold Constitutions, and where the Plague or any other infectious Disease is feared. Dose ij. drams, more or less in Wine.

XVIII. *The Saline Tincture.* It is made from the whole Plant, and has all the Virtues of the Plant in it; but this is more peculiar in opening some Obstructions, chiefly of the Reins; for it brings away Sand and Gravel, kills Worms, and is good against Fits of the Mother. Dose ij. or iij. drams.

XIX. *The Oil.* ℞ Oil Olive j. pound, Oil of Spike vj. ounces, Oil of Juniper-berries ij. ounces, Alkanet Roots vj. ounces; make an Oil by a gentle Digestion, in a Sand-heat, till it is very red. It is an excellent thing for deep Punctures, Wounds made with pointed Weapons, and Punctures or Wounds of the Nerves.

XX. *The Cataplasim.* Take of the red part of the Root iv. ounces: beat it soft in a Stone Mortar; then add to it Oil of Mace by Expression iij. ounces, Mithridate ij. ounces, Oil of Spike half an ounce; mix them. It is an excellent thing against deep Punctures, chiefly of the Nerves. A Cataplasim made of it with Whey or Cream, is good against Burnings.

XXI. *The Cerote.* A Cerote being made of the pulp of the Root with a little Oil and Wax, Cures old Ulcers: and made with Barley Meal, it prevails against an Erysipelas, Leprosy, Tettars and Ring-worms.

XXII. *The Pessary.* A Pessary being made of the Root, viz. Of its pulp, with Wax, Turpentine and Barley-flower, it is said to bring away the Dead Child, and the After-birth.

XXIII. *Sanguis Veneris.* It is thus made: ℞ Oil Olive ℥ij. Alkanet Root 3. or 4. ounces, Earth-Worms cleansed or purged, number 40. boil them well together, then strain out whilst hot, and keep it close for Use. This was Invented by John Ardern, and is a most singular Vulnerary in deep Wounds and Punctures of the Nerves, made with Thrusts, Stabs or Pricking with any pointed Weapon, &c. it eases the Pain, and prevents Convulsions.

## CHAP. IX.

### Of Clowns ALL-HEAL.

#### *Clownes Alheale*



I. **T**HE Names. It has no known Greek Name, but is called in Latin, *Panax Coloni*, *Panax Heracleum Alterum*: and in English, *Clowns All-heal*, and *Clowns Wound-wort*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is accounted one of the kinds of *Sideritis*, and is, with Parkinson, the fifteenth, called in Latin *Sideritis Anglica Strumosâ Radice*, or English Iron-wort with a Tuberous Root.

III. *The Description.* The Root is composed of many long Strings, with some tuberous long knobs commonly growing among them, of a pale yellowish or whitish colour, from whence grows up four square, green, rough Stalks, half a yard or two foot high, furrowed in, a little upon every square, the Joints standing somewhat far asunder, with two very long and somewhat dark green Leaves, bluntly dented about the edges, and sharp pointed at the end: the Flowers stand towards the top, compassing the Stalks at the Joints, as do those of Horehound, but end in spiked tops, which Horehound does not, having long and much gaping hoods of a purplish red colour, with whitish spots in them, standing in somewhat rough Husks, wherein afterwards stand blackish round Seeds. The whole Plant is of a strong Smell, not much unlike to stinking Horehound.

IV. *The Places.* It grows almost every where in England, by several Brooks and Ditch sides, and sometimes by the Path-ways, and borders of Fields, as in Middlesex near London, by the Path-sides, in Fields going to Chelsea and Kensington; by Hackney, in the Ditch-sides of a Field called *The Shoulder of Mutton Field*; and in Surry in St. George's Fields; and in the Meadows by Lambeth, and near Standgate: in Kent by Southfleet; and on the back-side, of the Church-yard of Nettlestead, and in some places near the foot of Shooters-hill: in Essex by the Ditch-sides, and on the Ditch-sides on the Left Hand of the Highway beyond Stratford Bow; as also in Cam-

bridgshire,



bridgeshire, Huntingtonshire and Suffolk, in all which it grows plentifully.

V. *The Times.* It flowers in *June* and *July*, and sometimes in *August*, and its seed comes to ripeness soon after, viz. in *August* or *September*.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first: It is Agglutinative, Astringent and Vulnerary: and by appropriation, it is Nephritick and Arthritick; and of the kind of Alteratives.

VII. *The Specification.* It is absolute for healing of Wounds whether inward or outward, and that by the first intention.

VIII. *The Preparations.* The Shops keep nothing of it, but you may prepare from it, 1. *A Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Powder.* 4. *A Diet-drink.* 5. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 6. *A Saline Tincture.* 7. *An Oil.* 8. *A Balsam.* 9. *A Cataplasme.* 10. *An Emplaster.*

## The Virtues.

IX. *The Juice.* It is Traumatick and contributes to the Curing Wounds (whether outward or inward) being taken from ij. Ounces to iiij. in a Glass of Alicant: and so also it is good for Ruptures, Bloody-flux, Vomiting, Spitting and Pissing Blood.

X. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues, but much more effectual to all those Intentions; and taken inwardly to ij. Ounces, or more, it alters the habit of the Body, makes the blood Balsamick, and destroys the Cancerous humor, when spread over the whole Body.

XI. *The Powder.* It is given in Ruptures of the *Peritoneum*, as also in spitting and vomiting of blood, for it stops the bleeding and consolidates the broken Veins. Dose from half a dram to j. in any fit Vehicle; and outwardly being strewed upon Wounds it stops their bleeding, and many times heals at the first Intention: It is made of the dried herb.

XII. *The Diet-drink.* It is made by boiling the Herb in half Wine half Water: or by Tunning it up with new drink, four large handfulls of the herb bruised to every Gallon of new Ale or Beer, put up into a bag with a stone in it to make it sink, and so to work with the Drink; which after 2 or 3 days may be drunk. It is an excellent thing to be taken a good draught of it at a time, morning, noon and night, by wounded people, and such as have inveterate running Sores, old Ulcers and rebellious Fistula's upon them: it alters the whole habit of the Body, and disposes the Wounds, Ulcers, &c. to a speedy Healing, and a perfect Cure.

XIII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It has all the Virtues of the former, but is much better for inward Wounds, broken Veins, and Ruptures, &c. because it more easily and speedily enters into the Mass of Blood, and brings it to a Balsamick Crasis. Dose j. dram to iiij. drams in Alicant.

XIV. *The Saline Tincture.* This is better for the Cleansing, Healing and Curing of Wounds and Ulcers of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, because the *Menstruum* more easily and readily conveys the virtue of the Medicine to those parts: It is also Absterfitive, and Cleanses those parts of Sand, Gravel, or any Tartarous matter lodged in, or adhering to them. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams in Smallage or Parsley Water.

XV. *The Oil,* made of the Green Herb with Oil Olive and a ninth part of Oil of Turpentine: It is Vulnerary, and heals Wounds of the Nerves with much speed and facility.

XVI. *The Balsam.* It Cures Wounds and Ulcers: the first it does by the first intention: the latter, by Digesting them, Cleansing them, and then Healing them up as a Green Wound.

XVII. *The Cataplasme.* It is made of the Green Herb, by chopping and bruising it in a stone Mortar, and then beating it up with a little Hogs-lard: This applied heals up Wounds by the first intention, closing up the tips of them, without bringing the Wound to matter. With this Cataplasme a Country-man, who had cut his Leg with a Sithe to the Bone, healed it perfectly in seven days.

XVIII. *The Plaster,* made of the Juice inspissate to the thickness of New Honey, the Powder of the Herb, with Frankincense and a little Oil Olive: It is good against Ruptures of the Bowels, and is profitably applied to both *Aneurism* and *Varix*, more especially if Comfrey root is also added to it.

## CHAP. X.

### Of Common ALL-HEAL.

#### All heal. *Panax recentiorum*



I. **THE Names.** It is called in Greek *πάναξ* & *πανάξ*. in Latin, *Panax*, & *Panaces*, *Panax Heracleum alterum*; *Panaces Peregrinum Dodonæi*, *Panax Syriacum Theophrasti*; and in English *All-heal*, *Common All-heal*, *Hercules his Common All-heal*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are several kinds of *All-heals*, or *Wound-worts*, as, 1. *Clowns All-heal.* 2. *Hercules All-heal.* 3. *Æsculapius his All-heal.* 4. *Doria's All-heal* or *Wound-wort*. Of the first we have already treated in the former Chapter. Of the third we shall treat in the next Chapter: and of the fourth in Chap. 858 following. The second kind which is the *Hercules All-heal* is manifold, 1. The Common which is sixfold, 1. *Panax Heracleum vel Herculeum Alterum*, *Hercules his common All-heal.* 2. *Panax Heracleum alterum Americanum.* 3. *Panax Costinum Matthioli*, *Matthiolus his Costus-like All-heal.* 4. *Panax Racemosum Americanum*, The American cluster-bearing *All-heal*. 5. *Panaces Moschatum Americanum*, The American Musked *All-heal*. Of these five we



we treat in this Chapter. 6. *Panaces Hungaricum* et *Tartarianum*, Hungarian and Tartarian All-heal, of which we have nothing here to say. II. The true, which is called *Panax Heracleum Verum*, The true *Hercules All-heal* or *Wound-wort*, which see in its proper place, viz. in Chap. 857 following.

III. The Description. The first Kind, viz. *Panax Herculeum alterum*, or *Hercules his Common All-heal*, has a Root somewhat great, growing deep down into the Ground, with 2 or 3 long branches from it, of a whitish yellow on the out side, and more white within, full of a yellow Sap coming from it, if it is cut or broken, of a little strong scent, and hot bitter taste more than either Leaf or Seed: from this root springs many large winged Leaves round about upon the Ground, most of them two feet long, consisting of four, five or six Couples of rough winged Leaves, set against each other on a round great footstalk, furrowed on the upper side, each of them consisting likewise of three or 4 Couples of rough but large, fair, fresh, yellowish green Leaves, and one at the end, broad below, and growing narrower to a point at the other end; the one side of the leaf next its footstalk, being always deeper at the bottom than the other side, and finely dented about the edges, tasting a little hot and biting in the mouth, and yielding forth a yellowish juice in the Summer, called *Opopanax*, much more Gummy, hot and bitter than the leaves: from amongst these leaves rises up a strong, great, round, green stalk, 4 or 5 feet high or more, with some joynts and leaves thereat, and a few branches towards the top, breaking forth into small yellow umbles of flowers, which afterwards yield whitish, yellow, flat, short Seed. Note, *Lobel* supposes this to be the *Panax Syriacum Theophrasti*, which yields the Gum *Opopanax*, and not without some ground of reason for it, because (says he) a famous Apothecary in Antwerp found in a parcel of the Gum *Opopanax* certain Seeds, which being Sowed by him in his Garden produced this very Plant.

IV. The second Kind, or *Americanum* has a great and white Root with sundry long strings, and a pith in the middle, not enduring after Seed time, which is sometimes the second year after its springing up, and sometimes the third. From this Root springs up a Plant much like the last, having such like winged leaves, set in the same manner, and the wings with 4, 5 or 6 Couples of Leaves, but differing in Greatness and Colour; for the whole stalk is not above half so long, nor the leaves above half so great in length or breadth, but rather somewhat short, and of a deep green Colour, very much shining on the upper side, but of a paler green underneath, much hotter and sharper in taste than the former, (and not bitter) drawing Water into the mouth. The stalk is seldom above a yard high with joynts, and leaves thereon, and more branches towards the top than the other, and bearing larger umbles of flowers of a yellow Colour, succeeded by flatish, but almost round Seed of a pale brown Color. This is supposed to be the *American Laserpitium*, or *Laserwort* which yields a kind of *Affa fatida*.

V. The third Kind, or *Costus like All-heal*, differs not much in form from the second, but in its greatness, and in the substance of its yellow juice, which this has not, and therefore is not of that Kind: this has such large winged leaves, set in the same manner together, but lesser, each leaf whereof is larger than a Parsnip leaf, thicker, rougher and more crumpled, also a little dented about the edges. The stalk is small and about a yard high, full of joynts and lesser leaves set at them, branched towards the tops, and bearing round tufts of yellow flowers, after which follows flat and somewhat round Seed: The Root is Sappy, with a thick fleshy Bark, and of a shining Ash Colour, bitter and sharp in taste.

VI. The fourth Kind, or *Cluster-bearing All-heal*,

has a Root of the thickness of ones Thumb, and very long, from whence rises up a round, pithy, brownish, purple stalk, set at the joynts with large leaves, divided into many parts, usually by three at a place, a little dented about the edges, bearing both at the joynts with the leaves and at the tops on sundry branches, many tufts of flowers, made of small threads, like Vine Blossoms; at the first greenish, but whiter afterwards, which turn into small branches of green Berries, and come afterwards to be of a dark red when they are ripe, full of a pleasant juice, with many Seeds therein. It looses both Stalks and Leaves every year, and they spring up new again after Winter: the whole Plant, Leaves and Roots are eaten as Pot-herbs and Sallets, by the Indians, where it is natural; as also by our Europeans which dwell among them, and taste more pleasant than the Fruit it self.

VII. The fifth Kind, or *Panaces Moschatum Americanum*: The Root is long, white, and a little sharp and bitter, from whence springs up its first leaves, which are large, and about a foot long, only dented about the edges, somewhat like unto *Costmary* leaves, lying on the Ground, and compassing the long white root at the head; but those which follow are so deeply cut in; that they reach to the middle Rib almost: the stalk rises to be about a yard high, without any leaves thereon, save only about the middle, where it has a Knot and a Leaf which encompasses it, of a differing form from the rest: the top branches are so heavily laden with umbles of white flowers, that before they open, they hang down their heads, which have so admirable, sweet and odoriferous smell, that it is not inferior to Musk, and may be smelt a great way from the place where it grows: the leaves taste sharp and a little bitter; the Seed is like the first Kind, but not so broad.

VIII. The Places. The first grows in Italy, and generally in our Gardens in many places; as in the Physick Gardens at Oxford, Westminster and Chelsea: The second was brought from America, and is now Nourished in our Gardens also. The third grows on Mount Garganus in *Apulia*. The fourth and fifth grow in America, as in *New-England*, *Canada*, *New-York*, *Maryland* and *Virginia*.

IX. The Times. They all flower in the latter Summer Months, and their Seed is perfected in the end of Summer.

X. The Qualities. The herb, as also the Gum *Opopanax*, are hot and dry in the second degree; tho' some Authors will have the Gum to be hot in the 3d. degree, which I do not believe. The Herb, as also the Gum, Attenuate, Rarifie, Discuss, Resolve; are Vulnerary, and very gently attract: and by their appropriation they are Cephalick, Stomack, Pectoral, Splenetick, Hysterick and Arthritick. And are accounted among the number of Alteratives; yet the Gum has been found sometimes to purge, tho' but very gently; for which reason, it is often mixt with Catharticks.

XI. The Specification. Both Herb and Gum are singular Vulnerarys, and are known to Cure Wounds and Ulcers before most other things in the World. The Gum also is specifick in Diseases of the Spleen and Womb, removing Vapors, and helping Fits of the Mother, as also outwardly to discuss or resolve hard Tumors or Swellings, (if resolvable) in what part of the Body soever.

XII. The Preparations. The Shops keep nothing of this Herb, but the Gum: from the Herb you may prepare. 1. A Pouder of the Seed. 2. A Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Syrup. 5. A Spirituous Tincture. 6. A Saline Tincture. 7. An Oily Tincture. 8. A Decoction. 9. A Wine. 10. An Oil. 11. A Balsum. 12. An Ointment. 13. A Cataplasim. 14. An Emplaster or Cerote. From the Gum you have, 15. The strained or purified Gum. 16. Pills of *Opopanax*.



max. 17. *A Volatil Acid Spirit.* 18. *A Distilled Oil.* 19. *A Saline Tincture* of the Gum 20. *A Balsam* of the Gum. 21. *A Cerote* of the Gum.

*The Virtues.*

XIII. *The Powder of the Seed.* This drunk in Wormwood Wine, from half a dram to j. dram, is good against Poyson, and the bitings of all Venomous Creatures.

XIV. *The Juyce of the Herb.* It is good against Pains and Ulcers of the Bladder, and helps against the Strangury, or difficulty in making Water: It expels Worms, is good against the bitings of mad Dogs, or any other Venomous Creature. Dose j. ounce.

XV. *The Essence.* It is Cephalick, Pectoral, Hysterick and Vulnerary, curing most Diseases of the Head, Brest, Lungs, and Womb, and is very contributory to the healing of Wounds, or any old Sore, or running Ulcer, helps Pains and Stitches in the side, hardness in the Spleen, and suffocations of the Mother, provokes the Courses and expels the Birth. Dose to j. ounce in any proper Vehicle.

XVI. *The Syrup of the Juyce.* It has all the Virtues of the *Juyce* and *Essence*, but not altogether so powerful and effectual, but something more pleasant, and may be exhibited to j. ounce more or less in Wine, or Arismart Water.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It has all the Virtues of the *Essence*, but is much more fit for cold Constitutions, it strengthens the Brain, Nerves and Sensitive Parts, warms a cold Stomach, and is good against any cold Diseases in those Parts. Dose from j. dram to iij. in Ale, Mead, or Wine.

XVIII. *The Saline Tincture.* It has all the former Virtues, but is more peculiar against all Diseases of the Womb, Reins, Ureters and Bladder, for it dissolves all Tartarous Slime, Sand, Gravel and the like in those Parts: brings down the Courses in Women, and forces away both Birth and Afterbirth, and clears the Urinary Passages of whatever obstructs them. Dose from j. dram to ij. in Wine or Parsley Water.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against the Colick, and Windiness of the Bowels, and is said to expel the dead Child: it heals Wounds by the first intention, especially those of the Nerves, and is good against the Toothach, (held awhile in the Mouth) old Sores, numbness of the Limbs, Palsies, &c. outwardly applyed, by anointing therewith, and inwardly given, from vj. to xij. or xvj. drops in Ale, Beer, Mead, Wine, or some proper Liquor.

XX. *The Decoction of the Herb,* in water or Wine, may be used as a Diet-Drink for the curing of Wounds, old Ulcers, running Sores and Fistula's, and to heal internal Ulcers in the Lungs: Dose iv, v, or vj. ounces at a time, two or three times a day; it is said gently to evacuate Choler.

XXI. *The Wine.* It is only an Infusion of the Herb in Wine, and is something more powerful, at least more proper than the *Decoction*, for all the same purposes in cold Constitutions or habits of Body, to ease cold Diseases of the Head and Nerves, and give ease in the Cholick: Dose ij. or iij. ounces or more, two or three times a day.

XXII. *The Oil.* It is Vulnerary, and heals Wounds after an admirable manner: anointed it dissolves Oedema's, or cold Tumors in any Part, Discusses hard swellings in the Joynts, and gives ease in the Gout, Spleen, and other Pains from a cold cause, being anointed on the place.

XXIII. *The Balsam.* This is more excellent for curing of Wounds, and commonly performs the Work by the first Intention; it cleanses and heals

Ulcers; and is a singular thing for the curing of Fistula's, being injected scalding hot into the same: It gives ease also in the Gout, and in all Aches and Pains from a cold cause: And covers naked Bones with Flesh.

XXIV. *The Ointment.* It softens the hardness of the Spleen, and is of good use in dissolving or discussing hard swellings of the Kings Evil.

XXV. *The Cataplasme.* It is Discussive, Resolutive and Anodyn; and an excellent thing to be applyed to Kings evil swellings, or any hard Tumor in any part of the Body: The Green Leaves beaten into a *Cataplasme* with Honey, and applyed, cures Wounds and Ulcers, incarnates, and covers naked Bones with Flesh.

XXVI. *The Cerot or Emplaster.* It is Discussive, Resolutive and Anodyn: and applyed to any weak Part or Joynt, it so strengthens it, as to hinder an afflux of Humors to that Place: it is also good against Spasms and Cramps, and numbness of the Limbs; helps the pain, swellings, and hardness of the Spleen and Hypochonders, being spread upon Leather or new Cloth and applyed.

*The Virtues of the Gum Opopanax,*

XXVII. *The strained or purified Gum.* It is a Gummy Juyce flowing from the Root of *Panax Herculeum*, being cut or wounded; which is afterwards inspissated or brought to a thickness, and is then called in the *Greek*, Ἀποπανάξ, *Apopanax*; and in *Latin*, *Opopanax*: it is a fine fragrant Gum of a reddish, or reddish yellow color outwardly, but inwardly of a whitish yellow: it comes out of the Plant white, and in round loose drops, and is white within, but being glutinous it sticks together in Lumps, and by degrees it becomes thick, and of a Gold color on the out side, but being dissolved is almost like Milk. It discusses Wind, purges Flegm which is thick and tough, even from the remote parts of the Body, as from the Head, Brain, Nerves, Joynts, Reins and Womb: it dissolves Tartarous mucilage in the Brest, Lungs and Misentery, digests, and softens Tumors, and is a good thing against an old Cough, sharpness of Humors, shortness of Breath, difficulty in breathing, and other obstructions of the *Viscera*. It is depurated by dissolving it in Vinegar, straining and inspissating. It may be given from half a dram to a dram or more, corrected with Ginger, and Nutmeg. Dissolved in Vinegar and drunk an hour before the Fit of an Ague, it is said to cure it.

XXVIII. *The Pills of Opopanax.* Take *Opopanax* (made soft with *Syrupus Catharticus* prepared as in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*) ij. ounces: *Scammony fine Powder* iv. ounces: *Cremor Tartari*, a sufficient quantity: *Oil of Lemons* ij. drams: mix and make a mass of Pills. Dose from xvi. grains to xxx. grains or half a dram. They purge all Humors, and from all parts of the Body, without making sick, or griping; dissolve and expel tartarous and sharp humors out of the Bowels, which are the original Causes of the Gout, Stone, hardness of the Spleen, Hypochondriack Melancholy, and fits of the Mother; and have most of the Virtues of the Gum at *sect.* 27. foregoing: They are an excellent Medicine, not enough to be valued, and may be taken twice or thrice Week, &c.

XXIX. *The Volatil Acid Spirit.* It is made of the Gum by Distilling it in a Glass Retort either in Sand, or *Balneo Maria*, as we have taught in Our *Seplasmum*, lib. 9. cap. 40. *sect.* 8. It admirably opens the obstructions of the Lungs, Liver, Spleen, Bowels, Reins, Ureters and Womb; brings down the Courses, causes Urine, and prevails against Vapors



pors, and Fits of the Mother, and most Diseases in Women proceeding from a stoppage of their Terms: Dose from xx. to xxx. drops or more, in some *Hysterick Water*.

XXX. *The Distilled Oil*. This is made with the Spirit, and comes last after the Spirit, as is directed in the place afore quoted of Our *Seplafum*; it has the Virtues of the Spirit, but is much more nauseous to be taken, and is chiefly given against Fits of the Mother in Women from ij. drops to iv. or vj. in some proper Liquor, but is mostly used in such like Cases to anoint the Nostrils therewith, or to smell to.

XXXI. *The Saline Tincture*. It is a Famous thing, and has all the Virtues of the simple Gum, at *sed.* 27. foregoing: But this operates more speedily, and more Powerfully opens all obstructions of the *Viscera*, chiefly the Lungs, Spleen, Reins and Womb. Dose from j. dram to ij. in a Glass of White Port Wine, Mead, or other fit Vehicle.

XXXII. *The Balsam*. It is made of the Gum, dissolved in Vinegar iv. ounces, mixt with Turpentine, Balsam Capivij, of each iij. ounces: Gum Elemi, Oil Olive, Oil of Ben, of each ij. ounces: mix and evaporate to a just consistency. It cures Wounds by the first intention, and is excellent in all Wounds of the Head, Brain, Nerves, Joynts, and other parts: it also cleanses running Sores, old Ulcers, malign Fistula's, and quickly heals them.

XXXIII. *The Cerote*. It is made of the former Balsam, by adding to every xvj. ounces of Balsam, j. ounce and half of Oil of Peter, and a sufficient quantity of Wax, to bring it to a due consistency of a soft Cerote: It cures Wounds in any part, and is an excellent thing to soften hard Tumors, discuss or resolve them, as Nature most designs: It eases the Gout, and Pains proceeding from a cold Cause. See a Discourse of the Gum more at large, in Our said *Seplafum*, the place afore quoted.

#### *The Virtues of Panax Costinum.*

XXXIV. *Its Qualities*. It is compleatly hot and dry in the third Degree. It opens, cleanses, cuts, and makes thin; and by appropriation it is Cephalick, Pectoral, Hepatick, Splenetick, Hysterick and Nephritick: performing its operations altogether as an Alterative.

XXXV. *The Specification*. It is prevalent against shortness of Breath, Distempers of the Head and Brain, and the Cholick, or Griping of the Guts.

XXXVI. *The Preparations*. You may Prepare from it, 1. *An Essence*. 2. *A Spirituous Tincture*. 3. *A Saline Tincture*. 4. *An Oily Tincture*. 5. *A Decoction*. 6. *A Wine*. 7. *A Cataplasme*.

#### *The Virtues.*

XXXVII. *The Essence*. It is an Admirable thing against cold Diseases of the Head, Brain and Nerves, as Headaches, Vertigo's, Fallingickness, Lethargies, Convulsions and the like: it is good against Coughs, Colds, shortness of Breath, obstructions of the Lungs, Liver, Spleen and Womb. Dose ij. or iij. spoonfuls in a Glass of Wine, Mead, or other proper Liquor.

XXXVIII. *The Spirituous Tincture*. It Warms a cold Stomach, is good for Nerves obstructed, and chill'd through Cold; and is prevalent against the Fallingickness, Spleen and Hypochondriack Melancholy. Dose from j. to iij. drams.

XXXIX. *The Saline Tincture*. It has all the Virtues of the Essence, and Spirituous Tincture, but heats not so powerfully; however it better opens obstructions of the *Viscera*, provokes the Courses, represses the Fits of the Mother, cleanses the Womb, kills Worms, expels the Urine, Birth, Deadbirth,

and Afterbirth, and dissolves Tartarous Concretions, as Stone, Gravel, slimy matter, &c. Dose from j. dram to ij. in Parsly Water.

XL. *The Oily Tincture*. It comforts the Nerves, provokes Urine, helps in Diseases of the Reins and Bladder, and prevails against Cramps, Convulsions, Gouts, pains and aches proceeding from Cold, Palfies, Rheumatisms, being outwardly applyed, and inwardly taken from iv. drops to xij. in some convenient Vehicle.

XLI. *The Decoction*. It opens Obstructions, dissolves the Tartarous Matter which breeds the Gout, and carries off the most of the Morbifick cause by Urine. Dose from iv. to viij. ounces.

XLII. *The Wine*. It expels Wind, strengthens the Stomach and Bowels, and is good against the Cholick, or Gripings of the Guts. Dose iij. or iv. ounces, morning and evening, or in Extremity.

XLIII. *The Cataplasme*. It is made of the Herb beaten in a Morter, and mixt with Hogs-Lard and Turpentine, of each of the two last a like quantity. It gives ease in the Gout, or any pain in the Joynts proceeding from a cold Cause, is good against Cramps, and the shrinking up of the Sinews, by reason of violent Convulsions.

## CHAP. XI.

### Of ALL-HEAL of Æsculapius.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek Πάνακες Ἀσκληπίου: in Latin, *Panax* & *Panaces* *Asclepium*: and in English, *Æsculapius* his *All-heal*.



II. *The Kinds*. Gerard says it is a *Ferulaceous Plant*; of which there are said to be five Kinds. 1. *Panax Asclepium Lobelij*, Lobel his *Æsculapius*'s All-heal. 2. *Panax Asclepium Matthioli*, that of Matthiolus. 3. *Panax Asclepium Columnæ*, That of Columna. 4. *Panax Asclepium Dalechampi*, That of Dalechampius. 5. *Panax Asclepium Anguilare & Camerarij*, That of Anguilara and Camerarius. These differ not much one from another, being all *Ferulaceous Plants*, except that of Dale-



*Dalechampius*; and are much of a Nature, but not easily to be gotten except the first, and of that we shall only treat in this Chapter.

III. The Description. *The Root is long, white, and of a strong smell, not growing deep, nor abiding after its giving Seed; from whence springs up a slender Stalk, of about a Foot and a half high, crested and Joynted, and from these Joynts proceed Leaves, bigger than those of Fennel, and also rougher, and of a strong smell: at the Tops of the Branches grow Umbles of Flowers; which are yellow, after which comes a broad and flattish Seed, not so small as that of Fennel, but more like to that of Ferula, and of a quick taste and smell*

IV. The Places. It was first found growing in *Istria*; but now is nourished in our Gardens in *England*, as also in Gardens in most places of *Europe*.

V. The Times. It Flowers in *June, July* and *August*; and the Seed is ripe not long after, or in *September*; after which the Stalk with its Leaves perish.

VI. The Qualities. It is hot and dry in the second Degree. Attenuating, inciding, absterfive, binding, strengthening, and Vulnerary; and by appropriation is Cephalick, Neurotick, Hysterick and Arthritick: It is also Alexipharmick and Alterative.

VII. The Specification. It resists Poyson, and is found by long experience to be a famous healer of Wounds.

VIII. The Preparations. The Shops keep nothing of it, but you may prepare from it, 1. A Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Saline Tincture. 4. An Oily Tincture. 5. A Decoction in Wine. 6. A Spirituous Tincture from Flowers and Seed. 7. An Oil. 8. A Balsam. 9. A Cataplasme. 10. An Emplaster or Cerot.

#### The Virtues.

IX. The Juice. Inwardly taken and outwardly apply'd, it is a good Vulnerary, healing, conglutinating, and drying up Wounds.

X. The Essence. It not only heals and conglutinates Wounds, but cleanses old and running Sores, putrid Ulcers, and cacoethick or ill condition'd Fistula's. It may be given inwardly from ij. to iij. ounces; and Cloths wet in the same may be apply'd to the Sore or Ulcer: if it is a Fistula, it is to be injected in, pretty hot, twice a day with a Syringe.

XI. The Saline Tincture. It cuts; makes thin, cleanses and carries off by Urine thick and tough humors; cleansing the Breast and Lungs from all cold phlegmatick humors. Dose ij. drams or more.

XII. The Oily Tincture. Dropt into Wounds of the Nerves and Tendons, and plegets dipt in the same and apply'd upon the part; it heals them commonly at first dressing.

XIII. The Decoction in Wine. It is an Antidote against Poyson, and is profitably drank against biting of Serpents, as Vipers, Rattle-Snakes, &c. and other Poysonous Creatures. Dose vj. or viij. ounces.

XIV. The Spirituous Tincture from the Flowers and Seed. It restores the Habit of the Body, makes the Blood Balsamick, and gives it its due Crasis, inducing the healing of green Wounds, running Sores, old Ulcers, and other external breakings out in the Skin. Dose ij. drams, morning and evening in a draught of the Decoction.

XV. The Oil. It smooths the Skin, takes away Wheals, Pushe, Scurf, Morpew, and other breakings out, being anointed therewith; heals Wounds, cleanses Ulcers, and brings them to a speedy cure.

XVI. The Balsam. It is made of the Juice inspissated to the thickness of New Honey, iv. ounces, mixed with Gum Elemi, Balsam Capivi, and Stras-

Burg Turpentine, Oil of Ben, of each ij. ounces. It heals Wounds of the Head, Joynts, Nerves, Tendons, &c. by the first Intention, cleanses Ulcers, Fistula's, &c. Incarnates, and suddenly cures them.

XVII. The Cataplasme. It is made of the green Herb bruised and beaten up with a little Honey. It cleanses Ulcers powerfully, and is good against fretting and running Sores, Cankers in the Mouth, Pushe, &c. being apply'd.

XVIII. The Cerote or Emplaster. It is made of the Balsam, by adding to every vj. ounces, Frankincense and Bee's Wax, of each ij. ounces, mix them over a gentle fire. It heals green Wounds, and incarnates Ulcers and heals them after cleansing.

## CHAT. XII.

### Of ALL-SEED.

I. THE Names. It is called in the *Greek*, Πολύσπερμον; In *Latin*, *Polyspermon*, and *Polyspermon Cassani Bassi*; *Atriplex Sylvestris*: And in *English*, *All-seed*, or *Wild Arrach*.

II. The Kinds. It is of the Kind of *Blites*, and of the Wild sort, of which it is singular: But some Authors account it among the number of *Araches*, and therefore call it *Atriplex Sylvestris*, but it is none of those Plants.



III. The Description. *The Root is white, slender and long, with some strings; and the Plant is something like to the Blite, being one of the Wild Kind as aforesaid, but lesser than the Garden Blite; the Leaves are uneven on their edges, broad towards the Stalk, and growing narrower till they end almost in a point, but yet round pointed: It has several Stalks which are much Branched, on the upper parts of which is a great abundance of small Flowers, growing on long and spikie greenish Heads; set very thick together, after which follows the Seed, which being so very close and thick set makes it look as if it was all Seed, whence came the name Poyespermon: which Seeds are black and shining.*

D

IV.



IV. *The Places.* It grows Wild, in many places in *England*, and in many *Gardens* as a weed, where it is Weeded out.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers and Seeds from *June* to the end of *August*, or the beginning of *September*, the Seed being ripe not long after the falling of the Flowers.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is cold and moist (according to *Galen*) in the second Degree. It is something opening, absterfive and emollient: and by appropriation Uterine and Arthritick; being of the Stock of the Alteratives.

VII. *The Specification.* Its chief intention is to cool Inflammations, and soften hard Tumors.

VIII. *The Preparations.* The Shops keep nothing of this Plant; but you may prepare therefrom. 1. *An Effence.* 2. *A Juice.* 3. *A Decoction.* 4. *An Ointment.* 5. *A Cataplasme.* 6. *A Powder of the Seed.*

#### *The Virtues.*

IX. *The Effence.* It cools inward Inflammations and abates the heat of Fevers, and is good inwardly taken against an Erysipelas, and other like heats: and opens the obstructions of the Liver. Dose from j. to ij. ounces sweetned with Sugar.

X. *The Juice.* It has the Virtues of the Effence, but cools more, and is good to Gargle with in a Quinsy; and is profitable against heat of the Stomach, and Inflammation of the Lungs. It cleanses the Womb, and makes the Belly Soluble. Dose j. or ij. ounces in any fit Vehicle. Outwardly it is good to bathe with in an Erysipelas.

XI. *The Decoction.* It is good against heat in the Reins, and scalding of Urine in making Water: and if a little Nitre is dissolved in it, it not only takes off the burning heat in Pissing, but opening all the Obstructions of the Urinary passages, it causes a plentiful making of Urine, and takes off the heat of any Burning Fever tho' never so great. Dose vj. or viij. ounces well sweetned with Sugar, in which half a dram of Nitre, or more may be dissolved: it may be taken twice a day.

XII. *The Ointment.* It cools Inflammations, eases pain of the Gout and other Aches proceeding from a hot cause, and is good against Scurff, Morpew, Scabs, Pimples, and other breakings out, and defilements of the Skin: and anointed is good to soften hard Tumors.

XIII. *The Cataplasme.* It is made of the Herb beaten in a Stone Morter, to every handful of which ij. drams of Nitre in fine Powder is put, and dissolved, and brought to a consistency with Barley Flower. It gives present ease in the Gout, and all other pains proceeding from a hot Cause. Is good in an Erysipelas being spread thin, as also Scurff, Morpew, Leprosy, and is to be renewed two or three times in twenty four Hours.

XIV. *The Powder of the Seed.* It is cooling, affects the Stomach, Reins, Bladder and Womb, taking away any preternatural heat in any of those parts: and being taken from half a dram to j. dram, it is said to be an effectual cure for the Yellow Jaundice; and to repress the overflowing of Choler.

## CHAP. XIII.

### Of Garden ANEMONIES.

I. *THE Names.* This Plant is called in *Ara- bick*, *Jackick*, *Alnahamen*, *Sakaick*, *Mami- ra*: in *Greek*, *Ἀνεμώνη*, *ἀπὸ τῆ ἀνέμου*, quasi herba Ven- ti: in *Latin* also, *Anemone*, & *Herba Venti*: and in *English*, *Anemone* and *Wind-Flower*.

II. *The Kinds.* Some Authors will have them of the Stock of *Crowfoot*, by reason of the shape of the Leaf. But to me it seems to be a peculiar Plant of it self: and is divided into three principal Kinds, viz. *The Garden*, the *Wild*, and the *Bastard*. The *Garden Kinds* are almost innumerable, at leastwise not easie to be reckoned up; and for my part I believe, it would puzzle the most experienced *Florist*, to give a just enumeration of them, and therefore I shall not here attempt it, but give you the Description of these few following. 1. *The single Anemone*, which is purple, red, blood-Colored, blew, yellow, white. 2. *The Double Anemone*, which is red or scarlet, purple, crimson, blewish, orange, tawny, white, &c. to which we add the following *Wild Anemonies*, viz. 3. *The great Wild or Wood single Anemone* white. 4. *The smaller Wild or Wood single Anemone*, purple, yellow, white. 5. *The Wild double Anemone*, purple, red and white. These last three we Treat of in the next Chapter. The third Kind are the *Bastard Anemonies*, which tho' they may be accounted as one of the Kinds of the same Tribe; yet by reason the *English Name*, which is *Pasque-Flower*, falls not in the present Letter of the Alphabet, we shall refer you to its proper Place and Letter, which will be in Chap. 572. following.



III. *The Description.* 1. *The single Garden Anemone.* It has a Root which is thick and Tuberos, or knobby; from whence rises up many Leaves, much cut in or jagged, almost like unto *Adonis* Flower, or not much unlike to the more jagged or finely cut *Crowfoot*, among which rises up a Stalk or Stalks, bare or naked almost up to the Top, at which place it is set with two or three Leaves: at the top of the Stalk comes forth a fair Flower consisting, some of them, of six, some of seven, and some of Eight Leaves, of a Delicate Color, some purple, some red, some Crimson, some blew, some yellow, and some white Colored, &c. impossible to be described, to their full perfection; with Thrums or Threads in the middle, of a blackish purple Color, and sometimes various Colored, according to the Color of the Flower. But here



here is to be noted that the yellow Anemone differs much from all the rest of the single various Colored Anemonies, for its Leaf is much like to a Common Mallow Leaf finely dented about the edges, green on the top, and something reddish underneath, its Flower is yellow, and the Head or Thrumb in the middle is yellow also. In all these Colored single Anemonies, when the Flowers are blown away, there remains a Head, whereon grows the Seed, which is small and black, or blackish, inclosed in a kind of soft Wooll or Down.

IV. The Double Garden Anemone. The Root is thick and Tuberos much like to the Root of the former: and indeed the Roots, Leaves and Stalks much resemble the former single Anemonies, but the Leaf is not altogether so finely cut and Divided, as the red or Purple-flowerd single are: at the top of the Stalk there stands a fair Flower either red or scarlet, crimson, purple, blewish, orange, tawney, yellow or white, or mixt with some of these; Consisting of divers broader Leaves, with several rows of narrower Leaves one within another, which together make a very fair and beautiful Flower, the middle Head being thick closed either of a greenish, or whitish Color, or with red Colored Thrumbs tipped with blew, or various according to the Colors of the Flower. After the Flowers, there follows the Heads which contain the Seeds as the former. Here note, that the double yellow Anemone has such broad roundish Leaves as the single Kind, but somewhat larger or ranker, and the Stalks are beset with larger Leaves, more deeply cut in on the edges, and the Flowers are of a more pale yellow, with some purplish Veins on the out side; and there is besides these, so great a variety of mixt Colors, in this Kind of Anemone, with broad Leaves arising every year from the sowing of the Seed of some of the Choicest, that it is wonderful to observe, not only the variety of single Colors, but the mixture of two or three Colors in one Flower, besides the diversity of the bottoms of the Flowers, and of the Thrumbs or Threads in the Middle. But in all these various Colored double Anemonies, the greatest wonder of beauty is in the variety of double Flowers, that arise from the other single ones, some having two or three rows of Leaves in the Flowers, and some so thick of Leaves as a double Marigold, or double Crow-foot, and of the same several Colors that are in the single Flowers, that it is almost impossible to express them severally; some falling out to be more double in one year which are less double in another year, yet very many abiding constantly double as at first. This we thought good to advertise in General, that it may be applied to each variety, and every Kind of Flower of each variety in particular, to save the farther trouble of endless Descriptions, and a needless multiplication of Words to no purpose.

V. The Places. These were most of them brought to us from Constantinople, some from Italy, and some from Germany; but now they are Inhabitants, and Natives of our own Country, and may be found almost every where in Gardens, especially in Physick-Gardens, and the Gardens of industrious Florists.

VI. The Times. They Flower from the beginning of January to the end of April; and when they begin to fade, the Seed (where there is any) is carried away with the Wind. But if they bear Seed, it must be carefully gathered, but yet not before it is thoroughly ripe, which you may know by the Head, for when the Seed with the Woolliness begins to rise a little of it self, at the Lower end, it must then be presently gathered, and laid to dry for a Week or more, which then being gently rubbed with a little dry Sand or Earth, will cause the Seed to be somewhat better separated, tho' not perfectly from

its Down or Woolliness, that encompasses it: within a Month at the most after the seed is thus gathered and prepared, it is to be Sown, for so you will get a Year in its growth, more than you would do, if you sowed it in the next Spring: if there is any Woolliness in the Seed, they are to be separated from it as well as may be, and then sown pretty thin, not too thick, upon a plain smooth bed of fine Earth, or rather in Pots or Tubbs; after the Sowing, sift or gently strew over them some fine, good, fresh Mould, about an inch deep at most for the first time: about a month after their first springing up, strew or sift over them in like manner, another inch thickness of fine Earth, and in the mean Season, if the Weather proves dry, you must water them gently and often, but not to over-glut them with moisture: thus doing, they will spring up before Winter, and grow so strong, as to be able to abide a sharp Winter, tho' in their Infancy; but you ought to take some care in covering them loosely with Straw, Fern-leaves, or such-like, to keep them from the extremity of cold, which yet must not lye close upon them, nor too far off neither. The next Spring after Sowing, you may, if you so please, remove them; but in my Opinion it will be better to stay till the next August, when you may remove and set them in order by rows, with a sufficient distance one from another, where you may keep them till you see what kind of Flower each Plant will bear, which you may afterwards dispose according to your mind: many of these Plants thus ordered (if your Mould is fine, loose, fresh and black Earth, not Stony, Clayish, &c.) will bear Flowers the second year after Sowing, and most or all of them the third year, if the place you put them in is in a clear Air, free from the Smoak of Chimnies, Fornaces, Brewers or Dyers Fats, Mault Kilns, &c. in which they will never thrive. The ordinary time to Plant Anemonies in is August, and then they will be in flower sometimes before Winter, but most commonly in February, March and April, few of them abiding until May; but if you keep some Roots out of the Ground unplanted, untill February, March and April, and Plant some at one time and some at another, you shall have them bear Flowers, according to their Planting: those which you Plant in February will flower about the middle or end of May, and so the rest accordingly, as to the time you Plant them in; and thus you may have the pleasure and variety of these Plants, out of their natural Seasons, which is scarcely to be had in any other Herb; Nature not being so apt to be provoked or forced in other things, as she is in this. But in keeping your Anemone Roots out of the Ground for this purpose, you are to keep them neither too dry nor too moist, that they may neither wither, sprout nor rot; and in Planting them, you must not set them in too open and sunny a place, but where they may have something of shadow.

VII. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the third degree. They Attenuate, Incide, and vehemently Attract; and by Appropriation are Cephalick, Uterine and Arthritick: and are only Alteratives in respect to Heat or Cold.

VIII. The Specification. It is peculiar against Apoplexies, Epilepsies, Lethargies, Madness, Vertigo's proceeding from a cold and moist Humor, or Distemper of the Head and Brain.

IX. The Preparations. The Shops keep nothing of this Plant in Store, but you may have, 1. The Roots, Stalks and Leaves. 2. The Juice. 3. The Essence. 4. The Decoction. 5. A Masticatory. 6. A Gargarism. 7. A Pessary. 8. An Ointment. 9. A Cataplasme. 10. A Saline Tincture. 11. An Oily Tincture.



*The Virtues.*

X. *The Roots, Stalks and Leaves.* These boiled in Water, chiefly the Roots, or Roots and Leaves, till such time as their fiery and biting Taste is mostly gone, and being Eaten as a Salet, with a little Butter, Salt and Vinegar, are said to encrease Milk in Nurfses.

XI. *The Juice.* Being snuffed up the Nose morning and evening, but chiefly at Bed time, it mightily Purges the Head and Brain, and brings away abundance of cold, moist, flegmatick Humors, and thereby frees the Patient from Apoplexies, Epilepsies, Lethargies, and most other cold Distempers of the Head, Brain and Nerves, caused by those Humors lodged in the Head, in the Cavities of the Brain, or between the *Meninges* thereof, viz. between the *Pia* and *Dura Mater*.

XII. *The Essence.* It has the same Virtues, being used as an Errhine, but is chiefly given inwardly to provoke the Terms, bring away the Birth, After-birth, or Dead Child. Injected into running Sores, old Ulcers and Fistula's, it admirably cleanses them, and disposes them to healing. Dose from half an ounce to j. ounce, in any proper Vehicle.

XIII. *The Decoction.* If it is made of the Leaves with half Water half Wine, it powerfully provokes the Terms, and brings away the Dead Child; and the Body or Places affected being bathed therewith, it Cures Sun-burnings, Tanning, Scurff, Morphew, Leprosie, Scabs, &c. Dose iv. ounces twice a day.

XIV. *The Masticatory.* The Root chewed in the Mouth, draws out a Flux of cold Rheum, by which the Tooth-ach, Head-ach, Megrin, Apoplexies, Epilepsies, Carus, Lethargies, and other sleepy Diseases proceeding from a cold and moist cause, are Cured.

XV. *The Gargarism.* It is made of equal parts of the Juice and Decoction mixt together, in which, to every iv. ounces of the Mixture, ij. drams of Nitre are added and dissolved. It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Masticatory, and purges and cleanses the Head and Brain so admirably as to Cure all those Diseases afore-named of those parts; and where they are not present, but are only feared from a coldness of the Head and Parts adjacent, a Sleepiness, and a being stuffed with cold flegmatick Humors; the use hereof now and then prevents their coming, and secures the Patient for the future.

XVI. *The Pessary.* It is made either of the Root cut into form, or of the Juice made up with melted Wax and Barley Flower; put up into the Womb or Vagina, it opens the Veins of the Womb, and by its attractive force, provokes and draws down the Terms: but it ought to be several times renewed, taking proper things also by the Mouth.

XVII. *The Ointment.* It is made of the green Herb or Juice. The Eye-lids being anointed therewith, it helps Ophthalmies or Inflammations of the Eyes; and applied to running Sores, old Ulcers, putrid Fistula's, and other malign and corroding Defilements, it perfectly cleanses them, strengthens the Part Affected, and promotes their healing.

XVIII. *The Cataplasim.* It is made of the green Herb beaten with Hogs Lard, in which a little Alum and Nitre, in fine Pouder, are mixt and dissolved: applied, it eases Pain in any Part, and Cures Scurff, Morphew and Leprosie, being used for some considerable time.

XIX. *The Saline Tincture.* The External Parts of the Body being washed with it, it removes all sorts of Defilements, cleansing the Part, and killing the Humor, by destroying the Ferment which breeds it. Mixt with double quantity of Juice, it becomes

an excellent Gargarism or Liquid Errhine, purging the Head and Brain of all cold Humors. Let Physicians talk what they please, all the Cephalick or Head-purging Pills in the World cannot purge the Head and Brain like to powerful Errhines, Gargarisms or Masticatories.

XX. *The Oily Tincture.* This is indeed truly beneficial for all such as are troubled with Oedema's, cold Tumors, Pains and Aches in any part of the Body from a cold Cause, as also for such as are afflicted with Spasms, Cramps, Convulsions, weakness of the Nerves, Tremblings, Numbness, Palsies, and the like, being anointed effectually twice a day upon the place affected, (and in Palsies, along the Back Bone also;) and continuing the Use thereof, for some considerable time.

## CHAP. XIV.

## Of Wild ANEMONES.

*Wild ANEMONE, great,*

I. **T**HE Names. This Plant is called in Greek, *Ἀνεμών ἀγρία*. in Latin, *Anemone Sylvestris*, *Anemone Nemorum*, *Herba Venti Sylvestris*; and in English, *Wild Anemone*.

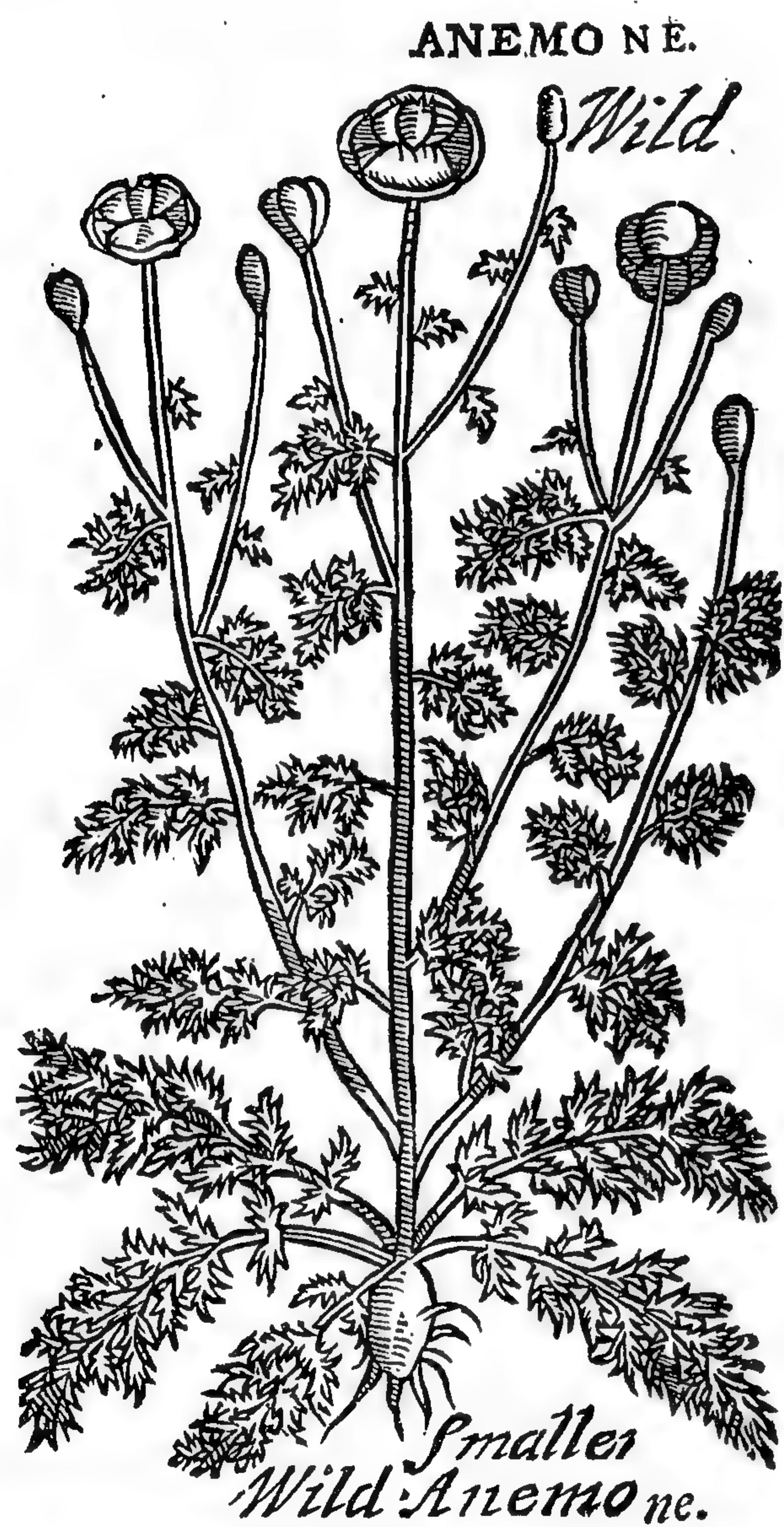
II. *The Kinds.* They are twofold, 1. The single *Anemones*. 2. The double *Anemones*. The single *Anemones* Wild are, 1. The Greater or Broad-leaved Wild White *Anemone*. 2. The Common or Smaller-leaved Wild *Anemone*, Purple, Carnation, Yellow, White. 3. The Wild double *Anemone*, Purple, Red, White.

III. *The Description.* 1. The Greater or Broad-leaved Wild White *Anemone*. The Root consists of a great number of long black Strings, encreasing very much by running under Ground, and shooting up in divers places, from whence springs forth divers broad green Leaves, cut into divisions, and dented about, very like unto a broad Leaved Crowfoot, from among which rises



rises up a Stalk, having some such like cut Leaves in the middle thereof, as grow below, but smaller; on the top whereof stands one large white Flower, consisting of five Leaves for the most part, with some yellow Threads in the middle, standing about such a green Head as you see in the Garden Anemones, which growing greater after the Flower is past, is composed of many small Seeds, wrapped up in a white kind of Down, which as soon as they are ripe, raise themselves up from the bottom of the Head, and fly away with the Wind, as the Garden kinds do.

IV. 2. The Common or Smaller-leav'd Wild single-flower'd Anemone. It has a Root long and small, somewhat like unto the Root of Polypody, creeping under the upper crust of the Earth, from whence rises up one or two, and sometimes more small, round, naked Stalks, bearing about the middle of them, small, soft and tender jagged Leaves, deeply cut in and indented on the edges about, from above which also does grow the Stalk, bearing small Flowers, Purple, Carnation, Yellow or White, not much unlike to a Crow-foot, (standing upon weak foot Stalks) with some Threads in the middle.



V. 3. The Wild double-flower'd Anemone.. This double kind is very like unto the single white kind before described, both in its long running Roots, and its thin jagged Leaves, but somewhat larger: the Flowers whereof are very thick and double, but small, of a faint sweet Scent, which are of a purple, red, or white colour after they are blown, for five or six days; the purple and red are of a fine light colour towards the tops of the Leaves, but the bottoms of the Leaves of a very deep colour of the kind: and the White-flowered are very white when full blown, but afterwards they become a little purplish on the inside, but more on the outside, after which comes a small Head like the former kinds, but seldom or never give any Seed, especially the White kind.

VI. The Places. The first broad-leav'd grows Wild in divers places of Austria and Hungary; but with us, is nourisht up in Gardens: the other single

kinds grow wild in most places in England, in Woods, Copses, Groves, Orchards, &c. except that with yellow Flowers. The double-flowered are only found in Gardens; but *Clusius* says they are found in the Low Countries, in a Wood near Lo-vain.

VII. The Times. They flower from the beginning of March, (which is the earliest) and continue flowering till May, or the middle of May; and the double kinds begin to flower presently after the single kinds are past.

VIII. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the third degree. They cut, incise, attenuate, attract and inflame; are dedicated to the Head, Womb and Joynts, and Alteratives only in their Operation.

IX. The Specification. They are peculiar against cold and moist Distempers of the Head, Brain and Womb, and to cleanse old Ulcers.

X. The Preparations. Tho' the Shops keep nothing of this Plant, yet you may prepare therefrom, 1. A Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Gargarism. 5. A Saline Tincture. 6. An Oily Tincture. 7. An Ointment. 8. A Cataplasm. 9. A Masticator. 10. A Pessary.

## The Virtues.

XI. The Juice. It is a singular good Errhine, for by snuffing it up the Nostrils morning and evening, it Purges the Head and Brain of cold, thick and tough flegmatick Humors, whereby it prevails against Apoplexies, Epilepsies, Carus, Lethargies, Vertigo's, Megrims and cold Head-aches, proceeding from a cold Cause.

XII. The Essence. It has the same Virtues used as an Errhine; but is most commonly given inwardly, from ij. drams to half an ounce, mixed with a draught of Mead, Wine, or some proper Water, to open Obstructions of the Womb, and to bring down effectually the Terms in Women, as also to hasten the Birth, and bring away the After-birth.

XIII. The Decoction. It is not so hot as the former, and therefore not so strong, but yet is effectual for the same things the Essence is, but may be given in a larger Dose, as from ij. ounces to iij. sweetned with white Sugar.

XIV. The Gargarism. It is made of the Juice or Essence, mixt with an equal quantity of the Decoction, to 8. ounces of which you may add iij. drams of pure Nitre, dissolving it therein. Used as a Gargle, it powerfully attracts cold and moist Humors out of the Head and Brain, and Parts adjacent, and so is good in the Cure of those Diseases, the Juice is said to be good against.

XV. The Saline Tincture. It more powerfully opens the Womb than the Essence does, and is used in inveterate Obstructions thereof when the Essence is not found powerful enough. It also opens Obstructions of the Reins and Bladder, provokes Urin, and expels Sand and Tartarous Matter. Dose from j. dram to ij. in some fit Vehicle.

XVI. The Oily Tincture. Tho' this may be used inwardly, yet its chief Use is for External Applications against Weakness and cold Affections of the Nerves, Tendons, Ligaments and Joynts; against all sorts of Aches and Pains proceeding from Cold, or an Afflux of cold Humors, as also against Numbness, Tremblings, Cramps, Convulsions, Palfies, and the like Disaffections of the Nerves.

XVII. The Ointment. It has the Virtues of the Oily Tincture, but not so powerful, but is better for cleansing old running Sores, fatid Ulcers, malign and rebellious Fistula's, and taking away Scabs, Itch, Scurff, Morpew, and other like Defilements of the Skin.

XVIII. The



XVIII. *The Cataplasme*. It has the Virtues of the Ointment, opens the Pores of the Skin more, and prevails against Scabs, Scurff, Morpew, Leprosie, &c.

XIX. *The Masticatory*. It has all the Virtues of the Gargarism, but is better to be used by such as cannot away with the other. It's made of the Root.

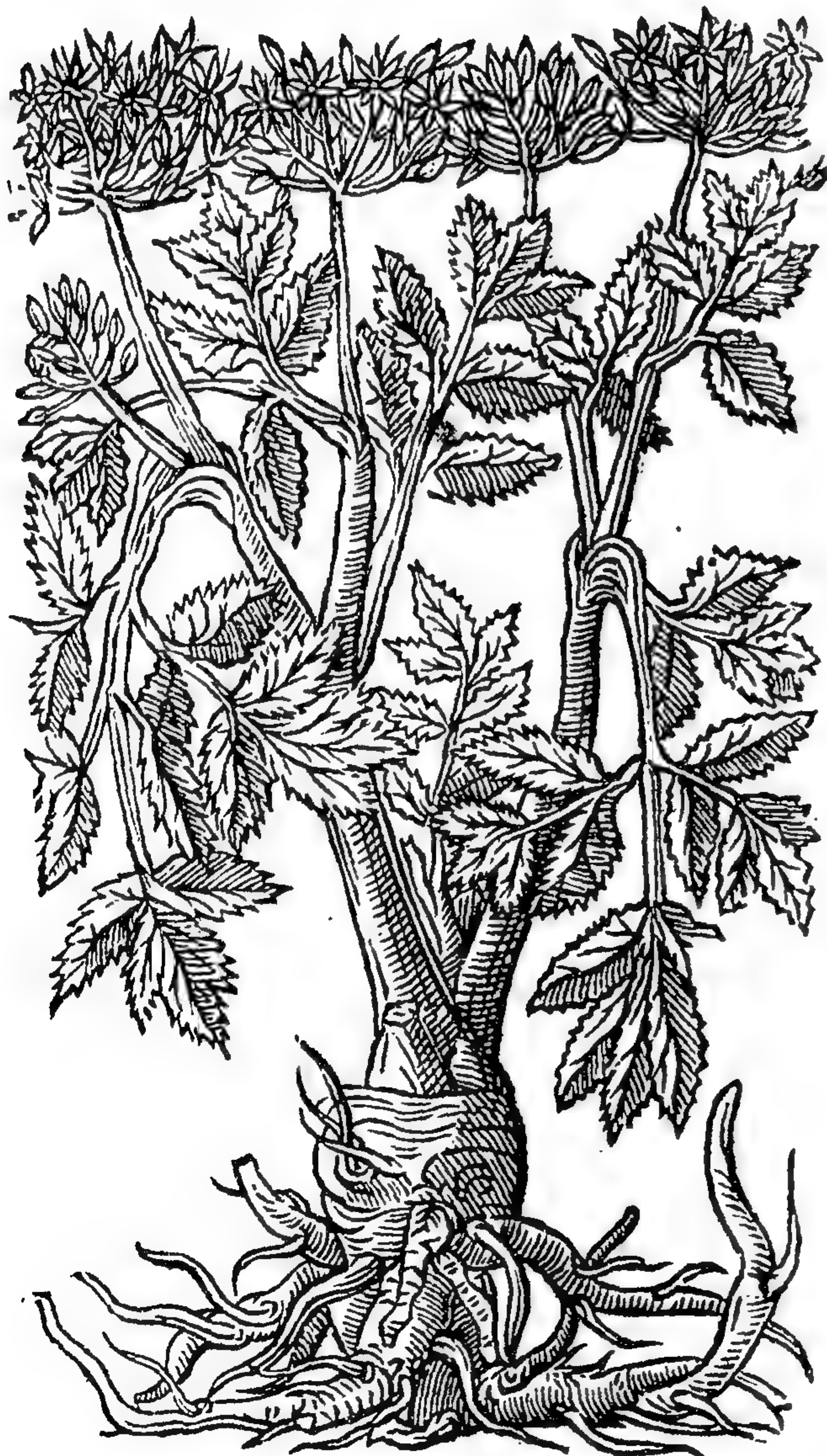
XX. *The Pessary*. It is made either of the Root or Juice, with Wax and Barley-flower, and is put up into the Womb, to bring down the Courses.

## CHAP. XV.

### Of Garden ANGELICA.

I. **THE Names.** It is called in Greek, *Ἀγγελική*, (and yet some Authors say it was unknown to the Greeks, unless by some other Name) in Latin *Angelica*; and so also in English: and by this Name it is called in almost all European Nations, so far as their Dialect will admit: *Cordus* will have it to be *Panax Heracleum*, but this I much question; yet according to its Virtues, it may very well be accounted among the number of the *All-heals*: but its condensed Juice is no *Opopanax*. Others, as *Dodonæus* and *Lacuna*, will have it to be a kind of *Laserpitium*, or *Laserwort*, but of that see lib. 3. cap. 115. and 116. of this present Work.

II. *The Kinds.* There are four several kinds of *Angelica*; as, 1. *The Garden Angelica*. 2. *The Wild*. 3. *The Water Angelica*. 4. *The Mountain kind*; of which last we shall say nothing in this Book.



III. *The Description.* Our Garden *Angelica* has a Root, which is great and large, something pulpy before flowering; but after flowering it becomes woody, extending it self into many and long Arms or Branches, which perish after Seed-time; but if the Plant, by being often cut down, is kept from seeding, the Root will then endure many years together: this Root, if cut or bruised, smells strong, and discharges

out of it self an Oily, or rather Gummy Liquor, which being inspissated Yields no unpleasant Gum, and not much unlike to *Opopanax*, but yet it is not the same thing. From this Root springs forth divers large and fair spread winged Leaves, half a yard long, and sometimes longer, made of many great and broad ones, set usually one against another on a middle Rib, of a pale, but fresh green colour, and dented about the edges; from among which usually arises one round hollow Stalk, very thick, and four or five feet high, with divers great Joints, and Leaves set on them, whose foot-stalks do encompass the main Stalk at their bottoms; and from thence also, towards the top, comes forth Branches, with the like, but lesser Leaves at them; and at their tops, there comes forth large round spread Umbles of white Flowers, after which comes the Seed, which is somewhat flat, thick, short, and of a whitish brown colour; two always set together, (as is usual in these Umbelliferous Plants) which is a little crested on the round side.

IV. *The Places.* It is found in great plenty in Norway and Island, where it grows very high, and whose Inhabitants it is said do eat it, for want many times of other Food, peeling off the Bark: It is also said to grow upon the Rocks, not far from *Berwick*: But with us, it grows only in Gardens, being first brought hither from beyond Sea.

V. *The Times.* It flowers in July and August, and the Seed is ripe not long after: if this Seed is suffered to fall of its own accord, it will more certainly grow, than that which is gathered and sown by hand, at any other time.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the second degree; but *Schroder* saith in the third degree, which I believe not. It opens, incides, attenuates or makes thin, Digests, Discusses, and is Sudorifick. As to its appropriation, it is Cephalick, Neurotick, Cardiac and Hysterick. It is Bezoardick or Alexipharmick, Vulnerary, and the most famous of all Vegetable Alteratives.

VII. *The Specification.* It is a peculiar Antidote against the Plague or Pestilence, and all malign, infectious and pestilential Diseases: it is also an Antidote against the Poyson of Mad Dogs, the biting of Vipers, Rattle-snakes, and other Serpents, or other Venomous Creatures, and, as an *All-heal*, Cures Wounds by the first Intention: and is singular against the Scurvy in a cold Constitution.

VIII. *The Preparations.* The Shops sometimes keep hereof, 1. *The dried Root*. 2. *The Seed*. 3. *A Distilled Water* from the whole Plant. 4. *A Juice* from the fresh Root and Herb. 5. *An Extract* with Spirit of Wine. 6. *The Root Candy'd*. 7. *A Distilled Oil* which ascends with the Water. 8. *A Balsam* made with the said Oil, and Oil of Nutmegs. 9. *A Common Salt*. Besides all these things, you may make therefrom, 10. *A Syrup*. 11. *A Decoction*. 12. *A Wine*. 13. *A Spirit*. 14. *A Spirituous Tincture*. 15. *A Saline Tincture*. 16. *An Oily Tincture*. 17. *The Powers*. 18. *An Essence*. 19. *A Balsam* for Wounds. 20. *An Ointment*. 21. *A Cataplasme*. 22. *A Cerote* or *Emplaster*. 23. *A Gargarism*. 24. *An Errhine*. The virtues and uses of all which follows.

#### The Virtues.

IX. *The dried Root.* Used as a Masticatory, it attracts cold and moist humors out of the Head and Brain, and gives ease in the Tooth-Ach: the Powder thereof taken to j. dram, is good against the bitings of Mad Dogs, Vipers, and other kinds of venomous Creatures, and also prevails against the Pleurisie, Plague, and all other kinds of infectious Diseases. Take of this Powder j. dram, Mithridate a dram and half,



half, mix for a Dose; to be given in the aforesaid Cases.

X. *The Seed.* The Seed has the same Virtues, but not all out so powerful: the Pouder thereof may be given to j. dram or j. dram and half to Sweat upon: it defends the Heart, Spirits and Blood against Poyson, and is a good preservative against Pestilential Infection.

XI. *The Distilled Water from the whole Plant.* It is Bezoartick and Alexipharmick, good against Sickness at Heart, which it many times eases upon the spot; but is mostly used as a Vehicle to convey other preparations of this Plant, and others of like Virtues in.

XII. *The inspissate juice of the Root, and also of the Herb.* It warms, comforts and restores, incides and attenuates thick humors, resists Poyson, and is good against the Plague, or malignity of any other Epidemick and infectious Disease: It Cures also the bitings of Mad Dogs, Serpents, &c. and is Pectoral, good against Wind in the Bowels, Coughs, Hoarseness, Phthicks, Asthmas, shortness of Breath, Peripneumonies, and indeed all Diseases of the Breast and Lungs: outwardly applied, it warms, dissolves, and resolves hard Tumors, and therefore is good in an Oedema and other like swellings of the Joynts. Dose inwardly is, from j. dram to ij. drams or more, dissolved in Wine and drunk.

XIII. *The Extract with Spirit of Wine.* It is made of the *Caput Mort.* of the Herb and Plant after Distillation, &c. given from j. dram to ij. drams in Sack; it provokes Sweat powerfully, and is an Antidote against the Plague or Pestilence, Measles, Small-Pox, Spotted-Fever, Poyson inwardly taken, or outwardly given by the biting of any Venomous Creature. It Cures Agues if given to Sweat upon.

XIV. *The Candied Root.* It is a pleasant thing, and being often eaten is good against Coughs, Hoarseness, and strengthens, heals and comforts a cold and weak Stomach.

XV. *The Distilled Oil which ascends with the Water.* It is very powerful against the Pleurisie, Obstructions and Wind in the Bowels, the Colick and Gripings of the Guts, Poyson of all Kinds, and the Infection of the Plague or Pestilence: It is also good against most Diseases of the Breast and Lungs, and has all the Virtues of the Inspissate Juice of the Root, but this is more excellent, subtil, penetrating and effectual: It opens all Obstructions of the Urinary Passages, provokes Urine and the Courses, and expels both Birth and After-birth. Dose from iij. drops to 10, first dropt into Sugar, and mixt well therewith, and then mixt with a Glass of Wine.

XVI. *The Balsam with Oil of Nutmegs.* Take Oil of Nutmegs or Mace made by expression j. ounce: Balsam of Peru, ij. drams: Oil of Angelica j. dram and half, mix them. It eases all pains of the Head, as Head-Achs, Megrims, &c. proceeding from a cold cause, being anointed thereon. Inwardly taken to j. Scruple, in a Bolus of Mithridate, or in any proper liquid Vehicle, it has all the Virtues of the Oil aforesaid: besides which, being put into an hollow Tooth, it eases the pains thereof.

XVII. *The fixed Salt of the whole Plant.* It is a singular thing against the Pleurisie, Peripneumony, Plague, or any Pestilential Disease, the Colick, Strangury, and stoppage of Urine; for it absorbs the acid and acrimonious or malign humors, which is the cause of those disaffections; it loosens the Blood, and causes a present and speedy Circulation, and withall it opens all Obstructions of the Lungs, and causes a free breathing. Dose from j. Scruple to j. Dram, in the Distilled Water, or in Wine, or other proper Vehicle.

XVIII. *The Syrup.* It is Pectoral, good against

Coughs, and all sorts of inward Obstructions of the Viscera, chiefly of the Lungs; but is used mostly as a Vehicle to convey other Medicines in. Dose from j. Ounce to ij. Ounces.

XIX. *The Decoction.* Taken from iij. Ounces to viij. Ounces, it is good against inward bruises, and to dissolve congealed Blood; strengthens the Stomach, and is effectual against the Suffocation of the Mother. It makes an excellent Wound-drink, for such as have Gunshot or Contused Wounds, old Sores, running Ulcers, foetid and callous Fistula's, disposing them to a speedy healing.

XX. *The Wine.* It is to be made of the roots and stalks, (as is also the Decoction) and has all the Virtues of the Decoction, save that this is much more powerful to all the said Intentions. Dose from iij. to vi. Ounces twice or thrice a day.

XXI. *The Spirit.* It is either *Simple* or *Compound*. The *Simple* is a most famous Cordial, scarcely inferior to any other Vegetable Cordial in the World: it removes Sickness at Heart and Stomach, prevails against Fainting, Swoonings and Convulsions, whether in Old or Young, warms and comforts a cold and weak Stomach, and as much as may be, restores old Age. I cannot speak enough in the praise of it! It resists Poyson, whether inward or outward, and the Contagion of a Pestilential Air. Dose from j. dram to half an ounce, well dulcified with treble refined Sugar, and then it may either be taken alone, or in a Glass of Wine. The *Compound Spirit* you may have its Composition, Preparation and Virtues, in Our *Pharmacopœia Londinensis*, Lib. 4. Cap. i. Sect. 3. to which you are referred.

XXII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is a great Cordial Restorative, and an excellent thing for such as are wounded, and have old running Sores or Fistula's about them, which have been of long standing, and not easily cured: for it alters and changes the discrasia of the Blood, and makes it more Balsamick, as also the other Juices, and so contributes to healing; besides it has all the Virtues of the Spirit, and indeed much more powerful. It may be taken morning, noon and night, for some considerable time, from ij. drams to half an ounce, in some proper *Vehiculum*.

XXIII. *The Saline Tincture.* It is a good Vulnerary, and carries off much of the Morbifick Faculencies and Defilement by Urine; opens Obstructions of all the Viscera, takes away Heat, Burnings; is good against the Strangury, stoppage of Urine, and other Diseases of the Reins and Bladder: It is good against shortness of Breath, and difficulty of Breathing, because it dissolves the Tartarous Mucilage of the Lungs, &c. Dose from j. dram to iij. drams in the Distilled Water, or in Mead or White Wine.

XXIV. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good to anoint with in the Gout and Sciatica, and all Pains and Aches of the Nerves, Tendons and Joynts, proceeding from a cold Cause. 'Tis excellent against Convulsions, Cramps, Numbness, Lameness and Palsies, and the Scurvy in a cold Constitution. You may anoint with it outwardly twice a day, and take it inwardly as often, from iv. drops to xvj. or xx. in any proper Liquor.

XXV. *The Potestates or Powers.* They have all the Virtues of the Oil and Spirit, to which you are referred: 'tis true they are not altogether so strong as the Oil, but they are more subtil and penetrating, and more pleasant to be taken. Dose is from j. dram to iij. or iv. in the Distilled Water or Syrup, or in a glass of Wine, thrice a day.

XXVI. *The Essence.* This is the most necessary and useful of all the Preparations made of *Angelica*, and is made of the Juice of the whole Plant. It is good against



against the Plague, and all sorts of malign infections and Pestilential Fevers: It resists Poysons of all sorts, as the bitings of Mad Dogs, Vipers, Rattle Snakes, or any other Venomous Creature. It defends the Vital and Animal Spirits, and is a great preservative against all kinds of Pestilential Infection. It gives ease in all Pains and Torments coming of Cold, and is a most admirable thing against Peripneumones or Inflammations of the Lungs and Pleurifies. It is a great Pectoral, opening all obstructions of the Brest and Lungs, and thereby gives relief in vehement and old Coughs, Hoarseness, Asthma's or difficulty of breathing, shortness of Breath, and Phthificks. It gives present ease in the Colick, Provokes the Terms, hastens and facilitates the Birth, and brings away the After-birth and dead Child. It opens all obstructions of the Liver, Spleen, Gall, Bowels, and Mesentery, dissolves inward Tumors, and Cures Agues, if given several times, so as to sweat well upon it. And as it mightily strengthens and fortifies the Stomach, so it is one of the best things against a Sufcit in the World, a Vomit or *Emetick* being given before hand. Dropt into the Eyes it clears them from Clouds, Films, Specks, Pearls, &c. and strengthens the Sight. Dropt into the Ears, it helps their pain and deafness, noise and ringing in them. It heals inward Bruises, dissolves congealed Blood, and is one of the best remedies against a Cold Scurvey. Lastly, It is a most singular Vulnerary, not inferior to any of the *All-heals*, *Confounders*, or *Wound Herbs*: and being given inwardly dietetically it is inferior to no kind of Wound-drink whatsoever, for after an admirable manner, it disposes all Wounds, of what kind so ever, (if curable,) as also running Sores, old Ulcers, and Fistula's, to a very speedy healing. Dose from j. ounce to iij. or iv. ounces, two or three times a day, according as you see the occasion requires.

XXVII. *The Balsam for Wounds.* Take of the Juice of the Root and Stalks inspissated to the thickness of new Honey vj. ounces, Gum Elemi iij. ounces, Balsam Capivi j. ounce, Balsam of Peru, of each ij. ounces, Chio Turpentine j. ounce, mix and melt together, and stir them till they are nearly cold. Or take Oil Olive a Pound and a half, of the Roots Stalks and Leaves well Bruised together, iv. handfuls, boil till they are Crisp, and press out the Oil; this work repeat three times, with the same quantity of Bruised Roots, &c. Lastly, Press forth the Oil: then to every vi. ounces of this Oil, add Gum Elemi iij. ounces: Balsam Capivi, and Peru, Erankincense, of each ij. ounces: Chio Turpentine j. ounce, mix them well. These Balsams whether the first, or second, cure all simple Wounds by the first Intention: Cleanse running Sores, old Ulcers, and Fistula's, of all their filth, then Incarnate, and in a very short time heal them, almost to a wonder. Apply'd also, they give ease in the Gout. And in Ulcers, where the Bone is bare, the Pouder strewed on, and the Balsam apply'd over that, covers the Bone with Flesh, and heals it up.

XXVIII. *The Ointment.* It has the Virtues of the Balsam, but not altogether so powerful: yet a singular Vulnerary, heals Wounds and Ulcers, and eases pains in any part being anointed thereon.

XXIX. *The Cataplasme.* It is made of the Roots and Stalks shred small and beaten to a Pulp, mixt with Hogs Lard, and Crums of Wheaten Bread, till it is of a Consistence. It is good against the Gout, Sciatica, or any External pain from a Cold Cause: and is of singular use being presently apply'd to the Biting of Mad Dogs, Serpents, &c. to draw forth the Poyson: applied to the Region of the Spleen, it eases the pain thereof.

XXX. *The Cerote or Emplaster.* The Pouder of the Root is made into a Plaister, with the Juyce of the Roots Inspissated to thickness of Honey, and Pitch added to it, with sufficient Quantity of Bees Wax. It draws strongly, and therefore is good to be apply'd to the bitings of Mad Dogs, Vipers, &c. as also to the Sciatica, and the Gout whether in Hands or Feet.

XXXI. *The Gargarism.* It is made of the Effence and Decoction mixed in equal Quantities, with a third part of Vinegar. It heals Ulcers and Sores in the Mouth, and attracts cold Humors and Rheums, from the Head and Brain; it may be used morning and evening.

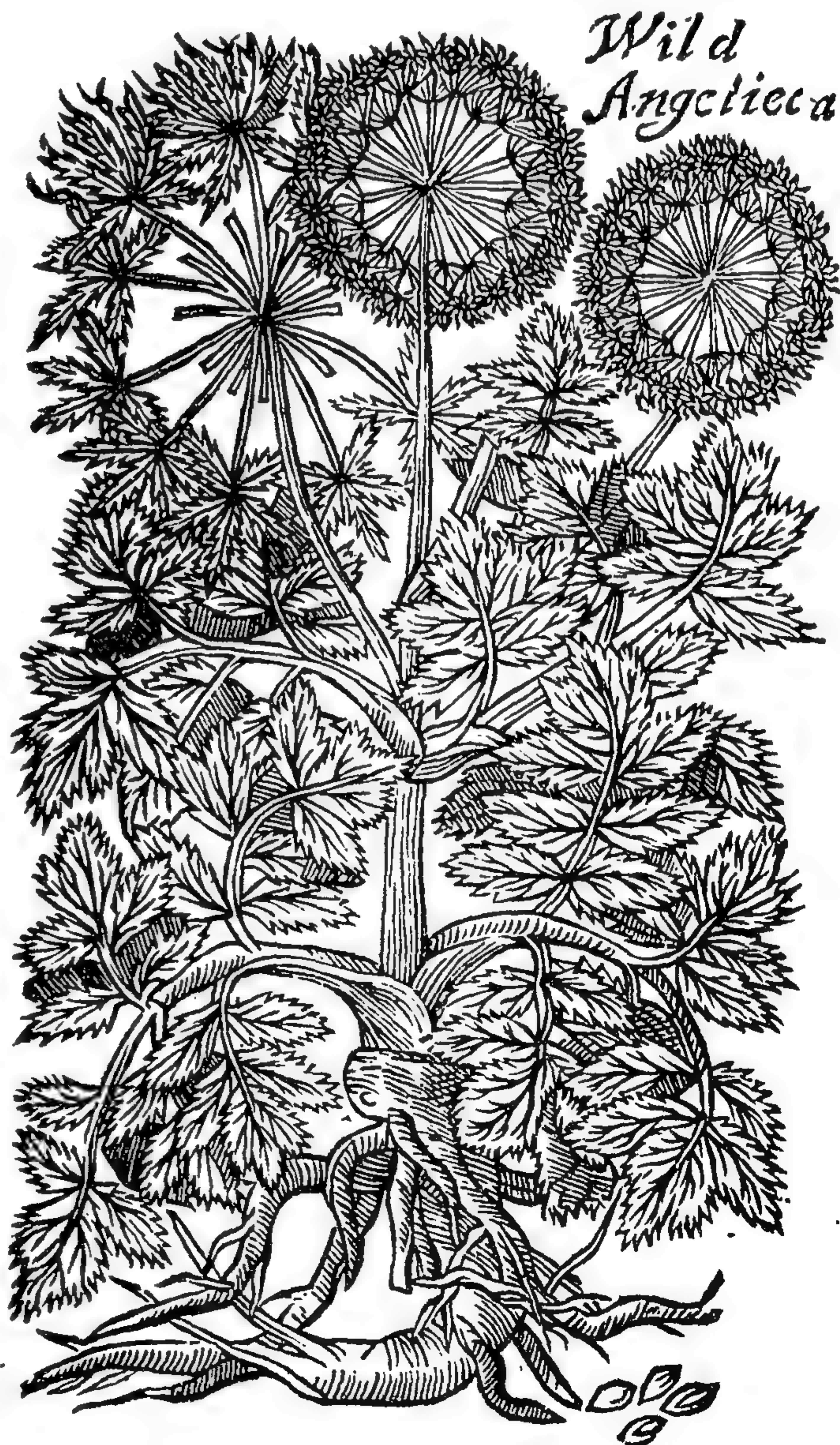
XXXII. *The Errhine.* It is made of the fresh Juyce drawn out of the Root and Stalks, in vj. ounces of which iij. drams of *Sal Nitre* in fine Pouder is dissolved. Being drawn up the Nostrils evening and morning, it admirably purges the Head and Brain of Cold, thick Flegm, and other Humors, which are the foundations and Causes of many pernicious Diseases.

## CHAP. XVI.

### Of Wild ANGELICA.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in the Greek, Ἀγγελική ἀγρία: in Latin, *Angelica Sylvestris*: and in English, *Wild Angelica*.

II. *The Kind.* It is the second Species of *Angelica* before enumerated in chap. 15. sect. 2. foregoing: and of this there is a greater and lesser sort.



III. *The Description.* The greater sort. The Root of this is nothing so great as the former, neither are the strings so great or long, but it is of a blacker Color on the out side, of a pretty strong scent, But nothing near so Aromatick, as the Garden kind: From this Root rises up large spread Leaves on the Ground, having smaller Stalks, and lesser Divisions



sions by much, of a dark green Color, and not smelling half so strong as the Garden kind, yet smelling so much like Angelica, that by the smell, one may easily see and know it, to be of the Kinds of Angelica, tho' Wild: The Stalks are much slenderer and smaller, yet growing three or four Foot high, with



smaller Joynts and lesser Leaves thereat; at the tops grow Umbles of Flowers, but lesser also, and white, like the Garden kind, which turn into smaller Seed, and of a darker Color on the out-side.



IV. The smaller sort, has a great thick Root, from whence rises up Leaves not much differing from the other, but only in being smaller and not so much divided; from whence arises one or more Stalks, low-

er than the former also, at the Joynts of which come forth Leaves not much unlike the Garden Angelica, except in the Magnitude, the Stalks also being reddish: at the top of these Stalks grow Umbles of white Flowers, yet lesser than the other, after which comes the Seed, which is thicker than the former, and something longer.

V. The Places. These grow Wild in many places of this Kingdom, in Essex, Kent, and Middlesex, particularly at Kentish-town near London, and in other places.

VI. The Times. The Roots are in their Prime in February, March, and April; they Flower in July and August, and their Seed is ripe soon after.

VII. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the second Degree. Are opening, inciding, attenuating, digestive, discussive and sudorifick, and are appropriated to the Head, Stomach, Heart, Womb and Joynts: they are also Alexipharmick, Alterative and Vulnerary.

VIII. The Specification. They are peculiar Antidotes against Plague and Poyson, Specificks against the Gout, and singular Wound Herbs.

IX. The Preparations. The Shops keep nothing of them; but you may Prepare therefrom. 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Inspissate Juice from the Root. 3. An Essence. 4. A Wine. 5. A Gargarism. 6. An Errhine. 7. A Decoction. 8. A Spirituous Tincture. 9. A Saline Tincture. 10. An Oily Tincture. 11. A Cataplasme. 12. A Balsam. 13. An Ointment. 14. A Cerote or Emplaster.

#### The Virtues:

X. As to the Virtues of these Wild Angelicas, they are exactly the same with the Garden Kind, which we have largely delivered before, and we were the more willing to be explicit in the Garden kind, there, because we intended to say nothing of the Virtues here: For every Preparation of the Wild kinds has the same Intentions and Uses with those of the Garden, and therefore to them you are referred: Yet here is one thing to be taken notice of, viz: That tho the Virtues of both Garden and Wild kinds are one and the same, yet the Garden kind much exceeds the Wild in Strength and Vertue, and therefore is rather to be chosen (where it may be) before them. These are dryer than the Garden kind, and ought to be put into all Decoctions for Wounded Persons.

## CHAP. XVII.

### Of Water ANGELICA.

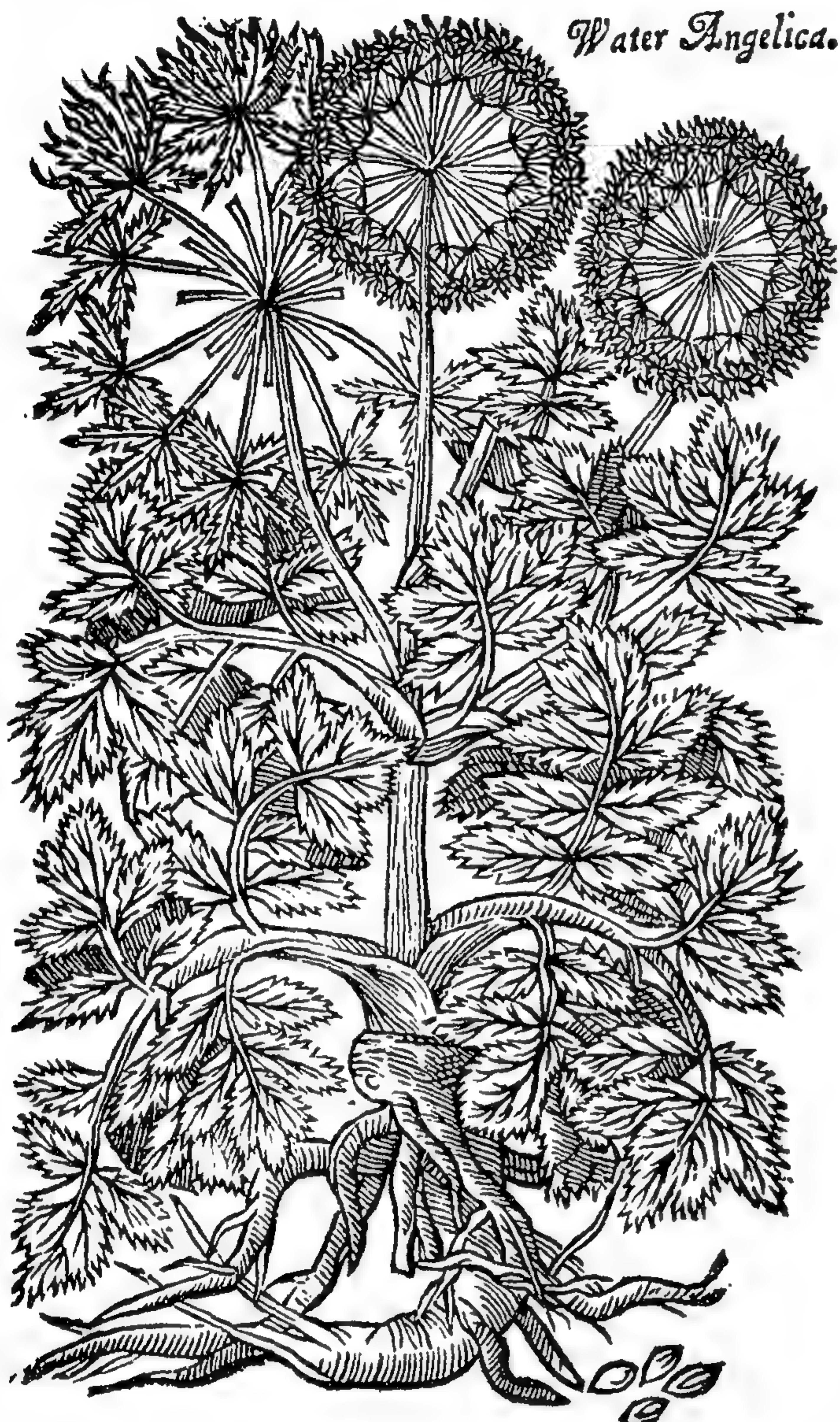
I. The Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἀγγελική ὕδρα*: in Latin, *Angelica Aquatica*, *Archangelica*: And in English, *Water Angelica*.

II. The Kinds. It is the third Species of *Angelica* aforementioned, in chap. 15. sect. 2. above: of which there is known to us, this singular kind only. And it is by some called Wild Angelica, whence the Name upon the Cut, which is the first Cut in the former Chapter, and was placed there by a mistake, and Answers only to the following Description.

III. The Description. The Root of this Plant is great according to its kind and magnitude, thick and White, with some strings hanging to it, and endures many years without perishing: from whence arises Leaves like unto the Garden Angelica, more in number, and smaller divided, which are set upon a great Stalk gross and thick, which is much taller and greater.



greater than the Garden kind, and somewhat Reddish at the Joints, from whence the Leaves by a large Foot-Stalk rise, whose lower part seems to enclose the whole Joint, and to be of a redish Color also; the Leaves are of as deep a green Color as those of the Garden sort: from this Stalk also rises up several long Branches, coming forth of an Husk or Case, not much unlike the common Garden Parsnip; at the top of which Branches come forth Tufts or Umbles of white Flowers, very like to those of the Garden kind: After the Flowers come the Seed, broader, longer, thicker, and of a much darker Color than the Garden Angelica: and the smell of the Plant is much like the same.



Water Angelica.

IV. *The Places.* It grows naturally in England, in moist and watery Ditches and Places, from whence it took its Name; and in particular in the Marsh-Ditches by Redriff.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers also in July and August, and its Seed is ripe not long after: but its Root is in its prime in March and April.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the second Degree: is Inciding, Attenuating, Aperitive, Digestive, Discussive, Attractive and Absterfive: it is Cephalick, Stomack, Cardiack, Uterine and Vulnerary.

VII. *The Specification.* It is a thing peculiar against the Scurvy in a cold habit of Body, and one of the greatest Vulneraries among Vegetables.

VIII. *The Preparations.* The Shops keep nothing hereof, yet you may make therefrom, 1. An Essence. 2. A Liquid Juice. 3. A Decoction in Wine and Water. 4. A Saline Tincture. 5. A Diet Drink. 6. A Cataplasm. 7. A Balsam. 8. A Cerote or Emplaster.

#### The Virtues.

IX. *The Essence.* Setting Scurvy-Grass aside, I can speak by singular Experience, that I know nothing among Vegetables so effectual for the curing of the Scurvy in a cold habit of Body: and as a Vulnerary, I have used it I believe above an Hun-

dred times, with such a success as is admirable. Again in Diseases of the Womb, I know this to be more prevalent than the Garden, in cleansing it, in repressing the Vapors, and helping fits of the Mother. I remember I once gave this to a Woman, who had a kind of a stoney hardness in the Womb, with a Tumor as big as a small Ostriches Egg, which almost continually bled, with very great pain, but not continual: This some Physicians and Chirurgians determined to be a Cancer of the Womb, and so incurable: it was dubious what to say, and the Disease seemed difficult to cure, if at all Curable: however I advised her to the Plentiful use of it for some time: She took iv. ounces of it, morning, noon and night, and continued it for six Weeks, at the end of which time she became perfectly well, and by the use thereof, she voided great quantities of hard clotted Blood.

X. *The Liquid Juice.* Either alone, or with a little Nitre dissolved in it, it is an excellent Errhine, to be snuffed Blood-warm up the Nostrills, till it comes out of the Mouth: it purges the Head and Brain of much cold, flegmatick Humors, taking away sleepiness and heaviness of the head.

XI. *The Decoction in Wine and Water.* It is an excellent Hyfterick and Vulnerary, and may be of good use to such, who cannot be obliged to take either the Juice or Essence. Dose viij. ounces twice a day.

XII. *The Saline Tincture.* It is an excellent thing in a Scorbute, where the whole Mass of Blood is tainted, and the Patient breaks forth into Botches, Boils, Scabs, Leprosy, &c. depurates the Humors, and carries off their Fæculencies effectually by Urine. Dose from j. dram to ij.

XIII. *The Diet Drink.* Tho' this is chiefly intended for Wounded People, and such as have inveterate and running Sores, Ulcers, and Fistula's; yet it is of as great service for such as are afflicted with the Scurvy, have an obstruction, pain or tumor of the Spleen, or any grand disaffection of the Womb. It is drunk daily Spring and Fall as ordinary Drink: and at any other seasons when necessity requires it. It is also found by experience to be good against Hypochondriack Melancholy.

XIV. *The Cataplasm.* It is used against a cold Gout, to discuss tumors, ease pains, and absterge filthy running Sores and Ulcers.

XV. *The Balsam.* It cures simple Wounds, (which are without fracture of the Bone or Contusion) by the first intention: It also cleanses foul Ulcers, incarnates and heals them.

XVI. *The Cerote or Emplaster.* It has an attractive force, incarnates and heals; eases pain, and strengthens the part it is applied to.

## CHAP. XVIII.

### Of ANISE.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *'Ανισον*. In Latin, *Anisum*: And in English, *Anise*. I am apt to believe it is called *'Ανισον* quia habet folia *ἀνισα*, *inaequalia*, vel quia est sine aequali, there being no Plant equal to it in goodness. It is also called in Greek, *'Ανικτρον*, *Anicetum*, quasi, *invictum*, because it seems to be invincible, or not to be overcome, which, I suppose, is in respect to its extraordinary Taste and Smell, which overcomes the Taste and Smells of all other Vegetables in the World.

II. *The Kinds.* It is two-fold, 1. *The Common*, of which we shall Treat in this Chapter. 2. *The Starry*



*Starry Headed of Clusius* growing in *China*, and other parts of the *East-Indies*, of which we have nothing to say in this Work.



III. The Description. It has a small long Root, with some few strings, which Perishes every Year, from which rises up a Stalk round and hollow, about two or three feet high, (seldom higher, for it is a slender Plant) which is divided into divers small Branches, set with Leaves next the Ground, somewhat broad and dented in about the edges; but those which grow higher are more jagged, much like to those of young Parsley, but Whiter: the higher Leaves are also lesser than the lower, of a whitish green color, and of a good sweet Taste and Smell: the higher the Stalk the rounder it is; and spreads not into Branches, saving near the top, where it thrusts it self forth into several spokie rundles or tufts; on the top of which, Umbles of white Flowers do stand, which afterwards do give small roundish long Seed, of a whitish grey colour, and very sweet, and of a quick, yet pleasant Taste and Smell, and more in Quantity than any other Umbelliferous Plant whatsoever.

IV. The Places. It grows plentifully in *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Candia*, and other Eastern Countries: It grows also in *England* in the Gardens of Herbalists, where it has well enough thriven, and brought forth Seed perfectly ripe and good.

V. The Times. It is Sown with us in *England* in *May*, and the Seed is Ripe in *August*. But you may Sow Aniseeds here, in *England*, in *February*, when the Moon is at Full, or any time between the Full and the Change: If by reason of Frost, you cannot take the Full Moon, you must take the next opportunity, and cast them into the Ground, raking them well in; after which, strew fresh or new Horse-Dung, thinly upon the Ground, to defend them from the Frost, so will these seed and be ripe about *Bartholomew-tide*: Then Sow again in the Full Moon in *May*; these, if the Weather is kind, may be ripe sooner than the former. Aniseed will also come well up, if they be Self-sown, only the Ground is to be broken up near to and about them, when they begin to ripen. The time of their Flowering does continue four or five Months, so that, at one time,

you may find the Plant in full Flower, and the Seed near to its full Growth, as you often see in *Fennel*, *Dill*, &c. That Ground which you would Sow in *February*, you ought to break up about *Michaelmas*, and to let it lye and Crumble all Winter, and when you intend to Sow it, you must stir it up again, that it may be mellow; for the mellow, the better; and a black, rich, mellow Mould is the best, for they delight in a well dung'd rich Soil.

VI. The Qualities. It is Hot in the second Degree, and Dry in the first: The Seeds are Opening, Inciding, Attenuating, Digestive, Discussive, Carni-native and Anodine; and by Appropriation, they are Cephalick, Stomack, Pectoral, Hysterick, Nephritick, and Arthritick: They are also Lactogene-tick, Spermatogenetick, and Alterative.

VII. The Specification. They have a peculiar property against Coughs, Shortness of Breath, Difficulty of Breathing, and the Colick.

VIII. The Preparations. The Shops keep, 1. The Seed. 2. Aniseed Comfits. 3. Aniseed Comfits Laxative. 4. A Distilled Water. 5. Anniseed Water, made with *Aqua Vita*. 6. A Chymical Oil. 7. A Fixt Salt of the Plant by Incineration. To the former things you may add these following. 8. The Green Herb. 9. The Essence. 10. The Potestates or Powers. 11. A Spirituous Tincture. 12. A Saline Tincture. 13. An Oily Tincture. 14. A Decoction. 15. A Balsam. 16. A Cataplasm. 17. An Extract. 18. A Spirit.

## The Virtues.

IX. The Seed. *Schroder* says, it is milder when green, Attenuates, Discusses, provokes Urine, breeds Milk, is Pectoral, and good for the Stomach, and to open Obstructions in the Lungs; it is given in Pouder to such as have their Bellies swoln up with Wind: A scruple given to a Child, Purges and Vomits gently, and carrys off those green Excrements, which in those little ones cause Gripings, vehement Pain, sickness at Stomach, and sometimes Convulsions: It is a Specifick also in curing a stubborn Hiccough.

X. Aniseed Comfits. They are good against Coughs, open the Lungs, expel Wind, and give ease in the Colick.

XI. Aniseed Comfits Lavative. They are made by a Maceration of the Seed in Water, in which Scammony has been Dissolved; or by mixing the Pouder of Scammony with the first Coverings of Sugar; or by Macerating them in an Infusion of *Vitrum Antimonij*. The former Purge gently, without any Pain, Gripping or making Sick; the last both Purge and Vomit; but they all carry off Sharp, Corroding, Slimy, Flegmatick, and Tartarous Humors, help Digestion, empty the Lungs of the matter Obstructing them, and Cure the Colick. Dose from half a dram to ij. drams.

XII. The Distilled Water of the whole Plant, or of the Seed. It is a good Vehicle to convey other Medicines in; besides which it expels Wind, is good for Sore Eyes, and encreases Milk in Nurses. Dose from ij. to iiij. Ounces.

XIII. Aniseed Water Distilled off from *Aqua Vita*, or Spirit of Wine. It comforts the Stomach, opens the Lungs, helps Obstructions of the Liver, expels Wind, causes Digestion, and prevails against the Colick. Dose ij. Drams to half an Ounce, now and then upon occasion.

XIV. The Chymical Oil. It is an admirable Pectoral, Curing most Diseases of the Brest and Lungs, as Coughs, Colds, Asthma's, Rawness, Windiness of the Stomach, Phthick, Colick, and indeed all Diseases proceeding from Cold, and Wind; it



provokes Lust, and is often given with good Success in Fits of the Mother, in Epilepsies, Apoplexies, Vertigo's, Megrims, Head-aches, Lethargies, Carus, and other Diseases proceeding from Cold Plegmatick Humors. Dose from *iiij.* Drops to *x.* in some fit Vehicle or Liquor.

XV. *The Fix'd Salt.* It is an admirable Pectoral and Nephritick; it Dissolves Tartarous Matter in the Lungs, Reins, Ureters, Bladder, or Womb, opens all Obstructions of those Parts, provokes Urine, and brings away Sand, Gravel, or whatsoever creates a Stoppage in those Parts. Dose *j.* Scruple to half a Dram.

XVI. *The Green Herb.* The Decoction in Water and Wine, being drunk several times a day increases Milk in Nurses; and Boiled in Oil of Roses, and dropt into the Ears, takes away their Pains, and removes the noise in them. The planting this Herb near Bees, is the best means for the keeping of Bees, and multiplying of them, as also for their Breeding great store of Honey: For first it yields an innumerable company of Flowers, and is continually in flowering for Four and sometimes Five Months, according as the Year is Seasonable, and these Flowers yield much Sweetness and Honey, and carry a Scent so pleasant and grateful with them, that the Bees rather chuse to feed upon it, than upon any other Plant whatsoever; besides they contain an excellent Sweetning Ferment, by which the Dew is converted into a more Thick and Sweet Substance, by many degrees passing simple Dew, which contains within it a Saccharine Salt, which the Bees greedily resort to, and suck, and with it load themselves: But the main excellency is the long duration of its flowering time, so that it will afford them a supply, the greatest part of their gathering-time, whereas the Blossoms of Fruit-trees, and Flowers of other Herbs, are only at a peculiar season, and of small continuance. The Green Herb being taken, and the inside of the Hives, as also the Orifices thereof being rubbed therewith, will so much delight the Bees, that when their Swarming time comes, which will be Three Times a Year, if they feed on this Herb, they will certainly enter into them, and go no where else: But in case when they Swarm, they should settle upon some Tree, or other Place, the fault may be helped by rubbing the inside of the new Hive with Green Anise, and holding it on the Top of a Pole to the Bees; for by the sweet Scent or Smell of the Anise, they will be allured, to enter thereinto, of their own accords. It is reported, that a certain Lord of *Austria* so thrived by this Secret, that he furnished many Countries with Honey and Wax, whereby he Accumulated to himself vast Wealth, and a very great Estate.

XVII. *The Essence.* Whether it is prepared of the Herb, or Green Seed, or both, has all the Virtues of the Chymical Oil, but not all out so powerful, for which reason this is to be given in a much larger Dose, as from *j.* Ounce to *ij.* Ounces, or more; it powerfully opens Obstructions of Liver, Spleen, Lungs, Reins, and Womb, and is singular against the Falling-sickness, Convulsions, and Colick: It powerfully provokes Lust, is good for such as are Impotent, and makes others more Vigorous; for it mightily encreases Seed in the Seminal Vessels, as also Milk in Nurses, and prevails against Poison, and the Bitings of Mad Dogs, or other Venomous Creatures.

XVIII. *The Potestates or Powers.* This Preparation has all the Virtues both of the Oil and Essence, and is much more pleasant to be taken, and in par-

ticular is a singular thing against Vapors, the rising of the Mother, Frensie, Madness, and other like Distempers of the Brain; you may give from *j.* Dram to *iiij.* or *iiij.* Drams, in any convenient Vehicle: It is very good against Convulsion Fits, and Cures (outwardly by Bathing the place with it) all kinds of Pains, Aches, and Cramps, proceeding from a cold Cause: It is good also to Prevent and Cure After-pains of Women in Child-bed, being inwardly taken, and outwardly bathed upon the Region of the Belly, a warm Flannel dipt also in the same being laid over it.

XIX. *The Spirituous Tincture of the Seed.* It has the Virtues of the Oil and Powers, but scarcely so strong; and causes an Expectoration of Flegm in such as have Coughs, Colds, Shortness of Breath, Asthma's or Difficulty of Breathing; and is excellent good against the Bitings of Mad Dogs, Vipers, or other Venomous Creatures: It prevails much also against Hypochondriack Melancholly. Dose from *j.* Dram to *ij.* or *iiij.* Drams, in some fit Vehicle.

XX. *The Saline Tincture.* It is a Specifick to dissipate both the Wind and Water in the Dropsie Tympanites; it increases Milk in Nurses, facilitates the Birth, brings away the After-birth, and dissolves Tartarous Matter, whether in the Lungs, Womb, Reins or Bladder, and therefore powerfully Provokes Urine, and Expels Sand, Gravel, &c. Dose from *j.* Dram to *ij.* Drams, or more, according to the Age and Necessity.

XXI. *The Oily Tincture.* Altho' it is good in Diseases of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, and may be given inwardly, for many Diseases of the Liver, Spleen, and Lungs; yet its principal use is in External Applications; for being Anointed upon the Part, it cures Cramps, Old Aches and Pains, Gouts, Numedness, Lameness, Tremblings, and Palsies, proceeding from a cold Cause, and Viscous, Tartarous Humors; yet in these very cases it may also be taken inwardly from *v.* or *vj.* Drops, to *x.* or *xij.* in Wine, &c.

XXII. *The Decoction of the Seed.* It is peculiar for breeding Milk in Nurses; and if made in Wine, it opens Obstructions of the Liver, and is very profitable in curing the Dropsie, Ascites, or Anasarca; it stops the Hiccough, helps Digestion, stirs up Lust, is good against the Colick, Poison, and Bitings of all Venomous Creatures, helps a Stinking Breath, Provokes Urine, and Expels Wind in any part, whether Head, Stomach, Spleen, Bowels, Mesentery, or Womb. Dose from *iiij.* to *viii.* ounces, two or three times a Day.

XXIII. *The Balsam.* It has all the Virtues of the Oily Tincture, being outwardly Applied, and Cures Wounds, though of the Nerves, by the first Intention.

XXIV. *The Cataplasim.* If it is made of the Seed, either Green or Dry, and applied to the Eyes which have any thing fallen into them, it quickly draws it forth; and being applied to any place Bitten with a Mad Dog, Viper, Rattle-Snake, or Venomous Creature, it effectually draws forth the Poison.

XXV. *The Extract.* Take the Seed bruised, upon which Affuse Spirit of Wine, which Digest three or four Days, then press forth the Liquor out of the Seed; put this Liquor into an Alembick or Glass Vesica, and Abstract the Spirit by Distillation till what remains is of the thickness of Honey. This Spirit is Spirit of Aniseeds. Dose from *j.* Dram to *ij.* Drams, against the Falling-sickness.

XXVI. *The Spirit.* It has all the Virtues of Aniseed Water, and is not much inferior to the Powers. Dose from *j.* to *ij.* Drams, in Wine.



## CHAP. XIX.

### OF LOVE APPLES.

I. **THE Names.** It is called in Greek, as *Anguillara* says, *Λυκοπεριχον*, & *Λυκοπεριον*: in Latin, *Pomum Amoris*, *Pomum Aureum*; *Malum Amoris*, *Malum Aureum*: And in English, *Love Apples*.

II. **The Kinds.** There are but two sorts thereof, viz. The Greater kind and the Lesser kind: and of the Greater, there are also two sorts; but they differ in nothing but in the colour of the Fruit, the one being of a fair Reddish colour; the other of a pale Yellow.



III. **The Description.** The Root of the Greater Kind, which is Small and Thready, shoots forth into many small Strings, and larger Branches, under ground, which perishes at the first approach of our Winter, from whence springs forth very long round Stalks or Branches, fat and full of Juice, trailing upon the ground, not able to sustain it self upright, by reason of the weakness of its Stalks, and also of the great weight of its Leaves and Fruit wherewith it is loaded. The Leaves are many, long, and winged, viz. many Leaves set on both sides a middle Rib, some greater, others less, deeply jagged or dented about the edges, of a grayish, over-grown green Colour, somewhat rough and hairy in handling: From among these Leaves and Branches come forth long Stalks, with many Yellow Flowers set thereon, upon several short foot Stalks, clustering together in Bunches, consisting of Six, and sometimes of Eight small long yellow Leaves, with a kind of Prick in the middle: After the Flowers are fallen, there comes in place the Fruit, which is about the bigness of a Golden Pippin, very fair and pleasant, chamfred, uneven, and bunched out in many places, (there being scarcely any which are compleatly round without these Bunches) of a fair, or bright shining pale reddish colour, and

sometimes deeper; and of the yellow kind, not much unlike to a pale Orange colour. The Pulp or Meat is very full of moisture, soft, reddish or yellowish, of the substance of a Wheaten Plum, in which the Seed lyes, which is small, white, roundish, flat, and somewhat rough. The whole Plant is of a rank smell.

IV. The Lesser Kind has a Root like the former, which perishes in like manner every Year, from whence comes long trailing Branches, beset with such like Leaves as the Greater Kind, but smaller in every part; the Flowers also stand many together on a long Stalk, and yellow as the former, but much smaller; the Fruit are also small, viz. round, yellowish, red Berries, not much bigger than great Grapes; in which are contained white, round, flat Seed, like the former, but smaller. If you would have them every Year, you must new Sow them every Spring, or else let them Sow themselves, so will they rise without any further trouble.

V. **The Places.** They grow naturally in hot Countries, as in *Ethiopia*, *Barbary*, *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and other hot Countries: Some report they were first brought to us from *Peru*; and I have seen them grow in *Carolina*, which is the South-East part of *Florida*; but with us in *England* they grow only in Gardens, where being nourish'd up, they bring forth their Fruit to perfection.

VI. **The Times.** The Seed is sown in the beginning of *April*, in a Bed of hot Horse-dung, after the manner of *Musk Melons*, and such like cold Fruits; they Flower in *June*, *July*, and *August*, and the Fruit is ripe for the most part in the middle or end of *September*.

VII. **The Qualities.** The whole Plant and Apples are Cold and Moist, almost in the fourth Degree; but not so cold as *Mandrakes*. They are Cephalick, Stomatick, Nephritick, and Uterine; of an Attenuating, Cleansing, Repercussive, and Anodine Quality; and operate only as Alteratives.

VIII. **The Specification.** They are peculiar to allay the heat of Inflammations, but more especially of an *Erysipelas*.

IX. **The Preparations.** The Shops keep nothing of this Plant; but you may have from it, 1. The Apples themselves. 2. The Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Cataplasm. 5. An Oil. 6. A Balsam for Wounds.

#### The Virtues.

X. **The Apples.** In *Spain*, and those hot Countries, they use to eat the Apples prepared and boiled in Vinegar, with Pepper and Salt, and served up with Oil, and Juice of Limons: Likewise they eat them raw, with Oil, Vinegar and Pepper, for Sawce to their Meat, as we here do Cucumbers; but they yield not much nourishment, but only please and cool or quench the Heat and Thirst of hot Stomachs.

XI. **The Juice.** Applied upon Inflammations, but especially bathed upon an *Erysipelas*, and Linen Cloths wet in the same, laid thereon, abate the Inflammation, and take away the preternatural heat.

XII. **The Essence.** It represses Vapors in Women, is good against Fits of the Mother, opens the Obstructions of the Urine, taking away the heat and scalding thereof; is good against Sand, Gravel, and the Stone, and gives ease in all Pains proceeding from a hot Cause. Dose from j. to ij. ounces.

XIII. **The Cataplasm.** It is good against the Head-ach, Megrim, Gout, Sciatica, and all Pains whatsoever proceeding from a hot and dry Cause: In outward Applications it ought to be renewed twice a Day.

XIV. **The Oil.** It Cures all manner of Burnings, and Scaldings, whether of Fire, Water, Oil, Lead, &c.



&c. and has the Virtues of the Cataplasin, and may be anointed upon those places where a Cataplasin cannot be applied.

XV. *The Balm.* It is a singular good thing to cool Inflammations in Wounds and Ulcers, heal all sorts of Burnings and Scaldings, cleanse old Running Sores, and to give ease in the Gout, pain in the Back, or any other part proceeding from vehement hot and fiery humors: It admirably heals Wounds, and, when cleansed, Ulcers also, after the manner of Preparations from *All-heals*.

XVI. *A special Note.* It appears that this Plant abounds with a vast humidity; for in the hottest time in Summer, the superfluous Branches being cut off from the Mother Root, and carelessly cast away in the Allies of the Garden, though at a time when no Rain shall fall, yet will they grow as fresh, as if they had not been cut off; which shews indeed the exceeding moisture of the Herb.

## CHAP. XX.

### OF MAD APPLES.

I. *THE Names.* This Plant has no known Greek name, (except Στρυχνόμανικὸς, may be taken for it, which is more properly the name for *Solanum Lethale*:) but to supply the place, we may call it Μῆλον μανικόν Pl. Μῆλα μανικά; in Latin, *Malum insanum*, Pl. *Mala insana*; in English, *Mad Apple*, and *Mad Apples*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three Kinds, 1. The Syrian. 2. The European. 3. The Ethiopian, of which we shall say nothing in this Work.



III. *The Description.* 1. *Of the Syrian.* It has a Root composed of many strings, some great, others small, not thrusting down deep into the ground, which continues not all Winter, but perishes with the first frosts; from this Root rises up a great, hard, round, purplish, or brownish green Stalk, two foot high, di-

vided from the bottom into divers Branches, whereon are set many hairy, broad, rough Leaves, somewhat unevenly cut on the edges, and somewhat like the Thorn Apple Leaves: At the Joints with the Leaves come forth several large Flowers, consisting of six large pointed Leaves; in some Plants white, in others of a pale, but deadish purple Colour, with yellow threads in the middle; which passing away, there comes forth large, somewhat long, and round Fruit, in the warm Countries as large as a Cucumber; but in colder Countries seldom bigger than a large Duck or Goose Egg, set in the same Husk or Cup, which before contained the Flower, whose Colour on the outside is usually according to the Flower it bore, either of a whitish Green, more yellowish, or of a grayish Ash Colour, or of a Pale or Wan purplish Colour, with a very thin Skin or Peel, and full of a whitish Pulp, and Juice, having many small flat whitish Seeds within it, somewhat greater than those of the Love Apple.

IV. *The Mala insana Europæa*, have a Root stringy, and not much differing from the former, and perishing every year, after Seeding time; from whence grows an upright round Stalk, about the thickness of a Man's Finger, and about a foot and half high, from whence spring forth at several Joints, sometimes on the one side, and sometimes on the other, divers long, and somewhat broad green Leaves, unevenly cut in on the edges, and ending in a long point, three for the most part coming together, each of them upon a short Foot-stalk; at the tops of the Stalks, come forth the Flowers, consisting of six several Leaves; after which succeeds the Fruit, which are round reddish Berries or Apples, about the bigness of a Plum, and very full of Seed.

V. *The Places.* The first grows in Syria, and Ægypt, where it grows plentifully Wild, and in most of those Eastern Countries, where the Fruit grows to the bigness (as *Bellonius* reports) of a great Cucumber: It also grows with us in our Gardens, where it bears Flowers, and as *Gerrard* says, in a temperate or warm Year, Fruit also, which he saw of the bigness of a Goose Egg, but came not to ripeness. The European grows in shadowy places upon the Appenine Mountains, and has been translated also into our Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* The Seed must be sown in April, in a Bed of hot Horse Dung, as Musk Melons are, and then it will Flower in August. The European Flowers in August, and if the Summer is warm, its Fruit comes to perfection in September.

VII. *The Qualities.* They are cold and moist almost in the fourth Degree. They are Cleansing, Repercussive, Anodine, or rather Narcotick, and Vulnerary. And by Appropriation are dedicated to the Head, Stomach, Reins, Womb and Joints; acting only as Alteratives.

VIII. *The Specification.* Their chief use is for cooling an *Erysipelas*, and Inflammations, easing Pains proceeding from vehement hot and sharp Humors, and healing of Wounds; but they cause no Madness, as the name would seem to import.

IX. *The Preparations.* The Shops keep nothing of this Plant; but you may have therefrom, 1. The Apples themselves. 2. A Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Cataplasin. 5. An Oil. 6. A Balm.

#### The Virtues.

X. *The Apples.* They are boiled in Fat Broth, or rather in Water and Vinegar, and so eaten, being served up with Oil, Vinegar, Pepper, and Salt, and this at Genoua is a great Dish. *Fuchsius* says, there is a superabundant coldness and moisture in them, as there is in Cucumbers and Mushrooms; but the beauty



beauty of the Fruit, and the wonderful delight they give to the Palate, also their inciting to Venery, (which most Windy things, as these are, do) are the great Motives which intice to the eating of them: Wherefore in *Italy*, and other hot Countries, where they come to their full Maturity, and proper Relish, they eat them with more Desire and Relish, than we do *Cucumbers*, and therefore Prepare and Dress them in divers manners; some eat them Raw, as we do *Cucumbers*; some Roast them under the Embers; some first Boil them, then Pare and Slice them, and so eat them as first related; some strew Flower over them, and Fry them with Oil or Butter, and serve them to the Table with Pepper and Salt; and some keep them in Pickle, to spend in Winter, and the next Spring. Yet *Avicenna*, lib. 2. cap. 455. Condemns them as hurtful things: On the contrary, *Averrhoes* Commends them. I believe it is true, that they yield but little Nourishment, and breed much Wind, whereby 'tis possible they may provoke Bodily Lust. At *Toledo* in *Spain*, they eat them with great Desire, being Boiled with Fat Flesh, then putting thereto some scraped Cheese, then keep them in Honey, or Vinegar and Salt Pickle all Winter, to eat as Viands, when they have a mind to it, to procure Lust.

XI. *The Juice*. It cools the heat of the Reins, and the scalding of the Urine, taken to j. ounce in Arsmart Water: Applied upon Inflammations, and bathed upon an *Erysipelas*, and Linen Cloaths wet therein being laid thereon, it abates the heat of the Inflammation, and cures the *Erysipelas*: It is also of singular use against Burnings and Scaldings, of what kind soever: if the Skin is not broken, dissolve in it a good quantity of Salt, and bathe therewith.

XII. *The Essence*. It is an excellent thing against hot vapors of the Womb, and Fits of the Mother; and is good against Sand, Gravel, and Tartarous matter obstructing the Urinary Passages. Dose from j. to ij. ounces.

XIII. *The Cataplasme*. It is good to be applied upon Burnings and Scaldings from what cause soever, it takes out the Fire, and allays the Heat and Inflammation: It may be good also in an *Erysipelas*, being often renewed; and is prevalent against the Gout in Elbows, Wrists, Hands, Fingers, Legs, Feet, Toes, or any other Pain or Ach, proceeding from a cold Cause; and is good to be applied to a slight Contusion or Blow, being laid on before any Tumor arises.

XIV. *The Oil*. It is good against all sorts of Burnings and Scaldings, with Fire, Water, Soap Lees, Oil, Pitch, Tar, Lead, Gunpowder, &c. being anointed therewith, and the Cataplasme foregoing presently after applied, and often renewed; and has all the Virtues of the Cataplasme, except in the case of an *Erysipelas*, where Oily Bodies rather inflame, than do any good: It gives ease in the Megrim, and Head-ach, from a hot Cause, and takes away the black and blew Marks which arise from Blows, Falls, &c.

XV. *The Balsam*. It is a singular Vulnerary, prevents, and allays Inflammations in Wounds and Ulcers, coming from what accident soever: It cleanses Ulcers and Fistula's, and speedily heals them afterwards.

## C H A P. XXI.

## Of THORNIE APPLES.

I. *THE Names*. It is called in *Greek*, Παιονόκαλον ἢ Βαρυκόκαλον (i. e. a Nut causing Drowfulness: ) In *Latin*, *Stramonium*, *Melospinum*, *Malum Spinosum*, *Pomum Spinosum*: In *English*, *Thorny Apple*, and *Thorn Apple*. *Matthiolus* thinks this to be the *Nux Metel*, of the *Arabians*.

II. *The Kinds*. It is twofold, 1. That which generally grows with us in *England*. 2. That of *Peru*. And of the first Kind there is both single and double, with variety of Colours in the Flowers.



III. *The Description*. The Root is small and thready, from whence springs up, one great Stalk, four, five, or six feet high, seldom higher; and two or three Inches, or more, thick in Diameter, and sometimes four or five Inches thick, upright and straight, having very many Branches, and sometimes but few, upon jointed Stems; on which do grow Leaves, smooth, very broad, and cut in, or jagged about the edges, long and broad almost as a Spinage Leaf; and not much differing from the shape of Goose-foot. The Flowers come forth of long Toothed Cups, great, white, and of the form of a Bell, or like the flower of the great Bindweed, which spreads it self in Hedges, but altogether greater, and wider at Mouth, and sharp cornered at the brims; of a strong smell, so that it offends the Senses: After the Flowers follows the Fruit, something of the fashion of an Egg, set about on every side and part with sharp Prickles, almost like Thorns, within which Shell is contained very much Seed, of the bigness of a very small Tare, and almost of the same fashion, and of a blackish brown, or black Colour.

IV. The Thorn Apple of Peru has a Root thicker than the former, with some thick Branches, from whence runs several small strings, and out of which springs one pretty thick upright Stalk, about four



or five feet high, seldom higher; nearly two Inches thick, having very few Branches, sometimes none at all; from which Stalk and Branches (where there is any) spring forth pretty large Leaves, smooth and even, little or nothing indented about the edges, longer and broader than the Leaves of Nightshade, or Mad Apples: From the Bottoms or Foot-stalks of the Leaves spring forth long Toothed Cups, out of which come the Flowers, great, white, and of the form of a Bell, or the Flowers of the great Bind-weed, but greater and wider at Mouth, and sharp cornered at the Brims, like the former; which contain white Chives or Threads in the midst, of a strong Pontick Savour, offending the Head when it is smelled to: When the Flower is gone, the Fruit comes forth, of the bigness of a small Walnut with the green on; this fruit is full of Prickles; within the Shell are a great number of Seeds, of the bigness of small Tares, or Seeds of Mandrakes, and of the same form. The whole Herb is of a strong Savour; and smelling to it causes Drowsiness.

V. *The Places.* The First was brought from Constantinople, and now grows with us plentifully in our Gardens; it also grows Wild and very plentifully in the South Carolina. The latter was found growing in the Mountains of Peru, from whence the Seed was sent to Manardus in Spain: and from thence it was conveyed unto other parts of Europe; and now it is nourished up in some of our Gardens in England.

V. *The Times.* The first may be sown in March or April, and it brings forth ripe Seed in September, Flowering in the Summer Months: The latter is sown in a hot Bed of Horse Dung, as we do Cucumbers and Musk-Melons. Authors say, of both these sorts, there is a greater and a lesser Kind, and that the greater Kinds are plentiful enough in our Gardens, and will abide and give with us ripe Seed: but the lesser Kinds are very rare, because they seldom come to maturity, and so we are every Year to seek for new Seed.

VII. *The Qualities.* These Plants are said to be cold and moist in the fourth Degree: and to be Repercussive, Narcotick, or Stupefactive, and Vulnerary: and are by appropriation, Cephalick, Hysterick and Arthritick, and operate only as Alteratives by their cold and moist property.

VIII. *The Specification.* Manardus says, that the Indians commend these Plants for provoking Urine, and expelling Sand and Gravel from the Reins and Bladder: and by Gerard's account, it is a famous Wound Herb outwardly used.

IX. *The Preparations.* There are taken from it, 1. The Seed. 2. The Juice. 3. An Essence from the same. 4. An Oil. 5. An Ointment. 6. A Cerote or Emplaster. 7. A Cataplasim.

#### The Virtues

X. *The Seed.* It is of great Estimation in the Indies, both by the Spaniards and Indians themselves, in that it provokes Urine, and expels Gravel and the Stone both in the Reins and Bladder, for which it is most commended: it is said to break the Stone in the Bladder if it is not too hard and inveterate, or may by any medicine be dissolved; of which there has been many proofs, as Manardus says, has been declared to his great admiration: For, as he says, he did not think that the Stone in the Bladder could be dissolved and expelled by any means whatsoever, and that the Cure thereof consisted only in Cutting it out by a skillful hand: but it was said of this Seed, that being taken in any Fit and convenient Water for that purpose, that it would by little and little dissolve the Stone into small Gravel; which

after it is expell'd, or driven forth, would again stick together and Grow into a hard Stone.

XI. *The Juice of the Herb.* It is singular good to bath with in all Sorts of hot Inflammations and an Erysipilas, by laying Cloths dipt in the Juice upon the same, and often repeating the Application.

XII. *The Essence of the Juice,* Dropt into the Eye, it allays the Inflammation thereof, and removes hot and sharp Rheums: Injected up the Womb it is good against the continual running of the Whites, strengthens the Part, and cools any Inflammation of the same, or of the Secrets: it also is good against all sorts of Inflammations in Wounds and Ulcers.

XIII. *The Oil,* made by boiling the bruised Herb in it till it is crisp, is good against all sorts of Inflammations, Burnings and Scaldings, and gives ease in a hot Gout, and Pains and Aches, in the Head chiefly, proceeding from a hot Cause and Humor.

XIV. *The Ointment,* made of the Juice or bruised Herb, boiled to crispness, and twice or thrice repeated, in Hogs Lard, and then pressed forth, cures all Inflammations whatsoever, and heals all manner of Burnings and Scaldings, whether of Fire, Water, Oil, melted Lead, Gun-Powder or Lightning, and that in a very short time: This was proved upon a Merchants Wife at Colchester, who (after the use of many other things in vain, and when all hopes were past) being grievously Burned was herewith perfectly cured.

XV. *The Emplaster.* It is made of the bruised Herb, boiled in Oil Olive to crispness, and pressed forth, and three times repeated, and then brought to a body with Turpentine, Rosin and Wax, of each a sufficient quantity. It cures malign Ulcers, and Apostems, helps a hot Gout, and prevails against fresh and Green Wounds, and old Sores and running Ulcers, especially upon the Glandulous parts of the Yard, and other places where they are hard of Cure.

XVI. *The Cataplasim.* It is good against Recent Bruises especially upon a bony part, to allay Inflammations, and ease the Gout and other Pains proceeding from a hot Cause.

## CHAP. XXII.

### Of Red ARCHANGEL.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Λάμιον πορφύρεον*: In Latin, *Lamium purpureum*, *Urtica iners purpurea*, *Urtica mortua rubra*: In English, Red Archangel, or Red Dead Nettle.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold, 1. The Sweet, called simply *Lamium purpureum*. 2. Stinking, *Γαλιόψις*, *Γαλιόψις*, *Γαλιόψις*: And in Latin, *Lamium fatidum*, *Urtica iners fatida*, *Urtica mortua fatida*, *Urtica Labeo*, stinking Dead Nettle or Hedg Nettle. And of this stinking kind there are divers sorts, as 1. *Galeopsis vera*; The true stinking Dead Nettle, or Hedg Nettle. 2. *Galeopsis altera pallida*; pale stinking Dead Nettle. 3. *Galeopsis altera incana*, Hoary stinking Dead Nettle. 4. *Galeopsis lutea Dalechampij*, Yellow stinking Dead Nettle.

III. *The Description.* 1. The Sweet kind. It has a Root small and thready, perishing every Year, from whence rises divers hollow square Stalks, somewhat Hairy, with Joints at a good distance, one from another, and also two sad green Leaves, dented about the edges, set opposite one to another, the lowermost upon long Foot-Stalks, but without any towards the top.



top, which are somewhat round, yet a little pointed at the ends, and a little crumpled and Hairy; round about the upper Joints with the Leaves, grow sundry gaping Flowers of a paleish red Color, not much unlike Betony Flowers, after which come Seeds, three or four set together in a husk; the whole Plant smells strong, and pleasant enough, not stinking.



IV. The Galeopsis Vera, has a Root composed of many strings, shooting out fresh heads every Year, and thereby increasing very much; from whence comes forth divers square, soft, and hairy Stalks rising up to be two or three feet or more high, according as the Ground is in goodness; at the Joints whereof grow two Leaves a piece upon Foot Stalks, not much unlike to Nettle Leaves, but that they are soft and somewhat hoary, and not at all stinging, of a strong unpleasant sent, especially if growing in shadowy places, but nothing so strong if growing in the open Fields: at the tops of the Stalks grow the Flowers, set in Rundles, for or five at a space, and many of them one above another in manner of a spiked head, everyone standing in a greenish Husk, like unto those of the other more pleasant sented Dead Nettles, but not so great, nor of so sad a red or purplish Color, especially the Heads or upper parts; but the lower Labels or Lips have some white spots in them: after the Flowers are fallen, there grows within those Husks, small round, but somewhat rough Seed, four of them for the most part stand together, which are of a black Color when Ripe.

V. The Pale stinking Dead Nettle, has a pretty thick Root and full of Strings, from whence rises up a long, square, hairy Stalk or Stalks, out of which comes several pale green broad Leaves, set upon long hairy Foot Stalks, and higher up, such like but lesser Leaves thereon, with sundry small pale yellowish Flowers, set together at spaces, which turn into small round pointed Heads, with small blackish Seed in them; the whole Plant is of a strong stinking smell.

VI. The Hoary stinking Dead Nettle, has a Root much like to the former kinds, from whence comes

Stalks square, soft, and hoary, but shorter, very slender and weak, creeping as it were by the Ground, with two Leaves set by the Joints likewise, soft and hoary, but more hoary underneath, and not so large as the first kind of Galeopsis: the top of the Stalks end in a long spike of purplish Flowers, set in Rundles as in the other, after which comes the Seed, Black also as the former.

VII. The yellow stinking Dead Nettle, has much such a like Root as the others, whence comes forth square low Stalks, not above a Cubit or a Foot and a half high, with long Leaves set thereon by couples, very like unto Nettle Leaves, smaller below next the Ground, than up higher upon the Stalks, being hairy, but not so stinking as the first, yet smelling very strong: the Flowers grow in long spiked Heads in like manner, but are all yellow when fully blown, consisting of two Leaves, the uppermost whereof is not so much hooded as the former, but is as it were a cover to the lower, and turns it self up again, having some yellow threads in the middle; but while it is in the bud, it is somewhat redish, after which comes forth the Seed in the same Husks.

VIII. The Places. Red Archangel grows almost ever where, by Ditch and Hedge sides, throughout the whole Kingdom. The first Galeopsis grows very frequently in England in divers Counties, as at Hamstead, going from the Town to the Church, and many other Places from Hamstead-Heath to London, as also at Greenwich in some places not far from the Park. The second Kind, grows also wild by Hedge and Ditch sides, and as a Weed in many Gardens. The two last Kinds, are not found to grow wild at all with us, but only nourished up in Gardens.

IX. The Times. They Flower for the most part all Summer long, beginning in May, and all June and July, and the Seed is ripe not long after the Flowers are past.

X. The Qualities. Red Archangel is hot and dry in the first Degree, but the Galeopses are hot in the second Degree, and dry in the third Degree, much of the temperature of Horehound. They are all Attenuating, something Repercussive and Astringent: and by Appropriation, they are Cephalick, Splenetic, Hysterick and Arthritic; and operate only as Alteratives.

XI. The Specification. They dry up moist Humors in Ulcers and Fistula's, are Vulnerary, and stop the overflowing of the Terms in Women.

XII. The Preparations. From Archangel there are, 1. A Powder of the Seed. 2. A Conserve of the Flowers. 3. A Juice of the Plant. 4. An Essence. 5. A Spirituous Tincture. 6. A Saline Tincture. 7. An Oily Tincture. 8. A Distilled Water of the whole Plant, 9. A Decoction. 10. An Oil. 11. An Ointment. 12. A Cerote or Emplaster. 13. A Cataplasm. The Galeopses are used in 14. A Decoction. 15. A Juice. 16. An Essence. 17. A Syrup. 18. An Ointment. 19. A Balsam.

#### The Virtues of the Red Archangel.

XIII. The Powder of the Seed. It is dry and binding, and of good use in stopping Fluxes of the Bowels, as the Diarrhæa, Dysenteria, Lienteria, and Hepatick Flux. Dose from half a dram to j. dram in Red Wine.

XIV. The Conserve of the Flowers. Eaten morning, noon, and night, the quantity of a large Walnut at a time, it has been found by Experience to be effectual against the overflowing of the Courses, and all Fluxes of Blood whether by the Mouth, Stool, or Urine: but this more especially, if to a



Pound of the *Conserve*, ij. ounces of *Crocus martis Astringens* be added.

XV. *The Juice of the Plant.* It is Antihysterick, represses Vapors in Women and Fits of the Mother, opens obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and is good for Wounded Persons to Drink. Dose ij. or iij. ounces in Wine.

XVI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the *Juice*, besides which it is an exceeding good thing for such as have old running Sores, Fætid Ulcers, and Malign Fistula's running upon them; it corrects the Malignity of the Humors, dries them up and disposes the Ulcers to healing. Dose from j. to iij. ounces: Outwardly it is good to wash the Ulcerations withal, and to inject into Fistula's.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It stops Fluxes of the Belly of what kind soever; and the overflowing of the Courses in Women, quickens and cheers the Spirits, drives away Melancholy, makes the Heart merry. Dose iij. drams.

XVIII. *The Saline Tincture.* It operates by Urine, and carries off much of the Morbifick matter in such as are afflicted with Ulcers, Sores and Fistula's, by the Urinary passages; and is good against inward Bruises, dissolving the congealed Blood. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams, in a Glass of the *Distill'd Water*.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture.* Taken from vj. Drops to xx. or xxx, according to Age and strength, in some proper Vehicle, it has been found to be good against Quartan Agues. Outwardly applied or anointed, it is good against all Pains and Aches, as also the Gout in any part proceeding from a cold Cause: it strengthens the Nerves, and is good against the Palsie.

XX. *The Distilled Water.* It is used chiefly as a Vehicle to convey the other Various preparations of this Herb in. Dose vj. ounces.

XXI. *The Decoction.* Made in Wine, and Drank, to vj. or viij. ounces; it strengthens the Bowels much, it is good to open obstructions, and softens the hardness of the Spleen: Fomenting also hot with the same upon the Region of the Spleen: or applying the hot Herb also thereon, for some time.

XXII. *The Oil,* made by boiling the bruised Herb in Oil Olive, &c. It is good to discuss or resolve cold and hard Swellings in any part of the Body, Chiefly those in the Neck and Throat proceeding from the *Kings-Evil*.

XXIII. *The Ointment.* It has the same Virtues, besides which it is very good to discuss Inflammations, and heal all green Wounds by cleansing them, drying, and closing up their Lips.

XXIV. *The Cerote or Emplaster.* It heals also green Wounds, cleanses old Ulcers, and resists their Malignity; puts a stop to their fretting, corroding, and spreading, and brings them to a speedy healing.

XXV. *The Cataplasme,* made with the beaten Herb, and Hogs Lard, Vinegar and Salt, boiled to a softness and consistency, and then apply'd to hard and Scrophulous Tumors whether in the Neck or other parts, it helps to discuss and resolve them; gives ease in the Gout, Sciatica, and other Joynt-Aches, strengthens the Nerves, and eases their Pains, caused by Cramps, Convulsions, &c. it is good against Inflammations, and the Malignity of old running Sores. A *Cataplasme* of the raw Herb beaten up with Vinegar, being apply'd to the Nape of the Neck, stops bleeding at the Nose: and helps Whitloes, being apply'd to the roots of the Nails.

*The Virtues of the stinking Archangel or Dead Nettle.*

XXVI. *The Decoction.* It is good to bathe places Swelled with hard Kernels, Wens, Inflammations, or Scrophulous Tumors in the Neck, under the Ears, Jaws, Armholes and Groin; and if the *Decoction* is made in Wine, and drunk to vj. or viij. ounces for a Dose, it is a good Traumatick, and wonderfully helps all inward Wounds, Hurts, Bruises, Falls, or the like, and is singular good for the Spleen and the Diseases thereof.

XXVII. *The Juice.* It has all the foregoing Virtues; besides which being applyed warm with Vinegar, to the Hemorrhoids or Piles, when they are very painful and much Swelled, it gives ease, and discusses the Tumor. It is good also against Warts, Figgs, Criste, Condylomata, and the like which grow in and about the Fundament. Dose inwardly from j. to iv. ounces.

XXVIII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues both of the *Decoction* and *Juice*, and may be used as a Wound Drink, for which purpose it is a most singular thing; and contributes very much to the healing of Ulcers, Fistula's and other inveterate and running Sores, which resist most other Remedies. Dose from ij. ounces to iv. twice a day: Outwardly it is good also to wash Sores, Ulcers and Fistula's with, and cleanses them from their filth.

XXIX. *The Syrup.* It may be a Vehicle to mix with the *Essence* for all the purposes aforesaid, as also against Flushings, Vapors, and fits of the Mother, or Hypochondriack melancholy.

XXX. *The Ointment.* Being anointed upon the Region of the Spleen, it eases the pain, and softens the hardness thereof; and anointed on the Fundament, it is good against Clifts, Warts, Figgs, Piles, and other Swellings thereof. It dissolves or discusses Wens, Kernels, and hard and Scrophulous Swellings of the Neck and Throat, and other hard and Oedematous Tumors in any other part of the Body.

XXXI. *The Balsam.* It is of singular use, and much Commended against Gangreens, Cancers, Corroding Fistula's, and all manner of other running Sores, inveterate and fœtid Ulcers happening in what Place soever.

## C H A P. XXIII.

### Of the White ARCHANGEL.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Λαμίου λευκόν*: *Lamium album*, *Urtica iners Alba*, *Urtica mortua alba*: and in English, *White Archangel*, or *Dead Nettle*.

II. *The Kinds.* Of *Archangels* there are three special Kinds, viz. 1. *The Red.* 2. *The White.* 3. *The Yellow.* This then which we Treat of in this Chapter is the second Species, to wit, that of the *White Kind*.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root White and Thready, not perishing every year, from whence rises divers four square Stalks somewhat hairy, about a Foot and a half, or two Feet high, and sometimes more, as the ground on which they grow is in fatness and goodness, leaning this way and that way by reason of the Weight of its Head and Leaves, Branches and Flowers: at the Joynts whereof stand two Leaves, larger and more pointed than the Red, almost in shape like



like Nettles, but not stinging, and dented about the edges; greener also than the Red, and somewhat soft, as it were, and hairy and downy. At the Joints with the Leaves stand larger and more gaping Flowers than those of the Red, in Husks, and encompassing the Stalks at certain distances, like as those of Horehound do ( of which Gerard will have this to be a Species ) but not having such a bush of Leaves and Flowers, so closely set at the Tops, as they are in the Red: These Flowers are white in Colour, and shaped like to little gaping Hoods, or Helmets; after the Flowers in the same Husks grow small roundish Seed, which, when ripe, becomes black, or of a blackish Colour. Its Root grows not downward, but spreads and encreases under the upper Crust of the Earth, and abides many Years, still encreasing: The whole Herb has a smell pleasant enough, and much differing from Galeopsis, or the Stinking Kind.



IV. *The Places.* It grows by old Hedges, and Ditch sides, and in some places by the Highways, and borders of Fields, almost every where through the whole Kingdom; and many times in Gardens ill Husbanded.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers from the beginning of the Spring, almost all the Summer long; and the Seed ripens thro' all the same Seasons.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the second Degree: it is Attenuating, Inciding, Discussive, Resolutive, Astringent, Vulnerary, and Alterative: and is appropriated to the Head, Nerves, Liver, Spleen, Womb, and Joints.

VII. *The Specification.* It cures Wounds and Ulcers, stops Fluxes, and in particular the Whites in Women.

VIII. *The Preparations.* The Shops keep, 1. The Herb. 2. A Conserve of the Flowers. But you may also prepare therefrom, 3. A Pouder of the Seed. 4. A Juice of the Plant. 5. An Essence. 6. A Spirituous Tincture. 7. A Saline Tincture. 8. An Oily

Tincture. 9. A Distilled Water of the whole Plant. 10. A Decoction. 11. An Oil. 12. An Ointment. 13. A Cerote or Emplaster. 14. A Cataplasme.

## The Virtues.

IX. The Virtues of all these Preparations are the same with those of the Red, in the Chapter foregoing, from Sect. 14. to Sect. 26. and may serve in all the same Cases, there not being much difference in their strength and goodness; but if any should be supposed, these of the White may be said rather to excel in Virtue: but this difference there is between them in the Flower, that as the Red seem to be specifick, to stop the Reds, or overflowing of the Terms, and Loches in Women; so the Flowers of the White are said to be specifick in stopping the Whites, or White Flux in the same Sex; for which reason the Shops in many places keep the Conserve of the Flowers in a readiness, upon any occasion.

X. *The Conserve of the White Flowers.* It is given for the purposes aforesaid, and to strengthen the Womb, from vj. drams to an ounce and half, Morning, Noon, and Night. And it will be more effectual, if the Pouder of boiled Turpentine is added to it, iv. ounces to every pound of the Conserve: thus Prepared, it is truly an excellent thing for the purpose intended.

## CHAP. XXIV.

### Of Yellow ARCHANGEL.



I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Λαμίου* *Χλωρον*: In Latin, *Lamium Luteum*, *Urtica lutea*, *Urtica mortua lutea*: and in English, *Yellow Archangel*, or *Dead Nettle*.



II. *The Kinds.* It is the third and last Kind of the Archangels or Dead Nettles.

III. *The Description.* The Roots hereof are much like to those of the White, but are not observed to creep so much under ground as they: from whence rises up square hoary Stalks, and large green dented Leaves, very much like the White Archangel, but that the Stalks are more straight and upright, not bending downwards; and the Joints, with their Leaves, are further asunder, and the Leaves are something longer than the former. The Flowers also are larger, and more gaping, growing in Rundles about the Stalk, of a fair Yellow or Golden Colour in most, and in some more faint, exactly of the shape of those of the White Archangel, but gaping wider. After the Flowers follow the Seed in the same Husk, little or nothing differing from that of the White.

IV. *The Places.* It grows usually in Woods, and wet Grounds in Woods, and sometimes in dryer places, in divers Countries of our Land: Gerard found it under the Hedge on the Left Hand, as you go from Hamstead near London, to the Church, and in the Wood thereby, as also in many other Copfes about Lee in Essex; near Watford and Busby in Middlesex, and in the Woods belonging to the then Lord Cobham in Kent.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers from the beginning of May, and all June and July, and the Seed ripens gradually in the mean season.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the second Degree: Attenuating, or making thin, Discussive, Resolutive, Vulnerary, and Alterative: and is appropriate to the Head, Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Womb and Joints.

VII. *The Specification.* It is observed to be a more peculiar Vulnerary than any of the other kinds.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may prepare from it: 1. A Powder from the Seed. 2. A Conserve of the Flowers. 3. A Distilled Water of the whole Plant. 4. A Decoction in Wine, or Wine and Water. 5. A Juice from the Plant. 6. An Essence of the whole Plant. 7. A Spirituous Tincture. 8. A Saline Tincture. 9. An Oily Tincture. 10. An Oil for External Uses. 11. An Ointment. 12. A Cerote or Emplaster. 13. A Cataplasme. 14. A Balsam.

#### The Virtues.

IX. *This has all the Virtues both of the Red and White foregoing,* and much of the same strength and goodness; and therefore as to the Uses of the various Preparations thereof, we shall wholly refer you to what we have said of the like Preparations of the Red, in Chap. 22. from Sect. 14. to Sect. 26. Yet this we have to say in relation to the Flowers, that as they strengthen the Womb very much, so they have a peculiar property against both Reds, and Whites, which yet may be made more powerful by compounding the Conserve of it, according to the following Prescript.

X. *The Conserve.* Take of the simple Conserve 20 ounces: Turpentine boiled in Water, till it will Powder, v. ounces: fine Powder of Catechu ij. ounces and half; mix them. Dose from iij. drams to vj. drams, Morning, Noon and Night, for some time, taking the Essence also inwardly: A Spirituous Tincture of the dried Flowers, taken from j. dram to ij. drams, does also the same thing.

XI. *The Balsam.* It heals green Wounds, cleanses old Ulcers and Fistula's, obtunds their Malignity, and stops their fretting, corroding, and spreading, especially where they are Inveterate, very Filthy, and Corrupt, and where Fistula's are Cavernous, with many crooked Windings in them: First wash them with the Essence, by injecting it in Blood-

warm; then inject into the hollowness, some of this Balsam melted, and lay a Pledgit dipt in the same over the Mouth thereof, and over all the Cerote or Emplaster; letting the Patient also, in the mean time, take the said Essence inwardly twice or thrice a day, as the manner is in wounded Persons, so you will find a wonderful and sudden Cure. This for a Vulnerary use is much more powerful than any of the other Archangels.

## CHAP. XXV.

### Of Garden A R A C H.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Arabick, Cataf, or Caraf: In Greek, Ἀτράραξις ἢ Χρυσολάχανον, from its yellow Flowers: In Latin, *Atriplex*, and *Olus Aureum*: In English, *Arach*, and *Orach*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are four several Kinds thereof, 1. *The Garden.* 2. *The Wild.* 3. *Stinking.* 4. *Sea.* Of all which in their several Chapters. *The White* is that we treat of in this Chapter, and that is threefold: 1. *Atriplex sativa alba major*, The greater White Garden Arrach. 2. *Alba minor*, The lesser White. 3. *Atriplex sativa purpurea*, Purple Garden Arrach.



III. *The Description.* The Great White Garden Arach has a Root growing deep into the Ground, with many small Fibres fastned thereto, which fades away as soon as it has born Seed; from whence rises up a Stalk square or cornered, and of a white mealy Colour; out of which comes several Branches and Leaves: the Leaves are many, standing upon their Foot-stalks, broad at bottom, and ending in two Points



Points like an Arrow, with two Feathers at the Head, and sharp pointed at the end of the Leaf, of a whitish yellow green Colour, and as it were strewed over with Flower or Meal, or rather small white Sand, especially whilst young; the Stalk likewise is Mealy, or rather Sandy, bearing many Branches, with small yellow Flowers on them, which turn into small leafie Seed.



tes the Bowels, and fortifies the Expulsive Faculty.

XII. *The Essence.* It is good against the Yellow Jaundice, and cleanses the Womb of all Impurities; and is an excellent thing to open Obstructions of the Liver, and help Diseases of the Brest and Lungs. Dose iv. Spoonfuls.

XIII. *The Decoction,* has the same Virtue, but is weaker, and, drunk plentifully, is a singular good thing against the Poison of *Cantharides*, and Strumatick Tumors, or Swellings in the Throat, or other parts, and admirably represses Choler. Dose from iv. to viij. ounces, twice a day.

XIV. *The Syrup of the Juice* made with Honey. It is an excellent Pectoral, opens stoppages in the Brest and Lungs, and prevails against Colds, Coughs, Asthma's, or shortness of Breath, and Difficulty of Breathing. Dose from j. ounce to ij. ounces, Morning and Night.

15. *The Cataplasim.* The Herb bruised and applied as a Cataplasim, is excellent to ease Pains and Aches, from a hot Cause, and Acrimonious Humors, and to give ease in the Gout. A *Cataplasim* made of the boiled Herb, is said to be good (being applied) to disperse hard swellings in the Throat.

XVI. *Nota.* This Herb is used as a Pot-herb, or rather boiled for a Sallet, (as they boil Spinage) and so to be eaten with Butter and Vinegar, Pepper and Salt, in which way it proves very grateful to a hot Stomach. And the Seed drunk with Mead to j. Dram, is good against the Yellow Jaundice: and *Matthiolus* says, it purges both upwards and downwards.

IV. *The Lesser White Kind* is altogether like the former, and differs nothing from it, unless in the magnitude, and the Sandy Flower, which seems to be whiter than the former: but I am apt to believe that these two are but one kind, and differ only in respect of the Ground they grow on, this growing upon a more sandy, lean, or poor Soil: the richer the Earth, the greater the Plant; the poorer the Soil the lesser.

V. *The Purple Arrach* is in its Roots, Stalks, Branches, Leaves, Flowers, and Seed, and manner of growing, and indeed in all things like unto the White, except only in the Colour, the Stalks, Leaves and Seed being of a Mealy, or Sandy Purplish Colour.

VI. *The Places.* They grow chiefly in Gardens, as their names do specify, very rarely Wild.

VII. *The Times.* They Flower and Seed from June to the beginning of September, their Seed ripening all the time of their Flowering.

VIII. *The Qualities.* They are Cold and Moist in the second Degree; but *Schroder* will have it only in the first Degree. They are Alterative, Aperient, Absterfive, Emollient, and Expulsive; and are appropriated to the Lungs, Liver, Womb, and Joints.

IX. *The Specification.* They are peculiar against the Jaundice, and Diseases of the Brest and Lungs.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Syrup. 5. A Cataplasim.

## The Virtues.

XI. *The Juice.* It cools Inflammations, and is good to be applied in an *Erysipelas*, Linen Cloths being dipt therein, and applied thereto; and taken from ij. to-iiij. or iv. ounces, it loosens the Belly, clean-

## CHAP. XXVI.

### Of the Common Greater Wild A R A C H.



*Arrach wild common.*

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἀράραξ* *ἀγρία μεράνη*; In Latin, *Atriplex sylvestris vulgaris*



*vulgatior sinuata major*; *Atriplex Sylvestris major*: and in English, The Common Greater Wild Arrach.

II. The Kinds. It is the first Species of the Wild Kind, which Wild Kind, is, 1. Greater, the Subject of this Chapter. 2. Lesser. 3. Narrow-leaved, &c.

III. The Description. It has a Root somewhat Long, Woody, and Fibrous, perishing Yearly, from whence springs up strong, round hard Stalks and Branches, with large Leaves on them, like those of the Garden, but not so broad, or pointed at the Bottoms, yet much waved or cut in on the edges, and of a dirty, mealy, green Colour: the tops of the Branches are repleat with long spikes of Chaffy Husks, out of which come small yellowish green Flowers, which afterwards give small blackish Seed, like unto Purslane.



IV. There is another of this larger Kind, but it is lower, and lesser in every part; it is also narrower, and a little waved on the edges, and perishing every Year, as the former does.

V. The Places. It is found by Hedge and Ditch sides, and often times on or near Dunghills in most places of this Kingdom.

VI. The Times. It Flowers in June and July, and the Seed Ripens in the mean time: and if the Year is warm, it is sometimes in Flower in May.

VII. The Qualities. It is cold and moist in the second Degree: Alterative, Attenuating, Digestive, Emollient, and Cleansing: and in its appropriations is Hysterick, and Arthritick.

VIII. The Specification. It is a peculiar remedy against an Erysipelas, or Ignis Sacer, as they call it; and Fits of the Mother.

IX. The Preparations. 1. The Seed in Pouder. 2. A Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Syrup. 5. A Cataplasm. 6. The Balsam.

#### The Virtues.

X. The Seed. Given from half a dram, to a dram and half, in Pouder, in Ale, Mead, or Wine, it purges upwards and downwards, troubles the Stomach

and Bowels, evacuates Choler, and is helpful in the Yellow Jaundice.

XI. The Juice. It is an effectual thing against all sorts of Inflammations in what part of the Body soever; and injected up the Womb, with a Womb-Syringe, it is prevalent against Fits of the Mother: Bathed on an Erysipelas, and Cloths dipt therein, being also laid thereon, it is said to cure that Disease.

XII. The Essence. It cleanses the Womb of its filth, is good against Vapors, and Fits of the Mother, and a vehement heat of the Stomach. Dose from j. ounce to ij. ounces, mixt with White Port Wine.

XIII. The Syrup. It opens Obstructions of the Lungs, and if timely given, helps an Empyema, or Inflammation of the Lungs, and Hysterick Diseases, cooling the heat of Lust. Dose from j. to ij. ounces.

XIV. The Cataplasm. It abates Inflammations, and eases the Gout, and other Pains proceeding from a hot Cause. It gives ease also in a violent hot Megrim or Head-ach.

XV. The Balsam. It removes an Inflammation in Wounds and Ulcers, cools, cleanses, and disposes them to healing, being a good Vulnerary.

## CHAP. XXVII.

### Of the Lesser Wild A R A C H.



I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἀρῆραξις ἀγρία μικρά*: in Latin, *Atriplex Sylvestris parva*: in English, Wild Arach, the less.

II. The Kinds. The lesser Wild Arach is three-fold, 1. Narrow Leaved. 2. Berry-bearing. 3. Broad Leaved. I. The Narrow Leaved, is, 1. *Atriplex Sylvestris angustifolia*, Narrow Leaved Wild Arach. 2. *Atriplex Sylvestris angustifolia altera*, Another kind of Narrow Leaved. II. *Atriplex baccifera rubra*, Red Berry-bearing Arach. III. *Atriplex Sylvestris*



*vestris latifolia minor*, five, *Pes Anserinus*, The lesser Wild Broad Leaved Arach, or Goose Foot; whose Description, Virtues, &c. you may see in Chap. 312. following: This last Broad Leaved kind is called *Minor*, in respect it is accounted of the lesser Kind, and is lesser than the *Great Broad Kind*, described in the former Chapter.



*Narrow-leaved wild  
Arach.*

III. The Descriptions. The first, *Narrow Leav'd Wild Arach*, has a long slender Root, with many strings coming from it, from whence rises up one pretty large Stalk, with many large Branches on it, all over Mealy or Sandy, with a greenish gray or white Sandiness, as also are the Leaves: the Leaves grow single, and are placed irregularly up and down the Branches, they are long and narrow, almost like the Leaves of *Hydropiper*, or *Loostrife*, but that they are shorter and narrower, not dented on the edges, set at the joints, smooth, and pointed at the ends: The Stalks and Branches shoot up into long Spiky Heads, of green yellow Flowers, not much unlike to the great broad kind in the former Chapter, and the Seed like the same also.

IV. The other *Narrow Leav'd Arach* of the lesser kind, is not much unlike to the former, but every way lesser, and the Leaves narrower, mostly smooth on the edges, and pointed, but sometime some of them are divided or jagged, or a little notched, for which reason *Lobel* called it, *Atriplex Sylvestris polygoni* aut *Helxines folio*. The Stalks, Flowers and Seed, are also like the former.

V. The *Red Berry-bearing Arach*, is a Wild *Arach* also in *Spain*; but with us it's Nurs'd up in Gardens: It is an Elegant Plant, having a Root small and Fibrous, and perishing after Seed time, whence comes divers slender Branches somewhat Woody, about a Foot high, more or less; (according as the place where it grows, and the goodness of the Ground will produce, for all the kinds of *Araches*, both Garden and Wild, delight to grow in a Fat, Rank Soil, as on *Dunghills*, &c.) from these Stalks and Branches come forth small corner'd Leaves, not much unlike to the

*Broad Leav'd Wild Arach* in the former Chapters, set at the joints one above another; and at every of the said joints with the Leaves, which stand upon Foot-stalks, even from the lowest Leaves, near the Root, stands a small Red Berry, Cluster fashion, that is like to a *Bramble* or *Dew Berry*, Clear, and almost Transparent, with many small Grains in it, and full of an admirable Juice, as Red as Blood, or deep Red Wine, which being bruised upon the back of the Hand, while it is fresh, will seem as if you had drawn Blood out thereof; which Berry being dry grows blackish, and contains in it small blackish Seed, out of which this very Beautiful Plant will spring up every Year of its own accord, if suffered to shed.

VI. The Places. The two first grow by Walls, old Hedges, Ditch sides, and *Dunghills*, in almost all places throughout the Kingdom: the Berry-bearing is Wild in *Spain*, from whence being brought to us, it is planted and nourished up in Gardens.

VII. The Times. They all Flower in the Summer Months, as *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*, the Seed continually ripening in the mean Season.

VIII. The Qualities. These Wild kinds are not so Cold and Moist as the former, not exceeding the first Degree. They are Absterfive, Attenuating, Emollient, and Alterative; dedicated, as the others, to the Womb and Joints.

IX. The Specification. They are proper against Wounds and Ulcers, the Gout, Pains and Aches, proceeding from a hot Cause.

X. The Preparations. There are made thereof, 1. A Pouder of the Seed. 2. A Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Decoction. 5. A Syrup. 6. A Cataplasme. 7. A Balsam. 8. The Juice of the Berries of the Red Berry-bearing.

#### The Virtues.

XI. The Uses of all these Preparations are the same with those in the two foregoing Chapters, and therefore to them we refer you; these Herbs having the same Virtues and Properties, but not full out so Cold and Moist.

XII. The Berries of the *Red Berry-bearing Arach*. The Beauty of the Juice is admirable; but what Physical Virtues it may have is not so fully known: being given inwardly to j. dram, or more, in Red Wine or *Alicant*, it is good against Spitting Blood, Pissing Blood, or the Bloody Flux: The Juice being inspissated and reduced to a Pouder, is good to stop Bleeding outwardly: and inwardly given, it stops the overflowing of the Loches, or the Terms in Women, and strengthens the Womb. Doubtless out of it there may be made several glorious Pigments, or Limning Colours, for the uses of Limners, Painters, &c. Dose of the inspissate Juice is half a dram, or more, in any proper Vehicle.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

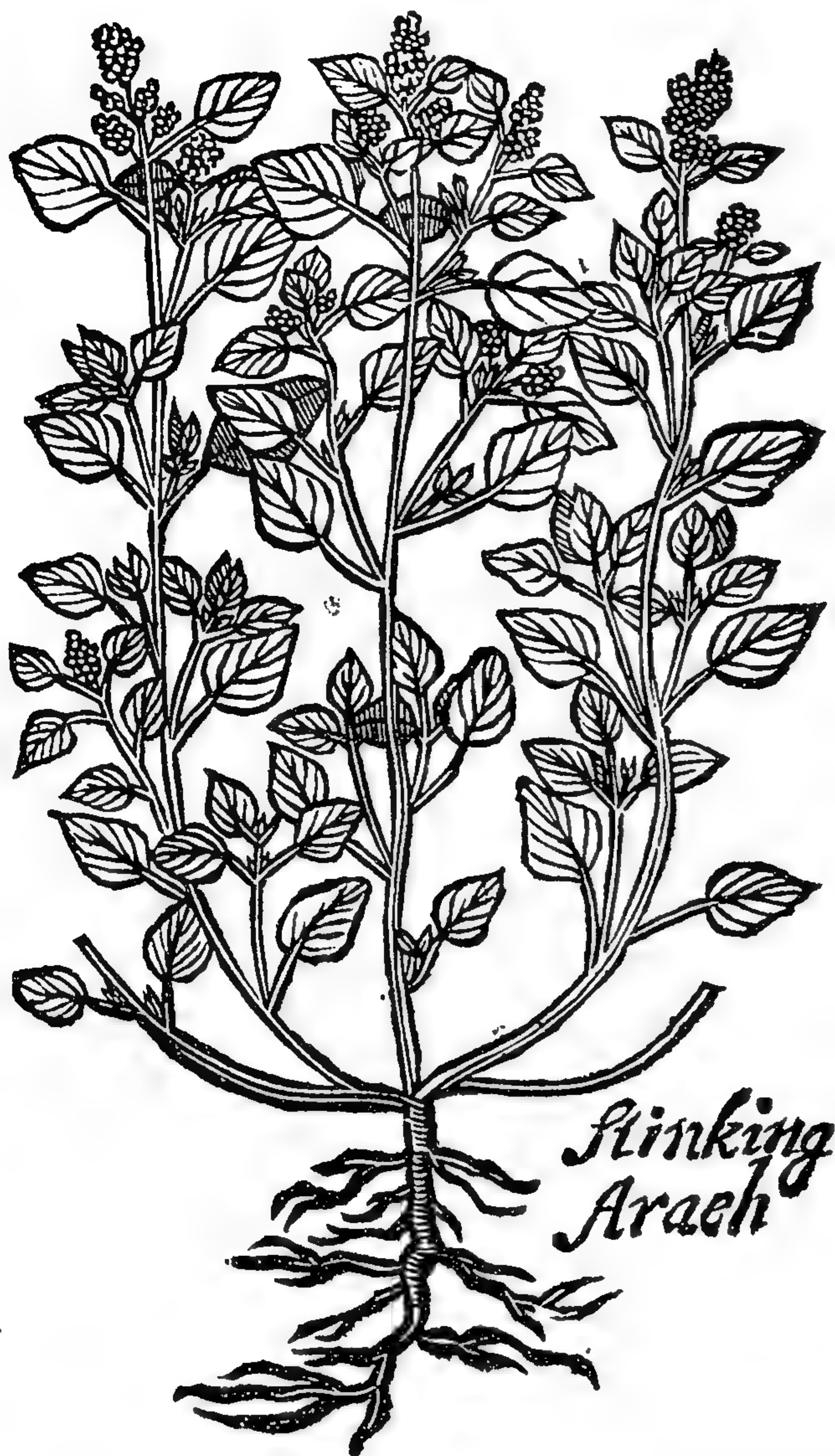
### Of Stinking A R A C H.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἀρεῖφαξίς* *ὑσώδης*: in Latin, *Atriplex fetida*: and by *Cordus*, *Garosmos* (because it smells like Stinking Fish) from *ῥάσθ*, *Piscis*; whence comes *ῥάσθ*, i. e. *Liquamen seu sanies Piscium*: also, *Tragium Germanicum*; and by *Pena* and *Lobel*, *Atriplex fetida garum olens*: It smells more stinking than the Ram, or Male Goat; and therefore, says *Gerard*, some have called it by a Figure, *Vulvaria*: in English it is called, *Stinking Arach*.

II. The



II. *The Kinds.* There seems to be but one single kind hereof, and by reason of its growing Wild, it may be accounted one of the Wild kinds.



III. *The Description.* It has a Root consisting of several long Branches, filled with many Thready strings, from whence rises up one or more feeble Stalks, which lye flat upon the Ground, it being but a small low Plant; and from those Stalks come forth many weak and feeble Branches, upon which grow very small Leaves, almost round, yet a little Pointed, without Cut or Dent, in shape not much unlike to Basil, of a Greyish Colour, sprinkled over with a certain kind of Dusty Measles, or like to very small White Sand: among which Leaves, here and there confusedly, are the Seeds dispersed, which can be likened to nothing but Dust and Ashes. The whole Plant is of a most Loathsome Savor or Smell, not much differing from that of old Rotten Fish, or something worse. It perishes in Winter, and rises yearly again from its own Sowing.

IV. *The Places.* It grows naturally upon Dunghills, and other the most filthy places that may be: sometimes it is found in places like Brick-kilns, and old Walls, and near the Emptying places of Ordure or Dung; but the cleanness of the Ground may in some measure alter its Smell, which, as some fancy, may be like old Rotten Cheese: but that which grows in its natural place, smells like abominable Stinking Fish, whence came the name *Garofmos*, as is before declared.

V. *The Times.* It is an Annual springing Plant, Flowers in June and July, and the Seed is ripe presently after, at what time it perishes, and rises again of its own Seed; so that if it is once gotten into a Ground, it is not easie to be destroyed, or rooted out again.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is Cold and Moist in the first Degree; is Alterative, Cleansing and Emollient; and is chiefly Hystrick, or appropriated to the Womb.

VII. *The Specification.* It is a pure Antihystrick, curing Vapors, and Fits of the Mother, arising from almost what Cause soever.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may have from it, 1. A Decoction. 2. A Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Syrup. 5. A Saline Tincture. 6. An Injection. 7. A Cataplasim. 8. An Ointment, or Balsam.

#### *The Virtues.*

IX. *The Decoction.* If made in Wine, and drunk from three ounces to six, it quells hot Vapors arising from the Stomach to the Head: if made in Water, it cools the Stomach and Womb, being inwardly taken, and outwardly injected with a Womb Syringe.

X. *The Juice.* It may be taken from j. ounce, to ij. ounces, or more: It cleanses the Womb, if it is foul, and strengthens it exceedingly; it provokes the Terms, represses Vapors admirably, and cures Hystrick Fits: give it in a Glass of White Port; and let the Patient smell to it.

XI. *The Essence.* It makes Barren Women Fruitful, provokes the Terms, if they be stopt; and stops them if they flow immoderately; it facilitates the Birth, and brings away the After-birth, or Dead Child: it is commended as an Universal Medicine for the Womb, both easily, safely and speedily curing any Disease thereof, as Vapors arising from the foulness of the Womb, or too great abundance of Seed, Fits of the Mother, and the like. Dose from j. ounce to iij. ounces, in a Glass of White Wine, &c.

XII. *The Syrup.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, and Essence, but not full out so powerful as either of them, and therefore is to be given to more queasie Stomachs. It is also used as a Vehicle to convey the Juice or Essence down in: you may make it with Sugar; but for cleansing the Womb, it is much better to be made with Honey. Dose iij. or iv. Spoonfuls.

XIII. *The Saline Tincture.* This is more powerful in cleaning the Womb, and repressing Vapors, and Hystrick Fits, than either the Juice or Essence, and may be exhibited from j. dram to ij. drams, either in the Syrup, or White Port Wine. Mixt with equal parts of the Juice, it is good to smell to, in Vapors, and Mother Fits, for the ill Scent thereof, causes the Womb to fly from it, or precipitates the Vapors downwards: and being thus mixed with the Juice, it is good against the falling down of the Womb, being cast in with a Womb Syringe; it also kills Worms which breed in the Sores or Ulcers of Horses, or other Cattel.

XIV. *The Injection.* It is made of the Juice mixed with equal parts of the Syrup, and Red Wine. It cleanses Ulcers of the Womb, is good against the Whites, strengthens the Matrix, and is helpful against its falling down.

XV. *The Cataplasim.* It is applied to the Share-Bone in Women, in a *Proidentia Uteri*; and gives ease in the Gout, or other Pains arising from a hot Cause: applied to the Stomach, it represses Fits of the Mother.

XVI. *The Balsam.* It cures Ulcers in the Womb, and Privy Parts of Man or Woman, and is a singular thing to give ease in the Gout, being applied; as also to cool and dissipate Inflammations.

## CHAP. XXIX.

### Of Sea ARACH.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἀτρίπλεξ θαλάσσια*: in Latin, *Atriplex marina*; and by Lobel, *Xerampeling*; in English, *Sea Arach*, *Marsh Arach*.

II. *The*



II. The Kinds. It is twofold, 1. *Atriplex marina repens lutea*, Yellow Creeping Sea Arach. 2. *Atriplex maritima angustifolia*, Narrow Leav'd Marsh Arach.



III. The Description. The first of these has a great Root with many strings, which perishes not every Year, and is of a saltish Taste, tho' it is bred up in a Garden; from whence comes forth several Stalks, lying in some measure, and creeping upon the Ground, with many White, Hoary, Mealy or Sandy Branches, and with White, Broad, Mealy or Sandy Leaves, deep cut on the Edges, and Pointed, set on them without any order, cut in on the Edges, near at the Bottom, and pointed at the Ends, somewhat like unto a small Goose-foot Leaf: at the top of the Branches grow divers slender, hoary, yellowish Spikes of Seed, set close together like Clusters: sometimes I have seen it reddish, like the Red Garden Arach, and sometimes nothing so Mealy, but rather Green.



IV. The other kind has a Woody Root, with many small strings, from whence springs forth a Woody and Hoary Stalk, about a foot high, spread at the top into many small Branches, spotted with black spots, which end in long yellow spikes of Clustering Seed, like the former. The Leaves which grow below are somewhat long and narrow, about two Inches long, of a dark green Colour, with some Corners about the Edges, which yet are smaller and smaller, as they grow higher.

V. The Places. They grow in many parts of England, by the Sea shore, and Banks of Salt-water Rivers, and Borders of Salt Marshes, and in Marsh Grounds, particularly at *Queenbrough*, at *Kings-Lyn* in *Norfolk*, at *Margate* in the Isle of *Thanet*, and in many other places by the Sea side. The first grows on the Sea shore near *Little Holland* in *Essex*, and at *Kings-Lyn* in *Norfolk*, by the Banks of the Creek, running out of the Haven by the South side of the Town, where some years since I found it in great plenty; as also in the Isle of *Mersey*, not far from *Colchester*. The latter, Mr. Ray says, grows plentifully by the River, and on the Banks of the Marshes about *Malden* in *Essex*, and doubtless in many other the like places.

VI. The Times.. They Flower from the beginning of *June*, all *July* and *August*, even to *September*, and the Seed successively ripens in the mean Season.

VII. The Qualities. It is Cold and Moist in the first Degree; but some Authors will have it to be Dry. It is something Cathartick, at leastwise Solutive, Diuretick, Absterfive, Attenuating, Discussive and Emollient; and is appropriated to the Womb, Reins and Joints.

VIII. The Specification. It is peculiar against a *Polysarcia*, or a too great Fleshiness and Fatness of the Body, and the Dropsie.

IX. The Preparations. You may prepare from it, 1. A Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Syrup. 5. A Spirituous Tincture. 6. A Saline Tincture. 7. An Oily Tincture. 8. A Cataplasm. 9. An Ointment. 10. A Balsam.

#### The Virtues.

X. The Juice. This by reason of its Saltness does purge the Bowels, and habit of the whole Body, of Cold and Watry Humors, being taken from j. ounce to iij. ounces, in the Broth of Fat Meat.

XI. The Essence. It is in property much like to the *Wild Araches*; and being taken Morning and Evening for some time, it has been found prevalent against a *Polysarcia*, or too great Corpulency, and Bulk of Body; and preserves the Lungs from putrefaction. Dose from j. ounce to iij. ounces.

XII. The Decoction in Wine. It has the Virtues of the Essence and Juice, but not full out so powerful: it provokes Urine, and is good against Gravel and Stone. Dose from iij. to vj. ounces, Morning and Evening.

XIII. The Syrup of the Juice. It cleanses the Lungs and Bowels, opens the Body; 'tis said, that there is not many better Medicines against the Dropsie than this, to take it to iv. ounces, or more, Morning and Evening; I have proved it. It also causes Leanness in them who are too Fat, as experience has manifested.

XIV. The Spirituous Tincture. It strengthens the Womb, and is good against the Diseases thereof, taken to ij. drams in Wine: mixed, half an ounce of it at a time, with vi. or vij. ounces of the Decoction in Water, it cleanses the Womb of the Whites by injection, and stops them.

XV. The Saline Tincture. It is a good Nephritick, and



and Diuritick, it opens the obstructions of the Urinary Passages, provokes Urine, and expels Sand, Gravel, and gritty Stones. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams, in white Wine.

XVI. *The Oily Tincture.* It has the Virtues of the former taken inwardly, from vj. drops to xvij. in white Port Wine; but it is best to be given in a cold habit of Body: it opens obstructions of the Womb, and provokes the Terms.

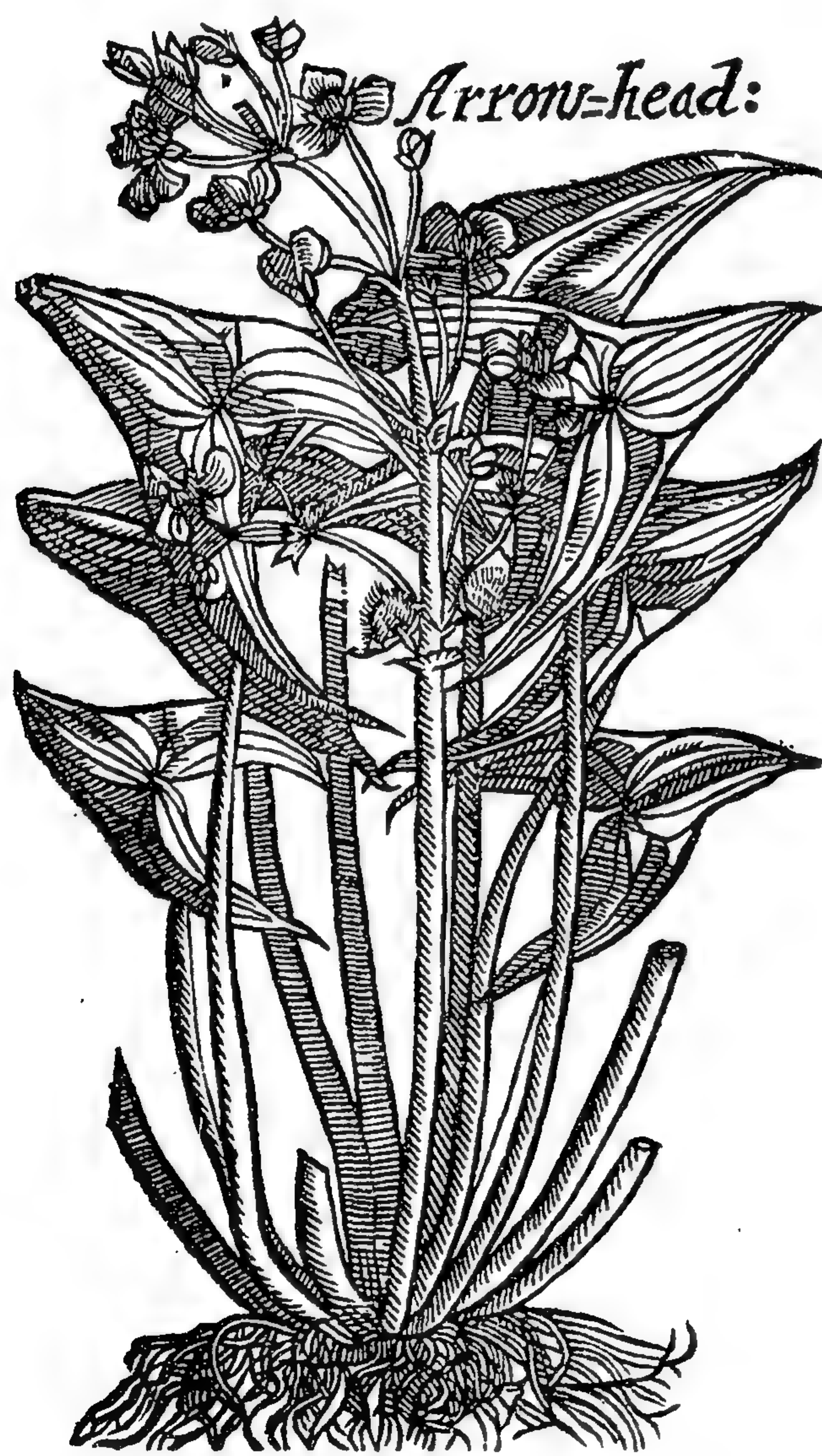
XVII. *The Cataplasme.* The Herb Cut, Bruised, and Boil'd to a Cataplasme with Oatmeal, discusses outward cold Tumors, and gives ease in the Gout.

XVIII. *The Ointment.* It is good to cool Inflammations, and ease Pains and Aches proceeding from a hot Cause: and is good to anoint on the Legs, to discuss Hydropical Tumors.

XIX. *The Balsam.* It is a good Vulnerary, abates Inflammations in Wounds and Ulcers, cleanses them of their filth, makes them easie, and in a little time after heals them.

XX. *The Correction.* By reason this Herb is something Flatulent, or apt to stir up Wind, it ought to be Corrected in its various preparations, as *Juice Clarified, Essence, Decoction, and Syrup, with Aniseeds, Carraways, Cloves, Fennell Seeds, Ginger, Liquorice, Pepper, Zedoary, &c.*

## CHAP. XXX. of ARROW-HEAD.



I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, Πισάρα: In Latin, Sagitta, Sagittaria, Sagittalis: And in English Arrow-head.

II. *The Kinds.* It is threefold, Πισάρα μέγαν: *Magopistana, Pistana Magonis, Barba Sylvana Casal-pini, Sagittaria major latifolia*, the greater broad Leav'd Arrow-head. 2. Πισάρα μικρά, *Sagittaria Minor latifolia*, the lesser broad Leaved Arrowhead. 3. *Sagittaria Augustifolia*, narrow Leav'd Arrow-head.

III. *The Description.* The Greater broad Leav'd Arrow-head, or Water Archer, as some call it, has a thick Bushy Root with many Fibres or Strings, from whence comes forth several thick square and juicy Stalks, with great broad green Leaves on the tops of them, divided at the bottoms into two long and pointed parts, so that the whole form or shape of the Leaf, is not much unlike the forked Head of a Broad Arrow, or one of the points of an Anchor, save that the two points at the bottom are longer; which parts Grow but a little above the Waters wherein they Grow, whether deeper or shallower: From among these former Stalks, rise up other thick, round, spongy Stalks two or three feet long, and higher than the Leaves, bearing divers rows of Flowers at the Joints, one above another, and for the most part three in a row, each of which is composed of three large white Leaves with several reddish Threads in the midst, after which come in, their places, round rough Burrs, which are green when they are ripe, much like to those of Sparganium, or the Burr Reed; in which Burrs are contained the Seed.

IV. The lesser Broad Leav'd sort has also a thick and bushy or stringy Root like the former, with broad Leaves standing upon large Foot Stalks near two Feet or more high, in shape like the former, but every way lesser; among which rises up a fat and thick Stalk, something higher than the Leaves, having at the top many pretty white Flowers, declining to a light Carnation, but yet less than the former, made also of three small Leaves, and in the middle of which are several Reddish Threads; which being past, there comes several Knobs or Burrs greater than the former, in which in like manner are contained the Seed.

V. The Narrow Leav'd Arrow-head has a small and thready Root, from whence rises up a tender Foot Stalk about Eighteen Inches high, at the top of which are Leaves shaped like the former, except in their length and narrowness, not being above half the breadth of the others, yet of their full length; and the two lower forked ones, are almost as long as the fore right Leaf; the Flowers and Burrs are also lesser.

VI. *The Places.* They grow sometimes altogether, sometimes apart in Watery Ditches, and standing Waters, in most places throughout this Kingdom, particularly in the Ditches near the Walls of Oxford; by Chelmsford in Essex; in the Ditch near St. Thomas's Waterings not far from London; and in some Ditches in St. George's-Fields, and not far from Lambeth: The Narrow Leaved grows on the Thames Shore by Lambeth Bridge, over against the Archbishop of Canterbury's Palace; plentifully before the Earl of Peterborough's house, above the Horse-Ferry on Westminster side, &c.

VII. *The Times.* They Flower generally in May and June; and the Burrs or Seed are ripe in the beginning or middle of August.

VIII. *The Qualities.* They are Cold in the first Degree, and Temperate in respect to dryness or moisture. They are also Alteratives, Astringents, Abstersives, Incarnatives, Glutinatives, and Traumaticks or Vulneraries; and appropriated to the Spleen, Reins and Joints.

IX. *The Specification.* I have had great Experience of the Virtues and Use of this Herb, and have found it to be a peculiar Wound Herb, whether inwardly taken or outwardly apply'd; besides its figure bespeaks the very same thing.

X. *The Preparations.* I have used it in its, 1. Decoction. 2. Juice. 3. Essence. 4. A Spirituous Tincture. 5. A Saline Tincture. 6. An Oily Tincture. 7. An Ointment. 8. A Balsam. 9. A Cerote or Emplaster. 10. A Cataplasme. 11. A Powder of the Seed.

The



## The Virtues.

XI. *The Decoction* made in Wine, or half Wine, half Water. It is a good Gargle for Sore Mouths, and if a little *Alum* and Honey is dissolved in it, is a singular Medicine, for a Thrush in Children, and to Gargle with for sore Throats in Elder Persons: and used as an Injection into the Womb, it is of excellent use to cleanse the Womb, and stop the Flux of the Whites: Inwardly taken from iij. to vj. ounces, it is good to stop Fluxes of the Bowels and Fluxes of Blood, whether by the Mouth, Urine or Stool: and used as a Diet Drink, it is good for Wounded Persons, and such as have running Ulcers, and Fistula's about them.

XII. *The Juice*. It stops spitting of Blood, and is good against the Bloody Flux taken from ij. Spoonfuls to vj. in a Glass of Red Wine or Claret twice or thrice a day: it contributes also to the healing of all sorts of Wounds, whether inward or outward: and bathed upon an *Erysipelas* abates its heat.

XIII. *The Essence*. It is a singular Traumatick taken from j. ounce to iij. ounces twice a day, in the Decoction, or a Glass of Wine: It not only causes Wounds suddenly to heal, but wonderfully promotes the healing of all running Sores, Cacoethick Ulcers and Fistula's where or whatsoever. It is drying, binding, and Astringent, stops Fluxes, abates Inflammations, stops Fluxes of Blood, pissing Blood, Catarrhs, and Consumptions.

XIV. *The Spirituous Tincture*. It has the Virtues of the former, but is best to be exhibited in a cold habit of Body from j. to iij. drams, &c.

XV. *The Saline Tincture*. It powerfully opens Obstructions of the Spleen, Reins, Womb, and Urinary Passages, carries off the Faculencies in Cacoethick habits of Body, and which supply old running Sores, putrid Ulcers, and Cacoethick Fistula's, with the evil and malign Matter which keeps them from Healing: it dissolves Gravel, and expels Sand and Tartarous Slime out of the Reins and Bladder. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams.

XVI. *The Oily Tincture*. It eases the Spleen, expels Wind, provokes Urine, and is good against Wounds or Ulcers of the Reins or Bladder: Outwardly poured upon Wounds of the Nerves it heals them. Dose from vj. drops to xvj. drops.

XVII. *The Ointment*. It allays Inflammations chiefly in Wounds, heals Green Wounds; and has an absterfive faculty in cleansing old Sores and fetid Ulcers.

XVIII. *The Balsam*. It cures Wounds by the first Intention, where they are simple. But where they are Contused, or Complex, it brings them to digestion, and afterwards by its absterfive property cleanses the Ulcer, then incarnates, and heals after an admirable manner: it also discusses Inflammations in the beginning, and in time resolves them.

XIX. *The Cataplasme*. It is good to allay Pains proceeding from a hot Cause in what part of the Body soever; and I have often found it to give ease in the hot Gout, and other Joynt-Aches. It is something repercussive, more especially if it is apply'd cold, which is best to be done, when it is used to a Contusion or Blow upon a Bone, as the Forehead; it hinders the rising of the Tumor, repercusses the Juices which would flow thither, and prevents its blackness.

XX. *The Cerote or Emplaster*. It Cures Green Wounds, cleanses, and heals old Sores and Ulcers, and fills up Wounds and Ulcers with Flesh. It is drying, astringent and strengthening, good to be apply'd to weak Backs, or feeble Joynts, and places

Afflicted with Pains and Aches, from a Flux of Humors, or over-straining of the Part through any Violence or Force put upon it.

XXI. *The Pouder of the Seed*. Being drunk in White Wine from j. dram to a dram and a half, it is said to cure the Falling-sickness, and help other Diseases of the Head and Brain: it is prevalent also against the Dropsie, carrying off the Morbifick Matter by Urine; and is found by experience to be good against Sand, Gravel and Tartarous Slime in the Reins, and Urinary Passages. Being strowed over Wounds, Sores or Ulcers Inflamed, it takes away the Inflammation, and so does the Pouder of the Leaves: and kills Worms in Children.

## CHAP. XXXI.

### Of Mild or Spotted ARSMART.

I. **T**HE Names. It may be called in the Greek, *Περσικαία ἀπὸ πέρσας* from the Peach Tree, its Leaf being like to a Peach Leaf: In Latin, *Persicaria*, and by some *Plumbago*: In English, *Mild or Spotted Arsmart*, and *Peach-Wort*.

II. *The Kinds*. There are two Principal Kinds. 1. *Persicaria maculosa Anglica*, in English, *Spotted Arsmart*, lesser and greater. 2. *Persicaria maculosa Virginiana*, The *Virginian Spotted Arsmart*, which is also twofold, with White Colored and Flesh-Colored Flowers.

*Arsmart.  
mild.*



III. *The Descriptions*. The first of these has a long Root with many threads and strings thereat, from whence rises up several Jointed Stalks, smooth round and hard, of a light green or reddish Color, especially at the Joynts, which are manifold: from whence springs several smooth long Leaves, almost Peach fashioned (whence came the name Peach-wort) broad towards the Foot Stalk, after declining Pyramidally to a Point, being even on the edges without any cut or dent, and having thereon (for the most part) a leaden Colored or dark Spot, in form of an



half Moon, or Semicircular. The Flowers grow in long spiked Clusters upon long Stems, either blewish or whitish, or whitish red; after which, comes a small, blackish, brownish, or redish Colored flat Seed: the whole Plant has no hot, sharp, or biting Taste with it, as has the Hidropiper, or the biting Arsmart, in the next Chapter; but rather almost sewerish like Sorrel, cooling and drying, or else almost without Taste. The Greater is like the former in all respects, but the Stalks, Leaves, Spikes, and Seed are every way much larger.

IV. The first sort of the white Flowered Virginian Arsmart, has a woody Root consisting of a great bush of long black strings or threads, which Perish not Yearly, but abide, tho' the Stalks with the Leaves may die away, and Spring again the next Year: from this Root rises up several hard round green Stalks with many great Joyns on them as the other has; and fair, large, broad, dark, blewish, green, smooth Edged, and long pointed Leaves, spotted oftentimes like our English or Common sort before described, and sometimes without spots, many of them six Inches long and better, and three Inches and a half broad, with several Composing Veins rising from the middle Rib, and others less and transverse; at the tops of the Stalks, and from the Joyns with the Leaves, Spring Branches of spiked white Flowers, like close Grains as in the other, but greater, and succeeded by black and flat shining Seed.

V. The second sort of blush or flesh Colored Virginian Arsmart, has also a like woody Root, thick, with many Fibres at it, but greater and more Woody than the former, from whence Springs up straight round Stalks, much higher than the last, with much larger and narrower Leaves, marked also oftentimes with Spots in the like manner, and often also without those Spots: this also has many more Branches of Flowers, which are much shorter Spikes, or bob Spikes, and very much thicker set with fine blush Colored, or flesh-Colored Flowers, much larger than the former, which gives also much the like Seed, but in greater plenty.

VI. The Places. The Lesser and Greater English sorts grow by the sides of Rivers and Ditches; the Lesser almost every where both in standing and running Waters, and in such places as are many times wet in Winter, and dry in Summer, and in other moist Grounds in most parts of this Kingdom, where it may many times be gotten almost in Cart Loads. The Larger sort has been found in great plenty, in the Lands and Furrows of Hedington Field above St. Bartholomew's Hospital, half a Mile from Oxford. The Virginian Kinds are only to be had with us in our Gardens, nourished up by such as are Curious.

VII. The Times. The English Arsmarts Flower only in June and July; and their Seed is ripe in August: But the Virginian Kinds Flower with us much later, and scarcely perfect their Seed here.

VIII. The Qualities. They are cold and dry in the first Degree: Alteratives, Astringents, Incrassatives, Repercussives, Glutinatives, Anodyns, and Traumaticks or Vulneraries: Also Hystericks and Arthriticks.

IX. The Specification. Its peculiar property is in curing of Wounds, and healing old running Sores and Ulcers.

X. The Preparations. There are taken from it, 1. The Green Leaves. 2. The Distilled Water. 3. The Mixture. 4. The Juice. 5. The Essence. 6. The Ointment. 7. The Balsam. 8. The Cataplasma.

#### The Virtues.

XI. The Green Herb. Authors say, that if a handful of Arsmart wet in Water, and apply'd for some time to a Wound, or Sore, and afterwards Buried in moist Ground, or under a Stone, as the Herb rots, so the Sore will Miraculously heal. And being put on Horses or other Cattels Sores, 'twill drive away Flies in Summer time.

XII. The Distilled Water. Being mixt with a half part of Aqua Vita, and bathed on any pained place for a Week, more or less; it will perfectly take away the pain.

XIII. The Mixture. Take the Distilled Water, Ox Gall, Oil of Spike, of each equal parts, mix them well together by shaking them in a Glass. This anointed upon any place troubled with the Gout, and a Flanel dipt in the same, being also apply'd, takes away the pain thereof.

XIV. The Juice. If therewith any old running Sore, or old Ulcer, is constantly washed, it cleanses and heals it: it is also excellent to be put into Diet Drinks for Wounded Persons, and such as have old and running Sores upon them: and washing the Sores of Beasts therewith, it keeps Flies from them.

XV. The Essence. It is more powerful than the Juice, and is more useful to all Intentions, healing also much more outwardly, being apply'd.

XVI. The Ointment. It is excellent against all hot Swellings and Inflammations in any part of the Body, especially being apply'd in the beginning, being something Repercussive: it also allays Inflammations in Wounds and Ulcers, and eases pains proceeding from a hot Cause.

XVII. The Balsam. Being made of the Bruised Herb boiled in Oil Olive, and made into a Balsam with Turpentine and Wax, It heals all sorts of green Wounds wonderfully; it cools, dries and heals; and therefore is good for putrified Sores, and running Ulcers, whether in Man or Beast, cleansing purifying, incarnating them, and healing them.

XVIII. The Cataplasma. The Herb beaten with Rue and Wormwood, and heat very hot in a Frying-Pan, and apply'd to the Bowells, as hot as can be endured, in a Cholick, it gives present ease to a Wonder.

## CHAP. XXXII.

### Of Hot or Biting ARSMART.

I. THE Names. It is called in the Greek, ὕδριππερ: In Latin, *Hydropiper*, *Piper Aquaticum*, *Persicaria non maculata*, *Persicaria Urens*, vel, *Mordax*: *Angulara* calls it *Crataegon*; and some call it, *Zinziber Caninum*: in English, *Hot or Biting Arsmart*, *Water Pepper*, and *Peach-Wort*, or *Lake-Weed*.

II. The Kinds. It is the second general Species of Arsmart or Peach-wort, and is, 1. *Hydropiper*, seu *Persicaria acris vulgaris minor*, the Common Lesser Biting Arsmart. 2. *Persicaria acris Virginiana*, the Virginian Biting Arsmart, or *Hidropiper*.

III. The Description. The first or English sort, has a Root somewhat long, with many Fibres thereat, which as well as the rest of the Plant, is of a very sharp and quick Taste, biting the Tongue more than Pepper, from whence Springs forth a jointed crooked Stalk, not so High nor so Great as the former Mild Kind, but with a greater store of Branches and Leaves some,



somewhat like unto Peach Leaves, but much lesser and narrower; they are also long, but somewhat narrower than those of the Mild Arsmart, and without any spots at all, yet sometimes they have been found with redish Marks upon them. The Stalks are about a Foot and half high, round, smooth and jointed, with a kind of Knee at each Joint: at the greater Joints, as well towards the tops of the Stalks and Brances, as at the tops also, come forth small spiky heads of bluish or reddish Colored, and sometimes more red or white Flowers Mixed, clustering together, which falling away, there comes little blackish Seed, somewhat broad or flatish and sometimes of a reddish yellow Color; of a hot and biting Taste, (as is all the rest of the Plant) almost like unto Pepper, whence came the name of Water Pepper; but the Herb it self is without any smell.

## Biting Arsmart Or Hydropiper



IV. The Virginian Kind is in most things, as its Roots, Stalks, Branches, Joints, Leaves, and Flowers like unto our English before Described, and differs only in the form of the Flowers growing, and their Color, these growing on more slender and long spikes, and their Color being white.

V. The Places. Hydropiper grows almost every where, throughout the Kingdom, in moist and watry Places, and near unto Rivers and Ditch-sides, standing plashy Waters, running Brooks and such like. The latter has been brought out of Virginia, and is nourished up with us in Gardens.

VI. The Times. They Flower in June and July, to August, and the Seed is Perfected or Ripe not long after; yet it is to be observed the Virginian Kind Flowers something later here, and therefore its Seed is somewhat later Ripe.

VII. The Qualities. Hydropiper is hot and dry in the fourth Degree. It Incides, Attenuates, opens, and is Diuretick, and Emmenagogick, and by Appropriation is Cephalick, Neurotick, Hysterick and Nephritick.

VIII. The Specification. It is known by manifold

and large Experience to be a peculiar Plant against Gravel and Stone, whether in Reins or Bladder.

IX. The Preparations. The Shops keep only, 1. The Dried Herb. But you may prepare therefrom, 2. The Distilled Water- 3. The Juice. 4. The Essence. 5. The Oil. 6. The Ointment. 7. The Cataplasme. 8. The Root, and Seed.

### The Virtues.

X. The Herb. It is hot and dry, used chiefly in Wounds, hard Tumors and inveterate Ulcers. Some use it in the Transplantation of Diseases, and removing of Inchantments. The Green Herb strewed in a Chamber, is said to kill all the Fleas; and a good handful put under a Horses Saddle, will make him go briskly, altho' half tyred before.

XI. The Distilled Water. It is a Specifick against Stone and Gravel in both Reins and Bladder, and has cured to admiration when all other things in the World has failed; and so great things have been some hundreds of times experimented of this simple Distilled Water, which seem to be even Miraculous, it performing what much reputed greater Medicaments cannot do: I write not this from my own Experience only, which in this case is very considerable, but we have also the Suffrage of very Great and Learned Men, as to the same thing. And this thing I would have to be noted, That in any of my Books, wheresoever I have mentioned *Perficary* or *Arsmart Water*, either simply or with other Preparations against the Stone, Gravel, &c. I always in all those places, intend the Water of this present Herb, of which we now speak, viz. *Hydropiper*, or *Biting Arsmart*.

XII. The Juice. Given to j. ounce in White Port Wine it provokes the Terms, facilitates the Birth, and brings away the After-Birth; and given in vi. or viij. ounces of the Distilled Water, it provokes Urine, and opens obstructions of the Urinary Passages.

XIII. The Essence. It has the Virtues of the Juice, comforts the Head, Nerves, Stomach, Lungs, Womb, and Reins, provokes the Terms, and causes a good Digestion, eases pains of the Gout from a cold Cause, waits and consumes superfluous Humors in any part, and is admirable against all cold and moist Diseases of the Brain, Nerves and Womb, as Falling sickness, Vertigo, Lethargy, Apoplexy, Palsie, Megrim, Barrenness, &c. and made into a Syrup with Honey it is a good Pectoral. Dose ij. drams.

XIV. The Oil. It dissolves and discusses all cold Swellings, Scrophulous and Scirrhus Tumors, Quinsies, Congealed Blood, Pleurifies, &c.

XV. The Ointment. It is good against Bruises in any part, and prevails against Oedema's, and other cold Tumors of the Joints, Kings Evil Swellings, and Kernels in Neck and Throat.

XVI. The Cataplasme. It prevails against Contusions, hindering putrefaction; and applied to a Fellon or Whitloe, it takes away the Pain almost presently, and in a short time after cures it.

XVII. The Root and Seed. Either the Root or Seed bruised and applied to an Aching Tooth, gives present ease, and in short time after perfectly cures it: Put into a hollow Tooth, it does also the same thing.



## C H A P. XXXIII.

## Of Garden ASARABACCA.

**I. THE Names.** It is called by the *Arabians*, *Asaron* : in *Greek*, "Ασάρον, & Νάρδος ἀγρία : in *Latin*, *Asarum*, *Nardus Sylvestris*, *Nardus Rustica* (because of its Aromatick or Sweet Smell;) by *Macer*, *Vulgaro*, as by his Verse, *Est Asaron Græcè, Vulgaro dicta Latine ; quod Vulgam vel Bulgam seu Ventrem moveat* : and in *English*, *Asarabacca*. I suppose our *English* Name came by a mistake, taking this Plant for *Baccharis* or *Plowmans Spicknard*, which it is not ; and so out of the two names, of *Asaron* and *Baccharis*, they made the name of *Asarabacca*. Others thought *Asarum* and *Baccharis* to be one Plant, and so compounded the name out of them both ; and called it *Asarabaccara*, as it is called in *Spain* at this day.

**II. The Kinds.** It is twofold, 1. *Garden*. 2. *Wild*. of which in the next Chapter. The *Garden* kind is also twofold, 1. *Asarum hortorum Vulgarè*, Common *Garden Asarabacca*. 2. *Asarum Virginianum*, *Virginian Asarabacca*.



**III. The Descriptions.** Our Common *Garden Asarabacca* has small Roots, and whitish, spreading many ways in the Ground, and increasing into divers Heads, but not running or creeping under Ground, as many other creeping Herbs do ; they are sweet in Smell, resembling *Spicknard*, but more when they are dry, than when green, and of a sharp, but not unpleasant, taste : from these Roots rise up many Heads, from whence comes many smooth Leaves, every one upon his own Foot-stalk, which are smoother, rounder, and bigger than *Violet* Leaves, thicker also, and of a darker green shining colour on the upper side, and of a paler yellow green underneath, little or nothing dented about the edges ; from among which, rise up small, round, hollow, brownish, green Husks, upon Stalks of about an Inch long, divided at the brims with five divisions, very like the Cups or Heads of

the *Henbane* Seed, but that they are smaller : and these are all the Flower it has, which being smell'd unto, are somewhat sweet ; and wherein, when they are ripe, are contained small covered rough Seeds, very like the Kernels or Stones of Grapes or Raisins.

**IV. The Virginian Asarabacca**, grows very like the former ; but its Roots are somewhat greater, and fuller of substance, spreading in the same manner, and something more fragrant, and a little hot in taste, biting a little the Tongue : From this Root springs up the Leaves as the former, but they are a pretty deal larger, stiff also, and thick, somewhat crumpled about the edges, of a dark green colour, and not so much shining as the former ; nor yet so round, but a little pointed at the end, very much resembling the flat shape of an Heart ; some of which Leaves will be spotted or straked. The Flowers have but three divisions or points, and of a paler green colour.

**V. The Places.** The first grows naturally Wild under the shades of Trees, and upon shady Hills in *Pontus*, *Phrygia*, and other places of the East : The other grows Wild in *Virginia* ; but they are both of them Nurst up in Gardens with us ; of which the first is very common.

**VI. The Times.** They both keep their Leaves green all the Winter, but shoot forth new in the Spring ; and with them come forth those Heads or Flowers, which give ripe Seed about *Midsummer*, or in *July* or *August*, whose Seed is ripe not long after : but their Roots and Leaves are gathered in the Spring.

**VII. The Qualities.** They are hot and dry in the second Degree, or rather in the third. They Open, Incide, Attenuate, and Resolve, and are Cathartick, Emetick, and Diuretick ; and are appropriated to the Head, Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Reins, Womb, and Joints.

**VIII. The Specification.** It is a peculiar remedy for the Dropfie, Jaundice and Gout ; as also for Agues of all sorts.

**IX. The Preparations.** In the Shops there are, 1. The Roots in Pouder. 2. The Leaves in Wine. 3. An Infusion. 4. A Decoction. 5. An Extract. 6. An Essence. 7. *Diasarum Fernelij*, an Electuary. 8. A Saline Tincture. 9. An Oil by Insolation. 10. A Cataplasm. 11. The Juice. 12. A Conserve.

## The Virtues.

**X. The Roots.** They Vomit, working both upwards and downwards, but not so strongly as the Leaves : Dose from half a dram to j. dram in Pouder : Being given in White Wine, a little before the Fit of an Ague, it takes away the shaking Fit, and thereby causes the hot Fit to be more remiss, and in twice or thrice taking, it is said to cure it, whether it is Quotidian, Tertian or Quartan. *Dioscorides* saith, that vj. drams of the Root in infusion in honied water, being drunk, powerfully provoke the Terms : I fear the Dose is very much too large in substance, iij. or iv. drams may be infused in the Mead, and so drunk : *Parkinson* says, it will work like *Black Hellebor* : It is good also against the Bitings of Serpents, and other Venomous Creatures. The Pouder, the finer it is, the more it purges by Vomit and Urine ; the coarser it is, the more it purges by Stool. Dose j. dram in Pouder, as Authors say.

**XI. The Leaves.** Wine being made of the Leaves, by steeping them therein, is an Emetick, and provokes Urine, as *Dioscorides* saith, eases the Pains of the Stone, and an old Sciatica, and is profitable against Dropfies. *Mesue* says, it not only Vomits, but works downwards, and by Urine also, purging both



both Choler and Flegm, but it purges Flegm more manifestly than Choler. It wonderfully helps the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and therefore is excellent against the Dropsie and Yellow Jaundice, and stubborn Agues, which come from plenty of Evil Humors. You may steep 6, 7, 8, or 9, of the Leaves in Wine for one Dose, according as the Age and Strength of the Patient may be, and repeat it twice or thrice a Week.

XII. *The Infusion.* Made of the Leaves in Mead or Whey, with the Addition of some Spikenard to Correct it, it performs all that the Wine doth, and is very effectual for those that are afflicted with a Sciatica, and other like Pains of the Joints.

XIII. *The Decoction.* Made in Whey, Mead, or Wine, of the Leaves, adding also a little Macè, Cinamon, or Spikenard, by Boiling, which ought not to be much, because then the Virtue will be lost; it mightily prevails against Quotidian, Tertian and Quartan Agues, and performs all that the Wine, or Infusion can do: this may be given every other day, anointing also the Back Bone and Soles of the Feet with the following Oil. Now here is to be noted, that in making this Decoction, the Liquor in which the Leaves are put, ought first to boil, that they may not remain long in the Decoction, because of losing their Virtue, as aforesaid.

XIV. *The Extract.* Made of the Roots, being Green, and beaten into a Mass, and the Juice Extracted with Wine, till the whole Virtue is drawn forth, and then evaporated to the due thickness of an Extract. Being thus made, it will keep all the Year, and is more safe than the simple Pouder of the Root; and may be given from xv. grains to half a dram. But Schroder has an *Alcalisate Extract*, which is called also *Coagulum Asari*, thus made. *Take Roots and Leaves of Asarum, extract a strong Tincture with Spirit of Wine rectified, which filter through brown Paper, to which add the fixed Salt of the Ashes, made by elixivation, and calcined again, even to melting; digest a while, then abstract the Spirit, till the Extract becomes of the thickness of Honey.* Dose from j. scruple to iij. scruples. It may be given against the Bitings of Serpents, and mad Dogs, King's Evil, Asthma's, Quartans, Worms in Children, and in any of the Cases which the Pouder of the Roots, or Wine, Infusion or Decoction of the Leaves, are intended for.

XV. *The Essence.* It is a good Emetick and Cathartick, but works not so strongly Upwards as the simple Juice, or the former Pouders, Wine, Infusions, or Decoctions; and after it has done working, it commonly provokes Sweat powerfully, expelling the Relicks of the Disease that way. Dose from j. dram to ij. or iij. drams in Wine or Mead, as the Patient is in Age and Strength.

XVI. *The Eleuary.* You may see the Preparation of it in our *London Dispensatory*, lib. 4. cap. 22. sect. 95. It may be given from ij. drams to iv. to evacuate by Vomit all sorts of Humors from the Stomach, and Parts adjacent: 'tis so gentle that Aged People, and Women with Child may safely take it; give it in Mead or Wine.

XVII. *The Saline Tincture.* It is Extracted from the green, or fresh gathered Roots and Herbs. This works more by Urine and Sweat, and is gentler than many of the other Preparations. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams; it carries off the Morbifick Matter of many inveterate Diseases, as the Dropsie, Jaundice, Gout, Sciatica, King's Evil, Agues, Cachexies, Green-sickness, Apoplexies, Lethargies, Megrims, Surfeits, &c. by all the ways, as Vomit, Stool, Urine and Sweat. The Head washed or Bathed therewith, comforts the Brain and Nerves,

which are disaffected with taking Cold, and strengthens a weak Memory.

XVIII. *The Oil by Insalution.* The Herb and Roots well bruised, and put into a sufficient quantity of Oil, with the addition of j. ounce of *Labdanum*, to every pound of Oil; and insolated for two Months in a hot Sun, then pressed forth; (for want of a hot Sun, a Sand heat may do better, which will be continually Night and Day the same.) This Oil warm, being anointed upon all the Back, from the Neck to the Hips, as also upon the Soles of the Feet, in a warm Bed, it provokes Sweating; and being upon the access of an Ague, it prevents the cold and shaking Fit, and thereby cures those who have been long afflicted with Quotidians, Tertians or Quartans; it is good also against Cramps, and other disaffections of the Sinews, and an old Cough.

XIX. *The Cataplasm.* The Leaves bruised, and applied as a Cataplasm, to the Forehead and Temples, eases the Head-ach, and causes Sleep: and applied to the Eyes, it takes away their Inflammation.

XX. *The Juice.* The common use of this Herb is, to take the Juice of 5, 6, or 7 Leaves (according to the Age and Strength of the Patient) and to mix it with a small draught of Ale, Mead or Wine, and so drink it to cause Vomiting. It works very strongly, cures Surfeits, and has all the Virtues of the Pouder of the Root, Wine, Infusion, Decoction, Extract, or Essence. Mixed with a little Tutia prepared, and dropt into the Eyes, it clears the Eye-sight, and helps the Dimness and Mists, which are often before them.

XXI. *The Conserve.* Made of the Flowers, with refined Sugar or Honey. This being eaten is found by Experience to strengthen very much the Auditory Nerves, and to help difficulty of Hearing, Deafness, and a bad Memory. Dose from j. dram to iv. drams, in the Morning Fasting.

XXII. *Nota.* That most of the Preparations of this Plant are not to be given to Women with Child, for that through their Violence, they cause Miscariage.

## C H A P. XXXIV.

### Of Wild ASARABACCA.

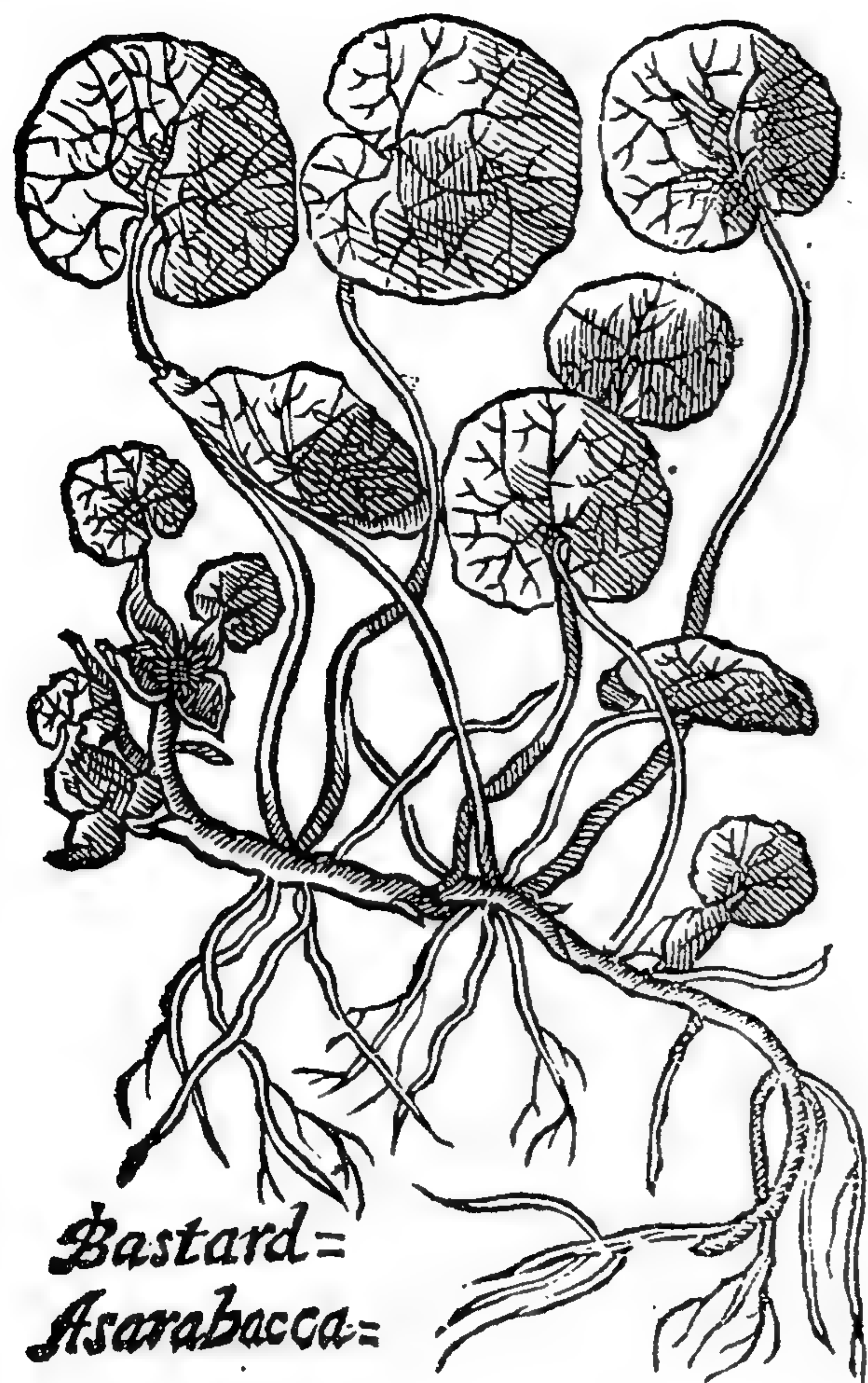
I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἀσάριον*: in Latin, *Asarina*, *Asarum Sylvestre*: in English, *Bastard* or *Wild Asarabacca*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the second Species mentioned in Chap. 33. Sect. 2. aforesaid; and a singular Herb of the sort.

III. *The Description.* It has Roots long and slender, creeping under the upper crust of the Earth, and not shooting deep down, having a somewhat sharp taste, and a little bitter withal; from whence spring forth Leaves, almost like to our Garden Asarabacca, but somewhat rounder, and rougher than they, slightly and unevenly indented about the edges, growing upon long slender hairy Foot-stalks, yet is it but a low Plant, and creeping, as it were, upon the Ground. The Flowers grow near unto the Ground, like unto those of Camomil, but much lesser, and wholly Yellow, as well the border of the Leaves, as the Thrum in the middle; but Gerard says, they are of a Mealy or Dusty Colour, and not unpleasant in Smell. This Plant Clusius thinks to be his *Tussilago Alpina secundata*; but Parkinson says, that by reason of its sharp Taste



Taste, and creeping Root, it may more probably be taken to be the *Cotyledon palustris acris*, vel, *Urens*.



IV. *The Places.* It is found, as *Matthiolus* says, on the Mountains in *Bohemia*: and our *Lobel* found it in several places in *Somersetshire*; it delights in Woody and Shadowy places.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers in *May* and *June*; and the Seed is brought to its ripeness much about *Midsummer*.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the beginning of the third Degree: it Incises, Attenuates, and is Aperitive, and Cathartick: Appropriated to the Head, Stomach, Liver, Womb, and Joints.

VII. *The Specification.* I cannot yet find either from Authors, or my own Experience, what Disease it is peculiarly good for; but 'tis certain, 'tis a good *Deopillative*, or opener of Obstructions.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may have from it,  
1. The green Herb it self. 2. A Powder of the same.  
3. The Juice. 4. An Essence. 5. A Saline Tincture. 6. A Syrup of the Juice, or Herb. 7. A Decoction.

#### *The Virtues.*

IX. *The Green Herb.* A little of it eaten with other Herbs, as a Sallet, opens and loosens the Belly, and purges out Cold, Gross, Thick, Flegmatick Humors.

X. *The Powder.* It may be given to j. dram in Mead, Canary, Sherry, Malaga, or White Florence Wine, and so it will loosen the Belly, and purge thence Tough Thick Phlegm, and Black or Burnt Humors.

XI. *The Juice.* It has a Cleansing, Attenuating Quality; makes thin that which is thick, cuts that which is tough, and breaks that which is hard, opens the Bowels which are obstructed, and purges out the Morbifick Matter of many grievous Disaffections, and therefore is profitably given to such as are afflicted with the Palsie, Falling-sickness, or Yellow Jaundice: It may be given from ij. drams to iij. or iv. according as the Patient is in Age and Strength, in a Glass of Mead or Wine.

XII. *The Essence.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, but is more grateful to the Stomach, and may be given to half an ounce, or more, in a Glass of Wine:

It prevails against the Gravel in Reins and Bladder; and gives Ease in the Gout, inwardly taken, and outwardly applied; and withal it kills Worms in Children.

XIII. *The Saline Tincture.* It opens Obstructions of the Womb, Reins and Bladder, provokes Urine, and expels Sand, Gravel, and Tartarous Slime: it kills Worms in old or young, and is profitable against the Dropsie. Dose from j. dram to ij. in a Glass of White, or Rhenish Wine and Sugar.

XIV. *The Syrup of the Juice or Herb.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, but must be given in full the double quantity, and is much better for Queasy Stomachs, and Children, than either the Juice or Essence; but it ought to be made in a Bath, for boiling will cause much of its Virtue to be lost.

XV. *The Decoction.* If it is made in Wine, it is a good Cephalick, and excellent against most cold Diseases of the Head, Brain and Nerves: Used as an Errhine, it purges the Head of cold and gross Humors: and taken inwardly from ij. to iv. ounces, or more, it prevails against Epilepsies, Apoplexies, Lethargies, Vertigo, Megrim, Head-ach, Palsies, Convulsions, &c.

## C H A P. XXXV.

### Of Common ASPHODEL.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Arabick*, *Barva-cab*: in *Greek*, *Ἀσφodelos*: in *Latin*, *Asphodelus*, *Hastula Regia*, *Albucis*, and *Albucum*: in *English*, *Asphodel*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is fourfold, 1. The *Common Garden Asphodel*. 2. The *Onion Asphodel*. 3. *Marsh, or Lancashire Asphodel*. 4. *Kings Spear Asphodel*: of this last see Chap. 404. following: The Second and Third we shall treat of in the two following Chapters. The *Common Garden Asphodel* is also White or Yellow: and the White is either the Greater Single or Branched, and the Lesser Hollow, and Leaf.

III. *The Descriptions.* The *Common single White Asphodel* has a Root compact of many knobby Roots, growing out of one Head, like those of the Peony, full of Juice, with a small bitterness, and Astringent Taste; from whence springs up many long narrow Leaves, like almost to those of Leeks, sharp pointed: the Stalk is round, smooth, naked, and without Leaves, two Cubits high, garnished from the middle upwards, with a number of Flowers Star-fashion, made of six Leaves apiece: the colour White, with some dark Purple streaks, drawn down the Back side; within the Flowers are several small Chives; which being past, there springs up little round Heads, wherein are contained hard, black, and three corner'd Seed, like those of Buck-wheat or Staves-acre.

IV. *The Common Branched White Asphodel* has a Root composed of many tuberous long Knobs, which are thickest in the middle, and smaller at both ends, fastened together at the head, of a dark grayish colour on the out side, and yellow within; whence rises up many long and narrow hollow triangular Leaves, sharp pointed, and lying upon the ground round about the Root; the Stalk is smooth, round and naked without Leaves, which rises from the midst of them, divided towards the Top, into divers Branches, (if the Plant has been of any long continuance) or else into but two or three small Branches, from the sides of the main great one, whereon stand many large Flowers, Star-fashion, made of six Leaves apiece, on the inside whitish, and straked with a Purple line down the



the backside of every Leaf, having in the midst of the Flowers some small yellow Threads: the Seed is black, and three square like the former, and greater than the Seed of Buck-Wheat, contained in roundish Heads which open into three Parts.



V. There are also, the little hollow white Asphodel, and the least white Asphodel, which differ not

much but in the Magnitude, except in the first of them in the Roots, which are not Glandulous, but stringy long and white; bearing Flowers from the middle to the top Star-fashion: And in the second, in the height chiefly, it being seldom above a Foot high, having Glandulous Roots like the great Asphodels.

VI. The Garden yellow Asphodel, has many Roots growing out of one Head, made of several tough, flat and oleous yellow Sprigs, or Gros strings, from the which rises up many Grassy Leaves, thick and Gros, tending to squareness; among the which comes up a strong thick Stalk, set with the like Leaves, even to the Flowers, but less: upon which do grow Star-like yellow Flowers, not unlike to those of the greater White Asphodels, with much the like Seed following them.



VII. The Places. They Grow naturally in Greece, Italy, Spain and France; but are nurst up with us only in Gardens, where now they are become natural, and Natives of our Soil.

VIII. The Times. The Glandulous Great white Asphodels do Flower in May and June: The least white One, in August and September, even till the cold hinders it: the hollow white, and the yellow, Flower in June and July; and the Seeds are ripe, the Month following.

IX. The Qualities. They are hot and dry almost in the third Degree: They are Emetick, incide, attenuate, open, discuss, resolve, and are Vulnerary: They are also Cephalick, Neurotick, Pectoral, Hysterick and Nephritick.

X. The Specification. They are known by experience to be peculiar against the Kings Evil, as the Signature in the Roots demonstrate.

XI. The Preparations. The Shops keep nothing hereof; but you may prepare therefrom. 1. A Juice of the Root. 2. An Essence of the same. 3. A Decoction in Wine. 4. A Syrup. 5. A Saline Tincture. 6. An Oily Tincture. 7. Ashes of the whole



whole Plant. 8. An Oil. 9. An Ointment. 10. A Balsam. 11. A Powder of the Roots. 12. A Cataplasma.

### The Virtues

**XII. The Juice of the Root.** It cleanses, and takes away the white Morpew in the Face, or other parts of the Body, the place being first chafed well and rubed with a course Linnen Cloth. If it is mixed with *Sherry Sack* in which a little *Myrrh* has been dissolved, and a twelfth part of the *Tincture of Saffron*, it makes an excellent Collyrium for the Eyes to heal Inflammations, take away Mists, Cloudings, dimness of Sight, and other disaffections, being dropt into them.

**XIII. The Essence.** It may be taken from j. to ij. ounces in Mead or Wine against the Kings Evil, Coughs, Colds, Asthma's, shortness of Breath, or any Vehement obstructions of the Lungs. If the Stomach is foul, it will Vomit the Patient: it evacuates evil Humors, and is contributory to the Cure of running Sores, old Ulcers, Fistula's, and the like, Bathing and Washing the Swelling and Sores with it also.

**XIV. The Decoction in Wine.** It is Emetick if it meets with a foul Stomach, is opening and cleansing, good for a Cacoethick habit of Body, and prevails against the bitings of any venomous Creatures, Stone and Gravel, or any stoppage of the Urinary parts. I know it to be an excellent thing to be constantly taken by such as are troubled with the Evil, Oedema, or other like Tumors, for it consumes the Morbifick Matter which Composes them. It may be given to iij. iv. or vi. ounces, or less, &c.

**XV. The Syrup.** It has the same Virtues with the former Preparations, but much weaker, yet pleasanter to be taken by such as are queasy Stomached: It is an excellent Pectoral, and causes easy expectoration in stoppages of the Lungs. Dose ij. ounces morning, noon and night. 'Tis fit for Children.

**XVI. The Saline Tincture.** It works downwards, and carries off the Causes of Diseases by Urine: given from j. to ij. drams in White Port Wine, it provokes Urine and the Terms powerfully, is good against Plurifies, and an old Cough, Pains and Stitches in the side, &c.

**XVII. The Oily Tincture.** It is Excellent being Bathed with, against Punctures and Wounds of the Nerves, bitings of Mad Dogs, Vipers, and other Venomous Creatures.

**XVIII. The Ashes of the whole Plant.** *Galen* says, that if they are mixed with Ducks Grease, the mixture is good against an Alopecia, and brings Hair again where it was fallen off, by means of that Disease.

**XIX. The Oil.** It is good against cold Tumors, and to anoint with in Cramps, and for any Ach or Pain in any part, proceeding from a cold Cause; and is good to discuss Tumors and Swellings in Womens Breasts, Testicles, and other Glandulous parts.

**XX. The Ointment.** It cleanses old running Sores, putrid Ulcers, and rebellious Fistula's, disposes them to healing, and puts a stop to fretting and eating Ulcers: Discusses Inflammations in Womens Breasts, and Testicles, and is good against Fellons in the Fingers ends.

**XXI. The Balsam.** It is an Excellent thing indeed, for healing all sorts of Green Wounds; cleanses Ulcers to the bottom, incarnates and heals them, and is also profitable against the Gout from a cold Cause.

**XXII. The Powder of the Roots.** It may be given to j. dram in a Glas of White Port Wine, it provokes Urine and the Terms in Women, helps Pains in the Sides, Ruptures, Convulsions, and old Coughs: Used as an Errhine, it purges the Head and Brain of cold and moist Humors which cause Head-Aches, Lethargies, Vertigoes, Epilepsies, Apoplexies, &c. And j. dram taken in Broth provokes Vomit, and helps such as are bitten with Venomous Creatures.

**XXIII. The Cataplasma.** It is singular good to discuss Contusions, Inflammations and the like, to give ease in a cold Gout, or any Ach or Pain from a cold Cause, strengthens the Nerves, and cures Cramps, in what part soever: and is good to be apply'd in Tumors of the Kings Evil, Kernels and Swellings in the Neck and Throat, &c. I have had large Experience of the Virtues of the Root of this Herb; and I write little more of it, than what is true to my own knowledge.

## CHAP. XXXVI.

### Of Onion ASPHODEL.



**I. The Names.** It is called in Greek, *Ἀσφόδελος*; in Latin, *Asphodelus Bulbosus*, by *Dodonæus*, *Asphodelus Femina*; by *Lobel*, *Asphodelus Hyacinthinus*, and *Hyacintho Asphodelus*; and that rightly, because the Root is like the *Hyacinth* or *Facinth*, and the Flowers like the *Asphodel*: *Clusius* calls it *Ornithogalum Majus*, the Greater Star of Bethlem, and that fitly enough: in English we call it, *Onion Asphodel*, and *Bulbous Asphodel*, from the form of the Root.

**II. The Kind.** It is a singular Plant, having no particular Species under it.

**III. The**



III. The Description. It has a yellowish round Bulbous or Onion like Root, with some Fibres hanging thereat, from the which come many whitish green Grassy Leaves, long and narrow, not much unlike in shape to Leeks, and spread upon the Ground; these come forth at the beginning of the Year, and abide till May; and then they withering, amongst those Leaves, rises up a naked smooth Stalk, replenished towards the top with many Star like Flowers, of a whitish, or pale yellow green Color on the inside, and wholly Green without, consisting of six little Leaves, sharp pointed, with certain Chives or Threads in the Middle, and growing on short Foot Stalks, on a reasonable long Head spike fashion: after the Flowers are past, there succeeds a small Knop, or Head three square, in which lies the Seed which is roundish and black. It differs from Kings Spear, which is also a kind of Asphodel, in the pods, the which are round, but in this long and three square: from the Marsh or Lancashire Asphodel, in the Stalk, which is not wholly Naked: and the Common Asphodel in the Pods and Roots, which in those the Pods are round, and the Root multiform and knobby.

IV. The Places. It grows in the Corn-fields in the Upper Hungary: but with us, it is only nourished up in Gardens.

V. The Times. It Flowers in May, June, and July: and the Seed is ripe in August, or not long after.

VI. The Qualities. It is hot and dry in the third Degree, having almost the same temperature with Aron. It is aperitive, inciding, attenuating, absterlive, discussive, and something Emetick. And are appropriated to the Stomach, Lungs, Womb, Reins and Joynts.

VII. The Specification. The Roots which are only used, open obstructions of the Lungs; and are peculiar against Asthma's, causing Expectoration.

VIII. The Preparations. You may have from the Root. 1. A Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Lohoch. 4. A Saline Tincture. 5. An Oily Tincture. 6. An Ointment. 7. A Balsam. 8. A Cataplasm. 9. A Syrup. 10. Ashes.

## The Virtues.

IX. The Juice. Given from half an ounce more or less as the Patient is in age and strength in a Glass of White Wine, it opens obstructions of the Viscera, and is a singular good Medicine against the Yellow Jaundice.

X. The Essence. It is good against Pains and Aches of the Bowels, Pleurifies, Stitches, and other Diseases caused by Obstruction, whether in the Lungs or elsewhere: It prevails against Coughs, Colds, Asthma's, shortness of Breath, and difficulty of Breathing, and disposes wounds and Ulcers to a speedy healing. Dose from j. ounce to j. ounce and half in Wine or Mead.

XI. The Lohoch. It is made of the Juice Boiled up to a thickness with Honey, with a quarter part of the fine Pouder of Elecampane Root, it is a famous Pectoral: with this I once cured a supposed incurable Phthisis, in less than two Months time: at first it Vomited, and continued to do so, more or less for 10 or 12 Days, after which time the Patient took it very Pleasantly; it cleansed the Lungs, caused a great Expectoration, and in short time after healed them and performed the Cure Pleasantly. It is good for Coughs, Colds, Astmas, Wheezings, shortness of Breath, and other Distempers of the Lungs. Dose j. ounce in the morning Fasting, and as much at four in the afternoon.

XII. The Saline Tincture. It provokes Urine and is good against Gravel, Stone, and Tartarous

Slime in the Reins and Bladder. It represses Vapors and Fits of the Mother, provokes the Terms, and prevails against the Gout. Dose, from half a dram to ij. drams morning and evening in a Glass of Wine.

XIII. The Oily Tincture. It is good against an Oedema in the Knees, Traumatick Tumors in the Neck and Throat, and any other cold Swelling in any part whatsoever, being anointed thereon. It prevails against a cold Gout, and other like Pains and Aches. Inwardly taken from vj. drops to xvj. in a Glass of Wine, it Comforts the Head, Brain, Nerves, and Womb.

XIV. The Ointment. It is good to anoint Kernells and Scrophulous Tumors in the Throat, cleanse old Ulcers, and being put Scalding hot into Fistula's to remove the Callus and Heal them.

XV. The Balsam. It is prevalent against Oedematous Tumors, and the Gout, heals Wounds, cleanses old Sores, running Ulcers and Fistula's, makes the Flesh grow, and heals them. It also discusses hard and scirrhus Tumors.

XVI. The Cataplasm. It takes away black and blew marks of the Skin occasioned by Blows or Bruises, discusses or resolves Inflammations, and abates pain by its Anodine Property: It is good in Tumors of the Breasts and Cods.

XVII. The Syrup. It is Pectoral, good against all diseases of the Brest, Lungs, and Womb; causes Expectoration, and a free Breath, and provokes the Terms. You may give it from j. ounce to ij. ounces, in a Glass of white Wine morning and evening.

XVIII. The Ashes of the whole Plant. Galen saith, That the Ashes of the Root mixed with Oil, or Hens Grease, cures the falling of the Hair in an Alopecia, and restores it where it was lost; and also cures a Scald Head. It is good against Scurff, Morpew, and other like vices of the Skin.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

### Of Marsh or Wild ASPHODEL.

I. The Names. It is called in Greek, Ἀσφodelos: in Latin, Asphodelus Paluster, Pseudo-asphodelus Luteus: in English, Marsh Asphodel, Wild or Bastard Asphodel, and Bastard yellow Asphodel, and Lancashire Asphodel.

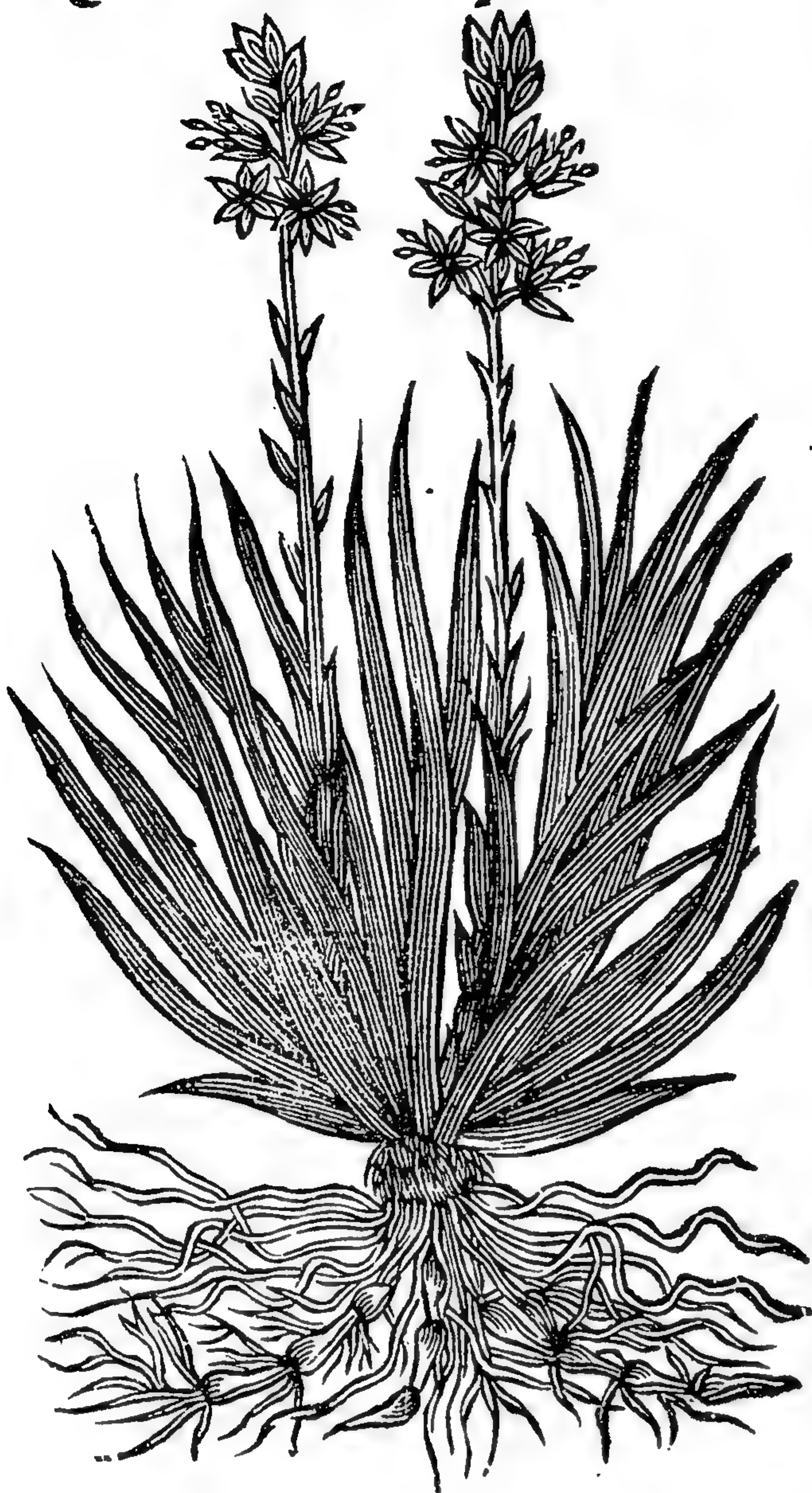
II. The Kinds. There are two special Kinds hereof, 1. Pseudoasphodelus major, Asphodelus Lancastriae, the greater Marsh, Wild, or Bastard Asphodel, Lancashire Asphodel. 2. Pseudoasphodelus minor, Asphodelus Lancastriae verus, the lesser Marsh, Wild or Bastard Asphodel, the true Lancashire Asphodel.

III. The Descriptions. The first of these has a Root long and jointed, creeping as Grass does, with many Fibres thereat, from whence rise up several long and narrow Leaves, like unto Corn Flag, but not so stiff or hard, of a beautiful green Color, and somewhat Chamfered, furrowed or straked down right, yet compassing one another, as the Corn Flag and Flower de luces do at the bottom, among which rises up a Stalk about a Foot and a half high, with divers short Leaves enclosing the Stalk, as it were hosed at their bottoms; and at the tops stand several yellow Flowers, as it were in a spiked Head, each of them made of six Leaves a piece, as are those of the other Asphodels; in the midst of which come forth several small Threads or Chives, which being past, there comes Seed



Seed in somewhat long and square pointed Husks or Cods, which Seed is very small and Blackish.

### Lancashire Asphodil,



IV. The lesser Kind, has a Root which consists of of a few whitish long Fibres, not creeping far, or much, but increasing into sundry Heads, from whence spring forth many smooth green Leaves, narrower, shorter, and fresher than the former, (Gerard says, two Inches and a half or three Inches long, somewhat broad at the bottom and sharper towards their ends) not much unlike to a narrow Flower de luce, but neither so hard nor so thick; from among which Leaves rises up a Stalk, which scarcely attains to be a Foot high, having very few small Leaves thereon, (Gerard says it is smooth and without any Leaves thereon;) towards the top whereof, in a spiked Head comes forth small Flowers, of a paler yellow than the former, and of a pretty Star like fashion, which being gon, there succeeds small three square reddish Husks, or longish little Cods, which, Gerard says, are sometimes four or five Square, and in which is contained small reddish brown Seed.

V. The Places. They are both found Wild in England, as well as in other places beyond Sea, in Marsh and Wet Grounds: the first near Lancaster, in the Moorish Grounds there, as also near unto Mandesley, and Marton, two Villages not far from thence; as also at the Foot of Bagshot Hill in the West of England, near to a Village of the same Name. The second grows near Egham, not far from the River side there, and in many other places, in the West of England.

VI. The Times. They Flower in May, June, and July; and the Seed is ripe, about a Month after the Flowers are gon: most of their Leaves remain green in the Winter Time, if it is not extream cold and hard weather.

VII. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the second Degree; Inciding, Attenuating, Aperitive, Absterfive and Diuretick: Dedicated to the Lungs, Reins, Womb, and Joynts.

VIII. The Specification. There has been nothing in a constant Observation, to which they can be said to be peculiar; Authors having as to their Virtues been silent.

IX. The Preparations. You may make from the Roots; 1. A Decoction. 2. A Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Syrup. 5. An Ointment. 6. A Balsam. 7. A Cataplasm. 8. A Saline Tincture.

#### The Virtues.

X. Altho' Authors have said nothing of the Vertues of these Plants; yet, by their Tastes, and other Signatures, they seem to have the Virtues of the Garden Asphodels, tho possibly not so Potent and Efficacious: I have made several tryalls of them, and have found the Decoction to open obstructions of the Lungs and provoke Urine. With the Juice given to ij. ounces for some days in White Wine, I once provoked the Courses in a Woman where they were obstructed: and with the Syrup and Essence, I have cured some that have had extream Colds. The Balsam I know to be a good Vulnerary, and the Ointment is very discussive and resolute, and good against the Gout. The Saline Tincture provokes Urine, and clears the Reins and Urinary Passages of Sand, Gravel, Slime and Tartarous Matter, given to ij. drams in White Wine: the other Preparations I have not much used; but this last, (as it is the easiest made) I have oftentimes proved, and that with good Success.

## CHAP. XXXVIII.

### Of Garden ASPARAGUS.

I. The Names. It is called in Arabick, Halion, & Helion: In Greek, Ἀσπράγος, ἢ Ἀσπράγος, Ὁσπρίον, ἀπὸ τῆς ὀσπρίας, from provoking Lust: In Latin, Asparagus & Corurda: In English, Asparagus, Sparagus, and Sperage.

II. The Kinds. There are several Species of this Plant, 1. The Garden Kind. 2. The Wild Kinds, of which there is, 1. The Sea or Marsh. 2. The Rock Kind. 3. The Prickly: of which three last, in the two following Chapters. The Garden Kind is also 1. Asparagus Sativus vel hortensis vulgarior, seu Minor, The Common Garden Asparagus, or Lesser Kind. 2. Asparagus Sativus, vel hortensis Major, The Greater Garden Kind.

III. The Descriptions. The first or Smaller Kind, has very many Roots, dispersed from a Spongie head, which are long, thick, soft and spongie strings, hanging down, and spreading themselves all about, whereby it greatly encreases: from this Root there rises out of the Ground, divers whitish, green, scaly Sprouts, thick, tender, very soft and Brittle, of the thickness of the greatest Swans Quill, or somewhat thicker, in Taste not much unlike to Green Beans or Pease, having at top a certain scaly soft Bud, which in time does rise up into very long and slender round green Stalks, bigger or lesser as the Roots are in Growth, and growing to be three or four Feet high or more (as the Ground is in goodness) which Stalks send forth divers smaller Branches, whereon are set many little green Leaves, like Fennel, but shorter and smaller, and growing up to the top, much finer than the Leaves of Dill: among which, at the Joynts thereof, come forth, small Mossie, yellowish Flowers, Which yield a Fruit or Berries, green at first, afterwards red as Coral, of the bigness of a White Pea; wherein is contained gross blackish Seed, and



and exceeding hard, which is the cause it lies so long in the Ground after sowing, before it Springs up.

ASPARAGVS:



IV. *The other or Greater Kind* differs nothing from the former, but in the Colour of the Shoots, their Magnitude, and Taste, they being much whiter, vastly larger, and much more sweet and pleasant. It is almost beyond belief the relation of the vast Magnitude to which this Great Kind will grow: This present Year 1696. a present was made to a Lady of one single Bunch containing but one hundred of Sprouts or Heads, which weighed (as was reported to me) above forty Pounds weight: and the last Year I cheapened a Bunch or hundred, of the same Kind in Newgate-Market, which they would not Sell me under eight Shillings, and warranted to weigh above twenty Pounds Weight. So that it is manifest that the larger sort is either another Kind, or else, the former sort vastly improved by Art and Industry.

V. *The Places.* They grow with us only in Gardens, where they are nourished up for the daily Service of the House, being an Excellent Boiled Sallet.

VI. *The Times.* The bare tender Shoots, which are Sold in Markets in Bunches or Hundreds, come up commonly in the Spring, and may be had all March, April, and May, and sometimes in June; but the Gardner has arrived now to such a dexterity in his Art, that if the Winter or Season is Warm, you may have them all January and February, as was manifest this present Year, when I could have had what quantity I pleased on New-Years Day. They spring up after that, to a kind of diminutive Bush, and Flower in June and July, and bear their ripe Berries in September, or late in the Year.

VII. *The Qualities.* They seem to be Temperate in respect to heat or coldness, dryness or moisture. They incide, attenuate, open, cleanse, and are very Diuretick: and seem to be chiefly Cephalick, Hystrick and Nephritick; and, if Authors say true, Spermatogenetick withal.

VIII. *The Specification.* They are peculiar against

the Strangury, or stoppage of Urine, and difficulty of making Water, to provoke Urine, and to expel Sand, Gravel, and small Stones out of the Reins, which even the signature of the hardness of the Seed, seems also to intimate.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *The Roots.* 2. *The Seed.* 3. *The Distilled Water of the whole Plant,* distilled in September, when its Berries are Red; which things the Shops are said to keep: But besides them, we have, 4. *The tender Shoots or Heads.* 5. *The Decoction.* 6. *The Juice.* 7. *The Essence.* 8. *The Saline Tincture.* 9. *A Gargarism.* 10. *A Bath.*

*The Virtues.*

X. *The Roots.* Being reduced into Pouder, and given from j. dram to ij. drams in White Wine, or the Distilled Water of the Plant, it provokes Urin, and opens the stoppages of the Urinary parts.

XI. *The Seed.* It is held to be very effectual for the purposes aforesaid, j. dram of it being given in White Wine; so also, if it is mixed in equal quantities with the Pouder of the Root, and given in like manner from j. to ij. drams.

XII. *The Distilled Water.* It is drawn from the whole Plant, and is to be rectified (as Schroder directs) by putting it upon more fresh Herbs. It provokes Urine, and gives ease in the Stone, being drunk daily three times a day, from iv. to viij. ounces: It is used also as a Vehicle for other things.

XIII. *The tender Shoots or Heads.* They are Boiled, and Eaten as a Sallet, with Butter, Vinegar and Pepper, being very Nutritive; and tho' cleansing, as to the Reins, Bladder, and Urinary Passages, yet they comfort the Stomach, are easie of Digestion, and restore in Consumptions.

XIV. *The Decoction of the Roots in Wine.* It opens Obstructions of the Bowels, provokes Urine, being stopped, and expels that Tartarous Matter in the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, which causes the Strangury. Dose from iv. to viij. ounces.

XV. *The Juice of the Roots and young Sprouts.* It prevails against the Strangury, or difficulty in making Water, when it is done by Drops; it expels Gravel and the Stone out of the Reins and Bladder, and helps vehement pains in the Back. Dose iij. or iv. ounces in Wine, twice a day.

XVI. *The Essence made of the Juice, or bruised Plant.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice beforegoing; besides which, it is good against the Obstructions of the Lungs, Pains of the Stomach and Bowels, Falling-sickness, Fits of the Mother, Yellow Jaundice, and dimness of sight: and taken every Morning and Evening, from ij. to iv. ounces in a Glass of Generous Wine, it is said to stir up Bodily Lust, Generate Seed, and remove Impotency.

XVII. *The Saline Tincture.* It has all the Virtues of the Decoction, Juice, and Essence; but more powerful in provoking Urine, and expelling Sand, Gravel, Stones and Slimy Tartarous Matter: besides it particularly Stimulates the Generative Faculty by its penetrating and subtil Quality, and effectually cures the Yellow Jaundice. Dose from j. to ij. drams in Wine.

XVIII. *The Gargarism.* The Roots bruised and boiled in White Wine Vinegar, being gargled in the Mouth warm, gives ease in the Tooth-ach: and the Root it self is said to be profitable to be applied to an Aneurism.

XIX. *The Bath.* It is made of a good quantity of the Roots and Seeds bruised, and boiled in a great store of Water, which is to be put into a large Vessel, in which a Man may sit up to the Breasts at



at least : This has been found effectual against Fits of the Mother, Cholick, and Pains of the Back and Reins, and generally 'tis good against Cramps, Convulsions, Sciatica's and other vehement Pains of the lower Parts of the Body.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

### Of Sea or Marsh ASPARAGUS.

I. **THE Names.** It is called in Greek, Ἀσπράγος ἑλκιδης : in Latin, by *Anguillara* and *Taber-montanus*, *Asparagus Palustris* : and *Asparagus marinus*, by *Clusius* and *Camerarius* : by *Bauhinus*, *Penna*, and *Lobel*, *Asparagus maritimus* : in English, *Sea*, or *Marsh Asparagus*.

II. **The Kinds.** This is the first sort of the Wild Kinds ; which some would have us to believe will, by Transplantation, and Manuring in Gardens, become the Garden Kind ; at least as good as the Garden Kind.



III. **The Description.** This Wild, or Sea, or Marsh Kind of Asparagus has a Root with many Strings and Fibres dispersed from a spongy Head like the former, from whence rises up many, but shorter Stalks than the Garden Kinds, stronger also and thicker, branching forth in the same manner, and having such like winged Leaves, but shorter, thicker, harder, and of a blewish, green Colour. The Flowers are like the other, and so are the Berries or Seed which follow, but greater than they, and not of so fresh a red colour.

IV. **The Places.** It is found to grow in the Marshes of Tidnam, near Chepstow, and in Appleton Meadow in Gloucestershire, about two Miles from Bristol, where the Poor People do gather the young Shoots or Heads, and sell them in the Market at Bristol, much cheaper than our Garden Kind is sold in London. Mr Ray says he has found it also at the Lizard Point ; and it is said to be found about

Harwich in Essex, and divers other Marsh Grounds and Places, as in a Meadow belonging to a Mill near Thorp in Essex ; and at Singleton not far from Corbie : also in the Meadows near Moulton in Lincolnshire : At a place called Budmor-lading, not far from Harwich, and at Moulton in Holland, which is also a part of Lincolnshire.

V. **The Times.** The Tender Shoots spring up in March and April, at what times they are gathered and Eaten ; they Flower in June and July, and the Berries are ripe in September.

VI. **The Qualities.** It is, as to its first Qualities, temperate : Mr. Ray says, that the Roots are Diuretick, and Lithontriprick, and are one of the five opening Roots : They are appropriated to the Liver, Spleen, Reins, Womb and Joints.

VII. **The Specification.** The Roots are peculiar against the Yellow Jaundice, Stone or Gravel in the Reins and Bladder, as also the Sciatica and Gout.

VIII. **The Preparations.** You may have therefrom, 1. The tender Sprouts or Heads. 2. A Decoction of the Roots in Wine. 3. A Juice from the same. 4. An Essence of the Roots. 5. A Syrup of the same. 6. A Saline Tincture.

#### The Virtues.

IX. The Virtues of the Roots and Seed, and even of the whole Plant, are the same in all respects with those of the Manured or Garden ; so that we need not here be particular in explicating the Virtues and Uses of the afore enumerated Preparations, but wholly refer you to that which has already been said in the last Chapter.

## CHAP. XL.

### Of Wild ASPARAGUS.

I. **THE Names.** It is called in Greek, Ἀσπράγος ἄγριος, Μυράγυθα, ἀσπράγος πτεῖλαιος : in Latin, *Asparagus Sylvestris* : in English, *Wild Asparagus*, or *Stone Asparagus*.

II. **The Kinds.** There are two principal Kinds, 1. *Myacanthinus Galeni*, *Asparagus Sylvestris foliis acutis* : *Gesner*, *Dodonæus*, *Camerarius*, and others, call it simply *Asparagus Sylvestris* : *Cordus*, *Lobel*, *Lugdunensis*, and others, *Corruda* : *Bauhinus* and *Parkinson*, *Asparagus foliis acutis* ; and is thought to be the *Asparagus Petreus* of *Galen* and *Dioscorides*. 2. *Asparagus Petreus*, or *Corruda aculeata*, *Prickly Rock Asparagus* : this is called by *Clusius*, *Corruda altera* : by *Dodoneus*, *Asparagus Sylvestris*, (so that he makes little difference between this and the former, tho' indeed there is much :) and by *Bauhinus*, *Asparagus aculeatus alter, tribus aut quatuor spinis ad eundem exortum*.

III. **The Descriptions.** The first, Wild Asparagus with sharp Leaves, has a Head of Roots, having many Strings and Fibres depending from it, thicker and shorter than any of the other Kinds ; from whence rises up three or four Stalks, which are shorter, stronger, and tougher than the others, diversly spread and branched into many Wings, on which are set at several distances, many small, short, hard, and sharp pointed Leaves, five or six standing at a Joint together : At these Joints likewise, with the Leaves, come forth the Flowers, many, set upon a long Stalk, which are Yellow, and consisting of six Leaves apiece, smelling as sweet as a March Violet ; after which come small Berries, green at the first, and of a blackish



ish Ash-colour when they are ripe, wherein is contained a hard Black Seed.



IV. The second Wild Kind, or Prickly Rock Asparagus, which some call Thorny Asparagus, has very thick and short Roots, with many thick strings, all meeting together at the head of the Root, from whence rises up several branched green Stalks, having three or four sharp green Thorns (more like indeed to Thorns than Leaves, they are so hard, small, long, and sharp pointed) set together all along the Stalks and Branches; from which come forth small, mossy, yellowish green Flowers; and after them store of Berries, greater than in the former, and of a blackish green colour, when they are ripe, full of a greenish Pulp; wherein usually lies but one black hard Seed, or at most two, having a White Kernel within it.

V. The Places. The first Kind grows in Stony and Rocky places, as, near to Salamanca in Spain, also under Hedges, and in the very Fields in Castile and Granada; about Narbone and Montpelier in France; as also in Creet or Candy. The second grows in stony and ragged or rocky places, as also by hedge sides, not only in Spain, but also in Portugal and Creet. But with us, both the Kinds are only found Nurst up in Gardens of the Curious.

VI. The Times. They send forth their tender Shoots early in the Spring, and Flower in June and July, having ripe fruit in September: But with us in England, it scarcely comes to perfection, unless the Season is very warm, and they grow in a warm place, which may defend them from cold Blasts and nipping Winds.

VII. The Qualities. They are Temperate as to the first Qualities, but rather more drying than any of the former. They incide, attenuate, and open powerfully, and are strong Diureticks and Lithontripticks: and peculiarly appropriated to the Liver, Spleen, Reins, and Womb.

VIII. The Specification. I have been informed by

some intelligent English Men, who have lived in Spain for some Years, that the People of the place esteem them as one of the most peculiar Remedies against the Stone and Gravel, and much Superiour to the Garden or Marsh Kinds.

IX. The Preparations. You may make from the Root, 1. A Decoction. 2. A Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Saline Tincture. 5. A Distilled Water: and from the Seeds or Berries, 6. A Powder.

#### The Virtues.

X. The Virtues are the same with the Garden and Marsh Kinds: and therefore the Designation and Uses of each Preparation the same, to which you are referred; save, that these Wild Kinds are esteemed to be double in Force and Goodness.

## CHAP. XLI.

### Of Common A V E N S.

I. THE Names. This Herb, for all that we can learn, was unknown to the Greeks, and therefore we can furnish you with no Greek name for it: but it is called in Latin, *Caryophyllata*, and *Garyophyllata*, (from the smell of its Root) also *Herba Benedicta*, *Sanamunda*; and *Tragus* would have it called *Nardus agrestis*, (not only for the sweet scent of its Roots, but for its excellent Virtues) and is supposed to be the *Geum Plinij*, in *Hist. lib. 26. Sect. 21*. It is called in English, *Avens*, and *Herb Bennet*.



II. The Kinds. The General Kinds are two. 1. *Caryophyllata vulgarior*, the common *Avens*. 2. *Caryophyllata Montana*, the Mountain *Avens*; of which in the next Chapter. The Common *Avens* is twofold, 1. That, *Flore minore*, with the smaller Flower, (which is the more Common:) 2. That, *Flore majore*,



*fore*, with the greater Flower, as Mr. Ray has noted, *Hist. Plant.* pag. 606.

III. The Descriptions. *The first of the Common Kind with the smaller Flower, has a Root consisting of many thick Strings, and smaller Fibres, somewhat of a brownish yellow without, and reddish within, smelling somewhat like unto Cloves, especially if it grows in the higher, hotter and dryer Ground, and in a freer and clearer Air; but nothing so much, or not at all in many other places, especially if they be moist: From this Root spring forth many long, rough, dark, green winged Leaves, every one made of many Leaves, set on each side of a middle Rib; the three largest whereof grow at the ends, and snipt or dented round about the edges; the other being small pieces, sometimes two, and sometimes four, standing on each side of the said middle Rib, under them: among which do rise up divers rough or hairy Stalks, about a Foot high, branching forth with Leaves at every Joint, not so long as those below, but almost as much cut in on the edges, some into three parts, and some into more: on the tops of the Branches stand small, pale, yellow Flowers, consisting of five Leaves, like Cinquefoil Flowers, but larger; in the midst whereof, stands a small green head, which, when the Flowers are fallen, grow to be rough and round, being made of many long, greenish, purple Seeds, like grains, which will stick on your Cloths.*

IV. *The other Avens with a large Flower, is a Plant little differing from the former in any particular, except in the Flowers, which are greater than those of the common, and fairer: This I have sometimes formerly seen and gathered in Woods and Cop-ses in some parts of Cambridge-shire, where the whole Plant grew large and very fragrant; but the Roots not much inferior (in my opinion) in their Scent to Cloves themselves.*

V. *The Places.* They are found to grow Wild in many places of our Land, under Hedge sides, and near By-paths in some Fields, as also in Woods and Cop-ses, delighting to grow rather in Shadowy than Sunny places. And in many places they are brought into Gardens, chiefly about London, and in some great Towns and Cities, that they may be near at hand upon occasion. *The Large Flowered Avens* is found in *Tedford Wood*, in the *Wolds* of *Lincoln-shire*.

VI. *The Times.* They Flower in *May* and *June* generally, and their Seed is ripe in *July* at farthest.

VII. *The Qualities.* *Avens* is hot and dry in the first Degree; and is Inciding, Attenuating, Opening, Absterfivè, Discussive, Resolutive, Carminative, Alexipharmick, Astringent, and Vulnerary. *Schroder* says, it is Cephalick, and Cardiack; and we know by Experience that it is Stomatick, Hepatick, Hysterick, and Arthritick.

VIII. *The Specification.* *Schroder* says, its chief use is in drying up Catarrhs, and resolving Coagulated Blood: it is a singular cure for Wounds and Ulcers.

IX. *The Preparations.* The Shops keep nothing hereof, but only, 1. *The Root*: but you may prepare therefrom, 2. *A Decoction.* 3. *A Wine.* 4. *A Juice from the Roots and Plant.* 5. *An Essence.* 6. *A Spirituous Tincture from the whole Plant.* 7. *A Saline Tincture.* 8. *An Oily Tincture.* 9. *An Ointment.* 10. *A Balsam.* 11. *A Cataplasm.* 12. *A mixture for Callous Ulcers.*

#### The Virtues.

X. *The Root.* The Pouder of the dried Roots given from half a dram to j. dram, strengthens the Stomach, opens Obstructions, is good against Spit-

ting or Pissing Blood, or the Bloody Flux; and strewed on moist or running Sores, or Ulcers, dries them up, and disposes them to healing. The dried Roots are also used to be laid among Cloths, to perfume them, and keep away Moths.

XI. *The Decoction.* Made in Mead, or half Wine half Water, it is good for stoppages of the Brest and Stomach, Stitches and Pains of the Sides, opens Obstructions, and corrects cold and crude humors in the Stomach and Bowels. Dose vj. ounces.

XII. *The Wine.* It is very Aromatick, and if it is drunk for some continuance of time, every Morning fasting, it warms and strengthens a cold Stomach, takes away sickness at Stomach, comforts the Heart, expels Wind, makes a good Digestion, opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, resists Poison, and is a singular preservative against the Plague, or any Pestilential Disease: Dose, in infectious times, iv. or vj. ounces, Morning, Noon, and Night.

XIII. *The Juice from the Root, &c.* It is Pectoral, Warming, Comforting, and Strengthening a cold Stomach, and is good for Inward bruises and hurts, for it dissolves congealed Blood, happening by falls or bruises, as also spitting of Blood; it opens Obstructions of the Liver, Spleen, and Womb, provokes the Terms, and is good against the Colick. Dose from ij. Spoonfuls to iv. or more, in Wine, Mead, or Ale: Outwardly, it is good to wash old running Sores, or putrid Ulcers with, in order to their cleansing and healing.

XIV. *The Essence.* It is good for Diseases of the Brest and Lungs, is Cephalick, Stomatick, Cordial, Hysterick and Vulnerary, eminent against cold and moist Diseases of the Head, Brain and Nerves; it strengthens Digestion, and causes a good Appetite, taking away pains of the Stomach, from the coldness thereof; it cheers the Heart, and is good against Sickness and Fainting Fits; prevails against Barrenness in Women, by rectifying the cold and moist Distempers of the Womb. It is also an excellent Vulnerary, for by taking this Essence Daily, from j. to iij. or iv. ounces, Morning, Noon and Night, it causes Wounds, Ulcers, and Fistula's to heal after an admirable manner.

XV. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It has the Virtues of the Essence, but not full out so powerful, except in Vulnerary cases, in which it may do full as well. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams, or more, in a Glass of Wine or Diet Drink.

XVI. *The Saline Tincture.* It opens Obstructions of the Reins, is good against the Plague, and all Pestilential Diseases, Wounds, Ulcers, Sores, Fistula's, and many Diseases of the Head, Brain, Nerves, Lungs, Brest, Liver, Spleen, Womb, and Reins, carrying off the Morbifick Cause by Urine. Dose from j. to ij. drams in Ale, Mead, Wine, or Diet Drink.

XVII. *The Oily Tincture.* Applied to Wounds and Punctures of the Nerves and Tendons, it cures them: it helps Lameness, Numbedness, Trembling of the Limbs, and Palfies, being anointed Morning and Evening on the parts affected; as Pains, Aches, and Gouts, proceeding from cold Causes, or a defluxion of cold Humors. And inwardly taken, from vj. drops to xvi. or xx. drops, in some proper Vehicle, it prevails against Lethargies, Vertigoes, Apoplexies, Convulsions, and other cold Diseases of the Head, Brain, and Nerves: It eases the Colick, and is good against Sand, Gravel, Stone, &c.

XVIII. *The Ointment.* It eases Pains from a cold Cause, discusses Oedema's, Scrophula's, and Phlegmons, or Inflammations, and abates Inflammations in Wounds and Ulcers, by discussing the Cause; and is good against the Piles in *Ano*.

XIX. *The Balsam.* It is a true Vulnerary, and cures



cures simple Wounds by the first intention: It cleanses running Sores; old foetid Ulcers; and stubborn and rebellious Fistula's; washing them first with the Juice, or Essence, and then applying of this Balsam: it cleanses, incarnates, or breeds Flesh, and brings to a speedy healing.

XX. *The Cataplasme*. It discusses Inflammations in their beginning; is good against Contusions, or Bruises, eases pains or Aches in any part, and is singular good in a cold Gout. I have applied it with great success in vehement Head-achs, proceeding from taking cold, or any recent Cause.

XXI. *The Mixture*. Take Juice of the Roots iv. ounces, fine Verdigreese ij. drams; mix them. It takes off the Callus in hollow Ulcers, and Fistula's, where it must be injected with a Syringe. But if the Callosity is in an open Ulcer, the Mixture may be thus made: Take of the foregoing Ointment ij. ounces: Powder of Tobacco ij. drams: Verdigreese j. dram: mix them. Or thus: Take of the former Balsam ij. ounces: Powder of round Birthwort Roots ij. drams: fine Verdtgreese j. dram: mix them. Any of these mixtures take off a Callus from any Ulcer or Fistula, cleanses the same, and induces it to a speedy healing; and this it will do, if the affect is in the Joints.

## CHAP. XLII.

### Of Wild or Mountain AVENS.

I. *THE Names*. They are called in Latin, *Caryophyllata agrestis*, *Caryophyllata montana*; and in English, *Wild or Mountain Avens*. The Epithet *Wild* is put to these, to distinguish them from the former, which are never called *Wild*; for tho' they grow *Wild* in Fields and Woods, yet it is always near home, and besides, they are many times Nurfed up in Gardens, which these are never, except as meer Rarities.

II. *The Kinds*. There are several Kinds of *Mountain Avens*, but those growing in our Country chiefly, are, 1. *Caryophyllata montana purpurea*; as Gerard calls it: Or *Montana palustris purpurea*, as Parkinson: Also *Aquatica nutante flore*, and *Aquatica flore rubro striato*, by the Bauhins; *Purple Mountain Avens*, or *Water Avens*. 2. *Caryophyllata flore amplo purpureo*, *Avens with a large double flower*. 3. *Caryophyllata Chamædryos folio*, as Morison calls it: *Chamædris spuria montana Cistiflore*, as Parkinson: *Alpina Cistiflore*, and *Alpina flore fragrarie albo*, as the Bauhins: *Teucrium Alpinum Cistiflore*, as Gerard; *Mountain Avens with Germander Leaves*. 4. *Caryophyllata Pentaphyllæa*, as Bauhin and Parkinson: *Alpina Pentaphyllæa*, as Gerard: and *Alpina quinquefolia*, as Caspar Bauhin; *Cinquefoil Avens*. To which add, 5. *Caryophyllata montana Virginienfis*, *Virginia Mountain Avens*. 6. *Caryophyllata montana flore magno luteo*, *Mountain Avens with a great yellow flower*.

III. *Descriptions*. 1. *Purple, or Water Mountain Avens*. It has a Root about a Fingers thickness, with many Strings or Fibres thereat, from whence rises up many long and hairy Leaves, composed of divers little Leaves, with larger at the top, and these snipt or dented about the edges, like as the Common Avens: among these Leaves rise up several Stalks, a Foot or more in height, on which grow Flowers, whose Heads hang down: the tops of the Stalks, and Cups of the Flowers, are commonly of a purplish Yellow, but the Flowers scarcely appear above the Husks that contain them: These Flowers themselves are of a

pretty Red Colour, and are of divers shapes, and grow divers ways: (which is the reason that Clusius, and some others, have judged them to be several Plants, giving the Flowers here exprest for a differing kind.) For some of these Flowers, even the greatest part of them grow with five Red, round pointed Leaves, which never lye fair open, but only stand straight out, the middle part being filled with a hairy matter, and yellowish Threads: Some of these Flowers consist of Seven, Eight, Nine, or more Leaves, and some again lye wholly open, with Green Leaves, growing close under the Cup of the Flower; and some few now and then may be found composed of a great many little Leaves, thick thrust together, making a very double Flower: after the Flowers are fallen come such hairy Heads, as you see in the Figure, and in other Plants of this Kind, among which lies the Seed.



IV. 2. *Avens with a large double purple Flower*. Tho' some make this to be a different Kind from the last, yet doubtless it is not, but is one of the sportings of Nature, wherein she acts variously in one and the same Plant; and therefore the Description of the last may fully serve for this, there being in truth no variation but in the Flower, as we have in the former, above, already declared.

V. 3. *Mountain Avens with Germander Leaves*. It has a long, thick, hard, woody Root, with many Sprigs or Strings growing from it, and spreading under ground, of a brown blackish colour; from whence spring up several hard, woody Stalks, eight or nine Inches long, spread upon the Earth, of a brown, reddish colour, which have Leaves growing upon them without any order, like to Germander Leaves, but lesser, harder, more wrinkled, and saw-like indented on the edges, of a White Honey colour below or underneath, and of a blackish Green colour above, having an Astringent Taste. The Flowers are White, and each Flower stands upon a slender hairy Foot-stalk, about three or four Inches long, twice as big as a Strawberry Flower, and consisting of six Leaves apiece, or more, in the middle of which is a Thrummy Head, of a small hairy substance, which being fallen, there succeeds little Dow-



ny or Feathered Heads, not much unlike to those of the Pasque-flower, with an oblong Seed, of a Sad Red Colour. And the bottoms of the Flowers are sustained, as it were, with narrow oblong hairy Leaves.

VI. 4. Cinquefoil Avens. It has a Root composed of many tough Strings, of a brownish Colour, and smelling somewhat like to the former Kinds, from whence rises up Leaves divided into five parts like unto Cinquefoil, dented about the edges, and having Stalks about a Foot high, having such like Leaves thereon, at the Joints where it branches forth: at the tops whereof stand Pale Yellow Flowers, like those of the Common Avens, but smaller, with many Yellow Threads, somewhat Downy in the middle.

VII. 5. Mountain Avens of Virginia. This is wholly like to the Purple Avens, first described in this Chapter, but it is taller and larger than that, almost in every respect, and scarcely differing in any thing else; and it yields flat, thin, blackish Seed in Husk.

VIII. 6. Mountain Avens, with great yellow Flowers. This has a thick, long, brownish round Root, of the bigness of ones Finger, creeping under the upper Crust of the Earth, not altogether so stringy as the Common, described in Chap. 41. Sect. 3. aforegoing, but having some small Fibres shooting downwards in several places, and Smelling and Tasting like to Cloves, or those of the first Common sort; from whence comes forth divers winged Leaves, made of many small Leaves towards the bottom, standing on both sides of the Rib, the end Leaves being largest and whole, not divided, but somewhat deeply dented, or cut in on the edges, of a fresher green colour likewise, softer also and gentler in handling, than those of the Common Kind: from among which rise up slender Stalks, seldom branched, having very few Leaves thereon, at the Tops whereof stands usually one Flower apiece, and sometimes more, made for the most part like those of the Common sort, consisting of five or six Leaves, much larger than those, and of a deeper Yellow Colour, and sometimes with a White Flower, as Camerarius in horto says, tending to redness, having many Yellow Threads in the middle, compassing a Green Head, which when the Flower is past, increases to be a round Head, beset with flat Seeds, not so rough, or ready to stick to ones Cloths, but every one of them having a long Feather-like Hair or Thread at the end. The whole Plant, as well Leaves as Flowers and Seed, are covered with a small soft hairy Down, which is not much, or easie to be discerned, unless one takes good notice thereof, or heeds it very well.

IX. The Places. The first of these are found by Water Sides in Wet or Marsh Grounds on the Mountains; in Northern Mountainous Places in England, as about Settle and Ingleton, &c. also in Wales, about Snowden Hill, &c. and in divers other places. The second has been found near Strickland magnum in Westmorland. The third is found in several of the Alpine Mountains; and in Ireland, on the Mountains between Gort and Galloway. The fourth was found by Pena on the Rhetian Alps near Clatena, who at first took it to be a kind of Cinquefoil, but by the Smell and Taste, found it to be Avens: it has been found in the Den of Bethaick in Scotland. The fifth grows in Virginia, Carolina, and other parts of Florida, and is only nourished up with us in Gardens. The sixth is found upon divers Mountains, as on Coronos in Bohemia, by the Springs of the River Albs, as Matthiolus says, and upon Mount Baldus, as Pena says, and in many other places. Bauhinus found it in Mount Braulium of the Rhetians; and Clusius on the Ridges of the Highest Alps, not every where, but amongst Grass and Shrubs; but with us it is chiefly nourished up in Gardens.

X. The Times. They Flower from the beginning of May, to the end of July; and their Seed is ripe in August, or not long after.

XI. The Qualities. These are all generally of a Nature, and have the same Qualities and Virtues. They are hot and dry in the second Degree: They incide, attenuate, open, cleanse, discuss, resolve, expel Wind; are Astringent, Vulnerary, and resist Poison: and are appropriated to the Head, Nerves, Heart, Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Womb, and Joints.

XII. The Specification. They have a peculiar property in curing Wounds and Ulcers, opening all sorts of Obstructions, drying up Catarrhs, and stopping preternatural Fluxes of the Bowels.

XIII. The Preparations. The Shops keep nothing of them; but you may have from their Roots, (which are chiefly in use) 1. A Powder of the Root, 2. A Decoction. 3. A Wine. 4. A Juice. 5. An Essence. 6. A Spirituous Tincture. 7. A Saline Tincture. 8. An Oily Tincture. 9. An Ointment. 10. A Balsam. 11. A Cataplasma. 12. A mixture for callous Ulcers.

#### The Virtues.

XIV. The Virtues of all these Mountain Avens, are the same with those of the Common Avens, and are applied to all the same Diseases, and differ in nothing but the degree of their strength, force, or efficacy; for that these Wild or Mountain Avens, are much stronger than the Common Kinds, and operate more powerfully, speedily and effectually than they can possibly do: and therefore, the Virtues and Uses of the several Preparations aforenamed, are the same with those of the Common Avens before declared in Chap. 41. Sect. 10. to Sect. 21. to which you are referred.

### C H A P. XLIII.

#### Of Common B A R L E Y.

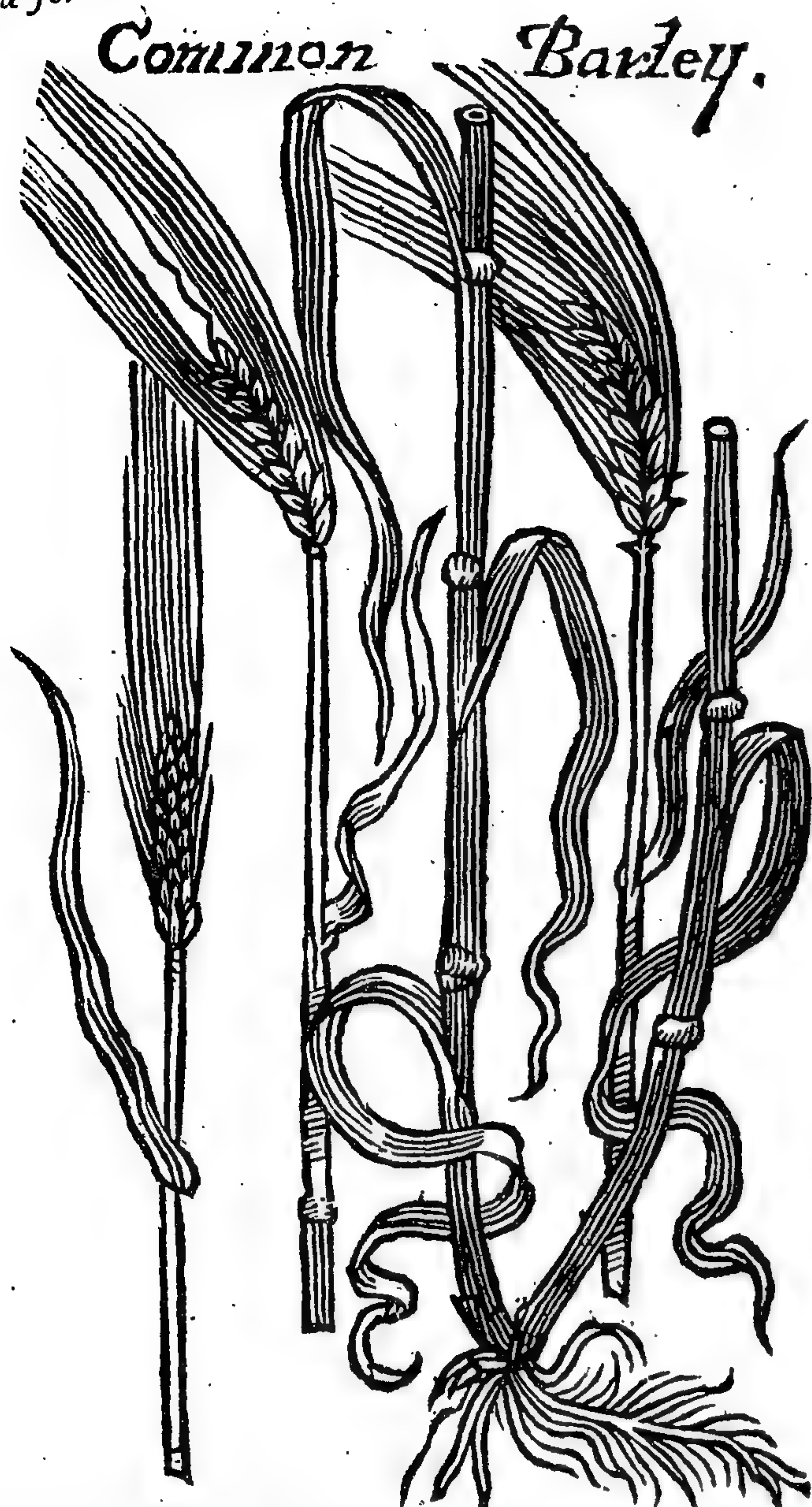
I. THE Names. It is called in Hebrew שְׂעוּרָה, Segnorah, Job 31. 4. and Joel 1. 11. &c. In Arabick, Xabaer, Shair: In Greek, Κριθή: in Latin, Hordeum: and in English, Barley.

II. The Kinds. It is either Manured or Wild, of which latter in the next Chapter. The Manured is, Hordeum Distichum, Common Barley. 2. Hordeum Distichum latius, Bear or Battledore Barley. 3. Hordeum Polydichon, Square Barley, or Winter Barley. 4. Γυμνὸν, Galeni, Ζέβρον, Hordeum nudum, Zeopyrum, Tritico Speltum, Naked Barley.

III. The Descriptions. The first has a Grassy Root, with many small Fibres or Strings, from whence rises up several Grassy Leaves and Stalks, sometimes more, sometimes less; which are shorter and softer than those of Wheat, and the Grassy Leaves are also shorter, broader and rougher, and the Stalks rise up to be 12, 14, 16, or 18 Inches high, according to the goodness of the Ground: at the Tops whereof comes forth Ears, having two rows of Corn, set in good order, each inclosed in a Husk, sticking close to the Grain, and having a long rough Aune or Beard thereat, which is many times greater and longer than Wheat, and whiter also, not very easily falling out of the Ear. Cordus says, that this kind makes a recompence for the smallness of the Ear, by the number of the Stalks each Grain or Root produces; for, says



says he, I have numbred above sixty Stalks rising from the Root of one Corn, but usually twenty, thirty, and for ty.



IV. The second Kind is like the other in all respects, excepting in the Ear, which is indeed much broader, (tho' it has but two rows, as the former) for that the Grains lye more straight out, not so much sloping upwards, and withal they are something larger, but the Awnes or Beard, not full out so long.



V. The third Kind. This is also altogether like the other Kinds in the Root, Stalk, Leaf and Grain, but differs only in the Ear, this always having four Rows of Grains, whereas the others have but two: Some Authors will have it, that this kind has sometimes six Rows of Grains on the Ear, called, Hordeum Hexastichum, or Cantherinum. But I am of Opinion it is of a different Kind from the four Rowed, or Square Barley; for that this is lesser, and without doubt is that small kind which is brought to us out of Germany, and sold in our Grocers Shops, called Pearl Barley: There is also a sort of large hull'd Barley, called French Barley, which is only our common English Barley hull'd, and is called French, because it was first of all hull'd in France.

VI. The fourth Kind. The Root is Grassy, with many Fibres or Strings at it, whence rises up Stalks, like to the Common Barley, or rather like unto Spelt, save that the Ears are rounder; but it has not so many Stalks rising from the Root, as the Common Barley has; it has many rows of Corns in the Ears, which are inclosed in the Husks, but have not that hard or harsh Skin or Husk upon them, which the Common Barley has, with long, rough Awnes or Beards at their ends; and the Grains or Corns are more lank, small, yellow, and short, and naked, without Husks, growing almost like Wheat, the which in its yellowish Colour it somewhat resembles.

VII. The Places. The first or our Common Barley, is sown in all the Southern parts of the Kingdom: the second is sown in the North parts only: the third is reasonably frequent in our Land. The last is sown in several places of Germany, for the same uses as the other Barley is; this is rare with us, yet it is sown in our Gardens, where it flourishes very well.

VIII. The Times. Barley is sown with us in March, especially the two first kinds: the Square or Winter Barley, is said to be sown before Winter; but all sorts of Barley (even the Winter Barley) are sown with us in England in March or April, and are ripe or fit for cutting in August following, or beginning of September at farthest.

IX. The Qualities. They are cooling and drying in the first Degree. They are gently Repercussive, Absterfive, Diuretick, and Anodyne, appropriated to the Lungs and Reins; also Antifebricitick and Galactogenetick, or breeding Milk.

X. The Specification. They are peculiar for allaying the heat of Blood in Fevers, to help Pissing Blood, and sharpness of Urine, being caused thro' the Application of Vesicatories, by an unskilful hand.

XI. The Preparations. You may have from the Grain, 1. Malt. 2. Beer. 3. Ale. 4. A Spirit. 5. Prolenta. 6. Maza. 7. Ptisan. 8. Yest. 9. Faces or Bottoms of Ale or Beer. 10. A Balsam. 11. The Meal or Flower. 12. Bread. 13. Cream. 14. Barley Water. 15. A Cataplasm. 16. A Mixture. 17. A Fulep. 18. A Bath. 19. An Emplaster. 20. A Distilled Water from the green Plant, whilst the Grain is yet green, or not fully ripe. 21. Brewers Grains.

## The Virtues.

XII. The Malt. This is called in Greek, Βύνη, by Ætius: in Latin, Byne, and Maltum; which is a made Latin Word, from the German Word Maltz, or our English Word Malt, which is Barley prepared for Brewing Ale or Beer; the manner of which Preparation is thus: Take a Quantity of Barley, as much as you please, put it into Cisterns made for that purpose, which you may fill full with the Barley, then affuse so much Water thereon as may cover it, and there let the Grain soak for two or three Days



and Nights, till it is well sweln; then drain the Water from it by a Cock or Pipe below; which done, the swelled Barley is to be taken out of the Cisterns, and spread equally, or of an equal thickness, upon the Floor of a Malting House, about half a Foot thick, or more, and according as the Air is cold, it is covered with Cloths, or not covered, and is to lye till it begins to sprout, ready as it were to grow, which will be performed in two or three days, if the Weather is warm, or not very cold; otherwise it may lye longer: before it grows hot, which it is apt to do, it is to be turned with Shovels for that purpose, two or three times a Day for a Week or ten Days together, to cool it, and dry it: When it is thus dried, it is put upon a Malt Kiln, and there it is thoroughly dried by the help of Fire, made either of Straw, Furzes or Wood, to cause it to have the sweeter Relish or Taste: If it is dried with Faggots or Wood, the Malt will taste Bitterish from the Smoak, and will easily be perceived in the Drink, which will taste Bitter: If it is dried with Furzes, or other light stuff, it will taste less Bitter; but the only choice Malt is that which is dried with Straw, for that is truly Sweet, and makes the only pleasant Drink. Malt being grossly Ground is made into Beer and Ale, as we shall in the next place shew. Ground Malt Fried, and applied in a Bag, as hot as can be endured to the Sides or Belly, gives ease in Pains proceeding from Stitches, Colick, or Gripings caused through Cold or Wind: Made into a Pulvis, it is good to assuage Inflammations, or other like Tumors or Swellings.

XIII. Beer. This is called in Greek, *ζυθος*: in Latin, *Zythum*, *Cerevisia Lupulata*; and in English, Beer. It is made by Infusion of Ground Malt, and a due Quantity of Hops in a sufficient Quantity of Boiling Water in a proper Fat or Vessel, so long till the whole Virtue and Goodness is Extracted out of both Malt and Hops; then this Liquor is drawn off: Now lest any goodness should yet be left in the remaining Malt, another Quantity of Boiling Liquor is put thereon, and so stirred well together, and kept in Infusion till the remaining Sweetness is Extracted into the Liquor: These two Liquors (or more, if you think needful to make them) which are called Worts, viz. the Stronger and the Smaller Worts, are put together, and being mixed, are put into Coolers, to bring them to a just Heat, or rather Warmth, to make them fit for a succeeding Fermentation: Being thus only brought to a Warmth, the Liquor is put into the Working Fat; and to cause or facilitate the Fermentation or Working, a proportional Quantity of Ferment or Yest is added, and mixt with it, and the Working is continued so long till both Taste and Smell give a Demonstration, that the Nature of the Liquor is changed, and turned from a dull, heavy, sweet Taste, to a kind of a Vinous Activity and Flavor. I know our Common Brewers Boil their Worts, and it is their Opinion, that the Beer or Ale will not keep without such Boiling; but Experience has long since refuted the Error or Vanity of such Conceptions: 'tis only the Liquors being strong of the Malt, which makes the Ale or Beer keep; if it is weak in that, boil it as long as you will, it will soon grow Small, Hard, and Soure, nor can you prevent it, do what you can: and if it is very strong of the Malt (and not too much fermented) tho' the Worts were never Boiled at all, yet will the Drink keep several Years Good, and grow neither Soure, nor Hard, as your Drink made of Boiled Worts does; and of this I am a particular and faithful Witness: See more Arguments against the Boiling of Worts in my *Seplasmum*, or *Druggists Shop*, lib. 8. cap. 7. sect. 26. where you may receive abundant Satisfaction, almost next to Demonstration.

XIV. Ale. This was called in Greek by *Dioscorides*, *Κῆραι*, & *Κῆραια*: In Latin, *Curmi*, (from the Greek,) also *Cerevisia*, *Cervisia*, & *Cervisia non lupulata*, or *Drink not Hopt*, now called Ale. It is made of Malt exactly as Beer is made, without any difference, except in the Hopping, which is here wanting. But of late, in the Summer Time, the Brewers put in a small quantity of Hops, to make the Ale keep the better, which is the property of the Hops, confirmed to us by Experience. Ale without doubt is the most Ancient Drink of our Land; But it has lost much of its Reputation since Beer came into Fashion or Use; because the Hops make it more durable without fowering, and less fullsome and more wholesome. However, whether it is Ale or Beer that is drunk, that is the best and more wholesome which is recent or new, than that which is hard or stale, the former being cleansing, and keeping the Body open and more Soluble; whereas the stale is Astringent, and stopping, causing heart-burnings in many, and breeding Acid Humors, and laying the Foundation of an Acid Ferment.

XV. The Spirit. It is drawn from Beer or Ale grown very hard, prickt, or almost sower. It may be drawn in a Copper Vesica, with its Serpentine or Worm, with a gentle Fire, drawing off two thirds of the Liquor: or it may be mixt with double the quantity of fair Water, and one third part or better may be drawn off with a strong Fire, so will it have less of an *Empyreuma*: this Spirit thus drawn off must be rectified, by mixing it with an equal quantity of Water, and drawing off the one half: and by repeating this Work several times, you will so purely wash, and perfectly cleanse the Spirit, that all its *Empyreuma* and ill scent will be taken totally from it: This being done, you may either keep it in its present condition, of the Strength of Common Brandy, for common and ordinary Uses: or you may Deflegmate it by reiterated Distillations *per se*, either in a Copper Vesica tin'd within with its Worm, drawing off only the fine Spirit, leaving the Flegm behind; or you may Distill it in a Glas Body or Bolt Head in *Balneo Mariae*, or a very gentle Sand heat, which will cause the subtil Spirit only to Ascend, leaving the Watry parts below; and this Work is so often to be repeated, till the Spirit is become purely fine, and free from Flegm, strong enough to fire Gunpowder. This Work will the better be done, if a proportional quantity of Common or Bay Salt, or Pot-Ashes be cast into the Spirit: for the Salt dissolving in the Flegm, will keep it down or make it stay behind, and cause the Liquor to yield its Spirit with much more ease and freedom, and more pure from Flegm and *Empyreuma*. As to its Virtues and Uses, it has the same Nature, Quality, and Use with the Spirit of Wine, and performs all the same things, in making Tinctures, Cordial Water, Elixirs, Powers, Volatile Spirits, Baths, &c. and therefore to that you are referred.

XVI. Polenta. This the Ancients made variously: *Pliny lib. 18. chap. 7.* says that the Greeks made it of Green Barly taken out of the Ear before it was fully ripe, steeped in Water, then beaten in a Mortar, after washed in Baskets, to free it from the Husks, so dried in the Sun, and afterwards steeped and beaten again, till it was thoroughly cleansed, which being dried was ground small: of this they took xx. pounds, and added thereto, Lin-seed, Coriander-seed of each j. pound: Salt ij. ounces: these last things well beaten together were mixed with the Barly, and and so prepared for use. II. Other Grecians, says *Pliny*, Made it of Barly steeped for a Night in Water, and Husked by beating in a Mortar, after dried, and so parched or fried it the next day, and then ground it to Meal, to make Bread, Cakes, Puddings



or Broath of. III. The Italians Made it of Parched Barly, without any moistning, ground small; to xx. pounds of which they added Millet-seed in Pouder iij. pounds: Coriander-seed, Lin-seed, well beaten of each j. pound, Salt ij. ounces and a half, and then mixt them all together. IV. Galen Commends it to be Made of Fresh Barly not full out ripe or hardned, and before the Beard was white, or quite dry, and then indifferently parched, and reduced to Flower, adding nothing else to it. Many Nations used this Polenta instead of Bread; and the Cypriots tho' they had Wheat growing with them, yet mostly eat this. It dries and astringes more than Barly it self, binding the Belly and stopping fluxes, being drunk with Alicant, or red Wine: drunk with Water, it quenches thirst, and allays Inflammations of the Throat or Lungs. It was often eaten mixed with new Wine, or boiled up with Wine, and so eaten, as every one liked best.

XVII. Maza. This is only Polenta, or the Flower of Parched Barly, moistned with some kind of Liquor, as every one liked best: some with Water, some with Water and Oil Olive, some with sweet Wine, some with Wine and Oil, and some mixed it with Honey, as Hesychius, Hippocrates and Galen declare: but Galen says that Maza, is hard of Digestion, and generates Wind: if it is well moistned with Water, sweet Wine, or Oil, and Honey also is added to it, it the sooner passes off.

XVIII. Ptisana. The Ancients made it of several sorts of Grain, not of Barly only, but of Wheat, Rice, Oats, Pease, Lentils. But Ptisan, simply considered, is always understood to be made of Husked Barly only. Hippocrates his way of making of it is thus, Take the best Barly, steep it in Water four Hours or more, then put it into a coarse Bag, and beat it with a Mallet or wooden Pestle till the Husks come off which take away by washing, dry it in the Sun, and keep it for use. Take of this hulled Barly what you please, and boile it in a sufficient quantity of Water till it breaks, and that the liquor is thick like Cream: this liquor is the Ptisan, which ought to be moderately liquid. This has no Astringtion, nor troubles the Stomach or Bowels, nor swells or fills them with Wind, for the Windy part is vanished by boiling: it clogs not the Brest or Stomach, but by its Lubricity it easily digests and passes off, and quenches Thirst by its moistning quality; and for these properties sake, it is profitable both for sick and well: Thus Hippocrates and Galen. But Dioscorides further adds, That this Ptisan by reason of its being boiled, yields more nourishment than Polenta, is good against Exulcerations, and to help the hoarseness and Roughness of the Throat. This was the Ptisan of the Ancients: but the Physicians in our Times make it thus, Take hulled Barly, commonly called French Barly; boil it in Water till it be soft or broken, then beat it in a Mortar, and strain it, to which add blanched Almonds, Melon and Citrul Seeds, beaten to a Pulp, and then mixt together. This is their usual Ptisan, or Barly Milk. Ptisan Drink is thus made, Take hulled Barley, boil it in a first Water, and then in a second Water, but something less than in the former Recipe, strain away the Water from the Barly, and to iij. quarts of this Water, add Raisins of the Sun stoned iv. ounces, Blew Currants ij. ounces, Liquorice bruised j. ounce, sweet Fennel seeds iij. drams, Coriander seeds j. dram and half, Maiden Hair a handful; boil again a quarter of an Hour, or better, then strain out for ordinary Drink. It is good against Coughs, Colds, Hoarseness, shortness of Breath, difficulty of Breathing, obstructions of the Lungs, costiveness of the Bowells, and also for weak and Consumptive Bodies.

XIX. The Yest. It is the Superficial Fæculency of the Drink, raised therefrom in Working; and Yest begets Yest, hastning on and more speedily perfecting the Fermentation of the Liquor, which is a separating of the Flowery or Mealy Particles of the Malt from the Wort, and the stirring up an innate and latent Acid into act, to give the Drink a pleasant sort of briskness or Quickness, enlivening it with a Subtil and kind of Vinous Spirit. This Yest by Distillation yields a Vinous Spirit, of equal Virtues with the Spirit of Wine: and Bakers use Ale Yest insteap of Leaven, to make their Bread light; which would otherwise be sad: but Physically it is chiefly of External use. Being immediately apply'd in Burns and Scalds, it presently takes out the Fire, and eases the smarting Pain, making the affect more easy and yielding to other Medicaments. Apply'd to Phlegmons, and other like Tumors, it helps to discuss and resolve them, unless they be Apostemated; and then it hastens the suppuration of the Apostem or Tumor, and alleviates the pain. Being boiled to a Salve or Emplastick body, and apply'd, it strengthens a weak Back, and weak Joints, eases Pain in those or other parts; and is discussive and resolute.

XX. The Facies or bottoms of the Barels, called by some, Emptyings. They yield a Spirit by distillation like the Yest, which may be rectified to the like degree of Subtilty and purity; and may serve for all the same intentions the other will serve for, whether Chymical or Pharmaceutical: And the Facies or Bottoms themselves are good to be outwardly applyed in all the same cases, and to all the same Diseases for which we have prescribed the Yest in the former Section to be applyed. But this is not so good for the Fermentation of Worts, as Yest is, because it will scarcely work at all and if it does it is so meanly and weakly that it makes rather a Flat and Insipid or dead kind of Liquor, than any thing which has briskness and Life: But it may be renewed, by adding a little sower Leaven to it, dissolved in a little of strong or sweet Wort, mixing them well together, ad digesting them in a warm place, for some little time.

XXI. The Balsam. It is made of strong Ale, by gently boiling it so long till it becomes thick like Chio Turpentine, and will spread on Leather like a Salve, or soft Cerote. This being apply'd warm to the Neck or Throat troubled with the Kings Evil, or Kernels, or other hard Swellings, gives much ease and either discusses or resolves them: it is good to resolve contracted Sinews and Tendons, comfort and strengthen weak Nerves and Joints, and is an excellent thing for weakness and pain in the Back, and to apply it to any part or Member which is hurt by spraining, falls, blows, or other the like Accidents.

XXII. The Meal or Flower. The Ancients of old, made of it Bread, 2. Kings 4. 42. John 6. 9; and 13. They made also Cakes of it, Judges 7. 13. Ezek. 4. 12. And so they have done almost in all Nations, and in most parts of this Kingdom, within these three or fourscore years last past; they made also of it a kind of boiled Bread or Puddings; and fried Bread or Pancakes; but now in our days Wheat being so plentiful with us, Barly is wholly disused, unless amongst the poorest of the People. The Turks at this day make a kind of Drink of the Meal or Flower which they call Chausset: Thus, they take the Meal or Flower which they make into Paste, and boil it in a great Caldron; after which it is made into small balls: these balls being cast into the Water, it will presently boile up of it self, and grow hot, without the help of any Fire, and become by working a kind of thick Drink. It is of a whitish Color, thick, of a good nourishment,

fumes



tumes into the Head, and causes Drunkenness if it is too largely taken; and this kind of *Drink*, says *Petrus Bellonius*, is usually sold in all the Cities of *Asia*, in the Tap Houses appointed for it, and generally with them called *Chausset*. In the *Levant*, and other the *Eastern parts* of the World *Barly* is yet more eaten, and made more into *Bread* than *Wheat*, I suppose because it is more cooling, and preventive of Fevers; it is also cheaper for the poor and ordinary sort of People: it nourishes much less than *Wheat*, but the Grain being Maulted, makes a more excellent *Drink*, clearer, thinner, purer, more stomatick and Diuretick.

XXIII. The Bread. *It is made of the Flower with a proportional quantity of Water and Salt; to every bushel of which Flower, a four Leaven, as big as a Mans fist doubled, or a Pint of Ale Yest, is added, being dissolved in the warm Water, with which the Paste or Dough is made: this being mixed with one part of the Flower, is covered with the other, and left in digestion for an hour or two, that the whole may be Leavened; then the Paste or Dough is made by mingling all well together, and kneading it with the hands, till it becomes a stiff Paste; which then is suffered to ly again about half an hour, and then made up into Loaves, which are after baked in an Oven.* This Bread is proper to be eaten whilest new, agreeing then most with the Stomach, and nourishing best. Apply'd to the place where the Pain is, in a Vele-Head-ach, as soon as it comes out of the Oven, or as hot as the Patient can indure it, it gives present ease; and in a few times Application, cures it.

XXIV. The Cream. *It is made of hull'd Barley, boiled in a first Water and cast away, then boiled in a second Water, till the Grain bursts, and is perfectly soft: which is then beaten well in a Mortar, and mixed in the Water in which it is boiled, and strained through a Cheese Cloth: then Melon seeds blanched are beaten to a Pulp, and mixed with Milk, and strained till all the oily and moist part of the seeds are taken forth: This Milk is sweetned with double Refined Sugar, and mixed with the former strainings of the Barley; so you have Barley Cream.* Some at Eating mix with it a little Damask Rose Water and Juice of Limons. This ordinarily taken is good against hot burning Fevers, and such as are weak, faint and feeble, labouring under Hecticks, and Consumptions, for it cools preternatural heats, and restores much. Without the Juice of Limons, it is good against sharpness of Urine, and such as make a Bloody Water.

XXV. Barley Water. *It is made of hull'd Barley, boiled in a first Water, and that cast away, and then boiled in a second Water, half a pound of Barley to a Gallon of Water, adding also an ounce and half of burnt Hartshorn, boiling them so long till the Barly is breaking: then the Water is strained from the other things, and made pleasant with the Juice of Limons, and double Refined Sugar.* This is used as ordinary Drink for such as are in Burning or Malign Fevers, Hectick Fevers, Consumptions, or any other ways disturbed with heat; it cools, admirably quenches Thirst, and prevails against Diseases of the Lungs.

XXVI. The Cataplasme. 1. *Take Barley Flower xij. ounces, Meal of Fleawort seeds iij. ounces, Honey, Oil of Lillies, of each ij. ounces, Water a sufficient quantity, mix and boil it to the consistence of a Pul-tise.* This apply'd warm cures Tumors under the Ears, in the Neck and Throat, and other the like places. 2. *Take Barley Meal or Flower, xvj. ounces, Powders of Fennugreek seed, Lin seed and Rue, of each iij. ounces, Flowers of Melilot and Camomile chop'd small of each ij. ounces, boile all in sweet Wine to a thickness.* This apply'd warm, discusses Infla-

mations, expels Wind out of the Bowels, and eases Pains of the sides, Stomach, and Spleen. 3. *Take Barly Flower xij. ounces, Powder of Pomgranat peels and Myrtle Berries, of each iij. ounces, Red Wine, a sufficient quantity, mix, and boile to a Consistency:* apply'd to the Belly, it is said to stop the Loosness, or other Fluxes of the Belly. 4. *Take Barley Flower xvj. ounces, sharp Wine Vinegar, a sufficient quantity, mix and boile to the thickness of a Cataplasme.* It is good against Scurff, Dandriff, or Morpew in the Head or any other part, being laid on hot, and as Authors say helps the Leprosy. 5. *Take Barley Flower xvj. ounces, white Salt and Honey, of each iij. ounces, white Wine Vinegar a sufficient quantity, mix and make a Cataplasme.* Apply'd it is said certainly to cure the Itch.

XXVII. The Mixture. *Take Barley Water xij. ounces, Sirup of Corn Poppies iij. ounces, Tincture of the same Flowers made with Spirit of Wine ij. ounces, mix them.* Dose iij ounces twice or thrice a day; with this I have cured several Plurifies. But *Tho. Bartholinus, Germ. Ephem. An. 2. obs. 2.* Professes to cure Vehement Plurifies with Barley Water alone.

XXVIII. The Julep. *Take hull'd Barley iij. ounces, boil it in a first Water, which cast away; boil it again in iij. quarts more of Water, Liquorice bruised, Strawberry Leaves, Violet Leaves, of each ij. handfulls, boile till a quart or three pints is consumed, then strain out, and dulcifie it with iv. ounces of Sirup of Violets:* It provokes Urine, and is very good in Cholerick Fevers. 2. *Take hull'd Barley viij. ounces, boil it in Water, which cast away; and boile it again in iij. quarts more of Water, adding Fennel seeds bruised, (towards the end of the boiling) iij. ounces, boil till the Barley breaks, then strain out, and sweeten with white Sugar Candy.* It breeds Milk in Nurfes plentifully, cools the heat and sharpness of Urine, and helps Pissing Blood, especially if it is caused by the Application of Vesicatories, or Blistering Plaisters. It is good against Coughs, Colds, Wheezings, Hoarsness Asthma's, &c.

XXIX. The Bath. *Take Leaves of Mallows, Violets, Beets, Fumitory, Black Hellebor, of each iij. handfulls, Barley iv. pound, boil them in a sufficient quantity of Water for a Bath, till the Barley breaks; the Grain is to be boiled a considerable time first, and then the Herbs to be put in towards the end of the boiling.* It is a very effectual thing against Scurff, Morpew, Leprosie, Scabs, Itch, and other breakings out, being often used.

XXX. The Emplaster. *Take Barley Flower ij. pounds, Tar j. pound, Wax half a pound, Oil Olive a sufficient quantity, mix and boil to the consistence of a Cerote, or soft Emplaster.* It is said to cure hard Swellings of the Throat and other places called the Kings Evil. Apply'd also, it is an admirable thing to cure the Gout.

XXXI. The Distilled Water from the green Barly, and the whole Plant. *It is Distilled in the end of May, and is good to cool Inflamed Eyes, and for such as have Defluxions upon them, to stay the Humors, and to ease the Pain, being often dropped into them; white Bread being also dipt therein, and apply'd upon them, does the same.*

XXXII. The Grains, which are left after Brewing. *Tho they are generally used as Food or Meat for Horses, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, and Fowls; yet they have some Physical Virtues also: for they are beneficial in curing Lameness in the Hands, Arms, Legs or Feet, caused through Cold, or evil Humors, being fallen into them, as also shrinkings of the Sinews, Cramps, and pains in the Nerves or Joynts, if a Bathing-Tub or Barrel be filled with them whilest*



whilest they are hot, or if cold, heated again as hot as may possibly be suffered; and the Patient sit therein, so as to cover those parts, that they may gently sweat, as long as he can well endure it without Fainting: this I say, if it is done three or four times, or more if need requires it, will both abate the Swelling and ease the Pain; also restore the Nerves, Joints, and Limbs, to their pristine health and strength.

### C H A P. XLIV. Of Wild BARLEY.



**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek, *Κεῖθν ἀγρεῖα*: In Latin, *Hordeum agreste*: In English, *Wild Barley*.

**II. The Kinds.** There are several Kinds thereof, 1. *Ζέα καὶ Ζέα Μονόκοκκος*, and by Lobel, *Bryza Monococcus*; Wild or Brant Barley, Peters Corn. 2. *Αἰγίλωψ*, *Ægilops*, *Festuca*; Degenerate Barley, or *Havergrafs*. 3. *Κεῖθν νόθν Ὀλκός*, (*ἀπὸ τῆ ἑλκυν, ἢ τραβendo, quod aristas ē corpore trahat*): *Hordeum spurium*, *murinum*, vel *spontaneum*, *Ristida*; Way Barley, Wall Barley, which last is also said to be greater and lesser.

**III. The Descriptions.** *Zea*, or *Bryza*, has a small Fibrous or Stringy Root, from whence rises up slender and short Stalks, but firm, bearing a small, thin Spiked Ear, set with Grains or Corn in two rows, one Corn on each side opposite to the other, from the bottom of the Ear to the top, whereby the Ear is flat, like unto Barley, with rough Awnes or a Beard, as Barley also has; every Grain is contained singly in a husk, which sticks to it, so as not easily to be gotten off; the Ear much resembles Barley, and the Colour of the Grain, is a dark Red: it makes blackish or dark brown Bread, and not altogether so pleasant as our Common Barley.

**IV. Ægilops**, (which in my opinion ought rather to be called *Monococcus*) has a Root which from a small Head sends forth many Fibres or Strings, from whence springs forth Stalks 2. or 3. handfuls high,

resembling Wheat or Barley, jointed in three or four places, from whence comes forth divers Grass Leaves, of a pale green colour, and at the top of the Stalks two or three Heads, set one above another, which are round and somewhat long, hard and striped, having also many Beards at the end of each, wherein, when they are ripe and look whitish, lye 2. or 3. small Grains or Seeds a little smaller (says Gerard) than Barley: these Seeds are wrapped or infolded in a Crested Film or Skin, out of which the Awnes come forth; Matthioli says, that as *Lolium*, or Common Darnel is known to be a Seed degenerate from Wheat, being found for the most part among Wheat: So by his own experimental knowledg, he had found that this *Ægilops* or *Festuca*, was a Seed or Grain, degenerating from Barley, and is found among Barley, or where Barley has grown.



**V. The greater Way Barley, or Wall Barley**, has a Fibrous or Thready Root, continuing many Years, from whence springs up many Grassy Leaves, and among them several Benty Stalks about 16. or 18. Inches high, at the top of which grows several whitish yellowish Ears, with somewhat rough Beards, but much shorter than those of Barley, and some have scarcely any Beards at all. The Ear is much more like that of Rye than Barley, and the Corn, or Grains which come out of it are brown Coloured, lank and small, in Color and shape resembling Rye, so that it might more properly be called Wild-Rye, Way-Rye, or Rye-Grass, rather than by any Appellation of Barley, to which in my opinion it has no resemblance.

**VI. The lesser Way or Wall Barley**, is like the other in its Roots, Leaves, Stalks, Ears and Grains, so that many have taken it to be the same with the former, but in this it differs, that it is much lower, so that it scarcely attains to be a Foot high; and indeed it comes so near to the former Barley, or rather Rye-Grass, that many have taken it to be one and the same, as even I my self also do.

**VII. The Places.** The first was anciently sown in Greece, and the Eastern Countries; now it is Sown in some parts of Germany and France, but with us



it is chiefly found in *Gardens*, tho it grows well and naturally enough here as other Grains do. *Gerard* says, that he had often times found many Ears of it among our ordinary *Barley*, when he lived in the farther side of *Lincoln-shire*, and they there called it *Brant Barley*. The second is Sown in many places of *Italy* and *France*, as in *Provence* and *Narbone*, among their Corn, and grows well in a moist Ground, but prospers most in a more Fruitful dry Soil: *Gerard* says, it grows commonly among their *Barley* in *Italy*, and other hot Countries; but only with us in *Gardens*. The third and fourth, by the High-ways, and Path-sides, as also on Mud Walls, and at the Foot of other Walls, and Way-sides in Fields, almost every where through the whole Kingdom.



VIII. *The Times.* the first is a *Summer Corn*, and Sown in *March* and *April*, and is ripe in the beginning or middle of *August*. The second also is a *Summer Grain*, and is ripe towards the latter end of *July*, or the beginning of *August*. The two last are found coming to ripeness all the *Summer Months*.

IX. *The Qualities.* They are all of them temperate in respect to heat or coldness; and dry in the first Degree. The first and second Attenuate, digest and cleanse: and the two last are aperitive, absterfive, and Vulnerary; and are all appropriated to Diseases of the Joynts.

X. *The Specification.* They have a peculiar property to cleanse and dry up Ulcers, and resolve Tumors in the Joynts. The *Ægilops* is said to be a Specifick against the *Ægilops* or *Fistula* in the Corner of the Eye.

XI. *The Preparations.* The first Kind has much the Nature and Virtues of *Common Barley*, and therefore may have most of those Preparations, so that we shall say no more of them here. From the *Ægilops* or *Festuca*, you may have, 1. *An Infusion of the Seed in Drink or Wine.* 2. *A Decoction in Wine.* 3. *A Syrup of the whole Plant.* 4. *A Powder of the Seed or Grain.* 5. *A Juice.* 6. *Ashes of the Stalks.* And from the *Way Barley* or *Rye-Grass* you have, 7. *A Cataplasm.*

#### The Virtues.

XII. *The Infusion in Ale, Beer, or Wine.* The Seed Infused, or Drunk in Powder in any of these Liquors, affects the Head and Brain much, and causes Drunkenness.

XIII. *The Decoction in Wine.* If it is made with the Addition of dried *Damask Roses*, and drunk from ij. to iv. ounces; as also the Mouth and Throat, Gargled therewith; it is good against a stinking Breath, I suppose caused by some filthy Ulcer or Ulcers in those parts, for that it has a property to heal Ulcers.

XIV. *The Syrup.* If the whole Herb, Roots, and Seed be bruised, boiled in Water, strained, and made into Syrup with Honey, to viij. ounces, of which if j. of *Aloes Succotrina* in fine Powder be added, you have an excellent Medicine against foul Ulcers of the Nostrils, by wetting Tents therein, and putting them up the same, holding them a pretty while therein, and often repeating it.

XV. *The Powder.* Mixed with Watter in which a little *Roch Alum*, or *Saccharum Saturni* has been dissolved, and laid upon the *Ægilops* or *Fistula* in the Corner of the Eye; it cures it; it also cleanses, dries up and heals Ulcers in other parts of the body, being so used, or strewed on dry.

XVI. *The Juice.* It is mixed with *Barley Meal* and so dried: and then upon occasion moistned with *Rose Water*, and apply'd Plaister wise, it heals (as *Gerard* says) the *Ægilops*, or *Fistula* in the Eyes: it also softens and asswages hard Tumors, and swellings in the Joints. *Lobel* says, this has been often tried to be effectual against the *Ægilops*, for that it has a drying quality without sharpness.

XVII. *The Ashes of the Stalks or Straw.* Made into a *Lixivium* with Water, it is good against the Gout from a flegmatick cause, by often bathing there with, and to dissolve hard Tumors or Swellings in the Flesh, and discuss Tumors of the Joints.

XVIII. *The Cataplasm of Way Barley or Rye Grass.* Being made of the Green Ears and Grass by beating it in a Morter, and then apply'd to places bald, or where the Hair is wanting; *Gerard* says, it causes it to come forth and grow again.

## CHAP. XLV.

### OF BARREN-WORT.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in the Greek, *Ἐπιμήδιον*: In Latin, *Epimedium*; *Epipetron*, *Epimenidium*: In English, *Barren-wort*.

II. *The Kinds.* It seems to be a singular Plant of the Kind, without any Species, tho *Parkinson* talks of an *Alterum fruticosum*, &c.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root small and reddish, spreading much under ground, in shaddowy rather than Sunny places; from whence springs up several hard round Stalks, twenty or twenty four Inches high, each Stalk divided for the most part into three Branches, and each of them bearing three Leaves apiece, which are several, somewhat broad and round, yet pointed at the ends, hard or dry in feeling, and a little sharply dented about the edges, of a light green Colour on the upper side, and whiter underneath: from the middle of some of the Stalks of Leaves, shoots forth with them, from the first rising up of them, a small long Foot Stalk of Flowers, not much higher than the Stalks of Leaves, divided into Branches, containing on each of them, three Flowers apiece,



apiece, separated into four parts, as if the Flower consisted but of four Leaves, when as each part has two leaves, one lying close upon another, the inner being yellow, and smaller than the lower which are red, so that the red edge appears round about the yellow, making it seem a yellow Flower of four Leaves with red edges, having also a few yellow Threads in the middle, set with green, the under side of the Flowers being of a yellowish red Colour, striped with white lines. Gerard says, the Flower is but small consisting of four Leaves, whose outsides are purple, the edges of the innerside red, the bottom yellow, the middle part of a bright red Colour, and the whole Flower somewhat hollow. The Flower being past, small long Pods or Cods appear much like to Saracens Confound, but shorter, in which is contained flattish red seed. It is a pretty shrubby Plant, and its smell is rather strong than pleasant.

## Barren Wort.



IV. The Places. It grows on the Mountains of Liguria, and in most Meadows in Italy, about Bononia and Vicentia; also in Romania, and on the Euganean Hills. It grows with us in Gardens only, in moist and shadowy places, where it brings forth its Seed to perfection, tho' Dioscorides and Pliny say, that it is without either Flower or Seed.

V. The Times. It Flowers at its first coming forth, or first Year of its growth from June till the middle of August: but after it has taken fast hold, and well Rooted it self in the Earth, a Year before, it then Flowers in April and May.

VI. The Qualities. Galen affirms it to be moderately cold and moist: I judge it to be cold and moist in the first Degree: it is Repercussive and Discutient, and appropriated to the Joints.

VII. The Specification. Parkinson says, it is without any special property, more than to keep Womens Breasts from growing over great.

VIII. The Preparations. By reason much of the Virtues of this Plant is not known, there are not many Preparations from the same: the chief being,  
1. A Juice. 2. A Powder of the Roots and Leaves.  
3. A Cataplasim.

## The Virtues.

IX. The Juice. Whether it is taken out of the Roots or Leaves, it is good to cool Inflammations; and is profitable to bath with in an Erysipilas.

X. The Powder. It may be made of the Roots or Leaves, for of either the Virtue is the same, tho if made of the Root it is thought to be stronger; Parkinson says it is reported, that being taken inwardly for some time, it makes Women Barren: from whence possibly the Name might come.

XI. The Cataplasim. The Leaves made into a Pultise, by beating them up with Oil, and applied to Womens Breasts, keeps them from growing great; and is good to Discuss a slight Contusion.

## CHAP. XLVI.

### Of Common BASIL.

I. THE Names. It is called by the Arabians, Bedarog, Berendaros: in Greek, *ὄκκινον* & *Βασίλικον*: in Latin, *Ocimum*, *Basilicum*, *Regium*: in English, Basil.

II. The Kinds. The general Kinds are, 1. Garden. 2. Wild. The Garden Basil is, 1. The Common Great, *Ocimum Vulgatum*. 2. The small or Rush Basil, *Ocimum Vulgare minus*. 3. Anisated Basil, *Ocimum Anisatum*, of which in this Chapter. 4. Basil Gentle, or Clove Basil, *Ocimum Caryophyllatum*. 5. Citron Basil, *Ocimum Citratum*, of which in the next Chapter. 6. *Ocimum Americanum maculatum*, Spotted American Basil. 7. *Ocimum Americanum Crispum non maculatum*, Crisped American Basil not spotted, of which two in Chap. 48. The Wild Basil is either Stone or Field, of which in their proper Places in Chap. 49. and 50.



III. The Descriptions. The Common Great Basil, has a Thready and Fibrous Root which perishes

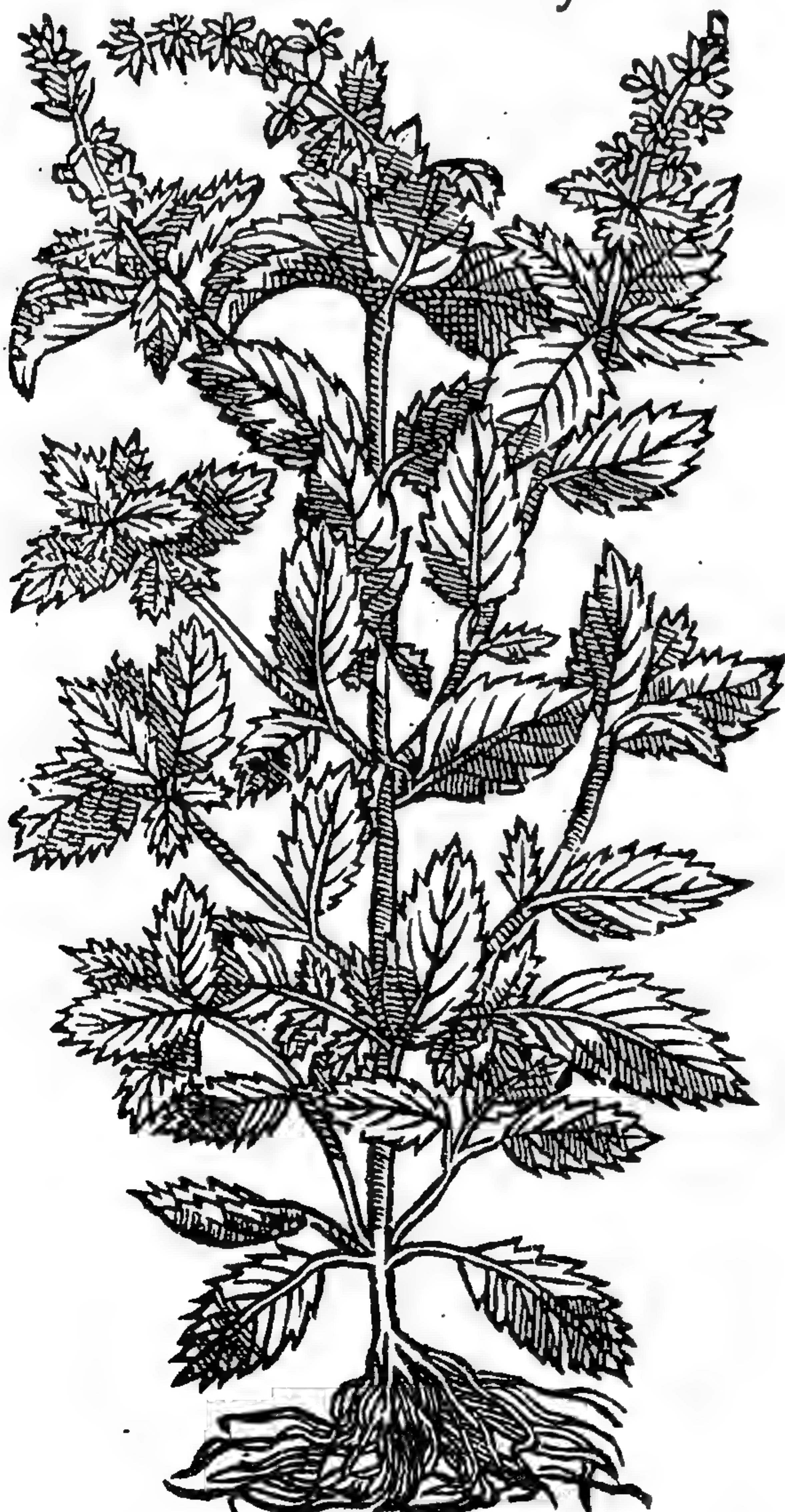


at the first approach of Winter, and therefore is to be sown a new every Year if you will have it; from whence rises up usually but one upright Stalk nearly a foot high, variously branching forth it self on all sides, whereon, at every Joint, are set two Leaves, broad, thick, and fat, a little pointed, of a pleasant sweet smell, of a fresh green Colour, and a little snipt about the edges; of which some one here and there, are of a black reddish hue: towards the upper part of the Stalk and Branches come forth a number of small whitish Flowers, which many times tend to a dark purple, with two small Leaves at the Joint, in some places green, in others brown; after the Flowers come small black Seed.

IV. The Small Bush Basil, has a Fibrous perishing Root much like the former, from whence rises up small tender Stalks, which grow not so high as the former, but is thicker spread with Branches, and smaller Leaves thereon, and set closer together; these Leaves are little, less than those of Pennyroyal, and the whole Plant is low, and fine or small, growing into a kind of diminutive Bush, whence the Name of Bush Basil; and is of a more pleasing sweet sent than the former by much: the Flowers are small and white, and the Seed black like the other, when it yields Seed with us, which is more seldom, it not often yielding ripe Seed here, because it neither Springs, Flowers, nor Seeds so early as the others. Parkinson adds another middle Kind something larger than this both in the height of the Bush, and magnitude of the Leaves, but not otherwise differing; which to me seems to be one and the same Herb, but differing according to the goodness of the Soil,

V. The Anisated Basil, Is truly of the self same Kind with our ordinary Garden Basil but of a middle size between the Common Great and Bush Basil, and differs nothing in its Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Flowers, nor Seed, but a little in the magnitude, and something in the smell, which is like the smell of Aniseeds.

Common-Basil Anisated.



VI. The Places. Whence these Herbs first came, is unknown to us, but in Italy, France, Spain and England, they are only nourished up in Gardens.

VII. The Times. They Flower in the heat of Summer as in June and July, by little and little, whereby they are long a Flowering, beginning at the top first, and so Flowering as 'twere downwards.

VIII. The Qualities. They are hot and moist in the second Degree: They incide, attenuate, open, discuss, resolve, concoct, digest, and are carminative and anodyn; being Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomack, Pectoral, Cardiack, Nephritick, and Uterine: also Emmenagogick, and Alexipharmick.

IX. The Specification. Schroder says, it is a peculiar thing to cleanse the Lungs, and provoke the Courses in Women.

X. The Preparations. The Shops make use of, 1. The Leaves. 2. The Seed. 3. And Distill therefrom a Water. But you may farther prepare, 4. A Juice. 5. An Essence. 6. A Spirituous Tincture. 7. A Saline Tincture. 8. An Oily Tincture. 9. A Decoction in Wine. 10. A Syrup. 11. An Oil. 12. A Cataplasm.

#### The Virtues.

XI. The Leaves. Their smell comforts the Brain (whatever some Authors say to the contrary) and were eaten in Galen's time (I suppose as a Sallet,) being corrected with Oil and Vinegar. Some Authors will have it that they dry up Milk in Womens Breasts, which in my opinion is against their proper Nature, being hot and moist, and therefore more apt to breed Milk.

XII. The Seed. Being made into a fine Pouder, it may be given from half a dram to j. dram, in Wine, against the Palpitation or Trembling of the Heart, to cheer and comfort the same, and expel Melancholly, or sadness of Mind: It is good also against Poyson and the Stinging of Scorpions.

XIII. The Distilled Water from the whole Plant. It is good to clear the Eye-sight, and to be used as a Vehicle for the other Preparations.

XIV. The Juice. If it is put into the Eyes, it takes away their Dimness, and dries up Humors which fall into them; snuff up the Nostrills it causeth Sneezing, and so Purges the Brain: given to j. ounce in a Glas of Generous Canary morning and evening, it provokes Venery, or Lust, and is good for such as are troubled with Heart Qualms, or Swooning Fits, or stoppage of their Terms.

XV. The Essence. It much exceeds the Juice for Inward uses, being corrected, and made more Pure or fine, as being freed from its gross and faculent parts. It has the Virtues of the Juice, besides which it is an excellent Stomack, Cardiack, and Pectoral, freeing the Lungs from the Tartarous Matter which obstructs them, and causing thereby a free respiration, and therefore is profitable against Coughs, Colds, Asthma's, and other like Distempers of the Lungs. Dose from j. ounce to ij. ounces in Wine, or Syrup, or some other Pectoral Vehicle, morning and evening.

XVI. The Spirituous Tincture. It is Stomack and Cardiack, resists Poison, and is good against the stinging of Scorpions, or bitings of other Venomous beasts: prevails against Fainting and Swooning Fits, Sicknes at Heart, and is good for such as are troubled with Lethargies, Carus and Apoplexies, and other Cold Diseases of the Head, Brain and Nerves. Dose ij drams or more, in the Distilled Water.

XVII. The Saline Tincture. It is powerful against Diseases of the Reins, opening their obstructions, and removing the Tartarous and Viscous Matter which affects them. It provokes Urine, expels Sand, Gravel, Slime and Stones out of the Reins and Urinary Passages. It provokes the Terms in Women, and facilitates



cilitates the Delivery of such as are in Labor, bringing away both Birth and After-birth. Dose from j. to iij. drams in a Glas of White Wine. It is good against the Stinging of Scorpions, and Hornets, biting of mad Dogs and other Venomous Creatures, as also against the Jaundice and Dropsie, carrying off the Morbifick Cause by Urine.

XVIII. *The Oily Tincture.* It is singular against the Stone, Sand, Gravel, obstructions of Urine, as also the Yellow Jaundice, Coughs, Colds, Hoarseness, and the like, being taken in the Syrup of the same Herb, from iv. to xij. or xvj. drops: it prevails also against Palsies, Convulsions, Lethargies, Apoplexies, &c. and outwardly anointed it is good against the bitings of mad Dogs, and Pricks, Punctures, or Wounds of the Nerves.

XIX. *The Decoction in Wine.* Given from iv. to viij. ounces, it is good against Poyson, the stinging and biting of Venomous Creatures, Faintings, Swoonings, fits of the Mother; provokes the Terms, expels both Birth, and After-birth, as also Sand and Gravel from the Reins and Bladder, and is good against all cold Diseases of the Head, Brain, Nerves, Womb, and Bowels.

XX. *The Syrup of the Juice.* It is an admirable Pectoral, good against Coughs, Colds, Asthma's, shortness of Breath, Hoarseness, &c. causing expectoration, and making the Brest and Lungs easy. Dose ij. ounces either alone, or mixt with Alicant, Tent, or Malaga.

XXI. *The Oil.* It is made by Boiling the Juice or Bruised Herb with Oil of Mirtles or Roses and Vinegar. Being anointed with, it prevails against Pains of the Head and Nerves, Lethargies, Palsies and other cold Diseases of those Parts; and eases pains of the ears being dropt into them.

XXII. *The Cataplasme.* It is Discussive and Resolutive, good against the beginnings of Phlegmons, or Inflammations in any part of the Body: it is also good to take away black and blew spots of the Skin, discuss Contusions, and ease pain proceeding from any cold Cause.

like those of the ordinary Common Basil, and the Seed Black also, like those of the former.



*Citron Basil*

V. The Greater Clove Basil: Its Root is like the former, and perishes in like manner, being one of the Great Kind of Basils, and not differing from the former, either in stalks, branches, growing, or largeness of the Leaves, or colour of the Flowers, except that sometimes they are a little purplish; but in the Smell of the whole Plant, it has a stronger and a quicker Scent, much like the smell of Cloves, for which reason it is called Caryophyllatum.



*Basil largest clove scented*

K a

VI. The

## C H A P. XLVII.

### Of Citron and Clove B A S I L.

I. **T**HE Names. The first of these is called in Greek, "Οκίμιν" "πτερον": in Latin, *Ocimum*, vel *Basilicum alterum*, *Ocimum Citratum*: in English, *Citron Basil*.

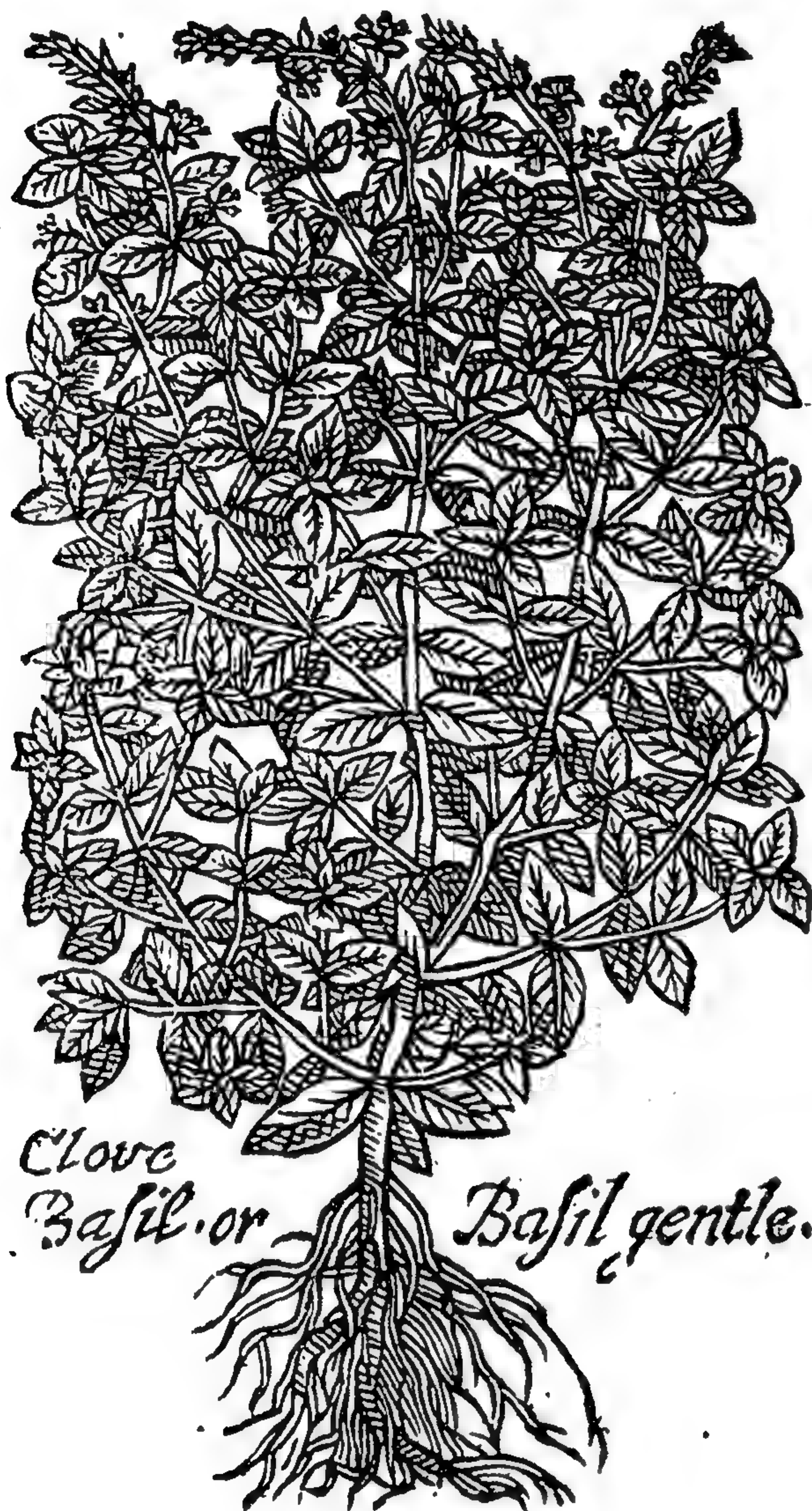
II. The second of these is called, "Οκίμιν" "χ" "Βασίλιν" "κόν" "μικρότερον": in Latin, *Ocimum* vel *Basilicum Caryophyllatum*: and in English, *Clove Basil*, or *Basil Gentle*.

III. The Kinds. The first or *Citron Basil*, is the Greatest Basil, and is singular. The *Clove Basil* is, 1. *Ocimum Caryophyllatum majus*, the Greater Clove Basil. 2. *Ocimum vel Basilicum caryophyllatum minus*, the Lesser Clove Basil.

IV. The Descriptions. *Citron Basil*: It has a pretty thick Root, with many Strings, which perishes after Seeding time, or upon the approach of Winter; from whence grows up one upright Stalk, spreading it self into many Branches, not much unlike to the Common Garden Kind, with Leaves set by couples at the Joints, but much larger, and of a reddish Colour in the hotter Countries, but not so in our colder, a little dented about the edges, of a very pleasing Smell, much resembling that of a Citron Peel, and therefore called *Citratum*; the Flowers are White,



VI. The Lesser Clove Basil : It has a pretty long, woody Root, with many Fibres thereat, from whence rises one Upright Stalk, which admirably spreads it self forth in Arms and Branches, looking very much like to a bush, and not very much unlike Mother of Time, both in the form of its growing, and the shape and magnitude of its Leaves, which grow more dispersedly upon the Branches ; the Flowers grow at the Tops of the Branches, after the manner of those of Basil, of a White Colour, but bending somewhat more backwards. The smell is the strongest and most fragrant of all the Basils, and smells perfectly like Cloves, from whence it is also called Caryophyllatum, and this is the true Basil Gentle. An Exact Figure hereof you have in Dalechampius Hist. Plantarum, lib. 5. cap. 51. fig. 5. pag. 681.



Clove Basil or Basil gentle.

VII. The Places. They grow in the Eastern Regions, and hot Countries, where they are more odoriferous, than in our Northern Climes : but now they grow in all the Northern Nations in Gardens, where they flourish well, and yield their Seed in perfection, but their fragrant Scent is not altogether so strong.

VIII. The Times. They Flower gradually during the hottest Summer Months, as all June, July, and some part of August, Flowering at the Top first ; and then is gradually Ripe not long after.

IX. The Qualities. These are hot in the second Degree, and moist in the first Degree : Inciding, Attenuating, Opening, Digestive, Resolutive ; Carminative and Anodyn. And appropriated to the Head, Nerves, Stomach, Breast, Lungs, Heart, Reins and Womb : they are also Emmenagogick, and resist Poison.

X. The Specification. They comfort the Nerves, prevail against Palsies, cleanse the Lungs of Tartarous Matter, and provoke the Terms.

XI. The Preparations. You may prepare therefrom, 1. A Powder from the Seed. 2. A Distilled Water from the whole Plant. 3. A Juice. 4. An Essence. 5. A Spirituous Tincture. 6. A Saline Tincture. 7. An Oily Tincture. 8. A Decoction in Wine. 9. A Syrup. 10. An Oil. 11. A Cataplasme.

#### The Virtues.

XII. All these Plants have the same Virtues with those in the former Chapter, and therefore the Preparations have the same, for which, and their particular Uses we shall refer you thither.

### C H A P. XLVIII.

#### Of American B A S I L.

I. **T**HE Names. This was wholly unknown to the Greeks, and therefore can have no Original Greek Name, but considering it is an Indian Plant, may well enough be called, *Ὠκίμον ἢ Βασιλικὸν Ἰνδικόν* : in Latin, *Ocimum Americanum vel Indicum* : and by Camerarius, *Basilicum Hispanicum* : in English, *American Basil*.

II. The Kinds. It is twofold, 1. *Ocimum Americanum maculatum læve*, smooth, spotted American Basil. 2. *Ocimum Americanum crispum non maculatum*, crisped American Basil, not spotted.



American Basil

III. The Descriptions. The smooth spotted American Basil, has a Root like those in the former Chapters, which perishes after Seeding time ; from whence rises up a four square reddish green Stalk, a Foot high, or better, from the Joints whereof spread out many Branches, with broad fat Leaves set thereon, two always at a Joint, one against another, as the Basils have, but somewhat deeply cut in on the edges, and sometimes a little crumpled, standing upon long reddish Foot-stalks, of a dark purple colour, spotted with deeper purple spots, in some greater, in others less ; the Flowers stand at the Top of the Stalks, Spike-fashion, of a White Colour, with Reddish Stripes and Veins running through them ; set or placed in dark



dark purple coloured Husks : The Seed is greater and rounder than any of the former Kinds, and somewhat long withal : the whole Plant smells strong like to the common or ordinary Basil and Camphire put together.

IV. The Crisped or Curled American Basil, not spotted : It has a Root like the foregoing, being a degenerate of the other kind, risen ( as Parkinson supposes ) from the Seed of the former Plant, gathered in these colder Countries ; and is indeed of the Kind of the American spotted Basil, having like Stalks, and such like large Leaves, cut somewhat deeply in on the edges, and curled or crumpled, as they also sometimes are, together with swelling bunches like Bladders in them, but wholly of a green colour, and without any spots, or spot upon them : the Flowers hereof are all white, and without any spots as the other has : the smell hereof is very strong, and perfectly resembling the former.

V. The Places. They Originally grew in America, from whence they were brought into Spain, and from thence to us, being nourished up in our Gardens ; the latter of which seems now to be a Native of our own Countrey.

VI. The Times. They Flower gradually in June and July, as the others do ; and their Seed is ripe in August.

VII. The Qualities. They are hot in the second Degree, and moist in the first ; highly Cephalick, Neurotick, Cardiack and Hyfterick ; they Attenuate, Open, Resolve, Discuss ; are Carminative, Anodyne, Alexipharmick, and Emmenagogick.

VIII. The Specification. I have found them peculiar against Palfies, and Pains and Aches proceeding from a cold Cause.

IX. The Preparations. You have, 1. A Pouder from the Seed. 2. A Distilled Water. 3. A Juice. 4. An Essence. 5. A Spirituous Tincture. 6. A Saline Tincture. 7. An Oily Tincture. 8. A Decoction. 9. A Syrup. 10. An Oil. 11. A Cataplasm : the Virtues and Uses of which, are the same with the same Preparations in Chap. 46. Sect. 12. to Sect. 22. aforegoing. 12. A Distilled Oil. 13. The Powers.

## The Virtues.

X. The Distilled Oil. It cures Head-aches, Megrims, Lethargies, Apoplexies, Epilepsies, Palfies, Convulsions, Tremblings, and weakness of the Nerves, Obstructions of the Womb, Reins and Bladder, Punctures and Wounds of the Nerves, and all sorts of Pains, Aches, Sciatica, and Lameness from a cold Cause, being taken inwardly from iv. drops to xij. in some proper Vehicle ; and outwardly anointing the part affected therewith. It expels Wind, and cures the Colick.

XI. The Potestates or Powers. They have all the former Virtues, but penetrate more, as being more Subtil or Volatile : They provoke the Terms in Women, ease Pains and Stitches in the Side, are good against Fits of the Mother, and Vapors, cheer the Heart, revive the Spirits, resist Poison, and remove Melancholly, strengthening the Stomach, and all the Viscera. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams, in a Glas of Wine, or some other proper Vehicle.

## C H A P. XLIX.

### Of Stone B A S I L.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἀκινός* & *Ἀκινός* : in Latin, *Acinus* and *Acinos* by Lobel and Dalechampius : *Clinopodium Vulgare*, by Matthioli : *Clinopodium majus*, by Camerarius : *Botanica Pauli*, by Guilandinus : *Pulegium montanum*, by Lonicerus ; *Polycnemon*, by Gesner ; and *Clinopodium Origano simile*, by Bauhin : in English, Stone Basil, and Great Wild Basil.

II. The Kinds. This is properly the first and chiefest of the Wild Basils ; and is twofold. 1. *Acinus major*, the greater Stone Basil. 2. *Acinus minor*, the lesser Stone Basil.

#### Stone Basil Greater.



III. The Descriptions. The Greater Stone Basil has a bushy Root, of many Strings set together at, and depending from one Head, which shoot forth sockets round about : from this Root springs forth several hard, four square, hairy or hoary Stalks, a foot, or foot and half high, or more, set with two hairy green Leaves at each Joint, being covered also as the Stalks are with a hairy Down, somewhat larger than any of the other Wild Basils, coming near unto the bigness and fashion of the Leaves of Origanum : the Flowers grow in Rundles, or round the Stalk, in greater plenty than in the Wild Basils of the following Chapter, and of a purplish colour, but sometimes white, the Husks of which are somewhat larger and rougher.

IV. The Lesser Stone Basil, has like Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Flowers and Husks, and differs not any thing from the former, save that the Stalks are lower, the Leaves lesser, and the Husks of the Flowers smaller ; in a word, it is of the same Kind, but the whole Plant is every way less.

V. The



V. *The Places.* Gerard says they grow plentifully in *Autumn*, almost by every Hedge : *Parkinson* says, they are found sometimes in Corn Fields in *England*, but more often in open Woods and Copfes which have been filled, and that almost through all our Countrey ; more especially if they are stony places.

VI. *The Times.* They Flower in the latter end of *May*, all *June* and *July*, and the Seed is gradually ripe in *July* and *August*.

VII. *The Qualities.* They are hot and dry in the first Degree : Discussive, Astringent, and Vulnerary ; and dedicated to the Womb.

VIII. *The Specification.* They are peculiar for stopping Fluxes, and the Terms in Women ; more especially for Fluxes of Blood.

IX. *The Preparations.* You have from them, 1. *A Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 4. *An Oily Tincture.* 5. *A Decoction.* 6. *A Balsam.* 7. *A Cataplasm.*

#### The Virtues.

X. *The Juice.* Given from j. ounce to ij. ounces, it strengthens the Stomach and Bowels ; and bathed upon an Inflammation it asswages it.

XI. *The Essence.* This is more Stomack than the former, and given inwardly, stops all sorts of Fluxes, whether of Humors or Blood, as also the Terms in Women. Dose from j. to iij. ounces, in some proper Vehicle.

XII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* This has all the Virtues of the former, and is good to take inwardly, to heal Wounds and Ulcers, from j. dram to half an ounce, in a Decoction of the same Herb ; 'tis an excellent Vulnerary.

XIII. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against Pains and Aches from a cold and moist Cause, gives ease in the Gout, and heals Wounds, Punctures, or other hurts of the Nerves, by anointing therewith Morning and Evening.

XIV. *The Decoction in Wine.* By fomenting therewith, it Discusses hot Tumors and Inflammations ; used as an Injection into foul, foetid, and hollow Ulcers, it cleanses them : and daily drunk from iv. to viij. ounces, it stops the overflowing of the Terms in Women, the Bloody Flux, and other Fluxes of the Belly.

XV. *The Balsam.* It is an excellent Vulnerary, cures Wounds by the first intention ; and digests and cleanses, old, foul, rotten, and filthy Ulcers with great facility, after which it incarnates, or fills the Ulcer with Flesh, and presently heals it up.

XVI. *The Cataplasm.* It is made of the Herb chopt small, beaten in a Mortar, and boiled in Milk, and brought to the thickness of a Pultise, with Yolks of Eggs, and Crumbs of Bread. It is Discussive, Resolutive, and Anodine, and of singular good use to be applied to a recent Contusion, or a Gout from a cold Cause.

## CHAP. L. Of Wild BASIL.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *Greek*, *Κλινωπώδιον* ( *quasi* Lectipes, *Bedsfoot Flower*, because they resemble the Beds feet : ) in *Latin*, *Ocimum Sylvestre*, *Basilicon Agreste*, *Clinopodium* : and in *English*, *Wild*, or *Field Basil*, *Beds-foot Flower*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three several Kinds hereof, 1. *Clinopodium Vulgare*, *Clinopodium minus*, ( because less than the Stone Basil. ) *Ocimum Sylve-*

*stre*, by *Lobel* and *Clusius* ; *Acinos* and *Ocimastrum*, by *Fuchsius* and *Dodonæus* ; *Clinopodium*, by *Anguilara* and *Turner* ; *Clinopodium majus*, by *Camerarius* ; *Pulegium Patraum*, by *Gesner* ; *Clinopodium Alterum*, and *Pseudo-Clinopodium*, by *Matthiolum* ; *Clinopodium Arvense Ocimi facie*, by *Bauhinus* ; and *Basilicum Tertium*, by *Tragus* ; in *English*, *Field Basil* ; but the People call this as well as the next following, where they grow, *Horse Time*, and *Poley-mountain*. 2. *Acinos Anglica Clusij*, ( which is thought to be, by *Clusius*, the true *Acinos* of *Dioscorides* ; ) *Clinopodium Ocimi facie alterum* of *Bauhinus* ; our *English Wild Basil* the lesser. 3. *Acinos odoratissimum*, *Latifolia Columnæ*, *Broad Leaved* sweet Scented Wild Basil.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first has a Woody Fibrous Root, full of hairy Threads, creeping along the Ground, and springing up yearly of it self without Sowing ; from whence rises up several square Stalks, about six or eight Inches high, with two small Leaves set at every Joint, being somewhat like Wild Marjoram, or the fine bush Basil, a little dented about the edges, but not much, and some Leaves not at all dented ; and in some Plants and Places a little rough and hairy, and in others, less, or not at all : the Flowers grow at spaces with the Leaves, like as Horehound does, standing in green rough Cups, which are of a purplish Colour, and parted, as it were, into four equal short pieces at the end, like to the four square foot of a Bedstead, and open with several Leaves like other hooded Flowers ; the Cups of the Flowers have not every one of them a single Footstalk, but many stand together upon the same Pedicle or Stem ; after which comes small round reddish Seed, growing three or four together in small swollen Husks. The whole Plant, has some small heat, but more dryness in the Taste thereof, and sweet or odoriferous in Smell between Basil and Calamint.

IV. The second Kind has also a Bushy, Fibrous Root, which perishes every Year, from whence rises up several slender four square Branches or Stalks, seven or eight Inches high, lying on the Ground, on which



which grow divers small grayish green Leaves, two always set together at a Joint, resembling much the former, or those of the Stone Basil, but smaller, shorter, and fuller of Juice, not dented about the edges at all, and almost like to Mother of Time, or the smaller Garden Basil, called Basil Gentle, having an excellent sweet Scent, but not Heady: from the middle of the Branches up to the Tops, grow the Flowers in Rundles or Spaces about the Stalks, being very like to the former just now described, but of a more blewish purple colour, with a White Eye, or Circle in every Flower, which being past, there comes three or four small Seeds, like the first in the Husks where the Flowers stood, which fall and rise again every Year of their own Sowing.



Wild Basil  
the Lesser.

V. The third Kind has a bushy Root with many Fibrous Strings like the former, from whence rises up four, five, or more, four square hard Woody Stalks, divided into many Branches, covered with a soft white hairyness, two foot long, or longer, not growing upright, but trailing in some measure upon the Ground: the Leaves grow upon short Foot-stalks, by couples, of a light green colour, somewhat like the Leaves of Basil, or rather Bawm, about three quarters of an Inch broad, and not fully an Inch long, a little sharp pointed, and lightly notched about the edges, covered also with a light soft hoariness, of a very sweet smell, not much inferiour to Garden Marjoram, of a hot biting Taste: out of their Bosoms grow other smaller Leaves, or else Branches: the Flowers also grow out of the Bosoms of the Leaves, towards the Tops of the Stalks and Branches, not in Whorls or Rounds, like Acinos, or Stone Basil, but having one little short Foot-stalk, on which is placed three, four, or more, small Flowers, gaping open, and divided into four unequal parts at the top, like the Flowers of Basil, and very near of the likeness and bigness of the Flowers of Garden Marjoram, but of a pale blewish colour, tending towards a purple, after which come the Seed Vessels, which contain small roundish blackish Seed.



Field Basil or Wild Basil.

VI. The Places. The first grows commonly in the borders of Fields, and among Corn it self, as at Sutton in Kent, not far from Dartmouth; at Thetford in Norfolk, and in divers other Dry, Sandy, and Untilled Grounds. The second grows Wild in Kent in divers places, where Clusius says he found it, also in several other parts of England; Gerard says he found it a little on this side Pomfract in Yorkshire, and since by Dartford in Kent, and in the Isle of Thanet: he says it is brought to our London Markets, and is called by the Herb Women Polymountain. The third grows Wild in hot Countreys, but with us in Gardens, and is often found amongst Sweet Marjoram.

VII. The Times. The two first Flower in June and July gradually, and their Seed is ripe in July and August: The third Flowers in July and August, and its seed is ripe in August and September.

VIII. The Qualities. They are all of a nature, hot and dry in the end of the second, or beginning of the third Degree: they are also, Attenuating, Inciding, Opening, Carminative, Discussive, Resolutive, Vulnerary and Anodine; Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomack, Cardiack, Hysterick, and Arthritick; and powerful Alexipharmicks and Emmenagogicks.

IX. The Specification. The Field Basil has been experimented against Convulsions, Cramps, and Neurotick Distempers. Acinos or English Wild Basil is approved for Stopping Fluxes: and the Broad Leav'd sweet Scented Wild Basil is good to facilitate the delivery.

X. The Preparations. The Shops keep nothing of them; but you may prepare, 1. An Inspissate Juice of the Acinos. 2. A Spirit from the first and third. 3. A Spirituous Tincture. 4. An Oily Tincture. 5. A Saline Tincture. 6. A Balsam or Oil of the first.

#### The Virtues.

XI. An Inspissate Juice of the Acinos. Being given to a dram in Red Wine, it stops all sorts of Fluxes of the Belly, and Fluxes of the Terms; and dissolved,



dissolved, and mixed with Lard into an Ointment it dissolves hot Tumors.

XII. *The Spirit from the first and third.* It is singular good against Convulsion-fits, Megrim, Vertigo, Lerhargy, and other cold and moist Diseases of the Head, Brain, Nerves, and Womb: outwardly bathed upon places troubled with the Cramp, it cures them. Dose from j. dram to ij. in Wine or Ale.

XIII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* If made of the first or third, it warms, comforts, and strengthens the Stomach, causes a good Appetite, and is good against the sickness thereof. Dose ij. drams, more or less in Wine, Ale, or Posset-Drink.

XIV. *The Oily Tincture.* Taken to half a dram in any fit Vehicle, it prevails against the Stone and Stoppage of Urine: outwardly anointed upon places pained from any Cold Cause, it eases the Pain, warms and comforts the Part, and restores it to its due strength.

XV. *The Saline Tincture.* It opens Obstructions of the *Viscera*, and being made of the third Kind, it provokes the Terms, and expels the Dead Child, and After birth. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams in Wine.

XVI. *The Balsam or Oil of the first.* It is good against Convulsions, Cramps, Ruptures, Strangury, Stinging and Bitings of Venomous Beasts, and other Diseases of like kind, being anointed upon the Part afflicted, Morning and Evening.

## CHAP. LI.

### BALSAM-APPLE Male.



I. **T**HE Names. It was unknown to the Greeks: The Latins call it *Balsamina*, which name it took from its sanative or healing properties. Some call it *Viticella*, from its Vine-like appear-

ance: Cordus calls it *Cucumis puniceus*: Gesner, *Balsamina pomifera*: Lobel, *Balsamina Cucumerina punicea*: Some, *Pomum Hierosolymitanum*: and we in English, the *Male Balsam Apple*. It is thought by some to be that which Pliny speaks of, lib. 20. cap. 3. which the Greeks call *Cucurbita Somphos*; but this is disputable.

II. *The Kinds.* Of the *Balsamina* there are three principal kinds. 1. *Balsamina Mas*, which is that we treat of in this Chapter, and is called by all the names foregoing: as also *Balsamina* by *Matthiolus*: *Balsamina prima* by *Fuchsius* and *Anguila*: *Charantia* by *Dodonaus* and *Lonicerus*: *Balsamina Mas* by *Gerard* and *Parkinson*: *Momordica* by *Caster*: *Momordica fructu luteo rubescente*, in *Horto Eyst.* 2. *Balsamina femina*, of which in the next Chapter. 3. *Balsamina lutea*, *sive noli me Tangere*, which is called *Herba Impatiens*; in English, *Coddled Ar-smart*.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root which is small and stringy, creeping a good way within the Earth: it springs up with divers slender reddish Stalks and Branches, shooting forth many clasping tendrils, much like to a Vine, by which it takes hold of any Pole, Twig, or other thing which stands near it; but without any such Supporters, it lies upon the ground, not being able to support it self, for which reason it is reckoned among the number of the Climbers, or a kind of Cucumer, in respect to the Flowers and Fruit. The Leaves grow from the Stalks, and stand upon Foot-stalks, being cut in on the edges, into several divisions, like to a Vine leaf, or those of white Bryony, but much smaller, tenderer, and more divided. The flowers are yellowish, like to those of the Cucumer, coming forth in the same manner at the Joints with the Leaves: after which comes the Fruit, which is somewhat long and round, pointed at both ends, and bunched on the out side in rows, the skin it self being smooth and very red, almost black when the Fruit is ripe, which has a reddish Pulp within: The Seed is manifold, rough, hard, flat, and reddish; but when dry, of a grayish black colour, something like unto Citrus, or Water Melon Seeds, both for the form and largeness.

IV. *The Places.* It is nursed up with us in Gardens, but the Seed came originally to us from Italy, and we yet generally make use of the Italian Seed.

V. *The Time.* It flowers late with us, and the whole Herb withers before the Fruit comes to ripeness; it being a tender Plant, and so not able to endure our early cold Nights, for which reason we have no ripe Seed here.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is almost cold in the first Degree, and dry in the second: It is Pectoral, Pulmonick, and Vulnerary, and purely an alterative.

VII. *The Specification.* It is a peculiar Specifick for the Curing of Wounds and Ulcers.

VIII. *The Preparations.* 1. A Powder of the Leaves. 2. A Decoction of the Plant. 3. The Impissate Juice. 4. A Spirituous Tincture. 5. An Oleaginous Tincture. 6. An Oil by Infusion in Oil Olive. 7. The Balsam.

#### The Virtues.

IX. *The Powder of the Leaves.* Given to j. dram Morning and Evening in Red Port Wine, it is said to be good against Ruptures or Burstennes; and applied, it heals Wounds.

X. *The Decoction in Wine, or Wine and Water.* Being drunk to five or six ounces, it gives ease in the Colick, helps the Gripings of the Bowels, and stops inward fluxes of the Blood, whether from the Stomach or Bowels; represses Vapors in Women, and what some call the Rising of the Lights.

XI. *The*



XI. *The Inspissate Juice.* Dissolved in a mixture of Red Wine and Water, it is a singular thing to heal internal wounds, and stop inward bleedings, and to repress the Fits of the Mother. Injected up the Womb two or three times a day, it stops the overflowing of the Terms, and the Whites in Women. If it be reduced to powder, and drank to one dram in Red Port Wine it heals inward Wounds, and outwardly being strewed upon any fresh green Wound, it heals it.

XII. *The Spiritous Tincture.* It heals inward Wounds, and gives ease in the Colick; and is found to be of excellent use in fainting and swooning Fits. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams in any proper Vehicle.

XIII. *The Oleaginous Tincture.* Given to j. dram, it opens obstructions of the Womb, and is good against Fits of the Mother. It also eases vehement pains in the Back and Reins, being given in a proper Vehicle twice a day.

XIV. *The Oil by Infusion in Oil Olive.* It is a most singular Vulnerary, not only for all sorts of external Wounds, but for inward Wounds also, being drunk (in some proper Vehicle) from ij. drams to four, twice or thrice a day. And as for all sorts of outward Wounds which are green or fresh, it dries them, consolidates their Lips, and heals them. It also dries up the moisture of inveterate or old Ulcers, which hinders them from healing, and disposes them to a speedy cure. Being applied with Lint, it is good against the Piles or Hemorrhoids; and being applied hot, it is effectual against Punctures of the Nerves. Some Authors say, that anointed on the Bellies of Women which are Barren, it causes them to be fruitful. It also cures burnings with Fire, or scaldings with Water, and eases the stinging of Bees, Wasps, Hornets, &c. and being anointed on the Marks, Scars, or blemishes of Wounds; it takes them away, or much abates them.

XV. *The Balsam.* If it is made of the former Oil, by addition of Venice Turpentine, or Balsam Capivi, and Bees Wax; it becomes a most singular Vulnerary, and in many respects more excellent than the simple Oil, and indeed is much more profitable for the healing of rotten running Sores, and old putrid Ulcers; applied to Cramps or Convulsions for some time, it helps the same, and is a singular thing to cleanse and heal Ulcers in Womens Breasts, and such as happen in the Secret Parts of Man or Woman.

by J. Baubin, *Noli me tangere*: by Tragus, *Mercurialis sylvestris altera*: by Dodoneus, *Impatiens Herba*; and by Columna, *Balsamita altera*.



*Balsamin female.*

III. *The Description:* The Female Balm Apple does much differ from the former: It has a Root dispersed into manifold Arms, from whence proceeds many small strings spreading under the Earth: The Stalks arise from the main stock of the Root, which are thick, fat, full of Juice, in substance like the stalks of Purslane, of a reddish colour, and somewhat shining. The Leaves are long and narrow, much like those of the Willow or Peach tree, a little toothed about the edges: among which come forth the Flowers, of an incarnate colour, tending to blewness, with a little tail or spur annexed thereto, like to Larks heels, of a faint, light crimson colour. These being gone, there comes up in their places the Fruit, or Apples, rough and hairy, round, and sharp at the point, and lesser than those of the Male, at first green, but afterwards yellowish when ripe, the which open of themselves when full ripe, and cast abroad their Seed, much like unto a Fetch, says Dodoneus; or like to Lentils, as other Authors say. But that which Gerard had in his Garden cast forth the Seed like Cole-flower, or Mustard-seed, which made him to think that either the Clime had altered its shape, or that there was two kinds thereof.

IV. The yellow Balsamint (which Gerard places with the Arsmarts, and Parkinson with the Mercuries) has a black and thready Root, which perishes every year, from which spring forth Stalks about two foot high, tender, green, and somewhat purplish, hollow, smooth, juicy and transparent, with large and eminent Joints: From whence proceed Leaves like those of French Mercury, a little larger and broader towards their Stalks, and thereabouts also cut in with deeper Teeth or Notches. From the bosoms of each of these Leaves, come forth long Stalks hanging downwards, which are divided into three or four branches, upon which hang yellow flowers, much gaping, with crooked Spurs or Heels, and spotted also with red or crimson spots. The Flowers being gone, there succeeds Cods containing the Seed, which are about two Inches long, slender, knotted, and of a whi-

## C H A P. LII.

### BALSAM-APPLE Female and Yellow.

I. *THE Names.* It is also unknown to the Greeks: but is called in Latin by Matthioli, *Anguilla*, *Fuchsius*, *Gesner* and *Tragus*, *Balsamina altera*: by *Dodoneus*, *Balsaminum*: by *Lugdunensis*, *Balsamina*: by *Cordus*, *Balsamella*: by *Gesner ad Cordum*, *Balsamina amigdaloides*: by *Camerarius*, *Tabermontanus*, and *Gerard*, *Balsamina Fæmina*: by *Lobel*, *Balsamina fæmina persicifolia*; and by *Cesalpina*, *Catanance*: and in English *Balm Apple female*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the second kind of the Balm Apple; viz. the Female; differing very much from the former, both in the form and manner of growing. The Yellow Balsamine is the third kind, and by *Lobel*, *Camerarius*, *Gerard*, and others, is called *Persicaria Siliquosa*, in English, *Coddled Arsmart*;



*tish green, crested with greenish lines; which as soon as they begin to be ripe, are so impatient, that they will by no means be touched, but presently the Seed will fly out of them into your face) from whence came the name herba impatientis) and for which reason Lobel, and others have called it, Noli me tangere)*

V. *The Places.* The first of these is only Nurs'd up with us in Gardens. The latter grows in shady Woods in France, Germany and Italy. It has also been found in shady Woods side, and shady sides of Mountains, and their Vallies in Wales; in Shropshire at Marington; on the Banks of the River Kemlet, and at Guerudee in the Parish of Cherstock, half a mile from the said River, in the Highway among great Alder-trees: but it will grow and abide in our Gardens very well, and every year sow it self, being set in a shady place.

VI. *The Times.* The first of these (as also the former Male kind) must be sown in the beginning of April, and in a hot bed of Horse-dung, as you do Musk-Melons, Cucumbers, and such like cold Fruits: then they must be replanted abroad from the said beds, into a hot, moist, and fertile place, at such time as they have gotten three Leaves a piece. They flower in July and August, and their fruit comes to the greatest perfection our Country will give it in September following. The *Noli me tangere* flowers in its natural place, about the middle or end of August, and presently after Seeds: but that which grows with us in Gardens flowers in June or July.

VII. *The Qualities.* The first of these is cold in 1° and dry in 2°; Cephalick, Neurotick, Vulnerary, and Alterative. The *Noli me tangere*, is hot and dry in the third degree; Nephretick, Diuretick and Emetick.

VIII. *The Specification.* The latter Specifically provokes Urine, even unto a wonder, as Gesner testifies.

IX. *The Preparations.* They may be the same with those of the Male kind, as, 1. Powder. 2. Decoction. 3. Inspissate Juice. 4. Spiritous Tincture. 5. Oleaginous Tincture. 6. Oil by Infusion. 7. A Balsam. From the *Noli me tangere*, there is, 1. A Powder of the Herb. 2. An Inspissate Juice. 3. A Distilled Water.

#### The Virtues.

X. *The Powder.* It dries up green Wounds, consolidates, and heals them.

XI. *The Decoction.* It cleanses old Ulcers, and rotten Sores, and disposes Fistula's (being injected into them) to a healing.

XII. *The Inspissate Juice.* Being reduced into a powder, and strewed upon a green wound, it presently conglutinates it, and heals it.

XIII. *The Spiritous Tincture.* It is helpful to a Gangrene in beginning, and by its gentle styptick quality, restores and conserves the heat of the Part.

XIV. *The Oleaginous Tincture.* It has the same Virtues with the Spiritous Tincture, but much more powerful; bathed upon the Nerves, it comforts and strengthens them, helps Cramps, and eases Aches and Pains, and is good against punctures of the Sinews.

XV. *The Oil by Infusion,* heals Wounds, abates Inflammations, and cures fiery Pustules of the skin.

XVI. *The Balsam.* It cleanses and heals Ulcers, and gives ease in Punctures of the Nerves: being applied, it cures old rotten Ulcers, running Sores, and kided Heels.

XVII. *The Powder of Noli me tangere.* It is

Emetick, and sometimes Cathartick, working (as some Authors say) strongly; for which reason Dodoneus says, it has a pernicious faculty, and is deleterious: yet it may be given from a scruple to half a dram in some convenient Vehicle, in strong Bodies.

XVIII. *The Inspissate Juice.* It is Emetick like Cambogia, and sometimes it works downwards like Scammony, but its operations are not altogether so certain. It may be given from ten grains to a scruple, made up into a Bolus, and so swallowed.

XIX. *The Distilled Water.* It is of mighty power to provoke Urine; and if largely drunk, it is said to induce a Diabetes; and some magnifie it, as to expel the Stone in the Reins: but without doubt it powerfully cleanses the Reins and Urinary passages, expelling Sand, Gravel, Slime, and other things which obstruct the Passages of the Urine.

## CHAP. LIII.

### BAWM Garden and Bastard.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Arabick, *Bederengie*, *Bedarungi*, *Cederenzegum*, *Turungen*, *Marmacor*: in Greek, *Μελισσόφυλλον*, *μελίφυλλον*, *μελίτλανα*, id est, *Apiastrum*, & *αίμειτλα*, *Apes delectentur*, Dioscor. lib. 3. cap. 18. Pliny lib. 21. cap. 20. *Melysophyllum* & *Melittis*: in Latin, *Melissa*, ab *Apibus* quæ etiam *μέλισσα* dicuntur: and in English, *Bawm*.



II. *The Kinds.* There are Six several kinds of *Bawm*, of which Authors treat: viz. *Melissa hortensis*, the Garden *Bawm*, called by *Anguillara*, *Brunsfelsius*, *Cesalpinus* and *Gerard*, *Melissa*: by *Tragus*, *Melissa domestica*; by *Gesner in hort.* *Castellus*, *Lugdunensis* and *Tabernmontanus*, *Melissophyllum*: by *Euchsius*, *Melysophyllum vulgare*: by *Matthiolum*, *Cordus*, *Lacuna*, *Lobel*, *Apiastrum*: by *Parkinson*, *Melissa vulgaris odore Citri*: and by *Gesner*, *Citrage*. 2. *Me-*  
*lissa*



*lissa notha*, Bastard Bawm, called by *Fuchsius*, *Melysophyllum*; by *Clusius*, *Lamium Pannonicum*: these we treat of in this Chapter. 3. *Melissa Turcica*, Turkey Bawm. 4. *Melissa Moluccana odorata*, of which we treat in the next Chapter. 5. *Melissa Peregrina*, called by *Matthiolus* and *Lugdunensis*, *Melissa Moldavica*. 6. *Melissa Moluccana fatida*, of which we say nothing in this Work.

III. The Description. The common Garden Bawm has a Root of a Woody substance, and full of strings, which endure long, and fasten themselves strongly in the ground, the Leaves and Stalks only dying every Year: from this Root springs up divers square green Stalks, with round hard dark green Leaves (and sometimes of a lighter green, according to the place it grows in) a little dented about the edges, set by couples at the Joints, and almost of a Citron or Lemon smell: the Flowers are small and gapeing, growing at Tops of the Stalks, of a pale Carnation colour, and almost white.

IV. *Fuchsius* his Bastard Bawm has a hard woody, stringy Root like the former, from whence springs square Stalks half a yard high, with Leaves like unto common Bawm, but larger and darker coloured, and not of so pleasant a scent; the Flowers are white, and sometimes of a pale purple colour, but much larger than those of the former, almost like to the yellow *Lamium*, or Dead Nettles, or to those of the Mountain Calamint. *Parkinson* says the flowers are of a pale purplish colour on the lower parts, and whitish above, not being so pleasantly scented as the common Garden Bawm.

V. The Places. The first grows with us only in Gardens, and is profitably planted there, as *Pliny lib. 21. cap. 12.* says, for the delight of Bees, for which cause it is called *Apiastrum*, and by some *Apium folium*, Bees leaf. The other is a Native of *Hungaria*, but is nourished up by curious Herborists in their Gardens. I have sometimes found it growing in England, on the Sunny side of Ditch and Bank sides, where the ground has been pretty dry.

VI. The Time. They flower in June, July and August, and wither or dye away towards Winter, springing forth a fresh from the old Roots.

VII. The Qualities. They are both hot and dry in the second degree: they are Cephalick, Neurotick, Cardiack, and something Hysterick: famously Cordial (chiefly the Garden) and Vulnerary, Alexipharmick, and Alterative.

VIII. The Specification. It is approved against fainting and swooning Fits, Poisons, Sicknes at Heart, and Hypochondriack Melancholy.

IX. The Preparations. You may prepare from it, 1. A cold Distilled Water. 2. A Spirituous Water. 3. A Spirit. 4. A Spiritous Tincture. 5. An Oily Tincture. 6. A Saline Tincture. 7. An Essence. 8. A Syrup. 9. A fixed Salt. 10. A Balsam or Oil. 11. A Cataplasme. 12. An expressed Juice.

#### The Virtues.

X. The cold Distilled Water. It is a Cordial Water, and only used as a Vehicle to convey Cordial Medicaments in.

XI. The Spiritous Water. If it is a little dulcified with Syrup of Bawm, it is an excellent Cordial, and good against Fainting and Swooning Fits, Convulsions, and the like, and this chiefly in Children: It eases gripings in the Bowels, and comforts Universal Nature. Dose from half an ounce to two ounces, according to the Age of the Patient.

XII. The Spirit. This is much more excellent than the former water, and has a mighty power to repress Hypochondriack Melancholy: it revives the

Spirits, and makes the Heart merry and chearful, easing the Passions thereof after a wonderful manner. Dose from j. dram to ij. drams in any proper Vehicle.

XIII. The Spiritous Tincture. It has the former Virtues, and more powerful to all the said intentions, but not so pleasant: It is indeed a declared thing against all Passions of the Heart, the Colick, and Gripping Pains of the Bowels. Dose j. or ij. drams, sweetened with the Syrup of the same.

XIV. The Oily Tincture. Outwardly bathed upon any place pained from a cold and moist cause, it gives ease and relief: and taken inwardly from xij. to xxx. drops in some fit Vehicle, it gives ease in pains of the Spleen, Sides and Stomach, especially if they proceed from a cold cause: it also eases pains in the Back and Reins proceeding from weakness and obstructions: and being taken in a right time, it has been found to provoke the Courses in such as have them preternaturally stopt.

XV. The Saline Tincture. Being given from one dram to two, or more, in some proper Liquor, it is good against Poison, and the bitings of Mad-Dogs, eases the pains of the Stomach, and the gripings of the Bowels, proceeding from sharp humors; it opens the obstructions of the Lungs, and causes such to breath freely, who before could scarcely take their breath: It may be made pleasant with the Syrup, of which we shall speak anon.

XVI. The Essence. It causes speedy and easie delivery to Women in Travel; and in a more especial manner is recommended against Hypochondriack Melancholy, being assiduously taken for some time. It has all the Virtues of the Spirit and Tincture, but must be given in a larger Dose, by reason of the gross Particles which are mixt with it: mixed and made pleasant with Rose-water and Sugar, or its own Syrup, it may be profitably given to Women in Child-bed, to bring away the After-birth, or cause a perfect cleansing. *Galen lib. de Simpl.* says, that Bawm is like unto Horehound in Qualities, but much weaker. I will not gainsay *Galen* totally; but that it may be so in some Cases; as in Hysterick Diseases: but where a Cordial is intended, I am sure Bawm is much the superiour, and is much better for Women in their Lying in, when they are fainting, from their sore Travel or hard labour. Dose from half an ounce to two ounces. It is good against Poison, and the bitings of Venemous Beasts, and such as have been long troubled with the Bloody Flux.

XVII. The Syrup. It is Cordial, but is chiefly used as a Vehicle to other Cordial Medicines, and to make them palatable: however it is of it self a singular pectoral, and good against Coughs, Colds, Asthma's, Spitting of Blood, Obstructions of the Lungs, and other like Diseases of the Breast, and parts adjacent.

XVIII. The fixed Salt. It strengthens the Stomach and Spleen, resists Vomiting, and carries off much of the Morbifick Cause by Urine. To stop Vomiting you may give it thus: Take of this Salt a scruple; Spirit of Sulphur viij. or x. drops: mix them till the effervescence is over: then dissolve it in a Glass of Canary, or some other Stomack Vehicle; and so give it the Patient to drink.

XIX. The Balsam or Oil. They are most singular Vulneraries, and many times cure Wounds at one Dressing: and it is my opinion (grounded upon the experience I have had of the Plant, in Chirurgery) that it is not interior for curing Wounds and Ulcers, to any of the Allheals: and from its vulnerary and healing Properties it was, that our Ancestors called it Balm, as being of the nature of Balsam. Outwardly applied it is good against the stinging or striking



king of Scorpions, and the Poysonous Bite of the Phalangium

XX. *The Cataplasim.* Being applyed it eases Pains coming from a cold Cause, and Discusses Flatulent Tumors: and being mixt with a little Niter, or the *Amalgamation of Mercury with Lead*, it prevails against Wens, Kernels and hard Swellings in the Neck and Throat or other parts, and is good also to give ease in the Gout, and ripen Biles and break them.

XXI. *The Expressed Juice.* It strengthens the Vital Spirits; and being given to iij. iv. or vj. Spoonfuls in a Glass of *White Port Wine*, it causes speedy Delivery to Women in Travel, and brings forth both Birth and After-birth. It is an Antiscorbutick, and helps the Bloody Flux, by reason of its Balsamick and healing Virtues. Put into the Eyes, it is a singular remedy for dimness of Sight, and being mixed with Honey it takes off Films which obfuscate and hinder the Sight.

XXII. *The Bastard Bawm.* You may make the same Preparations of this, as of the former, and they have in General the same Virtues, but as to the Vital Indications, they are not so powerful. However in all *Hysterick Diseases* they very much exceed, as being more effectual in opening Obstructions of the Womb, and resisting Fits of the Mother.

## CHAP. LIV.

### BAWM, Turkey and Syrian.



I. **T**HE Names. The first is called in Latin, *Melissa Turcica*, or *Melissophyllum*, or *Melissophyllum Turcicum*: by Gesner in Hort. Cedromella, and Citrigo Turcica, and in English, Turkey Bawm.

II. The other is called in Latin; *Melissa Syriaca*,

and by some *Melissa Moluccana*: by Matthioli, *Melissa Constantinopolitana*: and by Tabernmontanus, *Cardiaca Syriaca*: by Lobel, *Maseluc Turcorum*.

III. *The Kinds.* The Turkey Bawm, is the Third Species, in our order: The Syrian, or Moluccan constitutes the Fourth Species, which are all that are necessary for us to consider in this Work. This Syrian Bawm, Authors will have to be twofold, viz. *Lævis* and *Aspera*, or *Asperior*: or *Odorata*, and *Inodorata*.

IV. *The Description.* The Turkey Bawm has a Root small and thready, which perishes every Year at the first approach of Winter, and therefore must be Sown fresh again, every Spring. From this Root rises up one square brownish green Stalk, two Feet high and sometimes more, if it grows in good Ground, spreading it self with two Branches from every Joint, where the Leaves are set; and this course is continued up almost to the Top. The Leaves are narrower and longer than those of Common Garden Bawm, and more dented in about the edges, of a sweet Limmon scent, rather exceeding that of Common Bawm: they are rough also, and of a like Green Colour. The Flowers are gaping or hooded, growing at the Tops of the Branches at certain Distances, standing in sharp, rough, pointed Husks; and they are of a blew or purplish blew Colour; but in some the Colour is perfectly white, whence several Authors would make several Kinds thereof, tho at the same time they differ in nothing but the Colour of the Flowers; but some say the Leaves are of a fresher green Colour, which I have not yet observed. After the Flowers are past, then comes the Seed, which is black and roundish, with a white Spot in each Seed, whilst it is fresh, which afterwards in a manner Vanishes, not being so discernable when dry.

V. The Syrian Bawm, has a Woody thick Root, and full of strings, which perishes every Year. From whence rises up, a round hollow Stalk, thick, and of a reddish Colour, about Two Feet high, branching forth variously on all sides up to the Top, on which are set shorter and rounder Leaves, at the end of longer Foot Stalks. The other Leaves stand also upon Foot Stalks, and much resemble those of the Common Bawm (for which reason, some Authors have taken this to be one of the Kinds thereof) somewhat less dented about the edges, than the Garden Kind. At the Joints of the Stalk, from the middle upwards, come forth round about it, certain hard, whitish Skins, small and round at the bottom, and wide open at the brims, a little prickly at the corners, and much like unto a Bell, being for the most part five Cornered. From the bottom of each of these, comes forth one Flower, somewhat small, and like to those of the Common Bawm, almost white in Colour, or with a small blush of Red therein. After they are past, in the bottom of the same skinny Bell, the Seed grows (but it very rarely comes to be Ripe with us) which is whitish and Cornered. The Plant has nothing of the smell of Bawm in it; but it is strong, and the Taste is bitter.

VI. The other Syrian Kind, which is called *Asperior*, differs not much from the former, as to its Form, yet it rises a little higher, and grows somewhat greater, but after the same Fashion: the Stalk of this is Four Square, and lightly hollowed or furrowed. The Leaves are somewhat longer and sharper on the edges. The Cups or Bells in which the Flowers grow, are more prickly than the former, and much sharper at the corners of them, longer, more in number, and of a paler white Colour. The Tunnels of the Flowers are brownish, and not so white as the other; and the Seed is three cornered, and sharp upwards like a Wedge.

VII. The



VII. *The Places.* The *Turkey Bawm* grows naturally in *Moldavia* and several parts of *Turky*, from whence it is brought to us, and Nourish'd up in *Gardens*. The *Syrian Bawm*, called also *Moluccan*, was thought by *Matthiols* to grow in the *Molucca Islands* (whence that Name.) But *Parkinson* says he was mistaken: and that *Sequinus* an *Italian* sent them from *Syria* to *Verona*, from whence they were brought to us, and nourish'd up in *Gardens* only.

VIII. *The Times.* The *Turkey Bawm* Flowers the latter end of *June*, or in *July*: but the *Syrian Kinds*, seldom Flower before the middle of *August*, for which reason, they seldom give any good Seed, which the *Turkey Bawm* fails not to do.

IX. *The Qualities.* The *Turkey Bawm* agrees herein wholly with our *Common Garden Bawm*. The *Syrian Bawm* is hot in one Degree and dry in two, *Hysterick*, *Vulnerary*, and *Alterative*.

X. *The Specification.* The *Turkey Bawm* is peculiar against *Vertigo's*, *Faintings*, and *Sickness* at *Heart*. The *Syrian* resists fits of the *Mother*, and *Vapors* from the *Womb*.

XI. *The Preparations.* The *Shops* keep nothing of them, but you may Prepare therefrom. 1. A Powder from the *Leaves* and *Flowers*. 2. A Decoction in *Wine*. 3. An *Expressed Juice*. 4. A *Spiritu-ous Tincture*. 5. An *Oily Tincture*. 6. A *Saline Tincture*. 7. An *Essence*. 8. A *Syrup*. 9. A *Fixed Salt*. 10. A *Balsam* or *Oil*. 11. A *Cataplasm*.

## The Virtues.

XII. All these several Preparations of the *Turkey Bawm*, have the same *Virtues*, *Uses* and *Doses*, with those of our *Common Garden Bawm*; so that no more need be said of them in this place, and therefore we refer you to their respective *Titles* in the *Chapter* foregoing.

XIII. *The Powder of the Syrian Bawm*, heats, rarifies, and cleanses.

XIV. *The Decoction of it in Wine*, Kills *Worms*, and is good against the pains of the *Mother*, *Vapors*, and the like. Dose iv. ounces.

XV. *The Expressed Juice of it*, Kills *Worms*, and gives relief in *Hysterick Fits*, pains of the *Spleen*, and the like. Dose j. ounce or more.

XVI. *The Spirituous Tincture of it*, Expels *Poyson* or *Venom*, and is good against the *Plague* or *Pestilence*, and all sorts of *Malign fevers*. Dose half an ounce.

XVII. *The Oily Tincture of it*, Gives ease in the *Colick*, given to one *Dram* in *Ale* or *Wine*: and outwardly applyed helps *Palsies*, and eases *Pains* from a cold Cause, in any part of the *Body*.

XVIII. *The Saline Tincture of it*, Is a *Specifick* for killing *Worms* in the *Body*, whether of old or young. Dose j. or ij. *Drams* in *Wine* or *Ale*.

XIX. *The Essence of it*, Kills *Worms*, and cures *Fits* of the *Mother*, *Convulsions* of the *Bowels*, &c. Dose from ij. *Drams* to vj. in *Ale* or *Wine*.

XX. *The Syrup of it*, has the *Virtues* of the *Essence*, but is much weaker, and is mostly used as a *Vehicle* to convey the other Preparations in.

XXI. *The Fixed Salt of it*, removes *Obstructions* of the *Spleen* and *Womb*. Dose to xx grains of it, in a *Decoction* of the *Herb*, sweetned with the *Syrup* thereof.

XXII. *The Balsam or Oil of it*, is *Vulnerary*, and eases *Pains* of the *Spleen* and *Joints*.

XXIII. *The Cataplasm of it*, Discusses *Tumors* arising from *Cold* and *Wind*, and gives ease in the *Spleen* being applied to the *Region* thereof.

## CHAP. LV.

### BEANS Garden and Bastard.

I. **T**HE Names. The *Bean* is called in *Arabick*, *Bachale*, *Bachele*, *Bakilla*, and *Hachille* in *Greek*, *βίαν*: and in *Latin*, *Faba*. The *Cod* is called in *Greek* by *Aristotle* *θήκη*: by *Nicander*, *λέπτι*, *λέμμα*, *πίσι*: by *Hesichius* *λόβ*, *λέβης*: and by *Apollonius* *κέλυφ*: and in *Latin*, *Theca*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are many *Kinds* of *Beans*, but those which we shall chiefly take notice of, are 1. *The Garden*. 2. *Kidney* or *French*. 3. *The Field* or *Horse Bean*. Of the *Garden Kind* there are said to be two sorts, 1. *The True*. 2. *The Bastard*.



III. *The Description.* The *True, Large, Sweet Garden Bean*, has a *Root* thick, with many *Fibres* or *Strings* annexed to it; from which rises up *One, Two, or Three Stalks* (according to the goodness of the *Ground*) *smooth* and *square*, and sometimes *Four or Five Feet* high or more. Upon these *Stalks* are set the *Leaves* at certain distances upon a *small Foot-Stalk*, from the very bottom almost to the top, by *Two and Two*, which are *fleshy, thick*, of a *light green*, and *long, a little pointed* at the ends. Between these *Leaves* and *Stalk* come forth divers *Flowers*, all of them looking one way for the most part, which are *close, a little turn'd up* at the brims, *White*, and *spotted with a blackish Spot* in the middle, and somewhat *purplish* at the foot or bottom; of the *Form* almost of *Broom*, or *Pease Flowers*, many of which, that grow upwards towards the top, do seldom bear *Seed*, and therefore are gathered by many to be *Distilled*; and the tops also being cut off, it makes the rest of the *Plant* to thrive the better. The *Flowers* being gone, there grows forth *long, great, smooth, green Cods*, greater than in the other *Kinds* of *Beans*, which grow



grow black when they are ripe, and contain within them, Two, Three, or Four, flat and somewhat roundish long Beans, either white or reddish, which latter when ripe grow many times black withall.

IV. *The Bastard Bean*, Differs little or nothing in the Form and Shape of the Plant, or in the manner of its growing, from the former, save that it seldom grows full out so large as the True Garden one doth, nor are the Beans themselves altogether so large: but that which is the principal note of distinction, between this and the True Kind, is their want of that sweetness, pleasantness, and excellent Taste which the Right Garden sort has: and therefore by reason of the small difference which is between them in respect to their Form and growing, they are generally Sold in the Market the one for the other: tho at the same time the Gardener can distinguish between them.

V. *The Places*. These are both Sown in Gardens with us, but the latter are for the most part Sown abroad in large Fields, and Sold in Markets for the former.

VI. *The Times*. They Flower in April and May, and that gradually, so that they are long in Flowering: and the Beans themselves are Ripe in July and August.

VII. *The Qualities*. They are Temperate as to heat or cold, and moist in the first Degree; Nephritick, Lithontripectick, Spermatogenetick, Suppurative, and Alterative.

VIII. *The Specification*. They are peculiar against Gravel in Reins or Bladder, restore in Consumptions, for they nourish much, and being much Eaten cure a Diarrhea.

IX. *The Preparations*. The Shops keep, 1. A Water from the Flowers or the whole Plant. 2. A Meal or Flower from the Beans. But you may make therefrom also, 3. A Decoction of the Beans in Water or Wine. 4. An Essence of the Leaves and Cods. 5. A Cataplasm of the Beans. 6. A Volatile Salt, Spirit and Oil from the Beans. 7. The Ashes of the Cods and Stalks. 8. A strong Broth.

#### The Virtues.

X. *The Distilled Water from the Flowers, or whole Plant when in Flower*. They are chiefly used as Cosmeticks, to soften, whiten, cool, and beautify the Skin, it being often washed therewith, and suffered to dry on: but before it is applyed, the Face and Hands ought to be made purely clean with warm Water in which Wheat Bran or Bean Meal has been boiled: some Ladies have affirmed to me, that by a continued and long using this Wash, or Water Distilled from the Flowers, they have had Lentils, Freckles, and other Deformities of the Skin perfectly removed. This I believe, that if it is acuated with some small quantity of the Volatile Salt, and then used, it may do much in that Kind.

XI. *The Meal or Flower*. Being used with warm Water to wash the Face and Skin with, it cleanses it admirably, and is said to take away Deformities thereof, as Scurff, Spots, Wrinkles, Tanning, Sunburning, and the like.

XII. *The Decoction in Wine or Water*. It is very good against the Stone and Gravel whether in the Reins or Bladder, and provokes Urine; so also a Decoction of the Green Cods, or a Water Distilled from the same.

XIII. *The Essence from the Leaves and green Cods*. It is Diuretick and Lithontripectick, removing the Matter causing the Strangury, whether it be Gravel, Sand, Slime, or other Glutinous Matter. Mixed with Honey and taken, it prevails against Coughs, Colds, Rheums, Catarrhs, and other Distempers of the Lungs.

XIV. *The Cataplasm of Bean Flower or Meal*. If it is made with Vinegar and Oil, and applied to Womens Breasts, swelled with abundance of Milk, so that they can scarcely hold, it will not only repress the Milk, but also discuss the Tumor or Swelling occasioned by Curdling thereof. If the Cataplasm be made with Fenugreek and Honey, and applied to Felons, Biles, Bruises, Apostems, as also Kernels about the Ears, and Kings-Evil Swellings, it helps them all. If the Cataplasm is made with Wine, and applied to Watering Eyes, or Eyes having a Contusion by blows, it gives ease and does them good. If made with Whites of Eggs, Rose Leaves and Frankincense, and applied, it helps Eyes which Swell or grow out. If it is made with White Wine, and with Vinegar and Oil, and applied to the Cods, it takes away their Pain and Swelling. If it is made with Wine only, and a little Oil, and Eaten, it is good against Impotency, and stirs up Lust in such as cannot use the Act of Generation, by reason of the coldness, sluggishness, and weakness of their Members. If Fried in Oil with Garlick to the thickness of a Hasty Pudding, and Eaten as daily Food, it helps inveterate Coughs, almost past cure, and the hoarseness of the Voice: and being for some time Eaten, it breaks Apostems of the Breast and Lungs.

XV. *The Ashes from the Cods and Stalks*, Being Infused in Ale or Wine, and the Liquor Drunk, they are very Diuretick, and open all Obstructions of the Reins and Bladder, and therefore are very good against Sand, Gravel, Stone, Dropsy, Jaundice and Gout. The Ashes made into a Cataplasm with Hogs Lard, and applied, are good against old Pains, Contusions, Wounds of the Nerves, Defluxions upon the Joynts, the Sciatica, and Gout, whether in Hands, Arms, Knees or Feet.

XVI. *The Volatil Salt, Spirit and Oil of the Beans*. Beans and Pease yield a vast Quantity of Volatil Salt, and in much larger Proportion than any other Vegetable Production. It is thus made. *Take Beans*  $\text{lb x}$ . whole and dry, put them into a large Earthen Retort, or into a large Glass one well Luted; so large as that about a third part may remain Empty: put it into a close Furnace of Reverberation, luting to it a large Receiver or great Glass Ball: stop the Registers of the Cover of the Furnace, and make a small Fire in the Cinder or Ashes place, at first, only to warm the Retort, and heat the Matter within, which keep so for an Hour; then kindle a Fire in the Grate Place, gentle at first for an Hour more; after which increase it gradually from Hour to Hour, but not to an Excess: in the mean season, the Aqueous parts will come over in large quantity, then give a little Air to the Register of the Cover of the Furnace on the Receivers side, continually encreasing the Fire, till you see the Receiver to be filled with white Clouds, which will by degrees condense into Liquor; the Oleaginous and Salt parts sinking to the bottom of the Vessel; keep now an equal Fire, for about two Hours, giving a little Air to the Register, after which open it for altogether, giving a more violent heat, and at length a flaming Fire, which continue till the Vapors cease, and the Receiver is clear: let then the Fire go out, and the Vessels cool. In the Receiver you will have much Flegm mixt with Oil, and Spirit, and Volatile Salt, so penetrating that you will not be able to hold your Nose and Eyes over the Mouths of the Vessels. Put all these Substances immediately into a a Bolt Head with a long Neck, covered, with its Head well Luted, and fitted with a Beak and Receiver: place it in a Sand heat, in a cool Airy place, so may you see the Volatile Salt ascend by little and little, and coagulate it self in the Head (which you must often cool by double Cloths dipt in cold Water, to hinder the Dissolution of the Salt): This Salt with what speed may



may be take out of the Head, and keep it in a Glass Bottle close stopped, and in a cool place, for it turns into Liquor or Spirit with the least heat, and sooner than any other Volatile Salt: but you must have another Head ready to put on in the place of the former, whose junctures being well Luted, continue the rectification, so will you have in the Recipient, the rest of the Volatile Salt Dissolved in a little of the Flegm (which is the Spirit) and the Volatile Oil, which you may separate and keep a part; the useles Flegm, and stinking part of the Oil remaining at bottom of the Matrafs.

XVII. This Volatile Salt of Beans, is a strong Sudorifick, and one of the most Subtil and Volatile Salts that is, being of the same use with all other Volatile Salts. It is good against Palsies, Cramps, Withered Limbs, Epilepsies, Apoplexies, Gouts, Rheumatisms, Colicks, and other diseases of the Head, Brain, Womb, Nerves, and Joints. It kills Worms, and is admirably good in Fits of the Mother. The Spirit is also of the same Virtue. The Oil, is stronger, and therefore in outward applications, it may be mixt with Oil of Bitter Almonds, or Oil of Ben, and the Stomach and Navel anointed with it, for Fits of the Mother. In Diseases of the Brain, also of the Womb, you may put it up the Nostrils. Dose of the Salt, a gr. vj. ad xij. of the Spirit, from xv drops to xxx. or xl. and of the Oil a gut. ij. ad vj. all which are to be given in some proper Vehicle.

XVIII. The strong Broth of the Beans. It is Nutritive in the highest Sense so far as a Vegetable can be Nutritive; It also stirs up Lust, and is of good use where there is an Impotency in the Male Kind, who have not the power to use the Act of Generation, by reason of a weakness in the Instruments of Generation, or defect of Seed, as it has respect either to Quantity or Quality. And by reason the Bean, (especially the Field Kind) has the Signature of the Glans of the Penis, Pythagoras and his Followers judged then to provoke Lust, which afterwards by multitudes of Experiments and Observations, has been confirm'd to us, even from that time to this day. This Broth strengthens the Bowels and restores Nature, stopping all sorts of Lasks and Fluxes of the Belly, inveterate Coughs and other Distempers of the Lungs: It is Nephritick and Diuretick, much provoking Urine, and therefore is good against all Obstructions of the Reins and Bladder. If this Broth is made for Nutriment sake, it will be necessary to boil the Beans till they are Broken, and the Flowery part of them mixed and as it were dissolved in the Liquor, which afterwards may be made savory with a little Salt, Juice of an Orange, and a bit of sweet Butter. Beans are indeed Flatulent (by which property they are said to stir up Lust,) yet accounted good Food. *Nos Trago Subscribimus recentes innoxias esse in Cibo, & bonum succum gignere.* Ray, *Hist. Plant. lib. 18. cap. 2.*

## CHAP. LVI.

### BEANS Kidney and Scarlet.

I. **THE Names.** This Plant is called by Hippocrates, Theophrastus, and most of the Ancient Writers *Δάλεον*: some from the Seed call it *Λόσον*, & *Λόσιον*: others name it *Φασόλον* a diminutive from *Φάσος* Discorides calleth it *Σμίλαξ κηπαία*, *ὁ καρπός, Λόσια*: in Latin, *Smilax Hortensis*, *Siliqua*, *Phaseolus*: in Arabick, *Lubia*: in English, *Kidney Bean*, and *Garden Kidney Bean*.

II. The other is called in Greek *Κίανον κόκκινον*, & *φασόλον κόκκινον*: in Latin, *Faba Coccinea*, & *Phaseolus Coccineus*: and in English, the *Scarlet Bean*.

III. The Kinds. The Species of the *Kidney Bean* are very many: whose chief differences consist most in the Colour of the Beans, which every Child is able to distinguish at Sight, as the *White*, the *Black*, the *Red*, the *Purple*, the *various Coloured*, the *Great*, the *Small*, &c. as for other Differences, as they would be superfluous and needless, so they would be almost endless.

IV. The *Scarlet Bean* is said to be of two Kinds: 1. That which Grows and is Common with us in England. 2. The *Indian Downy or Hairy Bean*, which is called *Cow Itch*, which see in the *Exoticks; lib. 3. chap. 73.* following.



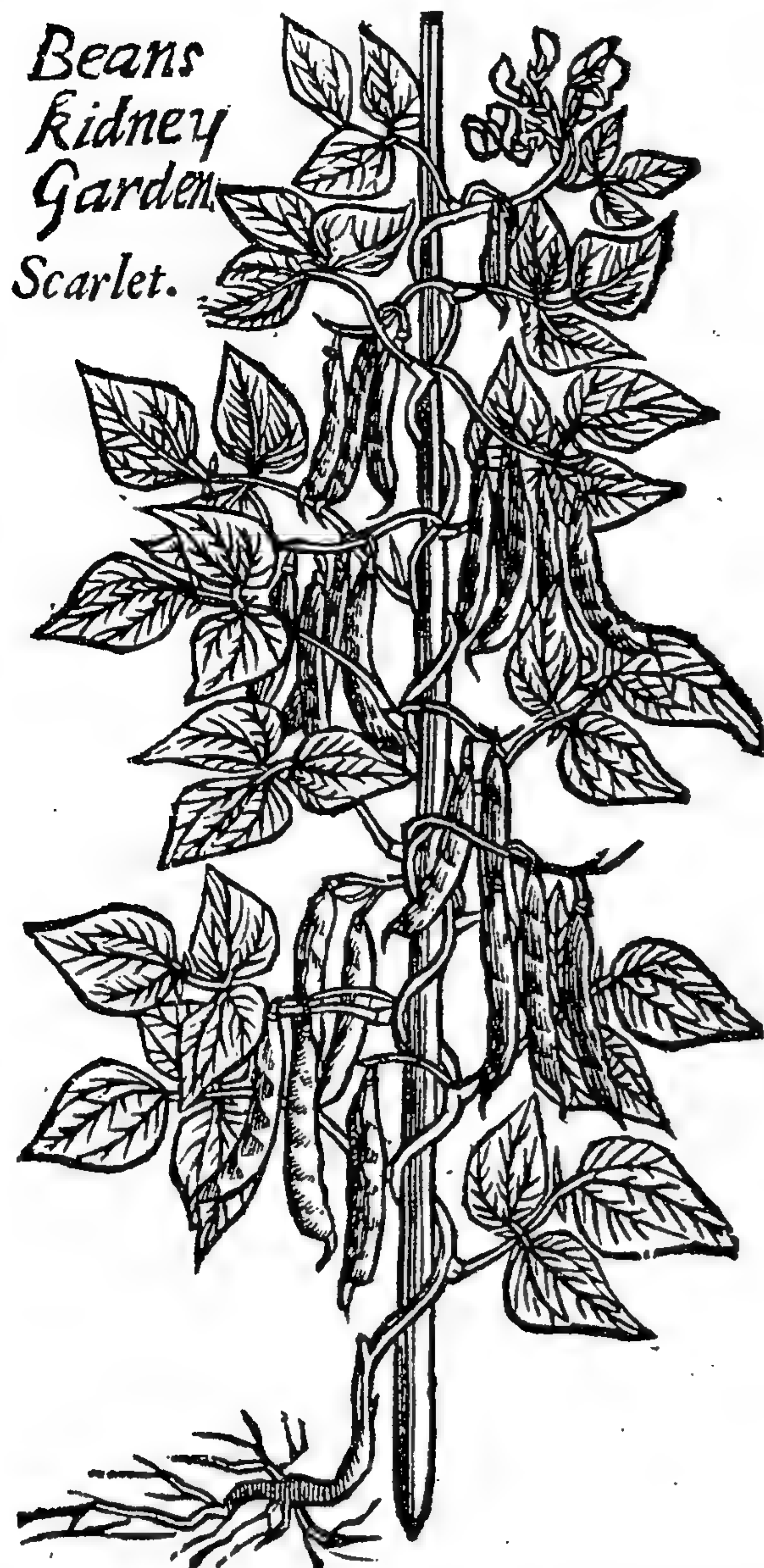
*Kidney Beans*

V. The Description. It has a long Root with many Fibres springing from it, which perishes every Year, from which rises up at first but one Stalk, which afterwards divides it self into many Arms or Branches, every one of them being so weak, that they cannot sustain themselves, but are upheld by Sticks or Poles, or other adjacent things, taking hold with its clasping tendrils thereupon, in like manner as does Bryony, Hops, and the Vine, otherwise they would lye Fruitless upon the Ground. From these Branches grow forth at several places long Foot Stalks, every one of which has three broad, round, pointed Leaves, of a green Colour, growing together by three's as in the Common Trefoil: Towards the Tops of the Branches come forth divers Flowers in form like to Pease Blossoms, which varie and differ in their Colours according to the Soil in which they Grow, sometimes White, Black, Red, Yellow, Purple, Pale and Various Coloured, for the most part of the same Colour the Beans will be of. After which come forth long and slender, flat, lightish green Cods, mostly crooked a little, and some strait, in which are contained the Beans, made almost in form of a Kidney, flat and much about the Magnitude of Horse Beans.

VI. The *Scarlet Bean* is a large Plant, but differs not much in its manner of growing from the former Kidney



Kidney Bean: but the Flowers are large and many, and of an Elegant Scarlet Colour; for which reason it is commonly called by our Florists, The Scarlet Bean.



Beans  
Kidney  
Garden  
Scarlet.

VII. *The Places.* They Grow both of them, not only in England, but also in most parts of Europe, and with us they are nourish'd up in Gardens. The first or Common Garden Kidney Bean (which some call the French Bean) extend their Branches to a very great length, having Poles or other like things to support and fasten themselves upon. The Scarlet Bean was first Brought to us by John Tradescant, and made to Grow in our Gardens, where it now very naturally flourishes.

VIII. *The Times.* They are sown in the Spring, chiefly about the middle of April, and not before, and the Beans themselves are ripe, about the latter end of the Year.

IX. *The Qualities.* The former are Hot and Moist in the first Degree: (as for the latter they are more for the Show and Beauty of the Flowers, than for any Physical use:) They are also Suppurative, Astringent as to the Bowels, Nephritick, Spermatogenetick, and Alterative.

X. *The Specification.* There is nothing Observable in this, saving that they have been found to provoke Urine.

XI. *The Preparations.* The Shops keep nothing of them; but you may make therefrom, 1. A Distilled Water from the green Cods, and whole Plant. 2. A Decoction of the green Cods, or whole Plant in Water or Wine. 3. An Essence of the Leaves and Cods. 4. A Volatile Spirit, Oil and Salt, from the dry'd Beans. 5. The Ashes of the Straw and Cods. 6. The green Cods to be eaten as a Sallet.

#### The Virtues.

XII. *The Distilled Water,* May be used as a Vehicle to convey Nephritick, Diuretick, and Lythontriptick Medicaments in.

XIII. *The Decoction in Wine or Water* is very Diuretick; and as its Signature shews, powerfully opens Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder: It may be Drank a Pint at a time morning, noon, and night a little sweetned with Hony, and be continued for some days.

XIV. *The Effence.* It has the Virtues of the Decoction, but much more Powerful, and is a singular sweetner of the Blood.

XV. *The Volatile Spirit, Oil, and Salt.* They are made from the dry'd Beans, exactly as we have Taught in the former Chapter, Sect. 16. and their several Virtues, Uses, and Doses are the same, so that we need say no more of them in this place.

XVI. *The Ashes of the Straw and Cods,* being Infused a Night or two in a Bottle of Ale or Wine close stopp'd up; and that Liquor Drank Morning, Noon and Night, half a Pint at a time, or more, it powerfully provokes Urine, opens obstructions of the Reins and Ureters, and plentifully brings away Sand, Gravel, Slime, or other Tartarous Matter offending those Parts. You may put xvj, ounces of the Ashes to a Gallon of Ale or Wine.

XVII. *The Green Cods.* They have the Virtues of the other Beans, provoke Lust and breed Seed; boiled and eaten with sweet Butter and a little Salt, and Juice of Oranges, they loosen the Belly, provoke Urine, strengthen and please the Stomach, and make good Blood; but they ought to be eaten whilst they are green and tender (otherwise they will not be so Toothsom) and the Rib (or String which runs along the Cod, being taken away, then to be boiled close Covered, till they are softish, and so drest up with Salt, melted fresh Butter and Juice of Sevil Oranges, as aforesaid; in which manner they are very wholsom, nourishing, restorative, and of a pleasant and grateful Taste, and not in the least inferior to the other large Garden Beans.

## CHAP. LVII.

### BEAN'S Field or Horse.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Κόμας* *ἀγρος*: in Latin, *Faba Equina*, *Faba Minor*: and by Dodonaus, *Phaselus Minor*, *Faba agria*, vel *Rustica*: and in English, *Field Bean*, and *Horse Bean*. *Κόμας* *Græcis dicti creduntur quia sunt ut τὸ κῶμα δεινὸν καὶ ἀμικτὸν τὸ κῶμα.* Ray.

II. *The Kinds.* We shall take notice but of three sorts of these Beans. The First Kind, is our Common Field Bean, which is usually sown with us for Horses and Hogs; and is Named as afore declared. The Second Kind, is that which the Greeks call *Πύανος*, and by some *Κόμας ἀγρος*: in Latin, *Faba Sylvestris*, *Faba Græca*; and in English, The Wild Bean. The Third Kind, is the Old Greek Bean, called *Κόμας ἑλληνικὴ*: in Latin, *Faba Veterum Græcorum*, *Faba Sylvestris Græcorum antiquorum*: in English, The Greek Bean of the Ancients.

III. *The Description.* The Field or Horse Bean has a short Root; going down right, with many small strings springing from it, which perishes every Year; from whence springs forth one, two, or more Stalks, which grow upright like the Garden Bean, not leaning down; the Leaves are like unto the Garden Bean, without any dents on the edges, but they are smaller, more at a Joint, and growing closer: the Flowers stand also more at a Joint, lesser, and of a more Purplish Colour: the Cods succeeding them



them are long and round, smaller than the Garden Kind, and standing upright: within which are small longish round Beans, which when they are Ripe, are some blackish, some brownish, and some of a dirty yellow.



IV. The Wild Bean differs in its description not much from the former, save that it is something less in the Magnitude of the Plant, and the Beans themselves are black and round.

V. The Greek Bean has a Root which goes not deep nor far into the Ground, but sends forth many long Fibres or strings, dying every Year; from whence springs forth two or three long flat Stalks, with two edges, lying or running upon the ground, if it has nothing to rise or clasp upon. The Stalks branch out on every side into stalks of Leaves, four commonly set thereon, by two and two, with a distance between them, like unto the Garden Bean, and each Branch bending in a long Clasper. The Flowers grow singly at the Joints of the Branches, under the Leaves, and are of a kind of dead, dull, purple Colour, with some paleness at bottom of them: after which succeed long and somewhat flat Cods, with two sharp edges, dented about, and a little hooked or bowing, green at first, but afterwards black and hard when they are Ripe. In these Cods are contained four or five, or more round Beans, very black, and as large as Pease.

VI. The Places. The First grows with us every where, in Fields, and are chiefly Sown for the Food of Hogs and Horses, whence their Name: The Second and Third sorts grow with us only in Gardens; but are Natives of Spain and Greece, where they are plentifully to be found.

VII. The Times. They all Flower in April, and May, and June, and that gradually, for they are long in Flowering; and the Seed is Ripe sometimes in July; but mostly in August and September.

VIII. The Qualities. Our Field Beans are hot and moist in the first Degree, suppurative, strengthening and spermatogenetick: nephritick, diuretick, and alterative: and used externally, as in Washings, they are of an absterfive faculty. The Wild Bean, and Faba Veterum, or Greek Bean, which Dioscorides, Galen, and other Greek Authors intend, when they give us their Virtues, are used to all the same purposes and intentions ascribed to these Our Field Beans.

IX. The Specification. They have a peculiar Faculty to remove Obstructions of Urine; and to make a clear passage for the Water.

X. The Preparations. They are exactly the same with the former, as 1. A Distilled Water from the Flowers and green Cods. 2. A Decoction of the same. 3. An Essence. 4. A Volatile Spirit, Oil, and Salt. 5. The Ashes and Fixed Salt. 6. A Broth of the Beans. 7. A Cataplasm of the Meal.

## The Virtues.

XI. The Distilled Water. It is used as a Vehicle for other Preparations, and as a cosmetick for the Face and Skin, to take away Scurf, Morpew, Tannings, Sunburnings and other like Deformities, by often washing therewith, and letting it dry on.

XII. The Decoction of Cods and Plant, opens Obstructions of the Viscera, but chiefly of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, and provokes Urine.

XIII. The Essence, Is said to dissolve the Stone in Reins or Bladder, but then I conceive it must be a soft and gritty Stone, not of a Flint like Substance: it increases Seed, and provokes Lust.

XIV. The Volatile Spirit, Oil, and Salt of the dry'd Beans, They are made as those of Garden Beans chap. 55. Sect. 16. and have all the same Virtues, Uses and Doses.

XV. The Ashes and Fix'd Salt. They are Diuretick, and powerfully provoke Urine, and therefore are singularly good against the Dropsy Sarfites, Gout, Stone, Gravel, and Jaundice. Dose a scruple in White Wine, morning and night.

XVI. The Broth of the Beans. It has the same Virtues, but not all out so Powerful.

XVII. The Cataplasm: Made with Wine, it is good against suffusions and Blows of the Eyes, and is profitably applyed to ease the Pains of the Gout. Made with Wine Vinegar, and applyed, it takes away the Inflammation of the Testicles, and Womens Breasts, and apply'd where Hairs are first and immediately plucked forth, it consumes their Nutrimment, and in some measure hinders their growing again. And if beaten up with Whites of Eggs, it is good against the Pin and Web, and helps the Watering of the Eyes. If made with Vinegar and equal parts of Barley Meal, it is said to waite away the Swellings of the Kings Evil. If made up with equal parts of Meal of Fanigrerk, it takes black and blew spots, occasioned through Blows, and Discusses hard Swellings under the Ears. If the Cataplasm is made with Oxymel, it is good against the Stinging of Scorpions, and Bitings of Venomous Beasts, Discusses Tumors caused by Blows and Bruises, abates the Milk in Womens Breasts, and eases Wounded Nerves, if apply'd upon the Wound.



## C H A P. LVIII.

## B E A R S B R E E C H.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, Ἀκανθὸς καὶ Ἀκανθα : in Latin, *Acanthus*, *Acantha*, *Branca Ursina* : and in English, *Brank Ursine*, or *Bears-breech*.

II. The Kinds. It is twofold ; 1. The Garden kind, called in Greek Ἀκανθὸς ἡμερῆς, παύρος, μελάμφυλλος, Ἐπεριανθα : in Latin, *Acanthos Sativus*, *Acantha Hortensis*, *Pæderos*, *Melamphyllos*, and *Herpacantha*, *Acanthus verus* & *levis*, *Branca Ursina levis* : and in English, *Garden Brank Ursine*, or *Bears Breech*. 2. The Wild Kind, is called in Greek, Ἀκανθὸς ἀγροῦ, in Latin, *Acanthus Sylvestris*, and *Aculeatus*, *Acantha Spinosa* & *aculeata*, *Herbacantha* : in English, the *Wild* or *Prickly Bears-breech*. *Acanthos* is the common name for all Thistles, but here it is used by the figure, *Antonomasia*, qua loco proprii nominis ponitur Appellativum, ut Civitas pro Londino.

Bears  
Britch.



III. The Description. Garden Bears Breech has a Root thick and long, with many long strings spreading far and deep in the ground, of a blackish or dark colour on the outside, and white within, full of a very clammy Juice, more mucilaginous than the Leaves, so full of life, that if a small piece be but left in the ground, it will spring up again, and bring forth the whole Plant, but requires a shelter or defence from the extremity of the Winter. From this Root there shoots forth many large, thick, smooth, sad green Leaves, upon the ground, with a thick middle rib, divided into many parts, with great and deep gashes on the edges, from among which (after it has stood long in a convenient place) rises up a reasonable great Stalk, three or four foot high, without either joint or branch thereon, set with some Leaves ; and from the middle upwards, set with a spike, as it were, of white hooded or gaping Flowers, standing in brownish Husks, somewhat sharp at the points, and a small long undivided Leaf under each Flower : af-

ter which come (in more hot Countries, but not in ours that I know of) broad, flat, round, thick, brownish yellow Seed. Dodoneus says, that the Leaves are great, large, of a sad green colour, thick, gross, smooth, and deeply cut in by the sides, like the leaves of Rocket.

IV. Wild Bears Breech has a Root not spreading so deep, or so far as the former, nor so great in magnitude, but more tender, as less able to endure the Winters cold. From this Root rises up several long Leaves lying upon the ground, but much narrower, and more divided on the edges into smaller parts, and each part with small incisions, set with very sharp white prickles ; from among which a lesser and lower Stalk arises, with the like spiked heads of Flowers, and a few prickly Leaves thereon, in their way coming up, standing in more sharp and prickly husks than the former ; after which comes Seed, small as a little Pea, hard, black, and round. Gerard saith, that this Thistle is in Stalk, colour of Leaves, Flowers and Seed much like the first kind, but the Plant is shorter and lower, and the Leaves pretty large, dented or jagged with many cuts and incisions, not only in some few parts of the Leaves, as some other Thistles, but very thickly dented or cloven, and having many sharp, large, white and hard prickles, about the sides of the divisions and cuts, not very easie to be handled or touched, without danger to the hands and fingers.

V. The Places. They naturally grow in Greece, Italy, Spain, and France ; but with us, and in Holland, Germany, and other cold Countries, it is only to be found nourished up in Gardens. Dioscorides says it grows only in moist and stony places. The Wild grows in many places of Italy near the Sea, and Pena says, he found it in moist and gravelly places near to the Walls of Mompelier ; but with us it is only in Gardens.

VI. The Times. The Root keeps alive in Winter in hot Countries, and so with us, but sometimes it dies, if the weather is too cold : but in England that is rare in the Garden kind. The former flowers in June and sometimes in July ; but yields no perfect Seed with us : the latter flowers later ; seldom or never giving with us any ripe Seed : but in those Countries where the Seed comes to perfection, it is always in Autumn, or latter end of Summer.

VII. The Qualities. They seem to be Temperate in respect of heat, and drying in the first degree. They are Arthritick, and whilst green, Digestive, afterwards Astringent, Drying, Restorative and Alterative.

VIII. The Specification. They are peculiar against Consumptions and Spitting of Blood.

IX. The Preparations. The Shops keep nothing of it : but you may make thereof, 1. An *Inspissate Juice*, or *Liquid*. 2. An *Essence*. 3. A *Decoction in Wine*. 4. A *Syrup*. 5. A *Clyster*. 6. A *Cataplasme*. 7. A *Saline Tincture*.

## The Vertues.

X. The *Liquid* or *Inspissate Juice*, prevails against spitting of Blood, pissing of Blood, and the Phthisick, being said to cure Consumptions, meaning those of the Lungs. Dose of the *Liquid*, one or two spoonfuls ; of the *Inspissate* one or two drams, dissolved in Red Wine, or Tent, and so either of them to be taken.

XI. The *Essence*. It has the Virtues of the former, besides which it stops Fluxes, and the Courfes in Women, and is prevalent against Ruptures in Children, and vehement Coughs. Dose one spoonful in Red Wine or Tent, Morning and Evening. Applied it is good against burnings.

XII. The



XII. *The Decoction in White Wine.* It provokes Urine, and binds the Belly.

XIII. *The Syrup.* It is good against Coughs, Colds, Asthma's, Phthificks, spitting and pissing of Blood, Bloody Fluxes, &c. Dose two spoonfuls in Wine.

XIV. *The Clyster.* By reason the whole Plant is of a Glutinous, Clammy, and Slimy Mucilaginous Nature; it is given Clyster-wise to procure Stools, and heal the Excoriations of the Bowels.

XV. *The Cataplasme.* From its Glutinous and Mucilaginous property, it is (like Comfrey) applyed to weak parts to strengthen them: and applyed to the Gout in the Joints, it eases the Pain, discusses the Humor, and cures the Disease: It also is profitable against Cramps in any part, and Ruptures in Children, being timely applyed to the Part: made into form of an Emplaster, and applyed to the Back, it eases Pains there, and strengthens a weak Back.

XVI. *The Saline Tincture.* It opens obstructions of the Urinary Passages, and powerfully provokes Urine. Dose, one or two drams in a draught of White Wine: and Cloths dipt in it, and applyed to parts burned (where the skin is not broken) it presently draws forth the fire.

XVII. *The Wild Bears Breech has the same Preparations, Virtues and Uses.*

## CHAP. LIX.

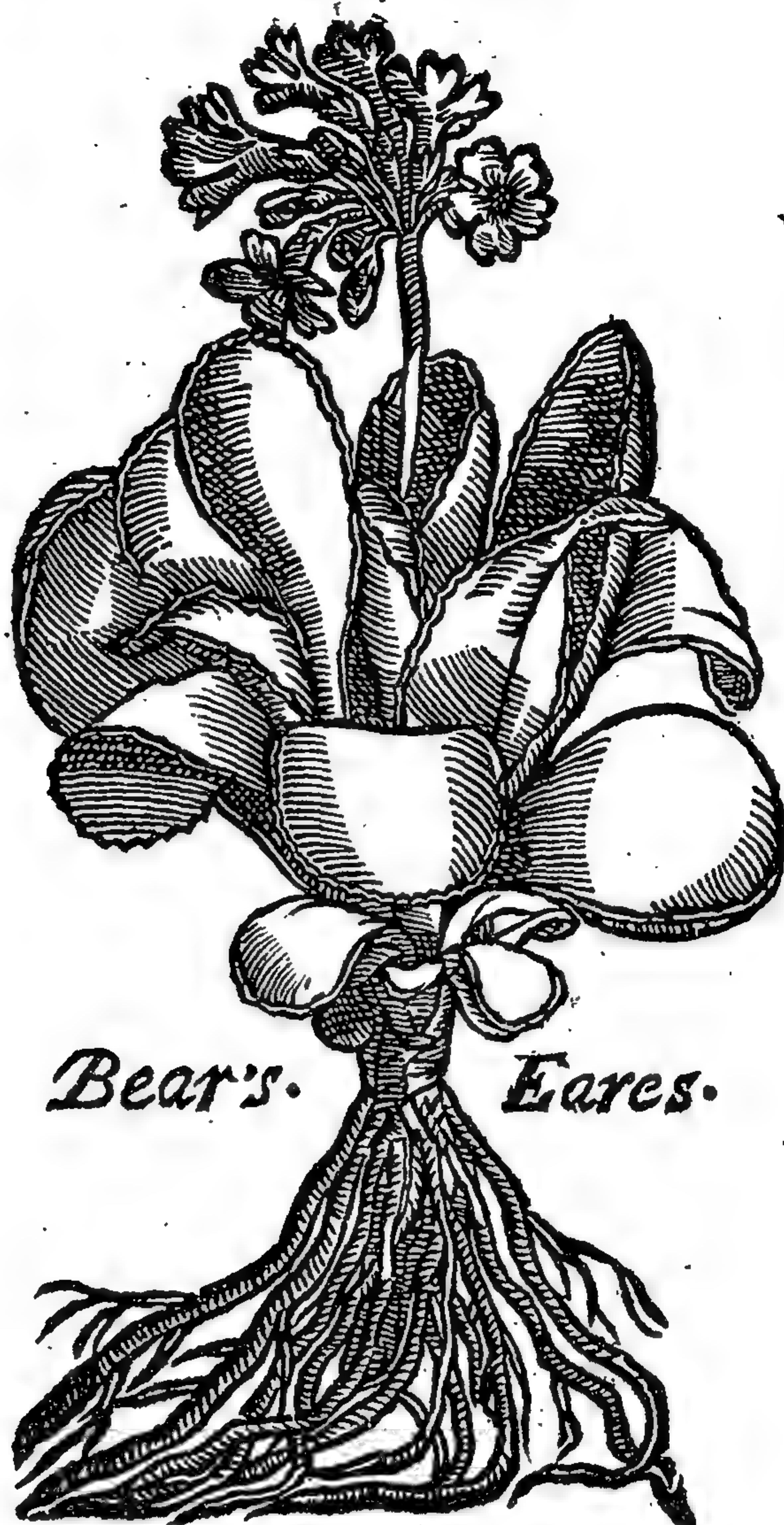
### BEARS-EARS.

I. *The Names.* They know no Greek Name, but have obtained several Latin ones, according to the variety of Authors, who have treated of them: but they may well enough be called in Greek, *Αυρίδα* *ἰσχυρὰ*: They are called variously by several Authors, as *Lunaria Arthritica*, also *Lunaria Paralytica Alpina*,; and *Sanicula Alpina*, by Gesner: *Primula veris Pachyphyllus*, by Lugdun: *Auricula Ursti*, by Matthiolus, Bauhinus, and others: and at this day they are so generally called by Mr. Ray, and other Authors. Some Authors, as Fabius Columna, will have them to be the *Alisma*, or *Damaconium* of Dioscorides, but are, in my opinion, mistaken, because the form of the Flowers plainly demonstrate the contrary: in English they are generally called *Bears-Ears*, and *Auricula's* by the Florists. They are certainly of the Family of the *Cowslips*, and therefore are also called *Alpine Cowslips*, and *Mountain Cowslips*; from the places whence they first came: *Sanicula Alpina*, *Alpine* or *Mountain Sanicle*, *à sanandis vulneribus*: and *Auricula's* from the form of the Leaf.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three principal Kinds, as 1. That with long dented Leaves. 2. That with long Leaves not dented. 3. That with round Leaves; and of each of these there are many varieties: as, the Yellow: the Purple: the Red: the Scarlet: the Bright Red: the Blush-coloured: the Various-coloured: the Blew: the White: the Hair-coloured: the Straw-coloured: and the Variable Green.

III. *The Description.* Those with long dented Leaves (of which the Yellow kind is principal) which is a beautiful fine Plant, has a thready Root, very like to the Oxlip; which sends forth green, thick, and fat Leaves, somewhat finely snipt about the Edges, much like to those of Cowslips, but greener, smoother, and nothing so crumpled: among which arises up a slender, round Stem, an handful high, bearing a Tuft of Flowers at the Top, from six to twelve in number; sometimes of a Yellow, sometimes of a Purple, or Red,

and sometimes of a White colour, or various coloured, not much unlike to the Flowers of Ox-lips, but more open, and consisting of one only Leaf like Cotyledon, or Pennywort: after which come small heads with a pointel at Top of them, not rising to the height of the Cups, containing small blackish Seed.



Bear's. Eares.

IV. Those with long Leaves not dented, have a Root greater and thicker than the former, with long strings or fibres like unto the other sorts, but greater; from whence springs up many fair, large, thick Leaves, somewhat mealy or hoary upon the greenness, smooth about the Edges, and without any indenting at all. The Stalk is great, round, and not higher than in the former, but bearing many more flowers thereon, more in number than any other kind, amounting sometimes to twenty or more, yea sometimes to thirty, standing so round and close together, that they seem to be a Nose-gay alone: their form is like some others, but that the Leaves are shorter and rounder, yet with a notch in the middle, like the rest, of a fair Yellow, &c. colour, neither very pale nor deep, with a White Eye or Circle in the bottom, about the middle of every Flower, giving them an extraordinary grace; after which comes round heads greater than the former, with a small pointel striking in the middle, in which is contained Seed of a blackish brown colour.

V. The round Leav'd, which Tabernmontanus, and Gerard, call *Sanicula alpina*; and Matthiolus, *Cortusa*, and we Bears-Ear fanicle; has a Root consisting of a thick Tuft of small whitish Threads, rather than Roots, much interlaced one among another: from whence spring up Leaves; first, such as are much crumpled, and as it were folded together, which afterwards open themselves into fair, broad and roundish Leaves, somewhat rough, or hairy, not only cut into five divisions, but somewhat notched also about the edges, of a dark green colour on the upper side, and more whitish green underneath. The Leaves of this Plant die down every Year, and rise up anew every Spring, whereas all other Bears-Ears keep their Leaves green all the Winter, especially the middlemost, which stand like a close head, the outwardmost for the most part perishing after Seed-



time. From among these Leaves rises up one or two naked round Stalks, five or six Inches high, bearing at the Tops several small Flowers, somewhat sweet, and like unto the purple Bears Ear, hanging down their Heads, consisting of five small pointed Leaves apiece, of a dark, reddish, purple Colour, with a white Circle or bottom in the middle, and some small threads therein: the Flowers being past, there appears small round Heads, somewhat longer than any of the former kinds of Bears Ears, standing upright upon their small foot Stalks, in which is contained small, round, and blackish Seed.

VI. *The Places.* The native places of these Plants are on the *Alpine Mountains*, and other like places, as the *Pyrenean*: those with the *blew Flower* and *Borrage Leaf*, grow on the *Mountains in Spain*, and on that side the *Pyreneans* next to *Spain*, from whence they have been Transplanted to us, and are only nourish'd up with us in *Gardens*.

VII. *The Times.* They all Flower in *April* and *May*; and their Seed is ripe in the end of *June*, or beginning of *July*: and sometimes they will Flower again in the end of *Summer*, or in *Autumn*, if the Season proves moist, rainy, and temperate. As for the great variety of these Flowers, *Parkinson* is of opinion, that they have risen from the Seed, according to the differing Climes and Soil in which it has been Sowed.

VIII. *The Qualities.* They are Temperate in respect of heat or cold; and dry in the first Degree. They are Cephalick, Neurotick and Arthritick, Vulnerary, Astringent, and Alterative.

IX. *The Specification.* It is a most admirable Vulnerary, as well for Internal as External Wounds.

X. *The Preparations.* The Shops keep nothing of it Prepared, but you may make therefrom, 1. *An expressed Liquid Juice.* 2. *An Inspissate Juice.* 3. *An Essence.* 4. *A Decoction in Wine.* 5. *An Oil.* 6. *An Ointment or Balsam.* 7. *A Spirituous Tincture.*

#### The Virtues.

XI. *The Expressed Liquid Juice.* Taken inwardly one or two spoonfuls at a time in a Glass of Tent or Red Wine, it stops inward Bleedings, and heals Wounds in the Stomach and Lungs: being snuff'd up the Nostrils it purges the Head and Brain of Phlegmatick and Serous Humors, and therefore is good against Epilepsies, Apoplexies, Vertigo's, Megrimms and other Head Diseases.

XII. *The Inspissate Juice.* Dissolved in Red Wine, and used as the former, it is prevalent to all the same Intentions, and against all the same Diseases: besides it strengthens the Stomach to a Miracle.

XIII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the *Expressed Liquid* and *Inspissate Juices*: besides which taken every day from j. to iij. spoonfuls in any proper Wine or other fit Vehicle, it prevails as a Vulnerary potion for the Curing of all sorts of new Wounds and old Ulcers, and is found to be a singular thing against the Palsie, dimness of Sight, and many other Diseases of the Head, Brain, and Nerves.

XIV. *The Decoction in Wine.* It is Vulnerary taken Inwardly, opens Obstructions of the Lungs, and causes free breathing, gives ease in Gripings of the Belly, and the Bloody Flux; for which Disease, also in a Diarrhea, and Lienteria, the *Liquid, Inspissate Juices* and *Essence* are all profitable.

XV. *The Oil.* It is made with Sallet Oil by boiling. It cures External Wounds, as *Camerarius* in his *Hortus Medicus* saith, tho' of the Nerves to a Miracle; discusses Swellings, eases pain, and is

found to be profitable in the Gout whether arising from a hot or cold Cause.

XVI. *The Balsam.* It has the Virtues of the *Oil*; but more excellent for the Cure of Wounds than it, especially of the Nerves, is good against the bitings of the Sea Hare, and of the Toad; and resolves *Oedema's*.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It cures Gripings of the Belly, the Dysentery, Convulsions, Fits of the Mother, and other Distempers of the Womb. Dose j. spoonful Morning and Evening.

XVIII. *Parkinson* says the Leaves of *Cortusa* tast a little hot, and if one of them be laid whole, without bruising, on the Cheeks of any tender Skinn'd Woman, it will raise an Orient Red Colour as if some *Fucus* had been laid on, which will pass away without any manner of hurt, or mark where it lay.

## CHAP. LX.

### BEETS Common and White.



I. **T**HE Names. This Plant is called by the *Arabians*, *Decka*, and *Calab*: by the *Grecians*, *τύτλον, & βέτλον*, *ab impulsu quod facile excrescat*, because it comes up in few days after the Sowing, and then grows very fast till it comes to its bigness. In *Latin*, *Beta*, *quoniam figuram literæ B dum semine turget referre videtur*, because the figure of it being in Seed, is somewhat like to the Greek Letter *Beta*, as *Columella* observes. And in *English*, it is called, *Beet*.

II. *The Kinds.* *Dioscorides* makes a *White* and a *Black*: So also *Theophrastus Hist. Plant. lib. 7. chap. 4.* who says, *Candida sapore nigra præstantior*: So *Pliny, lib. 19. chap. 8.* *Beta à colore duo genera Græci faciunt, nigrum & Candidum.* *Parkinson* is almost



almost of the opinion that the *Black Beet* of the *Ancients* was that we now call Our *Red Beets*: but Modern Authors have found out several other Kinds. As, 1. *Beta viridis Communis*, The Common Green Beet. 2. *Beta alba*, called also *Candida* & *Pallefcens*, The White Beet. 3. *Beta rubra nostra*, called also *nigra*, & *rubra vulgatio*, The Red Beet. 4. *Beta rubra*, called also, *Beta Romana*, *Beta rubra Rapæ radice*, *Rapum Rubrum*, *Rapum sativum Rubrum*, *Beta nigra Romana*, *Beta erythrorrhizos*, by *Lugdunensis*, The Roman Red Beet. 5. *Beta Cretica spinosa*, Prickly Beets of *Candia*. 6. *Beta Sylvestris maritima*, Sea Beets. 7. *Beta Lucia Syriaca*, Yellow Beets. 8. *Beta platycaulos*, *Beta Costa lata*, *alba Lutea*, *aurea*, *ruberrima*, *Italica*, *ficula*, The yellow or flat Stalk'd Beet. Of all which Kinds we shall only Treat of the first Four in this Book, as being only proper for this purpose. And of them, we shall Discourse of the two first Kinds in this Chapter.

III. The Description. Our Common Green Beet is almost like unto the White Beet, having a great long hard Root, of no use after Seed time, from whence springs up many large Leaves lying upon the Ground of a green Colour, amidst which rises up a large green Stalk crested, with some Branches and many Leaves thereon, almost up to the Top. The Flowers grow in long Tufts or Spikes, small at the ends and turning down their Heads, and yielding cornered Seed.



IV. Our Common White Beet has a long thick, great Root, and hard after bearing Seed, which endures all the Winter, and with its Leaves upon it, but perishing commonly the second Winter. From whence comes forth great broad Leaves, smooth and Plain, lying next the Ground; these says Parkinson, grow in hot Countries to be three Foot long and very broad, and in our Country they are very large but nothing near that Proportion, and they are of a whitish green Colour. From this Root rises up a Stalk great, strong, and Ribbed or Crested, bearing great store of Leaves upon it, almost up to the very top: the Flowers grow along the Stalks in long tufted

Spikes small at their extremities, and bending down their Heads, and they cluster together in shape like little Starrs; which being past, there are small pale greenish yellow Burrs, yielding cornered, and uneven prickly Seed.

V. The Places. The Green Beet Parkinson says has been found near the Salt Marshes by Rochester, in the Foot way going from the then Lady Levesons House thither. The White Beet is said to grow Wild upon the Sea Coast of Tenet, and divers other places by the Sea. They delight to grow in fat and moist Ground, but are chiefly nourished up with us in Gardens.

VI. The Times. They ought to be sown in the Spring: they flourish and are green all the Summer long, as also in Winter; and they Flower in the beginning of July, and the Seed is ripe in August.

VII. The Qualities. They are Temperate in respect to heat and moisture; and of a Nitrous Quality, Absterfive, a little Diuretick, Opening, Cephalick, and Hepatick, Ptarmick, Alterative, and Alexipharmick.

VIII. The Specification. They are found to be Specifick against Diseases of the Head and Brain.

IX. The Preparations. The Shops keep nothing thereof, but you may prepare therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Inspissate Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Decoction. 5. An Errhine. 6. A Cataplasme.

## The Virtues.

X. The Liquid Juice. It is Nitrous and cleansing: being taken vi. or viij. Spoonfuls at a time, at going to Bed for some Nights, it opens the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and is good against the Head Ach.

XI. The Inspissate Juice, made with Vinegar into the thickness of a Balsam, and apply'd to the Temples, prevails against the Inflammations of the Eyes, and mixed with Oil Olive, is good against Burnings and Scaldings.

XII. The Essence. It is good against the Yellow Jaundice, opens Obstructions both of Liver and Spleen, is good against the Vertigo, and the Bitings of any Venomous Creature. It is good against the Itch, the parts affected being bathed there with, and cleanses the Head of Dandriff, dry Scurff, Scabs, and heals fretting and running Sores, Ulcers and Herpes in the Head, Legs, or other Parts: it is also said to cure Baldness, and hinder the falling of the Hair. Dose 3. or 4. Spoonfuls or more.

XIII. The Decoction. If it is made with Equal parts of Water and Vinegar, it has all the Virtues of the Essence; besides it prevails against St. Anthony's Fire, and all other Inflammations in any Part.

XIV. The Errhine. It is made of the Liquid Juice iv. ounces, Niter half an ounce mixed and dissolved. Being snuff up the Nostrils it powerfully empties and cleanses the Head and Brain of superfluous Humors which cause the Apoplexy, Epilepsy, Vertigo, Megrim, Cephalalgia, Cephalæa, Lethargy, Carus, and other like Distempers of those Parts; it also eases the Tooth Ach, and pains in the Ears, and being outwardly apply'd, has all the Virtues of the Essence and Decoction.

XV. The Cataplasme. Made of the boiled Herbs with or without the Addition of a little Niter and Alum, and apply'd, it is good against all sorts of Wheals, Pushes, Boils, Blains, and other eruptions of the Skin, as also for Chilblains or Kibes whether on Hands or Feet, speedily Curing them.



## C H A P. LXI.

## B E E T S Red.

I. **THE Names.** This Plant is called by the *Greeks*, *Τεύτλον ῥιζορ*: by the *Latines*, *Beta rubra*, and *Beta nigra*: and by us in *English*, The *Red Beet*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the third Species of the Generick Kind, as is before declared.



III. *The Description.* This Kind differs nothing from the former White Beet, but only that it is not so great, and that both the Roots and Leaves are somewhat red: the Root is red, spongy, and not used to be eaten. The Leaves are in some more red than in others, which have but red Veins or Streaks in them; in some of a fresh red, in others of a very dark red, streaked here and there confusedly. The Flowers and Seed differ little or nothing from the former.

IV. *The Places.* It grows where the former grows, and with us are only brought up in Gardens.

V. *The Times.* They are Sowed in the Spring: endure all Summer, and sometimes all Winter, Flower in July, and the Seed is Ripe in August.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is temperate as to heat and cold; and dry in the first, some think in the second Degree. It is Absterfivè, Astringent, and Vulnerary: Cephalick, Splenetick, Nephritick, Flysterick and Arthritick, Alterative, and Analeptick.

VII. *The Specification.* It is a peculiar thing for stopping the Blood in any kind of Hemorrhage.

VIII. *The Preparations.* They are the same with the former, as, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Infusate Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Decoction. 5. An Errhine. 6. A Cataplasm.

## The Virtues.

IX. All these Preparations have the same Virtues with the former, and may be given in the same manner and Dose. But this difference is observed, that these are more Astringent or Binding; and therefore, both the Liquid and Solid Juices, the Essence and Decoction, all very effectually stop the overflowing of the Terms in Women, and stop other Fluxes of Blood: and are more effectual for curing any Ulcer, or running Sore, and to dry up and remove moist and running Scabs, and other like defecations of the Skin. They are good against the Bloody Flux, and other Fluxes of the Bowels, stop the Whites in Women, and help the Yellow Jaundice, and this more especially if daily given for some time mixed with a small quantity of the Tincture of Mars.

## C H A P. LXII.

## B E E T S Roman.

I. **THE Names.** This Plant is called in *Greek*, *τεύτλον ρωμαϊκόν*: In *Latin*, *Beta Romana*, *Romana rubra*, *Raposa*, *Beta rubra radice Rapa*, *radice rubra crassa*; and in *English*, *Roman Beet*, *Red Beet*, and *Carrot Beet*.

II. *The Kind.* It is our Fourth Species of Beets, and a singular Kind.



III. *The Descriptions.* It has a Root red as Blood, and as long and as big as the greatest Carrot, very red both within and without, very sweet and good, and fit to be eaten (which none of the former are) and sometimes the Root is short like a Turnep, whence it took the Name Rapa and Raposa: From this Root springs up a Stalk, higher than our Common Red Beet, which in its make and form of the Leaves, and proportion, differs little or nothing from the former, but only are



are of a better taste, and of a red Colour like the former Beer. Gerard says, they are of a very red Colour, and that they, as well as the Root, Stalk, and Flowers, are repleat with a perfect purple Juice, tending to Redness: the middle Rib of the Leaves is for the the most part very broad and thick, like the middle part of the Cabbage Leaf, which is equal in goodness with Cabbage being boiled: the Flowers (excepting the height of the Colour) and the Seed are all one with the former Common Red Kind. Gerard says that in 1596. it grew with him to the height of viij. Cubits, which is xij. Feet, and did bring forth its rough and unpleasing Seed very plentifully. With this Plant (says he) Nature seems to Play and Sport her self: for the Seeds taken from that Plant, which was altogether of one Colour, being Sown, do bring forth Plants of many and variable Colours, very beautiful. Now if I may be admitted to render a Reason of this Variety, I am of opinion it is from the differing Soils in which they are Sown, which thing I have observed in several other Plants, even to admiration.

IV. *The Places.* It is Originally a Foreign Plant, and brought to us out of Italy, but now is become a free Denizon, or rather a Native of our Country, in which it thrives as well as in any place of the World. It is nourish'd with us only in Gardens where it prospers very well.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers in the latter end of June if the Season is warm, or beginning of July; and yields its ripe Seed in August.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is temperate as to heat and cold, and dry in the end of the first Degree, Traumatick, very Astringent, and something Styptick withall, Splenetick, and Hysterick, Alterative, and Analeptick.

VII. *The Specification.* It is a peculiar thing for stopping Hemorrhages.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may Prepare from it 1. A Liquid Juice. An Inspissate Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Decoction. 5. A Cataplasm. 6. A Saline Tincture.

#### The Virtues.

IX. *The Liquid Juice.* Given to iij. or iv. ounces in White Wine, it is good against the Yellow Jaundice: it also stops all Fluxes of Blood in the internal parts causing Spittings, Vomiting, or pissing of Blood; besides which it is admirable for the cure of a Dysentery, and other Fluxes of the Bowels, very much strengthening them.

X. *The Inspissate Juice.* Being reduced to Powder, and strewed upon any bleeding Wound, it presently stops the bleeding. So also being dissolved, in Vinegar or Oxycrate, and then Stuphes to be dipt in and apply'd. This Juice dissolved in Syrup of Limons, and made into a Lohoch, is excellent to strengthen a Weak Stomach, being sometimes taken with a Liquorice Stick.

XI. *The Essence.* Being taken daily with Tinctura Martis, it powerfully opens Obstructions of the Spleen: And being taken with Crocus Martis Astringens, it powerfully stops the overflowing of the Courses.

XII. *The Decoction.* It has the Virtues of the Juices and Essence, but is somewhat weaker, and therefore ought to be taken longer. It will be better if it be made with Red Stiptick Wine, or with the Roughest Red Florence.

XIII. *The Cataplasm.* If it is made of the raw Leaves and apply'd, it removes Dandriff or the white Scurff, the place being first well rubbed with Sal Nitre; it also stops the spreading of running Sores, and helps Scald-Heads, (if mixed with a

little Nitre) as also the Tinea, Alopecia, and other ill-natured breakings out of those parts, which cause the Hair to fall. If it is made of the boiled Leaves, it is good against Burnings and Scaldings, Inflammations, and other hot Tumors, Tubercles, Wheals and such like, proceeding from Inflamed Blood and Choler.

XIV. *The Saline Tincture.* It is good against Scabs, Itch, Scurff, Dandriff, Scales, Scurvey, Spots, Lice, Nits, &c. Chilblains, Kibed Heels, the parts affected being often washed, and sometimes well soaked in the same.

XV. *It is used (I mean the Root) as a Sallet, and to adorn and furnish out Dishes of Meat withall,* being as sweet and good as any Carrot: and if boild as Carrots, and eaten with Butter, Vinegar, Salt and Pepper, it makes a most admirable Dish, and very agreeable with the Stomach.

## CHAP. LXIII.

### BELL-FLOWER *Small.*

I. **T**HE Names. Some Authors will allow this Plant no Greek Name; but others suppose it to be the same with Dioscorides his *φύττεμα*: It is called in Latin, *Campanula*: and in English, *Bell Flower*.

*Bell-flower-round-leaved*



II. *The Kinds.* Authors make almost an Infinite number of Kinds, amongst which are the Throat Worts, Campions, Rampions, and several other Nominals, so that they run into so great Confusion about them that it is not easy to be set right. To avoid therefore all this clutter and trouble, we shall Treat of those otherwise Denominated under their proper Titles and Names they are best known by; and in this and the succeeding Chapter, discourse only of the Chief of those which are peculiarly called *Bell-Flower*.



*Flowers.* Of the *Bell-Flowers* of which we shall take notice, there are two Principal Kinds, viz. 1. *The Small Bell-Flower*, of which we Treat in this Chapter. 2. *The Great Bell-Flower*; of which in the next Chapter.

III. Of the *Small Bell-flower*, we take notice of three kinds: 1. *Campanula Cerulea vel Rotundifolia*, Blew or Round-leav'd Bell-flower. 2. *Campanula alba*, White Bell-flower. 3. *Campanula lutea*, Yellow Bell-flower.

IV. The Description. The Blew or Round-leav'd has a small thready Root, from whence rises up Leaves which lye upon the ground, round and small, almost like unto a Violet-leaf, but rounder, and snipped or dented, from whence rise up divers weak, slender Stalks about two foot high, set from the bottoms to the tops, with many very small, long, narrow leaves, where the flowers stand upon small long stalks, very like in fashion and bigness unto the small Garden Rampions, but of a perfect blew colour, most commonly turning towards Purple, and sometimes White, tho' seldom: after which follows small Seeds, in small Heads, like those of Rampions.

V. The White Bell-flower (which some account a kind of Wild Rampion) is a small Plant with a slender Root, of the bigness of a small straw, with some strings springing from it. The leaves are somewhat long, smooth, and of a perfect green colour, lying flat upon the ground. From thence rise small tender stalks set here and there with a few leaves; and the flowers grow at the tops of them of a Milk-white colour.

VI. The Yellow Bell-flower is a very beautiful Plant of an handful high: It has roots like to the Blew or Round-leav'd; and the leaves are almost like to the same, save that those which lie next the ground are not so round as the former, a little larger, and longish, and some of them a little dented about the edges; the flowers in their way and manner of growing, are like the former, but differ only in the colour, these being of a pale yellow.

VII. The Places. They grow wild in most places in England, especially upon barren sandy Heaths, and such other like places.

VIII. The Times. They flower all the Summer long, some continuing till the cold of Autumn makes them decay.

IX. The Qualities. They are cold and dry in the first degree, of the nature of Rampions: Astringent, Stomatick, and Alterative.

X. Preparations. You may make therefrom, 1. A distilled Water of the whole Plant. 2. A Cataplasm of the Root.

#### The Virtues.

XI. The Distilled Water. It is good against discolorings and deformities of the skin, cleansing it, and making the face very clear and fair.

XII. The Cataplasm. The roots beaten into a Mass, and made into a Cataplasm, with Meal of Lupins and Vinegar, is restrictive, abates the Milk in Womens Breasts, takes away spots and marks of the skin, and removes many other of its deformities.

II. The Kinds. This is the second Species of our Generick Kinds, and is three-fold. 1. *Campanula persicifolia*, the Peach-leav'd Bell-flower. 2. *Campanula latifolia*, *Campanula pyramidalis*, *Campanula major*; the Pyramidal milky Bell-flower. 3. *Viola Mariana*, Coventry Bells.



III. The Description. The Peach-leav'd Bell flower has a Root very small, white, and thready, creeping under the upper crust of the ground, so that oft times the heat and drought of the Summer does parch it, and cause it to wither away: from whence springs many Tufts or Branches of Leaves lying upon the ground, which are long and narrow, much like to an Almond or Peach leaf, being finely nick'd about the edges, and of a sad green colour. From among these rise up divers Stalks two foot high, or more, set with Leaves to the middle; and from thence upwards, with many flowers standing on small Foot-stalks, one above another, with a small Leaf at the foot of every one. The flowers stand in small green husks, small and round at bottom, but wider open at the brim, and ending in five corners, with a three forked Clapper in the middle, set about with some small threads tipt with Yellow, which flowers in some Plants are pure White, but in others of a pale Blew, or Watchet colour, having little or no scent at all: the Seed is small, and contained in round flat Heads, or Seed-Vessels.

IV. The *Lactescens Pyramidalis* is a great Bell-flower, whose Root is thick and whitish, yielding more store of Milk, being broken, (as the Leaves and Stalks also do) than any other of the Bell-flowers, every one of which do yield Milk, some more, some less: From this Root rises divers Stalks, a yard high, or better, on which grow divers smooth, dark, green Leaves, broad at the bottom, and small at the point, somewhat unevenly notch'd about the edges, and standing upon longer Foot-stalks below, than those above. The Flowers are Blew, and in some White, not so great or large as the former, but near of the same fashion, growing thicker, and more plentifully together,

## C. LXIV.

### BELL-FLOWER Great.

I. THE Names. It has no known Greek Name: the Latins call it *Campanula*, and *Campanula magna*: in English, Great Bell-flower.



ther, with smaller Leaves among them, bushing thick below, and rising smaller and thinner up to the Top like a Pyramis, or Spire Steeple.

## Bell flower Milkey



but the next year when it runs up to Seed, it grows hard and perishes. From hence spring up Leaves of a pale or fresh green colour, long and narrow next to the bottom, and broader from the middle to the end, somewhat round pointed, a little hairy all over, and dented about the edges. The next year after the Sowing, rise up Stalks, something hairy also, and branching forth from the Root into divers Arms, upon which grow several Leaves, smaller than the former, and of a darker green color. At the end of every Branch stand the Flowers in green husks, from whence come large, round, hollow Bells, swelling out in the middle, and rising somewhat above it, like the neck of a Pot, and then ending in five Corners, which are either of a fair or faint White, or of a pale blew Purplish colour, and sometimes of a deeper Purple or Violet. The Flowers being past, there grows up great, square, or corner'd Seed-vessels, in which are contained in five several Cells, or Divisions, small, hard, brown, shining flat Seed.

VI. The Places. All these grow with us in Gardens, where they are brought up for the beauty of their Flowers. The Coventry Bells, Ray says, grow in Woody and Mountainous places; and Gerard says, in dark Valleys, under Hedges, among Bushes, more especially about Coventry, whence the name, and where they grow very plentifully abroad in the fields, but are also with them Nursed up in Gardens, as they are with us in London, which pleasant Bell-flower, is kept chiefly for its beauty sake, though its Root is also eaten as Rampions are. The first of them also requires to be planted in shady places.

VII. The Times. These plants are to be continued by sowing them every other year. They flower generally all the Summer Months: but the Peach-leav'd flower for the most part earlier, than the others: The Coventry Bells flower in June, July, and August, and the Seed ripens in the mean Season, in regard they bring not forth their flowers all at once, but as some flower, others feed.

VIII. The Qualities. They are cold and dry in the first degree, Astringent, Traumatick, Vulnerary, Stomatick, and Alterative.

IX. The Preparations. You may make thereof, 1. An expressed Juice of the whole Plant. 2. A Decoction thereof in Wine. 3. A Cataplasme.

### The Virtues:

X. The Expressed liquid Juice. Being bathed upon any Inflamed Part, it abates the Inflammation, and stops the fluxion. And if a little Alum and Honey is dissolved therein, it makes a good Lotion for old Sores, running Ulcers, and a virulent Gonorrhæa in Man or Woman.

XI. The Decoction in Wine. It makes an extraordinary Gargle for a sore Mouth and Throat, inflammation of the Uvula and Almonds, more especially if a little Alum and Honey be also dissolved therein.

XII. The Cataplasme. It allays Inflammations, eases Pain, and represses the Flux of Humors.



Coventry  
Bell flower.

V. Coventry Bells is a Plant which has a White Root, which being young as in the first year Sowing, is tender, and often eaten as other Rampions are;

I. THE Names. It is called by the Arabians, Chastra: by the Greeks, Κίτρυ, ἢ Φυχίτρονον: by the Latins, Bctonica: and by us English, Bctony.

N

II. The

## CHAP. LXV.

### BETONY Wood.

I. THE Names. It is called by the Arabians, Chastra: by the Greeks, Κίτρυ, ἢ Φυχίτρονον: by the Latins, Bctonica: and by us English, Bctony.



II. *The Kinds.* There are two principal kinds thereof, 1. *Kisegv, Betonica, Betony*; which is that of the Wood: it is twofold, viz. either with *Purple Flowers*, which is most common; or with *White*: which two kinds differ nothing one from another, but only in the colour of the Flowers. 2. *Betonica Aquatica, Water Betony*, of which in the next Chapter.



III. *The Description.* Wood Betony has a Root consisting of many white, thready strings like unto those of Plantane, which generally endures all the Winter; from whence rises many Leaves, the lowermost whereof are somewhat broad, and roundish at the ends, slightly indented about the edges, and stand upon pretty long Footstalks: but those which grow by two and two at the Joints upon small slender four square and somewhat hairy Stalks, are much lesser. The Stalk is for the most part near a Foot high, and sometimes higher, and perishes every year, upon which grow some Leaves, and whereon are set several spiked heads of Flowers, of a Redish or Purple colour, spotted with white spots all over. The Seeds are longish and uneven, and of a blackish colour.

IV. That with White Flowers is wholly like to the former, save that the spiked heads of Flowers are somewhat smaller, the Flowers without any spots in them, and the Leaves something greener. There is also a Mountain Betony, which differs nothing from the first, but that the Leaves, Stalks and Flowers are smaller. There is a Broad Leav'd Betony, which differs not from the first, but in the Leaves, being two or three times as big, a larger and higher Stalk, and the Flowers being larger; this is called *Betonica Danica*. Also *Betonica Alopecuros*, Fox-tail Betony, so called from the form of the spiked head of flowers, but is every way less, as also are the Stalks and Leaves.

V. *The Places.* The common sort is usually found in Woods and Coppes, and other shady places throughout the Kingdom, and is many times nursed up in Gardens: but that with the White Flower is more usually found in stiff Clay Grounds, and in the Woods by Bromly in Kent. The first I have seve-

ral times found in, and by the Borders of *Hornsey Wood*, not far off the *New River*. That with the other are also nourished up in Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* They flower for the most part in the Months of *June* and *July*, and the Seed is ripe not long after.

VII. *The Qualities.* They are hot and dry in the second degree; Absterfive, Digestive, Discussive, Incarnative, and Vulnerary; Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomatick, Cardiack, Hysterick, Arthritick, Alterative, and Analeptick.

VIII. *The Specification.* They are peculiar against Diseases of the Head and Nerves, as Falling-sickness, Apoplexies, Palsies, Gouts, Madness, &c.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may make therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice by Expression. 2. A Decoction. 3. A Wine. 4. A Vinegar. 5. A Syrup. 6. A Spiritous Tincture. 7. An Oily Tincture. 8. A Saline Tincture. 9. An Acid Tincture. 10. An Essence. 11. A fixed Salt. 12. An Ointment. 13. A Balsam. 14. A Cataplasma.

#### *The Virtues.*

X. *The liquid Juice by Expression*, being drunk to six or eight spoonfuls it is good against Fits, chiefly the Falling-sickness, Convulsions, and the like; and being mixed with a little powder of Sena, it prevails against Madness: being snuffed up the Nostrils, it purges the Head of Flegm, and Cold Humors, and gives relief in the Apoplexy, Palsie, Lethargy, and other like Diseases.

XI. *The Decoction.* If made with Wine, it is Stomatick and Cephalick, comforts the Nerves and Brain, refreshes the Spirits, opens Obstructions of Liver and Spleen, and is said to kill Worms, ease the Gripings of the Bowels, and the Colick. Dose half a pint.

XII. *The Vinegar.* It is Stomatick, and being drunk to half a pint, or three quarters of a pint, it is said to cure Quartan Agues, and abate the Humors which fall into the Eyes, and cause Blindness.

XIII. *The Syrup.* It is Pectoral, and causes an Expectoration of Flegm, and other tough Viscous Humors out of the Lappets of the Lungs, and other places adjacent. It may be taken with a Liquorice stick.

XIV. *The Spiritous Tincture.* It is a notable Medicine against all cold and moist Diseases, of the Head, Brain, Nerves and Joints; is good against Epilepsies, Apoplexies, Convulsions, Palsies, Pains and Aches of those parts; Gouts, and Weakness of the Joints, &c. Dose from half an ounce to six drams, in some fit Vehicle.

XV. *The Oily Tincture.* This is of chief use for external Applications, and is profitable to be anointed upon any pained place, proceeding from Cold, Blows, Bruises, or other weaknesses of the Limbs and Joints: being bathed upon the Head, it eases the Head-ach, Megrin, and other like Diseases.

XVI. *The Saline Tincture.* Outwardly bathed upon the Joints, it prevails against the Gout, and other pains of the Limbs, Palsies, Convulsions, or shrinking of the Sinews: drunk in White Wine from one dram to two drams, it is good against the Jaundice and Dropsie, and opens Obstructions of the Reins: and given to Children from a scruple to a dram, it kills Worms, and is good against the Rickets, and expels Sand and Gravel in Reins, Ureters, and Bladder.

XVII. *The Acid Tincture.* This possibly is one of the greatest Stomaticks in the World, and is an excellent thing to strengthen the Head, Stomach, and Womb, to help Digestion, cause a good Appetite,



tite, open Obstructions of the *Viscera*, and to cure Coughs, Colds, Wheezings, Shortness of Breath, stop inward Bleedings, and to remove Catarrhs, which fall upon the Lungs. Dose, a quarter of a Spoonful, more or less, in a Glass of Generous Wine.

XVIII. *The Essence.* Taken inwardly two or three or more Spoonfuls at a time, Morning and Evening, it is good against the Jaundice, Falling-sickness, Convulsions, Megrim, Vertigo, Stuffings of the Lungs, Gripping pains of the Bowels, and Wind Colick; it opens the Womb, and provokes the Terms in Women when stopt. It is a famous Traumatick, or Vulnerary, causing a speedy healing to old Sores, Running Ulcers, and the like; and given to Women in Travel, it causes speedy Delivery, and gives ease in the After pains, which many times come through taking cold.

XIX. *The fixed Salt.* Given to one scruple with a little Juice of Limons and Canary, it stops Vomiting; and mixt with Essence of Winter Cherries, it provokes Urine, removes stoppages of the Urinary Parts, and expels Sand, Gravel, and other Tartarous and Viscous Matter.

XX. *The Ointment.* It eases Pains and Aches, discusses Tumors, relaxes shrunk Sinews; dissolves Congelations, and is good against Indurations of what kind soever, except they be Cancerous.

XXI. *The Balsam.* It is an excellent thing for the curing of Green Wounds, in any part of the Body, but chiefly of the Nervous Parts. It Digests, Cleanses, Incarnates, Cicatrizes, and heals Wounds of all sorts after an admirable manner; and in many cases performs the Cure in a few days time; dressing the Wound with it twice a day.

XXII. *The Cataplasim.* Made of the green Herb, and applied to the Head, it eases the Head-ach and Megrim in an hours time: applied to hard Tumors, it softens them, and discusses the Humors gathered together in Contusions, where no Bones nor Vessels are broken. Applied to inveterate Scabs, it removes them, qualifies the sharp Humors, and in a short time after cures them.

## C. D. S. LXVI.

### Water BETONY.

I. **T**HE Names. It knows no Greek Name: but it is called in Latin by Dodoneus, Gerard, Lobel, Lugdunensis, Parkinson, Tabernmontanus, and Turner, *Betonica Aquatica*, and *Aquatilis*. Tragus makes it his greater *Ocimastrum*: Thallius calls it *Scrophularia major aquatica*: so also Bauhinus: We in English call it *Water Betony*, and some *Brown-wort*; but this Name is more proper for the *Scrophularia major*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the second Species of the Generick; and is also either the Greater, or the Lesser: the Greater is called in Latin and English, as aforesaid; the Lesser is called by Lobel, *Betonica aquatica minor*: Camerarius, in his Epitome of *Mathiolus*, calls it *Scrophularia femina*: and in English, *Water Betony the lesser*, *Brook-Betony*, and *Bishops-leaves*.

III. *The Description.* The Greater has a Root consisting of a thick bush of strings and threads proceeding from a head; or of a great number of Fibrous strings, which being fastned to the bottom of the Stalk, feeds it with nourishment in Summer, at the end of which time it perishes. From this Root the Stalks

rise up somewhat like Fig-wort, but generally higher, square, hard, and green, sometimes brown, set with dark, broad, green Leaves, so very like unto those of Fig-wort, that they have been often mistaken one for another, being also dented about the edges, but with rounder Notches; by the careful observing whereof, they may be distinguished; and in that respect something resembling Wood Betony Leaves, but of a larger size, and two for the most part set at a joint. At the tops of the Branches, as also at the Joints, where the Leaves come out from the middle of the Stalk upwards, come forth many round bellied Flowers, which being perfectly blown, are open at the brims, but divided into two parts, the uppermost like a hood; the lowermost like a lip hanging down, of a dark red color: which being past away, there comes round heads with small points in the ends, containing small and brownish Seed.

### Water-Betony



IV. The Lesser kind has thready Roots almost like the former, differing only in smallness: the Stalks are square and green; the Leaves round almost, but yet pointed, and of the same dark green colour, and the Flowers are of a sad red or purple. In a word, this is in all things like the former, save only in the magnitude; this being lower and lesser by three parts in four.

V. *The Places.* The first grows in England as frequently as any Herb whatever, by Brooks, Banks of Rivers, and other Water-courses; but is seldom found far from the Water-side, unless it has been planted in a Garden. The other is found in like places in Germany near Basil, and grows also with us, if planted in Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* They flower in July and August, and their Seed is ripe in a little time after.

VII. *The Qualities.* They are hot and dry in the end of the first degree, or beginning of the second: they are Astringent, Absterive, Digestive, Traumatick, and Vulnerary: Pectoral, Hepatick, Splenetic, Hysterick, and Arthritic; Alterative, and Analeptic.



VIII. *The Specification.* They are peculiar, the Greater especially, for the curing of the Kings-Evil, and other malign and inveterate Sores and Ulcers.

IX. *The Preparations.* There may be made from it: 1. *A liquid Juice by Expression.* 2. *A Powder.* 3. *An Essence.* 4. *A Decoction.* 5. *A Wine.* 6. *A Spiritous Tincture.* 7. *An Oily Tincture.* 8. *A Saline Tincture.* 9. *An Acid Tincture.* 10. *A Spirit.* 11. *A Salt.* 12. *A Wash.* 13. *An Oil.* 14. *A Balsam.* 15. *A Cataplasm.* 16. *A Distilled Water.* 17. *A Syrup.*

#### *The Virtues.*

X. *The liquid Juice of the whole Plant.* Mixed with Vinegar, and applied Morning and Night, it wafts and dissolves any hardness or swelling: The Juice drank five or six spoonfuls at a time, cures the spitting of Blood, bleeding at Nose, bloody Flux, overflowing of the Terms, and represses the afflux of Blood to the Tumor in the Throat, called a *Quinsy*.

XI. *The Powder of the whole Plant.* Being drunk Morning and Evening to one dram, in any convenient Vehicle, it is much commended against the Piles or Hemorrhoids.

XII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, besides which, being taken inwardly every day for some time, Morning, Noon and Night, to three or four ounces, it wonderfully prevails against the Kings-Evil, and induces Running Sores, Old Ulcers, and Fistula's in what part of the Body soever to a speedy healing: It is also good against Scabs, Itch, Boils, Wheals, Pusles, Leprosie, being daily drunk, as aforesaid, and outwardly bathed, and applied upon the Parts affected.

XIII. *The Decoction in Water.* It allays the heat of Fevers, quenches Thirst, and is good to Bath with in Leprosies, Scabs, Breakings out, or any other defilements of the Skin: It also gently discusses Inflammations, and other hot Tumors.

XIV. *The Wine.* Drunk daily as a Diet Drink, wonderfully prevails against the *Scrophula*, or Kings Evil, and strikes at the Root of the Disease, whether in Old or Young: resists Vapors in Women, and helps Fits of the Mother.

XV. *The Spiritous Tincture.* Being taken for some time, it warms and desiccates a cold and moist habit of Body, comforts a cold and moist Brain, gives relief to the Nerves, strengthens the Liver and Spleen; and, as I have been told by a very understanding Midwife, it so corroborates and warms the Womb, as to cure Barrenness in Women, the which it has done in several. Dose, half a Spoonful Morning and Evening, in a Glass of Generous Wine.

XVI. *The Oily Tincture.* It cures wounds of the Nerves, takes away Pains and Aches of the Joints, proceeding from a cold Cause, gives relief in Rheumatisms; and softens cold indurated Tumors. Taken daily inwardly from ten drops to twenty, in any proper Vehicle, Morning and Night, it cleanses the Reins and Womb of cold slimy Humors, and other Tartarous Mucilage.

XVII. *The Saline Tincture.* It is a famous thing to clear the Skin of Tanning, Sun-burning, Freckles, Lentils, Scabs, Itch, Scurf, Dandriff, Boils, Wheals, Scabs, Leprosie, and other like Defædations, being bathed therewith Morning and Evening for 3 or 4 days, more or less, as occasion requires: 'tis possible it may take off the old Skin, under which a new one will come beforehand. It ought to be used

simple of it self at first; afterwards it is to be weakened, and so used, mixed with Rose-water.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* Being taken for some considerable time Morning, Noon and Night, from thirty to sixty drops in any convenient Vehicle, it cures the Scurvy radically with all its Symptoms, and destroys that humor which is the cause of the Kings-Evil; it also kills Worms in Children, and by correcting the matter which breeds them, prevents their future increase.

XIX. *The Spirit.* It is Cordial, Hysterick, Arthritic, and Antiscorbutick, and has the Virtues of the Spiritous Tincture. Dose one or two spoonfuls.

XX. *The Salt.* It opens obstructions of the Womb, Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, carries off Watry and Hydropick Humors; is good against the Rickets in Children, and the Cachexia in Virgins, and other young Women: and dissolved in Water, is good to wash the face withal, to clear it of Sun-burnings, Tanning, Roughness, and other like deformities of the Skin.

XXI. *The Wash.* It is made of the clarified Juice mixed with the fixed Salt: to a quart of the Juice, one ounce of Salt. It is an admirable thing indeed for the Face and Skin, clearing it, as it were, of all deformities: and if to the former composition, an ounce of pure Nitre is added, it abates all manner of heats, redness of the Skin, Inflammations, and other like disaffections. If also yet you add thereto *Lac Sulphuris*, or if but flowers of Sulphur, you will find it effectual against the Itch, Pimples, Scabs, Scurfs, Dandriff, Leprosie, and all other Breakings out of the Skin whatsoever.

XXII. *The Oil by Infusion or Insolation.* It eases Pains, discusses Tumors, and is good against Contusions or Bruises in what part of the Body soever.

XXIII. *The Balsam.* It has all the Virtues of the Saline Tincture; and, being applied, is a singular thing against Wounds new or old, running Sores, old Ulcers, malign Fistula's, and it cures Scrophula's, or Kings-Evil Sores almost to a miracle, for which reason it is called by some Authors *Scrophularia*; it being also applied to the Gout, and other Aches and Pains of the Limbs, it gives ease to them, by attracting the Humor through the Pores of the Skin.

XXIV. *The Cataplasm.* It is Discussive, wafts and dissolves Swellings, and is profitable, being applied in Strumatick, or Kings-Evil Tumors. If the Cataplasm is only made of the green leaves beaten, and mixed with a little Vinegar, and applied Morning, Noon and Night, it does not only dissolve hard Tumors, but heals old, rotten, corrupted, spreading and fretting Sores and Ulcers, corrects the virulence of Pocky Sores, and stops the malignity of Cancers; and this more especially, if a proportional quantity of *Litharge*, or *Saccharum Saturni* be added thereto.

XXV. *The Distilled Water.* It is Cosmetick, and is of the nature of the Saline Tincture, and the Wash, having the same Virtues; but it is nothing near so powerful. However, where water is necessary to be mixed with them, this, as being more homogeneous, may be used in its place.

XXVI. *The Syrup; if it is made with Honey and Juice of Limons, or pure Wine Vinegar.* It is an excellent thing to open Obstructions of the Brest and Lungs, help shortness of Breath, cause Expectoration, and to expel those gross and obnoxious Humors which cause the Scurvy, Gout, Rheumatism, Kings-Evil, and are the Ground and Foundation of all sorts of Fevers happening to the Bodies of Human Kind.



## CHAP. LXVII.

### BIFOIL, or TWA-BLADE.

**I. THE Names.** It was not known to the Greeks, unless the *Opgis* of Pliny be it, which some Herborists believe, and therefore call this Plant by that name: in Latin it is also called *Ophris* and *Bifolium*: and in English, Bifoil or Twablade.

**II. The Kinds.** There are two Kinds thereof, viz.  
1. *Ophris seu Bifolium, sylvestre vulgare, Common Wood Bifoil or Twablade.* 2. *Bifolium Palustre, Marsh Bifoil.*



**III. The Description.** It has a Root somewhat sweet, with a head or top somewhat thick (which some call a Bulbe) shooting many long Fibres downwards, from which Root rises up a round green Stalk, bare or naked next to the ground, for an Inch, two, or three, to the middle thereof, as the Plant is in age and growth, as also from the middle upwards unto the Flowers, having only two broad and short ribb'd pale green or hoary Leaves, very like unto Plantane leaves, but whiter, and set at the middle of the Stalk, one on each side, and encompassing it at bottom: sometimes it will have three leaves, but is more rare; and this some account to be a different sort, but is rather to be looked upon to be *lusus Naturæ*, in ground which abounds with too much nourishment, the which happens also to many other Plants; (as in Herb Paris, which has sometimes five, six or seven leaves, and sometimes it wants a leaf of its ordinary number being but four, and in common Trefoil, which usually has but three leaves, yet oftentimes four are found upon several Stalks, &c.) the Flowers at top of the Stalks, are in a spiked head, and they are many, small, long, whitish green, and almost shapeless bodies, somewhat like unto some of the Orchides or Vulgar Satyrions: these passing away, there remains small heads, with a kind of dust in them, which is accounted to be the Seed.

**IV. The Marsh Bifoil** has a Root which runs or creeps in the Earth, and the whole plant is so little differing from the former, that the differences have scarcely been observed, whereby several have been deceived in their judgments; but in these following particulars it is distinguished, 1. In its Site, or place of growing. 2. In the smallness of the Plant, this being much lesser, and having sometimes three leaves also. 3. In the Greenness, the other being of a more hoary White. 4. In the spike of Flowers, which although of the same fashion or colour, or very near, yet are less by far.

**V. The Places.** The first usually grows in Woods or Copses, and such like shady places, as between Highgate and Hamstead, also at Southfleet in Kent; in a Wood by Longfield Downs: in the Woods by Oventen near to Clare in Essex; as also in the Woods by Dunmow in Essex. The other grows not only in the low wet grounds between Hatfield and St. Albans, but also in divers places in Rumney Marsh.

**VI. The Times.** They flower for the most part in May, and so continue to the middle or end of June, and then wholly wither away, and are gone in July.

**VII. The Qualities.** They are Temperate in their first qualities, Glutinative and Vulnerary; Neurotick, Arthritick, and Alterative.

**VIII. The Specification.** They are Adapted for the Cure of Green Wounds.

**IX. The Preparations.** These may be made from it: 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction in Wine. 4. A Pouder. 5. An Ointment. 6. A Balsam. 7. A Cataplasme.

#### The Virtues.

**X. The liquid Juice.** If mixt with Nitre, it always lays Inflammations; and gives ease in the Gout; so also if mixed with Vinegar.

**XI. The Essence.** It is Glutinous, and heals Wounds (if simple) by washing them therewith; more especially if at time of using, it is mixed with a third part of Wine, or Spirit of Wine: it prevails also against Ruptures.

**XII. The Decoction.** It is of admirable use in dislocated Contusions, for it draws forth the scattered and bruised Blood, cleanses the Wound, and disposes it to healing.

**XIII. The pouder of the Leaves.** It disposes green wounds to healing, dries and heals.

**XIV. The Ointment.** It softens, gives ease in pain, and cleanses Wounds without any sharpness, whether new or old: and is of good use in Ruptures.

**XV. The Balsam.** It cures all simple wounds commonly at one dressing; and if they be contused and dilacerated, it digests them, cleanses them, and after an admirable manner speedily heals them.

**XVI. The Cataplasme.** It discusses soft Tumors, and Contusions, where the skin is not broken: and applied upon an old open Ulcer, causes a separation of the Stuff from the quick flesh, and disposes it for healing, to be accomplished by other proper Medicines.

## CHAP. LXVIII.

### BIND-WEED Common.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek, by Galen, and Paulus Aegineta, *Σμίλαξ λεῖς*: in Latin, *Smilax lavis*: it is called *Lavis* or *Smooth*, because the Stalks and Branches have no prickles at all. Pliny lib. 21. cap. 5. calls it *Convolvulus*, and *Campa-*



*Campanella*, *Convolvulus albus*, also *Funis Arborum*: others call it *Volubilis*, also *Volubilis communis*: and in English, *Bindweed*, *White Bindweed*, and the *Greater Bindweed*.



*Gr. Bind weed common.*

II. *The Kinds.* Of the *Bind-weeds* we have to treat of in this Work, there are chiefly three, 1. *The Common great Bindweed*, as also the *Lessaforenamed*, of which in this Chap. 2. *The lesser Blew Bind-weed*. 3. *The Black Bind-weed*. Of which in the two next.



*Great Bindweed*

III. *The Description.* The Root is whitish and small, of the largeness of Quitch-grass, or something

bigger, running much under ground, and shooting forth again in several places: it lives under ground all Winter, and shoots forth a fresh every Spring, and yelds Milk, being broken. From this Root springs up slender winding Salks, which run up, and wind themselves upon hedges, bushes, or what is next it to catch hold of; and if there is nothing for it to climb upon, it runs it self along upon the ground, especially on the banks of dry ditches. The Leaves are divers and large, growing severally on the Stalks, somewhat long, and pointed at the further end, and parted into two parts or points at the broad part next to the Stalk, making it seem almost three square, being smooth, and of a pale green colour, yielding a milk, being broken, but not so plentifully as Scammony. At the Joints with the Leaves towards the tops of the Branches come forth large White Flowers, in fashion of a Bell, without any cut or division in them; which being passed off, there comes forth round skinny Husks, or Heads, containing within them many small blackish Seeds, and almost three cornered. This Great Bind-weed is so like unto Scammony, that excepting the largeness of the Roots, and the greater force in purging, which may both of them proceed in part from the Climate, one would think it to be one of the kinds of Scammony, whose many slender winding Salks run up, and wind themselves upon whatever stands next, or near to them.



*Bind weed Common Smal*

IV. *The Lesser* is like the *Greater* in most respects, except the Magnitude.

V. *The Places.* It grows throughout this Kingdom, near hedges and dry ditches, and other like places.

VI. *The Times.* It Flowers with us in June, July and August; and the Seed is ripe in some small time afterwards.

VII. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the first degree: Vulnerary, Arthritick, and a little Cathartick.

VIII. *The Specification.* It is peculiar for wasting and discussing Tumors.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may make therefrom, 1. *The inspissate Juice.* 2. *The liquid Juice.* 3. *The powder of the Leaves, Flowers, and Roots,* or of the *inspissate Juice.* 4. *The Balsam.* 5. *The Cataplasme.* 6. *The Distilled Water.*

The



## The Virtues.

X. *The inspissate Juice.* Being dissolved in Wine, it makes an excellent Wash to cleanse old Sores, filthy, putrid, and running Ulcers, and hollow Fistula's, inducing them to a speedy cure.

XI. *The liquid Juice.* Mixt with Red Wine, it is a very good thing for a sore Mouth, and is of use to heal Cankers in the Mouths of little Children: and if Childrens Feet, who are usually troubled with Chilblains or Kibes, be washed often herewith, it perfectly cures.

XII. *The Powder of the Roots, Leaves, Flowers, or inspissate Juice.* It admirably cleanses and heals old, rotten, and stinking Ulcers: and where the Bone has been putrified, it has perfectly cleansed the Ulcer, dried the Bone, and in a little time scaled it, and afterwards by the continual application, it has covered it with Flesh, incarnated the Ulcer, and in a little time healed it: I speak this by great experience: One time it happened, that a Youth who had Kibes in his Feet, and so much corrupted, that the Bone it self was putrified; by the sole application of this powder, dry, upon the Ulcer, I cleansed it, scaled the Bone which was black, and afterwards incarnated and healed the Ulcer, beyond the expectation of any one that then saw it.

XIII. *The Balsam.* It is singular good for the curing of Wounds, but chiefly of old and putrid Ulcers, and especially of those Ulcers which arise from Kibes in Childrens Feet, or from Tumors in the Kings-Evil.

XIV. *The Cataplasme.* Being made of the green Herb, and applied to the grieved place, it wastes, dissolves, or discusses Tumors or Swellings, as *Galen* saith: I know it to be excellent to discuss Chilblains in Childrens Feet.

XV. *The Distilled Water.* It is a good Cosmetick, and as some say, good against Freckles, Pimples, Scurf, and other defilements of the Skin: it takes away Tanning, Sunburning, and redness of the Face and Hands: and this it does more especially, if it is mixt with a small quantiry (some say, equal parts) of Vinegar, or Juice of Limons.

## C H A P. LXIX.

## The Lesser BLEW BINDWEED.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Latin, *Convolvulus minor*, and *Volubilis minor*, to which they add *Purpureus*, because of the Purple color of the Flower: And in English, *Bindweed the lesser*, and *Blew* or *Purple Bindweed*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are several Species of it, as, 1. *Convolvulus minor vulgaris*, The Common Small Bindweed. 2. *Althæa foliis*, Mallow leav'd. 3. *Purpureus*, Purple Bindweed. 4. *Ceruleus Hispanicus*, Blew Spanish Bindweed. 5. *Convolvulus Spicæ foliis*, Lavender leav'd Bindweed: of all which in order.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root small and slender, running both very deep into the ground, and spreading also far about, especially where the ground is loose and mellow: From this Root comes Stalks, which rise up and wind themselves upon any thing which is near it, but otherwise usually spreads every way on the Earth, with long trailing and winding Branches, one within another, having Leaves thereon, somewhat like unto the greater White Bindweed, but much lesser: The Flower is for form, like the former White Bell-flower, and is sometimes wholly

White, or has Plaits purplish, but less, made of one leaf plaited as it were into five folds, and opening wide at the Brims: after which come small blackish Seed, contained in small, long and round heads.



IV. *The Mallow leav'd* has a small and brownish Root, creeping under ground, and shooting up branches in distant places: From this Root springs branches, which grow not high, nor climb much upon any thing, but for the most part lyes with its small, slender, hairy twigs upon the Earth, having divers leaves very



very thinly, or poreingly set on them, something broad and long, like unto the leaves of Marsh-mallows, but smaller, crumpled, and cut in on both sides, at the lower ends, dented about the edges, and of a hoary or dusty grayish green Color; which when they are cleared, are clammy, or sticking like Gum to the Teeth, sharp, and somewhat bitter in taste. The Flowers come forth one by one at the Joints with the Leaves, all along the Stalk, up to the top, every one upon a long Stalk, which are very like the former, just before described; they consist of one whole leaf, yet plaited as it were before the opening into five plaits, and being open, have five corners, as if it had five leaves, broad like a Cup or Bell at the brims, and small at the bottom, of a fine pale Purple color, and sometimes deeper, after which come forth heads of small Seed.

V. The Small Purple Bindweed, is in all things like unto the first of these described in this Chapter, saving that the Flowers are of a pale purplish, or blewish color, the folds being White, or of a deeper Purple without, and White within, the bottom being also agreeable therewith, which is of much beauty.

VI. The Spanish Blew Bindweed, has a small thready Root, which dies every Year, from which shoots forth several small Branches a yard long, or more, having several Leaves standing singly thereon, small and long at the bottom, and broader, and almost round at the end, a little hairy as it were, all over. At every leaf for the most part, from the middle of the Stalks upwards, comes forth a Flower, like unto the common sort, folded into five plaits, which open into so many corners, of a most admirable Sky colored Blew (so pleasant to behold, that it amazes the spectators) with White bottoms, pointed upwards, and Yellow in the middle, which passing away, there comes small, round white heads, containing within them, small blackish cornered Seed, which is to be new sown every Year.

VII. The Lavender leav'd, This is like the first in all things, except the Leaves, which are long and narrow, resembling those of Lavender, or Linaria: But it has a finer Flower, plaited or folded in the compass of its Bell very orderly, especially before the Sun rise, for afterwards, when it opens its self, the folds are not so much perceived; and it is of a deep Purple color: the Seed is not unlike the rest, corner'd and flat, growing out of slender Branches, which stand upright and thick together, proceeding from a White woody Root.

VIII. The Places. The First of these is common, and grows almost every where in Fields, By-ways, dry Ditches, Ditch banks, and Hedge sides, through England. The Second and Fourth grow in Spain, and are nourished up with us in Gardens. The Third and Fifth are common with us in England: This Fifth or last, Gerard says he found it growing in the Corn Fields about Great Dunmow in Essex, in such abundance, that it does much hurt to the Corn, and Parkinson says, it is as great a plague to the Fields where it grows, as the first is.

IX. The Times. They all flower from May to the end of August, and the Seed ripens gradually in the mean Season.

X. The Qualities. They are all much of a Nature, being hot and dry in the first Degree, a little Astringent, Vulnerary, Arthritick, and Alterative.

XI. The Preparations. You may have, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Pouder. 4. A Balsam. 5. A Cataplasme. 6. A Distilled Water.

#### The Virtues.

XII. The liquid Juice. Being often snuffed up the Nostrils till it comes out again at the Mouth,

it cleanses and heals Running Sores or Ulcers in those parts: And if a little Nitre is dissolved in it, it purges the Head and Brain.

XIII. The Essence. It has the same Virtues, but is more Discussive, and prevalent for the cleansing of Ulcers, and healing of Wounds.

XIV. The Pouder. Strewed upon a foul Ulcer, it cleanses it (if also washed with the Essence) and afterwards it incarnates and heals.

XV. The Balsam. It is an excellent Vulnerary, and cures simple Wounds many times at once dressing.

XVI. The Cataplasme. Made of the Green Herb, it discusses Tumors, and applied upon Contusions disperses the Humors gathered together.

XVII. The Distilled Water. If you dissolve a little Sal Prunella, or Nitre in it, it is good against Heats and Breakings out in the Face, Tannings, Sun-burnings, Pimples, Scurf, and other like Deformities.

## CHAP. LXX.

### BINDWEED Black.



I. THE Names. It is supposed to be called in Greek *ἑλξίνη κισσάμπελος*: In Latin, *Helxine Cissampelos*, *Convolvulus minor niger*; Lobel calls it *Cissampelos altera atriplicis effigie*: Dodonæus calls it, *Convolvulus niger*: Thales calls it, *Volubilis media five nigra*: Collumna calls it, *Polygonum Hederracum*: Cordus on Dioscorides takes it to be *Elatine*: And Angulara will have it to be *Centunculus Plinij*: in English, *Black Bindweed*.

II. The Kinds. There is, 1. The Common Black Bindweed, which though it is one of the small Bindweeds, yet is the greater of the Black. 2. *Cissampelos altera Anglica minima*, The smallest Black Bindweed, of English Growth.

III. The



III. The Description. It has a Root small and slender, perishing every Year, and rising again from the Seed every Spring, unless it be weeded out of the Garden. From this Root rises up Branches, which if they meet not with upright tall Herbs, or other things whereon it may climb, it rises up but a little height, and leans down again to the ground; but otherwise if it meets with fit things, on which it may cling, it will wind it self with its long, slender, reddish, thready Branches about them, to the height of three or four Feet, or more, shooting forth its Leaves singly at the Joints as the others do, either somewhat like to an Arrach leaf, or almost like the first small field Bindweed, or like the leaf of Black Briony, for of those kinds there are, but much smaller. The Flowers, Gerard says, are small, like those of the Arrach; and Parkinson says, they are very small, and many, standing together upon a small long Stalk, which comes from the Joint where the leaf stands, and are of a reddish green color, but so small, that they are oftentimes not taken notice of, and they so quickly fade, that they are scarcely regarded: The Flowers being gone, then comes the Seed, which is small, blackish, and three cornered, like, but less than that of Buck Wheat.

IV. The smallest kind of Black Bindweed, differs from the former only in the Magnitude, this rising not above a hand breadth high.

V. The Places. They grow in many places of this Kingdom, both in Fields and Gardens, where they grow as a Weed. The larger of them is not only a hurtful Weed, but of an ill smell, and too often found amongst Corn.

VI. The Times. They flower in May, June, July and August, and the Seed ripens in the mean Season, in a little time after the Flower is gone.

VII. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the first Degree, Discussive, Vulnerary, Arthritick and Solutive.

VIII. The Preparations. You may make thereof, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Balsam. 4. A Cataplasme. 5. A Distilled Water.

## The Vertues.

IX. The liquid Juice. It is made of the Leaves only, and if it is taken inwardly 3 or 4 ounces at a time, it loosens and opens the Belly very much.

X. The Essence. It has the same Virtues to loosen the Belly; besides I have heard it confirmed from Experience, that it is prevalent against the King's Evil.

XI. The Balsam. It is very good for healing green Wounds, and to cleanse Old Ulcers, and Running Sores, and to cure Kibes in Childrens heels.

XII. The Cataplasme, made of the Green Leaves. It dissolves and discusses Tumors or Swellings, and hard Lumps in the Flesh, as Galen says: and if mixed with a little Nitre, it allays Inflammations.

XIII. The Distilled Water. It is good against Pimples, Scurf, Freckles, Tannings, Sun-burnings, and other deformities of the Skin; more especially if a little Vinegar, or Juice of Limons is mixed with it.

## CHAP. LXXI.

### BINDWEED Sea.

I. THE Names. I cannot find that the Greeks knew any thing of it: The Latins call it *Soldanella*, and *Soldana*, *Convolvulus Marinus*, and *Tussilago Marina* (from the resemblance of the Leaves:) And we in English only *Sea Bindweed*, and

*Sea Bells*, or *Bell-flower*. I know that *Matthiolus*, *Cordus*, *Gesner*, *Camerarius*, *Dodoneus*, and others, call it *Brasica Marina*, but it is no such thing, for that is clearly another Plant.

II The Kinds. There are three Kinds thereof, 1. *Soldanella*, *Sea Bindweed*, properly so called. 2. *Soldanella Maritima major*, the Greater *Sea Bindweed*. 3. *Soldanella Alpina*, *Mountain Soldanella*.



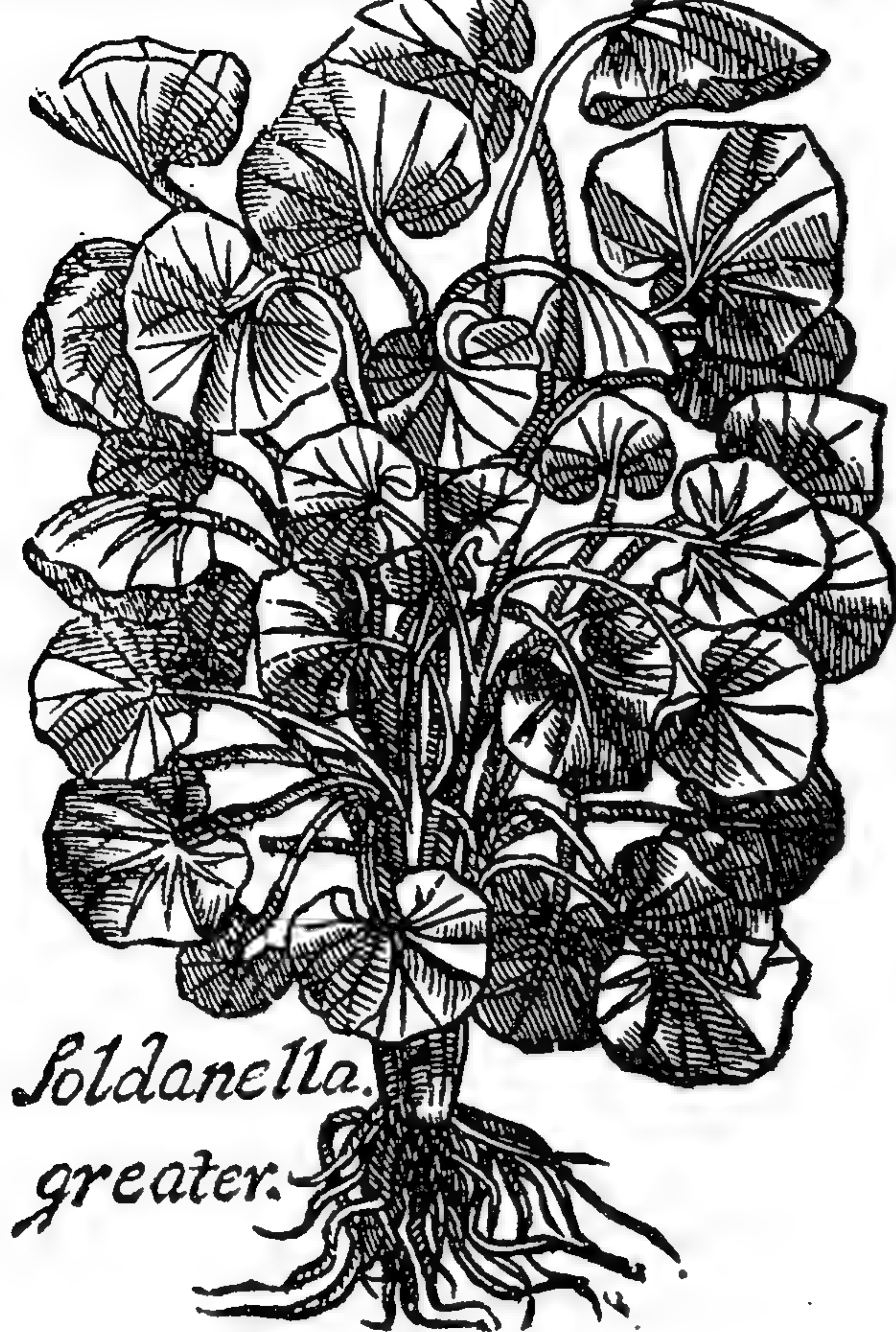
III. The Description. The first of these has a Root small and long, spreading a little in the ground, and shooting up divers heads in several places; and if any part of it is broken, there comes forth from it (as also from the Leaves) a whitish water, which is bitter, salt, and unpleasant. From this Root rises many weak, slender, brownish green branches, trailing or lying upon the ground, rather than raising it self up, or climbing upon other things. Upon these Stalks are set divers Leaves, not always two together at a Joint, nor yet always single, one at a Joint, which are always round like the Leaves of *Asarabacca*, but a little unevenly dented about the edges, and thicker; every one standing on a long footstalk, and of a grayish green color: among which come forth the Flowers towards the ends, each Flower by it self, springing forth at the Joints, much like in shape or form to the Common Small Bindweed, which grows upon the ground by way sides almost every where; but they are a little larger, and of a reddish purple color: These being past away, there comes round heads, containing within them 2 or 3 round black Seeds.

IV. The greater *Sea Bindweed*, has a Root a little creeping in the Earth, from whence shoots up several long slender Branches, on which are set larger Leaves than on the former, many of them having a division on both sides the Leaf next to the bottom, and many of them but on one side; and several of them which are smaller, having none at all; yet all of them for the most part a little sinuated on the edges towards the ends, which are round, or with a dent in the middle, making the point seem double forked, with many Veins running therein. The Flowers are of a red purple color, and are not Bell or Cup fashion like the



the former, but consist of five somewhat large and long Leaves. The Heads and Seeds are like the other, and Spring up by being scattered after Seed time.

Bind weed Sea Greater



Soldanella.  
greater.

V. *Soldanella Alpina major*, The greater Mountain *Soldanella* (for there is a lesser, of which we shall take no notice here) has a long round Head or Root shooting forth many Fibres, or small Strings. From whence rises many hard round Leaves, standing upon long Foot-stalks, something unevenly cut about the edges; green on the upper side, and of a grayish green underneath, and a little reddish like the leaves of Sowbread, and much resembling the Sea *Soldanella* (this Mountain *Soldanella* being so called from the likeness of the Leaves to the former: ) The Stalks are slender, small, round, and reddish, about a span high, having upon them four or five Flowers at Top, every one hanging down their heads like unto a Bell-flower, consisting but of one leaf, plaited into five folds, each of them ending in a long point, which makes the Flower seem to have five leaves, having a round green head in the middle, with a prick or point at the end thereof. The Flower is of a fair blew color, some deeper, some paler, and some almost white, as nature pleases, but without any smell at all. The middle head, after the flower is fallen, grows to be a long, round Pod, bearing the pointel it had at the end thereof, in which is contained small greenish Seed.

VI. *The Places*. The two first Kinds grow on our own Sea Coast in great plenty, in many places, as near Lee in Essex, at Mersey in Essex, and in most places in the Isles of Thanet or Shepey, as also along the Northern Coast: The last grows on the Alps, and Mountains of Germany: It also grows on the Mountains of Wales, not far from Cowmers Meer in North Wales.

VII. *The Times*. The two former flower, Gerard says, in June, but Parkinson, about the end of Summer, and their Seed is ripe in August. The third flowers on the Alps, &c. not till July or August, as the Snow melts sooner or later; but in Gardens it flowers in April.

VIII. *The Qualities*. *Soldanella* is hot and dry in the second Degree, Astringent, Hepatick, Cathartick and Emetick; but is said to be a great Enemy to the Stomach.

IX. *The Specification*. It is said to be a peculiar thing for curing the Dropsie.

X. *The Preparations*. 1. *The Decoction*. 2. *The Juice*. 3. *The Inspissate Juice*. 4. *The Essence*. 5. *The Pouder*. 6. *The Cataplasme*. 7. *The Balsam of the Mountain Soldanella*.

*The Virtues.*

XI. *The Decoction*. It ought to be made in Fat Mutton or Beef Broth, (because of its strength, and aptness to trouble the Stomach) opens the Belly powerfully, and purges violently in Dropsies, and Timpanies, and therefore is not to be given, but to such as are of a strong Constitution; it opens Obstructions of the Liver, and strengthens the same.

XII. *The liquid Juice*. It is both Emetick and Cathartick, and makes Sick; but in such Bodies as can bear its violence, it effectually carries off Watry Humors. An ounce mixt with a good Glass of White Wine will purge some People very well: others may take two ounces or more; whereas half an ounce will powerfully purge others.

XIII. *The Inspissate Juice*. This is not to be press'd out, but suffered to issue out of its own Accord when the Herb or Stalk is broken; this being dried, and afterwards softned with the Essence, or Wine, or other like Liquid, so as to be used Plaster-wise, being applied to the bottom of the Belly, admirably draws forth the Watry Humor in Dropsies.

XIV. *The Essence*. It has the Virtues of the liquid Juice, but more correct and free from Crudities, and therefore more gentle in its Operation: Being given in Wine from half an ounce, to an ounce, it kills Worms both in Children, and Elder People.

XV. *The Pouder*. It is made of the Leaves dried, and ought to be corrected with Anniseeds, Carraways, Cinnamon, Cubebs, Ginger, Zedoary and Sugar: So prepared and given, it kills Worms in Children, and purges the Belly: The simple pouder is good also to cleanse Sores and Ulcers, to incarnate or breed Flesh in deep and hollow Ulcers, and also to heal them.

XVI. *The Cataplasme*. Made of the Green Leaves, and applied to the Belly, it is said to purge the Bowels by Stool, and drive forth the Watry Humor which causes the Dropsie: but it must be often applied, and renewed with fresh Herbs; and so it is profitable against the Sciatica and Gout.

XVII. *The Balsam of the Mountain Soldanella*. It is an admirable Vulnerary, curing not only green Wounds with much ease and speed; but it also cleanses old and rotten Ulcers, and putrid Sores, destroying the Putridity. It wonderfully incarnates or breeds Flesh in Wounds, and heals them.

XVIII. Gerard says, That the German Physicians do much boast of the Wonders they have done with *Soldanella Montana*: That the Leaves applied as a Cataplasme to the Navel, and somewhat lower, draws forth Water from the Bellies of such as are Hydro-pick: and this effect (says he) it works in other parts without heating.

C H A P. LXXII.

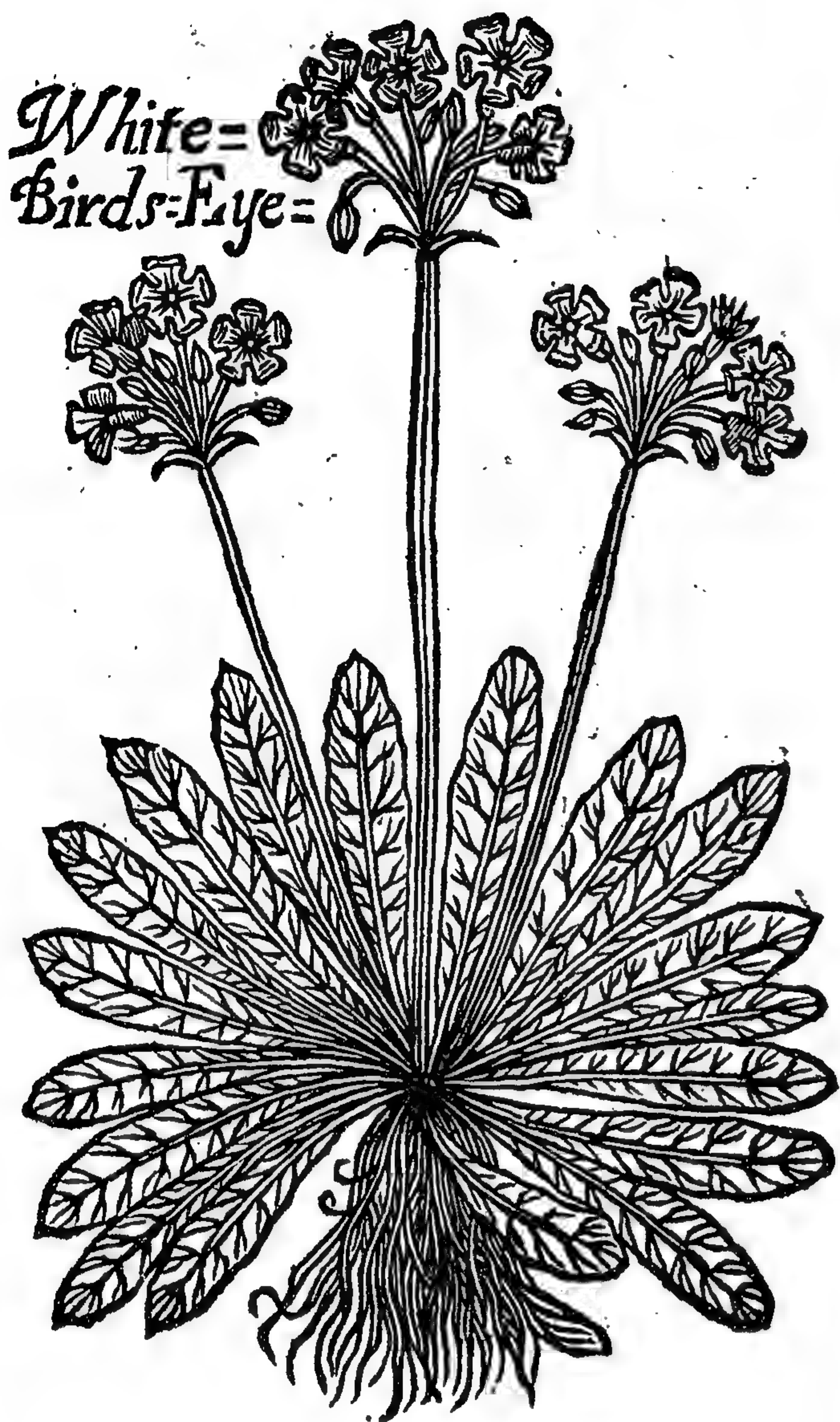
BIRDS-EYE.

I. *THE Names*. I find no Greek Name that this Plant has: but it is called in Latin, *Paralytica Alpina*, *Primula veris minor*; by some *Sanicula angustifolia*: in English, *Birds-Eye*, and *Birds-eine*, and *Birds-eyne*.

II. *The*



II. *The Kinds.* This Plant doubtless belongs to the tribe of the *Cowslips*, of which it is a special Kind, as being a *lesser sort*. There are also two Species of *Birds-Eye*, viz. 1. *Paralysis minor flore rubro*, the *lesser Cowslip*, which is also the *lesser Birds-Eye* with Red Flowers. 2. *Paralysis minor flore albo*, the *lesser Cowslip*, which is the greater *Birds-Eye* with White Flowers.



III. *The Description.* Red *Birds-Eye*, which is the smaller Plant, has Roots small, white and thready, from which arises up a head of Leaves so closed together, that it seems a small white head: this afterwards opening it self spreads round upon the ground, and has small long and narrow Leaves, snipt about the edges, of a pale green colour, on the upper side, but very white or mealy underneath: among these Leaves rise up one or two Stalks, small and hoary, half a foot high, bearing at top a bush or tuft of much smaller flowers, standing upon short Foot-stalks, something like to *Cowslips*, but more like unto *Bears-Ears*, of a fine reddish purple colour, in some deeper, in others paler, with a yellowish Circle in the bottoms of the Flowers, like unto many of the *Bears-Ears*, of a faint, but little scent; after which comes a Seed, smaller than that of *Cowslips*.

IV. *White Birds-Eye*, which is the greater of the two, differs little from the former, save that it is a little larger both in its Leaf and Flower, and that the Flowers hereof are wholly white, without any great appearance of a Circle in the bottom of them, unless it is well observed, at least it is not so conspicuous as the former: both these Kinds of *Cowslips* have sometimes, though but seldom, from the midst of the Flower on the Stalk, sent forth another small Stalk, bearing Flowers thereon likewise.

V. *The Places.* They have been found growing wild in *Cloves* and *Pasture Grounds* in many places of *England*, from whence they have been transplanted into *Gardens* for the pleasantness of their Flowers.

VI. *The Times.* The Red *Birds-Eye*, for all the care and industry we can use to keep it, will scarce-

ly endure in our *Gardens*, but all the Winter long, till the Spring begins, its Leaves are so closed together, that it seems a white head of Leaves. They both flower in the Spring of the Year, some earlier, and some later, according to the mildness of the Season.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* are the same with those of *Cowslips*, and therefore referring you thither, we shall say no more concerning the same in this place.

## C H A P. LXXIII.

## BIRDS-NEST.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek* by *Dodonæus*, *Nebotus*: and in *Latin*, *Neottia*, *Nidus Avis*: by *Gesner*, it is called, *Orobanchè*: by *Lobel*, *Satyrium abortivum*; and *Orchis abortiva*: but we in *English* call it *Birds-Nest*, or *Goose-Nest*, from the Platting of the Roots, like the sticks and straws of a *Crows* or *Birds-Nest*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make two sorts thereof, the one not much differing from another, save in the color: the first and longest known is of a yellowish colour: the other of a purplish Violet, and is called by *Clusius*, *Limodorum*, and *Pseudolimodorum*.

## Birds-nest.



IV. *The Description.* Yellow *Birds-Nest* has a great number of Fibres or thready Roots crossing one over another, and as it were platted, or intricately entangled together like a *Crows Nest*: from which rises up a thick, soft, gross, brown Stalk, set with small short Leaves, of the color of a dry *Oaken leaf*, which has laid under the Tree all Winter. *Parkinson* says, the Stalks are upright, weak, and sappy, and that the Leaves are only a shew, being rather



very short thin skins than leaves, of a brownish dead yellow color. The Flowers also are of a dead yellowish color, and stand upon a spiked head, like unto that of the Orchis, and of the same fashion; after which follows Husks of dusty Seed.

IV. The Purple Birds-Nest has a Root exactly like the former, from whence rise up a Stalk or Stalks about eight or nine inches high, the lower part of which within the ground is not round like the former, but slender, and of a yellowish white color: the Stalks are set with a few small, narrow, short, skinny, sharp pointed Leaves, set without any order, very little, or almost nothing at all wrapping or enclosing the Stalk, which has a spike of Flowers very like the former, without Tails or Leaves growing amongst them. The whole Plant, as it appears above ground, Stalks, Leaves and Flowers, is of a Violet, or deep Purple color: after the Flowers are fallen, there succeed Vessels full of small Seed, like the former.

V. The Places. They are both found in many places of England, in Woods, and low Copses: but they are not so much found in the Southern Parts of the Kingdom, as in the Northern: It is said; that they grow near to a Village called Knaesbrough in Yorkshire. Gerard found it growing in the middle of a Wood in Kent, two Miles from Gravesend, near to the then Mr. William Swans house of Howch-Green; the Wood then belonging to one Mr. John Sidley; the ground in the same place (says he) is covered all over with the Herb Sanicle, and with that kind of Orchis, called Hermaphroditea, or Butterfly Satyrion.

VI. The Times. It flourishes and flowers in June, July and August; and its Seed (if it may be called Seed) which is mealy or dusty, falls in the end of August: But Gerard will not allow it to be any Seed at all.

VII. The Virtues. No Authors that have ever wrote of it, have assigned it any Virtues: however it is certain, that it is of the Nature of the Orchis, and possibly may have their Qualities, Properties, and Effects, being in like manner applied.

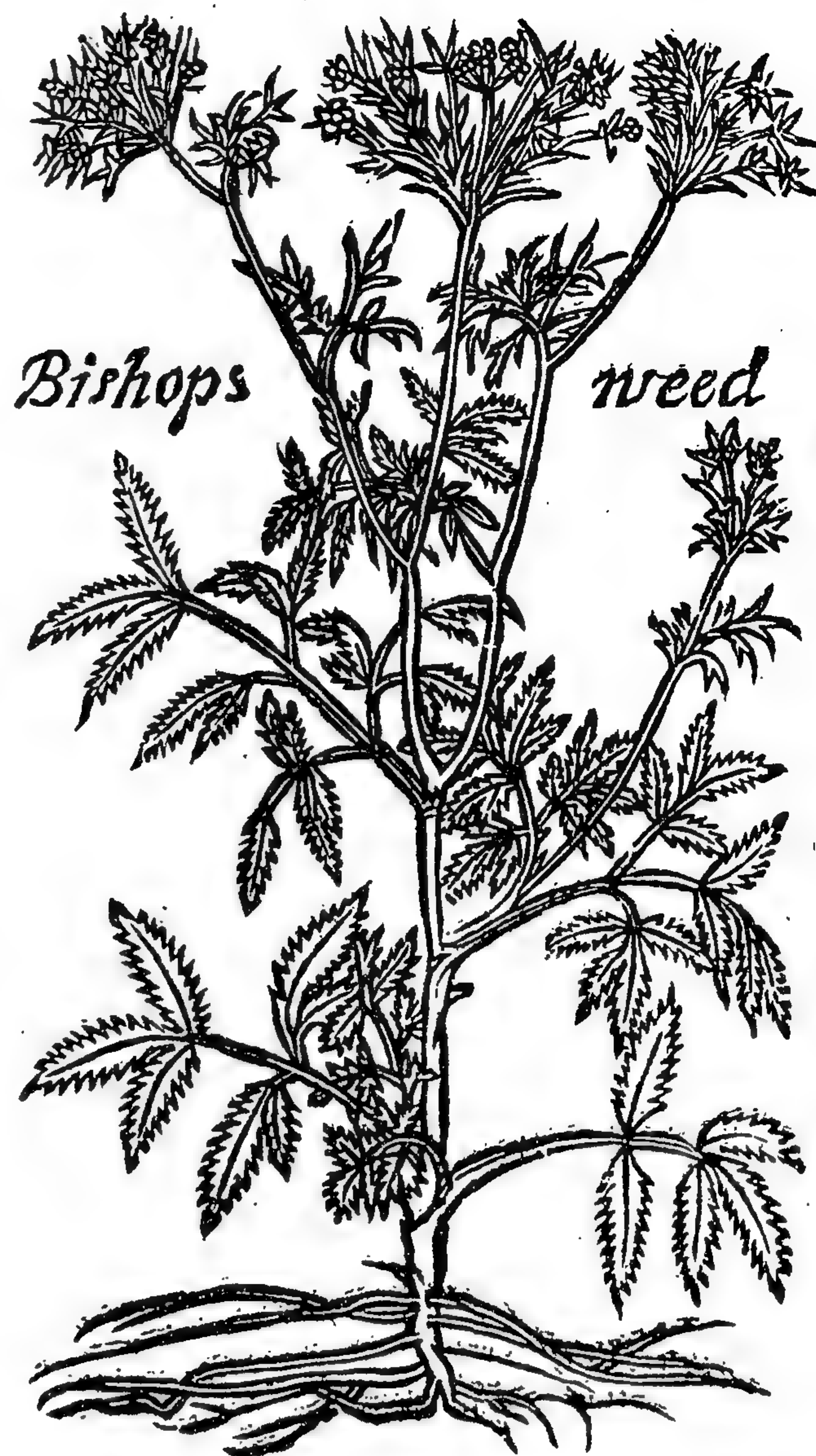
## CHAP. LXXIV.

### BISHOPS-WEED Common.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Ἀμμι*, and *Ἀμμιον*, (from the smallness of the Seed which resembles Sand:) In Latin, *Ammi*, and *Ameos* (the Genitive Case:) Some call it *Cuminum Æthiopicum* (from the likeness to that of Cumin,) also *Cuminum Regium*, Royal Cumin (from its excellent properties:) In Arabick it is called *Hanoachach*, *Anazave*, *Nacachau*, *Nacachave*: And in English it is called, *Bishops-Weed*, *Herb-William*, and by some, *Bullwort*.

II. The Kinds. They are of two principal Kinds, 1. *Domestick*, called in Latin, *Ammi Vulgare*, and *Vulgatus*: It is called by *Tabernmontanus*, *Ammio selinum*, which is our English *Bishops-Weed*. 2. *Foreign*, and is twofold, 1. *Ammi Creticum*, as *Camerarius* calls it, *Ammi Creticum Aromaticum*, as *Lobel* calls it, *Bishops-weed of Candy*. 2. *Ammi parvum folius fœniculi*, *Ammi alterum parvum*, by *Dodonæus*; *Ammi verum* by *Gesner*, (but *Parkinson* says, the true *Ammi* of *Dioscorides* is not known) 'Tis true, *Dioscorides* does not describe it; but from some remarks taken from him, from *Pliny*, and from *Galen*, it is almost plainly deciphered, especially the Seed, as being much smaller and whiter than *Cumin* Seed, and smelling like *Origanum*: Now none of

the Seeds which the Apothecaries use, or have been shew'd for *Ammi*, can be compared with *Cumin*, nor have they the smell of *Origanum*: in English, *Small Bishops-weed*: Of these two last we shall treat in the next Chapter.



III. The Description. Our Common Bishops-weed has a Root White and Fibrous, perishing every Year, after it has Seeded, and commonly rising again of its own sowing: From this Root rises up a round straight Stalk, sometimes as tall as a Man, but commonly 3 or 4 feet high, set with several small, long, and somewhat broad Leaves, cut in, in some places, and snipt or dented about the edges, growing on both sides of a long Footstalk one against another, of a dark green color, somewhat like unto Skirret Leaves, having several Branches on them; and at the tops small Umbles of white Flowers, which turn into small, round, and brown Seed, little bigger than Parsley Seed, and not so large as Annise Seed, of a brisk quick smell, and hot taste.

IV. The Places. It is found growing Wild in many places of England and Wales; by a hedge side next field beyond Green Hithe, on the way as you go to Gravesend; and with us it is also nourished up in Gardens.

V. The Times. It flowers in June and July, and the Seed is ripe towards the latter end of August.

VI. The Qualities. It is hot and dry in the third Degree, the Seed more especially. It is attenuating, Discussive, Diuretick, Nephritick, Hysterick, and Arthritick; Alterative, and Alexipharmick. It is bitter in taste, of thin parts, and sharp withal.

VII. The Specification. It is approved against the Cholick, and mightily provokes Lust; which I believe is from its Spermatogenetick faculty.

VIII. The Preparations. You may make therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Distilled Water. 4. A Powder from the Seed. 5. A Spirituous Tincture of the same. 6. An Oily Tincture. 7. A Saline Tincture. 8. A Spirit. 9. A Chymical Oil of the Seed. 10. A Fixed Salt. 11. Potestates or Powers. 12. A Balsam. 13. A Cataplasm of the green Herb.



## The Virtues.

IX. *The liquid Juice.* It is very thin and subtil, digests Humors, expels Wind, and gives ease in the Gripings of the Guts. Dose from iv. to viij. spoonfuls in a glass of Canary, Sherry, or other generous Wine, two or three times a day.

X. *The Essence.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, but more powerful to the purposes intended, it provokes Urine, and the Courses in Women when stopt, helps the Cholick, and is very powerful against the biting of Mad Dogs, Serpents, as the Viper, Rattle-snake, Slow-worm, or the biting or stinging of any other Venemous Creature whatsoever, being given Morning, Noon and Night, from iij. ounces to vi. in a glass of any generous Wine.

XI. *The Distilled Water.* It is stomatick, and has the Virtues of the Essence, but very much Weaker, and therefore may serve as a Vehicle, to convey any Medicine in, good against those kinds of Diseases.

XII. *The Pouder of the Seed.* It expels Wind, comforts the Stomach, and other *Viscera*, gives ease in the Cholick, and has been found, by experience, to be profitable against the Stone, Sand, Gravel, or any Tartarous or Slimy Matter in the Reins, Ureters and Bladder. It may be given (mixed with Sugar) in a glass of White or Rhenish Wine.

XIII. *The Spiritous Tincture from the Seed.* It is Cordial and Stomatick, good against Vapors, Wind, Fainting and Swooning Fits, *Cardialgia*, Palpitation of the Heart, Poyson of Vipers, Rattle-snakes, Mad-Dogs, and the biting or stinging of any other venomous Creature. Dose from one Dram to two, in a glass of excellent Wine.

XIV. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against Pal-sies, Convulsions, Rheumatisms, Pains, Aches, Weaknesses, and Punctures of the Nerves in any part of the Body: It eases the pain of the Gout, proceeding from a cold cause, softens, discusses, and waists cold Tumors, and is of admirable use, being taken inwardly, for the most inveterate Pains of the Back, or any Obstruction of the Reins, Ureters or Bladder. Dose from half a dram to one or two drams Morning and Evening in a glass of White Wine.

XV. *The Saline Tincture.* This may be made either of the Seed, or of the whole green Plant. It is good to take away Black and Blew Marks, Spots, Tanning, Sun-burning, and other deformities of the Skin, it being often washed therewith, it also is said to abate an high color, and a Spong being dipt therein, and applied upon the biting of any Venemous Beast, especially that of a Mad Dog, it effectually attracts and draws out the Poyson: It also discusses the afflux of humors in Contusions; and being drank to one dram in White Wine, it is prevalent against Fits of the Mother in Women, and is good against the evil Effects of *Cantharides*, if timely taken in some proper Emulsion.

XVI. *The Spirit.* It is an excellent Cordial, good against Fainting and Swooning Fits, eases the Passions of the Heart, cheers the Spirits, comforts Nature, provokes Lust, strengthens the Womb, and all the Instruments of Generation in both Sexes; and has indeed all the Virtues of the Spiritous Tincture, but not altogether so powerful. Dose from two drams to four, alone by it self, if dulcified, otherwise to be taken in a small glass of Wine.

XVII. *The Chymical Oil of the Seed.* It is said to correct the Virulency of *Cantharides*, that if they be digested in it for some time, they may be given inwardly without any danger; this may be true, but the true Corrective of *Spanish Flies* is Spirit of Nitre, as we shew in its proper place. This Chymical Oil is an admirable Carminative, and gives present ease

in the Cholick, by giving it inwardly by the Mouth, if the Disease lies in the *Stomach*, *Duodenum*, and upper Bowels; or giving it Clyster-wise, if it lies in the *Colon*, or other lower parts. It also provokes Urine, and the Terms, is good against Poyson, and the bitings or stings of Venomous Creatures. It opens Obstructions of the Spleen, and has been found very helpful against Hypochondriack Melancholly. Dose from six drops to twenty in a glass of Wine, or Wine and Water; drop the Oil into Sugar, and mix them well together, then mix it with the Wine, and so drink it up.

XVIII. *The Fixed Salt of the whole Plant.* It is a powerful Diuretick, and being taken in all the Liquor the Patient drinks, as Ale, Beer, Wine, it has been found profitable against the Dropsie and Jaundice: It also cleanses the Womb, Reins and Bladder, of any Tartarous Matter obstructing them. I once knew a Gouty Person, by the constant use of this Salt, and drinking Milk and Water, to become perfectly freed from his Gout, and had not so much as one Fit of it in above 18 Years time, which was confess'd to me at the writing hereof. Dose from xv. grains to xxx. in Water, or Whey; or Milk and Water, if for the Gout; but in Ale, Beer, Cider Mead, or Wine, if against the Dropsie, or other Diseases.

XIX. *Potestates or Powers.* They have all the Virtues of the Essence, Spirit, Spiritous Tincture, Chymical Oil and Salt, and may be given from one dram to two, Morning, Noon, and Night, in Wine, Mead, Hypocras or any other fit Vehicle.

XX. *The Balsam.* If it is made of the Chymical Oil, with Turpentine and Wax, it is of excellent use in all Wounds and Punctures of the Nerves; and applied, gives ease in the Gout, proceeding from a cold Cause, as also in the Sciatica, and other Pains and Aches of the Nerves and Joints. If it is made of the green Herb, it is good against Pains and Aches also, but is a peculiar Vulnerary, for healing wounds made in Scorbutick, Cold, Moist, and ill habited Bodies, and in depending places, because besides its admirable healing property, it dries powerfully, and strengthens the part affected.

XXI. *The Cataplasim.* It is excellent to be applied to Contusions, for it prevents the further afflux of Humors, and discusses those which are present, dissolves and scatters congealed Blood, and this more especially if it is mixed with Honey: it also takes away Black and Blew marks, which come by blows or falls, or other discolorings of the Skin.

XXII. *The Seed.* It is one of the four lesser hot Seeds, always commended as a Carminative: and it is said the *Egyptians* make use of the Seed, to provoke Lust or Venery, for which it is very powerful.

## CHAP. LXXV.

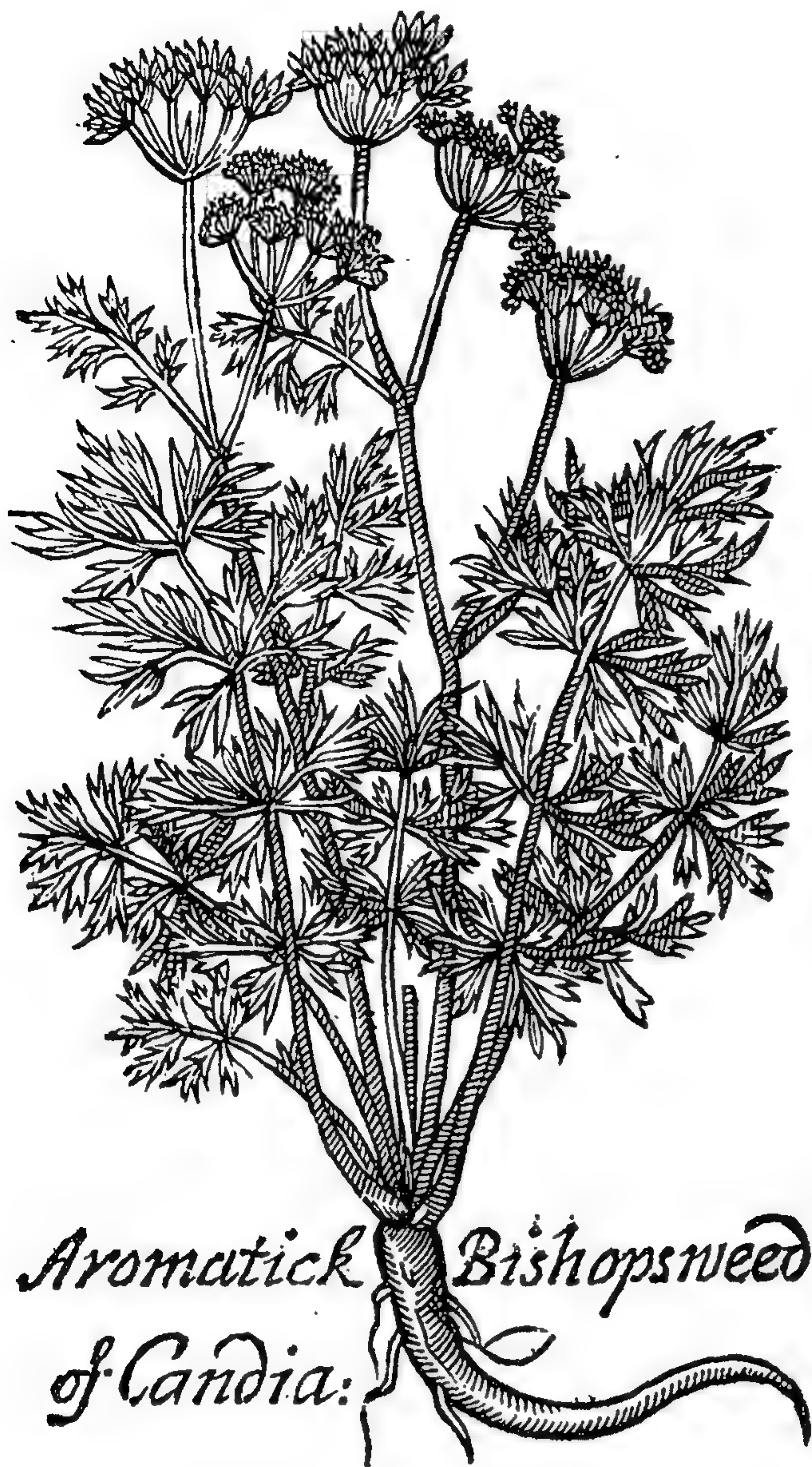
### BISHOPS-WEED Foreign.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek* also *Appis*, which is the Name given by *Dioscorides*; and in *Latin*, *Ammi*, *Cuminum Regium*, and *Æthiopium*; and in *English*, *Foreign* or *Outlandish Bishops-weed*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold, i. *Cretick*, or that of Candy, called *Ammi Creticum*, and by *Lobel*, *Ammi Creticum Aromaticum*, *Bishops-weed of Candy*; 2. *Ægyptian*, called by *Gesner*, *Ammi verum*: by *Dodonaus*. *Ammi alterum parvum*: *Ammi perpusillum*,



*lum*, by Lobel and Gerard : *Ammium primum Alexandrinum*, by Tabermontanus : *Ammi parvum folii fœniculi*, by C. Baubin and Parkinson : and *Ammi tenuissimo & Odoratissimo*, by J. Baubin : Alexandrian Bishops-weed.



Candia Bishops weed.



III. The Description. Bishops-weed of Candy has a Root like unto the Garden Carrot, and of a yellowish color, and brown on the outside, as Parkinson says, with some Fibres or Strings thereon : From this Root comes forth several slender Stalks of fine cut Leaves,

somewhat like unto those of Wild Carrots, or Daucus Creticus, smelling something quick, and of an excellent Aromatick or Spicy flavor, not much unlike Origanum ; from which rise up slender Stalks, with some Joints, with like Leaves as the former set thereon, and at the Tops, Umbles of white Flowers, in Tufts or Roundles like Carum, which turn into small Seed like Smallage, of a sweet sharp scent, and quick hot taste.

IV. The Alexandrian Bishops-weed has a small white Root, perishing after Seed-time ; from which small Root rise two or three slender Stalks, about a Foot, or Foot and half high, arched towards the tops, and set with several very fine small Leaves, like unto Dill, and finer than Fennel ; at the Extremities whereof grow small Umbles of white Flowers, after which come very small blackish Seed, much like to Parsley Seed, pleasant in smell, and sharp or quick in taste.

V. The Places. The first of these came to us from Candy ; as also from Syria to Venice, and from thence to France, the Low Countries and England ; which Seed has been often sown, but without effect ; The second grows in Arabia, and at Alexandria in Egypt ; from whence it has been brought to us.

VI. The Times. They do all Flower and Seed reasonably well with us (says Parkinson) if the Year proves kindly, otherwise not : if they flower, it is in June and July, and the Seed is ripe in August.

VII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses are the same with that in the former Chapter in all respects ; so that no more need be said of them in this place. Note, It is supposed, That the true Ammi is wholly lost to us ; but Parkinson is of Opinion, that Cuminum Sylvestrum may be the true Ammi of Dioscorides.

## CHAP. LXXVI.

### BISTORT English.

I. THE Names. This is a Plant that I cannot perceive the Greeks knew any thing of, no Greek name being yet assigned it : it is called in Latin, *Bistorta*, (by most Authors) *à convolutis & intortis radicibus* (says Ray) by Tragus, *Lonicerus*, and others, *Colubrina*, and the Root *Radix Colubrina* ; *Fracastorius*, *Bulapathum*, as well as *Bistorta* : and we in English call it *Bistort* and *Snake-weed*. Some will have it to be *Behen Rubrum* ; others *Molybdæna Plinij* ; others again *Dracunculus Plinij* : Some again, as Gesner, *Limonium* : Lobel and Clusius say, that it is the *Brittanica* of Dioscorides and Pliny ; but in all these they are mistaken, as those who please to Examine those several Plants in their proper Chapters, and compare them with the Descriptions here, may easily perceive.

II. The Kinds. What we shall discourse of here, are principally two, 1. *Bistorta major*, as Gerard, and the Bauhins call it : *major vulgaris*, as Parkinson : *Radice minus intorta*, as the Bauhins ; *major rugosioribus foliis*, as J. Baubin : and we, The greater Bistort, or Snake-root. 2. *Bistorta minor*, as Gerard ; *minor nostras*, as Parkinson ; *Colubrina minor*, as Tragus ; *Alpina media*, as C. Baubin : and we, The lesser Bistort, or Snake-weed : But besides these, Authors make mention of four Kinds more, as, 3. *Bistorta Latifolia*, Broad leav'd Bistort. 4. *Bistorta Alpina major*, and *Alpina maxima*, The Greater or Greatest Mountain Bistort. 5. *Bistorta Alpina*



*Alpina media*, & *Alpina minor*, The lesser Alpine Bistort. 6. *Bistorta Alpina pumila foliis variis*, Low Variable leav'd Bistort; of all which we shall say nothing in this Work.

but that it is crumpled, of a blewish green color on the upper side, and of an Ash colored grey, and a little purplish underneath, having several veins running therein: from among which, rise several small and slender Stalks about half a Yard high, almost naked, and without Leaves, or with very few narrow ones, bearing a spiky bush of pale, fresh colored Flowers; which being past, there is found a small, brown, cornered Seed, not much unlike to Sorrel Seed, but greater.



English  
Bistort.

Small Bistort or Snake-weed.



Great  
Bistort.



IV. The Lesser English Bistort has a *Tuberous* Root, small in proportion, but something crooked or turned like the former, being of a blackish color without, and somewhat whitish within, of the same austere, styptick, or binding taste, with the former: This Root sends forth 3 or 4 small narrow Leaves, scarcely an Inch broad, and near four Inches long, green above, and grey underneath: The Stalks are slender, and with but one or two Leaves set thereon; at the tops whereof stand long, round, spiky heads of white Flowers, with several small green Leaves among them; after which comes a reddish Seed, almost round, which being dry, becomes blackish, and is bigger than that of the former, about the bigness (says Gerard) of a Tare.

V. The Places. The first grows at the Foot of Hills, and in shadowy moist Woods near to them, in many places of Germany; and in England in like places, but is chiefly with us nourished up in Gardens. The other grows in the North of England, as in Lancashire, Yorkshire, and Cumberland, in several places; also in Westmorland, at Crosby, Ravenswaith, at the head of a Park formerly belonging to one Mr. Pickering, from whence it has been brought, and dispersed into Gardens. The First is also said to grow in a Meadow, about a Stones cast above the *Abby Mill* at St. Albans, about an Acres breadth or more from the River side, where it is said to grow in great plenty.

VI. The Times. They both flower about the end of May, and the Seed is ripe about the beginning of July.

VII. The Qualities. They are cold and dry in the third Degree; Astringent, Styptick, and Vulnerary; Cordial, Hyfterick, Alterative, and Alexipharmick.

VIII. The

III. The Description. The Greater Common Bistort has a thick, short, Tuberous or knobbed Root, blackish without, and something reddish within, a little crooked or writhed together, and of an harsh or astringent Taste, with divers blackish Fibres or Threads growing thereat: From whence spring up every Year, several Leaves standing upon long Foot-stalks, being somewhat long and broad, not much unlike to a Dock Leaf, and a little pointed at the ends,



VIII. *The Specification.* It is famous for the resisting and expelling Poyson, as also to stop the Flux of Blood in Wounds, or any other bleeding, whether inwards or outwards.

IX. *The Preparations.* 1. *A liquid Juice of the whole Plant.* 2. *A distilled Water of the Roots and Leaves.* 3. *A Pouder of the Leaves.* 4. *A Pouder of the Root.* 5. *A Pouder of the Root compound.* 6. *A Decoction of the Root in Wine or Water.* 7. *A Decoction compound of the Root.* 8. *The Diet Drink made of the Roots, Leaves, and Seeds.* 9. *The Spirituous Tincture.* 10. *The Acid Tincture.* 11. *The Oily Tincture.* 12. *The Saline Tincture.* 13. *The Fixed Salt.* 14. *The Essence.*

#### *The Virtues.*

X. *The liquid Juice.* Taken inwardly 3, 4, or 6 Spoonfuls at a time in a Glass of Red Florence, or other Styptick Wine, it presently stops any internal Flux of Blood, resists the Poison of Vipers, or any other Serpent, and the bitings of any other Beast whatsoever; and is very powerful against the Plague, and all other Malign and Pestilential Fevers.

XI. *The Distilled Water.* It is a singular remedy to wash any place bitten or stung by any Poisonous Creatures, as Spiders, Toads, Serpents, Vipers, Rattlesnakes, or the like, and has the Virtues of the Juice, but not with equal power or force. It is good also to wash Sores or Cankers which happen in the Nose, or any other part; more especially if the pouder of the Root be applied thereto afterwards.

XII. *The Pouder of the Leaves.* Taken to a dram, it is good to kill Worms in Children: prevails against a *Diabetes*, and helps such as cannot keep their Water, but are apt to piss a Bed, and this more especially if given with Juice of Plantane.

XIII. *The Pouder of the Root.* Being given to a dram, more or less, in Wine, or other fit Vehicle, it prevails against the Malignity of the Purples, Measles, and Small Pox, and expels the Poison of the Plague or Pestilence, or of any other infectious Disease, driving it forth by Sweating. It stops also all manner of inward Bleeding, as Dysentery, Spitting, Vomiting, or pissing Blood, and is profitable against Ruptures in Children, or Elder Persons; it is good also for any Contusion, or Bruise caused by Blows or Falls, dissolving the congealed Blood, discussing the aggregated Humors, and easing the Pain. Given to one dram in the Distilled Water, in which some red hot Iron has been quenched, it is said to help or cure a Gonorrhæa, or Running of the Reins, Universals being first premised. And being strewed upon any Cut, or Wound of a Vein, &c. where there is a great Flux of Blood, it presently stops it.

XIV. *The Pouder of the Root compound.* It is made of equal quantities of Bistort Root, Root of Pellitory of Spain, and of Burnt Allum. This Pouder being made into a Paste with a little Honey, and some of it put into an hollow Tooth, or held between the Teeth, if there is no hollownes in them, eases their Pain, and stops the defluxion of Rheum upon the Part, cleanses the Head and Brain, and causes an evacuation of abundance of Rheumatick Matter.

XV. *The Decoction of the Root.* If it is made with Water, with the addition of some Pomegranate Peels and Flowers, it makes a most admirable Injection for the Womb, cleanses it of any filth lodged there, stops the overflowing of the Terms in Women, and cures a long continued Flux of the Whites, dries up Ulcers in that part, and strengthens the Ligaments of the Womb, being relaxed, whereby the Womb seems to press or fall down. If the

Decoction is made with Wine, it stops all manner of Inward Bleeding, as Spitting of Blood, Vomiting Blood, and all Fluxes of the Bowels, whether in Man or Woman, is available against Ruptures in Old or Young, dissolves congealed Blood, and discusses Contusions to admiration. It is said to cure the Jaundice, and being inwardly given, and outwardly applied, it is eminently good against the biting of Vipers, or any other poisonous Serpent, and the bitings and stinging of any Venomous Creature whatsoever. Given to Women with Child, it prevents Abortion, or Miscarriage, and helps such as cannot hold their Water; and used as a Gargarism in the Mouth, it allays Inflammations, heals Ulcers, and fastens loose Teeth.

XVI. *The Decoction of the Root compound.* *℞ Bistort Roots six ounces: Angelica Roots, Zedoary, of each four ounces: Virginea Snake-root three ounces: Clove-bark an ounce and half: Winters Cinnamon one ounce: all being bruised, infuse in Red Port Wine, or Canary, five quarts, for six hours: Then giving it two or three boils, take it from the Fire, and strain out the Wine from the Ingredients, which let settle: then decant the Clear from the Fæces, and sweeten it with Syrup of Limons, or Syrup of Vinegar.* It is a noble Medicament against the Measles, Small Pox, Purples, Calenture, Spotted Fever, and even the Plague it self, being given either preventively, as two or three Spoonfuls of it Morning, Noon, and Night: or Curatively, in which four or six ounces of it may be given to sweet upon, and to be repeated as need requires. It is an excellent thing against the biting of Mad Dogs, Vipers, Rattlesnakes, or the bitings or stings of any other Venomous Creatures. It also prevails against any Vegetable Poison, which is taken inwardly, if timely given.

XVII. *The Diet Drink.* It is made of the Roots, Leaves, and Seeds, boiled in half Wine, half Water. It is an excellent Traumatick, cures all curable Inward Wounds, and Ulcers, and Fluxes of Blood, of what kind soever, and also being regularly drank, contributes very much to the cure of Wounds, and old Ulcers in the External parts.

XVIII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It defends the Heart against Poison, whether Inward or Outward, whether a Vegetable or Animal Poison, or the Malignity of the Plague, or of any other infectious Disease. Dose, one or two drams at a time, two or three times a day, in a glass of Wine, or other Vehicle.

XIX. *The Acid Tincture.* This is more peculiar against the Plague, and other Malign Fevers, and infectious Distempers than the former. It allays the Inflammation of the Jaws, Almonds of the Ears, and Throat, being often taken inwardly, and also used as a Gargle, by mixing it with the Decoction in Water or Wine aforegoing. It also heals Cankers and Sores of the Mouth and Throat, if often wash'd therewith; and being swallowed, cuts tough Flegm, and clears the Throat.

XX. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against Punctures, and Wounds of the Nerves, eases their Pain and cures them, being bathed thereon, and applied thereto: and represses the Flux of Humors attending them.

XXI. *The Saline Tincture.* Outwardly used, it penetrates, and contributes to the curing of Ruptures. Old Ulcers being washed therewith, it cleanses them, and disposes them to healing: and Phlegmons or Inflammations being bathed therewith, it abates the heat. Inwardly given, it cleanses the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, after the use of it, for some time; if there be any Ulcers in those parts, they are cured by giving Inwardly the Decoction in Wine.



Wine, Juice, or Effence, and continuing it for some time. This Saline Tincture is also prevalent against the Jaundice. Dose from half a dram to a dram and half, in any convenient Vehicle.

XXII. *The Fixed Salt.* It is good against Poison, and all malignity of the Plague, opens Obstructions, resists Putrefaction, and defends the Vitals against any kind of Infection, or the malignity of Evil Airs: It provokes Urine, and cleanses the Urinary Passages, carrying off the Recrements of the Humors by those Passages, by which it has been found good against the Jaundice and Dropsie. Dose from ten grains to a scruple in Ale, Beer, Cider, Mead, or Wine.

XXIII. *The Effence.* It resists Poison, Plague, or Pestilence, and all sorts of malign Fevers, stops all Fluxes of the Belly, as Diarrhæa, Dysenteria, Lien-teria, and the Hepatick Flux; as also all Hemorrhagies whatsoever, whether inward or outward, the overflowing of the Terms in Women, and the præternatural flux of the Whites: but in these last Cases, Universals ought to be premised. In a word, the Effence has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, the Pouder of the Root, and the Decoction in Wine at Sect. 10, 13 and 15, aforegoing. But it peculiarly stops the afflux of Humors to any part, being applied to the same outwardly, and also taken inwardly. Dose is from two to six ounces in Wine, or any other Vehicle, proper against the Disease for which it is given. *Note,* The Root of this Plant is that which is chiefly used, as having most Virtue in it.

## CHAP. LXXVII.

### BITTER-SWEET.



I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek Γλυκύμηλον, *Glycypicron*, i. e. *Amara dulcis*, and συχνο-  
δένδρον, *Strychnodendron*, i. e. *Solanum Arborescens*: but no Greek Author, that I know of, has said any thing of it; but some of the Moderns have im-

fed these Greek names upon it. The Latins call it, *Solanum Lignosum*, and *Solanum Arborescens*, and yet in Truth, it is not properly any Nightshade, but only so called for the conformity of its Leaves. Also *Amara dulcis*, and *Dulcamara*: Some will have it to be *Melortum Plinij*, others *Vitis Sylvestris Theophrasti*, as *Camerarius* in his Epitome: (but *Vitis Sylvestris* is truly *Black Bryony*, as *Matthioli* has it:) In English, it is called *Bitter-sweet*, or *Woody Night-shade*, and *Fellon-wort*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold, 1. *Purple-flowered*, called, as afore said. 2. *White-flowered*, which *Dodonæus* thinks to be *Cyclaminus altera Dioscoridis*: *Guilandinus* took it to be *Salicastrum Plinij*, but very erroneously: *Bauhinus* calls it *Solanum Scandens seu Dulcamara, flore Albo*, *Bitter-sweet*, with the *White flower*.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root which spreads it self with many strings under the Earth, not growing into any great or thick Body: from whence comes up many slender, winding, brittle, woody Stalks, five or six Foot high, without any Claspers, or Tendrills, but folding it self about Hedges, or any other thing which stands near unto it: these stalks are covered with a whitish rough Bark, which being chewed in the Mouth, tastes bitter at first, but sweetish afterwards: and in the middle they have a Pith, and shoot out into many Branches on both sides, which are Green whilst young: whereon grow many Leaves without order, somewhat like unto those of Nightshade, but that they are something broad, long, and pointed at the ends, with two small Leaves, or rather pieces of Leaves at the bottom of most of them, something like the Sage with Ears; and many of them likewise, with but one piece on one side; sometimes also those pieces are close to the Leaves, making them seem as if they were jagged, or cut in on the edges into so many parts, and sometimes separate therefrom, making the Leaves seem winged, or composed of many Leaves, which are of a pale green color. At the tops and sides of the Branches come forth many Flowers, (standing in fashion of a long Umbel) upon short Foot-stalks one above another, which consist of five narrow and long violet purple colored Leaves, not spread like a Star, or very seldom, but mostly turning themselves backwards to the Stalks again on which they stand, with a long golden yellow Pointel in the midst, sticking forth, which afterwards turns into round, and somewhat long Berries, green at first, and very red, soft, and full of Juice when ripe, which are sweet at first tasting, but afterwards of an unpleasing bitter taste; in which Berry is contained many flat white Seeds.

IV. *Dulcamara flore Albo*, *Bitter-sweet*, with white flowers, differs in nothing from the former, but in the flowers, whose outward Leaves are white, and its Pointel yellow.

V. *The Places.* The first grows usually by Ditch-sides and hedges, where it may climb up, almost every where: The second is more rare, and seldom to be met with, but grows by or near St. Margarets Church near Romney Marsh.

VI. *The Times.* The Root is Perennial; and the Branches, tho' they are dispoiled of their Leaves all the Winter, yet they perish not, but shoot forth new Leaves in the Spring: they flower in July, and the Berries are ripe in August.

VII. *The Qualities.* The Leaves and Berries are hot and dry in the first Degree; Astringent and Cleansing; Cephalick, Hepatick, Splenetic, Hysterick and Cathartick.

VIII. *The Specification.* It is a peculiar thing for the Cure of Jaundice and Dropsie.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may make therefrom, 1. *The Liquid Juice.* 2. *The Effence.* 3. *The*



Decoction. 4. The Spirituous Tincture. 5. The Acid Tincture. 6. The Saline Tincture. 7. The Cataplasm.

The Virtues.

X. *The Liquid Juice.* Being given to two or three ounces, it purges well, and powerfully opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and helps such as are Asthmatick, or are troubled with difficulty of breathing, being taken every Morning fasting for some time.

XI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice aforegoing, besides which it is a powerful Medicament against a Phthick, and for the Cure of the Yellow and Black Jaundice, as also the Dropsie: It brings away the After-birth, and effectually cleanses Women newly brought to Bed: you may give it from two ounces to four in a glass of White Port Wine every Morning fasting: It is also good for Inward bruises caused by any fall or blow, dissolving the congealed Blood in what part of the Body so ever. It purges well, and not churlishly.

XII. *The Decoction.* You may make it thus: *℞* Of the young tender twigs or woody substance, and of the Leaves, *℥*j. bruise them well, and put them into a Glass Vesica, or Bolt-head; affuse thereon White Port Wine *℥*ij ss. cover it with a blind head, and infuse in a Sand heat for twelve hours; and then make the heat so great as it may boil gently; which done, decant, and strain out for use. It has the Virtues of the Essence, is a Specifick for cure of the Jaundice and Dropsie, according to *Tragus* and *Dodonaeus*, is good against the Vertigo and Megrim, and other Head Diseases, cleanses Women in Child-bed, and represses Hysterick Vapors. Dose four ounces every Morning: it purges the Body very gently.

XIII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It purges not, but very much strengthens the *Viscera*, chiefly the Liver and Spleen, and represses Vapors ascending from the Stomach, and other parts, to the Head and Brain, causing Vertigo's, Megrims, and other Distempers of that Ventricle. Dose two drams, or more, every Morning fasting, and Evening at Bed time in a Glass of generous Wine.

XIV. *The Acid Tincture.* Let it be made with Spirit of Wine acuated with Spirit of Salt. It powerfully provokes Urine, cleanses the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, and cures the Dropsie to a miracle; but it ought to be taken a considerable time, and always in the Decoction of the same Plant, or in a Decoction of Centory, Gentian, and Roman Wormwood. Dose from half an ounce to an ounce, more or less, so as to give a pleasant Acidity, Morning and Evening: and it is to be put into all the Ale, Beer, or Wine the Patient drinks.

XV. *The Saline Tincture.* Bathed with, it takes away Scurf, Morpew, and salt, and sharp breakings out of the Skin: inwardly taken to one dram, it provokes Urine, and cleanses the Urinary passages of Slimy, Viscous, or Tartarous Matter, which is commonly the matter that breeds the Stone and Strangury.

XVI. *The Cataplasm.* It is to be made of the bruised Berries, and Rosin in fine Pouder. This applied to Felons, which commonly come on the Fingers ends, cures them in a very short time.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

BLEW-BOTTLE.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek*, *Κίανθ*, à *floris Cyaneo, vel Cæruleo colore*: In *Latin*, *Cyanus*: and in *English*, *Blew-bottle*, or *Corn-flower*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold: 1. *Single-flowered*, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Double-flowered*, of which in the next. The single flowered is also 1. *Cyanus magnus, vel Cyanus major vulgaris, Cyanus hortensis*, The greater Common Blew-bottle, or Garden Blew-bottle. This some call *Cyanus montanus*; *Hermolaus* takes it to be the *Leucoium Dioscoridis*; *Cesalpinus* to be a kind of *Struthium Theophrasti*; *Fabius Columna*, thinks it to be *Papaver Heracleum Theophrasti*; and *Lobel* questions whether it be not a Species of *Chondrilla*. 2. *Cyanus minor vulgaris, Cyanus segetum*, The lesser Common Blew, or Field Blew-bottle: It is called by some *flos Frumenti*, Corn-flower: *Battisecula* (as *Ray* has it) and *Baptisecula*, or *Blaptisecula*, from its turning the Edges of Sickles in cutting down Corn; *Secula*, i. e. *Falx, à secundo dicta*, being taken for a Sickle in Ancient times.



III. *The Description.* The Greater or Garden Blew-bottle has a Root which creeps under ground, spreading it self divers ways, so that its heads with green Leaves will abide all the Winter, (which in the other sorts do not so, but perish wholly after Seed time, rising again of their own Sowing before Winter) and grows Yearly into new shoots and springs, by which it very much increases: from this Root rises up a crested or rather winged Stalk, of a whitish green color, about two or three Feet high, on which are set divers Leaves, something long and broad, without any division, or denting in about the edges; green on the upper side, and grayish underneath, each of



of them encompassing the Stalk about, at the lower ends, which is divided at the top into a few Branches, bearing somewhat large, scaly, green heads, with white or Silver-like edges; from the midst of which comes forth a larger Flower than in the smaller Kind, thinly set, and of a deeper Violet-blew color: in which Heads, after the Flowers are past, there is found a Down, containing some few white Seeds, like those of the lesser Kind, but a little larger, and flatter.



Common Blew Bottle Or  
Corne Flower

IV. The lesser Common, or Field Blew-bottle, or Corn-flower, has Roots somewhat long and large, which perish every Year, but are Annually renewed by its own sowing; rising or springing up before Winter, and abiding green all the Winter Season, until the next Spring and Summer, when it Flowers, Seeds, and perishes again. The Leaves are long and narrower than the former, of a whitish green color, deeply cut in on the Edges in some places, but some more than others, something like unto Scabious leaves. The Stalks are two or three Feet high, according to the goodness and fertility of the Ground, set with such like Leaves, but smaller, and little or nothing cut in on the Edges: the tops are spread forth into several Branches, bearing many small green, scaly Heads, out of which rise Flowers, consisting of five or six, or more, long and hollow Leaves, small at the bottom, and opening wider and larger at the brims, notched, dented or cut in on the Edges, and standing round about many small threads in the middle. The colors of these Flowers are manifold, and very variable; for some are wholly Blew, or White, or blush, or of a sad or light Purple, or of a light or deep Red, or of an over-worn Purple color, or else mixed of these colors, in some, the edges White, and the rest Blue or Purple; or the edges Blew or Purple, and the rest of the Flower White, or Striped, Spotted, or halved, the one part of one color, the other of another, and the Threads also in the middle varying in many of them; for in some the said middle Thrumb will be of a deeper Purple than the outward Leaves, some will have it reddish, deeper, or paler, whilst the

Leaves are White, or blush. The Flowers being past, the heads or bottles contain a Down, in which the Seed is wrapped, which is small, hard, white and shining. Note, That the Flower of that which grows Wild in the Fields, is for the most part only Blew.

V. The Places. The first grows Wild in Germany upon Sandy Hills, but with us it is nourished up in Gardens: The other with Blew Flowers grows Wild, in many Corn Fields throughout our Kingdom: It is found in Fields of Wheat, Rye and Barley; but is also Sown in Gardens, which the skilful Artist, by looking after, makes to become of other colors, as in the Description thereof is declared.

VI. The Times. They flower from the beginning of May, to the end of Harvest, and their Seed comes to ripeness in the mean season.

VII. The Qualities. They are temperate in respect to heat or cold, and dry in the first Degree: But Schroder says, they are cold and dry in the second Degree: They are Astringent, Ophthalmick, Cardiac, Alterative, and Alexipharmick.

VIII. The Specification. They have a peculiar faculty for the curing of sore and bleared Eyes, and resisting the force of Poison.

IX. The Preparations. In the Shops are: 1. The Flowers. 2. A Pouder of the dried Leaves. 3. An Essence of the Juice with Spirit of Wine. 4. A Collyrium of the Flowers. 5. A Distilled Water of the Flowers. 6. A Spirituous Tincture of the Flowers. 7. A Cataplasm of the Flowers. 8. A Juice. 9. A Distilled Water of the Herb.

#### The Virtues.

X. The Flowers. They are cold and dry in 1<sup>o</sup>: are Stryptick, and good to take away Redness and Inflammations of the Eyes, and pains thereof: they cool in Fevers, resist Poison, and help in Dropsies. You may make an Acid Tincture of them with Spirit of Wine, mixed with a half part of Spirit of Salt, which in Fevers, Plague, &c. may be given from 20 to 40 Drops, in any fit Vehicle.

XI. The Pouder of the dried Leaves. It is taken in Tent to one dram, for the curing of inward bruises, and to heal a Rupture of the Veins, &c. whereby they void much Blood at Mouth. Give it in Plantane, Comfrey, or Horse-tail-water, acuated with a little White Wine Vinegar.

XII. The Essence of the Juice of the Leaves and Flowers. It has all the former Virtues both of the Acid Tincture and Pouder: It helps in the Dropsie, resists all manner of Venoms and Poisons, and is peculiar against that of the Scorpion, Phalangium, Viper, Mad Dog, and Plague, as also all other Pestilential Fevers, and Infectious Diseases: being droped into the Eyes, it takes away their heat, inflammation and pain.

XIII. The Collyrium, or Eye-Water. R of the Blew-flowers as many as you please: put them into Rye Dough or Paste, bake them in the Oven with Household Bread, then taking it forth, distil all, viz. Flowers and Rye Paste, in a Glass Body, in B.M. and keep the Water for use. With this the Eyes are to be washt three or four times a day. It is admirable for the cure of most Infirmities of the Eyes, especially Heat, Inflammation, Pain, Blood-shot, &c. It clears, strengthens and preserves the Eye-sight, especially of old People, for which reason some are pleased to call it Break-Spectacle-Water: for that those that use it, need never come to the use of Spectacles: If the Distemper is inveterate or stubborn, use it five or six times a day.

XIV. The Distilled Water of the Flowers. Aqua florum Cyani, Blew-bottle-flower-water. R Flowers



of Blew-bottles, with their Cups, as many as you please : bruise them, and macerate them in a sufficient quantity of Snow-water, for 24 Hours, or rather two Days ; then Distill in a gentle B. M. or Sand heat. It is said to be a wonderful Water for the Eyes, and their Diseases, as Inflammations, Soreness, Dimness of Sight, and the like : it has the Virtues of the former, but not altogether so powerful. Drop it into the Eyes 3, 4, 5 or 6 times a day.

XV. *The Spirituous Tincture of the Flowers.* Made with Common Brandy, it is a secret for curing Sore and Running Eyes, if some few times dropt into them. It is Alexipharmick, and has all the Virtues of the Essence. Dose half a Spoonful in any proper Vehicle.

XVI. *The Cataplasme of the Flowers.* Being applied to Sore and Running Eyes, afflicted with a hot Rheum, it strengthens the Part, cools the Inflammation, represses the flux of Humors, and heals the Eyes.

XVII. *The Liquid Juice.* It is very effectual to heal all Sores and Ulcers of the Mouth ; and put into fresh or green Wounds, it conglutinates their Lips, and quickly heals them : And dropt into the Eyes, it takes away their Heat, Inflammation, and Pain.

XVIII. *The Distilled Water of the Herb.* It has the same properties with the Juice, and Essence, but not altogether so powerful.

## CHAP. LXXIX.

### BLEW-BOTTLE Double-flowred.



Blew  
Bottle  
double

I. **T**HE Names. They are called in Latin, *Cyanus multiflorus* : and in English, Double-flowred Blew-bottle, or Corn-flower.

II. *The Kinds.* They are of the lesser Kind of Blew-bottle, and are twofold, 1. *Cyanus caeruleus multiflorus*, Double Blew-flowred Blew-bottle, or Corn-flower. 2. *Cyanus purpureus multiflorus*, Double Corn-flower Purple-flowred. 3. To these we add, *Cyanus floridus Turcicus*, *Cyanus floridus odoratus Turcicus*, *Cyanus Orientalis*, which is also Major and Minor. The Turkey Blew-bottle : The Turkey Sweet-scented Blew-bottle, and the Sultan's Flower, because the Grand Senior espying it as he was walking abroad, liked it, and wore it himself, for which reason his Vassals held it in great esteem : of this there is a Greater and a Lesser.

III. *The Description.* The first of these differs not at all from the small Field Corn-flower in the former Chapter, neither in the Roots, Stalks, Leaves, nor Seeds, but only in the Flowers, for that the Flowers of this Plant, are of a fair Blew color, and very double, whereas the other are single.



Blew Bottle Turkey.

IV. The Second of these is also like unto the former in all respects, saving in the color of the flower ; for whereas that is double, and of a fair blew ; the flowers of this are also double, and of a bright purple color.

V. The Third is a Plant or Flower of much beauty : It has a Root like the other Blew-bottles, which perishes every Year ; the Leaves hereof are not much greener, but larger, and more gashed in on the edges ; the Stalks are three feet high at least, and lower than in the other, beset with the like Leaves, but smaller, and branching into several parts, each of them bearing a larger scaly head than the former, and bigger in the Greater of this kind, than in the Lesser, with Blew-bottle like flowers, but larger, and consisting of eight or nine hollow Leaves, with wider open brims, and small, pale or almost white threads in the middle ; the circling Leaves are of a fine beautiful purple color, very glorious to behold. This Flower is of so exceeding a sweet scent, that it surpasses ( says Parkinson ) the best Civet that is. The Seed is blackish, and enclosed in a Downy substance like the former.

VI. *The Places.* The two first are often found in

Corr.



Corn fields, and are also nourished up in Gardens. The last was brought to us from Turkey, or Constantinople, and grows in the Gardens of some Herborists.

VII. *The Times.* They flower for the most part thro' all the Summer, and their Seed ripens in the mean season.

VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses,* are all exactly the same with those in the former Chapter, so that we shall say no more thereof in this place.

## CHAP. LXXX.

### BLITES White.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek Βλίτον : In Latin, *Blitum* : and in English, *Blites*. Yet Parkinson says, that none of the Ancients have made any mention of them.

II. *The Kinds.* There are two principal Kinds, viz. 1. *Blitum album*, the White Blite ; and this is both *Majus* and *Minus*, of which we treat in this Chapter. 2. *Blitum Rubrum*, The Red Blite, which is also *Majus* and *Minus*, of which in the next Chapter.



III. *The Description.* The Great White Blite has a Root very thick, and long, and very full of Threads or Strings ; from whence rises up several Stalks, making a kind of bush, till it comes to be three or four Feet high ; the Stalks are grayish, white, and round : the Leaves are plain and smooth almost like to those of Arach, but not so soft nor mealy : the Flowers grow thrust together, like those of Arach : after which comes the Seed inclosed in round, flat, husky skins.

IV. *The Lesser White Blite,* which is called the Wild White Blite is very like unto the former, except that the Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Branches, and the whole Plant are altogether of a green color, and

every way less than the former, growing upright, and not creeping at all.



V. *The Places.* The First is a Garden Herb, and grows chiefly there, but is in some places found Wild. The Second is as a Weed, growing Wild, tho' also in Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* They flourish and flower all the Summer long, their Seed is ripe in August and September, ; and grow very green even in the Winter time.

VII. *The Qualities.* The Blite, says Galen (*lib. 6. fac. Med. Simp.*) is a Pot Herb, which serves for Meat, cold and moist ( in the second Degree : ) Hysterick, and Solutive. Yet Parkinson, will have them to be Cold, Dry, Astringent or Binding.

VIII. *The Specification.* They are peculiar against Fluxes and Distempers of the Womb.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction in Wine. 4. A Syrup.

#### The Virtues.

X. *The Liquid Juice.* Taken to five or six ounces in a Glass of Wine, it purges by stool, makes the Belly soluble, and cools the Bowels : but sometimes it overturns the Stomach, and cleanses it by Vomiting.

XI. *The Essence.* It does the same thing with the Juice, but with less detriment to the Stomach ; and being taken Morning and Evening from two ounces to three, or four, it stops the Whites in Women, and a Gonorrhœa in Men, Universals being premised.

XII. *The Decoction in Wine.* This is yet less troublesome to the Stomach, and has the Virtues of the Essence ; but not altogether so powerful ; and may be taken without any danger by a Woman with Child.

XIII. *The Syrup.* It is not only Hysterick, but Pectoral also : it cleanses the Womb, Breast, Stomach, and Lungs, of Slime, and Viscous or Tartarous Matter, eases Coughs, and taken for some time, helps Asthma's, and shortness of Breath.



## C H A P. LXXXI.

## B L I T E S Red.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Latin, *Blitum Rubrum*, and in English, the Red Blite.



Red Blite

Blite w<sup>th</sup>  
much seed

II. The Kinds. There are two Species of it  
1. *Blitum majus Rubrum*, *Blitum Rubrum Hortense*; the greater Red Blite, or Garden Red Blite. 2. *Blitum minus Rubrum*, *Blitum Rubrum Sylvestre*, the

lesser Red Blite, or Wild Red Blite. 3. Red Blite with much Seed.

III. The Description. The first is almost exactly like the Great White Blite described in the former Chapter, except that the Stalks, and Leaves, and also the rest of the Plant are reddish, and reddish mixed with a dark green color, and in all other respect they seem to be like.

Blite small red



IV. The second, lesser, or Wild Blite, is almost like to the Wild White Blite, saving that in this, the Stalks and Branches trail upon the ground, and are reddish, like the former for their color: the Seed is small and clustering together, green of color, and almost like unto the Seed of *Coronope Ruellij*, or Bucks-horn.

V. The third Kind differs little from the first, save that the Leaves are longer, and it is much fuller of Seed, and with a multiplicity of spiky heads.

VI. The Places. The first or Greater is a Garden Plant, and a Pot-herb: the other grows Wild, but for the most part in Gardens, and is taken for a Weed: but is sometimes found Wild in other places.

VII. The Times. They Flower all the Summer long, and their Seed is ripe in August and September; and keep alive in Winter also.

VIII. The Qualities. They are cold and dry in the second Degree, Astringent, Hysterick, and Solutive.

IX. The Specification. They are peculiar to stop the Terms in Women.

X. The Preparations. You may make therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Syrup.

## The Virtues.

XI. They are exactly the same with those Preparations in the former Chapter, save, that whereas those are peculiar for stopping the Whites in Women, and *Gonorrhæa's*; these are peculiar for stopping their Courses when they overflow; and are also of great use to stop other Fluxes of Blood in either Sex.



## C H A P. LXXXII.

## B L O O D - W O R T.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek *Λάπαθρον* : In Latin, *Lapathum Sanguineum*, as Parkinson : *Sanguis Draconis Herba*, as J. Bauhin : *Lapathum folio acuto rubente*, as C. Bauhin : In English, *Blood-wort*.

**II. The Kinds.** It is a Species of the Dock, and differs little but in its color.

*Blood wort.*

**III. The Description.** It has a Root not great, but something long, and very red, abiding many Years, yet sometimes killed by the extream hardness of the Winter : And as it is one of the sort of Docks, so has it long Leaves, like unto the smaller yellow Dock, but overspread with many red Veins, and overshadowed with red upon the green leaf, that it seems sometimes almost wholly red. The Stalk is red or reddish, bearing such like Leaves, but smaller, up to the Top, where it is divided into divers small Branches, on which grow purplish Flowers ; after which come three square, dark, red Seed, like unto other Docks.

**IV. The Places.** It grows chiefly in Gardens, as a Pot-herb, almost throughout the Kingdom : but Parkinson says, it is sometimes found growing Wild.

**V. The Times.** It rises up in the Spring of the Year ; Flowers through all June and July ; and the Seed is ripe in August.

**VI. The Qualities.** Blood-wort in respect to heat or cold is temperate, and dry in the second Degree : It is Astringent, Digestive, Discussive, and Traumatick ; Stomatick, Hepatick, Splenetick, and Alterative.

**VII. The Specification.** It is peculiar for cleansing

the Blood, and strengthening it in its Crasis, and therefore powerful against the Scurvy.

**VIII. The Preparations.** You may make thereof, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction in Red Wine. 4. An Acid Tincture. 5. A Syrup. 6. A Saline Tincture. 7. A Balsam. 8. A Cataplasme. 9. A Pouder of the Seed.

*The Virtues.*

**IX. The Liquid Juice.** Taken from one ounce to four, either alone, by it self, or mixed with Wine, it removes the Discriasie of the Blood and Humors, cleanses it, and renews the whole Bloody Mass, like to the Blood of a young Child : It ought to be given Morning and Night for several Days.

**X. The Essence.** It has the Virtues of the Juice, strengthens the Stomach, Liver, and other Bowels, stops Fluxes of the Belly, chiefly the Bloody Flux, helps Spitting of Blood, and the Subversion or Loathing of the Stomach through Choler : It opens Obstructions, and is profitable against the Jaundice. Dose four or six Spoonfuls, or more.

**XI. The Decoction.** It has the Virtues of the Essence, but not full out so powerful ; and being outwardly used it is good against Freckles, Tannings, Sun-burnings, Morpew, and other like defilements of the skin. Taken inwardly to six ounces, it opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, strengthens the Viscera, and stops all Fluxes of Blood. It may be made both of Roots and Leaves in Red Port Wine.

**XII. The Acid Tincture.** This is more stomatick than any of the former, purifies the Blood, rectifies the Humors, and cures the Scurvy whether in Old or Young : The Dose is from a quarter of a spoonful to half, in Wine, or any proper Vehicle. Besides all this, it kills Worms in Children, and is good against the Dropsie ; quenches Thirst, restores lost Appetite, and takes away the Praternatural heat of Fevers : A Julep may be made of it, with the Syrup thereof, to be given in all malign and burning Fevers.

**XIII. The Syrup.** It is Pectoral, good against Coughs, Colds, Wheezings, and shortness of Breath.

**XIV. The Saline Tincture.** It purifies the Blood by the Urinary passages, allays the heat of Fevers, is prevalent against Jaundice and Dropsie, and loosens the Belly : Outwardly used, it is good against Pimples, Scurf, Morpew, and other breakings out of the Skin.

**XV. The Balsam.** It eases Pains, being anointed upon any Part, speedily cures Green Wounds, cleanses Ulcers, incarnates, and heals them.

**XVI. The Cataplasme.** It is Discussive, and somewhat Repercussive, is profitably applied to Contusions, and other Tumors, and gives ease in the Gout.

**XVII. The Pouder of the Seed.** It is drying and binding, stops Fluxes of all sorts, and bleedings of the Viscera : and taken in Wine to one dram, it is good against the wounds of the Scorpion, Mad-Dogs, and of other Venomous Beasts.

## C H A P. LXXXIII.

## B O R A G E.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek, *Εὐφροσύνη*, *Euphrosine*, ab efficienda Voluptate : In Latin, *Borago* ; dicta videtur à *Corago*, ut à *litera variata*. *Apuleius* said that it was called, *Corago*, quod cordis affectibus medetur, and from thence it is thought



thought came our name *Borage*, by the alteration of one Letter ; but this name is not to be found in any of the Ancient Writers : In *English*, we call it *Borage*.

II. *The Kinds*. There are several Kinds hereof : as, 1. *Borago Vulgaris*, *Borago Hortensis*, *Floribus Caruleis*, Common Garden Borage with Blew Flowers. 2. *Borago flore albo*, Borage with a White Flower. 3. *Borago semper Vivens*, Everliving Borage.



III. *The Description*. It has a Root, thicker and shorter than that of Bugloss, something blackish without, and whitish within, perishing after Seed time, but rises again of its own Sowing, in the Spring of the Year. The Leaves are broader, shorter, greener, rougher, and more crumpled than are the Leaves of Bugloss. The Stalks hereof are not so high, but branched out into many parts, whereon stand larger Flowers, and more pointed at the end than Bugloss, and of a paler blew color for the most part, yet sometimes the Flowers are reddish ; each Flower consists of five Leaves, standing in a round whitish hairy husk, divided into five parts, or leaves ; in the middle of the Flower grow forth a number of fine black Threads, standing out, pointed at the end, and broad at the bottom ; which being past away, there succeeds several roundish black Seeds.

IV. *Borago floribus albis*, Borage with white flowers, is a plant like to the other in all respects, except the color of the Flowers, for as they are perfectly blew, these are purely white, and in this particular the difference only consists.

V. The Everliving Borage, has Roots black, thicker than either of the former, and more spreading, not dying in the Winter, but yielding green Leaves all the Winter long. It has very many broad Leaves, rough and hairy, more resembling Comfrey than Borage, yet not so large as either, of a black, dark, green color. Among which rise up stiff hairy Stalks, but not so high as those of our Common Garden Borage, upon which do grow many small, fair, blew Flowers, very like to the Flowers of Bugloss for the form, and of Borage for the color : There are Buds, Flowers, and ripe Seed, all at once, for

which reason it is called Everlasting, and that very properly, because it not only lasts both Summer and Winter, but is seldom without Buds, Flowers, and Seed, ripe and unripe together, by which it wonderfully increases.

VI. *The Places*. The first is common in almost all Gardens : The second and third are not so common, but they grow with us in Gardens, as easily as the former.

VII. *The Times*. They Flower throughout all the Summer Months, till the Autumn is well spent ; and their Seed ripens in the mean season.

VIII. *The Qualities*. They are Temperate in respect of heat or cold, and moist in the first Degree, Absterfive, Aperitive, Emollient, Cordial, Alterative, and Alexipharmick.

IX. *The Specification*. They wonderfully cheer the Heart, expelling Sadness and Melancholly, according to the Verse,

*Stultis, Leprosis, Tabidis, Timidis, Furiosis,  
Dicit Borago, gaudio semper ago.*

*Purificat Sanguinem, & Cor letificat.* It purifies the Blood, and makes the Heart merry.

X. *The Preparations*. You may have therefrom : 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Distilled Water of the whole Plant. 4. A Syrup. 5. An Infusion in Wine. 6. A Conserve of the Flowers. 7. An Acid Tincture. 8. A Balsam. 9. Ashes. 10. A Spirit.

#### *The Virtues.*

XI. *The liquid Juice*. It effectually purifies the Blood, and is of excellent use in all Putrid, Malign, Spotted and Pestilential Fevers, to defend the Heart from their Poison and Malignity, and to expell the same, as also the Poison of other Creatures. It cools, opens Obstructions, cleanses the Blood and Humors, and is effectual in the cure of the Yellow Jaundice. Dose from three to eight spoonfuls, or more, in Wine, or mixed with the Distilled Water, or in some other fit Vehicle, two or three times a day.

XII. *The Essence*. It has all the Virtues of the former, more exalted, and therefore more powerfully and effectually cheers the Heart, and expells Melancholly. It is an excellent Cordial, revives the Spirits, strengthens Nature, is good against Fainting and Swooning Fits, and other Passions of the Heart, and restores such as have been long wasting in a Consumption. It may be given from two to four or six ounces at a time, and that two or three times a day, in Wine, or some other fit Vehicle, and it may be sweetned, or made pleasant with Syrup of Borage. This Essence is Traumatick, and contributes very much towards the curing of Wounds, or old Running Ulcers, and Fistula's, in Bodies of an ill habit.

XIII. *The Distilled Water*. It has the Virtues of the former, but nothing near so powerful ; but it may be used as a Vehicle to convey the other things in.

XIV. *The Syrup*. It is of the Nature of the Essence, tho' not so Strong and Effectual ; it is Cordial, opens Obstructions of the Brest and Lungs, helps Coughs, Colds, Wheezings, Asthma's, shortness of Breath, and mixt with Juice of Fumitory, it cools and cleanses the Blood, and is profitable against the Yellow Jaundice. Dose two ounces.

XV. *The Infusion of the Herb in Wine*. It very sensibly and admirably recreates the Spirits, and gratifies or pleases the Stomach, is good against the Cardiac Passion, and Melancholly, and is prevalent against the Falling-sickness : If it is a strong Infusion, it



it is good against redness and inflammation of the Eyes, they being washed therewith.

XVI. *The Conserve of the Flowers.* They are chiefly used as a Cordial Sweet-meat, and to restore such as have been long in a Consumption, being often taken with new Cows Milk, viz. such as is warm from the Cow, and in which the heat is preserved all day, by the help of the heat of a Sand Furnace.

XVII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is an admirable Stomack and Cordial, refreshes the languishing Stomach, and causes a good Appetite: It prevails against the Scurvy, Dropsie, Jaundice and Gout; removes Sickness at Heart, and stops a vehement and preternatural Vomiting. If used as a Gargle, by mixing it with some of the Distilled Water, and Syrup, it cures Cankers, and Ulcers of the Mouth and Throat, and allays Inflammations of the Tonfils. This *Tincture* is a notable thing against all burning, malign, putrid, and pestilential Fevers, and profligates even the Plague it self; for it immediately allays the preternatural heat, quenches the violent thirst, resists the putridity of the Humors, and profligates the Poison of the very Pestilence it self. It cools, opens Obstructions, and rectifies the Discrepance of the Blood and Humors, beyond many other more Specious, and much Celebrated Medicaments.

XVIII. *The Balsam.* It is an excellent Vulnerary; it cleanses old Ulcers, and other Putrid and Running Sores; and heals green Wounds to a miracle; I commend it by Experience to my Countrymen.

XIX. *The Ashes.* If they be boiled in Mead or Honeyed Water, it will be a Gargle for the curing Inflammations of the Throat and Tonfils, Ulcers of the Mouth, &c. And if they be boiled in fair water, and that water mixed with Juice of Fumitory, it will make a Lotion against Scabs, Itch, Tettars, Ringworms, Scurf, Morpew, and other breakings out, arising from sharp and adust Humors.

XX. *The Spirit.* It is made of the Juice of the Plant, fermented with Honey, Sugar, Mellossus, or Leaven, and then Distilled in an Alembick. It is a great Cordial, much exceeding Spirit of Wine in fainting and Swooning Fits, Sickness at Heart, Palpitation, and other Passions of the Heart: It cheers the Spirits, recreates Nature, and makes Merry, profligating the most profound powers of Melancholly. Dose one Dram, or two, to four Drams, alone, if dulcified, otherwise to be mixed with a Glass of Wine.

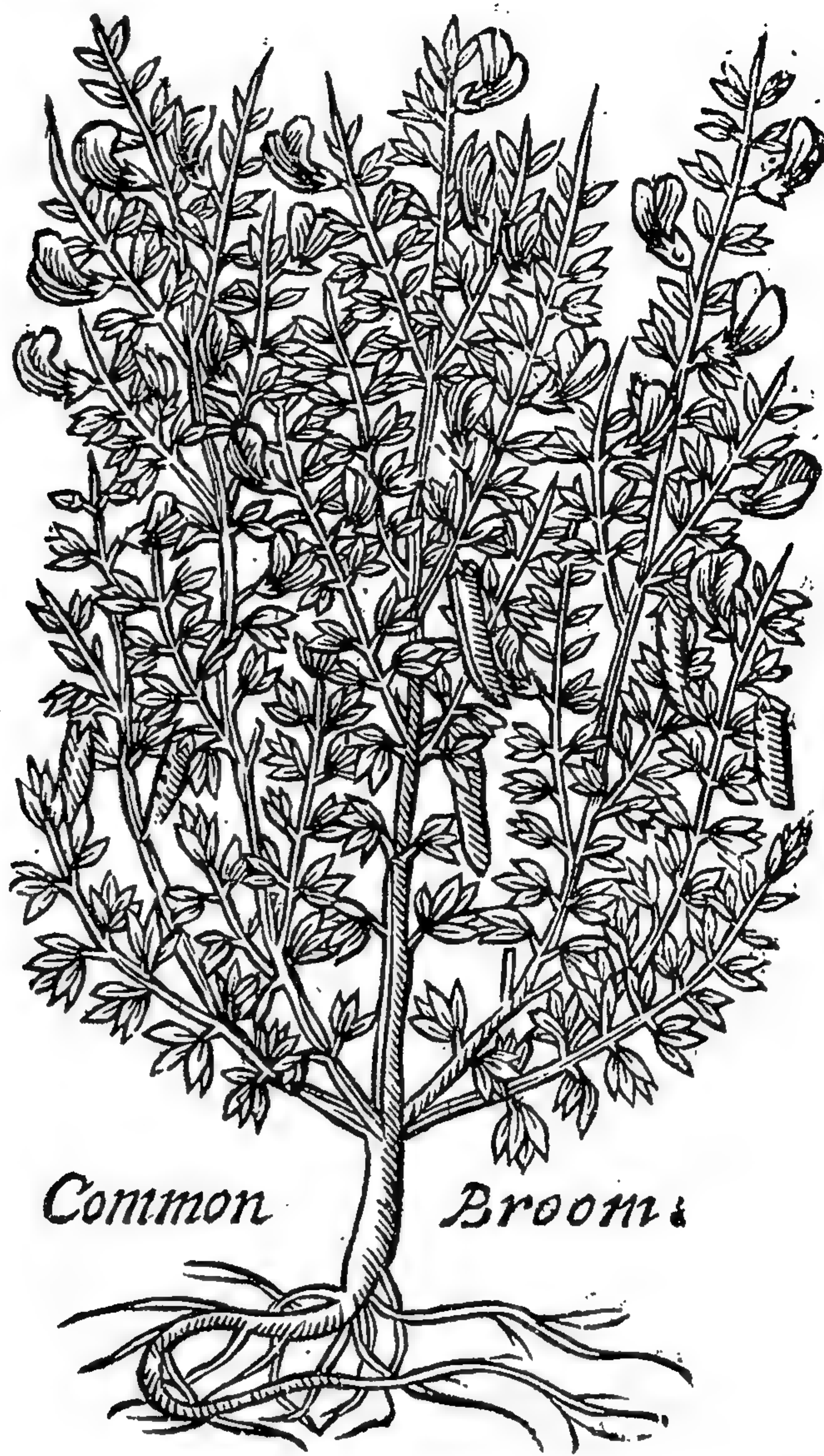
## C H A P. LXXXIV.

### B R O O M Common.

I. **T**HE Names. This our Broom was scarcely known to the Ancient Greeks, though some have given it the name of Σπέρτιον Spartion: However it is called generally in Latin, *Genista*; and *Scoparia*, as Gerard and Parkinson; some suppose it to be called *Genista à genuum flexilitate*, from the flexibleness of its Joints; or, *Quia genibus medeatur dolentibus*, because it eases the pain of the Knees: or, *quod facile generet, speciemque propaget*, because it easily encreases, and is not without trouble destroyed where it takes Rooting: also *Genista angulosa trifolia*, as J. Baubin and Mr. Ray: In English, *Broom*, and *Common Broom*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are but two kinds, which we shall take notice of in this Book: 1. The English. 2. The Spanish. The English Broom is twofold, viz. 1. *Scoparia*, or *Genista vulgaris*, our Common

Field or Heath Broom. 2. *Genistella*, *Chamagenista* Dwarf Broom: Gerard calls it, *Chamaginesta Anglica*.



Common Broom.

III. *The Description.* Common Broom has a Root which is long and woody, but tough withal, spreading several ways under the Earth, never perishing, but sending forth new shoots every Year, and more especially, if the old Stalks are cut down, and taken away. From these Roots come forth many woody Stems or Stalks, of the bigness of a Man's Finger at bottom, sometimes bigger, sometimes lesser, according to its length of time in growing, rising up to the height of four or five Feet, or more, and spreading into several the like woody Branches, making a kind of Shrub or Bush, as it were, covered with a hard and thin dark, grayish, green Bark, from which shoot forth a great number of slender, pliant, square or cornered small Twiggs, like Rushes, upon which grow small, dark, green Leaves. The Flowers are large, and of a golden yellow shining color, growing one above another for a good space, till they come to the Tops of the Branches, which turn into hard, flat, small Cods, almost black when they are ripe, and in which are contained small and shining, brownish Seed.

IV. *Genistella* or Dwarf Broom has a Root long and tough, long lasting, and spreading much under ground: This Plant never grows very great or high, neither come its slender, pliant, green Branches to be hard or woody, but they always keep low, rising up but a little more than a foot in height. Upon its green pliant twigs, are set small and something long Leaves, of a dark, green color on the upper side, and gray underneath, abiding on them all the Summer time: at the tops grow small yellow Flowers, not so yellow, nor so large as the former, but like unto them for the form; which being past, there succeeds little long Pods or Cods of Seed, which are like to the first, but smaller.

V. *The Places.* The first grows very plentifully in many places of our Land, as upon Heaths, Barren Places, and Uncultivated Grounds, as well as in France, Germany, Italy, and Spain: The other is also found in many Parts of this Kingdom; and is also



also found in *Hungary*: about thirty Years since as I was a walking, I found it in some Waste and Barren Grounds about *Low-Layton* near *London*: This is supposed to be *Clusius* his *Chamagenista Pannonica septima*.

VI. *The Times*. They Flower sometimes earlier, sometimes later in the *Summer* Months, as in *June* and *July*, to the end of *August*, and the Seed ripens in the mean season.

VII. *The Qualities*. They are both hot and dry in the second Degree, and said to be of one and the same, and equal Virtues: They are Aperitive, Absterfive, Diuretick, and Traumatick or Vulnerary: Hepatick, Splenetick, Hysterick, Nephritick, Arthritick, and Alterative: but the Seed some say is Cathartick.

VIII. *The Specification*. It is of peculiar use against the Dropsie, Jaundice, Gout, and Kings-Evil, as also Distempers of the Reins and Bladder.

IX. *The Preparations*. You may make from these Plants: 1. *A Distilled Water*. 2. *A Decoction in Wine*. 3. *A Liquid Juice*. 4. *An Inspissate Juice*. 5. *An Essence*. 6. *An Oil distilled*. 7. *A Spirituous Tincture*. 8. *An Acid Tincture*. 9. *An Oily Tincture*. 10. *A Saline Tincture*. 11. *A Syrup*. 12. *A Fixed Salt of the Ashes*. 13. *A Powder of the Leaves and Seeds*. 14. *A Conserve of the Flowers*. 15. *An Oil*. 16. *An Ointment*. 17. *A Balsam*. 18. *Genistamel*. 19. *A Cataplasma*. 20. *A Pickle of the Buds*.

#### The Virtues.

X. *The distilled Water*. Whether it is made of the Flowers, or of the green Branches, or both, it is said to be good against Surfeits; and taken with equal quantities of the lesser Centory Water, and the Patient laid down to Sweat upon it, it is said to alter the Fits of Agues. It is a good Vehicle for some of the following Preparations.

XI. *The Decoction in Wine*. It is good against the Dropsie, Jaundice and Gout, and to cleanse the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, of Sand, Gravel, and other Tartarous matter.

XII. *The liquid Juice, made of the young Branches, and flowery Heads*. It purges downwards Phlegmatick and Watry Humors, and therefore is good for such as have the Dropsie, more especially if it is used with White Port, or *Rhenish* Wine: but possibly in some other cases it may be better used with Water. It is profitable against the Gout and Sciatica, and other pains of the Joints and Limbs. It eases pains in the Sides, and is good against Tumors of the Spleen. It cleanses the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, of Stones, Sand, and Gravel, or any Tartarous Matter Obstructing them, bringing forth the offending Matter by Urine, which it admirably provokes. Dose three, four or six ounces in Wine, twice or thrice a day, as you see need requires.

XIII. *The Inspissate Juice*. The Virtues are the same with the former. Dose from j. to iij. drams: dissolve it in Wine over a gentle heat, and so drink it.

XIV. *The Essence*. It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, before enumerated: It opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, is good against Pains and Stitches in the Sides, difficulty of Breathing, and shortness of Breath; and as it cleanses the Reins and Urinary passages of Gravel and Stones, it is said so perfectly to remove the Cause, as to hinder their ever breeding again. Moreover, it prevails against the Kings-Evil, and powerfully strikes at the Root of the Cause. It opens Obstructions of the Womb, and provokes the Terms in Women, where

they are stoppt. Dose five, six or eight spoonfuls, in White Port or *Rhenish* Wine.

XV. *The distilled Oil*. It is made from the Seed and Roots dried, as Oil of Saffras, and other like things is made. Its use is External to Anoint with, to take away Spots, Freckles, Pimples, and other deformities of the skin.

XVI. *The Spirituous Tincture*. It is a peculiar thing against the Scurvy, and to strengthen the Stomach and Bowels, whilst the Dropsie is in curing. Dose two drams.

XVII. *The Acid Tincture*. If it is often and long taken, it destroys the Scurvy, Dropsie, and Kings-Evil in their Roots, and destroys the praternatural heat in all Burning, Malign, and Pestilential Fevers. It opens Obstructions of all the *Viscera*, and in a word, performs all that the Liquid Juice or Essence can do; and with this advantage, that this may be taken where there is an extreme weakness of the Stomach, when those things cannot. It helps shortness of Breath, and difficulty of Breathing, strengthens a weak Stomach, and causes a good Appetite in such as loath their Food, or cannot endure to see it in their sight. Dose from a quarter to almost half a spoonful, in Ale, Beer, or Wine, three, four or five times a day.

XVIII. *The Oily Tincture*. It is good against external Evils, and deformities of the Skin, as Spots, Freckles, Lentils, Pimples, Wheals, Scurf, Morphew, and such other like Diseases; eases Pains and Aches from a cold cause, in what part of the Body soever: and being taken inwardly from ten drops to twenty, or more, in any Diuretick Vehicle, it gives present ease to Pains of the Back, though never so extream, provokes Urine, takes away the heat and scalding thereof, and expells Sand, Gravel, and Tartarous Matter.

XIX. *The Saline Tincture*. It is good in hot Tumors, and all hot Eruptions, and deformities of the Skin, proceeding from heat, or where they happen in hot Constitutions. Inwardly given, it powerfully provokes Urine, and therefore may be of good use in the Dropsie *Sarcites*, to drain the water out of the whole Body. It kills small Worms in the Skin, which breed in an extravagant manner in some People, chiefly in the Forehead, Nose and Chin.

XX. *The Syrup*. If it is made of the Juice, it has the Virtues of the Juice, and Essence, but not full out so powerful; however it is better for Children, Ladies, and such as are Queasie Stomached: It purges gently, and carries off the Recrements of Humors. Dose two ounces to four in a Glass of Port Wine: It is a singular thing against the Dropsie, Jaundice and King's-Evil.

XXI. *The Fixed Salt*. It is made of the Ashes by Elixivation in Water, being drank daily in Ale, Beer, or Wine, it is said alone to cure the Dropsy, and to be a Specifick for the same. Dose from a scruple to half a dram, in every good draught of Ale, Beer or Wine. And so taken in White or *Rhenish* Wine, it is not only a Specifick against the Dropsie, but as Authors say, it cures the Green-sickness also: however it is not to be used in too great a quantity, lest it should by its vehement aperitive and absterfive Qualities, fret or hurt the Bowels, but it may be given in the Liquid Juice or Essence, whereby it exalts their Virtues, and makes them the more powerful to all the intentions they are proposed for.

XXII. *The Powder of the Leaves and Seed*. Taken to a dram, or dram and half, in Beer or Wine, it purges downwards Cold, Flegmatick, and Watery Humors, expells the Water in Dropsies, helps the Gout and Sciatica; and by a constant use thereof in Wine,



Wine, it cures the Black Jaundice, and preserves from the Gout and Stone.

XXIII. *The Conserve of the Flowers.* Made with Sugar or Honey, and often eaten, it waists and destroys the Humors which feed the Kings-Evil.

XXIV. *The Oil.* It is made of the young Branches and Flowers, boiled in Oil Olive, till they are Crisp, &c. It is a safe and sure Medicament to kill Lice, Nits, and other Vermin, in the Head or Body; and being applied to the Sciatica, it helps it.

XXV. *The Ointment.* It is made of the young Branches bruised, and the Flowers, by boiling them in Oil, adding Sheeps Suet and Wax to bring it to a body, &c. This being applied to Sides pained, or where Stitches are, or to the Spleen, eases the pain, and removes it at twice or thrice using.

XXVI. *The Balsam.* It is made of the young Twigs and Flowers, &c. being applied to green Wounds, or foul, running, and putrid Ulcers, it cleanses, incarnates, and heals them in a very short time. The same will be done by a Balsam made of the Liquid Juice and Turpentine, boiled to a thickness, adding a little Oil and Wax.

XXVII. *Genistamel.* It is made by boiling the liquid Juice and Honey to a thickness. It cures green Wounds presently. It also cleanses old, running, and putrid Ulcers, fills them with Flesh, and heals them: And apply'd to Kibes in the Feet, with powder of Scammony, it cures them in a very short time.

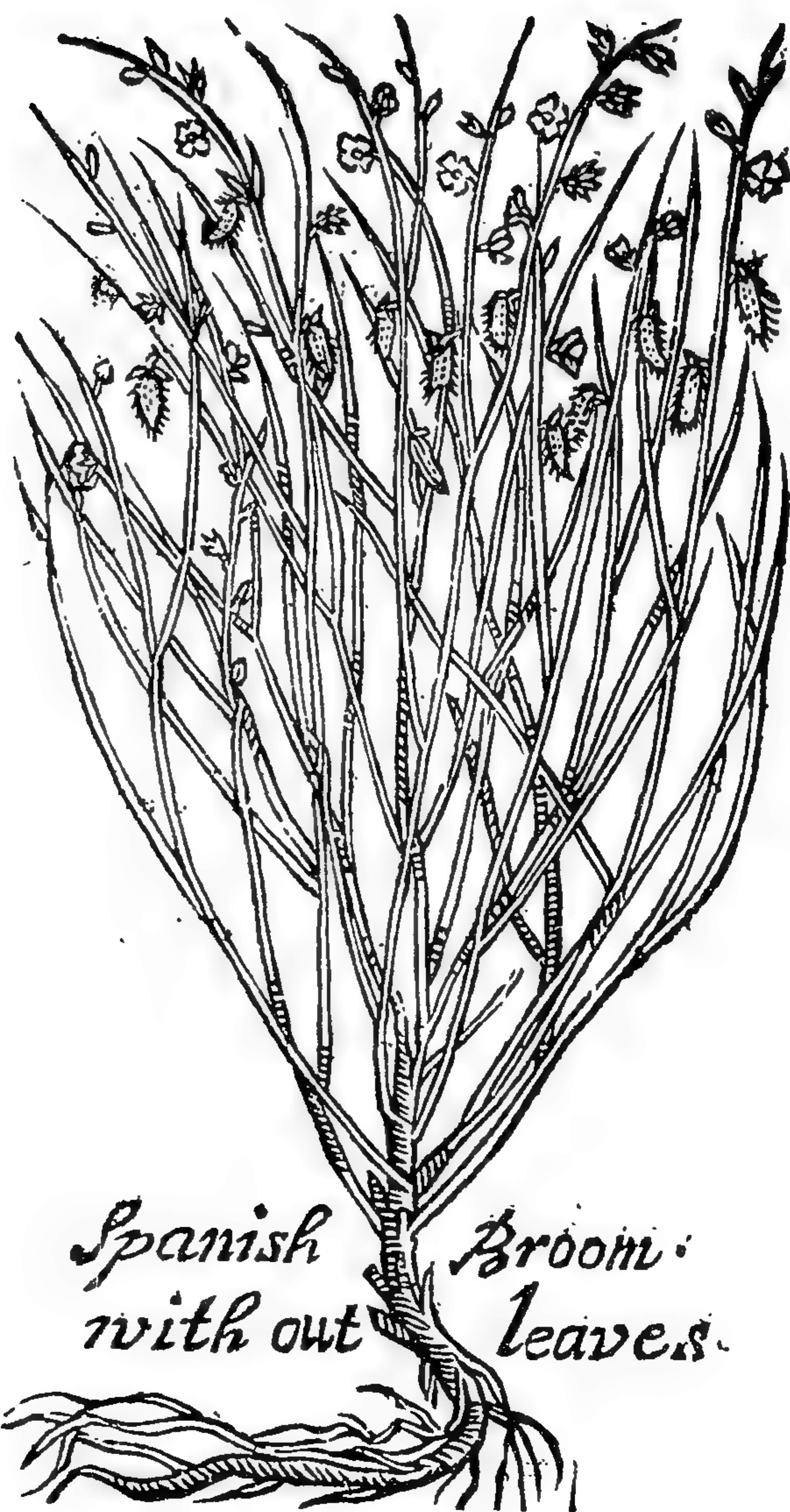
XXVIII. *The Cataplasme.* It is to be made of the tender Tops and Flowers, beaten till they become a Mass in a Wooden Mortar. Being applied, it is said to help the bitings of Serpents, and other Venomous Creatures.

XXIX. *The Pickle.* The young Buds of the Flowers are usually Pickled; and they make an excellent Sallet for the Winter time, but it is of use thro' the whole Year; it excites the Appetite, causes a good Digestion, opens Obstructions of the Liver, Spleen and Reins, and provokes Urine.

ers, fashioned like unto Broom Flowers, but larger as yellow as they, and smelling as well; after which come small, long, round, yellowish red Cods, crested at the back, wherein is contained blackish flat Seed, fashioned very like unto the Kidney Bean, but the Cods (says Gerard) rarely contain more than one Seed, seldom two.



Spanish. Broom.



Spanish Broom without leaves.

## CHAP. LXXXV.

### BROOM Spanish.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Σπάρτιον*: in Latin, *Spartium*, and *Spartum Hispanicum*: and in English, *Spanish Broom*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are, 1. *Spartum Hispanicum*, and *Spartum Hispanicum frutex* (to distinguish it from the Sedge or Rush, that is so called) *Spartum Græcorum*, *Genista Hispanicum*, and *Spartum Hispanicum vulgare*, Common Spanish Broom. 2. *Spartum Hispanicum majus flore albo*, *Pseudo-spartum Hispanicum Aphyllum*, Spanish Broom with a White Flower, Bastard Spanish Broom without Leaves. 3. *Spartum Hispanicum flore luteo*, *Pseudo-spartum luteum Aphyllum*, Spanish Broom with a yellow Flower, or the yellow Bastard Broom without Leaves.

III. *The Description.* The first of these has a tough, woody Root, spreading it self under the Earth many ways; from whence rises up a Stalk five or six Feet high, with a woody Stock below, covered with a dark Gray, or Ash-coloured Bark, and having above many pliant, long, and slender crested green twigs, whereon, in the beginning of the Year, are set many small, long, green Leaves, which abide not long, but fall away when the Plant comes to flower. Towards the tops of these Branches or Twigs grow the Flow-

IV. *Spartum Hispanicum majus flore albo*, The greater White flowered Spanish Broom, has a Root like the former, from whence grows up a Stem much higher than the yellow, even to five or six Feet high, whose Branches are more tough, apt to bend, and compliant, than the former, or that following, having



*Small Leaves on them like the others, and as soon fading: the Flowers also stand upon long Stalks, and are like the others for form, but larger, and of a White color, and of little or no smell; which being past away, there comes small round Pods or Cods, like the others, but smaller, each one containing, for the most part, but one Seed, something less than the others also.*

V. The third Kind, or *Pseudospartum flore luteo*, is a smaller Spanish Broom, which has also a hard, tough, woody Root, from whence grows a Stem or Stalk of the bigness of ones Thumb at bottom; and grows to be about two Feet high, whose bark is rough, and streaked all along, sending forth many green, slender, pliant Branches, which divide themselves again into many other smaller Twigs, whereon for a while after they are shot forth, abide a few small Leaves, until they begin to shoot out Flowers, and then fall away, leaving the Branches naked, and without Leaves all the rest of the Year after: from the Sides and Joints of the smaller Twigs, shoot forth small long Stalks, bearing many Flowers, smaller and yellower than the former *Spartum*, without any Scent for the most part: after which come small round skinny Cods, containing for the most part but one Seed in them, and fashioned somewhat like unto the Kidney Bean, which when they are ripe, will by the shaking of the Wind, make a noise in their Pods.

VI. The Places. They all grow in Spain, Italy, France, and other Southern Countries; but the first of them grows with us in Gardens, only as an Ornament, says Parkinson, among other delightful Plants, to please the Senses of Seeing and Smelling.

VII. The Times. The first and second Flowers in April and May, and beginning of June; the third Flowers in February: and their Seed is ripe before Winter: the first, which grows in our Gardens, its Seed is not ripe till very late in the Year.

VIII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses, are the same in all respects with English Broom, excepting, that these Spanish Brooms are stronger in operation, and more effectual to the purposes intended; insomuch, that being given inwardly in many of their Preparations as the English, they not only work downwards, but cleanse the Stomach and Body by Vomiting also: this being said, we shall say no more of them here, but refer you to the former Chapter.

## C H A P. LXXXVI.

### B R O O M Rape.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek *Οροβάνη*: in Latin, *Orobanchē*, *Cauda Leonis*; Clusius calls it *Hæmodoron*, as Theophrastus, lib. 8. cap. 8. or *Leimodoron*, as others have it: and in English, it is called *Broom-Rape*.

II. The Kinds. Of this Broom-Rape there are several Kinds, as, 1. That which proceeds from the Roots of the English-Broom. 2. That which proceeds from the Roots of the Spanish Broom. 3. That which proceeds from the Dyers Weed: all these have but one Description, though arising from the Roots of those several Plants. Lobel and Clusius make other Varieties, 1. That which has longer and smaller Flowers than the other, or common sort has. 2. That which has larger Flowers, and those of a blewish color, and is sometimes found among Corn. 3. That which is parted towards the Top



into several Branches, whose Flowers are either Blew, Purplish or White, and is sometimes found amongst Hemp.

III. The Description. Broom-Rape has a bulbous Root, or a Root round and scaly, which adheres or grows unto the Roots of Broom, big or large below, and smaller above, covered with blackish Scales, and of a yellowish Pulp within: from this Root does rise up a Stalk of the bigness of a Finger or Thumb, and about a span long; sometimes a Foot, or two Feet high, which has a shew of Leaves on it, and many Flowers about the Top of it, somewhat whitish, almost



most like to those of dead Nettles; or something resembling the Flowers of Orchis, but larger, and of a deadish yellow color, as the Stalks and Leaves also are, after which grow forth long, thick and round husks, in which are contained very many Seeds, yet good for nothing; but Parkinson says, it perishes without Seed.

IV. *The Places.* Gerard says, that Broom-Rape is not to be found any where but where Broom grows. It may be found in a Broom-field at the foot of Shooters-hill next London; upon Hampstead-Heath, and in several other places. But Parkinson says, it grows more often where no Broom grows, viz. by Fields and Hedge sides, and upon Heaths; and other Authors say, in Corn-fields and Hemp-lands.

V. *The Times.* It rises up, and appears, and is in its chief perfection in the Month of June.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is Temperate in respect to Heat or Cold, Dryness or Moisture, Aperitive, Absterfitive, Diuretick, and Vulnerary; Hepatick, Nephritick, and Alterative.

VII. *The Specification.* Its peculiar property is to provoke Urine, and help the Strangury.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may make therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. An Insolated Oil. 5. A Balsam. 6. A Cataplasm.

## The Virtues.

IX. *The liquid Juice.* It is an extraordinary thing to cure not only green Wounds, but also running Sores, old, filthy, running Ulcers, and malignant breakings out whatsoever.

X. *The Essence.* It is thought to be as effectual in opening Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, provoking Urine, and expelling Sand, Gravel, Stones, or any Viscous, Tartarous or Slimy Matter out of the Urinary passages, as Broom it self. Dose three or four ounces at a time, Morning and Evening, in a glass of White Wine.

XI. *The Decoction.* It has the Virtues of the Essence, but not all out so powerful.

XII. *The Insolated Oil.* It ought to be made of four or five repeated Infusions of the top Stalks with the Flowers, strained forth and cleared. It is said to cleanse the Skin of all manner of Spots, Freckles, Lentils, Sun-burning, Tanning, and other like deformities which rise through heat of the Sun, or superabundancy of malign Humors.

XIII. *The Balsam.* It is cleansing, incarnative, and healing, and therefore beneficial against all sorts of old, putrid, malign, and running Sores and Ulcers: It heals Wounds admirably, and conglutinates their Lips in a very short time.

XIV. *The Cataplasm.* It is good against Burnings and Scaldings, eases Pain, discusses Swellings and Contusions, where the Skin is not broken, and softens hard Tumors.

II. *The Kinds.* The Arabian, Greek and Roman Authors affirm it to be a Species of *Lapathum*, or Dock, which that laborious Botanist Abraham Munting in his famous Herbal, published in Holland, in Folio, Anno 1696. has sufficiently demonstrated. And of this Plant there are two special kinds, 1. The European, simply called *Britannica*, and *Britannica Antiquorum vera*, or *Britanny*. 2. The American, called by the aforementioned Author, *Britannica Americana*; and from some of the places where it grows, *Britannica Virginiana*, *American*, or *Virginian Britanny*.



*Britannica or Dark coloured Water Dock*

III. This Plant has layen in the Dark for many Ages, ever since the Times of the Ancient Romans; to whom it was well known, and by whom it was much used, as *Avicen*, *Dioscorides*, *Pliny*, *Galen*, *Agineta*, *Aetius*, *Orobasis*, and others, testifie; whereby it is manifest, that in Ancient times it was famous for its cures, which it performed in the Roman Armies, which in *Britanny* and the Low Countries, they laboured under, being chiefly the Scurvy, or Scorbutick Distempers, as *Diarrhae's*, or Fluxes of the Bowels, Pains or Aches, Looseness of Teeth, &c. for which reason *Claudius Caesar* carried it along with him to Rome, ordering it to be spread upon the Pageants of his Triumph, and to be hung up in the Capitol: And *Nero* himself took care of it afterwards for its Culture, by causing it to be Nurst up in the Gardens of Rome. But it seems when the Goths, and other Barbarous Nations overrun the Roman Empire, and the greatest part of Christendom, destroying and rooting up every thing they came near, that this Plant was buried or lost, in that Universal Destruction of almost all things, and

## CHAP. LXXXVII.

## BRITANNY.

I. *THE Names.* It is called by *Pliny*, lib. 20. cap. 21. in Greek *ὑδρολάπαθρον*, *Hydrolapathum*: in Latin, *Lapathum Sylvestre longifolium nigrum*, *Hydrolapathum*, *Hydrolapathum nigrum*, and *Britannica*: in English, the Wild Black long-leaved Water-Dock, or Black Water-Dock, and *Britanny*, which last is its most Common Appellation.



and has lain forgotten for above eight hundred Years, till this our Author discovered it anew.

IV. The name of this Plant, *Britannica*, came not, says *Munting*, from the Island of that Name, but its Etymology (says he) is taken from the *Frisian* Language, *Brit* signifying *Consolidare*, vel *firmare*, *Tan*, *Dens*, and *Ica*, loose, or a thing going forth, which is as much as to say, to fasten loose Teeth, the looseness of the Teeth and Gums being one of the Grand Symptoms of the Scurvy. But by that great Man's favour, we can give little credit to that far fetch'd Etymology, it being always a thing known, that the pride of the Ancient Romans was too great to invent, or investigate any thing whatsoever with a Latin Name, whose Etymology should arise from the unpolished Particles or Words of Barbarous Nations: Without doubt the Romans first finding it in England or *Britannia* in great plenty (tho' afterwards they might find it in *Friesland*, and other places of the Low Countries) gave it the Denomination from the Name of the Countrey they first found it in, and so called it *Britannica*, quasi *Herba Britannica*, and this is that which I adhere to, and really believe.

V. All the Botanists of the last six or seven hundred Years, knew nothing at all of it: indeed they have named *Britannica*, but they never durst venture to fix it, so as to describe it, or figure it in Sculpture. And according to the several Ages, several kinds of Herbs or Plants, were taken to be this Plants of ours, as, *Bistorta*, *Betonica*, *Beccabunga aquatica*, *Bugla*, *Cochlearia*, *Heptaphyllon*, *Plantago aquatica*, *Primula veris*, *Tormentilla*, *Veronica*, and several others; all which were falsely, in their several Ages, said to be the *Britannica* of the Ancients: and the two famous *Baubins*, who spent their whole lives in the Botanick Study, made so great a mistake, as to take *Colubrina*, or a sort of Snake-weed for it: And *Cambden* makes our English Herborists to say, that *Scurvy-grass* was the true *Britannica* *Plinij*; than which nothing is more remote: without doubt this our *Hydrolapathum nigrum*, is the genuine or true *Britannica* of the Ancients, its description agreeing exactly in every particular with their descriptions, and performing every thing, and more than they ascribed to it.

VI. The Description. The first of these, which is our European or English kind, has a Tuberous Root, large and roundish, sending forth from it almost round about, several Arms or Branches of a considerable thickness, all which seem knobbed or gouty, and ill shap'd: From this Root rises up several Leaves pretty large, not much unlike to those of the largest Dock, but every way broader and longer, growing upright, and sharp pointed, sometimes of a blackish green, sometimes of a purplish green, and sometimes of a yellowish green color, sometimes spotted, and sometimes not. From the midst of these Leaves rises up, one pretty large Stalk, sometimes three or four Feet high, of the shape and color of an ordinary Dock, except that sometimes it is inclining to a reddish green; it has a kind of Joints, whence spring forth Leaves like the former, but much less; and from the same places it sends forth manifold Branches, not much unlike to the Common Water Dock, but more numerous, larger and higher. The Flowers grow all over these Branches, almost from their very beginning, up even to their several Tops, in a kind of Case or Husk, each set upon a small, slender, short Footstalk, and of a brown color; which being vanished, the Seed is contained in Chaffy husks, not much unlike to other Dock Seed, especially that of the Water Dock.

VII. The American or Virginian Britanny has a Root consisting of a Head thick and gouty, but not of

a round tuberous body like the former, from which Head grows downward into the Earth, several Arms or Branches, which are thick, brownish without, and yellowish within: from this Root rises up one upright Stalk of several feet high, which has also Joints upon it like knees, from whence come forth very long and large Leaves, strong and hard, not much unlike to Monks Rhubarb, but that these are much longer. The Stalk (which is very like that of other Docks) rises up oftentimes to a considerable height, about the middle of which it sends forth a great number of Branches not much unlike the European, which have some few Leaves, like the others upon them, but much less. The Flowers grow in vast numbers upon all these Branches single, and each upon a small short Footstalk, even from their beginning up to their very tops, set in spaces at certain distances, in a seeming Uniform manner: After the Flowers are past away, the Seed comes, which is contained in a Chaffy Husk like the first, and differs not much from it, neither in shape, nor color, nor magnitude.

VIII. The Places. It commonly grows in Marshy and Fenny Grounds, banks of Ditches, and moist Places, and in sides of Ditches, and watry Plashes which are between the Land Ground and Fen Grounds in several parts of this Kingdom: I found some of it in the Borders of the Fens in *Cambridgeshire* and *Huntingdonshire*, and in other moist and watry places. It grows plentifully also in *Friesland*, *Overijssel*, *Gelderland*, and *Holland*, and possibly in many other places in the Low Countries.

IX. The Times. It shoots forth its Leaves in April; its Flowers in the latter end of May, or beginning of June; and its Seed is ripe in August. The Root is to be gathered in the beginning of the Spring, or in Autumn, viz. in March or September; the Leaves and Flowers in June and July; and the Seed in the latter end of August, or beginning of the next Month.

X. The Qualities. It is temperate in respect of heat or cold, but dry in the latter end of the second Degree. It is Astringent, Aperitive, Digestive, and Traumatick; Stomatick, Hepatick, Hylicrick, Arthritick and Alterative.

XI. The Specification. It is peculiar for the curing the Scurvy, and all sorts of Fluxes of what kind, soever; and *Munting* says, it is a Specifick against Poisons and Convulsions.

XII. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Spirituous Tincture. 5. A Spirit by Fermentation. 6. A Balsam or Ointment. 7. The Fixed Salt. 8. The Pouder of the Root.

#### The Virtues.

XIII. The liquid Juice. Given to five or six spoonfuls, or more, either by it self, or mixt with Red Port Wine, it strengthens and confirms the Stomach and Bowels, and powerfully resists the Scurvy in all its appearances, viz. with all its Symptoms, as Ulcers and Cankers in the Mouth, looseness of the Teeth, wandering pains, weakness and sickness at Stomach, &c. It is good also against all manner of Fluxes whatsoever, as *Diarrhæa's*, *Dysenteries*, *Lienteries*, *Hepatick Fluxes*, overflowing of the Terms in Women, &c. It is to be taken Morning and Evening for some time.

XIV. The Essence. It has all the former Virtues, besides which, it is said to cure Pleurifies, Quinsies, the Hemorrhoids, and all sorts of Inflammations; and is very powerful and successful in the cure of Hydropical Distempers, more especially if it is impregnated with the Fixed Salt of the same Plant. It is also an extraordinary Traumatick, for the curing of Wounds and old Ulcers, being taken Morning,



ing, Noon, and Night for some time, two or three ounces for a Dose in a Glass of Wine.

XV. *The Decoction.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not all out so powerful ; it is an excellent Traumatick, and Antiscorbutick, and prevails against spitting and pissing of Blood, and all other Fluxes of Blood whatsoever.

XVI. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice and Essence, a famous thing against the Scurvy in a cold and moist habit of Body, a very great stomatick, strengthening that Viscus in all its faculties : It is a kind of *Panacea*, and a Specifick against Convulsions, and Poisons, yea the Plague it self ; it stops all sorts of Fluxes, and strengthens the *Viscera* to a Miracle : but it (as also the other Preparations) ought not to be given to Costive Bodies, by reason of their Astringency.

XVII. *The Spirit.* It is made of the Juice by Fermentation : and is used (being dulcified) as a Cordial Antiscorbutick, and to comfort and strengthen the Bowels in Hydropick and Consumptive Persons, and such as have been in long Fluxes : being held in the Mouth, it strengthens the Gums, and fastens loose Teeth. Dose from half an ounce to an ounce twice a day, or upon any fainting or illness.

XVIII. *The Balsam, or Ointment.* It cleanses, incarnates, and heals singularly well ; it cures Green Wounds at two or three times dressing, by reason of its Stypticity. Applied to the Hemorrhoids, and the Gout, it eases the pains of those Parts.

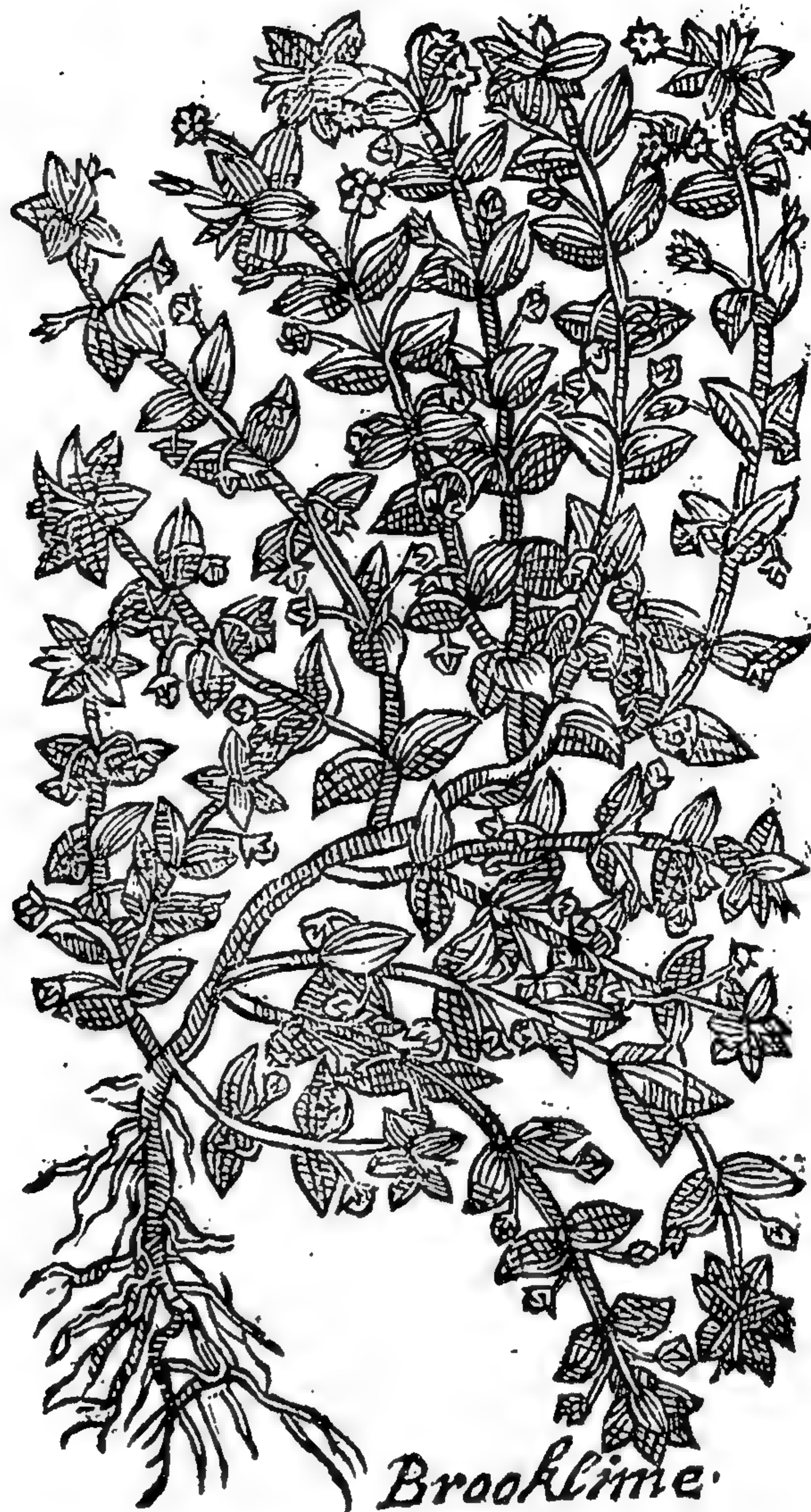
XIX. *The Fixed Salt.* It is singular against Quinsies, Pleurisies, and other Inflammations of the *Viscera*, opens Obstructions of the Reins, provokes Urine, and absorbs the Acid Humor, which is the cause of Fluxes of the Bowels ; it also helps to carry off the Watry Humor in Dropsies. Dose from fifteen to thirty grains, in any Homogene Liquor, Decoction, &c. proper against the same Diseases, two or three times a day.

XX. *The Powder of the Root.* It may be given from half a dram to two drams, Morning and Night, in any Flux of the Bowels, whether Simple or Bloody ; it is also good against the Terms in Women, spitting and pissing of Blood, or any weaknesses of those parts ; it strengthens the Stomach and resists Vomiting. It may be given in Port Wine, or other Vehicle proper against the Distemper. Strewed upon moist and running Ulcers, it dries up the Humor, and disposes them to heal.

XXI. *The American* has the same Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses with the former.

*crenato*, great Brooklime, with a long dented Leaf.

4. *Anagallis aquatica rectius Veronica aquatica minor foliis oblongis non crenatis*, The lesser Brooklime with a long leaf not dented. There are several other Kinds, as that *foliis Pulegij*, *foliis Alsine*, and *Augustifolia*, but not being common with us I forbear them.



Brooklime.



Brooklime  
Greater

## CHAP. LXXXVIII.

### BROOKLIME.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἀναγallis* *ἁγία* : In Latin, *Anagallis aquatica*, and *Becabunga* (from the German Word :) and in English, *Brooklime*, and *Water Pimpernel*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are several Kinds of this Plant, as, 1. *Anagallis Aquatica vulgaris*, *Becabunga*, as Parkinson calls it, *Common Brooklime*, which Mr. Ray calls *Anagallis rectius Veronica aquatica minor*, *folio subrotundo* ; *flore cœruleo*, as J. Bauhin. 2. *Anagallis rectius Veronica aquatica folio rotundiore major*, five *Becabunga major*, the greater Brooklime, and greater round-leav'd Brooklime. 3. *Anagallis rectius Veronica aquatica major folio oblongo*

III. *The Description.* Our Vulgar Brooklime has a Root white, low, and creeping, with fine strings springing therefrom at every Joint ; from whence rise up flat, thick Stalks, which are roundish, and divided



divided into several Branches, having on them thick, smooth, and broad deep green Leaves, somewhat like to those of Purslane, but of a deeper green color, and set upon the Stalks by couples. The Flowers grow upon small, long, tender Footstalks, which thrust themselves forth from the Bosom of the Leaves, of a perfect blew color, and not much unlike to the Leaves of the Flowers of the Land Pimpernel, consisting of five small round pointed Leaves apiece, which being gone, in a short time after comes a sort of small Seed.

IV. The Greater Brooklime; this differs nothing from the former, but in having larger and rounder Leaves, and a paler blew colored Flower.

V. The Greater long leav'd Brooklime; this differs little, or almost nothing from the former, but in the leaf, which is longer pointed, and dented about the edges; and in the Flowers, which are of a pale whitish blew color.

VI. The Lesser long leav'd Brooklime, this has a Root consisting of a small bush of White Fibres, but not running far, from whence spring many smooth, pale, green Leaves, small at the bottoms, but broad and round at the ends, long and not dented, which lying upon the ground, are almost like those of the Common Field Daisy: the Stalk is round, about a Foot, more or less, high, with divers smaller Leaves thereon, set one by one up to the Top, from whence come forth many branched Spikes of white Flowers, consisting of one Leaf divided into five parts, growing at first as it were in an umble, but afterwards more spike fashion'd.

VII. The Places. They grow by River sides, small running Brooks, standing Waters, and Ditch sides. The last of them grows in the Marshes of Dartford in Kent, also between Sandwich and Sandown-Castle, and in the Ditches on this side Sandwich.

VIII. The Times. They all flower in June and July, and yield their Seed in August.

IX. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the second Degree, Digestive, Discussive, Attractive and Diuretick; Stomatick, Hepatick, Nephritick, Hysterick, Alterative, Spermatogenetick.

X. The Specification. It is peculiar against the Scurvey, to cleanse the Blood, and open Obstructions of the Womb.

XI. The Preparations. You may make therefrom, 1. A Distilled Water. 2. A Spirit. 3. A liquid Juice. 4. An Essence. 5. A Spirituous Tincture. 6. An Acid Tincture. 7. A Saline Tincture. 8. An Oily Tincture. 9. A Fixed Salt. 10. A Cataplasm.

#### The Virtues.

XII. The Distilled Water from the whole Plant. It is good against Stone and Gravel in the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, opens Obstructions of the Urinary Passages, and is used as a Vehicle, to convey the other Preparations of the Herb in. Dose five or six ounces twice or thrice a day.

XIII. The Spirit. It is made as Spirit of Scurvy-grass. It is good for a weak Stomach, rectifies Crudities, and removes Nauseousness and Vomiting, and other Distempers of that Bowel, and therefore is a very effectual thing against the Scurvy, which the Greeks call the Stomach Disease, as having its Root and Foundation there. Dose thirty or forty drops in Wine, or some other proper Vehicle, Morning and Evening chiefly; but it may be given at other times of the Day upon any occasion of Stomach sickness. It is an excellent thing in cold Constitutions; but such as are of a hot habit of Body are to forbear it.

XIV. The liquid Juice. It is said to be effectual to break the Stone in Reins and Bladder (if made

of a gritty friable substance) and to expell it, for it opens all the Urinary passages, and powerfully provokes Urine, giving ease in the Strangury, Diury, and other like affections of those parts. Dose from two spoonfuls to six, Morning and Evening, in a Glass of Ale, Beer, Mead, or Wine.

XV. The Essence. It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, besides which it is profitable against Ulcers of the Bladder, to provoke the Terms in Women, and expell the Dead Child. It is a singular thing against the Dropsie Sarcites, if its impregnated with the Fixed Salt of the Plant, and be daily given in all the Liquor the Patient drinks. It purities, or cleanses the Blood from all ill humors, and perfectly eradicates the Scurvy in a cold habit of Body, Universals being also premised. It is best taken in the Spring time, and Fall of the Leaf, because then the Blood and Humors are thin and fluxile, and more apt to pass a depuration. Dose from one ounce to three ounces Morning and Evening.

XVI. The Spirituous Tincture. It has the Virtues of the Spirit aforementioned, at Sect. XIII. foregoing, but much more powerful; and may be given from twenty drops to forty in any proper Stomatick Vehicle, or Wine.

XVII. The Acid Tincture. It is a potent Antiscorbutick, and may safely be given as well in a hot as a cold Constitution. It powerfully opens Obstructions, provokes Urine, and the Courses, breaks and dissolves the Stone, expells Tartarous Matter out of the Body, helps in Rheumatism and the Gout, and gives ease in wandring pains running over the whole Body. Dose so many drops at a time, as may make a Glass of Ale, Beer, Mead, or Wine gratefully sharp, so as if the Juice of an Orange was squeezed into it.

XVIII. The Saline Tincture. This, tho' given inwardly, powerfully provokes Urine, and opens Obstructions, yet it is mostly used in outward applications, as to discuss Swellings in the Legs in the Dropsie, by fomenting them therewith; to ease pains of the Gout, and to prevent an incipient Gangrene. It clears the skin of Scurf, Morpew, and such other like defilements, if often washed therewith.

XIX. The Oily Tincture. It is good against the Palsie, and Convulsions of the Nerves, being often anointed upon the Parts affected. It eases all sorts of Pains in any Part, proceeding from a cold Cause; and being applied to moist Wounds, it defends them from Accidents. Being well anointed upon any Tumor or Part inclining to a Mortification, it prevents it, and conduces much to the Cure.

XX. The Fixed Salt. It is Deobstructive and Diuretick, bringing away much Water in Hydropick Persons, and carrying off much of the Morbifick cause of the Scurvy, by Urine, being given in White Port, or Rhenish Wine, or some other proper Vehicle, three, four, or five times a day. Dose from fifteen grains to half a dram.

XXI. The Cataplasm. It is made of the Leaves or Herb, boiled, and beaten in a Stone or Wooden Mortar. Applied to Swollen Legs, or any other part Tumified with the Dropsie, it is said to discuss or abate the Tumor. If it is made into a Cataplasm, with the addition of Hogs Lard, the Pulp of Marsh-mallow Roots, and the pouders of Fenugreek seed and Linseed, and be applied warm, it takes away any Swelling in Arms or Legs; and is also powerful in defending Wounds, so as to prevent their Apostumating, and to prevent any other ill accident which may happen to them. Farriers sometimes use it also in curing Horses, to remove Tumors, and heal their Scabs, with other like Diseases incident to them.



## C H A P. LXXXIX.

### BRYONIE White.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek *Ἀμπέλως λευκή*, i. e. *Vitis alba*, not that it is a Vine, but because it is something like one. Also *Βρυωνία λευκή*, à *Βρυω*, i. e. *emano, scateo*, from putting forth, because it puts forth many Branches and Tendrells, whereby it climbs up the adjacent Bushes, Hedges, Trees, or other things adjoining to it. It is also called by some *Παρθένον*, because the Seeds or Grains of it were formerly used to take away Hair. In Arabick it is called *Fesire, Alfesire, Fessera, and Alfessera*. In Latin, *Bryonia*, and *Bryonia alba, Vitis alba, Vitalba, sic dicta, non quod sit Vitis, sed quod ei similis*, as aforesaid: also *Viticella, Rorastrum, Apia-stellum*: In English, *Bryonie, White Bryonie, and Wild Vine*. The Uve or Berries are many times called in English, *Tettar Berries*, because of their Effects in curing Tettars.

**II. The Kinds.** There are two principal Kinds of Bryonie, 1. *The White*, of which in this Chapter. 2. *The Black*, of which in the next. The White is also threefold, 1. *Bryonie alba vulgaris, Vitis alba vulgaris*, with all the names above mentioned, *Our Common White Bryonie*. 2. *Bryonia alba vulgaris fructu nigro, Vitis alba baccis nigris, White Bryonie with Black Berries*; Which some from the Blackness of its Berries call *Bryonia Nigra*, and *Vitis Nigra*, but erroneously, for this is not the *Black Bryonie*, but a *Species of the White*. 3. *Bryonia Dicoccos of Honorius Bellas; Bryonia Cretica maculata, of Bauhin; Bryonia Cretica, and Cretica Dicoccos, by Parkinson, White Bryonie with Double Berries*.

*Vitis alba White Bryony*



**III. The Description.** The Common White Bryonie, has a Root which grows to an exceeding largeness, weighing sometimes half an hundred weight, and of the bigness of a Child of a year old, with ma-

ny long Branches or Arms growing from it, of a pale whitish color on the outside, and whiter within, of a sharp, bitter, and fulsome taste. From this Root proceeds many long, rough, but very tender Branches at the beginning, which as they grow up, climb up upon Hedges, Trees, or other Bushes adjoining to it; from these Branches come forth many very rough broad Leaves, divided into five partitions for the most part, in form very much like a Vine leaf, but smaller, rougher, and of a whitish, or hoary green color, spreading very far upon Trees or Bushes, or whatever it is which stands next to it: from the Joints with the Leaves come forth small Tendrells or Claspers, which twine about whatever small thing is next it: at the several Joints also with the Leaves and Claspers (especially towards the tops of the Branches) come forth a long Stalk, bearing thereon many whitish Flowers in a long Tuft, as it were in a Cluster, consisting of five small Leaves apiece, laid open like a Star, after which come the Berries, standing more open or separate one from another than in a Cluster of Grapes: they are green at first, but very red when they are through ripe, about the bigness of Nightshade berries; of no good or pleasant smell, and of a loathsom taste provoking to Vomit, or causing a nauseousness in the Stomach.

*Bryony or Wild Vine*



**IV. The Common White Bryonie with Black Berries**, seems to be absolutely the same with the former, save, that the Root of this is of a pale yellow color on the inside, and somewhat brownish on the outside; and the Berries after their greenness is past, change not into a red color, but into a perfect black, when they are through ripe; but, as to all other parts of the Plant, as in its long, tender, and climbing Branches, form of its Leaves, Tendrells or Claspers, and Color, Shape, Magnitude and Mode of its Flowers, it is exactly the same with the former, so that one cannot be known from the other.

**V. The Bryonia dicoccos**, has a Root very long, but never growing to be bigger than a Mans Arm, of a browner color on the outside, and not so white within as the common. From this Root springs forth  
R many



many long, rough, trailing Branches, in the same manner like the former in all respects, from which spring clasping Tendrels, winding it self upon any thing which stands next it, as the other does. It has broad Leaves, with such divisions therein, as the other have, but that they are somewhat smaller, greener, and striped with white lines through the middle, as likewise in the Veins which go to the Corners. The Flowers are somewhat greater than the former, of a pale whitish color, standing every one upon a little longer Footstalk, which being past, there comes Berries in their places, which are at first green, but red when full ripe, and differing in form from the others, for standing Semicircular upon the Stalks they are joined at the bottom, as if it were but one Berry, but are parted at the tops into two parts, wherein are contained two Seeds, from whence arose the Sirname of Dicoccos.

VI. *The Places.* The first grows on Banks, or under Hedges where are Trees, Shrubs, and Quicksets, in many places throughout the Kingdom. The second is found in like places, but where the former with red Berries is not, and is found in some places in Germany, Bohemia, &c. The last grows plentifully in Candia, from whence Honorius Bellus sent the Seed to Clusius, and others.

VII. *The Times.* They all flower in the Month of July and August, some earlier, some later, according to the Clime they grow in, and the warmth or coldness of the Seasons of the Year; and their Fruit or Seed is ripe in some little time after.

VIII. *The Qualities.* They are hot and dry in the third Degree, Attractive, Absterfive, Cephalick, Nephritick, Hysterick, Arthritick, and Cathartick, purging as well Choler as Phlegm, and Watry Humors.

IX. *The Specification.* It is a peculiar thing against the Dropsie, and Kings-Evil.

X. *The Preparations.* You may make therefrom, 1. A Distilled Water of the Root, Berries, and whole Plant. 2. A Juice of the Berries. 3. A Juice of the Root. 4. An Essence of the Root. 5. A Decoction of the Root. 6. A Syrup of the same. 7. A Pouder of the Root. 8. An Electuary of the Root. 9. A Fœcula thereof. 10. A Pessary of the Root. 11. A Saline Tincture thereof. 12. A Bathe of the Root, and whole Plant. 13. A Cataplasm of the Root. 14. An Oil, or Ointment.

#### The Virtues.

XI. *The Distilled Water of the whole Plant.* It is good against Scurf, Morpew, Leprosie, Manginess, Spots, Freckles, Tanning, Sun-burning, &c. the Face and Skin being often washed therewith.

XII. *The Juice of the Berries.* It has all the same Virtues, but is much stronger, and is said to be a peculiar thing for the cure of Tettars and Ring-worms, Herpes, Scabs, Itch, and other breakings out.

XIII. *The Juice of the Root.* It is thus Made or Extracted. In April take away the Earth, and uncover the Root; which done, make a deep but narrow overthwart cut or gash into it; and put in a Goose Quill a little under the Slit, letting the Quill lye sloping or leaning downwards, when thrust into the Root; but first make a hole with your Knife to get in the Quill; then placing a Receiver under the Quill, you will get a great store of the Juice, which will drop thereinto. A spoonful hereof taken by such as are troubled with Fits of the Mother, it helps them; and it is likewise profitable against the Apoplexy, Epilepsie, Palsie, Vertigo, and other like Diseases of the Head and Brain, which it performs by a Specifick Virtue, which it has in attracting or

drawing away Flegm, and Rheumatick Humors which oppress and afflict those parts. It may be also used as an Errhine up the Nostrials, by which way also it purges the Head and Brain admirably, evacuating all such Superfluous Humors, which cause Lerhargies, Megrims, Head-ach, or any of the aforementioned Diseases afflicting those parts.

XIV. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the aforementioned Juice, and may be given from half an ounce to an ounce, more or less, according to the age and strength of the Patient. It is a peculiar thing against the Dropsie, Kings-Evil, Rheumatism, and Gout; but it purges with great Violence, troubling the Stomach, so that it works both upwards and downwards, and therefore according to the Opinion of Authors, it ought to be corrected with Ginger, Cinnamon, Winters Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Cloves, Pepper, Juice of Quinces, &c. It is very profitable against Watry Humors, which it evacuates abundantly, both by Vomit and Stool, and therefore is a peculiar thing against the Dropsie, &c. It may be mixed with White Port Wine, and so drank. It opens Obstructions of the Urinary parts, provokes Urine, and cleanses the Reins and Ureters from Sand, Gravel, Slime, and other Viscous and Tartarous Matters apt to be lodged in those parts. It opens Obstructions of the Spleen, and takes away the hardness and swelling thereof. It is good (being outwardly applied) to cleanse the Skin of Scurf, Morpew, Leprosie, Scabs, Itch, Manginess, Herpes, Tettars, Ring-worms, Freckles, Lentils, black and blew Spots, which come from falls, bruises, and the like, and dissolves new Swellings, and expells the dead Child.

XV. *The Decoction of the Root in Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the Essence, but not full out so powerful, and therefore ought to be given in a larger Dose, as from one ounce to two, three, or four, according to age and strength. It is an excellent thing against Hysterick Fits, and Vapors in Women, for it opens Obstructions of the Womb powerfully, and facilitates the birth of Women in Travel, but you ought to be sure the time is near, lest it do mischief; let it be corrected with hot Spices in the making, as before directed, because they also promote this end.

XVI. *The Syrup.* It may be made either of the Juice, Essence, or Decoction, according to which, it will be of more or less strength. It has all the Virtues of those things of which it is made, but not altogether so effectual, because of its being clogged with such a quantity of Honey or Sugar, which is necessary to bring it into a Syrup. But it is better for Women and Children, and Quæsie Stomachs, because of its pleasantness in taking. It is good against Coughs, Colds, shortness of Breath, Asthma's, and kills Worms in the Body: Dose, one, two, or three ounces in a Glass of Wine.

XVII. *The Pouder of the Root.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but is thought to work stronger: being taken in White Port Wine, from a scruple to a dram, it is good against the bitings of Venomous Creatures, and kills Worms in Children; prevails against the Gout, Rheumatism, Dropsie, and King's-Evil, and provokes the Terms in Women, but it ought not to be given to Women with Child, because it may induce miscarriage or Abortion. If it is thus compounded, it becomes a famous Medicament. ℞. Bryonie Root in fine powder a pound: Scammony twelve ounces: Cambogium in powder eight ounces: Liquorice in powder six ounces: Aurum Vita four ounces: mix all together. Dose from sixteen Grains to half a Dram. It is a famous thing for the cure of the Gout, Sciatica, Rheumatism, Dropsie, Jaundice, and King's-Evil. Where



Where a Rheumatism has been so vehement that the Patient has roared out Night and Day with the Vehemency and Extremity of the pain, and has lain Bedrid for two whole Years together, not being able to use Hand or Foot, or in the least help themselves, not so much as to put their Hand to their Mouths; this Medicament, or Composition, being given but five or six times, has perfectly restored them, beyond all expectation. I commend it against a Rheumatism, as a Composition which has no equal in the whole Republick of Medicine.

XVIII. *The Eleſtuary.* R. Powder of Bryonie Roots, four ounces : Scammony in powder, Liquorice in powder, of each two ounces : Cloves, Ginger, in powder, of each one ounce : Nutmegs in powder, Zedoary, of each half an ounce : Tartar vitriolate two ounces and half : Honey clarified, thirty six ounces : mix and make an Eleſtuary. It cures the Scurvy, Dropſie, and Gout ; and is an admirable thing againſt the King's-Evil : It produces the Terms in Women, and expels the Dead Child ; and cleanses the Stomach, and other Bowels, of Cold, Raw, Windy, Slimy, Tartarous and Gripping Humors : Doſe, in a Bolus, from one dram to two drams in the Morning faſting.

XIX. *The Fæcula.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Effence, but not altogether ſo violent ; it may be given, ſay Authors, from five to ten grains ; but in ſtrong Bodies you may give it from ten grains to twenty : mix it with Honey, the Pulp of a Prune or Roaſted Apple, or ſome ſuch like ſubſtance, and ſo let it be taken in the Morning : being mixed with the Diſtilled Water or Effence, or any other proper Waſh, it cleanses the Skin, and takes away Wrinkles, Freckles, Lentils, Spots, black and blew Marks, Tanning, Sun-burning, and the like ; let it be laid upon the Skin, and ſuffered to dry on.

XX. *The Peſſary.* It is made of the ſolid ſubſtance of the Root : being put to the Womb, it provokes the Terms in Women, opens Obſtructions of the Womb, and educes both Birth and After-birth, as alſo the Dead Child.

XXI. *The Saline Tincture.* Taken inwardly to a dram, or more, in ſome proper Liquor, it provokes the Terms, and facilitates the Birth : and outwardly applied, it removes all the Vices and Deformities of the Skin, as effectually as either Effence or Fæcula. You muſt waſh therewith, and ſuffer it to dry on, repeating it ſeveral times, a day, if the Diſeaſe is inveterate.

XXII. *The Bath of the Root and whole Plant.* It is peculiar againſt all external Deſædations of the Skin ; as alſo to open Obſtructions of the Womb, and educe the Terms, and to cleanſe it from all other Recrements of Humors, the Patient ſitting for ſome time therein, and repeating it, if need be.

XXIII. *The Cataplaſm of the Root.* Being bruifed and applied Cataplaſm-wiſe to any place where Bones are broken, it helps to draw them forth : and being mixt with a little Wine, and applied, it breaks Boils, and draws forth Puſhes, and is good againſt Felons and Whitloes, which infeſt the Fingers ends, and Roots of the Nails. It is alſo good to cleanſe the Skin from Morpew, Leproſie, Scabs and Mangineſs.

XXIV. *The Oil or Ointment.* It is made by boiling the bruifed Root in Oil Olive, or Hogs-Lard, or Oil mixt with Beef or Mutton Suet, &c. they being anointed with it, diſſolve or diſcuſs recent Tumors, help Contuſions, and take away black and blew Marks which come from blows or falls ; and withal remove moſt of the other deformities of the Skin, if applied for ſome reaſonable time.

## C H A P. XC.

## B R Y O N I E Black.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Ἀμπέλῳ μελαίνα, καὶ Βρυωνία μελαίνα* : In Latin, *Vitis nigra*, and *Bryonia nigra* : In English, *Black Bryonie*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three kinds of this : 1. *Ἀμπέλῳ ἀγρία*, and *μελαίνα*, *Vitis Sylvestris*, and *Vitis nigra*, *Bryonia nigra*, *Bryonia nigra Sylvestris*, *Bryonia nigra communis*, *Sigillum Sanctæ Mariæ*, Common Black Bryonie : but why it ſhould be called *Vitis Sylvestris*, or *Wild Vine*, I know not, becauſe there is a *Vitis Sylvestris*, which is *Vinifera*, and differs but little from the true manured Vine, but that it grows Wild, and bears few or no Grapes ; but *Pliny* I ſuppoſe was the cauſe of it, who, *lib. 23. cap. 1.* being not able to diſtinguiſh them, confounded 'em, and made them all one. 2. *Bryonia nigra Baccifera*, Black Bryonie with ſingle Red Berries : This *Baubinus* in his *Prodromus* calls *Bryonia Sylvestris Baccifera*, and in his *Pinax*, *Bryonia lævis*, five *nigra Baccifera*. 3. *Bryonia nigra Dioſcoridis*, *Vitis nigra*, (*ita dicta ab acinis, radiceque nigris, & quod Vitis ſimilitudinem habet* : ) *Vitis Chironia*, The true Black Bryonie of *Dioſcorides*.



III. *The Deſcription.* It has a Root which is browniſh, or enclining to blackiſh on the outside, in ſome places by long ſtanding, but white within ; it is large if it grows in moiſt grounds ; but much ſmaller and whiter, if it grows in dry, hard, and ſtony places, as *Dalechampius* ſays, ſomewhat hot, and of a ſharp taſte : From this Root ariſes long trailing Branches, without any claſſing tendrils ; but by reaſon of the vaſt number of Branches, and their tenderneſs, it takes hold of, and climbs upon thoſe things which ſtand next to it, tho' eaſie to be looſed therefrom, contrary to the other kinds. The



Leaves are somewhat broad, and like unto the Leaves of the rough or prickly Bindweed, and terminate in a sharp point. The Flowers come forth at the Joints upon long Stalks, many clustering together, in long, thin, or sparsed Clusters, each one consisting of five small white Leaves, and after they are fallen, there come in their places small Berries, first green, and red when they are ripe, and sometimes changing a little blackish as they grow old.

IV. The second Kind, has a great thick Root, long, and not much unlike the former, having a clammy kind of Juice: from which rises up many, long, and square Branches, more hard and woody than the other, and without any Claspers at all. The Leaves are somewhat like to those of the Great White Bindweed, of a shining color, a little unevenly dented about the edges, and standing upon long Footstalks: towards the tops of the Stalks at the Joints, with the Leaves come forth white Flowers, every one standing on a short Stalk, which afterwards give five single Berries, green at the first, and red when they are ripe, not much less than Cherries, in which are contained four or five somewhat large, round, and black Seed.

V. The third and last Kind, has a Root somewhat great and blackish on the outside, but of a yellowish color within, and full of a clammy moist Juice, which will cleave to your Fingers: whence comes forth many long green Branches, on which grow several broad Leaves, somewhat long pointed, and not divided on the edges at all, of a sad or dark green color, having at the Joints, with the Leaves, clasping tendrils, by which it takes hold, and winds it self about any thing which stands next to it. Towards the tops come forth long Bunches of whitish Mossie Flowers, which being past, there come Berries, which are green at first, and black when they come to ripeness.

VI. The Places. The first of these grow on Bank-sides, and under Hedges, and Woody places in many places throughout this Kingdom. The second grows in several places in Germany, as in Hesse, Saxony, Westphalia, Pomerania, and other places where the White grows not: the last grows in Gracia, Italy, Spain, and several Southern Countries, and is not with us unless nourished up in Gardens.

VII. The Times. They spring in March, and flower in May, June and July, and their Fruit is ripe in August and September.

VIII. The Qualities. They are the same with the White, but much weaker in their Cathartick Virtue, as in purging Flegm, Choler, and Watry Humors.

IX. The Specification. It prevails against the Dropie, King's-Evil, Diseases of the Womb, and Defilements of the Skin, whatsoever.

X. The Preparations. 1. The roasted Root. 2. The Juice. 3. The Essence. 4. The Decoction. 5. The Pouder. 6. The Cataplasme. 7. The Fœcula.

#### The Virtues.

XI. The roasted Root. Matthiolus says, that the Root of our Common Black Bryonie being roasted in the Embers, and eaten, is a powerful Medicine to increase Lust, provoke Venery, and stimulate the Instruments of Generation to that act: but Lobel sharply reproves him for it, as not believing it.

XII. The Juice. Mixed with Wine and Honey, and drunk, it is good against the King's-Evil: and simple of it self, it cleanses the Skin of Spots and Marks, Morpew, Scurf, Leprosie, Tettars, Ring-Worms, &c. it eases Pain, strengthens the Nerves, dissolves Contusions, &c. Dose half an ounce, to one ounce, or more.

XIII. The Essence. It purges Flegm, and Watry Humors, provokes Urine, and is good against the Falling-sickness, Palsie, Hysterick Fits, Vapors from the Spleen and Womb, with other like Diseases of those parts. It is prevalent against the King's-Evil, all sorts of Kernels, Knots, and hard Swellings in the Neck and Throat, or other parts. Dose, two, three, or four spoonfuls in a Glass of Wine, according to age and strength.

XIV. The Decoction in Wine. It has the Virtues of the Essence, but not altogether so powerful, and may be taken to six or eight ounces: it is prevalent against the Dropie, Jaundice, and King's-Evil, and such other Diseases as proceed from the Plenitude and Corruption of Humors.

XV. The Pouder. It is made of the Root, and may be given from a scruple to two scruples, to purge away Cold, Serous Flegmatick, and Watry Humors, and to remove the Original Cause of the King's-Evil: It has the Virtues of the Essence.

XVI. The Cataplasme. It is made of the Root beaten to a Pulp in a Mortar, and mixed with a little Honey. This being laid or spread upon Sheeps Leather, whilst it is yet fresh and green, takes away black or blew Marks, and all Scars and Deformities of the Skin, ripens and breaks hard Apostems, draws forth Splinters, Thorns, and broken Bones, dissolves congealed Blood; and being applied to the Hips, and Huckle-bones in the Sciatica, Shoulders, Arms, or other parts, where there is great Pains and Weakness, it effectually removes the same in a very short time: Gerard. And applied to any place out of Joint, it is good to ease the Pain, to consolidate and strengthen the Nerves, that they may not easily again be put out of their places. Parkinson.

XVII. A Cataplasme of the Leaves. Being bruised and sprinkled with Wine, and applied to the galled Necks of Oxen, which are hurt with the Yoke, it heals them: I suppose it will heal Gallings and Sores in Mankind also, being applied.

XVIII. A Cataplasme of the Berries. It removes Sun-burnings, Tanning, Spots, and other blemishes of the Skin, takes away black and blew Marks, which come from falls, blows, bruises, &c. being applied to them.

XIX. The Fœcula. It has the Virtues of the Pouder and Essence, is very powerful to the purposes intended; it is prevalent against Psora, or Scabs, Manginess, Leprosie, King's-Evil, Dropie, &c. Dose. It may be given in Wine or Broth from ten grains to a scruple, plus minus, according to the age and strength of the Patient.

## CHAP. XCI.

### BUCKSHORN.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek Κορωνόριον, from the similitude it has to a Crows foot: but the true Greek name is 'Αμβροσία: the Latins call it Cornu Cervi, or Cervinum, Coronopus Ruellij, Herba Stella, (both, from the form of the Leaves) Sanguinaria and Sanguinalis (from its stopping of Blood:) Harenaria, (from the Sandiness of the place it grows in:) and Nasturtium Verrucarium, (from the likeness of its Seeds to Warts:) And we in English call it, Bucks-horn, Swines Cresses, and Wart Cresses.

II. The Kinds. It is twofold, 1. Coronopus recta Ruellij, Ambrosia Matthioli, Upright Bucks-horn, or



or Wart Cress. 2. *Coronopus repens* Ruellij, *Pseudocoronopus Dodonæi*, *Cornu Cervi alterum Vulgi*; Creeping Bucks horn, or Wart Cress.



Upright Buckhorn



Creeping-Bucks-horne

III. The Description. The first has a small, long, white Root, with many Fibres thereat, running deep into the ground, the taste of which is somewhat like to the Garden Cress, but much milder. From this Root come forth several Branches, which grow upright, but not very high; which Branches are also branched forth into others that are smaller: upon which grow very many small, long, and divided or cut green Leaves, all along on both sides of them, whose cuts very much resemble the snags of a Bucks

horn, or of some of the Leaves of the Garden Cress. The Flowers grow among the Leaves, coming forth with them at the Joints, they come forth in small rough Clusters, and are small and white, or of an herby greenish color, many of them set upon a small long Footstalk, one above another: which being past, there come in place, small, flattish, rough, round husks, something resembling rough or seeded Warts, which divide themselves into two parts, and contain in each of them a small brownish Seed.

IV. Ambrosia, or *Coronopus repens*, is altogether like the former, saving in the manner of its growing: It is a small low herb, most usually creeping with many long Branches, and spreading a great way, almost round about, upon the ground (yet in some places standing more upright: This Creeping kind never rises above four or five Inches high, but the trailing Branches are furnished with such like Leaves and Flowers as the former, which have a taste a little like Cresses. It is many times used to be eaten as a Sallet Herb, with Salt, Oil, and Vinegar, and that both raw and boiled.

V. The Places. They grow almost every where round about London, and in many other parts of the Kingdom in moist Grounds, and at the foot of Banks, where there is any low Trench, or places continually plashed with Water: sometimes by Highway sides, especially in those places where Hogs frequent, from whence, as is supposed, they were called Swines Cresses.

VI. The Times. They flower and seed all May, June, and July; and their green Leaves abide fresh in a manner all Winter.

VII. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the first Degree; Astringent, Absterfive, Digestive, Carminative and Vulnerary; Cephalick, Stomack, Pectoral, Hepatick, and Hysterick; Alterative, Alexipharmick, and Spermatogenetick.

VIII. The Specification. They are said to be peculiar for taking away Warts, for that the Seed bear the perfect signature of the Warts upon a Man's Hand.

IX. The Preparations. You may make therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Balsam or Ointment. 5. A Cataplasma.

## The Virtues.

X. The Liquid Juice. Given to three or four ounces, it is Traumatick, or contributes to the more speedy cure of Wounds and Ulcers, more especially in Scorbutick and Cachectick habits of Body: made thick with fine Bole, and applied, it stops bleeding.

XI. The Essence. It strengthens the Head, Stomach, Liver, Womb, and Joints, and is of singular good use against the Scurvy, Cachexia, and disaffections of the Womb. It represses Vapors, and is good against Fits of the Mother. It is also Traumatick, having all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice. Dose from one ounce to three, Morning and Evening, either by it self, or mixt with a Glass of Wine.

XII. The Decoction. If made in Wine, it is a good Stomack, and Hepatick, has the Virtues of the Essence, but not all out so powerful: and externally applied to Wounds, it cleanses, dries, and contributes to their healing, and withal represses the flux of Humors into the part, hindering Pain and Inflammations.

XIII. The Balsam or Ointment. It is an excellent thing for healing of green Wounds, which it speedily performs: it also cleanses, incarnates, dries and heals old Ulcers, or running Sores, strengthens the parts



parts afflicted, and makes them able to resist a flux of Humors falling upon them.

XIV. *The Catapasm.* Being applied it has (says *Matthiolus*) an adstringent and repelling power: and therefore must necessarily repercuss Humors, abate Inflammations, ease Pain, and strengthen the part, especially in the Gout, Sciatica, and other like Disaffections: Applied upon Warts, it cures them.

## CHAP. XCII.

### BUGLE.

I. *THE Names.* This is a Plant unknown to the Greeks as far as I can find; and therefore has no Greek name: It is called in Latin *Bugula*, and *Bugulum*, *Consolida media*, and *Solidago minor*: *Matthiolus* calls it *Laurentina*, and *Herba Laurentina*: And in English, *Bugle*, middle *Consound*, and by some *Sicklewort*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make six kinds of this Plant, but all that grow with us, are referred unto two, 1. *Bugla vulgaris*, *Bugla flore Caruleo*, Common Bugle, or Bugle with a Blew Flower; this *Tragus* calls, *Prunella carulea prima*, vel *major*: but most Writers call it, *Consolida media pratensis carulea*. 2. *Bugula flore albo*, Bugle with a White Flower.



III. *The Description.* The first of these has a stringy Root, spreading under the Earth round about, like unto Money-wort, or Penny-royal, from whence rises up a hairy square Stalk, about a foot or foot and half high; It has Leaves long, fat, and oleous, like those of *Prunella* or *Self-heal*, but larger, and a little longer; some green on the upper side, others more brownish, a little dented about the edges, and somewhat hairy. The Stalk is also set with such like Leaves, which stand thereon by Couples, from the

middle almost whereof upwards, stand the Flowers together in roundles, compassing the Stalk, of a fair blew color, with Leaves also, but smaller and browner than those on the Stalk below: these Leaves and Flowers are set at distances, leaving between every roundle bare or void spaces. Among the Flowers are also small ones, as those of *Self-heal*, of a blewish, and sometimes of an Ash-color, fashioned like the Flowers of *Ale-hoof* or *Ground-Ivy*: which being past, there succeeds small, round, blackish Seed.

IV. *Bugula flore albo*, Bugle with a white flower differs not in its form or magnitude, either in its Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Flowers or Seeds, from the former, excepting in the color of the Stalks and Leaves, that these are always green, and never brown as the former; and in the color of the Flowers, that they are always White.

V. *The Places.* They grow in Woods and wet Coppes and Fields, generally throughout England; but the latter is not so common to be met withal: Gerard says, that he found the first of these Plants in a moist ground upon Black Heath near London, and near a Village called Charlton, but the Leaves were green, and not brown.

VI. *The Times.* They flower from May until July, perfecting their Seed in the mean season: But the Root and the Leaves next unto it, lying as it were upon the Ground, remain all the Winter until the next Spring.

VII. *The Qualities.* They are Temperate as to heat or cold, and dry in the first Degree: Astringent, Absterfive, Incarnative, Traumatick or Vulnerary; Neurotick, Stomatick, Hepatick, and Alterative.

VIII. *The Specification.* They are peculiar for the Cure of Wounds and Ulcers.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may make therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Syrup. 5. A Distilled Water. 6. A Spirituous Tincture. 7. An Acid Tincture. 8. An Oily Tincture. 9. A Saline Tincture. 10. A Lotion. 11. An Ointment. 12. A Balsam. 13. A Catapasm. 14. A Fixed Salt.

#### The Virtues.

X. *The Liquid Juice.* It is excellent for such as are Livergrown, or troubled with the Rickets: It strengthens the whole Body, and being drunk inwardly to two, three, or four ounces at a time, it contributes to the healing of old Ulcers, running Sores, and Fistula's, and to the uniting of broken Bones, and Corroborating any Member out of Joint.

XI. *The Essence.* It Dries and Astringes moderately, and is of good use for such as have got a fall, and are inwardly bruised, for that it dissolves the congealed Blood, and disperses it. It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, and is very effectual to strengthen the inward parts, and to cause to heal all manner of running Sores, foetid Ulcers, and Fistula's, whether they be old or new. Dose five or six spoonfuls in a Glass of Red Port Wine.

XII. *The Decoction in Wine.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not full out so powerful: it is good to cleanse old running Sores and Ulcers, by washing them therewith.

XIII. *The Syrup.* Whether it is made of the Herb, or of its Juice, it is an excellent thing against Coughs, Colds, Hoarsness, Wheezings, shortness of Breath, difficulty of breathing, Soreness of the Breast and Stomach, and other Distempers of those parts: it stops spitting of Blood, and cures Ulcers of the Lungs.

XIV. *The Distilled Water.* It is a good Vehicle to



to convey the other things in : But mixed with half its quantity of the Juice or Essence, it is good to wash a Sore or Ulcerated Mouth, and to cure such Sores or Ulcers which happen in the Secret Parts of Men or Women.

XV. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It heals admirably any Sore or Ulcer, whether inward or outward. In Ulcers of the Lungs it may be mixed with the Syrup aforementioned, thus : *℞ of the said Syrup, one ounce : of the distilled Water an ounce and half : of the Tincture two drams : mix for a Dose to be given in Ulcers of the Lungs.* Outwardly mixed with the Juice or Essence, it cleanses old Ulcers, Incarnates and heals, and sometimes heals simple Wounds at once or twice dressing ; you may make it thus : *℞ of the Juice or Essence four ounces : of the Syrup an ounce and half : of this Tincture one ounce : mix them, to wash the Ulcer withal.*

XVI. *The Acid Tincture.* It is an admirable thing against inward Wounds, Thrusts, or Stabs into the Body or Bowels, and is excellent to be mixed with all Wound Drinks, and to be given mixed with the Syrup, against the Rickets in Children : It stops the running of Gangreens, being applied ; and opens Obstructions of the Liver, and Gall ; and is good to be mixed with Washes for fore Mouths and Throats. Dose inwardly from thirty to forty drops, in any specifick Vehicle.

XVII. *The Oily Tincture.* It cures Wounds at a few times dressing, but chiefly Wounds of the Nerves, for which it is a Sovereign thing : If a Nerve is prickt or wounded, it presently eases the pain, and prevents the return of Convulsions upon that account.

XVIII. *The Saline Tincture.* It is cleansing, and is good to wash and bathe those parts which are apt to break out with Botches, Boils, Scabs, Itch, Scurf, Morpew, and other Defecations of the Skin.

XIX. *The Lotion.* It is made of the Juice thus : *℞ Clarified Juice of Bugle a pint : Honey three ounces : Allum six drams : mix and dissolve over a gentle fire.* It is good to wash inveterate and running Sores with, which are very foul, and have been of long continuance ; and it is as powerful and effectual to heal all running and stinking Ulcers in the Secret Parts of both Men and Women, and is an excellent Gargle for curing Sores, and Cankers in the Mouth and Throat.

XX. *The Ointment.* It is made of the Leaves of Bugle two parts : of Self-heal, Sanicle, and Scabious, of each one part ; bruised and boiled in Hogs Lard, or in a mixture of equal parts of Sheeps Suet, and Oil Olive, until the herbs are crisp, and then strained forth, and kept for use. It is a very good thing for healing any fresh or green Wound, tho' lacerated, torn, or bruised ; it brings it to digestion, cleanses, incarnates, and speedily heals it. Parkinson says, that he could wish that all the good Women and Ladies, that desire to do good to their own Families, or their poor Neighbours, not to be without this Ointment, always ready prepared, and at hand by them.

XXI. *The Balsam.* It has the Virtues of the Ointment, but more digestive, cleansing, and incarnative, and therefore more fit for complicated Wounds, which are accompanied with Contusions, Dilacerations, and other ill Symptoms.

XXII. *The Cataplasim.* Made of the green Herb, it is good to abate Inflammations, and other hot Swellings in the Neck, Throat, and other Parts. It discusses Contusions, dissolves congealed Blood, and is profitably applied to those Parts which are hurt by any blow or fall : It is also profitable to be applied to all sorts of Ulcers, whether recent or in-

veterate, washing the same also with the Lotion prescribed in Sect. 19. foregoing, every time you dress them. It is good to be applied to broken Bones, and Dislocations, where the parts have been long out of Joint, and have been often reduced, and fall out again by reason of Weakness : but as these things ought to be applied outwardly, so the Essence, or Juice, ought to be used all along inwardly, to corroborate the Tone of the Parts.

XXIII. *The Fixed Salt.* It is opening, cleansing, and diuretick, removes all Tartarous matter out of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder : and taken to one scruple with the Essence, it is good to heal Wounds, and Ulcers of the Urinary parts.

## CHAP. XCIII.

### of BUGLOSS Garden.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, Βέγλωσσον, (but it is rather the name of Borage, for so the Greeks called that Plant, and this our Bugloss was rather the Lesser Bugloss ; also Λύκοψις, with Dodoneus : which Parkinson says was unknown to the Ancients. In Latin, Buglossum : and in English, Bugloss (after the Latin name.)

II. *The Kinds.* There are several sorts of it, as, 1. *The Garden*, which is Buglossum Hortense. 2. *Buglossa Sylvestris*, Wild Bugloss. 3. *Echium*, Vipers Bugloss. 4. *Wall and Stone Bugloss*. 5. *Limonium*, Marsh Bugloss : Of these last four we shall treat in the four next Chapters. 6. *Anchusa*, Alkanet, of which we have treated in Chap. 8. foregoing.

#### BUGLOSSA.



III. *The Garden Kind*, of which we treat in this Chapter, is twofold, viz. 1. Λύκοψις, Lucopsis, Buglossum Vulgare, which is the Greater Bugloss. 2. Buglossum Luteum, which is the Lesser Bugloss, and



and by some called Ox-Tongue, or Garden Ox-Tongue.

IV. The Description. Our Common Bugloss has a Root which is black without, and whitish within. long, thick, and full of a slimy Juice (as the Leaves also are) which continues and perishes not every Year, as the Root of Borage does; from this Root comes up several long, narrow, hairy, whitish green Leaves, among which rise up two or three very high Stalks, branched at the top, whereon stand many blew Flowers, consisting of five small round pointed Leaves, with a small Pointel in the middle, which are very smooth, shining, and of a reddish purple. whilst they are Buds, and not blown open, which being fallen, there grows in the green Husks, in which the Flowers stood, three or four roundish black Seeds, having that Thread or Pointel, standing still in the middle of them.

V. The Lesser Bugloss, which some will have to be Ox-tongue, is much lesser than the former, the Roots are long and creeping in the ground: and the Leaves are very rough, and rougher indeed than the former, like the rough Tongue of an Ox or Cow, (whence came the name) the Stalk is about two Feet high, more or less, and commonly of a reddish color: at the top of the Branches grow the Flowers in rough, scaly heads, which Flowers are composed of many small yellow Leaves much like those of Dandelion, and fly away in Down like as they do, these Flowers are bitter of taste, whence Lobel calls it, Buglossum Echioides luteum Hieracio cognatum.

VI. The Places. The first is only nursed up in Gardens, so also is the second: but this latter is found to grow wild in many places, as between Redriff and Deptford, by watry Ditch sides, as Gerard says.

VII. The Times. They flower in May, June, and July, to the end of Summer, and the Seed ripens in the mean Season.

VIII. As to their Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses, they are altogether the same with those of Garden Borage, of which we have treated before in Chap. 83. to which you are referred. But this is to be noted in Bugloss, that its Roots are much more Mucilaginous, Viscous, or Clammy than those of Borage, and therefore are held not to be so convenient for opening Apozems: but the said Juice being made into a Lohoch or Licking Electuary, may be prevalent against the Cough, Hoarseness, and Colds, and to condensate thin Distillations of Flegm upon the Lungs.

## C H A P. XCIV.

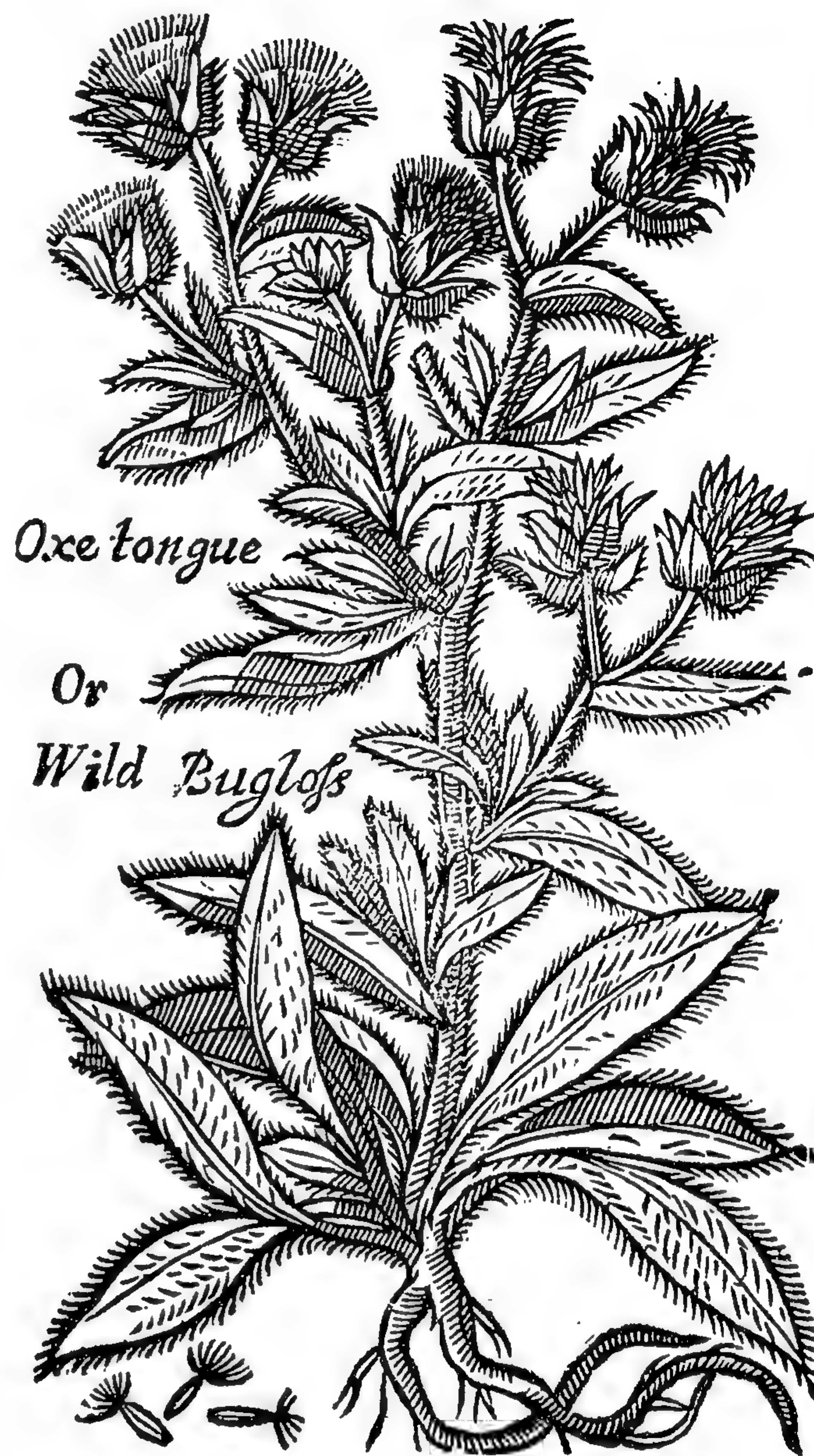
### Of BUGLOSS Wild, or Ox-Tongue.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greck Βυλλωσσον ἄγριον: in Latin, Buglossum Sylvestre: and in English, Wild or Field Bugloss, or Ox-Tongue.

II. The Kinds. There are several Species of the Wild Bugloss, as 1. Buglossum Sylvestre majus, flore nigro, The Great Wild Bugloss. 2. Buglossum Sylvestre minus, The Small Wild Bugloss. 3. Buglossum Sylvestre minus Asperum, Rough Wild Bugloss. 4. Buglossum dulce, ex Insulis Lancastriae, Sweet, or Lancashire Bugloss.

III. The Description. The first of these differs little from the Garden Bugloss, but in its greatness, this being larger in every part: and in the color of the Flowers, which are of so deep a purple color, that they are accounted as black.

IV. The second Kind, has a small long Root: its Leaves are somewhat broad, short, and rough, smaller than either the former Wild Kind, or the Garden Kind, and something more unevenly dented on the edges: the Flowers grow at the Tops, of a blewish purple color, but smaller than the former, and the Seeds grow three or four together, and blackish also, like the other kinds.



V. The Rough Wild Bugloss, has a Root like the former, but its Leaves are much rougher than any of the other Kinds, and sharper or smaller towards their ends: the Flowers on the Tops of the Branches, are more like the Flowers of Galioflis, or stinking Dead Nettle, than of any of the other sorts of Bugloss: in some Plants they are of a blewish purple color, and in some they are white, but both colors are never found in one Plant.

VI. The Lancashire Bugloss, has a great Root, blackish on the out side, and divided downwards, in several large Arms or Branches. From whence shoots forth many slender Stalks, a Foot and half high, more or less. The lower Leaves whereof next the ground, are much lesser than those of Borage, and of a whiter green, and somewhat rough; but those which grow on the Stalks are lesser, having the Flowers set at the Joints with them, whose Buds before they are blown, are of a reddish color, but when they are open, of a blewish purple, somewhat like those of Vipers Bugloss, or between them and Borage Flowers, of a very sweet, or Honey like Taste.

VII. The Places. The first, second and third grow Wild in several Countries, and are sometimes found growing Wild in England. The fourth was found by Mr. Hesketh growing in one of the Islands about Lancashire.

VIII. The Times. They all flower in June and July, and their Seed comes to ripeness in a short time after, the Seed growing ripe, even in the time of Flowering.

IX. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses, are mostly the same with those of



of Borage, but especially with those of *Vipers Bugloss*, of which we treat in Chap. 95. next following.

## CHAP. XCV.

### of BUGLOSS Vipers.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek, *Ἐχιν*, *Ἀλκιβιάδιον*, *ἢ Ἀλκίβιον*; and in Latin, *Echium*, *Alcibiadion*, *Alcibion*, & *Alcibiacum*, (from the first finder of it out, who being bitten by a Viper, and gathering this Herb, and chewing it, and swallowing down the Juice, and applying the rest of the Herb to the bitten place, was cured thereby) it is also called *Buglossum Viperinum*, and *Sylvestre Viperinum*, as some say, from the effects of the Roots in curing the bitings of Serpents; but as others say, from the color of the Stalks which are speckled like a Serpents skin: In English *Vipers Bugloss*. *Apuleius* saith, that the Greeks called it also *Θερριόριζον*, *Therriorizon*, *Radix Viperea*; and *Ἐχίδιον*, from the form of the Seed, which, as *Dioscorides* says, is like the Head of a Viper; whence came the name *Echium*.

**II. The Kinds.** Authors make twelve several Kinds of *Vipers Bugloss*, of all which, two only are said to grow with us, viz. *Ἐχιν κοινόν*, *Echium Vulgare*, Common *Vipers Bugloss*. 2. *Ἐχιν λευκόν*, *Echium Vulgare flore albo*, White flowered *Vipers Bugloss*.



**III. The Description.** The first of these has a Root which is somewhat large and blackish, and grows woody at the approach of Seed time, perishing in the Winter: from whence springs forth many long, rough Leaves, lying on the ground, and from among which rise up several hard round Stalks, which are very rough, as if thick set with prickles or prickly hairs, having many black spots on them, not much unlike

to the skin of a Viper, upon which grow such like long, rough, prickly or hairy green Leaves, something narrow, the middle rib being for the most part white. The Flowers stand at the tops of the Stalks, branched forth into many spiked Leaves or Flowers bowing or turning like to the Turnsole, all of them opening generally on the one side, which are long and hollow, turning up the brims a little, of a purplish violet color, where they are fully blown; but more reddish, where they are but yet in the Bud, or not blown open, as also when they are upon their decay and withering: but in some places they are of a paler purple color, with a long Pointel in the middle, feathered, or pointed at the top. The Flowers being fallen, the Seeds grow inclosed in round heads, which growing to be ripe, are blackish, cornered, and pointed something like to a Vipers Head.

**IV. The second Kind** differs not much in any thing from the former, save that in some places it grows larger, the Leaves are of a fresher green color, and the Flowers are wholly of a white color.

**V. The Places.** The first of these grows wild almost every where, and as *Gerard* says, it is found in great abundance, where *Alkanet* grows. The second grows about the the Castle Walls of *Lewes* in *Sussex*.

**VI. The Times.** They flower in the Summer Months, as the other *Buglosses* do, and their Seed comes to ripeness in the mean season.

**VII. The Qualities.** They are temperate in respect to heat or cold, and dry in the first Degree: *Aperitive*, *Absterfive*, and *Traumatick*, or *Vulnerary*; *Cephalick*, *Stomatick*, *Cordial* and *Neurotick*; *Alterative* and *Alexipharmick*.

**VIII. The Specification.** The Experiences of many Ages have proved them to be peculiar against the Poison and Malignity of Serpents, Vipers, and other Poisonous and Venomous Creatures.

**IX. The Preparations.** You may make therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Syrup. 4. A distilled Water. 5. A Tincture of the Flowers. 6. A Powder of the Seed. 7. A Decoction of the Root. 8. An Ointment or Balsam. 9. A Cataplasm of Roots or Leaves.

#### The Virtues.

**X. The liquid Juice.** The Juice of these Plants are wonderfully clammy and slimy, so that it is hard to Express the same; for which reason, after you have well beaten the Herb, you must set it close covered in a cold Cellar, or some other cold and moist place, for two Days and Nights, and then press forth the Juice in a Wooden press: after which you may clarify it with Whites of Eggs, beaten into Glair, and passed gently thro' a thick Hippocras Bag. It is a famous thing against the biting of the Viper, and of all other Serpents, or any other Venomous Creature, and prevails also against Poison, and the Malignity of Poisonous Herbs. You may give five or six Spoonfuls at a time in a Glass of Wine, and repeat it as you see Occasion.

**XI. The Essence.** It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, besides which, it is an excellent thing against the Plague or Pestilence, Spotted Fever, Purple, and all other Burning and Malign Fevers whatsoever. It is a most admirable Traumatick or Vulnerary, so that scarcely any of the Vulneraries or All-heals go beyond it. It comforts the Head, Brain and Nerves, strengthens and fortifies the Stomach, and cheers the Heart admirably. Dose, three or four Spoonfuls or more, two, three or four times a day, in a glass of the Distilled Water, or in a glass of Wine, or some other proper Vehicle.



XII. *The Syrup.* Parkinson makes it thus. *℞ of the Clarified Juice four pounds : fine white Sugar three pounds : Infusion of the Flowers one pound : mix and boil these gently to the consistence of a Syrup, which keep for use.* It is (says he) very effectual for comforting the Heart, and to expel Sadness and Melancholly. Dose two spoonfuls or more.

XIII. *The Distilled Water.* It is drawn from the whole Plant, when it is in its chiefest strength, which is, when it is in Flower ; it is profitable for all the Diseases aforementioned, being inwardly taken, and outwardly applied ; and is used as a Vehicle to convey the other Preparations in.

XIV. *The Tincture of the Flowers.* It is highly Cordial, and Alexipharmick, and resists Poisons of all kinds : it defends the Heart from the Malignity of Pestilential Fevers, and of the Plague it self, and suppresses Melancholly Vapors : It has the Virtue of the Essence, and may be given in the Distilled Water to two Drams.

XV. *The Pouder of the Seed.* It is Alexipharmick, comforts the Heart, expels Sadness and Melancholly, attemperates the Blood, allays the hot Fits of Agues, encreases Milk in Nurses, and eases pains in the Loins, Back and Kidnies. Dose one dram.

XVI. *The Decoction of the Root.* It prevails against Poison, and the Plague, and the biting of Vipers, and other Venomous Creatures, and is a singular good thing (if made with Wine, or Wine and Water) to be drank as a Diet Drink by wounded Persons, and such as have inveterate, filthy, and running Ulcers and Fistula's, &c.

XVII. *The Ointment or Balsam.* They are Vulnerary, cure admirably both Wounds and Ulcers ; and are of especial use to be applied to Wounds made by the bitings of Venomous Creatures, as Vipers, Mad Dogs, &c. or made with any Poisoned Weapon, it extracts the Poison or Venom, and induces the healing.

XVIII. *The Cataplasme.* Applied to the biting of a Viper, Mad Dog, or other Venomous Creature, it extracts or draws forth the Poison, and so secures the life of the Patient ; other Alexipharmicks being given in the mean season inwardly.

Root arises Leaves which spread upon the Ground, which are many, long, narrow, rough or rugged, hairy, and of a dark green color, somewhat like to Echium, or some other Wild Bugloss : These Leaves abide in this manner, some years, without sending forth of any Stalk, or Flowers at all (which some having taken notice of, thought that it never did bear Flower or Seed :) But truly though it bears no Stalk for Flowers or Seed some years, yet it has been found to bear them in some others, for that divers Plants hereof have been found as well with Stalk and Flowers, as Void, or without : When it bears a Stalk, it rises up about two Feet high, bearing such like Leaves as grow below, but set one distant from another, without order, and smaller up to the Top, where the Flowers stand upon their several Branches, which are spread about, as also come forth with the Leaves at the Joints, like unto the hollow Flowers of Echium, or Wild Bugloss, with uneven and gaping dented brims or edges, of a pale Purple color, with a long Stile or Pointel in the middle, growing out of the Flower above the length thereof ; after which follows the Seed, much like to Bugloss Seed, but not altogether so great or black.

Wall-Bugloss=



## C H A P. XCVI.

### OF BUGLOSS, Wall and Stone.

I. **T**HE Names. The first of these is called in Greek, *Λυκόβλῆς* : In Latin, by Bauhin, *Lycopsis* ; and by Dodonæus, *Lycopsis Echij altera Species* : and in English, *Wall Bugloss*.

II. The other is called in Greek, *ὄνοσμα* : by Galen *ὄσματος φλονίτης*, *Osma Phlonitis* : In Latin, *Onosma* : and in English, *Stone Bugloss*.

III. The Kinds. Of the Wall Bugloss there are two Kinds, 1. *Lycopsis Echij folio*, That with a Vipers Bugloss leaf. 2. *Lycopsis Anglica*, the English Wall Bugloss. The Stone Bugloss, is a singular Plant of its Kind.

IV. The Description. The first kind of Wall Bugloss has a Root which is somewhat woody, long, and not much thicker than a Finger, with some Fibres thereat ; it is of a brownish red on the outside, but little or nothing colors the Fingers as the Anchusa's do : yet Dioscorides says, it was called by several Anchusa, and Galen says, that in his time it was accounted a kind thereof ; but it is much like to Echium, and other sorts of Wild Bugloss. From this

V. The English Wall Bugloss has a Root a little reddish like the other, but giving as little color : but as to its Leaves, Stalks, and Flowers, it differs very little from the former : the only difference is, that the Flowers do all grow at the Tops of the Branches, and are of a deeper purple color, with divers threads shooting out of them

VI. Stone Bugloss is said by Dioscorides to have a reddish Root, but to be without either Stalk, Flower, or Seed, which thing he says also of *Lycopsis*, and *Cynoglossum*, both which are known ( in divers of their Plants ) to have all the three, and therefore it may be as probable in this. This Plant in its form has a great resemblance or likeness to the former *Lycopsis*, as also to *Anchusa* or *Alkanet* ; but differ-



differing from them in its Virtues. It has many long and narrow smooth Leaves lying upon the ground, not above an Inch broad, but about four Inches long, like to those of the lesser Alkanet.

VII. *The Places.* The first two grow upon Stone Walls, and upon dry, stony, and barren Grounds: the first has been found about *Frontignan* near *Mompelien* in France, as *Pena* and *Lobel* say: The second *Lobel* observed to grow in the West Countrey, in the way from *Bristol* and *Bath* to *London*. The *Stone Bugloss* grows in Rocky and Stoney Places.

VIII. *The Times.* The *Wall Buglosses* flower in July, and sometimes in August; and the Seed is ripe in the following Month. The *Stone Bugloss* is green all the Year; but its times of flowering and feeding (if it does so) has not been as yet observed.

IX. *The Qualities.* *Wall Bugloss* is temperate, or rather cold and dry in the first Degree, Astringent, Styptick, Traumatick or Vulnerary, Pectoral, Hepatick and Alterative. *Stone Bugloss* is hot and dry in the second Degree, Aperitive, Cleansing, Hysterick, and Alterative.

X. *The Specification.* The *Wall Buglosses* are peculiar Vulneraries for healing Green Wounds. And *Stone Bugloss* is a Specifick for the speedy Delivery of Women in Labor.

XI. *The Preparations.* The *Wall Buglosses* have all the Preparations and Virtues of the *Wild Buglosses*, to which we refer you: But 1. *The Juice.* 2. *The Essence.* 3. *The Oil,* have some peculiar Virtues. Of the *Stone Bugloss* you may make also, 1. *A liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Powder of the Leaves.* 4. *A Decoction.*

#### The Virtues.

XII. *The liquid Juice of Wall Bugloss.* Taken alone, or mixed with Honey, it stops Catarrhs, falling upon the Fauces and Lungs, and resists Fluxes of the Bowels: and being applied upon Inflammations, as a Phlegmon, Erysipelas, &c. it cools them: inwardly taken, it is a good Traumatick.

XIII. *The Essence of Wall Bugloss.* It is Astringent and Stiptick, stops Catarrhs, and all Fluxes of the Bowels; as also all Fluxes of sharp Humors, to old running Sores and Ulcers, and so renders them easie of cure. Dose one ounce at a time, Morning and Evening, in any specifick Vehicle, as a mixture of Plantane and Poppy Water, an Infusion of Catechu in fair Water, &c.

XIV. *The Oil of Wall Bugloss.* It is made by boiling the Leaves and Roots in Oil Olive to Crispness, &c. It admirably heals Green Wounds, abates Inflammations, and cures Burnings, being anointed upon the Part, and also mixed with Barley Flower, and applied: *Parkinson* says, that this Oil cures *S. Anthonies fire*, but usually Oily and Greasie Bodies do mischief in that case: to bathe with the liquid Juice is much better, and to apply over the Erysipelas, Cloths often wet with the same: or a soft Cataplasim of the Juice mixt with Barley Flower.

#### Virtues of Stone Bugloss.

XV. *The liquid Juice.* It provokes the Terms in Women powerfully, and therefore ought not to be given to Women with Child, lest it causes them to miscarry: a spoonful or two of it may be given Morning and Evening in a Glass of White Wine.

XVI. *The Essence.* It has the Virtues of the liquid Juice, and is very effectual to cause speedy Delivery to Women in Labor. It cleanses the Womb of all its foeculencies, resists Vapors, and

helps against Fits of the Mother. Dose one or two ounces in a Glass of Wine to Women in Travel.

XVII. *The Powder of the Leaves.* It is good against Vapors and Fits of the Mother, and taken *ad j. dram* in Wine by Women in Travel, it facilitates and hastens the Delivery, for which it is said to be an excellent thing: it has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, and therefore ought not to be given to Women with Child.

XVIII. *The Decoction in Wine.* It has the Virtues of the Essence and Powder, but not altogether so powerful.

## CHAP. XCVII.

### Of BUGLOSS Marsh.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Λιμώνιον*, *κὶ νευρείδης*, by *Dioscorides*; so called, because it grows *ἐν λιμῶσι*, *in pratis riguis vel palustribus*: In Latin, *Limonium*: and in English, *Marsh* or *Sea Bugloss*, and *Sea Lavender*.

II. *The Kinds.* *Parkinson* makes seven Kinds hereof: Mr. Ray, eleven: but we (because here in this Book we treat chiefly of English Plants) shall only describe three Kinds, viz. 1. *Limonium majus vulgatus*, the Greater Common Marsh or Sea Bugloss. 2. *Limonium mediam Anglicum*, The Colchester Marsh Bugloss. 3. *Limonium Virginianum*, which is the *Limonia Congener Clusij*, Virginian Marsh Bugloss.



III. There has been some controversy among Authors about this Plant *Limonium*, some will have what we here describe to be the true *Limonium*, which it is: others will have some other Plants to be it: *Matthioli* describes two kinds, but made no sensible distinction between them, nor yet told us which was the True, but as ignorant of the matter, speaks not a word of them; but to cease the



contett, the true *Limonium* is that which has fair Leaves, like those of the Limon or Orange tree, of a dark green color, somewhat fatter, and a little crumpled.

IV. Gerard calls this Plant in English, *Sea Lavender*, (and from him Mr. Ray) but without any other ground, than that the color of the Flowers is somewhat near those of *Lavender*, for which reason Parkinson altered the Title, to a more proper name, and call'd it *Sea or Marsh Bugloss*, as being in form and color most like to *Bugloss*.

V. The Description. The first or Greater Marsh Bugloss has a Root somewhat thick and long, like unto a small Red Beet Root, whence comes several fair, long, thick, or fat green Leaves, somewhat like unto Small Beet Leaves, (and that is the reason that Pliny refers the *Limonium* unto the Beets, and calls it a Wild Beet, though Galen will have it, that there is no Wild sort of Beet :) or Leaves of the Limon Tree, from among which spring up several brittle, naked Stalks, without Leaves, near half a yard high, branched at the tops into several parts, whercon stand many small blewish purple Flowers, all on one side for the most part, something like unto Bugloss Flowers, but smaller; after which come small reddish Seed, inclosed in the husks, which the Flowers stood in before.



VI. Colchester Marsh Bugloss, is like unto the former almost in all respects, the Root being reddish, but much lesser, the Leaves also lesser, and the Stalks lower, being but a little more than a foot high; the Flowers also of the same color with the former, but yet lesser: so that the difference between them seems to be only in the magnitude.

VII. The Virginian Marsh Bugloss has a long Root, an Inch thick in Diameter, or more, and going almost straight down into the ground, sending forth from it several Branches, and small Fibres: It is a very strange Plant, for from this Root springs forth very strange Leaves, such as are not to be seen in any other Plant that we know of, being nine, or ten, or more, rising from the head of the Root aforementioned, each by it self, being small below, and growing great-

er upwards, with a Belly bunching forth, and a bowing back, of a pale whitish yellow color, hollow at the upper end, with a Flap, not much unlike the to Flowers of *Aristolochia* or Birthwort, and round at the Mouth like a half Circle, full of great dark purplish Veins on the inside. The whole Leaf is of a thick substance, almost like unto Leather, and among these Leaves springs up a Stalk, at the top of which comes forth a Flower with four or five Leaves, in a roundish Seed Vessel, with a Tuberous Thrum in the middle.

VIII. The Places. The two first grow in Marsh grounds near the Sea in many parts of England. The first grows plentifully upon the Walls of the Fort against Gravesend, as also on the Banks of the River below the same Town, and below the King's Stone-house at Chatham; also by the King's Ferry going into the Isle of Shepey; and in the Salt Marshes by Lee in Essex; in the Marsh by Harwich, and many other places. The second grows in the fields near the Sea, by Colchester, as Lobel says; and Clusius saith, may be found about *Valentia* in Spain. The third has been found growing in Virginia; and my self found it in South Carolina, in a Marshy piece of Land at Canoi up Wando River, about nine Miles from Charles Town; it was also sent to Clusius from Paris, by one that received it in the same manner from Lisbon in Portugal.

IX. The Times. The two first flower in June and July, and their Seed ripens not long after: The last I saw in Flower in Carolina, in the Month of July, but stayed not in the place, to see its Seed.

X. The Qualities. They are temperate as to heat or cold, drying in the third Degree, Astringent, Styptick, Stomack and Alterative.

XI. The Specification. They are peculiar against Catarrhs and Spitting of Blood.

XII. The Preparations. You may make therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Pouder of the Seed. 4. A Decoction of the Roots. 5. An Oil or Balsam of the Leaves.

#### The Virtues.

XIII. The liquid Juice. It stops Catarrhs or Distillations of Rheum upon the Brest and Lungs, and prevails much against Fluxes of the Bowels; as also all sorts of Bleedings, whether by the Mouth, as Spitting and Vomiting Blood, Pissing Blood, the Bloody Flux, or overflowing of the Terms. Dose three or four Spoonfuls in a Glass of Red Florence, or Red Port Wine, Morning, Noon and Night.

XIV. The Essence. It has all the Virtues of the Juice, but more Stomack, and therefore better for such as have weak Stomachs. Dose two or three spoonfuls in Red Wine, as aforesaid, and at the same times.

XV. The Pouder of the Seed. Gerard says, that being drunk in Wine, it helps the Collick, Strangury, and Dyfentery, or Bloody Flux: Dose one dram. It also stops the overflowing of the Courses in Women, and all other Fluxes of Blood.

XVI. The Decoction of the Roots. Being made in Red Wine, it is very Astringent and Styptick, good against Catarrhs, and Fluxes of Blood, and has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not altogether so powerful: It has been found to be a specificke against Agues, whether Quotidian, Tertian, or Quartan.

XVII. The Oil. It is made by boiling the Leaves in Oil Olive till they are Crisp, &c. Applied to Contusions, weakned Joints, weak Backs, and Burnings, it cures them.



C. H. A. P. XCVIII.

## of BURDOCK Great.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek, Ἀρκέσιον, *περσικόν, καὶ περσόνις* : In Latin, *Arcium, Profopium, Profopis, Personata, Lappa and Bardana*, in Shops : In English, *Burdock*, and *Clot Bur*.

**II. The Kinds.** There are several Kinds hereof, as, 1. Ἀρκέσιον μέζον, *Lappa major, Bardana major vulgaris*, The Common Burdock. 2. *Lappa Virginiana*, The Virginian Burdock. 3. *Lappa seu Bardana lanuginosa capitulis*, The woolly headed Bur. 4. *Bardana major Rosea*, The Rose Bur : Of all which we shall treat in this Chapter. 6. *Lappa minor sive Xanthium*, The small Burdock. 5. *Petasites*, The Butter Bur, of which two last, in the two following Chapters.



**III. The Description.** The Common Greater Burdock, has a Root great and thick, black on the outside, and whitish within, sweet and pleasant in taste at first, but something bitter afterwards : from whence spring forth many large, hard, green Leaves, somewhat like to the Butter-Bur, or Wild Dock, but more crumpled, and of a darker green color on the upper side; but greyish underneath : among which rise up hard and rough green Stalks, two or three feet high, with many Branches from them, having many the like; but lesser Leaves on them, bearing at their Tops several rough heads or burs, with crooked pointed Prickles, apt to stick on Cloths, or other things which they touch ; out of the tops of each of which come forth many hard purplish threads, which are the Flowers ; which being faded and past, turn to Down in the Heads ; and opening themselves, shed their Seed, which is grayish, something like to the Knap-weeds, which together with the Wind, is often

carried away; and many times falls down to the ground, in the place where it grows, by which it multiplies it self.

**IV.** The Virginian Kind, is a kind of the former, having like Roots ; but its Leaves are rounder and smaller : the Burrs are also smaller and harder, and furnished with very sharp, crooked points, which stick very fast to every thing they lay hold on.

**V.** The woolly headed Bur, it differs little from the first, but only that the Leaves grow not altogether so great ; and the heads being smaller, are woolly all over, and the prickles not so sharp or sticking. Gerard says, that the Leaves and whole Plant are somewhat less than the first or common kind, and that the Heads are hairy or downy, but otherwise like to it. Lobel calls this *Arction Montanum*, and *Lappa minor Galeni* ; but it is indeed the *Lappa minor altera Matthioli*.

**VI.** The Rose Bur, differs little or nothing from the first kind, but in the head, which instead of the prickly Burs, has many small green Leaves, set together like a small Rose Plantane, and not much prickly at their ends.

**VII. The Places.** The first of these grows plentifully with us every where, by Ditch sides, Water sides, Waste places, and High ways. The Virginian is found in Virginia, Maryland, New England, and in other Provinces upon that Coast. The third is not so frequent with us, as is the first, yet I have found it in several places of England ; Lobel found it growing in Somersetshire, about three Miles from Bath, near the then House of Mr. John Colte also in the High way leading from Draiton to Iwer, two Miles from Colebrook. The last grows not with us, but near Lipswick in Germany.

**VIII. The Times.** They Head, Flower, and Seed in June, July and August ; the Seed being ripe in a few Weeks after the Flowers are gone.

**IX. The Qualities.** They are all cooling and drying in the first Degree ; yet Gerard says, that the Roots are moderately hot : They are Astringent, Discussive, Digestive, and Traumatick ; Cephalick, Neurotick, Nephritick, and Hysterick ; Alterative, and Alexipharmick.

**X. The Specification.** The Burdock is peculiar against the Poison of Serpents ; and Obstructions of the Reins, Bladder and Womb.

**XI. The Preparations.** You may have hereof, 1. The Leaves. 2. The Juice. 3. The Essence. 4. The Saline Tincture. 5. The Oily Tincture. 6. The Decoction. 7. A Pouder of the Root. 8. A Pouder of the Seed. 9. A Conserve of the Roots. 10. A mixture. 11. A Cataplasim. 12. A Salt.

### The Virtues:

**XII. The Leaves.** Being applied either dry or green, they cool, moderately dry, and discuss withal, as Galen says ; whereby they are good to heal old Sores and Ulcers, and help the Cramp, or shrinking of the Sinews.

**XIII. The Juice.** The Juice of the Leaves mixt with Honey, provokes Urine, and takes away the Pains of the Bladder : and mixt with Wine, it is wonderfully good against the bitings of Serpents, Mad Dogs, and other Venomous Beasts. The Juice of the Root taken to the quantity of three or four ounces, and drank with a good draught of Ale, is an excellent thing against Wind, and coldness of the Stomach.

**XIV. The Essence.** It has all the Virtues of the Juice, besides which it is excellent against Poison inwardly taken ; and is good, being given Dietetically, against Venereal Diseases, as the Pox, Gonorrhæa,



rhæa, &c. It heals inward Ulcers of the Lungs, and is good to cure spitting of Blood. It is good against Gravel, Sand, Slime and Tartarous Matter, Obstru-cting the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, and prevails against Vapors in Women, Obstructions of the Womb, and Hyfterick Fits. Dose from one spoon-ful to four, or six, mixt with any proper Vehicle.

XV. *The Saline Tincture of Seeds, or Leaves.* It powerfully opens Obstructions of the Womb, Reins, and Bladder, bringing away the Matter causing the Obstruction: Outwardly, it is good to wash the part bitten by a Mad Dog, for it draws out the maligni-ty and Poison. Dose inwardly j. or ij drams in *Arf-mart* or *Parfly* Water, or any other proper Vehicle.

XVI. *The Oily Tincture.* It is an excellent thing against Punctures, and other Wounds of the Nerves, prevails against Cramps and Convulsions, inwardly given from twenty to thirty Drops, and outwardly applied.

XVII. *The Decoction of the Root.* Drank liberally for some time, it has been found very good to ex-terminate the Reliques of the *French* Disease: The Decoction of the Root, as also of the Seed, is com-mended by *Dioscorides* against the Tooth-ach, being held in the Mouth. It is also good to foment withal against Burnings and Kibed heels: and made with Wine, and drank, it prevails against the Strangury.

XVIII. *The Pouder of the Root.* It is good against spitting Blood, helpful in Consumptions, and expels Sand, Gravel, and Tartarous Matter out of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder. Dose one or two drams in White or Red Wine, &c.

XIX. *The Pouder of the Seed.* Taken to one dram, in a proper Vehicle, it is an excellent thing against Sand, Gravel, or Tartarous Matter in Reins or Bladder, and gives ease in the Strangury, and other like Diseases of those parts: and drank with Wine for forty days together, it wonderfully helps the *Sciatica*.

XX. *The Conserve of the Roots.* It is helpful in Consumptions, and good for such as are troubled with the Stone, or any Flux of the Bowels.

XXI. *The Mixture.* Take Juice of the Root, which make with Alicant two pounds: Old Tent, a pint and half: mix them. Four ounces of this being drank Morning, Noon and Night, (after due purging) is good against the Running of the Reins in Men, and the Whites in Women. Or thus: Take Juice of the Root, made as aforesaid, twelve ounces: old Tent eight ounces: Yolks of new laid Eggs, n° iiij: powder of Acorns, an ounce and half: Nutmegs in powder half an ounce: mix them. It has the Virtues of the former, besides which, it eases pain in the Reins, and wonderfully strengthens a weak Back.

XXII. *The Cataplasme.* Made of the Leaves bruised, with the White of an Egg, and laid on any place burnt with fire, it takes the fire out, gives sudden ease, and afterwards heals it. The Roots made into a Cataplasme by being beaten with Salt, and applied (as *Apuleius* says) to the biting of a Mad Dog, cures it, and so speedily frees the Patient from all danger. *Columella* says, the Cata-plasme made of the Leaves beaten up with Salt, being laid upon the biting of a *Viper* (the part being first scarified with a Lancet) draws out the Poison. The former Cataplasme of the Roots with Salt, is more available than the former against the Poison of Serpents; and being applied, is also good against the King's-Evil.

XXIII. *The Salt from the Ashes.* Taken in White Wine, Arsmart, or Parsley Water, from a scruple to half a dram, it is good to provoke Urine, cleanse the Urinary Passages, and to carry off the Watry Humor in Dropsies.

## CHAP. XCIX.

## Of BURDOCK Small.



I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *ξανθιον* ή *σαογανον*: In Latin, *Xanthium*: In the Shops, *Lappa minor*, *Lappa inversa*, and by some, *Strumaria*, and *Bardana minor*: In English, the Lesser or Small Burdock.

II. The



II. *The Kinds.* It is the lesser sort of the *Burdocks*, and singular of the Kind.

III. *The Description.* It has a small Root somewhat long and fibrous, and perishing every year : from which Root rises up a rough crested Stalk, about two feet high, breaking out into several Branches, with many blackish spots upon them, with two much smaller and whiter Leaves at every Joint, standing upon long Footstalks, which Leaves are usually divided into three parts, something like unto a Marsh Mallow leaf, unevenly notch'd or dented about the edges : at the Joints of the Stalk and Branches with the Leaves, towards the tops of them, come forth small Flowers, which abide not long ; and after them, two or three small, close Burs, a little pointed at the top, wherein lye two or three small lank Seeds, somewhat like unto an Oat, which fall not out, nor do the heads open.

IV. *The Places.* It grows in many places of this Kingdom, as particularly in two or three places between Tidenham and Chepstow, in the foot way ; in the Highway between Stanes and Egham, and between Drayton and Iwer, two Miles from Colebrook ; and at Southwick-sheet in Hampshire.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers and Seeds when the great *Burdock* does ; viz. in the Summer Months, June, July and August.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is temperate as to heat and cold, dryness and moisture, yet Galen will have the Seeds to be hot and dry, digestive, also discussive, Neurotick, Splenetick, and Hyfterick ; Alterative, and Alexipharmick.

VII. *The Specification.* It is singular against the pain and hardness of the Spleen.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may keep hereof,  
1. *The Juice.* 2. *The Essence.* 3. *The Saline Tincture.* 4. *The Oily Tincture.* 5. *A Pouder of the Root.* 6. *A Pouder of the Seed.* 7. *A Conserve of the Roots.* 8. *A Salt.* 9. *A Decoction of the Roots.* 10. *A Lotion, or Wash.* 11. *A Cataplasm of the Roots or Seeds.*

## The Virtues.

IX. *All these Preparations* have the same Virtues, Uses, and Doses, with those of the same name in the Chapter of the *Great Burdock*, to which you are referr'd ; but there are some peculiar Virtues in this Plant, not observ'd to be inherent in the former, for which reason we shall say something more of its *Essence*, *Decoction*, *Lotion*, and *Cataplasm*, in the Sections following.

X. *The Essence.* It strikes at the Root of the Leprosie, prevails against Faintings and Swoonings, opens Obstructions of Liver and Spleen, but more especially of the last, and gives ease in pains of the *Hypochonders* and Bowels. Dose three or four spoonfuls Morning and Evening in a Glass of Sherry Wine.

XI. *The Decoction.* It is to be made with Wine : and has the Virtues of the *Essence* ; it consumes the hardness of the Spleen, being taken inwardly Morning, Noon, and Night, to six ounces, and as often bathed warm upon the part affected.

XII. *The Lotion.* It is made of the Burs, before they are ripe, being bruised and laid to steep in Water, or Wine, in which a little Nitre is dissolved, for twenty four hours. It discusses Tumors, and gives ease in Pains, being bathed warm upon the parts affected. If the Hair is sometimes washed therewith, it makes it become yellow. It is an excellent Gargle for a sore Mouth and Throat, taking away the Inflammation, and healing of it in a very short time.

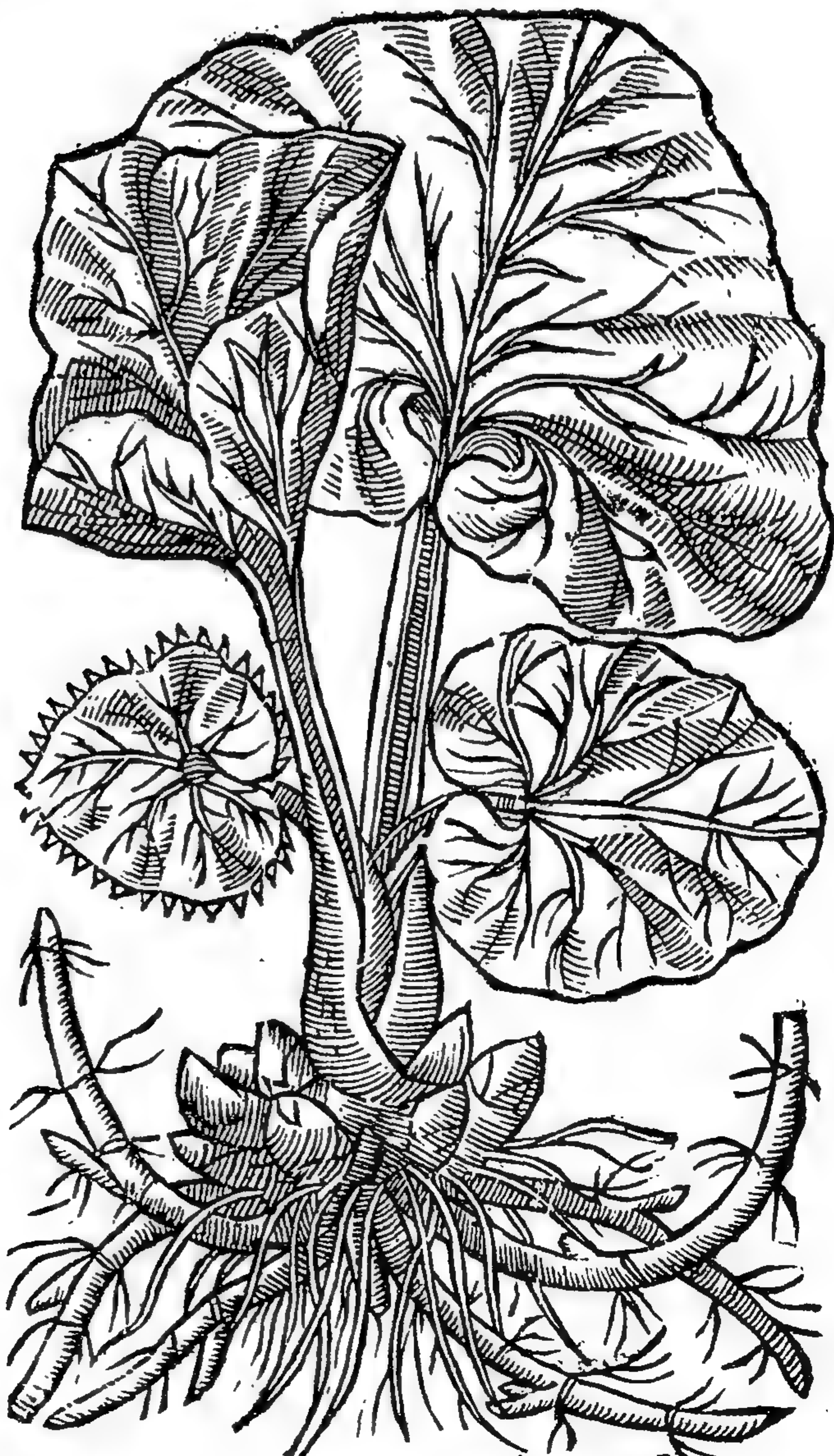
XIII. *The Cataplasm.* It is made of the Roots or

*Green Burs*, being beaten to a Pap in a Mortar, and mixed with a third part of Mithridate. Being applied upon hard Kernels, or Swellings in the Flesh (as those proceeding from the Kings-Evil) it is said to soften and dissolve them : but more especially, if in the mean season, the Juice, Essence or Decoction in Wine aforementioned be daily given inwardly two, three or four ounces at a time, and that Morning, Noon, and Night ; for these Preparations very much sweeten the Blood and Juices ; and correct the Discreasie of the Humors.

## CHAP. C. Of BUTTER-BUR.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek Πετασίτης ; In Latin, *Petasites* ; (from the largeness of the Leaf, it being large like πέτασον, a Hat :) some take it to be ἰαύον *Theophrasti*, and some to be *Perfolata* Plinij : In English it is called also *Petasites*, and *Butter-Bur* : The Germans call it *Pestilence-wort*, or *Plague-wort*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is of two sorts, a *Greater*, and a *Lesser*, and differing also in the Flowers ; but so very like one another, that one Description will serve for both. *Camerarius* calls the more common *Mas*, the other *Fæmina* : but in his *Epitome* of *Matthiolus*, he calls the *Greater*, *Tussilago major*, for that some will have it to be a kind of *Coltsfoot*.



*Butter Bur without flower*

III. *The Description.* It has a long Root and thick, spreading under ground, blackish on the outside, and whitish within, oftentimes Worm eaten, and of a bitter and unpleasant taste : It springs up very early in the Year, with a thick Stalk about a foot high, on which are set a few small Leaves, or rather



rather pieces, and at the Tops a long spiked head of Flowers, in the one ( which is the less, and the more rare to find ) wholly white, and of a better scent than the other ( though some say it has no scent ) in the Greater, which is the more common with us, of a blush, or deep red color, according to the Soil in which it grows; a clay ground bringing forth a paler color, somewhat weak; and before the Stalk has stood with the Flowers a Month above ground, it will be faded away and gone, and blown away with the Wind: after which the Leaves will begin to spring, which when they are full grown, will be very broad and large, big enough to cover the whole Body, at least the Head, like an Umbrella, which hides from Sun and Rain; they are somewhat thin, and almost round; whose thick red Footstalks, being about a foot or more long, stand under, or towards the middle of the Leaves, the lower parts of which, are divided into two round parts, close almost one to another, of a pale green color above, and hoary underneath. That which brings white flowers, brings forth also smaller leaves than the other doth, having divers ribs and veins therein.



*Butter Burr.*

IV. Gerard has another kind of Description, which in some measure explicates the former, for which reason I think it necessary to insert it here: *Butter-Bur* (says he) does in a manner bring forth its Flowers before the Leaves, as *Colts-foot* does ( for which reason some have thought it to be one of the kinds of *Colts-foot*, and for which reason Matthioli and Camerarius in their Epitome, have called it *Tussilago major*, as is before mentioned: ) These Flowers, says he, are Small and Mossie, tending to a purple color, which are made up into a big Ear, as it were, and quickly after, together with its Stem, ( which is thick, full of substance, and brittle ) fade and fall away: then comes up the Leaves, which are very great, like a round Cap or Hat, called in Latin *Petasis*, of such a wideness or largeness, as that of it self one leaf is big enough to keep a Man from a shower of Rain, or from the heat of the Sun, and therefore are much larger than the Leaves of the great Burdock; their color is somewhat white, but

whiter underneath; every Stem bears his Leaf, which is sometimes a Cubit long, thick and full of substance, which stands, as it were, under the Leaf in the Center or Middle almost of the Circumference, like to one of the greatest Mushrooms, setting aside the Cleft at the lower part of the Leaf near the Stem, especially when they are perishing or withering away: at first the upper superficial or outside of the Mushroom stands out, and when they are in withering it stands more in, and the edges, as it were, turn up; so is it in the Butter Bur Leaf, which has on the out side a certain shallow hollownes.

V. The Places. They both grow in wet and moist Grounds by Rivers and Water sides, and upon the Brinks and Banks of Lakes and Ponds, almost every where.

VI. The Times. The Flowers rise and decay in February and March, and then fade away; Gerard says, in March or April: when they are gone, then come up the Leaves, which remain all Summer, even till Winter, new ones still growing up, and being added to the former.

VII. The Qualities. The Roots, which are mostly used, are hot and dry in the third Degree, Digestive, Discussive, and Sudorifick; Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomatick, Hysterick, and Cordial; Alterative, and Alexipharmick.

VIII. The Specification. It has a peculiar power and force against Poison of all kinds, and the Infection of the Plague.

IX. The Preparations. You may prepare from the Root, 1. A Pouder. 2. A Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Spirituous Tincture. 5. A Decoction. 6. A Mixture.

#### *The Virtues.*

X. The Pouder. Being given to one dram, and drunk in Wine, it is a most excellent thing against the Plague, and all sorts of Pestilential Fevers, as Spotted Fever, Purples, Measles, Small Pox, &c. because it is Sudorifick or provoking Sweat, and drives from the Heart all sorts of Venom and Poison: it kills Worms, and is powerful against Hysterick Fits, or Vapors and Suffocation of the Mother: If it is strewed on old and filthy running Ulcers, it cleanses, dries, and heals them. It also provokes Urine, and the Monthly Terms in Women.

XI. The Juice. It is expressed out of the Root by being beaten in a Mortar, and squeezed out with White Port Wine. It has all the Virtues of the Pouder, and may be given from one ounce, to two or three ounces, Morning and Evening, as a preventive against the Plague, and every six hours after Infection.

XII. The Essence. It has all the Virtues of the Pouder and Juice, but more powerful to all the Intentions: It provokes Urine, and the Courses, and kills the flat, broad Worms in the Belly. Dose one or two ounces mixed with Wine. It is a powerful thing in the cure of the Yellow Jaundice, and the bitings of Vipers, &c.

XIII. The Spirituous Tincture. It is good against Poison, and the Bitings of Mad Dogs, prevails against Fainting and Swooning Fits, and is a famous thing to rectifie the Distemper of the Stomach. Dose one or two drams in a Glass of Canary.

XIV. The Decoction. It is good against Coughs, Colds, Asthma's, Wheezings, difficulty of Breathing, and other Distempers of the Lungs, causing Expectoration. It kills Worms, provokes the Terms, and has all the other Virtues of the Pouder and Essence aforegoing, but not full out so powerful: Dose from two ounces to four or six, as hot as it can



can well be taken, Morning and Evening, to prevent the Infection of the Plague; and as much every six hours, for those who are already seized with it.

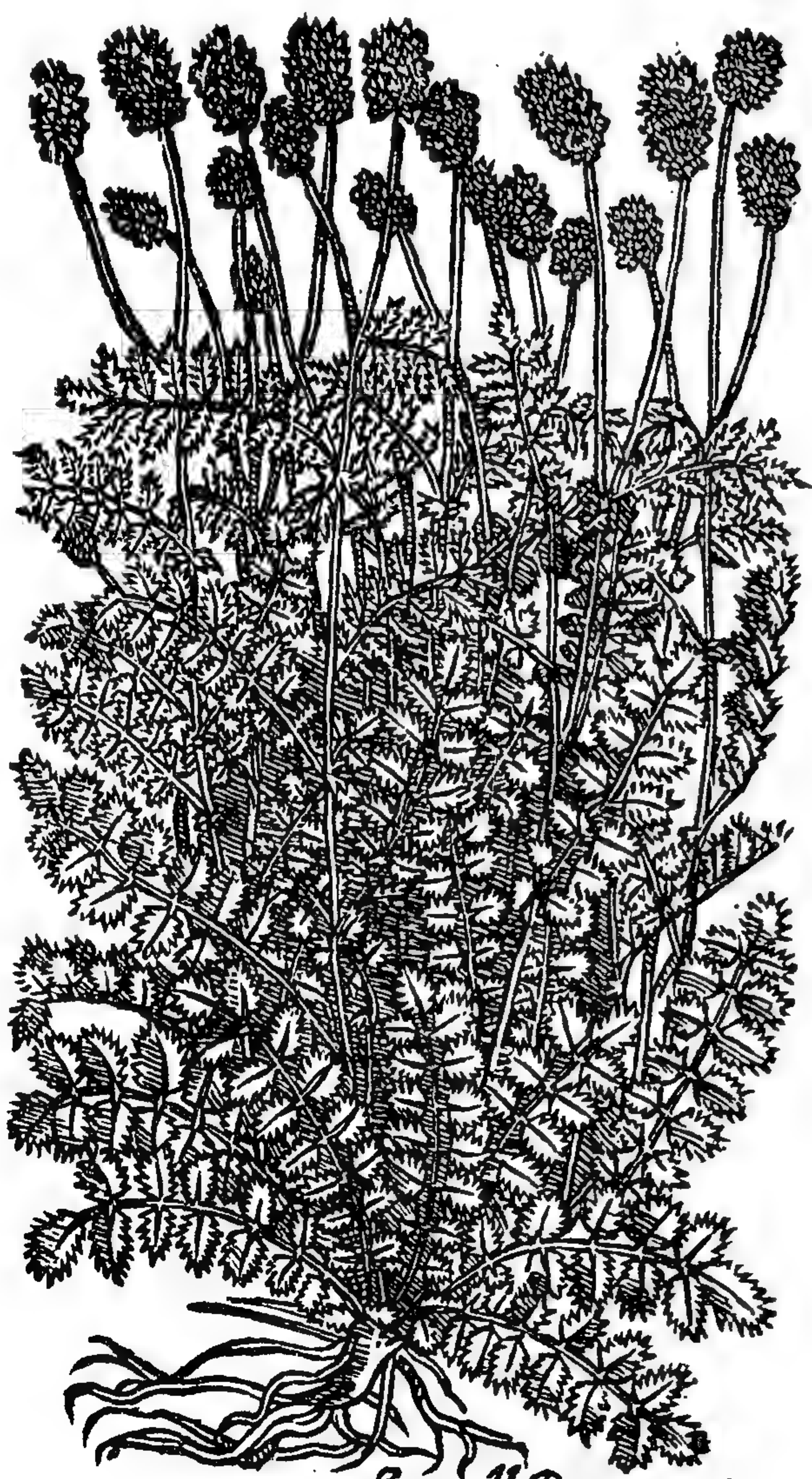
XV. *The Mixture.* It is thus made: Take of the Juice expressed with Vinegar, or the Essence, twelve ounces: Juice of Rue four ounces: Venice Treacle, or Mithridate two ounces: mix them well together by shaking. It is an Antidote against the Plague or Pestilence, Spotted Fever, Purples, Small Pox, Measles, Poison, biting of Vipers, or other Serpents, and the bitings of Mad-Dogs, or of any other Venomous Creature. Dose two ounces at a time, as often as need requires.

## CHAP. CI.

### OF BURNET.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek by Nicolaus Myrepsus, *πυμπινελα*, or as Gesner has it, *Πεμπινελα*: In Latin, *Pimpinella*, *Sanguisorba*, *Bipennula*, *Peponella*, *Sorbastrella*; and *Sanguinaria*, quod *Sanguineos fluxus sistat*: In English, *Burnet*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is fourfold, 1. *Pimpinella vulgaris* five minor, The Common or Lesser Burnet. 2. *Pimpinella inodora*, Smellefs Burnet. 3. *Sanguisorba seu Pimpinella Major* five *Sylvestris*, Great or Wild Burnet. 4. *Pimpinella Maxima Americana*, The Greatest, or American Burnet. Where Note, that some Authors think our Garden or Field Burnet to be the *Sideritis secunda Dioscoridis*; but I think them to be mistaken, because this latter answers in the form of the Flowers to our Burnet.



Small Burnet.

III. *The Description.* The first of these has a Root which is small and long, and of a blackish brown on the outside, growing deep into the Earth, with some Fibres thereat; from whence comes forth many long winged Leaves, spread upon the Ground, which

consist of divers small roundish, or rather Oval-leaves, green on the upper-side, and grayish underneath, finely dented about the edges, set on each side of a middle rib: amongst which rise up several crested brown Stalks a foot-high or better, and in rank ground sometimes a foot and half high, with some smaller Leaves set in some places thereon, divided into several Branches. At the Tops grow small round loose heads, upon long Footstalks of a brownish color, from whence start forth small purplish Flowers, and after them cornered Seed. The whole Plant has a pleasant quick Smell and Taste, much like to the savor of a Smelt, and put into a Glas of Wine, gives it a pleasant Relish.

IV. *The Inodorous Burnet* in Roots, Stalks, Leaves, and Heads, is altogether like the former, save that the Leaves are not so round, but something longer, and have no manifest Smell or Taste in them.



Large Common Burnet

V. *The Great or Field Burnet*, has a Root black and long like the first Kind, but greater, from whence springs up such like winged Leaves, but nothing so many, and each of those Leaves on the Wings, are twice as large at least as the other, and nicked about the edges in the same manner, of a grayish color on the under side: Stalks are greater, and rise higher, with many such like Leaves set thereon, and greater round heads on the Tops, of a brownish green color, out of which come small dark purple Flowers, very much like the former, but greater: The Plant it self has very little of Smell or Taste in it, which can be perceived.

VI. *The American great Burnet*, has a Root much greater than the former, and woody, longer also, and blacker than the last; but in all its other parts, it is like our Field Burnet, but much greater: often times all its Leaves are of a blewish green on the upper side, and folded half way together inward, so that the under sides of the Leaves, which are greyish, shew themselves upwards; and they are dented somewhat deeply about the edges, with greater dents, which makes them shew the more comely and pleasant. The tops of the Stalks bear smaller, and much longer,



longer, whitish green spiked heads, set thick with Knaps, each of which when it flowers (beginning below, and so rising higher) shews to be four whitish green Leaves, having many small white long threads in the midst; after which come in their places cornered Seed like the other. The whole plant has not much smell, but in its Taste, is much like the first.

VII. *The Places.* The first grows wild in several Counties of our Land, in dry sandy places, but is usually kept in Gardens. The second, *Bauhin* faith is found in Spain, and I have found it in some Meadows in Norfolk, not far from *Lyn Regis*. The third is found in several Counties of England, in the Meadows in Norfolk, Suffolk, Cambridge-shire, Huntingdon-shire, and Northampton-shire; as also near London, by *Paneras Church*, in two or three Fields nigh *Booby's-Barn*, and in the middle of a Field by *Paddington*: I have also found it in some Fields between London and *Newington*, as also going towards the *Boarded River*. The last is found in the French Settlements in Canada, and in the North parts of Virginia, where it is Natural: from whence it has been transplanted to us, and is nourished up in Gardens.

VIII. *The Times.* They all flower in June, and beginning of July; and their Seed is ripe in August.

IX. *The Qualities.* They are generally hot and dry; the first of them in the Second Degree; the other three in the First Degree: They are Incarnative, Astringent, Styptick, Repercussive, and Traumatick, or Vulnerary: Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomack, Cardiack, and Alterative: Alexipharmick, and Analeptick.

X. *The Specification.* *Burnet* is a peculiar Plant for stopping all sorts of Fluxes of Blood; whence came the names *Sanguisorba*, and *Sanguinaria*.

XI. *The Preparations.* You may prepare therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. A Decoction. 3. A Syrup. 4. A Wine. 5. A Vinegar. 6. A Spirituous Tincture. 7. An Acid Tincture. 8. A Powder. 9. An Oil. 10. An Ointment. 11. A Balsam. 12. A Spirit. 13. The Seed.

#### The Virtues.

XII. *The liquid Juice.* Taking it inwardly from three to five ounces, either alone or mixed with Red Wine, it stops all manner of inward bleedings whatsoever, whether spitting or vomiting Blood, pissing Blood, or Bloody-flux: It also strengthens the Stomach and Heart: and is singular good for all sorts of Wounds, whether inward or outward.

XIII. *The Decoction.* It has the Virtues of the liquid Juice, but is much weaker, yet very good to repress Vapors in Women. Dose six ounces Morning and Evening.

XIV. *The Syrup.* It is excellent against spitting of Blood, and heals Bloody-fluxes of the Bowels; and it is so much the more effectual with Steeled Water or Wine: If it is made of the Juice, it is good for healing all sorts of Wounds of Head and Body, inward or outward, for all old Ulcers, Ulcerated Cancers, and Running Sores, which are hard to be cured. Dose two or three ounces at a time.

XV. *The Wine.* It cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits; and is good against Melancholly, drooping of the Mind, and fainting of the Heart.

XVI. *The Vinegar.* It is a special thing to preserve from, and cure the Plague or Pestilence, the Spotted Fever, or any other malign acute Disease of that kind; for It in a special manner defends the Heart from Poisonous and Noisom Vapors, and all contagious Diseases, being given mixed with

the Juice in equal quantities, and the Patient laid to Sweat thereupon. Dose three ounces.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It comforts and warms the Stomach and Bowels, strengthens Nature, and takes away the weakness of the Stomach and Intestines, thereby stopping Fluxes of the Belly of all kinds: It strengthens the Heart and Liver, and other principal Parts, and therefore is good against Faintings and Swoonings. Dose one spoonful at a time in a Glass of Wine.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* This has all the Virtues of the Vinegar aforegoing, but is much more powerful than it, to all the purposes and intentions there specified: besides this is an extraordinary Stomack, and therefore powerful in stopping Vomiting, and also spitting of Blood, being given in a Glass of Canary, or Red Port Wine. Dose thirty or forty drops, to fifty or sixty, two or three times a day.

XIX. *The Powder.* Used outwardly to old Ulcers, moist and running Sores, it dries them up wonderfully, and prepares them for healing. It may be made of the whole Plant.

XX. *The Oil.* It is used to abate Inflammations, ease Pains, strengthen weak Parts, cure Burnings and Scaldings, and to draw malignity out of Wounds made by the bitings of Venomous Beasts.

XXI. *The Ointment.* It has the Virtues of the Oil, but penetrates not so much, yet is more effectual for the cure of Wounds, Ulcers, and other Running and Malignant Sores.

XXII. *The Balsam.* If it is made of the Juice, or green Herb, it is one of the best Vulneraries in the World: it digests, cleanses, dries, strengthens and heals all green Wounds, old Ulcers, running Sores, and other ill natured Diseases of that kind. It is certainly a most excellent Wound Balsam. If it is mixed with Powder of Scammony, it takes away rotten Flesh, and destroys Putridity or Rottenness.

XXIII. *The Spirit.* It stops inward Bleedings, comforts the Heart and Bowels, and is an excellent thing against Fluxes of the Belly of all kinds, more especially the Bloody-flux, and the overflowing of the Terms in Women: and this it does the more powerfully, if a little Catechu be dissolved in it. It prevails also against the Contagion of the Plague. Dose from one dram to half an ounce.

XXIV. *The Seed made into a Powder.* This, says *Parkinson*, is no less effectual, both to stop Fluxes, and to dry up moist or running Sores, being given inwardly (to one dram) in steeled Water or Wine, that is, if Water in which hot Gaddes of Steel have been quenched; or if Wine, in which old Nails have been infused for two or three Months beforehand: The powder of the Seed may also be mixed with Ointments or Injections.

XXV. *The American Burnet* has all the same Preparations with our *English*, and the same Virtues, Uses, and Doses.

## CHAP. CII.

### BUTTER-WORT.

I. **T**HE Names. It seems not to be known to the Greeks, and therefore we have no universally received Greek name for it, only *Gesner* thought it to be *Dodecatheon Plinij*: *Lugdunensis* thinks it may be *Crias Apulei*, and calls it *Cucullata*: but it is called in Latin, *Pinguicula* by *Gesner*, and from him all others call it so: others *Lingula Plinij*,



Plinij, *Viola humida*, *Viola Palustris* : Bauhin calls it, *Sanicula montana flore calcare donata* : with us it is called, *Sanicula Eboracensis* (because it grows so plentifully in *York-shire*.) In *English* it is called *Butter-wort*, and *Butter-root*, because of the Unctosity of the Leaves; or else from *Fattening*, as *Gerard* says, who also saith, they call it *White Rot*, and not *White Root*, because the Countrey people think, that if their Sheep should eat it, that it would give them the Rot; and they give it the Epithite *White*, from the color of the Leaf : as they have another which they call *Red-Rot*, which is *Pedicularis*, *Red-Rattle*.

II. *The Kinds*. It is a singular Species of the *Sanicles*; being Genus to none else.

*Butter wort.*



III. *The Description*. It has a Root composed of divers white Fibres, or small Strings, which die not in the Winter, but abide all the time with green Leaves upon them : From this Root spring forth divers fat and long Leaves lying upon the ground round about it, broad at the bottom, and pointed at the end, of a pale green color on the upper side, but white underneath, folded together at their first rising, which then are more White. From among these Leaves, rise up two or three, or more, slender naked Stalks, about five or six Inches high, bearing but one only Flower at top of each Stem, set in a small green husk, in form somewhat like a Violet Flower, or those of Larks Heels or Spurs, having a small Heel or Spur behind, in some of a purple, in others of a more blew color, and in some white. When the Flowers are past, there come in their places small pointed round heads, in which is contained small, long, black Seed.

IV. *The Places*. It is chiefly found in the Common Field, and in several Bogs on the Hills in *York-shire* : and in many places also in the *West Country*, and *Wales* : as also in a Common, about a Mile from *Oxford*, near a Village called *Herington*. *Gerard* says, it grows in *England* in squashy wet Grounds, and will not yield to any Transplanting or Cultivating of it; and that it grows especially in a field called *Crag-Close*, and at *Crosby*, and *Ra-*

*venswaith* in *Westmorland*; upon *Ingleborow Fels*, twelve Miles from *Lancaster*; and in *Harwood* in the same County, near to *Blackburn*; ten Miles from *Preston* in *Aundernefs* upon the Bogs, and Marsh Grounds : and in the Boggy Meadows about *Bishops-Hatfield* : also in the *Fenns* in the way from *London* to *Whitlesea Mere* in *Huntington-shire* : It grows also in *Hampshire*, and in great abundance in many places in *Wales*.

V. *The Times*. It Flowers towards the latter end of *May*, and all the Month of *June*, even to *July*, (according as the Weather proves) and the Seed is ripe not long after.

VI. *The Qualities*. It is Temperate in respect to heat or cold, and Drying in the Second Degree. It is Astringent, and Cathartick, like *Rhubarb*; Consolidative, and Traumatick, or Vulnerary.

VII. *The Specification*. It is dedicated to the curing of Green Wounds, and healing of Recent Ruptures in Children.

VIII. *The Preparations*. You may make therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice of the Plant. 2. A Syrup. 3. An Ointment. 4. A Balsam.

#### *The Virtues.*

IX. *The liquid Juice*. Country People, who live where it grows do use to wash their Hands with it, when they are Chapt by the Wind or Weather : and in *Yorkshire* they anoint the Dugs of their Kine, with the Fat and Oily Juice, when they are bitten with any Poisonous Worm or Fly, or are Chapt or Rift by Weather, or any other means.

X. *The Syrup*. The Poorer sort of People in *Wales*, make a Syrup thereof, as of *Roses*, and therewith Purge themselves, and their Children : they mix it with Broth for the same purpose, and so it purges Flegm effectually. Dose from two to four spoonfuls.

XI. *The Ointment*. They also with the Herb make an Ointment, which is held to be singularly good (and that by the Experience of some Physicians) against the Obstructions of the Liver.

XII. *The Balsam*. It is said to cure Ruptures in Children, being applied Plaister-wise : It is a singular Vulnerary, for it digests, cleanses, and heals Green Wounds in any part, being highly Astringent, Drying, and Consolidating, not much inferior to any of the Wound Herbs.

## CHAP. CIII.

### CABBAGE.

I. *THE Names*. It is called in *Greek*, *Κεράμνη κεφαλωτή* : In *Latin*, *Brassica Capitata* : In *English*, *Cabbage*, or *Headed Colewort*.

II. *The Kinds*. It is twofold, 1. *Κεράμνη κεφαλωτή λευκή*, *Brassica Capitata Alba*, *White Cabbage*. 2. *Κεράμνη κεφαλωτή ερυθρή*, *Brassica Capitata Rubra*, *Red Cabbage*.

III. *The Description*. The Common White Cabbage has a Root going right down, but not deep, nor spreading far, and usually dies in Winter : from which Root springs up one thick Stalk, having at top thereof a great thick Head of crumpled Leaves : this Head is closed hard and round, and has at first great large thick Leaves, of a grayish green color, with thick, great, and lying open most part of the Summer, without closing : but towards the end of the Summer, being grown to have many Leaves, it then be-



gins to grow close and round in the middle, and as it closes, the Leaves grow white inwards; yet there are some kinds, which will never be so close as these, but will remain half open, which are not accounted to be so good as the other. In the middle of this Head, the next Year after the Sowing (in other Countries especially, and sometimes in ours) if the Winter is mild, you may see in divers Gardens a great thick Stalk to shoot forth, which is divided in the top into many Ramifications, or Branches, bearing thereon divers small Flowers, sometimes white, but most commonly yellow, made of four Leaves, which being past, turn into long, round, and pointed Cods, containing therein small round Seed, like to Turnep Seed. Now here is to be noted, that by reason of the hard Frosts, and Cold of our Countrey, some of our Gardiners, for the preventing the danger of the said Winter Frosts, do use to take up such Cabbages (as they intend to reserve for Seed) with their Roots; and tying a Cloth or some such thing about the Roots, do hang them up in their Houses, that thereby they may be defended against the Cold; and then set them again after the Frosts are past.



IV. The Red Cabbage is in all things like unto the White, excepting in the color, this being deeply Red; as also in the magnitude, the Red being for the most part less than the White; and though it is many times found large, yet it is scarcely ever found so large as the large ones of the White. In this also the color of the Leaves is very variable, in some it is Green striped with Red; in others it is more Red; and again in some, it is a very deep Red, and sometimes declining to purple.

V. The Places. They are found growing with us only in Gardens, being nourished, and brought to perfection chiefly by the care and industry of Gardiners.

VI. The Times. They Flower for the most part in June or July, and the Seed is ripe in August.

VII. The Qualities. They are Temperate in respect of heat or coldness; and moist in the first Degree: They are also Opening, Absterfive, Diuretick and Emollient: Also Pectoral, Hepatick, Nephritick, and Hyfterick; Galactogenetick and Alterative.

VIII. The Specification. It is in vain to be particular, for the old Romans having expelled Physicians out of their Territories for Six Hundred Years, did maintain their Health by using and applying Cabbages and Coleworts as their only Medicine, or Remedy, in every Disease. And therefore as they thought them to be effectual against all Diseases of the Body, whether inward or outward, so Chrysippus wrote a Volume of their Virtues, applying them to every part of the Body.

IX. The Preparations. You may make therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. A Decoction. 3. A Syrup. 4. An Electuary. 5. Ashes. 6. The whole Substance. 7. A Collyrium. 8. The Seed.

#### The Virtues.

X. The liquid Juice. Drunk in Wine to three or four ounces, it is good against the bitings of Vipers, or other Venomous Creatures: mixed with Honey, and taken, it is good against Hoarseness, or loss of the Voice, and helps to restore such as are in Consumptions: mixed with Wine or Vinegar, and drank, it is good against the Venom of Muthrooms: Galen applied it to the Temples of such as had the Head-ach, arising from Drunkenness; it cleanseth so strongly, that it is said to cure the Leprosie.

XI. The Decoction. The first Decoction is said to open the Body, but the second does Astringe or Bind, for that the Nitrous quality is quite consumed or spent. If it is made in Water, with an old Cock beaten to peices boiled in it, it prevails against Consumptions, and helps such as are troubled with Gripings, and pains in their Stomachs and Bowels, it is also good for such as are troubled with Obstructions of Liver or Spleen, and the Stone or Gravel in Reins or Bladder. It restrains the Vapors arising from Wine, and suddenly makes them sober again. It takes away the Swelling and Pain of Gouty Knees, being bathed warm therewith, dispersing the Humors. It also cleanses and heals old and filthy Ulcers or Sores, and Scabbiness, being often washed therewith, as also Pustules and Wheals which break out in the Skin.

XII. The Syrup. Made of the Juice, has the Virtues of the same, but in a more peculiar manner it is good against Coughs, Colds, Wheasings, shortness of Breath, Consumptions, and other Diseases of the Brest and Lungs: dropt into the Eyes, it consumes Films, Clouds, or other things which obfuscate the Sight, and heals Sores and Ulcers in the Eyes.

XIII. The Electuary. It is made of the Pulp of the great middle Ribs of the great Leaves, boiled soft in Almond Milk, or Cows Milk, and compleated with Honey. It is profitably used for such as are Hoarse or Wheeze, or are Purse or Short-winded; being taken three, four or five times a day, as much as a Walnut.

XIV. The Ashes. They are made of the Stalks, and are of such a drying Quality, that as Parkinson saith, they become almost Caustick: being mixed with Oil Olive, and Beef Suet, in a small proportion, they are found to be effectual to anoint the Sides of such as have had vehement and inveterate Pains there; as also it is good for Pains in any other place, caused by the access of Melancholick and Flatulent Humors, helping mightily to disperse and scatter them; and therefore must be very profitable against the Gout.

XV. The whole Substance. It is usually boiled in Water, or in Mutton or Beef Broth, till it is soft; and so with Butter, Vinegar, and Pepper, it is eaten as a Saller, and for Food: and so eaten it nourishes, cleanses the Bowels, creates Seed, also Milk in Nurses,



Nurses, helps Coughs, and Hoarseness, and restores in Consumptions, being very Stomack ; ( for Stomacks are indeed the greatest restoratives. )

XVI. *The Collyrium.* It is made of the Juice mixed with Honey, and boiled to the thickness of a thin Syrup. Drop'd into the Eye, it clears the sight, and clears it of Clouds or Films, or any other matter which hurts it. It prevails against an Ophthalmie, and heals Sores or Ulcers of the Eye, removing the weakness, and much strengthening the part affected.

XVII. *The Seed.* If it is bruised, and mixed with a sixth part of Mustard Seed, and so drunk with Wine, it kills Worms in the Stomach or Bowels : it also expels Wind in the Bowels ; and eases the pains of the Ventricle caused from Acid, or Cold and Moist Humors. Dose one dram, Morning and Evening.

## C H A P. CIV.

### CALAMINT Common and Small.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Καλαμίνθη* (*quasi bona vel utilis Mentha*) in Latin, *Calamintha* : and in English, *Calamint*, or *Mountain Mint*.

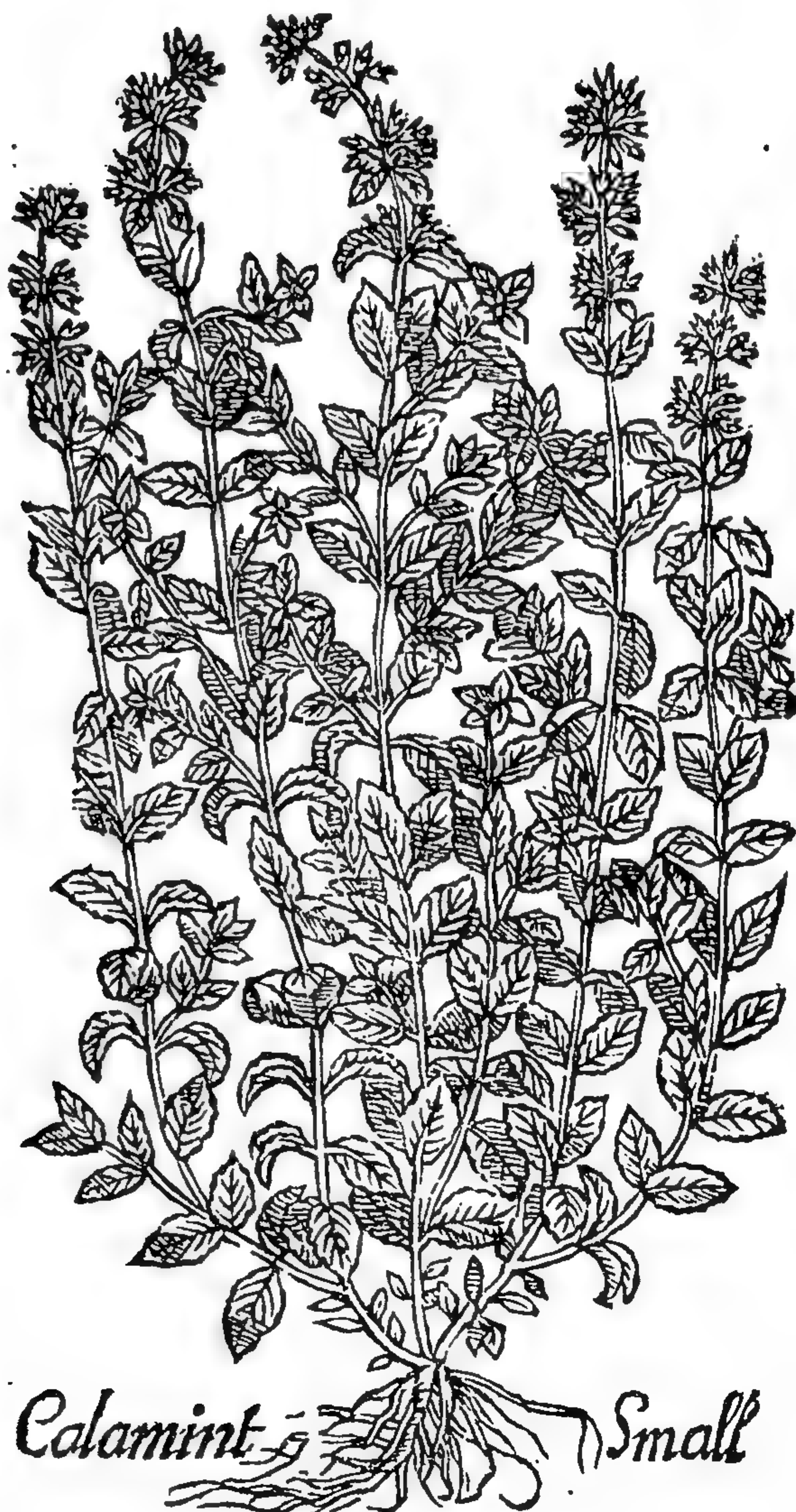
II. *The Kinds.* It is chiefly twofold, 1. *Καλαμίνθη κοινή*, *Calamintha vulgaris*, Common Calamint ; of which in this Chapter. 2. *Καλαμίνθη ἄγρια*, *Calamintha agrestis*, Field or Wild Calamint ; of which in the next Chapter.

III. *The Common Calamint*, of which we here treat, is three fold, viz. 1. *Calamintha vulgaris magna*, The Great Common Calamint. 2. *Calamintha Præstantior*, The Greatest Calamint, which grows plentifully in our English Plantations in America. 3. *Calamintha minor*, The Lesser Calamint.

#### CALAMINTHA Communis.



*Calamintha Americana.*



*Calamint Small*

IV. *The Description.* Our ordinary Calamint has a Root small and woody, with divers small twigs, or fibres, spreading within the ground, not dying Annually, but abiding many Years ; from which Root rise up several square hoary and woody Stalks, about a foot high, seldom higher : The Stalks and Branches have two hoary Leaves set at a Joint, about the bigness of Marjoram, or not much bigger, a little dented about the edges, and of a very piercing and quick Scent, as the whole Herb is : The Flowers stand at several



several places of the Stalks, from the middle almost upwards, which are small and gaping, much like to those of Mint, and of a pale bluish color. The Flowers being gone, there follows small, round, blackish Seed.

V. *Calamintha Præstantior Americana*, has a woody Root, which abideth, and sends forth new Branches every Year. It is a Sweet Herb, and rises up to be about a foot and half high, with square, hard, and hoary Stalks, which are many, and more slender than those of the Wild Mint; on which are set at every Joint, two small, and somewhat round Leaves, deeply dented about the edges, yet larger than those of the Wild Kind, being somewhat hairy, but not very hoary, rather of a sad green color, of a very sweet Scent, and not strong or heady as the other. The Flowers are gaping, and like the former, but larger, and of a purple color; which being gone, then comes the Seed, which is black, small, round, and something like unto Purslane Seed.

VI. The Small Calamint, is another sort of the first, and is like unto it in all thing, except the magnitude, being something less, and differing chiefly in the Flowers, which are not so large by one half, and therefore denotes it to differ from the same.

VII. The Places. The first grows in many Gardens, and in Dry and Upland Grounds, and on Heaths in many places of England. The second grows in many places of English America, it having been found in several old Plantations, after they have been flung up for rest, as also in the Borders of several Woods. It has also been found on the Euganean Hills near Padua, on Hills near Vicenza in Italy; on rocky Cliffs of Sevena in Provence, as also in Germany: Lobel also found it growing in England. The Small Sort is found for the most part in those places where the first is also found, or not far off from them.

VIII. The Times. They all Flower about the latter end of June, and in July, and their Seed is ripe in some short time afterwards.

IX. The Qualities. It is hot and dry in the third Degree: Astringent, Carminative, Digestive, Diffusive and Sudorifick. It is also Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomatick, Pectoral, Cordial and Hyfterick: Alexipharmick and Alterative.

X. The Specification. It powerfully provokes the Terms in Women, and facilitates the Delivery of Women in Labor.

XI. The Preparations. You may make therefrom,  
1. A Powder of the Leaves. 2. A liquid Juice.  
3. A Decoction. 4. A Distilled Water from the Herb gathered in June or July. 5. A simple Syrup of the Juice. 6. A Spirituous Tincture. 7. An Acid Tincture. 8. An Oily Tincture. 9. A Saline Tincture.  
10. A Spirit. 11. A distilled Oil. 12. A Balsam.  
13. An Ointment. 14. A Pessary. 15. A Cataplasm.

#### The Virtues.

XII. The Powder of the Leaves. Made into an Electuary with Salt and Honey, it kills Worms in the Body, helps the Leprosie, and such as are troubled with shortness of Breath.

XIII. The liquid Juice. It provokes Urine and the Terms, eases shortness of Breathing, and Choleric Torments of the Stomach and Bowels: It also facilitates the Delivery of Women in Travel, and expels the Dead Child, and therefore Women with Child ought to forbear the use of it. Dropped into the Ears, it kills Worms in them; and opens Obstructions of Lungs, Liver, Spleen and Womb. And the Body being first well purged, if it is given from

two to four ounces, to such as are troubled with a Tertian Ague, it cures it.

XIV. A Decoction in Wine. It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, but not full out so powerful; but as it is less in power, so it is much more pleasant to be taken, and therefore may be given in the larger Dose. It brings down Womens Courses, and provokes Urine, and is good for those who are Burthen, or are troubled with Convulsions, Cramps, or shortness of Breath. It helps the Yellow Jaundice, and stays Vomiting, and is good against the bitings of Vipers, or other Venomous Creatures: It provokes Sweat powerfully, and therefore is singular good against all malign Fevers, as Measles, Small Pox, Spotted Fever, and the Plague it self. Dose from four to six or eight ounces.

XV. The Distilled Water. It has all the Virtues of the Decoction, but much weaker, and therefore is chiefly used as a Vehicle to convey any of the other Preparations in.

XVI. The Syrup of the Juice. It is highly Pectoral, and therefore a most excellent thing to open all Obstructions of the Lungs, and heal their Distempers, prevailing against Colds, Coughs, Hoarseness, Wheezing, shortness of Breath, difficulty of Breathing, hardness of the Spleen, and other Distempers of the Bowels. Dose two spoonfuls Morning and Evening, for some considerable time.

XVII. The Spirituous Tincture. It is a singular thing against all manner of Malignity, Poison, and Infection whatsoever: It powerfully cures Convulsions in the Bowels, Stomach, or in any other part of the Body; it strengthens Nature, cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, and is an excellent thing against cold Sweats, Faintings, Swoonings, Fits, and all sorts of Deliquiums of the Spirits or Heart, and other Bowels, proceeding from Cold, or a cold and moist Cause. Dose half an ounce in a Glass of Wine, Morning fasting, and Evening, or in the time of the Paroxysm.

XVIII. The Distilled Oil. It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Decoction, but much more efficacious than either of them: being dropt ten or fifteen drops into Sugar, and so drunk in a Glass of Wine, it gives immediate relief in the Cholick; and so given to a Woman in Labour, it presently forces away the Child, either alive or dead; outwardly anointed upon parts Paralytick, or affected with the Cramp, it presently gives relief in the latter, and in some few times using helps the former.

XIX. The Acid Tincture. It is most admirable against the Plague, Spotted Fever, and all other sorts of Malignant Fevers; as also against the Poison of Serpents, as Vipers, Rattle Snakes, &c. bitings of Mad Dogs, or other Venomous Creatures, the Acid destroying all sorts of malignity and Poison whatsoever: It may be given inwardly from half an ounce to two ounces every six hours in some proper Vehicle; and outwardly bathed upon the Region of the Heart, or upon the place bitten or hurt, and Cloths dipt therein may be laid on, and this three, four, or five times a day.

XX. The Oily Tincture. Given inwardly to two drams, it gives ease in the Cholick presently, and opens Obstructions of the Reins and Womb, provoking Urine, and forcing away Sand, Gravel, and other Tartarous Matter obstructing those parts: Anointed upon Spasms, it cures them in a short time: and well rubbed in, Morning and Evening for several days, upon any part troubled with the Palsie, it restores them, comforting the Nerves, and warming and strengthening the Parts afflicted: It is also profitable against the Piles, proceeding from a cold cause, (if not broken) they being anointed therewith two or three times.

XXI. The



XXI. *The Saline Tincture.* It is good to wash such parts as break out with any sharp or salt Humor, as the Leprosie of the Greeks, Scurf, Morpew, Scald Heads, Dandriff, and the like: bathed upon parts troubled with the Gout or Sciatica, and continued for some time, Morning and Evening, it gives ease of the Pain, does much good, and in time removes the Disease.

XXII. *The Spirit.* It is Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomack, Cordial, and Alexipharmick: It stops Vomiting, strengthens a weak Stomach, cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, and is good against Fainting and Swooning, Vapors, and Fits of the Mother, and preserves (being taken in a Morning fasting) from the Infection of the Plague, or of the Spotted, or any other Malign Fever. You may take a spoonful or two of it at a time (if Dulcified) and that twice a day, or upon the spot, if any Paroxysm is present: It is also good to bathe with, if any thing like a Gangrene is feared.

XXIII. *The Balsam.* Being applied to a cold Gout, it gives ease to the Pain, and anointed upon the Hemorrhoids, or Piles, it heals and cures them.

XXIV. *The Ointment.* It is good to anoint Womens Breasts, which are swollen and painful, proceeding either from Cold, or Curdled Milk, or some external Violence.

XXV. *The Pessary.* The green Herb made into a Pessary with Wooll, and put up the Vagina Uteri, it provokes the Terms, eases the pains of the Mother, resists Vapors and Hysterick Fits, and if it is near the time of Travel, hastens and facilitates the Birth.

XXVI. *The Cataplasme.* It is made of the green Herb, with Lard, Crumbs of Bread, or Pouder of Bay-berries: being applied to any part pained with the Gout, it eases the Pains, abates the Tumor or Swelling, and discusses or draws forth the Humors. It must be continued Morning and Evening for some considerable time, by which means it is said to perfect those Cures. Being applied upon places black and blew, or yellow, or otherwise discolored, it takes away the ill color, and cleanses the skin.



Calamint Water?

Large English.



Calamint  
Spotted.

## CHAP. CV.

### CALAMINT, Wild.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, Καλαμίνθη ἀγρία: In Latin, *Calamintha agrestis*: and in English, Wild Calamint.

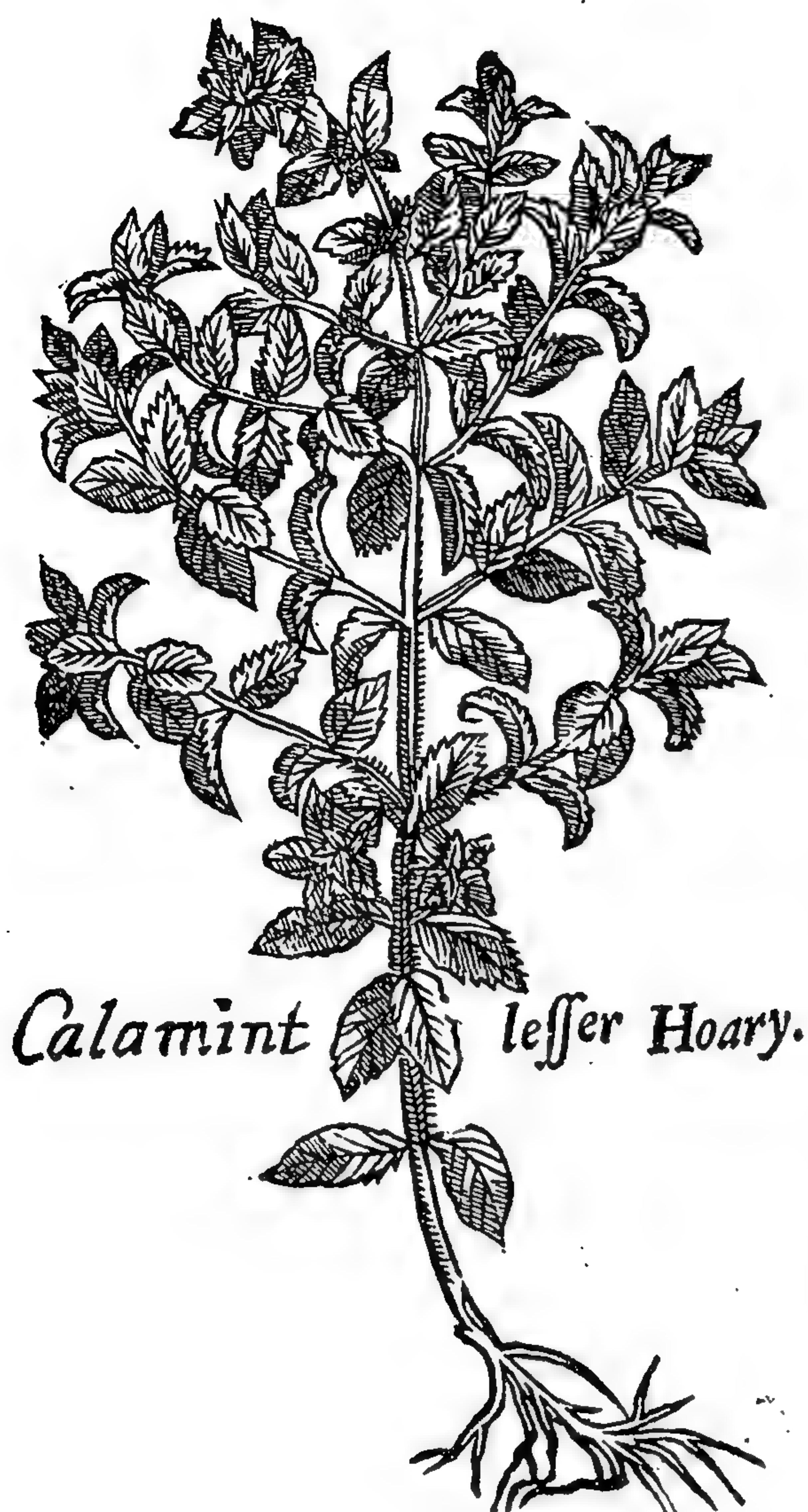
II. *The Kinds.* We shall treat here of three several Kinds of it: 1. *Calamintha arvensis verticillata*, five *Aquatica Lobellij*, Field Calamint with whorled Coronets. 2. *Calamintha altera odore Pulegij, foliis maculosis*, Calamint having the Pennyroyal Smell, and with Spotted Leaves. 3. *Calamintha minor incana*, The lesser hoary Calamint.

III. *The Description.* The first of these has a small Root, abiding long, and not perishing after Seed time: From which Root come forth several square hoary Stalks full of Joints; and two small, and almost round hoary Leaves set thereat, up to the tops, something like to Pennyroyal leaves, of a brisk, sharp, and quick Scent, yet Sweet withal, like unto Pennyroyal. Towards the Tops of the Stalks and Branches there stand, with the Leaves, many purplish Flowers, several being set together, in a kind of Whorle or Coronet; after which comes small blackish Seed.

IV. The second or Spotted Calamint, differs not much from the Common Calamint in the former Chapter, but that it grows nothing near so great nor high; it has square, hard, hoary Stalks, and hoary Leaves thereon like it; but spotted here and there, of a very strong Scent like unto Pennyroyal. The Flowers grow in the same manner as the Common Calamint



*Calamint* in Cap. 104. Sect. 4. but smaller, and of a pale purplish color, having much like small blackish Seed.



*Calamint* lesser Hoary.

V. The third, or Lesser hoary Calamint, has a fibrous Root like the others, and not perishing yearly. From which spring up small, low, and slender hoary Stalks, not above a Foot high, on which, at every Joint, are set two Leaves, as in the other Kinds, but smaller, and more hoary, yea smaller than the least Bush Basil. The Flowers are very small, but like the last described, and of a less heady smell, with like Seed also, but something lesser.

VI. The Places. The first grows in many places of England, both in plowed Grounds, and moist Meadows. The second, Pena says he found on certain Hills in Lombardy; and in several places of our own Land, but not always spotted: I have found it in several places of South Carolina. The third and last is not common with us, but only nourished up in Gardens: It grows in Candia, from whence the Seed came first to Camerarius.

VII. The Times. They Flower in June and July, and their Seed is ripe soon after.

VIII. As to their Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses, they are exactly the same with those in the former Chapter, and therefore to those I refer you.

## CHAP. CVI.

### CALTROPS, Land.

I. THE Names. They are called in Greek *Τρίβυλος*, *ἢ Τρίβυλος*: In Latin, *Tribulus*: In English, *Calthrops*. The Arabians call this Plant *Hafach*, and *Haferk*; the Spaniard, *Abrolas*, and the French, *Saligot*.

II. The Kinds. It is twofold, first of the Land,

*lus terrestris*; and in English, *Land Caltrops*, of which in this Chapter. Secondly, *Water Caltrops*, of which in the next.



*Land Caltrop*

III. The Description. Land Caltrop has a Root which is white, grows downwards, and has many Fibres or Strings. From this Root rise up several hard, small, long Branches, full of Joints, and spread abroad upon the ground; which are furnished with many winged Leaves, having a middle Rib, on which stand several small Leaves, on both sides the said Rib, after the manner of Orobus or Vetches. At the Joints come forth singly, small, pale, whitish Flowers, consisting of five small Leaves, like the Flowers of Tormentil. These being past, there comes forth little, rough, prickly heads, full of Prickles, and having five or six Corners, within which prickly Husk lies the Kernel or Seed.

IV. The Places. It is said to grow plentifully in Spain in their fields, being sometimes hurtful to Corn: It is also found in most places of Italy and France: And, as Gerard says, it grows with us in England; he found it in a moist Meadow adjoining to the then Wood or Park of Sir Francis Carew, near Croydon, not far from London, from whence he brought Plants of it for his Garden. Parkinson says it grows amongst Rubbish, and the Ruins of Buildings, and by Walls sides.

V. The Times. It Flowers in June and July; and the fruit or Seed is ripe in August.

VI. The Qualities. It is cold in the first Degree, and dry in the second. It is Astringent and Repellent, it is Alterative and Alexipharmick.

VII. The Specification. By reason it is of thin Parts, it is said to waste the Stone, Tartar, or Gravel in the Reins, and parts adjacent.

VIII. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Powder of the Root. 5. A Collyrium. 6. A Cataplasm of the Leaves. 7. A Lotion. 8. The Seed.

#### The Virtues.

IX. The liquid Juice. Being applied, it abates the Inflammation, and cures an Erysipelas: It hinders the breeding of Inflammations and Apoplems, and



and stops the Flux of Humors; and being drank from two ounces to four, it breaks or waxes the Stone in the Reins, expelling Sand, Gravel, and Tarrarous Humors; and stops all sorts of Fluxes of the Bowels.

X. *The Essence.* It has all the same Virtues, and the more pleasant Medicine to take. It cures sore Eyes, being dropt into them, and abating the Inflammation, takes away the Blood-shot. If it is drank to two or three ounces in Wine, it prevails against the poison of the Viper, and the bitings of other Venomous Beasts.

XI. *The Decoction.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not all out so powerful: It may serve as a good Vehicle to convey the Powder of the Root in.

XII. *The Powder of the Root.* It stops Fluxes of the Belly, and binds it: given to two drams, it is good against the biting of Vipers; consumes Nodes and Kernels in the Neck, or other Parts, and in a good measure strengthens the Stomach.

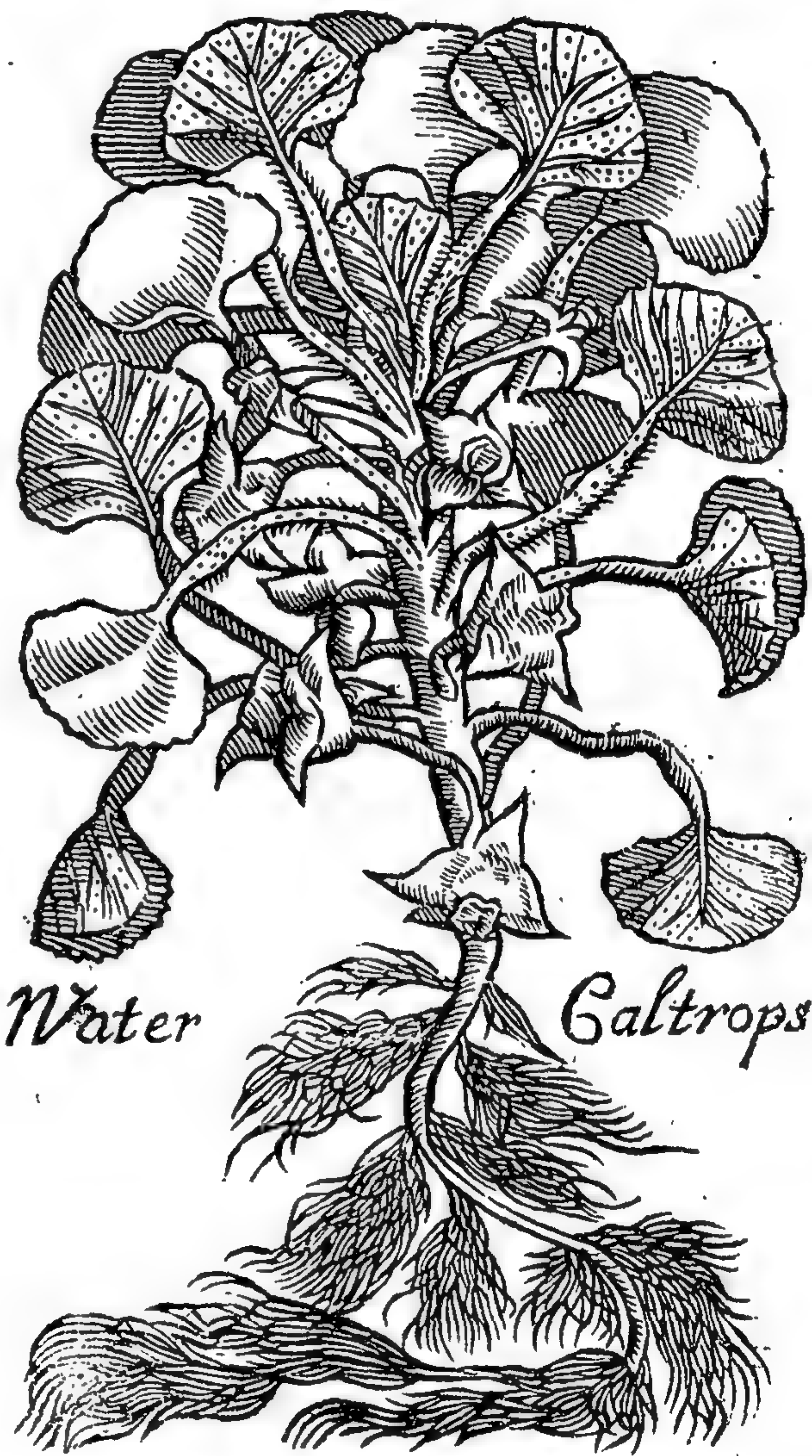
XIII. *The Collyrium.* It is made of the Juice or Essence made into a thin Syrup with Honey. This put into the Eye three or four times a day, stops fluxions of Humors into the Part, cools and takes away the Inflammation, and heals Sores or Ulcers therein.

XIV. *The Cataplasme of the Leaves.* It is good against a hot Gout, repercusses the flux of Humors, hinders Apostems, and discusses Swellings in the Legs, or other parts of the Body.

XV. *The Lotion.* It is made of the Decoction in Wine, in a quart of which, Honey three ounces, and Roch Allum half an ounce, is dissolved. It is made to heal corrupt Sores and Ulcers of the Mouth, Throat, and Gums; and to cleanse Fistula's, as also Apostems newly broke, or opened, by injecting it with a Syringe.

XVI. *The Seed or Fruit.* It is Alexipharmick; Galen and Pliny say, that the Thracians, who dwelt near the River Stirmon, lived themselves of the Fruit or Kernels, making them into a sweet and fine kind of Bread, which something bound up the Belly: And that with the Herb they fed their Horses. But this making Bread of the Kernels is affirmed by some, to be only meant of the Fruit of the *Water Caltrop*, following.

which rising from the bottom of the Water, mount above the same; at the top of each of which, there are broad, and more than half round Leaves, in some places Spotted on the under side, and dented about the Edges. The Footstalks on which these Leaves stand, are smaller at the lower end next the Root, than they are at top of the Water next to the Leaves. Among these Leaves rise up sappy round Stalks, no higher than the Leaves, bearing whitish Flowers at the Tops. After which come thick, hard, and Woody, almost round heads, with three or four sharp pricks or points sticking out, of the bigness of Hasle Nuts, and blackish in some places: some of them are as large as great Walnuts, having a sweet white Kernel within, which is not much unlike to a Chestnut. This Fruit, with its outward Husk, or Shell, is hard, triangled, sharp pointed and prickly, in shape almost like to those things called Caltrops, which in War they cast in the way of the Enemy, to annoy the Feet of their Horses, and from whence this Plant took its name. The Kernel is tasted almost like a Chestnut, and are usually eaten green: And being dried, they are ground to powder, and so serve to make Bread of.



C H A P. CVII.

C A L T R O P, Water.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *Τριβόλον*: in Latin, *Tribulus aquaticus*, *Tribulus marinus*, and by Cordus, *Lacustris*: in English, *Water Caltrop*; *Saligot*, and *Water Nuts*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are two sorts of *Water Caltrops*. 1. The *Greater Water Caltrops*. 2. The *Lesser Water Caltrop*: And of the *Lesser* there are also two Kinds, viz. The former and the latter. The *Greater Water Caltrop*, is called in Latin, *Tribulus Aquaticus major*: *Tribulus Aquatilis*, and *Castanea aquatilis*. The lesser sorts are called by Clusius, *Tribulus aquaticus minor*; and distinguished by him, the former of which he calls, *Tribulus aquaticus minor prior*; and the latter, *Tribulus aquaticus minor alter*.

III. *The Description.* The *Greater Water Caltrop* has a Root which grows somewhat long, and full of Joints, with a Tuft of Hairs or Fibres at each of them. From the head of this Root lying under Water, rise up several long slender Footstalks,

IV. The former lesser Caltrop, the whole Plant, is commonly covered over with Water, having very long, slender, creeping Roots, from whose several Parts or Joints come forth divers Tufts of small Fibres or Strings, which take hold of the Mud. From this Root, at the lower Joints thereof come forth thin, flat, knotty Stalks, of a reddish color, three, four, or five Feet long, or longer, according to the depth of the Water in which it grows; which being dry, are pliant, and flexible, and fit for many occasions. They are divided towards the Top, into many Parts or Branches, carrying single Leaves at the lower Joints, on both sides, being about two Inches long, and half an Inch broad, thin, and almost transparent, or as it were shining: so waved, wrinkled, or crumpled on the Edges, that they seem to be torn, and for the most part of a reddish green color. The Footstalks are somewhat long and thick, and rise up from among those Leaves, which always grow two, one opposite against another, in a contrary manner to those which grow below on the Stalk. From the Joints with



with the Leaves come forth small Footstalks, bearing at their ends small, whitish, long and thick Flowers. Gerard says, out of these Stalks, at the Tops, grows small Grape-like Husks, out of which spring small reddish Flowers, like those of the Oak, every Flower having four very small round topt Leaves: after every Flower, there comes commonly four sharp pointed Grains growing together, containing within them a little white Kernel.

V. The latter small Water Caltrop, has a Root not much unlike to the former, but longer, and fuller of single Fibres or Strings. From whence spring up Stalks, not flat, as the former, but round kneed, and always bearing two Leaves at every Joint, one opposite against the other, greener, shorter, and lesser than the other, sharp pointed, and not much wrinkled or crumpled on the Edges. Clusius says, that they are not at all crumpled. But our English Herborists never observed any without crumples or wrinkles. The Flowers grow on short small Footstalks, of a whitish green color, like those of Muscatella Cordi, called by Gerard, Radix cava minima viridi flore, to wit, two flowers at the top of every Footstalk, one opposite against another, every flower containing four small Leaves: which two flowers being past, there comes up eight small Husks, making six several ways a square of flowers.

VI. The Places. The greater is found in several Lakes and moist places in Germany, as also in Brabant and Flanders, and in many places of Italy near the Sea. One Fincham a Merchant of London found it in the East Indies in the Mogul's Countrey, where it grew like a Weed in moist Ponds there, the Kernel of which, he says, is much eaten by the Natives. See Purchas his Pilgrims, lib. 4. cap. 4. sect. 5. pag. 429. Cordus says it grows in Germany in Muddy Lakes and Places, and in Ditches which have Mud in them, as also in Standing Waters, and sometimes also in Running Waters. And Matthioli says, it grows not only in Lakes of Sweet Water, but also in Ditches by the Sea side near to Venice. The second or former lesser grows in standing Waters, or Pools, Ditches, or Fish Ponds: It was found in Ponds adjoining to a dissolved Abby called Dursford, which divide Hampshire and Sussex, and in other standing Waters in several places. The third or latter small grows plentifully in the River by Droxford in Hampshire.

VII. The Times. They all Flower in June and July, and give their Fruit or Seed in August.

VIII. The Qualities. They are all cold and moist in the first Degree, and more Watry than the Land Caltrop. They are Emollient, Repercussive, Nephritick, Alterative and Alexipharmick.

IX. The Specification. They are good against the Obstructions of the Reins, Gravel, Tartar in the Urinary Passages, heat of Urine, and pissing of Blood.

X. The Preparations. You may make therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. A Decoction. 3. A distilled Water. 4. A Lotion. 5. A Cataplasme. 6. The Nuts. 7. A Powder of the Nuts.

#### The Virtues.

XI. The liquid Juice. Being applied, it cures an Erysipelas; and is good against Inflammations in any part of the Body; and cures the King's-Evil, Running Sores, or Ulcers, by washing with it.

XII. The Decoction. If made in White Wine, or in Wine and Water, it opens the Obstructions of the Reins and Ureters, expels Tartar, Sand and Gravel, out of the Urinary Parts, and helps scalding of the Water.

XIII. The Distilled Water. If it is drunk with a little Roch Allum dissolved in it, it stops the pissing of Blood, and is profitable against the Diabetes.

XIV. The Lotion. It is made of the Decoction in Water with the addition of Honey; Gerard says, it perfectly cures Cankers of the Mouth, Throat, Almonds, and fore Gums.

XV. The Cataplasme of the Herbs. Dioscorides says, it is good against all sorts of Inflammations, or hot Swellings. It may be profitably applied in a hot Gout, after sufficient cleansing of the Body, both with Emeticks and Catharticks.

XVI. The Nuts. Eaten raw, they resist Poison, and are said to be good against the bitings of Venomous Beasts: Eaten also, and drinking White Wine with them, they are said to be good against Stone and Gravel. In like manner eaten, and also beaten, and applied to the place, they resist the Poison of the bitings of Venomous Beasts.

XVII. The Powder of the Nuts. Gerard says, it is given to such as piss Blood, and are troubled with Gravel, and that it binds the Belly. It is doubtless a singular thing against the Bloody Flux, and other Fluxes of the Bowels, if it is given from a dram, to two drams, in a Glass of Sherry, or Madera Wine: Being dried, and ground to Powder in Quantities, a pleasant kind of Bread may be made thereof.

## CHAP. CVIII.

### CAMOMIL.



I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, by Dioscorides, *Ἀνθέμις*: by Theophrastus *Ἀνθέμις*: by some *Λευκάνθεμις* (from the whiteness of the Flowers:) also *Χαμαίμελον*, quod Mali odorem habet, from having the smell of Apples. It is called in Latin, *Chamamelum*, and *Chamomilla*, also *Anthemis*, and *Leucanthemum*: In English, *Camomil*.

II. The



II. The Kinds. There are four several kinds hereof, viz. 1. The Common Garden kind, which is called in Latin, *Chamomilla hortensis*, and *Chamamelum hortense*. 2. The Naked flowered, called *Chamamelum nudum*. 3. The Double flowered, called *Chamamelum flore pleno*, and *Chamamelum Anglicum flore multiplici*. 4. The Roman, called *Chamamelum Romanum*. As for the Wild Kinds, or *Cotula*, Parkinson thinks them to be not so much of the Camomil kind, as of the *Parthenium*, or *Featherfew*, of which see *May Weed*.

III. The Descriptions. The Common Camomil has a small and fibrous Root, from whence spring many weak and feeble Branches, trailing or leaning to the ground, which take hold on the Top of the Earth as it runs, whereby it much encreases. The Leaves are very fine, and much jagged, or deeply cut, of a very strong sweet smell. Among which, at tops of the Branches come forth Flowers like unto the Field Daisie, having a border of small white Leaves, with yellow thrums in the middle, crouded close together, as is that of the Daisie, or *Featherfew*, but larger, and not so hard, but more soft and gentle in handling; which give a small white Seed, not observed by many, but being sowed, or cast into the ground, will bring forth Plants as other Seed doth.

Camomil naked flowered



IV. The Naked flowered, has Roots, Leaves, Stalks and Branches like to the former, and creeping upon the Surface of the Earth as that doth; but its Leaves are finer, and shorter, and it bears naked Flowers, which consist only of the middle yellow Thrumb, without any pale or border of white Leaves round about it, and smelling as sweet as the former. The whole Plant is of a pleasing smell, for which reason some have given it the Epiithite of *Odoratum*, as Gerard says.

V. The Double flowered has also Roots, Leaves, Stalks and Branches like to the first, it creeps as

much on the ground, and yet grows higher, and more upright: Its Leaves are of a fresher green color; and in its Flower the white Leaves going round the same are manifold, or much doubled, insomuch that the yellow thrumb in the middle is little seen, so that it seems but a little yellowish spot. This Plant is of a sweeter Scent than the first, and is more tender to be kept in Winter. It has also Seed in the middle of the Flowers, which being broken and cast into the Ground, will produce Double flowered Camomil.



Roman

Camomill

VI. The Roman Camomil, has a Root somewhat thicker than the former, but fibrous withal, from whence rise up many slender Stalks, yet stiffer, and stronger than any of the others, for which reason it stands more upright, and does not creep upon the Earth, as the rest do. The Leaves are fine, but rather shorter, and of a more whitish color, tending something to the color of *Woad Leaves*: the Flowers are like to the first, having a single border of white Leaves, and a close yellow Thrumb in the middle, after which comes small white Seed, like that in the Common Camomil: The whole Plant has a very sweet Scent.

VII. The Places. The first grows in most Gardens throughout England, besides it grows Wild (as Parkinson says) in many places of this Land: the other three kinds grow with us only in Gardens.

VIII. The Times. They Flower for the most part through all the Summer Months, and their Seed comes to perfection in the time of flowering.

IX. The Qualities. They are all of them hot and dry in three: *Aperitive*, *Anodyne*, *Digestive*, *Diffusive*, *Diuretick*, *Sudorifick*, *Alterative*, and *Alexipharmick*.

X. The Specification. The Egyptians dedicated it to the curing of Agues: and experience has confirm'd it an admirable thing against Diseases of the Pleura.

XI. The Preparations. There are, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Syrup. 4. An Infusion. 5. A Decoction. 6. A Powder. 7. An Oil by Infusion. 8. An Ointment. 9. A Balsam. 10. A



*Cataplasma.* 11. *A Distilled Water.* 12. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 13. *An Acid Tincture.* 14. *An Oily Tincture.* 15. *A Saline Tincture.* 16. *A Spirit.* 17. *An Oil Distilled.* 18. *Potestates.* 19. *An Elixir.* 20. *A Fixed Salt.*

### The Virtues.

XII. *The liquid Juice.* It is Antiscorbutick, resists the Infection of the Plague; and being taken inwardly to four or six ounces, two hours before the coming of the Fit of an Ague, whether Quotidian, Tertian, or Quartan, it commonly cures it at three or four Doses; besides which it cures an exquisite Pleurisie, more especially if a little Salt of Blood (whether of Man or Beast) is added to it, and this I have had experience of in my own Person, and since that have cured several others by the same Medicament. It provokes the Terms in Women, opens the Urinary passages, and gives ease in the Strangury to a Miracle.

XIII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the former, besides which it facilitates the Birth, and brings away the Child, whether dead or alive, as also the After-birth: It causes a free Breathing, is good against Colds, Coughs, Asthma's, and other Obstructions of the Lungs, as also Stitches in the Side. Dose four ounces, Morning and Evening.

XIV. *The Syrup.* Made of the Juice of Double-flowed Camomil, saith *Bauhinus*, but of our Common Garden Camomil, say *Pena* and *Lobel*, with the Flowers also, and a little White Wine, being taken three or four spoonfuls at a time, is a remedy against the Jaundice and Dropsie, as also the evil disposition of the Spleen.

XV. *The Infusion.* If it is made in White Port Wine, it provokes Urine, opens Obstructions of the Urinary Parts, expels Sand, Gravel, and Tartar, and helps a stinking Breath. It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not altogether so powerful.

XVI. *The Decoction.* If made in Wine, or part Wine part Water, and taken inwardly, it has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but very much weaker, yet it prevails powerfully against the Cholick: *Parkinson* says, it takes away all Pains and Stitches in the Sides. Tired Limbs being bathed therewith, it takes away their Weariness, and eases Pains to what part of the Body soever it is applied. It comforts the Nerves that are over-strained, mollifies Tumors, and discusses those which are not very hard; and moderately comforts those parts which have need of warmth, or are chill'd by any Cold Paralytick Humor.

XVII. *The Powder.* Made of the dried Herb, but chiefly of the Flowers, being given from half a dram, to one dram, it helps the Gripping of the Guts, Wind, and Pain of the Stomach.

XVIII. *The Oil by Infusion of the Flowers in Oil Olive.* If the Person troubled with an Ague, be anointed with this Oil, before a good fire, from the Crown of the Head to the Soles of the Feet, and after that, be laid to Sweat in a Bed, being so warm covered that they may Sweat well, it cures it, let the Ague be what it will. This is an *Ægyptian* Medicine, and *Galen* seems to confirm it: For he saith, that the *Sophi* of *Ægypt*, Consecrated this Herb to the Sun, for its Virtue in curing all sorts of Agues. But therein, says *Galen*, they were deceived, for it cures only those where the Humors are already digested; but it is very profitable (says he) for all other sorts of Agues, which come either from Flegm or Melancholly, or from an Inflammation of the Bowels; for these (says he) Camomil is a Sovereign Remedy to be applied, the Humors

being first Concocted. It is good against cold Gouts, coldness of the Limbs, and Pains and Aches proceeding from Cold and Moisture.

XIX. *The Ointment.* It heals Wounds in a Cold, Scorbutick habit of Body, gives ease in the Gout, and mollifies Tumors proceeding from an afflux of Humors.

XX. *The Balsam.* It is more excellent for healing Wounds than the Ointment, and being mixed with other proper things, it brings Apostems and Tumors to suppuration, and prevails singularly against the Gout, whether it proceeds from a hot or a cold Cause, and it will be so much the more effectual, if *Camphir* be added to it, which contains in it a subtil Fire, which draws forth the Essence of the Gout through the Pores of the Skin.

XXI. *The Cataplasma.* Being applied, it is useful to discuss, or dissolve Tumors, and Wind, in any part of the Body, and to ease Pains and Aches in the Joints. Being applied to the Ribs, and Hypochonders, as hot as it can be endured, it eases the Spleen, expels Wind, and gives immediate relief in the pains of the most exquisite Pleurisie: It also takes away Pains and Stitches in the Sides, removes shortness of Breath, and causes presently an easiness of breathing.

XXII. *The Distilled Water.* It is good against fainting of the Heart and Spirits, is good against Vapors and Fits of the Mother, as also Pains and Distempers of the Spleen; but it is chiefly used as a Vehicle to convey the other Preparations of this Plant into the Body: six ounces of it being drank with a scruple or half a dram of Salt of Camomil dissolved in it, prevails wonderfully against stoppage of Urine, and so is helpful against the Strangury.

XXIII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* Made from the Flowers, or the Herb and Flowers together, it prevails against Fainting and Swooning Fits, coldness of the Stomach, and sickness at Heart. It comforts all parts which have need of warmth; it digests crude Humors, discusses Wind in the Stomach and Bowels, alleviates the Pains and Torments of the Belly, and provokes Urine gently: It induces Sweat, and expels cold Aches and Pains in what part of the Body soever.

XXIV. *The Acid Tincture.* It digests, loosens, eases Pain, is highly Antifebrick, Anticolick, and strongly Diuretick. It powerfully opens Obstructions of the Lungs, and helps such as have a shortness of Breath, difficulty of Breathing, are Hoarse, and Wheeze much, so as in a manner they have lost their Voice. It Attenuates, Cleanses, Purges, Opens, Expectorates tough Flegm, and is profitable for all Diseases of the Brest, caused by the Afflux of moist and flegmatick Humors, whether Thin or Thick, Tough, Rotten, or Corrupted, causing the same to be spit forth. You may make it pleasant and grateful with Syrup of Violets, or Clovegilliflowers, or a pure Tincture of *Spanish* Juice of Liquorice, and so to be taken often in the Day, and that for many Days together.

XXV. *The Oily Tincture.* This being rubbed in daily, Morning and Night, before a good Fire, all along the Back-bone, from the Head to the *Anus*, and also over all the affected Limbs, it cures a Palsie above most other things in the World. It also cures Rheumatick Pains, being well anointed upon the parts affected twice a Day, and continued for some time. It expels Cold, eases Pains, discusses cold and windy Tumors, eases the Pains of the *Pleura*, and After-pains of Women in Child-bed, being anointed a little above the Share Bone, and twenty drops of it given inwardly, in a Glass of Canary. In all outward applications, if you add a little *Camphire* to it, one ounce of *Camphir* to a pound of the



the Tincture, it makes it so much the more powerful and effectual.

XXVI. *The Saline Tincture.* It may be given from half a dram to a dram, in White Wine, against Stone, Gravel, Sand, and Tartarous Matter in the Reins and Bladder; it opens Obstructions of the Urinary parts, and of the Womb; is good against Vapors, and Fits of the Mothers, and dissolves Coagulations in the *Pleura*. Outwardly used, it is good against the Gout, or any other Pains proceeding from a cold Cause.

XXVII. *The Spirit.* It is a singular Cordial, cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, strengthens Nature, and makes the Body able to withstand Diseases. It is good against Convulsions, and prevails much against Wind, Fainting and Swooning Fits, Vapors, and Distempers of the Womb, for which it is a Specifick. It comforts the Head, Nerves, and Brain, and is so great a Stomack, that there is but few greater. Dose two drams, being dulcified.

XXVIII. *The Distilled Oil.* It is a famous thing for the Head, Nerves, Womb, and Joints; and therefore is good against Vertigo's, Apoplexies, Epilepsies, pain of the Stomach, Convulsions, Fits of the Mother, Palsies, Lameness of the Limbs, and all sorts of Rheumatick pains. In Diseases of the Head and Nerves, as Palsies, it ought to be anointed down the Back-bone, as also upon the parts affected; and is also to be given inwardly in a Glass of Wine, from three drops to twelve or sixteen: drop it first into White Sugar, which mix well, then dissolve it in the Wine, and so let the Patient drink it up. In Vertigo's, Apoplexies, Epilepsies, Convulsions, Stomach Pains, and Mother, it needs only to be given inwardly, Morning and Evening, as directed.

XXIX. *The Potestates or Powers.* They have all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Tinctures, Spirit and Oil, and indeed more subtil and penetrating, piercing like Lightning thro' the Universal Frame; and may be given Morning, Noon, and Night, in some proper Vehicle, from one dram to two or three drams, according to age and strength.

XXX. *The Elixir.* It has the Virtues of Juice, Essence, Tincture, Spirit, Oil and Powers; but much more subtil, and effectual to all the purposes intended: it is singular in the Cure of a Pleurisie beyond most other things. Dose from one to two drams.

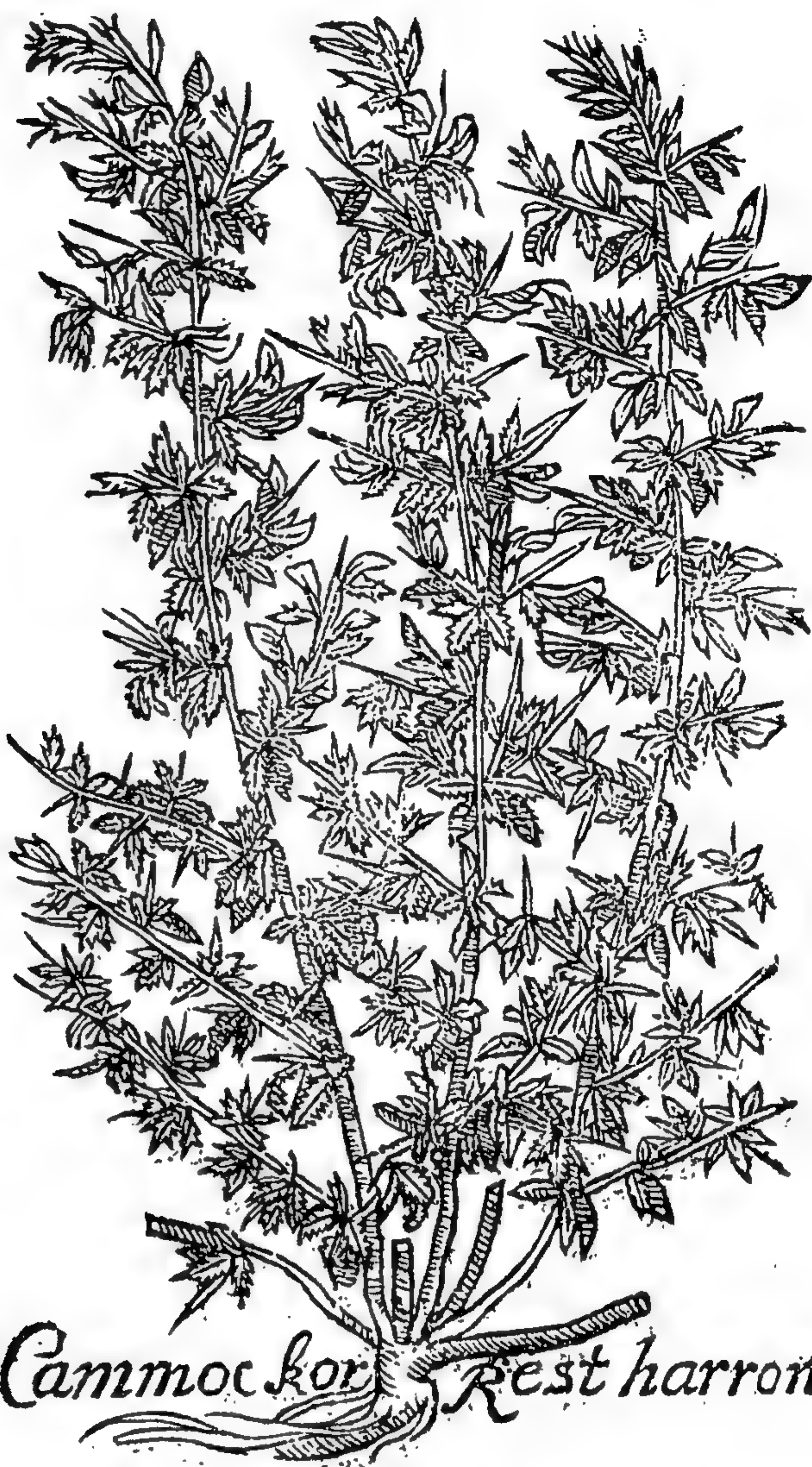
XXXI. *The Fixed Salt.* It is singularly Nephretick, and Antipleuretick; eases Pains in the Reins, opens Obstructions of the Urinary parts, dissolves the Congelation of Blood in the *Pleura*, Womb, and carries off the Seminalities of those Diseases by Urine. Dose half a dram.

## CHAP. CIX.

### Of CAMMOCK, Or REST HARROW.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek by Dioscorides and Piny, *Ανώνις*: by Galen and Theophrastus, *Ονώνις*: In Latin, *Anonis*, and *Ononis*: Also *Aresta Bovis*, *Resta Bovis*, *Remorum Aratri*: because that the Roots of it being very tough, and so deeply and strongly fastned in the Ground, it causes the Oxen which draw the Plough to be as it were at a stand for the first pull, and so stops the Plough Share, that it cannot so readily go on. In English it is called Cammock, or Rest Harrow.

II. *The Kinds.* There are many kinds of it; but those which are only Common with us, are these following five: 1. *Anonis spinosa flore purpureo*, Common Rest Harrow, with purplish flowers. 2. *Anonis spinosa flore albo*, Rest Harrow, with white flowers. 3. *Anonis spinosa lutea minor*, Rest Harrow, with yellow flowers, the lesser. 4. *Anonis non spinosa flore purpureo*, Rest Harrow not thorny, with purple flowers. 5. *Anonis non spinosa lutea major*, Rest Harrow not thorny, with yellow flowers the greater.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first and Common Rest Harrow, which is frequent, as well in Arable as Waste Grounds, and By-lands, has a Root which



is blackish on the out side, and whitish within, very tough and hard to break, whilst it is fresh and green, and as hard and tough as a horn when it is dried, thrusting it self down very deep into the ground, and spreading it self likewise far about, every little piece, though cut off from the Stock, being apt to grow again, if it be left in the ground. From this Root it rises up, with divers tough woody twigs, two or three feet high, set at the Joints without order, with little roundish Leaves, sometimes more than two or three at a place, of a dark green color, without thorns while they are young, but afterwards armed, or furnished with them in several places, the thorns being short but sharp. The Flowers come forth at the top of the Twigs and Branches, whereof it is full, in fashion much like to Pease or Broom-blossoms, but lesser, flatter, and somewhat closer, of a faint purplish color. They being past away, there succeed small Pods or Cods, containing within them small, flat, and round Seed.

IV. The second Rest Harrow differs not from the former in the Root, Stalks, Branches, Thorns, nor in the Leaves, save that these are of a little fresher green color; but the chief difference is in the Flowers, which are very white in some places more than in others; in all other things they are alike.

V. The third, which is the Lesser yellow prickly Rest Harrow with us (for the greater grows not in England) has Thorns or Prickles thereon as the others: But the Plant is lower, and smaller, not rising little above half a foot high, not differing in any other great matter from the last.

VI. The fourth, which is the Purplish Rest Harrow without Prickles, has no other difference in it from the first or Common Cammock, but in this, that it has no Thorns or Prickles upon the Sprigs or Branches, no not in the Autumn, or declining part of the Year, when the other will be full of them. Of this sort there is one also which beareth white Flowers, which makes all the difference.

VII. The fifth and last has a Root which is long, tough, rough, and blackish, spreading much about: from this Root spring forth several woody Twigs, very flexible and tough, branching forth on all sides, covered with a brownish red Bark, set pretty thick with Leaves, which are for the most part three standing together upon a long Footstalk, not much unlike to Trefoil, but somewhat small, long, and narrow, with notches at the ends, much overspread with a strong Scented clamminess, which will stick so fast to the Hands of those which touch them, especially in the heat of the Year, and in hot Countries, that it is difficult to get off again. At Tops of the Branches or Twigs, stand many Pease-blossom-like Flowers, of a fair yellow color, which being past away, there comes forth small and long Cods, with a crooked point at the end of each, in which is contained small flat-tish Seed: of this there is a lesser sort; also another with a more reddish Flower.

VIII. The Places. The first, second, and fourth grow in many places of England, both in Arable Land, and Waste Grounds. The third, Lobel saith he found growing both about London and Bristol; but Parkinson says, he never found it growing naturally. The fifth and last I found in several places of Florida, as in the Southern Provinces of Carolina. It also grows about Narbone and Montpelier in France; as also in Spain and Portugal.

IX. The Times. They all Flower about the beginning or middle of July, and the Seed is ripe in August.

X. The Qualities. Galen says, that the Root of Rest Harrow is hot in the third Degree; it is also drying, but seems not to exceed the second Degree: It is Absterfive, Aperitive, Astringent, Diuretick,

Traumatick, or Vulnerary; Nephritick, Arthritick, and Alterative.

IX. The Specification. It is peculiar to destroy Viscosity or Tartar in the Reins and Urinary parts, to open their Obstructions, and to cleanse them.

XII. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A Decoction in Wine from the Bark of the Root. 2. A Decoction in Vinegar from the same. 3. A Pouder of the said Bark. 4. A Distilled Water of the Roots. 5. A Spirituous Tincture. 6. An Acid Tincture. 7. An Oily Tincture. 8. A Saline Tincture. The Bark of the Root is that in this Plant, which is chiefly used.

#### The Virtues.

XIII. The Decoction in Wine. Take Rest Harrow Roots thin sliced, four pounds: choice Canary a gallon: mix and put it into a Stone Pot, which let be close stoppt, and let that Pot be put into a gentle boiling Balneo for twenty four hours; so will you have a noble and pleasant Medicine to open Obstructions both of Liver and Spleen, as also of the Urinary parts, provoke Urine, and to break and drive forth the Stone, as also Gravel and Sand out of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder: and also cures the Hemorrhoids or Piles.

XIV. The Decoction in Vinegar. Being gargled in the Mouth, it eases the Tooth-ach, more especially when it proceeds from Rheum; it also heals Cankers in Childrens Mouths, and other Running Sores, and Ulcers in the Gums, Mouth, and Throat, if they be three or four times a day gargled, and washt therewith.

XV. The Pouder of the Bark of the Root. Parkinson says, it is good to provoke Urine when it is stoppt, and to break and drive forth the Stone effectually, being taken to one or two drams in generous Wine. Matthiolus says, that he knew divers freed from those Diseases, that used the said Pouder in Wine for many Days together. The said Pouder is also good to help the Hernia Carnosa, or Flethy Rupture, which Flethy Carnosity it consumes by little and little, taking it constantly for some Months together: and this it has done when the Physicians and Chirurgions had given them over as desperate, or no other ways to be cured, but by Cutting, &c. being strewed upon the hard, callous brims or edges of Ulcers; or if the said Pouder be mixed with Honey, or with any proper Balsam, and applied, it consumes the hardness, and causes the Ulcer to heal.

XVI. The Distilled Water of the Roots. To every pound of the Roots sliced, put a quart of Canary: digest forty eight hours warm, then draw off the Water to dryness in a gentle Balneo. It is good for all the purposes aforesaid, and to cleanse the passages of the Urine, not suffering any Tartarous, Viscous or Clammy matter to gather together in those parts, so as to harden, or become a Stone.

XVII. The Spirituous Tincture. It is a very good Stomatick, and admirably strengthens the Bowels, stopping Vomiting, and all sorts of Fluxes thereof, as Diarrhæa's, Dysenteria's, Lienteria's, and the Hepatick Flux: and although it purges, and cleanses the Urinary parts of any Preternatural Matter lodged in them, yet it stops and cures pissing of Blood, and speedily heals any Wound or Ulcer in those parts.

XVIII. The Acid Tincture. It is more Stomatick than the former, and an excellent Styptick; it stops spitting of Blood, and heals Ulcers of the Lungs, if given in a proper Vehicle; and by its Aperitive, Absterfive, and Incisive power, it breaks to pieces,



or dissolves Gritty Stones in the Reins or Bladder. Dose fixty or eighty drops, in Ale, Beer, or Wine.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture.* This is more excellent, if there is any Wound or Ulcer in the Reins or Bladder; for many of those parts being Nervous; this Homogene and Oily Body wonderfully comforts the Parts, gently cleanses them of all Foreign, Tartarous, Viscous, Clammy or Sharp Humors, palliates the Pain, and in some short time heals them. If there be no Wound or Ulcer, but only Obstructions, or a weakness in the Reins and Back, it effectually opens them, smoothly cleanses them, and makes the Patient Piss free and easie, and withal so strengthens the Back, and eases the Pains thereof, as if there had never been any such Weakness, or Disaffection there. Dose twenty drops in a Glasse of Wine.

XX. *The Saline Tincture.* Being bathed upon any parts affected with Pimples, Scurf, Morpew, Dandriff, or other like Preternatural Eruptions of the Skin, it cleanses it, and takes them away. I was informed by a Gentlewoman who had used it for some time, that it had taken away Tawtness, Sunburnings, and Freckles, and cleared the Skin to admiration. Inwardly it is given to one dram in White Wine against Stone, Gravel, Sand, and other Obstructions of the Reins.

XXI. It is reported, that in former times the young Shoots, and tender Stalks, before they become prickly, were pickled up, to be eaten as a Sawce for Meat: and that they were wonderfully commended against a stinking Breath, and to take away the smell of Wine in such who had drunk too much.

on, and at every Joint two such like hoary green Leaves, as those below, but smaller, diversly branched at the Top, having one Flower upon each several long Footstalk, consisting of five Leaves, somewhat broad and round pointed, of a perfect Red, Crimson color, standing out of a hard, long, round husk, ridged and crested in four or five places: After the Flowers are fallen, there come up round hard heads, in which is contained small blackish Seed.

Garden Campions, red, single flowered.



## CHAP. CX.

### CAMPIONS, Garden.

THE Names. They are called in Greek, by Dioscorides and Theophrastus, *λύχνις* (from *λύχνος*, *Lucerna*,) and *ἐλλύχνιον*, *quasi lucernæ funiculum*, for that in former times they used the Leaves of Campions in their Lamps, to burn instead of Weicks: they also called it *ἄθανάτος*, id est, *immortalis*, *quod diutius Venustatem suam retinet*: In Latin, *Lychnis*, *Lychnis Coronaria*, *Lychnis Sativa* & *Rosa Græca*: In English, Campions, and Rose Campions.

II. The Kinds. They are twofold, 1. *λύχνις στεφανοειδής*, *Lychnis Coronaria*, *Lychnis Sativa vel Hortensis*, Garden Campions, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Lychnis Sylvestris*, Wild Campions, of which in the next Chapter. The Garden Kind, are, 1. Single. 2. Double. The Single are, *Lychnis coronaria rubra simplex*, The single red Rose Campion. 2. *Lychnis coronaria alba simplex*, The single white Rose Campion. 3. *Lychnis coronaria albescent, sive incarnato maculata*, & *non maculata simplex*, The blush Rose Campion, spotted and not spotted. The Double, 4. *Lychnis coronaria rubra Multiplex*, The Double red Rose Campion.

III. The Descriptions. The Single red Rose Campion, has a Root small, long, and woody, with many fibres annexed unto it, and oft times shoots forth anew, and sometimes also dies and perishes. On the Top of this Root, there are divers thick, hoary, or woolly, long, green Leaves, abiding green all the Winter; From among which in the end of the Spring, or beginning of Summer, there shoots forth two or three hard, round, woolly Stalks, with some Joints there-

Campions Gard. single flowered White.





IV. The second Single white Campion, is in all things as Roots, Leaves, Stalks, and Flowers, like to the former, saving only the color of the Flowers, that being of a Red Crimson color, this of a pure White.

V. The third sort of Single Campions are like unto the former also, these other sorts having no other difference to distinguish them by, but the colors of the Flowers, which are of a pale or bleak whitish blush color, chiefly about the brims or edges of the Leaves, or as if a very little Red was mixed with a great deal of White, the middle of the Flower being more White; the one being spotted all over the Flower, with small spots and streaks, the other not having any spot at all.

*Campions Gard double flowered.*



VI. The fourth, or Double red Rose Campion, is in all respects like unto the Single red Rose Campion, excepting that this bears Double Flowers, consisting of two or three Rows or Courses of Leaves at most, not so large as the Single. The whole Plant is more tender, and therefore more apt to die or perish than the Single is.

VII. The Places. They are only nurs'd up with us in Gardens: both Single and Double are only by Nature not Art: and the Double ones have been found so Wild: for I could never observe that any Art or Industry of Man could ever so alter the properties of Nature, tho' by never so many repetitions of Transplantations, and Observation of the Phases of the Moon; as to make any Flower Single by Nature, to become Double, tho' many Men have affirmed the same; and of this Opinion was Parkinson, who says, that whatsoever has been found Wild to be Double, Nature it self, and not Art, so produced it, and so was brought into Gardens, where they are much encreased by flipping, and parting the Root, because they give no Seed.

VIII. The Times. They do all of them flower in the Summer Months, through May, June and July, to the end of August.

IX. The Qualities. The Seed, which is chiefly used, is hot and dry in the second Degree. It is Vulnerary, Alterative, and Alexipharmick.

X. The Specification. It is peculiar against the Poison of Scorpions.

XI. The Preparations. There are but few Preparations of this Plant; the chief things taken from it are the Leaf, and the Seed: of which there are used, 1. The Green Leaf. 2. The Pouder of the Seed. 3. The Spirituous Tincture. 4. The Acid Tincture.

#### The Virtues.

XII. The Green Leaves. Being applied whole, or beaten in a Mortar into a Cataplasma, with a little Hogs Lard and Turpentine, and applied to any old or foul Ulcers in the Legs, Arms, or other parts; it does cleanse and heal them.

XIII. The Pouder of the Seed. Galen affirms it to be hot and dry in the second or third Degree. And Dioscorides says, that being drunk in Wine, it helps those who are stung by a Scorpion; and so it is also thought to be good against the malignity of the Plague or Pestilence. Dose one dram at a time, Morning and Evening.

XIV. The Spirituous Tincture. It has the former Virtues, but more powerful against the Plague or Pestilence, the Spotted Fever, bitings of Serpents, Mad Dogs, or other Venomous Creatures. Dose half a spoonful, or a spoonful, in a Glass of Wine, Morning and Evening.

XV. The Acid Tincture. It has the Virtues of the former, is more Stomack, and more powerfully resists the Malignity or Poison of the Plague, it destroying that, and the Fever together. Dose sixty or eighty drops, or more, in generous Canary.

## CHAP. CXI.

### Of CAMPIONS Wild.

I. THE Names. They are called in Greek *Λυχνίς* *ὄνη* & *ἀγρία*: In Latin, *Lychnis Sylvestris*: and in English, Wild Campions.

II. The Kinds. They are manifold, as, 1. Single. 2. Double. The Single are, 1. *Lychnis Sylvestris flore albo simplex*, Wild Campions with a white Flower. 2. *Lychnis Sylvestris flore rubro simplex*, Wild Campions with a red Flower. 3. *Lychnis Sylvestris flore rubro minor simplex*, The lesser red Campion with a red Flower. 4. *Lychnis Sylvestris vel Segetum Vaccaria rubra dicta*, Corn Campion. 5. *Lychnis Marina alba & rubra*, The Sea Campion white and red. 6. *Lychnis arvensis minor Anglica*, The English small Wild Campion with a white Flower. 7. *Lychnis plumaria Sylvestris simplex*, *Armoraria pratensis*, The feathered Wild Campion simple.

III. The Double Wild Campions, are, 1. *Lychnis plumaria Sylvestris multiplex*, *Armoraria pratensis flore pleno*, The feathered Wild Campion Double. 2. *Lychnis agrestis multiflora*, of Lobel; *Ocymoides flore pleno*, of Camerarius; *Lychnis Sylvestris purpurea multiplex*, of Gerard: *flore pleno rubro*, of Parkinson, Red Batchelors Buttons. 3. *Lychnis Sylvestris multiflora*, by Pena and Lobel; *Ocymastrum*, of Tabernmontanus; *Lychnis Sylvestris alba multiplex*, by Gerard; *flore albo pleno*, by Parkinson; White Batchelors Buttons. 4. *Lychnis agrestis abortivum multiplici flore viridi*, Batchelors Buttons with green Flowers.

IV. The



IV. The Descriptions. The first of the Single Wild Campions has a Root white and long, spreading forth divers Branches in the ground, and perishing after Seed time: from whence come forth many long and somewhat broad, dark, green Leaves, lying upon the ground, with several Ribs therein, not much unlike to Rib-wort Plantane, but somewhat hairy, broader, but not so long. The Stalks are hairy, and rise up in the midst of them, three or four feet high, and sometimes more, with several large white Joints at several places thereon, and two such like Leaves thereat up to the Top. From these hairy Stalks come forth divers Branches also at their various Joints, all which bear on various Footstalks white Flowers at their several Tops, consisting of five broad pointed Leaves, every one cut in on the end unto the middle, making them to look like two apiece: they smell something sweet, and each of them stand in a large, green, striped, hairy Husk or Case, large and round below next to the Footstalk. The Seed is small and greyish in the hard heads, which come up afterwards.



Campions Wild Single flower.

V. The second Single Wild Campion, has a Root like the former, which perishes also after Seed-time. This Red Campion grows after the same manner as the former; but its Leaves are not so perfectly ribbed, are something shorter, rounder, and more soft or wooly in handling. The Flowers are of the same form and bigness, in some of a pale, in others of a bright reddish color, cut in at the ends more finely, which makes the cut or jagged Leaves seem to be more in number than the other. The Seed is like the former, small and greyish.

VI. The third Single Red Wild Campion, which is the lesser, has a Root like the former, which perishes after Seed-time, as they do: This whole Plant is very like the foregoing; but smaller and lower; yet very much branched, and replenished with darker green Leaves. The Flowers are reddish: but smaller, and not so much cut or dented in at the ends. The Husks and Seeds are also like the former, but every ways lesser.



Corn Campions

English-Sea-Campion.



VII. The fourth, or Corn Campion of the Gardens, has a Root, long, white, and woody, with several Branches springing from it, (and is but an Annual Plant) from which rises up for the most part but one round Stalk, spreading it self out every way into several Branches, having two long Leaves set opposite at the Joints, being broad at the bottom, and encompassing the Stalk and Branches, not much unlike to Through-wax, ending in a small point, of a pale green color. At the Tops of the several Branches, stand divers Flowers, consisting of four Leaves a piece,



piece, of a pale red color ; which being past away, come forth Skinny Husks, containing small, round, hard, black Seed. This Plant for the beauty of its Flowers, is brought into, and nursed up in our Gardens.

VIII. The fifth, or Sea Campion White. It has a long slender Root, which abides many Years, from whence springs up several weak, flexible Branches, lying all about upon the ground, (which Branches are much divided into many other smaller ones) two or three Feet long ; thick set with small, long, fat, and whitish green Leaves. At the top of every Branch stands one short, thick, whitish green Husk, parted or cut in at top ; out of which springs forth a small long neck'd white Flower, not much unlike to that of the spatling Poppy, and as white, composed of five small, round pointed Leaves, with some blackish threads in the middle : which being passed away, there comes forth Husks like those of the other Wild Campions, containing within them small brown Seed.

IX. The Red flower'd Sea Campion differs not from the former, neither in its Root, Stalks, Branches, Leaves, Flowers, Husks, nor Seed, nor yet in the manner of growing, excepting only in the color of the Flower, this being of a fine pleasant Red, whereas the former is White : so that some have thought it to be one and the same Species, Nature only sporting it self in the variety or color of the Flower : this Plant Herborists call in Latin, *Lychnis Marina flore rubello*, Red flower'd Sea Campion.

X. The sixth, or English small white Field Campion, has a Root which is small and white, and perishes every Year ; from whence spring forth Leaves, which are small and hairy, not much unlike to the small Mouse Ear : and from among which springs forth a slender small Stalk, sometimes but one, which is single of it self ; and sometimes many, not exceeding a Foot high. At every Joint two Leaves are set together, smaller than those below, and spotted with white spots ; from the bosom whereof, viz. between them and the Stalk, come forth two other Leaves, much smaller than they, without any sensible Taste. The Flowers are small and white, like unto the other Wild Campions. After which come small, long Heads, with small greyish Seed in them.

XI. The seventh, or Single Feathered Wild Campion has a Root very fibrous, or full of small strings, from whence springs forth a Stalk ; as also Leaves, somewhat like the ordinary White Wild Campion, but not so large, or rather resembling the Leaves of Sweet Williams, but that they grow not so close, nor so many together. The Stalks have smaller Leaves at the Joints, than those below, and branched at the Top ; on which several Tops grow many pale, but bright red Flowers, jagged or cut in on the edges, like the Feathered Pink, for which thing sake, some have taken it to be a kind, and some for a kind of Wild William ; but notwithstanding all this, it is but a Wild Campion, as may easily be observed from several other parts of the Plant. It has a Husk which bears the Flower, like the Campions, and also round greyish Seed.

### Double Wild Campions.

XII. The first of these (in our Account) is the Double Feathered Wild Campion, which in its Roots, Stalks, Branches, Leaves, Flowers, Husks, and Seed, is like unto the Single Feathered Wild Campion ; excepting only in two things, 1. That the Flowers are very Double. 2. That the whole Plant in its magnitude and manner of growing is smaller and lower.

### White Batchelars Buttons.



XIII. The second, or Red Batchelors Buttons has a thick large Root, white and long, with many Branches and Fibres springing from it ; from whence come up many rough broad Leaves, somewhat woolly and hoary ; among which rise up long soft and hairy Stalks, branched into many Arms, two or three Feet high, or more, set with the like Leaves, but less : The Leaves grow at the Joints, two opposite one to another, up to the top ; and from these Joints other Branches spring forth, at top of every one of which Flowers grow compacted of a multitude of Leaves, and of a red color. These Flowers are very double, composed of a great many red Leaves, very thickly packt or crowd together, and commonly set in a short or broken Husk, whereby the Flowers seem to stand on one side ; but are not jagged, or cut in on the tops, as the Flowers of other Campions are, but altogether smooth. It is like in all its parts to the first Single Wild Campion as to its manner of growing, excepting that it is every ways less, and its Flowers are Red, and very Double.

XIV. The third, or White Batchelors Buttons : As the Leaves of the former Red Buttons were like unto the Leaves of the second Single Kind, with Red Flowers ; so the Leaves of this are like unto the Leaves of the first Single White Knid, and the whole Plant differs nothing from it, but in the Doubleness of the Flowers ; nor very little from the Red Batchelors Buttons, but in the color of the same, these being wholly White ; and so very Double, that by the multiplicity of Leaves being crowd together, they break the Husk in which the Flowers stand, as the other does, so that there is not one Flower in a great many which is whole. Gerard says, That the similitude which these Flowers (both of Red and White) have to the jagged Cloth Buttons, formerly worn in this Kingdom, gave occasion to our Ladies, and other Florists of those times, to give them the names which now they bear.

XV. The



XV. *The fourth, or Green Batchelors Buttons, have no difference from the two former in the Roots, Stalks, Branches, Leaves nor Seed, saving only in the Flowers, which in this are of a Greenish color; and sometimes through the midst of them they send up Stalks, bearing also Tufts of the like Double Flowers.*

XVI. *The Places.* Of these, the three first Single sorts grow for the most part in our Countrey Fields, by Hedge and Ditch sides in many parts of England. The fourth grows in many Corn Fields in Germany, but with us is nourisht up in Gardens. The fifth, or *White and Red Sea Campions* grow by Hurst Castle near the Isle of Wight, and in the said Isle in many places by the Sea side: They grow also by the Sea side in Lancashire at a place called *Lytham*, five Miles from *Wigan*, in which place grows that with Red Flowers also. *Johnson* found it also growing in great plenty in the Marsh Grounds in *Thanet*, which lye directly opposite to the Town of *Sandwich*: The Red has been found about a Mile from *Southampton*, and both of them chiefly in the Southern parts of England, on the moist Stony Banks by the Sea side. The sixth grows in several grounds by *Colchester*, and in a Field called the *Mill-field*, behind the House of *Sir Thomas Lucy's* near *Colchester*. The seventh is only nourished up in Gardens.

XVII. *Of the Double Wild Campions, the first grows here only in Gardens. The second and third grow Wild in several places, but with us are chiefly nurfed up in Gardens, for the beauty of their Flowers sake. The fourth also grows in Gardens.*

XVIII. *The Times.* They all Flower in the Summer Months of *June, July* and *August*, some earlier than others, some later, and their Seed is ripe soon after.

XIX. *The Qualities.* They are all of them hot and dry in the second Degree: Astringent and Alterative; and much of the nature of the Garden Kinds.

XX. *The Specification.* They have been found good to stop the Fluxions of Blood and Humors.

XXI. *The Preparations.* The same Preparations may be made of them which we have said to be made of the Garden Kinds in the former Chapter.

#### *The Virtues.*

XXII. Authors have said little of their Virtues, nor have we much to say of them by Experience; the general use is for the beauty of the Garden, the Flowers being very beautiful in their Seasons. *Parkinson* says, that being Drying and Astringent, the several Preparations of them may be profitably applied to stay the Fluxes of Blood and Humors in any part, and thereby also conduce to the healing of old and moist Running Sores and Ulcers.

XXIII. *Gerard* says, the Seed of *Wild Campions* being given to two drams (in powder) and so drunk, that it purges Choler by Stool, and is good for them that are Bitten or Stung by any Venomous Creature.

## CHAP. CXII.

### OF CATCH-FLIE.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek by *Thalium*, ἡχοῦλλον: by others *λύχνις ἀγρία γλοιώδης*: In Latin, *Lychnis Sylvestris Viscosa*, *Muscipula* (quia muscas capiunt) *Viscaria*, *Silene Theo-*

*phrastris*, *Armerius flos Quartus Dodonei*, *Ben rubrum Monspeliensium*: In English, *Catch-flie*, and *Lime-wort*: also by *Gerard*, *Wild Williams*.

II. *The Kinds.* *Parkinson* will have this Plant to be of the Kinds of *Wild Lychnis*, or *Wild Campion*; but *Gerard* says, they are of the Stock of *Wild Pinks* and *Gilliflowers*, and so calls them also with the other names *Wild Williams*. Those which we shall handle in this Work are such as are usual in England, viz. 1. *Muscipula Lobelij*, *Lychnis Sylvestris prima Clusij*, sive *Ben-rubrum Monspeliensium*, The French *Catch-flie*. 2. *Lychnis Sylvestris latifolia Clusij*, *Muscipula Cretica Auriculae Ursifacie*, *Catch-flie* of *Candia*. 3. *Muscipula sive Viscaria Lobelij*, *Viscago Camerarij*, *Lychnis Sylvestris tertia Clusij*, *Gerard's first Catch-flie*, or *Lime-wort*. 4. *Muscipula angustifolia*, *Lychnis Sylvestris quarta Clusij*, *Narrow-leav'd*, or *German Catch-flie*.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first has a small Root, somewhat Fibrous, which perishes after it has given Seed, and afterwards rises again of its own Seed, if it is suffered to shed it self. If it sheds it self, it springs up in the latter end of the Year for the most part, or else in the Spring, with five or six small Leaves, very like unto the Leaves of *Pinks*, and of the same Willow, or whitish green color, but a little broader and shorter. When it begins to shoot up for Flower, it bears smaller Leaves on the Clammy or Viscous Stalks, which Viscosity is strong enough to hold any small thing or flie which lights on it. These Leaves are broad at bottom, compassing the Stalks and Branches, being set two at a Joint, one against another. The tops of the Stalks are diversly branched into several parts, every Branch having divers small red Flowers, not notched, but smooth, standing out of small, long, round, strict Husks, which after the Flowers are past, contain small, greyish Seed. This *Parkinson* accounts of the Species of *Campions*, being a pretty thing to furnish and deck out a Garden.



IV. Gerard will have it to be a kind of Sweet Williams, and says, it has many broad Leaves like the Sweet Williams, but shorter, set upon a stiff and brittle Stalk, from the bosom of which Leaves spring forth smaller Branches, clothed with the like Leaves, but much less: the Flowers grow at top of the Stalks, many together, Tust fashion, of a bright red color. The whole Plant is possessed of a Viscousness, or Clammyness, like the other Kinds, but in a less proportion.



*Candia*  
or  
*Clusius* } *Catch Fly.*

V. The second has a Root small and fibrous, from whence come forth many Leaves lying upon the ground, which are thick, fat, and hoary, white, somewhat like to the Leaves of the yellow Auriculi Urli, Bears Ears, or French Cowslips, smooth on the edges, and a little pointed, which do so abide the first Year of the springing: the Stalk rises up the next Year to the height of three or four Feet, with two Leaves at each Joint, and spreading on both sides into Branches from the ground, which are Viscous, Glutinous and Clammy, causing every light or small thing to cleave thereto, as Flies, Pismires, Down, Straws, &c. at the tops whereof, and at the Joints next below them come forth many Flowers together, standing in Clusters, but very small, whose small Husks contain every one of them a small greenish yellow Flower, parted in two at the broad end: the Seed is small and blackish in the Husks, and generally Sows it self.

VI. The third, which is Gerard's first, and by him called Viscaria or Lime-wort, and which he will have to be of the Stock and Kindred of Wild Gilliflowers, (notwithstanding Clusius has joined it with the Wild Campions, and Lobel among the Sweet Williams) has a Root which is large, with many Fibres, from whence spring many Leaves like those of the Crow-flower, or Wild Sweet William, among which rise up many reddish Stalks, with Knees or Joints at certain Spaces, set with Leaves by couples one against another, at the Top of which come forth fine Red flowers. They being past, there comes in place small blackish Seed. The whole Plant, as well Leaves and Stalks as Flowers, are in most places overspread with a very thick and viscous or clammy matter, like to Bird-lime, which if you touch or take on your Fingers, the viscousness is such, that your Fingers will stick and cleave together, as if you had touched Bird-lime. If Flies also do light upon it, they will be so intangled therewith, that they cannot

fly away, so that in some hot Days you may see many Flies caught thereby, from whence came the names, Catch-fly or Lime-wort.

VII. The fourth, or Narrow-leav'd Catch-fly, has a Root thick and black, with many Fibres, putting up new Shoots and Stalks after the first Year, and not dying every Year, as the two last described: From this comes forth one Stalk a foot, or more, high, of a green, purplish color: But Parkinson says, that the Root sends forth divers long and narrow dark green Leaves, lying upon the ground, pointed at the ends, somewhat rough or rugged, and not fully smooth, as many of the other sorts are; and from among these Leaves, there springs up one Stalk, and sometimes two or three, brown of color, and two or three feet high, having two small Leaves set at their Joints, but much separate one from another, and which will be clammy like the other in the hot Summer time: From the middle to the top of the Stalk grow little Branches, which upon pretty long Footstalks bear Flowers, every Stalk one Flower by itself, consisting of five little round Leaves, yet divided in the middle at the tops. These Flowers are of a lively deep red color, almost like the Single Red Rose Campion, but with a paler red Circle at bottom, set in green Husks, smaller at bottom and larger at head, in which (after the Flowers are past) there grows small Seed, and of a brownish color.

VIII. The Places. These Plants, says Gerard, grow wild in the West of England, among Corn: But they are also nursed up in Gardens, merely for pleasure sake, more than for any Virtues they are hitherto known to possess.

IX. The Times. They flourish and flower in the Summer Months; and they last not until near the Winter Season; and their Seed ripens in the mean while.

X. As to their Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, they may be refer'd, says Parkinson, to those of the other Wild Campions, whereunto they are likest in face, and outward appearance. But Gerard says, the Virtues of these Wild Williams are to be referred to the Wild Pinks and Gilliflowers.

## C H A P. CXIII.

### OF CATS-TAIL.

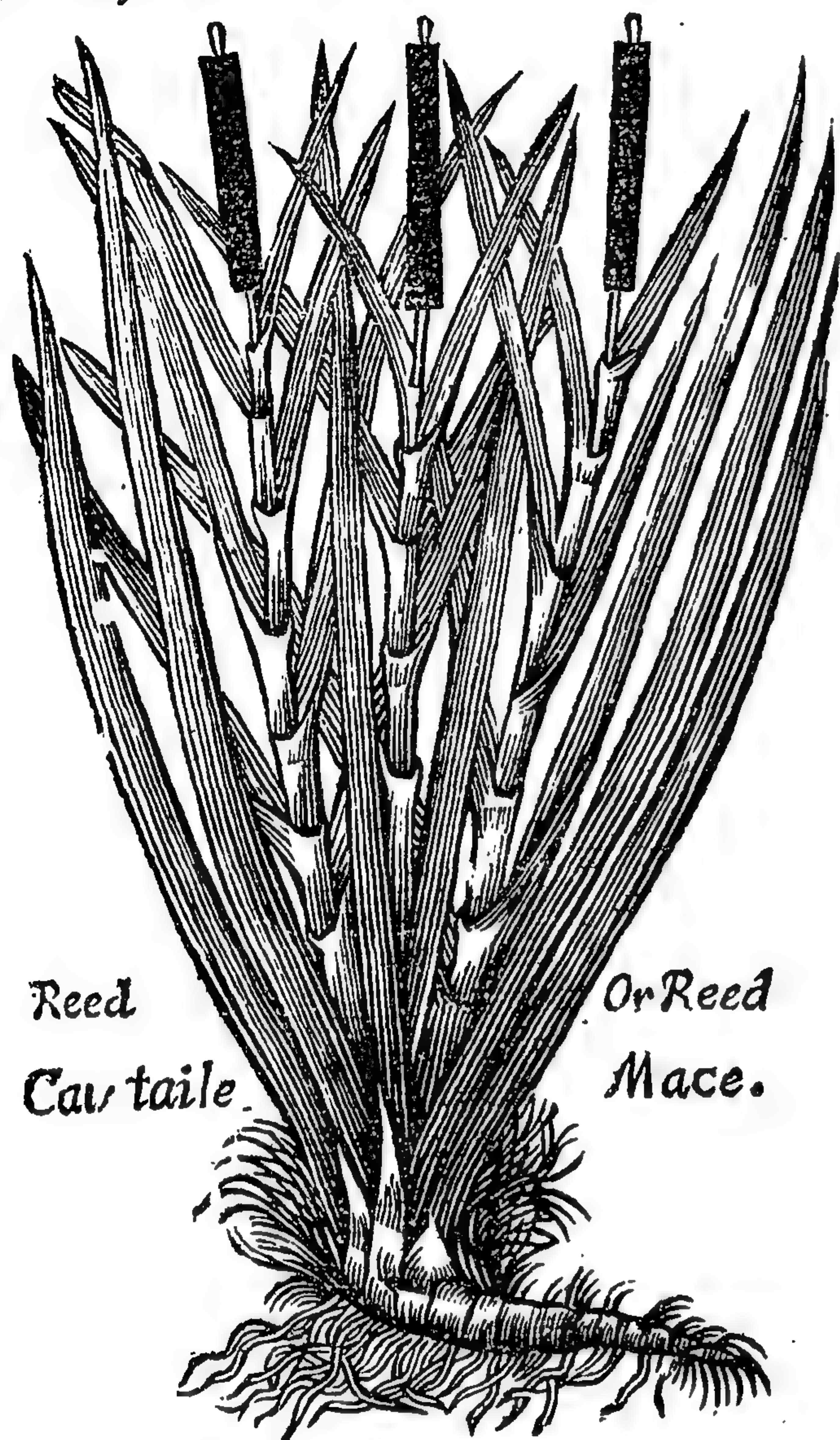
I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, Τύφη: In Latin, Typha, and by some Cestrum Morionis, as Dodonæus saith; by some Typha aquatica, or Palustris, to put a difference between it, and that kind of Typha which is among Corn, called Typha Cerealis: and in English it is called Cats-tail, from its soft downiness, and Reed Mace.

II. The Kinds. Authors say it is a mean between the Rushes and the Reeds; and is threefold, 1. Typha maxima, The greater, or greatest Cats-tail. 2. Typha minor, The lesser Cats-tail. 3. Typha minima, The least Cats-tail.

III. The Descriptions. The first of these has a Root which is white, somewhat thick, hard, knobby, jointed, spreading much in the Water, full of many long Fibres, and sweet in Taste, if it is chewed; of good use to burn, where there is plenty of it: From this Root shoots forth several very long, soft and narrow Leaves, pointed at the Ends, in a manner three square, because the middle on the back side is great, and sticks much out. Among which Leaves rise up divers smooth, round, and taper Stalks, stuffed

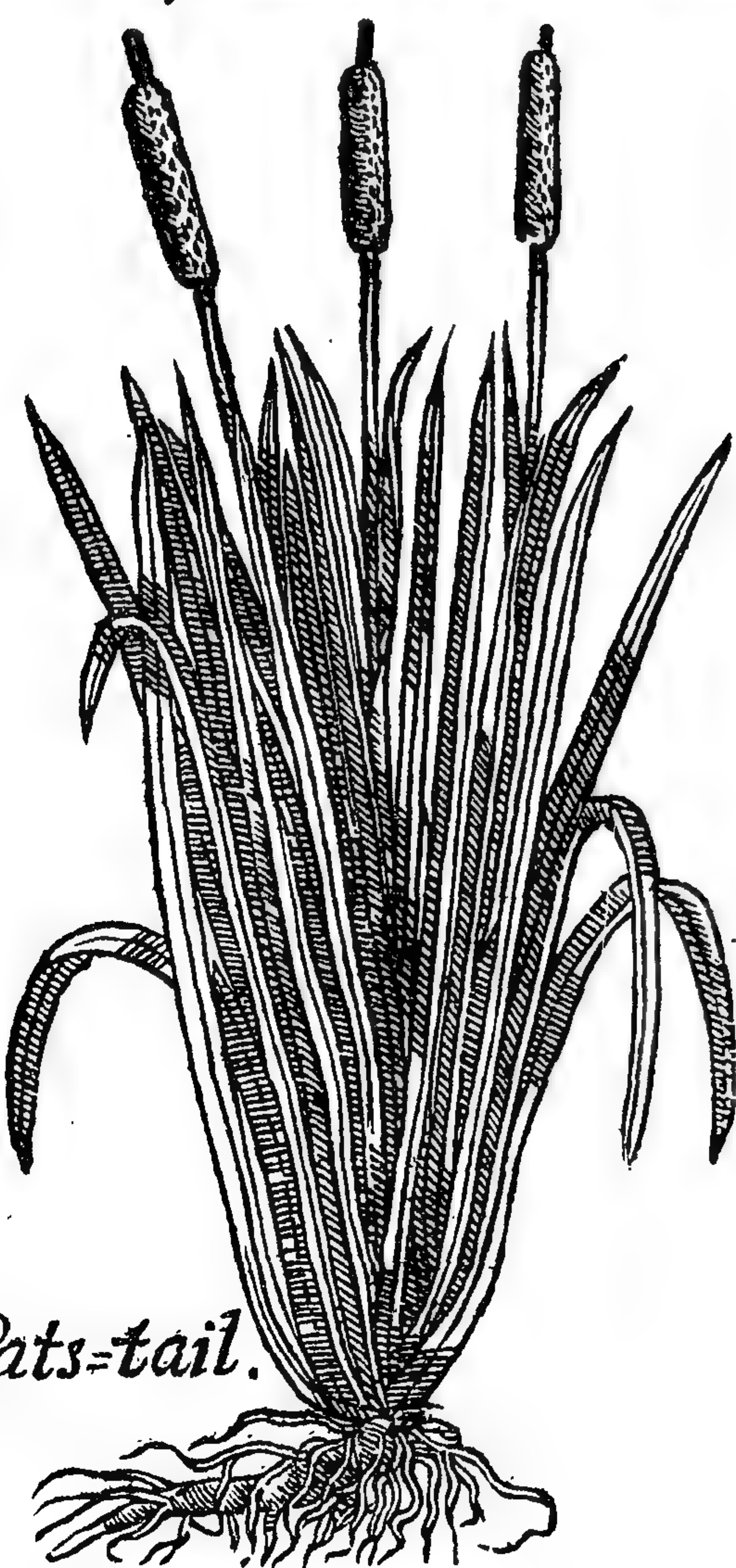


fed with a white Pith, and not hollow, near a Man's height, with Joints and Leaves on them, from the lower part upwards a good way, but bare and naked from thence to the top, where they have small, long, and round heads, shewing forth at first some yellowish Flowers, which being past, the Torch-head or Spike grows greater, and consists wholly of a Downy substance, of a blackish brown, and sometimes of a reddish brown color on the outside, and whitish within; somewhat solid or weighty, which yet is in time blown away with the Wind.



Reed

Cav. taile.

Or Reed  
Mace.


Cats-tail.

IV. The second differs nothing from the former, but in this, that it grows not so high, nor great, the heads being also less than them of the former.

V. The third differs not from the second, but in being smaller than it, in both Leaf and Stalk, which are more hard and rough; and in the head or top, which in some places bears a smaller spike above, the lower being greater, with a small distance between them, and a small Leaf at bottom of it.

VI. The Places. They grow in Pools and standing Waters, and sometimes in running Streams, as also in the middle of watry Ditches or Ponds, and by their Banks and Sides in many places of this Kingdom. Gerard says, he found the smaller sort growing in Ditches and Marshy Grounds in the Isle of Shepey, going from Sherland-House to Fever-sham. I have also found them growing in many places in the Fens, and in Moist and Standing Waters in Fenny Grounds in Cambridge-shire, and the Isle of Ely. And in the South part of Carolina, at the head of Stono River, in the Marshes near the New Cut leading into Wad-wadmalow River, which are overflowed with every Tide, I have found them growing plentifully.

VII. The Times. They flower in June and July, and their Heads, Torches or Maces, are ripe in August; but the Down hardly flies away till the end of August, or Month of September.

VIII. The Qualities. They are cold and dry in the first Degree: Astringent, and very Styptick, Alterative, and Analeptick.

IX. The Specification. The Down is a Specifick to stop the bleeding of External Wounds.

X. The Preparations. You may have, 1. The Down. 2. A Pouder of it. 3. A Cataplasm.

#### The Virtues.

XI. The Down it self. Applied dry to bleeding Wounds, it presently stops their bleeding: applied to running ulcerated Kibed Heels, it quickly cures them: so also used to moist Sores, and running Ulcers, it dries almost to a Miracle, incarnates and heals. In the Fen Countries it is sometimes used to make Beds of, for poor People to lye on. And mixed with Butter, as a Bait for Rats and Mice, it kills them by choaking them.

XII. The Pouder of the Down. Matthiolus says, it is good to help the burstenness or Ruptures of Children, wherein the Intestines fall down into the Cods. This others contest against, as being dangerous to be taken inwardly, as being rather fit to strangle than help them, because it choaks Rats and Mice. But this latter opinion I think to be an Error, for as it is used to choak and kill Rats and Mice, it is used Whole, and not in the Pouder, whereas, if it is reduced to a very subtil Pouder, as Matthiolus orders it, it can no ways be able to effect any such thing. This Pouder may be given, says Gerard, mixed with Pouder of Betony, Roots of Gladiol, and Leaves of Horsetongue. This is to be mixed with the Yolk of an Egg, and so eaten; it is (says he) a most perfect Remedy against Ruptures in Children, and must be Administred every Day fasting, for thirty Days together, one dram at a time: it not only helps Children and Striplings, but grown Men also, if in time of their Cure they use convenient Ligatures or Trussings, and fit proper Emplasters upon the grieved place, according to Art; thus be. For my part I have had no Experience hereof, and therefore can say but little to it, having, I confess, not much Faith in the Prescription, yet think it not of such a dangerous consequence, as some would have it; nor have I any great opinion of any Internals, given for this kind of Rupture, for that those Medicaments passing through the Intestines, can never come actually to the part where the Wound is, and so can do little in order to the Cure.

XIII. The



XIII. The Cataplasim. Made into a Cataplasim with Hogs Lard, it is said to heal Burnings and Scaldings with Fire or Water.

XIV. The Leaves are usually kept to make a fine sort of Mats of, and other like purposes.

## CHAP. CXIV.

### Of CARROTS, Garden.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, Σταφυλίνιον, & σταφυλίνιον ἡμῶν : In Latin, *Staphylinus*, *Staphylinus Hortensis*, and *Pastinaca tenuifolia Hortensis* : In English, Carrot, and Garden Carrot.

II. The Kinds. Carrots are either Garden or Wild. The Garden, are, 1. *Pastinaca tenuifolia sativa lutea*, Yellow Garden Carrots. 2. *Pastinaca tenuifolia altera sativa atro-rubens*, Red Garden Carrots.



III. The Description. The Yellow Carrot has a large long Root, great or thick, and yellow, big above, and small pointed below, without any Fangs or Twines, of a pleasant sweet Taste, and therefore generally spent for Food. From this Root spring forth several long Leaves, and well spread, made up of many thin, cut, deep, green Leaves, divided into many parts : among which rises up a round Stalk, a yard, or more, high, bearing large Tufts of Umbles of white Flowers, which croud close together, and spread not much, but turn into small whitish rough hairy Seed, sticking one to another.

IV. The Red Carrot has a Root round and long, thick above and small below, running to a point as the other, and differs from it only in the color, which

is wholly red quite throughout : From this Root rise many winged Leaves, much cut and divided into many other Leaves ; and those cut again, and divided into many parts, of a deep green color like the former ; some whereof in Autumn will turn to be of a fine Red or Purple ; ( the beauty of which makes several Persons many times to gather the Leaves, to stick them in their Hats, or Heads, or Bosoms, or pin them on their Sleeves instead of Feathers ) from among which Leaves rises up a Stalk, bearing many Leaves likewise upon it, but not so high as the Parsnip, being about a yard high, bearing many Tufts or Umbles of white Flowers, which turn into small rough Seed, seeming as if it were hairy, and smelling gratefully enough, if rubbed between the Fingers. In a word, the whole Plant differs very little from the former, except in the redness of the Root.

V. Now here is to be noted, 1. That the Yellow Carrot is of two sorts, viz. The long and the short. One of the long sorts is of a pale yellow, and this has the greatest and longest Root, and likewise the greatest head of Green : this for the most part is the worst sort of Carrot, not being so sweet and firm as the other. The other long sort is of a deep Gold yellow color, having a smaller head of Green Leaves upon it, and this is always the best and sweetest. Parkinson says, that yellow Carrots, by sometimes sowing themselves, do oftentimes make their Roots become White. The short Roots are also divided into pale and deep yellow, or Golden color. 2. That the red Carrots, besides those which are red quite throughout, there is another, whose Root is red without for a pretty way inwards, but the middle is yellow.

VI. The Places. They are only Sown in Gardens, or other manured Fields, chosen and fitted out for that purpose, and delight to grow in a Sandy and light ground, that their Roots may the more easily pierce deep downwards, which in a stiff clay ground they cannot so well do.

VII. The Times. They are to be sown in March and April, the first year they only strike down their Root ; and the year following they bring forth their Flower and Seed. In Carolina I saw a Carrot above four years old, which brought forth its ripe Seed in the fifth year : The reason thereof I conceive to be, because the Master of the House cut off every year its green Tops, that it might not Seed, whereby the Root grew very great, as also the green head the fifth year, which was four or five times as big as any ordinary Carrot head : This head he let stand for Seed, and it produced him an incredible quantity thereof, very fair, and nearly twice as large as ordinary Carrot Seed.

IX. The Qualities. The Seed is hot and dry in the first Degree, Aperitive, Discussive, Diuretick, Carminative, Stomack, Nephritick, Hysterick, and Alterative : The Roots are Sweet, Flatulent, Analeptick, and Spermatogenetick.

IX. As to their Specification, Preparations and Virtues, they are the same with those of the Wild Carrot, treated of in the next Chapter, to which we refer you ; but with this note, that these Garden Kinds are nothing near so strong and powerful as those of the Wild Kinds, the Seeds of both being chiefly used in Medicine : As for the Roots, the Garden Kind a thousand fold exceed the Wild for Food, not only for the pleasure of Eating them, but also for their Analeptick or Nourishing faculty.



## CHAP. CXV.

### Of CARROTS, Wild.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek Σταφυλινός : In Latin, *Pastinaca tenuifolia Sylvestris*, by Matthiolus, and others; *Pastinaca Eratica*, by Fuchsius, Cordus, and Tabermontanus: *Staphylinus Sylvestris*, by Tragus and Cesalpinus: *Daucus agrestis*, by Galen, in libro de Alimentis, (and yet truly it is no *Daucus*: ) *Daucus Vulgaris & Officinarum*, by Lobel and Clusius: and in English, *Wild Carrot*, and *Birds-nest*.

**II. The Kinds.** We shall only describe two Kinds, viz. 1. *Pastinaca tenuifolia Sylvestris Anglica*, The English Wild Carrot. 2. *Pastinaca tenuifolia Sylvestris Germanica*, The German Wild Carrot.



**III. The Descriptions.** The first of these has a Root, small, long, and hard, and therefore unfit for meat, being somewhat sharp and strong: from this Root rise up Leaves, in a manner altogether like the Garden kinds, but that they are somewhat whiter and rougher, or more hairy, and so are the Stalks likewise, which bear large spiked tufts of white Flowers, with a deep purple spot in the middle, part being hollow and low, the outward Stalks rising higher, all which are so crowded or contracted together, as makes the whole Umble shew, when the Seed is ripe, like unto a Birds Nest, for which reason it has been called by some Birds Nest, not much unlike to the Flowers of the *Gingidium verum*.

**IV. The German Wild Carrot** has a white Root, which is often a Foot long, sometimes single, and sometimes divided into two or three parts, not much unlike in Taste and Smell to Parsley Roots, but hotter in the Mouth for a long time. From this Root rises up a Stalk half a yard high, as thick as ones little Finger at the bottom, being something round, but plainly crested or cornered, very hairy, and full of joints, at which come forth large crested Branches of winged Leaves, encompassing the Stalk at bottom, a

foot in length, and divided into several Leaves, and they again into other smaller parts, very rough and hairy also, and of a yellowish green color, from between which Leaves and Stalks at the Joints, come forth other crested Stalks, and the like Leaves at their Joints, but lesser, which do very much resemble our Garden Carrot Leaves, but that they are larger and soft, if one does handle them hard, but rough on the back and edge, being gently touched. From every one almost of these Joints, both of the Stalk and Branches, arises a certain long husk, consisting of six small long Leaves, close set together, which when it opens, shews forth a small Tuft, or close Umble of white Flowers, and sometimes yellowish, and a little sweet; after which follows a roundish Seed, two always joined together, and very prickly on the back side, the inner side being flat, and more yellow than Carrot Seed, otherwise much like to it.

**V. The Places.** The first grows plentifully in England by the field sides, and in untilled places, almost every where; the other grows in like places in Germany, but with us is sometimes nursed up in Gardens, where it grows very well.

**VI. The Times.** They flourish and flower in June and July, and the Seed is ripe in August.

**VII. The Qualities.** The Seed and Root are hot and dry in the second Degree: Aperitive, Absterfitive, Discussive, Carminative, Diuretick, Sudorifick, Cephalick, Stomack, Nephritick, and Hyfterick; Alterative, Alexipharmick, and Spermatogentick.

**VIII. The Specification.** Both Seed and Root are *Lithontriptions*, and good against the bitings of Venomous Beasts, Wind, and rising of the Mother.

**IX. The Preparations.** From Seed and Root, singly, you may have, 1. A Powder. 2. A Decoction. 3. A Spirituous Tincture. 4. An Acid Tincture. 5. An Oily Tincture. 6. A Saline Tincture. 7. A Spirit. 8. A Fixed Salt.

#### The Virtues.

**X. The Powder of the Root or Seed.** It expels Wind, and eases Stitches in the side, provokes Urine and the Terms, and helps to break and expel the Stone. Dose one dram in White Wine.

**XI. The Decoction of Root or Seed.** If it is made in White Port Wine, it has all the Virtues of the Powder, and is peculiarly good against the Dropsie, and such whose Bellies are swollen with Wind. Dose six or eight ounces, Morning, Noon and Night, it induces the Terms, provokes Lust, and facilitates the Delivery of Women in Labour.

**XII. The Spirituous Tincture.** It has the Virtues of both Powder and Decoction, but is a singular thing against the Cholick, and good to help Conception. Dose one spoonful, Morning and Night, in a Glass of generous Wine.

**XIII. The Acid Tincture.** It is good against Stone and Gravel in both Reins and Bladder, and is very powerful to resist Vapors and Hyfterick Fits, as also to cure the bitings and stings of Venomous Creatures: and *Dioscorides* saith, it is so powerful, that if it is taken beforehand, their bitings shall not hurt. Dose forty or sixty drops in Wine.

**XIV. The Oily Tincture.** It opens Obstructions of the Reins and Urinary Parts, eases Pains, and cures weakneses of the Back and Loins, provokes Urine, and the Courses. Dose twenty drops.

**XV. The Saline Tincture.** Outwardly bathed withal, it draws forth the Poison and Malignity of Venomous Creatures, takes away Scurf, Morpew, and Sun-burnings, as also other deformities of the

Skin:



Skin : and being taken inwardly to one dram, it provokes Urine, and prevails against the Dropsie.

XVI. *The Spirit.* It comforts the Head, Stomach, Heart and Womb, resists Poison, and the Plague, expels Wind, and gives ease in Pains and Stitches of the Side. Dose one spoonful.

XVII. *The fixed Salt.* It provokes Urine powerfully, and expels Sand, Gravel, and other Tartarous matter from the Reins, Ureters and Bladder : it powerfully opens and cleanses, and given from a scruple to half a dram, or more, in a spoonful of Juice of Limons, it stops Vomiting, and admirably strengthens the Stomach.

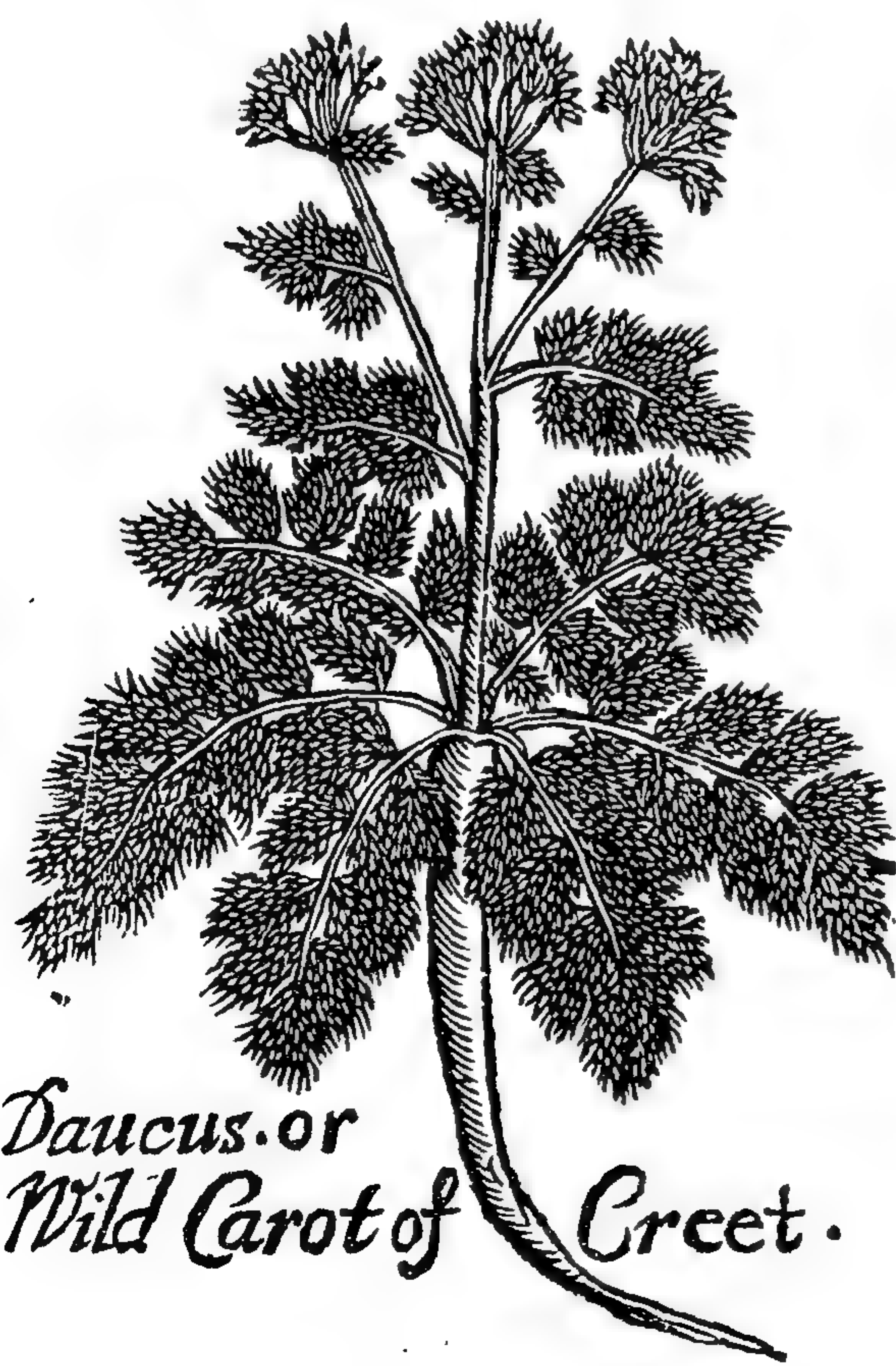
XVIII. *The green Leaves.* Dioscorides and Galen both say, that the Leaves being applied with Honey ( I suppose in form of a Cataplasm ) to running Sores or Ulcers, do cleanse them.

## CHAP. CXVI.

### OF CARROTS of Candy.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Δαῦκος* : In Arabick, *Dauco*, and *Giezar* : In Latin also *Daucus*, *Daucum*, and *Daucium*, and *Daucus Creticus* : In English, *Daucus*, and *Dauke*, and *Candy Carrots*.

II. *The Kinds.* Parkinson makes sixteen kinds of *Daucus's*, many of which are nothing to our purpose : Those which we are chiefly to treat of in this Chapter, are the *Candy* or *Cretick* Kinds, which Dioscorides makes to be three, viz. 1. *Daucus Creticus verus Dioscoridis*, The true *Daucus* of *Candy*. 2. *Daucus Selinoides*, The *Parsley* Leav'd *Daucus*. 3. *Daucus Coriandri foliis*, *Daucus tertius Dioscoridis Bello*, *Coriander* Leav'd *Daucus*, or *Bellus* his third *Daucus* of *Dioscorides*. 4. To these we think good to add a second kind of the *Daucus Selinoides*, which is *Daucus Selinoides maxima*, The greatest *Parsley* Leav'd *Daucus*.



*Daucus. or  
Wild Carot of Creet.*

III. *The Descriptions.* The True *Daucus* has a Root small, long, and white ( lesser says Gerard, than the Root of a Parsnip, which is of a fragrant smell, and almost as quick and sharp in Taste as the Seed, but will not abide our Winters here in England, with all the skill we can use, so that we are forc'd to sow

it anew every Year. From this Root rise up several Stalks of Winged Leaves, as finely cut as Fennel, but shorter, set at distances one against another, of a whitish or hoary color, smelling a little sweet. From among which rise up divers slender Branches or Stalks a Foot high, bearing at their Tops small Umbles of white Flowers, and after them small hoary grayish Seed, somewhat long and round, and of a sharp or quick Smell and Taste.

IV. The second *Daucus* has a Root somewhat great, thick, long and white, with a bush of hairs at the Head, as many other Umbeliferous Plants have, and of a hot and sharp taste, as the Seed also is ; from whence rise up large Stalks of somewhat broad pale green Leaves, bigger than Parsley, and with divisions of the same fashion and manner, next the ground : And also large Stalks almost two feet high, with the like Leaves at the Joints, but shorter ; and at the tops spokie rundles of white Flowers, which turn into long crested Seed, bigger than ordinary Fennel Seed, and of a yellow brown color.

V. The third *Daucus* of Dioscorides, according to Honorius Bellus his account, has a Root great, thick and short, perishing yearly. The whole Plant is Aromatical, and both Root and Leaf are eaten by the Cretians as a common Sallet Herb. From this Root spring several Stalks of fine cut Leaves, not much unlike to the Leaves of Coriander, but lesser and thicker. The Stalks are near two Feet high, with great and swollen Joints, ( and therefore called by some Sefeli nodosom, knotted Hartwort, but by Bauhinus, *Daucus Criticus nodosus Umbella lutea* ) and smaller Leaves at them, at the tops whereof grow yellow Umbles of Flowers ( but white with us in England ) which being past away, there comes much Seed, larger than that of Fennel.

VI. The fourth *Daucus*, which is the large or largest kind of the *Parsley* Leav'd, has a Root sometimes as large as ones Arm, or being young, of the bigness of ones Thumb, parted into several Branches at the bottom, and covered with a rugged black Bark, of a Viscous taste at the first, but sharp afterwards, so as to cause spitting, having at the top many hairy Heads, from whence come several very large, and great Winged Leaves, much divided and dented about the edges, much like the last, but bigger, and of a pale or faint green color, a little shining on the upper side, and of a greyish ash-color underneath. Among these Leaves rises up, a large, great, crested Stalk, of a Fingers thickness, with some Joints, and Leaves at the Joints, and with Branches also between them : at the tops whereof stand small Umbles of whitish Flowers, and somewhat like Seed to the second kind, but larger.

VII. *The Places.* Candia is the Natural place of their Growth, but with us in England they are only nourished up in Gardens. The first has been found upon several Mountains of Germany ; and upon the Hills and Rocks of Fura near Geneva, from whence it has been transported into several of our more Northern Regions.

VIII. *The Times.* They flower in June and July, some earlier, some later ; and their Seed is ripe in August ; some of it ripening in the time of flowering.

IX. *The Qualities.* The Seed and Roots are hot and dry in the third Degree ; the Herb scarcely exceeds the second Degree of heat, and therefore is less powerful. They are Aperitive, Attractive, Digestive, Carminative, Diuretick, Cephalick, Stomick, Nephritick, Hysterick, Lithontriprick, Alterative, Alexipharmick and Spermatogenetick.

X. *The Specification.* It is chiefly dedicated to the Strangury, Stone, and stoppage of Urine.

XI. *The Preparations.* You may make hereof



1. *A liquid Juice of the Herb and Root.* 2. *An Effence of the same.* 3. *A Pouder of the Seed.* 4. *An Infusion of the Seed.* 5. *A Decoction of Seed or Root, or both.* 6. *A Cataplasme of the Herb and Root.* 7. *A Distilled Water.* 8. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 9. *An Acid Tincture.* 10. *An Oily Tincture.* 11. *A Saline Tincture.* 12. *A Spirit.* 13. *A distilled Oil.* 14. *Potestates or Powers.* 15. *An Elixir.* 16. *A Salt.*

## *The Virtues.*

XII. *The liquid Juice of the Herb and Root.* It helps the Strangury, provokes Urine, and the Terms, and expels both Birth and After-birth, and is good for those who have been bitten by the *Phalangium*, or any other Venomous Beast. Dose four spoonfuls in Wine.

XIII. *The Effence.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice, and is stronger, finer, and a much more noble Medicine: It prevails against Vapors and Hysterick Fits, as also the malignity of the Plague, or Pestilence. Dose one or two ounces in generous Wine, Morning and Night, or three or four times a Day, as the necessity or extremity may require.

XIV. *The Pouder of the Seed.* This (according to Authors) has that powerful heat in it, that it becomes a principal Medicine to help the Strangury, to ease the pain, and remove all stoppages of Urine. It provokes the Terms, facilitates the Delivery, and brings away the Dead Child, and After-birth, and helps Vapors and Hysterick Fits. Dose one dram, to one dram and half, in a Glass of White Port Wine, Morning and Night, and in time of a Paroxysm.

XV. *The Infusion of the Seed in Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the Pouder, but I fear not full out so effectual. Dose half a Pint, Morning, Noon, and Night.

XVI. *The Decoction of Seed, or Root, or both.* It ought to be made in White Port Wine, and so given to drink, two, three or four times a day, half a Pint at a time: It has the Virtues both of the Effence, and Pouder of the Seed; and a most famous thing against the Plague, the Patient being put to Bed, well covered, and so made to Sweat upon it.

XVII. *The Cataplasme.* The Herb, but more especially the Roots made into a Cataplasme, by beating in a Mortar, and so mixed with Hogs Lard, and applied, does ease, discuss, or assuage Tumors or Swellings in any part. Made into a Mixture or Cataplasme with Honey, and applied to the Throat, it eases an Inveterate Cough.

XVIII. *The Distilled Water.* It prevails against Stone, Gravel, Sand, Strangury, and all stoppages of Urine, but is weak, in respect to the Juice, Effence, and other more noble Preparations of the Plant, and therefore is only used as a Vehicle to convey other Preparations of the same in.

XIX. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is an excellent thing against the Plague or Pestilence, and against all other malign Fevers, as Purples, Spotted Fever, Measles, Small Pox, and Fevers derived from the bitings of Serpents, as Vipers, Rattle Snakes, and others of like kind: It provokes Sweat gently, and defends the Heart after an admirable manner. Dose two, three, or four drams in the Distilled Water, or rather in Wine, or some other fit Vehicle.

XX. *The Acid Tincture.* It has all the Virtues of the Spirituous Tincture, and if the Fever is very high or intense, is much the better Medicament; besides the Acid, destroys the Malignity much more powerfully. Dose to one dram, or more, in the Distilled Water.

XXI. *The Oily Tincture.* In an extremity of the Strangury this is the most powerful Preparation, being given to thirty drops, or more, in a Glass of White Port Wine: It is powerful to discuss Gripping Pains, and Torments of the Bowels, to facilitate the Birth, and bring away the Dead Child: It eases Convulsions, and heals Wounds in the Body or Bowels.

XXII. *The Saline Tincture.* It cleanses the Reins and Urinary Passages, being taken to one dram, or more, in White Wine; but heals not like the Oily Tincture. It digests humors, and provokes Urine, and the Terms in Women.

XXIII. *The Distilled Oil of the Seed.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, Effence, Pouder of the Seed, Decoction, Spirituous, Acid, and Oily Tinctures: and therefore may be given from eight drops to sixteen, being first dropt into Sugar, and then mixed with the Distilled Water, or some other fit Vehicle: It helps the Strangury upon the spot, cleanses the Reins of all Tartarous Matters, and all other the Urinary Parts, provokes the Terms, resists Vapors, and Hysterick Fits, eases the Cholick, produces the Birth, expels watry Humors in Dropsies, and resists the Poison of Mad Dogs, or any other Venomous Creature; and cures intolerable Pains of the Stomach proceeding from Cold, Weakness, and other like disaffections.

XXIV. *The Potestates or Powers.* They have all the Virtues of the Oil, and are also more subtil and penetrating, and more pleasant to be taken, being more easily mixed with Wine, or any other potable Liquor. Dose from two to four drams.

XXV. *The Elixir.* This is yet more excellent and noble than the Powers, being the Tincture of the Seed or Root extracted by the sublimity of the Potestates; by which you have all the noble parts of the Plant concentrated in one Medicament: and so has all the Virtues of the Juice, Effence, Pouder, Tinctures, Oil, and Potestates, in the highest exaltation. Dose one dram to two drams in a Glass of Wine, Morning and Evening.

XXVI. *The fixed Salt.* It is strongly Diuretick, strengthens the Stomach, being given in the Acid Tincture, mixed with the Distilled Water, or some other fit *Vehiculum*. Being taken for some time in White Port Wine, it destroys all Præternatural Acids, in what part of the Body soever, and dissolves the Stone, if it is of a gritty, friable, or brittle substance. The Dose is from a scruple to half a dram, or two scruples, Morning and Evening.

## C H A P. CXVII.

### of C A R A W A Y.

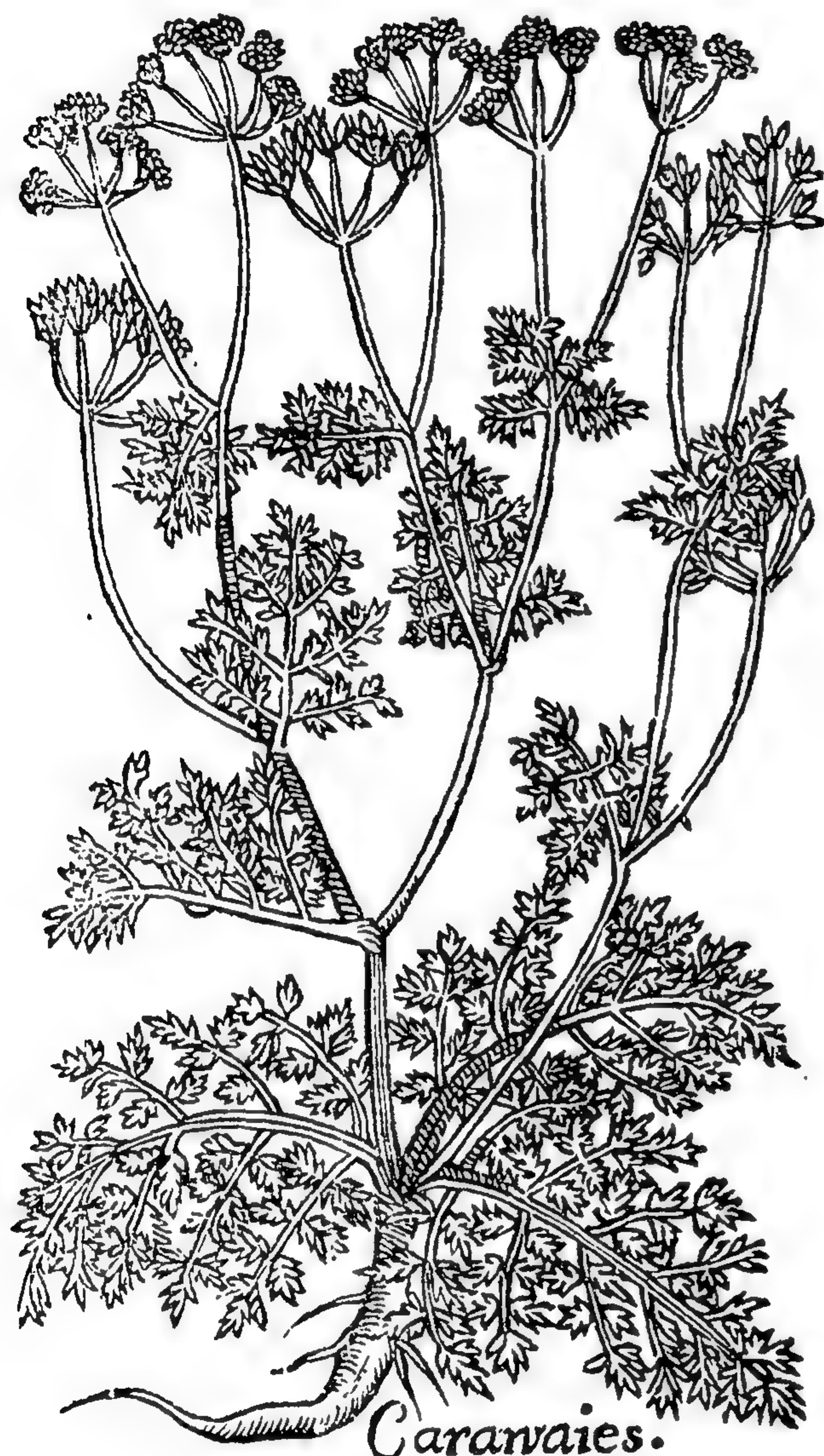
I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Arabick, *Karvia*, *Karavia*, and *Carvi*: In Greek, *Kαρι*: In Latin, *Carum*; also *Carui*, as the Apothecaries call it: *Simon Sethi* calls it *Carnabadion*: It took its name from the Countrey of *Caria*, from whence it came: Some call it *Careum*, some *Carvum*, as in the Shops: and in English, *Caraway*.

II. *The Kinds.* We shall here enumerate but two Kinds, 1. *Carum Vulgare*, our Ordinary or Common Caraway. 2. *Carum pratense*, Meadow Caraway.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first has a Root whitish, small, and long, somewhat like unto a Parsnep, but with a more wrinkled Bark, and much less, having a little hot, and quick taste, stronger than a Parsnep,



*Parsnep*, and abiding after Seed time. Gerard says, the Root is like that of Parsley, white, and in taste like unto a Carrot, and (says he) may be sodden, and eaten as the Parsnep or Carrot is. From this Root spring up divers Stalks of fine cut Leaves, lying on the Ground, somewhat like to the Leaves of Carrots, but not bushing out so thick, of a little quick taste in them. From among which rises up a square Stalk, not so high as the Carrot, at whose Joints are set the like Leaves, but smaller, and finer cut; and at the tops there are small open Tufts, or Umbles of white Flowers, which turn into small blackish brown Seed, smaller than the Anniseed, and of a quicker and better Taste.



IV. The second has a Root small and slender, of a Smell not much unlike to Daucus, but of a hot and sharp Taste, yet not so hot and sharp as the Seed; from this Root grows Leaves like the former, but larger; and from among those Leaves, come forth Stalks greater and higher than the Common Kind. The spokie Umbles of white Flowers are in like manner larger, and the Seed like unto Cummin Seed, but much bigger.

V. The Places. Caraways grow naturally in Caria, as Dioscorides saith, whence came the name: now they are found to grow almost every where in Germany, as Tragus says, in many places in the Fields, and by the Way sides; as also in Meadows, and in the fat and fruitful Fields of Bohemia, and likewise in low grounds, which are now and then over run with Water; but with us they are usually sown in Gardens, where they prosper admirably.

VI. The Times. They Flower and Seed from May, and continue so till the end of August.

VII. The Qualities. Caraway Seeds are hot and dry, as Galen says, almost in the third Degree. They are Aperitive, Carminative, Digestive, Discussive, Diuretick, Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomatick, Nephritick, Alterative, and Alexipharmick.

VIII. The Specification. They powerfully expel Wind, and ease Pains of the Cholick.

IX. The Preparations. You may have, 1. The Root. 2. The Herb. 3. The Seed. 4. A Juice of Herb and Root. 5. An Essence of the same. 6. A Decoction of the Seed. 7. A Pouder of the Seed. 8. A Cataplasm of the Herb. 9. A Distilled Water of the whole Plant. 10. A Spirituous Tincture. 11. An Acid Tincture. 12. An Oily Tincture. 13. A Spirit. 14. A Distilled Oil. 15. Potestates, or Powers. 16. An Elixir.

#### The Virtues.

X. The Root. Parkinson says, that it is better Food than that of the Parsnep, and is pleasant, and comfortable to the Stomach, helping Digestion.

XI. The Herb. Being dried, and made into Pouder, and strewed upon moist and running Sores and Ulcers, it dries them up, and in short time after heals them; it also heals Kibes in Childrens Feet.

XII. The Seed. It is used whole in Bread, Cakes, Apple Pyes and Pasties, to give a relish to them, and to add a stomatick and warming Quality, in room of Spice; also to be made into Comfits to correct the Wind in the Stomach. Being bruised, fried, and laid hot in a Bag, or double Cloth, to the lower parts of the Belly, it disperses the Wind, and eases the pains of the Cholick.

XIII. The Juice of the Herb and Root. It is prevalent against Wind, and all cold Diseases of the Head, Nerves, Stomach, Bowels, Womb and Joints: gives ease in the Cholick, and griping of the Guts; represses Vapors, and Hysterick Fits, and provokes Urine. Dose two ounces in Wine.

XIV. The Essence. It has the Virtues of the Juice, but more efficacious in opening Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, and expelling Tartarous matter from those parts. It prevails against the Cholick, and all Distempers of the Bowels proceeding from cold and moisture.

XV. The Decoction of the Seed. It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, and is very good for such as have the yellow Jaundice, and Virgins troubled with the Green-sickness, and such as are daily afflicted with Wind in the Stomach and Bowels. It ought to be made in Wine, and may be taken to half a pint at a time sweetned with White Sugar.

XVI. The Pouder of the Seed. Taken to one dram, daily Morning and Night, mixed with fine Loaf Sugar, it has been found to sharpen the sight, to expel Wind, and help a bloody Flux, and other fluxes of the Bowels, though they have been of a long standing. And by the constant use thereof, a periodical Cholick has been often cured.

XVII. The Cataplasm. Made of the Pouder of the Seed with White Bread and Sherry Wine, it discusses flatulent Tumors or Swellings, eases pains in any part proceeding from Cold, comforts and strengthens weak Limbs, and takes away the black and blew spots of Blows, Bruises, and the like. The same laid as hot on as can be endured to the lower parts of the Belly, gives ease in the Cholick.

XVIII. The Distilled Water of the whole Plant. It is only used as a Vehicle to convey Stomatick and Carminative Medicaments in, down into the Body.

XIX. The Spirituous Tincture. It is good against Lethargies, Carus, Vertigo, Apoplexy, Palsie, Fainting, and illness of the Stomach, sickness at Heart, swooning Fits, Convulsions, coldness and weakness of the Nerves, and all those other Diseases for which the Essence is proper. The Dose is half a spoonful



in a Glas of Wine, Morning, Noon and Night, in all cold and moist Constitutions.

XX. *The Acid Tincture.* It admirably helps Digestion, creates a good Stomach, represses Vapors, and is good against Fits of the Mother. Dose thirty or forty drops in any Liquor the Patient drinks, or in a Glas of Wine two or three times a day.

XXI. *The Oily Tincture.* It is Diuretick, eases pains of the Back and Reins, being taken inwardly to twenty or thirty drops in any proper Vehicle: outwardly bathed upon the part, it gives ease in Pains of the Gout, proceeding from a cold Cause; and is eminently good against Cramps in any part, Convulsions, and the Palsie, if it be well anointed on the Paralytick part before a good fire, and rubbed in for an hour together, and so continued daily for twelve, fifteen, or twenty days, till the Patient finds he comes to the feeling strength, and use of his Limbs, &c.

XXII. *The Spirit drawn from the Seed.* It revives the Spirits, cheers the Heart, comforts Nature, represses Melancholly, warms and strengthens a cold Stomach, and is good against Fainting and Swooning Fits. Dose half an ounce, or more, at a time, being dulcified, upon occasion.

XXIII. *The Distilled Oil from the Seed.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Decoction, Pouder, Tinctures and Spirit, but much more powerful to all the said purposes and intentions. Dose from eight to sixteen drops, dropt into Sugar, and then dissolved in any proper Vehicle the Patient likes best, and is also agreeable to the Medicament in resisting the Disease.

XXIV. *The Powers.* They have all the Virtues of the Oil, but much more subtil and penetrating, and more pleasant and easie to be taken by delicate and weak Stomachs. Dose two or three drams in a Glas of generous Wine, Morning and Night.

XXV. *The Elixir.* It provokes Urine, (having all the Virtues of the Spirit, Tincture, Oil and Powers exalted) and breaks the Stone, if it is soft and gritty, expelling Gravel, Sand and Tartarous Matter from all the Urinary Vessels. It opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, cleanses the Blood from corrupted Humors, and is commended against the Cachexia, or evil disposition of the whole Body, arising from a cold, moist, and watry habit of the same; and therefore, in the going off of a Dropsie, when the Bowels are much weakned, and the Tone of them extreemly hurt, it so comforts and strengthens them, as to make the Body to withstand the return of the Disease, into which if the Patient should Relapse, it is generally fatal. The Dose is half a spoonful in Sherry, Canary, or Madera Wine.

## C H A P. CXVIII.

### C E N T O R Y the Greater.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, Κενταύριον μέγα: In Latin, *Centaurium magnum*: of Theophrastus Κενταύριον: and in English, Centory the Greater, or Greater Centory.

II. *The Kinds.* There are four Kinds of this Centory, 1. *Centaurium majus vulgare*, *Centaurium magnum*, The Common Great Centory. 2. *Centaurium majus alterum*, The other Great Centory, or Whole leav'd Centory. 3. *Centaurium majus Americanum*, or *Canadum*, *Centaurium foliis Cynaræ*, *Centaurium Pyreneum*, The American Centory, with Artichoak Leaves. 4. *Centaurium majus luteum*, The great yellow Centory.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first of these has a Root which grows to be more than two feet long, and as large as a reasonable great Parsnep-root, blackish on the outside, and something of a reddish yellow within, abiding many years, and sending forth fresh Leaves every Spring, those dying for the most part which were green all the Summer; which Leaves are many, large, long, and soft, deeply cut in on the edges, of a pale green color on the upper side, and whitish underneath, without any thing of the great bitterness which is in the lesser Centory, which is no Species of this Plant. The Stalk is long and round, and three or four feet high, divided at the top into many Branches, on which stand large, round, scaly green heads, shooting forth at their tops, many small Threads or Thrums, of a pale blewish Ash-color. In which, after they are fallen, do grow, large, whitish, smooth, shining Seeds, not much unlike Thistle Seeds, but larger, and lying amongst a great deal of Downy Matter.



IV. *The second Great Centory* has a Root growing to be as great or greater than the former, and black on the out side, but yellowish within, yielding a yellowish red Juice, which is a little bitter, but more Aromatical than the former. From the head of this Root comes forth many Leaves lying almost upon the ground, which are long, and as large almost as the former, but without any jaggedness or division at all in them, yet deeply dented about the edges, and of a deep green color. The Stalk is round and great, but rises not up so high as the other does, nor divides it self at the top, into so many Branches, but bearing only two or three heads on a Stalk, which are scaly, in the same manner, and in it such like Thrums or Thready Flowers, of a pale whitish color, which being past, there comes such like Seed in the heads, lying in a Flocky or Downy Substance, and every one bearded in the same manner, but a little blacker.

V. *The third, which is the American, or Floridian Great Centory,* has a Root great and black on the out side, but longer than the first, and of the bigness of ones Wrist. It has larger Leaves than the first, and more jagged, or cut in deeply on the Edges,



*Somewhat resembling an Artichoke Leaf in the divisions, whence the name Folius Cynaris, green above, and gray, or as it were hoary underneath. The Stalk rises about a yard high, cornered and hoary, having several smaller Leaves, and less jagged, set thereupon, and parted at the top into some Branches, each bearing a few small Leaves, under the Heads, which are much greater, and more scaly, with sharp pricks at their ends, like a little Wild Artichoke Head. The tuft of Threads, which are the Flowers, are more purple, than in the first; and the Seeds are white, wrapped up in Down in like manner.*

VI. The fourth, or Yellow Great Centory, has a Root which grows in time to be greater than any of the former, having many Heads which shoot forth new Leaves in the Spring, the old Leaves going away or dying upon the ground every Year, which is wrinkled, and black on the out side, and yellowish within, full of a viscous or slimy moisture, and striking deep into the ground, with some greater Branches, and a few small fibres. The new Leaves which this Root sends forth are both larger and longer from the Root than the others, some of the lowest having fewer divisions in them, than some others of them have; but those which grow upon the Stalk, as well as some of the others below, are very much divided into many parts, making every winged leaf to consist of fourteen or sixteen Leaves, the great rib in the middle between them being whitish, each for the most part set against another, with an odd one at the end, and every of them being narrow and long, without any dents on the edges, and of a whitish green color. The Stalks are manifold, round and strong, a little straked down length ways, each being divided into some other Branches, which bear scaly Heads greater than any of the others, and larger spread thrums in the middle, of a delicate pale, but lively yellow color, which continue in their glory and beauty for a long time, without decaying; but they seldom yield any Seed here with us in England, because that the scaly Heads are so full of moisture (as is supposed) which hinders the Seed to grow ripe therein; for if they are but a little pressed between the Fingers, there will issue out on all sides small clear drops of Water, almost of a Honey like Sweetness, and that not only at Noon-time of the Day, as Bauhin is pleased to say, but also at all other times of the Day, and not for one only time and no more, but often times, and every Day, as long as the Flowers are fresh, and not yet withered: but when it perfects its Seed, it is not much unlike to the Seed of the second kind, but a little lesser, blacker, and more shining.

VII. The Places. The first delights in a fat and fruitful Soil, and in Sunny Banks, full of Grass and Herbs. The first and second grow upon the Alps, and Mount Baldus: Dioscorides saith, they grow plentifully in Lycia, Peloponnesus, Arcadia, &c. The third grows upon the Pyrenean Hills, and upon stony Hills near Lisbon in Portugal, near the River Tagus: It has also been found to grow in America, upon the Floridian Continent, near Canada, New England, Virginia, and parts adjacent to them. The fourth not far from Lisbon, near the Tagus, and also on Mount Baldus, as Pena saith: With us, they are only nourished up in Gardens, where they thrive and flourish very well.

VIII. The Times. They all Flower about the end of June, and in July, and the Roots may be gathered in Autumn. The American seldom Flowers with us, because of the coldness of our Climate, nor does it live, unless with much care.

IX. The Qualities. It is hot and dry in the third Degree. It is Aperitive, Absterfive, Astringent, Digestive, Discussive, Incarnative, Anodyn, and Traumatick, or Vulnerary. It is dedicated to the Sto-

mach, Lungs, Liver, Spleen, Reins and Womb: It is Alterative, Alexipharmick, and Hemopock.

X. The Specification. It is a noble Wound Herb: Pliny and Theophrastus set it down among the number of Panacea's, All-heals, or Wound Herbs, this Great Centory, (as also the Lesser, of which in the next Chapter.) Pliny, lib. 25. cap. 4. reciting the words of Theophrastus, says, that they were found out by Chiron the Centaure, and that from thence they were called Centauria: and in cap. 6. he repeats and affirms again the same thing, and thereupon, he saith, they were both named Chironia, though in truth they, viz. the Greater and Smaller, are no Kin one to another, not being Species of the same Genus, and so have no relation but only in name. It is reported, that Chiron was cured here-with of a Wound in his Foot, which was made with an Arrow, which fell upon it, when he was entertaining Hercules in his House, upon which it was called Chironium: or else from the curing of the Wounds of his Soldiers, for the which Intention it is most excellent.

XI. The Preparations. The Roots and Herb are both used, but the Root chiefly: and from them you may prepare, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An Infusion. 4. A Decoction. 5. A Pouder. 6. A Balsam. 7. An Ointment. 8. A Cataplasme. 9. A Spirituous Tincture. 10. An Acid Tincture. 11. An Oily Tincture: all made from the Root.

#### The Virtues.

XII. The liquid Juice. Being taken to two or three ounces, or more, Morning and Evening, opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and prevails against the Dropsie and Yellow Jaundice, stops spitting of Blood, and is prevalent against Ruptures, Cramps, and Pleurifies, and for those who have an old and continued Cough, or are short Winded, and can hardly draw their Breath.

XIII. The Essence. It has all the former Virtues, but more powerful to every Intention; besides which, this Preparation is profitable against Agues, eases the Cholick, and all sorts of Gripping Pains, both of Belly and Womb. It is also a singular Traumatick, for it heals all inward Wounds and Excoriations of the Bowels, and outwardly applied to Wounds, running Sores and Ulcers, it digests, cleanses, dries, and Disposes the same to a speedy healing. Dose two or three ounces in a Glass of generous Wine.

XIV. The Infusion. It is a weak thing compared with the former Preparation; yet being made in Wine, it opens Obstructions of the Viscera, and is good against the Jaundice, pains of the Pleura, or Stitches in the Side. Dose four or six ounces Morning and Evening.

XV. The Decoction. It is something more powerful than the Infusion, and is good for the same Diseases which that and the Essence are good against. Sweetned with Honey, or Sugar Candy, it is good against Wheefings, Hoarseness, Obstructions of the Lungs, shortness of Breath, and an inveterate Cough. It is good against the Strangury, or pissing by drops: and used as a Lotion, it cleanses Wounds, old Sores, and running Ulcers; and as a Gargarism, it cleanses and heals Cankers and Ulcers in the Gums, Mouth and Throat: being drank half a Pint at a time, it expels the malignity of Wounds made by the bitings or stinging of Venomous Creatures. Dropt into the Eyes it clears them, and sharpens the Eyesight.

XVI. The Pouder. It has all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence and Decoction, being taken one dram, or dram and half at a time, Morning and Evening,



in Wine: besides which, being strewed upon moist, running Sores, it cleanses, dries, and heals them.

XVII. *The Balsam.* It heals Wounds at once or twice dressing: if they be contused, it digests them, cleanses and heals. Applied to foul, corrupted, rotten Sores, and old Ulcers, it digests them, cleanses, dries, and heals almost to a Miracle. Applied to the Gout, it draws the humor out through the pores of the skin, and so cures it.

XVIII. *The Ointment.* It is vulnerary, drying, and healing, good against burnings, scaldings, and fluxes of sharp Humors, which it represses by virtue of its Astringency, the Sore, Ulcer or Wound, being first washt with the Juice or Essence: then the Pouder of the Root being strewed upon it, and afterwards pledgets being dipt in the Ointment, and laid over all, with a *De Minio Emplaster* upon that to hold it on: by this means desperate old and running Sores and Ulcers have been suddenly and effectually cured.

XIX. *The Cataplasme.* It is an excellent Anodyn and Discussive, prevalent against flatulent Tumors: If it is made up into a Pessary with the Pouder of the Root, and put up the Womb, it provokes the Terms in Women, and educeth the Dead Child and After-birth.

XX. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is good against Convulsions, Lethargies, Palsies, Cramps, Pains and Aches in the Limbs, as also in the Stomach and Belly, Colick, and all Diseases of those parts proceeding from Wind: Let it be taken inwardly three times a day, from two drams to four in any proper Vehicle: and outwardly, let it be bathed upon the part affected Morning and Evening, till health is recovered.

XXI. *The Acid Tincture.* It is good against Malignity, and the Poison of Pestilential Fevers: is good against the bitings or stings of Venomous Creatures; opens Obstructions of the Lungs, helps against Coughs, Colds, shortness of Breath, Wheezing, Hoarseness, &c. being taken in all that the Patient drinks, whether Ale, Beer, or Wine, so many drops at a time as may make the Liquor pleasingly sharp.

XXII. *The Oily Tincture.* It opens Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, is prevalent against the Strangury, pains and weakness in the Back, being taken from ten to twenty or thirty drops in White Port Wine twice a Day, viz. Morning and Night; and withal being bathed well in, upon the *Spina Dorsi*, or Back Bone.

XXIII. *The whole Plant, as well Herb as Root,* is available in all sorts of Wounds, Sores and Ulcers, to digest, cleanse, dry, conglutinate, and heal them; and therefore are principal ingredients, and should be in all vulnerary Ointments, Balsams, Drinks, Lotions, and Injections, according to some of the foregoing prescribed Preparations, respect being had to the parts afflicted, and the way and Method of Application or Exhibition, whether Inward or Outward.

## C H A P. CXIX.

### Of CENTORY the Lesser.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Arabick, *Kanturion Sages*, and *Canturion Sege*, or *Segir*: In Greek, *Κανταύριον τὸ μικρὸν*: In Latin, *Centaurium minus*, & *parvum*: Of some, *Centaurea, febrifuga*,

from its Quality; *Fel Terræ*, from its excessive bitterness. *Dioscorides* says; it was called *Limnession*; and *Pliny*, *Libadion*, because it loves to grow in moist places. It is thought to be that Plant which *Theophrastus* called *Leptophyllum*: In English, *Centory the Lesser*, and *Lesser Centory*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is no Species of the *Greater Centory*, nor claims any the least Kindred with it, having no Relation in any kind, but only in the name, and therefore is *Genus* or General it self. It is six fold, as growing with us, viz. 1. *Centaurium minus vulgare flore rubente*, The Common Red Small Centory. 2. *Centaurium minus flore albo*, White flowered Centory. 3. *Centaurium minus luteum*, Small yellow Centory. 4. *Centaurium minus luteum perfoliatum ramosum*, Branched through-leav'd Small yellow Centory. 5. *Centaurium minus luteum non ramosum*, Small yellow Centory, not Branched. 6. *Centaurium minimum luteum*, The very small, or smallest yellow Centory.



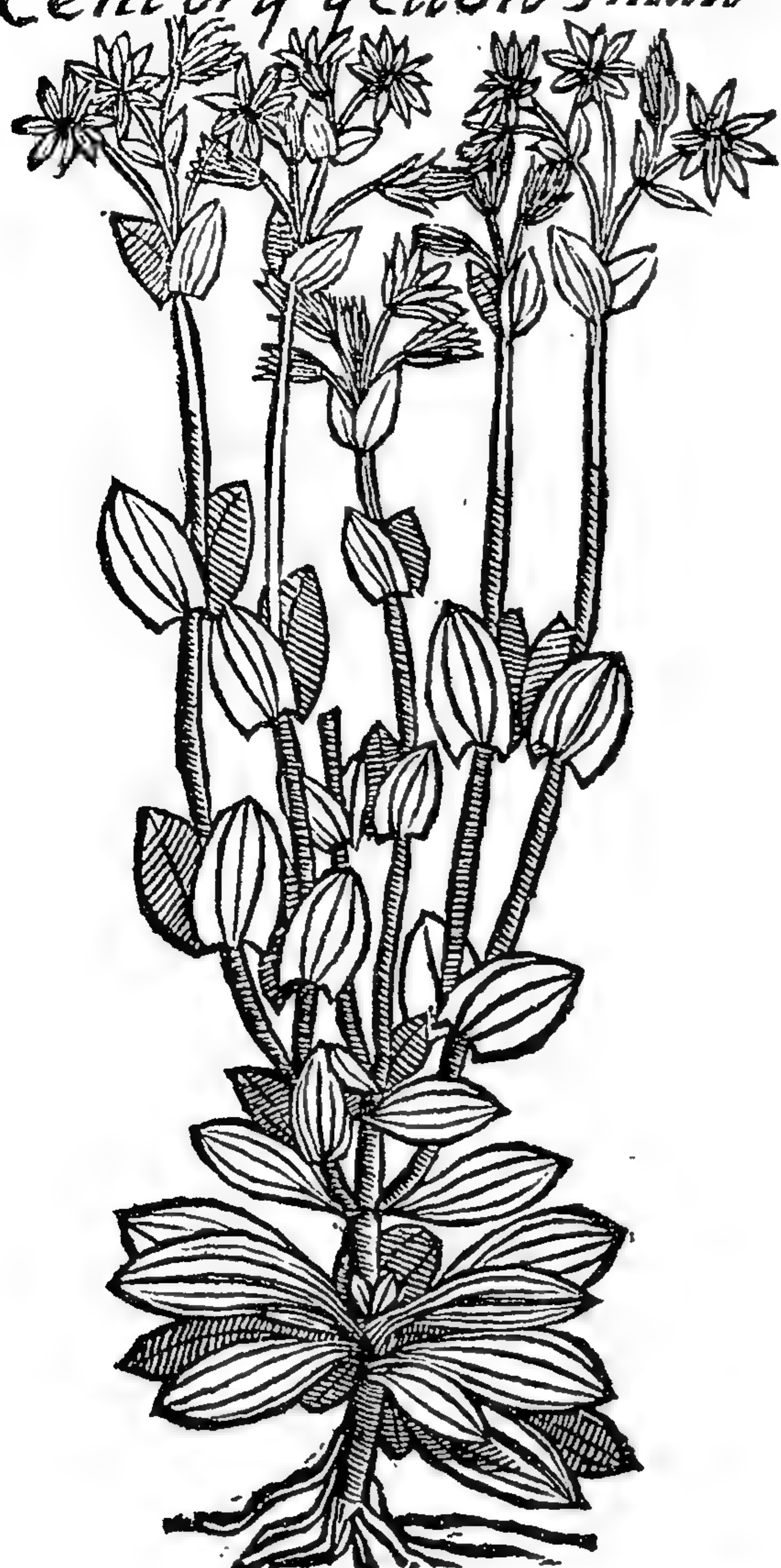
III. *The Descriptions.* The first of these, which is our Common small Centory, has a Root small and hard, perishing every year, from whence springs up for the most part, but one round and crested Stalk; about a foot high, or something more, branching out at the top into many Sprigs or Branches, and some also from the Joints of the Stalks below. The Leaves are small, and a little roundish, very like unto *St. John's Wort*, but without any holes in them, as that has. The Flowers stand at the tops, as it were in a Tuft or Umble, and are of a pale red color, tending to a Carnation. They consist of five, and sometimes of six, small Leaves, very like unto those of *Hypericon*, opening themselves in the Day time, and closing at Night, after which come Seed in little short Husks, and in form like unto Wheat Corns. The whole Plant is of an exceeding bitter Taste.

IV. The second, with the White Flower, differs nothing from the other, as to the form, neither in Root, Stalk, Leaves, Height, Flowers or Seed, saving only in the color of the Flowers, which is White, as the other is Red; and the bitter taste is the same in its full Latitude.

V. The



Centory yellow small



V. The third, which is the Small Yellow Centory, is a little like to the second, and a little greater than it; the Leaves are also larger and broader, and broad at the bottom, but yet not so broad as to encompass the Stalk, as the next does: the Flowers are also a little greater, and yellow, which is the principal thing in which it differs from the last; and withal the whole Plant is not altogether so bitter.

Small yellow  
throughleav  
ed Centaury

VI. The fourth, which is the 'Through-leav'd Centory, has a Root small and white, like the former, from whence comes some Leaves next the ground

like unto the former Centories, but somewhat greater. From this Root comes forth a Stalk, which sometimes spreads it self forth into many long Branches, from every one of the Joints; and sometimes it spreads it self only at top: At the Joints stand two somewhat broad and long pointed Leaves, so encompassing the Stalk about the bottom, and making it seem as if it run through them, that they will hold the Rain, or any Water which falls upon them: The Flowers which stand at the tops of the small Branches are a little larger than those of the Common Centory, composed of six or eight Leaves, of a fine pale yellow color, and sometimes of a deeper yellow; after which comes larger Heads than those in the first, and Seed a little bigger. This Plant is not full out so bitter as the first.

VII. The fifth, which is a Small yellow Centory not Branched, and differs not in Leaf or Flower from the fourth: The Stalk bears perfoliated Leaves, but spread not themselves forth in Branches, as the former doth: It bears also but one only Flower at the top, which thing, together with its not being branched, makes it to be different, and another Species of the perfoliated kind, the whole Plant is less bitter than the first.

VIII. The sixth, and smallest of the Yellow Centories differs very little from the fifth, or last described Through leav'd Centory, excepting in this, that it is wholly less in every part of it, and whereas the former bears but one Flower at the top of it, this bears two or three, and sometimes more, small Flowers at the top of every of its Branches.

IX. The Places. The first grows in great plenty throughout all England, in most Pastures and Grassy Fields; and indeed they are all of them found in many places of this Kingdom, but the first or common sort almost every where, in Fields, Pastures and Woods, but that with the White Flowers is more sparingly to be had than the first. The first I found growing in the South parts of Carolina, in many Plantations, but particularly in that, formerly Captain Abbot's, up Wando River, about five Miles from Charles Town: The third of these enumerated in this Chapter, grows in many places in Kent, as in a Field next unto that which was formerly Sir Francis Carew's House, at Bedington near Croydon; and in a Field next beyond Southfleet Church towards Gravesend, and in many other places, where also the other kinds are sometimes found.

X. The Times. They all Flower in July and August, and their Seed is ripe in about a Month after. They ought to be gathered in their Flowering time: but some people out of a meer Superstition, gather them between the two Lady-days.

XI. The Qualities. They are generally hot and dry in the second Degree: but Gerard says, that our third, which is the first yellow Centory, is hot and dry in the third Degree, and yet it is not so bitter as the first. They are all highly Stomack, Pectoral, Hepatick, Splenetick, and Hysterick: they are noble Aperitives, and Abstersives, Vulneraries, Alteratives, and Emmenagogicks.

XII. The Specification. It is Antifebricitick, and good against Distempers of the Stomach.

XIII. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An Infusion. 4. A Decoction. 5. A Pouder. 6. An Oil by Insolation or Boiling. 7. An Ointment. 8. A Balsam. 9. A Cataplasme. 10. A Distilled Water. 11. A Spirituous Tincture. 12. An Acid Tincture. 13. An Oily Tincture. 14. A Saline Tincture. 15. A Spirit. 16. A Collyrium. 17. A Fixed Salt from the Ashes. 18. An Essential Salt.



*The Virtues.*

XIV. *The liquid Juice.* Being given from four to six ounces two hours before the coming of the fit of an Ague (as also given in the same quantity Morning and Evening for some days) it removes the fit, and perfectly cures the Ague. It evacuates and carries off Cholerick and Gross Humors, and prevails against the Sciatica: And yet with *Dodoneus*, I do not perceive that it has any sensible Purging, or Carthartick quality, though in the mean time, many things which are not purely Catharticks or Purging, are found to be very cleansing, and in passing off themselves, carry many other Humors along with them.

XV. *The Essence.* This has all the Virtues of the Juice; it opens Obstructions of the Gall, Liver, Spleen, Reins and Womb, prevails against Hypochondriack Melancholly, and the Yellow Jaundice; it eases Pains in the Sides, and hardness of the Spleen, making thin both Blood and Humors. It is of good use for those that have the Dropsie, or Green-sicknes, because it strengthens the Stomach, and all the other *Viscera*: I know some will not allow it to cure the Dropsie; but this I know, that if the Hydropick Humors are carried off by other means, and the parts affected are once emptied of their Water, that if this Essence be duly given, it so strengthens the Bowels, that that Disease returns no more. It kills Worms in the Belly, and dries up Rheums.

XVI. *The Infusion in Wine.* It cleanses gross Humors, and eases pains in the Hips, the Gout, and other like Diseases proceeding from Tartarous Humors: It is good in Agues, strengthens the Stomach, helps Digestion, and causes a good Appetite. It also prevails against Stitches, pains of the Sides, and other disaffections of the *Pleura*.

XVII. *The Decoction.* It has the Virtues of the Infusion, is good against Agues, Catarrhs, and the vehement pains of the Colick: It provokes the Terms in Women; and brings away the Birth, whether dead or alive, as also the After-birth, easing the pains of Mother, and causing an effectual Cleansing after Delivery. It is good against the Rickets in Children, evacuates Tartar out of the Urinary Passages, and brings away Sand and Gravel, stopping the passage of the Urine.

XVIII. *The Powder.* Taken to one dram in Wine, it gives ease in the Colick, kills Worms in Children, and (as *Parkinson* says) is a wonderful good help against the biting and poison of a Viper or Adder. Strewed upon moist and running Sores and Ulcers, it cleanses, dries, and heals them.

XIX. *The Oil by Insolation or Boiling.* It is Anodyne, eases the Spleen, and pains of the Mother, and is very effectual in all old pains of the Joints, and Limbs, as Gouts, Sciatica, Convulsions, Cramps, &c. proceeding from a Cold Cause. It is also a very good thing to anoint Womens Breasts which are swollen, hard, or pained, through Cold, or Curdling of the Milk, or any other accident, as of a blow, &c.

XX. *The Ointment.* It has the Virtues of the Oil, but is more strengthening and sanative: It cleanses, dries, and heals foul Ulcers, and other spreading Scabs of the Head; and to anoint the Back-bone and Joints of such Children as have gotten the Rickets: It strengthens and gives ease in pains of the Back, by anointing therewith.

XXI. *The Balsam.* It is an incomparable Vulnerary, and cures simple Green Wounds at the first intention. If they are composed by bruising, and dilaceration of the flesh, it first digests, then clean-

ses, dries, and heals them: It also cleanses foul and foetid Ulcers, fills them up with flesh, and consolidates their lips. It heals old running Sores, cleansing, incarnating and drying, and perfectly curing them, tho' Hollow, or Fistulous.

XXII. *The Cataplasme, made of the green Herb.* It has the Virtues of the Balsam, but is an especial thing for cleansing and healing putrid Ulcers in what part soever, if duly applied thrice a day: washing the hollownes or fistulous part also with an Expressed Juice of the Herb.

XXIII. *The Distilled Water.* It has the Virtues of the Infusion or Decoction, but is pleasanter, as being less bitter; but by so much, it is the less efficacious: and is many times used as a Vehiculum, to convey other Preparations of the Herb in: It is said to take away Tanning of the Skin, Sun-burning, and other the like disaffections.

XXIV. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It comforts all the *Viscera* after a singular manner; and therefore if it is taken from one dram to four drams, Morning, Noon, and Night, it so strengthens the Bowels, as that it prevents the return of a Dropsie in those Persons where it has been lately cured. It also removes the Gout out of the Stomach, (which many times is fatal) is good against the Jaundice, and Hypochondriack Melancholly: It is indeed a good remedy against the bitings of Vipers, Rattle-Snakes, and other Serpents, as also the Poison of Mad Dogs.

XXV. *The Acid Tincture.* It is excellent against Vapors, Fits of the Mother, and other disaffections of the Womb. It strengthens a weak Stomach, resists Vomiting, causes a good Appetite and Digestion, removing faintness and sickness at heart. It is good against Poison, and the Plague, as also all Putrid, Malign, and Pestilential Diseases, being taken in all that the sick drinks from twenty to forty drops at a time, at least five or six times a day; it takes away the malignity of the Distemper, and wonderfully abates the putrid heat of the Fever, whether Continent, Continual or Contermittent.

XXVI. *The Oily Tincture.* It carries off the yellow Jaundice, as also the Morbifick cause of Obstructions of the Reins and Ureters by Urine: being given from one dram to two drams, in a good draught of *Carduus* Posset-drink, it has been known to cure Agues: more especially if the *Spina Dorsi* be effectually anointed therewith, from the *Vertebrae* of the Neck almost to the *Anus*. Anointed on the sides, it eases their Pains: and given inwardly, gives ease in the Colick. Given to a Woman in Labor from fifteen to thirty or forty drops, in some convenient Vehicle, it facilitates the Delivery, whether alive or dead, and effectually brings away the After-birth.

XXVII. *The Saline Tincture.* It is good against foul Ulcers, and spreading Scabs of the Head, or other parts; takes away Cutaneous Deformities, as Tannings, Sun-burnings, Spots, Marks, Scurf, Dandriff, Morpew, and other like defects of the skin: And being long applied, it is said to remove Freckles, tho' of great continuance.

XXVIII. *The Spirit.* It strengthens the Stomach wonderfully, cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, and fortifies the Universal Oeconomy of Nature: it is good against Vomiting, and Indigestion, and causes a good Appetite to Food; makes a fresh and lively Countenance, and restores the Pristine state of the Bowels. It is a very good thing against *Diarrheas*, *Dysenteria's*, *Lienteria's*, and the *Hepatick Flux*, and gives ease in an exquisite Colick, when sometimes many other things will do nothing: Dose from one spoonful to two, in some proper Vehicle.

XXIX. *The*



XXIX. *The Collyrium.* It is made of the *Liquid Juice, or Essence, mixt with an equal quantity of clarified Honey.* Being put into the Eyes, four, five or six times a day, it clears them from Dimness, Mists or Clouds, or any thing which obfuscates or hinders the sight : and if a little Spirit of Wine (about an eighth part) be added to it, it becomes profitable for sore, inflamed and running Eyes ; it strengthens the weakned part, and powerfully stops the Fluxion. It also cleanses Ulcers in the Eyes, dries, and heals them : And I was was informed by a very skilful Chirurgion, that he once cured a *Fistula Lachrymalis* therewith, by injecting it in, with a proper Syringe. This I am sure of, that it singularly cleanses, and dries hollow Ulcers in other parts of the Body, and disposes them to an effectual healing ; and dries up moist Scabs, and other breakings out like Scurf or Morpew, though of long standing, if it is assiduously used and applied for some time. Taken inwardly, from half an ounce to two ounces at a time, it prevails against Colds, Coughs, Hoarseness, Wheezings, shortness of Breath, difficulty of Breathing, and other disaffections of the Lungs. Being thus continued for some considerable time, I have known it to cure Ulcers of the Lungs ; the Patient drinking with it, new Milk warm, sweetned with double refined Sugar, drinking no other Liquor, and wholly forbearing all Wines, and Maulted Drinks.

XXX. *The Fixed Salt.* It is highly Antifebricitick and Diuretick. Dissolved to one dram in the Distilled Water, and so drank, it carries off the Morbifick cause of all Fevers by Urine, and cleanses all the Urinary parts of Gravel, Sand, and Tartar, lodged in them. It is also excellent good against the yellow Jaundice, and all Obstructions of the Liver, Spleen, Reins, and Womb. It dissolves Choler in the Body, and casts it out by Urine : Take of this Salt half an ounce : of the distilled Water a pint : mix and dissolve. This cures Cutaneous Diseases, and takes off Freckles from the Face, if constantly used for some time ; and also removes other deformities of the Skin.

XXXI. *The Essential Salt.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice and Essence, and may be given in all those cases from one dram to two or three drams at a time, in a glass of generous Wine, Morning and Evening. It is a great Stomatick, and Sweetener of the Blood ; a noble Antifebricitick ; and kills Worms in Young or Old, being taken for some time. It is highly Traumatick, and therefore good to be taken Dietetically, by such as have Wounds and Ulcers about them.

## CHAP. CXX.

### Of CELANDINE.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Χελιδόνιον*, *χὲ Χελιδόνιον τὸ μέγα* : In Latin, *Chelidonium*, and *Chelidonium majus*, *Hirundinaria major* : In Arabick, *Kauroch*, seu *Memiram* : and in English, *Celandine*, and *Celandine the Greater*. This latter name is given to it, because another Plant lesser than this, has the name of *Celandine* given to it, and is called the lesser ; and yet it has no Kin or Relation to it : and therefore for distinction sake, this is called *Celandine the Greater*. It is also sometimes called *Swallow-wort*, in answer to the latter Latin name. The name is said to arise from Swallows curing the Eyes of their young ones when

they were hurt, therewith ; but as it is a thing wholly fabulous, so we leave it.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold, 1. *Χελιδόνιον τὸ μέγα κοινόν*, *Chelidonium majus vulgare*, Common Great Celandine. 2. *Χελιδόνιον τὸ μέγα κοιλώδες*, *Chelidonium majus Laciniatum*, Jagged Celandine.



Common  
Great  
Celandine



Celandine

III. *The Description.* Common Celandine has a Root somewhat great at the Head, shooting forth several other long Roots, with small reddish Fibres or Strings springing from them, the inside being yellow, and full of a yellow Juice : From this Root springs



up several tender, round, whitish, green Stalks, with larger Joints than are ordinary in other Plants of like magnitude, like as it were knees, very brittle, and easie to break, from whence spring forth Branches of a dark blewish green color on the upper side, like unto Columbines, and of a more pale blewish green underneath, full of a yellow Juice or Milk, which issues forth, when any part is broken, of a bitter Taste, and strong Smell. At the tops of the Branches, which are much divided, grow gold yellow Flowers, having four Leaves a piece, after which come small long Cods, with blackish Seed therein.

IV. *The Jagged Celandine*, grows in its Roots and Stalks, and almost in all things else like unto the former, save that the Leaves are thinner, and the divisions slenderer, and more cut in on the edges: the Flowers consist also of four Leaves a piece, and are of the same golden yellow color, but somewhat larger than the other, and are each of them cut in on the edges, as the green Leaves are, for which reason Clusius calls it, *Chelidonium majus laciniato flore*; this, as the other, by shedding its Seed, rises again before Winter, and so continues flowering the next Spring, and seeding in Summer.

V. *The Places*. The first is nourished up by many in Gardens; but is also found growing Wild in many places by old Wall sides, and by the Hedges and Way sides in untilled ground in several parts of this Kingdom, delighting in shady places. The second is only found growing in Gardens.

VI. *The Times*. They both flower all the Summer long, from the Month of April; and in the mean season the Cods come to perfection, and yield ripe Seed.

VII. *The Qualities*. They are both hot and dry in the third Degree; and of an Absterfive or Cleansing Faculty; Aperitive, Sudorifick, Hepatick, Arthritick, Alterative and Alexipharmick.

VIII. *The Specification*. It is said to be a peculiar thing against the yellow Jaundice.

IX. *The Preparations*. You may have therefrom, 1. *The liquid Juice*. 2. *The Essence*. 3. *The Decoction in Wine*. 4. *The Pouder of the Root*. 5. *The Inspissate Juice*. 6. *The Distilled Water*. 7. *The Spirituous Tincture*. 8. *The Acid Tincture*. 9. *The Saline Tincture*. 10. *A Cataplasme*. 11. *A Mixture*.

#### *The Virtues.*

X. *The liquid Juice*. Being taken fasting from one ounce to two ounces mixed with a dram or two of Mithridate, and a Glas of Wine, it is of singular good use against the Plague or Pestilence, the Patient being laid to Sweat thereupon. The Juice dropped into the Eyes, cleanses them from Films, and Clouds which hinder the sight; more especially if mixed with a little of the Distilled Water, to allay it. It is also to good purpose used in old running Sores, and filthy and corroding Ulcers whereforever, to hinder their malignity, and stop their running and fretting, and to cause them the more speedily to heal. The Juice often applied to Warts, Corns, Tettars, Ring-worms, or such other like spreading Sores, destroys their Acrid Ferment, and also cures them.

XI. *The Essence*. It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, but much more powerful to the intentions, and may be given in the same Dose in Wine. It opens Obstructions of the Gall, Bladder, Liver, and Spleen, and prevails against the Dropsie, and yellow Jaundice.

XII. *The Decoction of the Herbs and Roots in Wine*. You may boil with them a few Anniseeds also. It has the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, and Essence, but not altogether so powerful. It cleanses much, and so is helpful against the Yellow Jaundice, and gargled in the Mouth eases the Tooth Ach.

XIII. *The Pouder of the Root*. Put upon Aching Gums or Teeth, or upon a loose or hollow Tooth, it will ease the Pain presently: and as Authors say, quickly cause them to fall out. *Vix Credo*. The over Credulous may easily make a Tryal.

XIV. *The Inspissate Juice*. This is thought to be better for the Eyes than the liquid Juice, because many of the sharp Particles by the Inspissation are Evaporated. You may dissolve it with a little Breast Milk, or Cows Milk, and so drop it into the Eyes, it is good against Clouds, Films, Blood-shot, Inflammations, Pearls, and other Diseases of the Eyes.

XV. *The Distilled Water*. It is said to be a good thing to clear the Eye-sight; and taken with a little Mithridate or Venice Treacle, and Sweating thereon, it is good against Malign and Pestilential Diseases; and may be used as a Vehicle for other Preparations.

XVI. *The Spirituous Tincture*. It has the Virtues of the Essence; and is a singular good thing against cold and moist Distempers of the Head, Nerves, Stomach, Liver and Womb. It prevails against Vertigo's, Lethargies, Convulsions, Cramps, Palsies, Lameness, Numbness, and Contortions of the Bowels. By the constant use of this Tincture for about six or seven Months, I knew a Man of about thirty six or thirty eight Years of Age, perfectly cured of the Palsie. Dose one, two or three drams at a time, Morning and Evening (and in very cold habits of Body, Morning, Noon, and Night) in a Glas of Madera, or other generous Wine. In Cramps and Convulsions it would be good to bathe the parts affected therewith: and in Palsies, to bathe those parts of the Back Bone, whose *Vertebrae* send Nerves to the places afflicted.

XVII. *The Acid Tincture*. It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice, and Essence, and is indeed a powerful thing against all Malign and Pestilential Fevers, for it actually destroys the malignity, and abates the heat of the Fever. Outwardly applied, it is found of singular good use to take away defecations, or defilements of the Skin.

XVIII. *The Saline Tincture*. It is good for those who are troubled with the Itch, or have old Sores in their Legs, or other parts of their Bodies: it also takes away Tanning, Sun-burning, Scurf, Morpew, black and blew Spots, and other discolorings and deformities of the Skin.

XIX. *The Cataplasme*. The Green Herb, with the Roots, being bruised, and made into a Cataplasme, with a little Oil of Camomil, and pouder of Orice Roots and Zedoary, and applied hot to the Navel, it eases the Gripping pains of the Belly and Bowels, as also the pains of the Mother. And applied to the Left side takes away Stitches, and eases the pains of the Spleen. Applied also to Womens Breasts, who have their Courses in too great a measure, it stops them, and gives great relief to disaffections of the Mamillary parts.

XX. *The Mixture*. *R of the liquid Juice four ounces: Oil Olive one ounce: Flowers of Sulphur an ounce and half: mix them*. It cures the Itch, Morpew, Scurf or Dandriff, scald Heads, discolorings of blows or Wounds, Tettars, Ring-worms, and other like discomposures of the Skin, being anointed therewith, Morning and Evening, for some time.

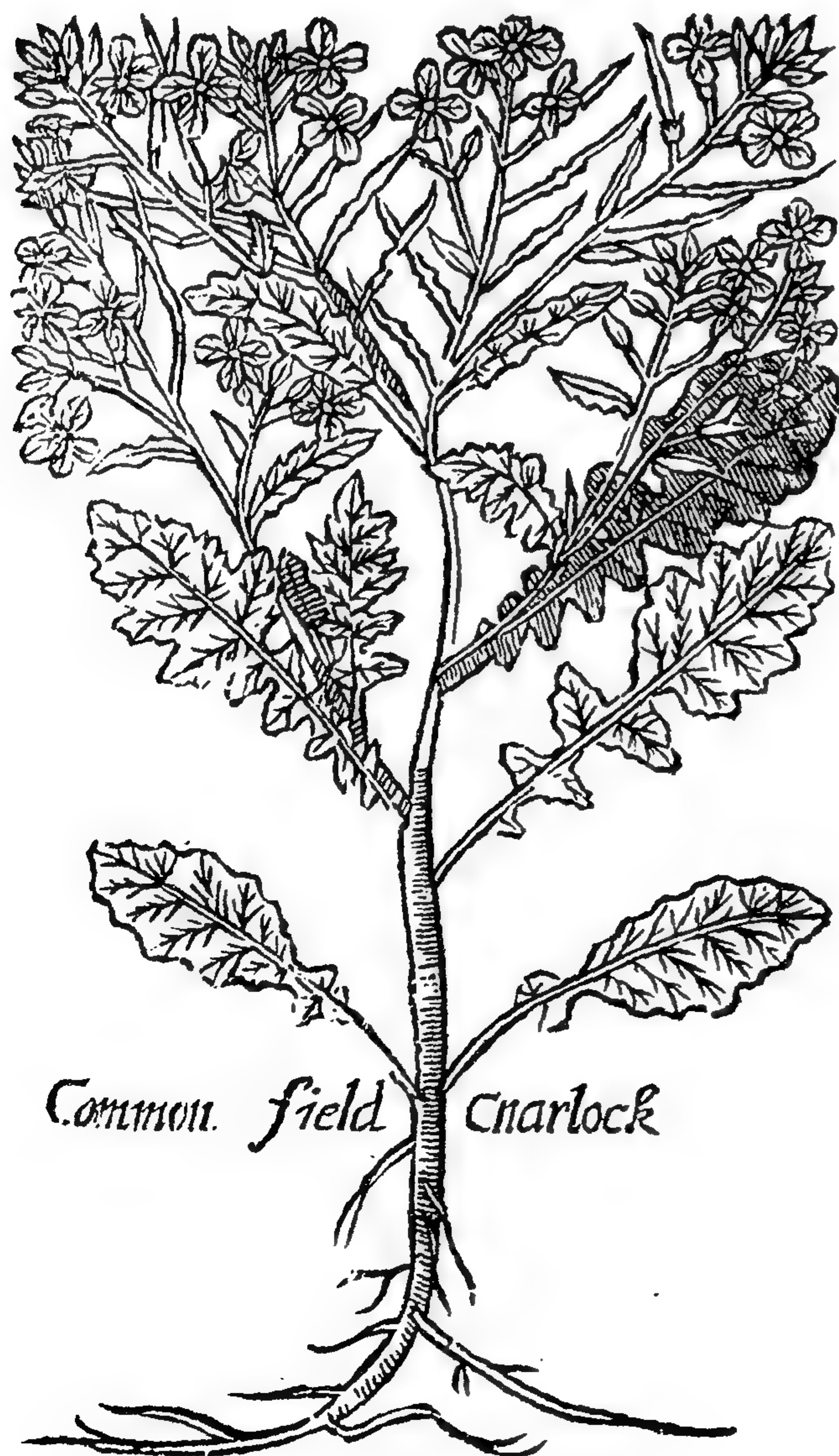


## C H A P. CXXI.

## Of CHARLOCK.

I. **T**HE Names. I do not find that this Plant was known to the Greeks, and so have no Greek name for it. It is called in Latin, *Rapistrum*: and in English, Charlock, Carlock, and Chadlock.

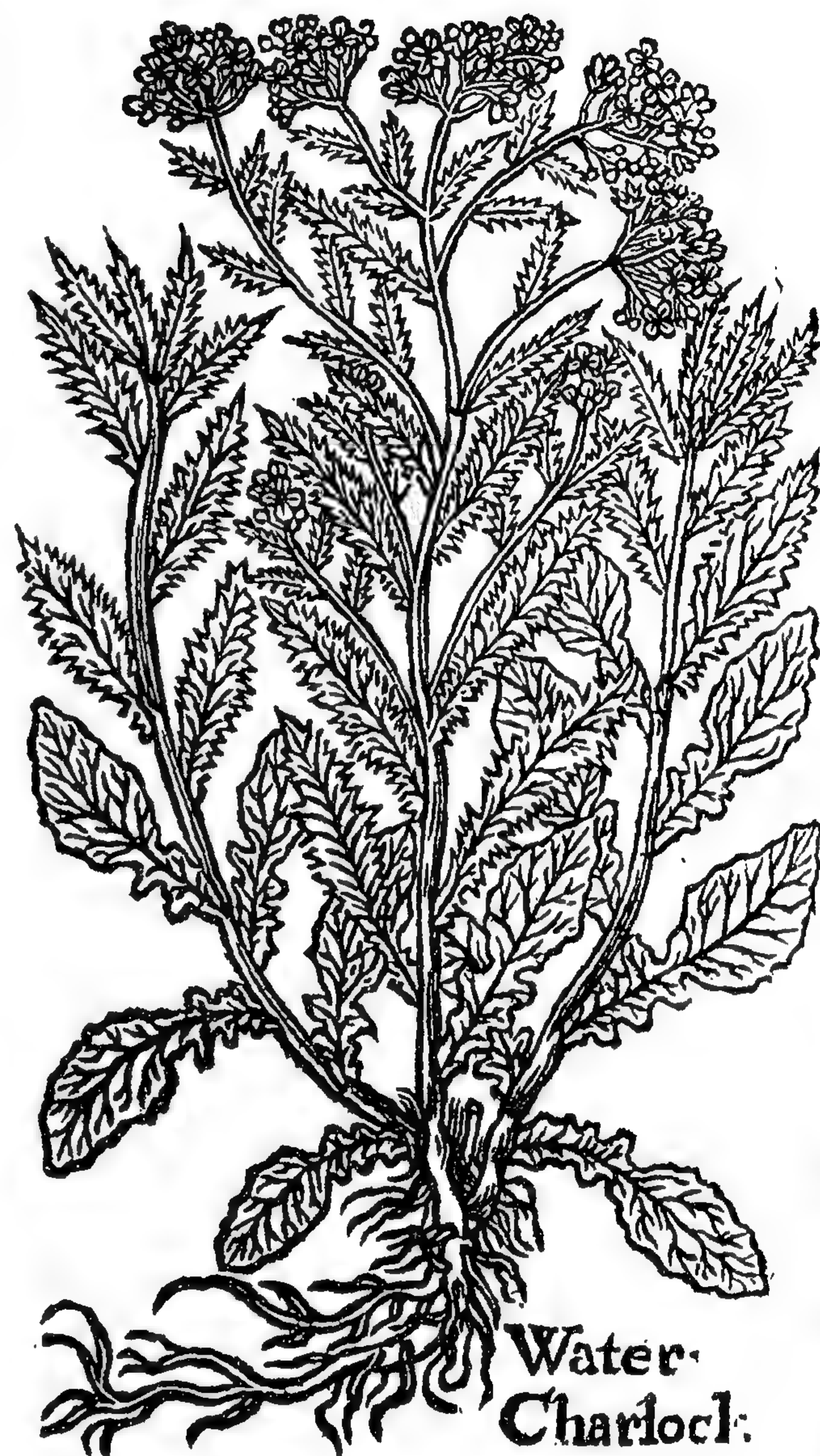
II. The Kinds. Some would have it to be a Species of the Wild Turnep, others of *Sinapi*; some of *Erysimum*; others refer them to the *Lampsana* of *Dioscorides*: but it took its name *Rapistrum*, à similitudine *Rapifoliorum*, for which reason it was that some have called it Wild Turnep. But taking it as Genus, There are several kinds of them to be found in England, viz. 1. *Rapistrum Commune*, Common Charlock. 2. *Rapistrum Sylvestre*, five Arvorum, Wild, or Field Carlock: *Matthiolus* calls it *Lampsana*; so also *Anguilara*, *Lonicerus*, *Lugdunensis*, *Gerard* and *Gesner*, in *Hortis*: *Fuchsius* and *Turner* call it *Irion*: *Baubin*, *Rapistrum flore luteo*. 3. *Rapistrum alterum Arvorum*, A second Field Charlock; which is also called by all the former names. 4. *Rapistrum album Articulatum*, White Field Charlock; which is the *Lampsana* of *Turner* and *Casalpinus*, who also calls it *Radix Sylvestris*: The third *Sinapi agreste* of *Tragus*: *Rapistrum flore albo Erucæ foliis Lobeli*; *Armoracia Tabermontani*; *Rapistrum flore albo siliqua articulata Bauhini*. 5. *Rapistrum Monospermon Bauhini*, One Grained Charlock. 6. *Rapistrum Aquaticum*, Water Charlock.



Common Field Charlock

III. The Descriptions. The first of these has slender Roots with several fibres or strings hanging at

them, which perishes when the Seed is ripe; from this Root rises Leaves almost like to the *Rapum Sylvestre*, but lesser, and smaller at the bottom, not jagged: among which rises a rough, slender, brittle, and somewhat hairy Stalk, a foot and half, or two feet high, having larger Leaves than the former, and somewhat jagged and Waved: The Stalk towards the top is divided into many Arms and Branches, on which do grow little yellowish Flowers, which make a great shew; but sometimes they are found to be of a purplish color; which being past there follows long Pods, sharp towards the end, containing several flattish Seeds, of a whitish yellow color.



Water Charlock.

IV. The second, has a Root long and white, which grows woody when it runs up to Stalk and Seed, and perishes after Seed time. From which Root springs forth many long and broad rough Leaves, hairy and green, lying upon the ground round about the Root, somewhat deeply gashed in on the edges, and round pointed: from among which rises up one slender hairy Stalk, seldom many, branched from the middle upwards into many Arms, with divers lesser Leaves on them to the tops; on which stand many yellow Flowers, having four or five Leaves a piece, which in a Hemp Land, or Corn Field make a mighty and glorious shew (but much to the Owners disprofit: ) after these Flowers are past, there follows long rough Pods, not very slender, with divers round, small, reddish brown Seed therein, like unto Mustard Seed, but larger, as quick and sharp in taste, but more bitter than it.

V. The third has a long Root, with many Fibres at it, like the former, which dies every year, from whence spring up many large Leaves waved in, a little rough or hairy, but not cut or jagged as the former, the upper Leaves being whole and smaller. The Stalk rises up rough and hairy like the others, of about eighteen Inches high, or more, spread out into many Branches; at the tops of which are a great number



number of pale yellow Flowers, which being passed away, long pointed Pods follow, rough like the former, and with a shew of divisions in them, in which are contained little round, and almost Ash-colored, sometimes reddish Seed.

VI. The fourth has a Root small and long in some Plants, in others thicker and rounder, near to the bigness of a small long rooted Turnep, which is Annual, or perishing every Year: From this Root there comes forth fewer Leaves than in the former, but smaller and rougher, and in some little or nothing jagged, but in others more: the Stalks are rougher and lower than the others, which also spread forth into Branches towards the top: and on the tops of which grow the Flowers, not so many as in the Common, or second kind, nor yet altogether so great or so yellow, but either of a pale yellow, or more white; after which come forth smaller rough Pods, with Joints or Divisions in them; in which are contained smaller brownish Seed, nothing near so fiery or hot, as in the first or second kind: of this kind also, some have been found with a purplish Flower.

VII. The fifth has a Root long and white, and somewhat Fibrous; from whence spring forth its lower Leaves, which are somewhat large, thick, and hairy, of a very fresh green color, torn on both edges at the bottom, but broader at the ends, where they are only waved: The Stalks also are a little rough and hairy, of about twelve or sixteen Inches, or more, high, set with a few such Leaves as the lowest, but smaller; towards the top they branch forth into long spikes of gold yellow Flowers, the length of three, four, or five Inches; which being past, there comes in their places small, round, striped Heads or Husks, with a small point at the end; containing in every one of them but one Seed, from whence came the name.

VIII. The sixth, which is the Water Charlock, has a Root long, tough, and full of strings, creeping and putting forth many Stalks; from whence comes forth Stalks of a Yard high, and sometimes more, with many Branches, slender and smooth, in respect to any of the rest, which are set with rough ribbed Leaves, deeply indented about the lower parts of the Leaf. The Flowers grow at top of the Branches in Umbel or Tuft fashion, sometimes of one color, and sometimes of another: the Seed Vessels are short and small, containing in them small Seed.

IX. The Places. The first has been found growing in divers places of England, as going from Shore-ditch by Bednal-Green to Hackney: The second, third, and fourth are found growing in Corn Fields, Hemp Lands, in Barren Grounds, and often by the Borders of Fields and Hedges, Bank-sides and Untilled Grounds, and such other like places: The fifth grows in many places of Germany, and with us is nourish'd up in Gardens. The sixth grows in moist Meadows, and Marsh Grounds, and in Water Ditches, and other plashy places.

X. The Times. They flower all April, and continue flowering till the Summer is far spent; and the Seed ripens in the mean time.

XI. The Qualities. The Seed is hot and dry in the third Degree; insomuch as some do make use of it instead of Mustard Seed, or mingle it therewith. It is Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomatick, Nephritick and Hysterick; Aperitive, Absterfive, and Diuretick: Alterative, Ptarmick, Mastivative, and Alexipharmick.

XII. The Specification. It opens the Obstructions of Brain and Nerves, and is good against the Palsie, weakness and trembling of the Nerves.

XIII. The Preparations. You may have from the Seed, 1. An Expressed Oil. 2. An Errhine. 3. A Sauce imitating Mustard. 4. A Spirit, like Spirit of Scurvy-grass. 5. A Spirituous Tincture. 6. An Oily Tincture. 7. A Saline Tincture. 8. A Cataplasm.

#### The Virtues.

XIV. The Oil by Expression. It discusses any cold Tumor, and eases pains proceeding from a cold Cause, being anointed upon the part warm, and well rubbed in. It is of good use to make Soap withal, instead of Oil Olive, and much exceeds Train or Whale Oil for that purpose; and where Butter and other Oil are wanting, it may serve to Fry with.

XV. The Errhine. It is made of the Seed by grinding it with fair Water, in a Boul, with a Bullet, then straining the thin or liquid part from the gross: this liquid part being sometimes snufft up the Nostrils, so as it may come out again at the Mouth, purges the Head and Brain effectually, by the Nostrils, of cold, moist and mucilaginous Humors, and by that means prevails against vehement and inveterate Head-achs, proceeding from a cold cause, Vertigo's, Lethargies, Carus, Apoplexy, Epilepsie, Convulsions, Palsie, and other like Distempers of the Brain and Nerves. And I have known by often using of it, in some who have been Dim sighted, or almost Blind, and in others who have had a constant flux of Rheum into their Eyes, for some considerable time, that it has cleared the sight, diverted the Rheum, and strengthened the Eyes so admirably, as if they had never ailed any thing at all.

XVI. The Sauce. It is made as Mustard, and so to be used: it strengthens the Stomach, sharpens the Appetite, and causes a good Digestion: but it is nothing near so pleasant as Mustard: applied immediately upon a Contusion where the skin is not broken, it discusses the Tumor, and prevents the afflux of Humors to the part.

XVII. The Spirit. It is admirable against the Scurvy in a cold habit of Body; it excites the Animal Spirits, and causes liveliness and cheerfulness in such as are Sleepy, Drowsie and Lethargick: and is indeed an excellent thing for such constantly to take of, who are Paralytick, or troubled with numbness, tremblings, and other weaknesses of the Nerves; more especially, if it is also bathed down along the Back-bone, and parts affected, Morning and Evening, and also taken from one dram to two drams, or more, Morning, Noon, and Night, in some convenient Antiparalytick, and Antiscorbutick Vehicle.

XVIII. The Spirituous Tincture. It has the Virtues of the Spirit, and in some cases more effectual, being more Stomatick than that is; and being bathed upon any part afflicted with a cold Tumor or Swelling, or with cold and moist Humors, or with Rheumatick Pains proceeding from cold, it warms and comforts the Part, discusses the Humors, and eases the Pain: mixed with White Wine, and used as an Errhine, it purges the Head and Brain of Cold Phlegmatick Matter which offends it, causing Head-achs, Vertigo's, Drowsiness, Lethargies, &c.

XIX. The Oily Tincture. It is used chiefly outwardly, in Gouts from a cold cause, in which it gives admirable ease. As also in Numbness, Trembling of the Limbs, and Palsies, in all which cases, it ought to be bathed all along upon the Back bone, from the Vertebrae of the Neck, almost to the Anus, and this to be repeated oftentimes, and well rubbed in both Morning and Evening; the parts affected,



ected are likewise to be bathed with the same. Anointed upon a Nerve prickt or hurt, it eases the Pain and Anguish, and abates the Tumor, if any be present.

XX. *The Saline Tincture.* If given inwardly, from half a dram to two drams, it opens Obstructions of the Urinary parts, and of the Womb; but it is of greatest use in outward Applications against Tanning, Sun-burning, Scurf, Morpew, Dandriff, and other like Defecations of the Skin; for it cleanses after a singular manner, by reason of its Volatile Particles.

XXI. *The Cataplasim.* Made of the Green Herb, but principally of the Seed, with the addition of a quarter part of Mithridate, and so much Orrice powder as will bring it to a consistence, and applied to cold flatulent Tumors, it discusses them: if Nature designs the Tumor for breaking, it brings it to maturation or ripeness, and that in a little time, because of its heat. If it is applied to the Gout, it eases the Pain, and attracts the Morbifick Humor through the Pores of the Skin, in manner of Sweat.

## C H A P. CXXII.

### Of C H E R R Y Winter.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, Στρυχνό, καὶ Στρυχνό ἀλικακασθόν: In Arabick, Keken-gi, & Alkekengi: In Latin, Alkakengi, Halicacabum, Solanum Halicacabum Theophrasti, Vesicarium Plinii, Saxifraga quarta rubra Brunfelsij, and Solanum Vesicarium: In English, Winter Cherries.

II. *The Kinds.* Parkinson says, it is one of the kinds of Solana, or Night-shades, set forth and spoken of by Dioscorides and Galen, and one of the two of Theophrastus. We make two Kinds thereof, 1. Halicacabum five Alkakengi Vulgare, Our Common Winter Cherry. 2. Halicacabum five Alkakengi Virginienfe, The Virginian Winter Cherry. There is another Plant, which some Authors have joined with Winter Cherries, and called it, Halicacabum Peregrinum, Vesicaria Peregrina, and Halicacabum Repens, Winter Cherries Creeping, as Tragus, Euchsus, Gesner, Matthioli, Dodonæus, and others; but Cordus opposes, and makes it another Plant: Bauhinus puts it among the Pease, as a kind thereof, and calls it Pisum Vesicarium: Lobel thinks it to be the Isopyum Dioscoridis, and calls it, Cor Indum, Pisum Indicum, and Pisum Cordatum; for all which Reasons, it being rather a Grain than a Berry, we have forbore to put it in this place: and so much the more also, because it is no Native or Denison of our Countrey, nor does it grow naturally, as some think, in any Part of Europe.

III. *The Description.* Our Common Winter Cherry has a running or creeping Root in the Ground, long, and not much unlike to the Roots of Quitch-grass, running very far abroad under the upper crust of the Earth, causing it greatly to encrease; it is sometimes of the thickness of ones little Finger, shooting forth at several Joints, and in several places, by which means it quickly fills a great piece of Ground. From this Root rises up a Stalk two or three Feet high, round, slender, smooth, and somewhat reddish, reeling this way, and that way,

by reason of its weakness: upon which come forth many broad and long green Leaves, not much unlike to those of Common Nightshade, but larger: at the Joints whereof, and among which Leaves come forth whitish Flowers, consisting of five small Leaves apiece: In the middle of which Flower comes forth a Berry, green at first, and red when it is ripe, like almost in color and bigness to our Common Red Cherries (whence the English name;) These Berries are enclosed in Skins, or Bladders, of a pale reddish color. In the Berry is contained a reddish Pulp, and the Seed lying in the same, which are many, small, and flat, and of a pale yellow color.



IV. *The American kind,* has a small Root spreading under ground, but not so far as the former, and perishes every Year. From this Root comes forth Branches with Leaves on the ground, scarcely rising up so much as the other, seldom above eighteen or twenty Inches high, (which I observed when in its perfection, and growing upon fertile ground) but the Branches are greater, as also are the Leaves, and something more uneven about the edges, of a sad, or deep green, almost of a Sea-green color: at the Joints come forth the Flowers singly, to wit, one at a place, and more towards the bottom than upwards (this I observed not, for I always found each Plant very full of Fruit, almost from the bottom to the very top:) but as they grow to the height of the Branches, both Flowers and Fruit are rather smaller than those which are below: the Flowers are composed of five small whitish Leaves, with a Circle of red, or every Leaf is spotted Circle-wise towards their bottoms: the Flowers being past there follows the Fruit, enclosed in a thin Skin or Bladder, of a whitish, or pale greenish color; and not full out so big as the former. Within this Husk or Bladder is contained the Berry, which never grows full out so large as our English Winter Cherry, yet whilst recent, fills almost the Bladder in which it is contained: when the Cherry or Berry comes to its perfection, it is never red, but of a pale whitish green color,



color, sometimes of an Amber color, or of a light palish yellow; and sometimes those which the Sun looks full upon, may have some small streaks of red, mixed with Amber-colored and pale yellowish green colored. The Berry contains a Pulp like the English, but whitish yellow, or green, in which Pulp is contained the Seed, which is small and flat, like the other, and of a whitish color.

V. *The Places.* The first grows by Hedge sides, and old Walls, and about the Borders of Fields, in moist and shadowy places (this it may possibly do, in several Southern Regions and Countries beyond Sea) but with us it grows chiefly in *Gardens*. The other grows Wild in *English Plantations in Virginia*. I found it growing in a Plantation up *Wadmalaw River in Carolina*, and in several other Plantations of that Country, where it grew spontaneously, and that in vast plenty. *Parkinson* makes mention of a third kind of *West India Alkakengi*, which I take to be the same with that before described, and differs from it only in largeness, and strength of its Stalks, Branches and Berries, which I believe arises only from the differing goodness of the Soil, they being in all other respects exactly the same. I have found them both growing on the same ground, but could not possibly take them to be two differing Species of the same Genus.

VI. *The Times.* They Flower about the middle or latter end of *July*; and the Fruit is ripe about the latter end of *August*. In *Carolina* they flower something earlier.

VII. *The Qualities.* The Herb is cold and moist in the second Degree, not Aperitive: but the Berries are of the same Quality, and Opening; Diuretick, Nephretick, Alterative, and Lithontripectick.

VIII. *The Specification.* They are peculiar against Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, and to help in the Strangury, Stone, Gravel, Sand, and Tartarous matter, lodged in those Parts.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom,  
1. A Distilled Water from the Fruit or Leaves.  
2. A Juice of the Fruit made with White Wine.  
3. An Infusion or Decoction of the Berries. 4. A Diet Drink. 5. A Pouder of the Berries. 6. An Oil of the Root. 7. A Cataplasme of the Leaves or Fruit.

#### *The Virtues.*

X. *The Distilled Water.* It is Cooling and Diuretick: It may be Distilled from the Fruit or Leaves with a little Milk. It may be drank from two ounces to five or six, sweetned with a little Sugar, Morning and Evening, against the Strangury, heat of Urine, and all the Distempers of the Urinary Parts.

XI. *The Juice of the Fruit.* It may be given from one ounce to two, in a glass of White Port Wine, against Stone, Gravel, Sand, Tartarous Mucilage, or what ever stops the Urine in either Reins, Ureters, or Bladder: but it is not so powerful as the powder.

XII. *The Infusion or Decoction of the Berries in White Wine, or Water.* It opens the Urinary Parts, and is an excellent thing against the Strangury, provoking the Urine plentifully when it is stopped, or grows hot, sharp, or painful in the passage. It is good to expel the Stone and Gravel out of the Reins and Bladder, helping (where it is composed of a gritty Substance) to dissolve it, and to expel and send it forth by Urine in form of Sand or Gravel. It is good to cleanse inward Apostemations, and Ulcers in the Urinary Parts, and to relieve such as make a foul, filthy, or stinking Urine, or that piss Blood. It is profitable also against the Jaundice,

by carrying off the Morbifick Cause by Urine. Dose from four to eight ounces, Morning, Noon, and Night: and to be continued as the Exigency of the Disease requires.

XIII. *The Diet Drink.* It is made of the Berries put up into new Wine, when it is new made, that working with the Berries therein, their Virtues may be drawn forth into the Wine. Or because our Country affords not new Wine in the *Must*, you may put them into new Beer, or Ale, as you set them to Work, and also Tun them up therewith, that they may fully Work with the same. The proportion is two large handfuls, whilst green, to a Gallon of Wine or Ale: and one large handful well bruised when dry. This may be drank as ordinary drink, but at least a Pint of it Morning, Noon and Night. It has all the Virtues of the Infusion or Decoction.

XIV. *The Pouder.* It is made of the dried Berries, in which the Seeds themselves are reduced into a Pouder. The Dose is from fifteen grains to half a dram, Morning and Night, in a Glass of White Port Wine. Or you may Infuse it in the same Wine, two ounces of the Pouder to three Quarts of Wine, letting it stand in a cold Digestion a Month before hand, shaking the Bottle every day. When you drink it, shake the Bottle, and pour it out thick and thin together, and let the Patient take a quarter of a Pint at a time, Pouder and all, Morning and Evening, and continue this course till he has found the desired relief. This Pouder, and thus taken, is much more efficacious than either the Infusion, Decoction, or Diet; and ought to be very much valued of such as are troubled or afflicted with the Stone, Strangury, or stoppage of Urine.

XV. *The Oil of the Root.* It is good against the poisonous stroke of the Scorpion: This Oil being applied, *Parkinson* says, it is powerful against their stinging. *Pliny* says, that the Root hereof is so powerful to stupifie the Venom of the Scorpion, that if it be put to them, they will utterly loose their strength.

XVI. *The Cataplasme.* It is cooling, and profitable to be applied to allay the heat of Inflammations, and to ease pains coming from a cold cause.

## CHAP. CXXIII.

### of CHERVIL Garden.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek*, *Χαίρεφυλλον*, and is thought to be *ανθακινον* *Theophrasti, lib. 7. cap. 7.* translated by *Gaza, Enthusicum*: In *Latin*, *Cerfolium*, and *Charifolium*: In *English*, *Chervil*.

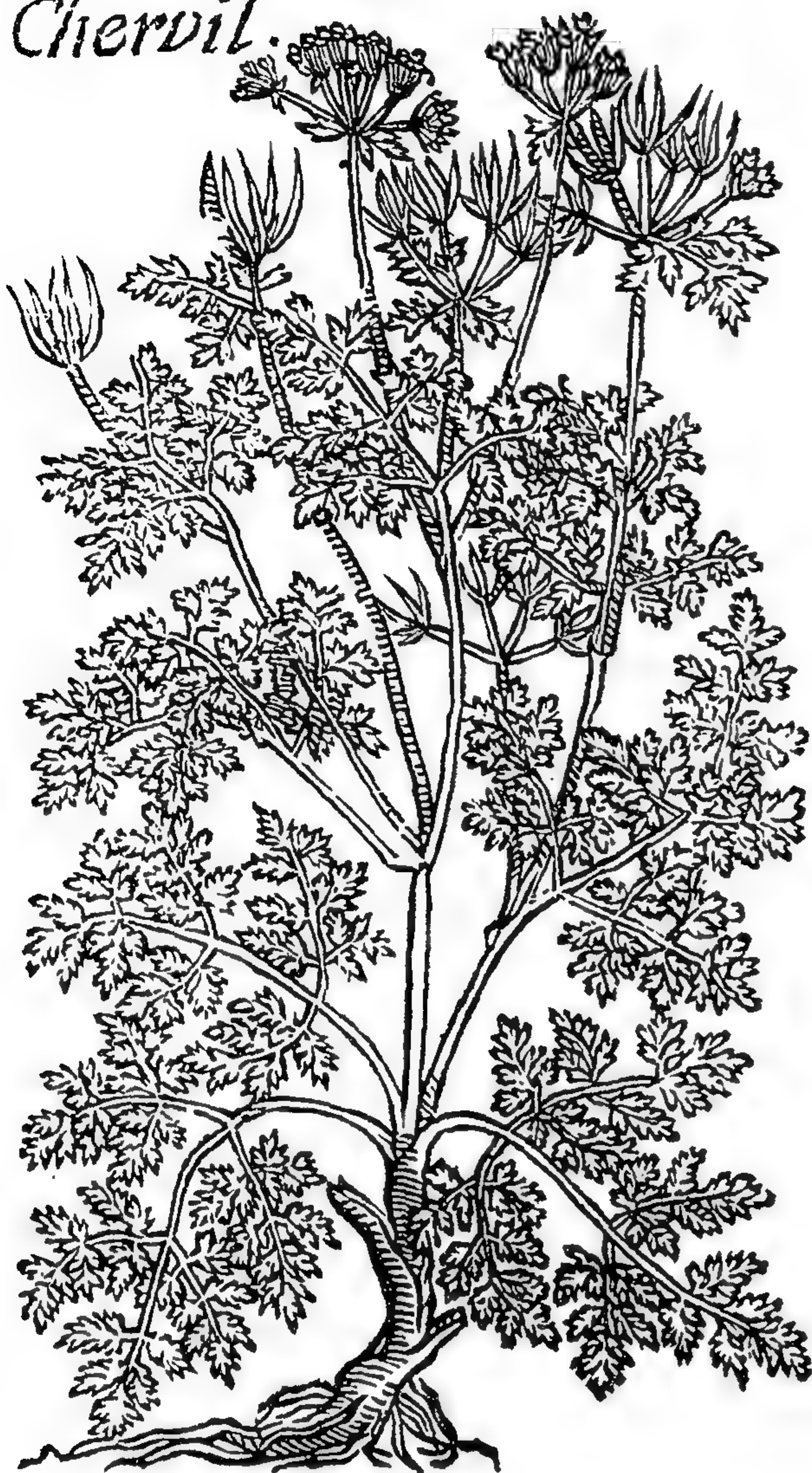
II. *The Kinds.* It is threefold, 1. *Garden*. 2. *Wild*. 3. *Tooth-pick Chervil*. The *Garden Chervil* is threefold, 1. The *Common Garden*, called *Cerfolium Sativum*. 2. The *Great Sweet Chervil*, *Sweet Cifley*, called *Cerfolium magnum*, *sive Myrrhis*. 3. The *Small Sweet Chervil*, *Small Sweet Cifley*, called, *Myrrhis altera parva*. The *Wild* we shall treat of in *Cap. 124.* and the *Tooth-pick Chervil* in *Cap. 125.* following.

III. *The Description.* *Garden Chervil* has a small and long Root, which perishes every Year, and is raised up every Year, with Seed sown in the Spring, as also in Autumn for Salleting. It rises up with Stalks not a foot high, and in its Leaves much resembles Parsley, but after it is grown bigger, the Leaves are very much cut in and jagged, somewhat resem-



resembling Hemlock, being a little hairy, and of a whitish green color, but turning reddish in Summer, with the Stalks also, bearing at the top of its Branches spoked Tufts of white Flowers, which being past, turn into long and round Seed, pointed at the ends, and blackish when they are ripe, of a sweet taste, but no smell; but the whole Herb it self, has a pretty kind of sweet Scent.

### Chervil.



### Great Chervil or Sweet Cifley



IV. The Great Chervil, (called also Sweet Cifley) has a great Root, blackish on the out side, and whitish within, from which springs forth many fibres; it perishes not, but abides many years, and is of a

sweet, pleasant, hot, spicie Taste, pleasing unto many: From this Root comes forth several Stalks of winged Leaves, consisting of many Leaves set together, deeply cut in on the edges, and every one also dented about, very like, and resembling the Leaves of Garden Cresses, from which they are not easily to be distinguished, but by good observation of those who know both: Their taste is not unpleasant (for which reason many put them into Sallets) and is not much differing from the Taste of Aniseeds: There also rises up a Stalk reasonable large, and a little crested, about a yard high, spreading it self out into many Branches, at the tops whereof stand many spiky Tufts or Umbles of white Flowers, which being past away, there follows brown, long, cornered, great Seed, two always joined together.

V. The Small Sweet Chervil, (or Small Sweet Cifley) has a Root not like the former, but consisting of almost nothing but fibres, thick and matted together; its Leaves, Stalks, and Umbles of Flowers differ not much from the last, saving that they are every ways less. The Seed is long, smooth, small, and shaped like to an Oat, and in taste not much unlike to that of Daucus Creticus.

VI. The Places. The two first grow in Gardens, and that almost throughout this whole Kingdom: The last is found in some parts of the Alps, as about Genoua, and other places, but with us only in Gardens of Botanists, and such as are curious of Plants.

VII. The Times. They Flower and Seed in May, and their Seed is ripe in July: and therefore are Sown again in the end of Summer.

VIII. The Qualities. It is hot and dry in the first Degree; Galen says in the second: Aperitive, Absterfiv, Carminative, Digestive, Diuretick and Anodyn. It warms and comforts the Head, Brain, Nerves and Stomach, is Pectoral, Nephritick and Hysterick: Also Alterative, Alexipharmick and Spermatogenetick.

IX. The Specification. It is found by great experience to comfort the Stomach, and provoke Urine, even where it is stopd.

X. The Preparations. You may have herefrom, 1. The Green Root. 2. The green Herb. 3. The green Seed. 4. The Distilled Water. 5. The Liquid Juice. 6. The Essence. 7. The Balsam, or Ointment. 8. The Roots Candied. 9. The Decottion of the Roots in Wine.

### The Virtues.

XI. The green Root. Gerard says, they are excellent to be eaten in a Sallet, being first boiled, and then drest up to the Table, as the Cook can tell best, either with Butter and Vinegar, or Oil and Vinegar. They are good (says he) for old People which are Dull, and without Courage: they rejoyce and comfort the Heart, strengthen and provoke Lust much.

XII. The green Leaves. They are very good, wholsom and pleasant, being eaten raw as a Sallet Herb with other Salleting, giving the whole a little relish of Aniseeds. Used as a Pot-herb, it is pleasant to the Stomach; and is used by the Dutch in a kind of Loblolly or Hotchpotch, which they call Warmus.

XIII. The green Seed. Parkinson says, they are commended, being put into a Sallet of green Herbs, and eaten with Oil and Vinegar, to strengthen the Aged, and comfort a cold Stomach. Gerard says, that the green Seed eaten as a Sallet, with Oil, Vinegar, and Pepper, exceed all other Sallets by many Degrees, both in pleasantness of Taste, sweetness of Smell, and wholsomeness as for Food, being good for a cold and weak Stomach.

XIV. The



XIV. *The Distilled Water.* Being drank to four or six ounces, it is good to dissolve congealed Blood, and provoke Urine.

XV. *The Liquid Juice.* It dissolves congealed Blood in the Stomach, Guts, Pleura, Lungs, Womb, or other Bowels: it provokes Urine, and the Terms in Women, and to expel Sand, Gravel, and Stones out of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder: and prevails also against the Pleurisie, very much comforting a weak, sick, and cold Stomach. Dose four ounces, Morning and Night, in a Glass of Wine.

XVI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice, besides which it facilitates the Birth, and brings away the After-birth, is good against Poison, and the Venomous biting of the *Phalangium*, as *Dioscorides* saith, is nutritive, and restores in Consumptions: Being often taken it breeds Seed, and very much provokes Lust, and has restored some who have been Impotent.

XVII. *The Balsam and Ointment.* They soon cure green Wounds, and digest them, if Contused or Lacerated: Applied to filthy, stinking, and fordid Ulcers, they digest, cleanse, dry, conglutinate, and heal admirably: and applied to the Gour, they ease the pain thereof, drawing forth the Morbifick matter thro' the Pores of the Skin.

XVIII. *The Candied Roots.* They are very good to warm, comfort and strengthen a cold and weak Stomach, and excite *Venus*: And *Parkinson* says, they are thought to be a good Preservative in the time of Plague.

XIX. *The Decoction of the Roots in Wine.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not all out so powerful: It is good against the bitings of Vipers, Mad Dogs, and other Venomous Creatures; is profitable against the Phthisick, and such as have an Impotency, or are in a pining Consumption. Dose, Morning and Night, from four to eight ounces.

## C H A P. CXXIV.

### of CHERVIL Wild.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Χαρύφύλλον ἄγριον*: In Latin, *Cerfolium*, or *Cherfolium Sylvestre*: and in English, *Wild Chervil*.

II. *The Kinds.* This is the second Species of Chervils, and is threefold: 1. *Charophyllum Bauhini*, *Cerfolium Sylvestre Vulgare*, Common Wild Chervil. 2. *Myrrhis Æquicolum nova Fabij Columæ*, Small Hemlock Chervil. 3. *Cicutaria alba Lugdunensis*, *Cicutaria Palustris Camerarij*, Wild Cilley.

III. *The Descriptions.* Wild Chervil, has a whitish woody Root, from which rise up round about it, round, red, and hairy Stalks, a yard high, or more, many times large, and swoln about the Joints, which Stalks are not hollow, but full of Pith: towards the top they are divided into many Branches, which have on their tops Umbles of small and very fine white little Flowers, which being passed away, are succeeded by longish Seeds. The Leaves are commonly parted into three principal parts; and each part again subdivided into five, which are snipt about the edges, soft, hairy, and of a dark green, or reddish color.

IV. Small Hemlock Chervil, has a Root small and white, which when it has perfected its Seed, perishes every Year: from which rise up Stalks slender, hollow, smooth, not hairy, and seldom exceeding the height of two feet. They are divided into several

Branches, against the Leaves, so that they spring out of Bosoms, as it were, of the Leaves, which carry Umbles of small white Flowers; after which follow the Seeds, rough, hairy, round and longish, about the bigness of Aniseeds, and growing two together. The Leaves are small, and finely cut or divided, like those of Hemlock, but of a whitish color, and hairy.



V. Wild Cilley, has a Root very large, and divided into several parts, white, and spongy, of a pleasant strong Smell, and with a hot and biting taste: This Root, tho' the Stalks fade and perish, yet lives, and the Leaves are green all the Year. The Stalks (if they grow in good ground) come to be three or four feet high, are hollow, jointed, pretty thick, green, and much Crested, sending forth out of the bosoms of the Leaves many Branches, which have on their tops, Umbles of white Flowers, each Flower consisting of five little Leaves; of which the lowest is twice as big as the rest; the two side ones less; the uppermost the least of all. The Leaves are large like those of Myrrhis, or Sweet Cilley; but of a dark green color; and those which grow on the Tops of the Stalks, are commonly divided into three parts, and those again subdivided into several long sharp pointed and snipt Leaves, like those in Sweet Cilley, the Seeds are longish, round, sharp pointed, black and shining. This Plant may very well be called Wild Cilley, for that it so much resembles the Garden Sweet Cilley, not only in its form, but (as Authors believe) in its Virtues too.

VI. *The Places.* The first grows almost in every Hedge, and by every Hedge side: The second, about Mudd Walls, High Ways, and such like places, about London, and many other parts of the Kingdom: it is but a small Plant. The third is found very frequently in all places, especially where the ground is moist and fat, in Meadows, Orchards, and the like.

VII. *The Times.* The first flowers in June and July, and the Seed ripens in the mean Season, or not



not long after. The second comes up in March, flowers in May, and its Seed ripens in June. In Italy they eat the young Leaves in Sallets, and call it *Wild Chervil*. The third flowers also in May and June, and its Seed ripens in the mean Season, or not long after.

VIII The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are said to be the same with the *Garden Chervil*, to which I refer you. Parkinson says, that *Wild Chervil* will help to dissolve any Tumor or Swelling, and that in any part of the Body, as also to take away the spots and marks in the Flesh and Skin, proceeding from Congealed Blood, by bruises or blows, in a short time, by applying it (bruised I suppose) to the place.

IX. A Cataplasim of the green Herbs and Roots. I once knew a Man who had been for a long time, even for many years, afflicted with the Gout; so that sometimes for four, five or six Months together he could neither go nor stand, which put him so much out of heart, as to think himself past all cure. A Beggar Woman going by, and begging at the Door, at such time as the Paroxysm was upon him, and understanding by some Discourses the Masters illness, told them she would cure him: she advised him to apply a Pultice of green *Wild Chervil* to the parts afflicted, and to renew it as often as he saw need: (fetching to him also at the same time some of the Herb, that he might know it:) he did so, following exactly the Beggar Womans advice, and he had in a little time ease, and in less than a Months time a perfect Cure. If at any time afterwards he found any Grumbling Pain, in the same parts, or in any other, he had still recourse to the same remedy, and averr'd upon his faithful word, that he never apply'd this Cataplasim in vain.

## C H A P. CXXV.

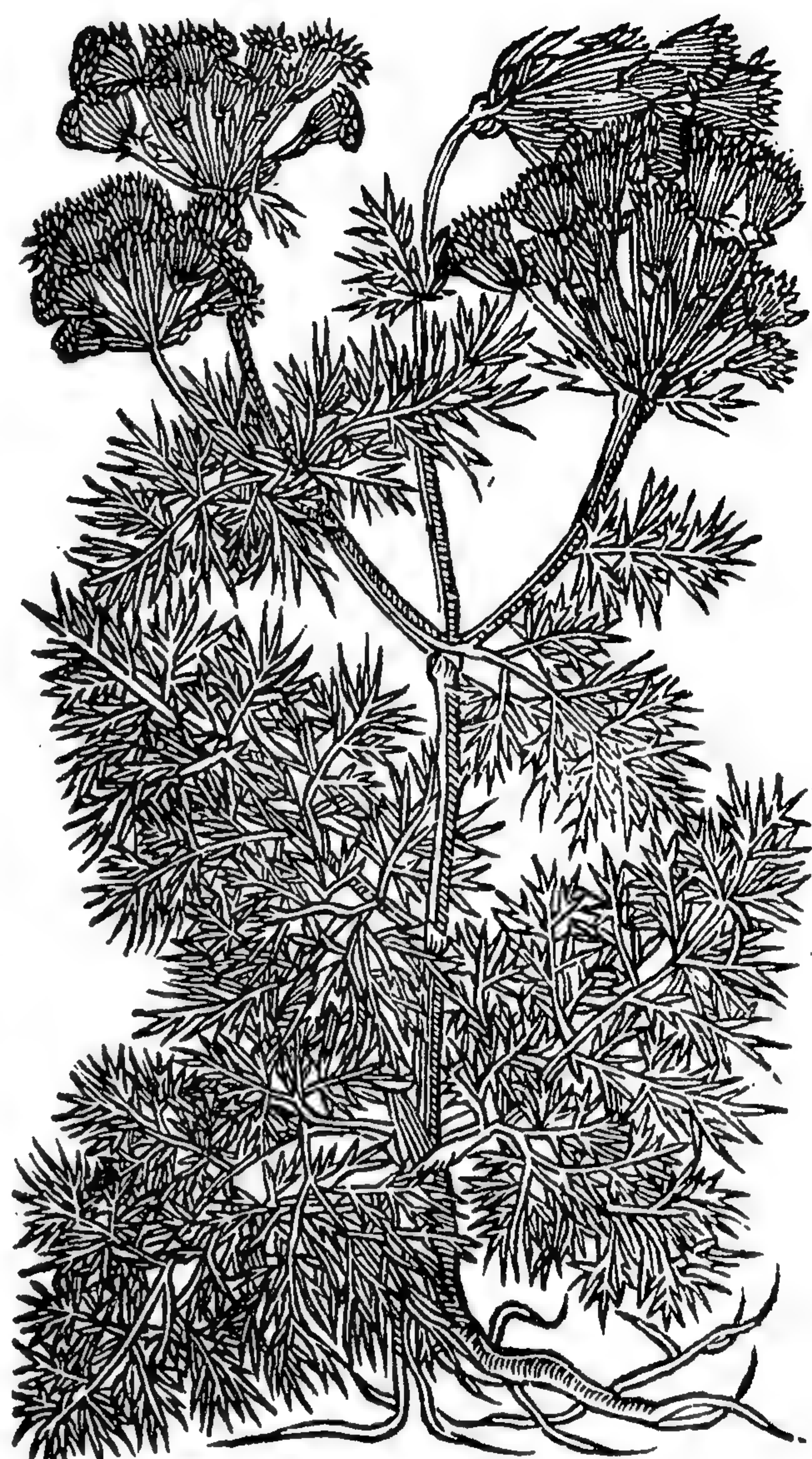
### Of C H E R V I L Tooth-pick.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Τρυγιδιον*: In Latin, *Gingidium*, and *Bisacuta*: In English, *Tooth-pick Chervil*, and *Strange Chervil*. The Syrians call it *Visnaga*, as *Rauwolfius* saith.

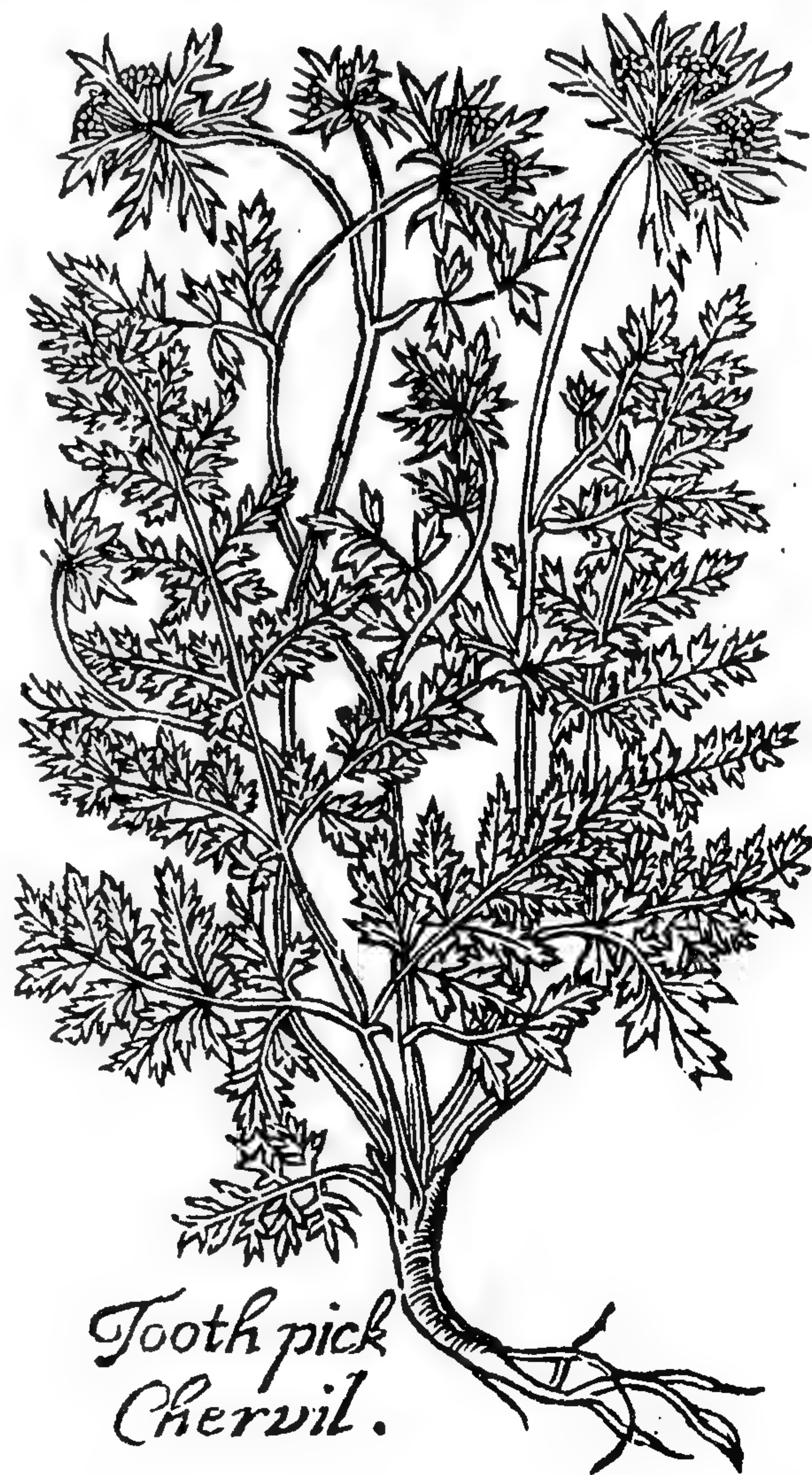
II. The Kinds. There are three principal kinds, 1. *Gingidium verum*, five *Syriacum Dioscoridis*, *Syrian Tooth-pick Chervil*, called in that Language *Visnaga*. 2. *Gingidium Hispanicum Matthioli*, The Spanish kind. 3. *Gingidium Chærefolij*, *Folij Tabernmontani*, *Tooth-pick Chervil*, with *Chervil* Leaves.

III. The Descriptions. The first has a Root almost like a Carrot Root, not great, but long, white and woolly, perishing every Year after Seed-time, which is the same Year it is Sown, or else springing up late, and not shooting up into Stalks for Seed, it will abide a Winter: from this Root it grows up with an upright Stalk, somewhat rough, branching forth from the very ground almost, on which are set Stalks of fine cut Leaves, smaller than Fennel, especially those on the Stalks and Branches, for the lowest are a little broader. At the tops of the Branches grow broad Umbles of white Flowers, somewhat purplish in the middle, which Umbles before they flower, hang down their Heads, and after the Flowers are past, the Umbles do contract, or draw themselves rounder, the outward parts being higher than the middle, which then is so hollow, that it represents a Birds Nest, something like to the Umbles of the Wild Carrot: The Flowers being past, there succeeds a great plen-

ty of very small Seed. The whole Plant has a kind of Resinous Taste and Smell. There is another sort also of *Syrian Chervil*, which has but a few Stalks of winged Leaves, almost like to *Parfneps*, but that every divided Leaf is broad and round, but lesser; the Stalk is somewhat hairy, crested, small, low, and naked of Leaves to the top, whereon grow several long Stalks with Umbles of white Flowers, and two or three small long leaves with them, whose Smell and Taste is like the former.



The True Tooth Pick Chervil.



Tooth pick Chervil.

IV. The Spanish Kind, has a Root long and white, from whence rises up a Stalk higher than the first Syrian kind, and is every ways greater, as to the whole.



whole, but the Stalk is more slender than it, and the Leaves more tender at the Joints, thicker, and more finely cut at the tops, on which stand large Umbles of white Flowers, divided into many parts, and standing upon long Stalks, which when the Seed grows ripe and hard, being long and slender, will serve very well for Tooth-pickers. Gerard says, that in its Leaves, Flowers, and knobby Stalks, it is like unto Wild Carrots, saving that the Leaves are somewhat finer cut, or jagged, and tenderer, but not rough or hairy at all, of a reasonable good Smell, and a bitter Taste, among which rise up bushy rundles, or spoky Tufts, like those of the Wild Carrot or Birds Nest, which are closely drawn together, when the Seed is ripe, at what time the sharp Needles are hardened, fit to make Tooth-pickers of, and for which purpose they very well serve; and from thence came the English name.

V. *The third kind has a Root long, white, and bitterish, from which spring up divers Stalks of winged Leaves, very like unto the Common or Ordinary Garden Chervil, but not divided into so many parts: the Stalk is round, straked and blackish, about a foot and half high, with Joints and Leaves like the others. The Umbles of white Flowers, are encompassed about with smaller and finer cut Leaves; when the Flowers are past, the Umble is contracted together, which are clammy, and in which lies small Seed.*

VI. *The Places.* They all grow in Syria; The second in Spain plentifully: but with us they are only nourished up in Gardens.

VII. *The Times.* They flower in July and August, and the Seed is ripe in October; but with us they flower late, and therefore the Seed is much later; so that if the Year is not hot and kindly, the Seed will scarcely ripen, or come to perfection with us.

VIII. *The Qualities.* They are said to be temperate in respect of heat or cold, and dry in the end of the Second Degree: Astringent, Stomack, and Alterative. They are more used as Nutriment than Medicine, both in former times and now, for Dioscorides and Galen say more concerning their Edible Properties, being eaten raw or boiled, or otherways ordered, according to several Mens liking, for that they are bitterish, and a little Styptick, and so the more welcome and agreeable to the Stomach: But Galen says, that they are rather Medicinal than Nutritive, for that though they may have a temperate Quality, as to heat and cold, yet that they have a manifest bitterness and astringency, by both which properties, though they may be very agreeable to the Stomach, yet they are more of the Nature of a Medicine, than of Food; for that by those Properties, they cleanse and dry up the moist Humors, which by superabounding, may offend the Stomach, and by it the Liver, and other parts.

IX. *The Specification.* Besides strengthening the Stomach, as aforesaid, they are proper against Diseases of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, and to provoke Urine.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *The Juice.* 2. *The Essence.* 3. *The Decoction in Wine.* 4. *The Spirituous Tincture.* 5. *The Acid Tincture.* 6. *The Oily Tincture.* 7. *The Quils on which the Seed does grow.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XI. *The liquid Juice.* It is good against Vomiting, and strengthens the Stomach; it provokes Urine, and expels Sand and Gravel from the Reins and Bladder. The Dose is three or four ounces, Morning and Evening, in a Glass of White Port Wine.

XII. *The Essence.* It has the Virtues of the Juice; but strengthens the Stomach more, and is withal more Diuretick. Dose three or four ounces in White Port Wine.

XIII. *The Decoction in Wine.* It is an admirable Stomack; and being drunk to six or eight ounces, Morning, Noon, and Night, it opens Obstructions, and cleanses the Reins and Urinary parts of Sand, Gravel, small Stones, and Tartarous Slime lodged in those parts; but it is not full out so powerful as the Essence.

XIV. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It strengthens the Stomach, helps Digestion, cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, and comforts Universal Nature. Dose a spoonful at a time.

XV. *The Acid Tincture.* It stops Vomiting, cleanses the Stomach of Tartar, and Viscosity, causes a good Appetite, and helps Wheezing, Hoarseness, and shortness of Breath.

XVI. *The Oily Tincture.* It is Nephritick and Diuretick, cleanses the Reins and Bladder, and so is good against Stone and Strangury. Dose twenty or thirty Drops in White Port Wine.

XVII. *The Quils, Needles, or Tooth-pickers.* They serve to pick and cleanse the Teeth and Gums of any thing sticking in them, which they do without any hurt to them, and leave a good scent in the Mouth.

## C H A P. CXXVI.

### of CHICHLINGS Annual:

I. **T**HE Names. I do not find that it has any Greek name: The Latins call it *Lathyrus*, which is a kind of Pease, (and differs from *Lathyrus*, Spurge: ) We in English call it *Chichling*:

II. *The Kinds.* It is either *Perennial* or *Annual*: The *Perennial* we shall treat of when we come to treat of *Pease Everlasting*. The *Annual* is the subject matter of this Chapter: They are 1. *Lathyrus Annuus major Baticus*, The Great Spanish Annual Chichling. 2. *Lathyrus Baticus elegans, siliquis Orobi*, Spanish party-colored Chichling. 3. *Lathyrus major siliqua brevi*, The greater short-codded Chichling. 4. *Lathyrus minor siliqua brevi*, The lesser short-codded Chichling. 5. *Lathyrus, sive Cicercula flore albo, Aracus Dodonæi, Ervum Lacunæ, Pisum Græcorum Tragi, Ervum album sativum Fuchsi, Ervum angulosum aliquibus*, White flowered Winged Chichling. 6. *Lathyrus, sive Cicercula flore purpureo, Aracus sive Cicera Dodonæi*, Purple flowered Winged Chichling. 7. *Lathyrus, sive Cicercula Batia flore Cæruleo, Aracus Hispanicus Camerarij, Cicercula Ægyptica Clusij*, Blew flowered Winged Chichling. 8. *Lathyrus, sive Cicercula flore rubente*, Red flowered Winged Chichling. 9. *Lathyrus, sive Cicercula Batia Dumetorum*, Wood Chichling.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first of these has a Root small, not running deep nor far, but perishing every Year; from whence proceeds two or three flat Stalks, three feet or more long, wadded as it were with skins or films on both edges, having two small Leaves apiece at each Joint, from whence shoot forth the Branches, bearing two pretty long and broad Leaves about the middle thereof, one opposite to another, with a twining Clasper or Tendrel running between them. The Flowers stand singly upon long Footstalks, of a deeper purple color, but lesser than the *Perennial*: after which come long pale colored



Cods, very like the Perennial, as the Pease within them also are.

IV. The second has a small Root, from whence spring up Branches or Stalks five or six Feet long, with such like Welts, or skinny Membranes on both edges at every Joint, from whence come forth long Leaves, divided at the top into two other smaller Leaves; and higher upwards set with six Leaves on both sides: and in the middle between them comes forth a small Clasper or Tendrel, by which it catches hold of every thing which stands next unto it. At the Joints also come forth the Flowers, either one or two at the most, upon long Footstalks, like unto the other kind, the upper Leaf of a fine Crimson, or Orange color, and the other in the middle of a perfect White. After the Flowers are past, comes the Pease or Seed in long Cods, every Seed bunching out, as in the Cods of Orobus, and as large almost as the smaller Pease.

Greater short coddled Cichling



V. The third has a small slender Root, from whence rises up several Stalks, which lye upon the ground, unless supported by something standing near them: in its manner of growing it differs but little from the former; but its Leaves are something longer, turning a little roundish, almost Cicle fashion'd. The Flower has its inner Leaves white, and the outward somewhat purplish, the Cods which follow are thick and short, which contain within them, small, round, blackish Pease.

VI. The fourth differs little from the last, but only in the smallness of the Plant, and the Cods, having a little roughness upon them.

VII. The fifth has a small Fibrous Root, perishing every Year, from whence springs up weak Winged Stalks lying along on the ground, if not supported by something near them, like as all the former, having also two small Leaves at the Joints, and two others narrower likewise on the Branches, which terminate in divided Claspers or Tendrels. The Flow-

ers are white, and stand on long Footstalks; which being past away, there comes after them short Cods, somewhat flat, with two little narrow films all along the back of them; which contain within them Seed, or Pease, flat, white, and cornered, and somewhat larger than those of the former sorts.

VIII. The sixth in its Roots, Stalks, Leaves, and manner of growing, is like the former: the Flowers and Seed chiefly declare the difference; the Flowers are of a dark dead purple color, and the Cods which follow, are smaller, with films at their backs like the former. The Seed or Pease within them, are also cornered, but of a dark brown color, so that they are almost black in appearance.

IX. The seventh has a small fibrous Root perishing as the rest do, every Year; and differs in nothing from the fifth and sixth, but in the Leaves, which are much larger; and the Flowers, which are of a pale blew on the outside, the inner Leaves being more blew. The Cods are small, and almost round, winged at the back like the former, in which is contained brown cornered Seed.

X. The eighth has Roots, and Stalks, like the last, and resembles it in its manner of growing; but its green Leaves are narrower and longer than those, and its Flowers are of a dull dead kind of Orange color, which being past away, there follows short Cods, and somewhat round, with brownish cornered Seed.

XI. The ninth has a small fibrous Root as the rest have, from whence there comes forth several long, weak Stalks with films on the edges; at the Joints are two small Leaves, and from between them come forth the Branches, which have several small dark green Leaves on them, somewhat round at the ends, and are sometimes three on a side, and sometimes but two, but not always one against another. From the bosom of the Stalk and Branches, come forth commonly two Flowers on a long Footstalk, the upper Leaf being reddish, and the other purplish, after which come forth long smooth Cods, without any film at the back, containing within them, round, but somewhat flat Seed, or Pease, of a brownish color.

XII. The Places. They all grow in Spain, from whence they were first brought to us: the first four grow Wild: the latter five are Manured there: but with us they all grow only in Gardens.

XIII. The Times. They Flower in July, and the Seed is ripe in August or September.

XIV. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues, are the same with our Pease or Beans, to which we refer you. The five last Manured sorts, Boel says, are eaten by the poor People of Spain instead of Bread; for where these are eaten for Food, seldom any Bread Corn is eaten: They are of a vey solid Substance, and extreemly Nutritive, and therefore nourish more than other Grain, but are more hard of Concoction.

## CHAP. CXXVII.

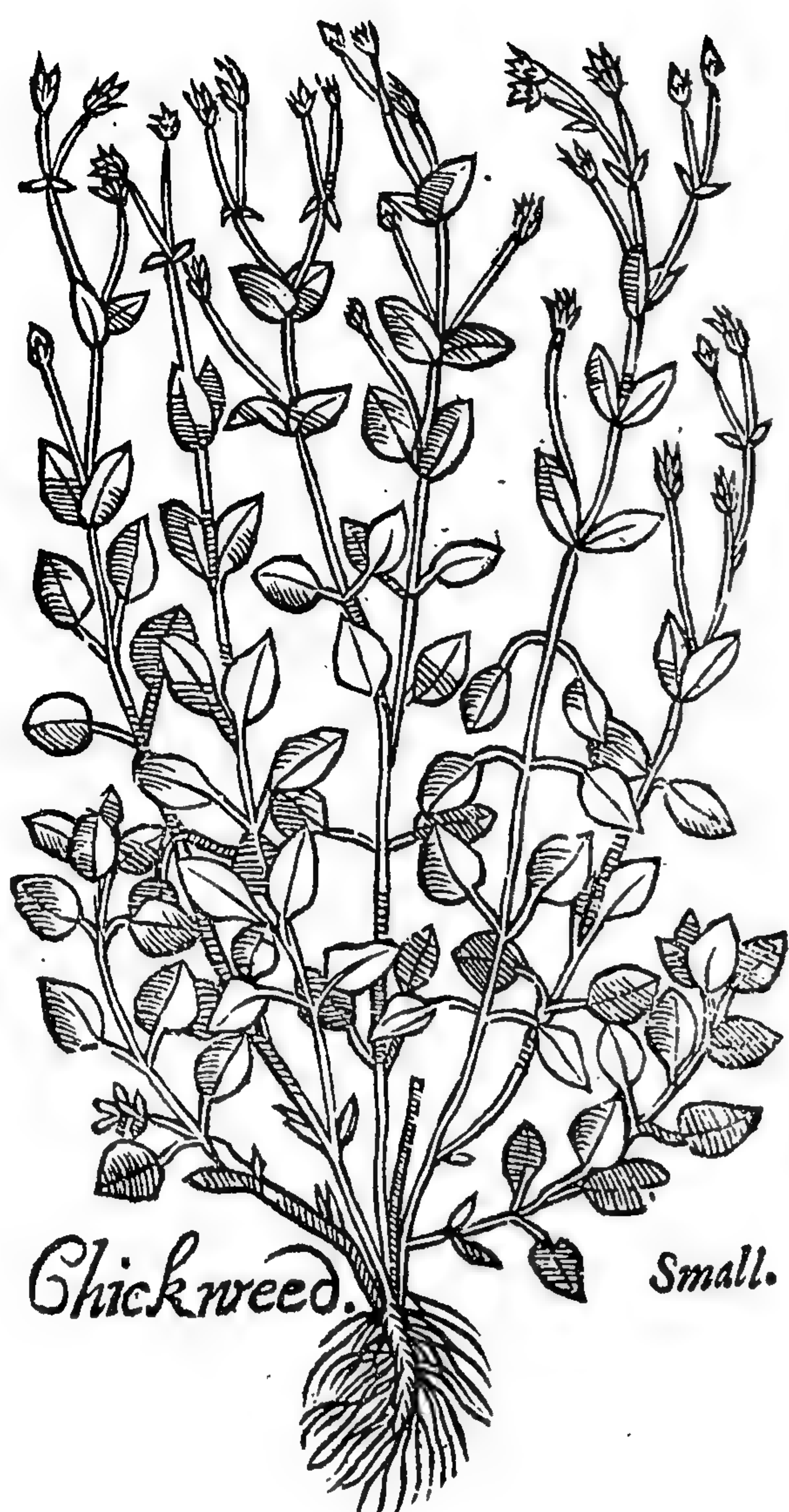
### Of CHICKWEED Common.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, \*Αλσιν: In Latin, *Alfina*: In English, *Chickweed*.

II. The Kinds. There are three principal kinds, 1. \*Αλσιν κοινή, *Alfina Communis*, Common Chickweed. 2. \*Αλσιν ἁνυδρῆς, *Alfina aquatica*, Water or Marsh Chickweed, of which in the next Chapter. 3. \*Αλσιν νόθη, *Alfina notha*, Bastard Chickweed, of which we shall treat in Chap. 129. Of the Common kind, there is, 1. *Alfina maxima*, *Lugdunensis*:



*dunensis*; *Angustifolia Bauhini*, Our Greatest Chickweed: Gerard calls it, *Alfene major*. 2. *Alfene minor*, Our Common small Chickweed. 3. *Alfene Baccifera*, and *Baccifera repens*, *Cacubalum Plinij*, *Alfene repens Clusij*, Berry-bearing Chick-weed, and Spreading Chickweed.



III. The Descriptions. The first has a white thready Root, small, and consisting of several little strings like hairs, from whence rise up Stalks a foot or foot and half high, and sometimes higher, a great many from one Root, long, and round, slender, full of Joints, with two Leaves growing out of every Knot or Joint, almost as large, and as long or longer than Pellitory Leaves, to which they are very like in shape or form, but smooth, without any hairyness or downiness, and of a light green color. The Stalks are somewhat clear, and as it were perlucid, or transparent; and about the Joints they are often of a very light red color. The Flowers are at the tops of the Branches, being white, and consisting of six Leaves apiece, standing in long green Husks, not much unlike to the Flowers of Stitchwort, but lesser. Which being past, in their places succeed long Knops, or Seed Vessels, but not great, containing within them small yellowish Seed.

IV. The second has a Root white, and full also of little strings, from whence spring many Stalks or Branches, as in the former, which for the most part lye upon the ground: The Stalks are small, round, long, slender, brittle, or very tender, and jointed: from which slender Branches spring Leaves, resembling the precedent, but much less, as is likewise the whole Plant, which in no respect attains to the greatness of the former; the Flowers are also in like manner white and small, standing in like fashioned green long husks; which being past, the said Husks or Knops contain small yellowish Seed.

V. The third has a Root which is white and long, creeping much under ground, and shooting forth in divers places every year new shoots, the old dying away every Year: from this Root come forth many flexible Branches full of Joints, rising higher than

a Man, if it stands by bushes or other things, where it may take hold; otherwise, through weakness, they lye upon the ground, and so seem not so long or tall. At every one of the Joints stand two Leaves, one against another, much like to the Common Great Chickweed Leaves; but larger, and coming somewhat near to those of Pellitory of the Wall, and of a fresh green color. At the Joints also, on both sides of the Stalks come forth other Branches, jointed and set with the like fashioned Leaves in the same manner, and at the ends of them large, green, round Husks, ending in five points, with white Flowers growing out of them, consisting of five, and sometimes of six white Leaves apiece, cut in at the ends: in which Husks, after the Flowers are past, stand small round Heads, like Berries, green at the first, and blackish when they are ripe, containing within them many flat, blackish, purple Seed. This Plant has only an herby taste, like to the Common Chickweeds, and therefore the Learned Botanists refer it to them.



VI. The Places. The first grows almost every where throughout England, by Highways and Ditch sides, in moist and watry places, especially if the Earth is rich. The second is found also in many of the like places, as also in Gardens, where many times it is a most pernicious Weed. The last, *Clusius* says, grows in several places of Spain and Germany; as also in Flanders and England, as *Pena* and *Lobel* say; *Parkinson* says, that he had sometimes found it by Hedge sides in our own Land.

VII. The Times. Chickweed is mostly green in Winter; they Flower in Spring and Summer; and their Seed is ripe in June and July.

VIII. The Qualities. They are cold and moist in the second Degree: Emollient, Arthritick, Anodyn, and Alterative: *Galen* and *Oribasius* say, they are without any Astringent Quality.

IX. The Specification. Their Juice is peculiar against the Inflammation called *St. Antonies fire*.



X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Distilled Water.* 4. *An Oil.* 5. *A Cataplasma.* 6. *A Compound Oil.*

*The Virtues.*

XI. *The Juice.* It is very Cooling and Emollient, without any binding property. *Galen* and others say, that it has the Virtues of *Pellitory of the Wall*; but that I doubt; however it is commonly found to be as effectual as *Purslain* to all the purposes whereunto that serves, except for Meat or Salleting only. Applied with Cloths or Sponges dipped therein, to the Region of the Liver, and as they dry, to have fresh applied, does wonderfully attemperate the heat of the Liver. The same also is effectual for all hot Apostems and Tumors wheresoever, and is profitable against *Ignis sacer*, or *Anthony's Fire*, and the like; as also for all redness of the Face, Wheals, Pusshes, Itch, Scabs, either simply used, or made into an Ointment with Lard. It is good for all heat and redness of the Eyes, being dropt into them; also put into the Ears warm, it eases their pain proceeding from a hot cause. The Piles bathed, or fomented therewith, it abates their pain, and takes away their heat and sharpness, and eases all other pains of the Body proceeding from heat and sharpness of Humors. It is good against hot and virulent Sores and Ulcers in the Privy Parts; Legs, or elsewhere, they being often washed therewith.

XII. *The Essence.* It cools Inflammations of the Lungs, without any binding property, and takes away the heat of the Stomach and Liver, breaking out into the Lips, causes Appetite, being lost thro' too much heat, is prevalent against *Hectick Fevers*, as also the heat and pain in the Back, and the sharpness and scalding of Urine. Dose from one to two or three ounces Morning and Night.

XIII. *The Distilled Water.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, but much less effectual; and may be used as a Vehicle to take the Essence in.

XIV. *The Oil.* Made by boiling the Herb in Oil Olive, till it is crisp, and repeating it three or four times with fresh Herbs, it heals sore Legs, Ulcers, Wheals, Pusshes, Scabs, and the like: and being anointed upon shrunk up Sinews, it extends them, eases their pains, and makes them pliable again.

XV. *The Cataplasma.* *℞* of Chickweed four handfuls: Marsh-mallows, two handfuls; mix and boil them to a Pultise, with Fenugreek Seed, Linseed, ana, two ounces, bruised. This applied to Tumors, or Apostems, ripens and breaks them, asswages the Swelling, and eases the Pain.

XVI. *The Compound Oil.* Take green Chickweed, fresh Red Rose Leaves, of each two handfuls: Oil of Trotters, two pounds: boil till they are crisp, and strain out: repeat this boiling with fresh Chickweed, and Red Rose Leaves, twice more: strain out, and keep it for use. Being anointed warm, and well rubbed in upon Sinews which are strained, it is a most excellent thing: Let it be used Morning and Evening, and in a little time the Patient will be cured.

XVII. *The Virtues of the Alsine Baccifera.* Some Authors say, that it is no less fatal to be eaten than the sleepy *Nightshade*: but others say, of the *Cacubadum Plinij* otherwise: and that if the Leaves thereof be beaten with some Vinegar, and applied to the place stung with Scorpions or Serpents, it helps them: And that the Juice thereof taken, with twice as much honied Wine, it eases the pains of the Back and Loins; also the Head-ach (from a hot cause) if it is applied with Rose Water to the

Forehead and Temples: and that being bound to Wens or Kernels, or they bathed often with its Juice, it dissolves them.

C H A P. CXXVIII.

Of CHICKWEED, Water.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Ἀλσινὴ ὕδρα*: In Latin, *Alsine Aquatica*: And in English, *Water Chickweed*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is fivefold, 1. *Alsine aquatica major*, The greater Water Chickweed. 2. *Alsine aquatica minor*, The lesser Water Chickweed. 3. *Alsine aquatica minima*, & *serpillifolia Bauhini*, The smallest Water Chickweed. 4. *Ἀλσινὴ θαλασσία*, *Alsine marina*, Sea Chickweed: *Lobel* calls it, *Hippia major*; and *Cesalpinus*, *Centunculus*. 5. *Alsine recta, flore Cæruleo*, Upright blew Chickweed. There is another which some account a Sea Chickweed, viz. *Alsine Palustris minor folio oblongo*, which others more properly call, *Portulaca marina*, Sea Purslain, and under that Title you will find it.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first of these has a creeping Root, shooting out with divers Fibres, very long, and of the thickness of a Wheat Straw, not much unlike to the Roots of Quitch-grass, from whence rise up divers upright Stalks, slender, and jointed from the bottom to the top, set with pretty large sharp pointed Leaves, standing by pairs at certain distances, somewhat like those of *Pellitory of the Wall*. At the tops of the Stalks grow small white Flowers, like to the other Chickweeds, or like to *Stitchwort*, but lesser, having many small and pointed Leaves in each Flower, after which come small whitish yellow Seed.

IV. *The second of these* has a bunchy fibrous Root, from whence several weak and tender Stalks rise up, jointed like the former, and with Leaves at the Joints, as in the other, not much unlike in shape and

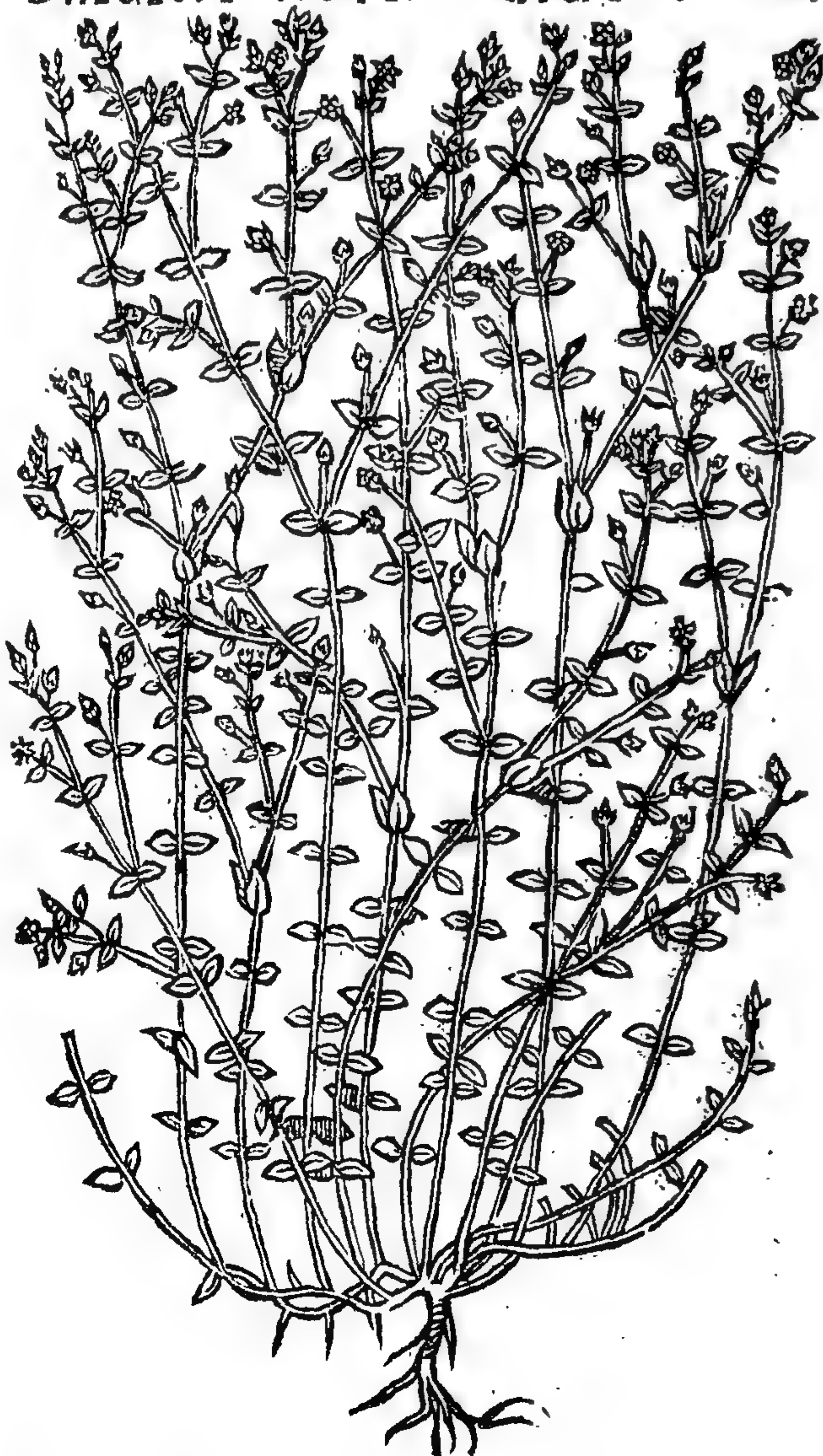


and bigness to the Lesser Chickweed, in the former Chapter. The Stalks rise up sometimes to be a yard high, full of Branches, and small long Leaves on them, of a pale green Color. The Flowers are many, which at the tops of the Branches are small and white, consisting of five Leaves apiece; after which follows in Husks small yellowish Seed.

### Smaller Water Chick weed



### Smallest water Chick weed



V. The third, or smallest kind, *Serpillifolius*, has a small Root, with many fibres, from whence spring

up many weak and tender creeping Branches, set with two narrow sharp pointed Leaves at each Joint, green above, and of a whitish color below; at the setting on of these Leaves grow small Vessels parted as it were into two, with a little crest on each side, in which Capsulae are contained very small Seed.

VI. The fourth, or *Alfine marina*, has a bunchy and thready Root as some of the former, which sends forth for the most part Branches lying upon the ground, very like unto the lesser sort of Chickweed in the former Chapter, but that the Stalks are shorter, and thicker; and closer Jointed, with Chickweed like Leaves on them, yet thicker, and whiter: The Flowers also stand at the tops of the Branches, and are composed of many small Leaves in form of a Star; which being past away, the Seed Vessels follow, which are long and round like the others, but flat, and somewhat broad, in which are contained three or four greater Seeds.

### Sea chick weed.



VII. The fifth has a Root white and long, with some fibres thereat, from whence rise up for the most part several upright Stalks or Branches, jointed in several places, and divers small Leaves growing thereon at the manifold Joints, somewhat divided like unto Leaves of Rue, and a little resembling a Trefoil Leaf: at the tops of the Joints come forth small blew Flowers, consisting of four Leaves apiece: which being past away, there appears small round Chickweed like Heads or Husks, with small Seed therein.

VIII. The Places. The first three, and the fifth, are found to grow in or near Waters, and Watry places in most Parts of England. The *Serpillifolia* may be found in Watry places, between Clapham Heath and Tooting, and between Kentish Town and Hamstead. And the fourth grows near the Sea shore, and in Salt Marshy places, upon several Coasts of this Kingdom.

IX. The Times. Their Flowering time is in the heat of Summer, and their Seed ripens in the mean Season, and in a little time after.

X. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with those in the former Chapter, to which we refer you.



## C H A P. CXXIX.

## Of CHICKWEED, Bastard.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἀλσιν* *ρόδη*: In Latin, *Alfine notha*; and in English, Bastard Chickweed.

II. The Kinds. There are many kinds hereof, but these following are chief, 1. *Alfine foliis subrotundis Veronicae*, Speedwell Chickweed. 2. *Alfine folio Triflaginis*, Germander leav'd Chickweed. 3. *Alfine spuria prior Dodonaei*, *Alfine folio hederulae minor*, Ivy leav'd Chickweed. 4. *Alfine hirsutia foliis Auriculæ Muris*, Hairy Chickweed, with Mouse Ear Leaves. 5. *Alfine Viscosa*, Clammy Chickweed. 6. *Alfine Petrea*, Stone or Rock Chickweed. 7. *Alfine fluviatilis*, River Chickweed.

Speedwell Chick-  
Weed.

III. The Descriptions. The first of these has a small and thready Root, which perishes not in the Winter; from whence many Branches spring up, and spread abroad, full of small and almost round Leaves, set in couples or pairs, very like to those of Veronica, or Pauls Betony, called Speedwell, but not like to Elatine or Fluellin of any kind. The Flowers grow at the Joints with the Leaves, from the middle of the Branches upwards, being very small, made of five blew Leaves, after which come small flat Seed Vessels like Pouches, in which is contained small round yellowish Seed.

IV. The second has a small long Root, full of many fibres or threads, which continue all the Winter, from which come forth several small weak Branches spreading upon the ground, three or four Inches long, set with small and somewhat round Leaves, which are dented about the edges, and pointed at the ends, standing by couples one against another: At the Joints whereof towards the tops, come forth small blew Flowers, and sometimes white, consisting of five round pointed Leaves; after which succeed small round Seed Vessels, two always joined together, having small round Seed within them.

V. The third or Ivy leav'd Chickweed, has a small and thready Root, from whence rise up hairy tender Stalks or Branches, many of which spread themselves upon the ground, set with two Leaves at a Joint, hairy and Ivy like, but nothing so large. The Leaves, says Gerard, resemble the Back of a Bee when it flies. The Flowers grow at the tops,

and consist of five small blew round pointed Leaves; which being past away, round Heads or Husks appear, in which is contained small Chickweed like Seed.



Hairy Chick Weed

VI. The fourth, or Hairy leav'd Chickweed, has a very small Root, with a few Fibres at it, from which spring up several hairy Stalks or Branches, which creep upon the ground; upon which grow in pairs, small, long, whitish, hoary Leaves, of a Mouse Ear like fashion: the Flowers grow at the ends of the Branches, of a blush color, which give long and pointed Seed Vessels, in which is contained small Seed, like that of the Common Chickweed.

VII. The fifth, or Clammy Chickweed, has a small fibrous Root, from whence come forth Branches, which stand more upright than the last, with rough, hairy, and clammy Leaves, somewhat like the Common Chickweeds, but of a more blewish green. The Flowers are small and white, and scarcely open themselves but in the hot time of the day, standing at the tops of the Stalks, which from the middle upwards are so clammy, that they will stick to ones Fingers, if touched, whereby they are apt to catch Flies, and other small things which fall upon them.



Stone Chickweed



VIII. The sixth, or Stone Chickweed, has a small and thready Root, which sends forth many small and upright Branches, thick set; which so interfere one with another, that the whole Plant (which is indeed but a small Herb) seems like unto a small Bush. The Leaves are small and pointed, and the Flowers small and white, like the other Small Chickweeds. Which being past away, round Heads or Husks come forth, like unto those of Line or Flax, in which the Seed, (which is very small) is contained.

IX. The seventh is a Bastard kind of Chickweed, growing by River sides; it is a very small Plant, but has an admirable thick matted Root, like a Haddock, made up of a vast number of fibrous or thready strings, from whence rise up many small tender Branches, stretching or trailing along the Stream, upon which grow long Leaves, having a long middle Rib, upon which grows on each side thereof a great number of other smaller Leaves, like those of Lentils, or the Wild Vetch. The Flowers grow at the tops of the Stalks, which are small and white, after which comes in husky Heads a small Seed.

X. The Places. The sixth grows on Mountains, and in Stoney and Rocky places: the seventh grows in Rivers: the others grow in Fields, as well Till'd, as Untill'd, and by Way sides, &c.

XI. The Times. They do all Flower in Summer, some in the latter end of May; and some in June and July; some earlier, and some later than others; and their Seed is ripe quickly after; but the fourth or hairy Chickweed Flowers not till Autumn.

XII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues, Authors assent to be the same with those of the Common Chickweed, to which you are referred; and therefore we shall say no more of them in this place.

spreading and creeping on the Earth, with long slender Branches, or Strings, like to the Strawberry Plant, which take Root again, and shoot forth many Leaves. These Leaves are five in number, (sometimes seven, though but rarely) long, finely dented about the edges, and ending in a pretty sharp point, somewhat hard, and of a lightish green color. The Stalks are slender, leaning downwards, and bear many small yellow Flowers, with some yellow threads in the middle, standing about a smooth green Head, which when it is ripe is a little rough, and contains small brownish Seed.



Cinkfoil



White Cinkfoil.

IV. The

## CHAP. CXXX. OF CINKFOIL.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, Πεντάφυλλον: In Latin, *Pentaptyllum*, and *Quinquefolium*, à numero foliorum: In English, Cinkfoil, and Five-leav'd Grass.

II. The Kinds. Authors make at least sixteen Kinds, or more; many of which grow not in England, nor any place belonging to our Territories: The most usual with us are, 1. *Pentaptyllum Vulgatissimum*, Our most Common Cinkfoil. 2. *Pentaptyllum majus album Vulgare*, The Greater Common white Cinkfoil. 3. *Pentaptyllon magnum flore luteo vel albo*. The Great Common Cinkfoil with a white or yellow Flower. 4. *Pentaptyllum rubrum Palustre*, Red Marsh Cinkfoil. 5. *Pentaptyllum supinum Potentilla facie*, Low Silver-weed Cinkfoil. 6. *Pentaptyllum incanum repens majus & minus*, The Greater and Less creeping hoary Cinkfoil. 7. *Pentaptyllum rectum majus & minus*, The Greater and Lesser Upright Cinkfoil. The first of these is called generally by all, *Pentaptyllum*, or *Quinquefolium vulgare*, and *Quinquefolium majus repens Bauhini*, Common Cinkfoil. The second, *Quinquefolium album*, and *Quinquefolium album majus alterum Bauhini*. The third is called, *Quinquefolium album majus caulescens Bauhini*.

III. The Descriptions. The first has a Root of a blackish brown color, very rarely so large as ones little Finger, but growing long, with several Fibres springing from it; and by which small strings it quickly spreads over the place it grows on: From this Root rises up several weak Stalks, lying on,



IV. The second has a Root thick and long, blackish on the out side, but reddish within, having many fibres appertaining to it. From whence spring forth Stalks with many Leaves, also Leaves growing from the Root. The Stalks are small, weak, and a little hairy, and the Leaves springing from them are five-fold, or divided into five parts, a little dented and pointed at the ends, green on the upper side, and a kind of hoary white underneath: between these Leaves grow weak Branches, leaning down to the ground near a foot long, with many such like Leaves on them, but lesser than those below. The Flowers are about the largeness of the former, but not full out so large as the next following, of a white color, consisting of five rounder pointed Leaves than the others are, having a nick in the middle, and several small yellow threads in the middle of the Flower, set with a woolly Head, having many small Seeds set together like unto a Crowsfoot head of Seed. Of this kind there is another whose green Leaves are not dented about the edges, little differing in any thing else.

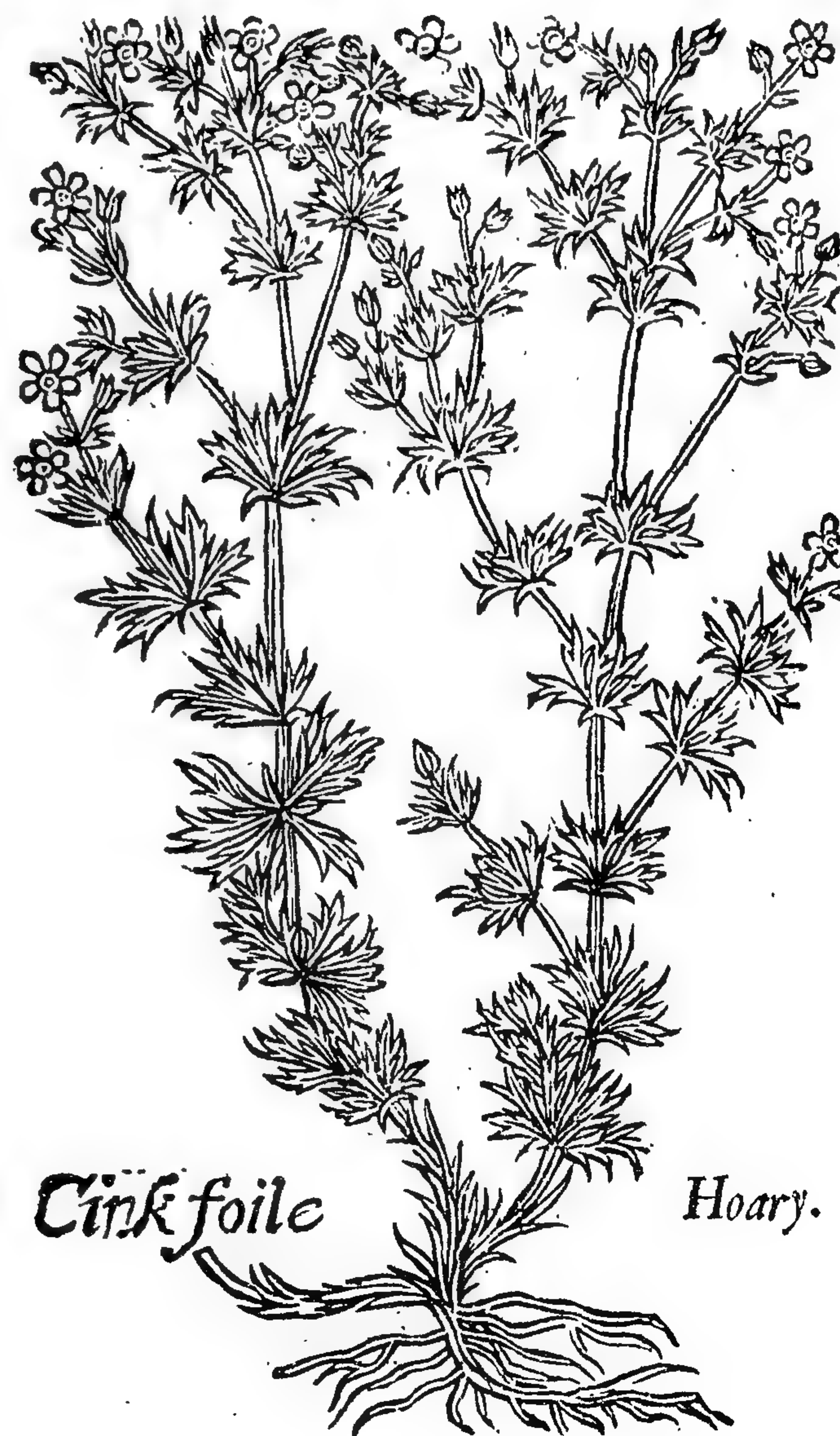
V. The third has a Root somewhat thick and long, of a blackish brown color without, and reddish within: From this Root spring forth many Leaves, also Stalks or Branches, the Leaves stand upon their own Stalks, and are divided into five parts, as if they were five several Leaves, dented about the edges, and almost sharp pointed, very like to the first or Common Cinkfoil, but that these are every ways larger, and a little hairy; from which rise up strait or upright Stalks for a while, till they are grown up to a considerable length, then they incline, or lean somewhat down towards the ground, as both the former do. These Stalks are a little hairy also, and divided near their tops into two or three Branches, and they again into others smaller; upon the tops of every one of which grows one Flower, of a white color, and larger than in either of the former, consisting of five Leaves, as all the other sorts do; in the middle of which stands a small downy head, encompassed with many reddish yellow threads. This kind, says Gerard, is so common, and so universally known, that he thought it needless to give any Description thereof. Johnson upon Gerard says, it has many long slender Stalks lying spread upon the ground, out of which grow Leaves, made of five longish snipt Leaves, fastned to one long Footstalk; the Flowers also grow upon the like Footstalks, and are composed of five yellow Leaves. The Root is pretty large, of a reddish color, and round, but dried, it becomes square.

VI. The fourth, or Marsh kind, has a Root of a Woody substance, with some fibres, or thready strings adjoining thereto: From which Root rise up Leaves almost like to the former, consisting of five parts, notched about the edges, and standing close together at their lower ends, upon one long Footstalk: the Stalks are about a foot and half high, and of a reddish color; The Flowers grow at the tops of the Stalks, like unto the other Cinkfoils, save that they are of a dark red color; in a word the whole Plant is very like to the other kinds, especially the great Kind last before this described.

VII. The fifth or Silver-weed Cinkfoil, has a Root small, long, and blackish, like the first Common Cinkfoil: from which springs forth long Stalks of Leaves, divided into many parts next the ground, set on each side thereof, two at a space, one against another, and an odd one at the end, all of them dented about the edges, very like unto Wild Tansey Leaves, but not hoary, or silver like, as they are, but only green. The Flowers come forth at the Joints with the Leaves, towards the tops of the Stalks, which Stalks creep not, nor stand upright, but being weak lean down towards the ground, having very long

Stalks of Leaves on them. The Flowers which grow on the tops of the Stalks, are lesser, and less divided than those which grow below: they are single, every one by its self, small, of a pale yellow color, and with a head in the middle, which after it is ripe, is like unto the other Cinkfoil heads of Seed, viz. like to a small, hard, dry Strawberry.

*Cinkfoil wit wild tansey leaves*



VIII. The sixth, or Hoary Kind, is all over hoary, whence it took the name of Incanum: It has a long slender Root, and Woody, from whence rise up several



veral woody thick Stalks, somewhat red, wrinkled also, and of a brown color, which grow of unequal lengths from the Root, spreading themselves into many Branches, shadowing the place where it grows. The Leaves are thick set, and snipt on the edges, almost like Tormentil, and are thought by some to be of equal force with it against Poyson, and for which reason, some have thought it to be the Leucas Diofcoridis. The Flowers stand also upon long Footstalks, and consist of five yellow Leaves apiece, having a yellow thrummy head in the middle like to the other Cinkfoils; This is twofold, viz. the Greater and Lesser, which differ in nothing but in their magnitude.

IX. The seventh, or Upright Kind, has a thick black fibrous Root, from which spring forth Leaves and Stalks: the Leaves stand upon long Footstalks; the Stalks are strong and upright, not much above half a yard high, spreading forth several ways into divers Branches. The Leaves are somewhat longer, larger, and greener than any of the former kinds, stand upon long Footstalks, and are divided into five parts, as the others, and dented about the edges; sometimes into seven, but that more rarely, having three Leaves only at the top. The Flowers grow at the tops of the Stalks, which are large, and of a pale yellow color, and in some Plants of a purplish color, which turn into Seed, much as the other kinds do: this is the Greater kind. But there is a Lesser of this Upright Kind, which has smaller and rounder Leaves, of a sad green color on the upper side, and grey or hoary underneath; the Stalks are tenderer, and lower, the Flowers on the tops smaller, and of a more Gold yellow color, in which consists the chief difference.

X. The Places. The first grows almost every where throughout England, by Highway sides, Ditch sides, and other Untilled places. The second is found in shady and woody places, under Hedges, and other moist places, and by Highway sides. The third is to be found growing almost every where upon good Ground, by Highways, and in low and moist Meadows. The fourth grows in Moist and Marsh Grounds, and in Watry places; it grows in a Marsh Ground adjoining to the Land called Bourn Ponds, half a Mile from Colchester, from which place, Gerard says, he brought some Plants for his Garden, in which they flourished and prospered well. The fifth, Gerard says, grew upon Brick and Stone Walls about London. The sixth, Gerard says, is a rare Plant, and that he found it growing on the Mountains of the Peak, and dry Gravelly Valleys. The seventh grows in many places of France and Germany, where it bears white Flowers; and in Italy, where the Flowers are purplish; but with us it is only nourish'd up in Gardens.

XI. The Times. They are said to Flower all the Summer Months, as May, June and July; even from the beginning of May; and the Seed ripens in the mean Season.

XII. The Qualities. The Cinkfoils are Temperate in respect of heat or coldness, but dry in the third Degree. They are Absterfive, Neurotick, Arthritick, Alterative, Analeptick, and Alexipharmick. Although it is supposed by Authors, that they have all one and the same Virtues, yet it is manifest, that some of them are stronger, and more efficacious than others. Those which are esteemed the most powerful, are the first, second, third, and seventh, these are the chiefest for use, and strongest in effect, of all the rest, and are held to be as effectual for all the purposes whereunto Tormentil is applied, so that instead thereof, and where that is wanting, Cinkfoil says Parkinson) may be used to as good purpose.

XIII. The Specification. It is an especial remedy against Agues and Fevers, and to stop all sorts of Fluxes, whether of Blood or Humors, in any part of the Body wheresoever.

XIV. The Preparations. You may prepare therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An Infusion or Decoction. 4. A Pouder of the Root. 5. A Vinegar. 6. A Cataplasme. 7. A distilled Water. 8. A Spirituous Tincture. 9. An Acid Tincture. 10. An Oily Tincture. 11. A Balsam, or Ointment. 12. A Collyrium.

#### The Virtues.

XV. The Juice. It is good against all sorts of Agues and Fevers, whether Continent, Continual or Contermittent: whether they be burning Fevers only, Malign, or Pestilential. It cools and attenuates the Blood, and Humors, and is an excellent thing for a Lotion, Injection, Gargle, and the like, for sore Mouths, Ulcers, Cankers, Fistula's, and other corrupt, foul, and running Sores. The Juice is given to four ounces at a time, for some Days together, two or three Hours before the coming of the Fit of an Ague, whether Quotidian, Tertian, or Quartan, it is said to cure it, but it ought to be drank Morning and Evening in the intermediate Days also. And taken in the same quantity for the same time, viz. for thirty Days together, it cures the Falling Sickness, as also the Quinsy, and Yellow Jaundice, and all Fluxes in Man or Woman, as Whites, Reds, and Bloody Flux, Diarrhæa, &c. The Juice mixt with a little Honey, prevails against Hoarseness, as also the Cough of the Lungs.

XVI. The Essence. It has all the Virtues of the Juice, but more effectual to all the purposes aforesaid; besides which it is very effectual to cure Consumptions of all sorts, and to heal Ulcers of the Lungs: And if the hands be often washed therewith, and it is suffered every time to dry in of it self, without wiping, it will in a short time help the Palsie, or shaking of them.

XVII. The Infusion or Decoction in Red Port Wine. They have the Virtues of the liquid Juice and Essence, but not all out so effectual: yet however they are very powerful against all sorts of Fluxes of the Bowels: But where there is a sharpness of Humors, the Decoction is best made in Milk. The Decoction outwardly applied, and inwardly drank as a Diet drink, very much contributes to the Cure of the Gout and Sciatica; as also to consolidate Ruptures of the Bowels.

XVIII. The Pouder of the Root. Taken to a dram Morning and Night, it is good against Fluxes of the Belly, spitting and pissing of Blood, Ruptures, and Agues of all sorts; but it ought also to be given over and above on the day the Ague comes, three hours before the Fit, in a Glass of Red Port, or Red Florence Wine.

XIX. The Vinegar. The Roots boiled in Vinegar, and that held in the Mouth, is said to ease the pains of the Teeth: it also is good against all sorts of Nodes, Kernels, hard Swellings, and Excrecences growing in the Flesh, in any part, being applied thereunto. It allays all kinds of Inflammations, and alleviates Anthonies Fire and the Shingles; it prevails against Apostems, and painful Sores or Ulcers, attended with pain and putrefaction, as also all other kinds of running Sores, Ulcers, Foul Scabs, Itch, &c. It gives ease in pains of the Joints, and the Gout, whether in the Hips, Hands or Feet. It is also good against bruises, or hurts by blows, falls, or the like, and to stop the bleeding of Wounds in any part inward or outward.



XX. *The Cataplasme*. Made with Vinegar by boiling, and applied, it softens hard Tumors, is good against Contusions, stops the Flux of Humors to any part, and gives ease in the Gout.

XXI. *The Distilled Water*. It has some small matter of the Virtues of the Juice, Essence and Decoction; but is chiefly used as a Vehicle, to convey other Preparations in.

XXII. *The Spirituous Tincture*. It is a famous thing against all manner of Fluxes of Belly and Womb, but especially those of Blood; it stops spitting, vomiting and pissing of Blood, and wonderfully strengthens the Stomach, Bowels and Womb; and it timely and prudently given, prevails against a *Diabetes*, because by its Spirituous Nature, it so admirably strengthens all the Vessels and Passages. Dose two drams Morning and Night.

XXIII. *The Acid Tincture*. It has all the Virtues of the *Vinegar* at *Sett.* 19. aforesaid, besides which it is an excellent Stomack, stops Vomiting, strengthens the Stomach, cuts Flegm, causes a good Appetite and Digestion, opens Obstructions, and cleanses the Bowels: mixed in equal quantities with *Tinctura Martis*, and given Daily, Morning, Noon and Night, in some convenient Vehicle to one dram, more or less, it perfectly cures the Green-sickness in Virgins, and the Yellow Jaundice in Elder People.

XXIV. *The Oily Tincture*. It prevails against Defacements of the Skin, Scurf, Dandriff, Morpew, and that kind of Disease called *Λευκη*, *Leuce*, or the Spotted Leprosie; inwardly taken to half a dram, or one dram in White Wine, it admirably strengthens the Back, and eases the pains thereof; opens Obstructions of the Urinary Parts, and expels small Stones, Gravel, Sand, and other Tartarous matter.

XXV. *The Balsam or Ointment*. It digests contused Wounds; cleanses old, putrid, running Sores and Ulcers, dries them, and suddenly heals them. There are but few better Vulneraries than this Balsam and Ointment; and being applied to the Gout, especially the Balsam, it eases the pain, and so effectually draws forth the Morbifick matter, that for the most part the Patient remains perfectly cured.

XXVI. *The Collyrium*. It is made of the Juice mixed with Honey; a quarter of a pound of Honey to a pint of the Juice. Put into the Eyes, it clears the sight, and stops fluxes of Rheum falling down into them: there is nothing better for curing Ulcers in that part, the Eye being washed therewith three or four times a day. It is also an excellent Lotion to heal a sore and ulcerated Mouth, as also Ulcers in the Throat and Gums, the parts affected being often Gargled and Washed therewith: and if the sore or Ulcer seems to be inveterate, or putrid, the *Collyrium* will be so much the more excellent, if to the former quantity two or three ounces of Common Spirit of Wine be added.

to us, and therefore not to be taken notice of. Those which are Natives of our Countrey are chiefly three: 1. *Helianthemum Vulgare*, *Chamæcistus flore luteo*, *Flos Solis quorundam*, Our Common Dwarf Cistus, or small Sun Flower. 2. *Helianthemum flore albo*, White Dwarf Cistus. 3. *Chamæcistus serpilli foliis flore Carneis*, The Great Dwarf Cistus with Wild Time Leaves, and a blush colored flower.



Dwarf Cistus  
or Holy Rose

III. The Descriptions. The first has a hard and woody Root, of a brownish color, and growing in time to be somewhat great, and very long, and divided into small Branches at the lower end: From this Root come forth several small and weak, yet hard and almost woody Branches, lying for the most part round about the Head of the Root upon the Ground, on which grow by pairs, many small and somewhat long Leaves, thick, fat, and full of substance, a little soft or hairy, or covered with a soft Down, with other small Leaves also growing between them: at the tops whereof stand three or four small pale yellow, and sometimes gold yellow colored Flowers, consisting of five round pointed Leaves apiece, with some yellow threads in the middle, of a pretty savor or smell in some places, but less or none in others: which being past away, there follow small round Heads, in which are contained small yellow Seed. This Plant dies not, but continues many years, increasing in its Branches, which yield a Viscous or Mucilaginous Juice, like unto Comfrey, and is of an Astringe, Astringent taste.

IV. The second has a Root like the former, and differs not much from it, but that it grows up somewhat higher, the Leaves are a little longer, and not so thick set together, also more Woolly and Downey, thereby obtaining a whiter color. The Flower has the same number of Leaves, is also somewhat longer, and white withal; being in some places a little sweet, in others little or nothing at all; and its Taste is Astringent like the former.

V. The third has a Root very Fibrous, spreading much under Ground: from whence rise up many red-

## C H A P. CXXXI.

### Of CISTUS Dwarf.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἡλιάνθημον* & *Χαμαίσις*: In Latin, *Helianthemum* and *Chamæcistus*: In English, Dwarf Cistus, and Small Sun-flower.

II. The Kinds. Parkinson makes Nine Kinds of this Plant, but a great part of them are Foreigners



*disb Branches like unto Wild Time, with such like small Leaves set upon them very thick, or as it were in a double row, of a dark green color, and a little hairy or downey withal, but a little longer and whiter next unto the Flowers, which stand three or four together, every one on a pretty long hairy Footstalk, consisting of five small yellow Leaves, like unto the other, and somewhat sweet.*

VI. *The Places.* They all grow in divers places of England, but the first and second more especially in Kent, in almost all places throughout it, which in some places are greater than in others; but that with the *white Flower* is more rare to be met with than the other. The third is that which Parkinson thinks is most usual with us in England. Gerard says, that those of our *English* growth, he has found in many places, especially upon the Chalky Banks about Gravesend and Southfleet in Kent, and for the most part all the way from thence to Canterbury and Dover, they delighting to grow in rough, dry, and Sunny places in open Fields, and upon Mountains.

VII. *The Times.* They Flower in Summer, viz. in June, July and August; some earlier, and some later: but their Flowers are so soon fading, that they seldom endure above a day or two; and their Seed is perfected in some small time after.

VIII. *The Qualities.* They are temperate in respect of heat or coldness, and dry in the second Degree: Absterfive, Astringent, Vulnerary, Neurotick, Alterative, and Alexipharmick.

IX. *The Specification.* They are peculiar for stanching Blood, and stopping all Fluxes of Blood in any part of the Body whatsoever, whether Inward or Outward.

X. *The Preparations.* You may prepare therefrom, 1. *A liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Decoction.* 4. *A Powder.* 5. *A Distilled Water.* 6. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 7. *An Acid Tincture.* 8. *A Syrup.* 9. *A Balsam or Ointment.* 10. *A Cataplasm.*

#### The Virtues.

XI. *The liquid Juice.* It dries and astringes, stops bleeding, spitting Blood, pissing Blood, overflowing of the Terms, and all other fluxes of Blood, and heals Wounds, by strengthening the Parts, and conjoining their Lips together: it prevails also against all manner of fluxes of the Belly, and consolidates Ruptures. Dose from one ounce to three in a Glass of Red Port Wine.

XII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, besides which it is powerful to Wash and Gargle sore Mouths and Throats, and to heal them; as also to cure Ulcers in the Privy Parts of Man or Woman, and old running Sores in other parts of the Body, as in the Legs and Feet, which have been of a long standing, and which by reason they are depending parts, by a defluxion of moist and sharp Humors, are kept long from healing; It is also good against Coughs, Colds, and violent Catarrhs, or defluxions of Rheum, which induces, by continuance, a Consumption. It cleanses, dries, and heals old Ulcers, and Conglutinates the Lips of Green Wounds, because it is very powerful in consolidating, binding and strengthening any part; and is as effectual as Comfrey for Ruptures, strengthening weak Joints, or any other Glutinating property, to which Comfrey is proper.

XIII. *The Decoction in Red Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice and Essence, but not altogether so effectual; but drank from four to eight ounces, it stops Catarrhs, Coughs, and inward Bleedings, and heals a Rupture of any of the Vessels.

XIV. *The Powder of the Leaves.* It is wonderfully astringent, dries up moisture in running Ulcers, cleanses and heals: it is a peculiar thing against spitting and pissing of Blood, and the Disease called Diabetes. Dose one dram, in some proper Vehicle.

XV. *The Distilled Water.* It is said to be a good Cosmetick, to beautify or make fair the skin of the Face, Neck, Breasts, and Hands, or of any other Parts of the Body.

XVI. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, and Decoction, besides which it is good against the stinging or biting of any Venomous Creature, stopping the farther spreading of the Poyson, and in a short time curing the sick. Dose one or two drams in a Glass of Canary, Morning, Noon, and Night.

XVII. *The Acid Tincture.* It prevails against the Malignity and Venom of Serpents, or the bitings of any other evil Beast: it is good against malign Fevers, and the Infection of the Plague, and of any other malign or infectious Disease: it may be inwardly taken, and outwardly applied, in any of the cases aforesaid, where outward applications are requisite. It is good against a Leuce, or Spotted Leprosie, Scurf, Morpew, and such like, if it is mixed with the Distilled Water, and then the parts affected to be Washed therewith.

XVIII. *The Syrup.* It is an incomparable thing against Coughs, Colds, Catarrhs, or sharp and Salt distillations of Rheum, and spitting of Blood, also all sorts of Fluxes of the Bowels. Dose two spoonfuls in some proper Vehicle, Morning, Noon, and Night.

XIX. *The Balsam or Ointment.* They are most incomparable Vulneraries, so that few Medicaments exceed them. They not only speedily cure Green Wounds by conglutination, but also digest Laterated Wounds, and cleanse, incarnate, dry, and heal, old, foul, hollow, running Ulcers.

XX. *The Cataplasm.* Being applied, it is good against the biting or stinging of any Venomous Creature, staying the farther spreading of the malignity. Applied also in the Gout, from what cause soever, it eases the pain, prevents the defluxion, and quickly cures it.

## C H A P. CXXXII.

### of CISTUS Male.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *κίστος* *αἰσινός*: In Latin, *Cistus mas*: And in English, *Male Cistus*, *Sage Rose*, and *Holly Rose*, as Gerard calls it.

II. *The Kinds.* It is either *Male*, of which in this Chapter: Or, *Female*, of which in the next. Parkinson makes four several kinds thereof, of which the first of them, viz. *Cistus mas*, or *Male Cistus*, is the chief which grows with us.

III. *The Description.* It has a woody Root, and will abide some years with us, if care be taken to keep it from the extremity of our cold Winters, which it will scarcely endure. From this Root grows up a shrubby Plant, about a yard or more high, having many slender, brittle, woody Branches, covered with a whitish Bark; on which grow many whitish green Leaves, long, and something narrow, crumpled, or wrinkled, as it were, with Veins, and somewhat hard in handling, especially the older Leaves, for the young ones are softer, something like unto



our Sage Leaves, for the form and color, but much smaller, two always set together at a Joint. The flowers stand at the tops of the Branches, three or four together, upon several slender Footstalks, consisting of five small round Leaves apiece, somewhat like unto a small single Rose, or the Rose of the Wild Bryar, of a fine reddish purple color, with many yellow threads in the middle, without any Smell at all, and quickly fading or falling away, abiding seldom one whole day blown at most: when the Flowers are past, there come up round hard hairy Heads in their places, containing within them, small brownish Seed.



*Cistus male* <sup>th</sup> *the Hypocistis*

IV. *The Places.* It naturally grows in Italy, Spain, Portugal, and France, and other hot and Southern Countries: but with us it is only nourished up in Gardens.

V. *The Times.* In its Native places, it Flowers generally in May: but with us about the latter end of June, also in July and August; and the Seed is ripe quickly after.

VI. As to its *Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues*, they are the same in all respect with those of the Dwarf Cistus, to which I refer you.

## C H A P. CXXXIII.

### Of CISTUS Female.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Κίστος* <sup>αἰθέριος</sup> *αἰθέριος*: In Latin, *Cistus fœmina*: and in English, *Female Cistus*, or *Sage Rose*.

II. *The Kinds.* Parkinson makes eight several kinds of the Female Cistus: but two of them are

chiefly nourished up in our Gardens, viz. *Cistus fœmina*, The Female Cistus, specially so called. 2. *Cistus Annuus*, The Annual or Yearly Cistus.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first Female Cistus, has a woody Root like to the former, from whence grows a kind of shrub, lower and smaller than it, having blackish Branches, less woody, and not so brittle as the Male. The Leaves are somewhat rounder and greener, but a little hard and rough withal, growing in the same manner upon the Branches, as the other, by Couples. The Flowers grow at the tops of the Branches like to the Male kind, consisting of five Leaves, but somewhat lesser, and wholly white, with yellow threads in the middle, as soon fading, and of as little Scent as the other, but the Heads and Seed are somewhat larger.

IV. The second, or Annual Cistus, has a small woody Root, which perishes as soon as its Seed time is past; for the Plant endures but a Year, and therefore requires you to Sow it every Year, if you will have it: From this Root rise up strait, but slender hard Stalks, set here and there confusedly with long and narrow greenish Leaves, very like unto the Leaves of the Gum-Cistus, being a little clammy withal. At the tops of the Stalks, and at the Joints with the Leaves, stand two or three pale yellow Flowers, consisting of five Leaves apiece, with a reddish spot, near the bottom of every leaf of the Flowers, which as soon fades as any of the former. The Flowers being past, small three-square Heads follow after, which contain within them small Seed like to the Female kind, but somewhat paler or yellower.

V. *The Places.* The first grows naturally in hot Countries, as Spain, Portugal, Italy, Languedock; The second in Colder Countreys, as Germany, Bohemia, Friesland; and with us they are both brought up in Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* They Flower in the Summer Months, as June, July and August, and their Seed ripens in the mean Season.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues*, are the same with the Dwarf Cistus, so that no more need be said of them here.

## C H A P. CXXXIV.

### Of CIVES, or CHIVES.

I. *THE Names.* They are called in Greek, *Σχάναρον*: In Latin, *Schœnoprasum*, as though you should say, *Funceum Porrum*, Rush Leek: In English, *Cives* or *Chives*, which are a kind of Small Grass Leeks.

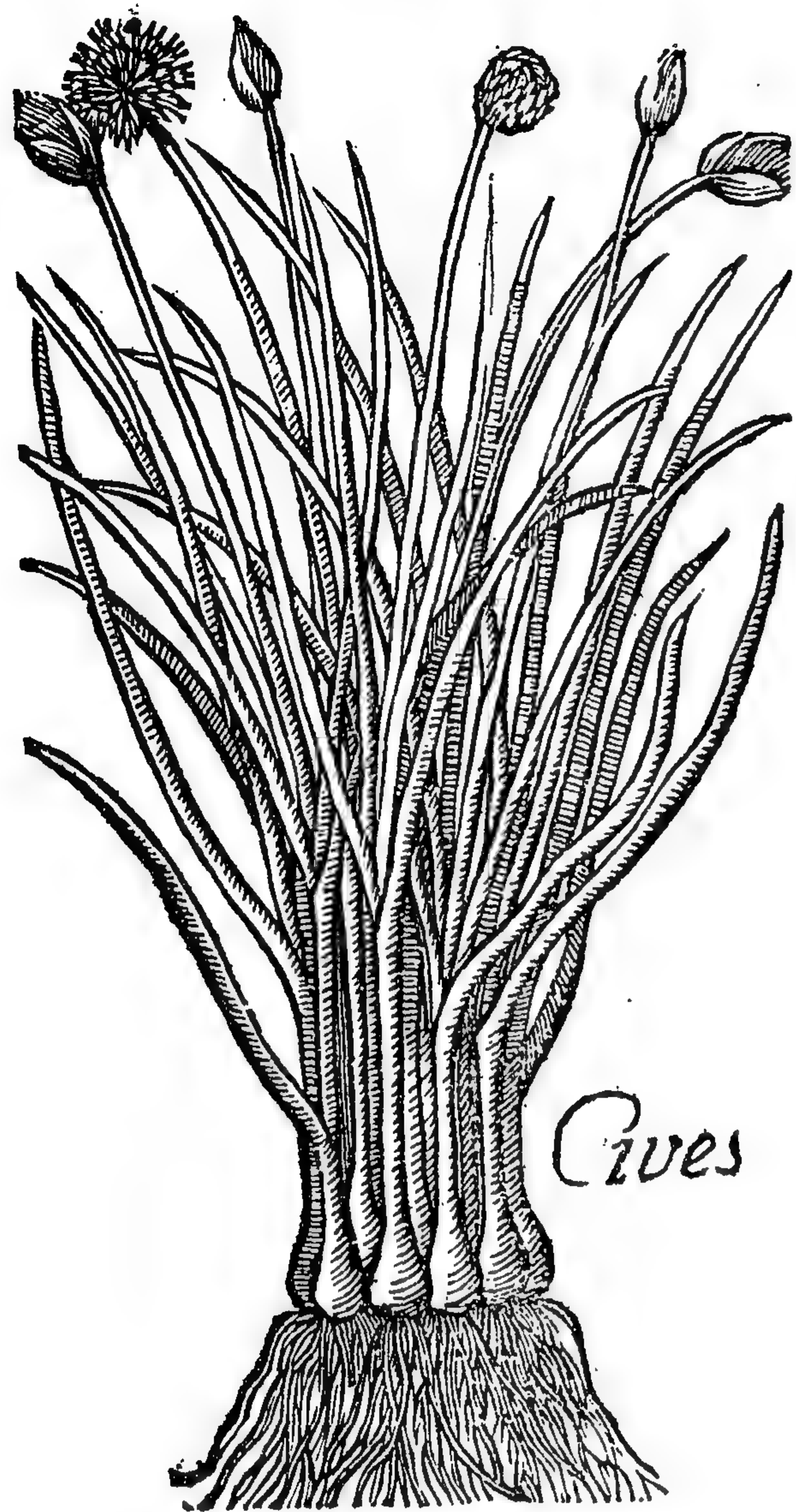
II. *The Kinds.* They are either *Schœnoprasum sativum*, Garden Chives: or *Schœnoprasum agrestis*, Field or Wild Chives.

III. *The Descriptions.* Chives have many little headed Roots or Bulbs fastned together, out of which grow down into the Earth, a great number of white little threads, or strings, which have both the Smell and Taste of Onions and Leeks, jointly, so as if they were participating of both. From these Roots spring up about a handful high, long, slender, round, green Spires, almost like to Rushes, amongst which grow up small and tender Stalks, which send forth certain knops, or heads, like those of the Onion, but much less, in which are contained the Seed.

IV. The second, or Wild Kind, has a small, and somewhat Bulbous Root, but nothing near so many joined together, from which spring downwards a great



great many white threads or strings. And from the same upwards spring forth a great number of small blades, almost as high again as the former, harder, and of a darker green, and sometimes not absolutely round: otherwise (excepting their thick growing together) they are much alike, and differ but a very little in their Taste and Smell.



Cives

V. *The Places.* The first are nourished up, and grow only in Gardens: the other grows Wild in the Fields, and by way sides in uncultivated places in several Parts of this Kingdom. I have found them by the sides of the Highway, and in the Field going from Canbury-House near Islington, towards the Boarded River, and that in several places as I walked along.

VI. *The Times.* They flourish long, and continue many Years, and well endure the cold of Winter.

VII. *The Qualities.* They are hot and dry in the third Degree; Aperitive, Absterfivè, Digestive, Diffusive, Diuretick, and Suppurative; Stomackick, Pectoral, and Nephritick; Alterative, Emmenagogick, Lithonriptick, Alexipharmick, and Spermatogenetick.

VIII. *The Specification.* They are peculiar against Diseases of the Reins and Bladder.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may prepare from them, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Distilled Water. 5. A Cataplasm. 6. The Seed.

## The Virtues.

X. *The liquid Juice.* It provokes Appetite, causes thirst, heats, warms, and strengthens the Stomach, opens Obstructions, yet is something flatulent; it loosens the Belly, provokes Urine, and the Courses, and is good against the bitings of Mad Dogs, Serpents, and other Venomous Creatures. Dose, one ounce or more in White Wine; it eases the Strangury, and is good against all Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, expelling Stones, Sand and Gravel.

XI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, but is indeed more powerful; the constant use of this Preparation, or the Juice, admirably encreases Seed, and excites Venery. And this, or the former Juice, being snuffed up the Nostrils, it purges the Head and Brain, of cold, moist, and flegmatick Humors, and prevails against the Lethargy, and other Diseases of the Head and Brain, proceeding from cold and moisture. Dose from one to two ounces in any proper Vehicle.

XII. *The Decoction in White Port Wine.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not full out so powerful, and may be given against the Stone and Strangury, from four ounces to eight, once or twice a Day, as also in the Paroxysm.

XIII. *The Distilled Water.* Being drank to six ounces, or more, either alone, or mixt with White Port Wine, it provokes Urine, and is said by some to break the Stone, and drive it forth.

XIV. *The Cataplasm.* Made by beating the whole Plant with Mithridate, and Pulp of Figs, and applied, is good to ripen and break a Plague Sore, or any other Apostem. It is profitably applied to Scaldings or Burnings by Water or Fire, or Gunpowder: As also to the Piles when extremely inflamed and swelled.

XV. *The Seed.* Made into Pouder, and given a dram at a time, it encreases Seed, and stirs up Lust both in Man and Woman: and given to Children which have Worms, it kills and expels them: It is also good against the bitings of Venomous Beasts.

## CHAP. CXXXV.

### Of CLAVER-GRASS.

I. *THE Names.* It is called of *Dioscorides*, as it is thought, in *Greek*, *Μένδρα*: from its being brought from the *Medes* into *Greece*; and so the *Medicum malum*, or *Pomecitron*, was so called, being brought first from *Media*: In *Latin*, *Medica*; and in *English*, *Claver-grass*. The *Arabians* call it, *Cot*, *Alasaleti*, and *Alfosfosa*: and this is that very Plant which the *French* call *Saint Foin*, which our *Moderns* have found so mightily to improve Land.

II. *The Kinds.* This *Claver-grass* it self is a Species of the *Trefoils*, but being better known under this name, we thought good to treat of it here. *Claver-grass* is manifold, 1. *Medica legitima*, *Favum Burgundiacum*, *Trifolium Cochleatum*, *Claver*, *Claver-grass*, *Medick Fodder*, *Snail Claver*, *Snail Trefoil*, and *Saint Foin*. 2. *Medica Racemosa*, *Trifolium Cochleatum Polycarpon*, *Clustering Snail Claver*. 3. *Medica Frutescens*, *Medica flore luteo*, *Trifolium Sylvestre luteum Siliqua Cornuta*, *Lens major repens Tabernmontani*, *Woody Snail Claver*: 4. *Medica Marina*, *Trifolium Cochleatum Marinum*, *Sea Claver*. 5. *Medica Cordata*, *Trifolium Cordatum*, *Heart Claver*, or *Trefoil*. 6. *Medica Lunata*, *Trifolium Lunatum*, *Moon Claver*. *Parkinson* has four other kinds, but these are the chief which grow in *England*.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first of these has a Root which runs deep down into the Earth, sometimes two feet or more; it is thick, and sends forth many tough thready strings, and continues long, sometimes ten, twenty or thirty Years. From this Root rise up several weak, green Stalks, with divers small green Trefoil Leaves, set thereon without order. The Flowers grow upon long Stalks, coming from the Joints



*Joins and Tops of the Branches, clustering in a thick short Tuft, of a blewish purple in those which grow in our parts, but in others of divers and several colors, as more purple, near a violet, or paler blew, or of a brownish blew, and yellow colors, parted: In some parts of Spain, and at Narbon in France, they are of a yellow color also. The Flowers being past, small, Snail-like, round Cods follow, set together, not so much twined as many other Medica's are, containing within them small pale colored Seed.*

### Claver-Grass, or Snail Trefoil of Lobel.



IV. *Observations*, 1. The Author of the *Country Farm* gives a mighty commendation of this Plant; and says, That there is not any Pulse, or other Food which is more agreeable, and good for the Feeding of Beasts, than this *Claver-grass* or *Snail-Claver*, called by the *French*, *Saint Foin*, not only for the nourishing and fattening of Cattle, but also to cure Beasts which are sick. It is called *Burgundy-Hay*, because the *Burgundians* have always been very careful in Sowing this Herb, and managing Sandy and Barren Land therewith, for that it makes the Worst and Poorest Land very Rich and Fruitful. The benefit of this Herb is so great, that every good Husbandman ought to reserve a good part of his Ground to be sown therewith.

V. *Observat.* 2. In Sowing of this *Saint Foin* Seed, though it grows well in fat Grounds freed from Weeds, yet it grows also very well in Poor, Lean, Sandy and Barren Grounds, especially such as are easie to be Plowed, and such as have been thrice Sown with Grain, before this is put into it, that it may the easier take deep rooting in the Earth, which it naturally does: but in sowing of this Seed, you must not be sparing of it, for by how much the more Seed you Sow, by so much the more will the Herb grow in thickness; nor will there grow any other Grass or Herbs there, by which the profit will be so much the greater.

VI. *Observ.* 3. As soon as it is Sown, it must be Harrowed several ways, as long ways, broad ways, and corner ways; and if it is a dry Season, and a dry Ground, it ought to be gently watered, but not in those Months between the latter end of Septem-

ber and beginning of April, lest any hard Frost should come, which might nip it, and so kill it. Authors also say, it ought to be Mowed, or Cut down, five or six times the first Year, others say three or four times, but your Experience must guide you in this; and in after Years two or three times a Year, by which great advantages are made of it; and that Land which has not been worth twelve Pence an Acre *per Annum*, by the Improvements of *Saint Foin*, have in a few Years been made worth forty Shillings, and three Pounds an Acre, and sometimes more, which is much for the Encouragement of the Husbandman, to proceed in this kind of Husbandry.

VII. *Observ.* 4. The fit times for Cutting it down, are in *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*, in the New of the Moon, but you must not let it lye upon heaps any longer than a Day in the Meadows, for if it should lye any long time, it would endanger the killing the Roots which are under it, and utterly destroy it, for which reason it is necessary to dry it forthwith, and as soon as may be, stirring and turning it every day from day to day, and then as soon as ever it is dry to carry it away.

VIII. *Obser.* 5. This is also to be taken special notice of, That none of your Cattel ought to feed on the Grounds on which it is sown, because it is apt to be killed by them, by bruising it with their Teeth in biting it off, whereas cutting it with a Sythe hurts it not: nor must Cattel be suffered to eat it green, because it is apt to make them Sick, by reason of its heat and moisture: for which reason it is always cut down, dried, and made into Hay; and then it is to be given to your Beasts, but in small quantity, because it breeds much Blood, Flesh and Fat, even to such a Degree, as with Fattness to choak them.

IX. *Observ.* 6. You must always be careful to gather and reserve Seed of this Grass, to Sow again, when you see you shall have occasion for it: it must not be gathered the first Year it bears, by reason of its weakness and poorness, but in all the following Years, so soon as the Husks in which the Seed is contained shall appear dry, and the Seed or Grains themselves are turned yellow, which will be in the Months of *June* and *July*, you may then save it.

X. *Observ.* 7. That this Grass being sowed in barren Land is very profitable there is no doubt; and if it is considered that the first charge is the principal charge, even for a long time, it is so much the more valuable: for Land being once Sowed with this, it not only enriches the ground for the present, but for many years after: for this first sowing will be sufficient for ten or twelve Years, let the ground be what it will; and as the Soil may be, it may last twenty or thirty Years, or more, according as it is carefully lookt after, and well managed, which is a matter of so great weight, as ought to put every prudent Husbandman into the thoughts and consideration of it.

XI. The Second Kind has a Root long and running pretty deep into the ground, which endures long, from whence it has Branches lying upon the Earth, a foot in length or more, set with small round Trefoil Leaves on pretty large rootstalks: the Flowers of a purple color it sends forth at the Joins, on long rootstalks, small and many clustering together, after which come forth somewhat rough, small, wrinkled Snail-like Shells or Husks, in which are contained the Seed.

XII. The third, or Woody Snail Claver has a long Root, consisting of many long strings, and continues many Years, shooting forth new Stalks every Year, which are many, hard, round, flexible, and so weak as not to be able to stand upright, but lying on the



the Ground, about a foot or more in length, and divided into many Branches, on which grow small, long, and narrow Leaves, by three's on a long Footstalk, with a thick middle Rib, on the back of each: the Flowers are small, and many together, of a yellow color, and somewhat sweet; which being passed away, several small, flat, twined Cods follow, like to those of the first kind, but smaller, which contain within them smaller Seed likewise, flattish, and almost of a Kidney fashion.

XIII. The fourth, or Sea Claver, has a Root somewhat thick, and enduring many Years, from whence rise up several hoary trailing Branches, spreading themselves on the ground a foot or two long, with many small and very hoary round Trefoil Leaves, on short Footstalks. The Flowers are many, small, and yellow, growing at the end of the Branches; which being past away, many small withered Shells or Husks do follow, much like to the other small Snail Clavers. There is also another kind of Sea Claver, whose Root perishes Yearly, but it grows bigger and greener than the other, and the Flowers are small and yellow, coming from the Joints of the Branches, but one at a place, which are followed by small hard and round prickly Heads, and whose windings are difficult to be discerned.

XIV. The fifth, or Heart Claver, has a thick and thready Root, which perishes every Year; from whence spring forth several very slender, small, and weak Branches, full of Joints, and round greenish Trefoil Leaves, standing upon long Footstalks, broad at the ends, and dented in, in their middle, making the fashion of a Heart, with dull, red, or purplish, and sometimes almost blackish spots on them. The Flowers grow two or three together upon Footstalks coming from the Joints; they are small and yellow, which being past away, leave behind them small prickly twining Heads, like unto the other small Claver-grasses.



*Moon  
Claver*

XV. The sixth, or Moon Claver, has its Roots, Stalks, Leaves, and manner of growing, much like to the other Snail Trefoils, or Clavers, before described, especially like to the first: the Leaves are

hairy, and dented about the edges: the Flowers are small and yellow, which being passed away, crooked, flat Cods, of an indifferent breadth, after the shape or fashion of a Moon three quarters old, follow: in which are contained Seed, in shape or form of small little Kidneys.

XVI. The Places. The first grows naturally in Italy, Spain, Portugal, and France, from whence it was brought into Flanders and England, in both which places it flourishes admirably, and serves them and us for Hay for our Cattel, and Horses: in Spain they have no other Hay with which they feed their Horses, which makes them exceeding Fat: the same they do in the Low Countries, whereby their Cows yield the greater abundance of Milk. It is sown in the Fields of Italy, Spain, France, the Low Countries and England, for Food for their Beasts. The second grows oftentimes in Fields, Meadows, and Pastures. The third grows in Meadows, by Hedge and Wood sides, and places somewhat shaded. The fourth grows near to the Sea in several places, as in our Marshes and Fields at Woolwich, Deptford, &c. and by the Sea side about West Chester, as also on the Mediteranean Sea shore, and about Venice. The fifth is often found in our Fields and Meadows; and though Camerarius calls it *Medica Arabica* (I suppose because it grows in that Country:) yet, with Johnson, we say, it grows Wild with us in our Meadows in England, having seen it, I believe, an hundred times. The sixth grows also plentifully in our Fields and Pasture grounds.

XVII. The Times. The first of these, (the ground being first made fit for its entertainment, by well Ploughing it up, and killing the Weeds thereof) is to be sown in the end of April, or something earlier, in the New of the Moon, and towards the latter end of the Day, that it may receive the refreshing Dews of the Night, by which means it will the sooner, and more easily spring out of the Earth, and you may Mow it in June, and July, and August, for Hay, and after the first Year somewhat earlier. The first, and all the rest flower in June and July, and their Seeds are ripe in the end of August, or soon after. But the Seed of the first is not to be gathered in the first Year, by reason of its weakness, as is before observed, but in all the following it may be gathered in July, or as soon as it appears ripe.

XVIII. As to the Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues, of the first, or the other five, Authors have observed nothing concerning them, but that they (especially the first) are a good nourishing food for Horses, Cows, and other Cattel, and that the first is so powerful to fatten them, that they usually stint them to a quantity, for fear of suffocating them, by reason of their growing too fat.

XIX. Observation 1. From this it appears, that it is of a nourishing Virtue, and by reason it encreases Flesh and Fat, I am of the Opinion, that the Liquid Juice or Essence, or Syrup thereof, may be very powerful in restoring such as are in Consumptions: it is indeed good against Coughs, Colds, Wheezings, vehement Catarrhs, Obstructions of the Lungs, and other Distempers of those parts.

XX. Observ. 2. The signature of the Plant, chiefly of the Cods and Seed, the latter being somewhat like a Kidney, made me believe it might be good against the Stone, Gravel, and Sand, or Tartarous Matter in the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, which occasions Stranguries, &c. I made tryal of the Juice, Essence, Decoction in White Wine, and the Syrup, and in the first Patient I gave it to, I found it excellently to answer my Expectation: I have since made tryal of it upon several other Patients with very



very good success; yet I cannot say, but in some cases it has not answered the end. *The Decoction of the Seed in White Port Wine*, has the same Virtue, but I believe not full out so powerful as the *Juice* and *Essence* of the Plant; but the *pouder* of the *Seed* given to one dram is more effectual: So also the *Fixed Salt* of the whole Plant made by Incineration.

XXI. *Observ.* 3. *Dioscorides* says the *Green Herb* has a cooling property, and for that purpose it is chiefly used. *Avicen* commends the *Oil* made of it against the Trembling of the Heart. *Gesner* says that a *Liquor* may be drawn out of it by fire (*Parkinson* supposes he means an *Oil* to be drawn out of the *Seed*, as out of *Sweet Almonds*) good against the *Stone*. From this I observe, and am apt to believe, that if an *Oily Tincture*, or a *Saline Tincture*, be made of the whole Plant, they may be very effectual for that purpose, being duly taken in a proper Vehicle.

## C H A P. CXXXVI.

### Of CLEVERS, or GOOSE-GRASS.



**T**HE Names. It is called in *Greek*, Ἀπείρων, as the most usual Name, but it has also several others, φιλίσιον, φιλατίειον, as *Galen* out of *Hippocrates* faith; and ὀμφαλόκαρπον, as *Dioscorides* faith (because the *Seed* is *Navel* fashion:) it is also called, ἐλάνθρωπον, quasi hominis amans, and φιλανθρώπον, for the same reason. In *Latin*, *Aparine*, *Lappa minor* *Plinij*, *Asperugo*: In *English*, *Clevers*, and *Goose-grass*.

II. *The Kinds*. They are chiefly twofold, viz.  
1. *Aparine Vulgaris*, The common or rough *Clevers*.  
2. *Aperine Levis*, Smooth *Clevers*, not mentioned by any Author but *Thalius*, and from him by *Parkinson*.

III. *The Descriptions*. The *Common Rough Clever* has a small and very fibrous Root, spreading much in the Earth, but dying every Year; from whence rise up divers very rough square Stalks not bigger than the lower part of a naked *Wheat Straw*, creeping up so as to be sometimes two or three yards high, if it has any tall *Bushes* or *Trees* near it, or any *Hedge* on which it may Climb, but yet without any *Claspers*; otherwise they are much lower, or lye upon the ground, being full of *Joints*; from every one of which shoots forth a *Branch* besides the *Leaves*, which are commonly six in number, set round the *Stalk* almost like a *Star*, or the *Rowel* of a *Spur*. From between the *Leaves* at the *Joints*, towards the tops of the *Branches* come forth very small white *Flowers*, every one upon a small thready *Footstalk*, which after they are fallen, two small round rough brown colored *Seeds* (but at first green) joined together like a pair of *Testicles*, do appear. When they are ripe, they grow hard, and of a whitish brown color, having a little hole or hollowess on the side (some what like unto a *Navel*) on which the *Stalk* grows to them. The *Stalks*, *Leaves* and *Seeds* are so very rough, that they will cleave almost to any thing which shall touch them, and seem to be a little clammy withal.

IV. *The Smooth Kind* has a Root like the foregoing, and grows much like unto it, but it neither grows so high, nor are the *Leaves* so great, and not at all rough or sticking to what it touches, as the former is. The *Leaves* are the same in number, and stand in the same order, and at the *Joints* also: the *Flowers* are small and white, consisting of four very little *Leaves*, like the other, and give such like *Seed* growing together in *Pairs*, but smooth also, and not rough as the first is. There is another sort of this *Smooth Kind*, but it little differs from it, excepting in the *Seed*, which is said to be rough, much like unto a *Coriander Comfit*.

V. *The Places*. The first Kind grows by *Hedge sides* and *Ditch banks* in most places of *England*, and almost every where in *Gardens*, it being there nothing but a *Weed*, and is rooted out with much labor and diligence, for that it will run upon every thing it grows next, and be apt to choak and kill it, if not Weeded up. The second is a *Native* of *Spain*, but grows in *England* in the *Gardens* of the *Curious*, where it is apt to be as troublesome as the other is, if it is suffered to Sow its *Seed*.

VI. *The Times*. They Flower in the end of *May*, and in *June* and *July*; and the *Seed* is ripe, and falls by the end of *July*, or in *August*, from which it springs afresh the next Year, and not from the old *Roots*.

VII. *The Qualities*. It is hot and dry in the beginning of the first Degree, according to *Galen's* Judgment; and are *Aperitive*, *Absterfive*, and *Astringent*, *Traumatick*, or *Vulnerary*, *Alterative* and *Alexipharmick*.

VIII. *The Specification*. It is peculiar for stopping *Fluxes*, and healing *Green Wounds*.

IX. *The Preparations*. You may have therefrom,  
1. The *Green Herb*. 2. A *liquid Juice*. 3. An *Essence*. 4. A *Decoction*. 5. A *Pouder*. 6. An *Ointment*. 7. A *Balsam*. 8. A *Cataplasma*. 9. A *Distilled Water*. 10. The *Oily Tincture*.

#### The Virtues.

X. *The Green Herb*. *Parkinson* says, that it serves the *Country People* well, instead of a *strainer*, to cleanse and clear their *Milk* from *Straws*, *Hairs*, or other gross things which fall into it.

XI. *The Liquid Juice*. Made of the *Herb* and *Seed* together, being taken in *Wine*, is good against the



the bitings of Vipers, or the great Spider *Phalangium*, by preserving the Heart from their Poyson, as *Dioscorides* and *Pliny* from him say. *Galen* says, that it cleanses moderately, and dries, and is of subtil parts. It is generally taken in Broth to make such Lank and Lean, as are apt to grow Fat. It is also good to heal Wounds, and stanch Blood, being applied: and *Matthiolus* says, it is commended to conglutinate, or close the Lips of Green Wounds: dropt into the Ears, it eases their pain, though vehement.

XII. *The Essence*. It has all the Virtues of the Juice, but more powerful; besides which, it is very effectual to strengthen the Bowels, and stop all sort of fluxes of the Belly whatsoever: and being taken thrice a day, it helps the yellow Jaundice.

XIII. *The Decoction in Wine*. It is Stomackick, causes Leanness, stops Bleeding, and being drank twice or thrice a day promotes the healing of Wounds, old running Sores and Ulcers.

XIV. *The Powder*. It is an excellent Vulnerary, and conglutinates the Lips of Green Wounds, being strewed thereon: it also cleanses old running Sores and Ulcers, dries up their moisture, and induces their healing. Taken inwardly to a dram in Red Port Wine, Morning and Evening, it stops spitting, vomiting, and pissing of Blood, and cures the Bloody Flux, as also other Fluxes of the Bowels; and being applied, the bleeding of Wounds.

XV. *The Ointment*. Being made with *Auxungia*, i. e. Hogs-Lard, or other proper fat body, and anointed upon the part affected, it helps all sorts of hard Swellings, or Kernels (proceeding from the King's-Evil) in the Neck, Throat, or other Parts.

XVI. *The Balsam*. It is a singular Vulnerary, and cures Green Wounds (not Contused, Lacerated, or otherwise composd) at one, two, or three Dressings. It digests Apostems, as also complicated Wounds, then cleanses them, incarnates, dries, and suddenly heals them. It is indeed a very singular Vulnerary, or Wound Balsam.

XVII. *The Cataplasme*. Being applied to any wound or place which bleeds, it presently stops the Blood; and in a simple Green Wound cures it at the first intention. It is best to be made of the Green Herb, by beating, and made thick by the Powder of the same.

XVIII. *The Distilled Water*. It has in a weak manner the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, and Decoction; and may be used as a Vehicle for the two first, or the Powder.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture*. It is an excellent thing to be applied to Wounds of the Nerves and Joints; and taken inwardly, prevails against the Jaundice, and gives present relief in the Colick. Dose thirty or forty drops in a Glass of White Port Wine.

is, 1. *ὄρμινον κοινόν*, *Horminum Commune*, Common Clary. 2. *Horminum sativum verum* *Dioscoridis*, The true Garden Clary of *Dioscorides*. 3. *Colus Jovis*, *Lobeli*, *Clusij*, *Camerarij*, *Lugdunensis*, *Eystetensis*, *Gerardi*; *Orvula Tertia Dodonæi*; *Melium Cesalpini*, *Galeopsis*, *Lutea Dalechampi*, *Horminum Luteum Glutinosum Baubini*, *Horminum Tridentinum*, *Horminum luteum aliorum*; *Camphorata* & *Sphacelus aliis*, Yellow Wild Clary, or *Jupiter's Distaff*. 4. *Horminum humile Germanicum*, *Gallitricum alterum Gerardi*, The Smaller sort of Clary, or German Clary.



III. *The Descriptions*. The first, Common Clary has a Root which is blackish and spreads not far, but perishes after Seed time; from whence proceeds a Stalk a foot and half high, or more, which as it grows up branches it self into others; these Stalks are four square, thick and rough, sending forth broad, rough, wrinkled, whitish, or Hoary green Leaves, somewhat evenly cut in on the edges, and of a strong sweet Scent, some of them growing near the ground, and some by Couples upon the Stalks. The Flowers grow at certain distances, at the Joints, (with two small Leaves under them) somewhat like unto Sage Flowers, but smaller, and of a very whitish pale blew color. The Seed is blackish, or somewhat flat, and not so round as the Wild, and is contained in long toothed Husks, which serve instead of Cods.

IV. The second, or True Garden Clary of *Dioscorides*, has a Root which is small, and perishing every Year, from whence it rises up but with one square hairy Stalk, about a foot and half high, more or less, as the ground is in goodness: This Stalk spreads it self into several square Branches, on which are set at every Joint two Leaves, one against another, which are something broad and round, a little rugged like unto Horehound, but more green than white, and of a reasonable good Smell: at the tops of the Stalks stand divers Leaves, one row under another, of a very fine, deep, purple violet color, the lower being paler than the uppermost, and seem afar off to be Flowers, but approaching nearer to them, are found only to be Leaves, the Flowers coming forth

## C H A P. CXXXVII.

### Of C L A R Y, Garden.

I. *THE Names*. It is called in *Greek*, *ὄρμινον* *ἀπὸ τοῦ ὀρμᾶν*, *ab Impetu quod ad Venerem stimulat*, as *Dioscorides* says: In *Latin*, *Horminum*, *Scalaria*, and *Scarlea*, *Orminum Cordi*, *Gallitricum Tragi*, and so of *Lugdunensis* and *Gerard*: In *English*, Clary, *quasi* Cleer-Eye.

II. *The Kinds*. It is, 1. *ὄρμινον ἡμετέρον*, *Horminum Hortense*, Garden Clary; of which in this Chapter. 2. *ὄρμινον ὄρειον*, *Horminum Sylvestre*, Wild Clary, of which in the next. The Garden Clary,



under them at set Spaces about the Stalks, of a whitish purple color, smaller than the Flowers of any other sort of Clary, and standing in brownish purple Husks, which after the said Flowers are past, whilst the Seed ripens (which is then black) turn themselves downwards, by reason whereof, if it is not gathered in due time, it is lost. Gerard says the Leaves are somewhat round, and lay'd over with a hoary Cottony substance, not much unlike Horehound: the Stalks are square, small and hairy; and the Flowers coming forth between those beautiful purple Leaves, towards the tops, are small, of a blewish or watched color, in fashion like to Rosemary-flowers.

with divers fibres springing therefrom, which perish not, but abide many years: from this Root come forth several square and somewhat hairy Stalks, a foot and half high, on which do grow large Leaves, very like unto our common Garden Clary, hairy, rough, and rugged, but not all out so large, nor of so white a color, growing two at a Joint, on the contrary part thereof, one unto another, and somewhat cut in on the edges, and deeply dented likewise, having also a less strong scent than they. The Flowers grow at Spaces about the Stalks, to the tops, bowing their spiky Heads, which are of a purple color, not much larger than Lavender-flowers, which being past away, there comes after them, small blackish Seed.

Clary of Dioscorides



V. The third, or Colus Jovis, has a knobby Root, which is composed of many long strings, by which it takes strong hold in the Earth, and abides many Years: from whence rise up several four square rough Stalks, a yard high, or more, which branch forth themselves into divers four square Stalks or Branches. The Leaves are many, large, hoary, or of a whitish green, dented about the edges, and standing upon long footstalks, rising some from the Root, and some from the Joints of the Stalks, which are broader at the bottom, smoother also, and somewhat fat or clammy in handling, and somewhat hairy, as the square Stalks also are. These Leaves upon the Stalks stand by Couples, and are like the Leaves which grow below, but somewhat lesser. At the tops of the Stalks the Flowers come forth at set Spaces, set round about in Coronets or Wharls, which are gaping, and like unto those of Common Clary, but of a faint yellow color, after which comes brown blackish Seed. Gerard says, that this kind of Clary, called Colus Jovis, represents in the very top of the Stalk, a Distaff, wrapped about with yellow Flax, and that from thence it took its name; and that the Leaves are like those of Nettles, rough, sharp pointed, and of an overworn green color: both Leaves and Flowers have somewhat a strong Smell.

VI. The fourth, or Small Clary, has a Root of the thickness of a Man's Thumb, black on the outside,



German Clary

VII. The Places. These are all nourished up with us in Gardens, the fourth of them being brought to us out of Germany; and all of them (except the third) are sometimes found to grow Wild in several places. The Colus Jovis, which only grows in Gardens here, is found to grow in great plenty throughout all Hungary and Austria, and in many other places.

VIII. The Times. The first is most usually sown, for the Seed rises of its own shedding: The second also requires to be new sown in the Spring, for it seldom comes up of the Seed which falls, the Frosts and Winter with us, for the most part, killing of it. They all Flower in the Summer Months, as in June, July and August, some a little later than others, and their Seed is ripe in August, or September.

IX. The Qualities. Gerard says, Clary is hot and dry in the third Degree: Aperitive, Absterfive, Astringent, Traumatick or Vulnerary; Pectoral, Hysterick, Alterative, Analeptick, and Spermatogenetick.

X. The Specification. It strengthens weak Backs, stimulates to Venery, and causes fruitfulness.

XI. The Preparations. You may have therefrom  
1. The green Leaves. 2. A liquid Juice of the Herb. 3. An Essence. 4. A Syrup. 5. A Decoction.



tion. 6. *A Pouder of the Leaves.* 7. *A Balsam.* 8. *A Cataplasme.* 9. *The whole Seed.* 10. *A Pouder of the Seed.* 11. *A Mucilage of the Seed.* 12. *An Electuary of the Pouder of the Leaves and Seed.*

*The Virtues.*

XII. *The green Herb.* Because of its properties of Strengthening, and provoking Venery, it is very much used by some people, especially in Countrey Towns, to be fryed in a Frying Pan, being first dipt into a Batter made of Flower, Eggs, and Milk or Cream, and so (being served up to the Table) to be eaten.

XIII. *The liquid Juice of the Herb.* Used as an Errhine, it cleanses the Head and Brain of Cold, Flegmatick, and Viscous Humors, or other matter afflicting those parts: and taken from three ounces to six, mixt with a Glas of Tent or Alicant, it admirably strengthens the Back, and excites *Venus*: It thickens the Seed, warms and comforts the Womb, and is said to cause fruitfulness in Women, being taken and used Morning and Night for some considerable time. It also cleanses, and heals green Wounds.

XIV. *The Essence.* It has the Virtues of the liquid Juice, besides which, it provokes the Terms in Women, warms and comforts a cold and moist Womb, and takes away the Weakness and Slipperiness thereof: it facilitates the Birth, and expels the Secundine, or Afterbirth. And as it is good to be given to Women which are Barren, through a cold and moist disposition of the Womb; so is it also good to stop the Whites, and to comfort a cold and weak Stomach, oppressed with Viscous Flegm. Dose from one ounce to two, three, or four ounces, in a Glas of generous Wine.

XV. *The Syrup of the Juice.* It has the Virtues of the two former, but not so powerful, because it is so much clogg'd with Honey. But in other cases as a Pectoral, it is much beyond them, for it causes better Expectoration, and therefore is good against Coughs, Colds, Hoarseness, Wheezings, shortness of Breath, difficulty of Breathing, and other like Distempers of the Brest and Lungs. Dose two or three ounces, Morning and Night.

XVI. *The Decoction in Wine.* It is weaker than the Juice or Essence, but has all the Virtues of the foregoing Preparations in a lower Degree. It helps to expectorate rotten and purulent matter from the Lungs in a Pleurisie, as also in Coughs, and other Distempers of those Parts; and possibly may be good for such as are troubled with the Sciatica. Dose six ounces Morning and Night.

XVII. *The Pouder of the Leaves.* Snuffed up the Nostrils causeth sneezing, and thereby purges the Head and Brain of Rheum, and cold thin Flegm, and Tartarous Matter afflicting those parts, causing Head-achs, Vertigo's, Apoplexies, Drowsiness, Sleepiness, and Lethargies: and being taken inwardly to one Dram, Morning and Evening, in a little of the Syrup, it strengthens the Back, increases the Seed, and excites Venery.

XVIII. *The Balsam.* Whether it is made with the Juice, or with the green Leaves, it is as singular a Vulnerary as is to be met withal. It not only cures Green Wounds at once or twice dressing them, but also digests, cleanses, and heals foul, putrid, or rotten and running Ulcers: and being applied, is an excellent thing to give ease in the Sciatica.

XIX. *The Cataplasme.* Being applied to Contusions, it discusses them, if no Vessels are torn: and applied to Green Wounds, it suddenly heals them.

XX. *The whole Seed.* It is used to be put into the Eyes to clear them from Films, Clouds, Moats

or other like things which offend them. It also clears them from Pearls, and white or red Spots, which chance to grow upon them.

XXI. *The Pouder of the Seed.* Put into the Eyes, it clears the sight; and being taken inwardly from half a dram, to a dram and half, Morning and Night, in Syrup of Clary, it admirably stimulates *Venus*, strengthens the Reins, and eases Pains of those Parts.

XXII. *The Mucilage of the Seed.* If it is made with Water, and applied to Tumors or Swellings; it discusses and removes them. It also draws forth Splinters, Thorns, or other things gotten into the Flesh. If made with Vinegar, it is good against hot Inflammations, as also Biles, Felons, and other hot Excretions in the Flesh and Skin, more especially if it is applied to them before they are come to too great a head.

XXIII. *The Electuary of the Pouder of the Leaves and Seed.* Put into Sore or Ulcerated Eyes, it heals them; and being used Morning, Noon and Night, for some considerable time, it clears the Eye-sight of Pearls, Films, Clouds, and other like things, and helps dimness of sight, washing the Eyes also between whiles four or five times a day, with the Juice or Essence of the Herb. This Electuary being also taken inwardly from one dram to two drams, Morning and Night, for some time, helps Coughs, and Ulcers of the Lungs, restores in Consumptions, strengthens weak Backs, breeds Seed, excites Lust, and admirably fortifies the whole Man.

XXIV. *Colus Jovis*, yellow Clary, or *Jupiter's Distaff*, is hot and dry in the second Degree, and its Juice and Essence, are singular good to cleanse and heal old Ulcers, and foul running Sores, being applied to the Parts afflicted, according to Art.

## C H A P. CXXXVIII.

### Of CLARY, Wild.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ὀκλίβανος*; In Latin, *Horminum Sylvestre*, *Oculus Christi*, and by some, *Geminalis*: and in English, *Wild Clary*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are several Species hereof, but the chief, and which we intend to handle in this Work, are these following, viz. 1. *Horminum Sylvestre vulgare*, *Oculus Christi*, Wild Clary, especially so called by *Camerarius*, *Cordus*, *Clusius*, *Fuchs*, *Gesner*, *Gerard*, *Lobel*, *Lonicerus*, *Lugdunensis*, and *Turner*; *Brunfelsius* calls it, *Salvia agrestis*; and *Besler* in his *Hortus Eystetensis*, *Salvia agrestis flore purpureo*: *Gesner* and *Tragus*, *Salvia agrestis vera*; *Gallitricum verum* (in Italy) *Casalpini*; *Sclarea Sylvestris Tabernmontani*. 2. *Horminum Sylvestre incanum flore albo*, *Horminum Sylvestre quartum Niveo flore Clusij*, *Sclarea Sylvestris flore albo Tabernmontani*, *Salvia agrestis flore albo horti Eftetensis*, Hoary Wild Clary with a White Flower. 3. *Horminum Sylvestre Lavendule flore Baubini*, *Sclarea Hispanica Tabernmontani*, *Gallitricum alterum Gerardi*, Wild Clary, with Lavender Flowers. 4. *Horminum Sylvestre salvifolium majus & minus Baubini*, *Horminum Sylvestre Matthioli*, *Casalpini*, *Lugdunensis*; *Orvola altera Dodonaei*, *Horminum Sylvestre quintum Clusij*; *Verbascum nigrum salvifolium flore purpureo Lobeli*; *Salvia Sylvestris adulterina Tragi*, Sage Leav'd Wild Clary. Authors make many other kinds, but these are all that are found growing with us, either Wild or in Gardens.



III. The Descriptions. The first kind, or *Oculus Christi*, has a Root which is long, tough, and black, attended with many fibres, by which it takes fast hold of the Earth, from whence rise up many square Stalks two or three feet high, on which grow broad dark green Leaves, dented about the edges, and somewhat rugged and hard in handling; the Flowers grow along towards the tops of the Stalks, like unto the gaping or hooded Flowers of the Garden Clary, but smaller, and of a pale or whitish blew color; which being past away, there comes in small husks, round blackish or brownish Seed; the whole Plant has a strong Smell, but it is nothing so quick as that of our common Garden Clary. There are two other kinds hereof: One, the tops of whose Stalks are purplish, with Flowers of a deeper purple color, and somewhat larger Leaves. Another, differing only in this, that the tops of the Stalks are green, and not purple; the Flowers of a pale blew color, and the Leaves a little torn on the edges.



*Wild Clary*

IV. The second kind, or Hoary Wild Clary, with white Flowers, has a long tough black Root, not much differing from the former; the Leaves in this being almost like those, but more hoary, and a little deeper dented in on the edges, the Stalks are square, and almost a yard high, upon which grow the Flowers in the same manner, saving that these are wholly white, which being past away, there follows small round brownish Seed.

V. The third, or Lavender flowered Wild Clary, has a Root not much differing from either of the former Wild Claries, from whence come forth square hairy Stalks, two or three feet high, set with harder, narrower, and smoother Leaves, more deeply indented about the edges, and rounder pointed; the Flowers are much less than the former; and neither in bigness, nor color, are they greatly differing from the Flowers of Spike or Lavender, they growing in spaces and rundles as the rest do; the Seed is like

to the others, nor does the Smell of the whole Plant differ much from them.

VI. The fourth, or Sage Leav'd Wild Clary, has a long Root, tough and black without, but yellow within, which abides without perishing for many Years, as the Roots of most of the Wild kinds do: from whence rise up low square Stalks, much about half a yard high, whereon grow hard rugged Leaves, set two at a joint, very like unto Sage Leaves, but not hoary at all, of a dark green color, and dented about the edges: the Flowers grow at set Spaces round about the Stalks, as in rundles, in some Plants of a fair purple, violet color; in others more pale; and in others yet, of almost an Ash-color; which being past away, there comes forth (when it is ripe) black small Seed. The Smell of this Plant is more pleasing and less heady than most of the former kinds be. There is another Species of this fourth kind, which differs chiefly from it in this, that it grows much higher, has thicker Stalks, larger and thicker Leaves, spotted with divers white spots and streaks therein; else in form and color of Leaves and Flowers, no difference appearing.

VII. The Places. The first grows Wild in England, almost every where by the Way side, and so does the other with the purple Stalks: but that with the green Stalks is not common with us, but grows in many places of Germany and Hungary: Gerard says, that the *Oculus Christi* grows in Barren places, almost in every Countrey, especially in *Holborn-fields*, near unto *Grays-Inn*, in the Highway by the end of a *Brick-Wall* (there it might possibly grow formerly, but none can be had there now:) also at the hither end of *Chelsey* towards London, and in the Highways leading from *Richmond Palace* to the *Water-side*, and in divers other places. The second grows not Wild here, but only in the Gardens of the Curious. The third grew with *Clusius*, of the Seed which he had out of Spain, but he saith he found it likewise near the *Riding-place* of *Greenwich*; so that it is manifest, that it is a natural inhabitant of our Countrey. The third grows Wild in Hungary almost every where, in their *Vineyards*, and by the Way sides, but with us it is chiefly nourished up in Gardens.

VIII. The Times. They all Flower in June and July, as do the Garden Kinds; and their Seeds are ripe in the end of August, or not long after.

IX. Their Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues, are the same with those of the Garden Clary, so that little more need be said thereof here.

X. Observation 1. *Dioscorides* saith, That the Seed of *Oculus Christi*, or *Wild Clary*, drunk with Wine (from one dram to two drams) excites Lust; and being mixed with Honey, and applied, cleanses the Eyes from Films, and other imperfections lodged in them: and being put whole into the Eyes, it not only simply cleanses, but also purges them very much from Waterish Humors, and so frees them from Redness, Inflammations, and divers other Diseases which happen to them, taking away their Pain and Smarting, one Seed, and no more, being put into the Eye at a time. This, says Gerard, is a general Medicine in *Cheshire*, and other Countries thereabout, known of all, and used with good success.

XI. Observ. 2. The Liquid Juice, or Essence of the Leaves, given from two ounces to four or six, mixed with a Glass of Generous Wine, and drank warm, dissolves congealed Blood in the Stomach, warms and comforts it, and is very good to help against dimness, and to restore the Eyes to their Pristine State.



C H A P. CXXXIX.

## Of CLOVE-GILLIFLOWERS.

**I. THE Names.** It was unknown to the Greeks, as far as we can learn, but is called of the Latins, *Caryophyllus hortensis*, also *Vetonica*, *Vetonica altalis*, *Coronaria*, *Herba Tunica*, *Ocellus Damascenus*, and *Barbaricus*, of some *Cantabrica Plinij*, *flos Caryophylleus*. Some will have them to be the *Iphium Theophrasti* in lib. 6. cap. 6 & 7. others to be his *Dios Anthos*, or *Flos Jovis*, but *Ruellius* saith that they were unknown to the *Old Writers*; and his judgment seems to be good, because the *Gilliflower* is not like to that of *Vetonica*, or *Cantabrica*; and it is a wonder, says he, that such a famous Flower, of so pleasant a Form, and sweet a Smell, should lye hid, and not be known to the Ancients, which may be thought not inferior to the *Rose*, in its Variety, Smell, and admirable Beauty. The name *Caryophyllus* was given to it, I suppose, from its Smell, which is very like to that of the *Indian Clove*. We in *English* call it *Clove-gilliflower*, and *Gilliflowers* (*quasi July-flowers*, because they begin to flower in the Month of *July*) some also are called *Carnations*, but that name arises chiefly from the color.

**II. The Kinds.** They are either *Garden* or *Wild*: of the *Garden Kinds* we shall treat in this Chapter. The *Wild* are vulgarly called *Pinks*, of which we shall say nothing here, but refer you to the Chapter under that Title, where we shall fully discourse of them. Of the *Garden Kinds*, or *Gilliflower*, some are *Single*, and some *Double*. The *Single Clovegilliflower* some will have to be a *Pink*, but it is no such thing, for it is oftentimes produced by the Seed of most of the *Double Clovegilliflowers*, and differs from *Pinks* in its Shape, Magnitude and Smell: That all the Kinds of *Double Flowers* produce Seed I am apt to believe; though some of them, as the *Clovegilliflower* and *Carnation*, not very often; and *Parkinson* says, that they seldom give any Seed, as far as he could observe, and here in *England*, are usually increased by *Slips*.

**III. As to the Variety of Kinds** of this Flower in respect to their various and accidental differences, they are *little* or *few* in their Roots, Leaves, Stalks, and manner of growing, but *manifold* in respect to the Flowers; as to their Form, Magnitude, and Color, some being of one Color, some of another, some of many, some *Striped*, some *Spotted*; some finely *Dented* only, some *Jagged* or deeply *Cut in*, &c. I say as to these, we shall take no notice, leaving that work to their consideration, who make the *Flower Garden* their whole business. Those which we shall treat of here, are only the three following, (which comprehend all the other Kinds, and Varieties under them) viz. 1. *Caryophyllus hortensis pleno rubro*, The *Clove-gilliflower* of a deep *Crimson Red*. 2. *Caryophyllus maximus Anglicus*, The *Great English Carnation*. 3. *Caryophyllus minor flore pleno*, The *lesser Carnation* with a *Double Flower*. As to the first of these, viz. the *Clove-gilliflower*, there are the *Single Clove*, and the *Double Clove*; only of the *Double Clove*, there are some more *Double* than others. As to the second, viz. *Caryophyllus maximus*, or *Great Carnation*, with that which we describe in *Seet. V.* following. *Parkinson* in his *Garden of Flowers* makes twenty several Varieties; to wit, The *Great Eng-*

*lish*, the *Grey Hulo*, the *Red Hulo*, the *Blew Hulo*, the *Prince*, the *White Carnation*, the *French Carnation*, the *Ground Carnation*, the *Crystal* or *Crystalline*, the *Red Crystal*, the *Fragrant*, the *Strip'd Savage*, the *Blush Savage*, the *Red Savage*, the *Oxford Carnation*, the *King's Carnation*, the *Granado*, the *Grand Pere*, the *Camberfine*, the *Great Red Lombard*. As to the *Caryophyllus minor*, or *Lesser Carnation*, called a *Gilliflower*, we have in *Parkinson* thirty four Varieties, to wit, The *Lesser Carnation*, the *Gallant* or *Westminster*, the *Bristol Blew*, *Red Dover*, *Light* or *White Dover*, *Fair Maid*, *Queens Gilliflower*, the *Dainty*, *Brasil Gilliflower*, *Small Granado*, the *Turkie*, *Pool Flower*, *Pale Pageant*, *Dainty Lady*, *best White Gilliflower*, *London White*, *Stamell*, *Purple Gilliflower*, *Peach Color*, *blew Gilliflower*, *Blush Color*, *Great Tawney*, *Light Tawney*, *Sad Tawney*, *Deep Blush*, *Pale Blush*, *Infants Blush*, the *Great Blush*, *Marbled Tawney*, *Princess* or *Variable Tawney*, *Flaked Tawney*, *Feathred Tawney*, *Speckled Tawney*, and *Rose Gilliflower*.



Clove

Gilliflower.

**IV. The Descriptions.** The first of those, or deep red *Clove-gilliflower*, (which is that which we only use in *Physick*) has a pretty long, hard, or woody Root, having some small fibres appendent thereto, which endures all the *Winter* long; from this Root rises up one or more Stalks, like to those of the *Carnations* following, growing up sometimes to be a foot and half high, or more, which is round, of an *Ash*, or whitish color, and pretty hard, not so thick set with Joints and Leaves, as are the *Carnations* following; but the Stalks are more in number, the Leaves are narrower, and whiter for the most part, and in some do a little turn. The Flowers are much smaller than those of the *Carnation*, of a deep red crimson color, very thick, and double in most; the green husks in which they stand are also smaller: the ends of the Leaves in this Flower (as in all the rest) are dented or jagged, yet in some more than in others. Some also have two white threads, crooked at the ends



ends like horns, in the middle of the Flower, whereas several others have none. These kinds, and especially this that has the Deep Red Crimson colored Flower, do very well endure the Cold of our Winters, and are with much less care preserved. This Description take as a President for all the kinds of Clove-gilliflowers.



Great  
Carnation.

V. The second, or greatest English Carnation, has a Root which is branched into several great, long, and woody Arms or Parts, having many small Fibres annexed to them, yet is very difficultly preserved in Winter, for which reason it is not altogether so common as the other Carnations and Glove-gilliflowers. From this Root rises up a great thick round Stalk, divided into several Branches, somewhat thickly set with Joints, and at every Joint two long Leaves, rather green than whitish, somewhat broader than Clove-gilliflower Leaves, turning or winding two or three times round; (yet in some other kinds of Carnations, they are plain, but bending their points downwards, and in some also of a dark reddish green color, in others not so dark, but rather of a whitish green color: ) The Flowers stand at the tops of the Stalks, in long, great, round, green husks, which are divided into five points, out of which rise many long and broad pointed Leaves, deeply jagged at the ends, set in order, round and beautiful, making a noble great double Flower, of a deep Carnation color, almost red, spotted with many blush spots and strakes, some greater, and some lesser, of an excellent, delightful and pleasant sweet Smell, not too quick, as many others of this kind are, nor yet too dull, and with two whitish crooked threads, like horns in the middle. This kind never bears many Flowers, but as it is slow in growing so it is also in bearing; it is a magnificent Flower, and shews a kind of stateliness, for it will not endure to be often handled. This description may serve for all them of this kind.

VI. The third, or Lesser Kind of Carnation, has a Root much like to the former, but something lesser, having from it Stalks next the ground, thick set, but with smaller or narrower Leaves than the

Clove-gilliflower for the most part. The Flowers are like unto the Clove-gilliflowers, and about the same bigness and duplicity, yet in some they are much greater than in others, but of a pale yellowish Carnation color, (tending something to an Orange) with two small white threads, and crooked at the ends, in the middle, but some have none. The Smell is weaker than that of the Clove-gilliflower, yet delectable enough to that Sense. This kind is more apt to bear Seed than any other, which is small, black, flat, and long, and being Sown, yields wonderful varieties of Flowers, both Single and Double; some being of a lighter or deeper color than the Original or Mother Plant; some with stripes in most of the Leaves; others are striped or spotted, like one of the great speckled Carnations or Gilliflowers, in various sorts or kinds, and that both Single and Double: Some again are wholly of one color, like the Original or Mother Plant, and are either more or less Double than it; or else are Single, with one row of Leaves, like to a Pink. And some of these are also wholly of a crimson red, or deeper, or lighter, or variably spotted, double, or single as a Pink, or blush, either single or double, yet but very seldom white; whilst all of them in the green Leaves of the Stalks nothing at all perceptibly differing.



Single  
Gilli- flower  
Clove-

VII. The Places. These are all nourished in Gardens throughout all England: of the first kind, I have seen whole Fields of them planted in Kent for the use of the Markets in London. The third was brought out of Silesia, but now is become a free Denizon, and absolute native of this Kingdom, it growing and thriving as well here with us, as any of the former.

VIII. The Times. They Flower not until the heat of the Year, which is about the latter end of June and in July, (unless it be an extraordinary hot Season) and they continue flowering, until the Cold of the Autumn nip them, or till they have wholly spent themselves out; and are generally, (as was said before) increased by Slips. The Clove-gilliflowers by reason of their hardness, being better able to endure the Cold of Winter, are usually planted



in Gardens : but the Carnations and Gilliflowers, by reason of their tenderness, are usually Planted in Pots, that they may be housed, and so kept and preserved from the extream cold of our Winters.

IX. *The Qualities.* These Plants as to their Roots, Leaves and Flowers, are temperate in respect to heat or cold : Astringent, Sudorifick, Traumatick, Cordial, Neurotick, Alterative, and Alexipharmick.

X. *The Specification.* It is peculiar against Fainting and Swooning Fits.

XI. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom,  
1. *An Inspissate Juice.* 2. *A Syrup.* 3. *An Essence.* 4. *A Conserve.* 5. *A Distilled Water.* 6. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 7. *An Acid Tincture with Vinegar.*

## The Virtues.

XII. *The Inspissate Juice.* It is highly Cordial, and may be dissolved in white Port Wine or Canary, to make a Tincture of at pleasure, against fainting and swooning Fits, Sicknefs at Heart, Malignity of the Plague and Poison.

XIII. *The Syrup made with Water,* as is taught in our *Pharmacopœia Londinensis lib. 4. cap. 16. sect. 18.* thus : Take Clove-gilliflowers (the Whites being cut off) a pound : infuse them all night in Spring Water two pounds : being strained, with double-refined white Sugar four pounds, make a Syrup (without boiling) only by melting the Sugar. This Syrup is temperate in Quality, strengthens the Heart, Stomach and Liver ; it is Pectoral and Cordial, and may be mixt with other Cordial Liquors, against malignant Fevers, and the Plague ; as also against Faintings, Swoonings and the like. It refreshes the Vital Spirits, cheers the Heart, and resists Poison.

XIV. *The Syrup made with white Port Wine or Canary.* It is made exactly as the former, and has all the same Virtues ; only it is a greater and more famous Cordial, more powerful against Faintings and Swoonings, to comfort a languishing Stomach, as also to cheer the Heart and revive the Vital Powers.

XV. *The Syrup made with Wine Vinegar.* It is made exactly as that with Water, putting in the same quantity of Vinegar instead of the Water. It is opening, and resists Vapors which fly into the Brain ; it fortifies the Stomach, comforts the Heart, cheers the languishing and drooping Spirits ; it helps Digestion, and prevails against all Diseases proceeding from Choler or heat of Blood, as Malign and Pestilential Fevers, and Fevers not Pestilential : it cools the Blood, resists Poison, quenches Thirst, and is helpful against the Vertigo. Dose of any of these three Syrups, an ounce at a time in any convenient Vehicle.

XVI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Inspissate Juice and Syrup ; it is good against Diseases of the Heart, Head and Stomach, very Cordial, special good against Heetick Fevers, to stop Fluxes and help such as spit Blood : and as it cheers the Heart and revives the Spirits, so it powerfully resists Melancholy. Dose from two drams to four.

XVII. *The Conserve.* It is Cordial, cheers the Heart and strengthens the Stomach, and is only eaten as a Sweet-meat. It is good for old People, to eat in a morning fasting.

XVIII. *The distilled Water.* It is made by a very gentle heat in *Balneo*, is Cordial, and may be used as a Vehicle, to convey other Cordial Medicaments in ; besides which, it is of excellent Use to wash sore Eyes withal, washing them therewith five or six times a day.

XIX. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is a great Preservative against all manner of Malign, Infectious, and Pestilential Diseases, and ought to be used preventively, as first in the Morning fasting ; secondly about four in the Afternoon ; thirdly at Bed time. It more powerfully comforts the Stomach, cheers the Heart, and revives the Spirits, than any of the former Preparations. It may be prepared with common Spirit of Wine : and then it may be taken alone of it self, from one spoonful to two, according to the Age of the person ; or otherwise mixt with Wine, or some other Vehicle.

XX. *The Acid Tincture made with Vinegar.* It comforts the Stomach much, cheers the Heart, helps Digestion, stops Vomiting, is good against spitting Blood, and strengthens the Retentive Faculty. It cuts tough Flegm, corrects the heat and malignity of Choler, helps Expectoration, and quenches Thirst in burning Fevers. It is an excellent thing to be given in the Cure of the Plague, and of all manner of Malign and Pestilential Diseases.

## C H A P. CXL.

### Of COCKLE.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Λύχνις ἀγροῦ* : In Latin, *Lychnis Segetum*, *Lychnoides Segetum* ; by Tragus, *Githago*, and makes it *Rosæ marianæ genus sextum* ; *Anthemon foliosum Ruellij* ; *Nigellastrum* & *Anthemon Dodonæi*, *Pseudomelanthium Matthioli* ; *Lychnis segetum major*, *Bauhini* ; (because he makes the *Alfine Corniculata Clusij*, to be his *Lychnis segetum minor* :) In English, *Cockle*, or *Corn Wild Campion*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is a singular Plant, and accounted to be one of the *Wild Kinds of Campions*. It is a kind of Wild or Bastard *Nigella*, as some Authors think ; for which some Herbarist, from the sound or likeness of the word, thought it to be the true *Gith*, or *Melanthium*, but were absolutely deceived ; for it not only differs in Leaves from the true *Gith*, but also in other properties : if it has any resemblance to *Nigella*, it is more in the blackness of the Seed, than in the Flower, or in any thing else ; and therefore *Matthiolus* called it as aforesaid, *Pseudomelanthium*, as also divers others since him.

III. *The Description.* It has a small and woody Root, which perishes as soon as it has born Seed ; from whence springs up an upright hairy Stalk, shooting forth Branches on all sides, with two long hairy, or soft Woolly Leaves at the Joints. The Flowers grow forth at the tops of the Branches, in hairy long Husks, whose ends or points are longer than any of the Campions, standing upright both before the Flowers open, and after they are past, and laying themselves between the five round pointed Leaves, when they are blown, which are of a bright reddish purple or crimson color : The Seed which follows (which is in hard round heads) is bigger and blacker than in any of the Wild *Lychnides* or Campions. Here is to be noted, that some have observed another Kind of Cockle, with white Flowers, but having no other material difference besides.

IV. *The Places.* Cockle grows too plentifully in most of our Corn-fields, (chiefly in our Wheat-fields) throughout this whole Kingdom : for which cause *Hippocrates* calls it *Melanthium ex Tritico*.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers in the beginning of Summer, and the Seed is ripe in Harvest-time.

VI. *The*



VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the end of the second Degree; Aperitive, Cleansing, Narcotick, and Hyfterick.

VII. *The Specification.* It is peculiar against Scabs and running Sores.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may prepare therefrom, 1. *A Decoction of the Herb in Red Port Wine.* 2. *A liquid Juice.* 3. *A Decoction of the Flowers in Red Port Wine.* 4. *A Powder of the Flowers.* 5. *A Decoction of the Seed in Wine.* 6. *A Powder of the Seed.* 7. *A Pessary of the Seed.* 8. *A Balsam.*

#### *The Virtues.*

IX. *The Decoction of the Herb in Red Port Wine.* Being taken inwardly two or three ounces at a time, it is good to stop the Terms in Women, as also the Whites, and to stop any inward Bleeding; it is good also to open Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, and to provoke Urine, and expel Stones, Gravel, Sand, and other Tartarous Matter.

X. *The Liquid Juice.* It has the same Virtues, but is seldom given inwardly: but outwardly applied, it stops all sorts of External Bleedings of Wounds; cleanses and heals Scabs and running Sores, Ulcers, Cankers, Fistula's, &c. by correcting the putrefaction, and drying up the moist Humors which offend them.

XI. *The Decoction of the Flowers in Red Port Wine.* It is good against all the Diseases against which the Decoction of the Herb is good; but is withal a more pleasant and delicate Medicine, and more powerful to stop the Terms in Women, and may be given three, four, or five ounces at a time, Morning and Evening. It is a peculiar opener of Obstructions in the Reins and Bladder: Used as a Gargle in the Mouth, it cleanses, dries up, and heals Cankers, running Sores, and Ulcers in the Throat, Mouth, and Gums, stops the Putridity, cleanses and heals them. It is good against Poison, stinging of Scorpions, and the bitings of Serpents, or other Venomous Beasts.

XII. *The Powder of the Flowers.* It may be given to a dram in Red Port Wine, against all sorts of Fluxes, (and Bloody-fluxes in special) of the Belly, Reins, and Womb: outwardly applied to Sores and old Ulcers, it cleanses, dries and heals them. Inwardly given, it is good against the Plague, Malign and Pestilential Diseases, and the bitings of Serpents, or other Venomous Creatures. Outwardly applied to, or strewed upon Ulcerated Kibes, it effectually cleanses them, dries up the humidities, and heals them, tho' the Ulcer has penetrated to the Bone.

XIII. *The Decoction of the Seed in Wine.* It helps such as are stung by Scorpions, being inwardly taken to two or three ounces; and the place outwardly bathed therewith. It has also an especial property to cure the Itch, as also Scabbiness, and running Sores; and to correct the putrid Humors flowing to any Wound, Ulcer, or Fistula.

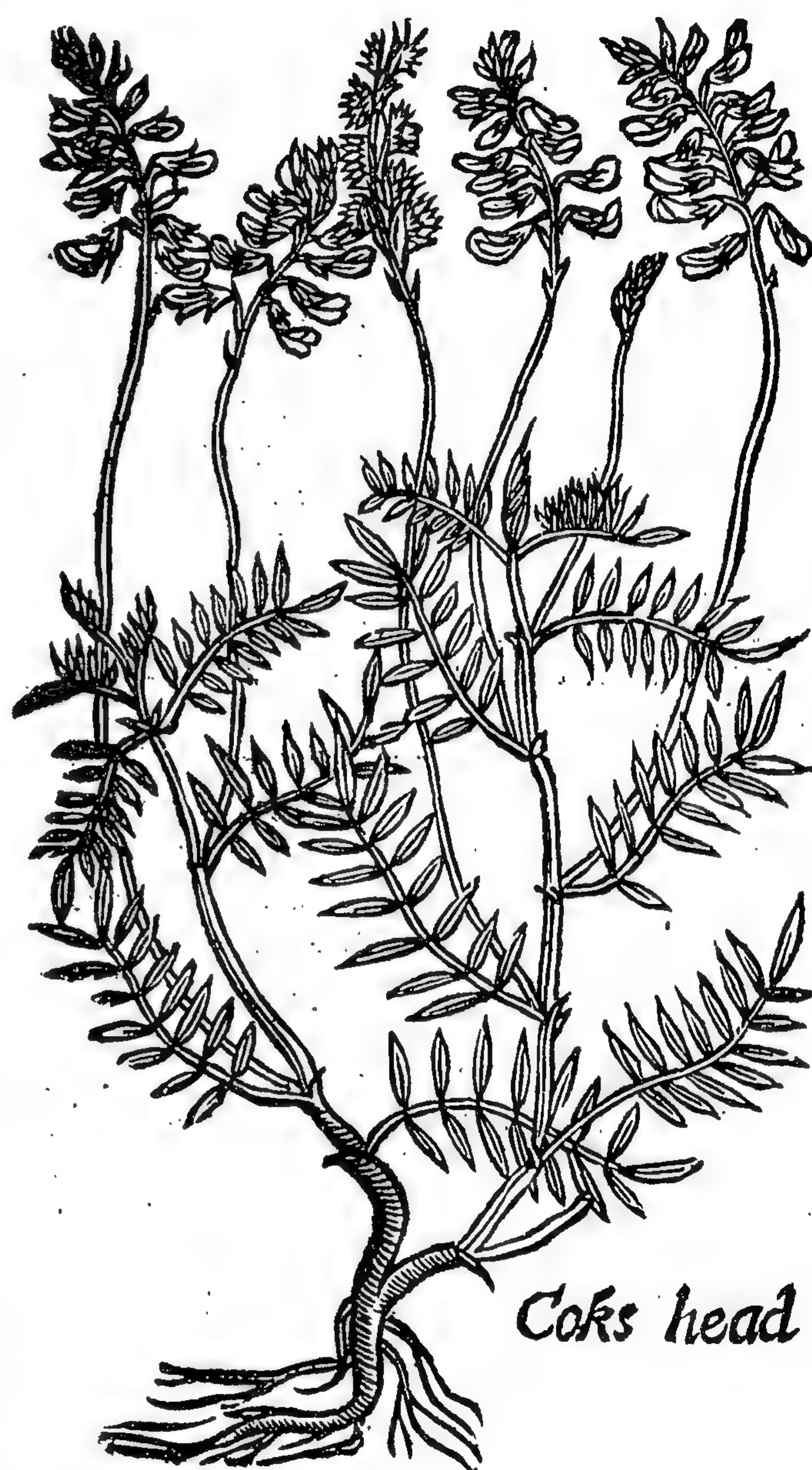
XIV. *The Powder of the Seed.* Being given from a dram to two drams, according to the age of the Person, and strength of the Constitution, it has been found to purge the Belly of Cholerick Humors, to expel Poison, and resist the malign force of the Plague: It is also of very good use in all sorts of running Sores, old Ulcers, inveterate Cankers, putrid and malign Fistula's, and the like; for it resists the putridity, cleanses and dries up the Moisture, and heals beyond all imagination. *Ocavius Horatianus* gives the Seed parched, and beaten to powder, to be drunk against the Yellow Jaundice.

XV. *The Pessary.* Made of the Seed with Honey. Being put up the Womb, it provokes the Terms, as *Hippocrates* testifies in his Book of *Womens Diseases*.

XVI. *The Balsam.* It is made of the Juice or green Leaves and Flowers, by boiling in Oil Olive to crispness, straining out, and repeating the boiling three times, then mixing with every pound of that Oily Decoction, twelve ounces of Venice Turpentine, and six ounces of Wax, boiling to a thickness. It heals Wounds, Ulcers, old running Sores, Fistula's, by digesting, cleansing, incarnating, drying, &c.

#### C H A P. CXLI.

#### of COCKS-HEAD.



*Coks head*

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *Greek*, (by the Ancient Herbarists) *ὄνυβρυχis*; and is thought to be the *Onobrychis* of *Dioscorides*; in *Latin*, *Onobrychis*, and *Caput Gallinaceum*: In *English*, *Cocks-head*, *Medick Fetch*, and *Red Fetchling*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make many varieties hereof; *Parkinson* makes nine Kinds; but whereas they are not all Natives of our Countrey, we shall only describe those which are natural to the place, and to be had with us, which are chiefly three, viz. 1. *Onobrychis vulgaris*, *Caput Gallinaceum*; *Onobrychis Dodonaei*, *Clusij*, *Thalij*; *Glaux* sive *Onobrychis Gesneri in hortis*; *Caput Gallinaceum Belgarum Lobeli*; the lesser sort of which is called by *Baobinus*, in *Prodromo*, *Caput Gallinaceum minus*; *Cocks-head*, the Common Kind, also *Medick Fetchling*; and by the *French*, *Saint Foin*: But this is not the *Saint Foin* so much talked of for the Improvement of Land, that we have discoursed of before in Chap. 135. where we have shewed the excellent uses thereof in Agriculture. 2. *Onobrychis spicata flore*



Here *purpurea*, *Onobrychis Pannonica prima Clusij*; *Cicer Astragaloides Pona*; spiked Cocks-head with purple Flowers. 3. *Onobrychis floribus Cæruleis*, *Onobrychis Pannonica secunda Clusij*, Bew Flowred Cocks-head.

III. The Descriptions. The first or common kind has a Root which is tough, and somewhat woody; from whence spring forth several weak but rough Stalks, leaning downwards, about a foot and half high, beset with Winged Leaves, each being longer and more pointed, than those of Lentils, and whitish underneath; from the tops of these Stalks rise up other slender Stalks, naked without Leaves, unto the tops, where there grow many small Flowers, in manner of a spike, of a pale reddish color, with some blewness among them: after which rise up in their places, rough, round, and somewhat flat heads. Of this first Species, Bauhinus has given us the Description of a lesser, differing in nothing from the former, but only in the magnitude, or rather smallness thereof.

IV. The second has a Root great and long, hard, and of a woody substance, spreading it self far abroad, and growing very deep into the ground; from whence rise up many Stalks, especially when it is grown to an old Plant, round, hard, and leaning to the ground like the other Pulses, and has Leaves very like Galega, or the Wild Vetch, of a bitter Taste, and loathsome Savor: among which come forth small round Stems; at the ends of which do grow Flowers spike fashion, three Inches in length, and in shape like those of the great Lagopus, or Meadow Trefoil, but longer, of an excellent shining purple color, but without Smell: which Flowers being past away, small cods follow, containing little, hard and black Seed, in taste like to the Vetch or Tare.

V. The third has also a small, tough, and woody Root; from whence spring up many twiggy Branches, about a foot and half high, full of Knots, ramping and creeping on the ground. The Leaves are like the former, but smaller and shorter: among which come forth small slender Stems, upon which do grow little Flowers, like those of the Tare, but of a blew color, tending to purple. The Flowers being fallen, small Cods come forth in their places, which contain little black Seed like a Kidney, and of a black color when it is full ripe.

VI. Note. It is supposed that the first of these is the *Onobrychis* of Dioscorides, also of Pliny: for Dioscorides describes it thus; *Onobrychis* has Leaves like a Lentil, but longer, a Stalk a Span high, a crimson Flower, and a little Root; and grows in moist and untilled places. Pliny writes thus; *Onobrychis* has the Leaves of a Lentil, but somewhat longer, a red Flower, and a small and slender Root; and that it grows about Springs, or Fountains of Waters.

VII. The Places. The first and second grow (says Gerard) upon Barton-hill, four Miles from Lewton in Bedfordshire, and likewise upon the Grassie Balke, between the Corn Lands two Miles from Cambridge, near to a Water Mill towards London; and in divers other places in the way from Cambridge to London. The third grows not Wild here, but is only nourished up in Gardens.

VIII. The Times. They all Flower from the end of June to the end of August, and the Seed is ripened in the mean Season, and in some little time after.

IX. The Qualities. They seem to be temperate in respect of heat or coldness, dryness or moisture: and Galen says in his Books of the Faculties of Simple Medicaments, That they rarifie, or make thin, and waste away. This is certain, by Experience from the feeding of Cattel with them, that they are *Galaſtogenetick*, or breeders of Milk.

X. The Specification. They have been found to be singular good for the discussing, consuming, or wasting away of hard Tumors or Swellings.

XI. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Pouder of the Leaves. 4. An Oil. 5. A Cataplasme.

## The Virtues.

XII. The liquid Juice. Taken from two ounces to fix, either alone by it self, or mixt with a Glas of White Port Wine, it prevails against the Strangury, and all Obstructions, of Urine, caused by Stones, Gravel, Sand, or Tartarous Matter in Reins or Bladder: and taken by Nurſes, it causes them to breed abundance of Milk.

XIII. The Essence. It has the former Virtues, but opens and cleanses more, being taken in like manner, Morning and Evening: Bathed upon any Tumor or Swelling, not malign nor maturated, it discusses or wastes it away. Dose from two, to three or four ounces.

XIV. The Pouder of the Leaves. Dioscorides says, that if it is drunk with Wine (I suppose from one dram to two drams, Morning and Evening) it cures the Strangury. It has indeed a singular faculty to open Obstructions of the Urinary parts.

XV. The Oil, made by boiling the Green Herb in Oil Olive to Crispness, and repeating the Operation three or four times, and so straining it out. This, says Dioscorides, being anointed on the Body, it provokes Sweating. Anointed on hard Tumors, it softens them, is discussive, and causes them to waste away.

XVI. The Cataplasme. Being bruised green, and laid on (in the form of a Cataplasme,) upon hard Tumors or Swellings, or waxen Kernels in the Neck, or Throat, or in other Parts; it causes them to consume and waste away; and this more especially, if the Juice or Essence, aforesaid, be taken daily, Morning and Evening, in a Glas of White Port Wine, as is directed; and the Patients withal, purge once or twice a Week (according as their Bodies will bear it) with my Family Pills.

## C H A P. CXLII.

### of COCKS-COMB.

I. THE Names. The Ancients we cannot find knew any thing of this Plant, unless it be *Ἀλεκτροειδὲς* Plinij, i. e. *gallinacei Cristam habens*. Our Moderns call it in Latin *Crista Galli*, vel *Gallinacea*, because the Flowers, as some think, stand at the tops of the Stalks, like a Cocks Comb; others think it to be so called from the form of the Leaves, whose dentings on the edges, resemble the Comb, or Crest of a Cock: In English, it is called *Cocks Comb*, *Yellow Rattle*, and *Yellow Lousewort*.

II. The Kinds. It is one of the Kinds of *Rattle-Grass*, or *Lousewort*. Now *Rattle-Grass* is either *Yellow* or *Red*; the *Yellow*, which is called *Cocks-Comb*, we shall treat of in this place; the *Red* we shall treat of under the Title of *Rattle-grass Red*, in some of the Chapters following. Of the *Yellow Kind* there are four Species, of which two of them are only found to grow in England, viz. 1. *Crista Galli Lutea*, *Crista Gallinacea*, *Crista Galli Bauhini*; *Pedicularis pratensis lutea Bauhini*; *Pedicularis Campestris Tragi*; *Crista Galli vel Gallinacea Do-*



*denai, Lobelij, Clusij*; Cocks Comb, Yellow Rattle, and Yellow Loufe-wort. 2. *Crista Galli Lutea Umbellata Baubini*, Yellow Rattle, with Tufted Flowers.



*yellow Rattle  
or Cockscombe*

III. The Descriptions. The Common Cocks Comb, or Yellow Rattle, has a Root small and slender, which perishes every Year; from which Root seldom grows more than one round green Stalk, which rises up about half a yard, or two feet high, and with but few Branches thereon, having two long, and somewhat broad Leaves set at a Joint, deeply dented, or cut in on the edges, resembling therein the Crest or Comb of a Cock, broadest next to the Stalk, and narrower or smaller towards the end. The Flowers grow at the tops of the Stalks, with some shorter Leaves with them, being hooded as the Red Rattle-Grassies are; but of a fair yellow color in most, or else in some paler, and in some more white: The Seed is contained in large Husks, which being ripe will rattle, and make a noise, it lying loose within them.

IV. The second has a small slender Root, which sends forth a few narrow Leaves, of about an Inch long apiece; and a Stalk from among them but a little more than an hand breadth high, on which grow many yellow Flowers, set together at the top, as it were in an Umble or Tuft, fashioned like the other with hooded and gaping yellow Flowers, but three times longer than those; which being past away, leave great broad husks, containing the Seed.

V. The Places. They grow in our Meadows and Woods generally through the Land; where they are rather a Plague and Annoyance to it, than of any good use for Cattel. Gerard says, that the first grows in dry Meadows and Pastures, and is accounted as an unprofitable thing.

VI. The Times. They Flower in June, July, and August, and the Seed ripens in the mean Season.

VII. The Qualities. It is held to be cold and dry, of an Alterative property, and Pectoral.

VIII. The Specification. It is peculiar against Coughs, and Diseases of the Lungs.

IX. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction in Wine or Water. 4. The whole Seed.

#### The Virtues.

X. The liquid Juice. If it is mixt with Honey, and put into the Eyes, it takes away Mists, Clouds, Films, and other things which dim the sight: mixt with a little small, or weak Lime Water, it dries up Rheums in the Eyes, and heals any Sore or Ulcer with which they may be affected.

XI. The Essence. It has the Virtues of the Juice, besides which, being dulcified with White or Brown Sugar Candy, it is an excellent thing against Coughs, Colds, Hoarseness, Wheezings, and shortness of Breath. Dose a spoonful or two at a time.

XII. The Decoction in Wine, or in Bean Broth, or Water. It may be sweetned with Honey, and then clarified with Whites of Eggs. It is a good thing against Coughs and Colds, causes easie Expectoration; and is a good Collyrium to wash weak, dim, sore and running Eyes withal, for it admirably clears the sight.

XIII. The whole Seed. If it is put into the Eyes, it cures dimness of sight from any pure external Cause, and removes Mists, Cloudiness, Films, Skins, or Pearls, or any other outward matter which obfuscates the sight.

### CHAP. CXLIII.

#### Of COLEWORT Garden.



*Coleworts.*

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Κολύβη*, *Attice, Κολύβη, vel Κολύβαν*: It is also called *Ἀμύβη*, (not because it drives away drunkenness, but also because it is like in color to the *Amethyst*,) which name is intended of the first sort of the following Coleworts: In Latin, *Brassica*, and by the



the Apothecaries, *Caulis* : In English, Cole, and Colewort.

II. The Kinds. There are two principal Kinds, viz. 1. The Headed Colewort, which is our Common Cabbage, of which we have at large Treated in Chap. 103. aforegoing. 2. The not headed, or open Colewort, of which there are several Species, viz. 1. The Garden Kinds, of which in this Chapter. 2. The Cole-Flower, of which in Cap. 144. 3. The Wild Kind, of which in Cap. 145. 4. The Sea Colewort, of which in Cap. 146. Of the Garden Kind there are many Species, as 1. *Brassica vulgaris sativa*, Our common Garden Colewort. 2. *Brassica sativa Crispa*, Curled Garden Colewort. 3. *Brassica Rubra*, The common Red Colewort. 4. *Brassica Patula*, The open Cabbage Colewort : Of all which in their order.

III. The Descriptions. The first which is our common Garden Colewort, has a woody strong Root, with many Fibres or Strings adjoining to it : From which Root rise up many broad, thick, fat Leaves, of a deep black green color, through the middle of which Leaves runs in each a great Rib, which is thick and high on the backside, with many smaller Ribs or Branches rising from that middle Rib, of Reddish, Whitish, and Ash-colors. The Stalk grows out of the midst from among these Leaves, which spreads it self forth into several Branches, bearing at the top, small yellow Flowers : which Flowers being past, long Cods succeed, full of round Seed, like those of the Turnep, but smaller.

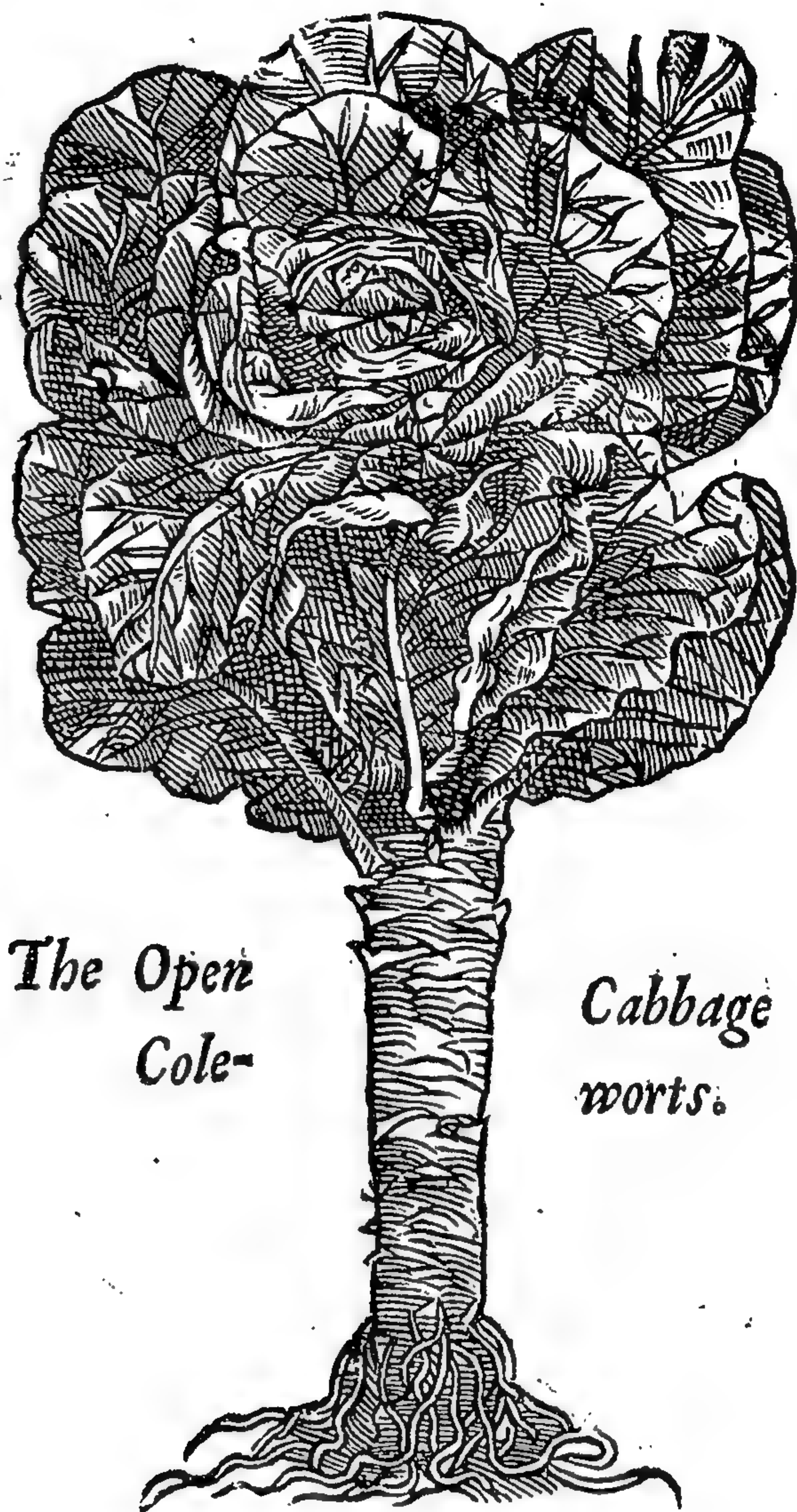


Colewort  
Garden  
Crisped

IV. The second, or Crisped Kind, has a Root, Stalk, Flowers, Cods, and seed not much differing from the former : but the greatest difference lyes in the magnitude, this being something lesser than the former ; and in the Leaf, this being divided with many deep Cuts, even to the middle Rib on both sides, by which means it becomes rough every where in its edges, and very much Crisped or Curled.

V. The third Kind, is so like unto the first in its

Roots, Stalk, broad, thick, fat Leaves, Flowers, Cods, and Seed, that it would seem to be wholly the same individual Species, did not the color make the difference, that being of a green color, this of a Red ; some of a deep purple, others of a lighter Red, and some of a reddish Green.



The Open  
Cole-

Cabbage  
worts.

VI. The fourth Kind, has a Root somewhat thick, strong, and woody, filled with almost an innumerable company of fibres, some greater, some smaller, some shorter, and some longer, like in number as it were to the hairs of ones head ; from which Root springs up one thick Stalk, having at top thereof a great thick head of crumpled Leaves : the Leaves are large, and of a white green color, and set with thick large white Ribs : the outermost of which gather the rest of the Leaves closely together, which are lesser than those next the ground, these lye open most part of the Summer, without any seemingness to close : but towards the end of the Summer, being grown to have a great many Leaves, it then seems as if it would shut up or close together ; but standing a while at a stay, it on the contrary rather dilates and spreads it self abroad, looking something like a thick, hard, whitened Colewort, and is indeed nothing else.

VII. There are besides these, several other Species of edible Coleworts ; some Curled, and wholly of a Green color, some of divers colors in one Plant, as White, Yellow, Red, Purple, or Crimfon, so variably mixed as to cause admiration, the Leaves being curled on the edges like a Ruff, very beautiful to behold. 2. There is also another curl'd Colewort, of less beauty and respect, being but a little curl'd on the edges, whose Leaves are white, and edged with green : or green and edg'd with white. 3. There are two other sorts of Coleworts, one of a Popinjay green color : the other of a fine deep green, like unto the Savoys. 4. There is the Cole Rape, which is also a Colewort, which bears a white Head, or headed Stalk above the ground, as large as a reasonable Turnep, but longer, and from the top whereof spring out divers great Leaves, like unto other Coleworts, among which rise up divers Stalks, which bear yellow Flowers, and Seed in



Pods, almost as small as Mustard Seed, whose Root is very long, and very thick or bushy, with a vast number of Fibres.



Cole Rape

VIII. *The Places.* They all of them grow every where through *England, Scotland and Ireland*, in *Gardens*, being chiefly nurs'd up to supply the *Markets*, and for the use of the *Kitchen*.

IX. *The Times.* They all Flower in *July*, and their Seed is ripe in the end of *August*.

X. *The Qualities.* They are temperate in respect to heat or cold, but are said to be drying in the first Degree, and of a binding Faculty: and yet the Broth of the first boiling, some Authors say, loosens the Body; the second Decoction (say they) is only Astringent. They abound with a certain Nitrous or Salt Quality, whereby they mightily cleanse the Bowels, whether in their Juice or Broth: but the substance of the *Colewort* is of a drying and binding Faculty, because in boiling it looses its Saline Particles, and leaves them in the Decoction or Broth.

XI. *The Specification.* They are peculiar against *Asthma's*, breathing Obstructed, and shortness of Breath; for being of a cleansing quality, by taking away the superfluity of matter in the Lungs, and other Bowels, they so open the Passages, as to leave the parts for respiration free and clear.

XII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom,  
1. *A liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Syrup made with Honey.* 4. *A Lohoch.* 5. *A Decoction.* 6. *A Collyrium.* 7. *A Cataplasm.* 8. *Ashes of the Stalks.* 9. *The Seed.* 10. *A Sallet.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XIII. *The liquid Juice.* *Pliny* says, that if it is mixed with Wine, and dropt into the Ears, it is beneficial against Deafness. *Dioscorides* says, that if it is mixed with Juice of *Flowers de luce* and *Nitre*, that it will make the Body soluble. The Juice having some *Nitre* dissolved in it, and used

as an Errhine, up the Nostrils, it purges the Head and Brain, of Cold, Moist, and Puitous Humors.

XIV. *The Essence.* Being mixed with Wine, and so drunk, it helps such as are bitten by Vipers or Adders, or any other Venomous Serpent. It is also good for those who have been Poisoned by eating Venomous Mushrooms. Dose three or four ounces twice a day.

XV. *The Syrup made of the Juice with Honey.* It is good against Coughs, Colds, Hoarseness, shortness of Breath, and loss of Voice: and being often used, it causes easie Expectoration; heals the Lungs, and soreness of the Stomach, and so is good for such as are entering into a Consumption. Dose two ounces two or three times a day, in Tent, Malaga, &c.

XVI. *The Lohoch, or Electuary.* If it is made of the Pulp of the Stalks with Honey, it is good for such as are short winded, and are pursie, breath difficultly, and have a vehement Cough. You must take the middle fleshy Ribs, boil them in Milk till they are soft, then take out their Pulp, and so mix it with Honey to a Lohoch or Electuary.

XVII. *The Decoction.* It encreases Milk in Nurses; and being drunk, strengthens the Nerves and Joints. And *Gerard* says, that if those sores in the Eyes called *Carcinomata*, be washed therewith, it heals them, though they could be healed by no other means. The first Decoction loosens the Belly, but the second binds it: The first is said to provoke the Terms, and cause Conception, but the second hinders it. If the Decoction is made in Cock Broth, by boiling the Coleworts with the Cock, it will be a singular help for such as are troubled with Wind, and Gripping Pains in the Stomach and Belly. The same Broth, is also very good for those who are troubled with Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen; and for such as have Stones, Gravel, Sand, or other Tartarous Matter in the Reins, Ureters, or Bladder. Taken before meat, it is a very good thing to keep one from Surfeiting, as also from Drunkenness, though they drink much Wine, by restraining and keeping down the Vapors, which otherwise would ascend up, and intoxicate the Brain; and this it will the more effectually do, if it is made pleasantly or gratefully sharp with Juice of Limons. Swoln and Gouty Hands, Knees, Legs, and Feet, (into which gross Humors are protruded or fallen) being bathed with Decoction of Coleworts Warm, eases the Pain, discusses the Humor, and takes away the Swelling. The Decoction (as also the Juice and Essence) cleanses, dries, and heals Scabbiness, old Ulcers, and filthy running Sores, being often washed therewith. And *Galen* says, it cleanses so strongly, that it will even Cure the Leprosie.

XVIII. *The Collyrium.* It is made of the Juice, Essence or Decoction, by dissolving Honey in the same, three ounces of Honey to every Pint. This being often dropt into the Eyes, it clears the sight by removing any Cloudiness, Film, or Pearl: it is helpful against Inflammations and Blood-shot, and also cures sore and running Eyes.

XIX. *The Cataplasm.* Made of the Juice or Essence with Pouder of Fenugreek, and applied, it eases the Pains of the Gout, and discusses the Tumor: it also heals filthy running Sores, and old putrid Ulcers. If it is made of the Leaves beaten to a Pulver, it prevails against all sorts of Inflammations, and hot Tumors. If it is made of the Herb or Juice, made into a Body with Barley Meal or Flower, and a little Common Salt, it is said to break Carbuncles, or at least some kind of Tumors, which much resemble them. If it is made up into a Pel-



fary, and so put up the Womb, it provokes the Terms,

XX. *The Ashes of the Stalks.* They are wonderfully drying and piercing, so that they almost become Caustick; being mixed with Hogs Lard, the mixture is very effectual to anoint the sides and Stomach of such, who have of a long time been pained in those parts, or in any other place, where the pain arises from the oppression of the Spleen, or excess of the Melancholly Humor, by helping to digest it, and discharging flatulencies.

XXI. *The Seed.* Being bruised and drunk, it kills Worms, as *Galen* says: it also takes away freckles of the Face, and other parts of the Skin, Sunburnings, Tanning, Scurf, Morpew, and other Deformities thereof. *Athenæus* also says, that it takes away Drunkenness.

XXII. *The Sallet.* The fourth sort eaten raw, being chopt small, and dress'd up with Vinegar, Oil, Salt, and Mustard, strengthen the Stomach, cause a good Appetite, preserve from Drunkenness, and cause a good Digestion. The first kind, or any of the rest, being boiled with Meat till they are soft, then chopt small, and dress'd up with melted Butter, Vinegar and Salt, become an admirable Sallet for such as have weak Stomachs, or are going into a Consumption, have dim Eyes, are affected with the Spleen, Flatulencies or Melancholly, or are troubled with Tremblings of the Limbs, or the Palfie. The Ancient Romans thought them to be effectual against all Diseases of the Body, whether Inward or Outward, for which reason *Chrysippus* wrote a whole Volume of their Virtues, applying them to all parts of the Body. And that the Senate of Rome having expell'd all the Physicians out of their Territories for the space of six hundred Years, did for all that length of time, preserve and maintain their health, against the assaults of all Diseases, by the only use of these Plants.

## CHAP. CXLIV.

### OF COLE-FLOWER.

I. **THE Names.** I cannot find that this Plant was ever known to the Greeks; for which reason it has no Greek name: or yet that the Ancient Romans had any knowledge thereof: but our Modern Authors call it in Latin, *Brassica florida*, *Caulis florida*, *Cauli flora*, *Brassica Cypria*, in English, *Cole Flowers*, and *Colle-Flowers*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is a singular Plant, but is certainly one of the Kinds of Coleworts: and that Species, which *Pliny* lib. 19. cap. 8. calls *Brassica Pompeiana*.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root spread out into several pretty thick Branches, which are full of Fibres or Strings, from which spring forth divers large Leaves, which are large, of a whitish green color; very like to Cabbage Leaves, slightly indented about the edges, yet smaller, narrower somewhat, and sharper pointed than those of Cabbage: In the midst of which Leaves, sometimes in the beginning of Autumn, and sometimes sooner, there rises up a great white Head of white hard Flowers closely thrust together, sometimes they are of a Milk, or Cream, or yellowish white color: these never open, or spread much with us, and are then fittest for the Table, the green Leaves being cut away close to the Head: in all the other parts, the Plant is like to the Cole-

worts. These Flowers have a much pleasanter taste, than either Coleworts or Cabbages of any kind, and therefore are the more Valuable as for Food.



IV. *The Places.* They grow in most parts of Europe, but very plentifully in England, Scotland and Ireland, and are only nourished up in Gardens.

V. *The Times.* The Colle-Flower must be planted in April in a Bed of hot Horse-dung, and covered with Straw, or the like, to keep it from cold and frosty Mornings; and having gotten about six Leaves, then it is to be removed into the place where you design it shall grow. The Flowers are in their Prime in most of the Summer Months.

VI. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with Cabbages and Coleworts, of which we have already spoken in Cap. 103. and 143. foregoing, to which you are referred: only take this Note, That for the Table and Food, this is much the more excellent and noble Plant. Note also, That being boiled in Milk, and then eaten with Sweet fresh Butter, and Salt, and Juice of Limons, they have been found to restore admirably in Consumptions.

## CHAP. CXLV.

### OF COLEWORT Wild.

I. **THE Names.** It is called in Greek, *Κεράσι* *ἀγρία*: In Latin, *Brassica Sylvestris*: and in English, *Wild Colewort*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is a singular Plant, and the second Species of Coleworts, being the Wild Kind.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root pretty thick, spread into some Branches, with several Fibres adjoining, white, hard, and somewhat woody, from whence rise up several Leaves, and one principal Stalk. The Leaves are long and broad, not much unlike



unlike the common Garden Colewort leaf in shape, substance, and color, but that they are less, (as is also the whole Plant) being greyish, long, roundish Leaves, much gasped or torn on the edges. Among these ground Leaves rises up the said Stalk, bearing such like, but smaller Leaves, which is spread forth into divers Branches: at the tops of which Branches, grow small yellow Flowers, which being past away, they are succeeded by small rough Pods, which contain within them small round Seed. This Plant is of its own nature Wild, and therefore not used as Food, or sought after for that purpose.



IV. The Places. It grows in most parts of England in open Fields, and new digged Ditch Banks, and such other like Grounds: and is in some places Husbanded and Sown for the Seed sake, which is many times very gainful.

V. The Times. It may be Sown in the Spring time, as in March and April, and sometimes in May. It Flowers in July, and the Seed is ripe in August or September.

VI. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with those of the Garden Colewort: (except in the matter of eating them as Food, which is wholly forborn:) and for any Medicinal Use, whether internal or external: The Wild is much to be preferred, as being much stronger, and so more powerful to all the purposes and intentions, the Garden are said to be good for, or against.

## C H A P. CXLVI.

### Of COLEWORT, Sea.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Κεράβη* *ἐλάδης*: In Latin, *Brassica Marina*, *Brassica Marina multiflora*, *Brassica Maritima Baubini*, *Bras-*

*sica Marina Monospermos*, *Brassica Marina Anglica Gerardi*: In English, Sea Colewort.

II. The Kinds.. It is the last of the principal sorts of Coleworts, and a singular Plant of the Kind.



III. The Description. It has a Root somewhat Great, shooting forth many Branches under ground, having many Fibres also adjoined, and keeping its Leaves green all the Winter. From this Root rise up several somewhat broad and large, thick wrinkled Leaves, and as it were curled about the edges, growing each upon a several thick Footstalk, very easie to be broken, and so tender, that they can scarcely be handled without breaking, of a greyish green color; from among which rises up a strong thick Stalk, two feet or more high; Cubits, says Gerard, with some Leaves thereon, up to the top, where it branches much out; on every Branch stands a large Bush of pale whitish Flowers, consisting of four Leaves a-piece, which being past away, small roundish, or thick and short Pods come forth, containing each but one roundish, greyish Seed a-piece, of the bigness of a Tare, or Vetch, and much greater than Soldanella, or Sea Bindweed, to which Plant this Sea Colewort is not in the least measure akin; though some Authors have mistaken the former, viz. Soldanella, for this latter.

IV. The Places. It grows in many places upon the Coast of England, as well on the Kentish as Essex shore; at Lidde in Kent, and at Colchester in Essex: Gerard says it grows Naturally upon the Bayche and Shores of the Sea, where there is no Earth to be seen but Sand, and Rouling Pebble Stones, which they who grow near the Sea, call, Bayche: he found it growing between Whitstable, and the Isle of Thanet, near the Brink of the Sea, and in many places near to Cochester, and in other places by the Sea side.

V. The Times. It Flowers in the end of June, and all July, and the Seed is ripe towards the end of August.

VI. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with those of the Garden Colewort, (except those various Preparations and Uses of them for Food) but in all the cases there mentioned, this is the stronger, and more efficacious.

VII. Note 1. The Decoction of the Sea Colewort, (some Authors say) doth by its bitter Quality, and sharp Nitrous Particles, open the Belly, and purge the Body; but as Galen thinks, not without some hurt or damage thereto, because it differs much from the Temperature of our Bodies, being hotter and drier than the Garden Kinds: For as all other Wild



Wild Herbs are more potent or stronger in their Operations, so also this ; for which reason it digests and cleanses more powerfully than the others do.

VIII. Note 2. The young Leaves boiled in Lye of Pot-Ashes, ( as Dioscorides says, ) or in Fair Water ( as is most usual in our times ) are eaten as other Coleworts are, by several poor People near the Sea, the boiling taking away much of the bitterness thereof.

IX. Note 3. The young Leaves, or their Juice, applied to Sores or Ulcers, cleanses and heals them, dissolves Tumors, or Swellings, and takes away Inflammations.

## CHAP. CXLVII. of COLTS-FOOT.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, Βίχον, also Χαμαιοεύων : In Latin, *Tussilago* ; but by the Apothecaries, *Farfara*, and *Ungula Caballina*, of some *Populago*, ( from its likeness to the Poplar Leaves ; ) *Farranum*, and *Farrugium Plinij* ; of divers *Pala Equina*, also *Bechium*, *Chamaeleuce*, ( from the Poplar Tree, called in Greek, Λέυκη ; ) In English, *Colts-foot*, *Fole-foot*, and *Horse hoof* : Gerard says, it may very well be called *Cough Wort*.



Coltsfoot in flower.

II. The Kinds. *Camerarius* makes three sorts of *Bechium*, or *Tussilago*, viz. 1. The True, which we intend in this Chapter. 2. The *Petasites*, of which we have treated before in Cap. 100. and the *Caltha Palustris*, or *Marsh Marigold*, which he calls *Tussilago major*, but is indeed no *Colts-foot*, and of which we shall treat in Cap. following. The true *Colts-foot* is either *European* or *American*, the Descriptions of both which we design here. The *American* is called *Calcalia Americana*.

III. The Descriptions. The English, or European Kind, has a Root small and white, spreading very much in the ground, so that where it once takes, the ground is very difficultly cleansed from it again ; for if any little piece or bit of it remains therein, it will from it spring forth afresh. From this Root slender naked Stalks shoot up very early in the beginning of March or April, about a span long, bearing at their tops small yellow Flowers, which quickly fade away, and after they are past, Leaves broad and somewhat roundish come up, yet sometimes a little dented about the edges, much lesser, thicker, and greener than those of Butter Burr, with a little downy hoariness, over the upper side of the green Leaf, which may be rubbed away, and whitish or mealy underneath the Leaf.



IV. The American has a Root which consists of a Bush of blackish Threads or Fibres, ( which abide the hardness of the Winter, both the Stalks and Leaves perishing yearly, ) but grow brownish at the end : From this Root rise up many round Stalks about a foot and half high, and two broad, and somewhat round, but pointed Leaves, a little dented about the edges, at each Joint of them ; the upper Leaves being smaller, and little or nothing dented : at the tops of the Stalks come forth several Branches with many pure white Flowers, being but small, and made of five Leaves apiece, rising out of each husk, which being past, there succeeds small long Seed, sticking each to a little Downe, which are carried away together with the Wind : The whole Plant has little or no Smell, neither Root, Leaf, nor Flower, whatsoever *Cornutus* says to the contrary.

V. The Places. It, viz. the first, usually grows in wet grounds, as also in dryer places : It is found likewise near unto Springs, and on the brinks of Brooks and Rivers, in wet Furrows, by Ditch sides, and in Ditches, and in other moist and watry places near unto the Sea, almost every where. The latter grows in America, in many places of Canada, New Eng-



England, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Carolina, in which last place I have found it several times, travelling through moist, wet, and Moorish places.

VI. *The Times.* The first begins to Flower in the end of February, or beginning of March, and the Leaves appear about the middle or latter end of March, when the Flowers are all gone, and remain green all the Summer long; and for this cause it has been thought that *Colts-foot* had never born Flowers, as *Pliny lib. 26. cap. 6.* has hinted.

VII. *The Qualities.* They are cold and dry in the first Degree; Apperitive, Astringent, Traumatick or Vulnerary, Pectoral, and Analeptick.

VIII. *The Specification.* They are peculiar against Coughs, and Diseases of the Lungs.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom,  
1. *A liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Syrup.*  
4. *A Decoction.* 5. *A Cataplasim.* 6. *Dryed Leaves.*  
7. *A Distilled Water.* 8. *Tinder.*

#### *The Virtues.*

X. *The liquid Juice.* Taken alone, or sweetned with Sugar or Honey, it is prevalent against Coughs, Colds, Wheezing, Hoarsness, and other Distempers of the Lungs. Dose from one to three ounces, Morning and Night at Bed time; and at other times of the Day, if the Cough is vehement.

XI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, but more powerful; besides which, it is singularly good to cure Ulcers of the Lungs, and Stomach, as also the Bloody Flux, and Ulcers of the Bowels; it stops thin Rheums and Distillations, or Catarrhs, and helps in Consumptions. Dose from one ounce to three, two or three times a day, either alone, or mixed with the Distilled Water.

XII. *The Syrup.* It cures Coughs, chiefly dry Coughs; but has an Influence against all Distempers of the Breast and Lungs, being often taken, even by spoonfuls, as also with a Liquorice stick.

XIII. *The Decoction.* If it is made of the green Leaves and Roots, it cures a Cough proceeding from a thin Rheum, and helps Hoarsness, you may sweeten it with Sugar or Honey.

XIV. *The Cataplasim of the green Leaves.* If it is made alone, or with Honey, it is good to abate hot Inflammations, and Anthonies fire, and to cure other hot excretions of the Skin; and being applied, it is good to heal Ulcers, and other old and running Sores.

XV. *The Dryed Leaves.* Taken as Tobacco, they are good for thin Rheums, Distillations and Coughs: so also the Root taken in like sort, as *Dioscorides* and *Galen* say: viz. the Fumes of it, taken (from burning Coles) into the Mouth thro' a Funnel; as also the Fumes of the Leaves so taken (for I suppose the Ancients knew nothing of Tobacco Pipes, that being a Modern invention;) they effectually help such as are troubled with shortness of Breath, and draw their Breath thick and often. The Fumes also ripen and break Apostems of the Thorax and Lungs, and that without any danger.

XVI. *The Distilled Water.* Used simply of it self, or mixed with *Elder-flowers* and *Nightshade*, it is a singular remedy against all hot Agues, to drink two ounces at a time, and to have Cloths wet therein, and to be applied to the Head and Stomach. The same applied to hot Swellings, or any Inflammation, does much good, and prevails against Burnings and Scaldings, and Anthonies fire. It is singular good also to take away red Pimples, Wheals, and other small eruptions of the Skin, which arise through heat; and is profitable against the inflammation of the Piles, and burning heat of the Privy Parts, cloths being wet therein and applied.

XVII. *The Tinder.* It is made, as *Matthiolus* says, of the Cotton or white Wool, which grows in some parts of the Root; the said Cotton being cleaned from the Roots, and bound up hard in Linen Cloths, and boiled in Lye for a while; then adding some Salt-petre to it, it is to be dried in the Sun. This, says *Parkinson*, is the best Tinder to take Fire that can be, being struck from a Flint. Applied to moist Ulcers, it dries up their Humidities.

## C H A P. CXLVIII.

### of C O L U M B I N E.

I. **T**HE Names. It is said to be called in Greek, Πύθος, as *Costeus* thinks from *Theophrastus*, lib. 6. cap. 7. and yet some think the Greeks knew nothing at all of it: *Dalechampi* upon *Athenais*, calls it, Διοσάνθος, *Diosanthos*, i. e. *Flos Jovis*. *Fabius Columna*, in his *Phytobasanos*, to whom *Clusius* gives the greatest approbation, refers it to the Ἰσώπυρον, *Isopyrum Dioscoridis*. In Latin, it is called, *Aquileia*, *Aquilina*, *Aquilegia*, *Aquilegia Rosea*, *Aquilegia Stellata*, *Leontostomum Gesneri*, *Herba Leonis*: and in English, *Columbine*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors describe many Kinds hereof, but those which we shall treat of, are these seven following: 1. *Aquilegia Vulgaris flore simplici*, The Common Single Columbine. 2. *Aquilegia Vulgaris flore pleno*, Common Double Columbine. 3. *Aquilegia inversis Corniculis*, Double inverted Columbines. 4. *Aquilegia Rosea*, The Rose Columbine. 5. *Aquilegia Degener*, The Degenerate Columbine. 6. *Thalictrum vel Thalietrum Hispanicum album & purpureum*, *Ruta Palustris*, *Ruta Pratensis*, *Pseudorhabarbarum*, Tufted Columbines, White and Purple. 7. *Aquilegia Virginiana flore rubescente præcox*, The early red Columbine of Virginia.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first has Roots thick and round, for a little way within the ground, and then it is divided into Branches, furnished with many



ny small Fibres, abiding many Years; and from the round Heads of the Roots which abide all the Winter, shooting forth afresh every Spring, both Leaves and Stalks. The Leaves are divers; and large spread, standing on long Footstalks, every one divided into several parts, and roundly indented about the edges, in color of a blewish green, and not much unlike to the Great Celandine. The Stalks rise up sometimes two or three feet high, reddish, and slightly haired, which usually spread themselves into many Branches, bearing one long divided Leaf at the lower Joint, above which the Flowers grow, every one standing on a long Footstalk, consisting of five hollow Leaves, crooked or horned at the ends, turning backward, the Flower is open, shewing almost like to little Birds (says Gerard) and hollow. The variety of their colors are very much, for some are wholly white, some blew, some of a violet color, others of a blush or flesh color; some of a deep Red, some of a pale Red, some of a dead Purple, or dead Murry, and some of mixt colors, as nature is pleased to exert her powers, all which to distinguish severally would be to little purpose, they being so commonly known. The Flowers being past, small long Cods appear, four or five together, in which are contained small black, and glittering or shining Seed.



*Columbine  
manifold  
double.*

IV. Double Columbine has a Root like the former, and differs not in Leaf or manner of growing from the Single; so that until they come to flower, they cannot be discerned one from another; the only or chief difference is, that this bears very thick and double Flowers, that is, many horned or crooked hollow Leaves set together, which Leaves are not so large as the Leaves of the single Flowers. The variety of colors in this Double Kind is as great or plentiful, or rather more than in the Single, for of those there are party-colored blew, and white, and spotted variably, which are not in the Single Kind, as also a very deep Red, very thick and double; but a smaller Flower, and less plentiful in bearing, than

many other of the Double sorts. These Double Kinds do give as good Seed as the Single Kinds, which thing is not observed in many other Plants.



*Columbine: double flower  
inversed.*

V. The third, or Double Inverted Columbine, is not to be differenced either in Roots, Stalks, Leaves, or Seed from the former, but only in the Flowers, which makes the chief Distinction: these are as double as the former, but the Heels or Horns of these are turned Inwards, and stand out in the middle of the Flowers together: neither is there that plentiful variety of colors in this Kind, which is in the former, there being never above three or four colors seen in this sort, to wit, White, Purplish, Reddish, and a Dun, or dark overworn purplish color. These double Flowers being past away, there come in their places small long Cods like the former, bearing Seed, continuing its kind, and not changing into any of the former.

VI. The fourth, or Rose Columbine, in its Roots, Stalks, and Leaves differs little or nothing from the former Columbines; the chief difference consists in the Flowers, which although they stand in the same manner severally upon their small Footstalks, but somewhat more sparingly than the others do, yet they have no heels or horns, either inward or outward, or very seldom; but stand sometimes with eight or ten small, smooth, plain Leaves, set in order one by one, as in a Compass, in a double row, and sometimes with four or five rows of them, every one directly before the other, like unto a small thick double Rose laid open, or a spread Marigold: but sometimes it happens, that some of these Flowers will have two or three of the first rows of Leaves, without any heel; and the rest which are inwards, each of them with a piece of a small heel or horn at them, as the former have. The colors of these Flowers are almost as variable, and as variably mixt, as the former double kinds. This also gives its Seed, which for the most part preserves its own kind in perfection.



VII. The fifth or Degenerate Columbine holds the proper form of a Columbine, being much like to the Double Rose kind, but that the outwardmost row of Leaves are larger than any of the rest inwards, and is of a greenish, or of a purplish green color, which is not altogether so apt to give good Seed like the former. This kind of Columbine might seem to some to be but a casual Degeneration, and no true natural kind, happening by some cause of Transplanting, or otherwise by Art; but finding it to hold and keep its own proper Species, (being raised from its own Seed) and not variously to change into other forms, I am obliged, I think, to conclude the contrary.

VIII. The sixth, or Spanish Tufted Columbine, has a Root made of many long yellow Branches and Strings, which endure many Years, and encrease much. These Plants (whether white or purple) have both one form in Roots, Stalks, Leaves, and Flowers, and therefore need but one Description: The Leaves are both for color and form, so like unto Columbine Leaves (tho' lesser and darker, yet more spread, and on larger Stalks) that they may easily deceive one, that does not considerately observe them. For the Leaves are much more divided, and in smaller parts, and not so round at the ends. The Stalks are round, strong, and a yard high at least, branching out into two or three parts, with Leaves at their several joints; at the tops whereof stand many Flowers, which are nothing but a number of Threads, made like unto a small round Tuft, breaking out of a white Skin or Leaf, which incloses them, and which being unblown, appear like unto little Buttons. The color of these Threads or Tufts are whitish, with yellow Tips on them, and somewhat purplish at bottom, having a strong, but no good or pleasant Smell. They abide in their Beauty (more especially if they grow in the shade, and not too hot in the Sun) a great while, and then fall away like short Down, or Threads: The Seed Vessels are three square, containing small, long, and round Seed. The purple Tufted Columbine differs only from the white, in that it is not full out so high, nor so large, and that the color of the Flowers or Tufts, is a blewish purple, with yellow Tips, and is much more rare than the white.

IX. The seventh, or Virginian Columbine, has a Root long, with many Fibres thereat, but differs little from our common single sort, except in the following particulars. The Stalk (Cornutus makes to be a Dwarf, but) is as tall as our common English, and of a reddish color. The Leaves are smaller, and somewhat like to those of the Thalictrum last described, or Meadow Rue, but of a paler green color. The Flowers are of a sad reddish color, and single from the middle of them to the ends; but yellowish from thence to the bottom; the ends of whose Leaves are not blunt, as in ours, but stiff, rough, and pointed, within which horned Leaves there are five other smaller, and of a reddish color also, their points bending downwards, having many small white Threads in the middle tip with yellow; after which come five pointed or horned Seed Vessels, containing within them black shining Seed.

X. The Places. They all grow with us in our Gardens, as Garden Flowers; but Clusius says, that the single Kinds have been often found on some of the Woody Mountains in Germany. The seventh Kind is a Native of Virginia, and was brought to us from thence by John Tradescant.

XI. The Times. They most of them flower not until May, and for the most part of June, and (as Gerard says) in July, their Seed ripening in the mean time. The Aquilegia Virginiana, or Virginian Kind, flowers somewhat earlier than any of the other Kinds, usually sooner by a Month.

XII. The Qualities. They are Temperate in respect of Heat or Coldness, Dryness or Moisture: Aperitive, Absterfive, and Astringent; Hepatick, Nephritick, and Hyfterick, Alterative, Vulnerary, and Lithontriptrick.

XIII. The Specification. It facilitates the Delivery of Women in Child-bed.

XIV. The Preparations. You may have, 1. A liquid Juice from the Herb and Root. 2. An Essence from the same. 3. A Decoction in Wine. 4. A Lotion. 5. A Powder of the Seed. 6. The Root of the Common Kinds. 7. The Root of the Tufted Kind.

#### The Virtues.

XV. The liquid Juice. Mixed with Milk and Honey, it is good to heal sore Mouths: and taken four or six spoonfuls at a time in White Port Wine, Morning and Night, it opens Obstructions of the Liver, and prevails against the Jaundice.

XVI. The Essence. It has more potently the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, besides it is of excellent use to heal old running Sores, and putrid Ulcers: and being taken for some time, it is an admirable thing against Obstructions of the Reins and Bladder.

XVII. The Decoction of the Herb and Root in Wine. This being perfumed with some Grains of Ambergrise, is good against those Swoonings, which the Greeks call *adynamia*; as also to open the Obstructions of the Liver, Reins, and Womb.

XVIII. The Lotion. It is made of the Leaves boiled in Milk or Posset-drink, and sweetened a little with Honey; it is good against the soreness of the Throat, also prevails against the Inflammation, Swelling, Falling and Excoriation of the Ulvula; Cankers in the Mouth and Gums, and other moist and running Sores in those parts; all which it heals by Virtue of its drying and binding Quality.

XIX. The Powder of the Seed. Given to one dram in Wine, with ten grains of Saffron, it opens the Obstructions of the Liver, and helps against the yellow Jaundice, as Tragus says, but he advises that the Patient after taking of it should be laid in a warm Bed, and made to Sweat well thereupon. Clusius says, that a Physician in Bruges gave it to Women in Travel (in a Glass of Wine) to cause speedy Delivery, repeating it two or three times, as need required.

XX. The Roots of the Common Kinds. Camerarius says, that in Spain they eat the Root for many days together, to help such as were troubled with the Stone in the Reins.

XXI. The Roots of the Tufted Kind. They are said to have the Virtues of Rhubarb, by reason that (besides their being yellow) they have an opening and drying Quality, as Rhubarb has. They are good (as Dioscorides says) to cleanse and dry old Ulcers, and to heal them. Camerarius says, that in Italy they are used against the Plague; and in Saxony against the Jaundice.

## CHAP. CXLIX.

### of COMFREY.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Σύμφυτον*, *ἡ Σύμφυτον*, *ἡ facultate Glutinandi*: also *Πικρὸς*, *ἡ Πικρὸν*, as Dioscorides saith: In Latin, *Symphitum*, *Symphitum*, *Consolida*, *Consolida major*; and by



by some *Solidago*, *Osteocollon* (a Bone Soderer) and by *Scribonius Largus*, *Inula Rustica*: and in English, *Comfrey*.

II. The Kinds. Authors make several sorts of *Comfrey*; but the three following are only, or chiefly to be had in England, viz. 1. *Symphitum majus vulgare*, Our Common Great *Comfrey*. 2. *Symphitum majus flore purpureo*, Our Great *Comfrey* with purple flowers. 3. *Symphitum Tuberosum*, Tuberous *Comfrey*, or *Comfrey* with knobbed Roots.



Comfrey with Purple Flowers.

III. The Descriptions. The first of these has Roots which are large and long, great and thick, and spreading it self out into great, long, and thick Branches under ground, black on the outside, and whitish within, short and easie to break, and full of a Glutinous or Clammy Juice, having little or no taste in it. From this Root springs forth divers very large and hairy dark green Leaves, lying on the ground, so hairy or prickly, that if they touch any tender part of the Hand or Face, or other part of the Skin, it will cause it to itch or tingle. From among these Leaves rises up a Stalk, two or three feet high, hollow and cornered, which is also very hairy, having many such like Leaves on it as grow below, but lesser and lesser up to the top, which are long, rough, pretty broad, and sharp pointed. At the Joints of the Stalks, it is divided into many Branches with some Leaves thereon; and at the ends stand many Flowers in order, one before, or above another, which are something long and hollow, like the finger of a Glove, of a pale whitish color, after which comes small black Seed.

IV. The second Kind in its Roots, Leaves, Stalks, Flowers, and manner of growing, is altogether like the former; and differs from it only in this, that, as to the whole body of the Plant, it is somewhat less: and as to the Flowers, that these are of a pale purple color.



V. The third Kind, has a large Tuberous or Knobbed Root, which Branches it self out into other Thick and Tuberous parts, more Tuberous or Knobbed towards their ends, with several Fibres adjoining, black on the outside, and yellowish within, replenished with such Viscous, Glutinous or Clammy Juice as the others, but not altogether so stimy: The Roots are also as tender and easie to be broken, or more easie than the others, and spread themselves under ground in like manner. From this Root rises up a hairy, crested, or cornered Stalk, not so high as the former, with smaller Leaves, and more thinly set thereon,



of the same form, and greenness, that thereby it may at the first sight be known to be a Comfrey, by any who has well observed the Common Kind; but more especially when the top Branches are in Flower; which being placed after the same manner, and of the same hollow fashion, but smaller, are of a more sad yellowish color; whose Seed following is also like the Seed of the other Kinds. The Stalks and Leaves Dye away, or perish every Year, as they do in the others, the Roots abiding and increasing in the Earth, and shooting forth new Stalks and Leaves every Spring. Some make a lesser Species of this Tuberos Kind, which if there is any such thing, I am apt to believe, arises only from the differing goodness of the Soil; a fat and rich Soil making or producing a larger Plant than that can do which is poor and lean.

VI. *The Places.* The two first grow by Ditches and Water sides, and in divers low, fat, and moist Fields, Orchards and Grounds; for in such they chiefly delight to grow: The first is found generally through all England; The second but in some particular places: The third grows with us only in Gardens, but is found Wild in Woods and moist places in Austria, Hungary, and Germany.

VII. *The Times.* They Flower in June and July, and perfect their Seed in August. There are several of the *Consolida's*, which have their different times of their flowering and seeding, as, 1. The *Symphitum*, or *Consolida Petrea*, of which *Dioscorides* speaks. 2. *Consolida Saracenic*, *Saracens* Consound. 3. *Consolida Media*, Bugle, or Middle Consound. 4. *Consolida minor*, *Prunella*, or Self-heal. 5. *Consolida Media*, vel *Bellis major Vulgaris*, The Great White Wild Daisie. 6. *Consolida minor*, vel *Minima*, *Bellis minor Sylvestris*, The Common Small Field Daisie. But as these are all of them different Plants, and not a Species of one and the same Genus, nor properly any of the *Comfrees*, so we shall say nothing of them here, but to avoid Confusion treat of them in their several and respective Chapters; our intention being in this Chapter, to treat of that Plant, which we properly call *Comfrey*, and the *Latins*, *Symphitum majus*, which is of several sorts, as are before described.

VIII. *The Qualities.* It is cold and dry in the first Degree: Astringent, Anodyn, Repercussive and Vulnerary: Neurotick, Pectoral, and Arthritick; Alterative, Antiemmenagogick, and Analeptick.

IX. *The Specification.* It is of a Clammy and Glewing Nature, and is peculiar against Fluxes of Blood, of what kind soever, whether internal or external.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A Juice of the Leaves and Roots. 2. An Essence of the same. 3. A Syrup of the Juice of the Root. 4. A Decoction of the Root. 5. A Pouder of the Root. 6. A Balsam of the Root. 7. A Cataplasm of the Root. 8. A Distilled Water. 9. An Acid Aqueous Tincture.

#### The Virtues.

XI. *The Juice of Leaves or Roots.* *Camerarius* says, that two ounces of it being drank at a time, does much good in the Lethargy, and Dead Sleep: it is drying and binding in a great measure, and is good for such as spit Blood, bleed at Mouth, or make a bloody Urine: yet it opens Obstructions of the Lungs, and causes easie Expectoration.

XII. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues, but is much more effectual to stop any Flux of Blood, in any part whatsoever. It prevails against all inward hurts, bruises and wounds, cleanses Ulcers of the Lungs, dries and heals them; and being taken Daily, Morning and Evening, it prevails against Ca-

tarrhs, and stops the defluxion of Rheum from the Head upon the Lungs; fluxes of Blood, or Humors by the Belly, and the immoderate or overflowing of the Courses in Women: It stops also the overflowing of the Whites; and (universals being premised) it cures a Gonorrhæa, or Running of the Reins in Men, coming from what cause soever. Dose two or three ounces in Red Port Wine.

XIII. *The Syrup of the Juice of the Root.* It has the Virtues of the Essence, but causes a better and more easie Expectoration out of the Lungs; is good against Coughs and Colds, Wheezings, and other like Distempers of those Parts. It is said to be good for such as have broken Bones, because it hastens the breeding of the Callous; and for the same Reason, it is said also to be good to cure Ruptures in Children. It is so powerful to Consolidate or Knit together, whatsoever needs knitting, that if the Roots be boiled with flesh cut into pieces, or very deeply slash'd, in a Pot, they will join them together again.

XIV. *The Decoction in Wine or Water.* It is good against inward Bruises and Wounds, inward Bleeding, Spitting, Vomiting, or Pissing Blood, as also the Bloody or Hepatick Flux; and has indeed all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence and Syrup, (but not full out so effectual as they are) being drank to six or eight ounces, Morning, Noon, and Night. It is also good to cleanse, dry, and heal external Wounds, Ulcers, and Running Sores, they being washed therewith once or twice a day.

XV. *The Pouder of the Root.* Being taken inwardly to one dram in a little of the Syrup, it stops inward bleeding, heals Wounds in the Stomach and Thorax, as also Ulcers in the Lungs. If it is applied to green Wounds, as soon as the Wound is made, it conglutinates or joins the Lips thereof together, and causes it speedily to be healed. mixed with the Syrup, and applied to the Hemorrhoids or Piles, it cools the Inflammation, and represses their over much bleeding, and allays the heat of the Parts adjacent, taking away, and easing all the pain.

XVI. *The Balsam of the Juice of the Root.* It is a singular Vulnerary, and cures simple green Wounds, generally at one dressing. It is digestive, and cleansing, and dries up and heals running Sores, and old Ulcers, in any part of the Body, but chiefly in those parts which are not depending; resisting Gangrenes, Mortifications, &c.

XVII. *The Cataplasm of the Root.* If it is made of the simple Root, beaten into a Mucilage raw, and then spread upon Leather or Linnen Cloth, and applied to parts pained with the Gout; it gives present ease to the pain, and so admirably strengthens the part, as that the Disease never returns any more from the old Cause; and this I have several times proved. If it is made of the Root boiled till it is soft in Water, and then beaten into a Pulp, adding to it the Pouder of the Root, enough to bring it to the Consistence of a Cataplasm, and it is presently applied to any simple Green Wound, or Cut, it quickly heals it by consolidating, or joining the lips thereof together: Apply'd also upon broken Bones, it facilitates and speeds the Cure, by preventing a flux of Humors, inducing the Callus, and strengthening the Part; and applied, is also profitable against Ruptures in Children. It is good also to be used to Womens Breasts, which swell and grow hard and sore by the abundance of Milk flowing into them, which it does by a repercussive Virtue: It also cools the Inflammation, abates the Swelling, and eases the Pain of the Piles, as experience has sufficiently proved. It is also very profitable against moist and running Ulcers, Gangrenes,



Gangrenes, Sphacelus, and the like; in which cases it has been experienced, and found often helpful.

XVIII. *The Distilled Water from the Leaves, Stalks, and Roots thin sliced.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but very much weaker; yet Authors say, it is good for outward Wounds or Sores, whether in the fleshy or nervous parts of the Body wheresoever; as also to take away the Fits of Agues; and allay the sharpness of the Humors: but this it the more effectually does, if it is mixed with equal parts of the Liquid Juice or Essence.

XIX. *The Acid Aqueous Tincture.* Take Spring Water, a gallon: Oil of Vitriol, or Oil of Sulphur per Campanum three ounces, mix them: then put into it of the powder of the Root, six ounces: digest in a gentle Sand heat for a Month, shaking the glass three or four times a day: afterwards being well settled, decant the clear Tincture for use. Given inwardly in Wine, or any other proper Vehicle, it stops inward bleedings, and strengthens and restores the Tone of the Stomach: And mixed with Red Port Wine, it makes a good Lotion to cleanse, dry, and heal any old Ulcer, or running Sore, and effectually destroys the Putridity (if any) therein.

## CHAP. CL.

### of CONSOUND Saracens.

I. **T**HE Names. It was unknown to the Greeks, and therefore among them we have no name for it. The Latins call it *Consolida* (from *Consolidare*, to Soder, Close, or Grew up:) *Consolida Saracenicæ*, (because used by the Turks and Saracens in healing of Wounds:) *Herba fortis*, from its strong Smell and Taste: Also *Solidago*, and *Herba Vulneraria*: In English, it is called *Saracens Confound*, also *Saracens Wound-wort*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make four Kinds thereof, viz. 1. *Solidago Saracenicæ vera salicis foliis*, *Consolida Saracenicæ vera*, The true Saracens Confound, or Wound-Wort. 2. *Solidago vel Consolida Saracenicæ major Lugdunensis*, The greater Saracens Confound, or Wound-Wort. 3. *Solidago vel Consolida Saracenicæ, vel Germanica Siliquosa*, Codded Saracens, or German Confound, or Wound-Wort. 4. *Solidago vel Consolida Saracenicæ, vel Germanica altera, Consolida Tertia Tragi, Herba Vulneraria Tragi*, *Tragus* his third Saracens Confound, or second German, which he also calls Wound Wort: These Plants the Germans generally call *Vulneraria Turcica*, Turkish Wound Wort.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first (which is the True Saracens Confound) has a Root consisting of many Fibres or Strings, set together and growing from a Head, which perish not in Winter, but continue, though the Stalks fade and dye away, without so much as a Leaf appearing in that Season: From this Root proceed several long and narrow green Leaves, snipt about the edges, like to those of the Almond or Peach Tree, or Willow Leaves, but not of such a whitish green color: From amidst these Leaves rises up a Stalk or Stalks, very high, growing sometimes to a Man's height, which are of a brownish, or brownish green color, and hollow, having many long and narrow green Leaves (as before described) set thereon. At the tops of the Stalks grow many pale yellow Star-like Flowers, standing

in green Heads; which when they are fallen, and the Seed ripe (which is of a somewhat long, small, and yellowish color, and wrapped in Down) is carried away with the Wind. The Root and whole Plant is of a strong and unpleasant Smell and Taste.



IV. The second, or Greater Saracens Confound, has a Root composed of a great Bush of white Fibres or Threads, growing very deep and strongly in the ground, and shooting forth strings on all sides, which produce new Plants, encreasing in a little time, and over-running a great quantity of ground. From this Root springs forth a head of Leaves, which is somewhat brown at the first shooting out of the ground, (and so also is the head of the Root before the Spring,) which is of a bitter Taste, and binding withal: This Plant differs not much from the former, and therefore from amidst this head of Leaves, there rise up upright, hard, round hollow Stalks, as high as the former, with many dark green Leaves at the first, set (as aforesaid) at the head of the Root, which afterwards rise up with the Stalks, and are set there without any order, somewhat larger than the others, and a little dented about the edges. The Flowers are much greater than those of the first Kind, more in number, and with yellower long Leaves, Star fashion, standing in green heads many together; wherein, after they are past, is contained the Seed, which with the Down thereof, flies away with the Wind, in the same manner as the former does.

V. The third, or Codded Kind, has a Root which in time grows to be very great, even to the bigness of a Man's Arm, and runs very deep also into the ground (as those who are acquainted with the Plant well know:) It is of a strong unpleasant Smell and Taste, sharper than Cresses, and very like unto that of Flixweed, abiding many Years, but the Stalks perish Annually, springing forth afresh from the same Root every Spring. These Stalks thus Annually rising up, are great, round and woody, and in height equal to any of the former, or rather (when they



they have attained to their height ) higher, but are so weak, by reason of the length and weight of the Leaves thereon, that they cannot stand upright, but fall down upon the ground, bearing many dark green Leaves thereon, long and narrow like to the first, with a white Rib in the middle, and snipt gently, or dented about the edges. At the tops of the Branches or Stalks, come forth many yellowish Flowers, but smaller than those of the other kinds, which being past away, there come forth very small and long round dark Pods or Cods, as small and long as those of *Sophia Chirurorum*, or *Flixweed*, which contain within them small brownish Seed, of a hot and quick, sharp and unpleasant Taste, as the whole Herb it self is, but much more the Root.

VI. The fourth, or *Tragus his German Confound*, has a Root which creeps in the ground, and shoots up Branches round about it, which are somewhat like both in Stalks and Leaves unto the middle kind of *Nep* or *Catmint*, with long Leaves, and white as they are. The Flowers come forth at the tops of the Stalks, many together, upon small, round, green heads, not unlike to the first sort, being small, and yellow. After that they are past, and the Heads, with the Seed, are ripe, they open themselves, and with the Down in them, the Seed is carried away with the Wind, after the manner of the first.

VII. The Places. These do all grow in moist and wet grounds, by Wood sides, and sometimes in the moist places of shadowy Groves, as also by Water sides. The first of these has been found growing in *Shropshire*, in the Hedge, by the way as one goes from *Dudson* in *Cherberry Parish*, to *Guariblow*. *Gerard* also says, that it grows by a Wood, as you go from *Great Dunmow* in *Essex*, unto *Clare* in the same County.

VIII. The Times. They Flower in *July*, and the Seed of the two first is soon after ripe and carried away with the Wind. The third has not its Pods and Seed ripe until the end of *August*, or beginning of *September*.

IX. The Qualities. *Saracens Confound*, (under which singular name we comprehend all the kinds) is temperate in respect to heat or cold, but dry in the third Degree; Astringent, Anodyn, Incarnative, and Vulnerary: It is Neurotick, Arthritick, Alterative and Analeptick.

X. The Specification. It is not inferior to any of the Wound-Herbs whatsoever, being inwardly given, and outwardly applied in suitable Preparations.

XI. The Preparations. You may have therefrom,  
1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction in Wine or Water. 4. A Gargarism. 5. An Oil by insolation or boiling. 6. An Ointment. 7. A Balsam. 8. A Cataplasm. 9. A Distilled Water. 10. A Spirit.

#### The Virtues.

XII. The liquid Juice. It cures internal Ulcers of the Lungs: I suppose it was with the Juice thereof, that *Gerard* (as he says) cured one *Cartwright*, a Gentleman of *Grays-Inn*, who was grievously wounded into the Lungs; and that in a short time: In this case, it will be the best way to make it into a Syrup with Honey. It cleanses, dries, and heals old Ulcers, and foul running Sores, and Consolidates Wounds by washing them.

XIII. The Essence. It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice exalted, and is an excellent thing to give inwardly, for the cure of those who have lain long languishing with old, running *Fistula's*, ill-natured Ulcers, and other stubborn and rebellious putrid Sores; washing them also outwardly therewith, or

injecting it with a Syringe. However the application of it to Green Wounds is a matter beyond all Exception. Inwardly taken, it opens Obstructions of both Liver and Spleen, and is profitable for the cure of the Yellow Jaundice.

XIV. The Decoction of the Leaves in Wine or Water. It has the Virtues of the former, but in a much lower Degree; and being made in Water, it is said to cure Agues or Fevers, even of a long continuance: Made with Wine, it opens Obstructions of the Gall Bladder, as also of the Liver and Spleen, and therefore is said to be prevalent against the Dropsie in the beginning thereof, and heals all inward Ulcers of the Reins, Ureters, or Bladder, or else where: It cures also inward Wounds and Bruises.

XV. The Gargarism. Take of the Decoction in Wine a pint: of the Decoction in Water half a pint: Alum in fine Powder a dram: mix and dissolve: then add choice Honey four ounces: dissolve, and just boil them up together. It is excellent to heal a sore Mouth or Throat, by gargling therewith; and to wash Sores and Ulcers in the Privy Parts of Man or Woman: and to inject into *Fistula's* with a proper Syringe.

XVI. The Oil made with Oil Olive, &c. It is excellent against burnings and scaldings, and is proper against Pains and Aches in any part of the Body, arising from Cold: as also to anoint Nerves which are strained, or Joints which are weakned, by any extraordinary force, or by being put out of Joint. It is good also against dry Scabs or Scurf, to bring it off, and clear the Skin.

XVII. The Ointment. It heals green Wounds admirably; digests, cleanses, incarnates and dries running Sores, and old Ulcers, and is prevalent against fractures of the Bones, inducing the Callus, and strengthening the part affected. It is good (being mixt with a little Red Precipitate) against Venereal Ulcers in the Privy Parts of Man or Woman, cleansing them from their putridity, and quickly afterwards healing them up.

XVIII. The Balsam. It cures simple green Wounds at the first Intention. But if they be composed with Contusion, Fractures of the Bone, &c. It admirably digests them by a speedy maturation, then cleanses, and incarnates, afterwards dries and heals them: The same thing it does to old running Sores, putrid Ulcers, and *Fistula's*, (being first laid open) and then duly applied according to Art. I have seen very few things more prevalent against Sores and Ulcers of the King's Evil, which after a singular manner resists the malignity of the Disease, the Patient also taking the Juice or Essence thereof inwardly.

XIX. The Cataplasm. It ripens Phlegmons or Inflammations, as also other Tumors which Nature designs to have brought to Maturation, and to break them. Applied, it gives ease to Pains of the Gout, discusses Simple and Recent Contusions, strengthens Weak Parts, and cleanses Ulcers in any Part, be they never so foul or stinking.

XX. The Distilled Water. Whether it is Distilled from the green Herb, or the Liquid Juice, or the Essence, it is effectual to heal any green Wound, or old Sore or Ulcer whatsoever, cleansing, drying, and healing them as Nature requires; but yet after all, the Juice or Essence are much more effectual for the same purposes.

XXI. The Spirit. It is made by Infusing the Herb forty eight Hours in Wine, and then drawing it off in a gentle Balneo. It is singular good to heal inward Ulcers of the Reins, Ureters, or Bladder, inward Wounds or Bruises, and to rectify the



Discrasie of the Liver and Spleen : It is good also to ease gnawings in the Stomach, Pains and Torments in the Bowels, to expel Wind, and ease the Pains of the Mother. Dose one spoonful in a glass of Wine Morning and Night.

CHAP. CLI.

of CONSOUND Daisie.

**T**HE Names. It was unknown to the Greeks : the Latins call it, *Consolida media*, *Oculus Bovis Brunfelsij*, and *Bupthalmus*, *Bellium majus*, *Tabernmontani* : but by all other Authors, *Bellis major*, and *Bellis major Vulgaris*, five *Sylvestris* : in English it is called Daisie or Middle Consound, Ox Eye, the Great Field White Daisie, and Maudlin-wort.

II. The Kinds. It is a Species of the Daisie, being the first and great Kind of White Field Daisie ; and is twofold, 1. *Consolida media Anglica*, *Consolida media Vulnerariorum*, *Bellis major agrestis Anglica*, The English Middle Consound, or English Great Field Daisie. 2. *Consolida media*, vel *Bellis major Americana vel Virginiana*, The American or Virginian Middle Consound, or Great Field Daisie. 3. *Consolida media*, or Bugle, which see in Cap. 92. foregoing.



Consound-Daisie.

III. The Descriptions. The first or English Kind, has a Root which is only a Bush of White Strings, which abide many Winters, with the Leaves shooting forth every Spring afresh : From this Root come forth many long, narrow, and round pointed Leaves next the ground, pretty deeply cut in on both sides, making it look almost like the divisions of some sorts of Oaken Leaves, or rather like those of Groundsel : From among these Leaves come forth the Stalks,

which grow to be about a foot and half high, with drivers like Leaves thereon, but smaller, and lesser divided than the lower. At the tops of the Stalks and Branches grow large Flowers, each upon several Footstalks, consisting of many white and narrow Leaves, as a Pale, or Border, about the yellow Thrums in the middle, like those of Mayweed, having no Smell at all : The Seed is somewhat long, and is blown away with the Wind. Of this Kind there is one which bears double Flowers, differing from the former in nothing else.

IV. The second, or Virginian Kind, has a Root full of Fibres not much unlike to the former ; from which Root rise up Stalks higher and greater than those before described : the Leaves also are larger, and broadest towards the ends, but longer and smaller at the bottoms, dented likewise about the Edges, shooting forth several Branches, at the tops of all which they bear many white Flowers, as it were in an Umbel, yet not so great, nor the white Leaves so large as the former, but smaller, and more in number, with a greenish yellow in the middle ; and some a little larger than others, and succeeded with Seed somewhat smaller than the former.

Middle Consound.

or Bugle.

See Cap. 92.



V. The Places. The first grows every where by Hedge sides in Meadows, and in the Borders of Fields, and other waste Grounds, The second grows in Virginia, from whence it was first brought to us here.

VI. The Times. It Flowers in May and June, and the Seed is ripe in some short time after.

VII. The Qualities. This Consound, or Great Daisie, is cold in the end of the first Degree, and dry in the second Degree : It is Anodyn, Vulnerary, Neurotick, Arthritick, and Alterative.

VIII. The Specification. It is a famous thing for the immediate cure of Wounds in any part.

IX. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Syrup. 4. A Decoction in Wine or Water. 5. A Lotion or Gargarism. 6. An Ointment or Balsam. 7. A Cataplasm. 8. A Distilled Water.



## The Virtues.

X. *The liquid Juice.* It much attemperates the heat of Choler, refreshes the Liver, and other Inward Parts, and Consolidates Wounds, whether Inward or Outward, after an admirable manner. It is good to cure the Wounds of the Thorax or Breast, being taken two, three, or four ounces at a time, either alone, or mixed with a Glass of Wine, Morning and Evening. Outwardly it also Consolidates Wounds, cleanses old running Sores and Ulcers, and dries and heals them: Dropt into sore and running Eyes, it cleanses, strengthens, and heals them.

XI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, and is indeed more effectual, outwardly applied, it heals Sores in the Privy Parts, gives ease in Pains of the Gout, discusses Tumors, and disperses Kernels in the Flesh; and helps bruises and hurts which come by Falls or Blows. Inwardly taken, it induces the cure of Wounds, Ulcers and Fistula's, whether inwards or outwards, and hastens the Callus breeding, in Fractures of the Bones: for which reason also it is said to be good against Ruptures, and other inward Breaches of any Vessel within the Body. Dose two or three ounces Morning and Night.

XII. *The Syrup.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence; and is better to be given to Children in Ruptures because of its pleasantness. And if it is made with Honey, it is more effectual in Wounds and Ulcers of the Breast and Lungs, or of any other Bowel: It thickens Rheum, and is good against Coughs, Colds, Wheezings, or any Obstruction of the Viscera.

XIII. *The Decoction in Wine or Water.* It helps to cure Wounds of the Thorax, and may be used Dietetically in all the Cases for which the Juice, Essence or Syrup are commended. It singularly refreshes the inward Parts, removes the Discreasie of the Blood and Humors, and as a most admirable Vulnerary induces the healing of Wounds and Ulcers. If there is any Inflammation in or about the part afflicted, or if a Fever is present, the Decoction is best to be made with Water; but otherwise with Wine. It is also of good use to wash the Wound, (if made with Wine) or cleanse foul Ulcers or Fistula's, by injecting it with a Syringe, or otherwise, as often as they are dressed, by which they are daily cleansed and kept clean, and if hollow, incarnated; by which means the healing speedily follows. If it is made with Wine, with the Addition of a third part of *Agrimony* and *Angelica*, and the parts afflicted with the Palsie or Sciatica, be daily, Morning and Night, fomented therewith very warm for half an hour, or thereabouts, it gives great ease and relief.

XIV. *The Lotion.* Take of the Decoction in Wine eight ounces, of the Essence four ounces: Alum in fine powder three drams: Honey of Mulberries four ounces: mix and dissolve. It heals and cures all Wounds, Ulcers, Sores and Pustules of the Mouth, Gums or Throat, as also of the Secret Parts of Man or Woman, if duly wash'd therewith. Dropt into the Eyes, it clears the sight, taking away, Clouds, Films, Inflammations, Flux of Humors, &c.

XV. *The Ointment or Balsam.* They do wonderfully help all Wounds which have an Inflammation about them, or have a Flux of sharp and moist Humors upon them, by which they are kept long from healing. Any simple green Wound the Balsam many times cures at the first intention: and other degenerated Sores it digests, cleanses, incarnates (if flesh is wanting) and quickly heals them, and this although in the Joints, whether of the Arms or Legs.

XVI. *The Cataplasme.* It is excellent to discuss Contusions or Tumors coming upon simple Bruises, if applied upon the Spot. Applied to the Testicles, or to any other part which is Swoln, and Inflamed, it allays the Heat, discusses the Humors, and resolves it: Applied also immediately to a simple green Wound, it prevents Inflammation, conglutinates the Lips, and heals it; and this more especially if it is made of the raw green Herb. And so made and applied, it is very effectual to ease the pains of the Gout, discuss the Tumor, and strengthen the Part: but whether it is altogether so effectual as the Cataplasme of Comfrey Roots, I will not presume to say.

XVII. *The Distilled Water.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but much less effectual. Dropt into the Eyes, it allays an Inflammation there: and if Pouder of White Sugar Candy, or clarified Honey be added, j. ounce, to vj. ounces of the Water, it makes a *Collyrium* which cures dim, cloudy, sore, and running Eyes, being often dropt into them.

## C H A P. CLII.

## of CORALWORT.

I. **T**HE Names. *Dioscorides* nor *Pliny*, nor any other of the Ancient Writers, knew any thing of this Plant, so far as I can learn; but it seems to be purely an invention of the Moderns. The *Latins* (from the Form and Color of the Roots) call it *Coraloides*, *Dentaria*, *Dentillaria*, *Dentillaria* or *Dentaria Coralloide Radice*, *Alabastrites Lobelij*, *Viola Dentaria Dodonai*, (from the Roots and Flowers, being like unto Stock-Gilliflowers:) by *Gesner*, in *Hortis*, *Sanicula alba*, *Pulmonaria*, *Saxifraga montana* (from its Virtues;) but *Columina* takes it to be the *Ceratia Plinij*, because it has all the Virtues which *Pliny* ascribes unto his *Ceratia*, but this is doubtful. *Dalechampius* in *Lugdunensis* took it to be an *Aconitum*, but this was wholly Error. In *English* it is called Coralwort, Toothwort, and Toothed Violets.

II. *The Kinds.* *Matthiolus* places this between *Symphita* and *Consolida*, it being wholly of their Nature and Qualities. *Parkinson* makes seven Kinds thereof; some other Authors more; but we shall only discourse of those which are to be had with us, either Wild in our Fields and Woods, or nursed up in our Gardens; and they are, 1. *Dentaria Bulbifera*, vel *Baccifera*, Bulbed, or Berrybearing Coralwort. 2. *Dentaria minor*, or *minima*, *Alabastrites*, Small Coralwort. 3. *Dentaria Pentaphyllos*, Cinkfoil Coralwort. 4. *Dentaria Pentaphyllos alter*, The second Cinkfoil Coralwort. They are generally called *Dentaria*: and most of them from the number of their Leaves, as, *Triphyllos*, *Pentaphyllos*, and *Heptaphyllos*; but the *Triphyllos* or *Enneaphyllos Lobelij*, and the *Heptaphyllos*, are strangers in our Countrey.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first of these has a Root very white, smooth, and shining, made of divers small round knobs set together, not growing downwards, but lying along, and encreasing under the upper crust of the Earth, having very few fibres thereat; its taste is somewhat bitter, hot and sharp, like Radish, as all the rest of the Kinds are. From this Root shoots forth one or two Winged Leaves, upon long brownish Footstalks, which in their rising out of the ground, are, as it were, doubled, or folded downwards, and then open themselves, most commonly, into



into seven Leaves, and sometimes into but five, each of which is something long, dented about the edges, and pointed, of a sad green color, and set on both sides of the middle Rib, one against another. The Stalk, which beareth Flowers, rises up in the same manner with the Leaves, and is bare or naked of Leaves, to the middle thereof, where it shoots forth a Leaf, and so one or two more up higher, each consisting but of five Leaves, and sometimes but of three, having also the uppermost single; at each whereof comes forth a small round Bulb, cloven, or as it were, divided into several parts or cloves, of a sad purplish green color, which being ripe, and put into the ground will grow to be a Root, and bear Leaves, like as the Bulbs of a red Bulbed Lilly; about which, at the very top, stand four or five Flowers in long Husks, upon short Footstalks, opening into four several Leaves, of a purplish color, and very like unto the Flowers of Stock-gilliflowers, or Dames Violets. These being past away, small long horns, or Cods, pointed at the ends come forth; in which Pods or Cods lyes such like Seed as are in the Cods of Dames Violets; which as soon as it is ripe, the Cod opens, and the Seed falls out: The Leaves, and indeed the whole Plant, is of a bitterish, hot, sharp, Radish-like Taste.

a small round greenish yellow head, which spreads not into Leaves, but into four or five mossie heads of Threads, and so abides a while, (having no other flower) which pass away leaving in their room many small kernelly Seed. The Leaves have a bitter sweet scent, somewhat like unto the Muskied Cranes Bill, yet more sweet when it grows Wild in its natural places, than when it is transplanted out of them into Gardens. This Plant is referred by many unto the Ranunculi or Crowfeet, to which it has but a small resemblance, and ought rather to be incerted in this place, for the likeness of its Root sake.

*Small Corall wort*



*Bulbed Coral wort*



IV. The second, or Small Coralwort, has a Root small, and somewhat long, composed as it were, of many small, very shining, white thick scales, growing upwards, and having many white Fibres at the head of them, of a little sweetish bitter, sharp and astringent Taste. From this Root spring forth three or four slender pale green Stalks of Leaves somewhat divided on their edges, not half a foot high, and not of half that height in some places, very like unto those of the hollow Root, but smaller, and of a paler shining green color; from among which rise up one or two small Stalks, with two such like Leaves thereon, but smaller, and a little above them,



*Coral-wort five leaved*

V. The third Kind, which is the first Cinkfoil Coralwort, has a Root which is greater than the first, and made as it were into Joints, not so white as that is, but with longer Fibres coming from between the Joints. From this Root rises one or two Leaves



upon long footstalks, consisting of five Parts, or Leaves, each of them somewhat like the first, and dented about the edges, but they are longer, rougher and harder in feeling, and more closely set together, rising for the most part from one Joint, like as the Cinktoils do: upon the Stalks also are some such like Leaves set one above another; at the top four or five such like Flowers, but somewhat larger, of a purplish color, something deeper than the first, which turn into such like Pods, with the like Seeds in them, but has no Bulbs on the Stalks.

VI. The fourth, or second Cinkfoil Kind of Coriawort, has a Root very like the first, consisting of many round clear white Knobs, but more in number, set together by pieces, with divers long Fibres growing out of it: From this Root shoots forth a lower and smaller Stalk than the former, being not above a foot high, with some Leaves set thereon; as also there is some of these very like the last, but narrower; more smooth and gentle, and also of a paler green color: the Flowers stand at the top, like unto the other, and are of a purplish color, after which come the like Pods with Seed in them, as in the rest.

VII. The Places. The first and second are found Wild in England, the first at Mayfield in Sussex, in a Wood called Highbreed; and in another Wood there also, called Fox-holes; as also in divers shady and dark Mountains, or Hills: the two last are only nurs'd up with us in Gardens.

VIII. The Times. They Flower about the middle of April, and beginning or middle of May, and the Seed is ripe in August, after which they quickly wither and perish; the Roots abiding safe all the Winter.

IX. The Qualities. They seem to be Temperate in respect of heat or cold, but are drying in the first Degree. They cleanse, astringe, dry, bind, and strengthen.

X. The Specification. They are dedicated to the curing of Wounds.

XI. The Preparations. You may make therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction in Wine. 4. A Syrup. 5. A Powder. 6. A Balsam.

#### The Virtues.

XII. The liquid Juice. It strengthens the Bowels, and makes them able to perform their Offices, provokes Urine, and is said to expel the Stone and Gravel, being drunk, Morning and Evening, from three ounces to six, in a Glass of Port Wine.

XIII. The Essence. It has the former Virtues, besides which it is said to cure any inward Wounds, especially those Wounds which have pierced into the hollowness of the Thorax. It is also good to ease the Griping Pains of the Bowels, and Sides, being taken to four or six ounces in a glass of Red Port Wine, or old Malaga.

XIV. The Decoction in Wine. It has the former Virtues, but much weaker, and is good against Lasks or Fluxes which proceed from hot and cholerick Humors: you may give it to six or eight ounces, Morning and Evening, for many Days together.

XV. The Syrup. It is made of the Juice or Essence, and is proper to be given to Children which have Ruptures, or are troubled with Gripings, Vomiting, or other Diseases of the Bowels.

XVI. The Powder of the Root. It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence; and heals Wounds of the Breast and Lungs, being given to a dram in Red Wine for some considerable time. It is also profitable against Burstiness, being given in the Syrup aforesaid.

XVII. The Balsam. It is good to be applied to green Wounds, for it quickly consolidates and heals them; it also digests, cleanses, incarnates, dries, and heals old, running, filthy and hollow Ulcers; facilitating the cure after an admirable manner.

## CHAP. CLIII. Of CORIANDER.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Kόριον*, and *Κορίανον* (from *Κόρυς*, *Cimex*, the Wall-Louse, which we call Buggs; for that Coriander in its scent, very much resembles their stinking Smell when they are killed:) In Latin, *Corion*, and *Coriannon*, but mostly in the Shops *Coriandrum*: In Arabick, *Casberra*, and *Elcosbur*: In English, *Coriander*.

II. The Kinds. There are but two sorts of it which are found with us, viz. 1. *Coriandrum vulgare*, The common Coriander. 2. *Coriander minus odorum*, The lesser sweet Coriander. And by the name *Coriander* these Plants are known in almost all Nations.



III. The Descriptions. The first has a small Root, which perishes every Year after Seed time: from this Roots spring up Leaves which are something broad, almost like unto Parsley or Chervil; but after the Stalk or Stalks come forth, which are three or four feet high, being full grown; the Leaves then are smaller and finer, every one than other, up to the top, being of a faint green color, and very much cut or jagged in, almost like to the Leaves of Fumitory, but a great deal smaller, tenderer, and more jagged. The Flowers are white, and grow in small loose Umbles, like unto Dill; which being passed away, there comes forth round striked hollow Seed, of a whitish yellow color when it is ripe. The whole Plant, Seed and all, while it is green and growing, has



has a strong and loathsome Smell, scarcely to be endured; but when the Seed is full ripe and dry, it is of a very good Scent, and of an agreeable Taste.



IV. The second has Roots and Stalks almost like the former; but the Leaves, the lower as well as the higher, are all finely cut in, and jagged; the Stalks are much lower, not above half a foot high; (says Parkinson) and lying almost on the ground: the Flowers on its Tops are white; and the Seed round as the other, but fuller and larger, and two always joined together.

V. The Places. They are only Sown in Gardens now, as in old time. Pliny says, they are not found Wild; nor are their natural places known.

VI. The Times. They Flower in July, and their Seed is ripe in August.

VII. The Qualities. The green Leaves are said to be Cold and Dry. The dried Seed is Hot and Dry in the end of the second Degree, or beginning of the third. It is Aperitive, Anodyn, Carminative, Discussive, Stomack, and Alexipharmick.

VIII. The Specification. It stays Vomiting, and helps Digestion.

IX. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A Juice from the Green Herb. 2. An Essence of the same. 3. An Ointment or Balsam of the same. 4. A Cataplasm of the Green Herb. 5. Coriander Comfits. 6. A Pouder of the Seed. 7. A Spirituous Tincture of the Seed. 8. An Acid Tincture thereof. 9. An Oily Tincture of the same. 10. A Saline Tincture thereof. 11. A Spirit. 12. An Oil by Distillation.

#### The Virtues.

X. The Juice of the Green Herb. Authors say, it is of a cold Quality, and that being drunk, altho' but to half an ounce, it kills them that take it. But outwardly applied, it dissolves Knots and Kernels; and discusses other hard Tumors, being assiduously used.

XI. The Essence of the same. It has the Virtues of the Juice, and being applied by Rags dipt therein, it is said to cure *Antbonies Fire*, and other hot Tumors.

XII. The Ointment or Balsam of the same. It is made with Ceruse, Litharge, Vinegar, and Oil of Roses. It is commended against an Erysipelas, running and fretting Sores, Wheals, Pusches, Carbuncles, and Botches, rising in the Skin or Flesh; it cools the Inflammation, and takes away also the Swelling of the Cods.

XIII. The Cataplasm of the Green Herb made with Barley Meal, or Barley Bread. It has the Virtues of the Ointment, but is more powerful to allay Inflammations, and discuss hot Tumors or Swellings. It is also good to dissolve or discuss Wens, fleshy Tumors, and protuberances of the King's-Evil, being duly applied.

XIV. The Comfits of the Seed. Gerard says, they prevail much against the Gout, being eaten upon a fasting Stomach, before Dinner; and also after Dinner without drinking after the same for three or four hours time: and they have yet a greater power over that Disease, if they be eaten in the same manner also after Supper.

XV. The Pouder of the Seed. If it is taken fasting to almost a dram in a Glass of Generous Wine, it strengthens the Stomach, causes an Appetite, and makes a good Digestion, depresses Fumes and Vapors rising from the Stomach, Spleen or Womb, and ascending up into the Head. It stops Catarrhs, helps the noise in the Ears, and discusses that Tumor in the Throat, vulgarly called the Quinsy.

XVI. The Spirituous Tincture of the Seed. It is a most singular Stomack, strengthens the Ventricle, stops Vomiting, helps Digestion, and eases the most inveterate Pains of that Bowel: and is indeed a most excellent thing against the Gripings of the Guts.

XVII. The Acid Tincture. This is yet a more excellent Stomack than the former, where there is a lassitude or weakness of the Stomach, and the Tone thereof seems to be depraved or undone, and the Acidities thereof so diminished, as that the Patient wants an Appetite, and cannot at all digest their Food, but that it comes up again undigested, with Vomiting, manifold Reachings, and vehement Sickness thereof, being taken in Red or White Port Wine, or in a generous Canary, to a pleasing Acidity; it restores the Tone of the Stomach, and kills Worms in the Body.

XVIII. The Oily Tincture. If it is daily taken, viz. Morning and Night, in any generous Vehicle, from twenty drops to forty, it cures the Colick, and Griping of the Guts, and mightily stirs up Veneries. It prevails also against the bitings of Serpents, especially of that called *Amphisbena*, the place bitten being also anointed therewith. And as it is comfortable to the Stomach and Bowels, by its healing and drying property, and prevails against a Paralysis, or Palsie, so also it is eminently good against that Disease by anointing the whole length of the Back-bone therewith, as also the parts affected, twice a day before a fire, and rubbing it very well in for a long time: And by outward application in like manner, it prevails against Cramps, Convulsions, Gouts, and the Sciatica, and all cold and moist Diseases happening in what part of the Body soever.

XIX. The Saline Tincture. It opens Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, provokes Urine, and causes an Evacuation of Sand, Gravel, and Tartarous Matter out of those parts. Dose to one dram, or more, in a Glass of generous White Port Wine.



XX. *The Spirit.* It is very comfortable to the Stomach, and exceeding Cordial ; by heating and refreshing of it, and taking away the cold and moist Temperature thereof, which is the ground and foundation of Catarrhs and Rheumatisms ; it helps Digestion, repels the Vapors, which ascend thence up into the Head, and forcibly resists the Torments of the Colick, proceeding from Cold, Wind, and the like : and being moderately used, it stirs up Venery by an encrease of Blood and Seed, and by a gentle warming, and, as it were, vivifying the same. Dose one Spoonful, or more, in the Morning fasting, a little afore Dinner, and at Bed time, either alone, or in a Glass of Canary.

XXI. *The Oil by Distillation.* Being taken inwardly from ten to fifteen or twenty drops, and in some very cold and moist Constitutions to thirty or forty drops ; first dropt into, and mixt well with White Sugar, and then mixed well with a glass of Wine, and so taken, it is a famous thing against the Palsie, Cramps and Convulsions, whether in Old or Young, and the Gout in the Stomach ; anointing all those parts which are affected with those Diseases, outwardly, Morning and Night, and rubbing or chafing it well in. It effectually opens the Urinary Passages, and powerfully stirs up to Coition, by encreasing Seed, making it Spirituous, and strengthening the parts of Generation.

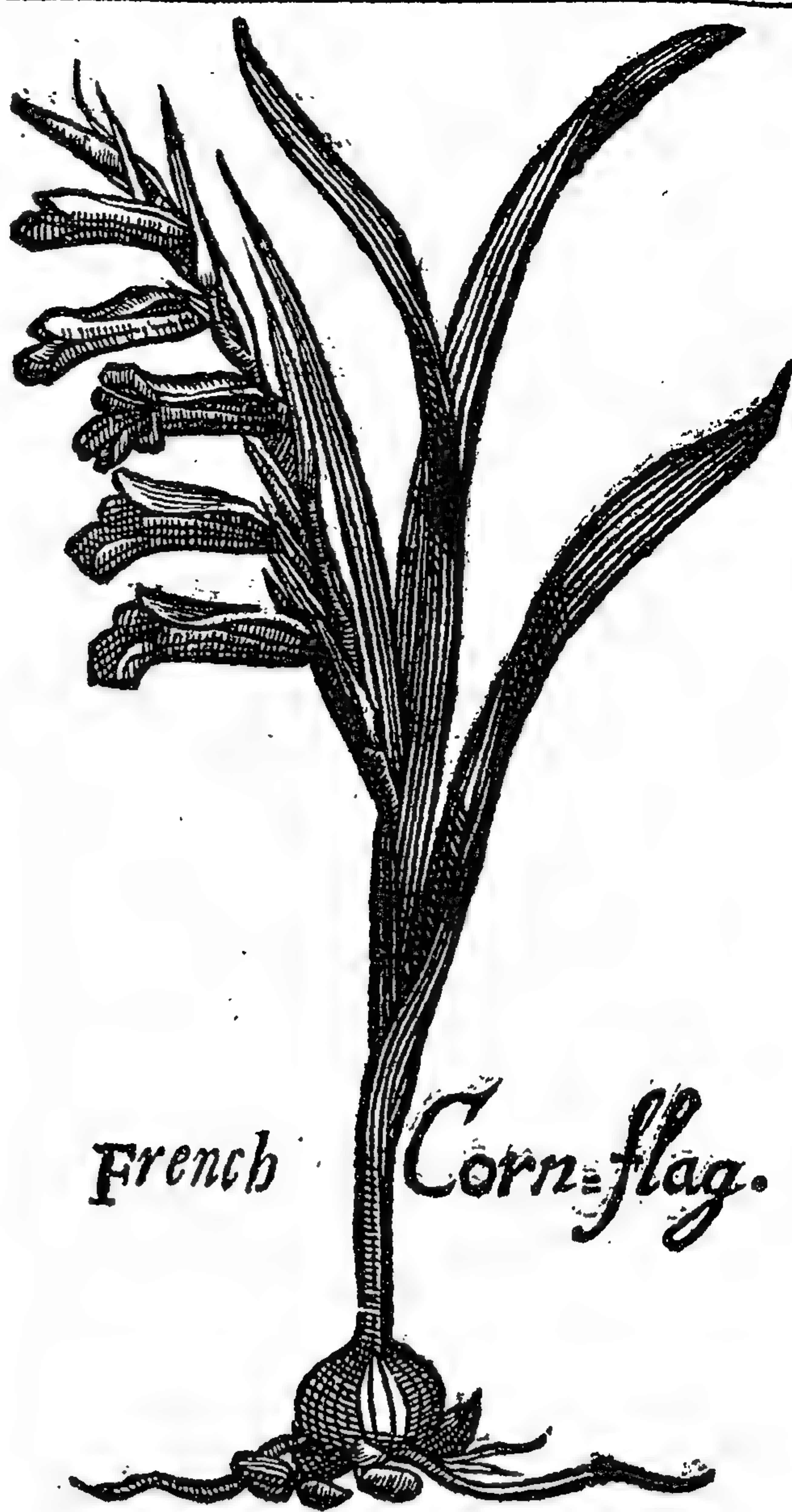
XXII. *An Observation.* The Arabian Physicians, and others of the Ancients, tell us how we should correct *Coriander Seed* before we use it, viz. by steeping it all Night in Vinegar, and then drying it again, thereby to take away (as they think) its Venene Qualities. But this *Lobel* seems to despise, and that truly with very good reason, because no such thing can be extracted from it ; for after it is ripe, if it is suffered to dry of it self, or in the Sun, all those pretended Obnoxious Qualities will vanish away of their own accord ; nor needs it any other Preparation when it is made into Comfits, and is so far from being hurtful to the Stomach, and Bowels (as some Authors have affirmed) that on the contrary, it has been found by great Experience to be an excellent Stomack, exceeding many others : and this even Country People have found by the use of it, without any Preparation at all : for being only Dry, it has a warming Faculty, and a Sweet, and no Noisome Smell or Taste, that being contained only in its Humidities whilst it is Green, and not in the Seed when only dried.

## C H A P. CLIV.

### OF CORN-FLAG.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Χλιδιον*, and *χλιδιον* : In Latin, *Gladiolus*, and of some *Ensis* (as it were the *Sword Flag* : ) of some *Gladiolus Segetalis*, *Victoralis femina Cordi*, and *Victoralis Rotunda* : In English, *Corn-Flag*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are several sorts thereof, as,  
1. *Gladiolus Narbonensis*, The French Corn-Flag.  
2. *Gladiolus Italicus binis florum ordinibus*, The Italian Corn-Flag.  
3. *Gladiolus Byzantinus*, The Constantinopolitan or Turkish Corn-Flag.  
4. *Gladiolus flore rubente*, Blush-colored Corn-Flag.  
5. *Gladiolus flore albo*, White-flowered Corn-Flag.  
6. *Gladiolus purpureus minor*, The small purple Corn-Flag.  
7. *Gladiolus Lacustris*, The Water, Corn, or Sword Flag, described by *Clusius*.



French Corn-flag.



Italian Corn-Flag.

III *The Descriptions.* The first has a Root which is somewhat great, round, flat and hard, looking as if it was netted, having another short spongy one under it, which when it has done bearing, and the Stalk dry, that the Root may be taken up, sticks close to the bottom, but may be easily taken away, having commonly a number of small Roots encreased about it, the least of which will quickly grow, so that if it is suffered any long time in a Garden, it will even choak it up. From this Root, three or four broad, long, and stiff green Leaves rise up, one, as it were, rising



rising out of the side of another, being joined together at the bottom, somewhat like unto the Leaves of Flower-de-luces, but stiffer, more full of Ribs, and longer than many of them, and sharper pointed. The Stalk rises up from among the Leaves, bearing them on it as it rises, having at the top divers Husks, out of which come the Flowers, one above another, all of them turning and opening themselves one way, which are long and gaping, like unto the Flowers of Fox-Glove, a little Arched or bunching up in the middle, of a fair reddish purple color, having two white spots within the mouth thereof, one on each side, made of a Lozenge fashion, viz. square, and long pointed. After the Flowers are past, round Heads or Seed Vessels come up, in which is contained reddish flat Seed, like unto the Seed of Fritillaria, but thicker and fuller.

IV. The second, or Italian Corn-Flag, is like unto the former French kind, in its Root, Leaf, and Flower, without any other difference, than that the Root is smaller, and browner, the Leaf and Stalk of a darker color; and the Flowers (darker also in their color, and a little smaller) standing out on both sides the Stalk.

V. The third, or Turkey Corn-Flag, except that it is larger in its Roots, Leaves, and Flowers, is like in all things to the first Corn-Flag; the Flowers on this standing only on one side, of a deeper Red color, and being later in the Year before they appear, viz. after all the rest are past. The Root is netted in this, as plainly as in any of the others; it as plentifully also encreases, but is more tender, and less able to abide our cold Winters.

VI. The fourth is like unto the French Corn-Flag in all respects, excepting only that the Flowers are of a pale red color, tending to whiteness, commonly called a Blush color.

VII. The fifth differs not from the last, excepting that the Roots are whiter on the outside, the Leaves are greener, without any brownness or darkness, as in the former, and the Flowers are of a pure Snow white color.

VIII. The sixth differs not from any of the former, but in the smallness of the Leaves, Stalk and Flowers, which stand all on one side, like unto the French kind, and of the same color: and the Root of this sort is netted more than any of the others.

IX. The seventh, or Water Gladiol has a matted bushy fibrous Root; from whence rise up Leaves about a span long, thick and hollow, with a Partition in their middle, like as you see in the Cods of Stock-gilliflowers, and the like: their Color is green, and Taste sweet, so that they are an acceptable Food to Wild Ducks, diving to the bottom of the Water; for they sometime lye some Yards under Water; which notwithstanding are over-topt by the Stalk, which springs up from among those Leaves, and bears Flowers of a white color, and larger than those of Stock-gilliflowers: but in that hollow part which is next to the Stalk, they are of a blewish color, almost in shape resembling the Flowers of the Corn-Flag, but not absolutely like them. They consist of five Leaves, whereof the two uppermost are reflected towards the Stalk; the three other being broader, hang downwards: after the Flowers are past, round pointed Vessels follow, filled with red Seed.

X. The Places. Their Titles, of the chief, generally show from whence they first came: but with us they are only nurs'd up in Gardens: they seem to be Natural to Barbary, where John Tradescant saw many Acres of Ground overspread with them. In those Countries where they grow Wild, as in Turkey, Italy, Spain, and France, they grow in Meadows, and in Earable Land among Corn: and we have great plenty of them in our Gardens near and

about London, which serve for their Beauty and Ornament. The Water Gladiol is found in some places of West Friesland, growing in Waters which have a Gravelly bottom, and which scarcely bring forth any other Plants besides.

XI. The Times. They Flower from May, to the end of June, and sometimes in July; but the Byzantine, or Turkey, after all the rest, as is above-said.

XII. The Qualities. They are hot and dry, but in what Degree Authors have not said: but Galen says, they have a power to Dry, Attract, Waste and Consume; and that they have a subtil and digestive Quality.

XIII. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice of the upper Root. 2. An Essence of the same. 3. An Emplaster. 4. A Cataplasme. 5. A Pouder of the Cods and Seed.

#### The Virtues.

XIV. The liquid Juice. If it is drunk with Red Port Wine, it is said to cure the Rupture in Children, called Enterocoele, which is when the Guts fall into the Cods.

XV. The Essence of the same. It has the former Virtues, and being drank Morning and Evening for some time, to four or six ounces in a Glass of Sherry Wine, it is said to provoke Lust, and strengthen the Viscera.

XVI. The Emplaster. It is made of the Root mixed with Frankincense and a little Wine: Being applied, it eases the Pains of the Gout: it also draws forth Thorns, Prickles, Splinters, or broken Bones out of the Flesh; it Digests, Maturates, and Cleanses.

XVII. The Cataplasme. It is made of the Root beaten up with Meal of Darnel, and Honey, and a little Lard. It wastes and discusses hard Nodes, lumps of Flesh, and other like hard Tumors. It is also found to be a certain and approved remedy against scrophulous Swellings in the Throat, vulgarly called the King's-Evil.

XVIII. The Pouder of the Cods and Seed. If it is drank in Goats, or Asses Milk, to one dram, or more, Morning and Evening, as also in the time of the Paroxysm of the Colick, it eases the pains of the Colick: but if it is drank in Juniper Water, it is much better.

## CHAP. CLV.

### OF CORN-SALLET, OR, LAMBS-LETTICE.

I. THE Names. It may be called in Greek, *λευκολάχανον*: In Latin, *Lactuca Agnina*, and *Olus Album Dodonæi*: In English, *Corn-Sallet*, or *Lambs-Lettice*.

II. The Kinds. It is not a Kin to the Lettice, though called by that name, which I suppose was, because it is eaten for a Sallet, as the Lettice is. And is a singular Plant by it self.

III. The Description. It has a Root consisting of many small and long Fibres; from whence spring up many slender, round, weak Stalks, trailing, as it were, upon the ground, about a foot high, if it grows in good and fertile ground; otherwise but a hand or



two high, with several Joints, and two Leaves standing at each Joint, narrow and long. Likewise from the same Root, at its first coming forth out of the ground, many Leaves, long, narrow, and round pointed, of a whitish green color, spring forth, which grow close upon the ground, which live all the Winter, and from among which, in the beginning of the Spring, (if it is sown in Autumn, as is usual, when it is to serve for an early Sallet) several small, round Stalks rise up, branching forth at the top, and bearing Tufts of small black blew Flowers, (but Dodonæus say, they are very small white Flowers, closely compact together :) These Tufts of white Flowers are broad, but the Flowers themselves are very small, so that they can scarcely be known to be Flowers, saving that they grow many together, like a Tuft or Umble.

IV. *The Places.* This Herb grows Wild in Corn-Fields: (whence the Name) but since it has grown into use amongst us for Salletting, it is also sown in Gardens for a Sallet Herb.

V. *The Times.* It is found Green all Winter and Summer: and runs up to Flower and Seed in March, April, and May.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is Temperate in respect of heat or cold; and moist in the first Degree. It is Emollient, Hepatick, Alterative, and Galactogenerick.

VII. As to the *Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses* of this Herb, Authors have been silent. It is doubtless an innocent Plant, and pleasant to be eaten: for which reason it is used as a Winter Sallet, at least wise very early in the Spring; for which purpose it is dress'd up to the Table as Garden Lettices are, with Salt, Vinegar, and Oil, and sometimes with Sugar also, as the Eater best likes.

Flowers; somewhat like unto Tansie Flowers, but lesser; which afterwards are the Heads which contain the Seed, which is small, flat, and long: These Flowers being gathered before they be ripe, keep their color and beauty a pretty while without Withering; and the whole Plant is of a very pleasant Smell and Taste, and very agreeable with the Stomach.



## CHAP. CLVI.

### of COSTMARY.

I. *THE Names.* It seems not to have any Greek Name: but the Latins call it *Costus hortorum major*: some call it *Balsamita major*, *Mentha Græca*, *Mentha Romana*, *Mentha Corymbifera major*, *Mentha Saracenica*; by Gesner, in *Hortis*, *Oviaria*: by Cæsalpinus, *Herba Mariæ*; and *Lassulata* by others: In English, *Costmary*, or *Alecoast*.

II. *The Kinds.* Of the *Costus hortorum*, there are two Kinds, viz. 1. The Greater, which is *Costmary*, of which in this Chapter. 2. The Lesser, which is *Maudlin*, of which in its place, in some one of the following Chapters of this Book: Many Authors join these two Plants together in one Chapter, making them as two *Species* under one *Genus*: But in my Opinion, notwithstanding the Unity or Sameness of the Latin Name, they are truly two differing Herbs.

III. *The Description.* *Costmary* has a Root which is somewhat hard, and very full of Strings, which being divided with the Heads of Leaves, may be replanted in the Spring time for encrease. From this Root spring forth many broad and long pale green Leaves, dented, or cut a little about the Edges, every one standing upon a long Footstalk; among which rise up many round green Stalks, with such like Leaves thereon, but lesser up towards the top, where it spreads into three, four, or more Branches, every one bearing an Umble or scaly Tuft of gold yellow

IV. *The Places.* It grows almost every where in Gardens, and is nurs'd up with us for the sweet Smelling of its Flowers and Leaves. But in Italy it has been found to grow naturally Wild in rough and untilld places, especially in the Duke of Tuscany's Dominions.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers in June and July, and the Seed is ripe some time after.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the end of the second Degree. It is Aperitive, Absterfive, Carminative, Digestive, Discussive, Diuretick, Traumatick or Vulnerary; it is also Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomack, Cordial, Nephritick, and Hysterick; Alexipharmick, and Analeptick.

VII. *The Specification.* It is singular in curing all sorts of Green Wounds.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may prepare therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An Infusion or Decoction. 4. A Powder. 5. An Oil by Insolation. 6. An Ointment. 7. A Balsam. 8. A Cataplasm. 9. A Spirituous Tincture. 10. An Acid Tincture. 11. An Oily Tincture. 12. A Saline Tincture. 13. A Spirit. 14. An Oil Distilled. 15. Potestates or Powers. 16. An Elixir. 17. A Fixed Salt.

#### The Virtues.

IX. *The liquid Juice of the Herb.* It provokes Urine mightily, by opening Obstructions of the Urinary Parts; and by injection takes away the hardness of the Womb, if it be not Cancerous: It gently evacuates Choler and Flegm, attenuates that



that which is thick and gross, cuts and divides that which is tough and glutinous, cleanses that which is foul, hinders Corruption or Putrefaction, dissolves without Attraction, opens Obstructions, and removes their evil effects. It strengthens the Stomach and Liver, and all the other *Viscera*; and if it is taken from two ounces to four, or six, in Clarified Whey, it operates the more effectually to all the aforementioned intentions. Being also duly given Morning and Evening, as also about two or three hours before the coming of a Quotidian Ague, it is very powerful in repressing it, and for the most part Cures it.

X. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice, and indeed more powerful to all the intentions; besides which, it is an excellent thing to be used Dietetically by all those who have composed Wounds, running Sores, old and putrid Ulcers, inveterate Fistula's, or have a Cachexia, or are inclinable to the Green-sickness, in which last case, it does as much as most Vegetables can do. It may be given either alone of it self, or mixt with a glass of White Port Wine, from one ounce to six, every Morning fasting, and last every Night at Bed time. Thus taken, it is also very profitable against continual Pains of the Head, to stop, dry up, and consume all thin distillations, which are apt to fall upon the Lungs, and helps to digest raw Humors. It is a truly beneficial thing to the Bowels, and kills Worms in Children.

XI. *The Infusion, or Decoction in Wine.* They have the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not full out so powerful, and therefore may be given to half a Pint, Morning, Noon, and Night. It opens Obstructions of the Womb, and if seasonably taken, viz. about a Week before the time, it provokes the Terms in Women.

XII. *The Powder of the Leaves.* It is a good Stomack, and may be taken from half a dram, to two drams, Morning and Night, in any proper Vehicle. I commend it to such as are apt to have the Gout to fly upwards into the Stomach: it is Astringent, resists Poison, and the bitings of Venomous Beasts, and kills Worms in Humane Bodies.

XIII. *The Oil by Infolation, or boiling in Oil Olive.* It warms and comforts Parts affected with any Preternatural Coldness, and resists the afflux of cold and moist Humors, it discusses Swellings, and gives ease in the Gout, Sciatica, and other like Pains.

XIV. *The Ointment.* If it is made with the addition of *Adders-tongue*, it is an excellent thing to cure Burnings and Scaldings, whether with Fire, Water, or Oil, and to cleanse and heal old Ulcers; and particularly to discuss hard Tumors in Womens Breasts.

XV. *The Balsam.* It not only cures simple Green Wounds at the first Intention, but also digests and maturates those which are Composed or Complicate. It digests putrid and eating Ulcers, and by its Anodyn quality eases their Pains; it cleanses them, and if hollow, or wanting in flesh, it incarnates; and by its Astringent property, it dries up their Humidities, strengthens the part, and brings the Sore to a speedy healing.

XVI. *The Cataplasme.* Applied, it discusses recent Contusions, cleanses old and running Sores, resists the putridity of Ulcers, eases the Gout, strengthens weak Limbs and Joints, abates Inflammations, and draws out the fire in Burnings, being applied before they are blister'd.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It warms and dries a cold and moist Stomach, and is an especial thing to help an evil, weak, cold, and disaffected Liver. It prevails against Convulsions, and the distemperature, or tortions of the Bowels,

strengthens the Nerves, Head and Brain, and helps all cold and moist disaffections of those parts. By the constant taking of it, stops and dries up Catarrhs, and the affluxes of cold Rheums to other parts of the Body; and is very profitable against an inveterate Head-ach, proceeding from a cold and moist Cause. Dose one spoonful Morning and Night, in a Glass of Sherry, Canary, White Port, or other Generous Wine.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is a most singular Stomack, resists Crudities and Putrefaction, and therefore is very good against all Putrid, Malign, and Pestilential Fevers: it quenches Thirst, causes a good Appetite to Food, and helps digestion. And being prudently administered, it is a very effectual Medicament to kill Worms in Children. Bathed well in, Morning, Noon, and Night, upon places affected with the Gout, it opens the Pores, attracts and draws forth the malign Humor, eases the Pain to a Miracle, discusses the Tumor, and quickly restores the Patient to his desired health. When it is taken inwardly, it is to be given in some proper Vehicle, or Wine, to a grateful Acidity; it represses Vapors from the Womb, and is to be taken Morning, Noon, and Night.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture.* It eases all external Aches or Pains in any part of the Body whatsoever, proceeding from a cold and moist Cause, it takes away the relaxation of the Nerves, and Muscles, prevails wonderfully against the Palsie, and strengthens the Muscles, Nerves, Tendons and Joints, being weakened through Pain, or any afflux of Humors. But in case of the Palsie, the Back-bone, from the Neck to the *Anus*, is daily, Morning and Night, to be well anointed therewith, as also all the Parts which are affected, rubbing and chafing it in. It cures the Nerves, being Prickt or Wounded, immediately easing the Pain, and abating the Tumor; and in a short time after heals the Wound. If it is taken inwardly from twelve to twenty or thirty drops, in any Homogene Vehicle, it cures cold and moist Distempers of the Head, Brest and Lungs, and prevails against the Head-ach, Megrim, Vertigo, Carus, Lethargy, Apoplexy, Falling-sickness, Palsie of the Head and Tongue, and other Diseases of like kind. It also opens Obstructions of the Reins and Womb, and is prevalent against Vapors, and Fits of the Mother.

XX. *The Saline Tincture.* Given to one dram, or more, in a Glass of White Port Wine, Morning and Evening, it singularly opens the Urinary Passages, and powerfully provokes Urine, expelling all praternatural, or Tartarous Matter out of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, and is very prevalent against a *Sarcites*, or *Anasarca*, which is a *Dropsie* in the fleshy parts of the whole Body.

XXI. *The Spirit.* It is Cordial, and resists Poison, and is prevalent against Fainting and Swooning Fits, Vapors, and Fits of the Mother: it resists the malignity of the Plague or Pestilence, and the contagion of the Spotted Fever, or other infectious Diseases; it is good also against the Venom of Serpents, as of the Viper, Rattle Snake, and others of that kind, the poison of Mad-Dogs, for which there are but few better remedies. It is a singular thing against Vomiting, and sickness at Heart, by reviving the Spirits, and strengthening the Parts.

XXII. *The Distilled Oil.* Taken inwardly in any proper Vehicle (being first dropt into White Sugar) it comforts the Head, Brain, and Nerves, dries up cold and moist Humors, and is helpful against all those Diseases which are caused by them, in any of the Parts aforementioned. It cures Palsies, inwardly taken and outwardly applied; so also Convulsions, happening in what part of the Body  
foever.



foever. Taken to a dram at a time, in some proper Vehicle, two hours before the coming of the Fit of an Ague, it cures it; more especially if it is taken or repeated two, three, or four times: The best thing to take it in (in this case) is the strongest Wine: in the same (and in the same Dose) also in a Palsie; but in other Distempers it may be taken from ten to twenty or thirty drops: outwardly also anointed upon Cramps, and parts Convulsed, it gives relief in a short time.

XXIII. *The Powers.* They have all the same Virtues with the Oil, and are much more Subtil and Penetrative, yet may be taken in a much larger Dose, as from a dram to four drams, in any proper Vehicle. They have also all the Virtues of the Spirit, aforementioned, and strengthen the Stomach admirably. Given Morning and Night in White Port Wine, or in some other Diuretick Vehicle, as in Parsley, or hot Arsmart Water, Decoction, or Infusion of Winter Cherries, &c. they powerfully open Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, provoke Urine, and expel all Tartarous Matter, as Stones, Gravel, Sand, Slime, Matter, &c. lodged in those Parts.

XXIV. *The Elixir.* It has all the Virtues of the Spirit, Distilled Oil, and Powers, exalted, performing more effectually, and more gratefully to the Stomach, all that it is possible for those Preparations to do. It renovates, as it were, the Blood, and all the Juices, strengthens the Heart, and comforts the whole Universal Frame, making the Patient pleasant, lively, chearful, and giving him a healthful habit of Body. Being bathed upon parts affected with the Gout, in a cold habit of Body; it gives relief, and in a short time. Taken inwardly in a Glass of Canary, from one dram to three or four, it gives present ease in the Colick, by dissipating and expelling the Wind.

XXV. *The Fixed Salt.* It is good against Diseases of the Nerves, by carrying off the Matter which obstructs them, by the Reins; for it dissolves Viscous Juices in all parts of the Body, especially in the Blood, and causes them to be piss'd forth; for as it opens Obstructions of the Urinary Parts, and provokes Urine, by its mixtion with the Blood, so it carries off the Morbifick Matter of Palsies, Numbness, Rheumatisms, and Obstructions (be they where they will) the right way, viz. by that way which Nature seems most inclin'd to promote, which is most commonly by Urine. Dose twenty, thirty, or forty grains Morning and Night, in a large glass of White Port Wine.

## CHAP. CLVII. OF COWSLIPS.

I. *THE Names.* Some doubt whether the Greeks knew this Plant or no; however later Authors have called it Παράλυσις, ἡ βοτάνη παραλυτική: In Latin, *Paralysis*, *Herba Paralysis*, *Herba Paralytica*, *Alisma Dioscoridis*, according to *Fabius Columna*, *Alisma Prætorum*, *Arthritica*, *Herba Arthritica*, *Dodecatheon*, *Primula veris major*: and in English, *Cowslips*, *Oxlips*, and *Paigles*.

II. *The Kinds* There are several sorts hereof, as, 1. *Paralysis vulgaris pratensis flore flavo simplici odorato*, The Common Field Cowslip. 2. *Paralysis altera odorata flore pallido polyanthos*, The Primrose, or many flowered Cowslip. 3. *Paralysis flore*

*Viridante simplici*, The single green Cowslip. 4. *Paralysis flore & Calice Crispo*, The curled Cowslip. 5. *Paralysis flore geminato odorato*, The double Cowslip, one within another. 6. *Paralysis flore Flavæ simplici inodoro sine Calicibus*, Single Oxlips. 7. *Paralysis flore geminato inodora*, Double Oxlips, hose in hose. 8. *Paralysis inodora calicibus dissectis*, Oxlips with Jagged Husks. 9. *Paralysis flore fatuo*, The foolish Cowslips. 10. *Paralysis hortensis flore pleno*, Double Garden Cowslips. 11. *Paralysis flore viridante pleno*, Double green Cowslips. 12. *Paralysis flore viridante, five Calamistrato*, The Double green feathered Cowslip, or green Rose Cowslip.

III. There are several Plants called by the name of *Primula veris*, (from their being the first Flowers which appear in the Spring) and to which that name is *Genus*, they being all various *Species* of the same, viz. 1. *Primula veris major, five Paralysis*, The Cowslip or Oxlip, of which we have before enumerated twelve several Kinds, whose Descriptions we shall give in this Chapter. 2. *Primula veris minor*, The Primrose, Single and Double, of which hereafter. 3. *Primula veris Pachyphyllos, Auricula Ursti*, Bears Ears, three several Kinds of which we have treated in Chap. 59. past. 4. *Primula veris minor flore Rubro & Albo*, The White and Red Birds Eye, of which in Chap. 72. foregoing: this being said, we come to the matter in hand.



IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common Cowslip, has Roots like to the Primrose, with many Fibres annexed to the greater Root; from which spring up several green Leaves, very like unto the Wild Primrose, but shorter, rounder, stiffer, rougher, more crumpled about the edges, and of a sadder green color, every one standing upon its Stalk, of an Inch or two long. From among these Leaves rise up divers round naked Stalks of a whitish color, a foot, more or less, high, bearing at the top many fair single yellow Flowers, growing out of a long Husk, upon a short Footstalk, with spots of a deeper yellow at the bottom of each Leaf, and smelling very Sweet.

V. The



V. The second, which is the Primrose Cowslip, or many flowered, has a Root like the former, from which spring forth Leaves, which are larger than the Common Field Cowslip, and of a dark yellowish green color; from the midst of which spring up several Stalks like the other; at the tops of which are the Flowers, which are manifold, and growing together in Husks like the former, sometimes to the number of thirty in one Head, at the top of one Stalk, and sometimes more, every one of them having a longer Footstalk than the Common Kind, which is requisite by reason of their great number: they are of a pale yellowish color, almost like those of the Field Primrose, with yellow spots at the bottom of the Leaves, as the Common Kind have, and of a sweet Smell.

VI. The third, or Single Green Cowslip, has a Root like the first, with many Fibres annexed, and from which there is but little difference either in its Root, or Leaf; the chief difference in this Kind being, that the Leaves are somewhat greater; the Flowers being in all respects like in form to the first Field Kind, but somewhat larger, and of the same color with the whitish yellowish green Husks, or rather a little yellower, and of very little Smell: In any other thing there is no diversity, but that it is much longer in Flower, before it fades, especially if it grows out of the Sun.

VII. The fourth, or Curled Cowslip, differs chiefly in the Flowers, which are folded or crumpled at the edges, the Husks of the Flowers being larger than any of the former, more swelling out in the middle, as it were Ribs, and crumpled on the sides of the Husks.

VIII. The fifth, or Double Cowslip, one in another, which some call hose in hose, has each Single Flower growing out of another, which makes the same Double; for which reason Pena calls it Geminata, for that the Flowers are brought forth like Twins: The Smell is the same with the common Field Cowslip, but something weaker.

IX. The sixth, or Single Oxlip, is a kind of Cowslip, which has Roots, and Leaves, and Stalks like the first Kind, but somewhat smaller: the Flowers are yellow like the first Cowslip, and smaller also, standing many upon a Stalk, but bare or naked, without any Husk to contain them, and having no other thing besides differing from the Common, or Field Cowslip.

X. The seventh, or Double Oxlip, called, Hose in Hose, is almost like the former Double Cowslip, or Hose in Hose, having its single Flowers one within another, saving that this has no Husks to contain them, no more than the former Oxlips, but stands bare or naked, and of the very same bigness each of them, and of the same deep yellow color with it, and with as little Smell as the Single. There is another of this Species whose Leaves are somewhat larger, as also the Flowers, but of a paler yellow color.

XI. The eighth, or Oxlip with Jagged Leaves, differs not from the first Single Oxlip in the smallness of the green Leaves, but in the Flower, which standing many of them together on a reasonable high Stalk, are very small and yellow, and scarce open, or lay abroad themselves, but appear only, as having a green Husk under each Flower, which is divided into six several small long pieces.

XII. The ninth, or Foolish Cowslip, differs not much in Leaves from the former Cowslip, but bears at the top of the Stalk a Tuft or Bush of small, long, green Leaves, with some yellow Leaves, as it were pieces of Flowers broken, and standing among the green Leaves. And sometimes some Stalks among those green Leaves at the Top (which are a little

larger than when it has but broken pieces of Flowers) do carry whole Flowers in Husks like the Single Kind.

XIII. The tenth, or Double Garden Cowslip, has smaller and darker green Leaves, than the first Single Field Kind has, and longer Footstalks also, on which the Leaves do stand: It bears several Flowers upon a Stalk, but not so many as the Single Kind, every one of which is of a much deeper and fairer yellow color than any of the former, standing not much above the brims of the Husks which hold them, consisting each of two or three rows of Leaves, set round together, which makes it very thick and double, of a pretty pleasant sweet Smell, but not Heady.

XIV. The eleventh, or Double green Cowslip, is so like to the single green kind, before described, that until it is near flowering, it can hardly be distinguished from the Single Kind: but when it is in flower, it has large Double Flowers, of the same yellowish green color, with the Single Green, and more laid open or spreading than the Flowers of the former Double Cowslip.

XV. The twelfth, or Double Green Feathered Cowslip has but little difference in the Leaves from the Double Green last described, but that they are not of so dark a Green. The principal difference consists in the Flowers, which are many, standing together at the tops of the Stalks, but far differing from all others of these kinds; for every Flower standing upon its own Stalk, is composed of many very small and narrow Leaves, without any Husk to contain them, but spreading open like a little Rose, (whence came the name of Rose Cowslip) of a pale yellowish green color, and without any Smell at all, abiding in Flower (especially if it stands in a shadowy place out of the Sun) above two Months, almost in as perfect beauty, as in the first Week.

XVI. The Places. All these Kinds have been found growing Wild in England, and from their natural places of growth, they have been transplanted into our Gardens, where they abide; and being in a richer Mould, grow larger and fairer than in their natural places.

XVII. The Times. They all Flower in the Spring of the Year, some earlier, and some later, according as they are defended from Cold and Frost, and as the mildness of the Season will permit. They Flower at the latter end of April and in May, (later than Primroses do) and the Single and Double green Cowslips the latest, and continue flowering a pretty while after all the rest.

XVIII. The Qualities. They are all hot and dry in the first Degree, They are Aperitive, do Attenuate, are Digestive, Discussive, Incarnative, Traumatick or Vulnerary; Cephalick, Neurotick and Arthritick.

XIX. The Specification. They are singular for the cure of Palsies and Gouts.

XX. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Wine of the Flowers. 4. A Powder of the Leaves. 5. An Ointment of the Flowers. 6. A Cataplasm of the Whole Plant. 7. A Distilled Water of the Whole. 8. A Spirituous Tincture of Leaves and Flowers. 9. An Oily Tincture of the same. 10. A Saline Tincture. 11. A Spirit. 12. A Fixed Salt. 13. A Balsam.

The Virtues.

XXI. The liquid Juice. Snufft up the Nostrils, it is an excellent Errhine to purge the Head and Brain of cold, gross, viscous Humors, which obstruct the Roots of the Nerves, and parts adjacent. Given inwardly from two ounces to four, it eases



Pains in the Back and Bladder, and opens the passages of the Urine, causing a free and easie pissing.

XXII. *The Essence.* It has the former Virtues, and as it is an admirable Neurotick, so it helps all infirmities of the Head, Brain, and Nerves, coming of Cold, Wind, or moist Humors, as the Vertigo, *Ephialtes* or Night-mare, false Apparitions or Whimfies, Phrenies, *Epilepsies*, or Falling-sickness, Palsies, Convulsions, Cramps, and other Pains of the Nerves and Joints. Dose three ounces or more in a Glass of Wine, Morning and Night, bathing also twice a Day very well, the parts affected with the same.

XXIII. *The Wine of the Flowers.* It is Cordial and Comfortative, refreshes the Spirits, and is conducive to all the purposes aforementioned: The Patient may drink a Glass of it half an hour afore Dinner, or any other time of eating.

XXIV. *A Powder of the Leaves.* It is a small kind of an Errhine, being snufft up the Nostrils, and so purges the Head, but yet very gently. Being strewed upon old running Sores or Ulcers, it cleanses, dries, and heals them, and takes away the sharpness of Humors, Pain, or Inflammation therein, if present: it may be strewed on dry, or mixed with *Unguentum Nicotianæ*, and so applied.

XXV. *The Ointment.* If it is made of the Flowers, either by Insolation, or a boiling to Crispness, and a treble repetition of the same, it is said by Authors to take away spots and wrinkles of the Skin, Sun-burnings, and Freckles, adding Beauty, and heightning the Complexion. If the Ointment is made of the Leaves, it is an excellent thing to heal simple Green Wounds, cleanse old Ulcers, dry up and heal inveterate running Sores, &c.

XXVI. *The Cataplasme.* Applied upon the spot, it discusses simple Contusions, and prevails against the Gout in the Hands or Feet, by comforting and strengthening the Nerves, and easing their pain, being often repeated as need requires.

XXVII. *The Distilled Water of the whole Plant.* It is used as a Vehicle for other *Cephalick* and *Neurotick* Preparations: In the mean Season it is said to be *Cosmetick*, and therewith the Face and Skin may be washed every Morning after the Ointment is rubbed off.

XXVIII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It has all the Virtues of the Essence; and is much more Cordial, and therefore better against Fainting and Swooning Fits, sickness at Heart, and other Distempers in which the Vitals are concerned. Dose half a spoonful or more in a Glass of Generous Wine.

XXIX. *The Oily Tincture.* It is peculiar against the Palsie and Gout, as also Convulsions, Cramps, Punctures of the Nerves, &c. in all which cases, it has scarcely any equal: In Palsies anoint with it Morning and Evening, all along the Back-bone, from the *Vertebrae* of the Neck, almost to the *Anus*, as also the Parts affected, rubbing it very well in; in Gouts, (from a cold Cause) Convulsions, Cramps, Punctures, &c. you may only anoint the parts affected; but in Convulsions, it will be good also to take it inwardly (in some Neurotick Vehicle) Morning and Night, from fifteen drops to thirty or forty, as the Exigency may require.

XXX. *The Saline Tincture.* If it is daily taken twice a day, from half a dram to one dram, in a good Glass of White Port Wine or Canary, it powerfully opens Obstructions of the Urinary parts, and eases pains in the Reins, Ureters and Bladder; and if any Sand, Gravel, Small Stones, or Tartarous Mucilage be lodged in those parts, it cleanses them thereof, and expells it.

XXXI. *The Fixed Salt.* It is Neurotick and Diuretick, peculiarly dedicated to the Head, Brain, Nerves, Reins and Bladder: It is good against the Jaundice, and carries it off, as also Febrile Distempers by Urine, being given to half a dram in White Port Wine.

XXXII. *The Balsam.* It is an admirable Vulnery, curing simple Green Wounds at the first intention: If they be composed, it digests them, or brings them to maturation, resists putrefaction, cleanses, incarnates, dries and heals them in a very short time. If it is mixt with equal parts of *Unguentum Nicotianæ*, it performs all these things the more admirably, and is a Medicament which every good Country man ought to keep always in his House.

## C H A P. CLVIII.

### of COWSLIP Spotted.

I. **T**HE Names. It does not appear that this Plant was known to the Greeks, yet some, as accounting it among the Kinds of *Comfrey*, have called it *Σύμφυτον ῥυμαεὶν*: It is called in Latin, *Pulmonaria*, (and yet it is no Species of the *Lungworts*, as we shall, God willing, hereafter shew:) also, *Symphitum maculosum*: and in English, *Jerusalem Cowslip*, and *Spotted Cowslip*, (and yet it is not of the Species of *Cowslips*:) also *Sage of Jerusalem*, *Sage of Bethlem*, *Spotted Lungwort*, and *Spotted Comfrey*.



II. *The Kinds.* Authors make three Species or Kinds of this Plant, viz. 1. *Pulmonaria maculosa vulgaris*, Common spotted Jerusalem Cowslips.  
2. *Pulmo-*



2. *Pulmonaria maculosa altera*, ( Parkinson says, *non maculosa* ) *Pulmonaria Echij foliis*, Buglofs Leav'd Jerusalem Cowslip. 3. *Pulmonaria angustifolia* ( *secunda Clusij* ) Narrow Leav'd Jerusalem Cowslip. All which Plants, Gerard says, are the True Lungworts.

III. The Descriptions. The first of these has a Root composed of many long and thick black strings; from whence arise many rough, large, and round Leaves, but pointed at the ends, standing upon long Footstalks, spotted with many round white spots on the upper sides of the Leaves, which are of a sad green or brown color on the tops, but of a grayer green underneath. From among these Leaves spring up several brown Stalks, a foot, more or less, high, bearing many Flowers at the tops, very much resembling those of Cowslips, being of a purple or reddish color, while they are Buds, and of a dark blewish color when they are blown, standing in brownish green Husks ( sometimes this Plant has been found with white Flowers : ) The Flowers being past, small round Heads, like Buttons, come up, in which is contained small black Seed.

IV. The second, or Buglofs Jerusalem Cowslip, is like unto the former, but greater in each respect: the Roots black like unto the first; the Leaves, says Gerard, are bigger than the former, ( but Parkinson says smaller ) being rough like the former, resembling Wild Buglofs Leaves, of a fairer color above, and of a whiter underneath, spotted with white spots like the first, says Gerard ( but without any spots at all, says Parkinson : ) The Stalks are a little more branched than the other: at the tops of which come forth Flowers like to the first in form, and of an exceeding red shining color.

V. The third, or Narrow Leav'd Jerusalem Cowslip, or Lungwort, which is the second of Clusius, has a Root which is black, and stringy, in which last respect it is like unto Cowslips, as are both the other. From this Root spring forth Leaves somewhat longer than the last described, and not so broad, which are rough and hairy like unto the Leaves of Echium or Wild Buglofs, but narrower, and spotted with whitish spots also like the former. The Stalk is about a foot high, or better, set with the like long hairy Leaves, but smaller, bearing at the top a bundle of many Flowers, standing in Husks like the first ( in fashion, says Gerard, like those of Buglofs, or those last described ; ) being somewhat reddish in the Bud, and of a dark purplish blew color, when they are fully blown, and having Seed also like the others. All these Plants do well resemble Buglofs or Comfrey in most parts, excepting in their Roots: And these are they which, Gerard says, are the true Lungwort; ( but Cowslip is indeed the more usual name. )

VI. The Places. All these grow naturally in the Woods of Germany in divers places: Parkinson says, that the first Kind is found in England. John-son upon Gerard says, that the second *Pulmonaria folij Echij* was found by Mr. John Goodyer flowering in a Wood by Holbury House in the New Forest in Hampshire. Their natural place is in moist and shadowy Woods, but with us they are for the most part Nurs'd up in Gardens.

VII. The Times. They flower generally very early in the Year, for the most part in March, and in the beginning of April.

VIII. The Qualities, Specification, Virtues and Uses, are much like those of Comfrey, in Chap. 149. foregoing, to which you are referred; but doubtless as these have not such a Viscosity, as our common Comfrey has, so in many cases they may not be all out so powerful: but as these are more drying and binding than Comfrey, so also in some other cases,

they may exceed Comfrey. And whereas in Comfrey the Root is chiefly used; in these Plants, the Leaves are the most considerable.

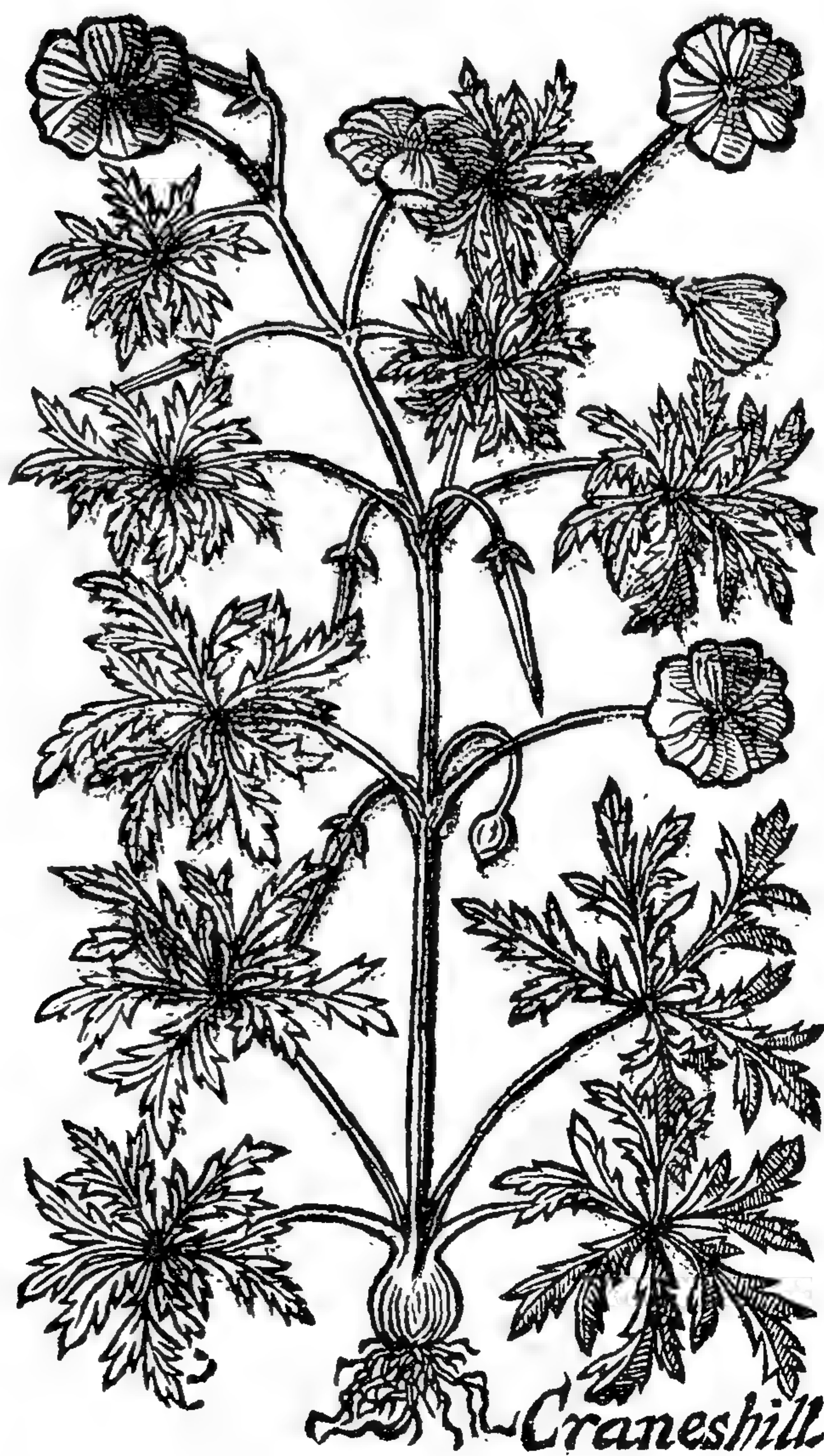
IX. An Observation. The liquid Juice or Essence of the Leaves, or whole Plant, have been found by large Experience to be singularly good for the Cure of Ulcerated Lungs, which are full of corrupted and rotten Matter: and it has been found to be a Cure for those who spit Blood. Dose two, three, or four ounces in a Glass of pure Red Port Wine. But the greatest use which our Countrey People make of it, is for a Pot Herb.

## CHAP. CLIX.

### Of CRANES-BILL Garden.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Γερανιον*; in Latin *Geranium*; also *Gruinalis*, *Rostrum Gruis*, or *Gruinum*, *Rostrum Ciconia*, ( from the form of the Seed Vessels : ) in English, *Storks-bill*, and *Cranes-bill*.

II. The Kinds. There are many Kinds of this Plant, as, 1. *Γερανιον ημερον*, *Geranium Hortense*, Garden Cranes-bill, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Geranium Moschatum*, Musk'd Cranes-bill, of which in Chap. 160. 3. *Geranium Batrachoides*, Crowfoot Cranes-bill, of which in Chap. 161. 4. *Geranium agreste*, Field Cranes-bill, of which in Chap. 162. 5. *Geranium Columbinum*, Doves-foot, of which in Chap. 163. 6. *Geranium Robertianum*, Herb Robert, of which in Chap. 164. following.



III. The Garden Kinds, of which we treat in this Chapter, are manifold, viz. 1. *Geranium Tuberifolium*, Tuberous or Knobbed Cranes-bill. 2. *Geranium Anglicum Variegatum Besseri*, *Geranium Versicolor*, five striatum, the Variable, or Strip'd Cranes-bill. 3. *Geranium fuscum* five maculatum, Brown, or spotted Cranes-bill. 4. *Geranium He-*



*matoides*, vel *Sanguineum*, *Geranium Gruinale hematicides* Lobellij, Bloody Cranes-bill, or Red Rose Cranes-bill.

IV. The Descriptions. The first or Tuberous Cranes-bill has a Root Tuberous and round, like almost unto the Root of Cyclamen, or common Sow-bread, but smaller, and of a dark russet color on the outside, but white within, which encreases under Ground by several strings running from the Mother Root, swelling out into small round Tubercles or Knobs, like unto the Roots of Ground Nuts, which will quickly shoot out Leaves, and in a short time bear Flowers; but will not endure to be kept long out of the ground, without danger to be quite spoiled. From this Root spring forth three or four large Leaves spread upon the ground, of a greyish, or rather dusky green color, every one of them being as it were of a round form, but divided or cut into six or seven long parts or divisions, even unto the middle, which makes it seem to be so many Leaves, each of the cuts or divisions being deeply notched or indented on both sides. Among these Leaves rises up a Stalk a foot or more high, bearing thereon at the Tops and Joints, several pale, but bright purple Flowers, made of five Leaves apiece; after which come small Heads, with long pointed Beaks, resembling the long Bill of a Stork or Crane, or some such like Bird; which after it is ripe, parts a sunder at the bottom, where it is biggest, into four or five Seeds, every one of which has a piece of the Beak-head fastned unto it, and falls away if it be not gathered.

Striped Cranes-bill



V. The second, or Striped Cranes-bill, has a Root made of many small yellow threads or strings; from which rise up many broad yellowish green Leaves, divided into five or six parts, but not unto the middle, as the former is; each of these Leaves has a blackish spot at the bottom corners of the divisions; the whole Leaf, as well in form, as color and spots, is very like unto the Leaf of the *Geranium Fuscum*, or Spotted Cranes-bill, next to be described; but

that the Leaves of this are not so large as the Leaves of that: From among these Leaves spring up several Stalks a foot or more high, jointed and knobbed here and there, bearing at the Tops two or three white Flowers, consisting of five Leaves a piece, so thickly, and variably striped with fine small reddish Veins, that no green Leaf, which is of that bigness, can shew so many Veins in it, nor so thick running, as every Leaf of the Flower of this beautiful Cranes-bill doth. In the middle of the Flower stands a small pointel, which when the Flower is past, does grow to be the Seed-Vessel, on which is set several small Seeds, like unto the small Seeds of the other Cranes-bills.

VI. The third, which is the Brown, or Spotted Cranes-bill, has a Root consisting of divers great Strings, joined to a Tuberous or Knobby Head; from which head arises Leaves in all respects like those of the last described, as well in the form and divisions, as in the color of the Leaves, being of a yellowish green, and having a blackish spot at the bottom of every division in every leaf, whence came the name, but larger and stronger by much. The Stalks of this rise much higher also, and are jointed or knobbed with reddish Knees or Joints, on the Tops whereof stand, not many, but large Flowers, consisting of five Leaves apiece, each whereof is round at the end, and a little snipt round about, and do bend or turn themselves back, towards the Stalk, making the middle of the Flower to be the highest, or most eminent part: The color of the Flowers is of a dark, or deep blackish purple, the bottom of every Leaf being whiter than the rest: it has also a middle Pointel growing forth, which afterwards turns into Seed, like unto the other kinds of Cranes-bill.

Bloody Cranes bill



VII. The fourth Kind, or Bloody Cranes-bill, has a Root which is hard, long, and thick, with several Branches spreading from it, of a reddish yellow color



on the outside, and whitish within, which abides, and perishes not, but shoots forth some new green Leaves, which abide all the Winter, although those which turn red, do fall away. From this Root divers Leaves also spring, which spread themselves upon the ground, very much cut in or divided into many parts; and each of them again slit or cut into two or three pieces, growing upon slender long Footstalks, of a fair green color all the Spring, and Summer, but reddish in Autumn. From among these Leaves spring up several slender and weak Stalks, beset at every Joint (which is something reddish) with two Leaves for the most part, like unto the lower. The Flowers grow severally on the Tops of the Stalks, but not many together, in Bunches or Branches, as in all the other kinds of Cranes-bills; every Flower being as large as a Single Rose Campion Flower, consisting of five large Leaves, of a deeper red color than in any other Cranes-bill at the first opening; but changes more blewish afterwards: when the Flower is past, there does arise such like Beaks, or Heads of Seed, as are produced in the other kinds; but they seem to be smaller.

VIII. The Places. All these grow Wild in Foreign places, but are only nurs'd up with us in Gardens. Matthiolus says, that the first grows very plentifully in Dalmatia and Illyria: and Camerarius, Clusius, and others say, that the rest grow in Germany, Bohemia, Austria, &c.

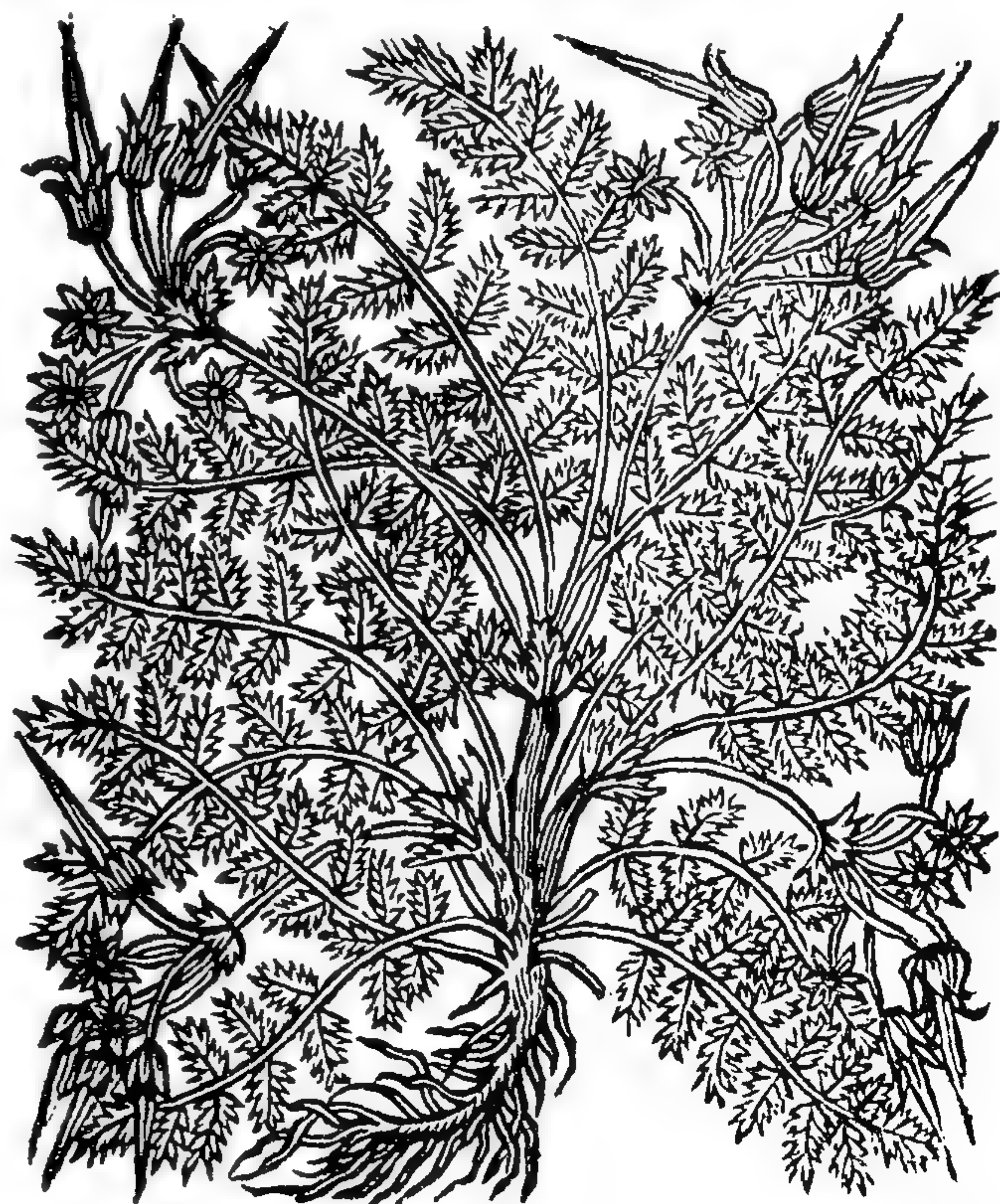
IX. The Times. All these Cranes-bills do Flower for the most part, in April, May, and June: but the Variable or Strip'd Cranes-bill Flowers usually later than any of the rest.

X. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses, of all the Cranes-bills, being one and the same, we shall forbear the declaring thereof in this place, as also in some of the following Chapters; till such time as we have fully described all such kinds as are to be found growing in our Countrey: and therefore I refer you to Chap. 162. where we shall (God willing) discourse the same at large, and to full satisfaction.

Edges; among which rise up weak tender Stalks, scarce able to stand upright, about a foot, more or less high, with some such like Leaves growing upon them, as you find below, but smaller the higher they grow on the Stalk, and the finer cut in on the edges on the Tops; also among the upper Leaves sometimes, several very small Red or Crimson Flowers grow, after which very small and long Beaks or Bills come forth, with Seed at the bottom, as all the rest of the Cranes-bills have, which twines it self, as most of them do. The whole Plant, and every part thereof above ground, has a very fine and pleasing sort of smell, very much resembling that of Musk, whence came the name.



Musked kind With Out Smell



IV. The second kind, or Inodorous, in its Roots Leaves, Stalks, Flowers, Magnitude, form and manner of growing, so much resembles the former, that at first sight there seems to be no difference: but that which makes the distinction is, that this above

## CHAP. CLX.

### of CRANES-BILL Musked.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Μοσχάριον*; *Βοτάνη ὁ μύσχος*, vel *τὴ μύσχος*: In Latin, *Geranium Moschatum*, also *Acus Moschata*, *Rostrum Ciconie Moschatum*, *Myrrhida Plinij*, and *Acus Pastoris*: In English, *Musked Cranes-bill*, or *Storks-bill*, of the Vulgar, *Musk*, *Muschata*, and *Herb-Musk*.

II. The Kinds. We have four several sorts of this Plant, viz. 1. *Geranium Moschatum Vulgare vel Hortense*, *Herba Moschus*, the Common, or Garden Musked Cranes-bill, or Herb Musk. 2. *Geranium Moschatum inodorum*, Musked Cranes-bill without smell, being only called Musked from its form. 3. *Geranium Apulum odorum*, alterum *odorum folio Coriandri*, Italian Musked Cranes-bill. 4. *Geranium Creticum*, Candy Cranes-bill.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Musked Cranes-bill, has a Root somewhat long, with divers Fibres thereat, from whence spring up several long winged Leaves, of a dark green color, (and sometimes of an Ash green color, or somewhat whitish by reason of the hairs which are thereon,) lying upon the ground, and cut or divided into many Parts or Leaves; and each of them cut in or snipt on the



Plant has no Smell at all; or if it has any, it is not of the Musky kind; this has Red Flowers: But there is also another Species of this Inodorous kind, nothing differing from the last, but in the color of the Flowers, the color of these being white.

V. The third, or Italian Musk'd Cranes-bill, has a Root small and yellow, lifting up its head a little above ground, from whence spring up several long Leaves, somewhat hairy, lying upon the ground, and a little snipt or cut in on the edges, and divided into parts, even to the middle Rib, not much unlike to the *Geranium Moschatum* first described, which stand upon reddish Footstalks, the two lowest Jaggs being greater than the rest; but those which rise up with the Stalk are more cut in, somewhat like unto the lower Leaves of Coriander or Fetherfew, but with rounder dents; the Stalks are Jointed and Kneed, with two such like Leaves at them, but more finely jagged: at the tops of the Stalks and Branches the Flowers grow, of a pale blewish purple color, each standing in a green hairy Husk, wherein afterwards stand the heads of Seed, very like to the other kinds, great below and small above. The whole Plant above ground is of a Pleasing Sweet Musky Smell, like the first of these, and of which it is a Species.

VI. The fourth, or Candy Cranes-bill, has a Root which is long and white, with some Fibres adjoining to it; and perishes when it has perfected its Seed: from this Root spring up several long and tender Stalks, soft and full of Juice, upon which grow several broad and long winged Leaves, not much unlike to the first Musk'd Cranes-bill, cut in, or notched on the edges. These Stalks spread themselves out into many Branches, more especially towards the Top, on the Tops of which grow many Flowers made of five Leaves apiece, of a reasonable bigness, and of a fair Blew, or Watchet color, with a purplish Pointel in the middle, which being past, beak-like heads follow, as in the other Cranes-bills, but greater, and containing larger, greater, and sharper pointed Seed, able to pierce the skin. This Plant springs up many times of its own Sowing, if the Winter is not too sharp; otherwise being Annual, it must be Sown in the Spring of the Year.

VII. The Places. The two first grow Wild (says Parkinson) in many places of this Land, as well in Meadows as waste Grounds. But the first is now nursed up in Gardens for its pleasant sweet Smell. The second is found sometimes upon Heaths, and dry Gravelly places, but much smaller than when it grows in better or richer Ground. The third was brought to us out of Italy, and the fourth out of Candia, and in England are only nurs'd up in Gardens, where they grow very well.

VIII. The Times. They Flower in June and July, and the Seed ripens not long after: the Candy Cranes-bill, Gerard saith, flowered with him for the most part in May.

IX. As for the Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues (these being of the same nature with the Wild Cranes-bills) see them in Chap. 162. following. These here are accounted excellent Wound Herbs, and equal to Doves-foot: The Cretick or Candy Cranes-bill being used in Wound Drinks, does far excell (as Gerard says) any of the Cranes-bills, and is equal with any other Wound Herb whatsoever for the same purpose.

## C H A P. CLXI.

## Of CRANES-BILL-Crowfoot.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Γερανιον* *Batrachoides*: In Latin, *Geranium Batrachioides*, *Gratia Dei* Fuchsj, *Ranunculus caruleus*: and in English, Crowfoot Cranes-bill.

II. The Kinds. There are six several kinds hereof, 1. *Geranium Batrachioides flore Caruleo*, Blew Crowfoot Cranes-bill. 2. *Geranium Batrachioides flore albo*, White Crowfoot Cranes-bill. 3. *Geranium Batrachioides alterum, flore purpureo*, Purple Crowfoot Cranes-bill. 4. *Geranium Batrachioides pullo flore*, Dark Red Crowfoot Canes-bill. 5. *Geranium Batrachioides flore albo & Caruleo vario*, Party colored Crowfoot Cranes-bill. 6. *Geranium Batrachioides longius radicum Lobelij*, Long Rooted Crowfoot Cranes-bill.



Crow foot  
Cranes bill

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Blew Crowfoot Cranes-bill, has a Root which is composed of many reddish strings, spreading in the Ground, from a head made of divers red heads, which lye oftentimes above ground, from this Root spring forth many large Leaves, cut into five or six parts or divisions, even to the bottom, and jagged also on the edges, set upon very long slender Footstalks, very like to the Leaves of the Field Crowfoot: from among which Leaves divers Stalks spring up with great Joints, somewhat reddish, set with Leaves like to the first Garden kind: The Stalks towards their Tops spread themselves into many Branches, on which grow several Flowers, made of five Leaves apiece, as large as any of the Field Crowfoot, round pointed, and of a fair Blew, or Watchet color, which being past, such like heads and bills do succeed, as are found in other Cranes-bills.

IV. The second, or White Flowered Crowfoot Cranes-bill, is in Leaves, Stalks, Branches, Flowers, Magnitude, Form, and manner of growing, altogether like



like to the former, excepting in two particulars, viz. 1. In the Root, which has not such red heads as the former Blew Flowered has. 2. In the Flowers, the former being Blew, whereas the Flowers in this are wholly White, and fully as large as the first.

V. The third, or Purple Crowfoot Cranes-bill, has a Root which is composed of a great Tuft of strings, fastned to a Tuberous or Knobby Head, from whence many Leaves spring forth, set upon long Footstalks, somewhat like unto the other, yet not so broad, but more divided or cut, viz. into seven, or more fitts, even to the middle, each of which is also cut in on the edges, more deeply than the former. The Stalks are a little Knobbed or Gouty at the Joints, set with Leaves like unto the lower, and bearing a great Tuft of Buds at the Tops of the Branches, which bud and put out into fair large Flowers, made of five purple Leaves, which do something resemble the Flower of a Mallow, before it be too full blown, each whereof has a reddish Pointel in the middle, and many small threads compassing of it, (ten in number) as Gerard says. This Umble or Tuft of Buds, does Flower by Degrees, and not all at once, and every Flower abides open but a little more than one day, and then sheds its Leaves; so that every day yields fresh Flowers, which because they are so many, are a long time before they are all blown and spent. The Flowers being past, small Beak or Bill Heads come forth, like unto the other Cranes-bills, with small turning Seed.

VI. The fourth, or Dark Red Crowfoot Cranes-bill, has a Root with great reddish heads above, with many long strings and fibres descending from it; from this Root spring several broad spread, soft, and somewhat hairy Leaves, growing upon long Footstalks, cut into five, six, or seven deep gashes or divisions, with a blackish spot at the bottom of every one of them, and dented also about their edges. The Stalk rises up about two Feet high, spotted with many bloody spots, and is strong, somewhat hairy, and spread forth into three or four Branches, with such like Leaves on them, but lesser, and at their Tops, two or three Flowers apiece, each of them consisting of five Leaves, cut in on the edges (which is a mode differing from all other Cranes-bills) of a deep red color, almost blackish, and in the middle a long Stile or Pointel, with many withered threads about it. The Flowers being past, there follows brown pointed Seed, like to the other Cranes-bills.

VII. The fifth, or Party-colored Crowfoot Cranes-bill, is in its Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Flowers, Seed, Magnitude, Form, and manner of growing, so like to the first described in this Chapter, that until it is perfectly in Flower, this cannot be known from that: but when it is blown out, the Flowers are found to be variably striped and spotted, and sometimes divided, the one half of every Leaf being white, and the other half blew; sometimes with greater or lesser spots of blew in the white Leaf, very variable, and more in some years than in others; so that it would be a very difficult matter to express all the varieties which may be observed, at the same and differing times, in the blown Flowers.

VIII. The sixth, or Long Rooted Crowfoot Cranes-bill, has a Root very long and great, with small fibres adjoining thereto, of a reddish color without, and abiding all the Winter: from this Root spring forth Leaves (upon long Footstalks) somewhat large, but yet less than those of the other Crowfoot Cranes-bills, otherwise very like. From among these Leaves rise up several Stalks, bearing fair and beautiful red Flowers, of a more excellent red color than those of the Tuberous Cranes-bill, and of a lighter red than those of the third kind be-

fore described in this Chapter: they are also contained in thicker and shorter Cups, and are of a sweet Musk-like Smell: The Flowers being past, the Seed succeeds, which is like to that of the other Cranes-bills, saving that the Bills are a little shorter.

IX. The Places. These are all Wild of their own Nature, and grow in Barren Places, and in Vallies, rather than in Mountainous Grounds. Some say, that the first has been found growing naturally in England, but Parkinson says, he never could find it: but with us they are for the most part Nurs'd up in Gardens.

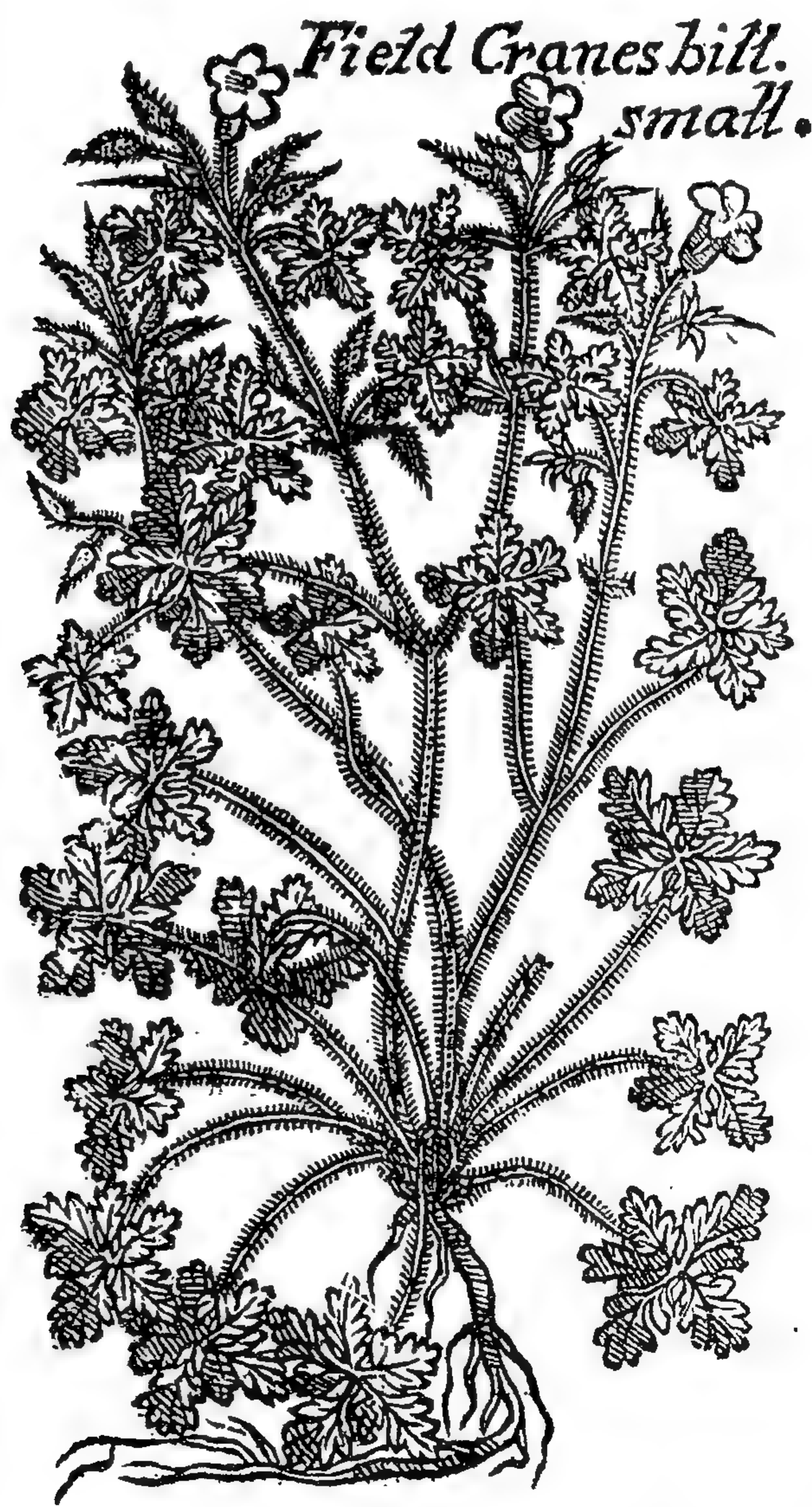
X. The Times. They all Flower in June and July, and their Seed is ripe in a short time afterwards.

XI. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, being the same with all the foregoing Cranes-bills, as also with those in the following Chapter, where we have declared them at large, we shall forbear to speak any more in this place, referring you thither.

## CHAP. CLXII.

### OF CRANES-BILL Field.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Γεράνιον* : In Latin, *Geranium agreste* : and in English, Field Cranes-bill.



II. The Kinds. The Field Cranes-bill is manifold, but those which we design under that Name, are, 1. *Geranium agreste*, *Geranium Violaceum*, Field, or Violet colored Cranes-bill. 2. *Geranium Cicutæ folio inodorum*, Field Cranes-bill without Smell; of this we have discoursed in Chap. 160. Sect. 4. 3. *Geranium Columbinum*, Doves-foot. 4. *Geranium Robertianum*, Herb Robert; of which two last we shall speak in some of the Chapters following.

III. The



III. *The Description.* It has a Root which is thick and woody, having some few strings adjoining thereto, and is wholly red, both within and without, not smelling so strong as the Root of Herb Robert: from this Root rise up several slender hairy reddish Stalks, about two or three feet high; at the Joints of which grow Leaves, upon shorter, yet reddish Footstalks. The Stalks spread themselves out also into other small Branches, whereon are set confusedly broad Leaves, made of three, four or five Leaves apiece, and these jagged or cut about the edges. Parkinson says, the Leaves are most usually divided into three parts, as large, or rather more than the other, and turning red likewise. The Flowers which consist of five Leaves apiece grow at the Tops of the Stalks and Branches, and are of a perfect Violet color, (whence came the name) or as Parkinson says, of a Purplish Red, of the bigness of the Flowers of Herb Robert; which being past away, the Seed comes in such beaded Beaks or Bills as the other Cranes-bills produce.

IV. *The Places.* It is often found by Way-sides, Ditch-banks, Borders of Fields, and other waste Grounds.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers in June and July, and the Seed ripens in the mean Season, or not long after.

VI. *The Qualities.* All the Cranes-bills seem to have one and the same Qualities; they are temperate in respect of Heat or Cold, and Dry in the first Degree. They are Absterfive, Astringent, Diuretick, Traumatick or Vulnerary and Incarnative: Pectoral, Nephritick, Hysterick, and Anti-emmenagogick, Hemoptoick and Analeptick.

VII. *The Specification.* They heal Wounds speedily, conglutinate their Lips, stop Fluxes of Blood, and cure Ruptures.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Syrup. 4. A Decoction in Red Port Wine. 5. A Powder of the Herb. 6. A Balsam. 7. A Cataplasm.

#### The Virtues.

IX. *The liquid Juice.* It is said to be good against Fluxes of the Bowels, whether Diarrhæa, Dysenteria, Lienteria, or Hepatick Flux, healing them, and so easing the Gripping Pains, it prevails against Hysterick Fits, and is good against Sand, Gravel, and Stone in Reins and Bladder. Dose four ounces, or more, either alone, or in Wine, Morning and Night.

X. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues, and more powerful to all the same Intentions; besides which, it is a famous thing to stop the overflowing of the Terms in Women, and to consolidate Ruptures, whether in old or young. It is good against Fits, and the extrem Tortures of the Colick, as also to heal Wounds, whether inward or outward; cures Spitting, Vomiting, or Pissing Blood, dissolves coagulated Blood, whether in the Stomach, Bowels, or Reins, and expels it, and is a singular thing to be taken as a Wound drink, for them who have any Wounds, running Sores, old Ulcers, or Fistula's, to induce them to a speedy healing. Dose three ounces, Morning, Noon, and Night in a Glass of Red Port Wine.

XI. *The Syrup.* It has all the former Virtues (being made either of the Juice or Essence) but is so much the weaker by the Sugar which is added to it: however it is more fit for Children, and squeamish Stomachs, and may be given to them against Ruptures.

XII. *The Decoction.* It has the Virtues of the

Juice and Essence, but very much weaker, and may be given to those who cannot be induced to take them. However you make thereof an exceeding good Wound drink, to all the purposes aforementioned. Being injected into Fistula's, or running Sores, and Ulcers, being washed therewith, it perfectly cleanses and heals them, and also conglutinates the Lips of Green Wounds.

XIII. *The Powder.* It is good against Ruptures, or Burstings, given to one dram, in some proper Vehicle: outwardly strewed upon old running Sores or Ulcers, it cleanses, dries and heals them, and is good to stop Bleeding in Wounds, and to consolidate their Lips.

XIV. *The Balsam.* It is a singular Vulnerary, and cures simple Wounds at the first Intention: it digests, cleanses, incarnates, and dries old running Sores, and rebellious Ulcers, and by strengthening the Part, brings on the healing after an admirable manner: applied in the Gout, it gives ease, and by continuing of it, cures it in a short time.

XV. *The Cataplasm.* Being applied to simple Contusions, it Discusses, prevents Pain and Inflammation, and so cures them: It conglutinates simple Green Wounds, and gives ease in the Gout, as also in all other Pains of the Joints, Nerves, or Tendons, coming from blows, strains, or the like.

## C H A P. CLXIII.

### Of C R E S S Garden.

I. **T**HE Names. This Plant is called in Greek, *Καρδαμον, ἐκ τῆς καρδίας*, Cardamon quod cordatos faciat, vel quod Cor foveat, quia in sincope Cardiaca plurimum valet: And of this Herb, the Greeks had this Proverb, *ἔδε ναστurtium*, Ede Nasturtium, propterea quod Nasturtio inesse Credebant animi vigorem excitandi. In Arabick, Narsf, vel Naf alchaf: In Latin, Nasturtium, à narium tormento, as Pliny saith: And in English, Cress.

II. *The Kinds.* They are manifold, as, 1. Nasturtium Hortense, Garden Cress, of which in this Chapter. 2. Nasturtium Indicum, Indian Cress, of which in Chap. 164. 3. Nasturtium Pratense, Meadow Cress, of which in Chap. 165. and 166. 4. Nasturtium agreste, Wild Cress, of which in Chap. 167. 5. Nasturtium Ischiadicum, vel Ischiacum, Sciatica Cress, of which in Chap. 168. 6. Nasturtium Hibernum, Winter Cress, of which in Chap. 169. 7. Nasturtium Aquaticum, Water Cress, of which in Chap. 170. following.

III. Of the Garden Kind, *Καρδαμον ἡμερον*, there are these following, viz. 1. Nasturtium Sativum vulgare, The common Garden Cress. 2. Nasturtium Hortense Latifolium, and Nasturtium Latifolium Hispanicum, Broad Leav'd Garden Cress. 3. Nasturtium Hortense Crispum Latifolium, and Angustifolium, Curled Cress, with Broader and Narrower Leaves. 4. Nasturtium impatiens, Sium minimum, Sium Nasturtij Silvestris folio, Noli me tangere, The impatient Cress, being called a Cress, more from the form of its Leaf, than any thing else.

IV. *The Descriptions.* The first has a long Root with some Fibres adjoined to it, which perishes every Year after the ripening of the Seed, or upon the approach of Winter; from this Root the Stalks grow up half a yard, or two feet high, having many small, tender, whitish, broad, indented, or torn Leaves set thereon, growing together upon a middle rib next the ground; but

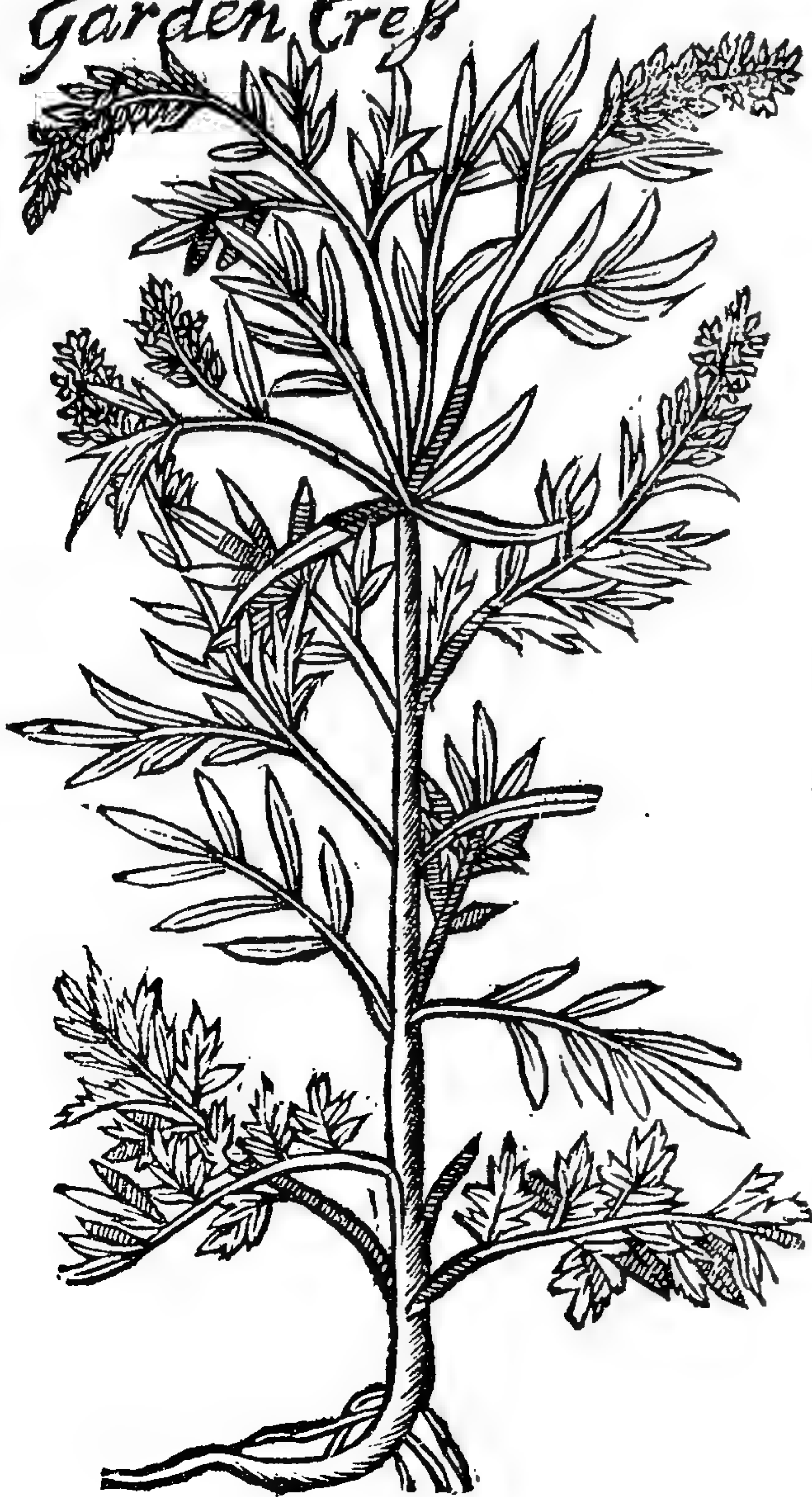


but those which grow higher upon the Stalks are smaller and longer : The Leaves in general are so like to those of Garden Chervil, or Sweet Cicely, that it must be a very observant Eye which can distinguish them, and whilst young are scarcely to be differenced but by the taste. The tops of the Stalks are replenished with white Flowers, which turn into flat Pods or Pouches, not much unlike to Shepherds Purse ; in which is contained flat reddish Seed ; the Smell of both Leaves and Seed is strong and spiccy ; and their Taste is hot, sharp, and biting, almost like Pepper, for which reason some call it, Pepper-wort.



Garden Cresses

Garden Cress



V. The second, or Broad Leav'd Garden Cress, has a Root which is small and long, perishing every year, and therefore must be constantly Sown in the Spring ; and for this reason also, because after it is Sown, it springs up quickly, and will not endure the cold of Winter. Its first Leaves are small like Basil, among which rises up a Stalk about half a yard high, set with larger Leaves thereon, without any division, but smally dented about the edges, and pointed at the ends, every one standing upon a long Footstalk, branched from the middle to the Top with lesser and narrower Leaves, like to the Top Leaves of Garden Cress : From whence break forth many white Flowers set in spikes, one above another, after which come Pouches or Purses containing brownish Seed like to the other Cresses, but much more bitter, and yet not all out so fiery or sharp.

VI. The third, or Curled Cress, has a Root like to the former, which goes pretty deep into the Earth, and perishes every year after Seed time, as the other does. It grows like the first, or common Garden Cress, and differs therefrom only in the Leaves, which are of two sorts : the one with broad Leaves, cut, and roundly dented, and curled about the edges, every one by it self, on a long Stalk. The other, consisting of many smaller Leaves, set one against another upon a middle rib, each part of which is in the same manner cut in, and curled as are the other. The Flowers are white, like the common Garden Kind ; and the reddish Seed also like the same in Form and Magnitude.

VII. The fourth, or Impatient Cress, has a small Root spreading forth it self into many Branches ; from whence arise many winged Leaves, not much unlike to the smaller Sium, which spread themselves at first upon the ground, not much above an Inch or two long, which so abide from Autumn, when it springs up, all the Winter long. In the Spring of the year, they grow somewhat bigger, and the said Leaves are a little dented about the edges, the bottom of the Leaf being for the most part the biggest. From among these Leaves rises up a slender Stalk, about a foot and half high, which is divided into several Branches, from the middle thereof to the Top. On the extremities or tops of all which Branches grow many very small white Flowers, which being past away, as many slender long pointed Cods follow, in which is contained small yellowish Seed ; when these Cods are ripe, they are so impatient of being touched, and the Seed is so hard to be gathered, that the Pod breaks it self, even of its own accord, upon the least touch of the hand, or any thing else, and so the Seed flies away, not being then possible to be gathered : This Seed has little or no heat in it.

VIII. An Observation. It is indeed the Nature of this Impatient Cress, that if you but touch the Cods when the Seed is ripe, though you do it never so gently, yet will the Seed fly all away with a great Violence, not suffering it self to be touched, from whence came the name, *Noli me tangere*, and *Nasturtium Impatiens* ; as for the like quality, the *Persicaria Siliquosa* is named. The nature of this Plant is somewhat admirable, for if the Seed is fully ripe, though you put your hand but near the Cods, as proffering to touch them, though you touch them not, yet will the said Cods be apt to open, and the Seed to fly out upon you, when you may expect no such thing. *Prosper Alpinus* is the only Man who formerly wrote hereof, from whom our *Parkinson* and *Johnson* have taken their Discourses.

IX. The Places. These Plants are all of them nurs'd up with us in Gardens. The first matters not what Soil it grows in, for it likes any ground, especially if it is well watered : The second came



trif out of *Spain*, but grows well with us in *England*, as does also the third. The fourth *Johnson* found about *Bath*, and other Parts of our Land, which, says he, is now kept in divers of our *London Gardens*, in some of which I have seen it grow.

X. *The Times*. They may be Sown at any time of the Year, unless it be in Winter. They quickly spring up, after sown, flower in *April* and *May*, and the Seed is ripe in *June*, or not long after their flowering time; after which they die every Year, and recover themselves, *i. e.* spring up again of the shaken or fallen Seed.

XI. *The Qualities*. All *Cresses* (except the *Nolime tangere*) are hot and dry in the fourth Degree, but more especially the Seed. They attenuate, incise, attract, digest, discuss; are Carminative, Diuretick, and in some measure Suppurative. They are Cephalick, Stomack, Pectoral, Nephritick, Hysterick and Arthritick: Ptarmick, Emmenagogick, Lithontriptick and Alexipharmick.

XII. *The Specification*. They are peculiar against Poison, the Bittings of Venomous Beasts, and to purge the Head and Brain of cold and moist Humors.

XII. *The Preparations*. You may have therefrom,  
1. *The green Herb*. 2. *A liquid Juice*. 3. *An Essence*. 4. *A Spirituous Tincture*. 5. *An Acid Tincture*. 6. *An Oily Tincture*. 7. *A Saline Tincture*. 8. *A Spirit*. 9. *A Cataplasme*. 10. *The Seed*.

#### *The Virtues.*

XIV. *The Herb*. Eaten as a Sallet with other Sallet Herbs, as Lettice, &c. it warms, comforts and pleases the Stomach: bruised and applied, it takes away Spots and Marks, eases the Pains of the Loins and Sciatica, and draws forth broken Bones, Thorns and Splinters; and puts a stop to the Corroding of putrid and creeping Ulcers: held or chewed in the Mouth, it cures the Tooth-ach.

XV. *The Liquid Juice*. Used as an Errhine, it purges the Head and Brain of cold and viscous Humors, thereby easing all kinds of Head-aches proceeding therefrom, and for the same Reason prevails against Palsies, Lethargies, Apoplexies, Epilepsies, Vertigo's, Carus, Convulsions, and all other like Diseases afflicting those Parts. Given from half an ounce to two ounces, in a Glass of Generous Wine, it powerfully cuts gross and viscous Flegm, opens Obstructions, provokes the Terms in Women, and Urine obstructed, cleansing the Reins, Ureters and Bladder from Sand, Gravel, Stones, or any Tartarous Matter lodged in them. It powerfully provokes Venery, but is said to kill the Child in the Womb.

XVI. *The Essence*. It has all the former Virtues exalted, besides which, it cuts and expectorates rough Flegm, out of the Breast and Lungs, and as Authors say, loosens the Belly, and cleanses it from viscous Humors, opens Obstructions of both Liver and Spleen, heals all inward Wounds, and resists Poison, whether inwardly taken, or outwardly received from the biting or stinging of any venomous Creature. Dose from one ounce to two ounces in any proper Vehicle, Morning fasting, and at Night going to Bed.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture*. It is Cordial, provokes Urine, and expels Wind, and prevails against the Obstruction of the Courses in Women, being given Morning, Noon and Night, in some proper Vehicle, for a Week before the expected time of their coming. Dose from half a Spoonful to a Spoonful. It expels Wind, and prevails against the Cholick, and Gripping of the Guts to Admirati-

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture*. It wonderfully strengthens the Stomach, and is an admirable thing, as well to preserve from the Contagion and Infection of the Plague or Pestilence, as to cure the same, for which it is an approved thing. It cures the Scurvy in a cold Constitution or Habit of Body, being assiduously used, and so removes all the Symptoms of that troublesome Disease. Dose from 30 to 40, 60, or more Drops in Ale, Wine or other Vehicle, according to the quantity the Patient drinks at a time.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture*. It cures the Palsie, being anointed well Morning and Evening upon the Back-bone, and Parts affected. But that Part of the *Spina Dorfi* is to be chiefly bathed therewith, from whence the Nerves proceed, which replenish the Parts afflicted with that Disease. It is also good against Cramps, Convulsions and Gouts arising from a cold Cause; and gives ease in the most intollerable Pains of the Back, as also of the Reins, being outwardly anointed therewith, and inwardly given from 15 to 30 Drops, Morning and Evening in any Nephritick or Opiate Vehicle.

XX. *The Saline Tincture*. It powerfully opens Obstructions of the Womb, Reins, Ureters and Bladder, promotes the Secretion of Morbifick Humors by Urine; and provoking Urine, it expels Sand, Gravel, Stones, and Tartarous Matter out of the Mass of Blood, and cleanses all the Urinary Parts from the same. Dose from 40 to 60 drops in Wine.

XXI. *The Spirit*. How it is to be made, we have shewn at large in the *Second Edition* of our *Pharmacopœi Bateana*, lib. 1. cap. 2. sect. 67. This Spirit thus prepared, is very subtil and volatile, an admirable Antiscorbutick, and powerful against all Diseases arising from viscous Flegm, and other Tartarous Humors: it thins and rarifies the Blood, provokes Urine and the Terms, and cleanses the Womb. And as it is famous against the Scurvy, so it is excellent against the Dropsie, Jaundice, Stone and Gout: it is a good Nephritick, and cures most Diseases of the Reins, expels Sand, Gravel and Slime, and prevails against the Colick, and Virulent Diseases of the Bowels. It is said to be good also against the Green-sickness in Virgins, because it powerfully opens Obstructions, and purifies the Blood, for which Reason it is singularly good against the Kings-Evil: it warms the Instruments of Generation, provokes Lust, and is good against Impotency. The Dose of this Spirit is from 20 drops to a dram, in some proper Vehicle. The distilled Water of *Cresses*, which is made after the Distillation of the Spirit, by a stronger Heat in *B. M.* will be much stronger and better than that which is made the vulgar way, it being impregnated with much of the Essential Salt, loosened by Fermentation, which yet remains behind, and does impregnate the Water. This Water may be given from one ounce to fix, its Virtues being the same with the Spirit, but much weaker in its Operation.

XXII. *The Cataplasme*. It is good against the Gout and Sciatica, as also itching Humors and Eruptions in the Skin. It draws forth Thorns, Splinters and other things gotten into the Flesh. If it is made with Vinegar, and applied, it is said to be good against the Kings-Evil, whether in the Throat or any other Part: If made with Hogs Lard, it cures sore, running and scabby Heads, ripens Plague Sores, and breaks them; is good against Whitloes and Fellons on the Fingers ends, and takes away the Deformity of the Nails.

XXIII. *The Seed*. If it is chewed in the Mouth, and held for some time, it eases the Tooth-ach, (and so also does the Herb:) it also helps the Palsie of the Tongue, provokes Sneezing, and is good against



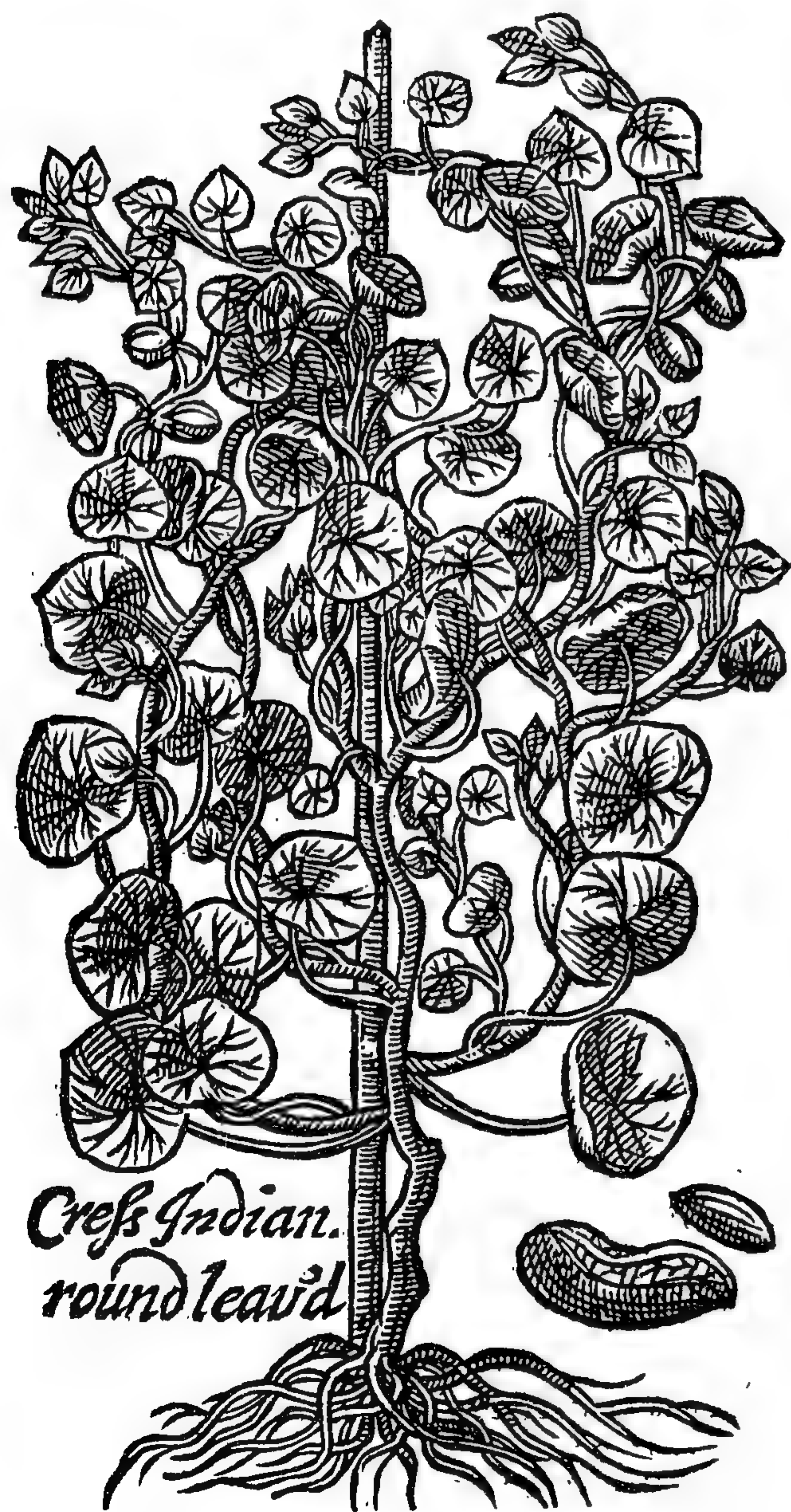
against Sleepiness, Droufiness, and such as are troubled with the Lethargy.

## C H A P. CLXIV.

### Of CRESS Indian.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Κάβδαμον* *ινδικόν*: in Latin, *Nasturtium Indicum*, *Flos Sanguineus Monardis*; and in English, *Indian Cress*, or *Yellow Larks-heels*, from the Form of the Flower.

II. *The Kinds.* It is a singular Plant of the kind, and by its Taste declares it self to be one of the kinds of *Cresses*. Some do account it among the *Clematides* or *Convolvuli*, the *Clamberers* or *Bind-weeds*, but any of these it cannot be, because it has no *Claspers*, nor does it wind it self about any thing, but by reason of the number of its *Branches* which run one within another, it may seem to climb up a *Pole*, or the like, which yet it does but only close, as having something whereon to rest or lean its *Branches*. But *Parkinson*, from *Lobel*, makes two kinds, *viz.* the *Round Leaved*, (which is the Common) and the *Cornered Leaved*.



*Cress Indian.*  
*round leaved*

III. *The Description.* This fair and noble Plant has *Roots* which are small, and spreading under *Ground*, which perish with the first *Frosts*, and must be sown afresh every *Year*: from this *Root* arise many long trailing *Branches*, interlaced one within another very confusedly, (yet it does not wind it self with any *Claspers*, about either *Pole*, or any other *Prop*, but if you would have it lye close thereto, you must tie it, or else it will lye upon the *Ground*) four or five feet in length at the least, for which Reason it takes up a great deal of *Ground*. The *Leaves* are

smooth, green, and as round as the *Pennywort* which grows on the *Ground*, without any *Cut* or *Incisure* in any part, the foot *Stalks* of which stand in the middle of each *Leaf*, and grow forth at every *Joint* of the *Stalk*, where they are a little reddish, and knobbed or bunched out: the *Flowers* are of an excellent *Gold-yellow* color, and grow all along the *Stalks*, almost at every *Joint*, with the *Leaves*, upon pretty long foot *Stalks*, which are composed of five *Leaves* apiece, not hollow or gaping, but standing open, each *Leaf* apart by it self; two of them, which are larger and longer than the other, stand above, and the other two, which are lesser, stand below, which are a little jagged or bearded on both sides; and the fifth lowest. In the midst of each of the three lower *Leaves*, (yet sometimes it is but in two of them) there is a little long *Spot* or *Streak*, of an admirable *Crimson* color, (whence the Name *Flos Sanguineus*:) and the *Flower* has a long *Heel* or *Spur* behind it, hanging down, (from which and the *Color*, came the Name of *Yellow Larks-heels*:) the whole *Flower* has a great *Beauty*, and *Sweetness* withal, very pleasing, which being placed in the middle of some *Carnations* or *Clove-gilliflowers*, (which are both in flower at the same time) make a noble *Nosegay*, both for *Sight* and *Smell*. When the *Flowers* are past, come the *Seed*, which are rough or uneven, round, greenish, yellow *Heads*, sometimes but one, and sometimes two or three standing together upon one *Stalk*, bare or naked of themselves, without any *Husk*, containing a white pulpy *Kernel*.



*Cress Indian.*  
*Cornered Leaved.*

IV. The second, or *Cornered Leaved* kind, in its *Root*, *Stalks*, *Branches* and *Flowers* differs little or nothing from the former: the chief *Difference* is in the *Leaves*, for as in the former they are round, and are fastned upon a long foot *Stalk* underneath, nearly in the *Center* or *Middle* of each *Leaf*, and bunched out; in this, they are broad, and seven, eight or nine cornered, of the same *Smoothness* and *Color*, sharp pointed at their tops, and growing upon a long foot *Stalk*, which is joined to the *Leaf* at the lower



part thereof. The Flowers are Lark-spurred, like the other, and in the whole, differs nothing from it in its Manner and Form of growing. Parkinson seems to say it was taken from the Life, which tho' it has not been seen here with us in England since, yet that hinders not (says he) the Verity of the thing. When I was in the West Indies, in my Travels up and down, I saw it several times.

V. The Places. This goodly and beautiful Plant was first found in the West Indies, and brought thence into Spain by Monardus; from whence it was afterwards conveyed into France, Flanders and England. It grows now familiarly in most of our Gardens, where it flourishes, and is become as it were a natural Inhabitant. It need not be planted or sown in Beds of Horse-dung, or the like, for the natural Ground will be sufficient, so that it is but a little defended from those Frosts in the Spring of the Year, which are apt to nip it whilst but tender, or newly sprung up.

VI. The Times. It may be sown in March or April; the which, when it is sprung up, and having gotten three Leaves, must be taken up, and carefully replanted abroad, in the hottest place of the Garden, and in the finest and fattest Mould. It flowers sometimes in June, but usually in July, if it is well defended, and in good Ground; and so continues flowering till the cold Frosts and Weather in the latter end of October, does check it, and put a stop to its Luxuriant Nature; the Seed growing continually ripe in the mean Season, which after it is ripe, soon falls down on the Ground, whence for the most part the best is gathered.

VII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are exactly the same with those of Garden Cresses in the former Chapter, to which I refer you; so that no more need be spoken of them here, except that the same Preparations of this Plant, as they are stronger, so they are more Efficacious.

## C H A P. CLXV.

### Of CRESS Meadow,

O R,

### CUCKOW-FLOWER, Single.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Καρδαμύνη* *λεπιδιον*; in Latin, *Flos Cuculi*, *Nasturtium Pratense*, *Sisymbrium alterum Dioscoridis*, and *Cardamine*; and in English, *Meadow Cress*, or *Cuckow-flower*: in some Countries it is called, as Gerard says, *Ladies Smocks*.

II. The Kinds. They are either Single or Double: the Single we shall treat of in this Chapter, the Double in the next following. Of the Single, so many as grow with us in England, there are three Varieties, viz. 1. *Nasturtium pratense majus Tragi & Gesneri*, *Cardamine latifolia*, *Nasturtium agrifolium Fuchsi*, & *Sylvestre Loniceri*, *Lepidium minus Cordi*, *Flos Cuculi Dodonei & Brunfelsii*, The Great or Broad-leaved Cress, or Cuckow-flower. 2. *Cardamine altera minor*, *Sisymbrium Cardamine Lacuna & Lugdunensis*, *Sisymbrium aquaticum alterum Matthioli & Tabernmontani*, *Hiberis Fuchsi*, *Iberis Thalii*, *Cardamine altera Lobelii & Clusii*, *Agriocardium*, sive *Cardamantica Nasturtii foliis*, *Nasturtium pratense magno flore Bauhini*, *Nasturtium aquaticum simpliciflore Besseri*, The Small Cuckow-

flower. 3. *Cardamine altera parvo flore*, The Small flowered Cuckow-flower.

### Great Cuckow-flower:



III. The Descriptions. The first has a Root composed of many white Heads or Fibres, from which shoot forth several long Stalks of winged Leaves, that is, many together, somewhat broad and round, tender, and dark green Leaves set one against another upon a middle Rib, the greatest being at the ends; among these winged Leaves rise up divers tender, weak, round, green Stalks, somewhat straked; on which grow much smaller and longer Leaves, very like the smallest divided Leaves of Garden Cress, at the tops whereof stand several Flowers made of four Leaves apiece, somewhat large, and almost like to Stock-gilliflowers, but rounder, and not full out so long, whitish in Color, or a little dash'd over with Blush, and many times but at the edges only, each of them growing in a green Husk, which being pass'd away, small Pouches grow forth, containing reddish Seed, something sharp and biting in Taste, as is the Herb also it self, coming near to the Taste of Cresses.

IV. The Small Cuckow-flower with great Flowers, is in its Roots, Leaves, Stalks, Flowers, Form and Manner of Growing, like to the former but now described, excepting that it is smaller in every part, not bushing out with so many Leaves or Stalks; and that the Pods of Seed are something longer than those of that aforegoing.

V. The Small Cuckow-flower with the small Flower, is almost in all Respects like to the Small Cuckow-flower beforegoing; save, that the Leaves of this are smaller and longer, and yet round sometimes also, growing in the same manner as the former does: the Flowers are also like them, but smaller, and the Pods of Seed are somewhat longer.

VI. The Places. They are all found in several parts of England, in moist Meadows, and near unto Brook sides, and small Rills of Water, passing thro' low Grounds. They have been found in the Castle Ditch at Clare in Essex.

VII. The



VII. *The Times.* They flower somewhat early in the Spring about April and May, at farthest, and continue with the lower Leaves all the Winter.



VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* are the same with Garden Cress in Chap. 163. aforegoing, to which you are referred.

divers places : from this Root spring forth several winged Leaves, weak and tender, lying on the Ground, very like to the single Meadow kind ; from among which rises up a round green Stalk, set here and there with the like Leaves that grow below, the top whereof has a few Branches, on which stand several Flowers, every one of them upon a small foot Stalk, consisting of many small whitish round Leaves, a little dash'd over with a blew Blush, set round together, which make a double Flower.

IV. *The second, or Trefoil Cuckow-flower,* has a Root composed also of several white Fibres, from the Heads whereof run forth small Strings, of a dark purple color, by which it encreases. From this Root spring forth several dark, round, green Leaves, a little uneven about the edges, and always three, set together on a blackish small foot Stalk, among which rise up small, round, blackish Stalks, six, seven or eight inches high, with three small Leaves at the Joints where they branch forth : at the tops whereof grow many Flowers, consisting of four Leaves apiece, of a whitish, or very pale bluish color. The Flowers being past, small, thick and long Pods come forth, in which is contained small round Seed.

V. *The Places.* The first generally grows with us in Gardens, but is also found Wild in divers parts of England, as near Mitcham, about eight Miles from London, also in Lancashire, in several places : the other was brought to us at first from beyond Sea, and is here only nurst up in Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* They flower usually in the end of April or May ; but the latter of them commonly flowers before the former.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses,* are the same with those of Garden Cress in Chap. 163. or with those of Water Cresses, to which you are referred.

## C H A P. CLXVI.

Of CRESS Meadow,

O R,

CUCKOW-FLOWER, Double.

I. *THE Names.* This is called in Latin, *Cardamine flore pleno*, (that it was known to the Greeks, I cannot learn) and in English, *Double Meadow Cress*, and *Double Cuckow-flower*.

II. *The Kinds.* Taken as Garden Flowers, there are two of them, viz. 1. *Cardamine flore pleno*, being the double kind of that Plant, which growing Wild abroad, is called, *Cardamine altera*, and *Sisymbrium alterum Dioscoridis*, also *Flos Cuculi* ; but this Name is more usually given to the Wild feathered Campions, both single and double : in English we call it *Double-flowred Cuckow-flower*, or *Ladies Smocks*. 2. *Cardamine trifolia*, *Trefoil Meadow Cress*, or *Cuckow-flower* ; this is not truly a double-flowred Plant, but rather a Plant very full of Flowers, which at first sight makes it look as if it was double-flowred. These two being the fairest of all the Meadow Cresses or Cuckow-flowers, and for their Beauty being brought into Gardens, we thought best to place them both in one Chapter.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first double-flowred has a Root which creeps under Ground, sending forth many small white Fibres or Strings, and shoots up in

## C H A P. CLXVII.

Of CRESS Wild.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Καρδαμύς* *πλήρης* *καὶ* *ἀγροῦ* : in Latin, *Nasturtium agreste*, *Nasturtium Sylvestre* : in English, *Wild Cress*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three which go under the Name of *Wild Cress*, viz. 1. *Nasturtium Sylvestre Oxyridis foliis*, *Narrow-leav'd White Cresses*. 2. *Nasturtium agreste Carolinianum*, *The Carolinian Wild Cress*. 3. *Nasturtium Petraeum*, *The Stone or Rock Cress*.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first of these has a woody Root, which perishes after Seed time, from whence spring forth many small, round and hard Stalks, with several small, round and narrow Leaves growing thereon without Order, branched from the middle upwards into many parts, at the tops of which come forth a great number of small white Flowers, (but some have been found with yellow Flowers, tho' not often) one standing above another, Spike fashion, after which appear Husks, containing small Seed.

IV. *The second, or Carolinian Wild Cress,* has a long and slender Root, with many Fibres proceeding from it, which also perishes every Year ; from which Root grows up a round, green and hairy Stalk, about a foot high or more, and if it grows in rich or fertile Ground, sometimes about a foot and half high ; sometimes but one Stalk grows up, and sometimes more ; which Stalk or Stalks spread into Branches from the very Ground, at every Joint whereof stand long winged Leaves, very much divided, like unto the Common



Common Garden Cress, but yet more finely cut or divided, and sharp in Taste, like Cresses. The Flowers are many, and of a pale whitish yellow color, standing in long Spikes at the tops; which being pass'd away, small, short Pouches appear, divided into two parts, which stand not upright, but hang downwards, in which is contained small reddish Seed, like unto Cress Seed.

### Stone Cress.



V. The third, or Rock Cress, has a small and thready perishing Root, from whence rise up several Leaves upon long Foot-stalks, which Leaves are jagged and cut about the edges, much like to Oak Leaves, or rather the Leaves of Shepherds-purse: from amidst these Leaves rise up several Stalks, with small jagged Leaves growing thereon, one only at a place, without any Foot-stalk, and not being above one, two or three in number, to the top of each Stalk: on which tops spiked Heads of Flowers very thick set, which are small, and of a white color, like those of the Garden Cress. The Seed is contained in small Pouches or Seed-Vessels, which are flat, like to Thlaspi, or Treacle-Mustard.

VI. The Places. The first grows Wild in the Fields, by High-ways, and Hedge-sides, and among Rubbish, and in many other places. The second grows plentifully in many places, Wild in the Fields which have been formerly Manured, and afterwards lye as Fallow or Waste: I found a great quantity of it in Capt. Abbot's Plantation up Wando River, not above four or five Miles from Charles Town in Carolina. It grows also very plentifully in the Kingdom of Valentia in Spain, (from whence it was brought to us in England) for which Reason it is called also *Nasturtium Sylvestre Valentianum*. The third has been found growing in Shropshire, in the Fields about Birch, in the Parish of Elefmere, and in the Grounds formerly belonging to one Richard Herbert, and that in great plenty: also on the farther side of Black-beath, by the Highway side, leading from Greenwich to Lufam.

VII. The Times. These flower later than some of the former Cresses, viz. in June and July, and the Seed ripens not long after.

VIII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with Garden Cresses in Chap. 163. aforegoing, and to them you are referred.

## CHAP. CLXVIII.

### Of CRESS Sciatica.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἰβέρη* (Iberis) in Arabick, *Seitaragi*, and *Hausab*: in Latin, *Iberis* sive *Cardamantica*, (quod *Cardamo*, id est *Nasturtio similis* est: ) and in English, *Sciatica Cress*.

II. The Kinds. It is twofold, viz. 1. *Iberis nasturtii foliis*, *Lepidium Campestre Angulata*, *Iberis secunda Tabernmontani*, *Iberis Cardamantica Gerardii*, *Iberis Nasturtii folio Bauhini*, *Sciatica Cress*. 2. *Iberis latiore folio Bauhini*, *Iberis Lugdunensis Dodonaei*, *Lacuna*, *Gesneri in hortis*, & *Casalpini*, who also says it is *Lepidium forte Columella*, *Lepidium hortense Angulata*, *Iberis Cardamantica Lobelii*, *Lepidium Iberias Pauli Aeginetae*, *Sciatica Cress* with broader Leaves.



III. The Descriptions. The first has a Root which is long, white and woody, from which rises up a round Stalk about two feet high, which spreads it self into divers Branches, whose lower Leaves are somewhat larger than the upper, yet all of them cut or torn on the edges, somewhat like unto Garden Cresses, but smaller: the Flowers are small and white, growing at the tops of the Branches, which being pass'd away, Husks grow forth, like to those of Cresses, with smaller brownish Seed therein than in the other, which is very sharp and biting in Taste, more than those of Cresses are.

IV. The second, or *Sciatica Cress* with broader Leaves, has a Root like the former, and sharp in Taste as it; from which spring up Leaves somewhat long and broad, not rent or torn at all, but whole, only a little dented about the edges towards the ends, very like to those of the *Thlaspi Creticum*. From among these Leaves rises up a Stalk pretty thick and strong, much about the height of the other, which suddenly spreads it self out into several Branches, on which grow Leaves, which are lesser, shorter and narrower,



narrower, as they grow in height, and stand on the Stalks without any great Order. The Flowers grow at the tops of the Branches in spiked Heads, which with their Seed, are very like the former, the Seed of this tasting as hot, sharp and biting, as the Seed of the other.

V. The Places. They grow by the Way sides in rough and untill'd places, and by the sides of old Walls, and such-like: they have been found in Corn-fields about Southfleet, near to Gravesend in Kent.

VI. The Times. They flower according as they are early or late sown in the Fields; but for the most part in June and July, and their Seed is ripe not long after.

VII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses, are in the main the same with those of Garden Cress in Chap. 163. foregoing. But more especially these are said to be Specificks in curing the Sciatica and Gout in any Part.

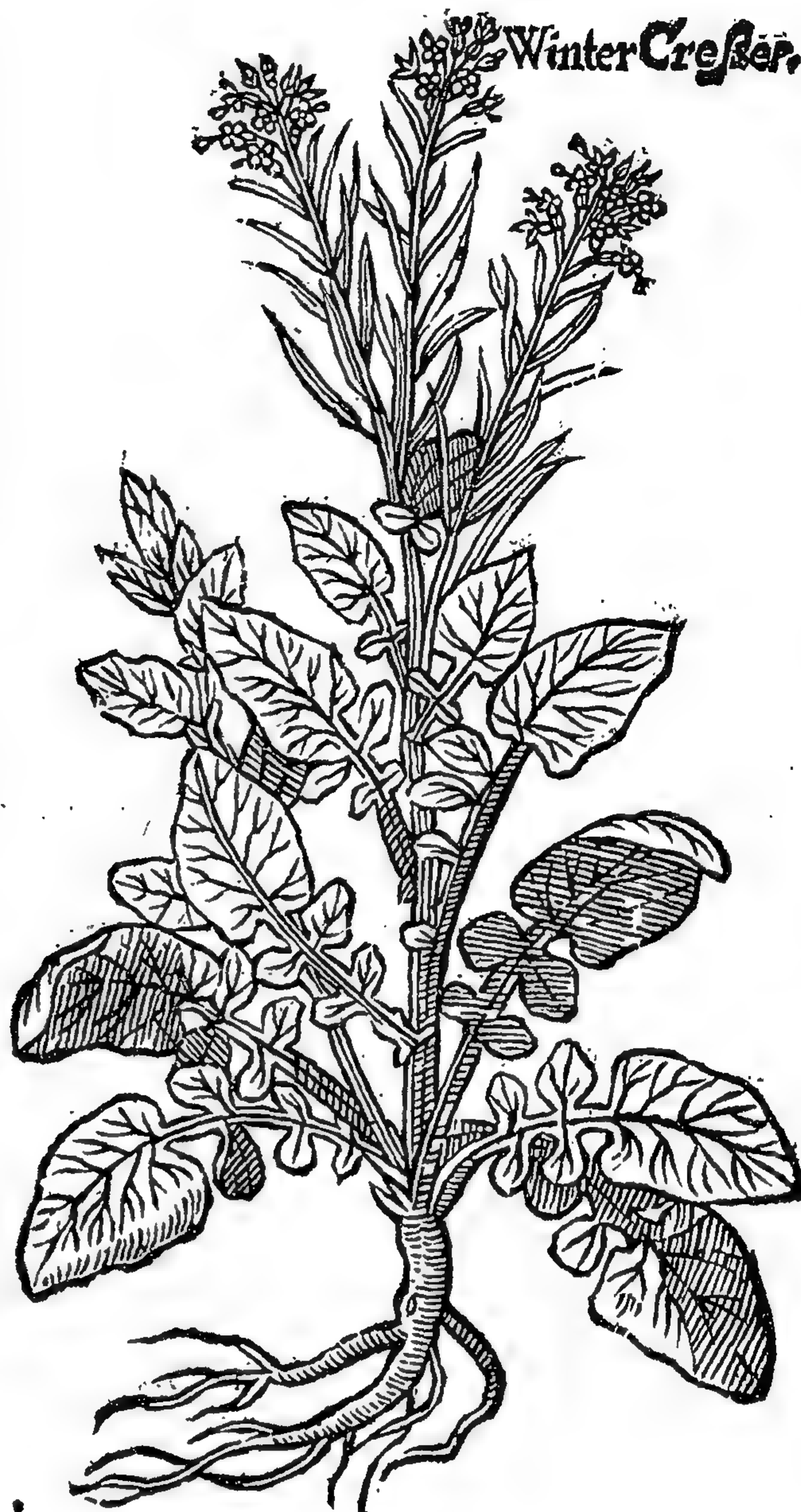
VIII. Observation. A Cataplasma made of the green Leaves, but especially of the Roots, either alone or mixed with old Hogs Lard, and applied to the place pained with the Sciatica, letting it to lye on for four hours in Men, and two hours in Women, is said by Galen from Damocrates, to cure the Disease; and not only this Disease in the Hips or Huckle-bone, but also the Gout, and all other Pains and Aches in the Joints, whether of Hands, Knees or Feet; likewise all other inveterate Grievs of the Head, or other Parts of the Body difficult to be cured; as vehement and long continued Catarrhs, universal Rheumatisms, &c. he also says, that Damocrates cured hereby all those Diseases, to which Sinapi, Thlapsi and Thapsia are applied. Pliny recites the same method and manner of Application, and says farther, that if any part of the Grief remains, that the same Medicine after twenty days is to be applied again. And applied to the Skin, it takes away the Blemishes thereof, as Freckles, Lentils, Scars, Scabs, Scurf, Leprosie, &c. it is true, that it exulcerates or blisters the Part, but that is to be healed with a Balsam made of Oil and Wax, with the Addition of a little Strasburgh Turpentine. After the Application of the Cataplasma in the Sciatica, the Part, says Gerard, is to be bathed with warm Water; or, as Parkinson says, with warm Wine and Oil mixed together; and then wrapped up with Wool or Skins, or a Lamb-skin may be applied whilst it is yet hot, and but newly taken off from the Creature. Dioscorides and Pliny say, that if the Root is hung about the Neck, or tyed to the Arm, it will give ease in the Tooth-ach.

## C H A P. CLXIX.

### Of C R E S S Winter.

I. THE Names. It is thought to be that Plant which the Greeks (as Dioscorides) call *Ψευδάριον*, (tho' it is *Ψευδοβένιον* in the Text, which I judge is by a mistake in transcribing, *Βένιον* *Bunium* being *Earth-nuts*, and *Βένιας* *Bunias*, the *Navew* or *Wild Turnep*, to which latter, this our *Winter Cress* is something a kin:) in Latin it is called *Nasturtium Hybernium*, *Pseudobunias Dodonæi*, *Nasturtium Barbaricum*, *Barbarea*, *Sanctæ Barbaræ Herba*, *Scopa Regia Anguilare*, *Sideritis Latissima Euchsii*, *sinapi quinti generis Tragi*; and in English, *Winter Cress*.

II. The Kinds. They are threefold, 1. *Barbarea simplex*, *Barbarea sive Eruca lutea latifolia*, *Nasturtium Palustre Gesneri*, *Eruca Palustris Lugdunensis*, (it is called also by all the Names in the former Section;) Common Winter Cress. 2. *Barbarea flore pleno*, *sive Eruca lutea Baubini*, Double-flowered Winter Cress. 3. *Barbarea minor*, *Herba sancti Alberti Casalpini*, Small Winter Cress, or Winter Rocket.



III. The Descriptions. The first has a Root something fibrous, which always perishes after the perfecting of its Seed, from which spring up several Leaves indifferent large, and of a sad green color, lying upon the Ground, and torn or gap'd into several parts, something like unto Rocket or Turnep Leaves, (but nothing like to Cresses) which Leaves have smaller pieces next the bottom, and broad at the ends, which so abide all the Winter, (if it springs up in Autumn, when it is used to be eaten either green or stewed:) from among these Leaves rise up divers small round Stalks, which spread themselves into many Branches, bearing in a spiked manner many small yellow Flowers, each having four Leaves apiece; which being past, small long Pods come forth, containing small reddish Seed within them.

IV. The second, or double-flowered, has a Root like the former, which perishes not in Winter, but abides many Years: the Stalks are bigger than the former, and crested withal. The Leaves are shorter, and are about an inch in length, cut in on the edges in the same manner as the others are. The Flowers are yellow, like the former single, but something larger; and double withal, which makes the greatest part of the difference.

V. The third, or Small Winter Cress, has a Root like the first, and perishing as it; from which spring forth blackish green Leaves, somewhat jagged or torn in on the sides, resembling Moth-mullein: the Stalks and Leaves both are less than the first, nor does it grow so high. The flowers are yellow also



as the others, but single and lesser; and so also are the Cods which follow the Flowers, and yield much the same kind of Seed, but lesser in proportion to the Magnitude of the Cods.

VI. *The Places.* The first grows oftentimes of its own accord in Gardens, as also in Fields by Paths and Ways sides in several places of England; as in the next Fields beyond that called *Lambs-Conduit*, (from whence comes *Lambs-Conduit Water* a little below *Snow-hill*;) the other two are only nurs'd up in Gardens.

VII. *The Times.* They all flower in May, and the single ones seed in June, and then perish; but the double kind abides green both Winter and Summer. The Italians and Spaniards are scarcely acquainted with any of these Winter-Cresses, or rather Winter-Rockets, they being more peculiar to these our colder Climates.

VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses* are the same with those of *Garden-Cress* in Chap. 163. foregoing, to which you are referred: But besides all that is there said, we have these following Observations.

IX. *Observation 1. The Green Herb.* It is used as *Rocket* or *Cress* to be eaten as a *Sallet* in Winter, and that with great pleasure and satisfaction, when other Salleting is difficult to be gotten.

X. *Observ. 2. The Liquid Juice.* If it is drunk inwardly, it is found by good Experience to be a singular good Wound Herb, to cleanse and heal inward Wounds; and being outwardly applied, to wash filthy running Sores, and putrid old Ulcers, cleansing them by its Sharpness, and removing the dead Flesh, and hindering proud Flesh from growing therein, and so healing them by its drying Quality. It is also profitable to provoke Urine, help the Strangury, and expel Gravel and the Stone. Dose two or three ounces Morning and Night for some time, in some proper Vehicle.

XI. *Observ. 3. The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice exalted; besides which, it is a most powerful thing to be used against the Scurvy, Dropie and Gout, in cold Constitutions: it may be taken Morning, Noon and Night, from 1. to 3. ounces, in some proper Vehicle, the Use of which is to be continued a Month, two or three, according as the occasion or force of the Disease requires. It is truly a good thing against the Bloody-flux, and all other Fluxes of the Bowels whatsoever.

XII. *Observ. 4. The Seed.* It provokes Urine, is good against Dropies and Gouts; warms and comforts a cold and moist Stomach, and causes a good Appetite and Digestion. And if it is made into a Lohoch with Honey, it is good against Asthma's, Coughs, Colds, Wheezing, Shortness of Breath and difficulty of Breathing, by cutting the tough, thick, viscous Flegm or Matter, and causing an easy Expectoration. Dose as much as a large Nutmeg three or four times a day.

XIII. *Observ. 5. The Spirit.* It comforts and warms a cold and weak Stomach, cheers the Heart, exhilarates the Spirits, absorbs Acidities, eases Pains and Gripings of the Bowels, expels Wind, prevails against the Colick, dissipates inward Apostems, dissolves coagulated Blood, and prevents or helps its Stagnation, and thereby refreshes wearied Nature, and Strengthens the whole Body. Dose 20, 30, or 40 drops in a Glass of Wine or Ale. But this is to be observed, That it is only to be given to such as are of a cold Constitution, or Habit of Body; for such as are hot, it puts all into a Flame, and therefore such as are to avoid it.

## C H A P. CLXX.

## Of C R E S S Water.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Καδδαμον* *καδδαμον*: in Latin, *Nasturtium Aquaticum*; and in English, *Water-Cresses*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are four several sorts of this Plant, viz. 1. *Nasturtium aquaticum vulgare*, which is generally taken to be the *Sisymbrium alterum Dioscoridis*, and by *Cesalpinus* and *Tabernmontanus*, it is called *Sisymbrium aquaticum*: by *Cordus*, *Gesner* and *Thalius*, *Sisymbrium alterum*; by *Euchsius* and *Lugdunensis*, *Sisymbrium Cardamine*; The Common or Vulgar Water-Cress. The second is called, *Nasturtium aquaticum rotundifolium majus*, *Sisymbrium aquaticum Matthioli*, *Sisymbrium alterius Species secunda Thalii*; *Nasturtium aquaticum alterum*, & *aquaticum amarum Bauhini*; The Greater round-leav'd Water-Cress. 3. *Nasturtium Aquaticum rotundifolium minus*, *Sisymbrium Aquaticum minus Matthioli*; The Lesser round-leav'd Water-Cress. 4. *Nasturtium Aquaticum erectum folio longiore Bauhini*, *Sium vulgare Matthioli*; *Sium Matthioli*, & *Sium Italarum Lobelii*, & *Lugdunensis*; *Matthiolus* his Water-Cress, or the Italian Water-Cress.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first has a long Root, which is filled with nothing but Knobs or Bunches of white Fibres or Threads; from whence spring forth many weak, hollow, sappy Stalks or Branches, trailing upon the Water and gravelly Earth where it grows, taking hold in several places as it creeps, by which means it spreads it self very much, shooting forth Fibres at the Joints. As the Stalks grow upwards, they are filled with long winged Leaves, having many small Leaves set upon a middle Rib, one against another, excepting the point Leaf, which stands by it self, as does that of the Ash-tree. The upper



upper Face of the whole Plant is of a brown green color, and the Leaves are green underneath, which, says Gerard, is the perfect mark to know the Physicall kind from the others. The Flowers are many and white, standing on long Foot-stalks at the tops of the Branches: which being pass'd away, are succeeded by a like number of small long Pods, like Horns, which contain within them small yellow Seed. The whole Plant abides green in the Winter, and tastes sharp and biting, somewhat like to other Cresses.

## Water Cresses round le Great.



the Joints; from whence rise one or more Stalks, which are hollow, weak and sappy, with a great number of long winged Leaves, which are made up of several broad, sappy, and almost round Leaves, of a red lish brown green color on the top, and green underneath: when it runs up into Stalk, the higher Leaves are longer and more pointed, yet round pointed withal. The Flowers grow at the tops of the Branches, like the former, nor does the Pods and Seed differ much therefrom. Parkinson says, that it is so extreemly bitter, that it cannot be eaten till it is boiled in Water, and shifted again: I have seen it grow several times, and have gathered it, but never could find that bitter Taste in it, but only a very sharp biting Taste, like other Cresses; Matthiolus says, Nalturtio simile quiddam gustu præfert.

V. The third, or lesser round kind, has a white fibrous Root, from whence spring forth a great number of long winged Leaves, very like to the last, in their Substance and Form, being fat, broad and roundish like them, but very much less: from amidst these Leaves spring forth several long Stalks, when run up to Seed, which are almost naked, save that here and there they have a single winged Leaf, cut into five long slender parts, almost to the middle Rib. The Stalks at their tops, abound with a great number of little Branches, filled with small fine whitish Flowers, which in the very tops of all, appear exceeding small and diminutive, so as they are not easy to be seen asunder.

VI. The fourth, or Italian kind, has a long Root, which creeps not so much as any of the former, nor is it so full of Fibres: the Leaves grow many on a winged Stalk, and differ not much from the first, saving that the Stalk is crested, and the Leaves are dented or snipt in a little round the edges, being in shape between the Garden-Cress and Cuckow-flower, the Stalks are crested, and divided into many Branches: the Flowers are white, which being pass'd away, are succeeded by Pods, like the Ordinary or Common Water-Cress, and with like Seed. The Taste of both Herb and Seed is more mild and pleasant than that of the other Water-Cresses.

VII. The Places. They all grow for the most part in small standing Waters; and sometimes in small Rivulets of running Water: but the last is sometimes found growing in Gardens.

VIII. The Times. They spring and grow green in March and April. That Water-Cress which is eaten in Sallets, is best in March and April: they flourish all the Summer, and flower in June and July, their Seed ripening in August.

IX. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the third degree: are Diuretick, Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomatick, Hysterick, Nephritick, Alexipharmick and Antiscorbutick.

X. The Specification. They are peculiar against the Scurvy in a cold Habit of Body.

XI. The Preparations. You may have, 1. A Sallet. 2. A liquid Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. An Infusion. 5. A Lotion. 6. A distilled Water. 7. A Spirituous Tincture. 8. An Acid Tincture. 9. An Oily Tincture. 10. A Saline Tincture. 11. A Spirit. 12. A fixed Salt.

### The Virtues.

XII. The Sallet. It is made of the green Herb, gathered in March and April, pickt and washt clean, and dress'd up with Salt, Vinegar and Oil, or Sugar, and so eaten raw: it is generally eaten in the Spring time, to cleanse and purine the Blood, sweeten the Juices of the Body, and cure the Scurvy.

XIII. The liquid Juice. It is more powerful than that of Brooklime against the Scurvy in a cold Habit

IV. The second, or great round-leav'd, has a Root almost like the former, shooting forth many fibres at



Habit of Body, for it cleanses the Blood and Humors: it is also said to be good to break the Stone, and to expel it, as also Sand, Gravel, and other Tartarous Matter; it provokes Urine and the Terms, if given in a proper time. If 3 parts of the Juice is mixed with 1 part of the Juice of Oranges, it will be still more prevalent against the Scurvy. Dose of the Juice is from 1 ounce to 2 or 3, twice or thrice a day, being mixed with any proper Vehicle.

XIV. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, but much more Stomack; it strengthens the Stomack and warms it, creates an Appetite, and causes a good Digestion, and very powerfully provokes Urine and the Terms. Taken from 1 to 2 ounces or more, well sweetned with Honey, it opens Obstructions of the Lungs, and takes away Hoarseness, Wheezing, difficulty of Breathing, and shortness of Breath. Both the Juice and the Essence, being bathed on, or applied to the Face or other parts of the Skin, it takes away Freckles, Lentils, Pimples, Spots, Sun-burning, Tanning, Yellowness, and other Deformities thereof.

XV. *The Infusion in Water or Wine,* in a simmering or scalding heat. It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not full out so powerful. It is good to wash filthy foul Ulcers, Fistula's, running Sores, Herpes, Scurf, Morphew, &c. cleansing them, and making them much the more fit to be healed.

XVI. *The Lotion.* Take of the Juice 3 parts; of White-wine Vinegar 1 part, mix them. It is an excellent thing against almost all Deformities of the Skin, as Freckles, Pimples, Scurf, Leprosy, &c. and it is good also to bath the fore part of the Head therewith, Morning and Evening, for such as have the Lethargy, or are dull, drowsie, and very sleepy: but in this last case, the Patient ought to snuff up the Juice of *Water-Cresses* every day for some time; both in the Morning, and at Night also, an hour before Bed-time; because as an *Errhine*, it purges the Head and Brain of all cold, moist and noxious Humors causing the Lethargy, and other the like Diseases of those Parts.

XVII. *The distilled Water.* It has much Spirit and volatile Salt in it, and may be used as a Vehicle, to convey any of the other Preparations into the Body.

XVIII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It cures the Scurvy in a cold Constitution, and is of excellent Use to rectifie the Distempers of the Stomach: it warms and comforts it, causes a good Appetite and Digestion, and prevails against Gripings, Colicks and Convulsions of the Bowels. It is a singular thing against cold and moist Distempers of the Head, Brain and Nerves; and is good against Dullness, Drowsiness, Heaviness, Sleepiness, Apoplexy, Falling-sickness, Convulsions, Palsies, and the like Diseases, being bathed outwardly upon the Parts affected, and taken inwardly Morning, Noon and Night from 1 dram to 3 drams, in any proper Vehicle. In Diseases of the Head, it will be also good to smell to it often, and sometimes to snuff it up the Nostrils, by which it eases Pains of the Head, and helps against Vertigo's, and other cold and moist Distempers of those Parts.

XIX. *The Acid Tincture.* It is more Stomack than the former, and a powerful Resister of the Scurvy, and all its Symptoms. It opens Obstructions of the Viscera, provokes the Terms, prevails against the Cachexia and Green-sickness in young Women, more especially if it is given with a proportional quantity of *Tinctura Martis*. It removes Laziness and Weariness of the Body, comforts the weak Bowels, and strengthens the whole universal Frame. Dose so much as may make the Vehicle

pleasantly sharp; and may be taken three or four times a day, according as the Occasion may require. Outwardly applied to the Skin, it is of singular good Use against Freckles, Lentils, Spots, Sun-burning, Tanning, Yellowness and Brownness of the Skin, Scurf, Morphew, Leprosy, and other like Deformities thereof, being gently applied or laid thereupon.

XX. *The Oily Tincture.* It is a singular good thing against Palsies, Gouts, Lameness, Numbness, Coldness of any Part, Pains and Aches of the same; as also Cramps and Convulsions, being daily taken inwardly Morning, Noon and Night in any proper Vehicle, from 20 drops to 60, according to the Occasions and Necessities for the same; but it is also to be used outwardly at the same time, by anointing it well upon all the parts affected, twice a day, viz. Morning and Evening. Inwardly taken, it is also good against the Stone, Gravel, Sand, or any Tartarous Matter in the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, opening Obstructions of those Parts, and causing Urine to be plentifully evacuated.

XXI. *The Saline Tincture.* It may be given inwardly against Obstructions of the Urinary Passages from 40 to 80 drops, or more, in any Diuretick Vehicle; but is used chiefly externally against all sorts of Defecations of the Skin, as Scurf, Morphew, Leuce, Leprosy, Tettars, Ring-worms, Rushes, Boils, Pimples, and other like Disaffections. It is also said to cure the Itch, being well rubbed in twice a day upon all the Parts affected.

XXII. *The Spirit.* How this Spirit is to be made see the *Second Edition* of our *Pharmacopœia Bateana*, lib. 1. cap. 2. sect. 67. It has all the Virtues of the Spirituous Tincture, with this Advantage, that it is a much finer and purer Medicine to see to, and a much pleasanter Preparation to be taken. It may be given from 20 drops to 60 in any proper Vehicle, two or three times a day. It prevails against the Scurvy, Dropsie, Jaundice, Stone and Gout.

XXIII. *The fixed Salt.* It is admirably Diuretick and Antiscorbutick, and carries off the Morbifick Cause of the Scurvy, Dropsie, Jaundice, Gout, Stone, Struma, Cachexia, Chlorosis, Rickets, &c. by Urine, opening all manner of Obstructions. Dose from 1 Scruple to 2 Scruples.

## C H A P. CLXXI.

### Of C R O S S - W O R T.

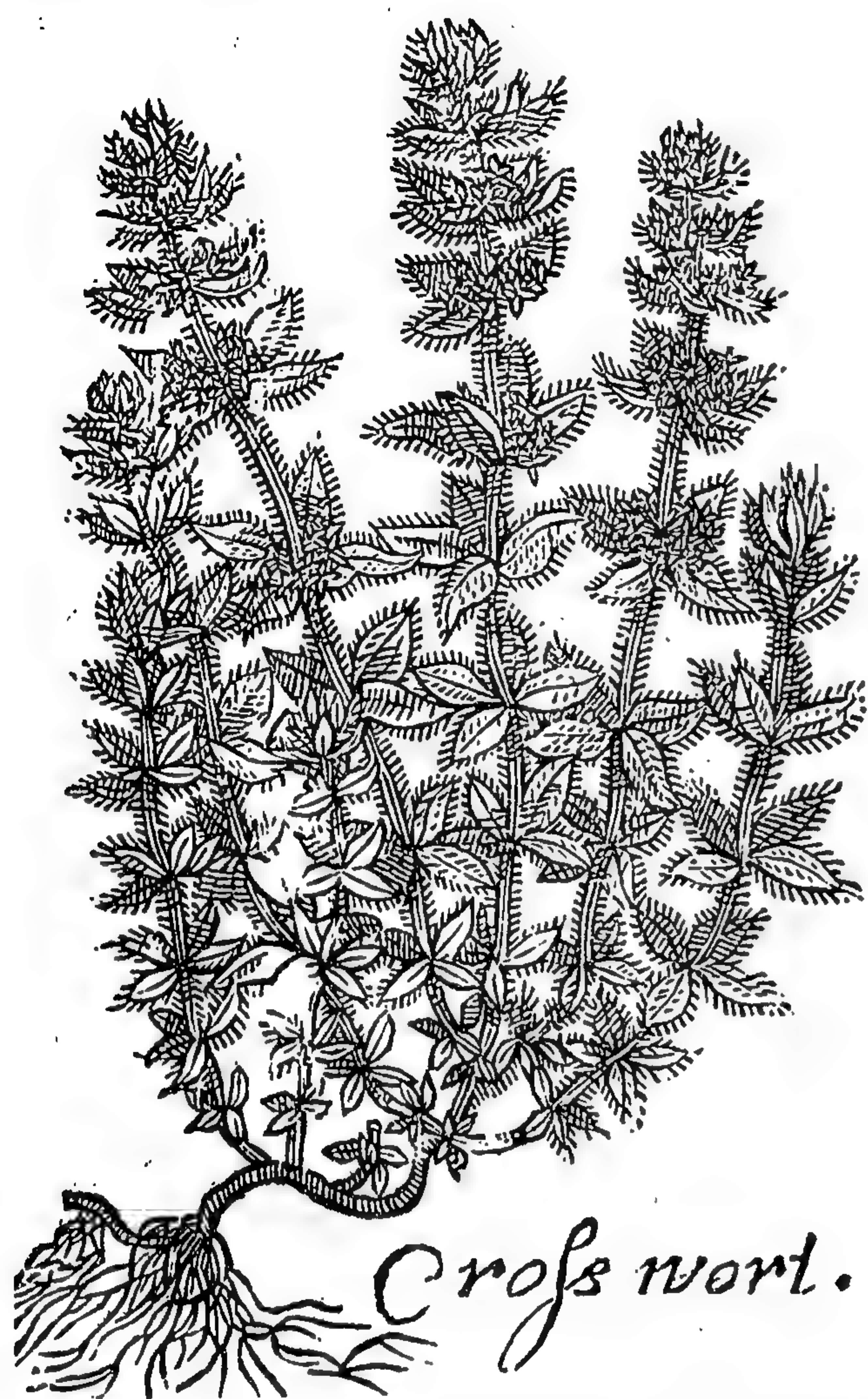
I. *THE Names.* This Plant, as it was unknown to the ancient *Greeks*, so it has no *Greek* Name retaining to it: but it is called in *Latin*, *Cruciata*, and *Crucialis*, from the Situation of the Leaves. *Thalius* calls it *Cruciata herniaria*; and *Lobel*, *Cruciata minor*, to distinguish it from *Gentiana Crucciata*. *Lugdunensis* calls it *Asperula aurea*; it is also called *Gallium Secundum Tragi*, for his *primum* is *Gentiana Crucciata*, *Bauhinus* calls it *Cruciata hirsuta*: in *English*, *Cross-wort*, and *Golden Cross-wort*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make four kinds thereof, as the *Cruciata vulgaris*, our Common Cross-wort: *Cruciata minor lutea*, Small yellow Cross-wort: *Cruciata minor montana*, Small Mountain Cross-wort; and *Cruciata minima muralis*, The least Wall Cross-wort: but as of these, there is but one, and that is the first of them which grows in *England*, so we shall take the Pains only to describe it.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root which is very small and full of Fibres, which taking hold of the Earth, spreads with the Branches over a great deal of



of Ground, which perishes not in the Winter, tho' the Leaves die away every Year, and spring again afresh. From this Root spring up square hairy brown Stalks, something more than a foot high, having four small, broad and pointed hairy, yet smooth, not rugged, yellow green Leaves, growing at every Joint, each against other cross-wise, from whence proceeds the Name. Towards the tops of the Stalks, at the Joints with the Leaves, in three or four rows upwards, stand small, pale, yellow Flowers, after which come small, blackish, round Seed, four for the most part contained in every Husk.



IV. *The Places.* It grows in many moist Grounds, as well Meadows as other wild and untill'd places about London: in the Church-yard at Hampstead, near London: at Wye in Kent: at Rand, near Ringmore in Sussex, along the High-way; and in a Pasture adjoining to the Church-yard at Hampstead by the Mill: also in a Lane or Highway beyond Charlton; a small Village near Greenwich, and in several other places.

V. *The Times.* It flowers for the most part from May all the Summer long, in one place or other, as it grows more or less in the Sun; and the Seed ripens soon after.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is temperate in respect of Heat or Cold; and dry in the second degree. It is singularly Astringent; and admirably Traumatick or Vulnerary.

VII. *The Specification.* It is dedicated to the Cure of green Wounds, Ulcers and Ruptures.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Pouder. 5. An Ointment or Balsam. 6. A Cataplasme. 7. A Spirituous Tincture. 8. An Acid Tincture. 9. An Oily Tincture.

## *The Virtues.*

IX. *The liquid Juice.* Taken to 2 or 3 ounces in Red Port Wine, or Wine mixed with Water, it stops inward Bleedings, as also the Bleedings of inward Wounds, and consolidates and heals them: applied also outwardly to green Wounds, it does the same; for by closing the Lips of Wounds quickly together, the Cure soon after succeeds.

X. *The Essence.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, but more powerful for the same Intentions: Camerarius says it helps to expectorate Flegm out of the Thorax, and is good against the Obstructions of the Lungs or Stomach; as also other Obstructions in the Meseraick Veins, Lacteals, and other Viscera. Dose 2 or 3 ounces in Wine, &c.

XI. *The Decoction.* It has the same Virtues with the Juice and Essence, but not full out so effectual: nevertheless, (the Decoction being made in Wine, or in Water with Wine added to it) it is often given as a Wound-drink, in which way of Exhibition it is very efficacious: and mixed with Spirit of Wine, it is good to cleanse old running Sores, and putrid Ulcers; cleansing the same, and inducing them to a speedy healing. It cures also Ruptures.

XII. *The Pouder.* It is made of the dry'd Leaves. Taken to a dram Morning and Evening, it is good to stop any inward Bleeding, spitting of Blood, pissing of Blood, or Bloody-flux: the same it does also being applied to any bleeding Wound. It also dries up Moisture in Ulcers, and stops the Flux of any running Sore, being applied after washing the same with the Juice, Essence or Decoction of the same Plant before specified.

XIII. *The Ointment or Balsam.* They cleanse, and are admirably drying and healing; give Ease where the Pain is extravagant, allay the Inflammation, breed Flesh where it is wanting; dry up the Moisture, and produce the Cicatrize in a very short time.

XIV. *The Cataplasme.* Made of the green Herb with the Pouder of the dried Herb, and applied, it stops the Bleeding in Wounds, prevents the Afflux of Humors, and so by consequence Pain and Inflammation. Applied to simple Contusions, it discusses them, and quickly restores the Part to its former State of Health.

XV. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It heals inward Wounds, and stops inward Bleedings, restores the Tone of the Bowels being hurt, is good against Ruptures, Bloody-fluxes, Diarrhea, Lienteria, and the Hepatick-flux, and has indeed all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence. Dose 1 or 2 ounces in Wine, or any other fit Vehicle.

XVI. *The Acid Tincture.* It is good to expectorate tough and viscid Humors, opens Obstructions of the Viscera, strengthens the Stomach, and helps a decayed Appetite: it may be taken inwardly in Wine to a grateful Acidity every day, two, three or four times a day: if mix'd with Water to a Gratefulness, and a little dulcified with Syrup of Clove-gilliflowers, it abates the Heat of Fevers, allays Inflammations of the Lungs, quenches Thirst, and represses Vapors, being taken as ordinary Drink.

XVII. *The Oily Tincture.* It is eminently good against Punctures of the Nerves, heals nervous Wounds, gives ease in the Gout tho' never so extream, and in a short time cures it: it strengthens the Joints, and is singularly good against Convulsions and Palsies, being duly anointed upon the Parts affected.

## C H A P. CLXXII.

### of C R O W F O O T Meadow.

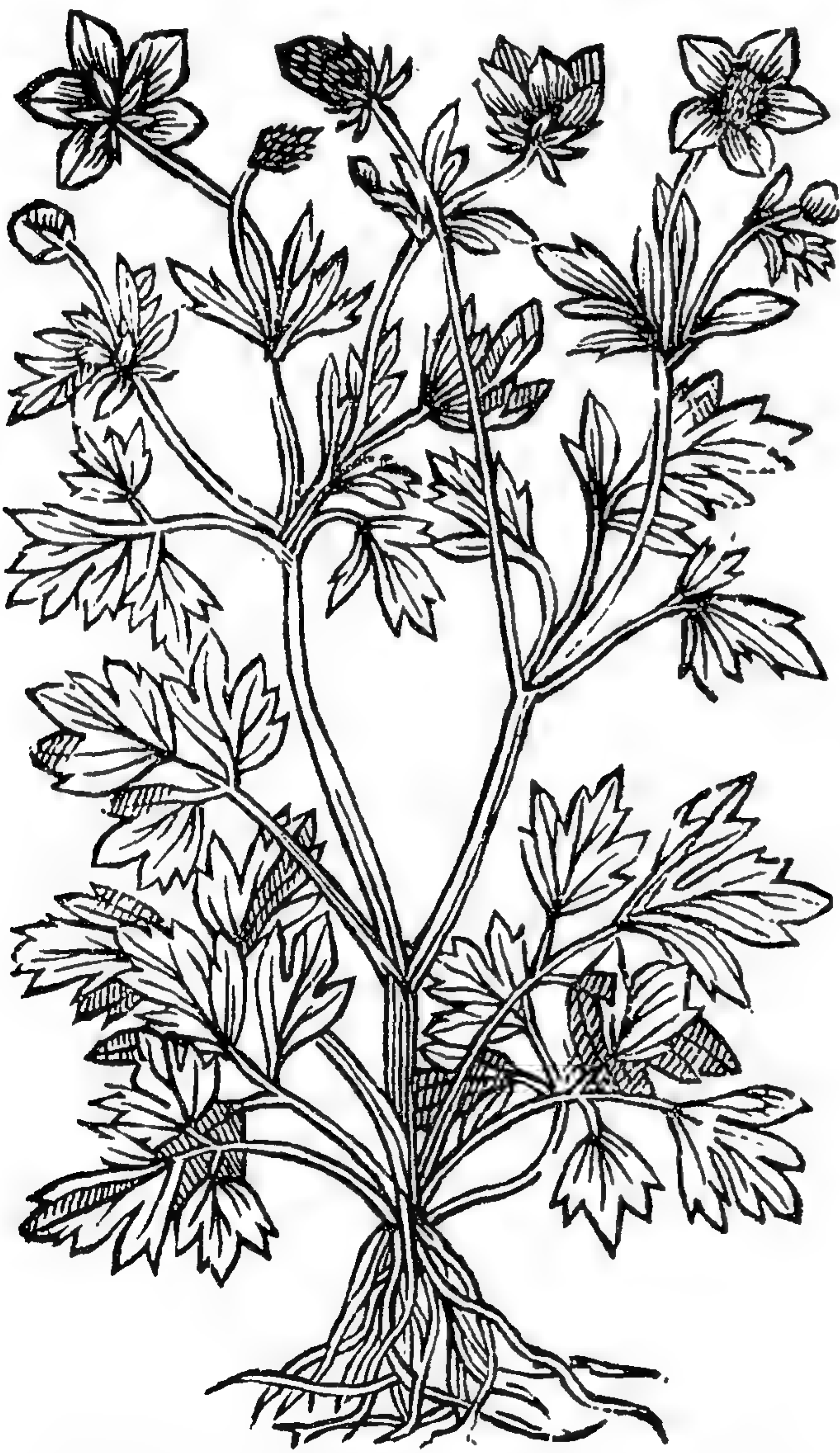
I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, Βατεχον, (Frog-wort:) in Latin, Ranunculus, also Pes Corvi, and Pes Corvinus: in English, Crowfoot, King Cob, Gold Cups, and Butter-flowers.



I. The kinds. Authors are in a Wood about this Plant, and make so many general kinds thereof, that it is difficult to reduce each Species to its proper Classis. However, since we intend only to treat of them which grow in England, (setting aside the *Ranunculi Montani*, which were never known to grow with us in our Country) and that we may be intelligent to the Vulgar, we shall divide them into the five following Classes, viz. 1. Βατεράχον λειμώνιον, *Ranunculus Pratensis*, Meadow Crowfoot, of which in this Chapter. 2. Βατεράχον πέδιον, *Ranunculus Agrestis*, Field, or Fallow-field Crowfoot, of which in Chap. 173. 3. Βατεράχον ὑδροδεν, *Ranunculus Nemeralis*, of which in Chap. 174. 4. Βατεράχον ὑνυδεν, *Ranunculus Aquaticus*, Water Crowfoot, of which in Chap. 175. 5. Βατεράχον ἡμερον, *Ranunculus Hortensis*, Garden Crowfoot, of which in Chap. 176. following.

III. Of Meadow Crowfoot we have growing with us five several kinds, 1. *Ranunculus Pratensis communis*, The Common Meadow Crowfoot. 2. *Ranunculus pratensis dulcis, simplex* and *multiplex*, Meadow Crowfoot sweet, (or not biting) single and double flowred. 3. *Ranunculus pratensis repens*, Common creeping Meadow Crowfoot. 4. *Ranunculus Bulbosus sive Tuberosus*, Knobbed or Tuberous Crowfoot. 5. *Ranunculus Globosus*, Globe Crowfoot.

Common Meadow Crowfoot.



IV. The Descriptions. Common Meadow Crowfoot (whose Branches or Stalks stand upright, and bend not down again unto the Ground, neither creep thereon, or spread, taking root again in divers places, as the third kind following does) has a white Root, which is almost wholly fibrous; from whence spring up many large dark green Leaves, cut into divers parts, somewhat resembling the spreading of a Crows Foot, having a very sharp, hot and burning Taste, very much biting the Tongue, and blistering the Skin, if laid thereon, not much less than any other hot Corroding and Exulcerating Herb can do; which Leaves have now and then some blackish Spots upon them, but these Spots happen not in all, nor in all places.

Among these Leaves rise up small twiggy Stalks, which stand upright, a foot high, or higher, sometimes (according to the goodness of the Ground) a foot and half high; at the tops of the Stalks and Branches come forth many fine yellow Flowers, glittering of a Golden color, having five Leaves apiece; the middle part of which Flowers are filled with many small Threads of like color; which being past, the Seed follows, contained in a rough Ball or Husk. Of this kind there is also one with double Flowers.



Sweet Meadow Crowfoot

V. The second, or sweet kind, has a Root consisting of many white Fibres, as the former, from whence rises up several great, broad, dark, green Leaves, spread upon the Ground, a little hairy, cut in on the edges into five Divisions, and a little dented also about, especially at the ends, and of a paler yellowish green on the underside, of a sweet and not unpleasant Taste; for I call it Sweet Crowfoot, not because it smells sweet, but because it has no sharp, biting or exulcerating Taste, as most of the other Crowfoots have, being so sweet, soft and pleasant, that the People in many places do stew the Leaves, when they are young, with other Herbs, to eat them after the manner of a boiled Sallet. From among these Leaves rise up several hairy Stalks, a foot or foot and half high, with some Leaves upon them more divided, and cut into smaller and narrower parts than those which are lower. At the tops of these Stalks and Branches stand many fair Golden yellow colored Flowers, with yellow Thrums in their middle, so very like to the former Common Meadow Crowfoot, that they are not easy to be discerned asunder: the rough Heads and Seed following them are also like the other before described. Of this kind there is one also with double Flowers.

VI. The third, or creeping kind, has a white and thready Root, from whence spring forth several Leaves, which are divided into many parts, commonly into three, sometimes into five, cut here and there in the edges, as if they were snipt, of a deep green color, upon which are found divers white Spots. From among these Leaves spring up the Stalks, which are round





Creeping Meadow  
Crowfoot

broad, dark green Leaves next the Ground, standing upon long Foot-stalks, which Leaves are deeply cut or jagged into five, six or seven Divisions, and besides nipt in or dented on the edges; among which rises up a Salk, divided towards the top into some Branches: on the Salk are set such-like Leaves as are below, but smaller. On the tops of the Salk and Branches grow several large fair yellow Flowers, consisting of five Leaves apiece, or rather of eleven Leaves for the most part, set or placed in three rows, and always folded inwards, or rouled up together like a round Ball or Globe, like a close Flower never blowing, (from whence came the Name:) they have many yellow Threads in the middle, standing round about a green rough Head, which in time grows to be full of small Knobs, wherein is contained small black Seed.

IX. The Places. They all grow in Fields and Meadows, or Pasture-Grounds, thro' all England, especially the four first kinds. The fifth kind grows wild in most places of Lancashire and Yorkshire, and other bordering Shires in the Northern parts of this Kingdom, almost in every Meadow; but has not been yet found wild in any of the Southern or Western parts of England.

X. The Times. They flower in May and June, and the Seed is ripe in July and August.

XI. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses, see in Chap. 176. following, where they will be handled at large.

## C H A P. CLXXIII.

### Of CROWFOOT Field.

THE Names. It is called in Greek, Βατεχρον ἀνθεράνιον ἢ τὸ ἀργεῖον: in Latin, *Ranunculus arvens*, vel *arvorum*; and in English, Field or Fallow-Field Crowfoot.

#### Fallow field Crow foot



II. The

round, and something hairy; some of them bend down towards the Ground, trailing as it were, and put forth many Roots at the Joints, which are small white Fibres, by which it takes hold of the Ground, and so encreases or spreads it self far about. Some of the principal Stalks stand upright, a foot high or higher, and sometimes they seem to be rather leaning than upright: at the tops of these Stalks and their Branches come forth the Flowers, consisting of five Leaves apiece, and of a glorious Gold yellow color, and a Golden-colored Thrumb in the middle, which being past, yield knobby rough Heads of Seed, very like to the first. The sharp Taste of the Leaves and Flowers are also like to the same. Of this kind there is also one with double Flowers, which is nurs'd up in Gardens.

VII. The fourth, or tuberous kind, has a Root white and round, of the bigness sometimes of a Wall-nut, and sometimes much less, not much bigger than a Bean or large Filbert, with some long Fibres, especially at the end of it, which is of a more sharp and biting Taste than any of the former: from this Root spring up divers Leaves, much more cut in and divided than any of the former, every one of them standing on a short Foot-stalk, of an over-worn green color: among which rise up several slender Stalks, a foot or foot and half high, with some Leaves thereon at the Joints, more divided, and into longer and narrower parts than those below; at the tops of the Stalks and Branches come forth fair shining Gold-colored Flowers, consisting of five Leaves apiece, like the former kinds, with many Threads in the middle, standing about a green Head; which after the Flowers are past, grows to be more rough or prickly than the seedy Heads of any of the foregoing. Of this kind is that thought to be which bears double yellow Flowers, one out of another, called *Anglicus bulbosus* or *tuberosus*. Also another, whose Flower is single, and red, like an Orange.

VIII. The fifth, or Globe kind, (called in the Northern Countries of England, where it grows, Locker Goulous) has a Root composed of many blackish Fibres or Strings, from whence rise many fair,



II. The Kinds. It is a singular Plant, and is called by Lobel in his Icones, *Ranunculus arvorum*; and is the same with *Ranunculus arvensis* Gesneri, *Ranunculus arvensis echinatus* Bauhini, *Ranunculus Jegetalis* Cordi; *Ranunculus Sylvestris tertius* Dodonæi & Lobelii in *Observationibus*, Fallow-field Crowfoot.

III. The Description. It has a small white fibrous Root, from whence spring forth some deeply jagged Leaves upon long Foot-stalks, but smaller than any of the former, and divided into many narrower parts, of an over-worn green color; they are fat and thick, much jagged, and something resembling (says Gerard) the Leaves of Sampire, but not near so green. From among these Leaves rises up a Stalk about a foot or more high, which towards the top is divided into other Branches; the Leaves on the higher part of the Stalk are more jagged or divided than those which are lower. The Flowers grow at the tops of the Branches, which are consisting of five small Leaves, of a pale or faint yellow color, which being pass'd away, there come Clusters of rough and sharp-pointed Seed, set as it were in Heads, many together.

IV. The Places. It is found chiefly in Ploughed Lands and Fallow Fields in many parts of England; the Latins called it *Ranunculus arvorum*, because it is commonly found in Fallow Fields, where Corn has lately been sown, and so may be called Corn Crowfoot.

V. The Times. It flowers in May and June; the Seed ripening in the mean while in August and September.

VI. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues thereof are the same with the Common Meadow Crowfoot, which may be found at large in Chap. 176. following.

## C H A P. CLXXIV.

### Of C R O W F O O T Wood.

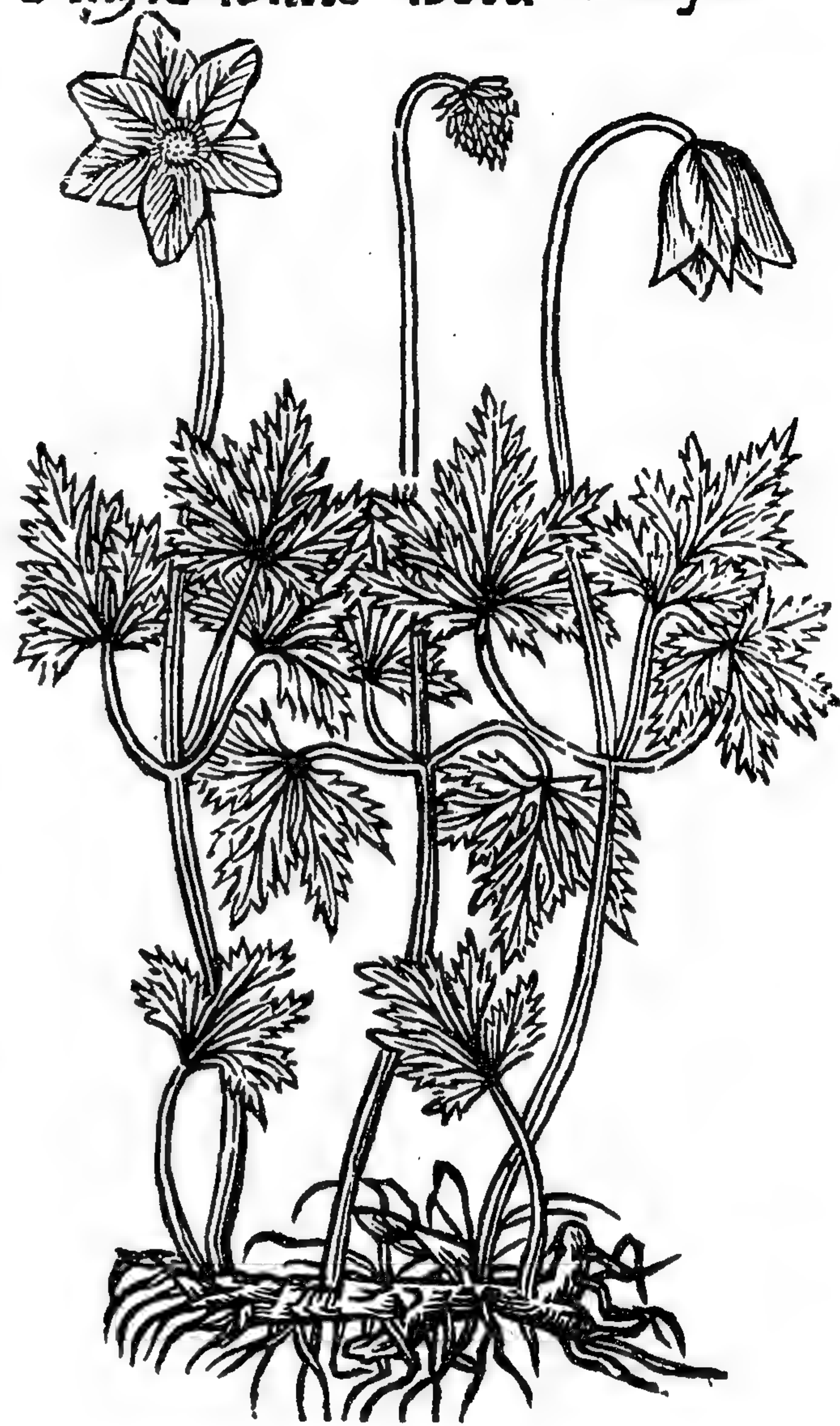
I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, Βατεχμων; in Latin, *Ranunculus Nemoralis*; and in English, Wood Crowfoot.

II. The Kinds. There are, 1. *Ranunculus nemorosus albus simplex*, *Ranunculus Phragmitis* Gesneri, *Ranunculus Sylvestris* Tragi, White single-flowered Wood Crowfoot. 2. *Ranunculus nemorosus albus minor*, *Ranunculus nemorosus Anemones flore minor* Bauhini, The least or lesser white Wood Crowfoot. 3. *Ranunculus nemorosus flore Carnei*, & *flore purpureo*, The single bluish and purple Wood Crowfoot. 4. *Ranunculus nemorosus luteus*, The yellow Wood Crowfoot. 5. *Ranunculus nemorosus dulcis*, *Ranunculus sylvestris secundus* Tragi, *Ranunculus Auricomus* Lobelii, Sweet Wood Crowfoot. 6. *Ranunculus montanus albus minor simplex*, *Ranunculus Alpinus albus*, The lesser single white Mountain Crowfoot. 7. *Ranunculus Virginensis vel Virginianus albus*, White Virginian Crowfoot.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or White single-flowered, has a Root commonly of the bigness of a Wheat Straw, not growing right down, but creeping at length, under the upper Crust of the Earth, spreading into several small Knobs, like Branches or Arms, of a dark brown color on the outside, and white within, of a sharp biting Taste, inflaming the Mouth. From this Root rise up two or three Stalks, about an Hand

breadth high or more, about the middle whereof come forth usually three Stalks of Leaves, each being something broad, hard, and cut in on the edges into three parts, of a sad green color, and dented also: the Stalk rises up two or more inches high, bearing at the top one single Flower, hanging down the Head for the most part, consisting of five Leaves, somewhat broad, and almost round-pointed, of a light bleuish color on the outside, before it is blown open, but white afterwards, and more white on the inside, having a few white Threads in the middle, tipped with yellow, standing about a green Head; which growing ripe in length of time, is something like the other Heads of Crowfeet, composed of many small Seeds compacted together.

### Single white wood Crowfoot.



IV. The second, or least, or lesser White kind, has a Root small and long, and creeping under the upper Crust of the Earth, like the former, and it has such-like Leaves as the other single White kind, divided into three parts, and each of them into others again, standing upon little long Foot-stalks, but they are much lesser, so that the whole Leaf hereof is not much bigger than one of the Divisions or Parts of the other: the Stalk is very small, with few Leaves thereon, divided in two places more than the lower, little more than two inches high: at the top grows a white Flower, consisting of six white Leaves, with a few yellowish Threads in the middle; which being pass'd away, leaves a round Head composed of many small Seeds, not much unlike the former.

V. The third, or single bluish-colored Wood Crowfoot, is in its Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Flowers, Heads, Seeds, and Form of Growing, like unto the former; so that until it is in flower, there can scarcely any difference be discerned: but when the Flower appears, it shews it self much more reddish on the outside, and of a fair pale purple or bluish color on the inside, which makes it a distinct Species of it self, differing from the rest. But sometimes different Varieties are found of this kind, having its Stalk something



thing browner, and its Flower of a pale purplish blew color, (from whence it is called *Ranunculus flore purpureo coeruleo*) like unto a pale Violet Flower, without any great Smell. These three foregoing kinds the Italians call Wild Ginger, either because the Roots of them all are very sharp, hot, and biting the Tongue, like Ginger; or because their Roots do grow a little spreading into several Arms or Tuberosities, like to Ginger.

VI. The fourth, or yellow kind, has Roots very like to the first described in this Chap. from whence spring forth such-like Stalks of Leaves, and growing in the same manner; but the Leaves are not so broad, nor so hard in handling, and are more deeply cut into more long and narrower parts, each also dented about the edges, especially about the ends of the Leaves, which are of a darker green color. From between these Stalks of Leaves shoots forth sometimes but one, and sometimes two or three Stalks, at the top of each of which grows one Flower, something smaller than the former, consisting generally of six or seven, and sometimes of eight Leaves, which are of a fair pale yellow color, with many small Threads in the middle, which being pass'd away, there succeed like Heads of Seed, as in the others. These Flowers have the least Smell of them all. And unto this kind belongs that sort of Anemone (but rather Crowfoot) which Dodonæus calls *Trifolia*, having the Leaves parted into three, snipt about the edges, and which bears a whitish bluish Flower.

Golden haired Crow foot



VII. The fifth, or Auricomus of Lobel, which is the sweet Wood kind, has a Root composed of many white Strings or Fibres, like unto some others, but neither its Root nor Leaf, has any sharp biting Taste in them, but are almost Tasteless. From this Root spring up Leaves first of all, which are round, not much unlike to Violet Leaves, and not divided in the least; but those which spring up next after them, are more divided; and so also those which grow after up-

on the Stalk, are still more divided than the former. The Flowers are small, and of a fair shining Gold-yellow color, standing at the tops of the Stalks, like unto the Common kinds of Crowfeet. After the Flowers are pass'd away, come the rough Heads, like a small Strawberry, in like manner as other Crowfeet have, in which Heads are contained the Seed, many set together.

VIII. The sixth, or lesser single white Mountain Crowfoot, has Roots greater than any of the kindred of Crowfeet; from which Root spring forth fair, large, well-spread Leaves, (standing upon a long Foot-stalk) which are cut into five Divisions, and somewhat dented about the edges, green on the upper side, and paler underneath, having many Veins running thro' the Leaves: these Leaves are like those of the Common Crowfoot, but greater, of a deep green color, much like to those of the yellow Aconite, called *Aconitum luteum Ponticum*: it has great fat Stalks, about two feet or more high, spread into many Branches; at the tops of which come forth white Flowers, consisting of five Leaves apiece, with small yellow Chives in the middle, smelling like the Flowers of May or Haw-Thorn, but more pleasant; after which comes the Seed, which is contained in Heads, like to the other Crowfeet.

IX. The seventh, or Virginian Crowfoot, has a reddish, thick, tuberous Root, with some small Fibres springing from it: from which shoot forth three or four somewhat large, broad, whitish-green Leaves upon long Foot-stalks, rent or torn on the edges for the most part; among which rises up a slender, round, naked Stalk, five, six or more inches high, bearing one white Flower at the top, made of ten or twelve small, narrow and pointed Leaves, with a few yellowish Threads in the middle, set about a greenish Head, which in time grows to be a long slender Pod, in which is contained round whitish Seed.

X. The Places. They are almost all found growing in Woods, Groves and Orchards in most places of this Land. The fourth is found as well by Brook-sides, which pass by Meadows, as in Woods, and by Hedge-sides. The sixth, is called *Ranunculus Alpinus*, because that those which first found it, met with it upon the Alpine Mountains; however, since it has been found to grow plentifully Wild in England, especially in Hampstead Wood, from whence it has been transplanted into Gardens. The seventh bears in its Name the place of its Growth, but it has been found in many other parts of Florida.

XI. The Times. They flower pretty early in the Spring, sometimes in March, but for the most part in April; and sometimes in May; and the Seed is ripe in June, July and August.

XII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses, see in Chap. 176. these being of the same Nature with those others, where you may have them at large.

## C H A P. CLXXV.

### Of CROWFOOT Water.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, Βαραγγιον; in Latin, *Ranunculus aquaticus*; and in English, Water Crowfoot.

II. The Kinds. Authors make several kinds of Water Crowfoot; as, 1. Water Spear-wort. 2. Water Ivy. 3. Water Star-wort; none of which we can admit into this Kindred; for tho' they be hot, like the



the *Crowfoot*, yet they have nothing of the Form, and we think that something more than the Taste ought to conclude the several Species, otherwise *Ginger* may as well be admitted into the same Stock, which I am sure no Herbarist will ever grant: for this Reason we refer you for the three afore-named kinds of Plants to their proper places, which you will find in some of the following Chapters of this Book.

III. The *Water Crowfeet* then, which we shall treat of in this Chapter, are four; 1. *Ranunculus aquaticus vulgaris major*; *Ranunculus aquaticus Hepaticæ facie Lobelii*; *Ranunculus aquatilis Dodonæi*; *Hepatica aquatica Lugdunensis*; *Hepatica palustris Thalii*; *Ranunculus aquaticus folio rotundo & capillatæ Bauhini*; The Common greater *Water Crowfoot*. 2. *Ranunculus aquaticus Communis minor*; *Ranunculus Hederulæ folio aquaticus*; The lesser *Water Crowfoot*. 3. *Ranunculus palustris Sardonius levis*; *Strumea*, & *Apiastrum Plinii*; by some *Apium Rifus*; *Herba Sardoia Guilandini*, (who says, when he was taken Prisoner by Pyrates, and carried into *Sardinia*, he saw this Herb growing plentifully there:) *Apium aquaticum Tragi*; *Apiastrum Cordi*; *Scelerata Apuleii*; *Ranunculus palustris Cordi in Historia Lugdunensis, Thalii, &c.* *Ranunculus palustris Apii folio levis Bauhini*; *Ranunculus palustris rotundior folio Lobelii*; Smooth-leav'd *Marsh Crowfoot*. 4. *Ranunculus palustris Sardonius languinosus*; *Ranunculus Sardonius verus Dioscoridis*; *Ranunculus Sardonius Anguilareæ*; *Apium Sylvestre*; *Ranunculus palustris Apii folio languinosus Bauhini*; *Ranunculus palustris secundus Matthioli*, & *Cordi in Historia*; The true *Sardinian Marsh Crowfoot*.



IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Common *Water Crowfoot*, has a small fibrous or thready Root, from whence comes forth a long trailing tender Stalk, with several Joints therein, at every one of which, that are under Water, come forth fine jagged or feathred Leaves, almost like fibres, but that they are

green, but towards the tops of the Branches growing above the Water, there be none of those fine Leaves at the Joints, or very few of them, but only round Leaves, growing upon short Foot-stalks, cut in a little, and dented about the edges: and with them come forth likewise small Milk-white Flowers, consisting of five Leaves apiece, with some Yellowness in the middle; after which come small, rough, round Heads of Seed, almost like to those of the Land *Crowfoot*.



Water Crowfoot the Lesser.

V. The second, or Small *Water Crowfoot*, with Alehoof or Ground-Ivy Leaves, has a great number of fibrous Roots, from whence come many long, slender, trailing Branches or Stalks, shooting forth at almost all the Joints under Water many other fibrous Roots, by which it spreads and very much encreases it self. From the several Joints, as well under as above the Water, spring forth several small, roundish, indented Leaves, not much unlike to those of Alehoof, standing each upon a pretty long Foot-stalk: from some of the Joints with the Leaves, and at the tops of the Stalks, come forth palish Flowers, having five pointed Leaves apiece; which being pass'd away, leave roundish Heads of Seed after them.

VI. The third, or Smooth-leav'd *Marsh Crowfoot*, has for a Root a Bush of small white Fibres; from whence shoot forth several Leaves upon long Foot-stalks, rounder than those growing higher upon the Stalk, and not so deep cut in, but dented about the edges: from among these Leaves shoot forth a round hollow Stalk, near a foot and half high, spreading it self forth into several Branches; the lower Leaves whereof are more round than those above, and are divided some into three parts, which are the first and lowest, others into five Divisions, and each of them dented about the edges, somewhat like unto Coriander Leaves, smooth, and of a pale green color; but those up higher on the Stalk and Branches are still more and more divided; so that some of the highest have no Division or Dent in them. At the tops stand small yellow Flowers, (but Cordus says, he has observed some to bear purplish:) which being pass'd away, there come in their places small, long, round Heads, of many crooked Seeds set together, as in some other sorts is to be seen: the whole Plant is as hot, sharp, biting, and as exulcerating as any of the other kinds, whether of the Land or Water.

VII. The fourth, or True *Sardinian Marsh Crowfoot*, has a Root consisting of a Bunch of white Strings, from which spring forth several large winged Leaves, upon Foot-stalks of a moderate length, divided into several parts, and dented about the edges: from among which spring up one or more Stalks, spreading themselves out into divers Branches, on which grow Leaves, some winged, and some single

Leaves



Leaves not winged, more divided than the former kind, and so hairy withal, as if there was a small soft Cotton upon them: at the tops of the Branches and Stalks come forth the Buds of Flowers, consisting of five broad-pointed Leaves apiece, each Leaf being on its end hollowed in a little; which being pass'd away, there succeed Heads of Seed, much like to the former.

VIII. The Places. These all grow in moist, wet and morish Grounds, and sometimes by the sides of Waters, Ponds and Ditches; and in plashy places. The first is common in many places of this Kingdom: the second is more rare to be met with: the third and fourth are often found; but not altogether so frequent to be seen as the first.

IX. The Times. They all flower in May and June; and their Seed is ripe some time after.

X. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses, see in the following Chapter, these being of the same Nature and Temperature with the former and those following.

## C H A P. CLXXVI.

### of CROWFOOT Garden.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, Βαρεχον κηρυττον κη σποδειμον, κη ημερον: in Latin, *Ranunculus Sativus vel hortensis*: in English, Garden or Manured Crowfoot.

II. The Kinds. Of the *Ranunculi* which Florists now stuff their Gardens withal, there is such a great number of them, that it would not be easie to name them all, much less to describe them; a great part of them being originally Exoticks or Foreigners, but being brought to us, and prospering well by a Cultivating in our Gardens, they were made free Denizens, (as it were) and so at length became Natives of our Soil. The chief of those which we shall take notice of in this Work, are the eighteen following.

III. 1. *Ranunculus montanus albus major*, Great single white Mountain Crowfoot. 2. *Ranunculus montanus albus humilior duplici flore*, The low double white Mountain Crowfoot. 3. *Ranunculus albus flore pleno*, The double white Crowfoot. 4. *Ranunculus pratensis flore multiplici*, The double yellow Field Crowfoot. 5. *Ranunculus Anglicus maximus multiplex*, Garden double yellow Crowfoot, called also Batchelors-buttons. 6. *Ranunculus Gramineus duplici flore*, Double-flowred Grass-like Crowfoot. 7. *Ranunculus Creticus Latifolius*, Broad-leav'd Candy Crowfoot. 8. *Ranunculus Creticus albus*, The white Candy Crowfoot. 9. *Ranunculus Asiaticus flore Rubro*, Single red Asian Crowfoot. 10. *Ranunculus Asiaticus flore Amplo rubro*, The large single red Asian Crowfoot. 11. *Ranunculus Asiaticus flore rubro vario simplici*, The single red stript Asian Crowfoot. 12. *Ranunculus Asiaticus flore luteo vario simplici*, The single yellow stript Asian Crowfoot. 13. *Ranunculus Asiaticus flore rubro pleno*, The double red Asian Crowfoot. 14. *Ranunculus Asiaticus flore pleno prolifero*, The double-buttoned red Asian Crowfoot. 15. *Ranunculus Thaliætri folio major*, The greater Columbine-leav'd Crowfoot. 16. *Ranunculus Thaliætri folio minor Asphodeli radice*, Small Columbine-leav'd Crowfoot. 17. *Ranunculus Illyricus*, Illyrian Crowfoot. 18. *Ranunculus folio Plantaginis*, The Plantain-leav'd Crowfoot.

IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Great single white Mountain Crowfoot, has a Root consisting of many long, thick, whitish Strings, running out from a thick Head. From this Root spring forth large and green Leaves, divided into three parts, and sometimes into five special Divisions, and besides each of those parts are dented about the edges, somewhat resembling the Leaves of Globe Crowfoot, but larger. The Stalk is two feet and half high, having three small Leaves, set at the Joint of the Stalk, where it branches out into Flowers, which stand four or five together upon long Foot-stalks, made of five white Leaves apiece, very sweet in Smell, with some yellow Threads in the middle, encompassing a green Head, which, with the Seed, is very like to other Crowfeet of the Wild kind. There is one of this kind which is also lesser.

V. The second, or Low double white Mountain Crowfoot, has a Root composed of many white Strings, from whence proceed three or four broad thick Leaves, almost round, and pretty deeply cut in on the edges, of a fine green and shining color on the upper side, but not so green underneath; among which rises up a small short Stalk, bearing one Snow-white Flower on the top, pretty large, and a little double as it were, with two rows of Leaves, with divers yellow Threads in the middle, standing about a green Head, which in time grows to be like to a small green Strawberry, and full of Seed. There is also a single sort of this kind, having only one white Flower on the top of each Branch, which is lesser, and consists only of five round-pointed Leaves, being in all things else like the other.

VI. The third, or Double white Crowfoot, is of the same kind with the first, but lesser; its Roots, Stalks and Leaves being alike in all respects: the chief Difference is in the Flowers, which in this Plant are very thick and double. The Leaves are fair, cut into five Divisions, and a little dented about the edges, green on the upper side, and pale underneath, having many Veins running thro' the Leaves: the Stalk grows not very high, not much above a foot and half in height, which is spread into many Branches, whose tops are reasonably stored with double white Flowers, as aforesaid.

VII. The fourth, or Double yellow Field Crowfoot, has a Root running and creeping under the Ground, like as the single does; from whence proceeds its Leaves and Stalks, in which there is but little difference from the single Wild kind, which grow in every Meadow, being large, and divided into four or five parts, and indented about the edges, but they are something smaller, and of a brisker green. The Flowers stand on the many Branches, much divided or separated; being not very great, but very thick and double.

VIII. The fifth, or Great English Garden double yellow Crowfoot, called also Batchelors-buttons, has a Root round, like unto a small white Turnep, with several Fibres adjoining to it: from which arise many great black, green Leaves, jagged and cut into three Divisions, each to the middle Rib: from among these Leaves spring up the Stalks, which spread themselves out into several Branches, and which have some smaller Leaves on them; and those which are next under the Branches, are long and narrow, the higher up, the longer and narrower. The Flowers are of a greenish yellow color, very thick and double of Leaves; in the middle of which rises up a small Stalk, bearing another double Flower, like to the other out of which it grows, but smaller; which being pass'd away, there comes a roundish rough Head of Seed, much like to the other Crowfeet.

IX. The sixth, or Double-flowred Grass-like Crowfoot, has a Root composed of many thick, long, round,



round, white Strings, from whence proceed long and narrow Leaves, somewhat like unto Grass, or rather like to the Leaves of single Gilliflowers or Pinks, being small and sharp-pointed, a little hollow, and of a whitish green color. From among these Leaves spring up several slender Stalks, bearing at the tops each one small yellow Flower, which is double, as consisting of two rows of Leaves, with some Threads in the middle. There is also a single sort of this Species, the Flower being small, and consisting of five yellow Leaves, with yellow Threads in the middle, like to other Crowfeet.

X. The seventh, or Broad-leav'd Candy Crowfoot, has a Root somewhat like those of the Asian Crowfoot, or composed of a number of tough Roots, like those of the yellow Asphodil: it has the greatest and broadest Leaves of all the sorts of Crowfeet, being almost round, and without any great Divisions, dented a little about the edges here and there, as large or larger sometimes than the Palm of ones Hand; of a light green color, yet some of the Leaves are here and there deeply divided. Among these Leaves rises up a Stalk, not very high when it does first flower; but afterwards as the Flowers do open themselves, it grows to be about a foot and half high, having some Leaves on it deeply cut in and divided. The Stalk is also thick, round and stiff, and shoots it self forth into two or three Branches, at the setting on of which grow longish Leaves, a little dented about their ends. These Branches bear many fair yellow Flowers, consisting of five round-pointed Leaves apiece, standing each a little distance from other, so that the green points of the Cups shew themselves between them, and having yellow Threads in the middle, but become somewhat whitish when the Flower has stood blown a little time.

XI. The eighth, or White Candy Crowfoot, has a Root consisting of many small Grains or Kernels, of a dark or dusky greyish color, set together, and its Leaves are very like to the Leaves of the Red Asian Crowfoot, being somewhat broad and indented about the edges, some of the Leaves being cut in or gasht, making thereby as it were three Divisions, of a pale green color, with many white Spots in them. The Stalk rises up a foot high, with some Leaves on it, which are more divided than the lower, and divided at the top into two, and sometimes into three Branches, each of them bearing a fair Snow-white Flower, something large, included at first in a brownish Husk or Cup of Leaves, which afterwards stand under the Flowers, consisting of five white, large, round-pointed Leaves, having in their middle many blackish purple Thrums, encompassing a small, long, green Head, composed of many Scales, or chaffie whitish Husks when they are ripe. They yield Seed, but it is unprofitable, as yielding no new Plants. Some of this kind have their Flowers purple-edged: some again have their Flowers with Veins of the same purple; and some of them are edged with a bright red color, not differing in any other particular.

XII. The ninth, or Single red Asian Crowfoot, has a Root made of many Grains or small Kernels set together, and closing at the Head, but spreading it self, if it likes the Ground, under the upper Crust of the Earth into many Roots, encreasing from long Strings which run from the middle of the small Head of Grains, as well as from the Head it self. The lower Leaves are always whole, without Divisions, being only somewhat deeply indented about the edges: but the others which rise after them, are more cut in, sometimes into three, and sometimes into five Divisions, and notched also about the edges. The Stalk rises higher than any of the former, and has on it two or three smaller Leaves, more cut in and divided than those below; at the top whereof stands one

large Flower, consisting of five Leaves, every one of them being narrower at the bottom than at the top, and not standing round and close one to another, but with a certain distance between, of a dusky yellowish red color on the outside, and of a deep red on the inside, the middle being set with many Thrums of a dark purple color. The Head for Seed is long, and scaly or chaffy, and not profitable for sowing, as not springing again.

XIII. The tenth, or Large single red Asian Crowfoot, has a Root much like the former, its Leaves are broader and greater. The Stalk is much of the same height as the other, and branched out, with like Leaves thereupon: the Flower is also larger, and the Leaves thereof broader, being sometimes eight in a Flower, standing round and close one to another, of a deep red color, which makes it look the fairer, and have the more excellent shew: in all other respects, it is like the last.

XIV. The eleventh, or Single red stript Asian Crowfoot, has a Root, Stalk and Leaf very like to the two last foregoing, and in the manner of growing, differing chiefly in the Flower, which being red, like the two foregoing, has yet some yellow Stripes or Veins thro' every Leaf: these Stripes are sometimes but few and little, and sometimes so much that it seems to be party colored red and yellow. It is a very tender Plant, and apt to perish, unless carefully lookt after.

XV. The twelfth, or Single yellow stript Asian Crowfoot, has a Root not much unlike to any of the three last described, but the Leaves are very different, being very much divided. The Flower is large, of a fine palish green yellow color, consisting of six and seven, and sometimes of eight or nine round Leaves; the tops of which have reddish Spots upon them, and the edges also sometimes, with like purplish Thrums in the middle as the other have. It has been observed, that none of the kinds of Crowfeet with these kernelly Roots, ever bear so good Seed, which being sown, will spring up and grow in England; so that with us they can only be propagated from their Roots, by a careful and skilful looking after.

XVI. The thirteenth, or Double red Asian Crowfoot, has a Root so like to the Single red kind, at sect. 12. above, that none can perceive any difference between them, so also it is the same in its Stalk and Leaves, that the difference or kinds are not to be known till the Buds of the Flowers do appear, which after it is any thing forward, may be perceived to be greater and fuller than the Buds of the single kind. This double sort bears most commonly but one fair large double Flower on the tops of the Stalks, composed of many Leaves set close together in three or four rows, of an admirable Crimson color, declining to Scarlet, the outer Leaves being larger than the inner; and instead of Thrums, it has many small Leaves set together. It has also six small, narrow, green Leaves on the back-side of the Flower, where the Foot-stalk is joined to it.

XVII. The fourteenth, or Double buttoned red Asian Crowfoot, has Roots, Stalks, Leaves and Flowers so like the former, that before the time of flowering they are not to be distinguished one from another. The Flower is of the same Color and Duplicity, but herein they differ, that this has another double Flower growing upon a Foot-stalk issuing out of the middle of the first Flower, of the same color, but much smaller, which Gerard thinks does happen by reason of the Strength of the Root, and Goodness of the Soil where it is planted. It is a noble Flower, and of great Excellency.

XVIII. The fifteenth, or Greater Columbine-leav'd Crowfoot, has a Root made of a tuft of white Fibres



or Strings, very bitter, and creeps here and there, putting up new Shoots. The Leaves of this Crow-foot have long Stalks, and are very like unto the smaller Leaves of Columbines, or the Great Spanish Thalictrum, or Meadow-Rue, which has Leaves very like unto Columbine Leaves, four or five several ones rising from the Root. The Stalk grows up to the height of about half a yard, something reddish, and beset here and there with the like Leaves: at the top stand several small white Flowers, consisting of five Leaves apiece, with some pale white Threads in the middle: the Seed is round and reddish, and contained in small Husks or Horns. This is the *Aquilegia minor Daleschampii*, and *Ranunculus praecox secundus Thalietri folio Clusii*.

XIX. The sixteenth, or Small Columbine-leav'd Crowfoot, has a Root consisting of three, four or more, thick, short and roundish or oval yellow Bulbs or tuberous Productions from the main Root or Head, like unto the Asphodil Root. From this Root spring forth three or four winged Leaves spread upon the Ground, standing upon long Stalks, and consisting of many small Leaves set together, spreading from the middle Rib, every Leaf somewhat resembling the smallest and youngest Leaves of Columbines. The Flowers are white, standing at the tops of the Stalks, made of five round Leaves.

XX. The seventeenth, or Illyrian Crowfoot, has a Root which consists of a Bunch of small oval tuberous Roots or Grains; growing close together, with some Fibres adjoining, not much unlike to those of Pilewort: from whence spring forth (upon long Foot-stalks) three, four or more narrow greyish green Leaves, divided into four, five or more long slender parts, of a Silver-white shining color underneath, and covered with a certain Downiness. The Stalks are firm and round, but small, a foot high or more, having some such-like Leaves thereon about the middle, and spreading into three or four Branches, every top bearing a small shining pale yellow Flower, consisting of five Leaves, and sometimes two together upon a Stalk. There is a greater kind of this Plant, like to it in all respects, but only that the Leaves, Stalk and Flowers are greater and larger, the Leaves broader and greener on the upper side, and not fully of so Silver a white color underneath: the Flowers are of a fair deep yellow color, and greater than the former; but the Root has not so many small Grains of Kernels set together, from whence white Strings shoot forth, by which it is nourished and encreased.

XXI. The eighteenth, or Plantane-leav'd Crowfoot, has a Root composed of many white Strings or Fibres, proceeding from a Head which is somewhat hairy, and abides many Years; the Leaves wholly perishing in the end of Summer, and springing again in March: from this Root rise up three or four Leaves set on pretty long Foot-stalks, being somewhat long and broad, like unto Plantane Leaves, with Ribs therein, but more pointed at the ends, not divided or dented about the edges, but smooth and plain, with some Veins running thro' the length of them, and pointed at the ends, of a whitish grey green color, circled as it were with a white Down. The Stalk is firm, round and green, about half a yard high, bearing two or three longer Leaves, broad at the bottom, and encompassing the Stalk, which divides it self at the top into two or three small Branches, having every one of them a small long Leaf at the foot thereof, and a reasonable large Flower at the Head, (without any Smell) consisting of five white round-pointed Leaves, with many yellowish Threads in the middle, which growing ripe, has many Seeds set together, like to divers other kinds of Crow-foot.

XXII. The Places. The Names of most of these Plants shew whence they originally came; however, by Transplantation, they are now Natives of our own Land, being all of them found in some one or other of our Florist's Gardens, where they flourish admirably well.

XXIII. The Times. The Broad-leav'd Candy Crowfoot flower more early, viz. in March or April: the others flower from April to the end of June; and the Seed is ripe in July and August.

XXIV. The Qualities. The hot, biting and exulcerating kinds, (which are those only whose Virtues we design to give you in this place) are hot and dry in the fourth Degree; and exulcerating.

XXV. The Specification. They are peculiar for curing the Scrophula or Kings-Evil.

XXVI. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice of the Roots or Leaves. 2. An Essence. 3. A Powder of the Roots, Flowers or Leaves. 4. A Cataplasm of the same. 5. A Decoction. 6. An Ointment. 7. A distilled Water. Some are for using the Roots only, some for the Flowers, some for the Leaves, but they may be all taken and used promiscuously, according to the Intentions; but none of them to be used inwardly, being but little better than Poyson, by reason of their exulcerating Property; more especially the Illyrian Crowfoot, which some call *Apium Sylvestre*, and some *Apium Rifus*, but is not the true *Apium Rifus*, of which we speak in its proper place. But as to this Illyrian or Laughing Crowfoot, if it is taken inwardly, it is said to cause the Person to see divers strange Sights, and to kill them Laughing: without doubt, it hurts the Senses and Understanding, and rather causes Cramps, Convulsions, and Wringings or Drawings of the Mouth and Jaws awry, seeming to the Standers by as if the Patient Laughed, and dying in this Condition, to dye Laughing, whereas it was no Laughing, nor was the Party in any Condition to Laugh, but rather it was a violent Convulsion of the Nerves, causing the Man or Woman to die with great Torment.

## The Virtues.

XXVII. The liquid Juice. It is sharp and biting, good to bath gently those Parts of the Skin which are affected with Scurff, Morpew, Leprosie, Freckles, Spots, Yellowness, Roughness, &c. The Skin is first to be washed with warm Water very well, to loosen and open the Pores thereof; then being wiped dry, to be immediately bathed with this Juice, which is to be done twice a day. It is good also to dry away Scabs and Itch.

XXVIII. The Essence. It is powerful to all the Intentions aforesaid, but more drying. It is good to waste away and consume Warts, Corns, hard Scabs of the Skin, Ruggedness of the Nails, and other like Deformities of the Cutis. The Head being washed with it, it kills Worms at the Roots of the Hair, which eat the same and cause it to fall off. Neither Juice nor Essence, by reason of their Violence, are ever used inwardly.

XXIX. The Powder. It is cleansing and drying, and is good to be strewed into old, running and putrid Sores, and Ulcers which have Worms in them. Snufft up the Nostrils, it purges the Head and Brain by Sneezing.

XXX. The Cataplasm. Laid to the Wrists of the Hands, it is said to drive away Agues, especially if a little Bay Salt is also mixed with it. If it is made of the Root of the Bulbous or Tuberous kind, the Germans, as Camerarius says, apply it to Plague Sores and Pestilential Bubo's, to induce Maturation: and it is not unlike, for it will suppurate and



break other Apoftems or Tumors, being wifely applied. *Tragus* fays, That a bit of this Tuberous Root put to Teeth which do ake, or into an hollow Tooth, takes away the Pain; but Authors alfo fay, That many times it breaks thofe which are hollow, or caufes them to fall out. This Cataplafm (or the fimple Root) being applied to the Finger of one troubled with the Tooth-ach, eafes the Pain, which it does by Attraction, and thereby caufes a Pain in the Part to which it is applied. Applied to a foul Ulcer, it will cleanse it, and take away all the filthy and corrupt Matter therein, leaving the Sore fair, and eafily to be healed with other Vulneraries; but the Cataplafm is not to lye too long upon the Sore, by reafon of its Violence. Applied to Scrophulous Tumors or Kernels in the Neck, or under the Ears, called the Kings-Evil, it breaks them, and caufes them to wafte away. Authors fay, That applied to Hemorrhoids or Piles which fwell and bleed not, it helps to difcufs or take them away; but that it is in no wife to be applied to thofe which are open and bleed. Applied to a *Leuce* or spotted Leprofie, it kills the virulent Humor, and clears the Skin.

XXXI. *The Decoction.* It has the Virtues of the liquid Juice and Effence, but not full out fo efficacious. It cures Scabs and Itch, they being often washed therewith; and is good to take away Tanings, Sun-burnings, Freckles, Lentils, Yellownefs of the Skin, Scurff, Morphew, &c. It is good alfo to hinder the falling of the Hair, the Head being washed therewith warm; and then afterwards to be washed again with warm Water.

XXXII. *The Ointment.* It has all the Virtues of the Cataplafm, being anointed upon the Parts affected. The Cataplafm may alfo be made therewith, inftead of Hogs-Lard, by which means it will be yet fo much the more effectual.

XXXIII. *The diftilled Water of the whole Plant,* whilft it is in flower, is fafe to all the Purpofes aforefaid; and, as fome fay, is given with good Succefs inwardly, with Species *Lithontribon*, to provoke Urine when it is ftopt, and to break the Stone: and being ufed as a Wafh, it takes away moft of the ufual Deformities of the Skin.

XXXIV. *An Obfervation.* Tho' all thefe Preparations and Virtues aforegoing, are applicable to all the hot, biting and exulcerating *Crowfeet* promifcoufly, whether of the Land or Water, and that probably they may all do the fame things; yet they are generally and for the moft part praedicated (except in the Cafes where any particular one of them is named) of the moft Common and Meadow *Crow-foot*.

XXXV. *Obferv. 2.* That the *Sweet Crowfoot*, or that which has no fharp or biting Tafte, is held to be harmlefs, for the *Germans*, as *Tragus* fays, do eat it familiarly among other Herbs. *Tragus* alfo fays, That even this fweet kind will difcufs and difolve hard Tumors in any Part of the Body, being applied.

have it to be the *Hemerocallis* of *Dioscorides*: in *Englifh*, *Crown Imperial*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is of the Stock or Kindred of *Lillies*; and among the wonderful Variety of *Lillies* known at this day, of which fome are White, fome Orange Tawny, fome Red, fome Yellow, fome Blufh, fome Purple, fome Spotted, others without Spots; fome ftanding upright, others turning downwards, &c. This *Crown Imperial*, for its excelling Beauty and Statelinefs, exacts the firft place among them. Some have called it *Lilium Perficum*, but there is another which is more ufually called by that Name, as fhall be fhewed hereafter; and therefore we rather chufe to call it *Corona Imperialis*, the *Crown Imperial*, than by any other Name, for that this Name is now alfo more generally received. It is a fingular Plant of the kind, yet fome will have it, that there is a *single* and a *double fort*: but the Truth is, that as the Plant grows old, fo does it grow rich, bringing forth a Crown of Flowers among the uppermoft green Leaves, which is, their *double kind*, altho' indeed they are but one and the felf-fame Plant, which in time is thought to grow to a *Triple Crown*; all which is but accidental, and happens by the Age of the Root, and Fertility of the Soil.



*Crown Imperial.*

III. *The Description.* It has a thick, firm and folid bulbous Root, covered with a yellowifh Film or Skin, compofed of fewer, but much thicker Scales than any other Lilly, except the *Persian*, and does grow fometimes to be as great as a pretty big Childs Head, and fomewhat flat withal. From the fides whereof, and not from the bottom, it fhots forth long thick Fibres, which perifh every Year, having a hole in the midft thereof at the end of the Year, when the old Stalk is dry and withered, and out of the which a new Stalk does fpring again (from a Bud or Head to be feen within the Hollownefs on the one fide) the following Year: the Stalk then filling up the Hollownefs,

C H A P. CLXXVII.

## Of CROWN-IMPERIAL.

I. **T**HE Names. It has no *Greek* Name that we know of: the *Turks* call it *Tufai*, *Toufai*, *Tufchai*, *Turfani* and *Turfandi*: in *Latin*, *Corona Imperialis*, & *Lilium Byzantinum*; *Clusius* will



Hollowness, and thus springing up, rises up to be three or four feet high, being great, round, and of a purplish color at the bottom, but green above, beset from thence to the middle thereof, with many long and broad green Leaves, very like to the Leaves of our Common white Lilly, but something shorter and narrower, confusedly without Order, and from the middle upwards it is bare or naked without Leaves, for a certain space; and then it bears four, six or ten Flowers, more or less, according to the Age of the Root, and the Fertility of the Earth where it grows. The Buds at the first appearing are whitish, standing upright among a Bush or Tuft of green Leaves, smaller than those below, and standing above the Flowers; after a while they turn themselves, and hang downwards, every one upon its own Foot-stalk, round about the great Stem or Stalk, sometimes of an even depth, and sometimes again one lower or higher than another, which Flowers are almost in Form like to those of an ordinary Lilly, but somewhat lesser and closer, consisting of six Leaves, of an Orange color, striped with purplish Lines and Veins, which add a great Grace and Beauty to the Flowers. At the bottom of the Flowers next unto the Stalk, every Leaf thereof has on the outside a certain Bunch or Eminence sticking forth, of a dark purplish color; and on the inside there lies in those hollow bunched places, certain clear drops of Water, like unto Pearls, of a very sweet Taste, almost like to Sugar or Honey. In the midst of each Flower is a long white Stile or Pointel, forked or divided at the end; and six white Chives tipt with yellowish Pendants, standing close about it: after the Flowers are past, six-square Seed-Vessels appear, standing upright, winged as it were, or welted on the edges, yet seeming but three-square, because each couple of those welted edges are joined closer together. In these Pods or Vessels are contained broad, flat and thin Seeds, of a pale brownish color, like unto other Lillies, but much greater and thicker also. The Stalk of this Plant does sometimes grow flat, two, three or four Fingers broad, and then bears many more Flowers, but then generally they are smaller than when it bears round Stalks. Sometimes it happens that the Stalk is divided at the top, carrying two or three Tufts of green Leaves, without any Flowers on them: and sometimes likewise it bears two or three Heads or Crowns of Flowers (as we have before hinted at sect. 2. above) upon one Stalk; this is not often seen, but when it happens, it is merely accidental. The whole Plant, and every part thereof, Roots, Leaves and Flowers do smell somewhat strong, much like to the Scent of a Fox; which, if any do but come near it, they cannot chuse but smell it.

IV. The Places. This Plant was first brought from Constantinople into our Country among other bulbous Roots, and being made Denizens in our Gardens, they are now become Natives of our Land, where they thrive admirably well.

V. The Times. They flower in April, and sometimes in March, if the Weather is mild; and the Heads with Seed are ripe in the end of May and in June. It is quick in its Growth, but it springs not out of the Ground till the end of February or beginning of March.

VI. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses, are the same with those of the White and Orange-tawny Lilly, treated of in some of the following Chapters, to which you are referred.

VII. Observ. 1. To obtain the true color of the Flowers of this noble Plant: Take Sap-berries, and lay them in steep in a proportional quantity of fair Water for two hours, and mix a little Saffron in that Infusion, and it will give the perfect color, to limne or illumine the Flower withal.

VIII. Observ. 2. As in the bottom of each of these Bells, there is placed six drops of most pure clear shining Water, sweet in Taste, like to Sugar, resembling in Shew fair Oriental Pearls; these drops, if you take them away, new and fresh drops will immediately come in their places again. But if they may be suffered to continue in the Flower, they will never fall away, no, tho' you strike the Plant till it is broken.

## C H A P. CLXXVIII. Of C U C U M B E R Garden.

THE Names. It is called in Arabick, Chathe & Chethete: in Greek, Σίτις ἡσυε: in Latin, Cucumis & Cucumer Sativus: in English, Garden Cucumber.

II. The Kinds. Of these we make four several sorts, viz. 1. Cucumis vel Cucumer vulgaris, The Common Garden Cucumber. 2. Cucumis Anginus, The long Snake-like or Serpentine Cucumber. 3. Cucumis vel Cucumer Pyriformis, Pear-fashioned Cucumber. 4. Cucumis vel Cucumer Hispanicus, The Spanish Cucumber.



Garden Cucumbers.

III. The Descriptions. The first has a Root which is long and white, with divers Fibres adjoining to it, from whence spring forth many trailing rough green Branches, lying on the Ground; all along whereof grew several Leaves, which are rough, broad, uneven at the edges, and pointed at the ends, with long crooked twisting Tendrels or Claspers, coming forth at the same Joint with the Leaf, but on the other side thereof. Between the Stalks and the Leaves, at the Joints, come forth Flowers severally, each standing on a short Foot-stalk, opening it self into five Leaves, of a yellowish color; at the bottom of which grows



the Fruit, long, and green at first; but when it is through ripe, a little yellowish, having many Furrows and uneven Bunchings out the whole length of it, with long yellowish white flat Seed, lying dispersed in Rundles as it were, and very regularly thro' its whole Substance. The inward Pulp or Substance is clear or through shining, which together with the Seed is eaten a little before they be fully ripe: of this Cucumber there is the shorter, which is of an equal bigness in the body thereof; and the longer, of an unequal bigness at both ends; and a very long one, which is near a foot in length: there is also the early kind, called the French kind, which are the worst of all; and the Dantisk kind, which bears but small Fruit, growing on short Branches or Runners, of which kind the Cucumbers we usually Pickle are.

IV. The second, or Long Serpentine Cucumber, has a Root much like the former, having long trailing Branches, Tendrels and Leaves, (tho' lesser) much like the former. The Fruit, says Gerard, is very long, (and something twining, like a Serpent or Snake) which (says he) were at first made by Art and Manuring, and were afterwards so brought forth by Nature: for at first, when the Fruit was small and little, it was put into some hollow Cane, or other like thing made of purpose, in which the Cucumber did grow, and that in length according as the Case it was enclosed in would permit it. It grew long by reason of the narrow Hollowness in which it was enclosed, which being filled up, it encreased in length. The Seeds of this kind of Cucumber being sown, bring forth not such as it were before this Application of Art; but such as these are which Art has framed, which now of their own Growth are long, and oftentimes very crookedly turned; whence came the Name Anguini, or Long Cucumbers.

V. The third, or Pear-like fashioned Cucumber, has a fibrous or thready Root, from whence come many trailing Branches, lying flat upon the Ground, rough and prickly; whereon do stand at each Joint, one rough Leaf, sharp-pointed, and of an over-worn green color: among which come forth clasping Tendrels, and also slender Foot-stalks, on which do grow yellow Star-like Flowers: the Fruit is at first green and longish, which coming to its bigness, forms it self much like to a Pear, greenish on one side, and of a whitish green on the other, and is much about the largeness of a great Warden: the Seed is long, flat and whitish, like the other.

VI. The fourth, or Spanish kind, (which were brought out of Spain first to Strasburgh, and from thence to us) is a rare and beautiful Cucumber: it has a fibrous Root, from whence come forth rough and hairy trailing Branches, set with very large rough Leaves, sharp-pointed, in Form like unto the Leaves of the great Bur-dock, but more cut in or divided: among which at the Joints come forth upon tender Foot-stalks, fair, naked yellow Flowers; the which being past, the Fruit comes in its place a foot in length, green on the side towards the Ground, and yellowish on the Sunny part, straked with many Spots and Lines of divers colors, whose Pulp or Meat is hard and fast, like that of our Melon or Pom-pion.

VII. The Places. These Cucumbers all grow in Gardens, not only in England, but in most parts of the World, especially in all the more Southern Countries, where the Heat of the Sun makes them to grow and flourish admirably well.

VIII. The Times. They are planted in April, and they are fit for eating in June, July and August; and the Seed is fully ripe about the latter end of September.

IX. An Observation about Planting them. About

the middle of April, or something sooner, (if the Weather is warm) you must make a Bed or Bank of hot and new Horse-dung, taken from the Stable, and not from the Dung-hill, of an Ell in breadth, and two feet and half in depth, but of what length you please, accordingly as it may hold the quantity or numbers of the Seed you intend to use: this Bank you shall cover with Hoops or long slender Sticks, so bent and bowed, that you may cover the whole Bank or Bed with Mats or some other warm Covering, Straw, or the like, to keep it from the Injury of cold frosty Nights, that the Seeds which are planted or sown, may not be nipt: then shall you cover your Bed over with the best and fattest Earth, finely sifted thro' a Wire Sieve, that it may be half a foot thick, in which you shall set or sow your Seed: this being done, cast your Straw or other Coverture over the same, and so let it rest without looking upon it, or taking away of your Covering, for the space of seven or eight days at most; for commonly in that space of time they thrust themselves thro' the Earth. Then must you cast upon them, in the hottest time of the day, some Water which has stood in the House or the Sun a day before, or Water of which the Cold is just taken off; for otherwise, if the Water cast upon them is just taken forth out of the Pump or Well, it will so cool and chill them, being brought forth and nourished in such a hot place, that presently, even in one day, you will have kill'd all your Plants: your Plants will not only be kill'd, but your Bank also will be chill'd and loose its Heat.

X. Observ. 2. This is also to be noted, That the young Plants must every day when the Sun shines warm, be opened and exposed to its Beams, and at Evening every Night they must be covered again; this must be done from time to time, till the Plants have four or six Leaves apiece, and that the Danger of the cold Nights and nipping Season is past; then they must be replanted with a great deal of Care, taking each Plant up with the Earth sticking to its Root, and they must be placed as near as may be in the most fruitful and fat Soil; and in that part of the Garden which is most sheltered from Cold and piercing Winds, and where the Sun shines warmest. Now, you must also observe, That upon this Replantation, you must cover them with some thin Mats or Wisps of Straw, propped up with forked Sticks or some such-like thing; and this thing is to be done every Night, to keep them from the Cold of the Night, and sometimes in the Day-time, to keep them from the too great Heat of the Sun; otherwise, tho' you have brought your Work thus far on, all your Labor may be lost: for they cannot, whilst they be young and newly planted, endure either over-much Cold or over-much Heat, till they be well rooted and fixed in this their new Habitation.

XI. Observ. 3. Sometimes it falls out that some Seeds are more forward than the rest, and therefore do commonly rise up very nakedly, with long Necks, not much unlike to the Stalk of a small Mushroom of a Night old. This naked Stalk you must cover with the like fine Earth, even up to the green Leaves: you must also have that regard to your hot Bank, so to place it, that by its Situation it may be defended from the North, North-East and East Winds. If these Instructions be carefully observed, you never will have cause to complain that your Seeds were not good, nor your Clime too cold or intemperate, by reason of which you should be frustrated in having of Fruit; but if your Seed is hard, plump, firm and good, it will certainly prove fruitful, tho' in the most Northern parts of Scotland.

XII. The



XII. *The Qualities.* They are all cold and moist in the second Degree: Aperitive, Diuretick, Stomack, Alterative, and highly Antiscorbutick.

XIII. *The Specification.* It cures the Scurvy, and prevails against Heat of Urine.

XIV. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A liquid Juice of the Fruit.* 2. *An Essence of the same.* 3. *The green Fruit* 4. *Pottage.* 5. *A Lotion or Wash* 6. *A distilled Water* 7. *The Seed.* 8. *Pickled Cucumbers.* 9. *Pickled after the Mango fashion.*

## *The Virtues.*

XV. *The liquid Juice.* It is expressed from the *Cucumber*, either ripe, or almost ripe, or unripe, as they are most fit to be eaten. It opens, is cool and cleansing, provokes Urine, and opens the Obstructions of the Brest, Lungs, Liver and Reins, and takes away Inflammations of those Parts. It helps Heat, Sharpness and Scalding of Urine. Dose from 1 to 3 ounces twice a day. Outwardly applied, it makes the Skin smooth and fair: and being taken for some considerable time, it perfectly cures the Scurvy in a hot Habit of Body.

XVI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the former, but not full out so cold; for which Reason this may be taken by it self, from 1 to 3 ounces or more; whereas the other ought to be taken mixed with Ale or White Port Wine. It is an excellent Stomack, very much pleasing and gratifying the Viscera, if inflamed or over-heated.

XVII. *The green or unripe Fruit.* It is first pared, then sliced thin; after which it is seasoned with Pepper, Salt, Vinegar and Oil, an Onion or two being also thin sliced and shred, and put thereto. It is grateful to the Stomach above all other Sallets; it cools the Heat thereof, as also the Inflammation of the Lungs and other Viscera. It cures the Scurvy in a cold Habit of Body, nor is there a greater Antiscorbutick in the World, and may be freely eaten two or three times a day, and in large quantities too, without any danger or hurt to the Stomach and Bowels, tho' some ignorant People may affirm the contrary. God and Nature has replenished all the hot Regions and Countries of the World with them in a very ample manner; and it is my Opinion, that they are a great means of the Preservation of Life in all those sultry hot Parts of the Earth, and a singular Preventive of Diseases, especially of all such as proceed from Inflammation, violent Heat and Fevers, of what kind soever. It was not without some Reason that the Children of Israel lusted after them in the Wilderness: *Numb. 11. 5. We remember (said they) the Fish which we did eat in Egypt freely, the Cucumbers, and the Melons, and the Leeks, and the Onions, and the Garlick.* And by this it appears also, that *Ægypt* was very well stored with them.

XVIII. *The Pottage.* Take the Fruit, cut it in pieces, and chop it as Herbs to the Pot, and stew the same in a small Pipkin (or Stew-pan) with a piece of Mutton, (Beef, Veal, Lamb, or other Flesh,) adding in the stewing fine Flower of Oat-Meal, to give it the Consistence of Pottage: *Gerard.* This may be made savory with a little Salt, and if you so please you may also add to it the Juice of an Orange, to make it grateful, of which you may eat from half a pint to a pint, or a good Porringer full every Morning to Breakfast, as much at Dinner, and the same again at Supper. Eaten in this manner for the space of three Weeks together, without Intermission, it will perfectly cure all manner of salt Puffles, and copper or red Faces, red and fiery shining Noses, (tho' as red as red Roses)

tho' the Skin is filled with Pimples, Rubies, Scurf, Morpew, Herpes, Tettars, Ringworms, and other like Breakings out.

XIX. *The Lotion or Wash.* *℞ strong White Wine Vinegar a quart, Juice of Cucumbers a pint, Orrice-Root in fine flower or powder, Flowers of Sulphur, or Sulphur in fine powder; of each an ounce: Camphir in fine powder half an ounce, beaten with four blanched Almonds; Juice of eight sowre Limons, eight Oak-apples cut thro' the middle: put all these into a strong double Glass, shake them together very strongly, and set it in the Sun or an equivalent Sand heat for 12 or 14 days.* This does not only help red and fiery Faces, but also takes away Pimples, Rubies, Freckles, Lentils, yellow Spots, Scurf, Morpew, Herpes, Tettars, Ringworms, Tanning, Sun-burning, and all other Deformities of the Face and Skin. The Face or Skin ought first to be washed pure and clean with fair warm Water, to open the Pores thereof, and then to be dried with a Cloth; and then as soon as that is done, this Wash is to be used and laid on, and so to be suffered to dry in of it self, without wiping away. It is to be used Morning and Night, and always during the whole time of eating the above prescribed Pottage.

XX. *The distilled Water.* It is good to cool the hot Distemper of the Liver and Blood, to quench thirst, cool the Heat of Fevers, and take away the Dryness and Roughness of the Tongue. It is good against the Heat of the Reins, as also the Sharpness, Scalding and Stoppage of Urine. Outwardly used, it cools Inflammations, helps Blood-shot and Redness of the Eyes, clears, cools and smooths the Skin, and is good against most Deformities thereof, being often applied thereto.

XXI. *The Seed made into an Emulsion with the distilled Water.* It wonderfully cools the Heat of the Reins, and takes away the Scalding and Sharpness of Urine; and that Pain which is caused by the Application of *Cantharides* in *Epispasticks*, or Blistring-plasters, which sometimes, by their lying on too long, cause pissing of Blood, and almost the greatest Extremity; these ill Accidents this Medicine suddenly and easily cures, &c.

XXII. *Pickled Cucumbers.* There are various ways of pickling Cucumbers, which we have taught in our *Doron Medicum lib. 2. cap. 19. sect. 14, 15.* and other ways in some other of our Books: but this following is best. Take a thousand *English Cucumbers*, wipe them very clean with a dry Cloth, and lay them in a Stone Pot or Jar, with *Fennel* and *Dill*, and Cloves of *Garlick*, lay upon lay: upon which put boiling hot this Pickle. Take the best White Wine Vinegar four Gallons; salt Brine (made so strong as it may bear an Egg) six quarts; choice Brandy or Sugar Spirits three quarts; white Pepper bruised three ounces; Cloves slit, Mace, of each half an ounce: having stood a day, stop them close up; and they will be fit to eat in about a Weeks time. After three Weeks or a Month draw off or decant the Pickle, which boil, scum and put to the Cucumbers again, and so keep them for use. This is the usual Method. But Experience has told me, 1. That there is no need of drawing off, and boiling the Pickle at all, for the Brandy or Sugar Spirits are a sufficient Preservative of it. 2. That the first adding of the Brandy or Spirits ought to be after the boiling of the Pickle, when you are just a going to put it upon the Cucumbers. These pickled Cucumbers excellently strengthen the Stomach, resist the Scurvy, and cause a good Appetite.

XXIII. *Pickled Cucumbers after the Mango fashion.* Take Cucumbers which are pretty large, but such as are very hard and green; wipe them clean, slit them on one side, and take out all the Seeds and middle



middle Pulp; and put in, in the place thereof, three or four or more Cloves of *Garlick*, a slice of *Ginger*, and half a dozen or more of *Pepper* Corns, only crackt into three or four pieces; which done, tye them up with a Thread: then take the best White Wine Vinegar as much as will cover them, adding what Salt you think fit, with *Pepper*, *Ginger*, *Cloves* and *Mace*; make this Pickle just boil, and put it upon your *Cucumbers* boiling hot: repeat the boiling the next day, and pour it on hot as before. After this take a well glazed Stone Pot, into which put your *Cucumbers*, laying them smooth and well one by one, and then having put to every gallon of Pickle a pint of pure Lime Juice, not adulterated, put it upon the *Cucumbers*, which cover, and let them stand over a moderate Fire till the Liquor is scalding hot, taking care that it may not boil: when you see the *Cucumbers* green enough, take them out and put them into a Stone Jar, placing them one by one very smooth and well: this done, when the Pickle is cold, you may add to it to every gallon thereof, a quart of Brandy or Spirit of Wine, and half a pint of whole *Mustard* Seed tyed up loose in a Rag. *Note*, Some, in making of the Pickle, take pure White Wine Vinegar, to a gallon of which they add Lime Juice a quart, salt Brine strong enough to bear up an Egg three pints or better, not putting in any other Salt: with this they proceed as before is directed; and at the last add the aforesaid proportion of Spirit of Wine, which makes an absolute and singular Pickle, and so good, as will keep your *Cucumbers* all the Year round. These are more Stomack than the former, more grateful to the Pallate, cause a good Appetite, resist the Scurvy, and have all the good Properties of the former, with many other Advantages.

## C H A P. CLXXIX.

### of CUCUMBER Wild.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek, *Σίκυς ἄγρος*: in Latin, *Cucumis* & *Cucumer agrestis*, and in the Shops, *Asininus*; *Cucumis Sylvestris Matthioli*, *Tragi*, *Dodonæi*; also by some, *Noli me tangere*, (because of the spirting of them, if rudely handled, when ripe:) in English, *Wild Cucumber*, *Spirting Cucumber*, and *Touch me not*.

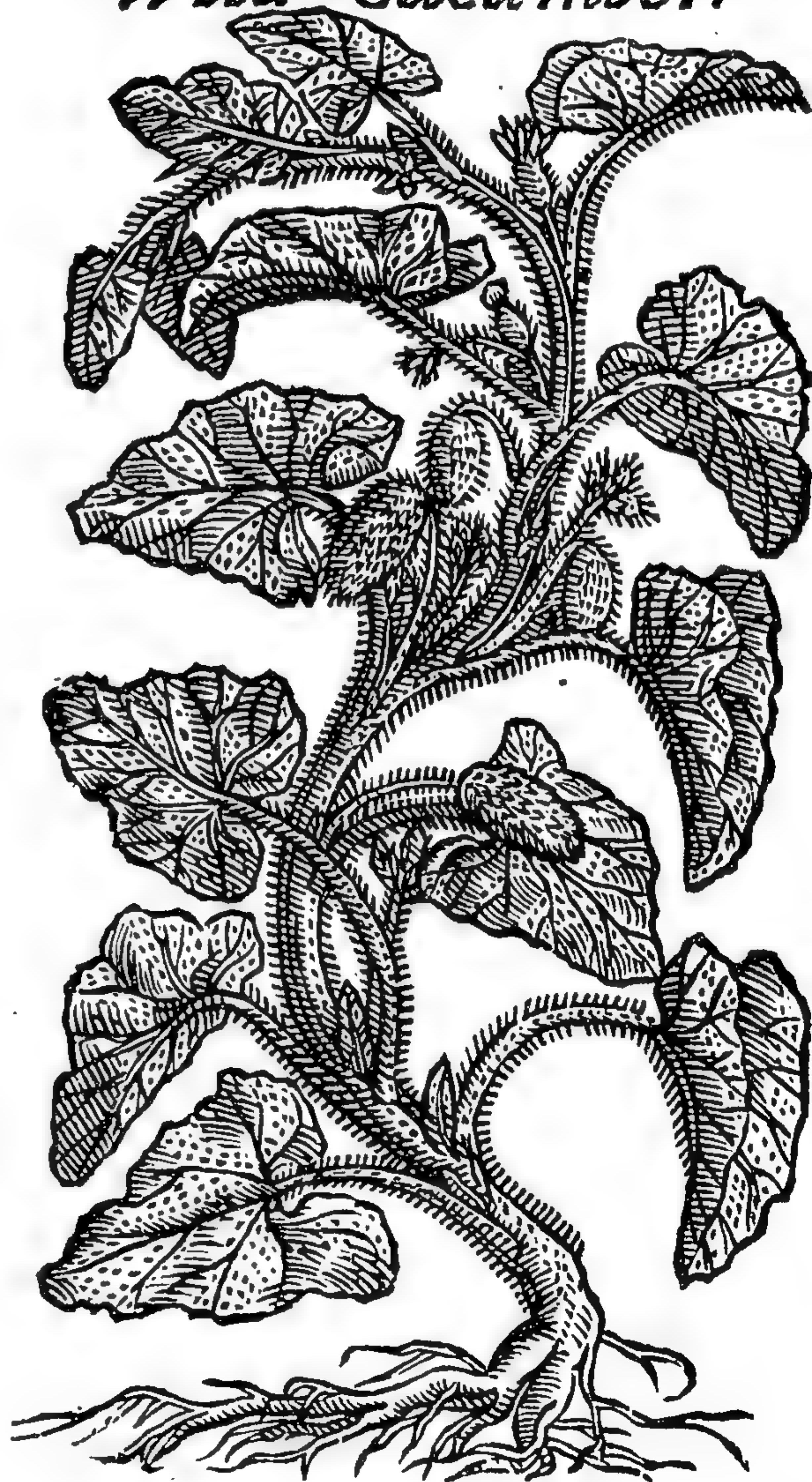
**II. The Kinds.** It is a Species of *Cucumbers*, the Wild sort, but a singular Plant of the kind.

**III. The Inspissate Juice**, is the Juice of the Fruit, or rather a *Facula* thereof, which being dried, is called almost in all places throughout Europe, *Elaterium*: *Pliny*, lib. 20. cap. 1. The Greeks call it also, *ἐλατήριον* ab *ελαύνω*, *Impellere*, *stimulare*, *instigare*, *pungere*; which is as much as to say, to impel, stir up, or force violently, to purge vehemently, and therefore *Elaterium est medicamentum vehementer purgans*. *Gaza* in his Translation of *Theophrastus* calls it, *Agitatorium*. 'Tis doubtless one of the strongest of all Purgers.

**IV. The Description.** It has a Root white and firm, thicker and shorter than any other sort of Gourd or Cucumber has, having withal some adjoining Fibres, very bitter, as are all the other parts of the Plant. From this Root spring forth many juicy, fat, hairy, rough trailing Branches, spreading themselves over the Surface of the Earth, like to other Cucumbers or Gourds, on which grow very rugged, rough, hairy and ill-colored green Leaves, sharp-

pointed, of an over-worn greyish green, something whitish underneath, little or nothing divided or parted at the edges. At the Joints between the Branches and the Leaves spring forth small pale yellow Flowers, opening into five Leaves, at the end of small green Heads for the most part, as all other kinds of Cucumbers, Gourds, &c. do: but such as have Flowers only, without such Heads, quickly fall away, without Fruit. For that green Head, as in all others, comes in time to be the Fruit, which is small, rough, long and round, and something of a greyish green when they are ripe. The Foot-stalks upon which the Cucumbers grow, are short and rough, crooked withal, and bend the Fruit downwards, which when they are thoroughly ripe, with a very little touch, will quickly open at the end next the Stalk, and spirt out its Juice and some of its Seed upon the Hands or Faces, or other Parts of those who touched it. The Seed when ripe is blackish and something rugged, but otherwise white, lying in a green moist Substance, which is very bitter and loathsome to the Taste. The Fruit when it is perfectly ripe, squirts forth its Water with the Seeds, either of its own accord, or being touched, tho' never so gently; and many times it strikes so hard, especially if it hits against the Face or Eyes, that it will smart for a pretty while after; but this Smarting arises purely from the Acrimonious Quality of the Juice. And from this voluntary spirting of the Seed came the Name of *Noli me tangere*.

### Wild Cucumber.



**V. The Places.** In Italy, Spain and other hot Countries, it is found among Rubbish, Gravel, waste and other untill'd places, where casting its Seed, it multiplies it self, and easily springs up again; but in the Low Countries, and thro' most parts of England, it grows only in Gardens.

**VI. The Times.** The Root many times abides in the Ground all the Winter, if it stands warm, and the Ground is rich; but in cold Grounds, and where it is not defended, it is apt to perish every Year: where the Root dies not, it comes up in the Spring; but if it springs from the Seed in April or May, it flowers in June and July; and the Fruit



is usually ripe in *August*, at which time the *Elatarium* is also made of it.

VII. *The Qualities.* The whole Plant is hot and dry in the third Degree; Aperitive, Absterfive, bitter in Taste, and wasting away. *Galen* will have the Juice to be hot but in the second Degree, cleansing, and of thin parts: it purges watry Humors, and is certainly the best Cathartick in the whole Republick of Medicine.

VIII. *The Specification.* *Elatarium* is a peculiar Medicament for the Cure of Dropsies.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have herefrom,  
1. A liquid Juice of the Leaves. 2. A liquid Juice of the Root. 3. An Errhine of the Juice of the Leaves or Root. 4. A liquid Juice of the Fruit. 5. A Syrup of the Juice of the Roots or Fruit. 6. An Infusion of the Root. 7. A Vinegar of the Root. 8. A Decoction of the Root. 9. A Pouder of the Root. 10. An Electuary of the Root. 11. An Oil of the Root. 12. A Cataplasm of the Root. 13. A Substitution of the Root. 14. A Cataplasm of the Leaves. 15. A Cataplasm of the Leaves with Goats-dung. 16. *Elatarium Viride*, Green *Elatarium*, or the Insipissate Juice of the Fruit. 17. *Elatarium album vel optimum*, White *Elatarium*, or the Fœcula of the Juice of the Fruit. 18. The distilled Water.

## The Virtues.

X. *The Liquid Juice of the Leaves.* Dropped into the Ears, it eases them of the Pains and Noises therein, and very much prevails against Deafness: bathed upon the Skin, it takes away Freckles, Lentils, Discolorings, yellow Spots, Scurff, Morpew, Tettars, Ringworms, Herpes, and other Deformities thereof, used Morning and Evening for some time.

XI. *The liquid Juice of the Root.* It is good against the Falling-sickness and Kings-evil, put into the Nostrils, and taken inwardly also; and the Strumattick Swellings being daily Morning and Evening bathed therewith; it provokes the Terms, but is not to be given to Women with Child, because it is apt to destroy the Fruit in the Womb. It purges viscid and watry Humors, and that strongly; and therefore it is used in Clysters. It has also all the Virtues of the Juice of the Leaves, as to external Disaffections, if it is applied in like manner. Being taken from 2 to 4 drams in any convenient Vehicle, it prevails against the Dropsie and the yellow Jaundice, and opens all Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, powerfully evacuating Water.

XII. *The Errhine made of the Juice of Leaves or Roots.* It is made by mixing 2 parts of the Juice with 1 part of Water in which Nitre is dissolved. Some make it by mixing the Juice 2 parts, with Milk 1 part. Snuff up the Nostrils it cures an Epilepsy, as also an inveterate Megrim or Head-ach; for it wonderfully purges the Head and Brain from Excrements, and cures a stinking Breath coming from the Nostrils; and is a prevalent Medicine against Lethargies, Carus, Sleepiness and Apoplexies.

XIII. *The liquid Juice of the Fruit.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice of the Leaves and Roots, and may be used in the same manner to all those Intentions; but it is much more powerful, as being more Acrimonious, and therefore is to be used in a smaller Dose. And an Errhine, may be also made of it, as of the Juice of the Leaves or Roots, very beneficial and potent to all the same Purposes, being much stronger than is Juice of *Beets* or *Primroses*.

XIV. *The Syrup of the Juice of the Roots or Fruit.* It is good against the Scurvy, Dropsie, Jaundice and Gout, carrying off all sorts of putrid Humors,

chiefly Flegm and Water, by which it gives a general Relief to the whole Body, and so prevails against Head-achs, Apoplexies, Epilepsies, Carus, Lethargy, Vertigo and Madness. It is good against Surfeits and Agues, and kills Worms in the Body. The Dose is from a spoonful to 2, 3 or 4, in the Morning fasting, mixed with a Glass of warm Posset-drink or White-wine: if it is acuated with choice *Sena*, it will be much more powerful and efficacious to all the Intentions and Purposes before enumerated.

XV. *The Infusion of the Root.* Take of the fresh or green Root well bruised a pound; put it into a pint and half of strong White Port Wine, in which let it infuse for 24 hours or more. Dose 3 ounces, for three or four days together, or until the Hydro-pick Swelling is plainly discerned to be very much wasted and fallen. This is *Dioscorides* his Medicine, for curing the Dropsy; which thing (says he) it doth, without any troubling of the Stomach.

XVI. *The Decoction of the Root.* It may be made in Wine or Water, or with a Mixture of both. This being drunk (says *Mesue*) helps the Dropsy, for it wonderfully evacuates watry Humors, and prevails against the Yellow Jaundice, and all Obstructions of both Liver and Spleen. This Decoction gargled in the Mouth, and held therein for some time, gives present Ease in the Tooth-ach.

XVII. *The Vinegar of the Root.* If the Root is infused or boiled in strong Vinegar, and that Vinegar is bathed upon the Skin two or three times a day, it is good to cure Tettars, Ringworms and a simple Herpe, as also to cure Scurff and Morpew, and to cleanse the Skin of all Discolorings, as Yellowness, Tawniness, Freckles, Lentils, and other Spots of that kind.

XVIII. *The Pouder of the Root.* Snuff up the Nostrils, it is a good Errhine to purge and cleanse the Head and Brain of cold moist and viscid Humors, which cause the Head-ach, Megrim, Vertigo, Lethargy, Apoplexy, Epilepsy, Palsy, &c. *Dioscorides* says, that being applied to the Skin or Face, it cleanses it from all Scurff, and takes away the Discoloring of Scars. Inwardly taken, to a scruple or half a dram, mixt with Cream of Tartar, it kills Worms, purges the Bowels, and carries off slimy Humors.

XIX. *The Electuary of the Root.* It is made of the Pouder mixt with Honey. Taken inwardly, from a dram to two drams, according to Age and Strength, in the Morning fasting, it purges Flegm, Choler and watry Humors, and abates the rebellious Ferment of the King's-evil: it cleanses and heals old Sores and Ulcers, being used Plaister-wise, cleansing them thoroughly, and wonderfully healing them. Applied upon a Herpes, Tettar or Ringworm, or other like Breakings out, or put upon any Deformity or Scar, does attenuate the Skin, attract forth the malign Juices, and heal those Breakings out; taking away also Marks, Spots, Blackness and Blewness coming upon the Skin and Flesh by Contusions and Blows.

XX. *The Oil of the Root.* It is made of the bruised Root or of its Juice, by Insolation, or boiling in Oil Olive. Anointed often upon the Temples, it is said to cure an inveterate Megrim, an Errhine of the Juice, being snufft also up the Nostrils. Anointed well upon the Hip and Huckle-bone Morning and Evening, for half an hour together, it eases the Pain of the Sciatica, &c.

XXI. *The Cataplasm of the Root.* It may be made either of the Root bruised, &c. or of the Juice of the Root brought to a thickness, with Pouder of Elecampane-roots. Applied after anointing with the former Oil, it gives great ease in the Gout and Sci-



atica; diffuses Tumors arising from simple Con-  
tusions, absorbs acid Humors lurking in the Skin  
and Scarf-skin, and takes away Deformities there-  
of, as Scurff, Morpew, Leprosy, Yellowness, and  
other Discolorings of the Skin.

XXII. *The Substitution of the Root.* Apotheca-  
ries, says *Parkinson*, do most usually take the Root  
of this *Wild Cucumber*, as a Substitute for the Root  
of *Colequintida* or the bitter Gourd, that not being  
so frequent, or so easy to be had as this is.

XXIII. *The Cataplasm of the Leaves.* It has all  
the Virtues of the Cataplasm of the Root, but not  
full out so effectual, because the Leaves have not the  
same Strength with the Root: yet, notwithstand-  
ing, it is an excellent thing for the Purposes intend-  
ed, exceeding many other things of like kind. It  
cleanses the Skin from Discolorings and many other  
Deformities.

XXIV. *The Cataplasm of the Leaves with Goats-  
Dung.* If it is laid upon any hard Tumors, Swel-  
lings or Kernels, such as are those of the Kings-  
Evil, it resolves them; and also eases Pains of the  
Gout in what part of the Body soever; and resists  
the Putrefaction of malign Ulcers.

XXV. *Green Elaterium, or the Inspissate Juice  
of the Cucumber.* Take *Wild Cucumbers* almost ripe,  
open them on one side, and take or squeeze out their  
thinner Juice and Seeds, which strain from the  
Seeds, reserving the Juice: then beat the rest of the  
*Cucumber* grossly in a Marble Mortar; put all into  
a Bag, and in a Press force forth all the Juice: put  
this Juice to the former, which put into a Retort,  
and in a gentle Sand-heat draw forth all the Water,  
(which keep for a Cosmetick;) continue the said  
gentle Heat till the Magma is perfectly dry'd;  
then break the Retort, take forth the Matter, and  
keep it in a Jar-Glass, tyed close over with a wet  
Bladder, for Use. If you have no Retort, and care  
not for keeping the Water, you may evaporate it to  
dryness over the same gentle Sand-heat in an open  
flat-bottomed Glass, often stirring it, (to break the  
Skum) that it may evaporate the better, which  
then take and preserve in a Jar-Glass, as before. It  
has the Virtues of the following, but not full out  
so strong, and therefore may be given in double  
Dose to it, viz. from 6 grains to 20 or 24, in any  
convenient Vehicle. 'Tis, notwithstanding its being  
weaker than the following, a most noble Medica-  
ment.

XXVI. *Elaterium album, The white or common  
Elaterium*, which is indeed the strongest and best.  
It is thus made: Take *Wild Cucumbers* almost ripe,  
open them with a Knife upwards, press out the  
Juice gently with your fore Fingers, let it run thro'  
a Sieve into a clean glaz'd Vessel, let it settle, and  
decant the clear Water into another Vessel: then  
dry the Settlings in the Sun, and in a Jar-Glass,  
tyed close over with a Bladder, keep the *Elaterium*  
for Use. See our *Pharmacopœia Londinensis*, lib. 1.  
cap. 6. sect. 33. If you please, you may keep the  
clear Water for *Unguentum Artanita*. Some Au-  
thors say, that this *Elaterium* will keep two hun-  
dred Years, and yet be of wonderful Virtue, *Vix*  
*Credo*: others, as *Paracelsus*, say it retains its Vir-  
tues well fifty Years, at which Age it will be so a-  
bundant in Humidity, that put to the Flame of a  
Lamp or Candle, it will put it out: but *Dioscorides*  
says it is good from two Years old until ten, and  
that that is the best which being put to the Flame  
of a Candle, will make it burn the more bright.  
*Theophrastus* his *Elaterium* is green, (which is, as  
I suppose, the former Inspissate Juice of the *Cucum-  
ber*:) *Dioscorides* his *Elaterium* is white, which is  
the *Fecula* of the Juice, as is taught in this Section,  
and this is that which *Mesue* says is the best. The

green will continue moist many Years, after it is e-  
vaporated and dried up hard, relenting or giving  
with the Air, so that it requires a long time to con-  
sume its Humidity; whereas the white sort being  
once dried, will remain white, hard and dry for a  
great number of Years, unless it is left open in a  
moist Air, or stand in a moist place. This white  
*Elaterium* works very well, being given from 1 to  
5 grains, in strong Bodies; Authors say it may be  
given to 10 grains. *Parkinson* says, that half a  
grain being put into a purging Medicine, to quicken  
it, has oftentimes been seen to trouble the Stomach,  
with very much disquiet, and vomiting, and working  
also downwards with more Violence than it could be  
thought that double the quantity could do. *Dios-  
corides* says the Dose is from half an *Obolus* to a  
whole *Obolus*. Now, the *Obolus* is 10 grains, or 12  
at the most, as some take it; which shews the large  
Doses which the Ancients gave of this Medicine,  
which we dare scarcely follow. It purges Choler  
and Flegm from all parts of the Body, and drives  
forth watry Humors to a Miracle, being an extraor-  
dinary thing to open the Pipes of such as are Purfy  
and short Winded; and is indeed a Specifick for  
the Cure of the Dropsy, especially of that kind cal-  
led *Sarcites* or *Anasarca*. When you give it for  
Purging, it may be given mixt with Milk, or rather  
Cream, because the Unctuosity thereof will not suf-  
fer it to stick to the Tunics of the Stomach, but  
cause it to purge off the more speedily. If you  
would have it to Vomit, *Dioscorides* advises to dis-  
solve it in Water, and with a Feather dipt therein,  
to touch the lower part of the Tongue, as low as  
you can; but in my Opinion, it is much better to  
take the whole Dose down into the Stomach. It is  
a prevalent thing against the Megrin, Head-ach,  
Carus, Lethargy, Vertigo, Apoplexy, Epilepsy, be-  
ing used sometimes as an Errhine, dissolved in Wa-  
ter or Milk; and sometimes taken inwardly to both  
Vomit and Purge. And thus taken, it is said also  
to cure the Kings-evil, the Parts affected being a-  
nointed likewise with it outwardly. It provokes  
the Courses in Women where they have been long  
stopt, and very much prevails against the Green-  
sickness in Virgins. It is so strong and forcible, that  
it is said to kill the Child in the Womb, so that a  
Woman Impregnated must by all means avoid it;  
but this is more especially to be understood, being  
applied in a Pessary or Ointment to the Womb. It  
cures the Gout in any Part, by its strong Cathartick  
Faculty, carrying off the tartarous, viscous or clam-  
my Humors from the Joints, which breed it. The  
common Dose is 2 gr. i. ad v. and to very strong  
Persons 2 gr. iii. ad x. well corrected with Nutmeg,  
Spicknard, Aniseeds, Liquorice-powder, &c. It cures  
Asthma's, Jaundice, Scurvy and Hypochondriack  
Melancholy. Mixed with Ox Gall and applied, it  
helps the Quinsy and Gout, and clears the Skin of  
Scurff, Morpew, Tettars, Ringworms, Mange, Itch,  
Pushes, Scabs, and other like Deformities.

XXVII. *The distilled Water from Roots or Fruit.*  
If to every quart of it you add an ounce of fine Ni-  
tre, dissolving it over a gentle Heat; it becomes an  
excellent Cosmetick to beautify and clear the Skin  
of any Deformity, being two or three times a day  
or oftner laid on, and suffered to dry in, after it is  
first well cleansed with fair warm Water. This  
Wash is also an excellent thing against an *Erysipelas*  
or *Anthony's fire*, the Parts affected being bathed  
therewith, and Cloths wet therein being laid on,  
and so suffered to dry upon the Part. It abates In-  
flammations, and being given inwardly, (well sweet-  
ened with white Sugar) it cools and abates the most  
violent Heat of Fevers. Parts affected with the  
Gout, being well bathed therewith Morning and  
Evening,



Evening, (after due and sufficient Purging) are presently eased of their Pains after a singular manner. Given inwardly from 1 ounce to 4, well sweetned with white Sugar, it purges well by Urine, carries off Water in Dropsies, prevails against the Scurvy in a hot Constitution, helps the Strangury, and expels Sand, Gravel, Slime, or any kind of Tartarous Matter.

## C H A P. CLXXX.

## Of CUDWEED Common,

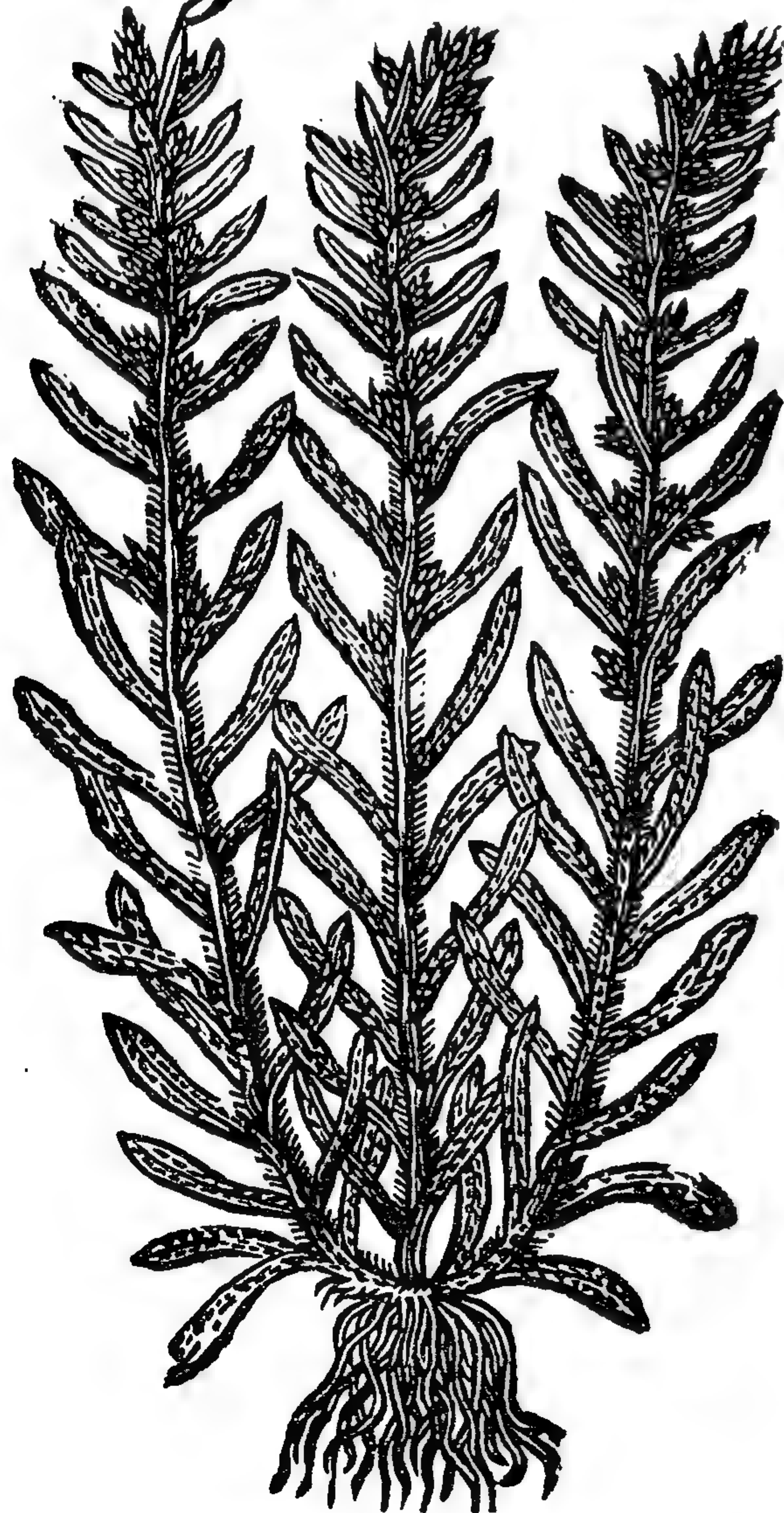
O R,

## COTTONWEED.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek, Γναφθαλιον: in Latin, *Gnaphalium*, *Centunculus*, *Centuncularis*, *Tomentum*, *Tomentaria*, *Tomentitia*, *Cottonaria*, *Bombax humilis*, *Albinum*, *Chamæxylon* Plinii and *Filago*: in English, *Cudweed* or *Cottonweed*.

**II. The Kinds.** There are four principal sorts of *Cudweed*, 1. *The Common*, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Gnaphalium Impium*, *Wicked Cudweed*, of which in Chap. 181. 3. *Gnaphalium Marinum*, *five Cottonaria*, *Sea Cudweed* or *Cottonweed*, of which in Chap. 182. 4. *Gnaphalium Americanum*, *American Cudweed*, of which in Chap. 183.

**III. Of the Common kind there are,** 1. *Gnaphalium vulgare majus Johannis Thalii*, *Gnaphalium Anglicum folio longiore Lobelii*, *English Cudweed*. 2. *Gnaphalium minus*, *Filago minor*, *Dodonei*, *Gnaphalium vulgare minus*, *Gnaphalium medium Tabernmontani*, *The Vulgar or Common lesser Cudweed*.

*English Cudweed*

**IV. The Descriptions.** *The first, or English Cudweed, has a Root which is small and thready;*

*from whence rise up one, two or three Stalks, set thick on all sides with long and narrow whitish or woolly Leaves, almost from the bottom of the Stalk up to the top: with every Leaf stands a small Flower, of a dun or brownish yellow color, but not so yellow as in some others; in which Heads, after the Flowers are fallen, come small Seed, enclosed in the Down, and which, when perfected, is carried away with the Wind.*

*Cudweed common.*

**V. The second, or Lesser Cudweed, has a fibrous Root, almost like the former; from whence shoots forth small hoary Stalks, full of Branches almost from the very Ground, with divers smaller, shorter and narrower Leaves thereon, of a more dusky hoary color, like fine Cotton or Wooll; some standing singly, and some more at a Space or Joint: the Flowers hereof stand at the tops of the Stalks and Branches only, and not all along, as in some of the other kinds, one Branch above another, but all of them rising almost to an even height, and are of an overworn yellow color: it grows commonly about nine or ten inches high, seldom to a foot, unless in choice Ground. The Flowers are yellow, and grow like Buttons at the tops of the Stalks, and the Seed is carried away with the Wind.**

**VI. The Places.** They both grow in barren, dry, sandy and gravelly Grounds in most places of England: the first has been found growing in Hampstead Wood, and in Woods near to Deptford, by London.

**VII. The Times.** They flower in June, July and August; and their Seed is ripe in a little time after.

**VIII. The Qualities.** They are temperate in respect of Heat or Cold, but dry in the third Degree; and therefore very Astringent, Hepatick, and withal Anodyne.

**IX. The Specification.** They are peculiar against Catarrhs, Fluxes of the Bowels, Profusions of Blood in any Part, and the Quinsy.



X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Decoction in Wine.* 4. *A Powder.* 5. *A Cataplasm.*

*The Virtues.*

XI. *The liquid Juice.* Taken inwardly to an ounce or more, mixed with a Glass of Red Port Wine, or in some other proper Vehicle, it stops any inward Bleeding: it cleanses old and filthy Ulcers, and causes them quickly to heal. Taken in Wine, or in Milk, it is (as *Pliny* says) a sovereign Remedy against Heat and Swellings in the Throat, and that which is vulgarly called the Quinsy: and he farther says, That whosoever shall take it shall never be troubled with that Disease again. And for the same Reason Country People give it to their Swine, with this Observation, That whichsoever of them will not take it, will assuredly die.

XII. *The Essence.* It has the Virtues of the liquid Juice, but more powerful; and over and above in the curing of old running Sores and Ulcers, it is of admirable Excellency. It stops and cures all Fluxes of the Bowels, tho' of long standing, and restores their Tone again to Admiration. It cures the Whites in Women, as also the overflowing of their Terms, is singular against rebellious Catarrhs, and discusses simple Contusions; kills Worms in Children, and heals Ruptures.

XIII. *The Decoction in Wine.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but in a lower degree, and may be given from 4 to 6 or 8 ounces, according to Age; 1. In the Morning fasting. 2. Half an hour before Dinner. 3. At Night going to Bed. Possibly this may be best for weak Stomachs.

XIV. *The Powder.* It dries, binds and astringes, and therefore is profitable for Defluxions of Rheum from the Head upon the Lungs, as also to stop Fluxes of Blood wheresoever. Taken from 1 to 2 drams in Red Port Wine, it prevails against the Bloody-flux, and eases the Torsions of the Bowels coming thereby: it stops the overflowing of the Terms, and heals Wounds whether inward or outward, being made into an Electuary with the liquid Juice, and so used. This Powder being either drunk or injected up the *Intestinum Rectum*, mixed with Red Port, cures the Disease called *Tenasmus*, which is an often Provocation of going to Stool and doing nothing.

XV. *The Cataplasm.* It may be made either of the green Leaves bruised with a small quantity of Wine, or else of the Powder of the Herb made into the Consistence of a Cataplasm with the liquid Juice. Being applied, it immediately stops the Bleeding of Wounds, and in a short time afterwards cures them: it also cleanses, dries and heals all old and filthy Ulcers.

weeds, Wicked Cudweed the lesser. 2. *Gnaphalium majus generis minoris*, *Filago major*, *Herba impia major*, *Gnaphalium impium major*, The greater sort of the lesser Cudweed, Wicked Cudweed the greater.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first of these has a fibrous Root, from whence shoots up a low or short Stalk, set with shorter Leaves than the former, but somewhat more white or hoary, and a little broader; at the tops whereof stand a larger and more open Flower than in the two others, and of a paler yellow color; from the sides of this Stalk spring forth divers short Branches, set with such like, but smaller Leaves than those which grow below, with such a like yellow Flower as the other; which Branches, with their Flowers, do always rise higher than the middle Stalk, and the Flower upon it: sometimes also the Branches will have other small Branches spring from them, bearing Leaves on them, and Flowers on the top of each; these also rising above the Branches, with their Flowers in the said manner, that the first Branches did unto the main Stalk: the Seed follows the Flowers in a downy Bed, and is carried away with the Wind, as the rest are.

IV. *The second, or Larger Wicked Cudweed,* has a large Root with several pretty thick Branches, and many Fibres springing from the same; from which sometimes springs up but one Stalk, and sometimes two, three or more principal Stalks, very much, in their Magnitude, way of Growing, Shape or Form of the Leaves and Flowers, like the former, but much larger; and for the most part those Flowers which appear first, are the lowest and basest, and are always overtopped by other Flowers which come on younger Branches, and grow higher, as Children seeking to overgrow or overtop their Parents, (as many wicked Children do,) for which Cause it obtained the Name of *Gnaphalium impium*, and *Herba impia*, Wicked Cudweed, or Wicked Herb, and not for any evil or malignant Quality in the same.

V. *The Places.* They both grow in dry, barren, sandy, gravelly and desert places in many parts of England.

C H A P. CLXXXI.

Of CUDWEED Wicked.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Γναφαλίον ἐρίσιον, γναφαλίον μικρότερον*: in Latin, *Gnaphalium impium*, *Gnaphalium minus*: in English, *Wicked Cudweed*, *Wicked Herb*, *Cudweed the lesser*.

II. *The Kinds.* Of these there are two sorts, 1. *Gnaphalium minus*, *Herba impia*, *Gnaphalium Fuscii*, *Matthioli*, *Lobellii*, *Lugdunensis*, *Aliorumque*, *Filago* (a *foliorum inusitata superbia*) and *Cartafilago Angulata*, The lesser sort of the lesser Cud-



VI. *The Times.* They both flower in *July*, and the Seed is ripe in *August*.

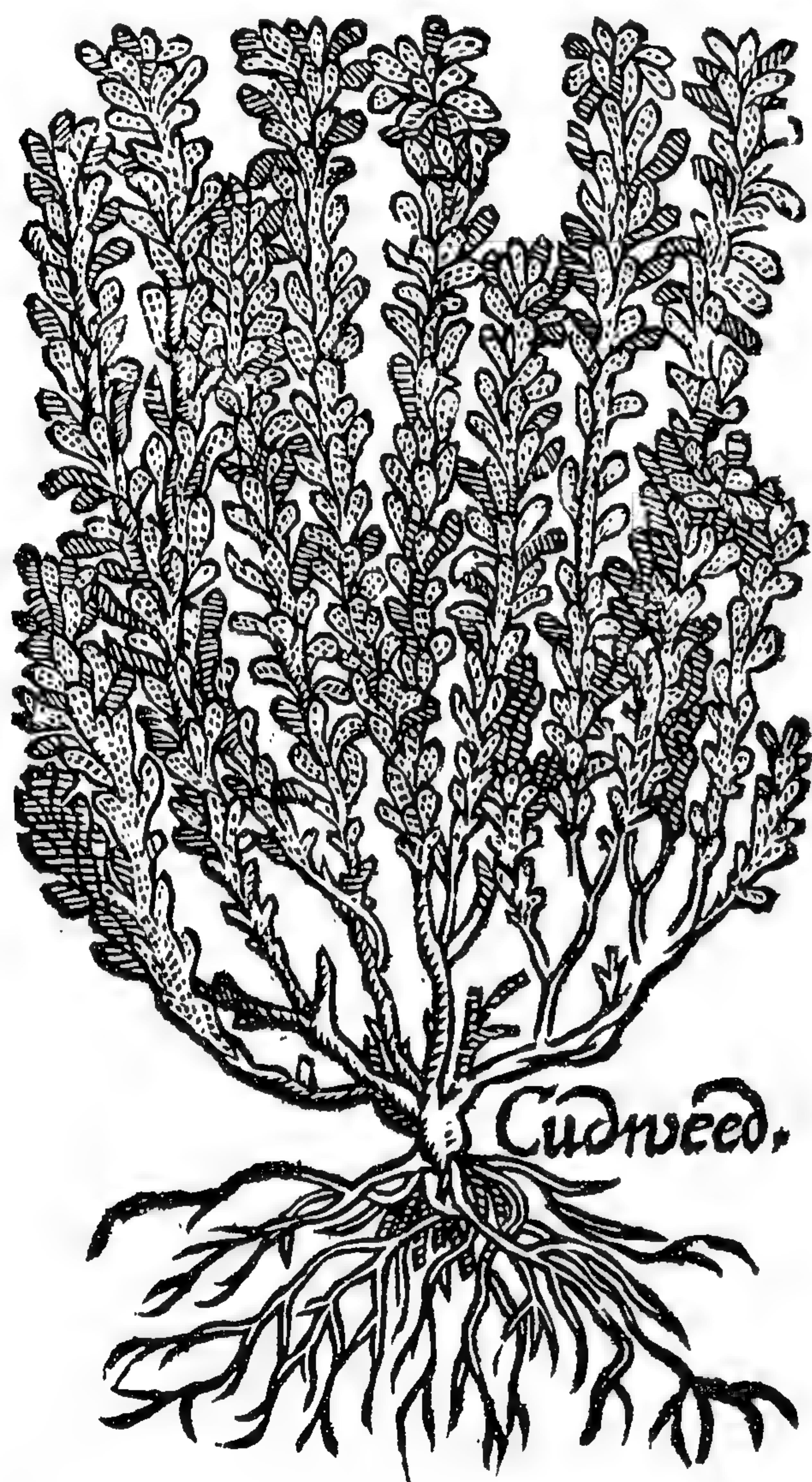
VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses,* are the same with the *Common Cudweed* in Chap. 180. aforegoing, to which I refer you.

## C H A P. CLXXXII.

### of CUDWEED Sea.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *Greek*, *Γναφάλιον θαλασσίον*: in *Latin*, *Gnaphalium Marinum*, *Elichrysum Sylvestre flore oblongo Bauhini*: in *English*, *Sea Cudweed*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is a singular Plant of the Sea kind; and is called for the most part, *Cottonaria*, or *Cottonweed*: also *Gnaphalium Maritimum tomentosum*.



III. *The Description.* It has a long and woody Root, which perishes not yearly, as several of the other sorts do. From this Root rise up several small and very hoary white Stalks, seldom growing above a handful or half a foot high, set thick with many short, flat and very white, soft and hoary or woolly Leaves, so hoary as tho' they were nothing but Cotton, bearing at their tops small hoary or cottony Heads, with a yellow Thrumb breaking out in their middle; these are the Flowers, which, at the tops of the Stalks, look like small round Buttons, of Color and Fashion like to the Common Cudweeds. Within these Heads, in a downy Bed, the Seed is contained, which is somewhat longer than the Seed of the others.

IV. *The Places.* It is found upon the Western Sea Coasts of England, in divers places. It is found growing also at a place called *Merezey*, six Miles from *Colchester*, near the Sea side. It has also been gathered upon the Sea Coasts of *Wales*.

V. *The Times.* It flowers from *June* to the end of *August*, and the Seed is ripe in *September*.

VI. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with the *English and Common Cudweed* in Chap. 180. to which you are referred: yet it is thought by some, who have made Tryal of both, that this *Sea Cudweed* is the stronger and more effectual Medicament to all the Purposes for which the *Common* is intended.

## C H A P. CLXXXIII.

### of CUDWEED American.

I. **T**HE Names. This Plant, as far as I can learn, was wholly unknown to the *Greeks*; yet modern Authors have given it this *Greek* Name, *Ἀργυροκόμην*, *Argyrocome*, (i. e. *Silver-leav'd*;) in *Latin* it is called, *Gnaphalium Americanum*; and in *English*, *American Cudweed*, also *Live-long*, and *Life-everlasting*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is a singular Plant of the kind: and is accounted one of the *Species* of *Gnaphalium* *Carolus Clusius*, from the Likeness of the *Umbles* or *Tufts of Heads*, tho' they are greater and whiter than those of the other kinds of *Cudweed*; all of which are of kin to the *Golden Tufts*. This Plant has been called by some of our *English*, *Live-long* and *Life-everlasting*, because of the *Durability* or long *Duration* of their *Flowers* in their *Beauty*.

III. *The Description.* This *Silver Tuft* or *Indian Cottonweed*, has *Roots* which are long, and black on the outside, creeping very much under *Ground*: from whence spring up many white *Heads of Leaves*, covered with a hoary *Woolliness*, like *Cotton*, which rising into hard, thick, round *Stalks*, contain still the same *Hoariness* upon them, as also upon the long and narrow *Leaves* which grow thereon, more especially on the under side; for the upper sides are of a dark shining green color. The *Stalks* are divided at the top into many small *Branches*, each of which have many scaly, tufted *Heads* set together, covered over with *Cotton* before their opening, and then parting one from another, abiding very white on the outside when they are fully grown, but with a small yellow *Thrumb* in the middle of each *Flower*, which in time will turn into yellow *Down*, apt to be blown away with every *Wind*.

IV. *Gerard* says, that this Plant is of greater *Beauty* than the rest, and has straight upright *Stalks*, three feet high or more, covered with a most soft and fine *Wooll*, and in such a plentiful manner, that a *Man* may with his *Hands* take it from the *Stalk* in great quantity. This *Stalk* is beset with many long and narrow *Leaves*, green on the inner side, and hoary on the other side, somewhat like in Form to *Rosemary* *Leaves*, but greater. The *Flowers* do grow at the tops of the *Stalks* in *Bundles* or *Tufts*, consisting of many small *Flowers* of a white color, and very double or compact, or as it were consisting of little *Silver Scales* thrust close together, which do make the same very double. When the *Flower* has long flourished, and is grown old, then comes there, in the midst of the *Flower*, a certain brown yellow *Thrumb*, such as is in the midst of the *Daisy*: which *Flowers* being gathered when they are young, may be kept in such manner as they were gathered, to wit, in such *Freshness* and good *Color*, for the space of a whole *Year* after, and that in a close *Chest* or elsewhere: from this long keeping of their *Freshness* and *Color*, it was, that our *English* *Gentlewomen* called it *Live-long*, &c. to which, on this occasion, it very aptly answers.

V. *The*



V. *The Places.* It grows plentifully in *America*, in several parts of the *West Indies*. I found it growing in some of the *Southern* parts of *Carolina*. It grows naturally near unto the *Mediterranean Sea*, from whence it has been brought and planted in our *English Gardens*. *Baobinus* says, that it grows frequently in *Brasil*: but *Clusius*, who first set it forth by the Name of *Argyrocome* or *Gnaphalium Americanum*, had his Plants out of *England*. We have also had it brought to us out of *Florida*, so that now it grows well and plentifully with us, if Care be taken of it by a skilful Gardener.

VI. *The Times.* It flowers in *June* and *July*, and the Seed is ripe in *August*.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of this, are the same with the last and the others aforegoing, and therefore referr you to Chap. 180. for full Satisfaction.

## C H A P. CLXXXIV.

### of CULLIONS Sweet, O R, LADY--TRACES.

I. *THE Names.* This Plant is called in *Greek*, *ὄρχις ὀσμή*: in *Latin*, *Orchis odoratus*, *Testiculus odoratus*, *vel aromaticus*; and in *English*, *Sweet Cullions*, *Sweet Orchis*, *Sweet Lady-Traces*.

II. *The Kinds.* They are of the Kindred of the *Orchis* and *Ordinis quinti*, according to *Parkinson*: of this Species he makes eight several sorts; but there are four principal kinds of these *Sweet Cullions*, viz. 1. Those with one single Testicle or Stone. 2. Those with two Testicles. 3. Those with three and sometimes with four Bulbs. 4. The *Creeping* or *Bastard* kind.



III. Of the *single bulbed Orchis*, there is but one Species, viz. 1. *Orchis pusilla odorata*, *septima Clusii*, The *sweet Musk Orchis*.

IV. Of the *double bulbed*, there are three Species, viz. 2. *Orchis alba odorata minor*, *Orchis spiralis minor Lobelii*, The *lesser sweet Cullions*, or *Lady-Traces*. 3. *Orchis Frisia Litoralis Lobelii*, *Friezland Orchis* or *Lady-Traces*. 4. *Chamaorchis latifolia Zelandica*, *Orchis lillifolius Lobelii*, *Pseudo Orchis Clusii*, The *dwarf Orchis* of *Zeland*.

V. Of the *treble bulbed Orchis*, there are also three Species, viz. 5. *Triorchis alba odorata*, and *odorata major*, *Triorchis alba spiralis Lobelii*, The *greater sweet Lady-Traces*. 6. *Triorchis lutea Leodiensis*, *Orchis minor Leodiensis Lobelii*, *Lady-Traces* of *Liege*. 7. *Triorchis lutea altera Gemma folio glabro*, *Triorchis lutea tertia Lobelii*, *Lady-Traces* *yellow*, with *smooth Leaves*.

VI. Of the *Creeping kind*, there is one only Species, viz. 8. *Orchis Radice repente*, *Small Creeping* or *Bastard Orchis*.

VII. *The Descriptions.* The first of these, or *Musk Orchis*, has a *Root* which consists but of one *small round Bulb*, of the bigness of a *Pea*; above which it has long *Strings* running forth, by which new Plants are increased. From this *Root* spring up usually but three *small and narrow green Leaves*, among which grows up a *Stalk* of an *Hand breadth* in height, having a long narrow *Spike* of *pale green Flowers*, ending in three *Points*, and smelling like *Musk*.

VIII. The second, or *Lesser sweet Cullions*, have their *Roots* growing by *Couples* or *Pairs*, which are *small*, and somewhat long as well as round: from these *Roots* these *Lesser Lady-Traces* have much smaller *Leaves* shooting forth, and lying next the *Ground*, than those of the *Greater Lady-Traces* in Sect. 11. following; but they are of the same *Fashion* with those, and almost like unto a very *small Plantane Leaf*; the *Stalk* is not above four, five or six inches high, with some small show of little pieces of *Leaves* thereon to the *Flowers*, which are of a *white color*, dash'd over with a thin *Blush*, standing in thin long *Spikes*, compassing the *Stalk*, which are of a very *sweet Smell*.

IX. The third, or *Friezland Orchis*, or *Lady-Traces*, has a *Root* consisting of two *small round Bulbs*, from whence spring up two or three *small*, somewhat long and hairy *Leaves*, yet shorter than those of the *Ribwort Plantane*. The *Stalk* is above a span high, viz. about four or five inches, and bears round about it *small yellowish green Flowers*, much like unto the former, and set in the same *Order*.

X. The fourth, or *Dwarf Zeland Orchis*, has a *Root* consisting of two *Bulbs* for the most part, and sometimes of three, which are covered of whitish *Coats* or *Skins*, being greenish within, and sweetish in *Taste*, the lower of them being lank, as in others. It has two fair, but small *Lilly like Leaves*, about two inches long, rising up from them; and a *Stalk* about three or four inches high, the *Flowers* being not much unlike the former. This sort is thought to be the *Pseudo-orchis Clusii*.

XI. The fifth, or *Greater sweet Lady-Traces*, have *triple bulbd Roots*, which by chance may sometimes be *fourfold*, being round, and longer than any of the former *Orchides*, with several short *Fibres* springing out round about them, contrary to the modus of all the rest. From this *Root* come forth several very sad green shining *Leaves*, like unto the *Lesser Plantane*, but sharper pointed, which rise up in *September*, after the *Stalk*, with the *Flowers*, are withered, which do abide green all the *Winter*, and perish in *May*. The slender *Stalk*, which crooketh and windeth it self a little, rises up in *August*, full set



set for a great length, with many small, white and sweet Flowers, compassing it round, and hanging down round about it.

XII. The sixth, or Lady-Traces of Liege, have a triple bulb'd Root, and sometimes Quadruple round and a little long, not much unlike in Shape to some kinds of Pears, the sharper end tending downward into the Ground, of which two are for the most part large, one small, out of which several small Fibres proceed. The Leaves of this are somewhat more like unto those of a broad-leav'd Plantane, but yet smaller and narrower, three or four at the bottom of the Stalk, which otherwise is bare, and has none upon it; and the Flowers are yellowish, like the others, at the top, one growing above another.

XIII. The seventh, or Yellow Lady-Traces with smooth Leaves, which has a Root composed of three small Bulbs, almost perfectly round, the one full, the other lank; from which spring up longer and smoother Leaves than those of the Friezeland Orchis at Sect. 9. foregoing, but the Stalks and Flowers are very like them, yellow of color, and pleasantly sweet: the Figure of this Plant Lobel has given us from Cornelius Gemma.

XIV. The eighth, or Small creeping Orchis, has a Root very unlike all the rest, being long and full of Strings, growing thick together, and interlacing themselves one among another; yet have they at the upper part thereof, next under the Leaves, (as Camerarius says) some shew of small Bulbs sometimes to be seen. From these Roots arise Leaves which are thick and somewhat broad, like Plantane, of a dark green color: the Stalk is slender, and set full at the top with several white Flowers, spotted with Blood-red Spots. Parkinson will have this to come nearer to an Helleborine than an Orchis.

XV. The Places. These all generally grow in dry Grounds, Heaths and waste untill'd Places, in many places of England; but are for the most part nurs'd up with us in Gardens.

XVI. The Times. They all flower late in the Year, scarcely before August or September.

XVII. The Qualities. They are all (except the last) hot and moist in the second Degree; some say hot in the first Degree, and moist in the second. They attenuate, are Stomack and Hysterick, Alterative, Analeptick and Spermatogenetick.

XVIII. The Specification. They stir up Lust, and cure Barrenness in either Sex.

XIX. The Preparations. You may prepare therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. Sanguis or Blood.

#### The Virtues.

XX. The liquid Juice. Taken to 2 spoonfuls or more in Canary, or rather Alicant; 1. In the Morning fasting. 2. An hour before Dinner. 3. At Four in the Afternoon. 4. An hour and half after Supper, just at going to Bed; it breeds much Seed, stirs up Lust, strengthens the Instruments of Generation, and cures a simple Gonorrhœa, or Gleet of the thinner parts of the Seed.

XXI. The Essence. It has all the Virtues of the former, and may be taken in the same Dose, and at the same times; but it is much more powerful to all the Intentions, and is effectual to cure even Ulcers of the Prostatae from a virulent Cause.

XXII. The Sanguis or Blood. & Pulp of the Roots made by well beating them in a Stone Mortar, 4 pounds: Crums of Rye and Wheat Bread, of each 1 pound: mix them well together, adding a little white Port Wine, to make them pretty moist: put all into a Bolt-head, stopping it well with Cork and Spanish Wax, or Sealing Wax, so that nothing may

transpire, digest in a warm Balneo or Horse-dung, till the Matter is changed into a Rubicund or Bloody Chyle; then force it strongly out with a Press, putting the expressed Blood into a Balneo Vaporis, that by this second Digestion it may acquire a greater Redness, and some Fæces may settle; which continue till the Blood becomes absolutely clear, and of a most perfect Red, which then separate from the Fæces by decanting it: put this into a Glass Alembick, and in Balneo Vaporis abstract some of the thin, clear and limpid Water or Spirit, leaving the Bloody Extract at the bottom of a very red color. This admirably corroborates the Womb, and the Vessels and Instruments of Generation, both in Man and Woman: it is a Specifick to cause Conception in Women, to remove Barrenness and cause Fruitfulness. It also cures Impotency in Men, and restores them to their Pristin Vigor. Dose 1 spoonful Morning, Noon and Night in Generous Wine.

## CHAP. CLXXXV.

### of CUMIN Garden.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Κύμινον*: in Latin, *Cuminum*: in Arabick, *Camum* and *Kemum*; and in English, *Cumin*.

II. The Kinds. It is twofold, viz. 1. *Κύμινον ἡμερῶν*, *Cuminum Hortense*, Garden Cumin. 2. *Κύμινον πρῶτον*, *Cuminum agreste*, Wild Cumin; of this we shall discourse in the next Chapter.

III. The Garden kind is threefold, 1. *Κύμινον διήμῳ*, *Cuminum vulgare*, Our ordinary Cumin. 2. *Κύμινον γλυκὺ*, *Cuminum dulce*, *Cuminum melitense dulce*, Sweet Cumin, and Small Cumin. 3. *Κύμινον ὀξύ*, *Cuminum acre*, *Cuminum melitence acre*, Sharp tasted Cumin, and Great Cumin.





IV. The Descriptions. *The first of these has a Root which is long, small, white, and perishing every Year; from whence spring up several slender Stalks, a foot and half high or more, and some of them not so high, each branching themselves out gradually, and growing white at length, having store of Leaves, which are small and long, like unto those of Fennel. The Flowers are somewhat reddish, growing in Umbles at the tops of the Stalks, which turn into small, long and almost round whitish Seed, crested or straked on the rounder side, and smelling strong.*

V. *The second, or Sweet small Cumin, has Roots, Stalks and Leaves like to the former, and like it in its manner of Growing; but its Seed is small, and like unto Anise Seed, and sweet as Sweet Fennel Seed: so that it seems to be nothing differing from the former, but in the Shape or Form, Magnitude, and very sweet Taste of the Seed.*

VI. *The third, or Sharp-tasted great Cumin, is like the Ordinary or Common Cumin in its Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Branches, Flowers and manner of Growing, saving that it is every ways greater; but it principally differs in its Seeds, for they are not only greater than those of the first or Ordinary Cumin, but they are longer also, and pointed at both ends, crested likewise on the rounder side, and of a much duller color, smelling more unpleasantly, and tasting very sharp upon the Tongue, hot, quick and biting, like Cubebs or Pepper.*

VII. *The Places.* They grow all of them in England, in our Gardens, the Seed being sown; but they are Natives of other hotter Countries, as Spain, Italy and the Islands of the Mediterranean Sea, as also in Syria, Palestina, and other Eastern Countries, where they grow familiarly and plentifully. *The first* of these grows most common with us in our cultivated Grounds, but admirably well in the South parts of Carolina, and other parts of Florida, where I saw it in Perfection. *The second* grows, besides in all the places aforementioned, very plentifully in the Isle of Maltha, where they put it into their Bread and other Meats, and Trade with it to other Parts in exchange for other Commodities. *The third* (as well as the first) grows in several parts of Arabia, Ethiopia, Egypt and Asia, where it more admirably obtains that acrid or sharp Taste: however, they delight to grow in putrified and hot Soils.

VIII. *The Times.* Parkinson says they come not often to Perfection with us, unless in a kindly Year, and sown in the middle of the Spring: so that tho' they flower and seed early in hot Countries, yet it is late with us before the Seed comes to Ripeness. Gerard says, that he had proved the Seeds (of the first sort) in his Garden, where they brought ripe Seed, much fairer and greater than any which comes from beyond Sea. It is to be sown in the middle of the Spring: Ruellius says, that a Shower of Rain presently following its Sowing, hinders much the Growth thereof. Gerard sowed it in the midst of May, and it sprung up in six days after, and the Seed was ripe in the end of July.

IX. *The Qualities.* The Seed, which is principally used, is hot and dry in the third Degree, full of Sulphur and Mercury; it is Aperitive, Anodyne, Astringent, Attractive, Carminative, Digestive, Diffusive, Diuretick and Sudorifick; Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomatick, Pectoral, Nephritick and Hysterick; Emmenagogick, Lithontriptick, Alexipharmick, Analeptick and Spermatogenetick.

X. *The Specification.* It has been found, by Experience, to be a singular Cure for the Colick.

XI. *The Preparations.* You may have, 1. *A liquid Juice of the green Herb.* 2. *An Essence of the*

*green Herb.* 3. *A Cataplasm of the green Herb.* 4. *A Pouder of the Seed.* 5. *A Spirituous Tincture of the same.* 6. *An Acid Tincture thereof.* 7. *An Oily Tincture of it.* 8. *A Saline Tincture.* 9. *A Spirit of the Seed.* 10. *An Oil from the same.* 11. *A Spirituous Water.* 12. *A Balsam made of the Chymical Oil.* 13. *A Decoction of the Seed.* 14. *A Cataplasm thereof.*

#### The Virtues.

XII. *The liquid Juice of the Leaves.* It expels Wind and Urine, provokes the Terms, and is good against the Bitings of Mad Dogs, Serpents, and other Venomous Creatures. Dose 2 spoonfuls at a time Morning and Night, in a Glass of Wine or Ale.

XIII. *The Essence of the green Herb.* It has the former Virtues, besides which, it prevails against the Colick and Fluxes of the Bowels, is good against Vapors in Women, is a good Pectoral, opening Obstructions of the Breast and Lungs. Dose 1, or 2 spoonfuls Morning and Night in Wine.

XIV. *The Cataplasm of the green Herb.* It diffuses Wind in the Bowels, strengthens the Joints, diffuses windy Humors in those or any other Parts, repercusses Humors in simple and recent Contusions, diffuses Flatulencies in the Scrotum, and prevails against the Gout.

XV. *The Pouder of the Seed.* Mixed with Honey, (a dram at a time) it is Pectoral, and very good against Coughs and Colds. Mixed with Vinegar and put up the Nostrils, it is said to stop Bleeding there. Made up into a Quilt, sprinkled with good Wine-Vinegar, and made very hot upon a Warming-pan with Coals in it, and so applied to the Side, it takes away Pains and Stitches, and gives ease in the Pleurisy. Taken to 1 dram in a Glass of Generous Wine, it eases Pains of the Stomach and Womb, gives Relief in the Colick, and is good against the Gripings of the Guts. It makes such as use it much inwardly to look very pale.

XVI. *The Spirituous Tincture of the Seed.* It is a true Anticolick, given to 1 spoonful in Wine or Ale, strengthens the Stomach, and restores the Tone thereof, and is a singular good thing against the Bloody-flux, and all other Fluxes of the Bowels.

XVII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is a most admirable Stomatick, expels Wind, strengthens the Ventricle, causes a good Appetite and an excellent Digestion; and if a Loathing or Vomiting is present, it presently removes them, restoring the Stomach to its pristine State of Health. Dose so much at a time as to make the Liquor pleasantly sharp. It gives ease in the Gout and cures it, if the Parts affected be bathed therewith for some time.

XVIII. *The Oily Tincture.* It immediately cures the Cholick to a Miracle, being given from 20 to 40 or 50 drops at a time, in a Glass of Wine, or some other proper Vehicle: it opens Obstructions of the Womb, provokes the Terms, and removes Sand, Gravel and Tartarous Matter from the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, giving singular ease in a very short time. Anointed outwardly upon the Joints affected with the Gout, it gives ease, and in a short time after cures it. It cures Cramps and Convulsions to a Miracle, by anointing it on the Part affected.

XIX. *The Saline Tincture.* Given from 20 to 40 drops, or more, in a Glass of White Port Wine, it opens Obstructions of the Reins and Ureters, cleanses those Parts of Sand, Gravel or Tartarous Matter, and causes the Patient to Piss freely. Outwardly bathed upon places affected with the Gout, it



it gives Ease and Relief. It attenuates, digests and discusses Humors.

XX. *The Oil of the Seed.* It is a Specifick against Pains of the Stomach and Bowels, gives present ease in the Cholick, as also in the Stone, provokes the Terms in Women, and has all the Virtues of the Spirituous and Oily Tinctures. Given ad gut. 12 or 20 in a Glas of Wine to a Woman in Travel, it facilitates the Delivery. It is good against Coughs, Colds, Asthma's, shortness of Breath, difficulty of Breathing, Wheezings, Hoarsness and other like Distempers of the Brest and Lungs. It encreases Seed, provokes Lust, strengthens the Instruments of Generation, restores in Consumptions, breeds Milk in Nurfes, and resists Poyson: it is also prevalent against the Bitings of Vipers and other Serpents; also the Bitings of Mad Dogs, and other Venomous Beasts, being inwardly taken, and outwardly applied to the place.

XXI. *The Spirituous Water.* It may be used as a Vehicle for any of the former internal Preparations, and has in some measure all their Virtues: it is a very good thing for Nurfes to take, because it very much promotes the breeding of Milk.

XXII. *The Balsam.* It is made of the Chymical Oil, mixt with six times its quantity of pure Oil of Nutmegs by Expression. It is of wonderful Use to anoint the Genitals of a Man, who is grown Impotent either by Age, Accident, or a long Disuse of the Act; the Oil of the Seed being in the mean Season taken inwardly. Anointed upon Parts affected with Cramps and Convulsions, it generally cures them; and strengthens any Part which is much weakened, either by the Gout or other Accidents. Anointed on the Stomach and Side, it comforts them, and eases the Pains of the Pleurisy.

XXIII. *The Decoction of the Seed in Wine.* If Figs are added in the Boiling, it will be the more Pectoral, and so be good for such as are short-Winded, or are otherwise troubled with an old Cough, Hoarsness or Wheezing, difficulty of Breathing, and other Diseases of those Parts; and withal it expels Wind from the Stomach and Bowels: and if it is constantly drunk for a whole Year together, it obliterates the very Roots and Foundation of the Gout, and by keeping of the Body soluble, and sweetning all the Juices, it carries off the Tartarous Matter which breeds that Disease, and that without either Purging or any other Medicine. But when it is thus generally used, the Decoction must be made sometimes in Water and sometimes in Wine, for the Stomach sake, and it must be used as the Patients common Drink. I say all this from manifold Experience.

XXIV. *The Cataplasim of the Seed.* If it is bruised and fryed with Yolks of Eggs till they are hard, and then beaten up with a little Oil of Nutmegs by Expression, or with some of the former Balsam, and applied to the Head, (the Hair being first shaved off) it gives wonderful and speedy Relief in an old Head-ach, tho' it be vehement, more especially if it comes from a cold and moist Cause; and applied to the back part of the Head, it stops the Rheum which falls into the Eyes, and helps such as are Blood-shotten; more especially if withal it is made with Wax into the Form of an Emplaster, and applied warm over the Eye-lids. The Cataplasim made only with the Seed and Yolks of Eggs, and applied to a simple Contusion, discusses it: but with the Oil of Nutmegs, being applied to the Scrotum, it is excellent to discuss a windy Tumor of that Part.

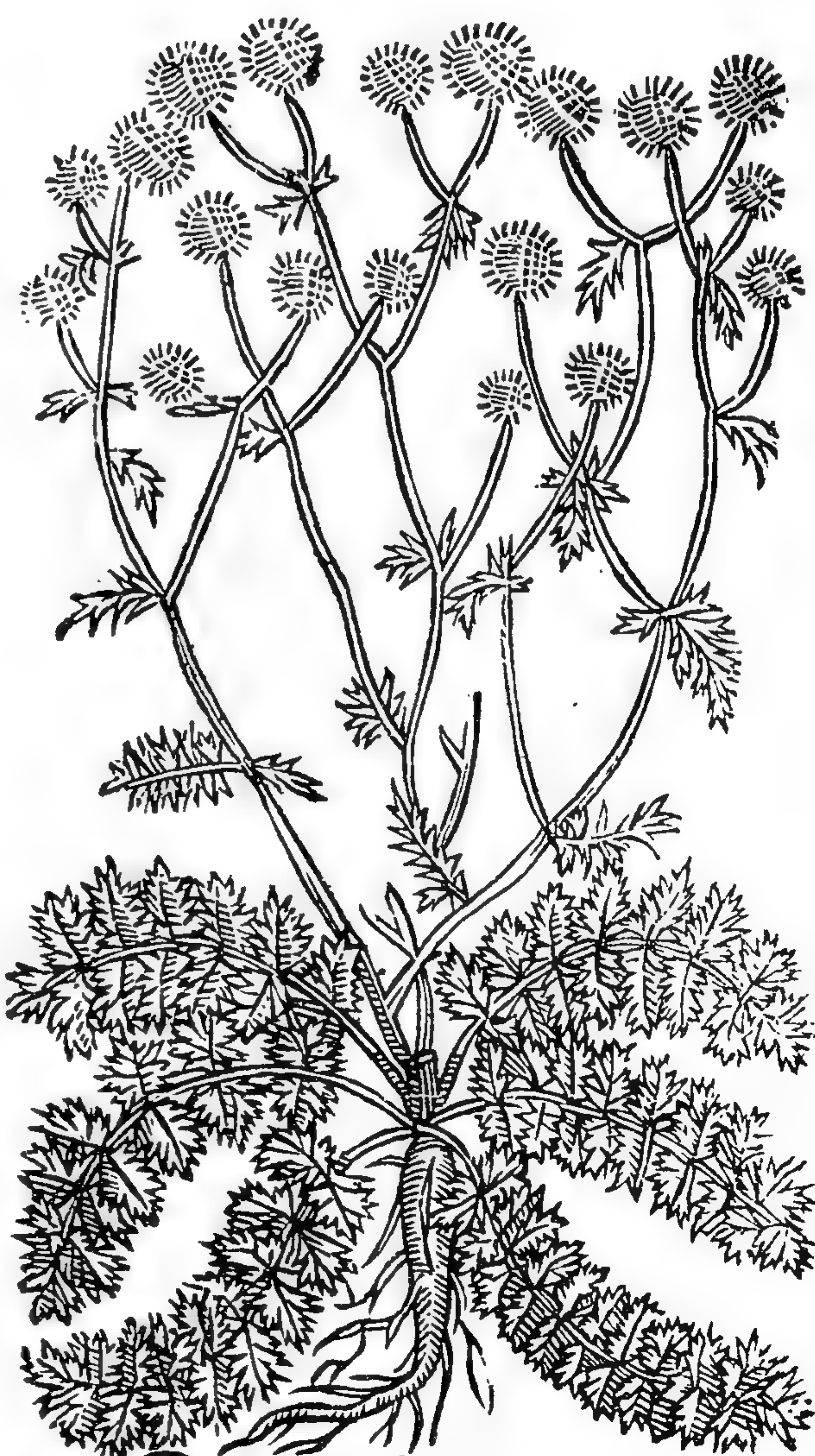
## C H A P. CLXXXVI.

### of CUMIN Wild.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Κύμινον* *πικρὸν καὶ ἄγρον*: in Latin, *Cuminum Sylvestre*: in English, *Wild Cumin*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make three kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Κύμινον ἄγρον*, *Cuminum Sylvestre*, *Cuminum primum* Dioscoridis, (according to Matthiolus) *Cuminum globosum* Camerarii, *Cuminum Capitulis globosis* Bauhini, also *Leporum Cubile*, *Stalimene*, as it is called in the Isle of Lemnos, Wild Cumin. 2. *ὑπέκουον, καὶ ὑπόπερον*, *Hypocoum* and *Hypopheum*, *Hypocoum verum* Dioscoridis, (according to Dodonæus and Clusius) *Cuminum Sylvestre alterum vel Siliquosum* Camerarii, *Lugdunensis*, *Tabernmontani* & *Lobellii*; *Cuminum Sylvestre Corniculatum* Gerardi, *Hypocoum Legitimum* Bauhini, The second or Horned Wild Cumin. 3. *Cuminum Siliquosum alterum* Dioscoridis, *Lobellii*, *Penæ*, *Lugdunensis*, *Cuminum Sylvestre tertium*, & *Siliquosum minus* *Tabernmontani*, *Hypocoum alterum* Bauhini, The second Horned or small Coddled Wild Cumin.

III. As for these two latter, tho' Camerarius, Dodonæus, Lobel and Gerard, with some others, do account them as Species of Cumin, or kinds of Wild Cumin, yet they are scarcely so to be accounted, for that they have neither the Appearance or outward Resemblance of them, neither yet the Medical Qualities or Virtues answerable to them, but rather have the Qualities and Properties of Poppies: however, because Custom has given them the Name of Wild Cumin, we submit, and rank them in the same Order.



Wild Cumin.

IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Wild Cumin, has a Root which is small and white, with some Fibres adjoining to it, and quickly perishes with the least Blasts or Dews of cold Nights, and therefore



comes not often to Maturity in our Country : from this Root shoot forth several long, rough and somewhat hard winged Leaves, consisting of many lesser Leaves, each of which are finely dented about the edges, which are in Fashion almost like the smallest Leaves of Wild Parsnep : from among which Leaves springs up a slender, weak, bending Stalk, about a foot high, much like to *Pecten Veneris*, divided at the top into many parts, each of which has a round whitish soft and woolly or downy Head or Ball, standing upon a small Foot-stalk, viz. round and hairy Buttons or Knobs, like *Arction Montanum*, or *Bardana minor Montana*, as *Dioscorides* has observed, or like to the Plane-tree Heads or Balls : within which Heads is contained a downy Substance, amongst which is the Seed, like the Seed of *Dens Leonis*, but much lesser.

V. The second, or Horned Wild Cumin, which is the *Hypecoum Legitimum*, has a single, long and thick Root, with some Fibres appendent to it, which dies every Year, at the first approach of Winter, and is with us very hardly made to spring again, but by an Autumn Sowing : from this Root spring forth several long winged Leaves lying on the Ground, very much divided, and cut into many parts, not much unlike to the Leaves of *Seseli* or *Mastilia*, of a pale or whitish green color, so like unto *Fumiterri* in the color of the Leaves, as also somewhat near to it in the many Divisions and Parts thereof, that it may easily deceive one who does but slightly look upon it, but the Leaves are smaller and thinner, and more gentle in handling, (tho' growing larger in Spain, as *Clusius* has observed.) In the midst of these Leaves rises up a Stalk (or two) a Cubit high or more, very smooth and whitish, with some fine jagged Leaves thereon, which is divided towards the top into several Branches ; at the tops of which come forth fine small yellow Flowers, consisting of six Leaves apiece, two of which are larger than the rest, and edged with green on the outside, and stand one opposite to another, the rest being small, and scarcely to be discerned but when the Flower is blown open ; the Flowers being pass'd away, there succeed long, crooked, flat Horns, Husks or Cods, crooked, large and full of Knots, Joints or Divisions, somewhat like unto the Husks or Horns of the *Scorpioides Matthioli*, but greater and longer ; in the several Joints whereof lye several square yellowish Seeds, small and flat, and almost like to those of *Galega* or *Goats-Rue*, which are very difficultly to be taken out and separated from the Husks or Skins. The Taste of the whole Plant is unpleasant.

VI. The third, or Small Coddled Wild Cumin, has a Root much like the former ; the Leaves are also something like, not so broad and long as those, but more cut in, and finely dented and divided, somewhat like unto *Seseli* or *Hartwort* of *Marselles*, or *Wild Chervil*. The Stalks are smooth, small and tender, full of Branches and Leaves, much like unto the small Leaves of *Caraway* or *Pecten Veneris*. At the tops of the Stalks and Branches come forth pretty yellow Flowers, made of five pointed Leaves, and much like to those of *Great Celandine* or *Rocket*, saving that they are somewhat less. These being pass'd away, long Pods succeed them, which hang down, and stand not upright, nor are crooked, like the former ; but the Seeds within the Cods are severally distinct, and separated one from another by equal Partitions, in small Crosses, yellow of color and somewhat long, larger than the other foregoing, and not much unlike to *Galega* or those of *Goats-Rue*.

VII. The Places. They are found Natives of *Gallia*, *Lycia*, several places of *Asia*, *Italy*, *Spain* and *France* ; and grow in our Gardens here in *England*, only by sowing the Seed.

VIII. The Times. They flower not with us till the middle of Summer, viz. *July* and *August*, and give their Seed late, viz. in *September* ; but the first seeds very late, and is seldom good. *Gerard* says, that the second did flourish and flower in his Garden.

IX. The Qualities, Specification and Virtues of the first, are the same with those of the *Garden Cumin* in the former Chapter, to which you are referred. But as for the two latter, tho' they seem to be of the Nature of *Poppies*, yet since no Author has said any thing of them, we shall be silent concerning the same.

## C H A P. CLXXXVII.

### Of C Y P E R U S Sweet,

O R,

### H E R B--C Y P E R U S.

I. THE Names. It is called in *Arabick*, *Sahn-rade* : in *Greek*, *Κύπερος* : in *Latin*, *Cyperus*, *Funcus angulosus*, *Funcus quadratus*, *Funcus triangularis*, *Aspalathum*, *Erysisceptron* ; and in *English*, *Cyperus*, *Herb Cyperus*, *Sweet Cyperus*, *Galinga*, and *Galingal English*.

II. The Kinds. It is fourfold, viz. 1. *Κύπερος στρογγύλος*, *Cyperus rotundus*, Sweet or Herb Cyperus, or English *Galingal* round-rooted. 2. *Κύπερος μακρός*, *Cyperus longus*, Herb Cyperus or English *Galingal* long-rooted. 3. *Κύπερος ἀγριαλώδης*, *Cyperus litoralis*, vel *litoreus rotundus*, Round Sea Marsh Cyperus, or Marsh English *Galingal* : all these are found growing in *England*, and shall be treated of in this Chapter ; to these add 4. *Cyperus dulcis rotundus esculentus*, or *Trasi dulce Italorum*, Sweet Rush-Nut, which see hereafter in its proper place.

III. The Greeks have other Names for the Plants treated of in this Chapter, tho' *Κύπερος* is the general Name, and is that by which the first kind is called, (so called from the Roundness of the Root) which is the *Cyperus rotundus odoratus* : *Κύπερις*, *Cyperis longus odoratus*, is the second, or long-rooted sweet kind : *Κυπρίς*, *Cypirus litoralis*, is the third, or Marsh kind ; of all which in their Order.

IV. Note. This is to be taken notice of, That many *Apothecaries*, by reason of their Ignorance, do use the long sweet *Cyperus* Roots instead of the round *Cyperus* Roots ; and others, tho' they know better, yet constantly make use of the long, instead of the other, contrary to the Appointment of the *Ancients*, nor do they desire to be furnished with the *Genuine* or *True*, because the one is much cheaper and easier to be had than the others are, thus substituting the long for the round ; which, tho' upon necessity a Substitute may be admitted, yet no *Succedaneum*, viz. a *quid pro quo*, is to be allowed of, when the true Ingredient is to be had ; forasmuch as no Substitute can be so effectual to every Intention as the *Genuine* is : this Abuse ought indeed to be rectified for the future.

V. The Descriptions. The first, or Common sweet round kind, has a Root which is composed of many long and round blackish brown small Roots, of the bigness of small Olives, or Roots of the Greater *Filipendula*, which are fastned together by long Strings, and are of a sweet Smell, even whilst they are green, but more when they are dry, which then are



are of a bitter Taste, somewhat like unto Galanga: from this Root shoot forth many Heads of long and narrow Leaves, somewhat ridg'd in the middle, every Leaf seeming thereby to be three square, and something hard and rough in handling; sweet also in Scent: from among these Leaves rise up many smooth square Stalks, about a yard high, stuffed with a white Pith, and not hollow, without any Knot or Joint therein, unto the very tops, where there stand a few short Leaves, and many small Panicles or chaffy green Spikes, or Ears of small Leaves above them, which afterwards contain the Seed within them.



VI. The second, or Long-rooted sweet Cyperus, has Roots which are of a moderate bigness, long and round, and of a black or blackish brown color on the outside, but whitish within, full and firm, and creeping hither and thither, taking up much Ground, by reason of their spreading; it creeps under the Surfaces of the Earth, round about, by which it is quickly much encreased; and is of a most pleasing sweet Smell when it is broken, tho' it be green and fresh, and yet more pleasant when it is dry. From this Root spring forth long Leaves, which are as it were three square, like the former, and as rough and hard in handling also, almost like unto the Common Reed, but that they are lesser and shorter. The Stalk is smooth and three square, stuffed with a white Pith, like the former, and rising three feet high or more, and having also some short narrow Leaves at the tops thereof; and small long Panicles, like unto the other in all things, so that they are scarcely to be discerned asunder above Ground, the only or chief Difference consisting in the Root.

VII. The third, or Marsh kind, has Roots which are tuberos and almost round, hard and black, and without Smell, many Tubers hanging sometimes upon one String; they are not large, but grow almost after the manner of Virginea Potatoes, white and firm within. The Stalk and Leaves are much like to the first kind, but the Heads are unlike, for these are rough and blackish, about the bigness of a Filbert.

hanging about six or seven in number, at top of the Stalk.

VIII. The Places. The first and second of these grow naturally in Fenny Grounds, yet they thrive very well in Gardens, as we daily see by Experience. The first grows naturally in Italy and Spain, as also in Ægypt by the River Nilus, as *Alpinus* says, but is only to be found with us in our Gardens, where, unless much Care be taken, it difficultly endures the Hardship of the Winter. The second grows in Syria and Candy, but with us only in Gardens. The third and last grows about Ditches and the Banks of Rivers, where Salt or Sea Water comes: it is found plentifully in the Marshes below Gravesend, in Shipecy, Tenet and other like places.

IX. The Times. The first flowers or bears its bushy Tops in August, with us here in England: The second produces its tufted Head in July, or towards the end of that Month, for the most part: and the third Flowers always in July and August.

X. The Qualities. The Roots are only of Use, and are accounted hot and dry in the second Degree: they Attenuate, are Aperitive, Absterfive, Astringent, Carminative, Digestive and Diuretick; Cephalick, Stomack, Nephritick and Hysterick; Lithontrip-tick and Alexipharmick.

XI. The Specification. They are peculiar against the Stone, Gravel and Obstruction of Urine.

XII. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A Decoction in Wine or Water. 2. A Pouder. 3. A Cataplasm. 4. Ashes. 5. A Spirituous Tincture. 6. An Acid Tincture. 7. An Oily Tincture. 8. A Saline Tincture.

#### The Virtues.

XIII. The Decoction in Wine or Water. If it is made in Wine, it ought to be White Port Wine: it cleanses, sweetens and purifies the Blood and Juices of the Body, provokes Urine, and helps to break the Stone in the Bladder, and to abate the Water in a Dropsy, to wit, in an *Anasarca*, being drank Morning, Noon and Night, or oftner, half a pint at a time. It provokes the Terms, and is good against Pains of the Mother or Womb, more especially, if, besides taking it inwardly, it be injected up, and the Region of the Womb be also bathed therewith warm. It is good also to wash all sorts of foul and nasty Ulcers of the Gums, Mouth and Throat, as also eating Cankers, for that it cleanses, dries and heals them. It opens Obstructions, and provokes the Terms in Women: it also helps a stinking Breath, being drunk for some time.

XIV. The Pouder. It is an excellent Remedy for all running Sores, old Ulcers, Cankers, tho' spreading and eating, in any part of the Body; it stops Putridity, cleanses, dries and heals, doing what it does without any thing of Heat or Sharpness. It dries up the over much Moisture of Ulcers, and by its Astringent Quality, helps all sorts of sore Mouths, and Ulcers in the secret Parts. It is of an inciding or cutting Quality, and therefore given to one dram Morning and Night in a Glass of White Port Wine, it provokes Urine and the Terms, and helps such as are troubled with the Stone; the Decoction in Wine being drunk inwardly also at the same time.

XV. The Cataplasm. It is made of the Pouders of the Roots, and Bay-berries, mixed in equal quantities, and made up with Boys Urine. This being laid upon the Belly of one that has the Dropsy, is said to help them very much, taking at the same time the Decoction inwardly oftentimes.

XVI. The Ashes. They have the Virtues of the Pouder, but are more sharp, by reason of the Salt contained



contained in them. *Alpinus* says, that the *Ægyptians* did much use both the Pouder of the Roots, and also the Ashes of the same, to cure Ulcers both of the Mouth and secret Parts.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* Taken in the Morning fasting, as also an hour before Dinner, at Four in the Afternoon, and at Bed-time, to the quantity of 2 drams, in Canary or other Wine, or some other convenient Vehicle, it comforts and warms the Stomach, Brain, Nerves, Lungs, Womb and Blood: and if it is taken for some time together, it warms a cold Habit of Body, strengthens the natural Faculties, fortifies the Heart and invigorates the Spirits.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is a most admirable Stomack, incides, opens, cleanses, strengthens, warms, comforts and restores the Tone of the Stomach and the other Viscera. It provokes Urine and the Courses, is good against the Stone, as also Vomiting, Sicknes at Stomach, want of Appetite and Indigestion, and is good against Catarrhs proceeding from a cold and moist Cause. Dose 30 or 40 drops, more or less, to a pleasing Acidity. It gives comfort to such, who, by long Sicknes, are much spent, the whole Body being weak, the Stomach profligated, the Heart dejected, and the Spirits fainting.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture.* It comforts the Nerves, and being outwardly bathed upon Parts affected with Cramps, Convulsions, Numbness, Trembling, Palsy, extream Coldness of any Part, Pains or Aches, Gout or Sciatica from a cold Cause, it cures them, being constantly used Morning and Night for some considerable time. It is good also to prevent Gangrens, and cure the Contusions or Punctures of the Nerves, immediately asswaging the Pain. Anointed on the Head, it cures a Head-ach from a cold Cause. Given inwardly Morning and Night from 15 to 30 or 40 drops, in White Port Wine or some other specific Vehicle, it helps Crudities, warms and comforts the Brain, Nerves, Stomach and Womb, expels Wind from the Bowels, is good against Barrenness from a cold and moist Cause, prevails against cold Catarrhs, fortifies the Senses, helps against Coughs, Colds, shortness of Breath and difficulty of Breathing. It provokes Urine and the Terms, is good against Dropsies, and expels Sand, Gravel and other Tartarous Matter out from the Reins, Ureters and Bladder.

XX. *The Saline Tincture.* It gives ease by bathing therewith, in the Gout proceeding from a cold Cause. Inwardly taken, from 1 to 2 drams in some proper Vehicle, it is very Diuretick, provoking Urine, and expelling the Recrements of the Urinary Passages, as also Water in Dropsies.

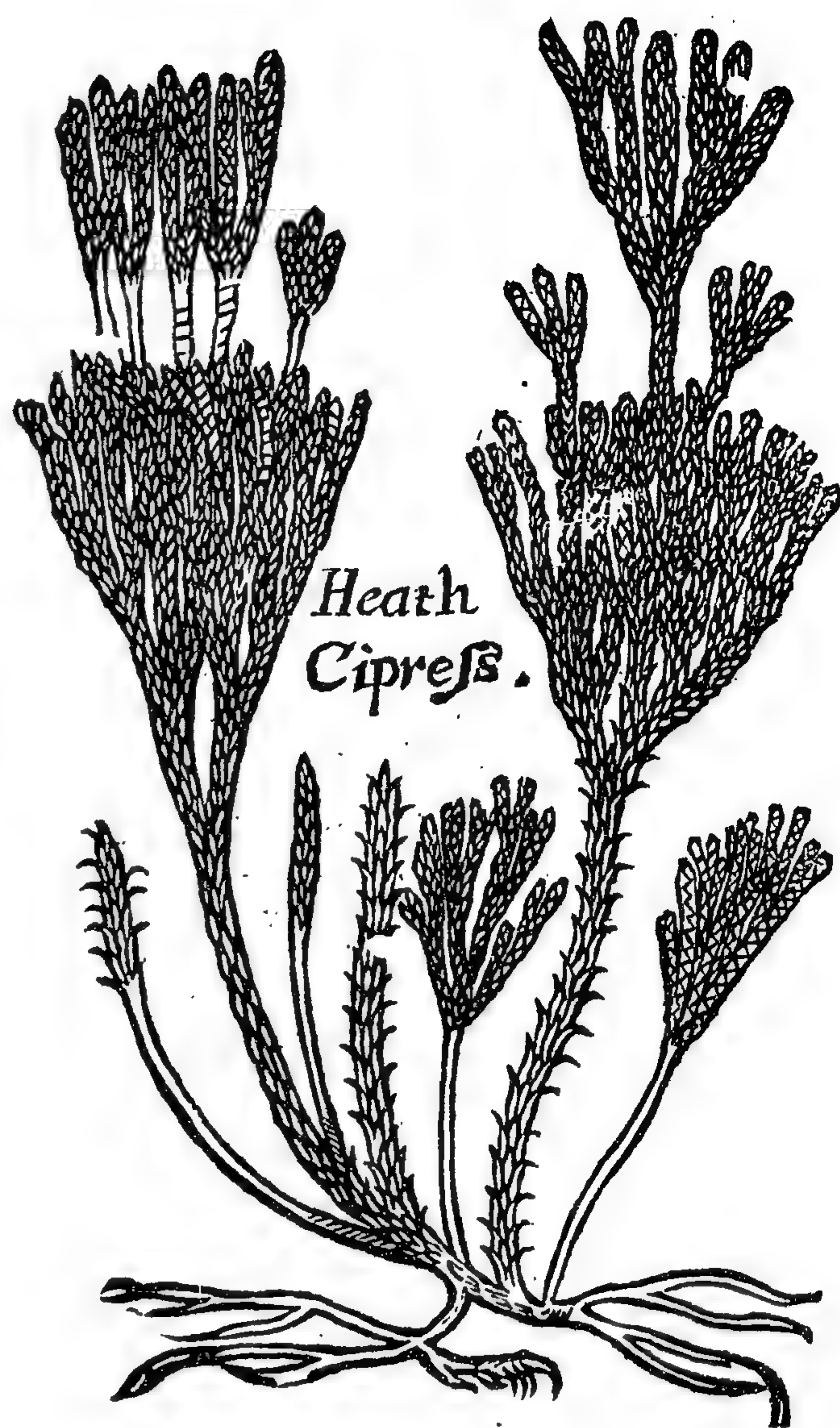
## C H A P. CLXXXVIII.

### Of C Y P R E S S Moss or Heath.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Χαμαίωπος*: in Latin, *Chamacyparissus*, *Cupressus*, vel *Cypressus pumila*, (*herbæ nomen*) *Cupressus* vel *Cypressus muscosus*: in English, *Moss Cypress*, or *Heath Cypress*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is without doubt one of the kinds of *Moss*, and *Singularis sui generis*; for which Reason Authors have called it also, *Muscus clavatus*, and *Cupressi formis*; *Muscus clavatus solis*, *Cupressi Bauhini*, *Selago Plinii*, lib. 25. cap. 11. *Savina Sylvestris Tragi*, *Chamacyparissus*, *Tabernmontani* &

*Turneri*; and in English it is not unfitly called, *Heath Cypress*.



III. *The Description.* It has a small fibrous or stringy Root; from whence spring up several Stalks, some rough and others naked, being hard and branched, with very short and thick Leaves growing on them, something resembling a Branch of the Cypress-tree, and of a dark green color, bitter in Taste, but without Smell. From the tops whereof sometimes spring forth small and soft spiked Heads, viz. such Ears or Catkins as are those of the Club or Woolf-Claw Moss, which are of a yellowish color, and growing on small Foot-stalks. This Herb is a low Plant, and abides always green, both Winter and Summer.

IV. *The Places.* It grows in Woody and Mountainous places, where they call it *Wild Savin*.

V. *The Times.* It flourishes and is in its chief Verdure in the Summer Months.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is temperate in respect of Heat or Cold, Drying, Binding, Incarnative and Vulnerary.

VII. *The Specification.* It is of singular Use for stanching of Blood, and other Fluxes of Humors.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may prepare therefrom, 1. A Decoction in Red Wine. 2. A Spirituous Tincture. 3. A Pouder.

#### The Virtues.

IX. *The Decoction in Red Wine.* It is very Astringent, stops Bleeding, and cures any Flux of the Bowels, if it is recent. It also stops the overflowing of the Terms in Women, and is good against spitting and pissing Blood: Wounds and Ulcers washed therewith, it dries and heals them.

X. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It strengthens the Stomach, stops Vomiting and Fluxes of the Belly, and gives ease in griping Pains of the Bowels, and stops the Loches in Women in Child-bed. Dose from 2 to 4 drams, Morning and Night, in Canary or other fit Vehicle, as the Occasion requires.

XI. *The Pouder.* Inwardly given to one dram,



it stops Fluxes and spitting of Blood : outwardly applied, it stops Bleeding in Wounds ; and strewed upon moist and running Ulcers, it cleanses them, dries up the Humidities, strengthens the Part and induces the healing.

## C H A P. CLXXXIX.

### Of D A F F O D I L Broad-leav'd single, one flowred.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ναρκίω* : in Latin, *Narcissus* ; and in English, *Daffodil*.

II. The Kinds. It is divided into two principal kinds, 1. *Ναρκίω* ἀλβόν, *Narcissus verus*, The true or right Narcissus or Daffodil. 2. *Ναρκίω* νόθον, *Narcissus nothus*, Bastard Daffodil.

III. The true kind is genus to four other subordinate Species, viz. 1. *Ναρκίω* πλατυφύλλον, *Narcissus latifolius*, Broad-leav'd. 2. *Στενόφυλλον*, *Angustifolius*, Narrow-leav'd. 3. *Σχισμώδης*, *Junceus*, Rush Daffodil. 4. *Ἐλαώδης καὶ θαλάσσιος*, *Marinus*, Sea Daffodil. And these four sorts divide themselves again into eight other inferior Species, viz. 1. *Narcissus latifolius monanthos, simplici flore*, Broad-leav'd Daffodil, with one single Flower, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Narcissus latifolius polyanthos simplici flore*, Daffodil broad-leav'd, with many Flowers, single-flowred, of which in Chap. 190. 3. *Narcissus latifolius multiplici flore, vel flore pleno*, Broad-leav'd Daffodil, with a double Flower, of which in Chap. 191. 4. *Narcissus angustifolius flore simplici*, Daffodil narrow-leav'd, with a single Flower, of which in Chap. 192. 5. *Narcissus angustifolius flore pleno*, Daffodil narrow-leav'd, with a double Flower, of which in Chap. 193. 6. *Narcissus junceus flore simplici*, Rush Daffodil single-flowred, of which in Chap. 194. 7. *Narcissus junceus flore multiplici*, Rush Daffodil double-flowred, of which in Chap. 195. 8. *Narcissus marinus, vel litoralis*, Sea Daffodil, of which in Chap. 196. following.

IV. The Bastard kind is genus to four other subordinate Species, viz. 1. *ΨευδοΝαρκίω* πλατυφύλλον, *Pseudonarcissus latifolius*, Bastard Narcissus broad-leav'd. 2. *ΨευδοΝαρκίω* στενόφυλλον, *Pseudonarcissus angustifolius*, Bastard Daffodil narrow-leav'd. 3. *Σχισμώδης*, *Junceus*, Bastard Rush Daffodil. 4. *Θαλάσσιος*, *Marinus*, Bastard Sea Daffodil. And these four sorts divide themselves again into six other inferior Species, viz. 1. *Pseudonarcissus latifolius simplici flore*, Bastard Daffodil broad-leav'd single-flowred, of which in Chap. 197. 2. *Pseudonarcissus latifolius flore pleno*, Bastard Daffodil broad-leav'd double-flowred, of which in Chap. 198. 3. *Pseudonarcissus angustifolius flore simplici*, Bastard Daffodil narrow-leav'd single-flowred, of which in Chap. 199. 4. *Pseudonarcissus angustifolius flore multiplici*, Bastard Daffodil narrow-leav'd double-flowred, of which in Chap. 200. 5. *Pseudonarcissus junceus*, Bastard Rush Daffodil, of which in Chap. 201. 6. *Pseudonarcissus marinus*, Bastard Sea Daffodil, of which in Chap. 202. following.

V. These are the most general Heads of Daffodils ; the particular Species of each are manifold, all which we will not promise to treat of in this Work ; but the most noted singulars under each Head, we shall discourse of, with what Brevity is possible, for the sakes of such as are Florists, or Lovers of a

Flower-Garden. Those then which we are to treat of in this Chapter, are the first of the aforementioned sub-subordinate Species, viz. *Narcissus latifolius monanthos simplici flore*, Daffodil broad-leav'd single-flowred, having but one Flower upon a Stalk, and sometimes by Accident but two Flowers at most.

VI. Authors make about twenty four singular kinds of this ; we shall only describe twenty of the most usual, viz. 1. *Narcissus latifolius omnium maximus, amplo calice flavo, sive incomparabilis vel nonpareille*, The incomparable or great none-such Daffodil. 2. *Narcissus omnium maximus flore & Calice flavo*, The incomparable great yellow Daffodil. 3. *Narcissus griseus maximus calice flavo*, The gray peerless Daffodil. 4. *Narcissus latifolius flore flavo, amplo calice*, The lesser yellow nonpareil, with a large Cup. 5. *Narcissus Indicus flore rubro, dictus Jacobaeus*, The West Indian Daffodil, with a red Flower. 6. *Narcissus Trapezunticus flore luteo præcoccissimus*, The early Daffodil of Trebizond. 7. *Narcissus albus præcox minor oblongo calice luteo*, The small early white Daffodil, with a long Cup. 8. *Narcissus pallidus præcox oblongo calice flavo*, The early Straw-color'd Daffodil, with a long yellow Cup. 9. *Narcissus albus serotinus major oblongo calice luteo*, The great late-flowering white Daffodil, with a long yellow Cup. 10. *Narcissus pallidus serotinus oblongo calice flavo*, The late Straw-color'd Daffodil, with a long yellow Cup. 11. *Narcissus albus serotinus oblongo calice flavo, duobus floribus in caule*, The late white Daffodil, with a long Cup, and two Flowers on a Stalk. 12. *Narcissus medioluteus vulgaris*, The common English white Daffodil. 13. *Narcissus mediocrocus serotinus*, The late-flowering white Daffodil. 14. *Narcissus medio purpureus præcox*, The early purple-ringed Daffodil. 15. *Narcissus medio purpureus serotinus*, The late purple-ringed Daffodil. 16. *Narcissus medio purpureus maximus*, The great white purple-ringed Daffodil. 17. *Narcissus medio purpureus stellaris*, The starry purple-ringed Daffodil. 18. *Narcissus Persicus*, The Persian Daffodil. 19. *Narcissus Autumnalis major*, The greater Autumn or Winter Daffodil. 20. *Narcissus Autumnalis minor*, The lesser Autumn or Winter Daffodil.



VII. The



VII. The Descriptions. *The first, Incomparable, Nompareille, or None-such Daffodil, has a great bulbous Root, as large as other Daffodils, which bear large Flowers, which is covered over with a brownish Coat or Skin; from whence comes three or four long and broad Leaves, of a greyish green color; among which rises up a Stalk two feet or more high, at top whereof, out of a thin skinny Husk, which all Daffodils have, comes forth one large single Flower, (commonly no more) consisting of six very pale, yellow, large Leaves, the bottom whereof, next unto the Stalk, is narrow and round, rising wider to the Mouth, which is very large and open, and unevenly cut in or dented about the edges. The Calice or Cup much resembles one of our old Silver Beakers, with a narrow bottom, and a wide Mouth. The Flower being past, there comes sometimes (tho' not often) a round green Head, and a black round Seed therein, like to other Daffodils, but greater. This Plant does sometimes bring forth a Flower with ten or twelve Leaves, and a Cup much larger, as if it was two, and as the Flower seems to be.*

VIII. *The second, or Incomparable great yellow Daffodil, differs nothing in Form, Magnitude or manner of Growing, but only in the Color of the circling Leaves of the Flower, which are of the same yellow color with the Cup. This sometimes degenerates, and also grows Luxurious, bringing forth two Flowers upon a Stalk, each distinct from other, and sometimes two Flowers thrust together, as if they were but one, but this is very rare. This Plant is a peculiar Plant, not constant to its kind, nor abiding yearly in the same Form.*

IX. *The third, or Grey peerless Daffodil, is wholly like to the two former in Root, Leaf, Stalk and Flower, save that the Leaves are somewhat greater, and the six outward Leaves of the Flower are of a glittering whitish grey color, and the Cup yellow as the former, but larger.*

X. *The fourth, or Lesser yellow Nompareil, has, from a bulbous Root, Leaves rising somewhat like to those of the first kind, but not altogether so long or broad: the Stalk rises not all out so high, and bears but one Flower, like the former, which is lesser; and both Cup and Leaves are of one color, of a pale yellow, yet more yellow than the other: the Cup is also a little lesser, and a little differing, neither fully so small in the bottom, nor so large at the edges, nor so crumpled at the brims, so that these Differences shew, that it is manifestly of a quite differing kind from the others.*

XI. *The fifth, or West Indian Daffodil, has a round large bulbed Root, of a brownish color on the outside, and white within, which sends forth several broad Leaves, somewhat like to the Common white Daffodil, of a greyish green color; from the sides of which, as from the middle of them, rise up sometimes two Stalks together, but most usually one after another, (for it oftentimes flowers twice in a Summer) and often also but one Stalk alone, which is of a faint reddish color, about a foot high or more; at the top whereof, out of a deep red Skin or Husk, comes forth one Flower, bending downwards, consisting of six long Leaves, without any Cup in the middle, of an excellent red color, tending to a crimson: three of these Leaves, which turn upwards, are somewhat larger than the three which hang downwards, having six Threads or Chives in the middle, tipped with yellow Pendants, and a three-forked Stile longer than the rest, and turning the end thereof again. This Aldinus, Cardinal Farnesius his Physician, says, that at Rome it rose up with Stalks of Flowers before any Leaves appeared.*

XII. *The sixth, or Early Daffodil of Trebizond, has a bulbous Root, but not very great, blackish on*

*the outside, and yellow under that blackish or outwardmost Coat, so very like to the Autumn Daffodil, (excepting for that Yellowness) that they may easily be mistaken one for another: it has three or four very short green Leaves, very like to the Leaves of the Autumn Daffodil, excepting that these are not so broad or so long, nor spring up in Autumn. In the midst of these Leaves rises up a short green Stalk, four, five or six inches high, bearing at the top, out of a whitish thin Skin, striped with green, one Flower a little bending downwards, consisting of six Leaves, laid open almost in the same manner with the former West Indian Daffodil, of which some do a little turn up their Points, of a fair pale yellow color, having six white Chives within, tipped with yellow Pendants, and a longer Pointel.*

XIII. *The seventh, or Small early white Daffodil, has a bulbous Root of a moderate largeness, yet lesser than the Roots of the later kinds; from whence spring Leaves broad, very green, and not whitish, as others, three or four standing together, about a foot long or better; among which rises up a green Stalk, not full so high as the Leaves, bearing one Flower at top thereof, of an indifferent bigness, but not so great as the later kinds, which follow after, consisting of six whitish Leaves, but not perfect white, rather of a Cream color, and of a good sweet Smell. In the middle is a long yellow Cup, half an inch long or better.*

XIV. *The eighth, or Early Straw-color'd Daffodil, from a bulbous Root has green Leaves, as the former, but much narrower; the Leaves of the Flowers are more enclining to yellow, but yet very pale, as if of a light Straw color, seeming to be a little more narrow, and pointed, as the former: the Cup is long and yellow, and the Smell sweet, like the last.*

XV. *The ninth, or Great late-flowering white Daffodil, has a moderately large bulbous Root, covered rather with a pale than blackish Skin; from whence come greyish or whitish green-color'd Leaves, somewhat narrow and long; among which springs up a Stalk half a yard high, bearing one Flower at top, made of six white Leaves, having the Cup in the middle, as long as the former, and of a deep yellow. The edges of the Cup are sometimes plain, sometimes a little crumpled, and often circled at the brims with a Saffron color, and often also without it, the Smell of which is very pleasant. This Flower sometimes alters its Form into eight Leaves, which being narrow and long, seem like a white Star, compassing a yellow Trunk.*

XVI. *The tenth, or Late Straw-color'd Daffodil, has a bulbous Root, with Leaves and Stalk like the last, but the chief difference is in the color of the top of the Flower, for that this is of a more yellow color, and a little larger than it, and the brims or edges of the Cup are of a deeper yellow or Saffron color; the Smell of this being no less sweet than the former.*

XVII. *The eleventh, or Late white Daffodil, two Flowers on a Stalk, altho' it is very like to the former, yet is certainly a kind of it self. It is constant in its manner and form of Flowering, commonly bearing, without missing, two Flowers upon a Stalk, very like unto the former great kind, so that no difference seems to be between them, but in the Duality of the Flowers on one Stalk; the Cups of which have seldom any touch of a Saffron color on their edges, as some of the former have.*

XVIII. *The twelfth, or Common English white Daffodil, (called also Primrose Peerless) has a moderate large bulbed Root, encreasing more than a better Plant, from whence spring long limber broad Leaves, of a greyish green color; among which rises up a Stalk, bearing at its top, out of a skinny Husk, sometimes but one Flower, but most commonly two,*

*folded*



yellow three, (but larger for the most part than any which bear many Flowers upon a Stalk) of a pale whitish Cream color, near to that of a pale Primrose, with a small round flat Crown, rather than a Cup, in the middle, of a pale yellow color, with some pale Chives standing therein, and of a pretty sweet Smell.

XIX. The thirteenth, or Late-flowering white Daffodil, has a bulbous Root, like the former, but the Leaves are shorter, and the Stalk rises not so high by much, and bears but one Flower, of a pure white color, made of six small Leaves, and something narrow, standing severally one from another, and not so close together as the former, but appearing like a Star; the Cup is small and round, of a pale yellow color, but Saffron like about the brims, having six small pale Chives in the middle, the Smell of which is much sweeter than the former.

XX. The fourteenth, or Early purple-ringed Daffodil, from a bulbous Root, has many long greyish green Leaves, somewhat narrower and stiffer than the former Common white Daffodil, among which rises up a long naked hollow Stalk, (as all other Daffodils have) bearing at the top one Flower, (seldom two) consisting of six long white Leaves, standing close together about the Stalk: the Cup is yellow, and so flat, that it might rather be called a Crown, for it stands very close to the middle, and very open at the brims, circled with a reddish or purple color'd Ring, having also several Chives in the middle of it, whose Smell is very sweet, exceeding several other kinds.

XXI. The fifteenth, or Late purple-ringed Daffodil, from a bulbous Root, greater than the last, has Leaves broader than it, some being near twice as broad. The Flower is like the former, being large, and its Leaves standing close, one to the sides of another. The Ring also, which compasses the yellow Coronet, is sometimes of a paler reddish purple, and sometimes of as deep a red as the former, from which it differs not any thing else, but in the time of Flowering, which is not until the other is past and gone: the Smell is sweet, like the former.

XXII. The sixteenth, or Great white purple-ringed Daffodil, has a bulbous Root, greater than the former, as also its Leaves and Flowers, the largeness of which makes it only to differ from the last, and to be a distinct kind, it flowering with the later of the Purple-ringed Daffodils.

XXIII. The seventeenth, or Starry purple-ringed Daffodil, from a bulbed Root, has a little narrower and greener Leaves than the former kinds: the Flower has six white Leaves, not so broad, but narrower, and seeming longer than they, not closing together, but standing apart one from another, making it seem like a white Star: it has also a yellow Coronet in the middle, circled about with purple, like the former, smelling sweet, but nothing so sweet as the Early purple-ringed Daffodil.

XXIV. The eighteenth, or Persian Daffodil, has a bulbous Root, a little blackish on the outside, somewhat like the Root of the Autumn Daffodil following. From this Root rises up a naked Stalk about a foot high, bearing one pale yellow Flower, breaking thro' a thin Skin, which first enclosed it, composed of six Leaves, the three outermost being a little larger than the rest, and having in its middle six small Chives, and a larger Pointel, of an unpleasant Smell. After the Flower is past, the Leaves come up, sometimes before Winter, but most usually after the deep of Winter is past, in the beginning of the Year, which are broad, long, and of a pale green color, like the Leaves of other Daffodils, but not green, as the Autumn Daffodil is; they also twine themselves a little, as some of the Pancratium or Bastard Sea Daf-

fodils do. This differs from all other kinds of Daffodils in its manner of Growing, for it has never Leaves and Flowers at one time together, wherein it is like unto a Colchicum, but in Root and Leaf it is a Daffodil.

XXV. The nineteenth, or Greater Autumn Daffodil, has a Root great and round, covered over with a blackish Skin, from whence rise up three or four fair broad and short Leaves at first, but afterwards they grow longer, and of a very deep green color; in the middle of which rises up a short stiff round Foot-stalk, bearing one fair yellow Flower, enclosed at first in a thin Skin or Husk, and composed of six Leaves, as the former, with several Chives in the middle, as most other Daffodils have, which pass away without any appearance of Seed, or Head for Seed, tho' under the Head there is a little green Knot, which possibly might contain and bear Seed, if the Clime was warm and friendly enough, or our sharp Winters did not hinder it.

XXVI. The twentieth, or Lesser Autumn Daffodil, has a Root like the former, but lesser, and covered with a like blackish Skin; from whence spring forth deep green-color'd Leaves, as in the last, but smaller and narrower, a little hollow in the middle; and after them the Stalk and Flower, which is lesser than the other, and a little paler, consisting in six such like Leaves, narrow and sharp-pointed. Clusius says, that the flowering of this Daffodil is more like to the Persian Daffodil at sect. 23. above, than to the former Great Autumn kind; tho' with us it seems to imitate the latter or Great Autumn most, in sending forth its Leaves first, then its Stalk and Flowers.

XXVII. The Places. Whence the first, second, third and fourth first came, is now unknown: the fifth the Title shews came out of the West Indies, and was first brought into Spain, and from thence it was sent to us, and into several other parts of Europe: the sixth came from Constantinople or Trapezuntia: the seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth and eleventh are Natives of the Pyrenean Mountains, from whence they have been brought to us: the twelfth is said to grow naturally in England, and is plentiful enough in all Country Gardens: the Original of the thirteenth is unknown: the fourteenth, sixteenth and seventeenth are Turkish Plants, and came to us from Constantinople: the fifteenth grows in many places of Europe, as in France, Germany and Italy, as Clusius has said: the eighteenth grows in Persia and Turkey, and came to us from Constantinople: the nineteenth and twentieth are also Turkish Plants, and were sent to us from that Metropolis. Now, by Transplanting and great Care, they are made Denizens, if not Natives, with us, and are to be found in most Gardens of our Great and Exact Florists.

XXVIII. The Times. The first, second, third and fourth flower in March, but most in April: the fifth flowers in June and July: the sixth flowers in December, if the former part of the Winter has been mild; but most usually in the end of January, or in the beginning, middle or end of February: the seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth and eleventh flower in the latter end of March and thro' the Month of April: the twelfth flowers about the middle or end of April: the thirteenth flowers in May: the fourteenth flowers early in March: the fifteenth, sixteenth and seventeenth flower about the middle or end of April: the eighteenth, nineteenth and twentieth flower about the end of September and in October.

XXIX. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the first Degree; Attractive, Glutivative, Vulnerary, Emetick and Arthritick.

XXX. The



XXX. *The Specification.* They have been found by Experience to be good against Coughs, Asthma's and Colicks.

XXXI. *The Preparations.* The Root is only in Use, and therefrom you may have, 1. *A liquid Juice.* 2. *A Lohoch.* 3. *An Essence.* 4. *An Ointment or Balsam.* 5. *A Cataplasme.* 6. *A Mixture.*

*The Virtues.*

XXXII. *The liquid Juice.* Taken to 2, 3 or 4 ounces, or more, according to Age and Strength, it causes Vomiting, and very much cleanses the Stomach by that means, causing a good Appetite and Digestion. It may be mixed with White Wine, and taken in the Morning fasting, and so it is good against the Colick.

XXXIII. *The Lohoch.* It is made of the Juice, mixt with half its weight of Honey. It is good against Coughs, Colds, Hoarseness, Wheezings, shortness of Breath and difficulty of Breathing. Dose 1 spoonful at a time, twice or thrice a day: or it may be often taken with a *Liquorice Stick.*

XXXIV. *The Essence.* It wonderfully cleanses, dries and heals: it conglutinates or glews the Mouths of great Wounds together, yea, Incisions of the Veins, Arteries, Nerves and Tendons; the Wound being washed therewith, and Lint dipt therein, being bound thereon.

XXXV. *The Balsam or Ointment.* It is singular against Burnings or Scaldings, whether with Fire, Water, Oil, Gun-powder, Pitch, &c. It cleanses old Ulcers, dries and heals them: and being applied to green Wounds, it consolidates or joins their Lips together, and quickly heals them. It also draws forth Pricks, Thorns, Splinters or other like things gotten into the Flesh.

XXXVI. *The Cataplasme.* If it is beaten and made up with Honey, and applied Emplaster-wise, it is cleansing and attractive, cures Burnings and Scaldings, and conglutinates Sinews which are cut asunder: and so applied to Strains or Wrenches of the Wrists or Ankles, or Joints pained with the Gout, it gives Relief. If to the Cataplasme Meal or Flower of *Darnel* is added, it becomes very attractive, and draws forth Thorns, Splinters, &c. out of the Flesh; and applied upon Sun-burnings and Morphew, it takes them away. The Root made into a Cataplasme with Hogs-Lard and Rye-Bread, it hastens the Suppuration of Apostems, even of those which are not easily ripened.

XXXVII. *The Mixture.* It is made of the Juice mixt with an equal quantity of White Wine Vinegar, and an eighth part of *Nettle Seed* in powder. It is good to remove Defædations of the Skin, as Scurff, Morphew, Tanning, Yellowness, Brownness, Pimples, Freckles, Lentils, Tettars, Ringworms, and other like Affects molesting the same.

C H A P. CXC.

Of DAFFODIL broad-leav'd single, many-flowred.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ναρκισσος πλατύφυλλος πολυάνθης ἀπλῆς*: in Latin, *Narcissus latifolius Polyanthus flore simplici*: in English, *Daffodil broad-leav'd many-flowred single.*

II. *The Kinds.* There are about fifteen kinds of

these many-flowred single, viz. 1. *Narcissus Africanus aureus major*, Daffodil the greater yellow African. 2. *Narcissus Africanus aureus minor*, Daffodil the lesser yellow African. 3. *Narcissus Byzantinus totus luteus*, The yellow Turkey Daffodil. 4. *Narcissus sulphureus major*, The greater Limon-color'd Daffodil. 5. *Narcissus sulphureus minor*, The lesser Limon-color'd Daffodil. 6. *Narcissus totus albus polyanthus*, The many flowred Milk-white Daffodil. 7. *Narcissus latifolius totus albus, mediocri calice reflexus*, The Milk-white Daffodil with the great Cup. 8. *Narcissus Narbonensis medio luteus præcox*, The early Narbone Daffodil. 9. *Narcissus Narbonensis vulgaris*, The common French Daffodil. 10. *Narcissus Narbonensis major flore amplo*, The Narbone Daffodil with great Flowers. 11. *Narcissus Pisanus*, The Italian Daffodil. 12. *Narcissus medio croceus polyanthus*, The French Daffodil with Saffron-color'd Cups. 13. *Narcissus medio croceus alter*, The other Saffron-color'd Daffodil. 14. *Narcissus Anglicus polyanthus*, The great English Daffodil. 15. *Narcissus Narbonensis medio luteus serotinus major & minor*, The late-flowering Narbone Daffodil, greater and lesser.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Great yellow African, (a noble and stately Flower) has a great bulbous Root, covered with a blackish Skin; from whence spring many very long and broad Leaves, of a better green than many others, in the midst of which comes up a Stalk, not rising so high as the Leaves, bearing at the top, out of a skinny Husk, many fair, goodly and large Flowers, ten or twelve in number, if the Root is well grown, and it grows in a warm place, each Flower being larger than any of the French, Spanish or Turkey Daffodils, which bear many single Flowers on a Stalk; (this coming near to the largeness of our English Daffodil (in chap. 189. sect. 18.) before described, or the French described at sect. 12. following, which indeed is also a kind of our English at sect. 16. of this chap. but bearing more Flowers:.) These Flowers are of a fair shining color, having large, round and open Cups or Bowls, yellower than the



the outward Leaves, and of so exceeding sweet a Smell, that it is almost ready to overcome, at least satiate the Senses.

IV. The second, or Lesser yellow African, is almost the same with the former, but wants somewhat of its stately Height, Largeness of its Flowers and Cup, and Beauty of Color, it being of a paler yellow, and is in all those respects inferior to it; nor is its sweet Smell altogether so strong.

V. The third, or Yellow Turkey Daffodil, altho' from its bulbous Root it has very long Leaves, and a high Stalk, yet it comes short of the Beauty of that which was last described; for in this the Flowers are not so many, not being above four or five, nor so large, being not much greater than the Common French Daffodil at sect. 11. following, nor of so fair a color, but much paler; nor having a Cup so large, this being manifestly smaller; nor of so strong or sweet a Smell, this being also weaker.

VI. The fourth, or Greater Limon-color'd, from an indifferent large bulbous Root, has three or four very long and green Leaves, half a yard long at least; among which rises up a round, yet crested Stalk, not so high as the Leaves, bearing five or six single Flowers thereon, every one of them being greater than the Common French Daffodil at sect. 11. following, or the Italian at sect. 13. they are of a faint, yet pleasant yellow color at first, but when they have been in flower a Fortnight, or thereabouts, change into a deeper yellow. The Cup in the middle is also larger than in those foregoing, and of a deeper yellow color than the other Leaves, having only three Chives within it; and is of a very pleasant Smell.

VII. The fifth, or Lesser Limon-color'd, from its bulbous Root has broader and shorter Leaves than the former, not green like them, but of the color of other Daffodils. The Stalk rises up higher than the Leaves, bearing four or five Flowers upon shorter Foot-stalks, and no bigger than the Common French Daffodil, of a pale yellow, which some call a Brimstone color: the Cup, or rather Crown in the middle, is small, and broad open, of a little deeper yellow, having many Chives within it, and as it were, sprinkled over with a kind of Mealiness. It is not full of so sweet a Smell as the former.

VIII. The sixth, or Many-flowred Milk-white, has its bulbous Root covered over with a blackish Skin; from whence spring Leaves of a mean size, both for length and breadth, greener than the ordinary sorts, which have some Whiteness in them. The Flowers are many upon the Stalk, as small for the most part as any of these kinds which bear many together, being wholly of a Milk, or rather of a Snow white color, as well the Cup, which is small, as the outward Leaves, which encompass it: after which come small Heads, in which is contained round black Seed, as all other Daffodils have, but some greater, some lesser, according to the Magnitude of the Plants. The Smell of this is very sweet.

IX. The seventh, or Milk-white with the great Cup, is threefold, 1. One which has its Leaves somewhat broader, and the Flowers greater than the former. 2. Another which has its Leaves smaller, and its Flowers also, whose Cups are likewise small, and are never seen fully open, but as it were half closed at the brims. 3. Another sort, whose Leaves are as broad as any of the lesser sorts, and whose Cup in the middle of the Flower is something larger than in any of the lesser kinds, but lesser than in the greater kinds; the Leaves of whose Flowers do a little turn themselves upwards, from whence it is called Reflexus. These are usually called Narcissus totus albus polyanthos, major, medius, minor, according as the differences are.

X. The eighth, or Early Narbone, has from its

bulbous Root, which is great, Leaves springing up a Month or two before the following kind, being also shorter and narrower. The Stalk is not very high, bearing several Flowers at the top, breaking thro' a thin Skin, as is common with the Daffodils, every one of which is small, consisting of six white Leaves, and a small yellow Cup in the middle, of a pleasant sweet Smell, but nothing so strong as many others. The Root of this seldom parts into off-sets, as all the following do, which bear many single Flowers.

XI. The ninth, or Common French Daffodil, has its bulbous Root covered with a blackish Skin, from which spring long and broad green Leaves, a little hollowish in the middle, and edged on both sides: the Stalk is about half a yard high, bearing on its top several Flowers, somewhat larger than the former, consisting of six white Leaves, something round. The Cup is yellow in the middle, small and round, like unto an Acorn Cup, or a little fuller in the midst. This is the Description of those which came to us first out of France; but with us I think they either degenerate or alter in Form, making in some the Cup shorter, in others flatter, and some longer than the rest; some of a paler and some of a deeper yellow color.

XII. The tenth, or Narbone with great Flowers, has a Root not so great or round as the former, but is more plentiful in Off-sets than any other of the French or Italian kinds. The Leaves are almost like the last, not full out so broad, but full out as long, spring sooner out of the Ground, yet not so early as the eighth at sect. 10. foregoing. The Stalk is flatter and rises higher, bearing four or five Flowers, much larger than any of this kind, every one equaling the English Daffodil (in cap. 189. sect. 17.) but whiter than it, and the yellow Cup larger and more open than in any of the rest.

XIII. The eleventh, or Italian Daffodil, from its bulbous Root has Leaves as large or larger than the Common French at sect. 11. above; but its Stalk is somewhat higher, bearing many white Flowers, very like to the said Common French, but a little larger, as is also the yellow Cup in the middle, and rounder than is commonly seen in any of the French kinds, except the Narbone with great Flowers at sect. 12. above.

XIV. The twelfth, or French many-flowred, with Saffron-colored Cups, has a bulbous Root, Leaves of a greyish green color, not so broad or so long as the Italian, but coming nearer to the Common French. The Flowers are white, and many upon a Stalk: the yellow Cup is somewhat large, and circled with a Saffron like brim or edge, which indeed makes the chiefest difference.

XV. The thirteenth, or Other Saffron-color'd, has also a bulbous Root, from whence spring Leaves large and long; in the midst of which grows up a Stalk, bearing at its top several white Flowers, which are larger than any of the other French, except the Narbone with great Flowers at sect. 12. above; but the Cup is small and short, rather seeming a Coronet than a Cup, of a deep Saffron color all about the brims or edges.

XVI. The fourteenth, or Great English Daffodil, has a bulbous Root, from whence spring Leaves not much broader or longer than the Narbone with great Flowers at sect. 12. above. The Stalk with the Flowers rises not fully so high as it, bearing many Flowers thereon, not altogether so white, yet whiter than the Common English (in cap. 189. sect. 17.) but nothing so large, and with short, broad, and almost round Leaves, standing close one unto another. The yellow Cup in the middle is Bowl-fashion, somewhat deeper than in any of the former, but not much greater; and the Smell thereof is very sweet and pleasant.



XVII. *The fifteenth, or Narbone late-flowering, greater and lesser. The greater has its Root, as well as its Leaves, greater, larger, broader and longer than any of the other former French, Narbone or Italian kinds. The Stalk is as high as any of them, bearing at top five or six white Flowers, standing open spread, like a Star, and not close together, every one thereof is large, and round-pointed. The Cup is yellow, small and short, yet not lying flat to the Flower, but a little standing out, with some Threads in the middle, as all the former Daffodils have. This is not so sweet scented as the earlier kinds be. The lesser differs not from the former, but only that it is every way lesser, and the Cup in the middle of the Flower is yet shorter than it.*

XVIII. *The Places. The first and second grow in Barbary, about Algier and Fez, as some, who have been in those Parts, relate: the third grows in Turkey, about Constantinople: the fourth and fifth have been brought to us from the Pyrenean Mountains, as also out of Italy: the sixth and seventh grow in Spain, in the Southern Parts of France, as also at Constantinople: the eighth, ninth, tenth, twelfth, thirteenth and fifteenth grow in France, as about Mompelcier: the eighth and ninth grow also naturally in many places in Spain, which are open to the Sea; as also in Turkey: the tenth is a Native of Italy, growing about Pisa in Tuscany: the fourteenth is accounted in Foreign Nations, as a Native of England. However, being brought to us from their native Places, they are nurs'd up here by the curious Florist only in Gardens, where they flourish well.*

XIX. *The Times. The first, second and third, after they have been accustomed to our Climate, flower very early, even with the first sort of Daffodils; but many times upon their first bringing over, they flower in January or February, if the Season is mild and warm, because they are tender Plants, and soon perish by being left abroad: the fourth and fifth flower in April: the sixth and seventh flower earlier in Turkey than the others; so also after accustomed to our Air, where they flower in the end of March, or in April: the eighth flowers earlier than the rest by a Month, viz. in the beginning of March, or earlier, if the Weather is mild: the ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth and thirteenth flower in April, some of them a little one before another: the fourteenth and fifteenth flower not till May.*

XX. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are much the same with those in Chap. 189. foregoing, to which I refer you.*

## C H A P. CXCI.

### Of D A F F O D I L broad-leav'd, double-flowred.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ναρκισσος* *πλατυφύλλος* *πολλάπλος*: in Latin, *Narcissus latifolius multiplex flore, vel flore pleno*: in English, *Daffodil broad-leav'd, double-flowred.*

II. *The Kinds. There are six several sorts of this, viz. 1. Narcissus albus multiplex, The double white Daffodil. 2. Narcissus medio purpureus multiplex, The double purple-ring'd Daffodil. 3. Narcissus medio luteus corona duplici, The double Crown'd Turkey Daffodil. 4. Narcissus Chalcedonicus flore pleno albo polyanthos, The double white Daffodil, with many Flowers. 5. Narcissus Chal-*

*cedonicus simbritus multiplex polyanthos, The great double many-flowred purple-ring'd Daffodil of Constantinople. 6. Narcissus Cyprius flore pleno luteo polyanthos, The many-flowred double yellow Daffodil of Cyprus.*

III. *The Descriptions. The first, or Double purple-ring'd, from a bulbous Root has Leaves not very broad, but of a mean size, of the same Largeness of the Purple-ring'd Daffodil following. The Stalk rises up to half a yard high, bearing at top thereof one Flower, and no more, consisting of many Leaves, of a fair white color: The Flower is larger than of any other Double white Daffodil, having every Leaf, especially the outermost, as large almost as any Leaf of the Single Daffodil with the yellow Cup, or purple Ring. Sometimes the Flower is very little double, and almost single, but then it is either in a bad Ground, or it has stood long in the place without removing; for then it has such a great encrease of Roots, that they draw away the Nourishment, to the spoiling of the Flower: but if you transplant it, taking away the Off-sets, and set the Root single, it will thrive, and bear a goodly double Flower, and of a very sweet Smell.*

IV. *The second, or Double purple-ring'd, from a bulbed Root has broad Leaves spring up, little differing from the Leaves of the Single purple-ring'd, it being probably of the same Species. The Flower (being sometimes but one on a Stalk, and sometimes two) consists of six white outer Leaves, as large as the Leaves of the Single kind, having many small yellow pieces, edged with purple Circles round about them, instead of a Cup: and in the midst of these pieces stand six other white Leaves, lesser than the former, and a yellow Cup, edged also with a purple Circle, parted into pieces, and they comprehending a few other white Leaves, smaller than any of the other, having among them some broken pieces of the Cup, with a few Chives in the middle of the Flower, which is of a very sweet Smell.*

V. *The third, or Double-crown'd Turkey, has a Root like unto the last, or somewhat larger, from whence spring forth three or four Leaves, as large and long almost as the Great double white next following; the Stalk is also near as great, and full as high, bearing at the top four or five Flowers, whose Leaves are as large as the Early Narbone or Common French, (in cap. 190. sect. 10, 11.) but not full out of so pure a white color: they are six in number, and stand like the former French Daffodils now named, but that the yellow Cup in the middle of this is thick and double, or as it were crumpled together, not standing very high to be seen, but keeping low and short; so that it is not presently taken notice of, unless precisely lookt upon. This Flower is of an exceeding sweet Smell.*

VI. *The fourth, or Double white many-flowred, has a Root great and thick, covered with a blackish Skin, which sends forth many very broad and very long Leaves, more green than grey; among which rises up a strong round Stalk, being sometimes almost flat and ribbed, bearing four or five, or more, white Flowers at the top, every one being very great, large and double, the Leaves being confusedly set together, having little pieces of a yellow Cup running among them, without any shew of that purple Ring which is in the former; these fall away without bearing Seed, even as all or most other double Flowers do. It is a beautiful and goodly Flower, desirable for its Beauty and Duplicity, as also for its exceeding sweet and strong Smell; one Stalk of Flowers being instead of a Nosegay.*

VII. *The fifth, or Great double purple-ring'd, differs little or nothing in Root or Leaf from the former; the only difference is in the Flowers, which, tho'*



tho' they are double, and bear many upon a Stalk, like unto the former, yet this has the pieces of the yellow Cups tipt with purple, as if they were shred or scattered among the white Leaves, whereas the other has only the yellow, without any appearance of purple Tips upon them: the Smell of this is as strong and sweet as any of the other.

VIII. The sixth, or Many-flowred double yellow of Cyprus, has a bulbed Root, like to the former, and its Leaves are almost as long and as broad as the other. The Stalk is a foot high and more, bearing on its top four or five Flowers, every one very double, of a fine pale yellow color, and of a strong sweet Smell.

IX. The Places. The first was brought into England out of Cambray, where it grows Wild. All the rest came from Constantinople at several times: the last also grows in Cyprus, and some also say in Barbary, about Argiers and Fez; and some of them grow in Candia, as also about Aleppo, and some other Places in the Turks Dominions. Now they are made Denizons of our Kingdom, and grow frequently in our Gardens.

X. The Times. The first flowers about the middle or end of April: all the other Turkey kinds flower very early, in the middle or end of March, or beginning of April at farthest.

XI. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with those in Chap. 189. foregoing, to which you are referred.

## C H A P. CXCII.

### Of D A F F O D I L narrow-leav'd, single-flowred.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ναρκισσος* *σερόφυλλος ἀπλῆς*: in Latin, *Narcissus angustifolius simplex*: in English, Single-flowred, narrow-leav'd Daffodil.

II. The Kinds. The most observ'd are about nine in number, viz. 1. *Narcissus angustifolius albidus praecox oblongo calice*, The early white narrow-leav'd Daffodil, with a long Cup. 2. *Narcissus medio croceus tenuifolius*, The Saffron-crown'd narrow-leav'd small Daffodil. 3. *Narcissus minimus medio purpureus*, The least purple-ring'd Daffodil. 4. *Narcissus minimus flore juncifolii*, The least Daffodil of all. 5. *Narcissus Autumnalis minor albus*, The little white Autumn Daffodil. 6. *Narcissus Autumnalis albus medio obsoletus*, The white Autumn Daffodil with a decayed Crown. 7. *Narcissus angustifolius luteus semper florens*, The yellow Italian Daffodil, always flowering. 8. *Narcissus angustifolius, vel juncifolius maximus amplo Calice*, The Great Junquilia with a large Flower or Cup. 9. *Narcissus Virgineus, vel Virginianus, seu Lilionarcissus Virginianus*, The Virginia Daffodil.

III. The Descriptions. The first of these, or Early white narrow-leav'd Daffodil, from a bulbous Root has three or four narrow, long and very green Leaves, a foot long generally. The Stalk rises not so high as the Leaves, on which grows one Flower, (not full out so large as the Late-flowering Daffodil with a long Cup, among the Broad-leav'd kinds) which consists of six pale-color'd Leaves, not of a pure white, but with a mixture of a light yellow among the white. The Cup in the middle is round and long, (yet not so long as to be accounted a Bastard Daffo-

dil) within which is a middle Pointel, compassed with six Chives, having yellow mealy Pendants.

IV. The second, or Saffron-crown'd narrow-leav'd small Daffodil, has a Root small, round and a little long withal, covered with a blackish Skin, which sends forth four or five narrow Leaves, about a span long; among which rises up a Stalk eight, nine or ten inches high, bearing at top one small white Flower, consisting of six Leaves, with a small yellow Cup in the middle, shaddowed over at the brims with a Saffron color.

V. The third, or Least purple-ring'd, has a bulbous Root, small narrow Leaves, shorter by much than any of the Purple-ring'd Daffodils before described. The Stalk and Flower keep an equal proportion to the rest of the Plant, being in Form and Color of the Flower like unto the Star Daffodil before described, but unlike in Magnitude. The purple color which encircles the brims of the Cup, is so small, that sometimes it is not easily perceived.

VI. The fourth, or Least of all, has a Root small, even the smallest of any Daffodil, and covered with a black Skin; from whence spring two or three whitish green Leaves, narrower than the two last foregoing, and shorter by half, being not above two or three inches long: nor is the Stalk above three or four inches high, bearing one single Flower at top, something larger than the proportion of the Plant should seem to admit, and not much unlike to the Least Rush Daffodil, and of the same bigness, or rather somewhat bigger, being of a faint yellow color, both Leaves and Cup or Crown; for the middle part is spread very much, even to the middle of the Leaves almost, and lyes flat open upon the Flower.

VII. The fifth, or Little white Autumn, has a bulbous small Root, and blackish on the outside, which rises with its Flowers first out of the Ground, without any Leaves at all. It first springs up with one or two Stalks three or four inches long, every one bearing, out of a small Husk, one small white Flower, laid open abroad, like unto the Star white Daffodil before described. In the midst of the Flower is a small yellow Cup, of a middle size. After the Flower is past, there comes in the same place a small Head, containing small, round, black Seed, like unto the Autumn Hyacinth. After the Seed is ripe and gone, then spring up the Leaves, which are small and narrow, not much bigger than those of the Autumn Hyacinth afore-named.

VIII. The sixth, or White Autumn with a decayed Crown, from its bulbous Root has two or three Leaves at most, and very narrow, (so that some account it among the Rush Daffodils) somewhat broad at bottom, and more pointed at top; between which Leaves comes up the Stalk, bearing usually two Flowers, and no more, made of six white Leaves apiece, pointed, and not round. The Cup is small and round, like unto the Cup or Crown of the Least Rush Daffodil, of a yellow color at bottom, but of a dun color towards the edge.

IX. The seventh, or Yellow Italian always flowering, has a bulbous Root, from whence spring a number of small, long, narrow, and very green Leaves, broader than the Leaves of any Rush Daffodil; among which rise up divers Stalks, bearing at their Heads two or three Flowers apiece, each of them being small and yellow, with a small Crown, of a deeper yellow than the former. It is said never to cease bearing Flowers, but that after one or more Stalks have been in flower together, and are past, others succeed in their places.

X. The eighth, or Great Junquilia with a large Flower, has a Root which is greater and longer than the Rush Daffodils, covered with a blackish Skin; from whence spring up several long green Leaves,



like unto the Rush Daffodils, but thicker and broader, so that it may very well be accounted among the Narrow-leav'd Daffodils. Every Stalk bears at its top two or three very fair large Flowers, with a large and more open Cup than in any of the said Rush Daffodils; both of them of a fair yellow color, but the Cup a little deeper than the Flower, and a little crumpled about the edges, having a pretty strong or sharp pleasant Smell. This Plant, by its Name, should seem to be of the Rush kind, which Name it obtained by reason of the Likeness of its Leaf to them: but in Consideration its Leaf is broader and larger than any of the Rush Daffodils, Authors have placed it among the Narrow-leav'd, tho' it might have indifferently been placed in the Rank of either Species.

XI. The ninth, or Single white Virginian, has a Root small, long and round, blackish on the outside, and white within; from whence rise up two or three long, and very narrow, green, shining Leaves, growing sometimes reddish about the edges: between these Leaves rises up the Stalk, about five or six inches high, or more, bearing on the Head thereof one Flower, and no more, standing upright, like a little Lilly or Tulip, made of six Leaves, wholly white, both within and without, except that at the bottom next to the Stalk; and a little on the backside of the three outer Leaves, it has a small dash of a reddish purple color. It has also in the middle a few Chives, standing about a small pointed Head, which Head grows to be small and long, containing small, blackish, flat Seed.

XII. The Places. The first and second of these grows with the Broad-leav'd ones on the Pyrenean Mountains, from whence they were brought into our Gardens: the native places of the third and fourth are unknown: the fifth Clusius saw growing in Spain: the sixth is also a Native of the same Country: the Original of the seventh is unknown: the eighth we only know to grow in our Gardens: the ninth was brought to us from Virginia, where they grow in great abundance. All these, by Transplantation and Care, are now found to grow in English Gardens.

XIII. The Times. The first flowers early, a Month before the other Narrow-leav'd kinds, viz. in the very beginning of March, if the Weather is mild: the second, third and fourth flower in April: the fifth flowers in the beginning of Autumn, and the Seed is ripe in the end of October, in hot Countries; but in ours, it seldom comes to more than Flowering: the sixth flowers in Autumn: the seventh flowers all the Summer long, whence came the Addition to its Name of *Semper florens*: the eighth flowers in April; and the ninth in the end of April, and beginning or fore part of the Month of May.

XIV. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are accounted the same with the Daffodils in Chap. 189. foregoing, so that no more need be said thereof.

### C H A P. CXCI.

#### Of D A F F O D I L narrow-leav'd, double-flowred.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ναρκίσκος* *ἁγρίος*: in Latin, *Narcissus angustifolius flore pleno*: in English, Daffodil narrow-leav'd double-flowred.

II. The Kinds. It is twofold, viz. 1. *Narcissus angustifolius flore albo pleno*, Narrow-leav'd white double-flowred Daffodil. 2. *Narcissus angustifolius flore aureo pleno*, The narrow-leav'd double Golden-flowred Daffodil.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Double-flowred narrow-leav'd Daffodil, has a Root very like unto the former Single Virginian Daffodil (in cap. 192. sect. II.) but it is a little larger and rounder, a little long withal, and blackish on the outside, as that is; from whence rise up two Leaves, somewhat broader than that, but of a like Greenness. The Stalk rises up between these Leaves about a span high, or not much higher, bearing one fair double Snow-white Flower, very like in the Form or Shape to the Lesser French double Bastard Daffodil hereafter to be described; for it is in like manner laid open flat, and composed of six Rows of Leaves, every Row lying in order just opposite, or one before another, whercof those six Leaves, which make the first or outwardmost Course, are the greatest, and all the rest lying one upon or before another, every Row being smaller than the others: in the middle thereof comes forth a small, long, pointed Fork or Horn, white in some sort, like to the Flower it self.

IV. The second, or Double Golden narrow-leav'd, has a Root almost like the Common Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil, from which spring up very narrow Leaves, four or five inches long, of a whitish green color; from among which rises up a Stalk, about a foot high, bearing at the top a Flower, consisting of some outward Leaves, which are of a yellow color, and of many other Leaves in the middle, being smaller, and set thick and round together, of a more yellow Gold color, but with some whiter Leaves among them, the middle part a little pointing forth: the Flower stands long before it does perfect its color, and abides long in Flower before its color decays.

V. The Places. It has been found growing in several places of Virginia, from whence it has been brought to us: it has also been found growing in the Lawns of Carolina.

VI. The Times. It flowers in Virginia towards the latter end of March, or beginning of April: but with us here in England in the end of April.

VII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are said to be the same with the Daffodils in Chap. 189. to which I refer you.

VIII. An Observation. I have been told by some of the Indians, that if the Juice of the Root be given for some considerable time, inwardly in the Spring of the Year; and that the Root it self, by being beaten and made into a Cataplasm, be also at the same time applied to Tumors in the Neck and Throat, it will cure them. I suppose the Tumors here meant, are *Strumous*.

### C H A P. CXCIV.

#### Of D A F F O D I L Rush, single-flowred.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ναρκίσκος* *ἁγρίος*: in Latin, *Narcissus Funicifolius flore simplici*, *Bulbus Vomitorius Dioscoridis*: in English, Daffodil Rush-leav'd single-flowred, or, Single-flowred Junquilia.

II. The Kinds. There are about twelve several sorts of this Flower, viz. 1. *Narcissus Funicifolius albus simplex*, The white Junquilia. 2. *Narcissus Funicifolius*



*funcifolius albus magno Calice*, The white Junquilia with a great Cup. 3. *Narcissus funcifolius flore albo reflexo*, The white turning Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil. 4. *Narcissus funcifolius flore luteo reflexo*, The yellow turning Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil. 5. *Narcissus funceus Calice albo foliis reflexis luteis*, The yellow turning Junquilia with a white Cup. 6. *Narcissus funceus Calice luteo foliis reflexis albidis*, The white turning Junquilia with a yellow Cup. 7. *Narcissus funcifolius luteus magno Calice*, The Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil with a great Cup. 8. *Narcissus funcifolius luteus vulgaris major*, The common or ordinary Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil. 9. *Narcissus funcifolius luteus medius*, The middle-siz'd Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil. 10. *Narcissus funcifolius luteus minor*, The lesser Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil. 11. *Narcissus funcifolius luteus, lineis albicantibus distinctus*, The yellow Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil with white Lines. 12. *Narcissus funcifolius Autumnalis flore viridi*, The Autumn Rush Daffodil, or Junquilia, with a green Flower.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or White Junquilia, has a small bulbous Root, covered with a blackish Skin; from whence spring forth small long Leaves, a little broader, and of a whiter green color than the Ordinary yellow Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil. The Stalk rises up half a foot high or more, bearing two or three small white Flowers upon a Stalk, yet somewhat larger than the Common yellow Junquilia, having a small round Cup in the middle, white also as the Leaves are. The Seed is small, black and round, as the Seeds of other Daffodils are.

IV. The second, or White with a great Cup, has a Root, Leaves and Stalk in all respects like the former; the Flower and Seed is also like, but in this it differs, that the Cup in the middle of the Flower is a little larger than the former.

V. The third, or White turning, has a bulbous or round Root, small, and a little long withal, covered with a blackish brown Skin; from whence spring up four or five long green Leaves, yet shorter and broader than the Common yellow Junquilia, and fully as green; from among which rises up a slender green Stalk, a foot high, bearing at its top, out of a skinny Husk, three or four, or more Snow-white Flowers, standing upon long green Foot-stalks, every Flower hanging down its Head, and turning up its six narrow and long Leaves, even to a very Foot-stalk again: from the middle of the Flower hangs down a long round Cup, as white as the Leaves; within which are contained three small white Chives, tipped with yellow, and a small long Pointel, thrusting out beyond the brims of the Cup: after the Flowers are past, there comes up in their places small three-square Heads, in which is contained very small, round and black shining Seed. The Flower is white, without any good Smell, or indeed rather none at all.

VI. The fourth, or Yellow turning up, has a bulbous Root, from whence rise up long Rush-like Leaves, but they are greater and longer than the former, and of a paler green color: the Stalk rises somewhat higher, bearing two or three Flowers thereon, wholly of a Golden yellow color, both the Cup and the Leaves, which turn up again.

VII. The fifth, or Yellow turning up with a white Cup, has from a round Root several long Rush-like Leaves rising up, and standing upright, like the former, between which rises up a green Stalk, about a foot or more high, bearing two or three Flowers thereon, whose turning up Leaves are of a fair pale yellow, and the Cup of a pale white, but not of so delicate or pure a white as the former.

VIII. The sixth, or White turning up Junquilia with a yellow Cup, differs not much either in its

Roots, Leaves, Stalk or Flowers, save, that as the last had the Leaves of the Flower, which turns up again yellow, and the Cup whitish; so this has contrariwise, the turning up Leaves of a whitish yellow, and the long Cup yellower; otherwise the difference is inconsiderable.

IX. The seventh, or Junquilia with a great Cup, has a round or bulbous Root, from which spring larger Leaves, and longer than the Ordinary or Common yellow Junquilia, being a little flat on one side, and round on the other, but of the same Greenness with all the rest: the Stalk riseth up two feet high, bearing two, and sometimes three Flowers thereon, being of a fair yellow color, with a large open Cup in the middle, of a little deeper yellow color, like unto the Great Junquilia with the great Flower before described, of which this doubtless is a kind, but that this is smaller and lesser than that, both in Leaf and Flower, and Cup, &c. being somewhat lesser in all its other parts.

X. The eighth, or Common or Ordinary Junquilia, has a round or bulbous Root, which is blackish on the outside, from which spring four or five long, round, green Leaves, like unto Rushes, from whence came the Name; from among which Leaves rises up a Stalk, round and green, a foot and half or more high, bearing at the top three or four Flowers, all yellow, but much smaller than the last, and so is the Cup also. The Seed is small and black, enclosed in small cornered Heads. The Smell of the Flower is very sweet in all these sorts of Junquilia, or Rush Daffodils.

XI. The ninth, or Middle-siz'd Junquilia, is like unto the former in its bulbous Root, Rush-like Leaves, Stalks and Flowers, save, that the Leaves are smaller and rounder, the Stalk rises up not so high, nor are the Flowers so great, but the Leaves of the Flower are a little rounder, and not so pointed as in the former, but in all things else they are alike, this being only the lesser.

XII. The tenth, or Small Junquilia, has a Root round, small and black, very like unto the last, from whence spring up five or six small green Leaves, a little broader, but not so long as the last; from among which rises up a Stalk almost a foot high, bearing one or two small Flowers at the top, of a paler yellow color than the former, with a yellow open Cup (or Crown rather) in the middle, bigger than in either of the two last.

XIII. The eleventh, or Yellow Junquilia with white Lines, has a Root not differing from the former, from which spring forth round, long, green Leaves, like to the Ordinary or Common Rush Daffodil, with a Stalk bearing two or three yellow Flowers, having Leaves somewhat round at the point or end, with a Line or Strake of white in the middle of every one of them: the Cup is short and Crown-fashion, and a little crumpled about the edges or brims. The Seed is like to the other kinds.

XIV. The twelfth, or Autumn Rush with a green Flower, sends forth from its Root but one only Leaf, very long, round and green, which while this green Leaf is fresh and to be seen, bears no Flower; but that being faded away, a Stalk afterwards rises up, very much like to the former green Leaf, round, naked and green up to the top, where two or three Flowers break forth out of a small thin Skin, every one consisting of six small and narrow green Leaves, very sharp-pointed at the end, and as it were ending in a small Prick or Thorn; in the middle of which is a small round Cup, (or rather Crown) of the same color with the Leaves and Stalk; which Flower smells very sweet, like unto the rest of the Rush Daffodils or Junquilia.

XV. The Places. The original or native places from



from whence these have been brought to us, were Italy, Spain, the Pyrenean Mountains, and Southern parts of France: the *twelfth* is a Native of Barbary, and was brought to us from France. Now, by Industry and careful Cultivation, they are all become free Denizens, if not Natives of our Country, where, in the Gardens of our Florists, they thrive very well.

XVI. *The Times.* They most of them flower in the Spring, in March, (if it is mild) and April and May, the Seed ripening in some reasonable time after: but the last or *twelfth* flowers not till October, and the Frosts coming soon after, causes it suddenly to perish.

XVII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are much one and the same with those of the Common Daffodils in Chap. 189. to which I refer you.

## C H A P. CXC.

### Of D A F F O D I L Rush, double-flowred.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Ναρκίσκος* *σχινοειδής* *πυλάπλος*, *Βόλβος* *ἐμπεπλός*: in Latin, *Narcissus funcifolius flore multiplici*, *Narcissus funcus flore pleno*, *Bulbus Vomitorius Dioscoridis flore pleno*: in English, Rush Daffodil, or Junquilia double-flowred.

II. *The Kinds.* There are but two usual kinds of this double sort, viz. 1. *Narcissus funcifolius luteus flore pleno*, The double Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil. 2. *Narcissus funcifolius luteus flore pleno minori*, The lesser Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first of these has a Root which is bulbous or round, and blackish brown on the outside, so like unto the Common Rush Daffodil, that it is almost impossible to know the one from the other; from which spring forth long, round, green Leaves, like the Leaves of the Common or Ordinary Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil, and of the same bigness, among which rises up a long, slender, green Stalk, bearing two or three, seldom more, small Flowers, yellow and double, viz. with several Rows of Leaves, having the yellow Cup such as is in the single Flower, broken into small shreds or pieces, running among the Leaves of the Flowers; which pieces in some Flowers are not so easily seen, being smaller than in others. This bears no Button or Head under the Flower, for Seed.

IV. The second, or Lesser kind, is in its Root, Leaves, Stalk and Flowers very like to the former, save that its Flowers are smaller, and not so double, being one, two or three at most upon a Stalk; and also of much less Beauty.

V. *The Places.* They are Natives of Italy, Turkey, Spain, the Pyrenean Mountains, and some Southern parts of France: but flourish very well with us in our Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* Their chief times of flowering are in March, April and May.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are much the same with those of the Common Daffodil in Chap. 189. foregoing.

VIII. *An Observation.* The Juice of the Root, whether of single or double Junquilia's. It may be given, to cause Vomit and cleanse the Stomach, from 1 spoonful to 2 or more, mixed with a Glas

of White Wine or warm Water, in the Morning fasting; it carries off thick and viscous Humors, and the Matter which causes the King's-evil: Some mix it with Vinegar for the same purpose. It also purges downwards afterwards, the rest of those thick tough Recrements.

IX. *Observ. 2. The Decoction in Wine.* It does also the same thing with the Juice, but it is pleasanter, and works more gently, and mostly by Stool, if it is corrected with Aniseed, Ginger and other Spices, to abate the Churlishness of the Working. I have found it by Experience to be good against a Paralysis, if it was recent, and the Patients had Strength and Youth on their sides.

X. *Observ. 3. The Root made into a Cataplasm,* and applied, or into an Ointment, as you do Pilewort Roots, is an excellent thing to be applied to Strumous Tumors or Swellings in the Throat or other Parts, whether they be whole, or broken and ulcerated.

## C H A P. CXCVI.

### Of D A F F O D I L Sea.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Ναρκίσκος* *ἐλώδης* *ἢ* *θαλάσσιος*: in Latin, *Narcissus Marinus vel Litoralis*; and in English, Sea Daffodil.

II. *The Kinds.* There are four kinds thereof: the first is commonly called, *Narcissus Marinus magnus*, *sive Tertius Matthioli*, The great white Sea Daffodil, or Matthiolus his third Daffodil. Clusius called it *Lilionarcissus Hemerocallis* and *Hemerocallidis facie*; and yet this seems not to be a proper Name, for that his *Hemerocallis* is a plain Pancration, or Sea Bastard Daffodil, whose middle Cup is longer than the Cup of any true Daffodil, which is the chiefest Note of Difference between a True and a Bastard Daffodil. It may most fitly be called, *Narcissus Marinus maximus*, The greatest Sea Daffodil, because it is a true Daffodil, and the greatest of all others; as also because it has been found chiefly in Islands, or Places near the Sea. 2. *Narcissus Indicus Autumnalis quorundam Lobelii*, *Pancratium Indicum*, The Indian Autumn Sea Daffodil of Lobel. 3. *Narcissus Marinus Africanus*, *sive Exoticus Lobelii*, The African Sea Daffodil. 4. *Narcissus Marinus Exoticus*, The strange Sea Daffodil: of all which in order.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Great white Sea Daffodil, has a Root which by Age or a long Continuance, standing in one place without being removed, grows to be much greater and larger than any other Daffodil whatsoever, sometimes to be as large as any Ordinary Squil or Sea Onion, being black on the outside, and having many long, thick and white Fibres or long Roots, variously branched, and spread under the upper part of the Earth, besides some others which grow downwards, and perish not every Year, as the Fibres of all or most of the other Daffodils do; for which Reason this Plant will not thrive and bear Flowers, if it is often transplanted, but delights to continue in one place without removing, and where it may not be overshadowed with other Herbs standing too near it, which then will flourish, and bear many fine Flowers. From this Root arise six or seven, or more Leaves, twice so broad almost as any of the former Daffodils, but not so long by half as many of them, being rather short in Comparison of the breadth, and of a white green color: from the mid?



midst of these Leaves, as also from the sides, springs up one Stalk, and sometimes two, or more, thick and roundish, and sometimes a little flat and cornered, a foot or more high, bearing at the top (out of a skinny Husk) eight, ten or twelve, or more very large Flowers, consisting of six white Leaves apiece, spread or laid open, with a white or short Cup or Crown in the middle, lying flat upon the Leaves, cut or divided into six Corners, (and not whole, as the Cup or Crown of any other Single Daffodil;) from every of which Edges or Corners of this Cup or Crown proceeds one white long Thread, a little crooked or turning up at the end, tipt with a yellow Pendent, and some other white Threads, tipt with yellow Pendants, standing also in the middle. After the Flower is past, great three-square Heads come forth, in which the Seed is contained, which is great, black and round, like unto the Seed of other Daffodils, but greater. The Flower has a pretty good Smell, but not very strong.

IV. The second, or Indian Autumn Sea, has a Root, as Lobel says, a span long, and of the thickness of a Man's Arm, covered with many white Shells, of which the outwardmost are of a dark red, or Chest-nut color. The Flowers are eight or ten in number, every one by its self upon a short Foot-stalk, made of six Leaves apiece, somewhat long, narrow and pointed, like unto the Flowers of the English Colchicum, or Meadow Saffron, of a whitish yellow dun color, with six long Threads in the middle. The green Leaves are long and broad, and broad-pointed. Some are of Opinion, that this Plant comes nearer to the Resemblance of an Hyacinth than of a Daffodil; but Lobel has numbered it among the Daffodils, whom we here follow, yet leave it to others Judgments to determine of which kind it is.

V. The third, or African Sea, has a Root very great, made as it were of many scaly Cloves, from whence rises up a small short Stalk, bearing, a little above the Ground, two fair, broad, green, pointed Leaves, longer than they are broad, so encompassing the Stalk at the bottom, that it seems to run through them: the Stalk is spotted with divers discolored Spots, and is bare or naked from these two Leaves unto the top, where it bears one fair double Flower, like unto a Double Anemone, of a diluted reddish color, tending to a blush, with many Threads set about the middle Head.

VI. The fourth, or Strange Sea Daffodil, has a Root which is very great, yet like unto other Great Daffodils; the outward Skins of which are of a dark brown color. From this Root rise up five or six large and long Leaves, of a pale green color; from among which arises up a strong and large Stalk, bearing at top, out of a thin Husk or Skin, many very large Flowers, made of six long and pointed Leaves apiece, of a bleuish purple color, with a large round open Cup in the middle, of a sadder color than the Leaves.

VII. The Places. The first was found by the Sea side in the Isle of Sardinia, and on the high Mountains also of the same Isle, where it has born (by Report) thirty five Flowers upon a Stalk: it grows also about Illyricum, and other Maritime places of the Mediterranean. The second grows in the upper part of Hispaniola in the West Indies. The third grows near the Cape of Good Hope, from whence it was brought into Holland. The last, the place of its Origin is unknown, but now they are all nourish'd up in Gardens.

VIII. The Times. The first springs later out of the Ground than any other Daffodil, viz. about the latter end of March or beginning of April, and flowers in the end of May or beginning of June; and the Seed is ripe in the end of July or beginning

of August. The second flowers in Autumn, viz. in September and October. The third and fourth flower in the Summer Months, earlier or later, as the Season is in Warmth.

IX. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with those of the Common Daffodil in Chap. 189. foregoing, which see in their places.

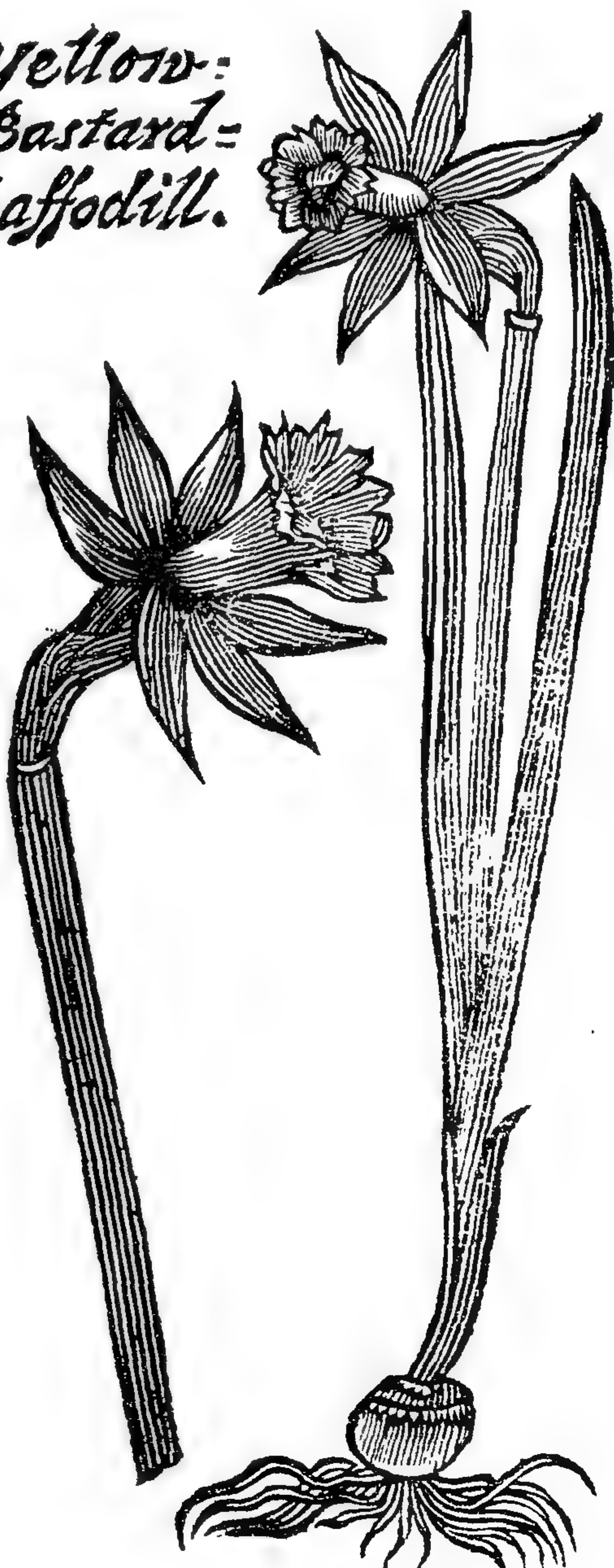
## C H A P. CXC VII.

### Of DAFFODIL Bastard, broad-leav'd single-flowred.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Πεδοναρσις* *κίω* & *πλατυφύλλου απλῆς*: in Latin, *Pseudonarcissus latifolius flore simplici*: in English, Bastard Daffodil broad-leav'd, with single Flowers.

II. The Kinds. There are nine several kinds commonly taken notice of, viz. 1. *Pseudonarcissus Anglicus vulgaris*, Our common English Bastard Daffodil. 2. *Pseudonarcissus Anglicus vulgaris alter*, Another common English white Bastard Daffodil. 3. *Pseudonarcissus tubo sexangulari*, The six-cornered Bastard Daffodil. 4. *Pseudonarcissus aureus Hispanicus maximus*, The great yellow Spanish Bastard Daffodil. 5. *Pseudonarcissus Pyreneus Hispanico & Anglico similis*, The Mountain Bastard Daffodil of divers kinds. 6. *Pseudonarcissus Pallidus præcox*, The early Straw-colored Bastard Daffodil. 7. *Pseudonarcissus Hispanicus flore albo major*, The greater white Spanish Bastard Daffodil. 8. *Pseudonarcissus Hispanicus maximus albidus*, The greatest Spanish white Bastard Daffodil. 9. *Pseudonarcissus Hispanicus flore albo medius & minor*, The lesser and mean white Spanish Bastard Daffodils.

Yellow:  
Bastard:  
Daffodil.





III. The Descriptions. The first, or Common English, has a Root which is bulbous and somewhat blackish on the outside; from whence spring forth three or four greyish green Leaves, long and somewhat narrow; among which rises up the Stalk, about a span or somewhat more high, bearing at the top, out of a skinny Husk, (as all other Daffodils have) one Flower, and sometimes two, something large, having the six Leaves which stand like Wings of a pale yellow color, and the long Trunk in the middle of a fair yellow, with the edges or brims a little crumpled or uneven. After the Flower is past, it bears a round Head, seeming three-square, containing round black Seed.

IV. The second, or Our common English white, is in Root, Leaves and Stalk, like to the other in almost all respects: but the Wings of its Flower are much more white than the former, and in a manner of a Milk-white color, the Trunk remaining almost as yellow as that in the foregoing, but not differing in any thing else.

V. The third, or Six-cornered, has a Root like to the others, from whence spring two or three long and somewhat broader Leaves than in the two foregoing; between which comes forth a Stalk, bearing one Flower, somewhat large, having the six outward Leaves of a pale yellow color, and the long Trunk plaited or cornered all along, unto the very edge, into six parts, of a little deeper yellow than the Wings.

VI. The fourth, or Great yellow Spanish, has a reasonable great Root, and blackish on the outside, pressing deep into the Ground, and therefore will run down, where it will encrease into many Off-sets; from whence rise up many thick, long and stiff Leaves, of a greyish green color; among which rises up a round strong Stalk, sometimes a yard high or higher, bearing at the top one only fair large yellow Flower, standing forth right, and not pendulous, consisting of six short and somewhat broad Leaves, with a very great, large and long Trunk, of an equal Bigness, but open at the Mouth, and turning up the brims a little, which are something crumpled. When the Flower is past, there comes in the place a three-square Head, containing round black Seed, like to other Daffodils.

VII. The fifth, or Mountain Bastard, of divers kinds; they have all of them a bulbous Root, which is blackish on the outside: but of this there are several sorts, as, 1. One which has very broad and whitish green Leaves, something short in Comparison with others of that breadth: the Flower is wholly yellow, but a little paler than the former Spanish kind, having the Leaves of its Flower long and a little narrow, standing like Wings about the middle of the Trunk, which is as long as the Leaves, and smaller than in many others of this kind, but a little yellower than the Wings. 2. One which has narrower green Leaves than the former, and longer; the Flower is all yellow, but the Trunk is larger, wider and more open at the Mouth than the other, and almost as large as the former Spanish, but not so high as the last. 3. One which has the Wings of the Flower, of a Straw color, but the Trunk is long and narrow, of a fair yellow. 4. One which has such like Flowers, but that it is shorter, both in the Wings and the Trunk. 5. Another which has the Wings of the Flower longer than the long Trunk, and sometimes shorter. 6. Another which has its Wings all yellow, or only a little more pale or white, like to the English kind. 7. Others which have their Trunks long and narrow, or larger, and wider open, and crumpled at the brims.

VIII. The sixth, or Early Straw-colored, from a bulbous Root, has Leaves rising up, of a mean size, between the broadest and narrower kinds, of a greyish

green color, and not very long: the Stalk rises up a foot high or more, on the top of which grows one large fair Flower, equalling the largest Spanish Bastard Daffodil, before described, in the Largeness of its Trunk, and having the brims turned up a little, which makes it seem the larger. The Wings or outward Leaves are in a manner as short as they are in the greatest Spanish kind, (and not long flagging down, like unto the Mountain kinds) and stand straight outright. All the whole Flower is of one even color, viz. of a fine pale yellow, not much unlike to the color of a fresh Limon Peel, but a little whiter, which we commonly call a Straw-color. It is a large Flower, and early in the Spring.

IX. The seventh, or Greater white Spanish, has a Root greater and thicker than the first Spanish at sect. 6. above, but does not encrease so much, nor is covered with a black, but rather with a whitish Skin. From this Root divers Leaves rise up together, long and broad, somewhat like to the first Spanish kind at sect. 6. but a little broader, and of a whiter green color, yet not so white as in the Lesser Spanish white kinds, after described. From among these Leaves rises up a round strong Stalk, about two feet high, bearing at its top one white Flower, bending down the Head, as all these White kinds do, but is not of so pure a white as the Lesser kinds which follow, yet whiter than the Greatest white Spanish kind, next to be described in sect. 10. The whole Flower, as well Trunk as Wings, is much larger than the Lesser white kinds, and almost equalling the first Spanish yellow, but a little longer and narrower, a little crumpled, and turning up at the brims; after which, there follows a Head and Seed, like to the first.

X. The eighth, or Greatest Spanish white, has a Root like to the former, but greater, being white on the outside, and not black. In the manner of its Growing, it is very like to the last, both in its Leaves and Flowers, but larger in both. The Flower of this is not full out so white, but has some shew of Paleness therein, and more upon the first opening of the Flower than afterwards, and is as great altogether as the Spanish yellow, at the least with a longer and somewhat narrower Trunk, after which come Heads of Seed, like the former.

XI. The ninth, or Lesser and mean white Spanish, are two other, one lesser than another, and both lesser than the two former White Spanish Daffodils. The Roots of both are like one another, but do differ in Greatness. The Leaves of both are of a whitish green color, one a little broader than the other. The Flowers of both are pure white, and bending down their Heads, that they almost touch the Stalk again: the greater Flower has the longer and narrower Trunk; and the lesser Flower, the shorter and wider open; yet both a little crumpled at the edges or brims. From the Seed of these has sprung great Variety, few or none keeping either the Color or Height of their Original.

XII. The Places. The first is common thro' all England, in Copses, Woods and Orchards, inasmuch that by its growing Wild, it is of the lesser value in our Gardens. The second is also English, yet is found growing on the Pyrenean Mountains. The third grows in Gardens. The fourth was brought out of Spain. The fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth and ninth came from the Pyrenean Mountains; and are also found in some parts of Spain: but with us they all grow in Gardens only.

XIII. The Times. The first, second and sixth are the most early: all the rest flower in April: and the greatest yellow, somewhat earlier than the other greater or lesser white.

XIV. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are much the same with the Common



or *Vulgar Daffodils* in Chap. 189. aforegoing, to which you are referred.

## C H A P. CXCVIII.

### Of D A F F O D I L Bastard, broad-leav'd double-flowred.

**I.** **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ψευδο-κίανθος πλατυέλλος πλάπλος* : in Latin, *Pseudonarcissus latifolius flore multiplici* ; and in English, Bastard Daffodil broad-leav'd, with double Flowers.

**II.** The Kinds. Of this sort there are five kinds, viz. 1. *Pseudonarcissus Anglicus flore pleno*, The English double Bastard Daffodil, or Gerard's double Daffodil. 2. *Pseudonarcissus aureus maximus Anglicus flore pleno*, five *Roseus Tradescanti*, The greatest English yellow double Bastard Daffodil, or Tradescant his great Rose Daffodil. 3. *Pseudonarcissus aureus major Anglicus*, The English great yellow double Bastard Daffodil, or Wilmer's great yellow double Bastard Daffodil. 4. *Pseudonarcissus aureus Hispanicus flore pleno*, The great double yellow Spanish Bastard Daffodil, or Parkinson's Bastard Daffodil. 5. *Pseudonarcissus Gallicus major flore pleno*, The greater double French Bastard Daffodil.

**III.** The Descriptions. The first, or English double Bastard, has a Root which is small, very like unto the French double kinds, especially the Lesser, to which it is so like, that it is hard to know the one from the other. From this Root arise Leaves very like unto the Single kinds, being of a whitish green color, and something broad, a little shorter and narrower, yet stiffer than the following French kind. The Stalk rises up about a foot high, bearing at top one very double Flower, the outermost Leaves being of the same pale color which is to be seen in the Wings of the Single kind ; those which stand next them are some of as deep a yellow as the Trunk of the Single, and other some of the same pale color, with some green Stripes on the back of divers of the Leaves. Thus is the whole Flower variably mixt with pale and deep yellow, and some green Stripes among them, when it is fully open, and the Leaves dispersed and broken. Sometimes the Flower shews a close and round yellow Trunk in the middle, separate from the pale outward Wings ; which Trunk is very double, shewing some pale Leaves within it, dispersed among the yellow : and sometimes the Trunk is more open, or in part broken, shewing forth the same colors intermixt within it. At length the Flower passes away, and without giving any Seed, as all other bulbous Roots do, which bear double Flowers.

**IV.** The second, or Greatest English yellow double, (called by Parkinson, The Prince of Daffodils) has a great round Root, like unto other Daffodils, covered with a brownish Skin ; from whence rise up four or five somewhat large and broad Leaves, of a greyish green color, yet not fully so long and large as the next following : from the midst of which rises up a Stalk, almost as high and as great as it, bearing at its top, out of a skinny Husk, one fair, large, double Flower, (the Bud, before it breaks open, being shorter and thicker in the middle, and ending in a longer and sharper Point than any of the other Daffodils) very much spread open, consisting of smaller and shorter Leaves than the next following, but more

in number, and thicker and rounder set together, making it to seem as great and double as any Province Rose, and intermixt with divers yellow and pale Leaves, as it were in Rows, one under another. It continues long in Flower, and spreads by standing long, to be the broadest in Compass of any of the Daffodils ; but it fades away at last without giving any Seed, as all double Daffodils do.

**V.** The third, or English great yellow double Bastard, has a thick great bulbous Root, which encreases as well as any other Daffodil ; from which spring three or four large, long and broad Leaves, somewhat longer and broader than the former, and of a whitish green color. The Stalk rises to be about two feet high, if it grows in a fat and fruitful Soil, and is strong and something round, bearing at the top, out of a thin Husk or Skin, one large and fair double Flower, each Leaf of which is twice as large and broad as the last described, variously intermixt with a Row of paler, and a Row of deeper yellow Leaves, wholly dispersed throughout the Flower, the pale color as well as the deeper yellow, in this as well as in the Small English kind, growing deeper by standing : sometimes the Leaves thereof are scattered and spread wholly, making it shew a fair, broad, open Flower ; and sometimes the outer Leaves stand separate from the middle Trunk, which is whole and unbroken, and very thick of Leaves ; and sometimes the middle Trunk will be half broken, neither expressing a full open double Flower, nor a close double Trunk, as it is also seen in the Small English kind : at length the Flower passes off without bearing any Seed. This Great double Bastard Daffodil does so near resemble our Common double English kind, that there is little other Difference found between them, but in the Largeness of the Leaves and Flowers, and in its Stateliness, and magnificent way of Growing.

**VI.** The fourth, or Great double yellow Spanish, has a great bulbous Root, covered with a dark-colored Skin, and whitish on the inside : from this Root divers Leaves rise up, stiffer, narrower, and not of so whitish a green color as the former, but more dull or greyish, plainly resembling the Leaves of the Single great kind ; from whence 'tis said this took its Original : The Stalk hereof also rises almost as high as it, and near the height of the last described, bearing one double Flower at top, always spread open, and never forming a double Trunk, like the former, yet not so fair and large as it ; the outermost Leaves whereof, being of a greenish color at first, are afterwards more yellow, and do a little turn themselves back again to the Stalk : the other Leaves are some of a pale yellow, others of a more Gold yellow color : those which stand in the middle are smaller, and some of them shew as if they were hollow-trunked ; so that they seem to be greenish, whitish, yellow and Gold-yellow, all mixed one among another. Parkinson thinks himself to be the first that ever had this Flower in England, his being of his own raising, and flowering first in his Garden.

**VII.** The fifth, or Greater double French, has a Root very like unto the Lesser kind, but a little bigger and longer ; from which spring whitish green Leaves, longer and broader than the Smaller French kind, hereafter to be described, and broader and longer, and more limber than the Double English kind at sect. 3. above. The Stalk rises up not much higher than the Smaller French kind, but a little bigger, bearing at its top one great double Flower, which when it is perfectly blown open, (which is but seldom, by reason of the Leaves cleaving very fast one to another) becomes a fair and goodly Flower, larger by half than the Smaller kind, and fuller of Leaves, of the same pale whitish yellow or Limon color with



the Lesser, or rather a little whiter, and not set in the same Order of Rows, as that is, but more confusedly together, and turning back the ends of the outermost Leaves to the Stalk again, neither of which is found in the Lesser kind.

VIII. *The Places.* The first is natural of our own Country; for Gerard found it in an old Womans Garden in the West of England, where it grew before the Woman came to dwell there: and Parkinson says, That he heard that it was a Native of the Isle of Wight. The second is unknown as to its Original, but it seems to be a Native in John Tradescant his Garden. The third, as far as we can learn, is an English Plant, growing in the Garden of Vincent Sion, (a Fleming) dwelling on the Bank side of the River Thames, from whom Mr. Wilmer of Stratford Bow had it; after which it went by Wilmer's Name. The fourth, Parkinson says, was of his own raising: he says it was assuredly raised from the Seed of the Great Spanish single kind, which he sowed in his own Garden, and cherished it, till it gave such a Flower as is described. The last, its Origin is not certainly known; some think it came from France, others from Germany.

IX. *The Times.* They all flower much about one time, viz. from the middle of March, as the Year is in forwardness, unto the middle of April.

X. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are much the same with those of Common Daffodil in Chap. 189. foregoing, which see in the place cited.

## C H A P. CXCIX.

### Of DAFFODIL Bastard, narrow-leav'd single-flowred.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ψευδοαρκευσις* *σενόφυλλος* *πλάπλος*: in Latin, *Pseudonarcissus angustifolius flore simplici*: in English, Bastard Daffodil narrow-leav'd with single Flowers.

II. *The Kinds.* Of this there are three several sorts, viz. 1. *Pseudonarcissus angustifolius flore flavescente Tabo quasi abscisso*, Bastard Daffodil narrow-leav'd, with a clipt Trunk. 2. *Pseudonarcissus Hispanicus medius & minor luteus*, Spanish yellow Bastard Daffodils, the two lesser kinds. 3. *Pseudonarcissus Hispanicus luteus minimus*, The least Spanish yellow Bastard Daffodil.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Narrow-leav'd Bastard, with a clipt Trunk, has a bulbous Root, from which spring long and narrow greyish green Leaves, bearing one single Flower at the top of its Stalk, like unto the former Single Bastard kinds, having its outer Leaves of a pale yellow color, and its Trunk of a deeper yellow. The chief Differences of this from the English double Bastard in the former Chapter, is in the Leaves, being narrow, and then in the Trunk of the Flower, which is not crumpled or turned up, as most of the others are; and that the brims or edges of the Flower, are as if they had been clipt off or cut even.

IV. The second, or Spanish yellow Bastard lesser kinds, have a Root which is but small, and covered with a darkish Skin. These two Lesser kinds do differ but in Greatness the one from the other, and not in any thing else; so that in describing the one, you may understand the other. The Lesser then has three or four narrow, short, whitish green Leaves; from

among which comes forth a short Stalk, not above an Hand Breadth or half a foot high, bearing one single Flower, not fully standing out right, but a little bending down, consisting of six small Leaves, standing as Wings about a small but long Trunk, a little crumpled at the brims. The whole Flower, as well Leaves as Trunk, are of one deep yellow color, like unto the Great Spanish kind.

V. The third, or Least Spanish yellow Bastard, has a Root smaller than either of the former; the Leaves of this Small kind are smaller and shorter than the last, seldom exceeding the length of three inches, and very narrow withal, but of the same greyish green color with the former; every Flower stands upon a small and short Foot-stalk, scarce rising above the Ground; so that its Nose, for the most part, does lye on or touch the Earth, and is formed after the same Fashion, and of the same color with those immediately going before, but much lesser.

VI. *The Places.* The first is a Native of the Pyrenean Mountains. The second are Natives of Spain: and the third was also brought from thence to us: and are all now nurs'd up in our Gardens.

VII. *The Times.* The first flowers at the end of March. The second and third about the beginning of March: but with us they flower something later, because of the Coldness of our Clime.

VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* differ not much from the Common Daffodils in Chap. 189. foregoing; but these are supposed to be something weaker.

## C H A P. CC.

### Of DAFFODIL Bastard, narrow-leav'd double-flowred.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ψευδοαρκευσις* *σενόφυλλος* *πλάπλος*: in Latin, *Pseudonarcissus angustifolius flore multiplici, vel pleno*; and in English, Bastard Daffodil narrow-leav'd, with a double Flower.

II. *The Kinds.* It is *singularis sui generis*, without any sub-ordinate Species; and is vulgarly called, *Pseudonarcissus Gallicus minor flore pleno*, The lesser French double Bastard Daffodil.

III. *The Description.* The Roots of this Lesser French kind, are like unto the Double English kind, as also to the former Double greater French kind; and the Leaves are of the same whitish green color also, but narrower, and not longer: the Stalk rises a little higher than the English, and not fully so high as the Greater French, bearing one fair double Flower on its top, of a pale yellow or Limon color, consisting of six Rows of Leaves, every Row growing smaller than other unto the middle, and so set and placed, that every Leaf of the Flower does stand directly almost in all, one upon or before another, unto the middle, where the Leaves are smallest, the outermost being the greatest, which makes the Flower seem the more beautiful. This and the Greater kind has no Trunk, or shew of any other thing in the middle, as all or most of the other former Double Bastard Daffodils have, but are Flowers wholly composed of Leaves, standing double even to the middle. Parkinson doubts whether this or the Greater French Bastard, ought to be called Bastard Daffodils or not, because the Flower in neither of them is made after the Fashion of other Bastard Daffodils, but rather resembles the Form of the Double white Daffodil.

IV. The



IV. *The Places.* This French double kind grows about Orleance in France, where it plentifully abounds; but with us in England, it is only nurs'd up in Gardens.

V. *The Times.* It flowers from the middle of March to the middle of April.

VI. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with the Common Daffodil, all which are discoursed in Chap. 189. foregoing.

## C H A P. CCI.

### Of DAFFODIL Bastard, Rush-leav'd.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Ψευδο-κισσος θειονιδης*: in Latin, *Pseudonarcissus Funcifolius*, vel *Funceus*: in English, *Bastard Rush Daffodil*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make four several sorts of this Plant, viz. 1. *Pseudonarcissus Funcifolius albus*, The white Bastard Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil. 2. *Pseudonarcissus Funcifolius luteus major*, The greater yellow Bastard Junquilia, or Bastard Rush Daffodil. 3. *Pseudonarcissus Funcifolius luteus minor*, The lesser yellow Bastard Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil. 4. *Pseudonarcissus Funcifolius luteus serotinus*, The late yellow Bastard Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or White Bastard Junquilia, has a bulbous Root, from which rise up two or three long and very green Leaves, very like unto the Small yellow Junquilia, or Rush Daffodil before described, but not altogether so round: from among which rises up a short Stalk, about six inches high, bearing at top, out of a skinny Husk, one small white Flower, sometimes declining to a pale color, having six small and short Leaves standing about the middle of the Trunk, which is long, and much wider open at the mouth than at the bottom. The small outward Leaves or Wings are a little tending to green, and the Trunk, as I said, is either white or whitish, having the brims or edges a little uneven. The Seed is small, black and round, like unto other Junquilia, or Rush Daffodils, but smaller.

IV. *The second, or Greater yellow Bastard Junquilia,* has a bulbous Root, bigger than the former; and the Leaves of this Greater kind are longer, greater and a little broader than the last described. The Stalk also is higher, and the Flower larger, more open at the Mouth, and more crumpled than the White, but wholly of a yellow color. The Seed is also larger, according to the Proportion of the Plant.

V. *The third, or Lesser yellow Bastard Junquilia,* is in Root, Leaves, Stalk and Flower, and manner of Growing, yea, in all things so like unto the last, it is needless to trouble you with any farther Description thereof; the only Difference is in the Magnitude of the Plants, this being smaller in all its Parts.

VI. *The fourth, or Late yellow Bastard Junquilia,* is in Root, Leaves, Stalk and Flower, also in manner of Growing, very like unto the former Greater yellow Bastard Junquilia, but with this Difference, that this is rather the larger Plant, and bears the fairer Flower, and flowers also something later than that does.

VII. *The Places.* These all came to us from the Pyrenean Mountains; and being tender Plants, are with much Care, nurs'd up in our Gardens.

VIII. *The Times.* The three first flower in April: the last flowers a Month later, viz. in May.

IX. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are much the same with the Common Daffodil, of which we have spoken in Chap. 189. foregoing.

## C H A P. CCII.

### Of DAFFODIL Bastard, Sea.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Ψευδο-κισσος θαλασσης*: in Latin, *Pseudonarcissus Marinus*; and in English, *Sea Bastard Daffodil*.

II. *The Kinds.* So far as we know, it is a singular Plant of the kind; tho' Authors report, that there are other sorts of it, some of which bear yellow Flowers, and others which bear red; but of those we can say nothing in this place.

III. *An Observation.* Some have called this Plant *Pancratium flore Lilii*; but this was a Mistake. Others thought it to be a kind of *Scylla*, and used it instead of *Squills* in *Theriaca*; but this was a dangerous Error. Others, as *Clusius* saith, call'd it *Hemerocallis*, thinking it to be a Lilly; and *Clusius* does thereupon call it *Hemerocallis Valentina*, but was wholly in the wrong: for it is neither *Pancratium*, nor *Scylla*, nor *Lillium*; but it is certainly a kind of *Daffodil*, as the Form of Root, Leaf, Stalk and Flower demonstrate.

IV. *Observat. 2.* 'Tis true, *Dioscorides* will have *Pancratium* to be a kind of *Scylla*; and so it was called in his time, viz. *Scylla radice rubra*, which had a Leaf like a Lilly, but longer, and was used both with the same Preparation and Quantity, and for the same Diseases that *Scylla* was used for, only that it was said to be weaker. But beware of using of this Sea Bastard Daffodil by such a Mistake, because of its dangerous Effects, which are said to be deadly: for it is reported, that one, out of Malice, did before hand cut the Root of this Plant with the Knife which another was presently after to cut his Meat withal, and that with an Intention to kill him by the Poison thereof, with which the Knife was poisoned.

V. *The Description.* It has a large white bulbous Root, from which spring several broad whitish green Leaves, but not very long; among which rises up a stiff round Stalk, at the top whereof break out of a great round skinny Husk, five or six Flowers, every one made somewhat of the Fashion of the Greater Bastard Rush Daffodil, but greater, and wholly white; the six Leaves being larger and longer than in the Junquilia or Rush kind, and extending beyond the Trunk, are tipped with green at the point of each Leaf, and down the middle likewise, on the backside. The Trunk is longer, larger and wider open at the Mouth, cut in or indented at the brims or edges, and small at the bottom, with divers white Threads in the middle, and is very sweet. Under the Flower is a round green Head, which grows very great, having within it, when it is ripe, flat and black Seed.

VI. *The Places.* It grows near the Sea side in Italy, Spain and France, within the Straights, and for the most part upon all the Levant Shore, and Islands of the Mediterranean, but does not often flower in our colder Climates; but it prospers, and I saw it grow admirably well in some parts of the Southern Carolina, and other parts of Florida.

VII. *The Times.* It flowers towards the latter end of Summer, viz. in August and September.



VIII. As to the *Qualities and Medicinal Virtues* hereof, Authors have said nothing about it, but do account it a virulent Poison, rather than any thing else: and yet it is possible it may be prepared for external Applications, with singular Advantage against many stubborn and rebellious Diseases, such as are Struma's, Oedema's, and other Infirmities of like kind.

## C H A P. CCIII.

### Of DAFFODIL Chequer'd.

**I.** *THE Names.* This Plant was unknown to the Greeks, as far as we can learn, and so has no proper Greek Name belonging to it: but it is called in Latin, by Authors, *Fritillaria*, by *Dodoneus*, *Flos Meleagris*, (The Ginny Hen-Flower, because of the Variety of the Colors in the Flower, agreeing with the Colors of the Feathers of a Ginny Hen:) by *Lobel*, *Lilio-narcissus*, *Variegatus*, & *Purpureus Variegatus*, & *Tessulatus*, (making it a kind of Tulip:) others, *Lilium variegatum*: in English, *The Chequer'd Daffodil*, *The Chequer'd Lilly*, *The Ginny Hen-Flower*, and *Fritillary*, by which last Name it is most known.

**II.** *The Kinds.* Some Authors will have it to be of the kind of the *Daffodil*; some of the *Tulip*; some of the *Lilly*, and others as partaking of something of all of them, and therefore have placed it between them: but because it is now most commonly called, *A Chequer'd Daffodil*, we have placed it immediately after the *Daffodils*. Hereof there are many Species found out of late, as *White*, *Red*, *Purple*, *Yellow*, *Black*, of each of which there are also several sorts; but the *Purple* kind was that which was first known.

**III.** Authors make several Species hereof, some more, some less: those which we shall take notice of in this Chapter, are the thirteen following, viz. 1. *Fritillaria vulgaris*, The common Chequer'd Daffodil. 2. *Fritillaria vulgaris pallidior, praecox & Serotina*, The early and late common Chequer'd Daffodil. 3. *Fritillaria flore atro rubente*, The Blood-red Fritillary. 4. *Fritillaria maxima purpurea, sive rubra*, The great purple or red Fritillary. 5. *Fritillaria alba*, The white Chequer'd Daffodil. 6. *Fritillaria flore duplici albicante*, The double blush Fritillary. 7. *Fritillary flore luteo puro*, The absolute yellow Fritillary. 8. *Fritillaria flore luteo variegata sive punctato*, The variegated yellow Fritillary. 9. *Fritillaria lutea maxima Italica*, The great yellow Italian Fritillary. 10. *Fritillaria polyanthos flore parvo Italicorum*, The small Italian Fritillary. 11. *Fritillaria lutea fuscifolia Lusitanica*, The Portugal small yellow Fritillary. 12. *Fritillaria Pyrenaea, sive Apenninea*, The Pyrenean black Fritillary. 13. *Fritillaria Umbellifera Hispanica*, The Spanish Umbelliferous black Fritillary. Some think, that the Name *Fritillaria* was given to it from *Fritillus*, the Chequer'd Board, upon which Gamesters play at Dice; this delightful Flower being Chequer'd in like manner on its Leaves.

**IV.** *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common Chequer'd Daffodil, has a small white bulbous Root, but somewhat flatish, made as it were of two Cloves, and divided in a manner into two parts, yet joining together at the bottom or seat of the Root, which holds them both together. From between this Cleft or Division, the Bud for the Stalk appears, which in time

rises up to be a foot or foot and half high, being round and of a brownish green color, more especially near unto the Ground, whereon there stands dispersedly four or five narrow, long and green Leaves, being a little hollow. At the top of the Stalk, between the upper Leaves, (which are smaller than the lowest) the Flower shews it self, hanging or turning down the Head, but not turning up again any of its Leaves, as some Lillies do. Sometimes this Stalk bears two Flowers, and sometimes, yet but very seldom, three, consisting of six Leaves apiece, of a reddish purple color, spotted diversly with great Spots, appearing like unto square Chequers, of a deeper color. The inside of the Flower is of a brighter color than the outside, which has some Greenness at the bottom of every Leaf. Within the Flower do appear six Chives, tipped with yellow Pendants, and a three-forked Stile or Pointel, compassing a green Head, which, when the Flower is past, rises upright again, and becomes the Seed-Vessel, being something long and round, yet having a small shew of Edges, flat at the Head, like the Head of a Lilly, and without any Crown, as the Tulip has, in which is contained pale-colored flat Seed, like unto those of the Lilly, but smaller.



*Fritillary  
Daffodil.*

**V.** The second, or Early and late common Chequer'd Daffodil, are of the same kind with the former, but with these following Differences, viz. 1. That some of them do flower early, with or before the Early-flowering Tulips; and some of them flower later, to wit, a Month or more after the former. 2. That in some the Color is paler; and in others again of a very high or deep color. 3. That sometimes they have eight Leaves, and sometimes ten or twelve Leaves, as if two Flowers were made one, which some call a Double Fritillary. The Flowers at top of the Stalk are Chequer'd most admirably, and yet in the same, Nature has kept a wonderful Order, surpassing the most curious Painting which Art can perform: one square is of a greenish yellow color; the other purple, keeping the same Order, as well on the backside of the Flower as on the inside; sometimes they are blackish in one Square, and of a Violet-color in another; so that Nature seems in a simple Flower to bring forth Variety in Perfection.

VI. The



VI. The third, or Blood-red Fritillary, has a Root somewhat rounder and closer than the first; from whence the Stalk rises up, being shorter and lower than in any other of these kinds, having one or two Leaves thereon, and at the top thereof two or three more set closer together, which are broader, shorter and whiter than any of them before, almost like unto the Leaves of the Yellow Fritillary; from among which top Leaves comes forth the Flower, somewhat bending down, or rather standing forth, being larger than any of the former, and almost equal in Largeness to the Yellow Fritillary, of a dusky grey color on the outside, and of a very dark red color on the inside, diversly spotted or straked: this very hardly encreases by the Root, and as seldom gives ripe Seed, but flowers with the other first or early sorts, and before the black kind, and abides a less time in Flower than any.

VII. The fourth, or Great purple or red Fritillary, has a Root equal to the Largeness of the rest of its parts; from whence rises up one, and sometimes two Stalks, having one, two or three Flowers apiece on them, as Nature and the Season serves: each one of these Flowers are larger and greater than any of those before described, and pendulous in like manner as they are, of a sad red or purplish color, with many thwart or cross Lines on them, and small long Marks, which scarcely appear Chequerwise, nor are so eminent or conspicuous as in the former. The Stalk is strong and high, whereon are set several long whitish green Leaves, larger and broader than those of the former.

VIII. The fifth, or White Fritillary, has a Root so like unto the former, as not to be distinguished, and the whole Plant is so very like unto the first, that it is needless to make any Description, but only shew the chief Differences. In this the Stalk and Leaves are wholly green, by which this is distinguished from that, which is brownish at bottom. The Flower in this is white, without almost any shew of Spot or Mark in it, tho' in some they are more plainly to be seen; and in some there is again a kind of faint bluish color to be seen in the Flower, especially on the inside, the bottoms of the Leaves of every one of which are greenish, having also a small List of green coming down towards the middle of each Leaf: as for the Head or Seed-Vessel and Seed, they are so like to the first, as not to be differenced from them.

IX. The sixth, or Double bluish Fritillary, has a white round flattish Root, like unto the last, bearing a Stalk with long green Leaves thereon, little differing from it, or the first described kind. The Flower is constantly the same, composed of many Leaves, being ten at the least, but most usually twelve, of a pale whitish purple color, spotted like unto the Paler ordinary early Fritillary, so that one would think it to be an accidental kind thereof; whereas it is (as is aforesaid) constant in its Appearance and manner of Flowering.

X. The seventh, or Absolute yellow Fritillary, has a whitish Root, more round and not so flat as the former kinds, and of a mean Largeness. From the middle rises up a Stalk a foot and half high, and sometimes higher, on which grow, without any Order, several long and broadish Leaves, of a whitish green color, like unto the Leaves of the Black Fritillary, but not above half so broad: the Flower is somewhat small and long, not much unlike to the Black for Shape or Form, but that the Leaves are smaller and rounder pointed, of a faint yellowish color, without any shew of Spots or Chequers at all, either within or without the Flower, having some Chives and yellow Pendants in the middle, as are to be seen in them all. The Seed is like to that of the first kind.

XI. The eighth, or Variegated yellow Fritillary, has a Root like to the other, but not so flat. It grows not much lower than the former, and brownish at the rising up, having its Leaves whiter, broader and shorter than it, and almost round-pointed. The Flower is greater and larger spread than any of the afore-described, and of a fair pale yellow color, spotted in very good order with fine, small, yellow Chequers, which give it a wonderful pleasing Beauty. It has also some Lists of green running down the back of every Leaf; and seldom yields any Seed.

XII. The ninth, or Great yellow Italian Fritillary, from a Root somewhat like to the others before; it sends up a round and brown green Stalk, on which grow several Leaves, somewhat broad and short, which encompass the Stalk at their bottom, of a dark green color; at the top of which Stalk, which bends a little downwards, do most usually grow three or four Leaves, between which comes forth most commonly but one Flower, which is longer than the last, hanging down the Head, as all the others do, consisting of six Leaves, of a dark yellowish purple color, spotted with some small red Chequers. This flowers late, or not till all the other are past.

XIII. The tenth, or Small Italian Fritillary, has much alike Root and Stalk, but smaller: the Stalk has several small, short, green Leaves thereon to the very top, but it bears a greater store of Flowers than the former, but they are much smaller, and of a yellowish green color, spotted with long and small dark red Marks or Chequers.

XIV. The eleventh, or Portugal small yellow Fritillary, has a Root much like the others beforegoing: the Leaves are so small, narrow and long, that it has caused it to obtain the Name of Rushes, or Fritillaria Juncifolia, Rush Fritillary, which grow upon a long, weak, round Stalk, set without Order. The Flower is small and yellow, but thicker Chequer'd with red Spots than any of the other Yellow Fritillaries; the Stalk of the Flower at Head thereof being also of a yellowish color.

XV. The twelfth, or Pyrenean black Fritillary, has a Root which does often grow so great, that it seems like unto the Root of a Small Crown Imperial. The Stalk is strong, round and high, set without Order, with broader and whiter green Leaves than any of the former, bearing one, two or three Flowers, not being so large as those of the Common purple Fritillary, but smaller, longer and rounder, sometimes turning up the brims or edges of the Leaves again, and are of a yellowish shining green color on the inside, sometimes spotted with red Spots, almost thro' the whole inside of the Flower, unto the very edge, which abides of a pale yellow color; and sometimes again there are very few Spots to be seen, and those from the middle only on the inside, (for on the outside of this sort there never appears any Spots at all) and sometimes without any shew of Spots; sometimes also of a more pale green, and sometimes of a more yellow color. The outside of the Flowers do likewise vary; for in some the outside of the Leaves are of a dark dull yellow, sometimes of a more pale yellow, and other times of a dark purplish yellow, which in some is so deep and so much, that it rather seems black than purple or yellow, and this chiefly about the bottom of the Flower, next to the Stalk, but the edges are still of a yellowish green. The Head and Seed are like unto the former, but larger in all respects.

XVI. The thirteenth, or Spanish Umbelliferous black Fritillary, is no doubt of kin to the last described; but is in its Root, Stalk, Leaves and Flowers greater than it, and so greater in the whole, as if growing in a fatter or richer Soil, it were the stronger, and so more prolific and able to bear a greater store of Flowers. The Flowers grow four or five



five from the Head together, hanging down, round about the Stalk, like unto a Crown Imperial, and are of a yellowish green color on the inside, spotted with a few red Spots, the outside being blackish as the former.

XVII. *The Places.* The first of these came from France, where, about Orleans, it grows plentifully: the other sorts grow in those Countries which their Titles indigitate, but are all of them nurs'd up with us in Gardens of Florists, and are most of them become Natives of this Kingdom.

XVIII. *The Times.* The early kinds do flower in the beginning of April, according to the Mildness or Hardness of the foregoing Winter: the others flower after the first are past for a Months space, one after another; and the Great yellow is very late, not flowering till about the middle or the end of May.

XIX. *As to the Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of these Plants, or any of them, Authors have said nothing at all, whether inwardly to be taken or outwardly to be applied; nor have I had any Experience of their Effects in my forty Years Practice: they are a glorious and admirable Flower, of an extraordinary Beauty, and their chief Use with us, is to be an Ornament for Gardens, which they nobly beautify, and therefore deserve our Cultivation, Entertainment and Observation; especially of Florists, and other Lovers of Curiosities of this kind.

## C H A P. CCIV.

### Of DAISIE Garden.

I. *THE Names.* The Daisie is called in Greek, (as some suppose, from Theophrastus lib. 7. cap. 9.) *Ἀνθίς*; but this I judge to be a Mistake, for it does not plainly appear in any Greek Author, that the Grecians had the Knowledge thereof: in Latin, *Bellis*, Pliny lib. 26. cap. 5. and in English, *Garden Daisie*. The Latins also call it, *Herba Margarita*.

II. *The Kinds.* The chief kinds are, 1. *Bellis hortensis*, The Garden Daisie, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Bellis agrestis*, The Field Daisie, of which in Chap. 205. 3. *Bellis major vulgaris*, The greater common Daisie, of which in Chap. 206. 4. *Bellis spinosa*, The Thorney Daisie, of which in Chap. 207. 5. *Bellis Americana*, The West India or American Daisie, of which in Chap. 208. following.

III. *Bellis hortensis*, or the Garden Daisie is manifold, viz. 1. *Bellis minor flore rubro simplici*, Single red Daisies. 2. *Bellis major flore albo pleno*, The great double white Daisie. 3. *Bellis minor flore pleno variorum colorum*, The lesser double Daisies of divers colors. 4. *Bellis minor prolifera*, Double double Daisies. 5. *Bellis Globularia cerulea*, Blew Globe Daisies. 6. *Bellis Globularia lutea*, Yellow Globe Daisies.

IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Single red Daisie, has Roots which are small, white and fibrous or thready; from whence rise many smooth, green, round-pointed Leaves, lying on the Ground, a little snipt about the edges: from among which rise up many slender round Foot-stalks, rather than Stalks or Stems, about an hand breadth high at most, and sometimes not so high, bearing one Flower apiece, consisting of many small Leaves, as a Pale or Border, set about a middle Thrum: the Leaves are almost wholly red, where as in the middle they are white or whitish,

enclining to red on the edges, the middle being yellow.



V. The second, or Great double white Daisie, has a white fibrous or stringy Root: the whole Plant is so like to the Great single kind, which grows by Highways, and in Meadows and Fields, that there is no difference between them, but in the Flower, which in this is double. It has many long and somewhat broad Leaves, lying upon the Ground, deeply cut in on both sides, somewhat like unto an Oaken Leaf: but those which are on the Stalks, are shorter, narrower, and not so deeply cut in, but only notched on the edges. The Flowers at the top are white and double, consisting of several Rows of Leaves, being greater in Compass than any of the Double Daisies which follow, but nothing so double of Leaves.





VI. The third, or Lesser double Daisie, has a white fibrous Root, from whence rise Leaves, lying upon the Ground, in Form like to the Common single ones, from which they differ little or nothing, but that they are smaller, and little or nothing snipt about the edges. The Stalks likewise are smaller and lower, but bearing as double Flowers as any, being composed of many small Leaves, thick thrust together, of various colors; for some are wholly of a pure white, others have a little red, either dispersed upon the white Leaves or on the edges, and sometimes on the backs of the Leaves: some again seem to be of a whitish red, more red than white, when indeed they are white Leaves, dispersed among the red: others are of a deep or dark red color; and some are speckled or striped with white and red through the whole Flower: and in some the Leaves will be red on the upper side, and white underneath: and some (tho' but very rare) are of a greenish color. Of this kind some have Stalks and Heads which are round; and some again which are flat: which last I have known to degenerate into round, and so to continue.

VII. The fourth, or Double double Daisie, has no difference in Root, Leaf or Stalk from the former kind, but only in the Flower; which in this bears many small double Flowers, standing upon very short Stalks round about the middle Flower, which is usually as great and double as any of the other double kinds, and is either wholly of a deep red or speckled with white and red, as in some of the former kinds, or else greenish, all the small Flowers about it being of the same color with the middlemost.

VIII. The fifth, or Blew Globe Daisie, has a hard and fibrous Root, and a great Affinity with the Plant last described, both in Form of its Leaf and Flower. It has many narrower, shorter and blacker green Leaves than the former, lying round about upon the Ground; among which rise up slender, but stiff and hard Stalks, six inches or more high, set here and there with small Leaves, and at the top a small round Head, composed of many small blew Leaves, somewhat like unto a Scabious Head; and sometimes it is also found with white Heads of Flowers. The whole Plant is of a bitter Taste.

IX. The sixth, or Yellow Globe Daisie, has a Root of a Fingers length, round and hard, with a thick Rind, and a woody Pith in the middle, of a sharp drying Taste and strong Smell: from whence rise up many thick, smooth, round, pointed Leaves, spread upon the Ground like the former: among which spring up several small round rushy Stalks, a foot high, bearing about their middle two small Leaves at the Joints, and at the tops round Heads of Flowers thrust thick together, standing in purplish Husks, every one of which Flowers do blow or spread into five Leaves Star-fashion, and of a fair yellow color, smelling not much unlike to Broom Flowers, with many small Threads in the middle, encompassing a flat Pointel, horned or bended two ways. After the Flowers are faded, rise up Seed-Vessels, which are round, swelling out in the middle, and divided into four parts at the tops, containing within them round, flat, black Seed, with a small Cut or Notch in them. The Leaves of this Plant are of a sharp and bitter Taste.

X. The Places. The first four are planted and found only in Gardens; and require to be often replanted, otherwise they degenerate into single Flowers, or at least into less double. The two last are also Garden-Flowers, but more rarely to be met with than the others; the Blew Daisie is a Native of Mompelien in France, and of the Mountains in many places of Italy; the Yellow kind is Italian, and found up and down in the Kingdom of Naples.

XI. The Times. All sorts of Daisies almost flow-

er betimes in the Spring, during April and May, and some of them in June; but the former Blew and Yellow flower not until August or September.

XII. The Qualities. They are cold and dry in the first Degree; and are Absterfive, Astringent, Incarnative and Vulnerary; Hepatick, Arthritick and Analeptick.

XIII. The Specification. They are dedicated to the Curing of Wounds; for which Reason Authors have accounted them among the *Consolida*, or Wound-Herbs.

XIV. The Preparations. You may prepare therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. A compound Decoction in Wine. 5. An Ointment. 6. A Balsam. 7. A Cataplasme. 8. A distilled Water. 9. An Acid Tincture. 10. An Oily Tincture.

## The Virtues.

XV. The liquid Juice. It is good to heal Wounds, whether inward or outward: it unites with and strengthens the Balsam of the Blood, and so induces the Healing, by drying, strengthening and conglutinating. It abates Heat, and alleviates the Boiling of Choler, refreshing the Liver and other inward Parts. It is good to cure the Wounds made in the Cavity of the Thorax or Brest, being taken two or three ounces at a time, three or four times a day, either alone or mixed with a little Wine: dropped into running Eyes, it much helps them.

XVI. The Essence. It has all the former Virtues to a great Advantage, excepting that it heals more; but it much more powerfully consolidates Wounds. It may be given alone, from one ounce to two or three ounces, or it may be mixed with a Syrup made of the Juice of the same Herb.

XVII. The Decoction. It cures inward Wounds of the Brest as the former Preparations do; but it is not altogether so powerful. If it is made with Wine, it cleanses, incarnates and cures all Ulcers and Pustles in the Mouth or Tongue, or in the Secret Parts.

XVIII. The compound Decoction. Take Daisie Leaves and Roots five handfuls: Agrimony, Dwarf, Elder, of each three handfuls: being bruised, boil all in three quarts of Wine till a quart or more is consumed: then strain out for Use. It is good against Palsie, Gout and Sciatica, to foment the parts therewith two or three times a day, so hot as the Patient can endure; it comforts the Nerves, and eases the Pains of the Parts afflicted.

XIX. The Ointment. It cleanses, dries and heals old Ulcers, and dissolves or disperses Tumors, Knots or Kernels in the fleshy Parts of the Body: it discusses simple Contusions, which come thro' Falls or Blows; and abates Tumors or Swellings in the Scrotum, being duly applied: it is said to cure wonderfully all sorts of simple Wounds accompanied with Inflammation, and such as are kept long from healing by reason of the Afflux of Humors to them, whether in the Joints, Arms or Legs.

XX. The Balsam. It has all the Virtues of the Ointment, but it cleanses putrid and corrupt Sores, and foul Ulcers, much better than that: and sometimes it cures simple green Wounds at one Dressing. It gives ease in the Gout and Sciatica, and strengthens the Nerves and weak Joints, being applied.

XXI. The Cataplasme. It discusses recent Tumors and simple Contusions; and is effectual, being applied, to Swellings of the Scrotum: applied to a simple recent Wound, after it has been washed with Spirit of Wine, it many times conglutinates the Lips thereof at the first Application.

XXII. The



XXII. *The distilled Water.* It is cooling, and has the Virtues of the liquid Juice, but very much weaker; however, it may be used as a Vehicle to convey refrigerating or cooling things in: it abates the Heat of Fevers, abates inward Inflammations, and allays the Turgency of Choller.

XXIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is singular good to cure Fevers, especially such as are burning, malignant or pestilential: it cools powerfully, quenches Thirst and composes the Spirits. Dose 30, 40 or 60 drops or more in some convenient Vehicle, or in any thing the Patient drinks, and to be as often repeated as they call for any thing to quench their Thirst with.

XXIV. *The Oily Tincture.* It is a singular thing against all Wounds and Punctures of the Nerves: it also cures Convulsions in what part of the Body fever; and is a famous thing against Palsies, if the Back-bone, as also all the Parts affected, be well anointed therewith by a cheerful Fire, and it is well rubbed in for half an hour at a time, and this twice a day, viz. Morning and Evening.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Small common single Field Daisie, has a Root which is small, white and fibrous; from the Head of which springs forth many thick and somewhat long green Leaves, lying upon the Ground, small at the bottom, but broad, and almost round towards the point or end, and a little dented about the edges. From among this heap or tuft of Leaves rise up many very slender, weak and naked Stalks, or rather Foot-stalks, of three, four or five, or more inches high, bearing every one of them a small green Head, from whence rise many small white Leaves, encompassing a yellow Thrum, which is in the middle. Sometimes the green Leaves will be found much larger in one place than in another; and the Flower likewise will in some be reddish at the ends, and sometimes under stained; and yet notwithstanding all this difference, they are but one kind or sort, and not divers, as some maintain.

## C H A P. CCV.

### of DAISIE Field.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Latin, *Bellis agrestis*, *Herba margarita*; and by some, *Consolida minor*: and in English, *Daisie*, and *Field Daisie*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are two principal kinds thereof, which are very common, viz. 1. *Bellis minor Sylvestris*, The lesser Wild Daisie. 2. *Bellis major vel media Sylvestris*, The greater or middle Wild or Field Daisie.



IV. The second, or Greater or middle Field Daisie, tho' it is another Species, yet it agrees with the former in most respects, saving that its main Root is thicker and longer, with many small white Fibres proceeding therefrom: the Leaves are larger and dented in almost in like manner on the edges: the Stalks are thicker, but round and somewhat higher; and the Flowers, like the other, white, and sometimes on the tips of their Leaves with a blush of red, but they are larger every way: the Thrum in the middle is also bigger, but of the same yellow color with the before described.

V. *The Places.* They grow wild almost every where, in most Meadows and Pasture-Grounds of this Kingdom.

VI. *The Times.* They flower in most of the Summer Months, viz. in April, May, June and July.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with Garden Daisies, only they are with this Advantage, that the Field Daisie is more effectual for all the Purposes designed: see Chap. 204. sect. 12. ad 24. foregoing.



C H A P. CCVI.

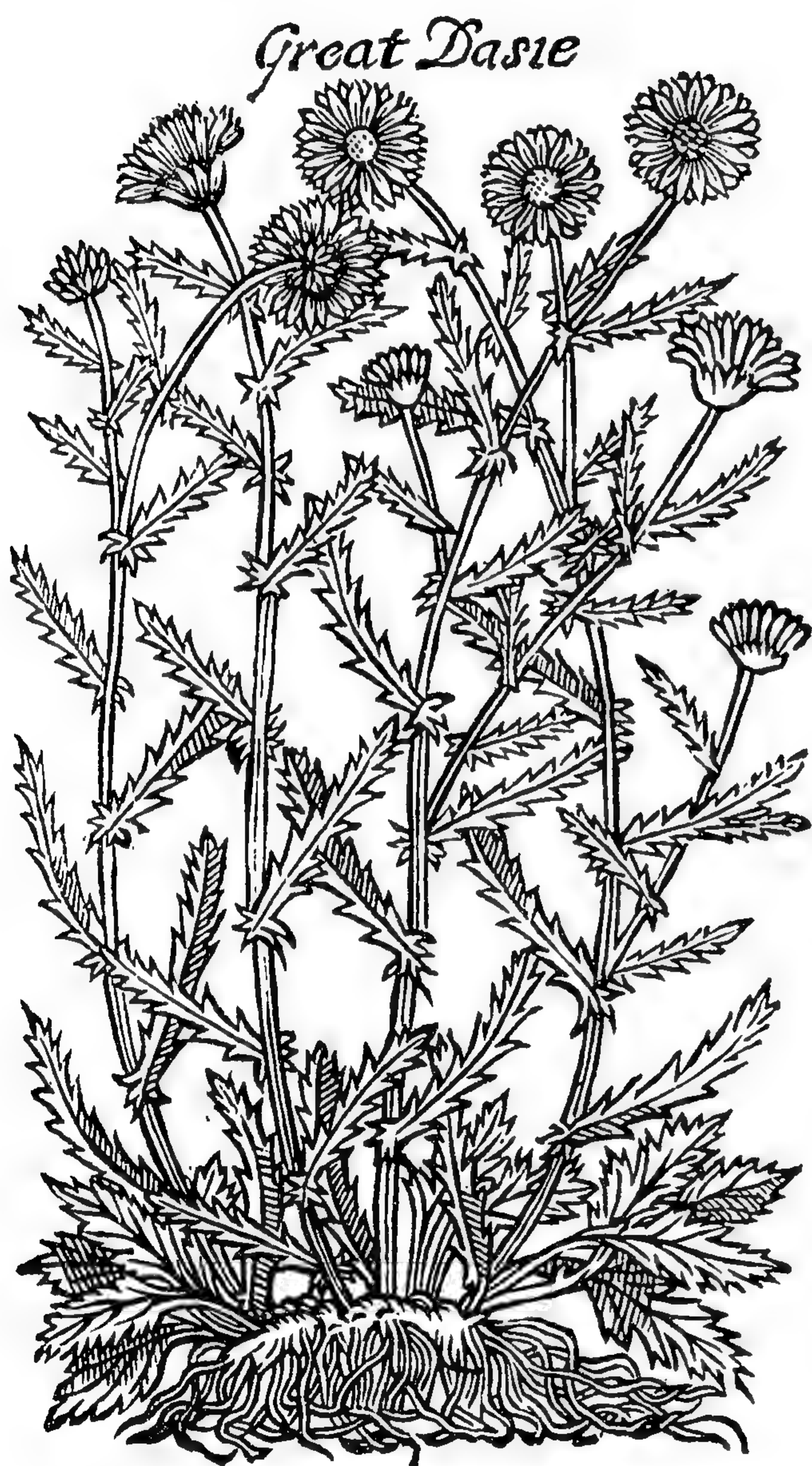
of DAISIE Great.

O R,

MAUDLIN-WORT.

I. **THE Names.** It is called in Latin, *Bellis magna*, *Maxima* & *Major*; and in English, *The great Daisie*, (but it is the greatest of all the sorts of Daisies) and *Maudlin-wort*.

II. **The Kinds.** It is *Singularis sui generis*; and is called by some Authors, *Consolida media*, *The middle Confound*; but the true middle Confound is *Bugula*; others, to make a Difference in the Name between *Bugle* and this, call it *Consolida media Vulnerariorum*: however, it is taken by all to be *Consolida medii generis*, or a kind of middle Confound, from the Virtues it is endowed with.



III. **The Description.** It has a Root which is a Bush of white Fibres or Strings, which abide many Winters with the Leaves, shooting forth every Spring anew: from the Head of this Root spring forth many long, narrow and narrow-pointed Leaves, lying next the Ground, but cut in on both sides, making it seem almost like the Divisions of some sorts of Oaken Leaves, or rather like to the Leaves of Groundsel: the Stalks grow to be somewhat tall, viz. about a foot and half in height, with divers Leaves thereon, much in Shape like the other, but smaller and lesser divided than the lower; and growing yet smaller and lesser divided, the nearer they grow to the top. At the tops of the Stalks grow pretty large Flowers, with white Leaves, and a yellow Thrum in the middle, like the Flower of the Single Field Daisie, or those of May-weed, but something lesser than this last named; each Flower grows upon a several Foot-

stalk, and the white and narrow Leaves are as a Pale or Border round about the middle yellow Thrum and are of no Smell at all: after the Flowers are past, then comes the Seed, which is somewhat long, and is blown away with the Wind.

IV. **The Places.** It grows almost every where, by Hedge-sides, in Meadows, the Borders of Fields, and other waste Grounds.

V. **The Times.** It flourishes and flowers in the Months of May and June.

VI. **The Qualities.** It is cold in the first Degree; and temperate in respect to Dryness and Moisture, but in some Authors Opinions it enclines to Dryness. It is Astringent, Conglutinative and Vulnerary, appropriated to the Liver and Joints, and is Analeptick.

VII. **The Specification.** It consolidates and conglutinates the Lips of Wounds to a Miracle.

VIII. **The Preparations.** You may have therefrom, 1. *A liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Decoction.* 4. *A distilled Water.* 5. *A Wound Drink.* 6. *An Ointment or Balsam.* 7. *A Cataplasme.* 8. *A Clyster.*

#### The Virtues.

IX. **The liquid Juice.** It is given to very good Purpose to heal any inward Wound, consolidate the Rupture of any Vessel in the Thorax, cure Spitting or Pissing of Blood, and helps Ruptures of the Intestines. Dose two or three ounces Morning and Evening in a Glass of old Malaga or Red Port Wine.

X. **The Essence.** It has all the former Virtues; besides which, it is excellent against Bloody-fluxes, and all other Fluxes of the Bowels: and has sometimes been found of good Use in overflowing of the Loches, or of the Terms in Women. Dose two, three or four spoonfuls Morning and Night, in a Glass of Generous Wine.

XI. **The distilled Water.** It is said to be good against Ruptures of the Bowels; and may be used as a Vehicle to convey other Medicines in: sweetened with Sugar Candy, it is very good against a Cough.

XII. **The Wound Drink.** *℞ of this Daisie Leaves six handfuls: Sanicle, All-heal, of each three handfuls: Bugle two handfuls: Angelica one handful: boil all in Water six quarts to three: strain out and add thereto an equal part of white Port Wine, which sweeten a little with white Sugar as it is taken.* Dose eight ounces Morning, Noon and Night: it is of great Effect in the Cure of all sorts of old and malign Ulcers, Fistula's, and the like.

XIII. **The Ointment or Balsam.** It is made with Oil, Turpentine and Wax, and is excellent for Wounds, especially those in which there is any thing of Inflammation, and will not come to Digestion or Maturation, as are those *Sinovia* or weeping Wounds made in the Knees, Elbows and other Joints.

XIV. **The Cataplasme.** It is good against all burning Apostems and Ulcers, as also an Inflammation and Running of the Eyes, being applied thereto: it likewise eases the extream Pain of the Gout, being applied, and renewed as often as need requires.

XV. **The Clyster.** It gives ease in the vehement Torments of the Guts, Gripings of the Bowels, and is profitable in the violent Heat of Agues; and alters the Habit of the Belly where there is a great Strypticity or Binding: and in a Bloody-flux, Diarrhea or Lienteria, it does much good.

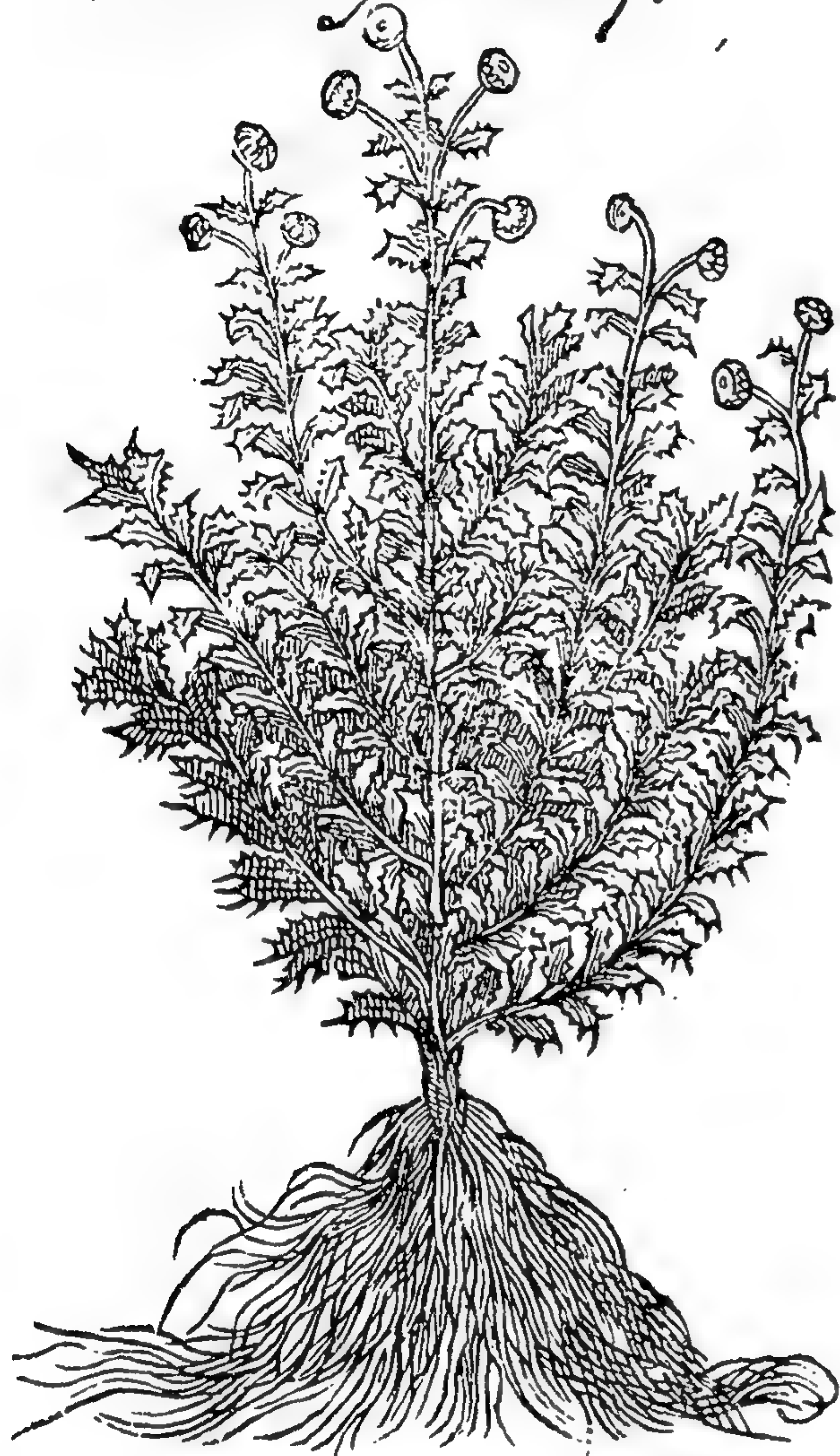


## C H A P. CCVII.

## of DAISIE Thorney.

I. **THE Names.** It is called in Latin, *Bellis spinosa flore luteo nudo*, also *Bellis major spinosa*: in English, *The Thorney Daisie*, or *The naked-flowered yellow Daisie*, with prickly Leaves.

II. **The Kinds.** It is a singular Plant of its kind, and noted because of its naked Flower.

*Thorney Daisy.*

III. **The Description.** It has a Root consisting of a great Tuft or Bush of long blackish Strings, or long Fibres, whose Taste is bitter and unpleasant, and its Smell something strong; from the Head of which stringy Root, spring up divers Heads of very small green Leaves, dented about the edges, and every dent sharp at the point, which shooting up into Stalks, with the like, but lesser Leaves on them, become hard and woody up to the tops, sometimes branched and sometimes not, but bearing on their various tops several small round Flowers on several small Foot-stalks, which Flowers have no Border of Leaves, either white or yellow, to encompass them, but are like to those of the Naked Cammomil or Fetherfew, yet somewhat lesser, being a yellow round Knob, something hollow in the middle. When the Flower is past, there come in their places small Heads with Seed, each of which is small, long and whitish, which must be quickly gathered when it is ripe, or otherwise it quickly falls, or is blown away with the Wind.

IV. **The Places.** It was first brought out of Italy by Dr. Flud, from the Garden of Pisa, in the Duke of Florence his Dominions; but is only nurs'd up with us in Gardens.

V. **The Times.** It is in its Vigor in June, and flowers in June, July and August; and seeds in some little time after.

VI. **As to its Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,** Authors have said nothing, and therefore we shall be silent concerning the same. It is a Curiosity valued by Florists, and serves chiefly as an Ornament for the Garden.

## C H A P. CCVIII.

## of DAISIE American.

I. **THE Names.** It is called in Latin, *Bellis Americana*, *Bellis Americana Umbellifera*, and *Bellis major Ramosa Americana*: in English, *The great white*, or *American Daisie*.

II. **The Kinds.** This is also *singularis sui generis*, and therefore admits but of a single Description.

III. **The Description.** It has a fibrous or stringy Root, from which spring up one, two or more Stalks, which grow higher and greater than the Great Daisie in Chap. 206. foregoing: the Leaves are also larger, and broadest towards the ends, but longer and smaller at the bottoms, dented likewise about the edges, shooting forth several Branches, and all of them bearing many white Flowers at their tops, as it were in an Umbel, yet not so great, nor the white Leaves so large as it, but smaller, and more in number, with a greenish yellow Thrum in the middle, some of which are a little larger than others: the Seed is also smaller than that in Maudlin-wort.

IV. **The Places.** It was first brought to us from Virginia, and grows well enough in our Gardens, being looked after with a little Care: I also found it growing in several places in the Southern parts of Carolina, and other parts adjacent thereto.

V. **The Times.** It flowers in May and June, and the Seed is ripe in some short time after.

VI. **The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,** are the same with those of the Great Daisie in Chap. 206. aforementioned. It is indeed a singular Wound-Herb, and ought to be commended for the speedy curing of simple green Wounds, being made into proper Ointments or Balsams, or applied in the Form of a Cataplasma.

## C H A P. CCIX.

## of DANDELION,

O R,

## PISS-A-BED Common.

I. **THE Names.** This Plant seems to be unknown to the Greeks, and therefore can have no Greek Denomination, tho' some Authors will have it to be the *ἡδύπυρος*, *Plinii lib. 20. cap. 8.* and others, that it is the *Ἀράκη*, *Theophrasti*, which is *Ambubeia*, a kind of Cichory, or *Priests Crown*: but in Latin it is called, *Dens Leonis*, *Rostrum Porcinum*, and *Corona vel Caput Monachi*; and in English, *Dandelion*, or *Piss-a-bed*.

II. **The Kinds.** It is doubtless one of the kinds of *Wild Succory*; of which there are several Species, viz. 1. *Dens Leonis vulgaris*, Our common Dandelion,



Dandelion, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Dens Peregrinus*, Outlandish Dandelion, of which in the next Chapter.

III. This our Common Dandelion is also twofold, viz. 1. *Dens Leonis latifolius vulgaris*, *Urinaria*, *Hieracium majus Tragi*, *Hieracium parvum Cordi*, (in *Historia*) *Hieracium minus Gesneri*, (in *Hortis*) *Chondrilla altera Thalii*, *Dodonei*, *Cesalpini*, *Hedypnois major Fuchsi*, *Hedypnois Dalechampii* & *Lugdunensis*, *Taraxicon minus Loniceri*, *Taraxacon verum* of *Serapio* & *Avicen*: and so it is used with us in all Compositions wherein *Taraxacon* is named; Our Common broad-leav'd Dandelion. 2. *Dens Leonis angustioribus foliis*: *Aphaca angustioris folii Cesalpini*, The narrow-leav'd Dandelion.



IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Broad-leav'd kind, has a Root which grows downwards very deep, which being broken off within the Ground, will nevertheless shoot forth again anew, and with difficulty be destroyed when it has once taken deep Rooting: from the Head of this Root spring forth several long and deeply gashed Leaves, lying round about it on the Ground; the ends of each Gash or Jag on both sides looking downwards to the Root again, the middle Rib being white, which being broken, yields much bitter Juice, of a Milk-white Color and Substance, but the Root much more. From among these Leaves (which always abide green) arise many slender, weak, naked Foot-stalks, (rather than Stalks) of about six, eight or ten inches high, very rarely a foot long, every one of them bearing at the top one large yellow Flower, consisting of many Rows of yellow Leaves, broad at the Points, and notched in, with a deep Spot of yellow in the middle, which growing ripe, the green Husk, in which the Flower stood, turns it self down to the Stalk, and the Head of Down becomes as round as a Ball, with long reddish Seed underneath, each Seed bearing a part of the Down on its Head; which Seed, together with the Down, is blown away with

the Wind, and when perfectly ripe, may with a Blast of ones Mouth be blown perfectly away.

V. The second, or Narrow kind, as to its Root, Stalks, Flowers, Down, Seed and manner of Growing is wholly like the before described: the Leaves in springing forth, growing round the Root, the Number and Deepness of the Gashes or Divisions on the edges, are much like the former also; but in this the Difference is, that the Leaves of this latter Plant are narrower; and by this one Note it may be distinguished.

VI. The Places. They grow almost every where, in all Meadows and Pasture-Grounds, in Closes near to Water-Ditches, as also in Gardens and Highways. The first is common almost every where; but the second is somewhat rarer, yet often to be met with.

VII. The Times. They flower thro' all the Summer Months; and the first is found in some place or other in flower every Month of the Year, especially if the Winter is mild, and not extrem cold.

VIII. The Qualities. Dandelion is cold and dry in the first Degree: Aperitive, Absterfiv, Diuretick and a little Astringent; Stomack, Hepatick, Splenetick and Nephritick.

IX. The Specification. It is singular against Obstructions of the Viscera, and Hypochondriack Melancholy.

X. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A Sallet. 2. A liquid Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Decoction. 5. A distilled Water. 6. An Ointment or Balsam. 7. A Cataplasme.

## The Virtues.

XI. The Sallet. Whether eaten raw with other Herbs, or boiled, and so dress'd up with Butter, Vinegar, Salt and Pepper, it is said to be a good Dish to open Obstructions of the Bowels, cleanse the Stomach, cause a good Appetite, and purify the Blood: the French and Dutch are said to eat them often in the Spring; but I believe for the most part as a boiled Sallet.

XII. The liquid Juice of Leaves and Roots. It may be given to two or three ounces in a Morning fasting, and likewise at Night going to Bed, either alone by it self, or mixt with a Glass of White Port Wine, to purify the Blood and Juices, open all sorts of Obstructions of the Bowels, expel the Jaundice, provoke Urine, resist Hypochondriack Melancholy, and ease the Pain of the Spleen.

XIII. The Essence of Leaves and Roots. It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice, being more powerful to those Intentions: besides which, this ripens and digests inward Apostems of the Viscera and Urinary Passage, breaks, cleanses and heals them, and more powerfully opens the Passages of the Urine, whether in Young or Old. Dose three or four spoonfuls in White Lisbon Wine, Morning and Night.

XIV. The Decoction in Wine or Water. It has the Virtues of the former Preparations, but in a lower degree: however, it is good to be drank half a pint at a time Morning and Evening, by such as are inclining to a Consumption, or have an ill Disposition of the whole Body, called by the Learned, *Cachexia*; in which cases being used for some considerable time, it gives a wonderful Relief; besides, being made in Water, and acuated with a few drops of Oil of Sulphur, it prevails against all sorts of burning, putrid, malign and pestilential Fevers.

XV. The distilled Water. Acuated with Oil of Sulphur, it prevails against the Spotted-Fever, and the Plague it self: mixed with the liquid Juice or



Essence, it is good to wash and cleanse old Sores, running Fistula's and putrid Ulcers, and so to dispose them to a speedy healing.

XVI. *The Ointment or Balsam.* It digests, ripens, cleanses, dries and heals old and running Sores, and is a very good thing in all stubborn and rebellious Ulcers, to bring them to a Cicatrize.

XVII. *The Cataplasim.* Being applied hot, and often renewed, it brings Apostemations to Maturity: and being applied cold made of the green Herb, it dissolves Tumors arising in simple Contusions, hinders the Aggregation or Flux of Humors, and eases the Pain.

## C H A P. CCX.

### Of DANDELION Outlandish.

I. **T**HE Names. It has no Greek Name; but is called in Latin, *Dens Leonis peregrinus*; and in English, *Outlandish Dandelion*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are five Species hereof, viz.

1. *Dens Leonis tenuissimo folio*, *Hieracium Fatidum Columne*, Fine jagged Dandelion. 2. *Dens Leonis minor foliis radiatis*, *Trinciarella Italorum Cameraarii*, Sweet Dandelion. 3. *Dens Leonis minor folio aspero*, Small rough Dandelion. 4. *Dens Leonis altera Dioscoridis*, *Dens Leonis Monspeliensium*, sive *Asphodeli bulbulis*, *Baubini*, Bulbed Dandelion. 5. *Dens Leonis Gadensis*, *Cichorium Constantinopolitanum*, Spanish Dandelion.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Fine jagged Dandelion, has a thick reddish Root full of Fibres, sending forth many very green and finely cut Leaves, each of them about a Hand breadth long, and two inches broad, being deeply jagged or divided again into two or three other small Rents or Divisions, and ending in a small point. The Flowers which stand at tops of the Stalks (which are naked) are yellow, and much smaller than those in the former Chapter, which being pass'd away, the downey Heads and Seed proceed, as in the former.

IV. The second, or Sweet Dandelion, has a small and blackish Root, which is white within, and very sweet in Taste, (as are the Leaves also) which is so very tender, that it perishes with the first Cold it feels; and therefore with us is always to be housed in Winter and cold Weather, by which means it will endure many Years, and yield its Seed in the due Season. From this Root spring up many Leaves, which spread themselves on the Ground, about three inches long and half an inch broad, cut in on the sides with very deep Gashes, whose ends have each of them three very deep Dents, each of them having divers Points standing like a Star or Spur, the Foot-stalks whereof are a little hairy: from among these rise up many smooth, slender, naked Stalks, one of which stands upright, not above a Hand breadth high; the rest are lower, and bend downwards, each of them bearing a small yellow Flower, like unto other Dandelions, which being past, turns into Down, and flies away with the Wind, carrying the Seed with it, which is something long and broad, with hard Hairs, like a Beard, at the top of each Seed.

V. The third, or Small rough Dandelion, has a Root small and whitish, which sends forth several small Leaves, lying round about the Root upon the Ground, about two or three inches long and one inch broad, cut, divided or torn in on the sides, and each

of them set with small, smooth, sharp Pricks or Hairs, not much unlike to the Prickly Sowthistle. The Stalks are about two or three inches high, and bear each of them a large, pale, yellow Flower, like to the other Dandelions; which being once pass'd away, do presently after turn into Down, with Seed like unto the former.

VI. The fourth, or Bulbed Dandelion, has a Root branched or spread out into several long tuberous Clogs, which some call long Bulbs, much like to those of the Asphodil, but smaller, shorter and more pointed at the ends. From the Head of these Roots spring forth many large and blewish green hairy Leaves, lying upon the Ground, unevenly waved or cut in on the edges, but not deeply gash'd, like the Common Dandelion, but which are of a sharp and bitter Taste like it: from among which rise up several bare or naked Stalks, with Flowers at their tops, larger and more double than those of the Common kind, but of a paler yellow color, which pass into Down, like the other kinds, having also like fashioned Seed.

VII. The fifth, or Spanish kind, has a Root of a moderate Largeness, long, white, tender and fibrous, which lives with us all the Winter, if it is mild, otherwise, if we have hard Frosts, it perishes: from this Root spring up several long Leaves, a span or more in length; the middle Leaf of the Root is bare from the Root to the half length of the Leaf, and then it has many Rents or Cuts on each side, very much resembling the Leaf of the Common Dandelion, but smaller and narrower: from among these Leaves rise up likewise long Foot-stalks, as in the Dandelion, upon whose tops grow small and yellow Flowers, which turn into Down, that is carried away with the Wind, with the Seed also, which is small, long and reddish, like unto some of the Hawkweeds.

VIII. *The Places.* The first is found in Meadow and Pasture Grounds. The second is an Original of Italy, and from thence it came to us. The third grows about Florence, and other parts of Italy, as also about Mompelier in France. The fourth is also of Italian Origination. The fifth came from Spain, and grows in the Island of Gades or Cadiz, as Boet faith, who called it *Cichorium Gadense*; but Clusius *Cura posteriores* calls it, *Cichorium sylvestre pumilum*, sive *Hedypnois*.

IX. *The Times.* They all flower thro' all the Summer Months: but the fifth or Spanish kind flowers in July, August and September; and the Seed is soon ripe after the Flower is past.

X. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with the Common Dandelion in Chap. 209. foregoing, and therefore we shall say no more thereof.

## C H A P. CCXI.

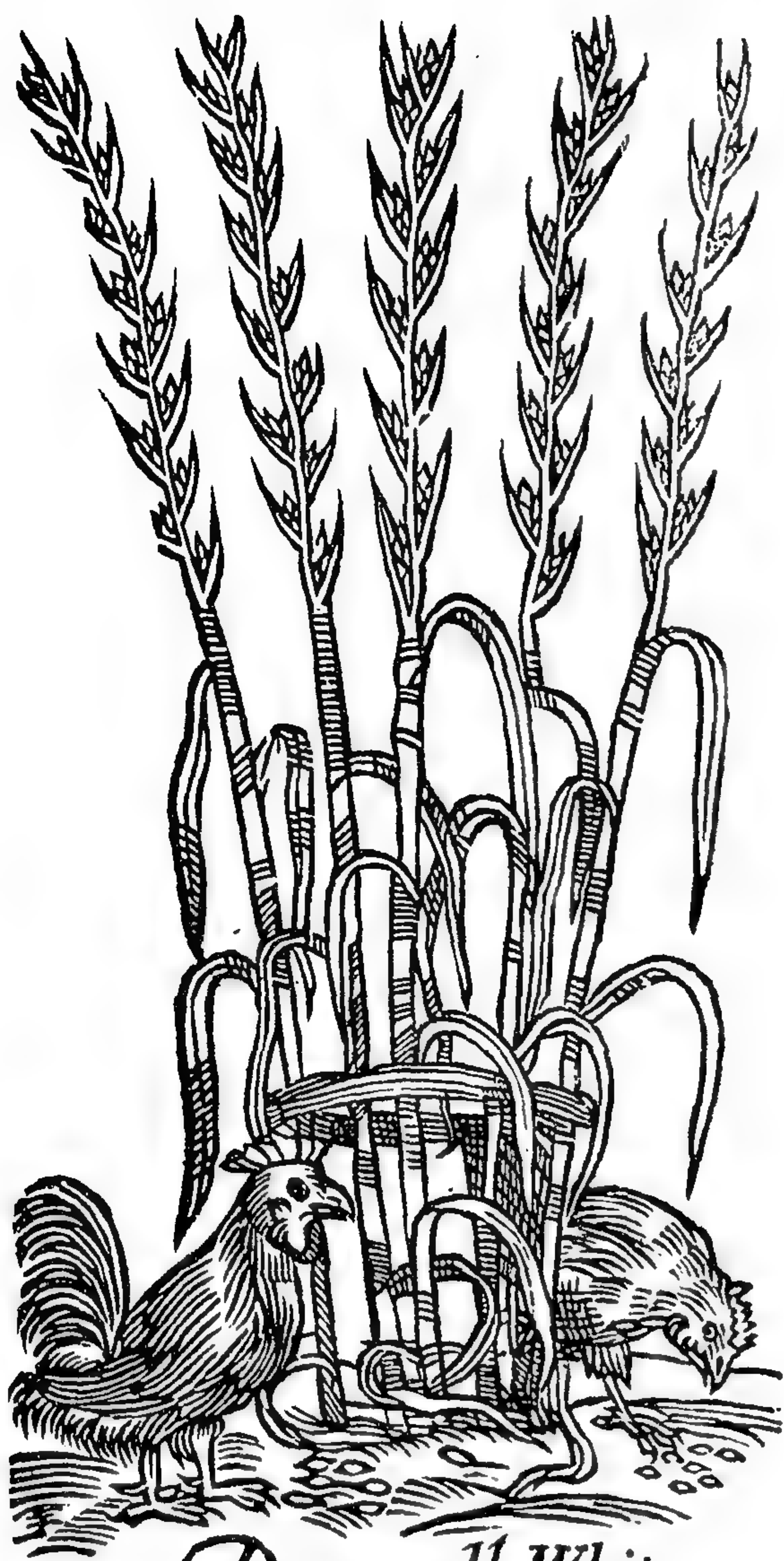
### Of DARNEL.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἰζάνιον* by most Greek Authors, and *Ἰζάνιον* by some: in Latin, *Lolium*, and *Æra Plinii*; *Triticum temulentum*, *Triticum fatuum Loniceri*: in Arabick, *Zizania*; and in English, *Darnel*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three sorts hereof, viz. 1. *Lolium album*, *Hordem murinum Dodonæi*, White Darnel. 2. *Lolium Rubrum*, *φαινίξ*, *Phanix Dioscoridis*, (a seminis colore phanicea) Red Darnel. 3. *Lolium alterum avenacea gluma*, Another Darnel with Oaten tops.

III. The





*Darnell White.*

III. The Descriptions. *The first, or White Darnel, has a bunchy fibrous Root, from whose Head, all the Winter long, spring forth several fat and rough Leaves, which, the higher they grow upon the Stalks, grow also narrower, but with their continued Roughness: and with these first springing forth Leaves, several Stalks also arise, with many thick Joints, almost like Knees; from which Knees arise those aforesaid narrower Leaves, continued up to the spiky tops of Seed; for on the top of each Stalk is a long Spike, composed of many Heads, as it were at so many Joints, set one above another on each side of the Stalk, containing two or three small chaffy Husks, with sharp, but short Beards or Awnes at the ends; in which Husks, being somewhat tough, is contained the Seed, which is less than that of Wheat, and which is easily shaken out of the Ear.*



*Red Darnell.*

IV. *The second, or Red Darnel, has a Root more bushy or fibrous, from whence arise Leaves shorter and narrower than those of Barley, as also several jointed Stalks, with Leaves springing from each Joint, but as the Joints are lesser than the former, so the Leaves springing from them are also narrower and somewhat shorter. The Stalks are reddish, with reddish Joints, about seven or eight inches high, seldom attaining to the height of a foot, unless the Ground is very good: at the top of each Stalk is a small and tender flat Spike or Ear, very like the former, but smaller and shorter, and somewhat reddish also, more especially when it is found growing in the dryer sort of Land.*

V. *The third, or Darnel with Oaten Tops, in its Roots, Leaves and Stalks differs little from the first kind, saving that the Stalks grow somewhat higher, and the Leaves are a little larger: but in this it differs from the first, that the several Heads of Seed are more like to winged Oaten Heads, growing on slender Foot-stalks; and which Heads of Seed are also armed with sharp Points.*

VI. *The Places.* These all grow in Arable Land, in Fields of Corn, as of *Wheat* and *Barley*, and are to be found in such like places, in most parts of the Kingdom.

VII. *The Times.* They flourish in *Summer*, and the Grain is ripe in *Harvest* time, viz. in *August*.

VIII. *The Qualities.* Darnel is hot in the third Degree, and dry in the second, as *Galen* says: it abounds with a Volatile, Narcotick, Salt and Sulphur, which is thought to be detrimental to the Head and Brain: it was accounted hurtful to the Eyes and Sight, as appears from that Verse in *Ovid*, lib. 1. *Fastorum*; *Et careant Loliis oculus vitiantibus agri*: and from this Cause it seems came, that the old Proverb in *Plautus*, *Miles. act. 2. sc. 3. vers. 50.* *Lolio vititare*, was wont to be spoken to one dim-sighted.

IX. *The Specification.* It is said to be peculiar against Defœdations of the Skin, and to stop Gangrenes.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A Decoction. 2. Meal or Flower. 3. An Ointment. 4. A Wash. 5. A Cataplasm. 6. The Fumigation.

*The Virtues.*

XI. *The Decoction in Red Port Wine.* It stops the Terms, and all sorts of Fluxes of the Bowels; and prevails against a Diabetes: Dose two or three ounces: but it is apt to cause a kind of Giddiness in the Head. It is also good to wash places affected with Scurff, Morpew, Leprosy and Ringworms, and stop the Progress of a Gangrene: made with Water and Honey, it is good to bathe with for the Sciatica.

XII. *The Meal or Flower.* Being applied, mixt with Spirit of Wine or strong Wine, it is of special Use to stop the Running of Gangrenes, and hinder the Fretting and Eating of old putrid Sores, Cankers and Phagedenick Ulcers; and to cleanse the Skin of Leprosy, Tetrars, Ringworms, Herpes, Scurff, Morpew, and other the like Distempers.

XIII. *The Ointment.* It is made thus: *℞ of the Flower or Meal eight ounces: Sulphur Vire in fine powder four ounces: Oil of Roses three ounces: Vinegar enough to make it into the Form of an Ointment.* It has all the Virtues of the Meal or Flower aforesaid, and much more powerful to all those Intentions, being applied fresh Morning and Evening.

XIV. *The*



XIV. *The Wash.* It is thus made: *R* of the *Flower or Meal* two ounces: *Water* eight ounces: *Juice of Radishes* five ounces: *Vinegar* four ounces: *Salt of Tartar* a dram: mix them; and therewith very warm Morning and Evening wash the Face and Hands, letting it dry on; and after an hours time you may wash again with fair warm Water. It clears and cleanses the Skin admirably of almost all Deformities attending it.

XV. *The Cataplasim.* *R* of the *Meal* twelve ounces: *Linsed bruised* four ounces: *Pigeons dung* six ounces: boil all in a sufficient quantity of Wine, to the Thickness of a Cataplasim. It is Discussive, dissolves Knots and Kernels of the Kings-evil, and breaks those which will not be dissolved.

XVI. *The Fumigation.* *R* of the *Meal or Flower* a pound: *Frankincense* eight ounces: *Myrrh* four ounces: mix, melt and make the Mass up into Troches. These being put upon live Charcoal, and the Fume from thence being received up the Womb by a Funnel, warms, comforts and strengthens those Vessels of Generation, and is said to help towards Conception.

as it were branched into others, wherein consists the chiefest Difference.

VII. *The fifth, or Double Darnel Grass, in Roots, Stalks, Joints and Leaves,* differs little or nothing from the last, but in the spiked Heads, which are thicker set together, and the tops of them bow down, or turn a little round.

VIII. *The sixth, or Branched Marsh Darnel Grass,* has a creeping white jointed Root, with many Fibres adjoining to it; from which shoot forth two or three jointed Stalks, two feet or more high: the spiked Head is a foot long, branched as the fourth above is, each Branch of a Fingers length, with winged Husks, like unto Oats.

IX. *The Places.* They grow in Meadows, Corn-fields, Fallow-fields; in Paths-ways and Borders of Fields, almost every where: but the last in Marsh and Wet Grounds, and on the Edges of Plowed-fields.

X. *The Times.* They spring and flourish with Corn, and the Seed or Grains are ripe in August.

XI. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* Authors have said nothing of: however, it is manifest that they are of a cleansing, drying and astringent Faculty.

## C H A P. CCXII.

### of DARNEL-GRASS.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Φοινίξ ἀγρίαιος*, *Lolium Gramineum*, and *ἀγρίαιος γραμινεύς*, *Gramen Phanicum*: in Latin, *Phanix Gramineus*; and in English, *Darnel Grass*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are about six kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Phanix simplici & rarissima Gluma*, The smallest single Darnel Grass. 2. *Phanix altera densioribus specieis*, The greater single Darnel Grass. 3. *Phanix acrosta aculeata*, Small prickly Darnel Grass. 4. *Phanix multiplici spicata panicula*, Branched Darnel Grass. 5. *Phanix multiplici nutante*, Double Darnel Grass, with a bowing or bending down Top. 6. *Phanix palustris & longius spicata*, Branched Marsh Darnel Grass.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Smallest single Darnel Grass, has a fibrous Root, from whence spring up several grassy Leaves and Stalks, which are very like the Red Darnel, from the first, but that it has very few, slenderer and shorter Stalks, and the Leaves narrower; and the spiked Head has a few single Husks set very sparsely thereon.

IV. *The second, or Greater single Darnel Grass,* has Roots and Leaves like to the Red Darnel; but the Stalks grow a yard high, jointed and straked: and the Spike is thinly set with chaffy Heads, but they are bigger, rounder and thicker.

V. *The third, or Small prickly Darnel Grass,* has a jointed white fibrous Root, whence spring narrow grassy Leaves, six or seven inches high, being rough, hard and full of points, pointed or prickly at the ends, and with a few short Leaves on them, which have a flat jointed root, rough and chaffy like Tongues, sharp at the ends, and set at the joints.

VI. *The fourth, or Branched Darnel Grass,* has like to the Leaves and Stalks, which are jointed as the others are, and slender, half a yard or more high, and narrow Leaves, Grass like: the spiked Head is

## C H A P. CCXIII.

### of DEVILS-BIT Common.

I. **T**HE Names. It seems to be unknown to the Greeks, for which Reason it has no Greek Name: but it is called in Latin, *Succisa*, and *Morsus Diaboli*; and in English, *Devils-bit*.



II. *The Kinds.* It is certainly a Species of *Succisa*.



*bious*: some have thought it to be the *Geum* of the Ancients; others to be *Nigina Plinii*; but *Fabius Columna* referreth it to *Picnocomon Dioscoridis*: it is either *Common*, called, *Morsus Diaboli vulgaris*, of which in this Chapter; or *Various*, of which in the Chapter following.

III. The Description. It has a Root which is somewhat thick, but short and blackish, with many Strings fastned thereto, and abiding after Seed-time many Years: from this Root rises up a round, green, smooth (not hairy) Stalk, about two feet high, set with divers long, and somewhat narrow, smooth, dark green Leaves, snipt a little about the edges for the most part, being otherwise all whole, and not divided at all, or but very seldom, even to the tops of the Branches, which yet are smaller than those below, with one Rib only in the middle, and being broken, yield not such Threads, as the Scabious does. At the end or top of each Branch, stands a round Head of many Flowers set together in the same manner, or more neatly and succinctly than those of the Scabious, and of a more blewish purple color, (not of a dark red, as Gerard says) which being pass'd away, there follows Seed, like unto that of Scabious, which falls away in the same manner.

IV. Nota. 1. Some make of this kind a Greater and a Lesser: but this, in my Opinion, comes from the Nature of the Soil or Ground, rather than from the Nature of the Plant; that being the larger and fairer which grows upon the richer or fatter Ground, and that the lesser which grows on the poorer Soil.

V. Nota. 2. Some are of Opinion, that the *Scabiosa rubra Austriaca Clusii* belongs to this Plant, because it has a short Root with many Strings: *Euchinus* makes mention of one of this kind, which has hairy Leaves, and not differing in any thing else, and he, from *Gesner*, calls it *Morsus Diaboli hirsuta*.

VI. Nota. 3. Some Monks and Fryers (as I suppose) have fabled, that the Devil, envying the Good which this Herb might do to Mankind, bit away part of the Root, by which means it became so short a Stump as it is, and from thence it came to have the Name of *Morsus Diaboli*, or *Succisa*, Devils-bit: but the Fable is so ridiculous, that one which has but a Grain of Sense or Reason can never believe such a Fiction.

VII. The Places. It grows as well in dry Meadows and Fields, as moist in many places of our Land; as also in Woods and by Highways sides: a great deal of it has been found growing in *Hampstead Wood* near *London*, at *Lee* in *Essex*; also at *Raleigh* in *Essex*, in a Wood called *Hammerel*, and in several other places.

VIII. The Times. It flowers in *August*, which is something later than the *Scabiouses*; and is hardly to be known from *Scabious*, but when it is in Flower.

IX. The Qualities. It is hot and dry in the end of the second Degree; and is Stomackick, Cordial, Sudorifick and Alexipharmick.

X. The Specification. It is a peculiar Antidote against the Plague, Poyson and Bitings of Venomous Beasts.

XI. The Preparations. You may prepare therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction. 4. A Pouder of the Root. 5. An Ointment or Balsam. 6. A Cataplasm. 7. A distilled Water. 8. A Spirituous Tincture. 9. An Acid Tincture. 10. An Oily Tincture. 11. A Saline Tincture. 12. A Salt.

### The Virtues.

XII. The liquid Juice. Taken inwardly to two, three or four ounces, according to the Age of the Patient, it is powerful against the Measles, Small-Pox, Calenture, malign and spotted Fever, as also against the Plague, and all malign and pestilential Diseases, Poyson, and the Bitings of Vipers, Rattle Snakes, or any other Venomous Beast: and is an excellent thing to induce the Healing of Wounds and Ulcers.

XIII. The Essence. It has all the former Virtues, but is more powerful to the said Intentions: besides which, it is good against Fits of the Mother and Vapors, and provokes the Terms in Women. Dose two, four or six spoonfuls Morning and Night, in a Glass of the Distilled Water, or in a Glass of White Wine.

XIV. The Decoction in Wine. It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but is yet less powerful: it may be used as a Wound-drink by such Patients as have Wounds, Ulcers or Fistula's which are inveterate, or of difficult Cure. If it is sweetened with Honey of Roses, it is said to be very effectual to help inveterate Tumors and Swellings of the Almonds and Throat, which do hardly come to Ripeness; for it digests, cleanses, consumes the Flegm sticking thereto, and dissolves the Tumors by often gargling therewith. Dose four or six ounces Morning and Night.

XV. The Pouder of the Root. If it is taken in any convenient Vehicle, it kills Worms, and drives them forth of the Body. It breaks and dissolves Wind in the Bowels, and resists Poyson and all sorts of malign Fevers. Dose one dram mixt with Honey, the Essence aforegoing, or any other proper Vehicle.

XVI. The Ointment or Balsam. It cures simple green Wounds, many times at once dressing; for it is an incomparable Vulnerary. It ripens Aposteims, and such other Tumors as will in time come to Suppuration. It digests old Ulcers, cleanses, incarnates, dries, and in a short time induces the Cicatrize, or causes them to be healed. Applied to the Gout, it eases the Pain, and in a short time cures it.

XVII. The Cataplasm. It is made of the green Herb and Root, and applied, it dissolves Tumors in simple Contusions, and is profitable to be applied to any place hurt or bruised by any Fall, Blow, or the like, or crushed by any Casualty, dissolving the clotted or congealed Blood, and taking away the black and blew Marks, which may afterwards remain.

XVIII. The distilled Water. It is good to wash green Wounds and old Sores, cleansing and drying them: and given inwardly with the Juice or Essence, it cleanses the Body inwardly. If a little white Vitriol is dissolved in it, it is then good against Scurf, Morpew, Herpes, Tettars, Ringworms, Itch, Pimples, running Sores and Ulcers, Freckles, Yellowness of the Skin, and other like Deformities, if the Parts affected be two or three times a day washed therewith, and so suffered to dry on without wiping.

XIX. The Spirituous Tincture. It is powerful against Poyson, and the Malignity of burning and pestilential Fevers, as also the Bitings of Mad Dogs, Serpents, and other poysonous Creatures. It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but more effectual than they are, where the Heart and Vitals are immediately concerned. It is good against Convulsions, Lethargies, and all other cold and moist Diseases of the Head, Brain, Heart and Nerves. Dose two or three drams.

XX. The Acid Tincture. It is a singular Medicament



cament againſt the Plague and Spotted Fever: it abates the Heat, and quenches the Thirſt, tho' never ſo extream, in the moſt violent malign and burning Fever, and that almoſt upon the Spot, even to a Miracle: beſides, it reſiſts all ſorts of Poyſon, more eſpecially ſuch as are volatile Poyſons, deſtroying them in their very Root and Effence. It admirably comforts and ſtrengthens the Stomach, reſiſts Vomiting, creates an Appetite and cauſes a good Diſteſtion. It ſuppreſſes Vapors and Hyſterick Fits in Women, reſiſts Hypochondriack Melancholy, and is good for ſuch as are inwardly bruised by a Fall, or any other Caſualty, diſſolving the clotted or congealed Blood, and cauſing it to be excreted. Doſe ſo much as will make the Vehicle pleaſingly ſharp, and to be repeated three, four, five, fix or more times a day.

XXI. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good againſt inward Convulſions of the Stomach and other Viſcera, it gives eaſe in the Cholick, and other Torments of the Bowels, whether given by the Mouth in any proper Vehicle, or exhibited Clyſterwiſe in Broth or Poſſet-drink. It provokes the Courſes, eaſes the Pains of the Mother, breaks and diſcuſſes Wind in the Belly and Stomach, opens Obſtructions of the Reins, and other Urinary Parts, cleanses them of Sand, Gravel, and other Tartarous Matter, and ſo gives eaſe in the Stone and Strangury. Doſe from ten to thirty drops in any fit Vehicle.

XXII. *The Saline Tincture.* Given inwardly to one dram or more in a proper *Medium*, it provokes Urine, opens Obſtructions of the Womb, Reins and Ureters, and gives eaſe in the Strangury and Stone: outwardly applied, it is good againſt Scabs, Itch, Pimples, Puſtles, Scurff, Morpew, Leprous Spots, Freckles, Lentils, Sun-burning, Tanning, Yellowneſs of the Skin, and other the like Deſecations, the Parts affected being bathed therewith two or three times a day, or ſometimes oftner.

XXIII. *The fixed Salt.* It is Diuretick, Alexipharmick, Aperitive and Antifebrick: it opens Obſtructions of the Urinary Parts, expelling Sand, Gravel and Tartarous Matter: it reſiſts Poyſon, the Bitings of Serpents and Mad Dogs, and the Plague: it opens the Paſſages of the Womb, cleaning it from Impurities; and given in a proper Vehicle, abates the Heat of burning Fevers, carrying off the Morbifick Matter by Urine. Doſe one ſcruple, or half a dram, in the diſtilled Water aforegoing.

grow nearer to the tops of the Branches; and on the top of each Branch ſtands a round Head of many Flowers, like the former Devils-bit, ſaving that theſe are only white, whereas they are of a blewish purple: and indeed this Plant differs not from the former in any other thing but in the Color of the Flower, which is of a pure white, as ſome other ſorts of the Scabiouses are, and that the green Leaf is not altogether of ſo dark a green.

IV. *The ſecond*, or that with the bluſh-colored Flowers, is in Root, Stalk, Leaf, Color of the Leaf, and Form of the Flower, the ſame with the former; but in this it differs therefrom, that the Flowers hereof are of an incarnate or bluſh color, whereas in the Common they are of a blewish purple, and in the former of a white color only.

V. *The Places.* Theſe two are more hard and rare to be met with than the Common kind, yet they are both found growing Wild about Appledore, near Rye in Suffex; and in ſeveral other places of this Kingdom.

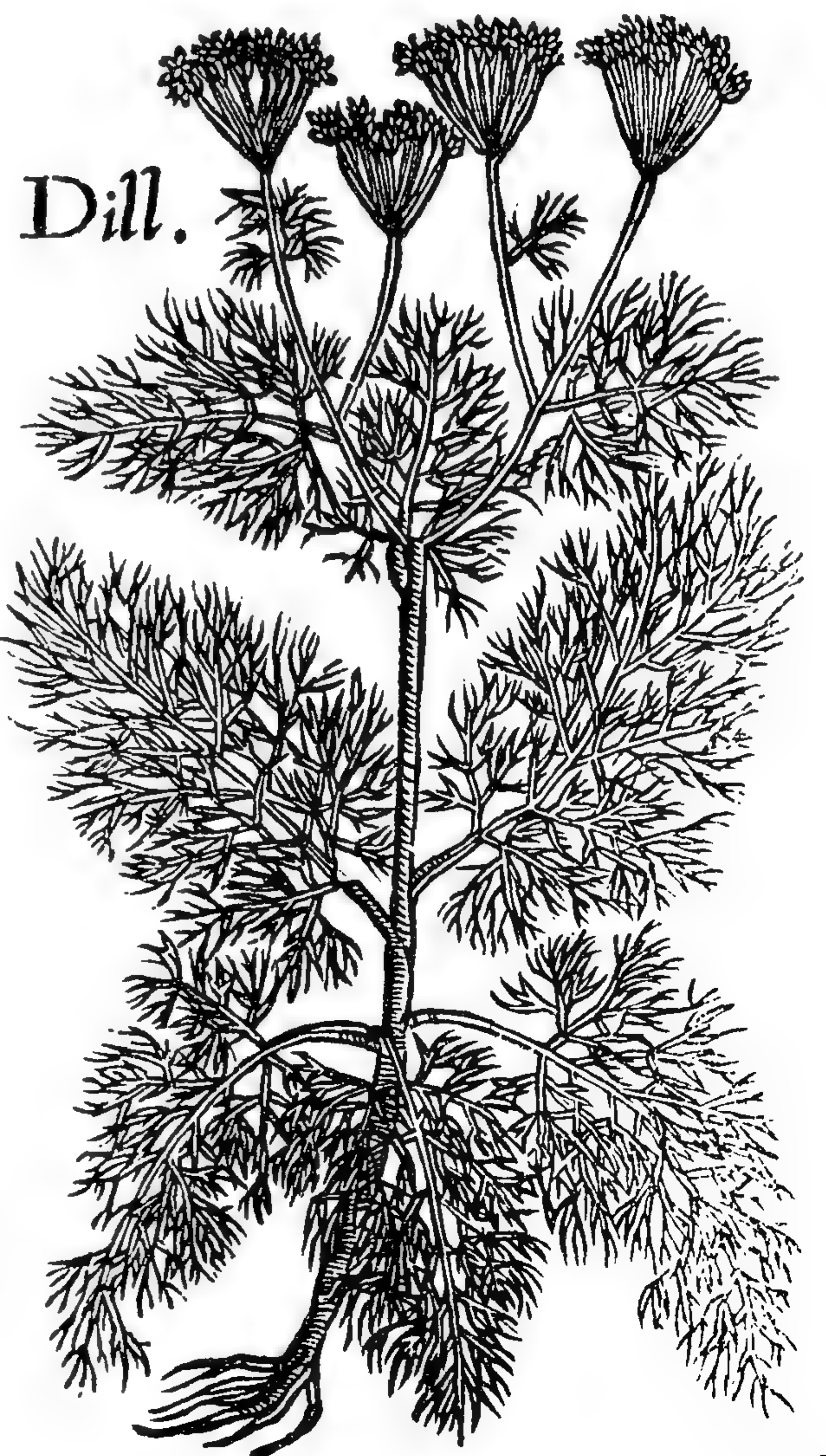
VI. *The Times.* They flower later than any of the Scabiouses, and commonly not until *Auguſt*.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the ſame with the Common Devils-bit declared in the former Chapter, ſo that no more need be ſaid of it here, ſaving, that neither of theſe are in the leaſt inferior to the Vulgar in any of their Preparations or Virtues.

## C H A P. CCXV.

### Of DILL Garden.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Ἄνιθον* (*anethon*; *quod cinò crescat*) *Math. 23. 23. Theophrast. lib. 5. cap. 67. Plin. lib. 20. cap. 18.* in Latin, *Anethum*, and *Anethum hortense*, as *Bauhinus* has it: in Arabick, *Zebet*, and *Sebet*; and in English, *Dill*.



## C H A P. CCXIV.

### Of DEVILS-BIT Various.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Latin, *Morsus Diaboli versicoloratus*, and *Morsus Diaboli diversus*: in English, *Various Devils-bit*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold, viz. 1. *Morsus Diaboli flore albo*, Devils-bit with a white Flower. 2. *Morsus Diaboli flore carneo*, Devils-bit with bluſh-colored Flowers.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first of theſe with the white Flowers, has a ſhort Stump of a Root, like the former, from whence many thready Radicle ſpring: from the Head of this Root ariſes a round, green, ſmooth Stalk, near two feet high, with long, narrow, ſmooth, dark green Leaves, a little notched about the edges, but not at all divided; which Notches or Dents grow ſmaller and ſmaller, as they

II. The



II. *The Kinds.* There are two principal kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Anethon Hortense*, Garden Dill, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Anethum Sylvestre*, Wild Dill, of which in the following Chapter.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root which is small and woody, perishing every Year after Seed-time, and is unprofitable as to Physick, never being put to any Use. From this Root rises up for the most part but one Stalk, seldom more, nothing so large, nor seldom above half the height of Fennel, being round, and with fewer Joints thereon, whose Leaves are sadder, and somewhat long, divided almost into an infinite number of fibrous parts, almost like unto Fennel, but harder in handling, and somewhat thicker, of a stronger Smell also, and not so pleasant. The tops of the Stalks have fewer Branches, and are repleat with Umbles of yellow Flowers, smaller than those of Fennel, which pass into small Seed, somewhat flatter and thinner than Fennel Seed, and of a stronger and more picquant Taste.

IV. *The Places.* It is most usually sown in Gardens, and such like Ground for the purpose; and is also found Wild with us in some places: but if so found, yet it is not of the Wild kind.

V. *The Times.* It flowers in July, and the Seed is ripe in the end of August.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot in the third Degree, and dry in the second; more especially being green: but when the Herb or Seed are dry, they are hot and dry in the third Degree; and abound very much with Mercury and Sulphur; being Aperitive, Carminative, Digestive, Discussive and Diuretick; Neurotick, Stomack, Pectoral, Splenerick and Hysterick; Sudorifick, Alexipharmick, Analeptick, Galactogenetick and Spermatogenetick.

VII. *The Specification.* It is a peculiar Remedy for the Cholick, and Windiness of the Stomach and Bowels.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may prepare herefrom, 1. A Juice of the Herb. 2. An Essence of the Herb. 3. A Syrup. 4. A Decoction of Herb and Seed. 5. A Powder of the Seed. 6. An Ointment of Herb and Seed. 7. A Cataplasm of Herb and Seed. 8. A distilled Water of Herb and Seed. 9. A Spirituous Tincture of the Seed. 10. An Acid Tincture of the Seed. 11. An Oily Tincture of the Seed. 12. A Saline Tincture of the Seed. 13. A distilled Oil thereof. 14. A Spirit therefrom. 15. Potestates or Powers. 16. An Elixir of the Seed: of all which in order.

## *The Virtues.*

IX. *The liquid Juice of the Herb.* Mixt with the distilled Water, one or two spoonfuls of the Juice to four of distilled Water, and so taken Morning, Noon and Night, it encreases Seed, as also Milk in Nurfes: it expels Wind, and eases Pains of the Bowels, being drunk. If two or three spoonfuls of the Juice is mixt with Chicken-Broth, and exhibited as a Clyster, it helps in a *Tenasmus*.

X. *The Essence of the Herb.* It has the Virtues of the Juice; besides which, if it be given two or three spoonfuls at a time in the Morning fasting, in a Glass of Generous Wine, it wonderfully strengthens the Stomach, eases the Pains and Windiness of the Womb, and stops Vomiting; and is very effectual to digest raw and viscous Humors in the Stomach and Bowels.

XI. *The Syrup of the Herb or its Juice.* It is Pectoral, good against Coughs, Colds, Hoarseness, Wheezing, and other Obstructions of the Lungs from what Cause soever. Mixt with Nurfes Milk,

it encreases Milk in her Breasts, and makes it more wholesome for the Child. It is a singular thing also against a tickling Catarrh, or an inveterate Flux of Rheum upon the Lungs, being often taken.

XII. *The Decoction of the green Herb and Seed.* If it is made in Water, it encreases Seed, as also Milk in Nurfes. If it is made in Wine, it stirs up Lust, and provokes to Coition; and if it be too much taken, may provoke so vehemently for a time, as at length, quite to extinguish Venery, by a too Lascivious Ejection of the Sperm.

XIII. *The Powder of the Seed.* Taken to one dram in any fit Vehicle, it warms and comforts the Stomach and Bowels, and powerfully expels Wind: mixed with Honey, it is good against Coughs, Colds and tickling Catarrhs, and is good against Hoarseness, Wheezing and loss of Voice. Drank mixed with Wine, it is good against the Hiccough, Vomiting, Loathing and Convulsions of the Stomach and other Viscera.

XIV. *The Ointment of the Herb and Seed.* It is heating and drying, warms Parts which are cold and chilled; and is good to ease Pains in any Part proceeding from Cold, Moisture and Wind. It discusses and dissolves recent Tumors; but digests and maturates Apostems, and is good to anoint with for the Piles, and to discuss any other like Tumor in the Fundament; and dries up all moist and running Sores wheresoever, but more especially in the secret Parts. It is an Anodyn or Easer of Pain, and gives Rest.

XV. *The Cataplasm.* It discusses recent Tumors, and is profitable to be applied to any simple Contusion, provided it is done upon the spot: applied to the Gout, whether in Hands, Arms, Knees or Feet, it has been found to give Relief: if it is heat very hot in a Frying-pan, and applied to the Side, it eases the Pains of the Pleurisy, and takes away Stitches: and so applied to the Region of the Abdomen or Belly, it prevails against the Cholick and Gripping of the Guts. Applied very hot to an Apostem, and often renewed, it brings it quickly to Suppuration, and breaks it.

XVI. *The distilled Water of the Herb and Seed.* It is a good Vehicle to take any of the Preparations in, whether Galenick or Chymick: and being drank sweetned with double-refined Sugar, breeds much Milk in Nurfes Breasts, whatever Galen may say to the contrary.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture of the Seed.* It powerfully warms, comforts and strengthens the Stomach, expels Wind, and causes a good Appetite and Digestion. It is good against Loathing and Vomiting, stops Fluxes of the Bowels, and digests raw and viscous Humors in those Parts. It may be given from two drams to half an ounce, in a Glass of fragrant Wine, in the Morning fasting.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture of the Seed.* It strengthens a weak Stomach, incides tough and viscous Humors in the Bowels, and dissolves them, making them fit for Excretion. It cuts tough Flegm and tartarous Humors in the Stomach and Lungs, and makes it fit for Expectoration; for which Reason it prevails against Hoarseness, Loss of Voice, Shortness of Breath and Difficulty of Breathing. It abates the Heat of Fevers, and resists Putridity in what part of the Body soever. Dose so much as may make the Vehicle pleasantly sharp, whether it be Ale, Beer or Wine.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture of the Seed.* It is good against the Palsy, as also Convulsions, Cramps, Numbness, and Pains in any part of the Body, proceeding from Cold and Moisture, outwardly anointed upon the Parts affected, and inwardly given in any proper Vehicle, from fifteen to thirty drops or more,



more, as the Exigency or Extremity may require. It provokes Urine admirably, and gives ease in the Strangury and Stone, cleansing the Reins and Bladder from Gravel, Sand and tartarous Slime lodged in those Parts. It is a singular thing also to cure a Puncture of the Nerves and Tendons, in which, being applied, it gives present ease to the Pain, asswages the Tumor, and soon after cures the Afflict.

XX. *The Saline Tincture of the Seed.* Mixt with the distilled Water aforementioned, it makes a good Wash for moist and running Ulcers and Sores, cleansing and drying up the Moisture, and disposing them to healing. Given to two drams in a Clyster, it prevails against the Cholick: and taken inwardly to one dram in White Port Wine, it opens and cleanses the Urinary Passages, &c.

XXI. *The distilled Oil of the Seed.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Decoction, Pouder, Spirituous, Acid and Oily Tinctures, but it is more powerful than any of them; and may be given to strengthen the Stomach, resist Loathing and Vomiting, cause Appetite and a good Digestion, expel Wind, ease the Cholick and Tortions of the Bowels from sharp Humors, cure Convulsions, Apoplexies, Lethargies, Palsy, Gout, Stone, Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, Bladder and Womb, &c. Dose from eight to twenty drops, being first dropt into white Sugar, and then mixt with some proper Vehicle, in which it is to be given Morning and Night.

XXII. *The Spirit of the Seed.* It has all the Virtues of the Spirituous, Acid and Oily Tinctures, but not all out so powerful; yet it is much more grateful or pleasant to the Pallate; and may be taken, being dulcified, either alone or mixt with some proper Vehicle, from two drams to six.

XXIII. *The Potestates or Powers of the Seed.* They have all the Virtues of the Chymical Oil, Juice, Essence, Tinctures and Spirit, but more powerful and subtil, piercing admirably thro' all Parts of the Body. By outward Application, being bathed upon the Parts affected, they are good against Pains, Aches, Numbness, Palsy, Lameness, Convulsions, Spasms proceeding from a cold and moist Cause: they resolve Humors, discuss Tumors, and resist Defluxions upon any Part, by strengthening the same. Dose inwardly from one dram to three or four, in any proper Vehicle Morning and Night.

XXIV. *The Elixir of the Seed.* This has all the Virtues of the distilled Oil, Essence, Tinctures, Spirit and Powers, and is more subtil and powerful than any of them; and therefore may very profitably be used to all those Intentions, both by inward Exhibition and outward Application. It is indeed an admirable Stomack, scarcely any better in the whole Republick of Medicine: and for provoking Lust, one of the most powerful of Vegetables. Dose from one dram to two, in a proper Vehicle.

## C H A P. CCXVI.

### Of D I L L Wild.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἀνθόν* *ἄνθον*; in Latin, *Anethum Sylvestre*; and in English, *Wild Dill*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the second Species of Dill: and of this Species there are two sorts, viz. 1. *A-*

*nethum Sylvestre majus*, Great Wild Dill. 2. *Anethum Sylvestre minus*, Small Wild Dill.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Great Wild Dill, has a Root like to the Garden kind; and in its Stalks, Leaves, Flowers and Seed differs little from it, but in its Largeness, being much greater in all its parts than the Garden kind is: and the Smell thereof is much the same.

IV. *The second, or Small Wild Dill, has a Root like to the first or Garden kind, but smaller than it: and so likewise, as the first of these was greater in all its parts than the Garden Dill, so is this lesser in its Stalks, Leaves, Flowers and Seed; the Stalk growing not above a foot high: the Leaves are fine and small on the Stalks, the Flowers yellow, and the Seed small and long, like the Garden kind, but only lesser, in which the Difference chiefly lyes.*

V. *The Places.* Their native Place is Sicily, and Lisbon in Portugal: from the first place they were sent by Columna to Baubinus; and from the second place they were sent by Boel to us, and are now nurs'd up in our Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* They both flower in their native places in June, but with us in July; and their Seed is ripe in August, or some small time after.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with those of the Garden kind, and full out as effectual; and therefore for the same you are referred to the foregoing Chapter.

## C H A P. CCXVII.

### Of D I T T A N D E R,

O R,

### P E P P E R - W O R T.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Λεπίδιον*, *quod λεπίδες*, id est, *maculas & squammas in cute delent*: or as some think, *ἀπὸ τοῦ λεπίζειν*, *quod acrimonia urenti ulceret*: in Latin, *Lepidium*, (but it is not the *Lepidium Dioscoridis & Galeni*, for that is *Iberis Cardimantica*, of which we have already treated in Chap. 168. foregoing: in English, *Dittander*, or *Pepper-wort*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make three sorts hereof, viz. 1. *Lepidium vulgare*, sive *Piperitis*, *Fuchsi & Loniceri*, *Tragi*, *Matthioli & Camerarii*; *Lepidium magnum Turneri*, *Cordi & Fuchsi*; *Lepidium Plinii*, according to *Lobel & Dodonæus*; *Lepidium Pauli & Plinii*, according to *Matthiolum*, *Lugdunensis & Casalpini*; *Raphanus Sylvestris officinarum*, according to *Lobel*, and *Lepidium latifolium Baubini*, The vulgar Dittander or Pepper-wort. 2. *Lepidium Monspeliacum*, *Flammula Gesneri* (in hortis) *Herba Sancti Anthonii*, *Dentillaria Lobelii & Lugdunensis*; *Dentaria Rondeletii*; *Molybdena Plinii*, according to *Anguilara & Camerarius*; *Plumbago Clusii & Tabernmontani*; *Glastrum Sylvestre Casalpini*, French Dittander, or Scar-wort. 3. *Lepidium Annuum Lobelii & Lugdenensis*; *Lepidium Glastrifolium Baubini*, Annual Dittander, or Scar-wort.

III. The





III. The Descriptions. The first, or Common Dittander, has a Root which is slender, and runs much under Ground, and shooting up again in many places: both Leaves and Roots are very hot and sharp in Taste, biting like Pepper, whence came the Name of Pepper-wort: from this Root spring forth somewhat long and broad Leaves, of a light blewish green color, finely dented about the edges, and pointed at the ends, standing upon round hard Stalks, three or four feet high, spreading many Branches on all sides, and having many small white Flowers at the tops of them, after which follow small Seed in small Heads.

IV. The second, or French Dittander, commonly called Dentillaria Rondeletii, has a Root which is composed of many great Strings, with a woody Pith in the middle, running down deep into the Earth, and abiding many Years, altho' both Stalks and Leaves perish every Year, fresh springing up again in the Spring. This Root Annually sends up a number of long and limber Stalks, reddish at the bottom, lying down upon the Ground, and not standing upright, because of their length, which are sometimes four, five or six feet long, set with Leaves on all sides, which are somewhat narrow, long and smooth, of a sad green color, smaller at the lower end, and encompassing the Stalk about, but lesser still as they grow nearer to the tops of the Stalks, where they are a little branched, and do break forth into several dark purplish Flowers, set together, consisting of five small pointed Leaves apiece, standing in round brownish Husks, in which afterwards is contained small, round and blackish Seed, very sharp in Taste, exulcerating the Skin, and burning it, being laid thereon, as the Leaves also do.

V. The third, or Annual Dittander, has a Root which is small and fibrous, perishing every Year: from which Root rise up Stalks more upright than the last, about three or four feet high, set with such like Leaves as the last, but somewhat larger, and encompassing them at the bottoms. The Flowers are white, and stand upon small Branches one above another, Spike-fashion, which afterwards give small, round

and pointed Husks, like some of the Thlaplics or Treacle-Mustards, in which the Seed is contained, no less hot and fiery in Taste, and exulcerating the Skin, than the Seed of the former.

VI. The Places. The first of these is found growing naturally in many places of England, as Clare in Essex, also near Excester, and upon Rochester-Common in Kent; at Swale-Abby near Wharley, in Lancashire: it delights to grow in sandy and shady places which are something moist; and is also nurs'd up in Gardens. The other two are of French Origination, growing about Mompelier; but with us are nourisht up in Gardens.

VII. The Times. The first flowers about the end of June and in July. The second late with us, in August, but scarcely ever gives ripe Seed in England. The third flowers in July, and the Seed is ripe in August.

VIII. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the fourth Degree; Pyrotick, Stomatick, Arthritick, Ptarmick and Alexipharmick.

XI. The Specification. They are peculiar for the Cure of the Sciatica or Hip-Gout.

X. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An Infusion in Wine. 4. A Pouder. 5. A Cataplasm. 6. A Spirituous Tincture. 7. An Acid Tincture. 8. An Oily Tincture. 9. A Saline Tincture.

#### The Virtues.

XI. The liquid Juice. Parkinson says, that the Women of Bury in Suffolk do usually give the Juice thereof in Ale or Beer to Women in Labor, to procure a speedy Delivery in Travail. You may give it from one spoonful to two at a time.

XII. The Essence. It has the former Virtues; besides which, it is powerful to provoke the Terms in Women where they are stopt, dry up Catarrhs and tickling Rheums which fall upon the Lungs; and being held in the Mouth, gives ease in the Tooth-ach to Admiration. Dose one spoonful or more at a time, in a Glass of Ale, Beer or Wine.

XIII. The Infusion in Wine. It warms and comforts a cold Stomach, expels Wind, provokes Appetite, and helps Concoction, and gives ease in all Pains of the Stomach and Bowels proceeding from Wind, or Sharpness of Humors, the Cholick, &c. being drunk for some time by Women, it is said to cause Fruitfulness. Dose a small Gill of three or four ounces Morning and Night.

XIV. The Pouder. Snuff up the Nostrils, it is a good Errhine to purge the Head and Brain of cold, moist and Hegmatick Humors, which it does very effectually. Taken inwardly from a scruple to half a dram, or two scruples in the Morning fasting, it kills Worms in Children, and expels Wind out of the Stomach: and used as a Topick to moist and running Sores and Ulcers, it cleanses, dries and induces their Healing.

XV. The Cataplasm. It is made of the green Leaves, either alone or mixed with Hogs-Lard, by beating them together in a Mortar. It is hot, fiery and sharp, as is that of Sciatica Cresses, and works the same Effects; for both Paulus Aegineta and Phny say, that it is effectual for the Cure of the Sciatica or Hip-Gout, or any other Pain or Gout in the Joints, or any other inveterate Grief, being applied in the same manner as Sciatica Cresses; and used in the same order, it also is good against the Deformities or Discolorings of the Skin, and takes away Marks and Scars, Scabs, and Deformities made by burning with Fire, or the like.

XVI. The Spirituous Tincture. It cures the Pain



of the Stomach and Bowels, the Cholick, and Torsions of the Bowels arising from sharp and corrosive Humors. It strengthens the Viscera admirably, and stops Fluxes of the Belly of all sorts, as the Diarrhæa, Dysenteria, Lienteria, Hepatick-flux, and withal restores the Tone of the Parts hurt, by warming and comforting them. Dose half a spoonful at a time in a Glass of Wine.

XVII. *The Acid Tincture.* It cuts thick and tough Flegm, dissolves tartarous Matter in what part of the Body soever, strengthens the Stomach, restores its depraved Tone, causes a good Appetite and a strong Digestion: and by its Insinuation into the Mass of Blood, it destroys its Discrepacy, and so effectually roots out the Scurvy, whether in Old or Young. Dose so many drops as to make the Vehicle pleasantly sharp.

XVIII. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against Rheumatick Pains and Aches in any Part of the Body, the Sciatica and Gout proceeding from a cold Cause, as also Palfies, Convulsions, Spasms or Cramps; in all which Cases it is to be bathed twice a day upon the Parts affected, rubbing it every time well in: in a Palsy, it ought also to be anointed all along upon the Back-bone, as well as upon the Part affected.

XIX. *The Sclinc Tincture.* It prevails against Tettars, Ringworms, Herpes, Scurff, Morphew, Itch, Pimples, Pustules, Scabs, Leprosy, and other like Breakings out: it also takes away Sunburning, Tanning, Freckles, Lentils, Redness, Yellowness, and such other like Detradations of the Skin, being only bathed Morning, Noon and Night upon the Part affected, and then suffering it to dry in.

## C H A P. CCXVIII.

### Of DITTANY Bastard White.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek by some, Χαμαιμελία, ἡ Χαμαιμελίον, (as if it was *Fraxinus humilis*, but that it is not:) in Latin, *Fraxinella*, *Diptamum* and *Dictamnium*; also *Dictamus vel Dictamnus albus*: in English, *White Dittany*, *White Bastard Dittany*, and *Fraxinella*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three kinds, viz. 1. *Fraxinella vulgaris*, *Fraxinella flore rubente*, Common or vulgar Bastard Dittany with a reddish Flower. 2. *Fraxinella flore rubro*, Bastard Dittany with a red Flower. 3. *Fraxinella flore albo ceruleo*, Bastard Dittany with an Ash-colored Flower.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common Bastard Dittany, has a white large Root, spreading many ways under Ground, if it stands long: it is a goodly Plant, and rises up with several round, hard, brownish Stalks, near two feet high, the lower parts whereof are furnished with many winged Leaves, somewhat like unto Liquorice or a small young Ash-tree, consisting of seven, nine or eleven Leaves set together, which are something large and long, hard and rough in handling, of a darkish green color, and of an unpleasant strong resinous Smell. The upper parts of the Stalk are furnished with many Flowers growing Spike-fashion, at certain distances one from another, consisting of five long Leaves apiece, of which, four which stand on the two sides are somewhat bending upwards, and the fifth hanging down, but turning up a little the end of the Leaf again, of a faint or pale red color, striped thro' every Leaf

with a deeper red color, and having in the middle a Tassel of five or six long purplish Threads, which bow down with the lower Leaf; and turn up also the ends again, with a little Frieze or Thrum at the ends of every one. After the Flowers are past, arise hard, stiff, rough, clammy Husks, horned or pointed at the end, four or five standing together, somewhat like unto the Seed-Vessels of Wolfs-bane or Columbines, but greater, thicker and harder, in which is contained round, shining, black Seed, larger than any Columbine-Seed by much, and smaller than Peony-Seed. The whole Plant, as well Roots as Leaves, is of a strong Scent, not so pleasing for the Smell as the Flowers are beautiful to the Sight.



IV. The second, or Bastard Dittany with a red Flower, for Root, Stalks, Leaves, Flowers and Seed, with the Form and Manner of Growing, are all very like to the former, excepting that the Stalks and Leaves are of a darker green color, and that the Flowers are of a deeper red color, and growing in a little longer Spike; in which things the Difference chiefly consists.

V. The third, or Bastard Dittany with an Ash-colored Flower, is also in Root, Stalks, Leaves, Flowers, Seed, Form and Manner of Growing, like to the second, excepting that the Leaves and Stalks are of a fresher green color than any of the former, and the Flowers are of a very pale or whitish blew color, tending to an Ash color, in which the Difference chiefly consists.

VI. *The Places.* All these kinds are found to grow naturally in many places both of Germany and Italy; but with us they are only nurs'd up in Gardens.

VII. *The Times.* They flower in June and July; and their Seed is ripe in July or August.

VIII. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the second Degree; Anodyne, Aperitive, Attenuating, Inciding, Digestive, Stomatick, Nephritick, Hysterick, Emmenagogick and Alexipharmick.

IX. The



IX. *The Specification.* It is peculiar against Poyson, Plague, Stoppage of Urine, and the Courses in Women.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A liquid Juice of the Leaves and Root.* 2. *An Essence of the same.* 3. *An Infusion of Leaves and Roots in Wine.* 4. *A Powder of the Seed.* 5. *A Fumigation.* 6. *A Powder of the Root.* 7. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 8. *An Acid Tincture.* 9. *An Oily Tincture.* 10. *A Spirit.* These four last from the Root chiefly, or Root and Herb.

## The Virtues.

XI. *The liquid Juice of Leaves and Root.* Taken from one spoonful to two in White Port Wine, it is good against the Strangury, provokes Urine, and is said to break the Stone in the Bladder, and expel it: it also provokes the Terms, and brings away both Birth and After-birth.

XII. *The Essence of Roots and Leaves.* It has all the former Virtues; besides which, it is good for Weakness and Illness of the Stomach, prevails against all cold and moist Diseases of the Womb, and is profitable against the Stingings and Bitings of Hornets, Scorpions, Serpents, Mad-Dogs, and other venomous Beasts: it prevails against deadly Poysons, and all sorts of malign and pestilential Diseases. Dose one or two spoonfuls Morning and Night, in a Glass of Generous Wine.

XIII. *The Infusion of Leaves and Roots in Wine.* It has all the former Virtues, but not full out so powerful, and may be given to four or six ounces: it expels Wind, and eases the Cholick.

XIV. *The Powder of the Seed.* Given to a dram or more in White Port Wine, it prevails against the Strangury, provokes Urine, and breaks the Stone (as Authors say) in the Bladder, and drives it out.

XV. *The Fumigation.* The Root made into little bits, or a very gross Powder, and the Fume of it, being cast upon live Charcoal, and received by a Funnel up the Womb, it warms and cleanses that Part, and is said to bring away the After-birth; some of the Essence thereof being taken at the same time inwardly.

XVI. *The Powder of the Root.* If it is given to a dram with fifteen grains of *Rhubarb*, it kills and drives forth Worms: and being given from one to two drams, it effectually resists Poyson and the Venom of Serpents, Mad-Dogs, &c. prevails against the Plague and other contagious Diseases, kills Worms in the Stomach and Belly, and gives ease in the Stone.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture of the Root, or of Root and Leaves.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but more powerfully warms and comforts a cold, weak and sick Stomach, restores a depraved Apperite, and causes a good Digestion: it expels Wind, and gives ease in the Cholick. Dose two or three drams.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It heals inward Wounds, and prevails against the Epilepsy or Falling-sickness, Vertigo, Lethargy, Head-ach, Megrin, and other cold and moist Diseases of the Head and Brain. It cuts tough Flegm, opens Obstructions of the Lungs and other Viscera, helps to break the Stone, and expels Sand and Gravel, as also any kind of tartarous Matter from the Brest, Lungs, Reins, Ureters and Bladder. Dose so many drops as may make the Vehicle pleasantly sharp, to be taken three or four times a day.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against Convulsions and Cramps, as also Lameness, Numbness, Pains, Aches, Palfies, and other like cold and

moist Diseases of the Nerves, being well bathed upon the Parts affected Morning and Night: also taken inwardly, from ten to twenty five drops, in a Glass of White Port Wine, it is an excellent thing against the Strangury and Obstructions of Urine by Sand, Gravel, or any tartarous or slimy Matter in the Reins, Ureters and Bladder. Given to forty drops, as aforesaid, to a Woman in Travail, it brings forth both Birth and After-birth.

XX. *The Spirit of Herb and Root.* It is a singular Stomack, warming and comforting a cold and weak Stomach: it restores its Tone, expels Wind, prevails against the Cholick, and causes a good Apperite, and an excellent Digestion, being taken an hour before Dinner. Dose (dulcified) one or two spoonfuls.

XXI. *Nota.* If the green Herb is bruised, and applied outwardly, it draws Prickles, Thornes, Splinters, and such other like things out of the Flesh.

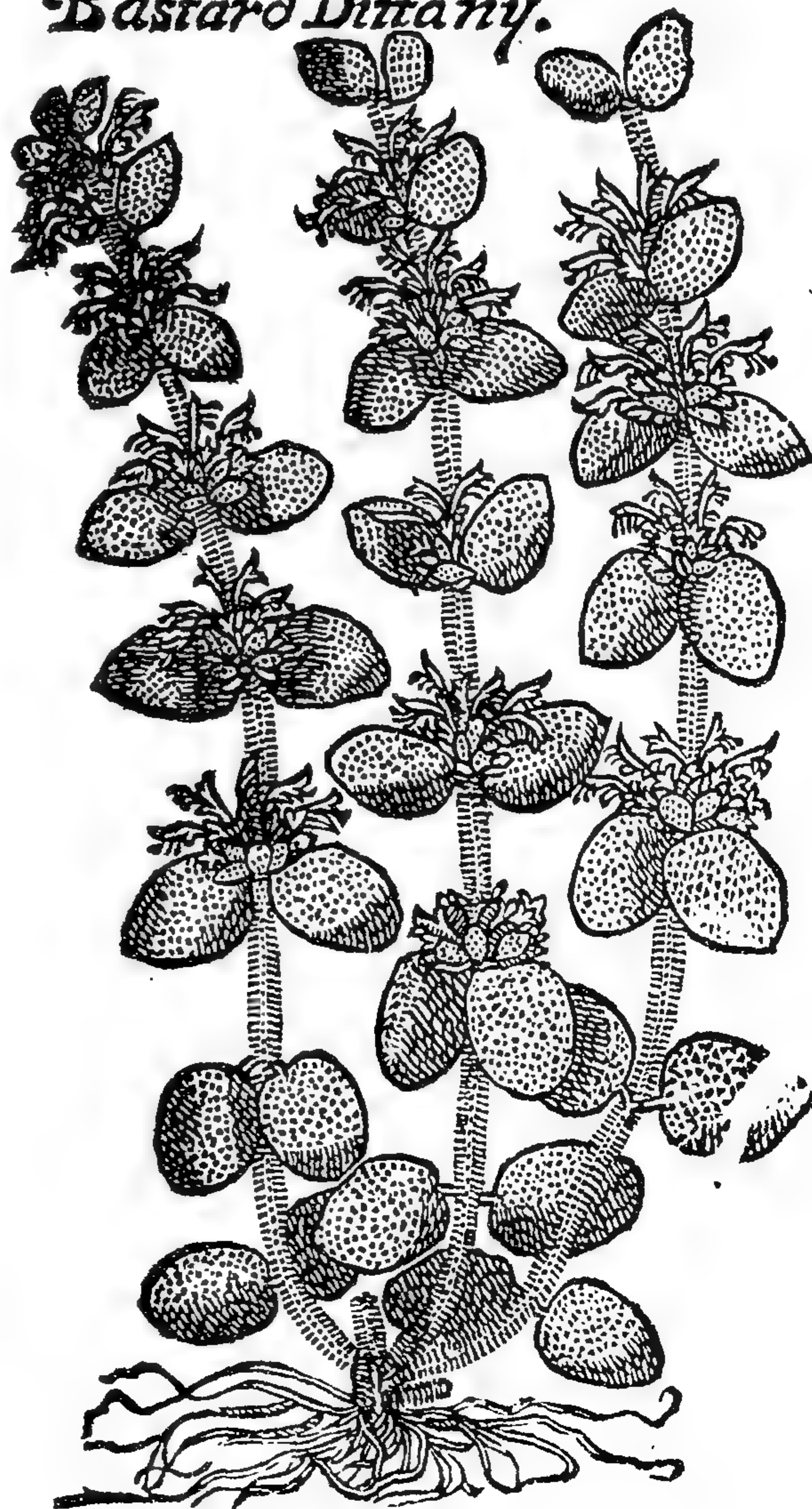
## C H A P. CCXIX.

### Of DITTANY Bastard, Outlandish.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ψευδοδιττανιον*: in Latin, *Pseudodictamnium*, *Pseudodictamus*: in English, *Outlandish Bastard Dittany*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is opposed as the false kind of the *Dittany of Crete*, of which we shall treat (God willing) in the Third Book of this *Herbal*. Of this *Bastard Dittany* there are two principal sorts, viz. 1. *Pseudodictamnium primus*, (which, as *Anguilara* says, is called by the now Greeks, *καλινιδία*) *Bastard Dittany*. 2. *Pseudodictamnium alter* *Theophrasti*, *Dictamnium alterum* *Dioscoridis*, The other *Bastard Dittany*.

### Bastard Dittany.





III. The Descriptions. The first has a pretty long Root, which is blackish, hard and woody, shooting down deep into the Ground, with divers Strings springing from it. From this Root rise up Stalks or Branches, half a yard long sometimes, on which are set such like round and hoary Leaves as the True Dittany of Crete has, but neither so thick in handling, nor so thick set on the Branches, but more dispersed, yet two always together, one against another: from the middle of these Branches, to the tops of them, come forth the Flowers round about the Stalks at the Joints with Leaves, which are gaping, like those of the True Cretian Dittany, as Pennyroyal, Mint, Calumint, and divers the like Herbs have; which Flowers are of a dull purplish color, standing in hoary Husks; after which comes the Seed, which is greater and blacker than that of the True Cretian. This Herb is somewhat hot and sharp, but not by half so much as is the True, or as is the Fraxinella in the former Chapter.

IV. The second has a fibrous Root, which spreads it self, shooting pretty deep in the Earth; from which rise up many square hoary Stalks, more than a foot high, set with two Leaves at a Joint, like unto the former, but something larger and longer: towards the tops whereof, with the Leaves, come forth hoary Husks, like unto those of the Great Assyrian Bawm, but shallower; out of which start gaping Flowers, mixed with white and red. The whole Plant smells very well, and abides all Winter, as the other does; and is encreased (as is also the former) by Slipping.

V. The Places. The first grows in many places of Italy, as near Pisa and Leghorn; the other is a Native of the Island Cerigo; they have been both brought to us, and flourish very well in our Gardens, if the Winter is not too violently sharp and long. The first has been many times raised with us from Seed brought from Italy; but it grows very well also of the Slips, being put into the Ground about the middle of April, and a little defended from the Heat of the Sun for a time, after the setting, and now and then watered in the mean Season.

VI. The Times. The first flowers with us all the latter part of the Summer, but seldom gives any good Seed: but the Seasons of the other have not been observed.

VII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, differ not from those of the True Cretian Dittany; nor much from those of Fraxinella in the last Chapter, to which you are referred.

## C H A P. CCXX.

### of D O C K Common.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Αδπαθον*, *αδ παθω*, quod valet exinanire, vel Ventrem levare, for that it loosens the Belly: in Arabic, *Hamad* and *Hamadb*: in Latin, *Lapathum* and *Rumex*; and in English, *Common Dock*.

II. The Kinds. There are several kinds of this Plant, viz. 1. *Lapathum sylvestre vulgare*, vel *Rumex communis*, Common Dock, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Oxylapathum Dioscoridis*, *Lapathum acutum*, *Promex acutus*, Sharp-pointed Dock, of which in Chap. 221. 3. *Hylrolapathum*, *Rumex aquatilis*, Water Dock, of which in Chap. 222. 4.

*Lapathum Maritimum*, Sea Dock, of which in Chap. 223. To these you may add, 5. *Lapathum Sanguineum*, Blood-wort, of which we have already treated in Chap. 182. aforegoing. 6. *Hippolapathum Sativum*, Patience, or Monks Rhubarb, of which in the following Part of this Work, in its proper place.



III. The Description. The Common Wild Dock has a great long Root, of a blackish brown on the out-



file, and of a yellow color within : from this Root springs up one large, stiff Stalk, and sometimes more, a foot, and sometimes a foot and half high, (according to the Goodness of the Ground) as also a great many long and broad Leaves on long Foot-stalks lying upon the Ground, and some standing almost upright, something round-pointed, having a great Rib in the middle, and full of Veins on each side the Rib, smooth, and not dented round the edges. The Stalk is of a brownish green, set with long narrow Leaves, and somewhat branched towards the top; the Branches abound with Flowers and Seed in a spiked Form : the Flowers are reddish, and the Seed triangular, almost like a Tetrahedron in Geometry, contained in a brownish red Husk, much resembling Chaff or Sawdust.

IV. *The Places.* It grows in Field and Meadows, waste Grounds, Orchards, by Ditch-sides, and Highway-sides, more especially in the moister Grounds, in most parts of England.

V. *The Times.* It flowers in June and July, and the Seed is ripe in the end of August, and sometimes earlier.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is temperate in respect to Heat or Coldness, and dry in the second Degree, more especially the Seed, which is very Astringent. The whole Plant is very Astringent and Absterfive, with a kind of opening Faculty; and is Traumatick or Vulnerary and Hepatick.

VII. *The Specification.* It is peculiar for curing all Fluxes of the Bowels, chiefly the Bloody-flux.

VIII. *The Preparations.* The Root and Seed are mostly in Use, the Leaves only whilst they are young. From this Plant you may have these Preparations, 1. *The liquid Juice of the Root, extracted with White or Red Port Wine.* 2. *A Decoction of the Root.* 3. *A Pouder of the Root or Seed.* 4. *A Vinegar of the Root.* 5. *The distilled Water of Herb and Root.* 6. *A Spirituous Tincture of the Root.* 7. *An Acid Tincture of the Root :* of all which in order.

#### The Virtues.

IX. *The liquid Juice of the Root.* It opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, cleanses and strengthens the Stomach and other Viscera, stops a Diarrhea and Lienteria, and heals the Corrosion of the Guts in a Dysentery, strengthening them admirably; and prevails against the Jaundice after a singular manner. Dose four ounces or more, first at Night going to Bed, and as much in the Morning fasting.

X. *The Decoction of the Root.* It has all the former Virtues, but performs not full out so effectually; it is good against the wambling Pains and Sickness of the Stomach, the Bloody-flux, and Bitings of venomous Creatures; and prevails against the Jaundice, Strangury or Stoppage of Urine, Stone, Gravel, &c.

XI. *The Pouder of the Root or Seed.* It cures Fluxes of the Belly, and stops the over-flowing of the Courses in Women. Strewed upon moist and running Sores or Ulcers, it cleanses, dries and disposes them to a Healing. Given to a dram or dram and half in choice Red Port Wine, it helps a Diabetes.

XII. *The Vinegar of the Root.* It is Alexipharmick, being inwardly taken, and prevails against malignant and pestilential Diseases: outwardly, it is good against Scurff, Morpew, Itch, Mange, Pimples, Pustules, Scabs, and other like Detradations of the Skin, the places affected being bathed therewith two or three times a day.

XIII. *The distilled Water of the Herb and Root.* If it is mixt with the Vinegar just aforegoing, or with Juice of Limons, it is good to clear the Skin of Morpew, Freckles, Lentrils, Sun-burning, Tanning, Yellowness, and other Discolorings of the Skin.

XIV. *The Spirituous Tincture of the Root.* It admirably strengthens the Bowels, and is good against all their various Fluxes, as Diarrhea, Dyfentery, Lientery, and Hepatick Flux: it is singular against fainting and swooning Fits, and Gripings of the Guts, proceeding from cold, sharp and slimy Humors. Dose one spoonful Morning and Night in a Glas of White or Red Port Wine.

XV. *The Acid Tincture of the Root.* It is good against the Yellow Jaundice, being taken in all that the Patient drinks, whether Ale, Beer or Wine. It strengthens and fortifies the Stomach, provokes Appetite, and causes a good Digestion; cuts thick and tough Flegm, and carries off tartarous Matter lodged in the Stomach, Lungs, Reins, Ureters and Bladder; and destroys those Humors which are the Ground and Foundation of the Kings-evil.

## C H A P. CCXXI.

### Of D O C K Sharp-pointed.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *ὀξύανθος*: in Latin, *Oxylapathum*, *Lapathum acutum*, *Rumex acutus*; and in English, *Sharp-pointed Dock*.



*Large red sharp pointed Dock*

II. *The Kinds.* It is threefold, viz. 1. *Oxylapathum majus*, *Lapathum acutum majus*, *Rumex acutus Cordi*, The greater sharp-pointed Dock. 2. *Oxylapathum*, vel *Lapathum acutum minus*, *Rumex acutus minor*, The less or small sharp-pointed Dock. 3. *Oxylapathum*.



*Oxylapathum, vel Lapathum acutum minimum, Rumex acutus minimus*, The smaller or least sharp-pointed Dock.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Greater, has a Root which is great, long, and many times forked, being blackish on the outside, and somewhat reddish and yellow within, abiding many Years, but sometimes perishing by the Extremity of Winter. From this great and long blackish Root spring forth many long, hard and narrowish green Leaves, very sharp-pointed at the ends, much more sharp than in the former sort: from among which Leaves rises up a stiff hard Stalk, two or three feet high, set with the like Leaves, but smaller still up to the top, not much unlike to *Serrel*, but that it is neither so tender nor sour, but rather of a bitterish Taste. This Stalk is branched forth towards the top into several large Branches or Sprigs, bearing small reddish Flowers in long Spikes; after which, in brown reddish, or dun-colored Husks, is contained small triangular Seed.

IV. The second, or Less sharp-pointed Dock, has a Root which is long and slender, parted diversely with small Fibres appendent thereto: which Root is of a yellow color on the inside; and from which rises up a strong, stiff Stalk, about a foot, and sometimes a foot and half high, having Leaves thereon, which are long and narrow, waved in on the edges, as if they were crumpled: this Stalk is branched forth into several other large Branches, almost from the bottom to the top; all which Branches are also beset at due distances, with the like long and narrow Leaves, crumpled in like manner: the Stalks, Branches and flowers, with the Seed following them, are like unto the former, but that they stand not on such long Sprigs or Twigs, but closer together, some at the Joints, or compassing the Stalks, and others at the tops of, a darker color.



V. The third, or Smaller kind, has a Root which is small, and more yellow than the first of this kind

at sect. 3. above; but it differs little therefrom in its Form and Manner of Growing, except in its Greatness, this being much lesser, smaller and lower. The Stalk is not much above half the height of the first, and the Leaves very small, narrow, long and sharp-pointed, not near the quarter part of the Largeness of the first of this Species: the Flower is small, as is the Seed, which is triangular, and contained in the like chaffy Husks.

VI. The Places. They are all found most commonly in moist Meadows, and sometimes in upland Grounds also; at lower ends of Grounds which are moist and plashy, and near or bordering on Water-Courses.

VII. The Times. They rise up in the Spring of the Year; flower in June and July, and their Seed is ripe in August.

VIII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with those of the Common Dock declared in Chap. 220. foregoing, excepting that the Great sharp-pointed Dock is much more efficacious and powerful to all the Intentions there named.

IX. Observation. The Great sharp-pointed Dock is esteemed by almost all Authors, to be a great Aperitive or Opener, and a powerful thing against Scurff, Morpew, Leprosy, Pimples, Pustules, Redness, Tawniness, Tettars, Ringworms, Herpes, and all sorts of Scabbiness happening to the external Parts of the Body; and indeed it is the most excellent of all the kinds of Docks for those Intentions; and therefore the Juice of the Root is commonly put into those Ointments, which are made against Morpew, Leprosy, Herpes, Tettars, Scabbiness, &c. it being a powerful Absterfive, to remove those Defecations of the Skin.

## C H A P. CCXXII.

### of D O C K Water.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, ὕδρα-παθον, ἢ λάπαθον ἕνυστον: in Latin, *Hydrolapathum*, and *Lapathum aquaticum*, *Rumex aquaticus*: in English, *Water Dock*.

II. The Kinds. It is twofold, viz. 1. *Hydrolapathum majus*, *Rumex palustris Tragi*; *Lapathum palustre Tabernmontani*; *Hippolapathum sylvestre Gesneri*, *Matthioli*, *Dodonei*; *Hydrolapathum magnum*, vel *majus aquaticum*, The greater or great Water Dock. 2. *Hydrolapathum minus*, *Rumex aquaticus minor*, *Lapathum aquaticum minus*, The lesser or small Water Dock.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Great Water Dock, has a thick Root, blackish on the outside, but of a dark reddish, or reddish yellow within, which is shorter than the Great sharp-pointed Dock, and fuller of Fibres: from this Root spring up several large Leaves, standing upon pretty long Foot-stalks; which Leaves very much resemble the Common Dock Leaves, but that they are much larger and longer, a little crumpled as to their Substance, but smooth on the edges, and for the most part sharp-pointed. There grows up also one large brownish green Stalk, which is sometimes spotted towards the Root with a few reddish Spots: the Leaves growing upon this Stalk are much like those just now described, but lesser, and growing lesser and lesser as they approach near the top, with some little or lesser Leaves



Leaves springing from the same Joints of the Stalk, where the greater Leaves grow, which lesser Leaves seem to grow in the Bosom, as it were, of the greater Leaves. The top of the Stalk shoots it self forth into several small Sprigs or Twigs; each of which, when in Flower and Seed, are of a spiked Form, and all together with the main top of the Stalk make one great spiked Head of Flowers and Seed; which Flowers and Seed differ nothing in Appearance from those of the *Common Dock*, excepting that they always grow closer together.

Great  
Water  
Dock



Smaller  
Water  
Dock.



IV. *The second, or Lesser Water Dock*, has a Root like the former, but it is smaller, and full of long Fibres or Strings: the first Leaves also are like the first Leaves of the former, but much lesser, long and narrower, being also sharp-pointed. The Stalk is lower, and fuller of Branches, with Flowers and Seed like to the former, and to the rest of the Docks: so that there seems to be little or no other Difference between this and the *Greater*, but in the Magnitude of all the Parts, this being less every ways; but in its Form and Manner of Growing, it is much the same with the other.

V. *The Places.* They both grow in wet and plashy places, and by the edges of standing Waters and Ditch-sides: I have found them growing plentifully in the *Fens* in *Cambridgeshire*, in Ditches, and by Ditch-sides, and in the midst of standing shallow Waters; as also in low midland Grounds, at the lower parts of the Land, bordering upon the fenny parts, where the Earth is moist and watry, and by shallow Rivers-sides.

VI. *The Times.* These also flower in *June* and *July*, and the Seed is ripe in *August*.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of these, are the same with those of the *Common* and *Sharp-pointed Dock*; and therefore to the two former Chapters I refer you: but this you may take notice of, That the Roots and Seed of the *Water Dock* are little inferior to those of the *Sharp-pointed Dock*; and some learned Men which I know, affirm, that they exceed in Efficacy.

VIII. *An Observation.* The Roots of *Water Docks* or *Sharp-pointed Docks*, being boiled in Water till they are soft, and then beaten in a Mortar with Hogs Lard, and so made into an Ointment, is good against Scabs, Itch, Mange, Scurff, Morpew, Leprosy, &c. the Patient being daily anointed with it.

## C H A P. CCXXIII.

### of D O C K Sea.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek*, *Αδανιδον* *ελωδες*, *η θαλασσινη*: in *Latin*, *Lapathum Maritimus*, *Rumex Maritimus*: in *English*, *Sea Dock*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is *singularis sui generis*, and because it is a very strong-scented Plant, Authors are pleased to call it *Lapathum Maritimum fetidum*, Stinking Sea Dock.

III. *The Description.* It has a long Root, which is pretty thick with some Fibres thereat, and goes somewhat deep into the Earth, it being generally very light and sandy Ground in these marshy places. From this Root rises up a Stalk which is reddish, a foot, and sometimes half a yard high or long, which bends several ways. The Leaves grow at the gouty Joints upon long Foot-stalks, which are broad at bottom, long with a breadth, roundish towards the top, and then sharp-pointed; they are of a dark red color, waved about the edges, and winged usually at bottom, with two small pieces like Ears. The Stalk spreads it self into many Branches, with the like, but lesser Leaves on them, and a little dented about the edges. At the top of the Stalk stands a Spike of Flowers, composed of four mossy Leaves apiece; after which follow leaved round Heads, which contain the Seed.



IV. *The Places.* It grows in Salt Marshes, by the sides of Rivers and Brooks which daily flow with Salt Water, and in standing Waters which are sometimes overflowed with Salt Floods, or where the Salt Water flows so high as to reach the Roots thereof. I found it growing in and near the *Marshes* by *Kings-Lynn* in *Norfolk*, and near the *Sea-shore* in many other places.

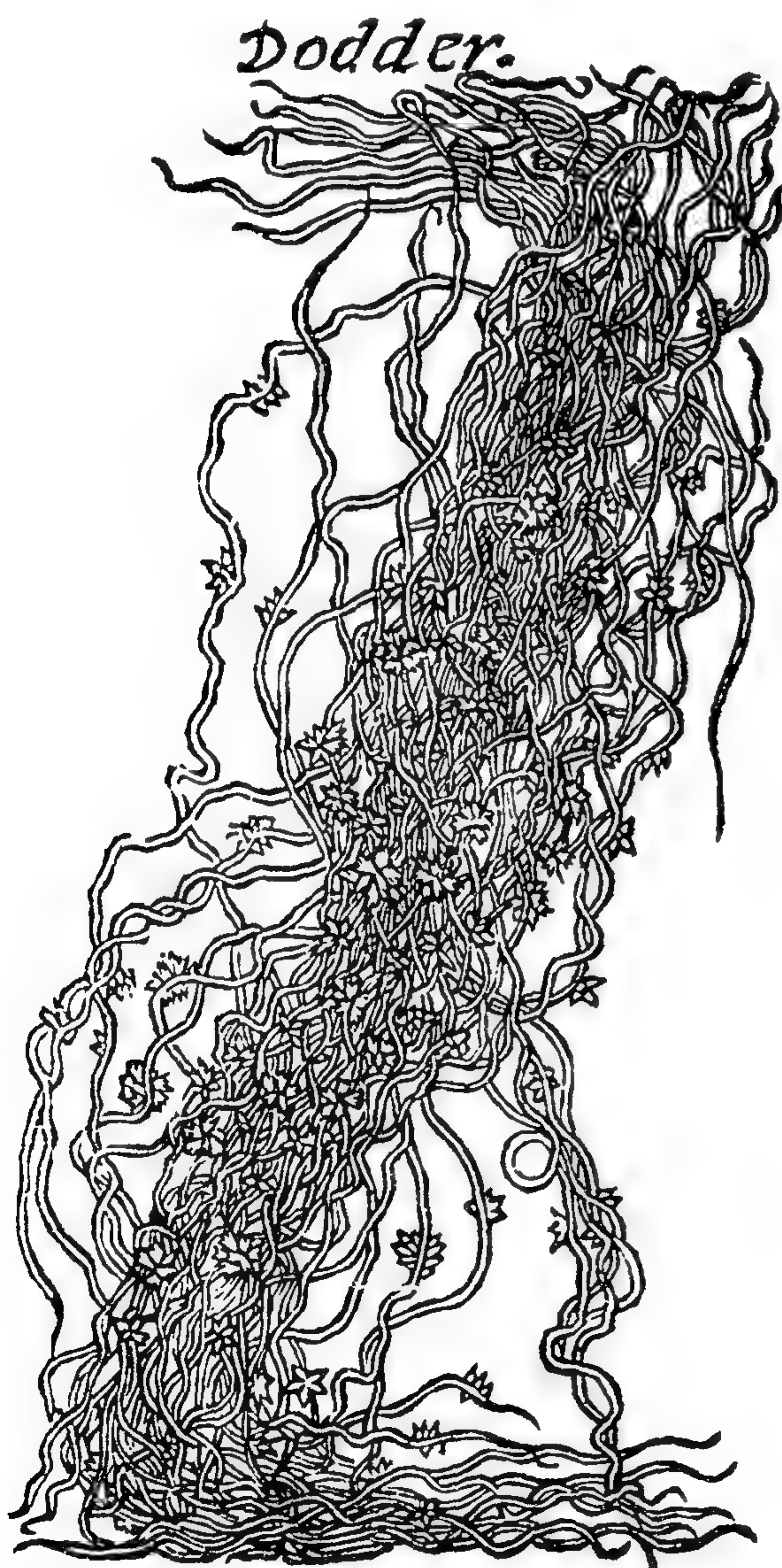
V. *The Times.* It flowers in *June* and *July*, and the Seed is ripe not long after.

VI. *As to its Qualities and Virtues,* Authors have been silent thereon, and I knowing nothing by Experience concerning it, shall forbear any farther Discourse about it.

## C H A P. CCXXIV.

### of D O D D E R.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Arabick*, *Chaf-juth*, and *Cuscuth*: in *Greek*, *Κασούθα*, *χασούθος*: in *Latin*, *Cuscuta*, *Cassuta*, *Cassyta*, *Podagra lini*, *Angina lini*: in *English*, *Dodder*.



II. *The Kinds.* It is a singular Plant of the kind, and yet is various; for being a Climer, it is said by Authors to be as manifold as are the Plants upon which it climbs, and accordingly has gotten as many Surnames; as, *Ἐπιθυμῶν*, *Epithymum*, Dodder of Time: *Ἐπιθιμαλῶν*, *Epithymalus*, Dodder of Spurge: *Ἐπιτίκτων*, *Epiticta*, Dodder of Nettles: *Ἐπερυγνῶν*, *Eperynon*, Dodder of Eryngo: *Ἐπιτάκων*, *Epitacca*, Dodder of Tares: *Ἐπιβίον*, *Epibion* idem: *Ἐπιγενίσων*, *Epigenison*, Dodder of Broom: *Ἐπιδικταμῶν*, *Epidictamus*, Dodder of Dittany: *Ἐπιθυμῶν*, *Epithymon*, Dodder of Savory: *Ἐπιβίον*, *Epibion*, Dodder of Brambles: *Ἐπιβίον*, *Epibion*, Dodder of Wax: *Ἐπιβίον*, *Epibion*, Dodder of Rosema-

ry, or Herb Frankincense: *Ἐπιμαρῶν*, *Epimarum*, Dodder of Herb Masticha: *Ἐπικάνναβις*, *Epicanabis*, Dodder of Hemp: *Ἐπιβρυον*, *Epibryon*, Dodder of Hops: *Ἐπιπόλιον*, *Epipolium*, Dodder of Polimountain: *Ἐπιστάβη*, *Epistabe*, Dodder of Knapweed: *Ἐπιμάρακον*, *Epamaracum*, Dodder of Marjoram: *Ἐπιφύθιον*, *Epaphythion*, Dodder of Wormwood: *Ἐπιχάμαιδρυς*, *Epichamaedrys*, Dodder of Germander: *Ἐπιχάμακτη*, *Epichamaacte*, Dodder of Dwarf Elder: *Ἐπιωσπῶν*, *Epibysopos*, Dodder of Hyssop, &c. And yet, notwithstanding all this Variety of Names, it is but one Plant or Herb, and has but one Description.

III. *The Description.* This Herb taking Root in the Ground from Seed, shoots forth Threads or Strings grosser or finer, as the Property of the Climate, Quality of the Earth, and Nature of the Plant on which it grows will admit, creeping and spreading on that Plant on which it fastneth, or upon which it climbs, be it high or low, clasping about the very Grass, if it meets with nothing else. These Strings are many, but have no Leaves at all, and wind and interlace themselves so thick many times upon a small Plant, that it deprives it (as it were) of the Heat of the Sun, and seemingly choaks it: after these Strings are risen up to that height and strength, that they may draw Nourishment from the Plant upon which they climb, you shall scarcely see any Appearance of the Rise of those Strings from the Earth, they being broken off by some Accident, or withred by the Heat of the Sun, or otherwise decayed; (from which Appearance I believe it was, that *Matthiolus* and some others did think it to grow without Root, and not first to spring out of the Earth, as it certainly does, and as they who may be pleased to sow the Seed in a Pot by it self, may observe, and see its springing up; but if they meet with no Herb or Plant, upon which they may twine themselves and clamber, they soon perish and die away;) and from this Reason I suppose it is, that several have thought them to grow as *Moss* upon Trees, or like *Misselto*: but after they have lost their Ground-roots, I am apt to think, that the whole Plant draws its Nourishment (like as *Ivy*) from those Plants on which it grows. Upon these Strings or Threads, which are sometimes white and sometimes red, according to the Herb or Plant on which they grow, are found Clusters or small Heads of Husks, out of which proceed whitish Flowers, which being past away, do afterwards give small pale-colored Seed, somewhat flat, and twice as large as *Poppy* Seed.

IV. *Observation 1.* *Pliny lib. 26. cap. 8.* makes two sorts of *Epithymum*, making the one to be the Flowers of Time, as *Dioscorides* before him did, both green and white: the other to be red Threads or Strings growing without Root. This Duplicity of kinds *Matthiolus* has confuted, and now most of our modern Authors acknowledge but one kind, tho' it may have sometimes white and sometimes red Strings, as *Tragus* first observed, growing on several Herbs, according to which, they are found to be of those two differing Colors.

V. *Observat. 2.* By this also it may appear, that neither Time nor Savory, nor any other Herb, do naturally, of their particular Seed, bring forth these Strings, but that they spring from their own Seed, either shed or scattered of themselves upon the Ground, or coming among the Seeds of other Herbs which are sown. As also they creep upon various Plants, so in the hotter Countries they close upon hot Herbs, as on *Thyme*, *Savory*, *Hyssop*, *Marjoram*, *Rosemary*, &c. but in England they, for the most part, climb upon colder Plants, as on *Fearn*, *Flax*, *Linen*.



*Hemp, Nettles, Dwarf-Elder, Tares*, on which last it grows abundantly in some places, where it destroys the *Pulse*, or at least makes it much worse; and is called by the Country People, *Hell-weed*, because they know not how to destroy it.

VI. *The Places.* *Dodder* grows in *Asia minor*, or *Natolia*, *Greece*, the *Morea*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and other hot Countries; as also plentifully in *England*: I found it growing Wild in several places in *Cambridgeshire*, upon *Dwarf-Elder*, and upon *Nettles*, as also in several *Hemp-lands* upon *Hemp*. It grows on several Plants upon *Hamstead-beath*, as upon *Fern*, &c. as also on several places on *Black-beath* in *Kent*, where *Parkinson* says he found it. It grows plentifully upon *Nettles* in *Somersetshire*, and in several other parts of this Kingdom; as also upon *Tares* near *London*.

VII. *The Times.* It flourishes in *July* and *August*, in which times, and also after, it bears its flower and seed.

VIII. *The Qualities.* It is said to be hot and dry in the second Degree: but I am of the Opinion, that that *Dodder* which grows on the hot Plants, as *Thyme*, *Marjoram*, *Savory*, *Hyssop*, is hot in the second Degree; but that which grows on the colder and more temperate Plants, as *Fern*, *Nettles*, *Flax*, *Hemp*, &c. does not exceed the first Degree of Heat: for the Qualities and Properties of this Herb much follows those of the Plants upon which it grows, and so in some measure changes and alters accordingly; so that enquiring into the Nature of the Plant upon which it is nourished, you may in part see into what Nature and Properties it may be altered. It is Absterfive, with an astringent or binding Quality, especially that which grows upon the *Bramble*, and other astringent Plants; since it is manifest, that it receives a certain Quality from its Parents, by whose Juices it is nourished. That which grows upon hotter Herbs, as *Thyme* and *Savory*, becomes hotter and drier, and of thinner parts. That which grows upon *Broom* is Diuretick, and provokes Urine more forcibly, and withal makes the Belly more soluble. That which grows upon *Flax* is less drying. It is dedicated to the Liver and Spleen, as also the other Bowels; and has a gentle sort of Cathartick or Purging Faculty with it.

IX. *The Specification.* It is a peculiar thing against Oppressions of the Spleen, and Hypochondriack Melancholy.

X. *The Preparations.* This Herb admits not of many Preparations; the chief are, 1. *A Juice or Essence.* 2. *An Infusion or Decoction.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XI. *The liquid Juice or Essence.* It opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and purges Melancholy and adust Choler from the Spleen and Hypochonders, and indeed from the whole Body. Dose three ounces, sweetned with an ounce of choice Manna dissolved in it. It evacuates Flegm from the Head and Viscera, discharges the Lungs, and is profitable against a Vertigo, Megrim, and other inveterate Pains of the Head. It prevails against fainting and swooning Fits, by carrying off the sharp and acrid Humors which cause them. It is powerful against Madness and Agues, especially Quartanes, tho' they have been of a long continuance. And as it is good against Hypochondriack Melancholy, so also it prevails against those Diseases which that Humor breeds, as Scirrhus, Cancer, Hardness of the Spleen, Pain and Windiness of the Spleen, Stoppage of the Reins, Itch, Scabs, Leprosy, Elephantiasis, malignant and cancerous Ulcers, as also the Malignity of the French-Pox. It very much cleanses

the Blood from Melancholy and adust Humors, is good against the Yellow Jaundice, and tho' it has a purging Property, yet it also strengthens both Liver and Spleen, and cures Agues in Children, if a little Worm-feed be added to it. It provokes Urine singularly, and cleanses the Urinary Passages from Sand, Gravel and tartarous Matter; especially if a little of the Pouder of *Aniseed* and Tincture of *Wormwood* be added, and then it also eases Gripings in the Bowels, and brings down the Terms in Women. Mix the Dose with a Glass of White Port Wine, and so let it be drunk.

XII. *The Infusion or Decoction in White Wine.* If you make a Decoction thereof, the Boiling must not be much, for it will not endure long boiling, because it will loose it self. It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice or Essence aforegoing, and may be taken to half a pint, more or less, at a time, sweetned by dissolving an ounce of pure Manna in the same. It is said to cure Children of Agues, being given from two to four ounces, as aforesaid.

XIII. *Nota.* *Dodder of Flax* is peculiar for opening Obstructions of Liver, Spleen and Gall. *Dodder upon Brambles* is good against the Yellow Jaundice, and strengthens the Viscera much. *Dodder of Nettles* provokes Urine, opens Obstructions of the Womb, and loosens the Belly. *Dodder of Thyme* comforts and warms a cold Stomach, and rectifies the Discrasy of the Blood and Humors, prevailing against old Head-achs, the Megrim, Vertigo, Madness, Epilepsy, purging downwards black Choler and Melancholy. *Dodder of Broom* is good to open Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, provoke Urine, expel Sand, Gravel and tartarous Matter, and give ease in the Strangury, expelling watry and hydropick Humors. In a word, *Dodder of all other Plants*, in like manner, partakes of the Nature, Qualities and Properties of them on which they grow, (as aforesaid) whether they be hot or cold, cathartick or astringent; and it is thought to work more effectually for those Diseases, whereunto the Herb it self is applied. But *Epithymum*, or *Dodder of Thyme*, is that which, by all Physicians, is accounted the most principal and most powerful *Dodder*; and doubtless is the best of them all, to be used to cold and moist Habits and Constitutions of Body.

## C H A P. CCXXV.

### of DOGS--BANE.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek*, *Ἀποκύνιον*, & *Κυνόμαρον*, (*quia Canis interficit*;) the *Greeks* also call it *μερίπλοκα*, from its climbing Property: in *Latin*, *Apocynum*, and *Periploca*: in *English*, *Dogs-bane*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are five kinds hereof, viz. three *European* kinds, and two *American*. The *European* kinds are, 1. *Apocynum angustifolium sive repens*, Climbing Dogs-bane, or Narrow-leav'd Dogs-bane. 2. *Apocynum latifolium non repens*, Broad-bane. 3. *Apocynum folio angusto Salicis*, Willow-leav'd Dogs-bane. The *American* kinds are, 4. *Apocynum rectum minus angustifolium Americanum*, The lesser upright narrow-leav'd American Dogs-bane. 5. *Apocynum rectum majus latifolium Americanum*, The greater upright broad-leav'd American Dogs-bane, or *Virginian Silk*.





*Creeping Dogsbane*

*Dogsbane Broad leaved*



III. The Descriptions. The first, or Narrow-leav'd climbing Dogsbane, has a Root which spreads in the Ground like the other, and sometimes sends forth Suckers, whereby it is increased. This Root sends forth several woody Branches, but tough and flexible, of a dark greyish green color, and sometimes brownish, especially near the Ground, where it bears no Leaves after it is grown to any bigness or height, which wind themselves from the Sun-ward, to a ve-

ry great height, twenty foot high, or more sometimes, if any thing grows or stands by it, upon which it may climb higher, or else falling down again with its top, on which stand at several good distances (saving at the tops, where they stand thicker set together) two Leaves longer and narrower than the next described, and pointed at the ends, somewhat thick, and of a deep green color, almost shining. The Flowers stand in the same manner as those in the next, and consist of five thick Leaves, each of them pointed, and bending something backwards, seeming to have two Leaves apiece, one lying upon another, like unto those of *Barren-wort*, the undermost being greener and larger than the upper Leaves which lye upon them, and are not so large to cover them wholly, but leave the green brims or edges of the lower Leaves to be seen round about them; which upper Leaves are of a dark purple or reddish color, and cleave so fast to the lower, that it is very hard to separate them. In the middle of each Flower stands a green Pointel, encompassed with five dark yellow Chives, each of them twining inwards. After the Flowers are fallen, small long Cods appear, (in warm Countries, but scarcely in *England*) two always joined together, but more strictly than in the following Plant, bending something more outward in the middle, and meeting together almost at the points, in which lyes flat Seed, wrapped in a kind of filken Down. This Plant looses its Leaves, but not its Stalks, in the Winter, fresh coming forth again in the Spring.

IV. The second, or Broad-leav'd upright Dogsbane, has a Root which grows down into the Ground, spreading it self out into several Branches, with divers small Fibres adjoining: from this Root springs up a woody Stem, of the thickness of ones Finger, covered with a greyish Bark; from whence arise several woody, but flexible greenish Branches, easy to twist or wind about any thing, being very tough and hard to break, standing for the most part upright, and seldom trailing, or laying hold of any thing which may grow near it; having two broad dark green Leaves, but sharp-pointed, and not round, set at every Joint all along, but not very near one unto another, full of Veins, and something softer than Ivy-Leaves, but thick withal; whose Stalks and Branches being broken, yield a pale yellow-colored Milk or Juice. But as *Dioscorides* and other Authors say, of a much deeper yellow; which thing may be admitted when it grows in warmer Climates than is this of ours. The Flowers spring forth at the Joints with the Leaves, growing upon Foot-stalks not very long; and at the tops three or four or more of them stand, sometimes together, which consist of five small pointed Leaves, of a whitish color, yet larger than those of *Asclepias* or *Swallow-wort*. After which (in the hotter Climates, but scarcely in ours) grow long, crooked and pointed Cods, something more hard and woody than those of *Swallow-wort*, altho' nothing so much as those of the *Oleander* or *Rose Bay-tree*, two most usually standing together upon one Stalk, but severed at the setting to the Stalk, and are full of a filken white Down, (like the former) in which lye dispersed many flue, blackish brown Seeds. This Plant looses not its Branches in the Winter, but only its Leaves, they every Spring shooting forth new again.

V. The third, or Willow-leav'd Dogsbane, has a Root much like the first, from which spring woody Stems or Branches, having set at every Joint of the climbing Twigs two narrow Leaves apiece, like to the first kind, but they are not so thick, rather a little thinner, and much narrower than they, almost resembling the Form of a Willow Leaf. The Flowers are like the first, and blow as late, being very much



much like to the former *Narrow-leav'd* in its Form and Manner of Growing; and it looses its Leaves in the Winter, as that other does, renewing them again in the Spring.

VI. *The fourth, or Lesser upright narrow-leav'd American Dogs-bane, has a thick Root, but it creeps not in the Ground, as the Greater American doth; but from many long Fibres, it shoots forth a round brown Stalk, about half a yard high, having at each joint a pair of long narrow Leaves, and such a large Tuft of Flowers at the top, as the following has, but of a deeper purple color, which have a certain Clamminess on them, which will detain Flies or other light things which happen to fall thereon. After which come long and strait Cods, (not crooked, like the Greater sort following) with flat brown Seed therein, lying in a white kind of Down, like unto *Asclepias* or *Swallow-wort*. This being broken, yields a milky Sap or Juice, like the other.*

VII. *The fifth, or Greater upright broad-leav'd American Dogs-bane, called Virginia Silk, has a Root which is long and white, of the thickness of a Man's Thumb, running under Ground very far, and shooting up again in divers places, the Heads being set full of small white Knobs or Knots, sending forth many Branches, if it stands any long time in a place. From this Root rises up one Stalk, and sometimes more, being strong and round, and three or four feet high, on which are set, at the several Joints thereof, two fair, long and broad Leaves, round-pointed, with many Veins therein, growing close to the Stem, without any Foot-stalk. At the tops of the Stalks, and sometimes at the Joints with the Leaves, grows forth a great Bush of Flowers, out of a thin Skin, to the number of twenty, and sometimes of thirty or forty, every one with a long Foot-stalk, hanging down their Heads for the most part, especially those which are outwardmost, every one standing within a Husk of green Leaves, turned to the Stalk-ward, like to the *Lyfimachia* or *Loostrife* Flower of *Virginia*, and each of them consisting of five small Leaves apiece, of a pale purplish color on the upper side, and of a pale yellowish purple underneath; both sides of each Leaf being as it were folded together, making them seem hollow and pointed, with a few short Chives in the middle. After the Flowers are past, long and crooked Cods, pointed, and standing upright, succeed, in which are contained flat brownish Seed, dispersedly lying within a great deal of fine, soft and whitish brown Silk, very like unto the Cods, Seed and Silk of *Asclepias* or *Swallow-wort*, but that the Cods are greater, and more crooked, and harder also in the outward Shell. The whole Plant, as well Leaves as Stalks, being broken, will yield a pale kind of Milk or Juice.*

VIII. *The Places.* The first and third grow in *Italy*, *Apulia* and *Calabria* in the Kingdom of *Naples*. The second grows in *Syria* and the *Eastern* Countries, as also in *Italy*, as *Matthiolus* reports; but with us they grow in *Gardens*. The two last came from our *English* Plantations in *America*. The last, *Parkinson* says, came to him from *Virginia*, where it grows abundantly; he raised it from the Seed which he had from thence.

IX. *The Times.* The three first flower late in the Year, if they flower at all with us, viz. about the end of *August*, and to the middle of *September*. The two latter flower in *July* and *August*; and their Seed is ripe in *August* and *September* following.

X. *The Qualities.* These Plants are hot and dry in the fourth Degree, *δυσήγητοι*, Venefick or Poysonous; they are so great Poysons, as to kill Dogs, the which they will do, if the Herb is mixed with their Bread, Broth or Meat, and so given them;

and therefore they are not to be given to Mankind. The three first are said to exceed in Malignity both *Woolfs-bane* and *Oleander* or *Rose-Bay*: but as most Poysons have their Antidotes, as that of *There is Anthora*, that of *Pardalichenes* is *Herba Paris*; so the Antidote to this *Apocynum* is *Asclepias* or *Swallow-wort*. Some may object it as a Fault to me, that I have put into my *Herbal* such poysonous Plants as this is; but to such I answer, That the more poysonous they are, the more necessary to be known, that People may take notice of them, and beware of using them; yet these Poysons are not without their Virtues also; for tho' they are not fit to be given inwardly, yet sometimes they may be applied outwardly to advantage. As to the afore-going Plants, all Authors have concluded the first three under the Character of being Deleterious or Deadly: as for the other two, nothing is yet known of them by Experience; yet by their milky Juice, which is burning, fiery and exulcerating, they may almost be concluded in the same Classis; for which Reason I should desire every one to be cautious in their Use.

XI. *The milky Juice of any of the three first Plants*, is very hot and burning, and being outwardly applied, it is good against Tettars, Ringworms, Scurff, Morpew, Leprosy; and to fetch Hair off from Hides, if they be steeped in it. Even in the outward Application it is to be used with Caution.

XII. *A Cataplasm made of the Leaves of either of the American kinds*, by being beaten either crude or boiled in Water, and so applied, it is said to be good for Tumors and Pains proceeding from a cold Cause.

XIII. *Gerard* says, that the Cods of the last, or *Greater upright broad-leav'd American Plant*, are stuffed full with a most pure Silk, of a shining white color: The Cods (says he) are not only full of Silk, but every Nerve or Sinew, wherewith the Leaves are ribbed, are likewise most pure Silk; as also are the Peelings or Bark of the Stems or Branches, like as is the Peeling or Bark of *Flax* or *Hemp*, Cordage for making Linnen. But the *Indians* have not the Understanding in them to make use of it, so as to cover their Nakedness, notwithstanding (says he) the Earth is covered over with this Silk. This they daily tread under their Feet, which would be sufficient to Cloath many Kingdoms, if it was carefully Cherished and Manured.

XIV. This last Plant *Parkinson* tells us he raised up in *England*, from Seed which was sent to him from *Virginia*; but he says there is another Plant growing in *Virginia*, called *Silk-Grass*, which is very much differing from this.

## C H A P. CCXXVI.

### of DOGS--STONES.

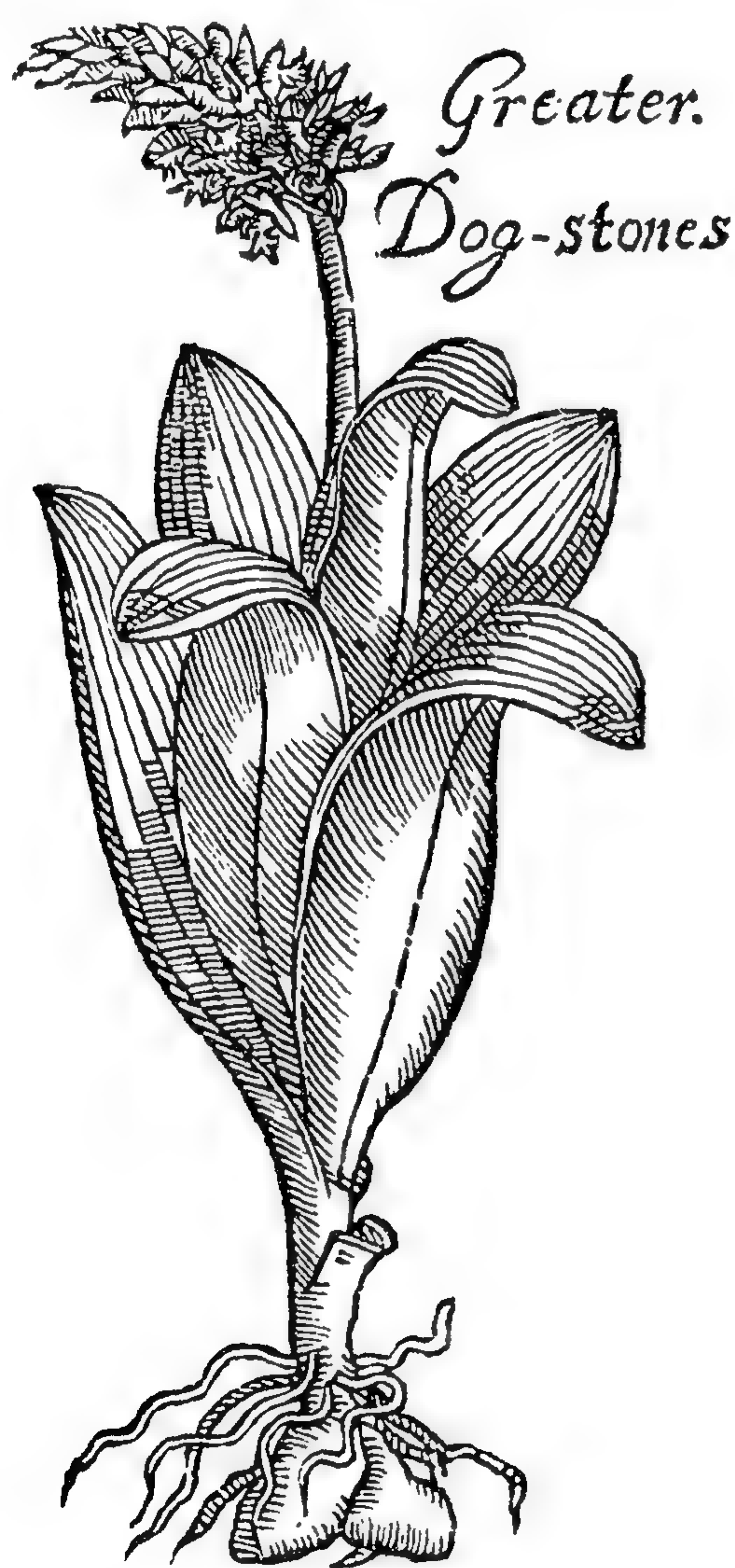
I. **T**HE Names. This Plant is called in *Greek*, *Κυνόδενος*: in *Arabic*, *Chis alkes*, and *Chis alchels*: in *Latin*, *Cynosechis*, and *Testiculus vel Testiculi Canis*: in *English*, *Dogs-stones*.

II. *The Kinds.* This Plant is of the kinds of *Orchis*; now, how manifold the chief and principal Species or Kinds of *Orchis* are, we think necessary to declare here, that things may be set in a true and clear Light. *Orchides* then are divided into nine principal kinds, viz. into, 1. *Greater Dogs-stones*.



stones, of which only in this present Chapter. 2. *Orchis morie*, Fools-stones. 3. *Orchis Serapias*, vel *Testiculus Vulpinus*, Fox-stones. 4. *Tragorchis*, Goats-stones. 5. *Orchis odoratus*, *Testiculus odoratus*, Sweet Cullions, which see in Chap. 184. aforegoing. 6. *Orchis abortiva*, vel *Nidus avis*, Stones misshapen, or Birds-nest, which see in Chap. 73. of this Book. 7. *Orchis palmata*, Handled Orchis. 8. *Orchis palustris*, Fenny-stones. 9. *Orchis Macaria*, Fly Orchis; of all which (not yet treated of) we shall speak hereafter in their proper places.

III. *Dogs-stones* (the subject Matter of this Chapter) are accounted by Authors to be about fourteen or fifteen several kinds, but we shall only treat of those which are found to grow in *England*, which are these following, viz. 1. *Cynorchis major latifolia*, The greater broad-leav'd Dogs-stones. 2. *Cynorchis major purpurea latifolia*, The greater broad-leav'd purple Dogs-stones. 3. *Cynorchis major spica compacta*, Marsh Dogs-stones, or The greater pale purple-flowered Dogs-stones. 4. *Cynorchis latifolia minor*, The smaller pale purple Dogs-stones. 5. *Cynorchis maculata*, Spotted Dogs-stones. 6. *Cynorchis militaris*, sive *Strateumatica major*, The greater Soldiers Dogs-stones. 7. *Cynorchis militaris minor*, The lesser Soldiers Dogs-stones. 8. *Cynorchis militaris minima*, sive *Pannonica*, The least or Hungarian Soldiers Dogs-stones.



IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Great broad-leav'd Dogs-stones, has a Root which is composed of two round white Bulbs, set together, like the two Stones of a Dog, with long Fibres at the Heads of them, one somewhat higher sometimes than another; and always one of them, which is the higher, is firm, full and hard, the other lank, wrinkled and soft, which wasteth away to nothing, leaving the firm Root, which so abides all the Winter, and in the Spring another is engendred, and encreases from the side of the old one, and then that begins to grow lank, whilst the other new one encreases. This Root sends forth five or six broad Leaves near the Ground; from among which rises up a round green Stalk, half a yard high, bare or without Leaves, or but one or two smaller standing below, at the top of which stands

a spiked Head of purplish Flowers, set thick and close together, made like unto open Hoods, from the middle whereof hangs down a small Body, as it were, of a Dog, or other such Creature, being of a pale purple color it self, spotted with deeper purple Spots, and Lines; after which come somewhat long and round small Husks, containing therein rather small Dust than Seed, it is so small.

V. The second, or Greater broad-leav'd purple Dogs-stones, has a Root like the former; but this sort has Leaves something narrower than the other; the Stalk is nearly of the same height, and the spiked Head of Flowers is neither so long nor so thick; and the Flowers are of a whitish purple color, marked with some purple Spots and Lines more inward, formed like open Hoods, and small Bodies hanging forth, like the former; the Seed being also like the same.

VI. The third, or Marsh Dogs-stones, has a Root like the first also; and the Leaves of this are somewhat narrower than in the last; and the Stalk also is somewhat lower, with Leaves upon it, which are sometimes spotted; and the spiked Head short and close; with the like Flowers for Form, but somewhat less, thick set together, which are of a whitish purple color, and spotted.

VII. The fourth, or Smaller pale purple Dogs-stones, (which Gerard calls White Dogs-stones) has Roots altogether like the first aforegoing, from which springs up a Stalk almost a foot high, set with five or six Leaves, clasping or embracing the same round about: and the first Leaves rising up, are likewise smooth, long, broad Leaves, but lesser and narrower than those of the first kind. The spiky Head of Flowers is short, thick, bushy, compact of many small whitish purple-colored Flowers, and spotted on the inside with many small purple Spots, and little Lines or Streaks. The small Flowers are like an open Hood or Helmet, having hanging out of every one, as it were, the Body of a little Man, without a Head, with Arms stretched forth, and Thighs straddling abroad, after the same manner almost that the Children are wont to be pictured, hanging out of Saturn's Mouth.

VIII. The fifth, or Spotted Dogs-stones, have Roots like the others, but lesser; from whence come forth narrow Leaves, ribbed in some sort like unto the Leaves of Narrow Plantane or Ribwort, dashed with many black Streaks and Spots. The Stalk is a foot and half or more high; at the top of which does grow a Tuft or Ear of Violet-colored Flowers, mixt with a dark purple, but in the Hollowness thereof whitish, not of the same Form or Shape which the others are of, but lesser, and as it were resembling something the Flowers of Larks-Spur.

IX. The sixth, or Greater Soldiers Dogs-stones, has round bulbous Roots, great and thick; from the Heads of which Bulbs many Fibres or Threads spring forth. This Root sends forth several large Leaves below, and some lesser on the Stalk, which seem to enclose it. The Stalk is smooth, green, and about half a yard high. The spiked Head of Flowers stands somewhat loose, the Flowers being a little separated one from another: each Flower is also like unto a Man, whose Body has its Arms and Legs cut off, and a Hood set thereon; or a Leg-less Soldier with his Helmet on, the Hood or Helmet being white, and the Body spotted with purple Spots.

X. The seventh, or Lesser Soldiers Dogs-stone has Roots, Leaves, Stalks and Spike of Flowers altogether like the last, but that they are all of them every ways less, and the Flowers somewhat whiter.

XI. The eighth, or Least Hungarian Soldier Dogs-stones, has Roots like the others, but small



much; from whence five or six little Leaves spring forth; the Stalk is about six or seven inches high, set about with somewhat lesser Leaves. The Tuft of Flowers at the top of the Stalk are of a purple color, small, with a white Lip, divided into four Partitions, hanging down, which is also spotted lightly with purple. It has a little Spur hanging down on the hinder part of each Flower. The Seed is small, and contained in such twined Heads as in other Plants of this kind.

XII. *The Places.* These all grow in many places of this Kingdom, in moist and fertile Meadows. The *Marsh Dogs-stones* grow for the most part in moist and waterish Woods, as also in Marsh Ground. The last grows in *Austria, Germany, Hungary*, and in many places of *England*.

XIII. *The Times.* They flower from the beginning of *May* till the end of *June*; but, says *Gerard*, to the end of *August*.

XIV. *The Qualities.* *Dogs-stones* are temperate in respect to Heat and Coldness, and the full *Testicle* moist in the second Degree. The wrinkled or soft one temperate in respect to Dryness or Moisture. The full *Testicle* seems to be Digestive, Diuretick, Hysterick, Chylifick and Spermatogenetick. The soft or withred Stone is opposite to all the foregoing Qualities, and rarely used Physically. All the sorts or kinds of *Testiculi* provoke or stir up Lust, and they are promiscuously used for that Purpose; but the best and most effectual for that Purpose, are the *Testiculi Canini*, of which the harder and fuller Bulb is to be chosen, as aforesaid. The fuller Root is not always the greater, but oftentimes the lesser, especially if they are gathered before the Plant has shed its Flower, or when the Stalk first comes up; nor does it attain to be the greatest till the Seed comes to be perfectly ripe. For since that every other Year, by course, one Bulb or Stone grows full, the other empty, and so perishes; it cannot be, that the harder and fuller of Juice should be always the greater; for at such time as the Leaves come forth, the harder and fuller Stone begins to encrease, and as that encreases, so the other, by little and little, decreases and withers away, till the Seed is ripe, at what time the whole Plant above Ground does forthwith decay and perish, and that which all this while has been encreasing, remains still fresh and full till the next Year.

XV. *The Specification.* They are peculiar for the curing Impotency in Men.

XVI. *The Preparations.* You may have, 1. The Essence. 2. The Sanguis or Blood.

## The Virtues.

XVII. *The Essence.* Being taken daily, first in the Morning fasting, and last at Night going to Bed, from one spoonful to three in a Glass of generous Wine, it not only provokes Lust, but it also takes away the Imbecility or Impotency of the Instruments of Generation, but also promotes a plentiful Generation of Seed.

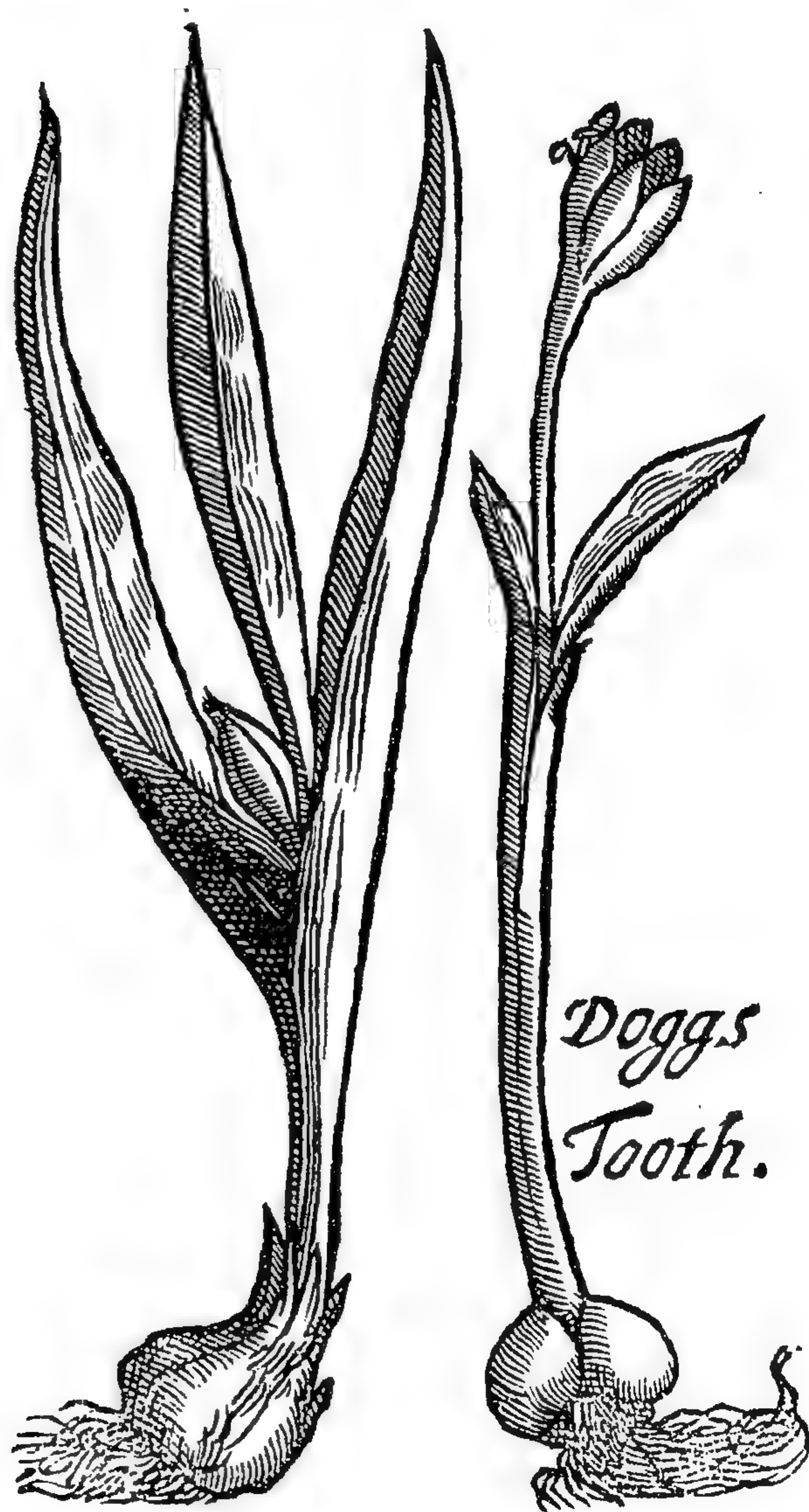
XVIII. *The Sanguis or Blood.* It has all the Virtues of the Essence, but is indeed more powerful to all the mentioned Intentions; it comforts and warms the Instruments of Generation, making a liberal encrease of Animal Spirits, stirring up the Person who takes it to an ardent desire of Coition. The Dose is one or two spoonfuls in a Glass of *Madera* or other generous Wine, Morning and Night.

C H A P. CCXXVII.

## Of DOGS--TOOTH.

I. *THE Names.* Some will have this to be *Σαρύριον ερυθρίον*, *Dioscoridis*, i. e. *Satyrion habens Radicis Corticem rubrum*, *Diosc. lib. 3. cap. 144.* but this other Authors will not allow of: *Parkinson* will have that (and I believe rightly enough) to be our *Tulip*. Others will have this Plant to be a kind of *Violet*, (tho' there is nothing like a *Violet* in it) and so call it *Dogs-tooth Violet*. It is called it *Latin*, *Dens caninus*, *Dentali Clusii* & *Lobelii*, *Hermodactylus Gesneri*, *Pseudohermodactylus Matthioli*; and in *English*, *Dogs-tooth*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is doubtless one of the kinds of *Satyrion*, tho' not the true *Satyrion Dioscoridis*, and our Moderns have given to it the Name of *Dens caninus*. It is threefold, viz. 1. *Dens caninus flore albo*, *Dogs-tooth* with a white Flower. 2. *Dens caninus flore purpurascens*, *Dogs-tooth* with a purple Flower. 3. *Dens caninus flore rubro*, *Dogs-tooth* with a red Flower.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or White-flowered, has a white bulbed Root, long and small, yet commonly larger than either of the two following, bigger below than above, with a small piece adjoining to the bottom of it. From this Root, in the beginning of the Spring, after the Winter-Frosts are past, two Leaves for the most part (very rarely three) rise up, when it will flower, (otherwise but one) which are closed together when they first come up out of the Ground, and enclose the Flower between them. The Leaves, when they are opened, do lay themselves flat on the Ground, or not much above it, one opposite unto the other, with the Stalk, and the Flower upon it, standing between them; which Leaves are of a whitish green color, long and narrow, yet broader in the middle than at both ends, growing less



leaves by degrees each way, spotted and striped all over the Leaves with white Lines and Spots. The Stalk rises up seven or eight inches high, bearing at its top one Flower, and no more. This Flower hangs down its Head, and is larger than any of the following kinds, and consists of six white, long and narrow Petals, turning themselves up again after it has felt the Warmth of the Sun, that they do almost touch the Stalk again, very like to the Flowers of *Cyclamen* or *Sowbread*: it has in the middle of the Flower six white Chives, tipped with dark purple Pendants, and a white three-forked Stile in the midst of them. The Flower has no Smell at all, but is commendable chiefly for its Beauty and Form. After the Flower is past, there comes in its place a round Head, seeming three-square, containing therein small yellow Seed.

IV. The second, with a purple Flower, has a white balked Root, like unto the former, but lesser, as aforehinted: the Leaf hereof is not so long as that, but broad and short, spotted with darker Lines and Spots. The Flower is like the other, but smaller, and of a delayed purple color, very pale sometimes, and sometimes a little deeper, turning it self as the other, with a Circle round about the middle. The Chives hereof are not white, but declining to purple: in all other Respects it is like to the aforegoing.

V. The third, with a red Flower, has a like white balked Root. The Form and Largeness of the Leaf is like to the last described, so also the Form and Bigness of the Flower: but in this the chief Difference consists, that the Leaves of this are of a yellowish, mealy, green color, spotted and streaked with redder Spots and stripes, and the Flower of a deeper reddish purple color; and the Chives also more purple than the last; but in all other things they are very like one another.

VI. The Places. All the sorts of *Dens caninus* grow in Foreign Countries, as in *Italy* on the *Euganean Hills*, on the *Apenine*, also about *Gratz* the chief City of *Stiria*, and about *Bayonne*, and in several other places: they also grow in the Gardens of our Florists in *England*.

VII. The Times. They most commonly flower in *March*, and many times in *April*, according to the Warmth or Coldness of the Season.

VIII. As to the Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, they are much the same with the *Orchides* or *Dogs-stones* in the former Chapter, to which I refer you: only it is said, that these are more efficacious for Venereous Actions than any of the *Orchides* and *Satyrions*.

IX. Observation. The Pouder of the Root being given inwardly in Broth, Milk or Wine to one or two drams, is said to be effectual against Worms in the Belly; to ease the Pains of the Cholick, to strengthen and nourish the whole Body, and to cure the Falling-sickness in Children.

II. The Kinds. There are many kinds of this Plant, but the principal which grow in *England* are the three following, 1. *Geranium Columbinum calgare*, *Pes Columbinus communis*, The common Doves-foot. 2. *Geranium Columbinum Laciniatum*, *Pes Columbinus alter*, The jagged Doves-foot. 3. *Geranium Saxatile*, *Pes Columbinus Saxatilis*, The Stone or Rock Cranes-bill, or Doves-foot.



III. The Descriptions. The first, or Common Doves-foot, has a Root which is something large and woody, having some Fibres adjoining to it; from whence arise several small, round, pale, green Leaves, cut in about the edges, much like unto *Mallows*, or rather a Doves Foot, standing upon long, reddish, hairy Stalks, lying in a round Compass upon the Ground, from among which rise up two or three or more jointed, reddish, hairy Stalks, slender and weak, with some such like Leaves thereon, but smaller, and more cut in up to the tops, where grow many very small, bright, red Flowers of five Leaves a piece; after which follow small Heads, with small short Beaks pointing forth, as all the other sorts of *Cranes-bills* do, of which this is a kind, whereby they are known to be of this Family, how differing soever the Face or Form of their Leaves may be.

IV. The second, or Jagged Doves-foot, has a Root like the former, from whence spring up Leaves, which are greener, not full out so round, and somewhat more cut in on the edges, making the Leaf to seem of several parts more than the other, or like the *Vervain Mallow*, but something lesser. The Stalks are weak and leaning, like the former, as also are the Flowers and Seed with its long Beak.

V. The third, or Rock or Stone Doves-foot, is a lesser Plant than the Common Doves-foot, and has a Root which is small and yellowish, yet abides many Years and perishes not, and also encreases plentifully, of the Seed it lets fall. From this Root spring forth many small Leaves, very like to those of the Common Doves-foot, which are somewhat cut in on the edges.

## C H A P. CCXXVIII.

### of D O V E S - F O O T.

I. THE Names. It is called in *Greek*, *Γερίον* *μεστειδής*, *γέριον μεστειδής*: in *Latin*, *Geranium Columbinum*, *Pes Columbinus*; and in *English*, *Doves-foot*.



edges, very green and shining, so very like to a small Sanicle Leaf, that it may easily deceive the unwary; these Leaves grow upon reddish Foot-stalks, and lye upon the Ground all the Autumn, Winter and Spring until the Summer that the Stalks rise up, which are about seven, eight or ten inches high or more, bearing a few Leaves on them, and very small, purplish red Flowers, brighter and redder than those of the Common Doves-foot, which being pass'd away, yield very small Seed, but like the others in its Beak-like Shape or Fashion.

*Stone or Rock Doves-foot.*



VI. *The Places.* The first grows in Meadows and Pasture-grounds, by Ditch-sides, and Banks of Ditches, and by Path-sides, almost every where. The second is also found in Meadow and Pasture Grounds, where the Ground is fat, and near Ditch-sides, but not so frequent as the former. The third grows in stoney, rocky and gravelly Grounds, in *Harcynia sylva*, as *Camerarius* and *Thalius* say, and about *Naples*, as *Columna* says: and it has been often found in several rocky, stoney and gravelly places of this our Kingdom of *England*.

VII. *The Times.* They all flower in the Summer Months, in *June*, *July* and *August*, some more early than the others; and their Seed is ripe in some short time after.

VIII. *The Qualities.* They are cold and dry in the first Degree; Astringent, Carminative and Traumatick or Vulnerary; Arthritick and Analeptick.

IX. *The Specification.* It is a peculiar thing to stop Bleeding, and cure Wounds and Ruptures.

X. *The Preparations.* You may make therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction in Wine. 4. A Pouder of Herb and Root. 5. A Balsam. 6. A Cataplasme.

*The Virtues.*

XI. *The liquid Juice.* Given to two or three spoonfuls in a Glass of Sherry, Madera, or other generous Wine, it prevails against the Cholick, as also against Wind and Pains in the Stomach, and o-

ther Viscera: and it given in White Wine, it is good to expel the Stone and Gravel in the Reins.

XII. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues; besides which, it is good for such as have inward Wounds, Hurts or Bruises; it stops inward Bleedings, and dissolves and expels the congealed Blood. It is found also by Experience to be a singular good thing for Ruptures or Burseness, whether in Old or Young. You may give two or three spoonfuls Morning and Night, in a Glass of White or Red Port, Sherry, &c.

XIII. *The Decoction in Red Port Wine.* It is an exceeding good Wound-drink for such as have inward Wounds or Bruises; it stops the Bleeding, cleanses and heals the Parts, and has indeed the Virtues of the Juice or Essence, but in a lower Degree. Dose five or six ounces twice a day.

XIV. *The Pouder of the Herb and Root.* *Gerard* says, that if it is given half a spoonful at a time in the Morning fasting, and half a spoonful at Night going to Bed, in Red Wine or old Claret, for the space of one and twenty days together, it will miraculously cure Ruptures or Burseness, as he had oftentimes proved, by which he had gotten much Money and Reputation. If the Rupture is in an aged Person, it shall then be needful to add thereto (says he) the Pouder of red Snails, (those without Shells) to the number of nine, dried in an Oven; by which the Pouder of the Herb will be fortified, so as it shall not fail of a Cure, tho' (says he) the Rupture be great, and of long continuance. It is good also for those who are wounded in the Body, to stop the Flux of Blood, and heal the Wound, as has been often proved. Dose one dram Morning and Night in Red Port Wine.

XV. *The Balsam.* It is admirable in curing of Wounds simple or contused, as also in healing of Sores, Ulcers and Fistula's: it digests, cleanses, incarnates, dries and heals to Admiration.

XVI. *The Cataplasme.* If it is made only of the Herb bruised, and so applied, it heals simple green Wounds after a singular manner. It is good also to discuss simple Contusions; and applied to Parts pained with the Gout, it gives ease in the same. It stops the Bleeding of green Wounds, allays the Heat of Inflammations, and discusses hot Tumors. It gives ease in any Pains of the Extreame Parts, proceeding from a hot Cause, or from Deffluxion of Humors, or from any over-straining of the Nerves or Joints, by strengthening the same.

C H A P. CCXXIX.

of DRAGON Greater and Lesser.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *Greek*, *Δρακόνιον*; in *Arabick*, *Luf* and *Alluf*; in *Latin*, *Dracontium*; and in *English*, *Dragon* or *Herb-Dragon*, and *Dragon-wort*.

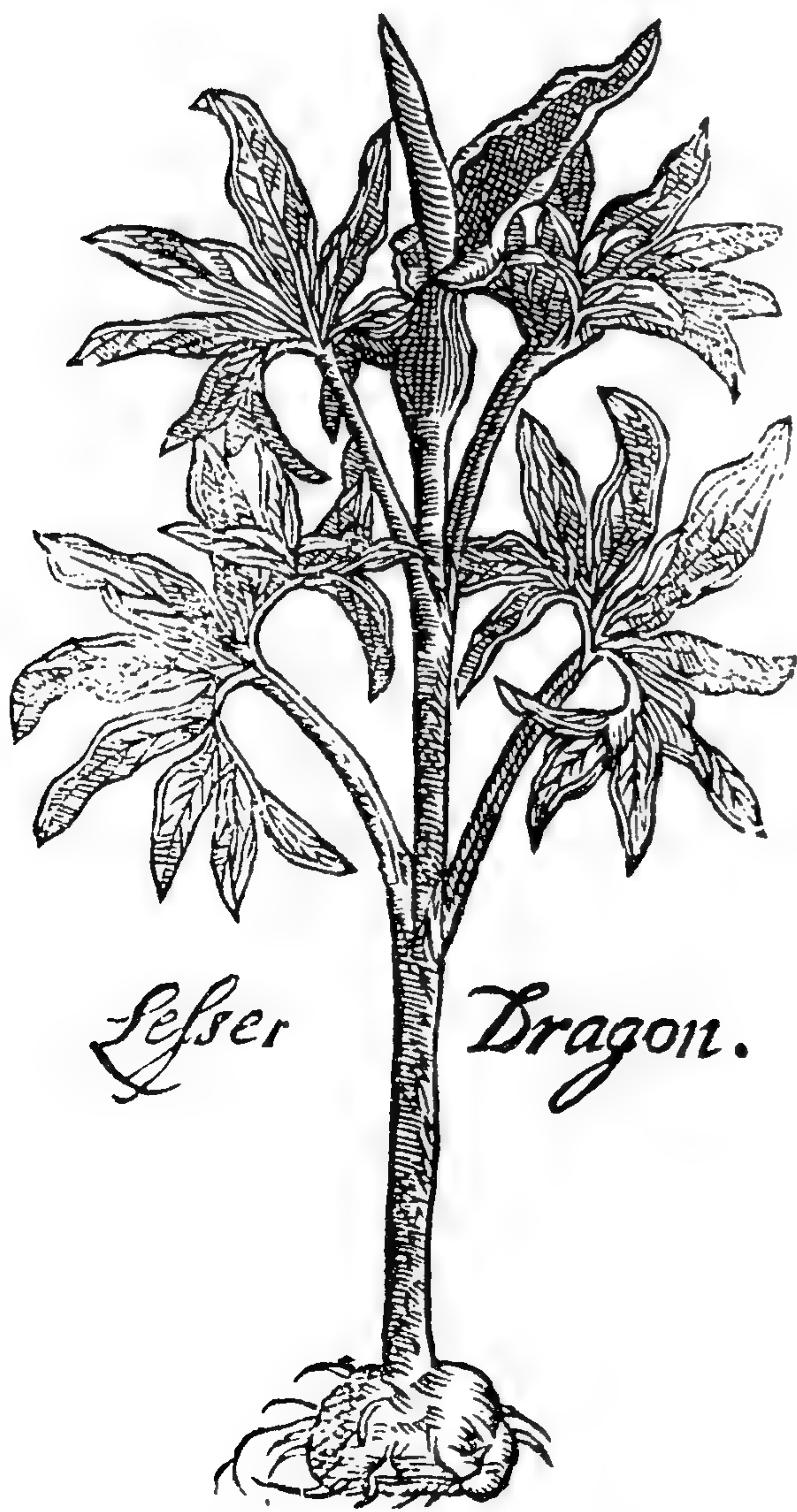
II. *The Kinds.* It is manifold, 1. *Δρακόνιον μέγα*, καὶ *δρακόνια μεγάλη*: in *Latin*, *Dracontium majus*, and in the Shops, *Serpentaria major*, of some, *Biscaria* and *Colubrina*, The great Dragon, or Dragon-wort. 2. *Δρακόνιον μικρόν*, *δρακόνια μικρά*: in *Latin*, *Dracunculus*, *Dracunculus minor*, *Dracunculus Polyphyllus Cordi*: in *English*, *Small Dragon*, or *Dragon-wort*. To these we may add, 3. *Δρακόνιον πύκνον*: in *Latin*, *Dracontium magnum, vel magis*, The great or greater Dragon; this is the *Dracontium major Matthioli*, which seems not to me to be of the Stock of



or Dragons, but rather a very large kind of *Bistort* : of these three kinds we shall treat in this Chapter.  
 4. *Δρακόντιον ὕδρευ* : in Latin, *Dracontium aquaticum*, vel *Dracunculus aquaticus* ; and in English, Water Dragon, or Dragon-wort ; of which in the next Chapter.



*Dragons*  
*Greater.*



*Lesser*      *Dragon.*

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Greater Dragon, has a thick tuberous Root, like to a Knob, many times of the Magnitude of a middle-sized Apple, white, covered with a thin Peel, full of white little

Fibres appendent thereto, continuing many Years, very white within, and like unto Aron-root, tasting somewhat sharp, like to it. From this Root rises up a straight Stalk, a Cubit and half high or higher, which is thick, round, smooth, whitish and bare or naked, but spotted very much with purplish Spots and Strakes, or with Spots of divers colors, like those of the Adder and some other Serpents. This Stalk bears a few green Leaves, standing upon long Foot-stalks, much divided on all hands ; they are great and wide, each Leaf consisting of seven or more joined together in order, every one of which is long and narrow, much like to the Leaves of Dock, smooth and slippery. Out of the top of the Stalk, in the middle thereof, comes forth a great long Husk or Hose, (if the Root is old enough) greater than that of the Cuckow-pint or Aron, of a greenish color on the outside, and of a crimson or dark purplish color on the inside ; with a long slender Pestel or Clapper in the middle thereof, which is blackish and pointed like a Horn, the Skin or Film whereof, when the Seed grows big, being stretched or broken asunder, there appears the Fruit, like to a Bunch or Cluster of Grapes ; the Berries whereof at first are green, afterwards red and full of Juice, in which is contained Seed, which is something hard.

IV. The second, or Small Dragon, has a Root not unlike to Aron-root, having the Form of a Bulb, full of Fibres or Strings, with divers rude Shapes of new Plants, by which it greatly encreases. The whole Plant is much like to Aron in its Leaves, Hose or Husk, Pestel and Berries, (and seems to me to be the lesser sort of Aron ; ) the Leaves are spotted either with white or brownish Spots, and perish not presently, but endure together with the Berries, even till Winter ; and the Berries are not of a deep red, but of a color inclining to Saffron.



*Greater*  
*Dragon.*

V. The third, or Great Dragon of Matthiols, has a round bulbous Root, larger something than the former, with many Fibres at bottom thereof ; from which rises one large, high, upright Stalk, with very great Leaves thereon, folded and lapped one within another : at the top of the Stalk comes forth



a spike of Flowers, not much unlike to those of *Bistort*, with like small Seed. Some Authors will not have this to be a *Dracontium* or *Dragon-wort*, but rather a very large sort of *Bistort*. *Dodonaus* says, ---- *qui, si in rerum natura est, Bistortæ Species videtur.*

VI. *The Places.* *Dragons græter* and *lesser* delight to grow in shadowy places; and with us they grow in *Gardens*.

VII. *The Times.* They flower in *July*, and the Fruit or Berries are ripe in *August* and *September*.

VIII. *The Qualities.* *Dragons* or the *Dragon-worts* are hot and dry in the third Degree; *Aperitive*, *Attractive*, *Suppurative*, *Stomackick*, *Pectoral*, *Hysterick* and *Alexipharmick*.

IX. *The Specification.* *Dragon-wort* is an *Antidote* against *Poyson*, *Plague* and *Bitings* of *Venomous Creatures*.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom,  
1. *The prepared Root* 2. *A liquid Juice of Leaves or Roots.* 3. *An Essence of the same.* 4. *A Pouder of the Root.* 5. *A Loboc of the Root.* 6. *A Cataplasm of the fresh and green Leaves.* 7. *The Fruit or Berries.* 8. *A Spirituous Tincture of the Root.* 9. *An Acid Tincture of the same.* 10. *An Oily Tincture.* 11. *A Saline Tincture.* 12. *A distilled Water of Leaves, Root and Fruit.*

## *The Virtues.*

XI. *The prepared Root.* It is prepared by boiling it till it is soft, and all the *Acrimony* pass'd off. It then nourishes and is good for *Food*, it is also good to expel thick and clammy *Humors* from the *Breſt* and *Lungs*: they also restore in *Consumptions*.

XII. *The liquid Juice of Leaves or Root.* It is said to remove the *Pin* and *Web*, as also *Spots* and *Pearls* in the *Eyes*, being put into *Collyriums* or *Medicines* which are made for the *Eyes*. *Dioscorides* says, that the *Juice* being dropped into the *Eyes*, cleanses them, and helps *Dimness* of *Sight*. The same mixed with *Oil Olive* and dropped into the *Ears*, eases their *Pain*.

XIII. *The Essence of the same.* It has all the *Virtues* of the liquid *Juice*; besides which, being taken inwardly (*Universals* being premised) to one spoonful at a time in the distilled *Water*, or in *White Wine*, and repeated as oft as need requires, it powerfully provokes the *Terms* in *Women*.

XIV. *The Pouder of the Root.* If it is made into an *Electuary* with *Honey*, it is good for such as are troubled with vehement *Coughs* and *Catarrhs*, *Convulsions*, *Cramps*, &c. for it incides, absterges and consumes gross, tough and tartarous *Humors*, and cleanses all the inward *Parts*. Dose of the *Pouder* from half a dram to a dram. Outwardly applied, it cleanses all fretting and malignant *Ulcers*, which are difficult to be healed: it also removes all *Scorbutick Breakings* out in any part of the *Body*.

XV. *The Loboc of the Root.* It is made of the *Root* prepared by boiling, (at *ſect. 11.* above) by beating it in a *Mortar* with twice its weight of *Honey*. It is an excellent thing against *Coughs*, *Salt Catarrhs* and *Deſluxions* of thin *Rheum*.

XVI. *The Cataplasm of the fresh and green Leaves.* Being applied, it is good for *Ulcers* and green *Wounds*, and heals them after an admirable manner. Being dry, they are more sharp or biting, and not so fit for *Vulneraries*.

XVII. *The Fruit or Berries.* They are of greater Power than either *Leaves* or *Root*, and therefore are said to cure virulent and malignant running *Sores*; and to eat away that cancerous *Excretion* in the *Nostrils* called *Polypus*: they are also good to be laid

to *Cankers*, and such like fretting, eating and consuming *Ulcers*.

XVIII. *The Spirituous Tincture of the Root.* Given to one dram or two in any proper *Vehicle* Morning and Evening, (after the Use of *Universals*) it opens *Obstructions* of the *Womb*, and provokes the *Courses*. It eases *Pains* of the *Stomach* and *Bowels* proceeding from *Wind*, or from cold, slimy and tartarous *Humors*, prevails against the *Cholick*, and warms and comforts all the inward *Parts*; and is an excellent thing against *Poyson*, *Plague*, *spotted Fever*, or any other malignant *Distemper*.

XIX. *The Acid Tincture.* It is a famous *Stomackick*, takes away *Nauseousness* and *Vomiting*, warms and comforts a cold *Stomach*, causes a good *Appetite* and *Digestion*; and strikes at the *Root* of all *Poysons* *Vegetable* or *Animal*, especially it resists the *Biting* of *Vipers*, and the *Malignity* of *Mad Dogs*. It is also a singular thing against malignant *Fevers*, *spotted Fever*, and the *Plague* or *Pestilence*, by overturning the very *Fountains* of the infectious *Miasmata*. Dose from thirty, forty to sixty or eighty drops in the distilled *Water*, or any other specifick *Vehicle*, viz. so much as may make it pleasantly acid, according to the quantity given at a time.

XX. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against *Cramps*, *Convulsions*, *Numbness*, *Palsies*, *rheumatick Pains* and *Aches* proceeding from *Cold* and *Moisture*, or in a cold and moist *Habit* of *Body*: it is to be anointed upon the *Parts* affected Morning and Evening, and to be well rubbed in.

XXI. *The Saline Tincture.* It is good against *Blackness*, *Greenness* and *Yellowness* of the *Skin*, and to take away *Tanning*, *Sun-burning*, *Scurff*, *Morphew*, *Leprosy*, *Scabbiness*, *Freckles*, *Lentils*, and other the like *Deformities* of the *Cuticula* or *Scarff-Skin*.

XXII. *The distilled Water.* It is used as a *Vehiculum*, to convey many of the foregoing *Preparations* in: it is also a *Cosmetick*, fit for the beautifying the *Skin*, or to mix other *Cosmeticks* with for that Purpose. It prevails also against the *Pestilence*, or any malignant and pestilential *Fever*; as also the *Poyson* of *Serpents* or *mad Dogs*, being drunk warm, with a dram or two of *Mithridate* or other like *Antidote* mixed with it.

## C H A P. CCXXX.

### of D R A G O N,

O R,

### D R A G O N-W O R T Water.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called is *Greek*, Δρακόνιον ὑδατώδες, ὡς ἑνὸς ὄντος: in *Latin*, *Dracontium aquaticum*, *Dracunculus aquaticus*, *Arenia aquatica*, *Dracunculus palustris sive aquatilis*: in *English*, *Water Dragon*, and *Water Dragon-wort*, *Marsh Dragon-wort*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the last Species of *Dragon-wort* mentioned in *Chap. 229. Sect. 2.*

III. *The Description.* It has a *Root* which is not round like a *Bulb*, but very long, creeping, jointed, and of a moderate bigness; out of the joints whereof arise the *Stalks* of the *Leaves*, which are round, smooth, and spungy within, certain white and slender



der Strings growing downwards. The Fruit springs forth at the top upon a short Stalk, together with one of the Leaves, being at the beginning covered with little white Threads, which are instead of the Flowers, (see the second Figure annexed;) after that it grows into a Bunch or Cluster, at the first green, and when it is ripe, red; lesser than that of *Aron*, but not less biting. The Leaves are broad, greenish, smooth and shining as it were, in Fashion almost like those of *Ivy*, yet lesser than those of *Aron* or *Cuckow-point*: and that Substance to which the clustered Fruit grows is also lesser; and in that part which is towards the Fruit, viz. its upper part, it is white.

### Water Dragon-wort.



### Water Dragons.



IV. *The Places.* *Water Dragon* or *Dragon-wort* grows in marsh and watry places, and for the most part in fenny and standing Waters in many parts of this Kingdom.

V. *The Times.* It flowers in *July*, and the Fruit is ripe in *August* or *September*.

VI. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with the first and second kinds in the former Chapter, so that no more need be said thereof in this place.

### C H A P. CCXXXI.

### of DROPWORT Common.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Latin*, *Filipendula*, (*quod numerosi illi in Radice bulbuli, quasi ex filo pendere videantur*;) also *Saxifraga rubra*, (*Red Break-stone*;) in *English*, *Dropwort*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is threefold, viz. 1. *Φιλιπένδουλα*, *Nicholai Myrepsi*, *Filipendula vulgaris*, *Filipendula major vulgaris*, The common great Dropwort. 2. *Filipendula altera major*, Another great *Filipendula* or Dropwort. 3. *Filipendula minor*, Small Dropwort. Some will have this Common Dropwort to be *Οεινάνθη*, *Oenanthe Dioscoridis*, in *lib. 3. cap. 132.* but it is a Mistake.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Great common Dropwort, has a Root which consists of many small, black, tuberous Pieces or Drops, fastened together by many small, long, blackish Strings, which run from one to another. From this Root shoot forth several long winged Leaves, viz. many small Leaves, some bigger and some lesser, set on each side of a middle Rib, and each of them dented about the edges, almost



almost like a Saw, somewhat resembling Burnet or Wild Tanfie, or rather Agrimony, or between them all, but harder in handling: among which Leaves rises up one Stalk, and sometimes more, two or three feet high, having some such Leaves thereon as grow below; and sometimes also divided into other Branches, spreading at the top into many white, sweet-smelling Flowers, composed of five Leaves apiece, with some Threads in the middle of them, standing together in a Tuft or Umble, each upon a small Foot-stalk; which after they have continued for a good while open or blown, they fall away, and in their places small chaffy Heads appear, like Buttons, in which is contained a kind of chaffy Seed.

IV. The second, or Other great kind, has a Root consisting of very many small Tuberosities, somewhat longer, and whiter than the former, enclining to redness, which are fastned together by many long Fibres or Strings, as the other are. The Stalks and Leaves are so like the former, that this Plant can scarcely be discerned from that: the Flowers at tops of the Stalks are of a white color, enclining to a purple, and made of five Leaves apiece, like the other; after which come the Heads, which when fully ripe, contain within them round and blackish Seed.



V. The third, or Small Filipendula or Dropwort, has a Root manifoldly spread out into several glandulous or tuberos Knobs, like the first, but smaller and redder, and tyed together by Strings, like them. From this Root rise two, three or four such like Leaves as in the first, but much smaller, and more nearly resembling Wild Tanfie Leaves, but not white, as they are, but of the same dark green color with the former. From among these Leaves arises up a Stalk, not above an hand breadth high, which is sometimes without Division, and sometimes spread out into two or three several Branches, on which stand many smaller white Flowers, and sweeter than in the former, but with Threads therein, like them, and set together in an Umble in the same manner: which being pass'd away, then come the Heads of Seed, many set together, and formed almost like unto a small Bunch of Grapes.

VI. The Places. The first grows plentifully upon stony Rocks or Mountains, and rough places, as also in fertile Pastures: it is found upon St. Vincent's Rock by Bristol; and in great plenty in a Field adjoining to Sion-house, some time a Nunnery, near London, on the side of a Meadow called Sion-Meadow; as also in the corners of dry Fields and Clofes, by their Hedge-fides. The second grows on the tops of rocky, stoney or mountainous places. The last also on stoney and rough Grounds, especially about Mompelier in France; and in many the like places in England.

VII. The Times. They all flower in May, June and July, and the Seed is ripe in August.

VIII. The Qualities. Dropwort is hot and dry in the third Degree; Aperitive, Incisive, Carminative, Diuretick; Stomack, Pectoral, Nephritick, Hysterick, Emmenagogick and Alexipharmick.

IX. The Specification. It is famous against the Strangury, Stone and Gravel in Reins and Bladder.

X. The Preparations. You may have therefrom; 1. A liquid Juice of the Roots or Leaves. 2. An Essence of the same. 3. A Decoction of the same in Wine. 4. A Pouder of the Roots, Leaves or Seed. 5. A Balsam of the Root. 6. A distilled Water. 7. A Spirituous Tincture of the Root. 8. An Acid Tincture of the same. 9. An Oily Tincture thereof. 10. A Saline Tincture. 11. The Spirit. 12. The fixed Salt: where note, that you may use Roots or Leaves; but the Roots are much more effectual.

## The Virtues.

XI. The liquid Juice. Taken three or four spoonfuls at a time in a Glas of White Port Wine, is very effectual in opening all the Urinary Passages, to help the Strangury, and to expel Sand, Gravel, small Stones, and other tartarous Matter in the Reins, Ureters and Bladder. Authors say it is very helpful in breaking the Stone; and this the Juice will do, whether taken from Roots or Leaves; but that from the Roots is most effectual, as aforesaid.

XII. The Essence. It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice; besides which, it is very effectual to force away the Birth, as also to expel the Secundine or After-birth, and prevails against the Yellow Jaundice, Epilepsy, as also Obstructions of the Breast and Lungs, it expels Wind and helps difficulty of Breathing. Dose two or three spoonfuls in a Glas of generous Wine, Morning and Night.

XIII. The Decoction in Wine. It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not full out so powerful: it may be sweetned with Honey, and given Morning and Night, or upon an Exigency from four to six ounces: it very much comforts and strengthens the Stomach.

XIV. The Pouder of the Root. Taken from one to two drams in White Port Wine, it provokes Urine powerfully, opens Obstructions of the Reins and Bladder, and is said to dissolve or break the Stone, and expel it; but this must be understood, where the Stone is compacted of a Substance friable or brittle and gritty, and not grown to any great Magnitude. If it is made into an Electuary with Honey, it is an excellent thing for the Wind and Gout in the Stomach, as also to open Obstructions of the Breast and Lungs, help Coughs and Colds, Hoarsness, Wheezing, loss of Voice and shortness of Breath, causing an Expectoration of the cold, tough and viscous Flegm from all the Parts of Respiration.

XV. The Balsam of the Root. It is good to digest, cleanse, dry and heal old Sores, and such as proceed from the Kings-evil, and moist and running Ulcers.



Ulcers. Applied to Parts afflicted with the Gout, it quickly eases the Pain, and in some measure attracts forth the sharp Humors and morbid Matter thro' the Pores of the Skin.

XVI. *The distilled Water.* It is a good Vehicle to convey any of the other Preparations in : it is Diuretick, opening the Obstructions of the Urinary Parts.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture of the Root.* It is Alexipharmick, good against Poyson, Plague and all sorts of pestilential and malign Diseases ; it warms and comforts the Bowels, restores the Tone of the inward Parts ; and is singularly good against Fluxes of the Bowels of all sorts, and forces away the Birth of a Woman in Travail. Dose from two drams to four in any proper or specifick Vehicle. It powerfully expels Wind, corrects sharp and acrid Humors in the Stomach and Guts, and gives present ease in the Cholick.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is a high Stomachick, warms, comforts and strengthens it, causes Appetite and a good Digestion ; dissolves crude and tartarous Humors, and makes them fit for Expulsion ; cleanses the Urinary Parts, and promotes the breaking or dissolving the Stone in the Reins or Bladder. It strikes at the Root of those Humors which are the Cause of the King's-evil, and of Tumors or Swellings in the Throat or other glandulous Parts, cutting and dissolving them, preventing their Encrease or Generation, and making those which are present to be fit for Excretion. Dose so many drops as to make the Vehicle pleasantly sharp.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against Cramps, Convulsions, Numbness, Palsy, &c. being bathed well in twice a day upon the Parts affected. Given inwardly to twenty or thirty drops in the distilled Water aforesaid, or in some other appropriate Vehicle, it is an admirable thing against all manner of Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, expels stoney and tartarous Concretions, and carries off the morbid Cause of the Yellow Jaundice by Urine. It also prevails against Lethargies, Vertigo, Apoplexy, Convulsions, Epilepsy, Paralysis, and all other cold and moist Diseases of the Head, Brain and Nerves ; and provokes the Terms in Women.

XX. *The Saline Tincture.* It is dedicated to Diseases of the Reins, Bladder and Ureters ; prevails against the Strangury, and dissolves the Matter breeding the Stone. Outwardly, it is good against Scurff, Morpew, Scabs, Itch, Tettars, Ringworms, and other Defecations of the Cuticula, being bathed therewith twice a day.

XXI. *The Spirit.* It is a singular Cordial, cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, strengthens the Stomach, and fortifies the whole universal Frame. It is good against fainting and swooning Fits, Sickness at Heart, Wind, and the Cholick Tortions of the Bowels, occasioned thro' either Flatulency or sharp and acrid Humors. Dose from two drams to four, either alone or mixt with a little Glass of Canary, as oft as occasion requires.

XXII. *The fixed Salt.* It is a strong Diuretick, opens all the Urinary Passages, and expels large quantities of watry Humors in the Dropsy by Urine, and the morbid Cause of all Fevers. Dose from twelve grains to a scruple or half a dram, in the distilled Water above-mentioned, or in White Wine.

## C H A P. CCXXXII.

## Of DROPWORT Narrow-leav'd.

I. **T**HE Names. Authors ascribe the Greek Name *Ὠνάνθη* to this Plant, tho' it is not the true *Oenanthe Dioscoridis* : and therefore it is called in Latin, *Oenanthe recepta herbariorum*, or *Filipendula angustifolia* : in English, *Narrow-leav'd Dropwort*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the second general Species of Dropworts ; and is threefold, viz. 1. *Oenanthe Apii foliis major*, *Filipendula folio Apii major*, The common or ordinary great Parsly-leav'd Dropwort. 2. *Oenanthe vel Filipendula Apii foliis minor*, *duarum specierum*, Two smaller sorts of Parsly or Smallage leav'd Dropworts. 3. *Oenanthe angustifolia Lobelii*, Lobel's Narrow-leav'd Dropwort.



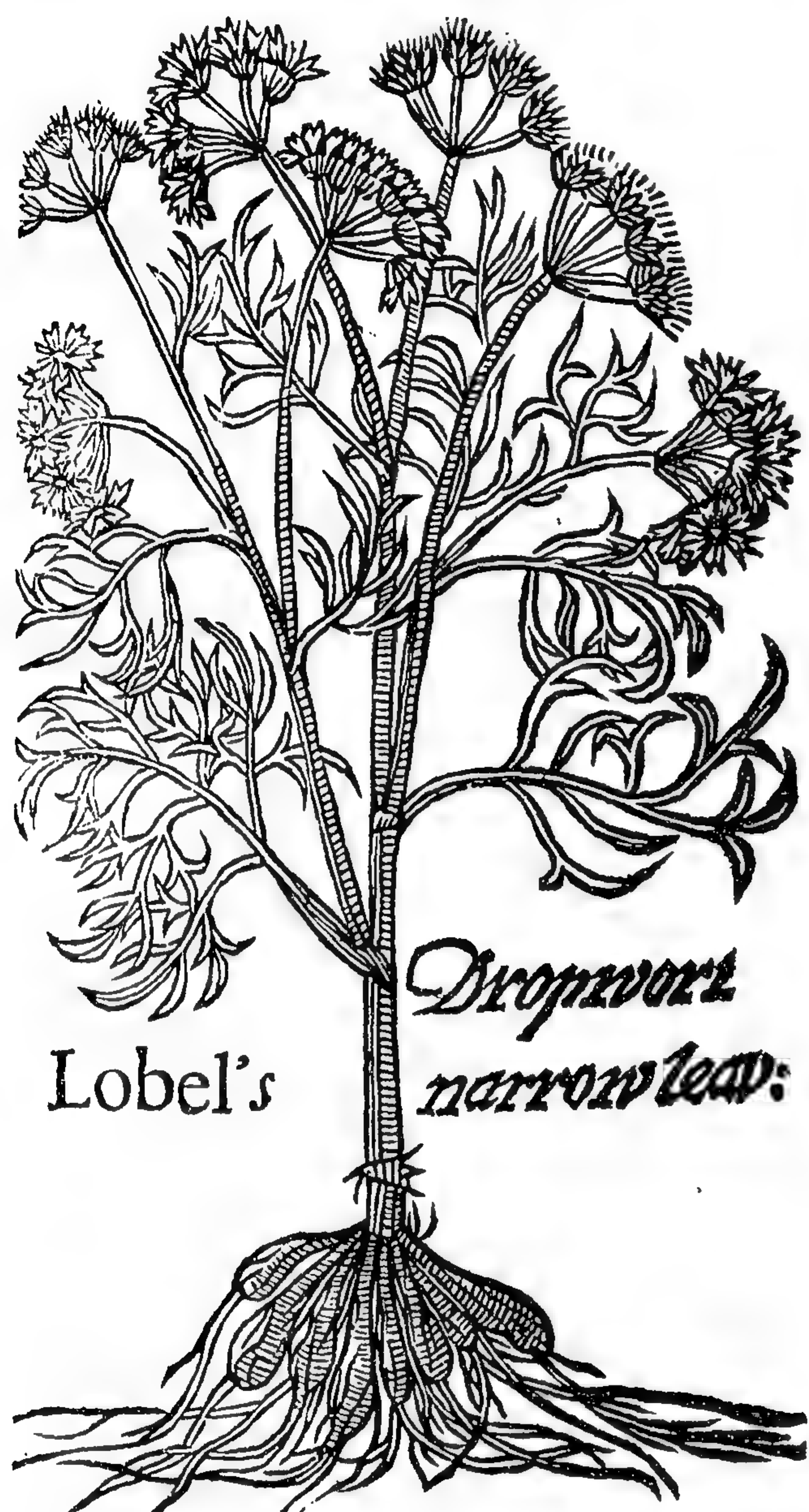
Dropwort narrowleaved

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Great Parsly-leav'd Dropwort, has for Roots many round, white, and somewhat long Asphodil like Clogs, joined together at the tops, making one Head of a Root, and ending in small Fibres : from this Root rise many green winged Leaves, made of many parts, cut into the Form almost of Parsly or Smallage Leaves, but much smaller, even as small as Garden Cress Leaves : and from among them spring forth two or three stiff, round Stalks, a foot and half high, and sometimes two feet high, beset with such like Leaves as grow below, but as they grow higher on the Stalk, grow much smaller, lesser and narrower, to the perfect loosing of the Form of those below. At the tops of the Stalks grow Umbles of white Flowers, which being pass'd away, there follows Fennel like Seed, but smaller, and of a dark whitish color.

IV. *The second, or Small Smallage-leav'd Dropwort, which is twofold.* The Roots of these two kinds are much alike, but only differing in Greatness, each of



of them consisting of several small Tubers, with many Strings among them. Their Leaves are winged, and like in their Divisions to the former, but both smaller by much, and more green, the one of these being also smaller than the other; and the lesser of them a little finer jagged, which evidently shews the Difference as well as the Seed: the Flowers in both are white, but differing in Greatness. The Seed of the greater of these is smaller by half than the Seed of the former Great kind; and the Seed of the lesser is yet smaller and rounder, and something like unto Dill Seed.



V. The third, or Lobel's Narrow-leav'd Dropwort, has a Root composed of many white, long, tuberous parts; sending forth many Strings from their lower parts, and on their tops all uniting in one Head of a Root. From this Head or Root arises a strong crested Stalk, two feet high, dividing it self towards the top into several Arms or Branches. From the hollow Place or Bosom of every Joint, out of which do grow those Branches; the Leaves do also proceed, very much cut or jagged, like Fennel. At the tops of these Branches come forth spoky Rundles or Umbles of white Flowers, fashioned like Stars.

VI. The Places. They grow in many places of England, but for the most part near Ditch-sides, and Brooks or Rivers sides, and upon the Borders of Ground near standing Waters.

VII. The Times. They flower from May to the end of June, and the Seed is ripe not long after.

VIII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with the Common Dropwort in Chap. 231. so that no more need be said of them here.

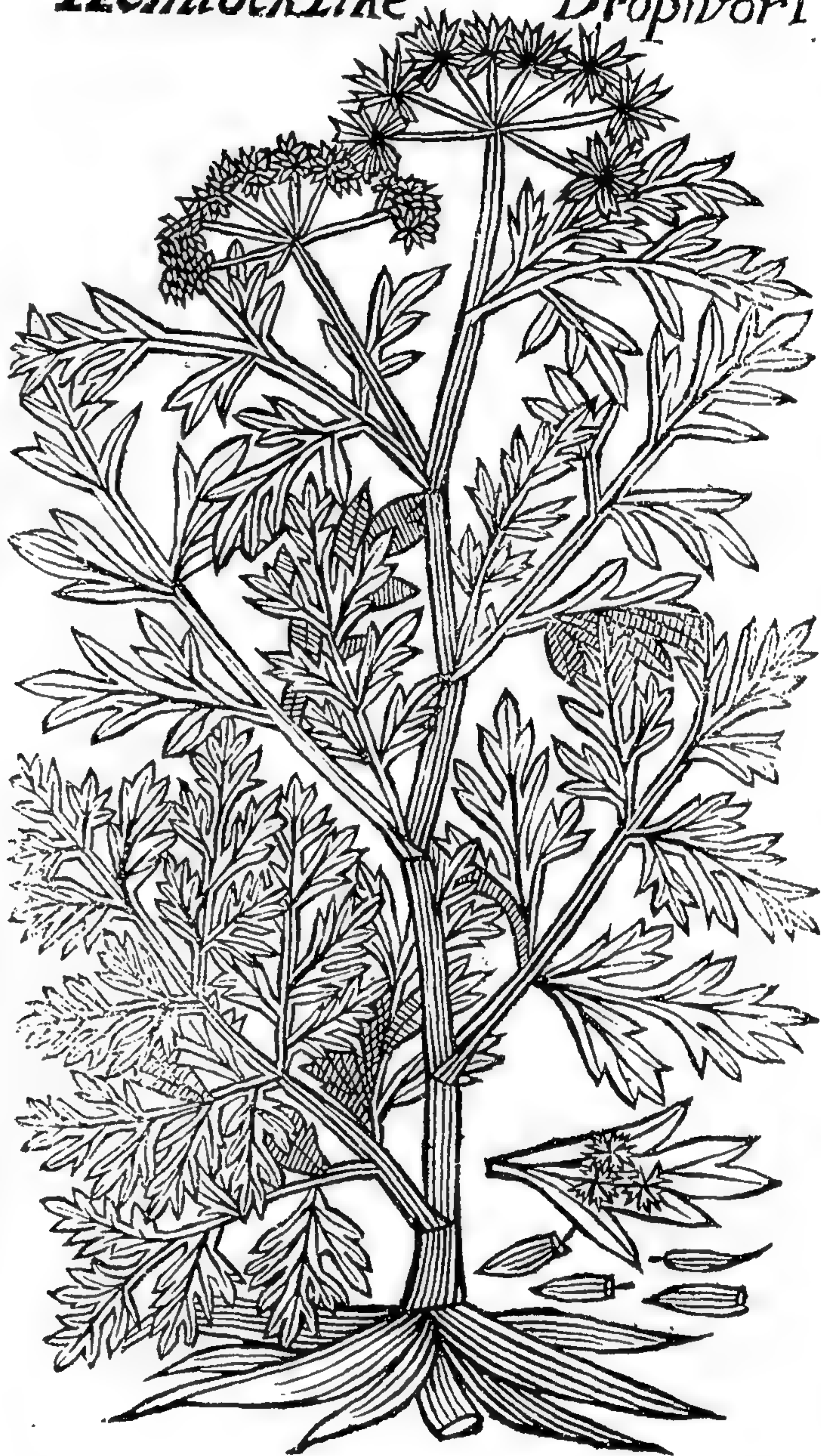
## C H A P. CCXXXIII.

## Of DROPWORT Hemlock like.

I. THE Names. It is called in Latin, *Oenanthe Cicuta facie*; also *Filipendula Cicuta facie*: and in English, Hemlock-leav'd Dropwort, Lobel's Hemlock like Dropwort.

II. The Kinds. It is *singularis sui generis*, there being neither a greater nor lesser sort of it.

## Hemlocklike Dropwort



III. The Description. This Plant has a Root which is white and glandulous, or repleat with many long and gouty Glandules, Asphodil like, which are soft and tender, but sharp and unpleasant in Taste, yielding a white Milk at the first, and turning yellow afterwards, which is said to be poysonous, virulent and exulcerating. From this Head or Root spring forth several winged Leaves, standing upon a long Foot-stalk, more like Meadow Rue than Smallage or Hemlock, having many small ones set together, of a dull, dark green, and somewhat like Hemlock in color, as also in the Flowers; but more in its Effects.

IV. The Places. It grows many times in moist Plowed Land, as in the moist and wet Furrows of a Field belonging to Battersea near London: it grows also in great abundance in many places by the Thames-side, as a little above the Horse-Ferry against Lambeth, &c.

V. The Times. It flowers in May and June, and some part of July; and the Seed is ripe in July and August.

VI. The Qualities. It is hot and dry in the fourth



fourth Degree: Pyrotick, Exulcerating, Arthritic, and *diastematica*. Venetick or Poyfoning.

VII. *The Specification.* It troubles and overturns the Brain and Senses, causing Madness, and if taken in any considerable quantity, Death.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may make therefrom, 1. *A Cataplasim.* 2. *An Ointment.*

*The Virtues.*

IX. *The Cataplasim.* It exulcerates, or is blistering, and is of good Use to be applied in a Sciatica, or Gout in Hands or Feet: it also draws forth the Poyson if it is immediately applied to the Biting of a mad Dog, or the Biting of a Viper or Rattle-Snake, or other venomous Creatures.

X. *The Ointment.* It is good to anoint with in all sorts of scrophulous or strumous Tumors, and to be applied in Kings-evil Sores, where it is not used without a singular Advantage.

C H A P. CCXXXIV.

of DROPWORT Water.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, (according to our Moderns) *Οινάνθη υδατοδίνος, η ένυδρη*: in Latin, *Oenanthe aquatica*, and *Filipendula aquatica*: in English, *Water Dropwort*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the fourth grand Species of the Dropworts; and is twofold, viz. 1. *Oenanthe, vel Filipendula aquatica major*, The greater Water Dropwort. 2. *Oenanthe, vel Filipendula aquatica minor*, The lesser Water Dropwort.



III. *The Description.* The first, or Greater Water Dropwort, has a Root like to the other Drop-

worts, replenished with many small, white Tubers or Knobs growing among the Strings, joining together above, and making one Head of a Root. From this rise several large spread Leaves next the Ground, and lying thereon, being winged and cut into many small Divisions, somewhat resembling Parsly, but much smaller, and divided into smaller parts than any of the former kinds. From among these Leaves rise up crested, thick, hollow Stalks, with Leaves on them, cut into longer and finer Divisions, bearing at the top Umbles of white Flowers, which turn into small, flat, greyish Seed, somewhat lesser than Fennel Seed, and not much unlike Hemlock Seed.

IV. *The second, or Lesser Water Dropwort*, has a Root made up with several small Tubers or Knobs, and fastned among the Fibres, which are as small as Hairs. From the Head of which Roots spring up many small Leaves, lying upon the Ground, which are very finely cut in: after them springs up the Stalk, which carrying up the first sprung up Leaves with it, they scarcely seem to be Leaves, but rather like the Ribs of Leaves, of a dark and shining green color, as the Stalk also is, which very nearly resembles a Rush; and below the top thereof, which is pointed like a Rush, comes forth a small Umble of small whitish sweet Flowers, which turn afterwards into as small Seed as Smallage, but blacker.

V. *The Places.* They both grow in wet Grounds and near Brook-sides in many places in England; yet will they both flourish being nurs'd up in our Gardens, but grow not there all out so large and fair, as in their natural places: and as it grows by the sides of Rivers and Water-streams, so it has been found near the River of Thames, as, near St. George's-fields, and about the Bishop of London's House at Fulham, and in such other like places.

VI. *The Times.* The second or Lesser, flowers earlier than the Greater; and commonly the flowering time of the Lesser is past before the other comes, which is not until August.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues*, are the same with those of the Common Dropwort in Chap. 231. foregoing, so that no more need be said of them here.

C H A P. CCXXXV.

of DUCKS--MEAT.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Arabick, *Taleb*, seu *Tahaleb*: in Greek, *Φακός ο έν ήδ τελευάτων*: in Latin, *Lens palustris*, *Lens aquatica*, *Lenticula palustris*, vel *aquatica*: in English, *Ducks-meat*; and by some, *Water Lentils*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make four kinds hereof, as, 1. *Lens palustris vel aquatica vulgaris*, Common or vulgar Ducks-meat. 2. *Lens palustris quadrifolia*, Cross-leav'd Water Lentils or Ducks-meat. 3. *Lens palustris latifolia punctata*, Broad-leav'd spotted Water Lentils. 4. *Lens vel Lenticula aquatica bifolia Neapolitana*, Neapolitan Water Lentils. Of all these, 'tis only the first which grows in England, which we shall treat of in this place: the rest being Strangers, we shall have nothing at this time to say concerning them.

III. *The Description.* This small Plant has for a Root only certain small fine Fibres or Threads, which



which grow only from the middle of each Leaf on the under-side, and pass down into the Water, but reach not to the bottom, to draw Nourishment from the Earth: besides this Root, the whole Plant consists of nothing but small, round, green Leaves, lying on the Surface or Top of standing Waters, in Pools, Ditches and Ponds, without either Flower or Seed that could be ever observed.



IV. *Nota.* *Matthiolus*, and from him *Lugdunensis*, makes a strange Relation concerning this Plant, scarcely to be believed; and it is this: That if it should happen (as sometimes it may) by Inundations, or any other Accident, that these small Lentils or Ducks-meat be carried away into running Waters, as Rivers, Brooks, small Streams, &c. as soon as they stick to or touch the Shoar, they are wonderfully encreased; for by their Roots, which grow from them like Threads, they penetrate and fasten themselves into the Ground, and then growing, come to be Plants, like unto *Sisymbrium*, *Water Mint*, or *Ladies Smocks*; and that this thing has been observed by the diligent Searchers of Nature, and not without much Admiration of the Matter of Fact. *Vix credo*, indeed I know nothing of it.

V. *The Qualities.* According to *Galen*, Ducks-meat is cold and moist in the second Degree; Anodyne, Repercussive, Arthritick and Alexipharmick: but this last it is by Accident.

VI. *The Specification.* It resists and cools Inflammations after a peculiar manner.

VII. *The Preparations.* You have, 1. *The green Herb.* 2. *An Ointment.* 3. *A Cataplasm.* 4. *A distilled Water.*

#### *The Virtues.*

VIII. *The green Herb.* Applied to the Forehead, it eases the Head-ach coming of Heat. Applied in Extremity of the Pains of the Gout, it alleviates them; but sometimes endangers the sending of the Humor up into the Stomach; therefore Universals

ought to be premised, and to be used at the same time. *Dioscorides* says it is a Remedy against *St. Anthony's-fire*, all manner of Inflammations, and the burning Fits of Agues. Ducks greedily devour it; also Hens, if mingled with Bran and given them.

IX. *The Ointment.* It is a fine cooling thing, good against Phlegmons and hot Pains of the Joints, and the Hemorrhoids or Piles, whether broken or not broken, if anointed thereon.

X. *The Cataplasm.* If it is made of the Herb beaten up with *Barly-flower*, it prevails against the Gout, and consolidates Ruptures in young Children; and is profitable against the Swelling of the Cods, and of Womens Breasts before they be grown too much, because it does not weakly repel the Humors. If it is made with *Wheat Flower* or *Meal*, it prevails much against hot Tumors, as Phlegmons and the like, as also Pains of the Joints proceeding from Heat; and helps the falling down of the Fundament in young Children.

XI. *The distilled Water.* It is good against an Erysipelas; and *Matthiolus* esteems it highly for resisting all inward Heats and Inflammations, as also pestilential Fevers, to help the Redness of the Eyes and the Swellings of the Testicles, by repelling of the Humor, Cloths four times doubled being wet therein and applied: and so applied, it cools an Erysipelas or *St. Anthony's-fire*.

## C H A P. CCXXXVI.

### OF DYERS--WEED,

Called,

### W O L D or W E L D.

I. *THE Names.* It is a Plant which was unknown to the Greeks: the Latins call it *Luteola* and *Herba Lutea*; it is the *Lutea Plinii lib. 33. cap. 5.* *Vitruvius lib. 7. cap. 14.* calls it *Luteum*; and *Virgil Bucol. Eclog. 4.* calls it *Lutum*: in English, *Dyers-weed*, also *Wold* or *Weld*.

II. *The Kinds.* It seems to me to be an Herb of its own kind; but *Bauhine* refers it to the *Genista Tinctorum*, or *Green-weed*, of which we shall, God willing, treat in the next Chapter; but to that we think it has no Relation. Some thought it to be the *Reseda* of *Pliny*, because they agree well in divers parts. *Cesalpinus lib. 9. cap. 35.* makes it the *Myagrum, vel Melampyrum Dioscoridis*: but all these things are to be disputed. It took its Name of *Lutea* and *Luteola*, not only from the yellow color of the Herb and its Flowers, when it is dry, but chiefly from the yellow color which it Dyes things into. *Tragus* took it to be *Antirrhinum*, because the Seed-Vessels have (as it were) holes therein. Some will have it to be *Phyteuma Dioscoridis*; others *Struthium Dioscoridis*, as *Lacuna* and *Gesner*. *Matthiolus* calls it *Pseudostruthium*. *Dodonaeus*, *Herba Lutea*. *Lobel*, *Luteola*. *Lonicerus* and *Tabernaemontanus*, *Catenance*: but all these things it is impossible to be; I am induced therefore to hold to my own Opinion before declared.

III. It is twofold, viz. 1. *Lutea vel Luteola vulgaris*, Common Wold, Weld or Dyers-weed. In *Candia* there grows a small sort of *Luteola*; which some Authors would make to be a different kind from that just now named, which *Honorius Bellus Epist. 2. ad Clusium* will have to be *Struthium* or



nam Dioscoridis, and says it is called *Cumene* thro' all Greece : but this we think to be one and the same Plant with the foregoing, viz. Our *Luteola vulgaris* ; and of this Opinion is *Camerarius in Horto*, who makes it and Our common sort all one. 2. *Lutea Cretica maxima*, which is *fecunda & infecunda*, or *fertilis & sterilis*, The great Wold, Weld or Dyers-weed of Candia, which is both fruitful or bearing Seed, and barren bearing no Seed ; and differ one from another only as our *Hemp*, which is, bearing Seed, and barren bearing no Seed.



IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Our common Wold, Weld or Dyers-weed, has a Root which is long, thick and white, abiding all the Winter. The Plant grows bushing out, with many long and narrow flat Leaves upon the Ground, of a dark, bluish green color, somewhat like unto Wood, but nothing so large, a little crumpled as it were, and somewhat round-pointed, which do so abide the first Year. And the next Spring rise up from among them several round Stalks, two or three foot high, beset with many such like Leaves, but smaller and shooting forth some small Branches, which with the Stalks bear very many small yellow Flowers, in a long spiked Head at tops of them ; after which come the Seed, which is small and black, enclosed in Heads, which are divided at the top into four parts.

V. The Great Candia Dyers-weed has a Root which is very great and woody, and shoots it self forth into many long Arms or Branches, which in the native or natural places of its Growth, and other warm Countries, will abide many Years, but with us will scarcely endure our cold Winters, (unless housed) as has been several times proved. From this Root this great Plant rises up (in Candy) with several great Stalks, some of them as big as a Man's Arm, and in height five, six, seven or eight Cubits ; sometimes nine or ten Cubits high, which yet perish in Winter : they are bare or naked of Leaves next the Ground for a foot and half high, the lowest Leaves being without Foot-stalks, joining close at the bottom : the other growing higher up towards the

tops, have all of them Foot-stalks, of a span long : the Leaves of themselves are very large, made of many somewhat broad and long green shining ones, set one against another on a middle Rib, and not yet always directly opposite one to another ; every one of them being something like unto the Leaves of *Hemp*, (of which it is most likely to be a Species) ragged or dented about the edges, yet none of them divided, but the end Leaf, which is sometimes parted, seldom into two, but sometimes into three Divisions, each ending in a long Point. The Stalks are branched, but has only divers small Stalks or long Spikes of Flowers thrust forth, which are yellowish, green and mossy, bowing downwards, with many long and narrow Leaves among them, and stand in yellowish green Husks ; in which, after the Flowers are fallen, come Heads full of very small reddish Seed. The barren Plant is like the former, save that it bears no Seed.

VI. The Places. The first grows every where by the Way-sides, as well in moist Grounds as in the dry, and in corners of Fields and By-Lanes, in and about Villages almost every where : in some places in *Kent* they sow it in their Fields after their *Barley*, which abides until the next Year, and then it is gathered. The other is a Native of *Candia*, and is nurs'd up with us only in *Gardens*.

VII. The Times. The first flowers in *June* and *July*. The second flowers late with us, and sometimes not at all.

VIII. The Qualities. It is hot and dry in the third Degree, the Root, as also the whole Herb. It is Aperitive, Digestive, Attenuating, Inciding and Resolutive ; Arthritick and Alexipharmick.

IX. The Specification. It is peculiar against Punctures of the Nerves, Bitings of Serpents, mad Dogs, and other poysonous Creatures, outwardly applied, and inwardly taken ; and prevails against the Infection of the Plague ; for which Reason, as *Matthiolus* says, it is called *Theriaca*.

X. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. The green Herb bruised. 2. A liquid Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. A Decoction in Wine. 5. A Powder of the Root. 6. A Balsam or Ointment. 7. A Spirituous Tincture. 8. An Acid Tincture. 9. An Oily Tincture. 10. A Spirit.

#### The Virtues.

XI. The green Herb bruised. Applied to Cuts or simple Wounds in Hands or Legs, it heals them. It is good to be applied also to the Bitings of Serpents, mad Dogs, or other venomous Creatures, to draw out the Poyson.

XII. The liquid Juice. It provokes the Terms in Women, opens Obstructions, incides or cuts tough Humors, and resists Poyson, as also the Malignity of the Plague, being taken from one to three spoonfuls at a time in a Glass of generous Wine, and repeating the Dose as Reason requires.

XIII. The Essence. It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice ; besides which, it strengthens the Stomach admirably, expels Wind, and gives ease in the Cholick ; it also facilitates the Labor of a Woman in Travail. Dose two or three spoonfuls at a time in a Glass of Canary, Madera or Sherry Wine, or in White Port.

XIV. The Decoction in Wine. It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but much less efficacious or powerful ; and therefore may be given (dulcified with white Sugar) from three ounces to six ounces or more, Morning and Evening. It is a good Gargle also for a sore Mouth and Throat.

XV. The Powder of the Root. It is good against the



the Plague or Pestilence, the spotted Fever, and other pestilential and malign Fevers; resists both Vegetable and Animal Poysons, and is good against Sickness at Heart. Dose one dram in a Glass of Wine. Applied to Wounds, it heals them, and cleanses, incarnates, dries and induces the Healing of moist running Sores, old Ulcers, and the like, being strewed on them.

XVI. *The Balsam or Ointment.* They are admirable Vulneraries. The Balsam cures simple Wounds many times at one or two Dressings. It cleanses foul and filthy Ulcers, dries, incarnates and heals. And it is profitable to any Part affected with the Gout; giving ease to all sorts of Pains from a cold Cause.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It resists Poyson, and particularly the Poyson of mad Dogs, of Vipers, Rattle Snakes, and other Venom's of like kind. It removes Sickness at Heart, fainting and swooning Fits, is good against Cramps, Convulsions, Lethargies, Apoplexies, Palsies, and such other like cold Distempers of the Brain and Nerves. It is good against Punctures of the Nerves, and gives present ease to the Pain, the Part wounded being well bathed therewith, and Cloths wet therein being laid thereon. Dose inwardly is from two to three or four drams in a Glass of choice Wine.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It resists the Infection of the Plague to a Miracle, as also of the spotted Fever, and of all other malign and pestilential Fevers. It cuts tough Flegm in the Brest and Lungs, and is good against Hoarseness, Wheezings, shortness of Breath, and difficulty of Breathing, causing an admirable Expectoration. It opens Obstructions in the Urinary Parts and Passages, expelling Sand, Gravel and tartarous Matter thence; and powerfully resists the Poyson of mad Mogs. Dose so much at a time as may make the Vehicle, whether Mead, Cyder or Wine, pleasantly acid.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture.* Outwardly applied, it is good to give ease in the Pain and heal the Puncture of a Nerve or Tendon. It gives ease also in the Gout in any Part, arising from a cold Cause. Inwardly taken also from ten to twenty or thirty drops (according to Age and Exigency) in any proper Vehicle, it expels Wind, prevails against the Cholick, and alleviates all sorts of inward Convulsions; is a good Hysterick, and a singular thing against the Strangury, or any Obstruction of the Urinary Parts.

XX. *The Spirit.* It is purely an Antipestilential and Alexipharmick Cordial; wonderfully comforting and warming the Stomach and all the other Viscera. It gives ease in Convulsions, and the Tortions of the Bowels proceeding from Wind, Poyson, or the Prevalency of acrid and sharp Humors. Dose one or two spoonfuls at a time, (being first dulcified) as need requires.

XXI. *An Observation.* The great Use we in England make of this Plant, is to Dye Cloth, Linnen or Woollen, Yarn, Silk, woven or raw, &c. into a yellow color; and also to give a green color to those Cloths or Silks, Yarn, &c. which have been first Dyed with Woad, into a blew color. And of this *Vitruvius* seems not to be ignorant, for that in his time he says, in *lib. 7. cap. 14.* That a yellow color coming upon a blew, changes it into a green. And for this purpose, there is a great deal of this Herb made use of in all Countries, and many Fields sown therewith, for this very Purpose of Dying Cloths, Stuffs, Silks, &c.

C H A P. CCXXXVII.

## of DYERS GREEN-WEED.

I. **T**HE Names. It has no known Greek Name: it is called in Latin, *Genista Tinctoria*; and in English, *Dyers-weed*, and *Dyers Green-weed*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is certainly of the Stock or Family of *Genista* or *Broom*; and is a singular Plant of the kind: and by reason it is our Common Green-weed, it is called *Genista Tinctoria vulgaris*. It is also called *Genistella infectoria*; *Genistella Tinctoria*; *Elos Tinctorius Brunfelsii*; *Fuchsii*, *Loniceri*; *Corneola Anguillarae* & *Casalpini*; *Chameluce Cordi*, & *Genista Tinctoria Germanica Baubini*: in English, *Dyers-weed*, *Green-weed*, and *Dyers Green-weed*.

Dyers green Weed  
common

III. *The Description.* It has a thick and woody Root, much dispersed under Ground: from whence rise up many small, tough, green Stalks, some of them having several Branches, about two feet in height or thereabouts; upon which do grow (without any order) a great many small, long Leaves, somewhat like those of Flax, of a sad green color. The Flowers grow at the tops of the Branches, not much unlike the Flowers of *Broom*, (of which this is a Species) but smaller, of an exceeding fair yellow color, but somewhat paler than those of *Common Broom*: the Flowers being pass'd away, there come in their places small flat Pods or Cods, lesser than those of *Broom*, in which is contained a little, flat, *Broom* like Seed.

IV. *The Place.* It grows in many uncultivated or unmanured Grounds throughout England; as also by the Hedges and Way sides, and in many open Commons. It grows also in fertile Pastures and Fields almost every where. Now it is sown in Fields on purpose for the Profit which is made thereof.



V. *The Times.* It flowers from the end of *June* to the end of *August*, and the Seed is ripe soon after.

VI. *An Observation.* *Clusius* sets forth another kind of *Dyers Green-weed*, which *Dodonæus* calls also *Genista Tinctoria*; but then it ought to be *Genista Tinctoria altera*. It has a thick and woody Root, which sends up Stalks, almost like those of the *Spanish Broom*. Upon these Branches do grow long and small Leaves, like *Flax*, green on the upper side, and of an hoary shining color on the other. The Flowers grow at the tops of the Stalks *Spike-fashion*, which are in Color and Form like the former. But this Plant grows not commonly in *England*, unless it is planted by the Curious in their Gardens.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of this our *Common Dyers Green-weed*, are the same with those of our *Common Broom*, which we have already at large declared in *chap. 84. sect. 7. ad 29.* of this Book aforegoing, to which you are referred.

VIII. *An Observation.* Tho' the Medical Virtues of this Plant are admirable, and not in the least inferior to those of our *Common Broom* aforementioned; yet the chief Use our People in *England* have of it, is, for Dying of Cloth, Stuffs, Silks, Yarn, Woollen and Linnen, &c. for the Dyers do Dye a yellowish green Color with it, viz. with the Leaves and Stalks; and therefore provide themselves of it in great Stores: and for which Reason, in some places, whole Fields are sowed with it, as with the *Luteola* or *Dyers-weed* in the Chapter just aforegoing.

## C H A P. CCXXXVIII.

### Of EARTH-BALLS.

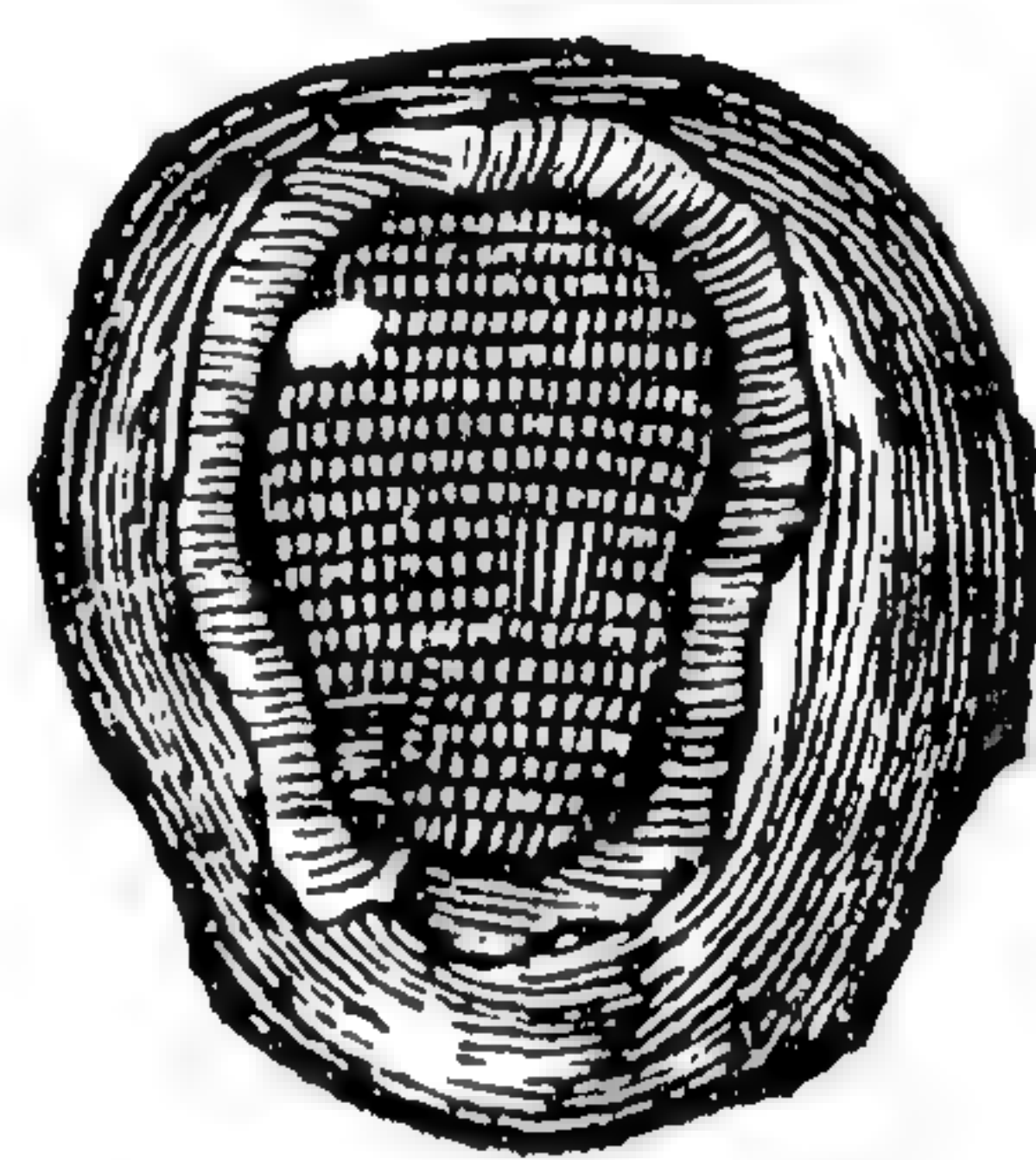
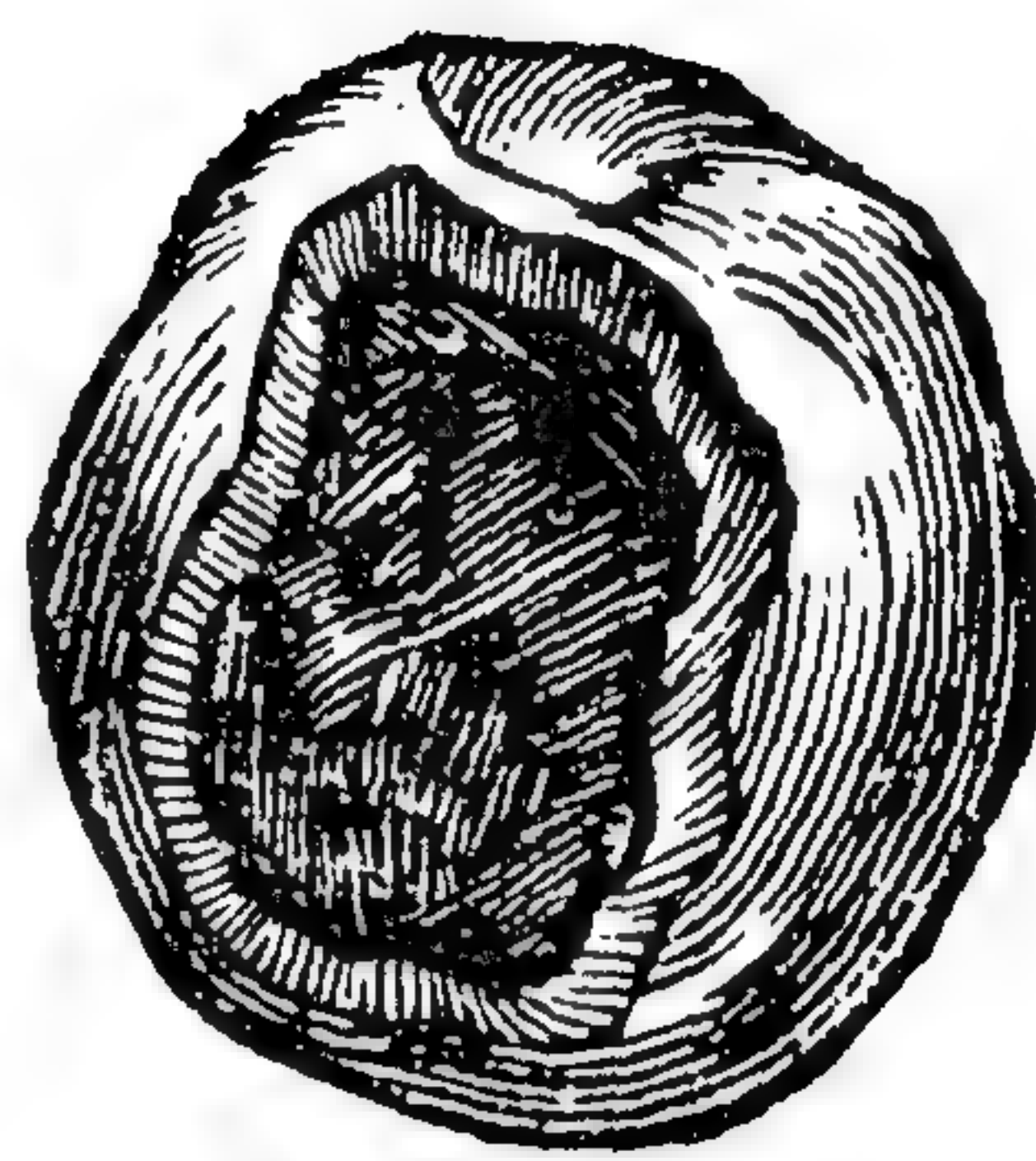
I. *THE Names.* This kind of Plant is called in *Greek*, *ἡ ἔδα, ἡ ἔδα, ab imbribus; vel, ἡ ἔδα, ab hamore*: in *Latin*, *Tuber Terræ, pl. Tubera Terræ*: in *Arabick*, *Ramech, Alchamech, Tamer* and *Kema*: in *English*, *Earth-balls*, and *Under-ground Malbromes*.

II. *The Kinds.* *Matthiolus* will have three sorts of these Balls; but then with the *Tubera Cervina*, there will be four. We divide them into two kinds, viz. 1. *Tuber Terræ vulgare*, The common Earth-ball. 2. *Tuber Cervinum, pl. Tubera Cervina*, Deers Earth-balls. Of the *Vulgar* or *Common* *Matthiolus* makes three sorts, viz. 1. One whose Pulp is white. 2. One whose Pulp is more brown; and the Rinds of both of them black and full of Chaps. 3. One which is less pleasant or insipid in Taste, and whose Rind is smooth and more brown.

III. *The Descriptions.* They, viz. the *Common Earth-balls*, have no Roots, but grow under Ground, viz. under the Superficies of the Earth, yet not cleaving thereto, causing it sometimes to swell, and sometimes to break, gape or cleave, by which it is discerned where they grow, being of a black or brown color on the outside, and of a soft white Substance within, having, as *John Baptista Porta* says, under the outward Skin certain small black Substances, which are the Seed, (tho' *Pliny* says they have none.) This Seed is like unto the Seed of the *Cypress-tree*,

by which they not only propagate themselves where they grow naturally; but as it has been often observed, they have sometimes been found growing where the Parings of them have been cast. These *Tubera* are unequally round, blackish and rough, whose Skins, Shells or Outfides, are without Roots, Fibres or Leaves; and within, their Pulp is white or whitish.

### Earth Balls common



### Earth Balls Deers

IV. *The Tubera Cervina, or Deers Earth-balls*, which I suppose *Matthiolus* intends in his *Epistles*, lib. 3. *Epist. ult.* growing under Ground in the Woods of *Bohemia*, &c. are always unevenly round, and rugged; their outward Skin is blackish, and the inner Pulp or Substance whitish: while they are fresh they have a strong and evil Smell, which in drying, they lose.

V. *The Places.* The first kinds grow plentifully in *Tuscany*, and several other places of *Italy*: they also grow in *Spain*, *Germany*, *France* and *England*, not only in dry and sandy Grounds, but also in such as are more moist, and in places where Shrubs grow, as in Copses, Groves, Parks, woody Land, &c. The *Deers Earth-balls* grow also in Woods, and where Deer do much haunt, especially where they Couple, (as the former also do.) Hunts-men and Country People imagine, that these *Deers-balls* grow up out of the Sperm of those Beasts, which sometimes falls on the Ground; others think, that they are first produced by their Urine; but these are wild Conjectures and Country-mens Philosophy, and so not much to be trusted to; however, it is probable, that in some places that Beast's Urine, &c. may add to their Growth, and the Encrease of their Substance.

VI. *The Times.* They flourish and encrease in *April*, *May* and *June*, and are in Perfection in *June*, *July* and *August*.

VII. *The Qualities.* *Galen* and *Matthiolus* say they have no manifest Quality in them: *Avicen* says they have a more earthy than watry Substance, and so abound more with saline than with sulphureous or



or spirituous Principles. The Deers Earth-balls seem to be temperate in Quality, as to Heat or Cold, Moisture or Dryness; and are Alexipharmick, Galactogenetick and Spermatogenetick.

VIII. *The Specification.* The Common, if much eaten, are said to breed Wind, and to engender the Palsy and Apoplexy. The Deers are said to provoke Lust to the last Degree.

IX. *The Preparations.* The first are used mostly in, 1. *A Pickle.* 2. *A Decoction in Wine.* The Deers Earth-balls are used in, 3. *A Pouder.* 4. *A Decoction in Wine.* 5. *A Fumigation.*

#### The Virtues.

X. *The Pickle of the Common kind.* They are used as Sawce, and are very pleasant to the Palate, but breed gross and melancholy Humors more than any other Food; they are hard of Digestion, and in some People rise again in the Stomach. Some eat them roasted in the Embers; and some boiled in Broth, and so eat them with Pepper, Salt, Vinegar and Oil; they certainly encrease Lust.

XI. *The Decoction in Wine.* It provokes Lust, as the Sallet before does: but after the Decoction is made, you may dress the Substance with Pepper, Salt, Vinegar and Oil, to be eaten as before. *Pamphylus* or *Diphylus* in *Athenæus* will have it, that they yield a good Juice, ease the Belly by excreting the Excrements, are windy and encrease Seed.

XII. *The Pouder of the Tubera Cervina.* They are first cut into pieces, then dried by hanging them on a String; after which they are reduced to Pouder, by beating in a Mortar. Dose of the Pouder a dram and half in a Glass of generous Wine, or some other Vehicle provoking Lust: it wonderfully incites to Coition, by breeding much Seed, and encreases Milk in Nurses Breasts: it may be taken also in some Ptsan, with a little Sugar and Long Pepper added thereto.

XIII. *The Decoction in Wine.* It has all the same Virtues with the Pouder, more especially if a dram or dram and half of the Pouder be given at a time in it. Thus taken, the Medicament expels Poyson, and defends against the poysonous Bitings of venomous Creatures.

XIV. *The Fumigation.* If the dried pieces of the *Tubera Cervina* be put upon live Charcoal, and the Fumes be received up the Womb by a Funnel, help Women troubled with the Mother, and open the Passages of the Womb when they are closed, thereby in some measure provoking the Terms.

*castanum majus*, *Agricastanum majus*, *Apios Turneri*, *Panaseolus Casalpini*, (because the Vulgar eat the Root of it instead of Bread and Cheese) *Bulbocastanon grandius Lugdunensis*, *Nucula Terrestris major*, The greater Earth-nut, or Ground-nut. I am almost of Opinion, that this Plant or Species is the true *Oenanthe Dioscoridis*. 2. *Agricastanum*, vel *Bulbocastanum minus*, *Bulbocastanum mas Tralliani*, *Bulbocastanum alterum foliis & bulbis minoribus Camerarii*; *Ornithogali Species Loniceri*, *Nucula Terrestris minor*, The lesser Earth or Ground Nut.



Earthnut Greater.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Greater Ground-nut, has a large tuberous Root, not fully round or smooth, but bunching out in one place or another, and somewhat rough, of a blackish brown color on the outside, and white within, of a pleasant Taste, between a Chest-nut and a Filberd; for the most part eaten raw, by reason of its Pleasantness, tho' some have also roasted it by the Fire, or under the Embers. From this Root come forth several long Stalks of Leaves, of a bright green color, which are finely cut in and divided, something like unto Parsley Leaves, which grow on the middle or top of the Stalk, as *Dodonaus* says, when he compared them; but they are larger than the next, of Small Earth or Ground Nuts: from among these Leaves rises up a slender Stalk, a foot or more high; having many Leaves like our English Saxifrage, bearing at the tops many small white Flowers in an Umbel, which turn into small, long, blackish Seed, smelling something sweet.

IV. *The second, or Lesser Earth or Ground Nut,* has a small tuberous or roundish brown Root, like the former, but lesser; from whence rises up a long, slender, whitish Stalk or String, (call it by which Name you please) which is as it were the Clew, which leads you from the upright Stalk to the Root in the Ground; and runs four or five inches deep into the Earth, but folding or crumpling it self to and fro unto the top of the Ground, from whence it rises up a little bigger, but naked or bare of Leaves for an inch or two, and

C H A P. CCXXXIX.

Of EARTH--NUTS,

O R,

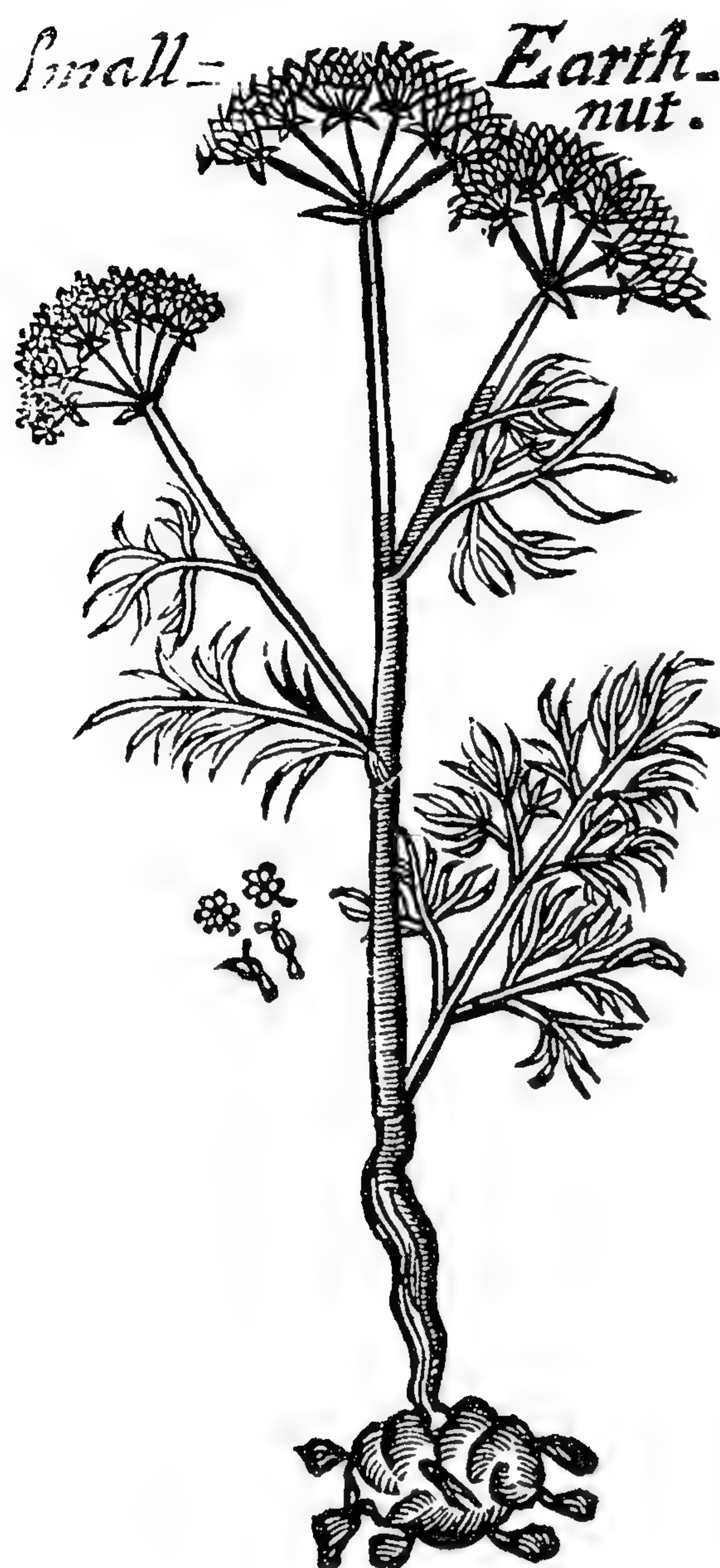
GROUND--NUTS.

I. *THE Names.* Some Authors say, that this Plant has no Greek Name, but what it has acquired from the Latin, which is, *'Agelocastanon*, & *Bulbocastanon*, which last word is taken from *Trallianus* lib. 7. in Latin, *Agricastanum*, *Bulbocastanum* and *Nucula Terrestris*: in English, *Earth-nuts*, *Ground-nuts*, *Earth Chest-nuts*, and *Kipper-nuts*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold, viz. I. *'Oivavon*, *Matthioli* (folio 627.) of *Bauhins* his Edition, *Bulbo-*



then sends forth from the sides of the same Stalk several small Stalks, of very fine cut Leaves, almost like them of *Parsley* or *Hemlock*, but much smaller and finer jagged, of a sad green color. At the top of the Stalk grow several Branches of white Flowers in Umbles, not unlike to the former, or those of *Dill*, but much lesser, and such like Seed as in the *Greater kind*, but that it is lesser; and is sharp in Taste.



V. *The Places.* The first grows Wild, and very frequently in *France*, *Germany* and *Italy*, and in some places in *England*; but with us it is for the most part nurs'd up in *Gardens*. The second grows with us in *Corn-fields*, and in *Meadows*, almost every where, as in the *Meadows* in *Lynn Regis*, near *Albaltow Church*, and in the *Pastures* going from *Hardwick*, within a Mile of *Kings-Lynn* to *Westwrench*: also in some of the *Meadows* by *Hampstead*, near *London*: in all which places I have gathered it. There is a Field adjoining to *Highgate*, on the right side of the middle of the Village, covered over with the same; and likewise in the next Field to the *Conduit-head* by *Maribone*, near the Way which leads to *Paddington*, not far from *London*: I have found it to grow also in many *Meadows* in *Kent* and in *Surry*, and in several other places.

VI. *The Times.* They flower in the beginning of *June* (just at which time their Roots are in Perfection) and in *July*; and the Seed is ripe in some little time afterwards.

VII. *The Differences.* The *Greater* differs from the *Lesser*, for that the Leaves are larger and greener: the Root also of the *Greater* is not so far within the Ground; and it also sends forth some Leaves from the Tuber or Bulb it self; whereas the *Smaller kind* has only the end of a small Root, (like a String as it were) which carries the Stem and Leaves upon it, as you may see express'd in the Figure.

VIII. *The Qualities.* They are hot and dry in the first Degree; the Seed in the second: they are

Aperitive, yet Astringent and Diuretick; Stomack, Nephritick, Spermatogenetick and Analeptick.

IX. *The Specification.* They provoke Urine, and peculiarly help such as Spit or Piss Blood.

X. *The Preparations.* The Seeds and Roots are chiefly used; and therefore you may have therefrom, 1. *A Powder of the Seed.* 2. *A Spirituous Tincture of the Seed.* 3. *The raw Roots.* 4. *The Roots prepared.* 5. *Sanguis, or Blood of the Roots.*

#### The Virtues.

XI. *The Powder of the Seed.* You may give it to a dram or dram and half in a Glass of White Port Wine, Morning and Night, against the Strangury, Sand, Gravel and tartarous Matter in the Reins, Ureters and Bladder; it opens Obstructions of the Passages, provokes Urine, and expels Wind.

XII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It has the former Virtues, and may be given from one to three drams in any fit Vehicle. It is very Stomack, warming, comforting and strengthening a cold and weak Stomach. It expels Wind from the Stomach and Bowels, gives ease in the Cholick, and is of good Use against all sorts of Fluxes of the Belly.

XIII. *The raw Roots.* They are commonly eaten as *Filberds* and raw *Chest-nuts* are eaten; they yield a good Juice, which cleanses the Urinary Passages, pleases the Stomach, and nourishes in Consumptions.

XIV. *The Roots prepared.* They are prepared by baking in an Oven, covered with Milk; or by boiling them in Water as *Turneps*, *Parsneps* or *Carrots*; and then dressing them up with Butter, Pepper, Salt, and a little Vinegar: they gratify, please and strengthen the Stomach, restore in Consumptions, and provoke Urine. The Root roasted in Embers, stops Bleeding, and is good for them who Vomit, Spit or Piss Blood, or have a Bloody-flux, or any other Flux of the Bowels. The raw Root does also the same thing.

XV. *The Sanguis or Blood.* It is prepared as is that of *Cullions Sweet* in chap. 184. sect. 22. *Parsneps*, *Carrots*, *Orchis*, *Satyrium*, and other like Roots. It has all the former Virtues of the Roots, whether raw, roasted, baked or boiled; and is much more powerful, being given from half an ounce to an ounce or more, drinking with it a Glass of generous Wine. It is of singular Use for all Consumptive Persons, breed good Juices and plenty of Seed, and provokes Lust.

## C H A P. CCXL.

### Of EARTH-NUTS Pease and Wood.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek*, *Ἄμϑ*, *Fuchsi* and *Tragi*: *Πευδάμϑ*, *Matthioli*: *Χαμαίδαμϑ*, *Dodonai* and *Tubermontani*: in *Latin*, *Apios Tragi*, (I suppose from its Form, being Pear fashion;) *Pseudoapios Matthioli*, *Chamebalanus Dodonai*, (from its somewhat Resemblance to an Acorn;) *Terra glans pl. glandes Lobelii* & *Pena*, *Glandes Terrestris Clusii*: in *English*, *Wood* and *Pease Earth-nuts*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three sorts of them, viz. 1. *Balanus Lathyrine*, *Terra glandes*, *Balanus Pisane*, with all the rest of the Names in a foregoing



ing Section: Pease Earth or Ground Nuts. 2. *Astragalus sylvaticus Thalii*, *Lathyrus sylvestris*, Wood Earth-nuts, or Ground-nuts. 3. *Terræ glandes Americanae, vel Virginianæ*, American or Virginia Earth-nuts.



*Pease Earth Nuts.*



*Wood Earth nut*

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Pease Earth-nut, has Roots which are glandulous or tuberous, (not

much unlike in Shape to an Acorn, or some sorts of Pears) which are black and small, but much greater than Acorns, fastned to long Strings, and spread much under Ground; in Taste very like to a dry Chest-nut; out of which beneath does hang one or more long, slender Fibres or Strings; and out of which does also grow other Strings, near to the Head of the Root or setting on of the Stalk; unto which, creeping aslope under the Surface of the Earth, other kernelled or glandulous Roots do grow, by which way this Plant does very much multiply it self. From this Root spring several weak, slender, square, trailing Stalks, running upon the Ground four or five feet in length. The Leaves are thin and small, usually set two and two together upon slender Stalks, each having a Clasper at its end, taking hold of what stands next to it. The Flowers come forth at the Joints towards the tops of the Stalks, and at the tops of the same, standing upon long Foot-stalks, in Shape like those of Pease, but less, many growing together, being narrow, and of a deep reddish purple color, and bright, in Smell not unpleasant. They being pass'd away, there succeed, in their places, slender long Cods, in which are contained three or four small round Seeds.

IV. The second, or Wood Earth-nut, has not only greater, but longer and harder Roots, consisting of many black Particles, here and there sending forth Fibres, almost woody, or more hard than the former; the Stalks also are harder, and straked or cornered, and rise up to be about a foot high, small below, and somewhat larger above: the Leaves grow forth at the Joints of the Stalks, consisting sometimes of two, and sometimes of four, which are longish and narrow, and sometimes five on a Branch, fastned to one Foot, which at the setting on has two little Leaves or Ears, and one Clasper or Tendrel at the end. Out of the Bosoms of these Ears grow Stalks about two inches long, each of which usually carry a couple of Pease fashioned Flowers, of a crimson or purple color, which fading, usually become blew: after which Cods succeed, which are long, narrow, straight, round and black when they grow old, within which are contained in each Cod nine or ten white, round Seeds something less than a Tare.

V. The Virginian Earth-nut has a Root which spreads it self under Ground many ways, each String of Tubers or Glands consisting of a small String and a Gland, a small String and a Gland to the end of the same, each Gland being almost of an Oval fashion, thick in the middle, and narrow-pointed at both ends, where it is held by the Strings, and having many small Fibres proceeding from its Body in several places: from this Root rises up a Stalk, which spreads it self forth into many large Arms or Branches, and every one of them again are divided into several others, which are manifold. The Leaves are long and green, which are many, and set on both sides of a middle Stalk, the main Stalk it self winding it self upon any thing standing next unto it, and rising from a tuberous brown Root, as aforesaid. At the Joints of the Stalks with the Leaves, and in other places of the Stalks, come forth the Flowers, many standing together Spike fashion, of a dull bluish color, made almost like Hoods: after which, in Virginia, come Cods of Seed, but not bearing any with us: the Leaves and Stalks perish before Winter, and sprout from the old Root again in the Spring.

VI. The Places. The first grows in many places of Germany in Corn-fields, both with the Corn it self and also about the Borders of Fields among Briers and Brambles. The second, Gerard says, grows in Hampstead and Come Parks, near London; as also on



on *Richmond-beath*, and in several other places. That which grows in the Woods has a Root which is more hard and woody; but if it is planted or sown in Gardens, in a good Soil, it is more pulpy and tender. That from *America* grows not with us but in Manured Grounds; and with us they are all planted in Gardens.

VII. *The Times.* They all flower in *June*, *July* and *August*, and then the Nuts are dug up and gathered.

VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are much the same with the *Earth* or *Ground Nuts* in the former Chapter; so that we shall not need to say any more of them in this place.

## C H A P. CCXLI.

### of E D D O of Carolina.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Ἀρόν* *ἄρον*, *ἢ* *Ψευδοκολοκασία*: in Latin, *Aron* *Egyptium*, & *Pseudocolocasia*, (for the true *Colocasia* is the *Faba* *Ægyptia* *Dioscoridis*:) in English, *Eddo*, *Eddo* of *Carolina*, and *Carolinian Eddo*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is certainly of the Family of the *Arens* or *Wake Robins*, and is here only a singular Plant.



III. *The Description.* It has a great and bulbous or rather tuberos Root, in some more round than in others, some of which are small and long with the *Ranunculus*, as large as the Root of a great Squill, or thick, big, round Turnep, having a thin brownish Skin on the outside, and white within, cutting very firm or hard, closer than a heavy close Turnep; some of them are reddish on the outside, having by small strings many bulbous or tuberos Heads, shooting from all sides thereof, whereby the Root encreases, from whence many Fibres grow deep into the Ground. From this Root shoot forth several very large thi-

ning green Leaves, almost of the Shape or Fashion of *Arum* or *Wake Robin*, pointed at the ends, but much rounder, each of them a foot and half, and some of them near two feet long, and a foot, fifteen inches, or foot and half broad, not so thick and fappy as *Aron* Leaves, but thinner and harder, full of Veins running every way, and refusing Moisture, tho' they be laid in Water, standing every one upon a very thick Stalk, about three feet or something more in height, as I have seen them in *America*, especially in *Carolina*; or about five feet high, as they grow in *Ægypt*, as Authors relate. This Stalk is not set to or fastned to the Leaf at the very Division of the Leaf into two parts, as the *Aron* or *Wake Robin* is, but more towards the middle, somewhat like unto the *Water Lillies*; the Division of each Leaf at bottom, being much rounder than those of the *Wake Robin*. As this Plant is long, and the Leaves thereof very great, without any other main Stalk (for a long time) but only the Stalks of Leaves, so it has been reported to be without Flower and Seed, but very falsely; because the Encrease which it usually has, is by the Fibres, which run and spread themselves from the Root, or by bits of the Root cast into holes or hills in mellow Ground: they usually cut one tuberos Root, as big as a large Apple, into twenty or thirty pieces, so as every piece may have a small quantity of the outside Skin upon it; these being planted in those made or prepared holes, in Artificial Hillocks of moist fat Earth in the Spring time, will all for the most part of them grow, so that a Crop of the Roots may be gathered in *July* and *August* following; which is the Reason that never any Stalk of Flowers, Fruit or Seed are seen upon them. But if these great Roots are suffered to continue for many Years in a place, (so as they may be defended and preserved from the Frost) you will find, that between these very tall Stalks of Leaves that there will rise up one Stalk, and sometimes two or three, according to the Years of the Age and Strength of the Plant; which length of time helps to the fructifying thereof, for otherwise it would not bear any shew of Hose, or Pestel, or Flower, as I my self, who have planted them, have manifestly seen. Each of these Stalks are much shorter than those of the Leaves, at the tops of which they bear a long open Husk; in the midst of which rises up for the most part three several narrow Husks or Hofes, (never one alone, as the *Arum* or *Arisarum* do) with every one their Pestel or Clapper in the middle of them, which is small, whitish, and about six or seven inches long; from the middle downwards it is bigger, and set round about with small whitish Flowers, smelling very sweet, the lowermost first flowering, and so by degrees upwards, which last not above three days, and from the middle upward bare or naked, ending in a small long point. After the Flowers are all past, the lower part abides, and bears many Berries, like as *Arum* or *Arisarum* do, but much paler and smaller.

IV. *The Places.* It grows plentifully in *Ægypt*, being planted there for their only Use in Meats, and for Food, which they seldom take without it. It grows naturally in *Candia*, as *Bellonius* says; and in *Portugal*, as *Clusius* reports. It grows also in *Italy* in many places, and in the Country of *Salerno* in the Kingdom of *Naples*, as *Columna* relates. It grows also in the Islands of *Java* and *Surrat*, where they use it as familiarly as they do in *Ægypt*, as the *Dutch* have declared in their Navigation thither, Anno 1595. It is also found in several places of *Africa*, and in divers other places, which *Theophrastus* remembered. Some will not have it called *Arum* *Egyptium*, because our late Travellers say, that



for some Ages it has not been known to grow there at all; 'tis possible, that for some Years past it may have been neglected and disused; yet I am apt to believe, if good search was made for it there, by industrious and skilful Botanists, it might be found again. It grows in a vast plenty in *Carolina*, it being a great part of the Food of the Country, insomuch as most Families in that Colony plant whole Fields with it, consisting of many Acres, for the principal and almost sole Subsistence of their Families, it being there of a very great Encrease.

V. *The Times.* It comes up from the planted bits in the Spring time, and the Roots come to their Perfection in *July, August, September* and *October*, proportionally according to the times they were planted in. It Flowers (when it is of Age, so as to come to the Perfection of Flowering) with its Hofs and Pettels or Clappers very late, even in warm Countries, seldom before *October* or *November*, and yet the Fruit or Berries do not often come to Perfection.

VI. *The Qualities.* The Root (for nothing else of this Plant is used) is hot and dry in the end of the third Degree: it is Aperitive, Absterfive, Inciding, Digestive, Discussive and Carminative, Stomack, Pectoral, Hyfterick and Arthritick; Alexipharmick, Chylifick and Analeptick: it is very sharp and biting in the Mouth, not to be tasted of without Caution; yet it is more biting in some Countries.

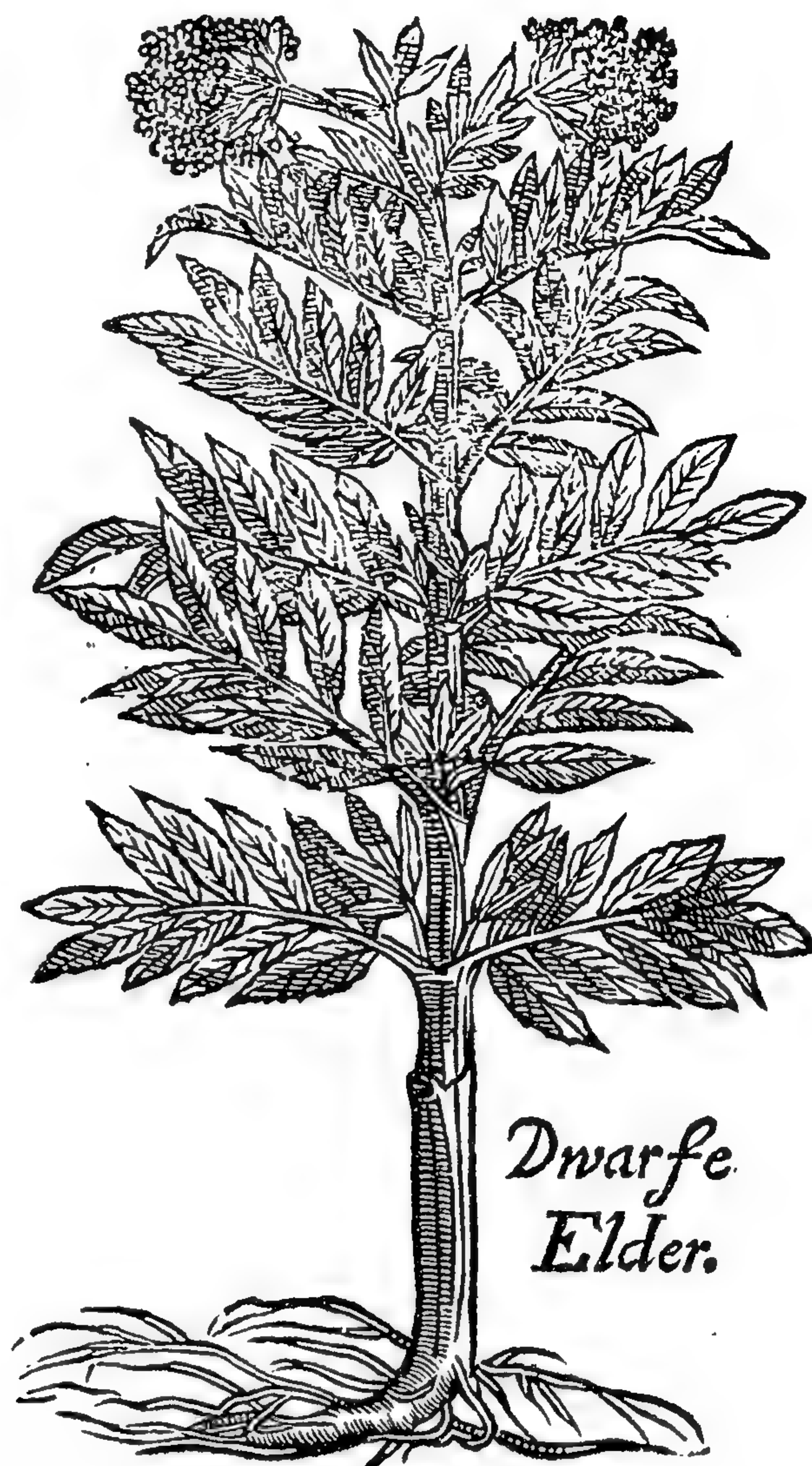
VII. *The Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same in every Respect with those of *Aron* or *Wake Robin* Roots in Chap. following of this Work, so that I need say no more thereof in this place; this Plant being indeed a kind of *Aron* or *Wake Robin*.

VIII. *An Observation.* In *Carolina* they boil them in Water till they are soft, then they eat them with Butter, Vinegar, Salt and Pepper; they are incomparable Food, and the very best of all Roots in the World which are eaten boiled: they are grateful to the Palate, pleasing to the Stomach, very Nutritive and Restorative in Consumptions: but in the boiling of them, you must be sure to do it so well as to take away all the biting Quality of them; lest, being hot and biting in the Throat, they should cause an Inflammation in those Parts, and also disoblige the Stomach.

IX. *Observat. 2.* In that Country, when I was there, they made the greatest part of their Bread of the Roots boiled soft, by mixing therewith fine Flower of *Maize* or *Indian Wheat*, and kneading it in with their Hands. It made wholesome, good-tasted Bread, which was very nourishing, and which would keep moist a great deal longer than that which was made of *Maize* or *Wheat* alone.

X. *Observat. 3.* Of the boiled Root a *Sanguis* or *Blood* may be made, as you make it of *Comfrey*, *Orchis*, *Satyron* and *Parsnep* Roots, which not only nourishes much and restores in Consumptions, but also breeds Seed, and cures Impotency in Men.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold, viz. 1. *Ebulus*, *Sambucus hamilis vulgaris*, The common Dwarf Elder, Wall-wort or Dane-wort. 2. *Ebulus foliis laciniatis*, Jagged Dwarf Elder, or Wall-wort.



*Dwarfe  
Elder.*

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common Dane-wort, has a Root which creeps under the upper Crust of the Ground, springs up afresh in divers places, being of the Bigness of a Man's Finger or Thumb; it is tough, and of a good reasonable Length, having a very great many Branches and Fibres springing from it, being more excellent for Medical Uses than the Leaves. From this Root rises up a four-square, rough, hairy Stalk, which is full of Joints, like to young Branches and Shoots of Elder, and rising to be four or five feet high. The Leaves are winged, and grow by couples, with wide Distances, each Leaf consisting of many small Leaves, somewhat narrower than the Elder-tree Leaves, but else so like, that they might easily deceive one not very well vers'd in the Plants: these Leaves stand upon a thick ribbed Stalk, of which every one is long, with a fit Breadth, and finely cut in on the edges, like a Saw, yet the Dents are wider and greater than in the Leaves of the Common Elder. At the tops of the Stalks grow Tufts or Umbles of white Flowers, dash'd or tip'd with red; they grow in Umbles, very like those of the Elder-tree, but more sweet in Smell, with five little Chives in them, pointed with black: which being pass'd away, black Berries succeed, very like Common Elder Berries, full of a red Juice whilst they are fresh, and in which are contained small, hard, long Kernels or Seed. This Plant is very like to Elder in Leaves, spoky Tufts and Berries, but has not a woody Stalk, but only brings forth green herby Stalks, which wither away in Winter, rising again every Spring from the old Root; but it is doubtless a kind of Elder, as may appear by the Leaves, Flowers and Fruit, as also by the Smell and Taste; in all which Particulars, this is very like to that.

IV. *The second, or Jagged Dwarf Elder,* has a Root like to the former, very full of Branches and Fibres, from which spring up Stalks like the other also, and indeed in all things, excepting in the Leaves.

C H A P. CCXLII.

Of E L D E R Dwarf.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek*, *Χαμαειδων*: in *Latin*, *Chamaeae*, *Ebulus*, *Sambucus hamilis*; and in *English*, *Dwarf Elder*, *Dane-wort*, and *Wall-wort*.



Leaves, it is so like to the former, that there is no Difference: but the Form of the Leaves does so alter the whole Face of the Plant, and put it out of Knowledge, like the *Jagged Elder*, that scarcely any one would think it to belong to the first kind; the Flowers, Fruit and Smell only making us to judge of the Species, and whereunto it is to be referred; for the Leaves are almost as much jagged and divided as the *Jagged Elder*, which is the only thing in which this differs from the first before described.

V. *The Places.* The first grows Wild in many places of *England*, where, if it is once gotten into the Ground, it will so creep and run, that it will be difficult to get it forth again. It grows in untill'd places near to Hedges, Ditches and common Ways, and in the Borders of Fields. It grows plentifully in the *Lane* at *Kilbury Abby* by *London*; as also in a Field by *St. Joans* near *Dartford* in *Kent*, and in the Highway at *Old Brantfold* Towns-end next towards *London*, and in many other like places. The second is only nurs'd up with us in *Gardens*.

VI. *The Times.* They flower in *July*, and the Berries are ripe in the latter end of *August*, but for the most part in *September*.

VII. *The Qualities.* It is said to be hot and dry in the third Degree; Aperitive, Absterfive, Discussive, Diuretick, Pectoral, Hepatick, Nephritick, Hysterick, Arthritick, and Emetick or Cathartick.

VIII. *The Specification.* It is peculiar for curing the Dropfy. The Roots and Seed ate of greatest Force to purge away watry and pituitous Humors, and the Leaves have the chiefest Strength next, to digest, waste away and consume: the Juice of the Berries are weakest of all.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Decoction or Infusion in Wine.* 4. *A Pouder of the Grains or Seeds.* 5. *An Oil or Ointment.* 6. *A Cataplasme of the Leaves.* 7. *Ebuli-mel, or Honey of Wall-wort:* of all which things we shall now treat in Order.

#### *The Virtues.*

X. *The liquid Juice.* This and all other Preparations of *Dwarf Elder* are more efficacious or powerful than those prepared from *Common Elder*, in all the Diseases, and for all the Purposes unto which that is applied, but more especially in those Cases in which *Elder* is little or nothing prevalent. The Juice of the Root applied to the Throat, prevails against the Quinsy and Kings-evil. The Fundament bathed with it, prevents the falling of it down; the same also put up the Womb in a Pessary, or injected with a Syringe, brings down the Terms in Women. It is also a mighty Purger of flegmatick and watry Humors, and has been approved as the most effectual thing against an Anasarca or Dropfy of the whole Body. Dose from two to four Spoonfuls or more in White Port Wine, Morning and Night, according as the Strength of the Patient will bear it.

XI. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues; and given before the coming of a Fit of an Ague, it prevails so effectually against it, that it will either put it off or make it much more easy; and at second taking seldom fails of perfectly curing it. It opens Obstructions of the Brest and Lungs, incides and dissolves pituitous and tartarous Matter in those Parts, or the Urinary Vessels, carrying off the morbidick Matter of Catarrhs, Stone, Gravel, Gout, Kings-evil, Jaundice, Dropfy, and other like Diseases. Dose two or three Spoonfuls in White Wine, Morning and Night.

XII. *The Decoction or Infusion in White Port Wine.* They have all the Virtues of the liquid Juice and Essence, but much weaker in Operation, and therefore much better and safer to be given to Children, Women kind, and weak People. It cures Agues in Children in two or three Doses, given two hours before the coming of a Fit. And being taken to five, six or eight ounces in the Morning fasting, and sometimes also at Night going to Bed, it prevails against a Cachexia and Leucophlegmatia; and has had a good Effect in curing the Kings-evil and Dropfy.

XIII. *The Pouder of the Grains and Root.* The Pouder of the dried Berries or Seed, given to a dram in White Port Wine fasting, has the Virtues of the liquid Juice, Essence and Decoction; for it mightily provokes the Terms, and carries off the Water in Dropsies, and cures Struma's. Being given in Decoction of *Chamapitys* or *Ground Pine*, with a little *Cinnamon*, it is an approved Remedy for all Joint-Aches, Rheumatism, Gouts, Sciatica, Dropsies, and even the *French Disease* it self; for it eases the Pains, by withdrawing and expelling the Humors which are fluent, peccant and offensive. The Pouder of the Root works after the same manner, and does the same things.

XIV. *The Oil or Ointment made of the green Leaves, or Roots in May.* It is said to be an admirable Remedy for all external Aches, Pains, Cramps, Gouts, shrinking of Nerves or Tendons, and Lameness caused by Blows, Falls, Cold or other Accidents; and to warm, comfort and strengthen all the external Parts so affected; to mollify the Hardness, to open the Pores, and ease the Spleen, the grieved Parts being therewith anointed: it also cures the Piles or Hemorrhoids by anointing.

XV. *The Cataplasme of the Leaves.* It is Discussive and Arthritick; and of singular Use to be applied to the Throat in a Quinsy, and to dissolve strumous Tumors in the Neck. Applied to the Region of the Reins or Bladder, it is held to give ease in those Pains. Applied to the Testicles which are swollen and hard, it quickly eases the Pain and dissolves the Tumor: and put to the Fundament, it strengthens the Sphincter Muscle thereof.

XVI. *Ebuli-mel, or Honey of Dwarf Elder.* Often taken to two or three drams or more, as Age and Necessity require, it dissolves the Tartar of the Lungs, opens their Obstructions, as also the Obstructions of the Reins and Ureters, purging away gently Choler, Flegm and watery Humors; is good against the Bitings of Serpents, or of a mad Dog; prevails against the Colick and Stone, as also the Strangury or other Difficulty of making Water. It helps Coughs, Catarrhs, Hoarseness, Shortness of Breath, and Difficulty of Breathing. And outwardly applied, is good against old running Sores, putrid and fistulous Ulcers: and dissolved in Wine, it cures Sores and Ulcers in the Mouth.

#### C H A P. CCXLIII.

#### Of ELECAMPANE.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek*, *Ἐλεκαμπε*: in *Arabick*, *Jasin & Rasen*: in *Latin*, *Helonium*, *Inula*, *Enula*, *Enula Campana*: in *English*, *Elecampane*; but in some parts of *England* it is called, *Scab-wort* and *Horse-beal*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is a singular Plant of its kind. But



But *Anguilara* and *Cordus* took it to be the *Panax Chironium Theophrasti*. There is another Plant which is called *Helenium*, or *Helenium alterum Dioscoridis*, which is *Helianthemum* or *Dwarf Cistus*; but it is not akin, nor has any Relation to this, the which you may see (with all its kinds) in Chap. 131. foregoing.

## Elecampan



III. The Description. It has a Root which is great, thick and long, branched forth several ways, blackish on the outside and white within, of a very bitter Taste, but good Smell when it is dried, of a very compact and solid Substance whilst it is fresh and newly gathered. From this Root shoot forth many large Leaves, lying near the Ground, which are long and broad, small at both ends, somewhat soft in handling, yet rough withal to look upon, and very full of Veins; of a whitish green on the upper side, and grey underneath, slightly nicked on the edges, each of them standing upon a short Foot-stalk. From among these Leaves rise up several great and hairy Stalks, three or four feet high, with some Leaves thereon, compassing them about at the lower ends; and are branched towards the tops, bearing several large Flowers, like unto those of the Corn Marigold, both the Border and Leaves, the middle Thrum being yellow, which afterwards turn into Down, with some long, small, brownish Seed among it, all which is carried away with the Wind.

IV. The Places. It grows in moist Ground and shadowy places, more than in the dry; in the Borders of Fields and Lanes, and in other waste places almost every where, but more especially in fat and fruitful Land: it is sometimes found also upon Mountains, and shadowy places which are not altogether dry. It grows very much in the Fields on the left Hand going from Dunstable to Puddle-hill; also in an Orchard going from Colebrook to Ditton-Ferry, in the Way to Windsor, at Lidde and Folkstone near to Dover, by the Sea-side. I have often found it growing in Orchards in many parts of this Kingdom.

V. The Times. It flowers in June and July, and the Seed is ripe in August. The Roots are gathered for Use as well in the Spring, before the Leaves come forth, as in the Autumn or Winter.

VI. The Qualities. The Root is the chief thing which is used, and is hot and dry in the third Degree; full of Mercury and Sulphur: it is Aperitive, Absterfive, Astringent, Anodyne, Carminative, Digestive, Relaxive, Incarnative and Vulnerary; highly Pectoral, Stomack, Neurotick and Hytetrick; Emmenagogick, Sudorifick, Alexipharmick, Spermatogenetick and Analeptick.

VII. The Specification. It is peculiar against old Coughs, Catarrhs, and tartarous Matter obstructing the Lungs.

VIII. The Preparations. From the Root of this Herb you may make the following Preparations, viz. 1. A Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Syrup. 4. A Decoction or Infusion. 5. A Powder. 6. An Electuary. 7. An Ointment. 8. A Balsam. 9. A Cataplasm. 10. A distilled Water. 11. A Spirituous Tincture. 12. An Acid Tincture. 13. An Oily Tincture. 14. A Saline Tincture. 15. A Spirit. 16. A distilled Oil. 17. Potestates or Powers. 18. An Elixir. 19. A fixed Salt. 20. Sanguis or Blood. 21. The Preserve or Conserve. 22. Emulsi-mel or Honey of Elecampane.

## The Virtues.

IX. The liquid Juice. It expels Wind in the Stomach and Bowels, and takes away pricking Pains and Stitches in the Side, caused by the Spleen: it is also good against Coughs, Colds, Wheezings, Shortness of Breath, and Obstructions of the Lungs by tartarous Matter. Dose two or three spoonfuls in a Glass of generous Wine, Morning and Night.

X. The Essence. It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice; besides which, it strengthens the Viscera much more, and secures a Person lately cured of a Dropsy, that the Disease shall not return again upon the old Foot. It is good against the Obstruction of Urine, provokes the Terms in Women, and facilitates the Delivery of a Woman in Travail, brings forth both Birth and After-birth; it is good against Vapors and Fits of the Mother, resists Poison, and prevails against the Venom of the Viper, Rattle-Snake, and other Serpents, as also the Bittings of mad Dogs; it destroys the Putridity of malignant and pestilential Fevers, contending even with the Plague or Pestilence it self. Dose two spoonfuls Morning, Noon and Night, in a Glass of generous Wine, if it is upon an Exigency; otherwise twice a day may be enough.

XI. The Syrup of the Juice. It is highly Pectoral, and causes Expectoration to a Miracle, being admirably good against Coughs, Colds, Catarrhs, Hoarseness, Wheezing, Shortness of Breath, Difficulty of Breathing, and all other Stoppages and Oppressions of the Lungs, dissolving the tartarous Matter lodged there, as also in the Reins, Ureters and Bladder: it gives ease to such as are pained with the Stone in the Reins or Bladder: in a word, it has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but must be taken in a larger Dose, because the truly Medicinal part of the Plant is so much clogged with Sugar.

XII. The Decoction or Infusion in Wine. It has all the Virtues of the foregoing Preparations, but less powerful; and therefore may be taken to three, four or five ounces, Morning and Evening: this being daily drunk, besides being a Pectoral, it is said to be good for such as have weak and dim Eyes; for it clears, strengthens and quickens the Sight admirably; kills and drives forth all manner of Worms



in Belly, Stomach or Maw. Gargled in the Mouth, and the Root chewed also, it eases the Tooth-ach from a cold Cause, and fastens loose Teeth, and helps to keep them from Putrefaction.

XIII. *The Pouder of the Root.* It warms and comforts a cold Stomach, rectifies the Indisposition of the Bowels, expels Wind, and gives ease in the Colick: it is good for such as spit or piss Blood, and prevails against the Bloody-flux, and other Fluxes and Weakness of the Bowels proceeding from a cold and moist Cause; and has indeed all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence and Syrup aforegoing. Dose from two scruples to a dram and half in Wine or some proper Vehicle, Morning and Night.

XIV. *The Electuary.* It may be made simply with the Pouder of the Root, but it is commonly compounded thus: *℞ fine Flower of Elecampane seven ounces, Nutmegs in powder five ounces, Flowers of Sulphur three ounces, Crocus Martis aperitive two ounces, Oil of Aniseeds one ounce, clarified Honey fifty four ounces: mix and make an Electuary.* Dose as much as a Chest-nut, or something more, washing it down with a Glass of prompt Wine, and this to be done Morning and Evening by all such as have any Obstruction of the Lungs, or Ulcer of the same, or spit or piss Blood, or have a Bloody-flux; it is of singular Use for all such Persons who have a Cachexia or Leucophlegmatia, and for Virgins who have the Green-sickness, and want their monthly Purgations. It strengthens the Tone of the Viscera so admirably, that such Persons who, by reason of vehement Obstructions, long Sickness, or Debilities of Age, or some other Accident, have not been able to go cross a Room, or up Stairs, have, by the taking hereof, in four or five days time, been able to go three or four Miles, and that so stoutly as to do it without complaining of any Weakness or Weariness. It opens Obstructions of the Thorax, eases Coughs, and stops the most profuse Catarrhs, tho' inveterate.

XV. *The Ointment.* It is good against Convulsions, Cramps, Aches, Rheumatick Pains, the Gout, Sciatica, Weakness of the Joints, and other like Distempers of the extrem Parts: if it is made of *the Pulp of the Root, or the Juice thickned by boiling four pound, mixed with Oil of Trotters, Beef-suet, of each one pound, Vinegar half a pound, Sal Nitre six ounces, Saccharum Saturni three ounces;* it will be an excellent Remedy for any Scab or Itch in Old or Young. It will yet be so much the better if *Flowers of Sulphur four ounces* be also added to the Composition.

XVI. *The Balsam.* It is an extraordinary thing to cure Wounds and Punctures of the Nerves and Tendons: it heals green Wounds at two or three times dressing: and it digests, cleanses, incarnates, dries and heals moist and running Sores, old Ulcers and rebellious Fistula's, some good inward Wound-drink being taken in the mean while. Applied in the Gout, it gives ease to the Pain.

XVII. *The Cataplasim.* It is made of *the Meal or fine Pouder of the Root, mixt with white Bread, Milk and White Lilly Roots.* It suppurates Tumors or Apostems, eases in arthritick Pains; and applied to the side, gives ease in Pains of the Spleen. It discusses windy Tumors of the Cods; and where the Swelling is such, that it cannot be dissipated without breaking, it quickly brings it to Maturation.

XVIII. *The distilled Water.* It is Pectoral and Carminative, and good to be used as a Vehicle, to convey other Preparations of the Root in; it is good to cleanse the Skin of any common Defecation, and to be mixed with white Sugar Candy to put into the Eyes, to clear the Sight of Clouds,

Films, or any other thing which may obfuscate or dim the same.

XIX. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It warms, comforts and strengthens the Stomach and other Viscera, resists Poyson, and the Venom of Serpents and mad Dogs, helps Digestion, and represses Melancholy; kills Worms in Children, and provokes the Terms in Women, where they have been long stopt; and is a singular thing in all Coughs, Colds, Catarrhs and Defluxions of Rheum upon the Joints and extrem Parts of the Body. Dose two or three drams in a Glass of generous Wine, or in the distilled Water dulcified.

XX. *The Acid Tincture.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice and Essence, powerfully opens all manner of Obstructions, and fortifies the Stomach and Bowels to a Miracle. It creates a good Appetite, causes a good Digestion, incides or cuts tartarous Humors which breed the Stone and Gout, dissolving and expelling them: it opens all Obstructions of the Lungs and Urinary Passages, causing a free Breathing and Expectoration, and cleansing the Reins and Bladder from Gravel, Sand and tartarous Mucilage, which causes the Strangury and Difficulty of Pissing. Dose so much as to make the Vehicle pleasantly sharp, three, four, five or six times a day.

XXI. *The Oily Tincture.* It is an admirable thing against Punctures and Contusions of the Nerves and Tendons: it gives ease in Convulsions, Cramps and Contractures of the Nerves, Tendons and Muscles; and is a mighty Relief in a cold Gout, if it is diligently anointed therewith, and well rubbed in. It gives ease in the Stone and Gravel, and in the Strangury, from what Stoppage soever: it expels Wind in the Bowels, and gives ease in the Colick, and this it does in this latter case, whether it is given by the Mouth or exhibited Clysterwise. If you give it inwardly by the Mouth, you may give it from ten drops to twenty or thirty, according to Age and Strength: if Clysterwise, you may give it to a dram: outwardly anointed upon Paralytick Members, it wonderfully strengthens and restores them.

XXII. *The Saline Tincture.* It is used for the most part outwardly to bathe all such Parts and Places as are affected with Scurff, Morpew, Spots, Blemishes, Yellowness or Tawnniness of the Skin, Herpes, Tettars, Ringworms, Scabs, Leprosy, or any other Defecation of the Cutis.

XXIII. *The Spirit.* It is highly Cordial and Pectoral, good against fainting and swooning Fits, Sickness at Heart and Stomach, and gives ease in the Colick, and Gripping in the Guts. It strengthens a weak Stomach, and causes a good Appetite and Digestion. It gives ease in a Cough, exterminates Colds, and conduces to the stopping of Catarrhs. It resists Poyson and the Venom of Serpents and mad Dogs; as also the Malignity of the Plague, and all sorts of malign and pestilential Fevers. Dose a spoonful or more at a time.

XXIV. *The distilled Oil.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice, Essence, Pouder, Electuary and Spirit, and may be given in place of all or any one of them, being much more powerful than them all. I have had great Experience of it in facilitating the Birth, and bringing away the After-birth. It powerfully provokes the Terms in Women where they are stopt; cures Vapors and Hysterick Fits. There is nothing better against Coughs, Colds, Catarrhs, Hoarseness, Wheezing, Shortness of Breath and Difficulty of Breathing; as also the Colick in Stomach or Bowels, than this Oil. You may give it from six drops to fourteen or twenty, dropping it first into white Sugar, and mixing them well; and then mixing all with a Glass of good generous Wine, and



and so drinking it off. It opens Obstructions of Reins and Bladder, and provokes Urine powerfully.

XXV. *The Potestates or Powers.* They have all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Powder, Spirit and Oil, and may be used to all the said Intentions, both internally and externally, but are indeed much more subtil and penetrating, striking to the Bone in a moment. They ease the Pain of the Head tho' extream, by snuffing them often up the Nostrils, and also bathing the Forehead and Temples therewith. Dose is fifty drops, more or less, in a Glass of generous Wine, and in case of Vapors or Fits, in a Glass of fair Water.

XXVI. *The Elixir.* This Medicament is only the *Potestates* exalted, and brought to the highest degree of Perfection. It is one of the greatest of all Pectorals and Anticolicks; and provokes the Terms in Women after an admirable manner. In a word, it has all the Virtues of the Powers, and performs whatever they can do, with Advantage. Dose from forty to sixty drops in any proper Vehicle.

XXVII. *The fixed Salt.* It is made of the whole Plant, burnt to Ashes whilst it is green. It is highly Diuretick, and a great Purifier of the Blood, destroying all præternatural Acids in the Juices and Humors, more especially in the Stomach, and other places of Digestion. Being mixed about a scruple or half a dram at a time with a spoonful of Juice of Limons, it takes away Vomiting immediately, tho' never so extream, and gives ease in the most pertinacious Colick.

XXVIII. *Sanguis or Blood.* It acuates the Juices of the Body, fortifies the Stomach, comforts the Faculties, cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, and puts whole Nature into an excellent Habit and Condition. And as it is one of the most admirable things in the World against Coughs, Colds, Catarrhs, Asthma's and spitting of Blood; so it is a most singular thing to restore in Consumptions, there being not many better things upon Earth. Dose from two drams to three, or more, according as the Necessity may require, in a Glass of homogeneous Wine, such as the Prudence of the Physician shall direct.

XXIX. *The Conserve or Preserve.* It may be taken in a Morning fasting against malign and infectious Airs; and in contagious and pestilential Times, there being very few things much better. I commend it for such as have had an Asthma of long continuance; for the constant taking of it for some considerable time, dissolves the Tartar of the Lungs, and causes free Breathing.

XXX. *Enula-mel or Honey of Elecampane.* It is highly Pectoral, and is very efficacious to warm and comfort a cold and windy Stomach, and to ease Prickings and stiches in the Sides; as also Pains of the Spleen, and to help Coughs, Catarrhs, Wheezing and Shortness of Breath. It is an excellent thing also for provoking of Urine, and to open Obstructions of the Womb where the Courses are stopt, suppressing Vapors, and preventing Fits of the Mother. Dose as much as a Wall-nut Morning and Night for some time.

*ba*: in Latin, *Intubus* & *Endivia*: in English, *Endive*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is either *Garden*, of which in this Chapter; or *Wild*, of which in the next. The first kind is called *Endivia hortensis*, *Intubus major Matiboli*, *Intubum sativum*, *Garden Endive*.



*Garden Endive.*

III. *The Description.* It has a Root which is long, white, with Fibres or Strings appendent to it, which withers and dies away after it has perfected its Seed. From this Root spring forth long Leaves, broad, smooth, and more green than white, like almost to those of Lettice, something notched in the edges. The Stalk grows up among the Leaves, being round and hollow, divided into several Branches: out of which, being broken or cut, there issues a Milk like Juice, a little bitter. The Flowers grow at the tops of the Branches, and consist of many Leaves, in color commonly blew, seldom white.

IV. *White Endive.* It is raised of the Seed of the former *Garden Endive* sowed (not in the Spring, as is usual, but) in July, whereby it remains till Winter, at which time it is taken up by the Roots, and laid for two hours in the Sun or Air, by which means the Leaves will become tough, and easily endure to be wrapped up into a heap; after which they are buried in the Earth, or in Sand, as some say, with the Roots upwards, so as no Earth or Air can get within, (which, if they could would cause Rottenness:) the which so covered may be taken up as need requires, and so used in Sallets all the Winter, as is usual in London, and many other places. This is called *White Endive*, and it seems, that the ancient Romans were not ignorant of it, *Pliny*, lib. 20. cap. 8. speaking to the same purpose.

V. *Curled Endive.* There is also another sort of *Garden Endive*, called *Endivia Calamistrata*, *Intubum intortum*, *Intubus Crispus* vel *Crispissimus*: this has a thick Root, with Fibres annexed, as the former has, which Root perishes, as does the whole Plant, after it has brought forth its ripe Seed. From this Root spring up many Leaves, not much unlike to the

C H A P. CCXLIV.

Of ENDIVE Garden.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Σίκας*: by the Arabians, *Dumbebe*, *Anubebe* and *Ende-*



the Leaves of the Curled Cabbage-Lettice, but much larger. From among these Leaves spring up strong and thick Stalks, set with the like Leaves, but less, and not so amply curled or crisped as those below, or as the Leaves were, before it ran up to Seed. The Flowers grow at the tops of the Stalks, much like the former, and are of a like blew color. This (as well as the first kind) being whited according to the following Directions, is called White Endive, and is much used in Winter time as a Sallet, with great Pleasure and Satisfaction: but this Curled Endive is much the tenderer, and far the fairer and better for that purpose.

VI. *The Places.* These grow in Gardens only, but not only with us, but also thro' all Europe.

VII. *The Times.* They are sown in the Spring, and they flower in June and July, and their Seed is ripe in August, the whole Plant perishing before Winter. But when they are sown in July, then they will remain till Winter, and so taken up, may be whitened, (by the former Directions) and so be preserved for Salleting all the Winter.

VIII. *The Qualities.* They are cold and dry in the second Degree; Aperitive, Astringent and Hepatick.

IX. *The Specification.* They are peculiar against burning Fevers, the burning Heat and also Stoppage of Urine.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Syrup. 4. A Decoction. 5. A Cataplasm. 6. A distilled Water. 7. A Powder of the Seed. 8. A Sallet.

#### The Virtues.

XI. *The liquid Juice.* It is a singular Cooler, and therefore cools the excessive Heat of the Stomach and Liver; and is profitable against Inflammations of the other Viscera, and, Heats in any other Parts of the Body: it is of very good Use to be used in the hot and burning Fits of Agues, to cool the same, being given three or four spoonfuls at a time, mixed with fair Water or distilled Water of the Plant.

XII. *The Essence.* It has the Virtues of the Juice; besides which, it cools the Heat and Sharpness of Urine, opens Obstructions of the Liver, Spleen and Urinary Parts, and heals the Excoriations of the same. Dose three or four spoonfuls at a time in a Glass of the distilled Water.

XIII. *The Syrup.* It is good in thin Rheums, causes Expectoration, helps the Strangury, and takes away the Burning and Scalding of the Water. Dose two spoonfuls or more at a time.

XIV. *The Decoction.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence and Syrup, but nothing near so powerful. It is usually made in Water, because it is more cooling, and more agreeable to the Nature of the Plant; and so it cools inward Inflammations, and heals admirably: it opens Obstructions of the Liver, Spleen, Gall, Reins, Bladder and Womb, and is said to be profitable against the Yellow Jaundice.

XV. *The Cataplasm.* It being applied, serves to attemperate and cool the Sharpness and Heat of the Humors, and qualify the sharp and corroding Matter which proceeds from ill-natured and fretting Ulcers. It is also good against hot and inflamed Tumors or Swellings, and pestilential Sores; and admirably helps not only the Redness and Inflammations of the Eyes, but also the Dimness of Sight: and gives present ease in the Gout.

XVI. *The distilled Water.* It is finely cooling, and a singular Collyrium to be used to sore, hot, inflamed, red and blood-hot Eyes, being dropt into them four, five or six times a day. It serves also for a Vehicle to convey some of the other Preparations in.

XVII. *The Powder of the Seed.* It has all the Properties and Virtues of the Juice and Essence; and if we may give Credit to Authors, it is rather the more powerful; besides, it is available for Faintings and Swoonings, and other Passions of the Heart, given in a Glass of generous White Port Wine or Madera, Morning and Evening. Dose one dram or dram and half at a time.

XVIII. *The Sallet.* It is singularly cooling; and being made of the *Whited curled Endive*, it is very tender and delicate, agreeable to the Stomach, cooling and refreshing the weak and fainting Spirits; and is one of the best Sallets, to be used both in Autumn and Winter time.

## C H A P. CCXLV.

### of E N D I V E Wild.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Σίεν μ. δνν, & ἀγρια*: in Latin, *Endivia sylvestris*, *Intubum sylvestre*; and in English, *Wild Endive*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold, viz. 1. *Endivia sylvestris angustifolia*, Narrow-leav'd Wild Endive. 2. *Endivia sylvestris, vel Campestris latifolia*, Broad-leav'd Meadow Wild Endive.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Narrow-leav'd Wild Endive, has a pretty thick, tough and fibrous Root, which perishes every Year, as that of the Garden does. From this Root several very long, smooth, green Leaves arise, lying on the Ground, narrower than the Garden Endive, and something more bitter. The Stalk is slenderer and lower than the other, yet growing many times half a yard high, being towards its top more full of Branches. On the tops of all which it bears small blew Flowers, like the Common Garden Endive; which being past away, there follows the like Seed also.

IV. *The second, or Broad-leav'd Meadow Endive,* has



has a thick, tough and woody Root, with many Strings adjoining thereto; from which rise up many broad Leaves, spread upon the Ground, like to those of Garden Endive, but lesser, and somewhat rougher: among which rise up many Stalks, immediately from the Root, every one of which are divided into several Branches, upon which do grow many blew Flowers, in Fashion like the former, save that they are lesser.

V. *The Places.* The second grows in Meadows, and Borders of Meadows in many places. The first is found to grow Wild in several High-ways, and upon the Heads of Ploughed Lands in several Parts of the Kingdom, as also upon wild and untilled barren Grounds, especially in chalky, stoney and gravelly places.

VI. *The Times.* They flower from the latter end of July to the end of August, the Seed ripening soon after.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with those of the Garden Endive in the former Chapter, so that no more need be said of them in this place.

VIII. *Nota.* In the Spring time the vulgar People are used to boil these Herbs in Pottage or Broths, for sickly Persons, and such as have weak and ill-disposed Stomachs; for so they correct the ill Ferment of the Part, strengthen the Ventricle, and purify the Mass of Blood.

white within, with a Pith in the middle, of a very pleasant Taste, but much more delicate, being Preserved or Candied with Sugar. From this Root spring up several Leaves, broad, almost like to Mallow Leaves, but cornered on the edges, and deeply dented or cut in, set round about with hard Prickles, sharp-pointed, and also a little crumpled, fat, of a blewish white, of an Aromatick or Spicy Taste, and each standing upon a long Foot-stalk, but they which grow up higher with the Stalk, do as it were encompass it at the bottom: these Leaves are gentle, or nothing so hard and prickly as when they grow older. The Stalk it self is round and strong, yet somewhat crested, having Joints, and Leaves on those Joints, more divided, sharp and prickly than the lower; this Stalk is thick, about a Cubit in Height, now and then something red below, branching it self out towards the top, which Branches have also several other Branches proceeding from them, each of them bearing on their tops several blewish, round, prickly Heads or Knots, about the Bigness of a Walnut, held in for the most part with six small, jagged, prickly Leaves under them, or encompassing the top of the Stalk round about, and standing like a Star; which Leaves, as well as Heads, are of a glistering blew, and sometimes are found greenish or whitish. The Flowers coming forth of the Heads are likewise blew, with white Threads appearing in the middle.

*Eryngo, or, Common Sea Holly.*



C H A P. CCXLVI.

of E R Y N G O,

O R,

S E A--H O L L Y.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἐρύγγιον*: in Latin, *Eryngium*, *Erynge Plinii*, *Centum Capita*; and by some Apothecaries it is called, *Iringus*: in English, *Eryngo* and *Sea Holly*.

II. *Nota.* Some refer *Acanos* to *Eryngium*; but *Lobel* doubts thereof, and refers it to *Drypis Theophrasti*; but *Casalpinus* to the *Crocodilion Dioscoridis*: *Lacuna* calls it *Glycyrrhiza spinosa*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make six several kinds of this Plant; but there are but two which are known to, and grow with us, viz. 1. *Eryngium Marinum*, *Eryngium Maritimum Baubini* & *Gesneri in hortis*, *Glycyrrhiza spinosa Lacune*, Our common or vulgar Sea Holly. 2. *Eryngium Mediterraneum Gesneri*, *Turneri*, *Gerardi*, *Lobelii*, *Eryngium Campestre Lobelii*; *Eryngium vulgare Baubini*, *Clusii*, *Camerarii*, (because in Germany there is no other so frequent;) *Eryngium Montanum*, *Matthioli* & *Lugdunensis*; *Eryngium Lacune*, *Cordi*, *Casalpini* & *Tabernmontani*, simply so called without any Epithite, and we in England call it, *Mediterranean*, *Mountain* or *Land Eryngo*.

IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common Sea Holly, has a Root of an admirable Length, even to eight or ten feet long, so that it can scarcely ever be all pulled up, and about the Thickness of a Man's Finger, set with Knots Rings or Circles here and there towards the upper part, but smooth and without Joints down lower, brownish on the outside, and very

V. The second, or Mediterranean Eryngo, has a long Root, like the former, but shorter and slenderer, yet nearly a Fingers Thickness, black without and white within, being of a Taste and Smell like the other, which whilst new sprung up, and that they are young, are also tender and fit to be eaten, tho' not altogether so sweet to be Eaten, nor fit to be Preserved, nor full of so Aromatick a Taste. The Leaves are diversly cut into several parcels or pieces, being all full of Prickles along the edges; they are more divided, more prickly, and less Aromatick than the former. The Stalk and Branches are not so thick as the first: but the Stalk is divided or spread out (like



(like it) into many Branches, which bring forth prickly Heads, but leffer than those of the other; from whence there also come forth blew Flowers, seldom yellow. There grow likewise, under every one of these Heads, six rough and prickly Leaves, like to those of the other, but thinner and smaller.



*Sea Holly or Eryngo*  
Mediterranean.

VI. *The Places.* The first is found upon the Sea Shore or Coast almost in every Country, as in *Spain, Italy, France, England, Holland*, and in most of the other *Northerly* Countries; it grows upon the Sea-side upon Beechy and Stoney Ground. It has been found growing plentifully at *Whitstable* in *Kent*; at *Rye* and *Winchelsea* in *Sussex*; and in *Essex* at *Landamer Lading*, at *Harwich*; and upon *Langtree Point*, on the other side of the Water; as also in *Gardens*, where it is sometimes planted. The second grows naturally on the *Mediterranean* Coasts, upon the Shores of the *Levant* Sea; as also in most parts of *Germany*, and in *Especial* in *Franconia*, in the Vineyards and Highways every where; as also in the upper and farther remote parts from the Sea, about *Narbone* in *France*, as *Lobel* and *Pena* say; but with us it is only nurs'd up in *Gardens*, where it very well thrives.

VII. *The Times.* They both flower in *June* and *July*, after the Summer solstice; and give ripe Seed in about a Month after, viz. in *August*.

VIII. *The Qualities.* They, viz. the Roots, are temperate in respect to Heat and Coldness, and dry in the first Degree, having a Thinness of Substance, as *Galen* says; *Aperitive, Absterfive, Anodyne, Carminative, Diuretick, Pectoral, Nephritick, Alexipharmick, Analeptick* and *Spermatogenetick*.

IX. *The Specification.* They are peculiar against *Stone, Sand, Gravel* and *Tartar* in the *Reins, Ureters* and *Bladder*, *Strangury*, and all *Obstructions* of those Parts, ease the *Colick*, and strongly provoke *Lust*.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *The Root, raw, roasted or boiled.* 2. *A Conditure of the same.* 3. *A Juice thereof.* 4. *An Essence.* 5. *A Decoction in Wine.* 6. *A Powder there-*

*of.* 7. *An Ointment.* 8. *A Cataplasme.* 9. *A distilled Water of the whole Plant.* 10. *The Juice of the Leaves.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XI. *The Root, raw, roasted or boiled.* They are thus eaten to provoke *Lust* and encrease *Seed*: they open *Obstructions* of the *Liver*, are good against the *Bitings* of *poysonous Beasts*, provoke the *Terms* in *Women*, prevail against *Convulsions, Cramps, Epilepsies*, and other like *Distempers* of the *Head* and *Brain*.

XII. *The Conditure.* The way of this dry Preserving them is thus: Take double or treble refined *Sugar* a pound or more, fair *Water* a pint or better; boil them together till they become a good strong *Syrup*: to which *Syrup* add (being almost cold) two ounces or more of choice *Damask-Rose Water*, an ounce of strong *Cinnamon Water*, and a grain and half of *Musk* in fine powder, (the three last must be mixed, and the *Musk* infused together first for twenty four or forty eight hours, and then strained out; and so put into the *Syrup*, being first half cold.) This being done, your *Roots* being washed, are to be laid to soak in fair *Water* for twenty four hours, and then very well pickt and cleansed; after which they must be boiled in fair *Water* for the space of four hours, till they are soft; after which they are to be taken out, and peeled clean, as you do *Parsneps*, and the *Pith* must be drawn out at the end of the *Root*; but if there is any whose *Pith* cannot be so drawn out, then you must slit them, and so take it out: these you must also keep from much handling, that they may be clean; put them into the afore prepared *Syrup*, in which let them remain to the next day, then set them on the *Fire*, in a fair broad *Confecting Pan*, (made of *Copper* or *Brass* double Tinned over) until they be very hot, but without any boiling at all; let them remain over the *Fire* an hour or more, removing them gently in the *Pan* from one place to another with a wooden *Slice*. This done, have in a Readiness a great *Cap* or *Royal Paper*, upon which strew some *Sugar* double or treble refined, upon which lay your *Roots*, having taken them out of the *Pan*. These *Papers* you must put into a *Stove* or *Hot-house*, or a warm *Oven*, to dry and harden; but for want of such a place, you may dry them over a gentle *Sand Heat*, in a *Sand Furnace*, or by laying them before the *Fire*. After this manner you may *Condite* or *Preserve* any other *Roots* whatsoever. The *Roots* thus *Condited* or *Preserved* are exceeding good for old and aged *People*, such as are withred and consumed with *Age*, and which want natural *Moisture*, or the *Humidum Radicale*, as it is called, and therefore of consequence must be good for such as are in *Consumptions*: they are also good for such as have almost lost the *Desire* or *Appetite* to *Veneral Acts*, nourishing and restoring the *Aged*, and helping against the *Defects* of *Nature* in the *Young*.

XIII. *The liquid Juice of the Root.* It may be taken to two or three ounces *Morning, Noon* and *Night* in a *Glass* of generous *Wine*, as *White Lisbon, White Madera, Mountain White Wine, &c.* It breeds *Seed* admirably, and is said to cure *Impotency* in *Men*. It prevails against the *Kings-evil*, the *Colick*, expels *Wind*, breaks the *Stone*, and drives forth *Gravel, Sand*, and other tartarous Matter out of the *Reins, Ureters* and *Bladder*, provokes *Urine*, and cures the *Strangury*, being drunk for about fifteen days together. One would not grutch to drink it for a Month, to have all these great things performed by it. It may be taken to four ounces, upon occasion.

XIV. The



XIV. *The Effence.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice; and by reason of its Fineness, much the better and pleasanter Medicine to be taken. It powerfully opens Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, Reins, Bladder and Womb; is good against the Yellow Jaundice, Dropsy and Gout, and provokes the Terms in Women. It is good against the Bitings of Serpents, and the Poyson of the *Aconite*, or other poysonous Herbs; but in case of the Stone, Gravel, Sand, Strangury, &c. it ought to be taken for twenty or thirty days together, first fasting in the Morning, and last at Night going to Bed. If the Use of this Medicine is continued longer, it not only removes the Stoppage of Urine and pissing by drops, with the Sand, Gravel and Tartar of the Reins, and all other Defects of the Urinary Parts, but it is said perfectly to cure them, as also those who are troubled with the Stone, so as that those Pains shall never return again; which thing Authors say has been proved by Experience, on such as have been a long time troubled therewith. Dose three or four spoonfuls at a time in generous Wine.

XV. *The Decoction in Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice and Effence, but is less powerful, and therefore ought to be taken three or four times a day, sweetned with a little double-refined Sugar. It is usually taken (as well as the other things) to excite Coition; and is said to be good against the *French Disease* it self.

XVI. *The Pouder of the Root.* This being taken to a dram in a Glas of White *Lisbon Wine*, with the Addition of half a dram of *Daucus* or *Wild Carrot Seed*, expels Stone and Gravel from the Reins and Bladder, provokes Urine and the Terms, eases the Colick, resists Poyson, and cures the Bitings of Serpents and other venomous Creatures. It is singular good against the *Scrophula*, or those Tumors and Kernels in the Throat called the *Kings-evil*, being often taken Morning and Night in two or three ounces of the Effence abovesaid.

XVII. *The Ointment.* It is made of the bruised Root, boiled in Hogs Lard. This being applied to broken Bones, Splinters, Thorns, &c. remaining in the Flesh, does not only draw them forth, but heals up the place again, making new Flesh where it was consumed or eaten away.

XVIII. *The Cataplasme.* It is made of the Roots beaten into a Pulp, or raw, or boiled, and then beaten into a Mass. This being applied to Struma's, or Kings-evil Sores, or to the Bitings of mad Dogs, Serpents, or of any other venomous Creature, it draws out the Malignity and Poyson, and quickly heals the Sore. In the Gout, whether of Hands or Feet, it gives present ease; and applied to Apostems, it quickly ripens and breaks them.

XIX. *The distilled Water.* It is drawn from the whole Plant when the Leaves and Stalks are young: and is profitably taken for all the Purposes aforesaid: it removes Melancholy from the Heart, and is good for Quartan and Quotidian Agues, as also for them who, by Convulsions, have their Necks drawn awry, or cannot turn them without turning their whole Bodies: but in all these Cases the Juice or Effence are more powerful; and they may be taken in this distilled Water for a Vehicle.

XX. *The liquid Juice of the Leaves.* Being dropt into the Ears, it is said to suppurate Apostems therein. And *Gerard* says, that being drunk with Wine, it is a Remedy for those who are troubled with a Gonorrhœa or Running of the Reins.

C H A P. CCXLVII.

## Of EYE--BRIGHT Common or Meadow.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called, as some say, in Greek, *Ευφρασία*: in Latin, *Eupragia*, *Eupragia*, *Euphrasyne*, (which is also a Name of *Bugloss*) *Ocularis*, *Ocularia*, *Ophthalmica* and *Eufrasia*: in English, *Eye-bright*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are many kinds of this Plant; but there are but two principal Species which are known to us, or at leastwise grow in our Country, viz. 1. *Eufrasia*, *Eupragia*, and *Eupragia vulgaris*, Our common Meadow Eye-bright, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Eupragia*, and *Eupragia linifolia Columnæ*, (yet the Leaves are far less than those of *Flax*:) *Eupragia sylvestris*, *Eupragia*, vel *Eupragia Lignosa*; Woody Eye-bright, of which in the next Chapter.



*Eye= bright*

III. *The Description.* It has a Root which is long, small and thready at the end, from which usually rises up one small, low, blackish green Stalk, a span high, or not much more, spread out from the bottom into several Branches, on which are set small, long, dark green Leaves, pointed at their ends, and dented about the edges, almost like a Saw, two always set together, and very thick. At the Joints with the Leaves, from the middle upwards, come forth small white Flowers, striped with purple and yellow Stripes, and Spots mixed therewith; after which follow small round Heads, with very small Seed therein. This being found on some hilly Ground, does sometimes vary in Color of the Flower, as being sometimes more whitish, sometimes more yellowish, and sometimes more purple.

IV. *The Places.* It grows in dry Meadows, in green and grassy Ways, and Pastures lying to the



Sen. I have found it in several Meadows near Lyn Regis in Norfolk, within a Mile or something more of the Town; in Meadows near Hardwick, and between Hardwick and Westwich: also in many places in Kent, in the barren Fields and waste Grounds near Gravesend, and in the places thereabouts; and indeed it is frequent in Meadows and Grassy places in most parts of the Kingdom.

V. *The Times.* It flowers in August and continues to September, the Seed ripening soon after.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot in the first Degree and dry in the second, and is especially appropriated to the Eyes: it is gently Astringent and Discussive.

VII. *The Specification.* It is a singular Remedy (confirmed by Experience) against all Diseases of the Eyes.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Decoction or Infusion in Wine.* 4. *A Powder of the Herb.* 5. *A Conserve thereof.* 6. *A Drink.* 7. *A Cataplasm.* 8. *A distilled Water.*

#### *The Virtues.*

IX. *The liquid Juice.* Taken inwardly Morning and Evening to two or three spoonfuls, in a Glass of generous Wine, it strengthens the Eyes and Optick Nerves, helps a weak Brain and Memory, strengthens a weak Sight, and restores it, being decayed, in a short time. Outwardly dropt into the Eyes five or six times a day, it takes away Clouds, Films, Blood-shot, and other things which obfuscate the Sight.

X. *The Essence.* It has the Virtues of the liquid Juice, being inwardly used and outwardly applied: it may be given inwardly to two or three spoonfuls in a Glass of Wine, Morning and Night.

XI. *The Decoction or Infusion in Wine.* It may be made in White Lisbon or Madera Wine, or your Spanish Mountain Wine. It has the Virtues of the liquid Juice and Essence, but not altogether so powerful: a quarter of a pint of it may be drunk in the Morning fasting; then half an hour before Dinner; as much at five in the Afternoon; and lastly, the like quantity at going to Bed. It strengthens the Stomach admirably, and by consequence the Head and Optick Nerves.

XII. *The Powder.* Its Virtues are the same with the Juice, Essence and Wine aforegoing, but it exerts not its Virtue so obviously, or so soon: it may be given to one dram Morning and Night, in a Glass of Wine. If the Powder be thus compounded, you will find it much better: *Take Powder of Eye-bright five ounces, Powder of Rosemary-flowers three ounces, Powder of Nutmegs one ounce, Powder of Mace half an ounce, Powder of white Pepper two drams: mix them.* Dose one dram, as before.

XIII. *The Conserve.* It has the Virtues of the Powder, but not altogether so efficacious, because of its being clogged with Sugar. You may take as much as a Wallnut of it Morning and Night, drinking after it a Glass of good Wine. If you make it of equal parts of Eye-bright and Rosemary-flowers, it will be so much the more effectual; for Rosemary seems to be a Specifick to cure Diseases of the Eyes.

XIV. *The Drink.* It is to be put into, or Tunn'd up with new Ale before it has done Working; to every Gallon you may put eight handfuls of the Herb, which you may gently bruise, and put into a thin Bag made of a Dairy-Wives Milk-cloth, with a Stone in it, to make it settle. This is to be put into the Ale or Beer whilst it is Working; which, after three or four days, may be drunk as ordinary

Drink: the constant Use of it admirably strengthens the Eyes and clears the Sight.

XV. *The Cataplasm.* The green Herb made into a Cataplasm by beating in a Mortar, and then applied to the Eyes, is good against hot, sharp and scalding Rheums, Weeping of the Eyes and Blood-shot, abates the Inflammation, eases the Pain, takes away the Dimness, and clears the Sight.

XVI. *The distilled Water.* It is said to have the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but much more weak; but may serve as a Vehicle to take some of the other Preparations in. Outwardly used to the Eyes, (especially if a little white Sugar Candy is dissolved in it) it is of good Use against an Ophthalmy, Pains and sharp Humors; it takes away Clouds, Films and Pearls; and clears the Sight.

## C H A P. CCXLVIII.

### Of EYE--BRIGHT Woody.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ευφρασία*: in Latin, *Eufragia*, vel *Euphrasia Lignosa*; *Eufragia pratensis rubra*: in English, *Woody Eye-bright*, *Red Woody Eye-bright*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are two Species hereof, viz. 1. *Euphrasia lignosa major*, *Eufragia pratensis rubra major*, The greater red woody Eye-bright. 2. *Eufragia*, vel *Euphrasia lignosa minor*, *Eufragia pratensis rubra minor*, The lesser red woody Eye-bright.



III. *Nota.* The first of these is the *Eufragia altera Dodonæi*, *Lobelii* & *Aliorum*: the *Sideritis pratensis rubra Lugdunensis*: the *Odontites Tabernmontani*: the *Ericoides rubrum Thalii*; and the *Crataegonon Euphrosyne Gerardi*, who makes it a kind



kind of *Cratægonon*, against the Evidence of *Dodonæus*, which is indeed an Error. The second is the *Brancella Italica Baubini*, (in his *Phytopinax*;) but the *Euphrasia pratensis latifolia Italica*, (in his *Pinnæ*;) and *Euphrasia purpurea minor*, (in his *Prodromus*;) and the *Euphrasia non scripta tertia Columne*.

IV. The Descriptions. The first of these, or Greater red woody Eye-bright, has a Root which is made of several hard and woody Strings; from which rises up one woody, square, brownish Stalk, divided into several Branches, a little above the Ground, so that it seems to be a pretty Bush, about half a yard or two feet high, set with somewhat long and narrow Leaves, pointed at the ends, and a little dented in about the edges, two always set together at a Joint, one against another, which will, in the Heat of Summer, turn reddish: the Flowers are gaping and Hooded, of a purplish red color.

V. The second, or Smaller red woody Eye-bright, has a small woody Root, stringy and black; from whence rises up one square, reddish, hairy Stalk, an handful or more high, sometimes without Branches, and usually but with two, very seldom more, which are compassed with a few thick, hairy and almost round Leaves, set two together, and deeply cut into parts; the lower Leaves, which are the less, but into three parts, but the upper, which are the greater, into five or six parts. The Flowers come forth sometimes from between the Leaves and the Stalks, and sometimes they stand in Tufts at the tops, two standing together, Hooded, and of a purplish color, coming out of long green Husks; sometimes the Flowers have been observed to be white, yet but very seldom: which being faded or pass'd away, there comes after them (contained in the said Husks) long and cornered white Seed.

VI. The Places. They are found in several parts of England, the first chiefly in many places of Kent, in barren Fields and waste Grounds, and in some places near and about Gravesend.

VII. The Times. They flower about the latter end of July, and in August, the Seed ripening soon after.

VIII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues of these Plants, are much one and the same with those in the former Chapter, so that no more need be said thereof in this place.

## C H A P. CCXLIX.

### Of FETHERFEW Garden.

THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Παρθένιον*, (*quasi planta Virginalis, quia mulierum morbis uterinis medetur, & inde vulgo matricaria*;) in Latin, *Parthenium, Matricaria & Febrifuga*: in English, *Fetherfew* and *Feverfew*, (from the Latin Name) it being good against Fevers or Agues.

II. The Kinds. It is twofold, viz. 1. *Parthenium, vel Matricaria hortensis*, The Garden Fetherfew, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Parthenium, vel Febrifuga sylvestris*, Wild Fetherfew, of which in the next Chapter.

III. The Garden kind is also twofold, viz. 1. *Parthenium, Matricaria, vel Febrifuga vulgaris flore simplicis*, The common Fetherfew, with a single Flower. Galen says this was called *Anthemis, Helxine* and *Linosyris* in his time: *Pliny* says, that *Helxine* was called *Perdicium* and *Parthenium*, also *Leucanthemum* and

*Tamnacum*, so that it seems *Parthenium* was a word applied to many Herbs; but it is only proper to our *Matricaria*. 2. *Parthenium, vel Matricaria flore pleno*; *Arthemisia tenuifolia flore pleno*, Double-flowered Fetherfew.

### Sweet Garden Featherfew



IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Single-flowered, has a Root which is somewhat hard and short, with a multitude of strong Fibres at it, making it like a Bush of them: from the Head of this Root spring up many large, fresh, green, winged Leaves, very much cut in on the edges: the Stalks are hard and round, set with many such like Leaves, but something smaller, and at the tops stand many single Flowers, growing upon many small Foot-stalks, consisting of several small white Leaves, longish and pointed, standing about a yellow Thrum in the middle. The Smell of the whole Plant is strong, but agreeable enough to that Sense, and of a very bitter Taste.

V. The second, or Double-flowered Fetherfew, has a Root like the former; and in its Stalk and Leaves, as also the Smell and Manner of Growing, it is so like the other, as not to be easily discerned from it till it comes into Flower, and in that is the only Difference; for whereas in the former the Flower was only single, in this they are very thick, and double filled, as it were, with white Leaves, so that only a little yellow Spot is to be seen in the middle.

VI. The Places. They both grow in Gardens with us, and yet they have both been found growing Wild in this Kingdom, which is a Rarity. I rather think, that where they have been found growing so, that it was by some Accident they grew there, as the scattering of some Seed, or Weeding the Plants out, and casting them into some other place, where possibly they might take root again, and so grow up and feed, and shed their Seed in the same place.

VII. The Times. They flower in June and July, and their Seed is ripe not long after.

VIII. The Qualities. They are hot in the third Degree, and dry in the second; are Aperitive, Inci-



five, Absterfive, Aftringent, Carminative, Digestive, Diuretick and Suppurative; Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomack, Pectoral and Hyfterick; Emmenagogick and Alexipharmick.

IX. *The Specification.* It is peculiar for provoking the Terms in Women, and forcing away both Birth and After-birth.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Decoction of the Herb and Flowers in Wine.* 4. *A Wine.* 5. *A Syrup.* 6. *A Powder of the Herb and Flowers.* 7. *A Cataplasim.* 8. *A distilled Water.* 9. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 10. *An Acid Tincture.* 11. *An Oily Tincture.* 12. *A Saline Tincture.* 13. *A Spirit.* 14. *A distilled Oil.* 15. *Potestates or Powers.* 16. *An Elixir.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XI. *The liquid Juice.* It is good against the Fits and Rising of the Mother, the Hardness and Inflammation of the Womb, being taken once or twice a day, two or three spoonfuls at a time, in a Glass of Wine.

XII. *The Essence.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, and comforts and warms the Womb and all the Parts of Generation afflicted with Cold and Moisture, and obstructed with thick, tough and tartarous Humors: it provokes the Terms powerfully, and brings away the Child, either dead or alive; as also the After-birth: it cleanses the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, expelling Stone, Gravel, Sand or viscid Matter obstructing them. It provokes Urine, and gives ease in the Strangury. Dose two spoonfuls in the distilled Water, or in White Lisbon Wine.

XIII. *The Decoction in White Port Wine.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but less powerful; and therefore must be given to all the said Intentions in a much greater quantity, viz. to five or six ounces, dulcified with white Sugar, and to be taken thrice a day, viz. Morning, Noon and Night.

XIV. *The Wine.* It is made by a reiterated Infusion of the Herb and Flowers in White Lisbon or Port Wine, for a Week or more. It admirably strengthens the Stomach, warms and comforts the Viscera, and cleanses them from cold, pituitous and viscid Humors: if it is drunk for some Months, it is said to rectify and strengthen the Consistency of the Seed, and to cure Barrenness in either Sex: it is good against Melancholy, and Heaviness or Sadness of the Spirits. Dose a quarter of a pint three or four times a day.

XV. *The Syrup.* It is dedicated to the Brest and Lungs, and is used with good Success against Coughs, Colds, Stuffings of the Lungs, Asthma's, Wheezing, Shortness of Breath and Difficulty of Breathing; it opens the Pipes, and cleanses them of the tough and viscid Matter adhering to them. Dose one or two spoonfuls, to be lick'd alone with a *Liquorice* Stick, that it may distil down the Throat *gradatim*.

XVI. *The Powder of the Herb and Flowers.* If it is taken, as *Dioscorides* says, in Wine, to a dram or somewhat more, mixed with *Oxymel*, it will purge like to *Epithymum*, both Cholera and Flegm, and will be available for all such as are Short-winded, or are Asthmatick, Bechick, or are troubled with Hypochondriack Melancholy, Heaviness, Grief or Sadness of the Spirits. It is good for such as have the Vertigo, or Pains or Aches from Stuffings of Humors, or from a cold and moist Cause.

XVII. *The Cataplasim.* Being made of the green bruised Herb, and applied to the Crown of the Head,

it eases all Pains thereof, as *Camerarius* says, coming from a cold Cause: it is also profitable for such as have a Giddiness or Swimming in the Head. Applied to the Wrists, with some Salt mixt with it, two hours before the coming of the Fit of an Ague, the Patient withal drinking at the same time half a pint or more of the aforementioned Decoction in Wine, it cures the same, being four or five times used.

XVIII. *The distilled Water.* Authors say, that it is good to take away Freckles and other Deformities in the Face and Skin. This I know, that if to every quart thereof you put one ounce of *Sal Nitre* or of *Sal Tartari*, mixing, dissolving and filtering it thro' brown Paper; you will then have an excellent Cosmetick to clear the Skin of Tanning, Sun-burning, Yellowness, Freckles, Lentils, Pimples, Scurff, Morpew, and other like Defecations of the *Cutis*.

XIX. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It expels Wind, and is powerful against the Colick, whether in Stomach or Bowels: it warms a cold Stomach, comforts and strengthens it, revives the Spirits, cheers the Heart, fortifies the Womb, and makes it vigorous and fit for Conception. Dose half a spoonful or more in a Glass of White Lisbon, Morning and Night, or two or three times a day.

XX. *The Acid Tincture.* It is good against Nauseating, and stops Vomiting, strengthening the Stomach after an admirable manner. It is prevalent against the Cachexia, and the Green-sickness in Virgins, makes a good Stomach and a strong Digestion, opens the Obstructions of the Womb and provokes the Terms, and rectifies the Defects of the Instruments of Generation, occasioned thro' Weakness. Dose so many drops as to give the Vehicle a pleasant Acidity, and that three or four times a day or more.

XXI. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against all cold and moist Diseases of the Head, Brain and Nerves, as Head-achs, the Megrin, Vertigo, Apoplexy, Epilepsy, Convulsions, Palsy, Rheumatick Pains, Colicks, and other like Distempers of those Parts. It is inwardly to be taken Morning and Evening from twelve drops to twenty four or thirty, dropping it first into Sugar, and mixing them well together; then mixing them with a Glass of Wine, and so drinking it off; it powerfully opens Obstructions of the Womb, Reins, Ureters and Bladder, prevails against the Strangury, and expels Gravel, Sand and tartarous Matter from the Urinary Parts. Outwardly against Pains and Aches, Convulsions and Palsies, it is to be well anointed upon the Parts affected Morning and Night.

XXII. *The Saline Tincture.* Tho' it provokes Urine and opens Obstructions of Reins and Ureters, yet it is mostly used against Pains of the Gout, external Affects and Defecations of the Skin, such as we have enumerated at Sect. 18. foregoing; for which Purposes the Parts affected are first to be bathed with warm Water, to open the Pores of the Skin; then being wiped dry with a Cloth, this Saline Tincture is to be laid on, bathing the Parts well with it twice or thrice a day, and letting it dry on.

XXIII. *The Spirit.* It is highly Cordial, good against fainting and swooning Fits, resists the Power of malign Fevers, and the Poyson of the Plague itself. Given in a little Posset-drink, it drives out the Measles and Small-Pox powerfully, and so secures the Life of the Patient. It is singular also against Convulsions.

XXIV. *The distilled Oil from the whole Plant dried.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice, Essence, Tinctures and Spirit, but is much more powerful



powerful than them all, and may be given to all the same Intentions, from eight drops to sixteen or twenty, first dropt into Sugar, and then mixt with the Vehicle you design to give it in, whether it be Wine or any other specifick Liquor. It may be given twice a day, viz. Morning and Evening; but in case of a Woman in Labor, or in any Fits, whether of the Mother, Colick, Convulsions, Apoplexies or Falling-sickness, it ought to be given at that moment of time.

XXV. *Potestates or Powers.* They have all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Tinctures, Spirit and Oil exalted; in which the Virtue and Efficacy of the Plant is so subtilized, as that it penetrates momentarily into any Part they are applied to, whether they be inwardly given or outwardly used. Dose is from one to two drams, and upon Extremitie to three, mixed with a Glass of Wine, or any other specifick Vehicle.

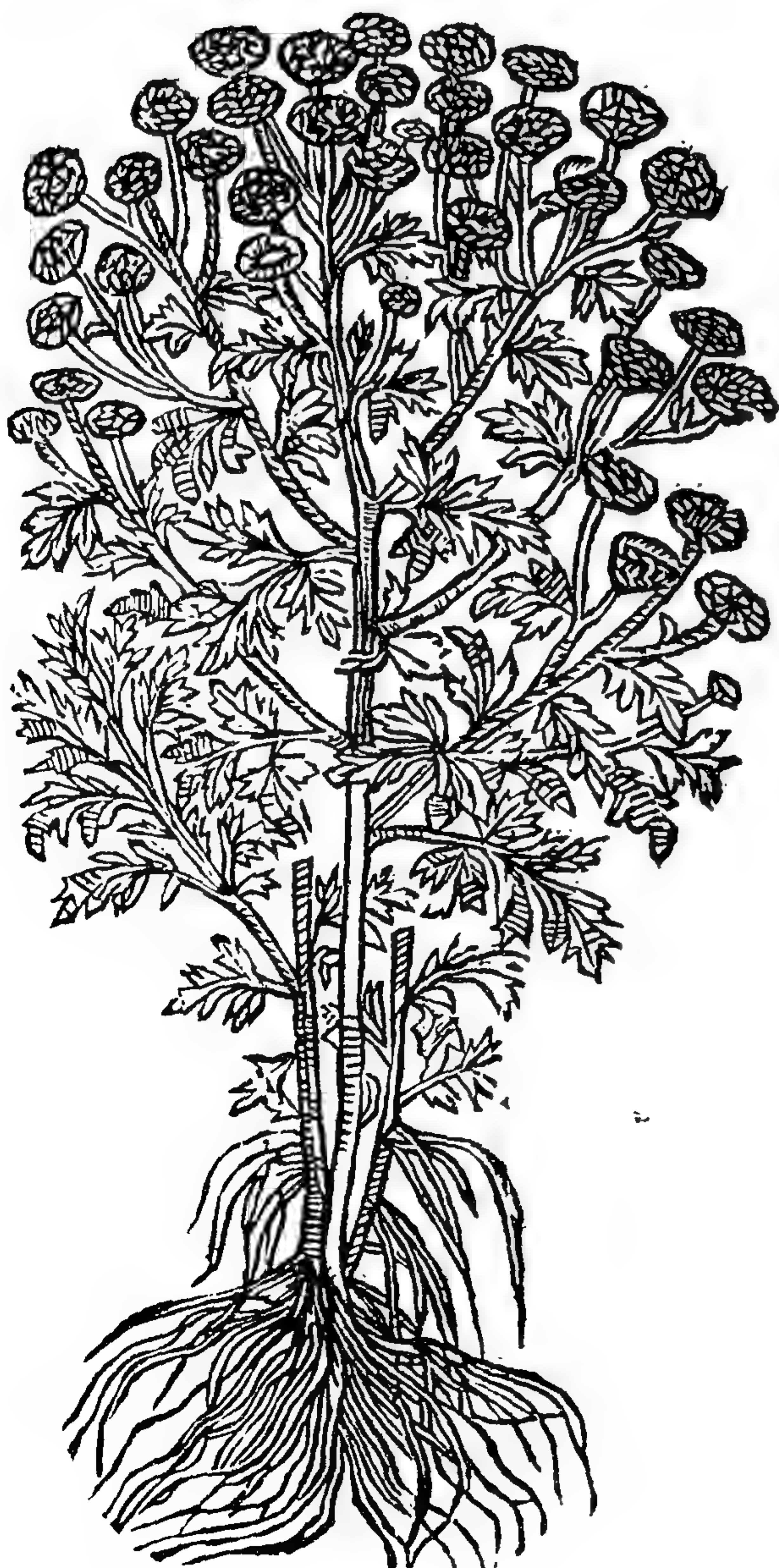
XXVI. *The Elixir.* This is the Powers elixirated and brought yet to a greater degree of Efficacy in Operation; being vehemently subtil, and still much more exalted in their Virtues and Effects. It may be given inwardly from half a dram to a dram and half or two drams (according as the Necessity may require) in a Glass of Wine or other fit Vehicle, Morning and Night, or oftner, as you see fit.

## C H A P. CCL.

### Of FETHERFEW Wild.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, Παρθένιον, *Parthenium*; in Latin, *Parthenium sylvestre*, *Matricaria agrestis*, *Febrifuga agria*; and in English, *Wild or Field Fetherfew*.

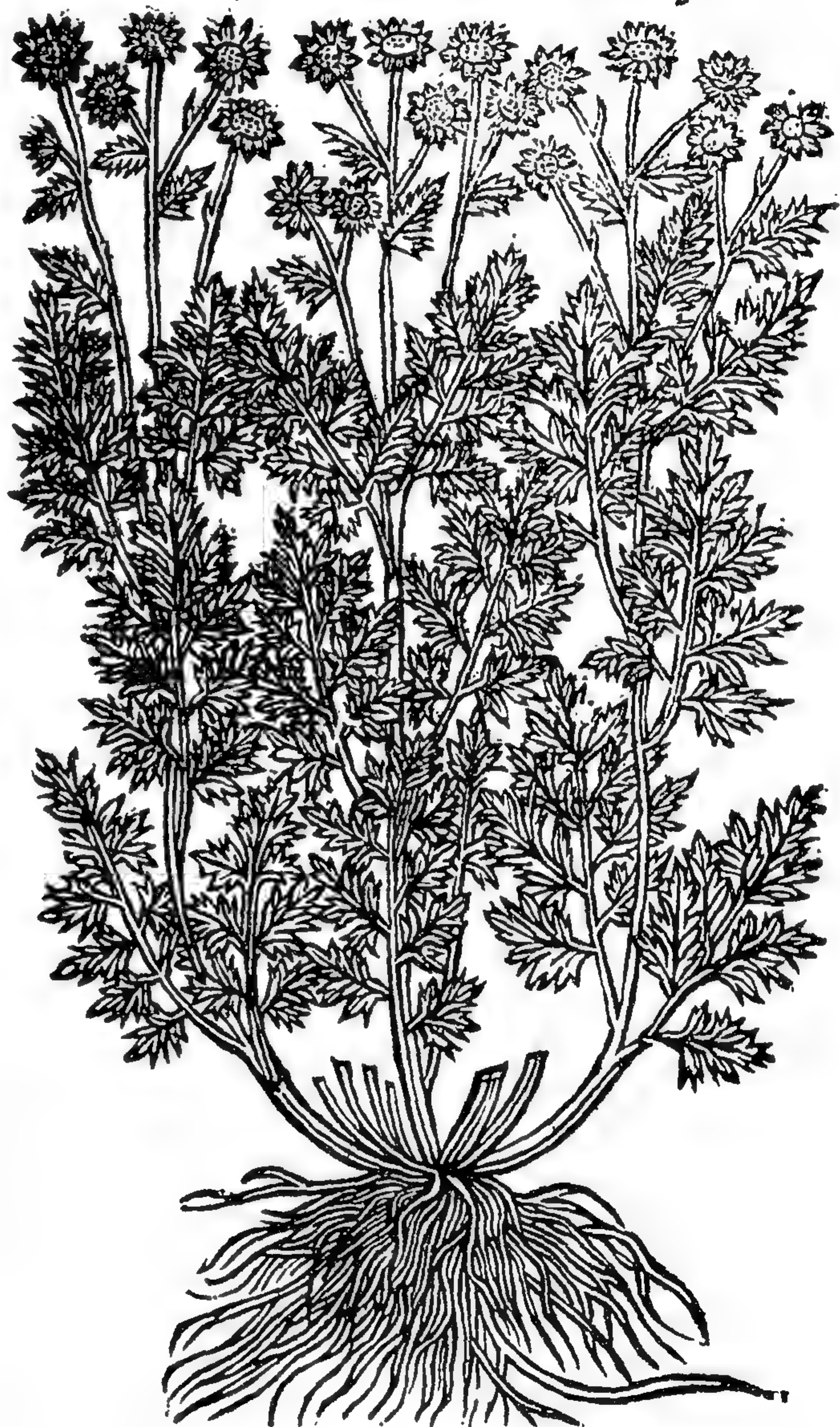
#### Naked-flowered Fetherfew.



II. *The Kinds.* This is the second Species of *Fetherfew*, and is twofold, viz. 1. *Parthenium*, vel *Matricaria bullatis floribus aureis*, *Naked Fetherfew*. 2. *Parthenium*, vel *Matricaria grati odoris*, *Matricaria altera Camerarii*, *Arthemisia tenuifolia odorata Tabernmontani*, *Matricaria odorata Bauhini*, *Sweet-scented Fetherfew*.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or *Naked Fetherfew*, has a bushy fibrous Root, like to the others, from whence spring up Leaves and Stalks, spreading themselves forth into many Branches, not at all differing from the former in Shape or Manner of Growing. At the tops of the Stalks and Branches grow the Flowers, not like the former; for this is a Head of naked yellow Thrums, without any Pale or Border of white Leaves, as are in the others, which is the only thing by which this kind differs from the other two, and for which Reason it is called *Naked Fetherfew*.

#### Sweet-scented Wild Fetherfew.



IV. *The second, or Sweet-scented Fetherfew*, has a bushy fibrous Root, like the first Common kind, and in its Leaves, Stalks, Branching forth and Flowers, it differs not at all from the first, being in all things so like, that there can no Difference be perceived between them, till you come to smelling to it, and then you will find it to be of a more pleasant and odoriferous Smell, which so continues in the kind, and is not altered, nor made so by Art, but is the Work of Nature only; nor yet degenerates from this Excellency by any Accident or Casualty whatsoever.

V. *The Places.* The first grows in Essex, and was there found growing by one Mr. William Coys. The second has been found Wild in many places of England, (as well as the former naked kind.) *Camerarius* also says, that it grows in an Island called *Iloa*, in the *Levant Seas*; but they are also (both of them) nurs'd up with us in our Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* They flower both of them in June



June and July, and the Seed ripens in the mean time.

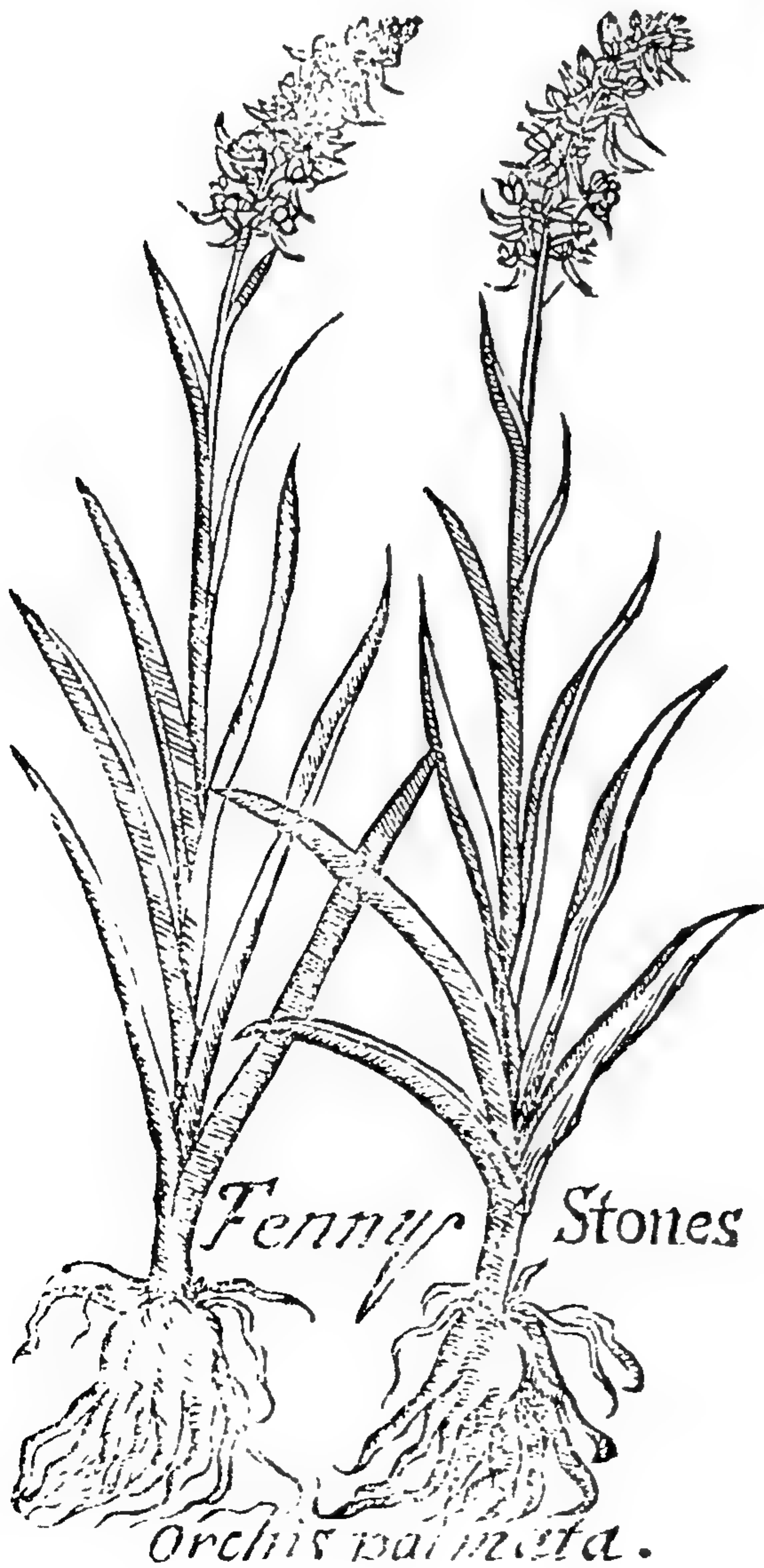
VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of both these, are the same with the two former in the Chapter just aforegoing, so that no more need be said thereof in this place: but this is to be noted, That these two Plants fall no ways below the other two, in their Power, Force and Efficacy.

## C H A P. CCLI.

### OF FENNY-STONES, OR, MARSH-PALMS.

I. **T**HE Names. We know of no Greek Name belonging to them: but in Latin they are called, *Serapias*, vel *Orchis palustris*, and *Orchis palmata palustris*: in English, Fenny-stones, and Palmed Fenny-stones, or Marsh-Palms.

II. *The Kinds.* There are several kinds of them, as, 1. *Serapias vel Orchis palmata palustris latifolia*, Fenny or Marsh handed Stones with broad Leaves. 2. *Serapias vel Orchis palmata palustris Leptophylla*, Thin-leav'd Fenny or Marsh handed Orchis or Stones. 3. *Serapias vel Orchis palmata palustris lævifolia*, Marsh or Fenny handed Orchis smooth-leav'd. 4. *Serapias vel Orchis palmata palustris maculata*, Spotted Marsh or Fenny handed Stones. 5. *Serapias vel Orchis palmata palustris Dracontias*, Marsh or Fenny Dragon handed Orchis or Stones. 6. *Palma Christi palustris maxima*, The greatest Fenny handed Stones. 7. *Palma Christi palustris radice repente*, Creeping Fenny or Marsh Palms.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Marsh handed Stones with broad Leaves, has a Root which has

long Divisions at the bottoms of the Hands; the top of the Root is thick and knobby, divided into Fingers, like those of Palma Christi, of which this may be said to be a kind. From this Root rise up thick, fat and spongy Stalks, set with broad, smooth, green Leaves, like those of Plantane, but much longer; these are growing in order upon the Stalk, even from the bottom to the top or beginning of the Spike of Flowers, growing smaller as they grow higher, and appear nearer to the Spike. The Tuft or Spike of Flowers is large, consisting of many small hooded Flowers, of a somewhat whitish or pale bluish color, spotted within with deep purple Spots, the backfides of which Flowers are of a Violet color mixt with purple: and every Flower, at its rising up from the Stalk, has a small greenish Leaf accompanying it.

IV. *The second, or Thin-leav'd Fenny handed Stones, has Roots exactly like to those last described; the Stalk is also like; but it differs from the former something in the Leaves, for in this Plant they are smaller, being neither so broad nor yet so long, sometimes spotted, but more usually without; neither is the spiky Tuft of Flowers so large or long, tho' they are thick set, like the first, nor has it so many green Leaves or long Leaves mixed with, or growing between the Flowers, which are of a Violet purple color, but not altogether of so dark a purple as the former are.*

V. *The third, or Fenny or Marsh handed Stones smooth-leav'd, has a handed and fingered Root, with some Strings adjoined to the upper parts of them, like unto the two others: the Stalks are much alike: the Leaves are like the last, but smaller and narrower, and without Spots: and the Flowers are of a whitish color, but more purely white; the Flowers and the whole Plant being in Magnitude, Shape or Form, and Manner of Growing, but little differing from the others.*

VI. *The fourth, or Fenny or Marsh handed Stones spotted, has a Root fashioned like a Hand, with some Strings fastned to the upper parts thereof: from the Head of which Root rises up a fair stiff Stalk, armed with large Leaves, very notably dashed with blackish Spots, clipping or embracing the Stalk round about. At the top of the Stalk stands a fair Tuft or Spike of purple Flowers, with many green Leaves mingled among the same, which makes the Bush or Tuft much greater. The Seed is nothing else but Dust, as it were, (like all the rest of the kinds) and is contained in small twined Vessels, which Vessels are not peculiar to this alone, but common to most of the other Orchides.*

VII. *The fifth, or Fenny or Marsh Dragon-handed Stones, has cleft or divided Roots, like Fingers, much like unto the Roots of Palma Christi, of which this is a kind; and from this Root rises up a Stalk of a foot high, set here and there with very fair Lilly like Leaves, of a red color, and which do clip or embrace the Stalks almost round about, like the Leaves of Therow-wax. At the top of the Stalk grows a fair Bush of very red Flowers, among which Flowers do grow many small sharp-pointed Leaves. The Seed is a thing hard or difficult to be observed, being much like Dust, which is blown away with the Wind.*

VIII. *The sixth, or Greatest Fenny handed Stones, commonly called, Great Fenny or Marsh Palma Christi, has handed Roots, like to the others, from which rises up a large Stalk, sometimes to the height of three feet: the Leaves are much like to those of the former kinds of Fenny-stones before described; and the Growing on a large spiky Head are of an elegant purple, with little Hoods, like the top of an Helmet; whence Gemma called the Plant, Cynsorchis [Conopsea,*



[*Cynofsa*, and *Macrocaulos*, from its height.] These Flowers smell sweet, and are succeeded by Seed, like that of the rest of the Kindred.

IX. To these Gerard gives us another, which he calls, *Palma Christi* (*palustris*) *radice repente*, Creeping Fenny or Marsh Palm, or Creeping Palma Christi: it has creeping Roots, without Testicles, which are many and long, creeping far abroad in the Ground, contrary to all the rest of the Orchides; which Roots are of the Bigness of large Wheat Straws, in Substance like those of Soap-wort; from the which do immediately rise four or five broad smooth Leaves, like unto Small Plantane Leaves: from among which shoot up a small and tender Stalk, at the top of which grows a pleasant spiky Head of Flowers, of a whitish color, spotted on the inside with little bloody Specks, which leave Vessels containing very small Seed.

X. The Places. They all of them grow in fenny Grounds, or in marsh or moory Grounds, also in shadowy Woods or Groves which are watery and marshy, and often over-flowed with Water. The sixth, or *Great Palmi Christi*, delights to grow in Grounds of an indifferent Temper, not too moist nor too dry. The seventh, or *Creeping Palme*, was found by Mr. Robert Abbot of Bishops Hatfield, in a boggy Grove, where a Conduit-head does stand, which sends Water to the then *Queens-house* in the same Town. It also grows plentifully in Hampshire, within a Mile of Petersfield, in a moist Meadow, called *Wood-mead*, near the Path leading from Petersfield, toward Beryton.

XI. The Times. The first flowers more early than the Ordinary Orchis or *Cynosorchis*. The second flowers after the former: but they all flower from the latter end of April thro' all May and June, some of them flowering more early, as the first and second kinds; and other some more late.

XII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with those of the *Cynosorchis* or Dog-stones, which we have declared at large in Chap. 226. aforegoing, so that no more need be said thereof: yet this is to be noted, That these Fenny-stones are not of so great Power and Force as are the *Cynosorchis*, and several other kinds of the Orchides or Testiculi, of which we speak in their proper places.

## C H A P. CCLII.

### Of F E N N E L Common.

I. THE Names. It is called by the Arabians, *Raienigi*: in Greek, *Μάγδον*: in Latin, *Feniculum*; and in English, Fennel.

II. The Kinds. There are four principal kinds of Fennel, viz. 1. *Feniculum vulgare*, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Feniculum dulce*, Sweet Fennel, of which in Chap. 253. 3. *Feniculum sylvestre*, Wild Fennel, of which in Chap. 254. 4. *Peucedanum*, Hog or Sow Fennel, of which in Chap. 255. following.

III. Of the Vulgar or Common Garden Fennel, there are two sorts, viz. 1. *Feniculum majus vulgare*, The greater common Garden Fennel. But *Cesalpinius* calls it *Feniculum sylvestre*: *Camerarius* in *borto* says, that some took it to be *Hippomarathrum*; but that was a Mistake, as we shall shew in Chap. 254. 2. *Feniculum minus*, *Feniculum semine*

*rotundo minore*, Small Fennel, or Fennel with a smaller round Seed.

### Fennell.



IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Common Garden Fennel, has a Root which is long and white, running down deep into the Ground, spreading it self out into several Branches: from this Root rise up divers round stiff Stalks, four or five feet high, which spread themselves out (at many of their Joints) into divers Branches of long Stalks, of fine, small, long, fibrous Leaves, smelling somewhat strong, but not unpleasant: and at the tops, on several Branches, there are Tufts or Umbles of small yellow Flowers, which turn into small, long, roundish-cornered, bitterish, greenish Seed, two always together, as in the other Umbelliferous Plants; which being ripe, and once dried, become of a sad grey color. Of this Plant there are truly two sorts, (tho' one Description does serve them both;) the one wholly with green Leaves; the other with reddish Leaves, or with reddish green Leaves, they not differing one from another in any thing else.

V. The second, or Small Fennel with smaller round Seed, in its Roots, Stalks and Leaves differs not from the former, but only that they are every way less, being much lower than it; and that the Umbles at the Heads of the Stalks are white, and the Seed which follows is less than the ordinary sort, being more like to Carum or Caraway Seed: the whole Plant, both in Smell and Taste, and in its Form and Manner of Growing, is the same with the other Common Garden kind.

VI. The Places. These Plants grow in all hot Countries, in Asia, Africa and America, and in some of the West India Islands, 'tis said, they feed their Cows with it: but with us in England it grows only in Gardens.

VII. The Times. They flower in June, July and August, and the Seed is ripe not very long after.

VIII. The Qualities. According to Galen, it is hot in the third Degree, and dry in the first: it is admirably Aperitive, Incisive, Anodyne, Carminative



tive, Digestive, Discussive, Suppurative and Traumatick; Neurotick, Stomack, Pectoral and Hysterick; Emmenagogick, Sudorifick, Alexipharmick, Analeptick, Galectogenetick and Spermatogenetick.

IX. *The Specification.* It is peculiar for healing Ulcers in the Lungs, helping against the Strangury, and to open Obstructions of the Womb and all the Urinary Passages, strengthening the Tone of all those Parts.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom,  
1. *The whitned Leaves and Stalks.* 2. *A liquid Juice.* 3. *An Essence.* 4. *A Decoction of Leaves and Roots.* 5. *A Syrup.* 6. *A Powder of the Seed.* 7. *An Oil by Infolation.* 8. *A Balsam of the Leaves and Roots.* 9. *A Cataplasm of the Leaves.* 10. *A distilled Water from the Herb or Seed.* 11. *A Spirituous Tincture of the Seed.* 12. *An Acid Tincture of the same.* 13. *An Oily Tincture thereof.* 14. *A Saline Tincture of Herb, Root and Seed.* 15. *A Spirit.* 16. *An Oil distilled.* 17. *A Balsam.* 18. *Potestates or Powers.* 19. *An Elixir.* 20. *A fixed Salt.* 21. *A Liquor of Fennel.* 22. *The Gum.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XI. *The whitned Leaves and Stalks.* They are whitned after the same manner as you whiten *Curl-ed Endive*, or *Sallery* or *Smallage* Stalks, &c. being thus whitned, the *Italians* are said to take great delight in eating them as a Sallet, for then they are very tender, and pleasant to the Taste: they comfort and warm a cold Stomach, help to digest crude Hegmatick Humors bred from viscous Meats. *Fennel* being thus eaten, it breeds Milk in Nurser's Breasts, provokes Urine, and encreases the Seed; opens Obstructions, expels Wind, and provokes Urine. The constant eating of this whitned *Fennel* for some considerable time, I have known to cure a vehemently stinking Breath, and to make it as sweet as theirs which never smelt amiss.

XII. *The liquid Juice.* Mixt with a Glass of Wine or Ale, and so taken by Nurser's, it encreases Milk in their Breasts, expels Wind, provokes Urine, eases the Pains of the Strangury and Stone, expelling all the præternatural Matter in the Urinary Parts. It is said to break the Stone, more especially if it is made of a gritty Substance. Dose three or four spoonfuls Morning, Noon and Night in any fit Liquor.

XIII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice; besides which, it encreases Seed, prevails against the Colick, eases the Tortions of the Bowels or Gripping of the Guts from acrid or sharp Humors, strengthens the Stomach, and causes a good Digestion. It opens all the Obstructions of Liver, Spleen and Gall, and thereby much conduces to the Cure of all such Diseases as arise from those Causes, as windy Swellings of the Spleen, Hepatick-flux, Yellow Jaundice. Being dropt into the Eyes, it cures almost all Diseases affecting that Part. It opens Obstructions of the Womb, and provokes the Courser's effectually. Dose three or four spoonfuls.

XIV. *The Decoction of the Leaves and Roots, or Seeds, in Wine.* Tho' this has not altogether so much Force as the Juice and Essence, yet it is very good for all the same Intentions, and is much more used than either of them, because it is pleasanter; but then it must be taken in a much greater Dose. It is an excellent thing to open all Obstructions in the whole Body, to cleanse the Blood, to stop the Hicough, and take away Nauseating, to provoke Urine and the Menstrues, to amend the ill Color in the Face after a long Sicknes, and to cause a good Habit thro' the whole Body. If such as are grown

over fat should often drink of it, it would lessen their Fat, abate their Flesh, and much remove their Unwieldiness, making them more nimble, agil and pleasant.

XV. *The Syrup.* It is one of the greatest of Pectorals; for as it is a powerful Opener of Obstructions of the Lungs, and Dissolver of their Tartar, so it famously causes Expectoration, and gives ease in Asthma's, Coughs, Colds, Hoarseness, Wheezing, Shortness of Breath, Difficulty of Breathing, and other like Distaffections of those Parts. If here-with you sweeten well either the Juice, Essence or Decoction, and let the Patient take two or three ounces three or four times a day, it cures Ulcers of the Lungs, or any Sourness of the Stomach, and much restores in Consumptions: in which last case it is good for the Patient to use a Milk-Diet, and to drink a quart of Milk warm from the Cow, well sweetned with this Syrup, every Morning fasting; as much Milk so sweetned at Eleven before Noon; another quart at Five in the Afternoon; and lastly, another quart at Bed-time in like manner. If the Patient cannot drink a whole quart, let him drink as much as he can; and continue this Course for several Weeks, or till he recovers; by this Method I have known several perfectly restored out of very deep Consumptions.

XVI. *The Powder of the Seed.* It strengthens the Stomach, gives ease in the Colick, opens Obstructions, and helps Shortness of Breath. You may give it Morning and Evening from half a dram to two drams in any convenient Vehicle. The constant Use of it wonderfully strengthens the Sight.

XVII. *The Oil by Infolation or Boiling.* It is Anodyne, and eases all sorts of Pains in any Part of the Body, coming from a cold and moist Cause. It gives ease also in Inflammations, by gently discussing some part of the thinner Matter. If it is an Apostem, which will come to Suppuration, it hastens it, and brings it as much as may be to a point. It eases the Gout and other Pains of the Joints and Nerves.

XVIII. *The Balsam of the Leaves and Roots.* It is one of the greatest of Vulneraries, and cures simple Wounds at one Intention, for the most part at one Dressing. I am apt to believe, that this Balsam, for the Curing of Wounds and Ulcers, &c. is not inferior to any Balsam made of the greatest Wound-Herbs, as *Sanicle*, *Selfheal*, *Clowns Wound-wort*, *All-heal*, &c. It digests sordid and eating Ulcers, cleanses, incarnates, dries and heals after a very admirable manner.

XIX. *The Cataplasm.* It gives present ease in the Gout, being applied, as also discusses and heals any simple Contusions; and applied as hot as can be endured to the Sides or Hypochonders, it eases the Pains of the Sides, takes away Stitches, and gives Relief to the Distempers of the Spleen and Parts adjacent.

XX. *The distilled Water.* It is of good Use, as a Vehicle, to convey other Preparations of this Plant in, and has all the Virtues of the foregoing Preparations, but in a much lower degree: it is used to be dropt into the Eyes against Ophthalmies or Inflammations and Blood-shot, as also against hot and sharp Rheums, with which the Eyes are commonly afflicted, which causes Clouds, Films, Pearls, &c. to breed in them; but it is better for all those Purposes, if white Sugar-Candy or clarified Honey be dissolved therein; then if ulcerated, it cleanses the Ulcer or Sore, prevents the Afflux of Rheum, dries and heals them.

XXI. *The Spirituous Tincture of the Seed.* It is famous against Pains, Aches and Sicknes of the Stomach, Pains of the Spleen and Womb; it gives ease



ease in the Colick, and prevails against the Yellow Jaundice. You may take from two drams to four in a Glass of White Port Wine, at time of Extremity, otherwise Morning and Night, so long as Need requires. Bathed upon places affected with the Gout or Sciatica, Cramps or Convulsions, in a short time it gives Ease and Relief.

XXII. *The Acid Tincture.* It cures præternatural Vomiting, Nauseating of Food, want of Appetite and Digestion, the Colick and the Gout, when by consent it afflicts the Stomach; it warms and wonderfully corroborates that Bowel, restoring and strengthening its Tone, tho' very much depraved. It is powerful against the Bitings of mad Dogs, Vipers, Rattle-Snakes, and all other Serpents and venomous Creatures whatsoever: and after a singular manner prevails against Asthma's, and all sorts of Obstructions of the Lungs, inciding, dissolving and causing an Excretion of the tartarous Matter affecting them. Dose so many drops as to make the Vehicle gratefully pleasant in all the Patient drinks.

XXIII. *The Oily Tincture.* It prevails against Cramps and Convulsions of the Nerves; is powerful against the Colick, and all Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, whatsoever; breaking any gritty Stone in those Parts, and causing it, as also Sand, Gravel and tartarous Matter to be expelled by Urine. Bathed upon the Back-bone, and upon the Parts affected with the Palsy, it is very effectual in the Cure of that Disease, but then you must anoint therewith Morning and Night, rubbing it very well in for a considerable time. It gives present ease in the Gout and Sciatica proceeding from a cold Cause, and by a constant Application thereof many times cures those Diseases. Inwardly, to give Relief against Stone and Strangury, you may take from ten drops to thirty in any fit Vehicle.

XXIV. *The Saline Tincture.* It is good against Strangury, Stone and Gravel, being given a dram or more at a time in White Lisbon Wine. Outwardly bathed upon Parts affected with Herpes, Tettars, Ringworms, Pimples, Redness, Yellowness, Tawiness, Blackness or Blewness of the Skin, as also Scurff, Morphew, Scabs, Leprosy, Freckles, Lentils, &c. it quickly takes them away and cures them, being used two or three times a day.

XXV. *The Spirit from the Seed, or Juice fermented.* It is a singular Stomack and Cordial, it refreshes, comforts and strengthens the Stomach after an admirable manner, taking away Vomiting, Nauseating, want of Appetite and Indigestion, &c. It cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, fortifies the whole Habit, and makes the Body able to withstand Diseases. It singularly expels Wind, and gives ease in all griping Pains in the Stomach or other Viscera. It may be taken to one spoonful or two, either alone of it self (being dulcified) or mixt with a Glass of Wine, every Morning fasting.

XXVI. *The Oil distilled out of the Seed.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Decoction, Syrup, Pouder, Tinctures and Spirit, and much exceeds them all in its Potency and Might of its Operation. It may be given from four drops to twelve, sixteen or twenty, according to the Age, and as the Necessity of the Occasion may require. In the using of it, drop it first into white Sugar, and mix them well together; then mingle all in a Glass of Wine, and so drink it off. This may be done Morning and Evening, or at the time of any Paroxysm, so long as you see need. Outwardly anointed upon the Wound or Puncture of a Nerve, it gives immediate Ease and Relief; anointed down the Back-bone, and upon the Parts affected with a Paralysis Morning and Evening, it wonderfully restores the Paralytick Parts, and in a little time after compleats the Cure.

XXVII. *The Balsam.* This Balsam is twofold, 1. *Balsamum Feniculi Vulnerarium.* It is thus made: Take of Balsam Capiwi three ounces, Balsam of Peru, Beef-suet, of each an ounce and half, Chymical Oil of Fennel-seed one ounce, fine Bees-wax half an ounce: melt, mix, and make a Balsam. It is one of the best of Balsams for green Wounds, especially those of the Nerves and Tendons, and commonly cures simple green Wounds at once Dressing. 2. *Balsamum Pectorale.* It is thus made: Take choice Oil of Nutmegs by Expression four ounces, Balsam of Tola, Chymical Oil of Fennel-seed, of each one ounce, Balsam of Peru and Capiwi, of each half an ounce; melt, mix, and make a Balsam. It is an excellent Pectoral; and being taken to the quantity of a Nutmeg at a time, it not only helps against Colds, Coughs, Catarrhs, Hoarseness, Wheezing, Shortness of Breath and Difficulty of Breathing, but also cures Ulcers in the Lungs. It may be taken Morning and Evening. It also heals, by outward Application, Wounds of the Nerves and Tendons, and eases and takes away any Ach or Pain proceeding from a cold Cause, in any Part of the Body, being anointed upon the Parts affected Morning and Evening.

XXVIII. *The Potestates or Powers.* They have all the Virtues of Juice, Essence, Decoction, Tinctures, Spirit and Oil, and are also more volatile and subtil than any of them; for which Reason they more effectually pierce any Part they are applied to. Inwardly you may give from one dram to three in any specifick Vehicle. Outwardly you may bathe any pained, numbed or Paralytick Part with the same twice a day, rubbing the same well in.

XXIX. *The Elixir.* As this is the Powers still more fortified, so it is more efficacious in Operation, and may be given to all the Intentions and Purposes for which the Potestates are given. You may give from one dram to two in a Glass of Wine, Morning and Evening; and in case of a Paroxysm or any great Necessity, at the same time. It is one of the greatest of all Pectorals, and therefore profitable against all Diseases of the Lungs from a cold and moist Cause; and being given in a most vehement Colick, it gives immediate Ease; provokes Urine, and prevails against the Strangury.

XXX. *The fixed Salt.* It admirably absorbs Acids in the Stomach and Lungs, destroys the Tartar of the Lungs, Reins, Bladder and Joints, and therefore prevails against all such Diseases as proceed from that Cause. It is also peculiar in opening all Obstructions of the Viscera, and in particular those of the Womb. Dose from ten grains to a scruple or more in any fit Liquor.

XXXI. *The Liquor of Fennel.* It is made two ways: 1. Take the green Stalks of Fennel towards the end of Summer, and whilst green put one of their ends into the Fire, which hold there for a little while; so will a certain Liquor drop out therefrom at the other end, which receive and keep for Use. It is a very good thing for the Eyes, for it stops any Rheum or Defluxion, heals Blood-shot, and clears the Sight from any Mists, Clouds or Films. 2. Cut a hole in a green Fennel Stalk as it grows, about a foot or more from the Ground, near the upper part of the Joint, and put therein white Sugar-Candy in fine pouder, as much as it will hold, then stop it close up with Wax, and Leather tied over it, so as no Rain or Wet may fall into it: when it has remained three or four days or more, place a good piece of soft Wax a little below the lower Joint of the same Internode, so formed as that it may make a little hollow Gutter; and a little above this Gutter, at the lower part of the Joint, cut another hole, so will a Liquor distil therefrom,



which, by means of the Gutter, you may receive in a Vessel, which keep for Use. This has all the Virtues of the former, and full as beneficial for sore, blood-hot, dim, cloudy and blemished Eyes as the other, being dropt into them three, four, five or six times a day, as you see need requires.

XXXII. *The Gum of Fennel, or its Inspissate Juice.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice, and may be given from one dram to two, dissolved in any specifick Liquor or Wine. If this Gum or Juice is dissolved in some of the distilled Water, and sweetned a little with white Sugar-Candy, and it is given to Nurses to drink, it breeds much Milk in their Breasts: and if it is dropt into the Eyes, it very much clears the Eyes from Clouds, Mists, Films, Blood-hot, and other like Matters which obfuscate the Sight. In *Southern* Climes, and very hot Countries, if *Fennel-Stalks* are wounded whilst they are green and growing, the Juice will exsude and become this natural Gum: but in our cold Countries, it yields not to this Operation; therefore we are obliged to make the Juice by Expression; and then to inspissate it by a gentle Evaporation on a Sand Heat, till it is perfectly dry.

### C H A P. CCLIII.

#### Of FENNEL Sweet.

I. **THE Names.** It is called in *Greek*, *Μάραθρον*: in *Latin*, *Feniculum dulce Matthioli*, *Feniculum vulgare Lugdunensis*; and in *English*, *Sweet Fennel*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the second general Species of the *Fennels*; but differs in Sweetness according to the Country in which it grows.



*Sweet Fennel.*

III. *The Descriptions.* *This in its Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Flowers and Manner of Growing, is perfectly like our Common Fennel, excepting that it neither in Foreign Climates, where it grows naturally, nor yet here with us in England, does grow so large, or rise to so great a height as the Common large Garden kind does: and with us it with some difficulty endures the Hardness of our Winters: but the Seed of this is much larger and longer than that of the Common kind, yellower, and very much sweeter in Taste, coming near to the Sweetness of Aniseed, which so continues in hot Countries, but holds not out any long time to that Perfection; neither as to its Magnitude, Color or Sweetness; but decaying yearly, does at the third Years Sowing yield as ordinary Seed as the Common kind.*

IV. *Nota. 1.* From this you may observe, that it is the Clime and change of Soil which causes this Alteration, making it either larger or smaller, longer or shorter, yellower or paler colored, and makes it to be either sweeter or bitterer in Taste; which Change of Accidents has made some think, that there were divers sorts of this *Sweet kind*, whereas indeed there is no more than one.

V. *Nota. 2.* There is a kind of *Fennel*, which the *Italians* call *Cardus Fennel*, and which they would make different from this *Sweet kind*; but it is no such thing, for it is only the Art of ordering it, which seemingly makes the Difference from this *Sweet*, which is done by Transplanting and Whitening it, by which means the Leaves are made to grow much more thick and bushing together than the *Ordinary*; the Whitening of it also giving it a sweeter Relish, a pleasanter Taste, and a shorter Crispness in eating.

VI. *The Places.* It grows universally in almost all hot Countries; and flourishes well enough in our Gardens, being sown with Foreign Seed every Year, where the Seed it self comes to Perfection; but you ought to sow every Year new Foreign Seed, not the Seed of the *English* Production, because that is very apt to degenerate.

VII. *The Times.* It flowers and seeds with us in *July* and *August*, and if it is an early and warm Spring, towards the latter end of *June*; and the Seed is ripe in *August* or *September*.

VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of this, are the same with the *Common Fennel* in the former Chapter, saving that this is accounted the more excellent and efficacious of the two; and therefore to the Discourse and Sections of the former Chapter I shall wholly refer you.

### C H A P. CCLIV.

#### Of FENNEL Wild,

O R,

#### HORSE-FENNEL.

I. **THE Names.** It is called in *Greek*, *Μάραθρον ἄγριον*, & *Ἰππομάραθρον*: in *Latin*, *Marathrum agrestis*, *Feniculum sylvestre*, *Hippomarathon*; and in *English*, *Wild Fennel*, and *Horse Fennel*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the third Species of *Fennel*, and is threefold, viz. 1. *Feniculum sylvestre communis*, *Feniculum erraticum Matthioli*, The vulgar or



or common Wild Fennel. 2. *Feniculum sylvestre* *Creticum*, *Hippomarathrum Creticum*, *Honorii Belli*, *Platycumino Creticorum*, Great or Horse Fennel of Candy. 2. *Hippomarathrum sphaerocephalum*, Great round-headed Horse Fennel. *Anguillara* supposes the first of these to be *Hippomarathrum verum*.



**Horse Fennel**

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Common Wild Fennel, has a Root like to the Common Garden kind, and grows up with great Stalks, but fewer than it, having also but few Leaves, and those very thinly set thereon, but somewhat stiffer or harder in handling, and shorter also. At the tops of the Stalks grow small Umbles of yellow Flowers, not much unlike the Common, saving that they are lesser, which being pass'd away, the Seed follows, being small and a little roundish.

IV. The second, or Great Horse Fennel, has a great whitish Root, not much unlike the former, from whence springs up a round, but crested Stalk, three, four or five feet high, about the Thickness of ones middle Finger or Thumb, having very fine Leaves thereon, but shorter than the Ordinary sort. This Stalk is divided into several Branches, bearing at their tops Tufts or Umbles of yellow Flowers, which being pass'd away, there comes in their places great, large, and almost round Seed. This is the Plant which *Bellus* makes mention of in his first Epistle to *Clusius*, which is extant in the end of his *History of Plants*, whose Seed, as he there says, is as large as those of *Cachrys* or *Canchrys*, Herb *Frankincense*, nearly as big as *Hordea Decorata*, or Hull'd Barley.

V. The third, or Great round-headed Horse Fennel, has a Root which is long and white, and endures many Years; from whence rise up large Stalks, four or five feet high, with Fennel like Leaves, and spreading themselves forth towards the tops into many Branches. At the tops of which Branches grow round, Globe like Umbles of Flowers, of a purplish Violet color; which being pass'd away, there comes in their places large Fennel like Seeds, but of a very

strong Smell, almost stinking. This Plant is taken notice of by *Alpinus libro de Exoticis*.

VI. The Places. They all grow naturally in hot places, as *Turkey*, *Barbary*, *Spain*, *Italy*, &c. The first was brought to us out of *Spain* by *Boel*; and the rest grow well in our Gardens, being raised from the Seed brought to us out of their native Countries.

VII. The Times. They all flower in the end of Summer and beginning of Autumn, as in *July*, *August* and *September*; and the Seed is ripe not very long after.

VIII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues of all these, are the same in all respects with those of our Common English Garden Fennel in Chap. 252. foregoing; so that nothing more need be said of them. Authors say, that these Wild Fennels are hotter and stronger than the Common Garden or Sweet Fennel, and therefore more powerful against the Stone; but not so effectual to encrease Milk in Nurses Breasts, because dryer in Quality. *Bellus* says, that in *Candia* they use the Seed of the second sort to Dye their Hair yellow.

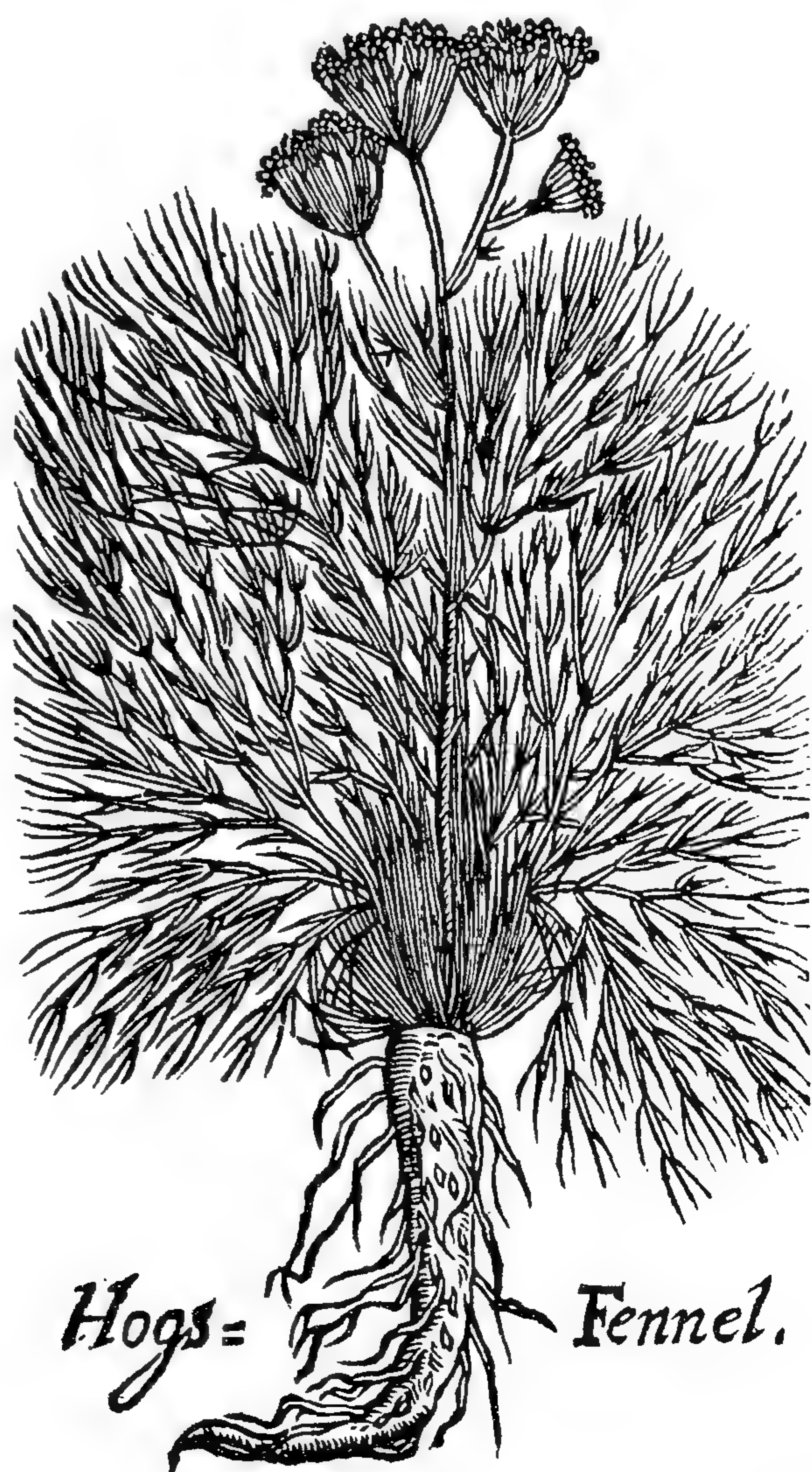
## C H A P. CCLV.

### Of FENNEL Hogs,

O R,

### SULPHUR-WORT.

I. THE Names. It is called in *Arabick*, *Harbatum*; in *Greek*, *Πευκέδανος*; in *Latin*, *Feniculum Porcinum*, *Peucedanus* and *Peucedanum*; by *Apuleius*, *Pinastellus*, (I suppose from its Pitchy Smell;) and in *English*, *Hogs Fennel*, *Sow Fennel*, *Hoar-strange* and *Sulphur-wort*.



**Hogs = Fennel.**



II. *The kinds.* Authors make generally three kinds of this Plant, viz. 1. *Peucedanum vulgare*, *Peucedanum Germanicum Bauhini*, *Peucedanum Tragi*, *Eusebii*, *Dodonæi*, & *aliorum*; *Faniculum Porcinum*, *Cauda Porcinæ Tabernmontani*, Common or Ordinary Hogs Fennel. 2. *Peucedanum Matthioli*, *Anguillare & aliorum*, *Peucedanum majus*, & *magus italicum Lobelii & Lugdunensis*, The greater Hogs Fennel. 3. *Peucedanum minus*, *Peucedanum facie perpasilla Lobelii*, *Peucedanum Pannonicum Chaffi*, Small Hogs Fennel: this both *Bauhinus* and *Chaffius* suppose to be the *Saxifraga secunda Matthioli*.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common Hogs Fennel, has a Root thick and long, sometimes almost as large or thick as a Man's Thigh, black without and white within, of a strong and sulphureous Smell, and full of a yellow Sap or Milk, which being extracted, quickly grows hard and dry, smelling not much unlike to Sulphur or Brimstone, which induced some to call it Sulphur-wort, having also at the top, towards the upper Face of the Earth, a certain Bush of Hair, of a brown color; from among which the Leaves and Stalks do spring up. From this Root then, springs up a stiff and hard Stalk, full of Knees, Knots or Joints, beset with Leaves, like to Fennel, but greater, coming nearer to *Ferula*, or rather like to the Leaves of the Wild Pine-tree, (from whence, as also from the Smell, might come the Name *Pinastellus*.) At the tops of the Stalks grow round spoky Tufts, full of little yellow Flowers; which being pass'd away, do turn into broad brown Seed.

IV. *The second, or Great Hogs Fennel*, has a Root growing great and deep into the Earth, with many other Branches and Fibres about them, having a strong Smell, like hot or melted Sulphur, which being cut, yields forth a yellowish Milk or clammy Juice, almost like to a Gum. From the Head of this Root proceeds several long branched Stalks, of thick and somewhat long Leaves, three for the most part joined together at a place; among which rises up a crested Stalk, strait, and near as thick as a Common Fennel Stalk, with some Joints thereon, and Leaves growing thereat; towards the top of which it spreads it self out into several Branches, and on the tops of the Stalk and Branches grow several Tufts of yellow Flowers, which being pass'd away, there comes somewhat flat, thin and yellowish Seed, twice as large as Fennel Seed.

V. *The third, or Small Hogs Fennel*, which is the Dwarf kind, has a Root about the Bigness or Thickness of a Man's Thumb, sometimes greater, sometimes lesser, with a Bush of Hairs at the top, blackish or brownish on the outside and whitish within, with a thick Bark, of a pleasant sweet Taste at first, and afterwards sharp: the whole Plant is less than the first kind before described, having smaller and shorter Leaves, of a blewish green color, of a little bitter Taste, but almost of no Smell. The Stalk is slender and round, about half a yard high, which spreads it self into several Branches, at the tops of which grow small Tufts of white Flowers in an Umbel; which being pass'd away, there succeeds thick short Seed, almost like Parsley Seed, but of an Ash color, and of a bitter sharp Taste.

VI. *The Places.* The first grows in many places of this Kingdom, as in the salt low Marshes near *Reverham* in *Kent*, and in the Meadows adjoining, where it is found plentifully; also on the South side of a Wood belonging to *Waltham*; at the Nose in *Essex*, by the Highway side; also at *Whitstable* in *Kent*, in a Meadow near to the Sea side, some time

belonging to Sir *Henry Crisp*, and adjoining to his House there. The second grows upon the Sea Coasts of *Italy*, *Spain* and *France*, and is only found with us in Gardens. The third was found on *Vincent's Rock* by *Bristol*, where *Lobel* gathered it, and some others: as to this third kind, *Gerard* says, that it grows not above a foot high, and is in Shape and Leaves like to the True *Peucedanum*, or our first kind: but *Johnson* (the successive Author of that Herbal) says the Stalk is about half a foot high, divided into sundry Branches, crested, broad, bearing at their tops little Umbles of white Flowers, consisting of five Leaves apiece. The Reason for these various Differences, as to the Height of the Stalk or Plant, I suppose must be from the Variety of the places where it grows, and from the Richness or Poverty of the Soil, which makes many Plants differ in that Respect, making one and the same Herb to be sometimes greater, sometimes lesser.



Dwarf Hogs Fennel

VII. *The Times.* They all flower in the end of Summer, viz. in *July* and *August*, and the Seed is ripe soon after.

VIII. *The Qualities.* Hogs Fennel is hot in the second Degree and dry in the third: it is Attractive, Astringent, Cleansing, Anodyne, Carminative and Traumatick or Vulnerary; Cephalick, Neurotick, Pectoral, Hysterick and Arthritic; Cathartic, Ptarmick and Alexipharmick.

IX. *The Specification.* It is singular good against Asthma's, Strangury, Fits of the Mother, and Obstructions of the Spleen.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice of the Root. 2. An Inspissate Juice. 3. A Decoction of the Root in Wine or Water. 4. A Pouder of the Root. 5. A Cataplasim. 6. A Balsam. 7. A Spirituous Tincture. 8. An Acid Tincture. 9. An Oily Tincture.

#### The Virtues.

XI. *The liquid Juice of the Root.* If it is mixed with a little Vinegar and Rosewater, or with a little *Euphorbium* in fine powder, it makes a good Er-rhine



rhine to purge the Head of pituitous, cold and moist Humors, and so does good to those who are troubled with the Megrin, long and inveterate Head-achs, Vertigo, Lethargy, Epilepsy, Apoplexy, Phrensy, Madness, Palsy, and most other Diseases of the Nerves and Tendons. Given to two or three spoonfuls in a Glass of White *Lisbon*, it purges the Belly gently, expels Wind, dissolves the Hardness of the Spleen, and eases the After-pains of Women in Child-bed.

XII. *The Inspissate Juice.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid, being dissolved in Wine or Water, and used in the same manner: dissolved in Wine and dropped into the Ears, it eases the Pains in them, and put into an hollow Tooth, it eases the Pain thereof: dissolved in Water, and given to such as are troubled with Vapors or Fits of the Mother, it cures them: dissolved in Wine to the Thickness of Turpentine, it cures the Ruptures of Childrens Navels when they stick forth, being applied with good Bandage: and given to one or two drams, dissolved in White *Lisbon* or Port Wine, it provokes the Terms in Women, and facilitates the Birth, brings forth both Child and After-birth.

XIII. *The Decoction of the Root in White Lisbon or Port Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid and inspissate Juices, but in a much less degree of Efficacy: sweetned with Honey or Sugar-Candy, it is good for Coughs, Colds, Catarrhs, Asthma's, Shortness of Breath and Difficulty of Breathing, expels Wind, and gives ease in the Colick. Dose four, six or eight ounces three or four times a day. It is a good Lotion to wash moist running Sores withal, for it cleanses and dries them, strengthens the Part, and induces the Healing.

XIV. *The Pouder of the Root.* Being put into inveterate and foul Ulcers, running Sores, and such like of difficult Cure, it cleanses them thoroughly, removes any Splinters of broken Bones, or other things in the Flesh, strengthens the Part admirably against Defluxions, dries them, induces their Cicatrizing, and perfectly heals them; and therefore is also of extraordinary Use to be put into such Ointments and Balsams as are Vulnerary, and applied to the Cure of stubborn and rebellious Ulcers, Fistula's, and the like. This Pouder being taken to a dram or more, mixed with the Seed of *Garden Rue* half a dram, and taken in Wine and Water mixt, or in Water alone, it allays Vapors from the Spleen and Womb, and cures Fits of the Mother.

XV. *The Cataplasim.* It is good to be applied to the Bitings of mad Dogs, Vipers, Rattle-Snakes, and other Serpents and venomous Creatures; for by its powerful attractive Force, it draws forth all the Venom and Poyson from the Part, and secures the Life of the Patient: but this is to be understood, that it must be made of the green Root beaten to a Pulp, and it will be so much the better, if half the quantity of *Garlick* be added to it, and also that it be applied to the Wound whilst it is recent, or presently after it is made. This Cataplasim draws forth likewise Thorns, Splinters, and such like things which are got into and stick in the Flesh; and it is good against Pains and Aches of the Joints, or any other Parts, proceeding from Cold and Moisture.

XVI. *The Balsam.* It is good for cleansing, drying and healing of old Sores, putrid and foetid Ulcers, and the like, in any Part of the Body. It is an excellent thing against the Sciatica and Gout, whether in Hands, Arms, Legs or Feet; and gives ease in any other Pain, as also in Tumors or Swellings, bringing Apolltems to Suppuration in a little time: it warms, comforts and strengthens any Part debilitated thro' Cold, or a Flux of Humors upon the same.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture of the Root.* It powerfully warms and comforts a cold Stomach, cleanses and incalidates the Womb, facilitates the Birth, and brings both it and the After-birth away. It is good against fainting and swooning Fits, and all cold and moist Distempers of the Head, Brain and Nerves, as Vertigo's, Apoplexies, Epilepsies, Lethargies, Convulsions, Palsies, and the like, being inwardly taken, and outwardly applied to the Parts affected. Dose from one to two drams in some specifick Vehicle Morning and Night.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It cures Nauseousness and Vomiting, and so absolutely strengthens a weak Stomach, that there are for that purpose but few things better. It is a singular thing to suppress Vapors and the Fits of the Mother, expels Wind, and gives ease in the Colick. Bathed upon places affected with the Gout for some time, it absolutely cures it. It causes a good Appetite and a strong Digestion, rectifies the Discreasy of the Blood and Humors, purifies them, and absolutely cures the Scurvy, whether in a hot or cold Habit of Body. Dose so many drops at a time as may make a Draught of Wine, Beer or Ale pleasantly acid.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture.* It cures Diseases of the extrem Parts arising from Cold and Moisture, strengthens the Nerves and Tendons, being anointed upon the Parts affected, and is a truly noble thing against Convulsions and Palsies. It opens Obstructions of the Reins, and cleanses the Ureters and Bladder from Stones, Gravel, Sand and tartarous or viscous Matter adhering to them, and gives present Relief in the Strangury: it also represses the Fits of Agues, being given in some fit Vehicle two hours before the coming of the Fit. Dose from ten to twenty drops or more in a Glass of generous Wine, being first well mixt with white Sugar, and that Morning and Night.

## C H A P. CCLVI.

### of F E N U G R E E K Garden.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Arabick*, *Olha* *Hebbe* and *Helbe*: in *Greek*, *Τάρις* by *Dioscorides*; *Βίρας* by *Theophrasti*, a Cornu similitudine five sit *Capri* vel *Bovis*, the crooked Seed-Vessels being so like to their Horns; *νεγιρnis*, *ἡ δισπονένης* *Hippocratis*: in *Latin*, *Fenumgræcum*, *Fenum Græcum*, for that *Columella lib. 2. cap. 11.* says the *Greeks* had two times of sowing it, the one before Winter, to be Fodder for their Cattel, the other in *February*, for Seed; for which Reason he calls it, *Siliqua*; *Pliny* calls it, *Silicia*; and *Varro*, *Silicula*: in *English* we call it, *Fenugreek*, which is as much as to say, *Greek Hay*.

II. *The Kinds.* They are principally two, viz. 1. *Fenumgræcum sativum*, Garden Fenugreek, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Fenumgræcum sylvestre* Wild Fenugreek, of which in the next.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root which is small, and made of many Fibres, perishing every Year after it has perfected its Seed, before Winter: from this Root spring forth sometimes but one, sometimes two or three long, slender, trailing, below, green Stalks, which spread themselves out into several Branches; on which do grow, at several spaces, many Leaves, almost like those of the *Meadow Trefoil*, but rounder and lesser, green on the upper side, but



tending to an Ash color or grey on the lower side; they are always three set together on a foot stalk, almost round at the ends, and a little dented about the edges. From the Joints of the Stalks, with these Leaves, come forth small white Flowers, not much unlike to Pease Blooms, but much less; which being pass'd away, after them, follow long, slender, narrow, flatish, crooked Cods or Horns, small or sharp pointed, in which are contained small, uneven cornered Seeds, of a yellowish color; which being dried, have indeed a pretty strong Smell, but not unpleasant.



IV. *The Places.* It grows almost in all parts of the World: in Foreign Countries they sow whole Fields of it, for Fodder for their Cattel; but with us it is only sown in Gardens, and yet it grows as well here as in any other place.

V. *The Times.* In Foreign Nations they sow it for Seed in the end of *January* or beginning of *February*; but we in *England* sow it not until *April*; and it flowers with us in the beginning of *July*, and the Seed is ripe in the end of *August* or beginning of *September*: but for Food for Cattel, it is sown before Winter, as is before hinted.

VI. *The Qualities.* *Galen* says it is hot in the second Degree and dry in the first: it is Aperitive, Cleansing, Astringent and Vulnerary; a good Pectoral and Hysterick; and withal Cathartick, purging away gross Humors.

VII. *The Specification.* It is peculiar against the Dysentery and other Fluxes of the Bowels, as also a Gonorrhœa.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *The prepared Pulse or Seed.* 2. *A Decoction in Wine.* 3. *A Bathe.* 4. *A Meal.* 5. *A Mucilage.* 6. *An Oil.* 7. *A Cataplasm.* 8. *A Juice from the Leaves.*

#### *The Virtues.*

IX. *The prepared Pulse.* They bury it a while in Earth or Sand till it sprouts a little, to make it sweet; then it is carried to the Market to be sold

for Food. This, says *Alpinus*, the *Ægyptians* eat; and *Galen* says it was used (among the *Grecians*) in his time, for that it makes such as eat it to grow fat, and therefore is thought to cure Consumptions, and to be good for Consumptive People. Those *Eastern* People did use to eat it as they did *Lupins*, for that it was more agreeable than *Lupins*, having nothing in its own proper Substance which is obnoxious: sometimes the Pulse is preserved in Pickle, and so eaten to keep the Body soluble.

X. *The Decoction in Wine.* It mollifies the Hardness of the Spleen and Womb, and eases the Pains of those Parts, opens their Obstructions, and is good against Hypochondriack Melancholy, makes smooth the Bowels, and helps the Disease called *Tenasmus*, which is a desire often to go to Stool, without doing any thing. It prevails against a Dysentery or Bloody-flux, and all other Fluxes of the Bowels. Applied to the Forehead with Cloths dipt therein, it stops the Flux of Humors to the Eyes, eases their Pains, and takes away their Inflammation. Used also in Clysters, it is said to be good against the Stone, by opening and mollifying the inward Parts. It cures Ulcers in the *Intestinum Rectum* and the other Guts: drunk to the quantity of half a pint, it purges and cleanses the Stomach of gross and evil Humors. If the Decoction is made with Dates and Honey, it mundifies or cleanses the Breast and Lungs, causes Expectoration, and heals Ulcers of those Parts. The Decoction being made in Wine or Water, and given inwardly half a pint or more at a time, Morning and Night, for some days together, cures a Gonorrhœa. *Alexis.*

XI. *The Bath.* It is made by boiling the Seed in Water till it is broken. If Women sit in it as hot as they can endure, it opens Obstructions of the Womb, and (if it be about the time) provokes the Terms. Bathed upon Parts affected with the Gout, it eases the Pain thereof, and removes Aches which come of Cold: it is also good to wash the Hair and Head, and to cleanse it from Scurff, Morpew and dry Scabs. It heals Ulcers of the Womb, strengthens the Part, cleanses, dries and restores its Tone.

XII. *The Meal or Pouder.* Taken to two drams mixed with a little Honey, it is Pectoral, and causes an Excretion of many pernicious Humors which lodge in the Stomach and Guts, maturates inward Apostems, cleanses Ulcers in the Breast and Lungs, and heals them, and eases the griping Pain of the Bowels: but in some People it is apt to overturn the Stomach or cause a Loathing, especially in such as are weak and tender; but troubles not such as have strong Stomachs, as have most of your robust Country People.

XIII. *The Mucilage.* Applied to the Joints, it gives ease in the Gout and other like Pains. Applied to the Forehead with Cloths dipt therein, it stops Fluxes of Humors to the Eyes, easing their Pains and Inflammations. Taken inwardly with Honey, it is Pectoral, and causes an Expectoration of thick, tough and gross Humors out of the Breast and Lungs, and is profitable against Coughs, Colds, Catarrhs, Asthma's, and other Diseases of those Parts.

XIV. *The Oil, made by Expression or Insolation.* *Lobel* says it is of more Virtue than will be believed; and that it is good to dissolve hard Tumors or Kernels, discusses scirrhus Swellings, mollifies the Intrails, Womb and other Parts, removes Scurff and Morpew, and cleanses, dries and heals Ulcers of the privy Parts.

XV. *The Cataplasm.* It is always made of the Meal, mixed with other proper Ingredients. If it is made by boiling it to a Thickness with Mead, it is



is Emollient, and wastes away hard Swellings. If it is made with Vinegar and Nitre, it cools all manner of Inflammations, softens hard Tumors, and causes them to waste away, it eases the Pain, and softens the Hardness of the Spleen. Applied to the running Sores of the Head, called *Ἀχρεῖς*, *Achores*, it cleanses, dries and heals them: and if it is also applied to weak and feeble Parts, whether ulcerated or not ulcerated, it strengthens them; and if ulcerated, cleanses, dries and heals them. Made with Linseed and *Marsh Mallow* Roots, it is an excellent Emollient, and also a Maturative, where the Tumor will be brought to Suppuration. The Meal beaten up with Goose-Grease made into a Pessary, and put up the Womb, softens the Hardness thereof, opens its Obstructions, and mollifies all the Parts adjacent to it. Made into a Cataplasm, by boiling it up with the best White Wine Vinegar, and applied to the Testicles, it is an excellent thing to soften and abate any hard Tumor or Swelling there, and to ease the Pains thereof. Applied also to the Joints, it eases the Pains of the Gout.

XVI. *The liquid Juice of the Leaves.* Physicians seldom use any thing of this Plant besides the Pulse or Seed; yet Experience has informed us, that if the Juice of the Leaves is taken with Honey, that it purges the Body by Stool from all corrupt and obstructive Humors, cleanses the Stomach and Bowels, and by reason of its mucilaginous Substance, alleviates the Sharpness of the Juices, and eases the Tortions of the Guts: and by reason of its cleansing and scouring Faculty, it expectorates tough and sharp Humors out of the Breast and Lungs: this it more effectually Performs, if it is made into a Lo-hoch, with Pulp of fat Dates.

## C H A P. CCLVII.

## Of FENUGREEK Wild.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Τύσις ἄγρια*: in Latin, *Fœnum Græcum sylvestre*; and in English, *Wild Fenugreek*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold, viz. 1. *Fœnum Græcum sylvestre majus*, The greater Wild Fenugreek. 2. *Fœnum Græcum sylvestre minus*, The lesser Wild Fenugreek.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Greater Wild kind, has a Root which is thick, tough and pliant, having some Fibres adjoining thereto, from which spring forth several Stalks, which are round, and spread themselves forth into many Branches, which are full of Knees or Joints, not much unlike to the Garden kind. From each Joint proceeds a small tender Foot-stalk, upon which do grow three Leaves, and no more, somewhat snipt about the edges, like as the former, or somewhat like to those of *Saint Foine* or *Burgundy Hay*: and from the same Joints also come forth small yellow Flowers, like unto the Manured, which stand more together at the end, bringing forth small long Cods, like those of the Garden, and which contain within them smaller and darker Seed.

IV. *The second, or Lesser Wild kind, has a tough creeping Root, with some Fibres thereat; from the Head of which Root rises up but one slender Stalk, and but seldom branched, of about a foot high, and fealy, as it were, at the bottom; upon which does grow such like Leaves as the former; and at the*

Joints Flowers like to those of the *Garden kind*, but which were lesser, and also standing single; which being pass'd away, Cods or Horns succeed, which are broader and more flat, and ending in a small Thread, in which is contained the Seed, which is also less.

V. *The Places.* They both grow Wild in *Spain* and *Italy*, but with us are only nurs'd up in Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* They flower with us in *July*, and the Seed is ripe in *August* or *September*.

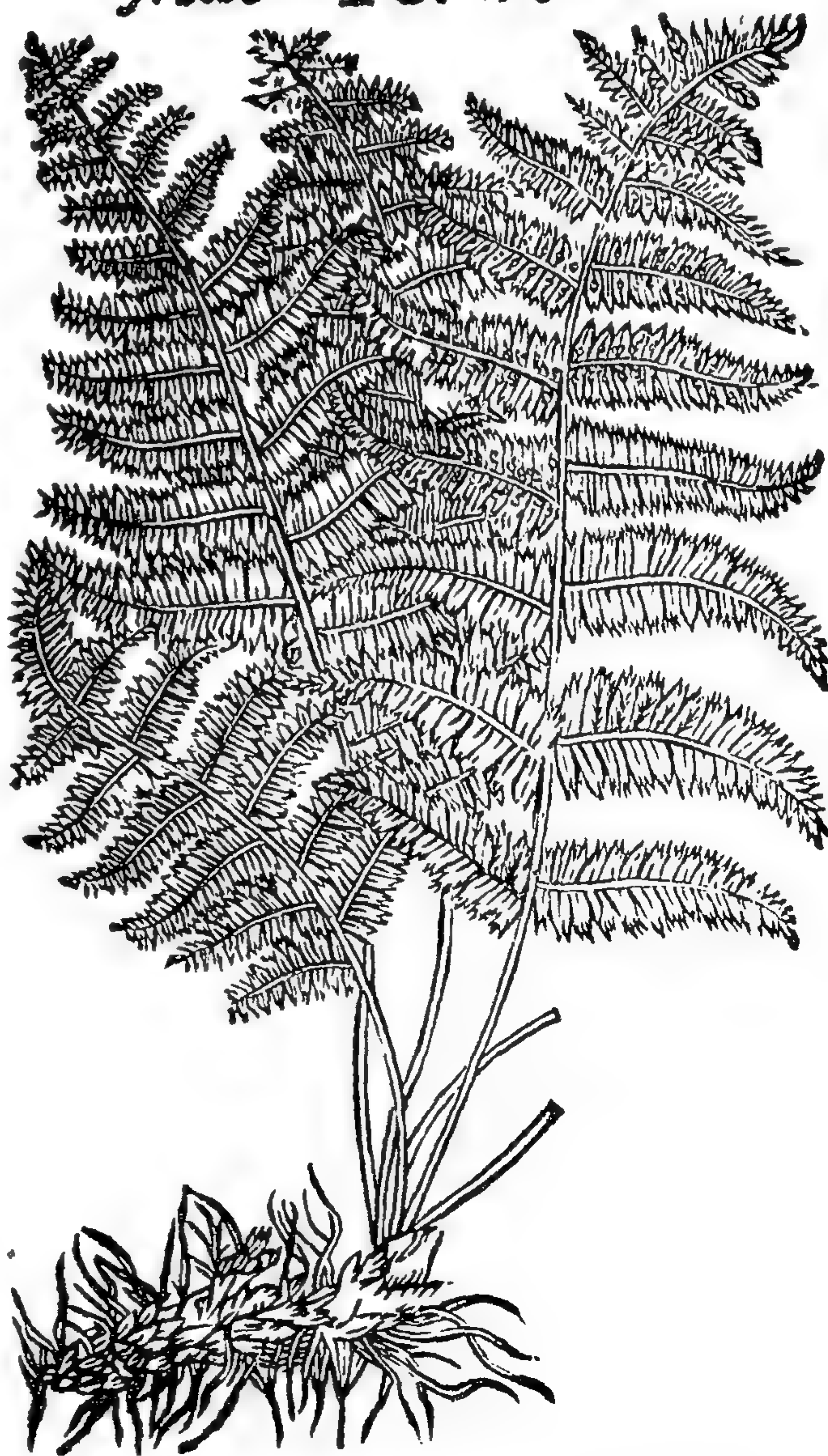
VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of these, are not declared by any Author; but if one may make a Judgment by the Form, Smell, Taste, Substance and mucilaginous Properties of the Herbs and their Seed, they differ not from those of the *Garden kind* in Chap. 256. foregoing.

## C H A P. CCLVIII.

## Of FERN Male.

I. *THE Names.* This Plant is called in *Arabic*, *Sarax*: in *Greek*, *Πτερίς ἢ Πτέριστον*, because the Leaves are like to the Wings of Birds: in *Latin*, *Filix*; and in *English*, *Fern*.

## Mal Ferne



II. *The Kinds.* There are many kinds of Fern, as, 1. *Filix Mas*, called by *Nicander* in *Theriakis*, *Βλῆδεον*, ἢ *Βλῆκνον*, Male Fern, (and yet this very Species *anguilura*, *Casalpina* and *Gejner* call *Femina*) of which we shall treat in this Chapter. 2. *Filix Femina*, Female Fern, of which in Chap. 259. 3. *Filix Querna*, Oak Fern, of which in Chap. 260. 4. *Filix Saxatilis*, Rock or Stone Fern, of which in Chap.



Chap. 261. 5. *Filix Florida, Aquatica, vel palustris*, Water Fern, or Osmund Royal, of which in Chap. 262. To these you may add, 6. *Polypodium, Filicula, Polypodic*. 7. *Lonchitis aspera*, Rough Spleen-wort, or Elfridges Fern. 8. *Asplenium ceterach*, Smooth Spleen-wort; of all which in their proper places.

III. The *Male kind* is that which we treat of in this Chapter, and is called by *Nicander, Blethron*. It is, 1. *Filix mas vulgaris*, Our common Male Fern. 2. *Filix mas aculeata, Filix mas aculeata minor Baubini*, Prickly Male Fern. 3. *Filix mas aculeata major Baubini*, The greater prickly Male Fern.

IV. The Description. The first, or Common Male Fern, has a Root consisting of a brown, scaly, thick Head; from which Head nothing but a multitude of small, black, hairy Fibres or Strings proceed, growing from the lower parts thereof: from this Head of the Root spring forth several hard, rough, unbranched Stalks of winged Leaves, naked or bare at the lower ends. These at the beginning of the Spring you may perceive to come forth of their folding Clusters, covered with brownish Scales at the Superficies of the Earth, very closely joined together. A young Plant has but a few Leaves, but an old one has ten, twelve, or more. Each Stalk of Leaves, at its lower end, near the Joining to its Fellows, at its first appearing, before it is an inch long, has some of those black fibrous Roots for its Nourishment. The Leaves being come to their full Growth, have each of them a threefold Division, (as has the Female Fern,) 1. The main Stalk. 2. The side Branches growing from it. 3. The Nerves growing on those side Branches bearing the Leaves. The main Stalks of some of these Leaves, are sometimes one, two, three or four feet in Length or Height, which are full of those brownish Scales towards the Root, where they are naked of Leaves, as aforesaid. These Stalks of Leaves consist of many side Branches of Leaves up to the tops, with one Leaf at the end, and they are set on both sides thereof, not fully opposite, but, as it were, in the middle, between two Branches of Leaves on the contrary side, each Branch of Leaves not fully divided, but deeply nicked in on the edges, all of them of a pale green color, hard and dry, or without Sap, broadest at the bottoms, and smallest towards the tops: on the backside of which there are certain brownish small Spots, which are said to be the Seed; for by the falling of it this Plant does wonderfully encrease. The main Stalks of these Leaves are firm, flat on one side and round on the other side, naked of Leaves from ten to twenty inches, (according to the Height thereof) where the first side Branches of Leaves begin; the longest of which side Branches are the third pairs from the Root, being in some Plants, six, seven, eight or nine inches long; and from this longest pair they grow shorter and shorter towards the top, and are many times in number fourteen, eighteen or twenty pairs: for the most part towards the Root they grow by couples, almost opposite; but as they grow higher towards the tops, they grow not opposite, but in the middle, between their Opposites. The Leaves on the side Branches, are from an inch to almost an inch and half long, and so grow shorter and shorter towards the tops of the said side Branches or Wings, from twelve or fourteen to twenty in number on each side the longest Wing or side Branch. The small Leaves grow by couples for the most part on the Nerve, each Leaf being a little cut in on the edges, each Dent ending with a sharp Point, green on the upper side, and paler on the under side, each Leaf having two Rows of dusty red Scales, of a brown or

blackish color. Towards the top of the main Stalk those side Branches change into Nerves, bearing only the Leaves. When the Leaves are at their full Growth, you may see in the midst of them at their Roots, the said scaly folding Cluster; and as the old Leaves, with their black thready Roots, wholly perish, so the said scaly folding Cluster springs up again; but in warm places, you will many times find the old Leaves green all the Winter.

V. The second, or Prickly Male Fern, differs not much from the former, but only that the winged Leaves are not dented in, but whole, having a small Prick at the end of each of them, and growing not so high. This Parkinson thinks to be the *Filix mas aculeata minor Baubini*; but thinks, that there is but little difference between it and his major.

VI. Gerard describes that which he thinks to be *Filix mas aculeata major Baubini* after this manner: The Leaves of this are of a deeper green than either of the former, and are placed on the Nerve not very close together, but that you may plainly see between them; each Leaf (especially those next the Stalk) having on that side farthest off the Stalk, a large Ear or Outgrowing, ending with a very sharp Prickle, and very fine or small, as doth also the top of the Leaf. Some of the sides of the Leaves are also notched or dented in, ending with the like Prick or Hair; and each Leaf has two Rows of dusty Seed Scales.

VII. The Places. They all grow on Heaths and open places of Hills, as also in shadowy places by Fields sides; and are frequent in many Counties of England. The first grows plentifully in the boggy, shadowy Moors near *Durford Abby* in *Suffex*; as also on the moist shadowy Rocks by *Maple Durham* in *Hampshire*, near *Petersfield*: it has also been found growing on the old rotten Stocks or Bodies of Oaks, near the said Moors. The second grows in shadowy Woods and Copses. The third Mr. *John Goodyer* found growing on the shadowy moist Rocks by *Maple Durham* near *Petersfield*, aforesaid.

VIII. The Times. They seldom keep their Stalks with their Leaves green in Winter, but send forth new from the Root in the Spring, which at their first rising are brownish and folded in round, as aforesaid: the time when these Heads or Scales on the back of them are ripe and do fall, is Midsummer; and falling on the Ground, do spring again, by which the Plant is encreased.

IX. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses of the Male Ferns, are the same with those of the Female, related in the next Chapter, and thither I refer you.

## C H A P. CCLIX.

### Of F E R N Female.

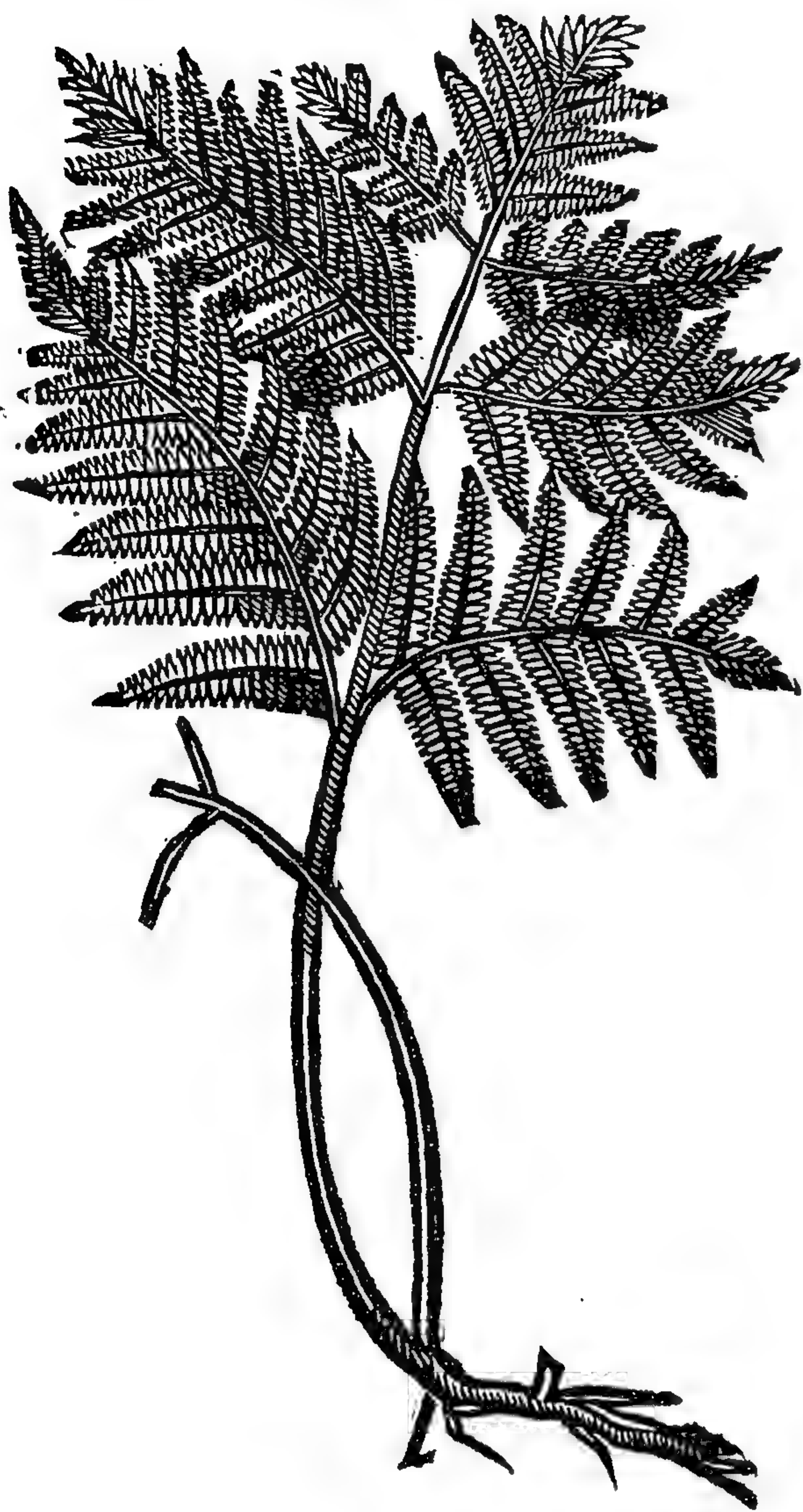
I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Θαλασσιος, & Νυμφευσις*, *Thelypteris* and *Nymphapteris*: in Latin, *Filix Femina*; and in English, Female Fern, Brake or Common Fern.

II. The Kinds. It is the second general Species, and is threefold, viz. 1. *Filix Femina vulgaris*, Our common Female Fern: but *Gesner in hortis* calls it *Mas*, and *Baubinus* in his *Pinax*, *Filix ramosa pinnulis obtusis non dentatis*. 2. *Filix Femina pinnulis dentatis*, *Filix Femina altera tenuifolia Thalii*, Female



male Fern dented. 3. *Filix Fœmina pinnulis aculeatis*; *Filix ramosa minor pinnulis dentatis Bauhini*; *Pteridium masculum Cordi & Thalii*, Female Fern sharp-pointed.

## Female Fern.



III. The Descriptions. The first, or Common Female Fern, has a Root which is long, and slenderer than the former, of about a Fingers Thickness, and blackish for the most part, creeping under Ground: from this Root rises up but one Stalk, (seldom two) which is round, chamfered, and somewhat edged, growing sometimes higher than the Male, and branched forth into such like winged Leaves, growing on both sides, like to the Leaves of the Male Fern, but lesser, set on both sides thereof, for the most part one against another, and more dented than the Male, yet not sharp, but round-pointed, of as strong a Smell as the former, and having the like Spots on the backsides of them. This Stalk (as also the Root, as some say) being cut aslope somewhat long, will in the white Pith thereof have some certain Resemblance or Form of a spread Eagle.

IV. The second, or Dented Female Fern, has a Root like the former; from which springs up one main Stalk, which is fuller of Branches, and grows not up so high as the other, nor so straight: it has also small winged Leaves, like the first or Common Female, which are set on each side of the middle Rib, but somewhat sharp-pointed, of a more sad green color, and narrower than the other, and spotted on the backside; but in any thing else little differing from the first Female kind.

V. The third, or Sharp-pointed Female Fern, from a pretty thick black Root, sends forth the main Stalk, which is about a foot in Height, and branches it self out into winged Leaves, each of which is not dented, but whole, and ending in a small Prick or Point.

VI. The Places. The first grows more frequently than the Male kinds on barren Heaths and Hedgesides in most places thro' the Kingdom, and indeed in almost all barren, dry and desert places. The two latter grow rather on moist Rocks and shady Hills.

## Female Fern Dented.



VII. The Times. They flourish at the same times that the Male kinds do; and their Leaves perish in Winter in like manner.

VIII. The Qualities. They are all of them, both Male and Female, hot and dry in the first Degree; Astringent, Aperitive, Absterfive, Cosmetick, Diuretick and Vulnerary; dedicated to the Liver, Spleen and Womb, Cathartick and Emmenagogick.

IX. The Specification. Ferns kill Worms, provoke the Terms in Women, heal Wounds and cure putrid Ulcers.

X. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. The green Leaves. 2. A Decoction of the Roots in Mead or White Port Wine. 3. A Powder of the Roots. 4. An Oil or Ointment. 5. A Mixture. 6. Ashes, of which Spanish Barilla is made.

## The Virtues.

XI. The green Leaves. They being eaten purge the Belly, cleansing the Bowels of colerick and waterish Humors; but they also at the same time trouble the Stomach, and cause either Vomiting or Nauseousness.

XII. The Decoction of the Roots in Mead or Wine. It kills Worms in the Body, both long and broad, powerfully opens Obstructions of the Spleen, taking away its Swelling and Hardness, and represses Hypochondriack Melancholy. Dose half a pint Morning and Night, fasting an hour after it in the Morning, and taking it an hour after Supper.

XIII. The Powder of the Roots. Taken to a dram inwardly in a Glass of White Port, it opens Obstructions of the Liver, Spleen and Womb, and provokes the Terms: but the often taking it causes Barrenness. It is used with success in foul, putrid and malign Ulcers, for it cleanses them, incarnates and dries up the putrid Moisture, and induces a speedy Healing. The Powder of the Leaves, brings away both Birth and After-birth, being taken to one



dram in White Wine, and repeated as the Midwife shall see occasion.

XIV. *The Oil or Ointment.* It is made by boiling the bruised Root either in Oil or in Hogs Lard till it is crisp, and so straining it out, and repeating the boiling with fresh Roots, in like manner, two or three times. They are said to be excellent for healing simple green Wounds and Punctures (tho' of the Nerves) in any part. If to every pound of the Oil or Ointment a quarter of a pound of Turpentine be added, it then proves an excellent thing to digest, cleanse, incarnate, dry and heal old running Sores and putrid Ulcers.

XV. *The Mixture.* Take Powder of Fern Roots (Male or Female) one dram, Scammony or Black Hellebor Roots in fine powder fifteen grains: mix them for a Dose. It effectually kills Worms in the Stomach or Belly of what kind soever: it also brings away the After-birth of Women in Labor.

XVI. *The Ashes.* Country People make them of green Fern, and use them instead of Soap to wash their Cloaths withal; for with the Salt of Fern-Ashes much Soap is made. A Salt also for making of fair Crystalline Glass and Crystal is made of these Ashes. They use them in Spain, and the Ashes or Salt they make of Fern, is that they call *Barilla*, which is profitable not only for making Soap, Glass, Crystal, &c. but for many other Physical Uses, as to break and dissolve the Stone, or sandy and gravelly Concretions. See the eighth Edition of our *Polygraphice*, lib. 10. cap. 1. sect. 8, 9, 12, ad 18.

## C H A P. CCLX.

### OF FERN Oak.

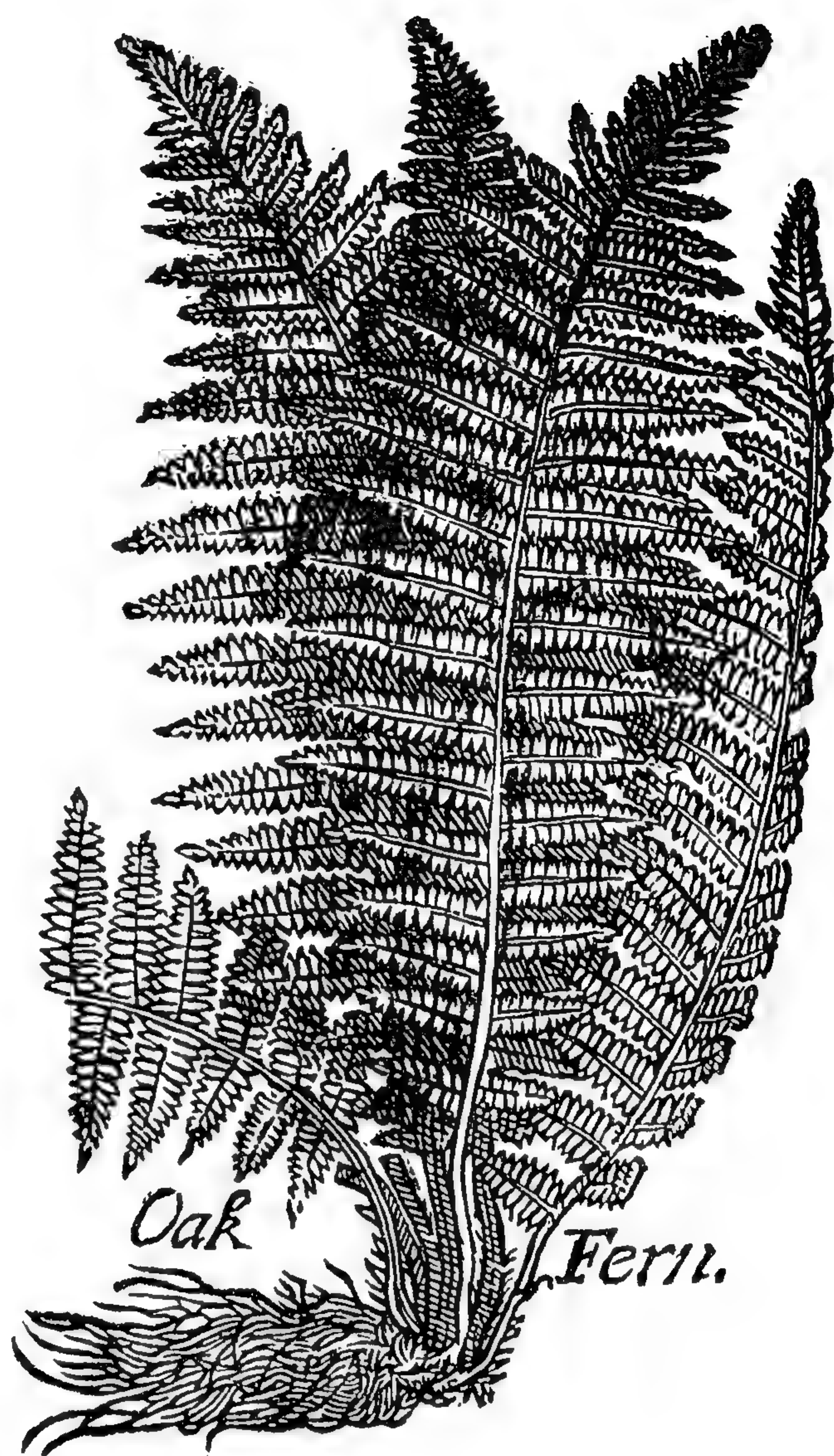
I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Δρυοπίτεξ*: in Latin, *Filix Querna vel Quercina*; *Βρυονίσις* *Orebasi*, quasi *Filix muscosa*; and in English, Oak Fern: but here is to be noted, that there is another sort of Oak Fern, called *Polypodie*, which is no Species of the Plant we here intend; and therefore shall say nothing of it in this place.

II. *The Kinds.* This Oak Fern is threefold, viz. 1. *Δρυοπίτεξ ῥεπων*, *Filix Querna repens*, *Dryopteris repens* Lobelii, Matthioli, Gesneri aliorumque; *Dryopteris sive Filix arborea* Tragi; *Pterion Famina* Cordi & Thalii, Creeping Oak Fern. 2. *Δρυοπίτεξ λευκή*, *Dryopteris alba*, *Dryopteris Candida* Dodonæi, *Adiantum album* Plinii, *Adiantum filicis folio* Bauhini, White Oak Fern. 3. *Onopteris mus*, Black Oak Fern.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Creeping Oak Fern, has a Root which is small and blackish, creeping under the upper Crust of the Earth, with several small black Fibres growing from it, and is somewhat like unto the Root of *Polypodie*, but much smaller and slenderer, and of a more harsh, austere and styptic Taste. From this Root spring forth several slender blackish Stalks, little more than half a foot high, bearing many small winged Leaves, each standing against the other, something like to those of the Female Fern, but much smaller and finer, and of a darkish green color; the backside of which are not brown, but with white Spots on them, set in a double Row, as Lobel affirms.

IV. *The second, or White Oak Fern, has a thick Root, having a Bunch or Knot of blackish Fibres or Threads growing forth from it, so many as even to*

*obscure the thick part thereof.* From the Head of this Root spring up many Stalks of winged Leaves; but not much higher than the former, seldom exceeding seven or eight inches in Height; but the Leaves upon the Wings are broader than the other, and shorter; also more deeply cut in on the edges: they are likewise of a much paler green color, and spotted on the backside with Spots something like to those of the Male Fern.



V. *The third, or Black Oak Fern, is both Male and Female: the Male has a Root made up of many Strings, not much unlike the first Male Fern, but lesser.* From the Head of this spring forth several Stalks of winged Leaves, which are diversly, but not so finely indented: the Stalks and the Ribs of the Leaves are blackish, but the Leaves themselves of a deep green color. The Female black Oak Fern is almost like to the Male, saving that its Leaves are not so sharp at the Points, and are more white and broad than the Male, in which consists the chief Differences.

VI. *An Observation.* The first of these described at sect. 3. above, some Authors say, 1. *does fold its Roots among themselves, like the Roots of Polypodium*, but they are not above the Bigness of a Wheat Straw, coal black without, white within, and about six or seven inches long, having an innumerable company of small Fibres like Hairs growing thereto, and is of an astringent Taste, enclining to Sweetness. 2. *That the Stalks spring from the Roots in several places, variable in number, according to the Length and Encrease of the Root: some Plants have but one or two Stalks of Leaves, others again have six, eight, ten, fourteen or fifteen, &c.* 3. *That the Stalk has a twofold Division, first the Stalk growing from the Root six or seven inches high and no higher, (and yet some Authors say it is about a foot high:) secondly, the Nerve bearing the Leaves: the main Stalk is no bigger than a Grass Stalk or Bent, flat on the one side and round on the other, smooth and green.* 4. *That the first pair of Nerves grow*



grow about three inches from the Root, and all the rest following grow by couples, almost exactly one against another, in number about eight, nine or ten pairs, the longest seldom exceeding an inch in Length. 5. That the Leaves grow also on the Nerves by couples, eight or nine couples on a Nerve, of a yellowish green color, and without any Dents on the edges: yet some other Authors say, that the Leaves are like those of the Female Fern, but much lesser, and more finely indented or jagged, so finely cut in, that in shew they resemble Feathers, set round about a small Rib or Sinew. 6. That the backsides of the Leaves are sprinkled, not with russet or brown Spots or Specks, as the other Ferns are, but are as it were painted with white Spots or Marks, not standing out of the Leaves in Scales, as the Spots in the Male Fern, but smooth or flat, and double in each Leaf, close unto the middle Rib or Sinew.

VII. *The Places.* These do indeed grow in shadowy thick Woods on Mountains, and sometimes in the open Vallies near them; as also among the Moss growing on old Trees, chiefly Oaks, whence came the Name *Filix Muscosa*, which is a kind of Moss Fern, growing amongst the Moss on Oaks and other Trees, and in the tops of their Trunks when they begin to rot.

VIII. *The Times.* Neither these nor any of the other Ferns (except *Water Fern*) have any manifest Flower or Seed, so that their Seasons are not to be specified. As for the Leaves, they perish in Winter, and put forth afresh in the Spring.

IX. *The Qualities.* The first is hot in the first Degree and dry in the fourth; Astringent, biting and very styptick in Taste, and, as *Rondeletius* thinks, of a deleterious or mortiferous Quality. The other three kinds are like in all their Qualities to *English Maiden-hair*; and therefore, as to their Specification, Preparations and Virtues, we shall refer you thither.

X. *The Specification.* The first of these kills Worms, and destroys the Roots of the Hair.

XI. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A Powder of the Root. 2. A Cataplasme.

## *The Virtues.*

XII. *The Powder of the Root.* *Matthiolus* says, that if it is mixed with Salt and Bran, and given to Horses, that it kills Worms in them: but I suppose it must be repeated Morning and Night for several days.

XIII. *The Cataplasme.* It is made of the Roots and Leaves bruised and beaten together. *Dioscorides* says, that if it is applied to places troubled with Hair after Sweating, (because then the Pores are open, and so give a more ready inlet to the Virtue of the Medicament) it is a Depilatory, or a good Remedy to destroy the Roots of Hairs.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make many kinds hereof, as, 1. *Filix pumila saxatilis prima Clusii*, The first Small or Stone Fern of *Clusius*. 2. *Filix pumila saxatilis altera Clusii*, The second Stone Fern of *Clusius*. 3. *Filix saxatilis foliis non serratis*, Small Stone Fern, with Leaves not dented. 4. *Filix saxatilis crispa*, Small curled Stone Fern. 5. *Filicula fontana*, Small Rock Fern. 6. *Chamaefilix Anglica*, English Dwarf Fern, or Sea Fern. 7. *Filix saxatilis Tragi*, Naked Stone Fern.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first small Stone Fern of *Clusius*, has a long, black and slender Root, creeping under the upper Crust of the Earth, and spreading astant, with a few slender hard Fibres adjoining thereto. From this Radicle spring forth several Stalks of winged Leaves, about a foot high, which is branched out into several Wings of Leaves, very like unto the Female Fern, but much less, much tenderer and delicate than they, and more finely dented on the edges, and spotted also on the Backs of them, like to the other Ferns.

IV. *The second, or Second Stone Fern of Clusius*, has a thick Head of a Root, much like to that of the first Male Fern. From which spring forth many small Knobs, with a vast number of black Fibres or Threads. From this Head of the Root spring up several strait round Stalks of Leaves, green at first, but blackish when full grown, about four or five inches high, shooting forth winged Leaves from the main Stalk upwards, with Dentings in on both sides, like unto the Male Fern, but much less, and finer, and spotted on the back of them, as the former.

V. *The third, or Small Stone Fern with Leave not dented*, has a Root like to the Male Fern, and grows very like it, with Stalks of winged Leaves, saving that they are very much less, (as is the whole Plant) and not indented on the edges, but whole or smooth, like unto the *Water Fern*.

VI. *The fourth, or Small curled Stone Fern*, has a Root composed of many blackish Fibres, springing out from the thick Head of a Root: from which Head spring up small Stalks, scarcely four or five inches high, which are set on both sides with tender soft Strings of very small Leaves, so finely divided and dented, that they seem curled; of a dark green color upwards, and paler below towards the bottom, having brownish or reddish Dust like Spots on the backsides, as *Spleen-wort* has.

VII. *The fifth, or Small Rock Fern*, is a small Dwarf Fern, resembling in its Root, Stalks and Leaves the Common Fern, but very much less, yet much less than any of the last described: tho' it grows low, yet it bushes out with many small and dark green Leaves, resembling the Ordinary Ferns.

VIII. *The sixth, or English Dwarf Fern*, has a thick brownish Root, composed of a multitude of Fibres or small Strings. From the Head of this Root spring up several bright, shining, blackish Stalks, two or three inches high, on which are placed many rough, thick, shining, blackish Leaves, with some brownish Spots on them, as other Ferns have, and are finely snipt about the edges.

IX. *The seventh, or Naked Stone Fern*, has a thick tufted Root, composed of a multitude of small Fibres: from the Head of which spring forth many hard and rough Stalks, naked or bare, without Leaves, having some Spots on them, as the Ferns have: these Stalks are only forked at the tops, divided into two, and sometimes into three short parts, bowing or bending down their Heads, having the Smell and Taste of Fern. In my Opinion, as this has not the least Resemblance in its Form of Fern, but rather of *Gramen* or *Grass*; so it ought to be

C H A P. CCLXI.

Of FERN Rock or Stone.

THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Περγασμός*, *Πύρεος περγασία*: in Latin, *Filix Saxatilis*, *Chamaefilix*: in English, *Rock or Stone Fern*; also *Dwarf* or *Small Fern*.



accounted one of the Species thereof; but for Company sake with other Authors, I have not contended the Point, but have let it pass among the *Ferns*: it is the *Holostium alterum Lobelii*.

X. *The Places*. They all grow in Rocky and Stony places: the fifth, sixth and seventh, *Lobel* says, grow near the Sea in *Cornwall*, in moist Rocky places.

XI. *The Times*. They spring up and flourish at the times when the other *Ferns* do, and perish in the like Seasons.

XII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues*, are the same with the *Common Male and Female Ferns*; and therefore to Chap. 259. foregoing, I refer you.

## C H A P. CCLXII.

### Of FERN Water,

O R,

### O S M U N D Royal.

I. *THE Names*. It was unknown to the *Greeks*, and therefore can have no *Greek Name*; but it is called in *Latin*, *Filix florida*, *Filix aquatica*, *Osmunda Regalis*, *Filix palustris*, *Filix Lunaria Gesneri*, *Filix latifolia Cordi*, *Filicastrum*: in *English*, *Water Fern* and *Osmund Royal*.

II. *The Kinds*. It is the fifth Species of *Ferns*, and a singular Plant of the kind.



III. *The Descriptions*. It has a great and thick Root, folded, and covered over with many Scales, and interlacing Roots, having in the middle of the great and hard woody part thereof a small white Pith, which by some is called the Heart of Osmund the

*Water-man*: from this Root shoot forth in the Winter time several hard rough Stalks, half round, and hollowish or flat on the other side, which grow up to the height of two feet, having sundry Branches of winged yellowish green Leaves, spread out on all sides, and set one against another, longer, narrower, and not indented on the edges, as the *Common Ferns Male and Female*. From the tops of some of these Stalks grow forth a long Bush of small scaley Spikes, as it were, of a more yellowish green color, set on the same manner on the Stalks as the Leaves are, which by some Authors are accounted the Flowers and Seed, tho' others again as much deny it.

IV. *The Places*. It grows in Moors, Bogs and Watery places in many parts of *England*: it did grow in the midst of a Bog, at the farther end of *Hampstead Heath* from *London*, at the bottom of a Hill adjoining to a small Cottage; also in divers Bogs on a Heath or Common near unto *Burnt Wood* in *Essex*, especially near unto a place formerly digged in search of a Gold Mine, but now it is said to be rooted out of those places: it grows in wonderful plenty in boggy places, Swamps and low moist Grounds thro' almost all *Carolina*: I found it in great plenty in moist and boggy Grounds, bordering upon *Wadmalaw River* in *South Carolina*, where Cart Loads of it might be had, as also in divers places adjacent to *Ashly*, *Cooper* and *Wando Rivers*, and in several other parts of the same Collony.

V. *The Times*. It is green and flourishes all the Summer, as do the other *Ferns*; and the Spikes of Flowers and Seed are in Perfection in *June*, *July* and *August*; the Leaves decay and die away in Winter, but the Root continues good, and lives for many Years. *Gerard* says, That if it is transplanted into Gardens, it prospers full as well as in its native Soil.

VI. *The Qualities, Specifications, Preparations and Virtues*, are the same with those of the *Male and Female Fern* in Chap. 259. foregoing, excepting that this is more effectual than they, both for inward and outward Diseases, and therefore rather to be chosen than either of them, or any of them all: also over and above what has been there said, the following Observations have been experimentally made.

VII. *The Decoction in Wine*. It is a singular good Wound-drink, and therefore of excellent Use in curing green Wounds, running Sores, old Ulcers, Fistula's, and the like. It gives ease in the Colick, and all Diseases proceeding from Obstructions of the Spleen, Womb, Reins, &c. and it also prevails against Ruptures or Bristleness. If the Decoction is made in White Wine, it provokes Urine exceedingly, cleansing the Reins, Ureters and Bladder.

VIII. *The Balsam, Oil or Ointment of the Root*. They cure any simple Contusion, heal Wounds, running Sores and old Ulcers; and are singularly good against the Gout, broken Bones, and Bone out of Joint.



C H A P. CCLXIII.

## of FIGWORT Great Common.

**I.** *THE Names.* It does not seem to be known to the Greeks, for it has no Greek Name; but it is called in Latin by many Names, as *Ficaria*, *Mille Morbia*, *Ferraria*, *Castrangula*, *Chrysippea* Plinij, as some think, *Galeopsis Dioscoridis*, as *Fuchsius*, *Cordus* and *Dodonæus* think, also *Scrophularia major*: in English *Figwort*.

**II.** *The Kinds.* We make two Generical Kinds of this Plant, viz. 1. *Scrophularia major vulgaris*, The Common Great Figwort, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Scrophularia major Peregrina*, Foreign Great Figwort, of which in the next Chapter.

**III.** Of the first of these sorts there are two Kinds, viz. 1. *Scrophularia major vulgatiore*, *Ocimastrum alterum Tragi*, *Clymenum Mas Gesneri in Hortis*, *Galeopsis Fuchsi*, & *Cordij*, The more Common Great Figwort. It is called *Scrophularia* in most Authors, because it is available ad *Scrophulas*; and *major*, to distinguish it from *Scrophularia minor*, which is *Pilewort*, of which in its place. 2. *Scrophularia major altera Elegans*, The Noble or Beautiful Great Figwort.



**IV.** *The Descriptions.* The first, or more Common Great Figwort, has a Root which is great, white and thick, with several Knobs or Tubers growing at it, and running a floop under the upper Crust of the Earth, which abides many Years, the Green Herb dying away in the Winter. From this Root spring forth sundry great, strong, hard, square, brown Stalks, three or four Feet high, on which grow large, hard, and dark green Leaves, two at a Joint, which are larger and harder than any Nettle Leaves, but not stinging, and not much unlike in form to

the Leaves of *Water Betony*, so that they are sometimes mistaken the one for the other, being difficult to be known asunder, without a narrow view of them; but these Leaves are not so round dented about the edges, and are also smaller at the ends. At the tops of the Stalks come forth many Purple Flowers, set in Husks, which are something gaping and open, but not so much as any of the *Galeopses* or *Dead Nettles*, but closer and smaller, somewhat like those of *Water Betony* aforementioned; which being past away, hard, round Heads come in their places, having a small point in the middle, in which is contained small brownish Seed.



**V.** The Second, or Elegant Great Figwort, has a great, thick, white, and knobbed Root, like the former, which sends forth from it one or more great, hard, strong, brown Stalks, with Leaves at the Joints, very like the other, but they are fairer, and more sometimes standing at a Joint, especially at the lower Joints. The Flowers are not gaping as the first, but made of four reddish Leaves, which commonly stand at the Joints with the Leaves; which being past, there comes in their places hard round Heads of Seed Vessels, but without any point in the middle, in which are contained a small kind of Seed.

**VI.** *The Places.* They are very frequent, especially the first, in most places through the Kingdom, growing in moist and shadowy Woods, and in the lower parts of Fields and Meadows: it may be found in great abundance in *Hornsey Wood*, near London, as also in *Store Wood*, and *Shotover*, near Oxford.

**VII.** *The Times.* They Flower in June and July, and the Seed will be ripe in a Month after the Flowers are past.

**VIII.** *The Qualities.* Figwort is hot and dry in the Third Degree, Anodyne, Discussive, and Vulnerary.

**IX.** *The Specification.* It is peculiar for Curing the Scrophula or Kings-Evil, as also the Hamorrhoids or Piles, Scabs, Leprosie.

**X.** *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom



1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction in Wine. 4. A Distilled Water. 5. An Ointment. 6. A Cataplasm. 7. A Spirituous Tincture. 8. An Acid Tincture.

#### The Virtues.

XI. *The Liquid Juice of Herb and Root.* It is a most admirable Vulnerary; taken to two Spoonfuls, or more, in the Distilled Water of the Plant, it is effectual to dissolve clotted or congealed Blood within the Body, which happens by means of any Wound, or by any Bruise or Fall; and is very powerful to waste away, consume, or destroy that Humor which is the Cause of Struma's, Scrophula's, Leprosies, Scabs, and other like Breakings out.

XII. *The Essence.* It has the same Virtues, but is more powerful to the Intentions above named, being outwardly applied, by bathing it upon Scrophulous Tumors, Hemorrhoids, Scabs, Scurff, Morphew, Leprosie, it is of singular good use, because it resists the protrusion of the Humors which cause them, and also wastes away what is contained in the parts affected; it also cleanses, dries, and induces the healing of running Sores, old Ulcers, Fistula's, and the like; and may be taken inwardly as a Diet, in order to facilitate those Cures.

XIII. *The Decoction of the Roots and Herb in Wine.* It is a singular good Wound Drink, and of great efficacy (being constantly taken Morning, Noon, and Night to the quantity of half a Pint for a Dose, for some considerable time) to cure inveterate and malign Fistula's, or which yield a malign Jchor, known by its putrid substance, ill color, and foetidity. The same is also no less effectual against the Kings-Evil, or any other Knots, Kernels, Bunches, or Wens, growing in the Flesh, in what part of the Body soever. It is also of very good use to be applied to the Hemorrhoids or Piles when they grow painful and fall down, and for such other Knobs, Tumors, or bunchings out, (as *Ficus in Ano*) which sometimes happens to the Fundament.

XIV. *The Distilled Water from the whole Plant.* It is used for the same purposes, either to take inwardly, or apply outwardly, by bathing, &c. It is of good use for foul and putrid Ulcers, which are hollow or corroding, to stay the malignity, and to dry up the superfluous virulent moisture of them. It also takes away all Redness, Spots, Freckles, Scurff, &c. in the Face and Skin, or any other foul Deformity thereof, tho' inveterate, as the Leprosie, &c. but it will be more effectual if you dissolve therein a proportional quantity of Nitre, Salt of Tartar, or *Saccharum Saturni*, according to the nature of the Disaffection you apply it to.

XV. *The Ointment of Herb and Roots,* but more especially of the fresh Roots. It is made according to the usual Rule of making Ointments, but Authors have left this Prescription. Take the Roots, wash them clean, bruise them, and put them into a Jar Glass, or Earthen Pot, with a sufficient quantity of Butter, or Hogs Lard, or Beef Suet, mixt with an equal quantity of Oil Olive, which is the better of the three, tie over the Jar Glass or Pot with a Bladder, or Leather and brown Paper, and let it so stand in the hottest Sun for 15 or 20 days, then afterwards upon a gentle Fire boil softly for almost an hour, and whilst hot strain it forth, and keep it in a Jar Glass or Gally-pot close covered for use. You may also make it by boiling the bruised Roots and Leaves in Hogs Lard, or in Oil and Wax, and then straining it out as aforesaid. It is exceeding good to anoint with, in order to cure Scrophulous Tumors, or Swellings in the Neck, as also *Ficus in Ano*, and the Hemorrhoids or Piles, it eases the pains, and

many times discusses the Tumors, and if any of them are Ulcerated, it is of extraordinary use to heal all those kinds of Ulcers, as also Scabs, Leprosie, &c.

XVI. *The Cataplasm.* It is made of the Herb, or of the Root, or of Herb and Root, being beaten in a Mortar till they are soft; being applied it cures Simple Contusions, caused by any Blow or Fall, dissolves the coagulated Blood, and soon heals the Hurt or Wounded part; and it is also no less effectual against Struma's, or the Kings-Evil, and to dissolve any bunchings out, Wens, or Kernels in the Throat or other parts.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It stops inward Bleedings, and expels Wind out of the Stomach and Bowels, corrects the cold pituitous Humor which breeds the Kings-Evil Kernels, and other like Tumors, in any part of the Body; and is very efficacious against the Colick, the pain of the Spleen, and Hypochondriack Disaffections. Dose from two drams to four in the Distilled Water, or in Wine, or other proper Vehicle, Morning and Night.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It strengthens and fortifies the Stomach, and rectifies the Juices in their first Concoction, preventing the generating and concreting of that Matter, or those Humors which breed Struma, or the Disease called the Kings-Evil. It causes a good Appetite, and a strong Digestion, and powerfully opens the Obstructions of the Stomach, Liver, and Spleen, and therefore absolutely cures the Rickets in Children, of which I have had a particular Experience several times. Dose so many drops as to make the Ale, Beer, or Wine grateful.

#### C H A P. CCLXIV.

#### Of FIGWORT Great Foreign.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Latin *Scrophularia major Peregrina*, and by reason the Roots are without Tubers, or Knobs, it is called by some *Scrophularia major absque Tuberculis*: in English *Foreign Great Figwort*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors have given us many Kinds of this Plant, divers of which we can never come at, but so many of them as may be found growing in the Gardens of the Curious here in England, or may possibly grow in some of our Plantations beyond Sea in America, we shall here give you the Description of; and those are, 1. *Scrophularia major Americana*, *Scrophularia Cretica prima Clusij*, American or Cretick Great Figwort. 2. *Scrophularia major Americana altera*, *vel Indica altera*, *Scrophularia major Hispanica*, *Scrophularia foliis Laciniatis Bauhini*, The Second Indian or American Great Figwort. 3. *Scrophularia Flore luteo*, *Bauhini*, *Scrophularia maxima Montana Columnæ*, Great Figwort yellow Flowered.

III. *The Descriptions.* The First, or American or Cretick Great Figwort, has a Root which is of about a Fingers thickness, which spreads it self out into several Branches, running under the Superficies of the Earth not very deep, and having many Fibres springing from the same. From this Root rises up a square corner'd green Stalk, brownish on the side next the Sun, at the bottom of which grow several large and long Winged Leaves, set upon pretty long Footstalks, made of many parts, and almost in fashion like the Common Thistle, but without Prickles. The Leaf is large, and much cut in on the edges, making



making every Leaf look almost like to the Leaf of the *Red Rattle*. From the middle of the Stalk upwards it spreads it self out into other Branches, almost to the very top, those Branches growing smaller and smaller as they grow higher and nearer to the top, having on all sides such like Leaves, but lesser than those growing below. At the tops of the Stalks and Branches are many small Flowers, set almost like unto the first *Common Figwort*, but part of a deeper, and part of a paler Purple Color, with some yellow Threads rising out of the middle.

IV. *The Second, or Indian or American Great Figwort*, has a Root which is thick and bushy, which perishes in the Winter, if it comes up to Flowering, but if it Flowers not, it continues all the Year. From this Root spring up divers thick, but weak, Stalks or Branches, all lying round about upon the Ground, full of Joints, with large and long dark green Leaves, cut in on the edges into five long Divisions, all of them dented about the edges; and from the same Joints come forth also other lesser Leaves, divided and dented, and with them, towards the tops of the Stalks, several large Flowers of a yellowish color on the outside and lower parts, but of a reddish color, mixt with yellow within. The Flowers being past away, larger and harder Heads succeed than in the Common Kinds, and pointed at the end as the rest, which contain within them small blackish Seed.

V. *The Third, or Yellow Flowered Great Figwort*, has a Root which is thick and blackish, with many Fibres or Strings thereat, but without any Tubers or Knobs at all. From the Head of this Root spring forth several square brown Stalks, a little hairy and soft, above two Feet high, at the Joints of which grow two large, broad, roundish, hairy, soft, green Leaves, deeply indented about the edges, and standing upon very long Footstalks, those at the lower parts of the Stalks being largest, which in Winter lye in a compass upon the Ground about the Root, and those which grow on the Stalks lesser, growing lesser and lesser till they come to the tops; at each Joint with the Leaves comes forth, even almost from the bottom, one small naked Branch, bearing many Flowers in Tufts at the ends of them, which are round and yellow, somewhat like unto the *Ordinary or Common sort*, parted or cut in at the brims into divers pieces, having some long yellowish Threads in the middle. After the Flowers are past, larger round Heads come than in the Common Kind, but not so large as those in the last described, which have at the end a long point, a little crooked, and contain within them small black Seed.

VI. *The Places*. The two first I have found growing in several parts of *Florida*, in the South of *Carolina*, and in those parts leading to the Cape of *Florida*. The first also has been found growing in *Candia*, being *Clusius* his first *Cretick Species*. The second has been found growing in *Spain* likewise, but as I am informed was Transplanted thither from *America*. The third is a Native of *Germany* and *Hungary*, from the former of which places it was brought to us; but here in *England* they are all nursed up in the Gardens of the Curious.

VII. *The Times*. They Flower in *July*, and the Heads of Seed will be ripe in *August* or *September*.

VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* are the same with those of the Common Kind in the former Chapter, and therefore I shall say no more of them in this place.

C H A P. CCLXV.

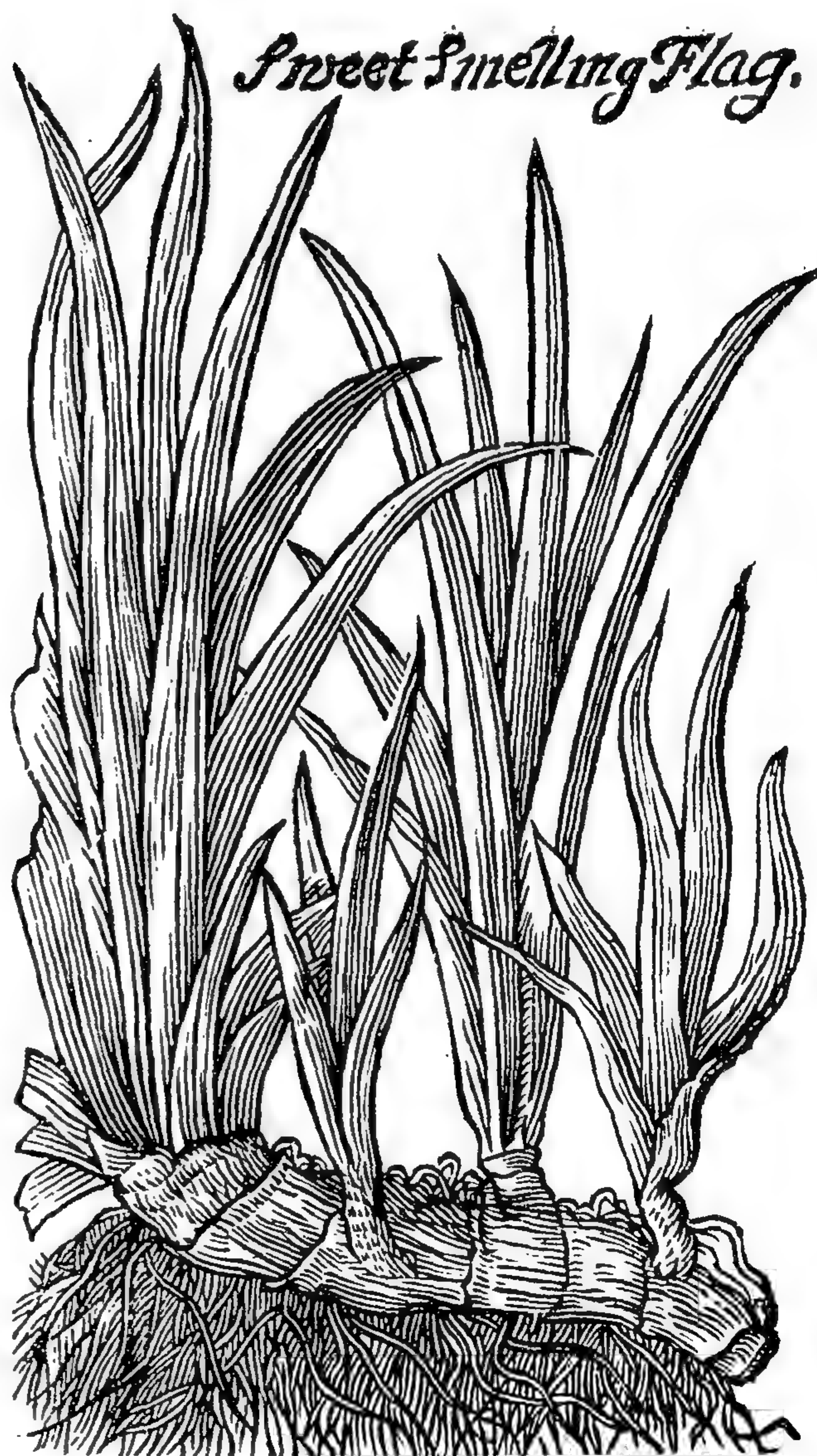
Of F L A G Sweet Smelling,

O R,

True A C O R U S.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Ἀκορν*, *Ἀκορν*, in Latin *Acorus* or *Acorum*, *Acorus verus*, and *Acorum verum*: *Clusius* says it is taken to be *Butomos Theophrasti*: and in English The true sweet smelling Flag.

II. *The Kinds*. Authors make but one Kind thereof, which *Camerarius*, *Clusius*, *Cordus*, *Gesner*, *Lugdunensis*, *Lobel*, *Matthiolus*, *Monardus*, and others, call *Acorus*, or *Acorum*, which is the vulgar *Calamus Aromaticus Officinarum*, according to *Amatus*, *Brassavolus*, *Cesalpinus*, and *Fuchsius*, but it is not the true *Calamus Aromaticus* of the Ancients, for that was really a *Reed*, whereas this is really and truly a *Flag*, (but sweet smelling) and the Root here intended the Root only of a *Flag*; as for the True and Ancient *Calamus Aromaticus*, I am apt to believe it is not to be found thro' all *Europe*, that is to say, not in the Shops; but of this we shall have occasion to speak more in our III. Book.



III. *The Description*. It has a Root like to the Common Water Flag in the next Chapter, but smaller, and not so red, of a sweet smell and somewhat bitter taste; it is thick and long, lying under the upper Face of the Earth, shooting forwards, and with small Roots, as Suckers on all sides, not much unlike to Garden Valerian, whitish on the outside, or greenish if it lyes above Ground, and more pale or whitish on the inside, consisting of many Joints, from which it shoots forth underneath many long thick Fibres, by which it takes hold in the Ground; the thick part of the



the Root is of a firm or fat substance, yet not woody, but easy to cut. From this Root rise up several flaggy Leaves, like unto the *Water Flag*, or *Flower-de-luce* in the following Chapter, but narrower, and two or three Feet in length, of a fresh green Color, and aromatick Smell; yet sometimes they are brownish at bottom, the one Leaf growing out of the side of the other, after the same manner that other *Flags* or *Flower-de-luces* grow, which are thin on both sides, and rigid or thick in the middle, the longest for the most part standing in the middle, and some of them curled or plaited towards the ends or tops of them, smelling very sweet as well when they are dry, and kept a long time, as when they are fresh and green. These Leaves abide a long time in the Garden, as tho' they never did, or never would bear any Flowers, they every Year dying down to the Ground, and shooting out fresh every Spring; but after two, three, or four Years continuance in a place without removing, it shoots forth Leaves as formerly, (but no Stalk, as other *Flags* or *Flower-de-luces* do) besides which it shoots forth a long narrow Leaf by it self, flat, like unto the other Leaves, especially from the middle thereof upwards; but from the said middle downwards it is thicker, narrower, and rounder, or rather almost triangular. From the middle of this lone Leaf comes forth one long round Head, very seldom two, in form and biggest like almost unto the *Aglet* or *Catkin* of the Male Nut Tree; it grows upright, an Inch and half, two Inches, or more in length, as thick as a large Reed, or ones little Finger, set with several small Lines and Divisions, like unto a green *Pine Apple*, and for the most part of a Purplish Green Color, or as *Gerard* says, of a Greenish Yellow Color, curiously Chequered, as if it were Wrought with a Needle, with green and yellow Silk intermixt; out of its Bunches small pale whitish Flowers shoot forth, consisting of four small Leaves apiece, (without any great smell) which quickly fall away, without giving any Seed, so far as any Author has observed.

IV. *The Places.* It is a Foreigner, and grows with us only in Gardens, but bears very rarely its Tuft or Head in our cold Country, for which reason some have said that it is barren, but that doubtless is a mistake, for *Clusius* says that he had seen it bear its Flower or Head in that place where it grows naturally, tho' in *England* it sometimes may be barren. Its Native places are in several parts of *Turkey*, where it grows in moist Grounds, and in such like places it nourishes with us, where are found the largest Roots, the fairest, firmest, whitest, and sweetest, which being dryed are a little shrivelled. It grows in *Candia*, as *Pliny* says, as also in *Galatia*, and other adjacent places, and naturally at the Foot of a Hill near to *Prusa*, a City of *Bithynia*, not far from a great Lake. It also grows in great plenty in some parts of *Russia*, but its Roots when dryed are more lank or small, not so firm nor white, nor of so choice an Aromatick Smell.

V. *The Times.* It springs up with its Leaves in *March* and *April*, and bears its *Catkin* (in those Countries where it does bear, or is not barren) in the beginning or middle of *July* and *August*. *Johnson* upon *Gerard* says, that in *May* 1622. he received the *Julus* or *Catkin* from Mr. *Thomas Glynn*, of *Glynn-tribron*, in *Carmarthenshire*, from which it is manifest, that with careful looking after, it may with us be made to bear its Head of Flowers; yet here about *London*, tho' it grows well, and in great plenty in many Gardens, it has scarcely ever been seen to bring forth any thing of that kind.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the se-

cond degree, Aperitive, Absterfive, Astringent, Carninative, Diuretick, Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomack, Cordial, Sudorifick, and Alexipharmick.

VII. *The Specification.* It is a peculiar thing against Poyson, the Plague, and all contagious Diseases.

VIII. *The Preparations.* The Root is only of use, and you may have therefrom, 1. *A Liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *An Infusion in Wine.* 4. *A Decoction in Wine.* 5. *A Powder.* 6. *A Cataplasme.* 7. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 8. *An Acid Tincture.* 9. *An Oily Tincture.* 10. *A Spirit.* 11. *A Chymical Oil.* 12. *Potestates or Powers.* 13. *An Elixir.* 14. *A Collyrium.* 15. *A Preserve.* 16. *A Syrup.*

#### The Virtues.

IX. *The Liquid Juice.* Taken to a Spoonful or two in a Glass of Generous Wine it provokes Urine, eases Pains and Stitches of the Sides, and prevails against the Bitings of Mad Dogs, and other Venomous Creatures, but it ought often to be repeated, at due intervals of time.

X. *The Essence.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, and eases pains of the Stomach and Bowels, eases the Colick, and Gripings of the Guts, prevails against Convulsions, and is an Antidote against all sorts of Poyson, and the Infection of the Plague it self; and is a singular good thing to help a stinking Breath: it is also commended as an excellent thing against Ruptures or Burstenness. Dose one Spoonful, or more, Morning and Night, in a Glass of Generous Wine, or some other fit Vehicle.

XI. *The Infusion in Wine.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not all out so powerful; it wastes the Spleen, helps those who have the Strangury, and frees those from danger who are Bitten by any Venomous Serpent: it warms and comforts the Stomach, and causes a good Appetite and Digestion; expels Wind, dries up Rheums, and clears the Sight. Dose five or six Ounces Morning and Night.

XII. *The Decoction in Wine.* It has the Virtues of the Infusion, and being mixed with a little Wormwood Wine, and so drunk, it is of good use to comfort and strengthen a cold and weak Stomach.

XIII. *The Powder.* It is given to one Dram in the Morning fasting, and last at Night going to Bed, in a Glass of the Infusion, against Poyson, the Bitings of Mad Dogs, or other Venomous Creatures, to prevent, and also to cure the Infection of the Plague, or any Pestilential Disease; it comforts a cold and weak Stomach, restoring the Tone thereof where depraved or hurt, and has all the Virtues of the Essence and the other Preparations aforementioned: it heals also inward Bruises.

XIV. *The Cataplasme.* The Root being boiled in Wine to softness, stamped, and then applied as a Cataplasme to the Testicles, it wonderfully abates their Swelling, discussing all hardness and collections of Humors: it also mollifies hard Tumors in any other part of the Body.

XV. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is good against Coldness, pains and weakness of the Head, Brain, and Nerves, strengthens the Sight, stops Defluxions of Rheum into the Eyes, and is excellent against the Megrin from a cold Cause, Vertigo, Carus, Lethargy, Palsie, Convulsions, and other like Disaffections of the Nerves, Brain, and Womb; it warms and strengthens the Stomach, causes a good Appetite, expels Wind, and gives ease in Cramps, Gripings of the Bowels, Colicks, and the Disease called *Tenasmus*. Dose half a Spoonful in a Glass of Wine Morning, Noon, and Night.

XVI. *The*



XVI. *The Acid Tincture.* There are but few things more excellent against the Infection of the Plague, whether it is taken as a Prophylactick, or a Curative; indeed in all Pestilential Distempers it does Wonders, for it destroys the Poyson and Malignity in its Root, and for the same reason it is good against the Bitings of Mad Dogs, Serpents, or any other Venomous Creature; it is good against Nauseousness of the Stomach, and stops Vomitings, when scarcely any thing else will prevail. Dose so many drops as may make the Vehicle pleasantly sharp, to be often repeated in the day.

XVII. *The Oily Tincture.* Taken inwardly to ten, twelve, or fifteen drops, or more, in a Glass of White Port Wine, it provokes Urine, expels Stones, Sand, Gravel, or other Tartarous Matter in the Reins, Ureters and Bladder; and cures also all cold, moist, sleepy, and Paralytick Diseases of the Head, Brain, and Nerves. Outwardly anointed upon the Joints it cures the Gout, and well anointed upon the Back Bone twice a day, viz. Morning and Evening, as also upon the parts affected, it cures Cramps, Convulsions, and Palsies, and those kind of troublesome Pains, vulgarly called a Rheumatism.

XVIII. *The Spirit.* It is a Noble and Generous Cordial, cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, and strengthens Universal Nature; it is good against Fainting and Swooning Fits, Hypochondriack Melancholy, and other Diseases of like kind. Dose a Spoonful, now and then upon occasion.

XIX. *The Oil Distilled.* Being given from six drops to twelve in any proper Vehicle, it cures the Colick almost to a Miracle; it strengthens the Stomach and all the other Viscera, expels Wind, and prevails against a *Tenasmus*; it is an excellent thing to be taken Morning and Night for some time, by those who are affected with the Palsie, or any inward Convulsions, and is of singular use, being outwardly applied to the parts affected with the same Diseases, and gives ease in the Gout proceeding from a cold Cause; anointed likewise upon parts affected with a Rheumatism, proceeding from cold, it cures it.

XX. *The Potestates or Powers.* They have all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Infusion, Pouder, Tinctures, Spirit, and Oil, and are more subtil than any of them; being inwardly taken they diffuse themselves thro' the whole Body immediately, and being outwardly bathed upon any part, they immediately penetrate, even to the Bone it self; yet they are so safe, tho' very hot and subtil, that they will cause no Contractions of the Nerves, but on the contrary, if they be applied to any thing of a Contracture, they will in a few times using it cure the same. Dose inwardly from Forty to Eighty, or a Hundred drops, Morning and Night, in any Generous Wine.

XXI. *The Elixir.* This being the Powers exalted, and brought to their utmost perfection, may be said to have all the same Virtues in transcendency. They are more Stomackick than any of the former Preparations, and therefore more proper to restore the Tone of the Viscera, being hurt, and this more especially upon the Cure of a Dropsie. Dose Sixty or Eighty drops at a time, (several times in a day) in a Glass of strong and fragrant Wine.

XXII. *The Collyrium.* Take of the Liquid Juice, clarified Honey, of each equal parts, mix them. It is good against Dimness of the Sight, Films, Cloudiness, Pearls, Bloodshot, and the like, being put into the Eyes Morning and Evening. Being taken inwardly it is good against Coughs, Colds, Hoarseness, shortness of Breath, difficulty of Breathing, Poyson, pains of the Spleen, and stoppage of Urine.

XXIII. *The Preserve.* The Roots are taken

green and cleansed, then the whole Roots are to be boiled soft in White Port Wine, and so put into double refined Sugar, or clarified Honey, and boiled till the Sugar or Honey has penetrated them, and that they are brought to a consistence. The dried Roots may be preserved also in the same manner, being first steeped till they are soft in White Wine; but yet the Preserve of the Green Roots is most to be desired. It is good to remove the coldness of the Viscera, to warm and comfort a cold and moist Stomach, and cause Expectoration where Flegm is lodged in the Lungs.

XXIV. *The Syrup.* Take of the fresh Roots a Pound, being well cleansed bruise them, and steep them three or four days in Vinegar, then extract the Juice and Vinegar with a Press, to every Pound of which add a Pound and half of clarified Honey, which by gentle boiling bring into a Syrup. It is an excellent Pectoral, cleanses the Breast and Lungs of tough Flegm, causing an easie Expectoration; opens Obstructions of the Stomach, Spleen, and other Bowels, causes a good Appetite and a strong Digestion, and represses a Flux of Humors to the Glandulous parts of the Neck, Throat, and Mesentery.

## C H A P. CCLXVI.

### Of F L A G Water,

O R,

### Water F L O W E R D E L U C E.

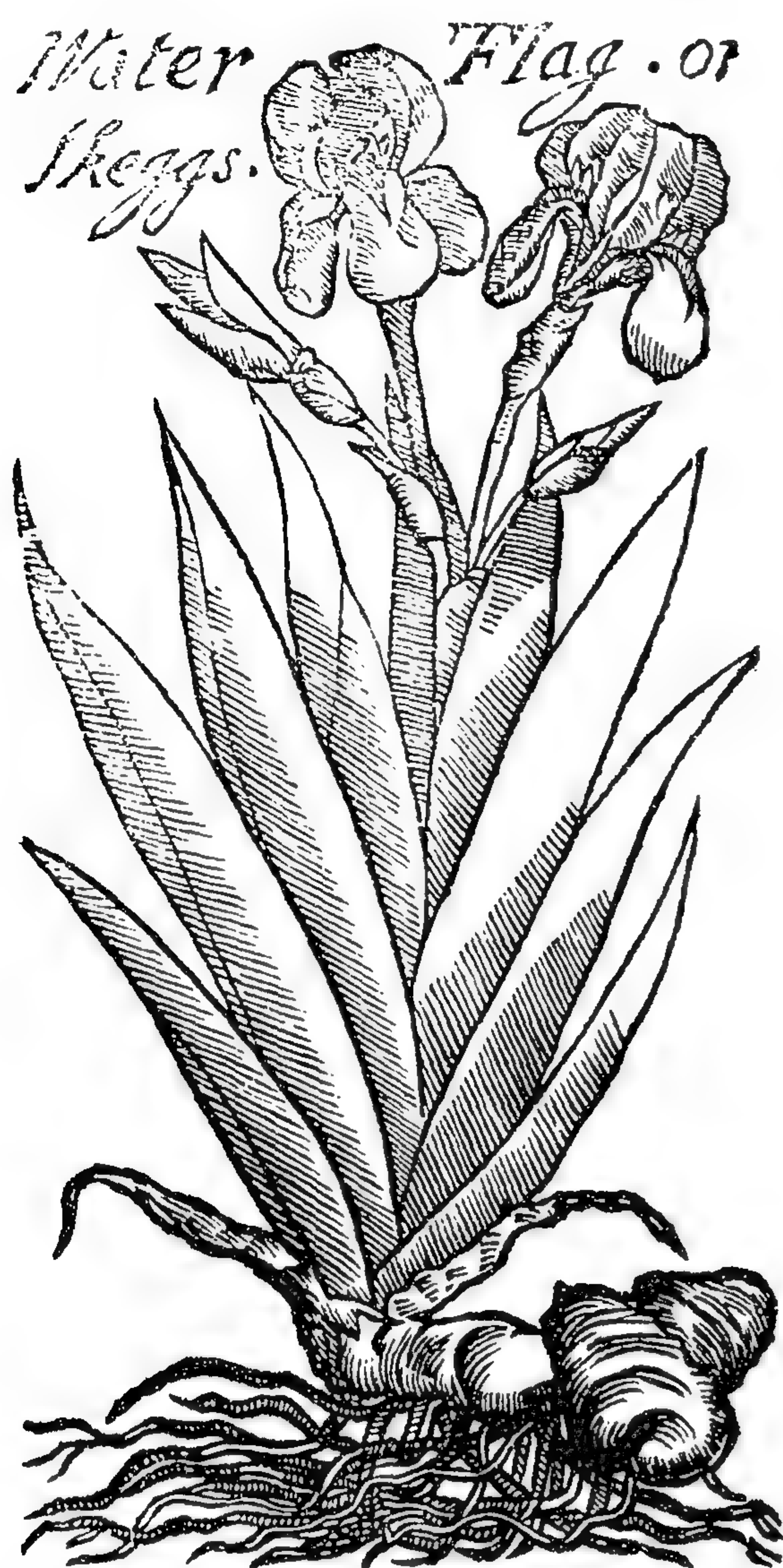
I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Ἰεὺς ἐνὸς ἑστέως*, in Latin *Acorus palustris*, *Pseudoiris Dodonæi*, *Iris lutea palustris*, *Acorus adunternus Tragi*, *Acorus falsus Cordi*, *Gejneri*, & *Matthioli*; *Acorus palustris Lobelij*, *Gladiolus luteus*: in English *Water Flag*, *Water Flowerdeluce*, *Segg*, and *Seeg*.

II. *The Kinds.* Some will have it that there are two Kinds of this Plant, because sometimes it is found so exceeding large, as four Feet or more high, and sometimes again it is found not to be above a Foot and half high, or two Feet at most; but this difference in my Opinion arises only from the differing Qualities and Goodness of the Soil, it growing so exceeding large where the Soil is best, and more diminutive where it is worse, there being otherwise no difference in the Roots, Blades or Leaves, Stalks, Flowers, Cods and Seed, nor yet in the manner and form of its growing.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root which is tuberosa, but longer and slenderer than those of the Garden Flowerdeluces, of a pale brownish Color on the outside, and of an Horse Flesh Color on the inside, with many hard Fibres springing therefrom; the whole Root is very Styptick, and harsh in taste. From this Root spring up Sword like Leaves, like to those of the Garden Kind, (the whole Plant growing almost exactly like to those of the Garden) but that this has much longer and narrower sad green Leaves, joined together in the same fashion; sometimes the Stalk grows to be between four and five Feet high, sometimes not above two Feet high, or a little more, according to the Richness or Poorness of the Soil; at the tops of the Stalks come forth flowers of a perfect yellow Color, and shaped somewhat like unto those of the *Flowerdeluce*, with three falling Leaves, and other three arched which cover their



bottoms, but instead of the three upright Leaves, as the *Flowerdeluces* have, this has only three short pieces standing in their places, after which succeed thick and long three square Cods or Heads, containing in each part somewhat large and flat Seed, very like to those of the *Garden Flowerdeluces*, which are sometimes reddish, purplish, and blackish.



IV. *The Places.* It grows usually in watery Ditches, Ponds, Lakes, and Moorish Grounds, which are often overflowed, or kept wet with Water, as at *Lambeth*, on the *Bank Side* of the *Thames*, and *Ditch Sides* thereabouts; also in moist Meadows, low Grounds, Banks of Rivers, and the like: it grows in vast plenty in the Fens in *Cambridgeshire*, *Bedfordshire*, *Lincolnshire*, &c. And altho' it is by nature a Watery Plant, yet it will grow and prosper very well if planted in Gardens.

V. *The Times.* It grows up in the Spring, in *March* and *April*, Flowers in *July*, and the Seed is ripe in *August*.

VI. *The Qualities.* The Root is chiefly used, and is cold and dry in the second degree, Astringent, Repercussive, Traumatick, Anodyne, and Arthritic.

VII. *The Specification.* It is known to bind the Bowels, and stop all Fluxes of Blood or Humors.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An Infusion or Decoction in Wine. 4. A Powder. 5. A Collyrium. 6. A Cataplasm. 7. An Ointment or Balsam. 8. A Distilled Water.

#### The Virtues.

IX. *The Juice.* Inwardly taken to a Spoonful or two in a Glass of Red Port Wine it is very astringent, and stops all Fluxes of the Bowels, whether of Blood or Humors, as also Pissing of Blood, overflowing of the Terms, and other Fluxes of Blood at Mouth, Nose, or other parts; in external Hemorrhages it must be applied with Stuphes to the part.

X. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Lipid Juice, but is more effectual, being inwardly

given, one or two Spoonfuls at a time, in any proper Vehicle, but it is to be repeated so often at due intervals of time as need shall require; It presently stops the overflowing of the Loches of Women in Child-Bed, and strengthens the Womb, and all the weakened parts.

XI. *The Infusion or Decoction in Wine.* It has the same Virtues with the Juice and Essence, but is weaker, and therefore must be given in larger quantities, as five or six Ounces twice a day.

XII. *The Powder.* Given to one Dram, or more, in Wine, it stops all internal Fluxes of Blood, whether in the Lungs, Stomach, Guts, Reins, Bladder, or Womb: outwardly applied also it stops Bleeding, and being strewed upon old, moist, and running Sores, it cleanses, dries up the moisture, and induces their healing: strewed upon a foul Bone it is said to cleanse it and cover it with Flesh.

XIII. *The Collyrium.* Take of the Distilled Water four Ounces, Red Port Wine two Ounces, of the clarified Juice of the Root one Ounce, mix them. Dropt into sore and watering Eyes it stops the Flux of Rheum, dries and heals them; Cloths or Sponges may also be wetted therein and applied upon the Forehead; it takes away also Clouds, Dimness, Films, Pearls, and the like.

XIV. *The Cataplasm.* Applied to the Joints in the Gout it eases the Pain, and strengthens the part afflicted, so that the Disease seldom or never returns any more upon that Foot; it also stops any Flux of Humors upon the part.

XV. *The Ointment or Balsam.* It is used after cleansing of Wounds or Ulcers, to dry, incarnate, and heal, for as it breeds Flesh, so it stops any defluxion of Humors thereupon, hindring the growing of proud Flesh.

XVI. *The Distilled Water.* Dropt into the Eyes it is good against the watering of them, applied to the Forehead in wet Sponges it stops Defluxions, and fomented on hot Tumors and Inflammations of Womens Breasts, as also upon Cancers, and *noli me tangere*, it cools and gives much ease, and this more especially if it is mixed with a little *Saccharum Saturni*, and then it prevails against foul and putrid Ulcers happening in the Privy Parts of Man or Woman, or in any other part of the Body.

## C H A P. CCLXVII.

### Of F L A X Manured or Common.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called by the *Arabians* *Bazarichichen*, or *Bezerchetan*, in *Greek* *Alnus*, in *Latin* *Linum*, and in *English* *Flax*, and *Line*, which last Name some will have from making Lines of it; but I take it to be derived from the *Greek* Name.

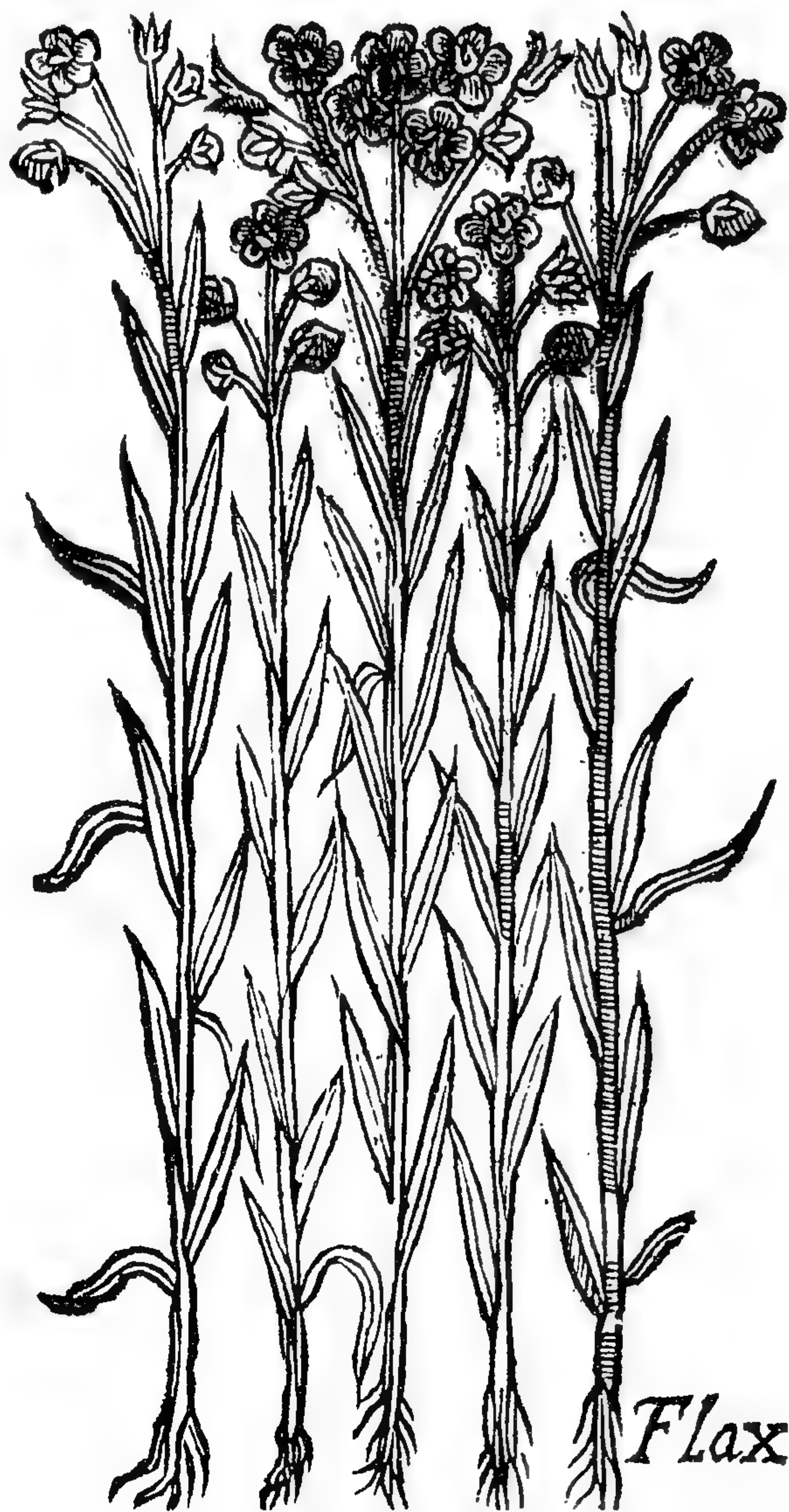
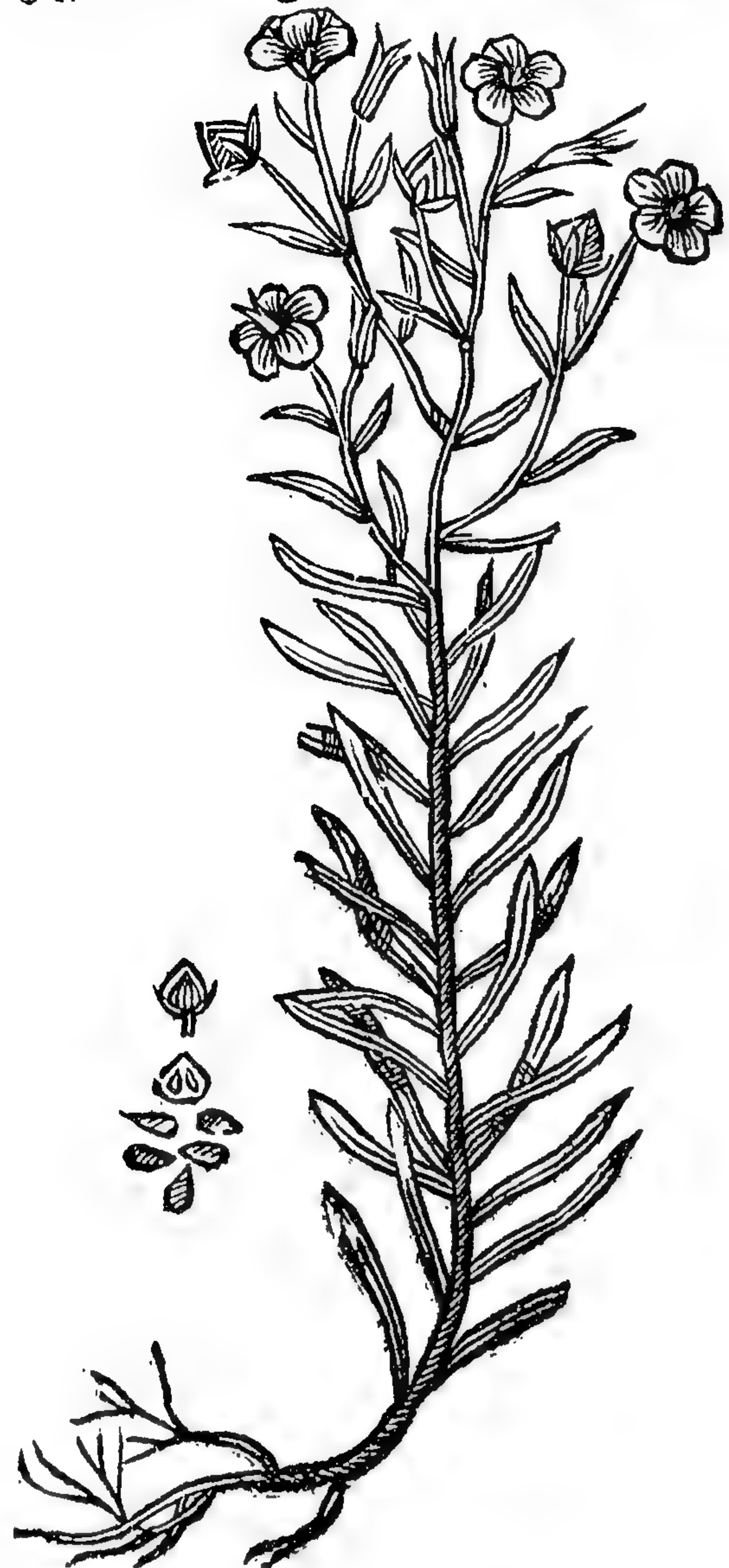
II. *The Kinds.* Of *Flax* there are two principal Kinds, viz. 1. *The Manured*, of which we shall Treat in this Chapter. 2. *The Wild Kind*, of which in the next. *The Manured*, *Garden*, or *Common Kind*, is a singular Plant, (of the Peelings of which they make fine Cloths) and is described as followeth.

III. *The Description.* It has a small fibrous Root, which perishes every Year, from whence rises up a round pliant Stalk, about a yard high, beset with narrow, long, and soft Leaves, without any order, and is branched on the top into three or four small Branches, each of them bearing two or three fair Blue Flowers, made of five round pointed Leaves apiece, with some



some threads in the middle, which being past away, round Buttons succeed, which are pointed above, and in which are contained flattish, smooth, shining, brown Seed.

## Common Garden Flax



*lumella* says, in a fat, moist, and fruitful Soil. Some, says *Palladius*, Sow it thick in a lean Ground, and so have a fine sort of *Flax*. *Pliny* says that it is to be Sown in Gravelly places, especially in Furrows. Experience has taught us that it grows admirably well in Light, Sandy and Gravelly Grounds, such as *France* abounds with, where it grows in vast plenty, and in other Countries where the Ground is Sandy and Light, as in *Florida*.

V. *The Times*. *Flax* is Sown in the Spring, and Flowers in *June* and *July*, the Seed ripening in the mean Season; after it is plucked up, or cut down, as *Pliny Lib. 19. Cap. 1.* says, the Stalks being bound up in small Bundles, are put into Water subject to the heat of the Sun, and have some weighty things laid thereon, that they may the better steep, and they are so long to lye in the Water, till the Rind or Peeling seems to be loosened so as it may easily peel off, then it is taken up and dried in the Sun; after which the Peelings are prepared for the Block and Hackle, to make the Fibres thereof very fine, in order for Spinning and Making Cloth.

VI. *The Qualities*. There is nothing of this Plant used in a Physical way but the Seed only, and that seems to be temperate in respect to heat or coldness, and is Emollient and Laxative, Pectoral and Anti-pleuritic.

VII. *The Specification*. It is peculiar against Pleurifies, the Piles, and all Contractures of the Nerves and Muscles.

VIII. *The Preparations*. You may have therefrom, 1. *The Seed prepared*. 2. *A Powder of the Seed*. 3. *A Decoction*. 4. *A Balsam*. 5. *A Cataplasm*. 6. *An Oil by Expression*. 7. *A Fumigation*.

### The Virtues.

IX. *The Seed prepared*. *Galen* says that some parched the Seed, and eat it with Honey for Food, and that others put it into their Bread, but says he *primo Alimentorum*, it troubles the Stomach, is hard of Digestion, and gives not much Nourishment to the Body; but as to the moving of the Belly downwards (says he) I will neither commend nor discommend it, but it in some small measure provokes Urine, which it does best being parched.

X. *The Powder of the Seed*. If it is mixt with an eighth part of Pepper in fine Powder, and made into an Electuary with Honey, and taken to the quantity of a large Nutmeg every Morning fasting, and Night going to Bed, it prevails against Coughs, Colds, Hoarseness, Wheezing, Obstructions of the Lungs, and vehement Catarrhs.

XI. *The Decoction in Wine*. Sweetned with Honey and drunk it eases the Bellyach and Colick, Stitches, and all Inflammations of the Viscera; if Raisons are boiled in it it opens (says *Pliny*) the Obstructions of the Liver; and if it is applied to any fretting or running Sore it dries it, and stays it from spreading farther.

XII. *The Balsam*. If it is made into a Balsam with Rosin, Powder of Myrrh, and some of the Oil by Expression, and applied to Ruptures, or Swellings of the *Scrotum* or Testicles, it cures the one and discusses the other; it also discusses Tumors in any other part of the Body.

XIII. *The Cataplasm*. If it is made with equal parts of Line Seed, Fenugreek Seed, and Mallows, and applied, it is of good use to mollifie and discuss any Tumor or Hardness in any part of the Body. If it is made with *Sal Nitre* and Fig-Tree Ashes it eases the Pains, and takes away the hardness of the Nerves, Tendons, and Muscles. If it is made with Figs and Wild Cucumber Roots, and applied, it draws forth Splinters, Thorns, Nails, Prickles,

IV. *The Places*. It grows in *England*, *France*, *Germany*, *Italy*, and in most Countries of *Europe*, the Seed being Sown every Year; it grows in *America* also, as in *Carolina*, where I have known it to grow and flourish very well; it prospers best as Co-



Splinters of Broken Bones, or any other thing sticking in the Flesh. If it is made with Cresses it takes away the ruggedness of the Nails. If it is made with Olibanum, Myrrh, and Wine, and applied to the Forehead, it helps the Watering of the Eyes. If it is made with Honey, Suet, and Bees Wax, and applied, it helps Struma's, hard Kernels and Swellings under the Ears or Throat; it takes away also Spots and Blemishes of the Skin, Sunburnings, and other Discolorings.

XIV. *The Oil by Expression.* It is said to be a Specifick for curing a Pleurisie, as also Stitches, Peripneumonia's, and other exquisite pains of the Thorax, giving it to six or eight Ounces at a time, or more, and repeating the same at due intervals of time so long as need requires; it is an excellent thing to anoint with, to mollifie the shrinking and hardness of the Nerves, Tendons, or Muscles, soften any hard Swelling, and to give ease, and cure the Piles, Chaps of the Fundament; to soften the hardness thereof, and ease the pain; it also softens the hardness of the Mother; if it is beaten with Red Rose Water, or rather with Water, in which Nitre, or *Saccharum Saturni* has been dissolved, and then be applied to Burnings and Scaldings, it cures them; it is good to burn in Lamps, and will burn longer than Oil Olive will, yet it makes much more Smoak and Soot: besides all these things, it is of excellent use for Painters to make their Drying Oil of, and to mix their Colors with to be applied to Cloth, or Wood, or Stone, Iron, Copper, or Glass, &c.

XV. *The Fumigation.* If a Woman sits over the Fumes of the Decoction of the Seed in Water, or in Water and Vinegar, it softens the hardness of the Womb, and eases the pains of the Mother.

## C H A P. CCLXVIII.

### Of F L A X Wild.

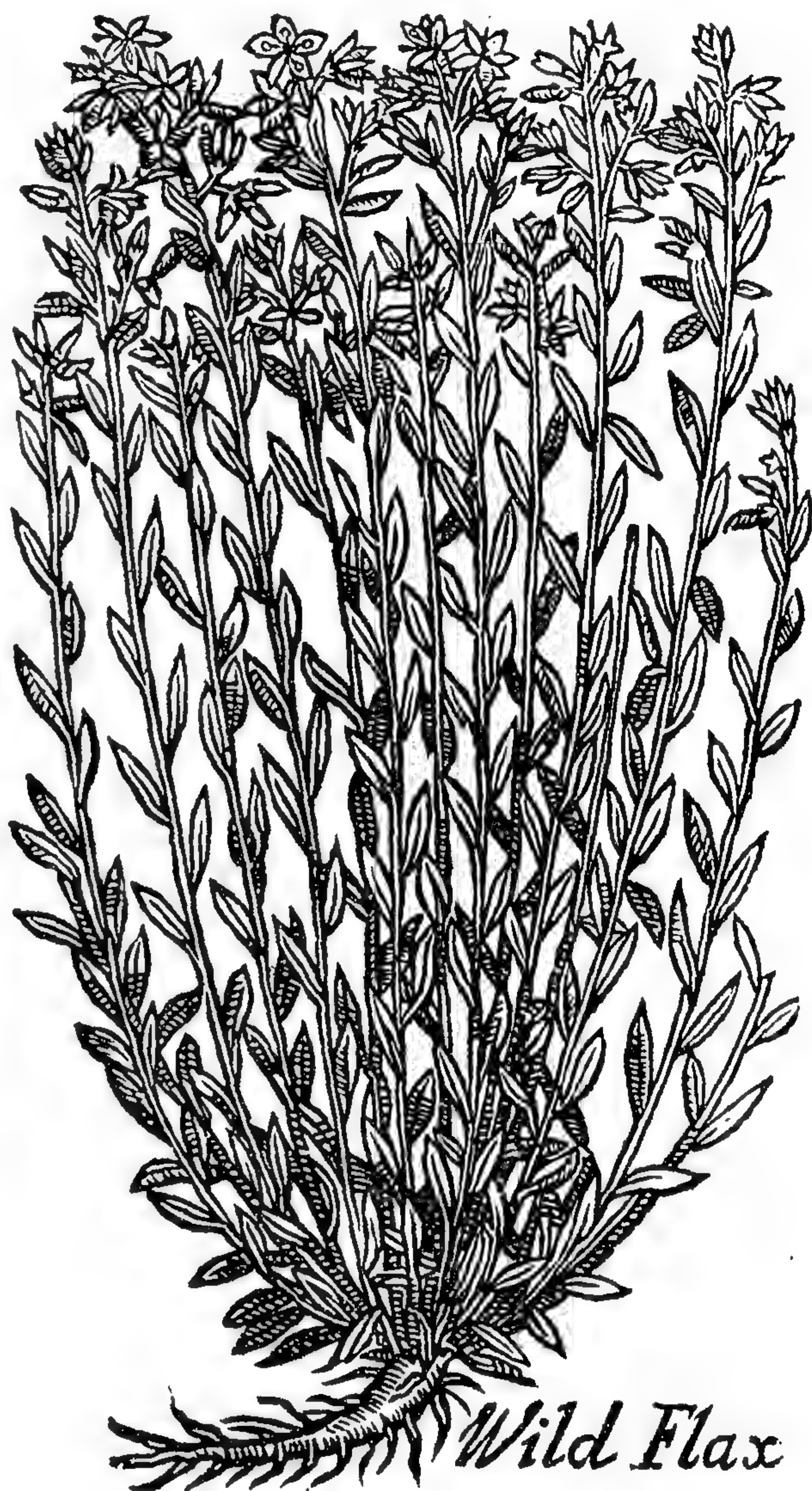
I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Λινον ἄγρον*: in Latin, *Linum sylvestre*, *Linum agreste*; and in English, *Wild Flax*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are several kinds of this Plant, as, 1. *Linum sylvestre Catharticum*, *Linum Anglicum*, Our English Wild Flax, or Purging Wild Flax, called by the Country People, *Mil-Mountain*. 2. *Linum sylvestre angustifolium floribus albis*, vel *Ceruleis*, White Wild Flax. 3. *Linum sylvestre tenuifolium*, Thin or Narrow-leav'd Wild Flax. 4. *Linum sylvestre latifolium floribus Ceruleis*, Broad-leav'd Wild Flax, blew-flowred. 5. *Linum sylvestre latifolium floribus Luteis*, Broad-leav'd Wild Flax yellow-flowred. 6. *Chamaelinum perpusillum*, *Linum sylvestre pumilum*, Dwarf Wild Flax. 7. *Linum sylvestre vulgatum*, The more common Wild Flax.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Purging Wild Flax, has a crooked Root, which is small, white and fibrous, which sends forth sometimes one, but most commonly five, six or more round Stalks, about eight, ten, or twelve inches high, of a brown or reddish color; every Stalk dividing it self near the top, or from the middle upwards into many Branches, of a greener color than the lower part of the Stalk. The Leaves are small, smooth, and of a green color, of the bigness of Lentil Leaves, and have in the middle, one Rib or Nerve, and no more that may be perceived, and grow along on the Stalk, in very

good Order, by couples, one opposite against another. At the tops of the small Branches the Flowers grow, of a white color, consisting of five small Leaves apiece, the Nails whereof are yellow. In the inside are placed small short Chives also of a yellow color; after which come up little Knobs or Buttons, the tops of which, when the Seed is ripe, divide themselves into five parts, in which is contained small, smooth, flat, slippery yellow Seed. When the Seed is ripe, the whole Herb perishes. The Plant is of a bitter Taste and herby Smell.

IV. *The second, or White Wild Flax*, has a Root which is tough and small, and grows like, and has Leaves like unto the Manured Flax, but narrower, and growing upon round, bright and shining Stalks, a foot long, having Flowers like the Manured Flax, but of a white color. But this Plant is sometimes found with deep blew Flowers, with Violet colored Flowers, and sometimes with white Flowers, streaked with purple Lines.



V. *The third, or Thin or Narrow leav'd Wild Flax*, has a tough slender Root, with several Fibres adjoining to it, which sends forth many Stalks, furnished with narrow thin Leaves: the Flowers consist of five Leaves apiece, of a light Purple or Flesh color, which do soon fade and fall away. The Stalks are of about a Cubit in height, beset with small Leaves, yea lesser than those of *Linaria purpurea*. The whole Plant is very like to the Common Manured Flax, but in every respect lesser.

VI. *The fourth, or Broad-leav'd blew-flowred*, has a Root which is great, and lives after Seed-time, shooting forth new Stalks, with woolly Leaves on them, and so abides all the Winter. This Root, says Gerard, does continue many Years without Sowing, encreasing by its Root into many other Stalks, rising up with many thick, stiff and hairy Branches, sometimes with but one, and sometimes with more, a foot, or foot and half high, and beset with many rough and hairy broad Leaves, (broader than in any of the other sorts.) The Stalks towards their tops branch themselves out, and are beset with smaller Leaves than those below. At the tops of the Stalks do



to grow many blew flowers, much greater and larger than those of the Common manured Flax, even as great almost and large as Mallows, sometimes of a deeper, and sometimes of a Paler blew; consisting of five Leaves a piece; which being past away, there succeeds small sharp pointed heads (in the green husk which held the flowers) which are full of Seed; and being ripe, open and shew the same, which is flat, and of a blackish shining Colour, like Line Seed.

VII. *The Fifth, or Broad leav'd yellow flowred,* has a Root which is thick and crooked, with many Fibres thereat, which perishes not, but abides many Years. It springs forth with many Stalks, about a Cubit high, somewhat red and stiff, also round and of a brownish Colour, set with pretty large and thick Leaves, not rough and hairy, but smooth and hard. The Flowers grow plentifully on the tops of the Stalks, being composed of five Leaves apiece, and are large, of a fair, shining, yellow Color, with five threads, coming forth in their middle, having also as many smaller and shorter hairs. The Seed is contained in Heads, flatter than in any of the other, and is of a blacker Color, but not shining like them.

VIII. *The Sixth, or Dwarf Wild Flax,* has a Root which is small and threddy, which sends forth many slender Stalks, of about five, six, seven, eight, or nine Inches high, furnished with several small, long Leaves, and growing on them by Couples. At the tops of the Branches grow the Flowers, which are White, or of a pale yellow, lesser than those of the manured Flax, with yellow Threads in the middle. The Seed is contained in little round heads, and is small. The whole plant is in all things like unto Flax; but in its Stalks, Leaves and Flowers, and all other parts thereof, it is four times lesser.

IX. *The Seventh, or more Common Wild Flax,* has a Root like the manured Kind, and grows also like it, but has greater and higher Stalks, more branched at the Tops, and bearing a greater stock of blew Flowers on them, with Seed also like to the same: But the Seed Vessels will hold or contain the same, and not break open, when ripe, with the heat of the Sun, as the manured kind will do.

X. *The Places.* The first grows plentifully in the unmanured Inclosures of Hampshire, on Chalky Downs, and on Purfleet Hills, in Essex, as also in many other places of this Kingdom: Gesner would have it to be the *Helleborine* of the Ancients. All the rest grow in Gravelly Grounds: The second and seventh, in well manured Places, as also in Gardens and other the like Soils. The fourth and sixth, grow upon Rocks and Cliffs near the Sea-side, Gerard saw them grow upon the Sea-banks by Lee in Essex, and in many places in the Isle of Sheppy: They grow also between Queenborough and Sherland House. The third and fifth, in Borders of Fields, in unilled places, and Hilly Grounds.

XI. *The Times.* The first springs out of the Ground at the beginning of the Spring, and flowers all the Summer. All the rest flower thro' all June, July, and August; the Seed ripening in the mean time.

XII. *The Qualities, Specifications, Preparations, and Virtues* of the six latter described Plants, are the same with those of the manured Flax in Chap. 267. foregoing, and therefore we shall say no more of them here; but come directly to consider the first, or Cathartick kind, which is the most useful.

XIII. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry, supposed in the second Degree: Stomack, and Cathartick. How this Herb came to be so known, as to be taken notice of, Mr. Goodyer (in Johnson upon

Gerard's Herbal) has given us an account of going to an Apothecaries Shop at Winchester in Hampshire, I saw (says he) this Herb lying upon the Stall, which I had seen long before, I desired of him to know the Name of it; he told me, it was called *Mill Mountain*, and that Doctor Lake's Man had given him the name of it, as also the Way how his Master the Doctor (who was afterwards Bishop of Bath and Wells) did use it.

XIV. *The Virtues and Use.* Take a Handful of *Mill Mountain*, the whole Plant, Leaves, Seeds, Flowers and all, bruise it, and put it into a Pipkin, with a Pint of White Wine, and set it on hot Embers to Infuse all Night, then pour off the clean Wine, and drink it the next Morning fasting. This will give eight or ten Stools, and purges and cleanses the Stomach and Bowels admirably well. And this was the thing, which the said Doctor Lake always used for his Purge.

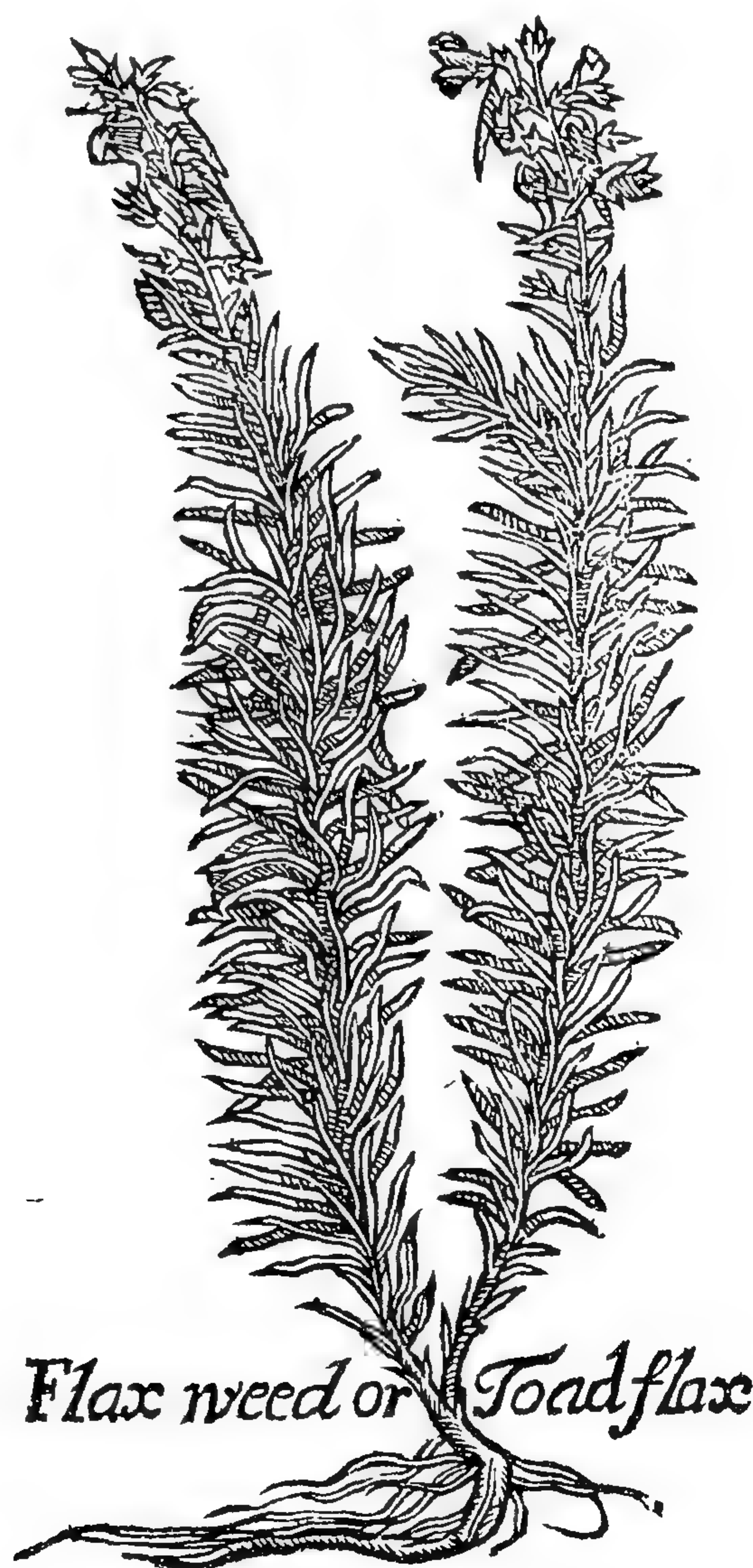
## C H A P. CCLXIX.

Of FLAXWEED Narrow leav'd,

O R,

TOAD-FLAX Narrow leav'd.

I. *THE Names.* It is not known to have any Greek Name, and yet Authors have called it *Ψευδαλινον* and *Ὀστρεα*: in Latin, *Pseudolinum*, and *Linaria*: in English, *Flaxweed* and *Toad Flax*.



Flax weed or Toad flax

II. *The Kinds.* There are three General Kinds of this Plant, viz. 1. *Ψευδαλινον στενόφυλλον*, *Linaria angustifolia*, narrow leaved Flaxweed, or Toad Flax, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Pseudolinum*, vel *Linaria latifolia*, broad leaved Flaxweed, of which, in the next Chapter. 3. *Chamaelinaria*, *Linaria pumila*,



*Linaria repens*, creeping Flaxweed, or Toad Flax, of which in Chapter. 271. following.

III. Of the first of these General Kinds, there are these Species following. 1. *Linaria Vulgaris nostras*, *Pseudolinum Brunfelsii*, *Lanceolati*, and *Dodonai*, *Osyris*, *Matthioli*, *Fuchsi*, *Cordi*, and *Lobelii*: Our Common Flaxweed, or Toad Flax. 2. *Linaria Valentina Clusii*, *Hispanica tertia Clusii*, Spanish Flaxweed of *Clusius*. 3. *Linaria Pannonica major*, vel *Osyris alba*, White Flaxweed or Toad Flax. 4. *Linofyris Napercerum Lobelii*, Golden Star fashioned Flaxweed, or Toad Flax. 5. *Linaria aurea Tragi*, Golden Flaxweed, or Toad Flax. 6. *Linaria sive Osyris*, vel *Scoparia Italorum*, Besom Flaxweed, or Toad Flax. 7. *Pseudolinaria montana alba*, *Anonymus Clusii*, *Anthyllis Montana Lugdunensis*, *Linaria adulterina alba*, Bastard Flaxweed, or Toad Flax. 8. *Linaria purpurea*, Purple Flaxweed, or Toad Flax, variable Flaxweed.

IV. The Descriptions. The first, or our Common Flaxweed, has a Root which is somewhat Woody, and White, especially the main down right one, with many Fibres, abiding many Years, shooting forth Roots, every way about, and new Branches every Year, which sends forth divers small, slender, blackish Stalks, full set with long and narrow Flax like, blew or ashcolored Leaves, and from the middle of them upwards, replenished with a number of pale yellow Flowers (of a strong unpleasant Scent) having Spurs hanging to them like Larks spurs; and having a Mouth like to a Frogs Mouth, such as are to be seen in Common *Antirrhinum*, or *Snapdragon* (of which Flaxweed is said to be a Kind) which are deeper and yellow withall. After the Flowers are past away, round Heads come forth, having blackish flat Seeds. The whole Plant before it comes to Flower, is so very like to *Esula minor*, that the one is scarcely known from the other, but by this Old Verse: *Esula lactescit; sine lacte Linaria crescit*.

V. The second, or Spanish Flaxweed, has a Root like the other, which perishes not in Winter, but abides for a long time, and by which the Plant multiplies itself and is increased. From the Root spring up many small Stalks, about a Foot high or more, on which grow very plentifully many narrow Leaves of a greyish or Ashcolor, and at the tops of them, store of small Flowers, which are of a Whitish color on the out side, and more purplish inwardly; but about the gaping Mouth, being of a more yellow color, but yet pale also; the spur behind being of a purplish color; the Seed which succeeds (when it has any, for it seldom bears) is like to the former.

VI. The third, or White Flaxweed, has a great, thick and long Root with some Fibres or Strings adjoining to it, from which rise up many Branches or Stalks very large and pliant, beset towards the top with Flowers, but of a pale, whitish color, and the inner part of the Mouth is somewhat more wide and open than the first, and the Leaves like to the Common sort. Indeed this is in many things like to our Common kind, but the Leaves hereof are larger, and the Flowers greater, and fewer of a pale yellow, but of a deeper yellow in the Mouth, with some hairiness therein.

VII. The fourth, or Golden Starfashioned, has a Root compact of many Strings, intangled one within another; from whence rise up Stalks very stiff and Woody, beset with Leaves like the Common *Linaria* at Sect. IV. above, with Flowers at the tops of the Stalks, of a faint shining, yellow color, in form and shape somewhat like unto *Conyza major*. This Herb is stalked and leaved like Common Flax, and thought by some to be the true *Osyris*; for which reason latter Writers have called it by a Compounded

Name *Linofyris*, it grows to be three Feet or more high, and is in taste sharp and bitter, having a Clamminess or Glutinosity with all.

VIII. The fifth, or Golden Flaxweed, has a great tufted Fibrous Root, from whence rise up many Stalks a Foot and a half high; which are divided towards the tops into many small Branches: On the several Tops grow Tufts of small Flowers, each little flower being parted into five parts, with a little thread or pestle in the middle; so that it seems full of many golden Hairs or Thrums. The Seed is long and blackish, and is carried away with the Wind. *Fabius Columna* has proved this to be the *Chrysocome* described by *Dioscorides*, Lib. 4. Cap. 55.



Besom  
Flax weed

IX. The Sixth, or Besom Flaxweed, has a Root consisting of a great number of blackish Strings set together, which, with the whole Plant perishes every Year. From this Root springs up most usually but one straight upright square Stalk, three foot and a half or more high, (as it grows in our Gardens) branching itself out divers ways; bearing thereon, many long, narrow Leaves like our Garden or Matured Flax, very thick set together, like unto a Bush, or rather like unto a fair green *Cypress-tree*, growing broad below, and Spire fashion upwards, of a very fair green Colour. At the several joints of the Branches towards the Tops, and among the Leaves, come forth small reddish Flowers, not easily seen, nor much regarded, which turn into small round blackish grey Seed. This *Broom Flaxweed*, tho' it has no beautiful Flowers; yet the Curious Plant it in their Gardens, because the green Plant full of Leaves, is very delightful to behold; being in *Italy* and other places, planted not only in their Gardens, but also in Pots, to furnish and adorn their Windows; and even with us it grows to be so delectable a green Bush, that it is thought to be worthy to be enumerated among our Hortary rarities and delights.

X. Gerard says that this Besom, or Bushy Flaxweed, from one small Stalk, has many Shoots or Branches, making the whole Plant to resemble a *Cypress-tree*, the Branches growing so handsomely; very thick and Bushy.



so that in some places where it naturally grows, they make Bescoms of it, from whence came the name Scabaria. The Leaves are small and narrow, almost like to the Leaves of Flax. The Flowers are small, and of an Herby color, growing among the leaves; it keeps Green to Winter, or till the Frosty weather comes, the hardship of which it never outlives.

### Bastard Toae Flax



XI. The Seventh, or Bastard Flaxweed, has a Root which is White, divided into several Branches, and long, every Year sending up many Stalks, which are hard, pale, green and straked; growing to be a Foot high or more; and upon these, without any order, grow many hard, narrow, long Leaves, like those of Flax; at first of a very tart, but afterwards of a bitterish Taste. The tops of the Stalks are branched out into several Foot stalks, which carry little white Flowers, consisting of five small leaves a-piece, lying Star fashion, with some threads in the middle. These being past away, a single five cornered Seed comes forth, containing a white Pith, in a hard Film or Skin.

XII. The Eighth, or Purple Flaxweed, has a Root which is small and thready, perishing for the most part every Year, and springing again of its own sowing, if it is suffered to shed its Seed, except the hardness of the Winter kills it. From this Root rise up several small, thick, long, and somewhat narrowish leaves, of a whitish green Color; among which rise up divers Stalks of a Cubit height, beset with long narrow Leaves, like unto those of our Common Flaxweed at Sect. IV. foregoing: These Stalks towards the Tops are replenished with many small flowers of a Purple Color, growing together one above another, spike fashion, which are small and somewhat sweeter, whilst they are fresh, and formed much like unto our First or Common Flaxweed, with a gaping mouth, but they are much smaller, and

want that crooked Spur behind. Sometimes they are of a sad Purple, near unto a Violet Color, and sometimes of a Paler blew Color, having a yellow spot in the middle, or gaping place. The Flowers being past small, hard, round heads come forth, in which are contained small, flat, and greyish Seed.

XIII. The Places. The first grows almost every where thro' the whole Kingdom, both by the Way sides, as in Meadows, and also by Hedge sides, and upon the sides of Banks and borders of Fields. The seventh grows on Mountainous places in Germany; and it has been found growing Wild in England, on the side of a Chalky Hill, in an Inclosure, on the right hand of the Way as you go from Droxford to Poppie Hill in Hampshire; all the rest are only nursed up with us in Gardens.

XIV. The Times. They all flower in the Summer Months, from May to August, and the Seed is ripe soon after. The eighth, tho' it often sows it self, yet by reason a hard frosty Winter may kill the Seed, it ought to be sown anew every Spring.

XV. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the second Degree; *Aperitive, Absterfive, and Diuretick, Hepatick, Splenetick, and Nephritick, Cathartick, Emmenagogick, Sudorifick, and Alexipharmick.*

XVI. The Specification. They are peculiar against the Strangury, Dropfie, Jaundice, and Poyson.

XVII. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A Juice, 2. An Essence, 3. An Infusion or Decoction in Wine. 4. A Powder of the Seed. 5. A distilled Water from the whole Plant. Of all these kinds, the first is the most effectual, and most used.

### The Virtues.

XVIII. The Liquid Juice. Given to three or four spoonfuls Morning, Noon, and Night in a Glass of White Lisbon or Port Wine, it gives ease in the Strangury, powerfully provokes Urine when it is stopped by Sand, Gravel or Tartarous matter, and carries off by Pissing the Water in Dropfies. It effectually provokes the Terms in Women, and drives forth the Dead Child and After-birth. Put into Foul Ulcers, whether they be Cancerous or Fistulous, with Tents rowled therein, or the parts washed therewith, or it being injected into them, cleanses them thoroughly from the bottom, and in a short time heals them up safely. It also cleanses the Skin wonderfully from all sorts of filthiness and deformities, as Spots, Marks, Freckles, Lentrils, Yellowness, tawniness, Wheals, pimples Scabs, Scurfs, Morpew, Leprosie, and other the like Defecations.

XIX. The Essence. It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, besides which, it washes and cleanses the Reins and Uretory parts from Stones, Gravel, Sand, and Tartarous Mucilage heaped up in those parts; and taken from two to four Spoonfuls in White Lisbon or Port Wine, it moves the Belly downwards, and prevails both against the Dropfie and Yellow Jaundice. Dropt into the Eyes, it is a certain remedy against all Heat, Inflammations, and Redness therein. It opens obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, purifies the Blood, and is good against Hypochondriack Melancholy.

XX. The Infusion, or Decoction in Wine. It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but weaker in Operation, and therefore must be given in larger Doses, as to six, seven or eight Ounces. It expels Poyson, and is good against the Bittings of Mad Dogs, Serpents, or other venomous Beasts.

XXI. The Powder of the Seed. Given to One Dram with the Liquid Juice, or Essence, or Infusion or Decoction as aforesaid, and continued for several days together, it is held to be a singular Remedy



medy against the Dropfie, by reason it powerfully evacuates Watry Humors. It operates so much the more effectually, if the Pouder of the Bark of Dwarf Elder, be mixed therewith in equal quantities, and it be aromatiz'd with a little Cinnamon.

XXII. *The Distilled Water.* It has the Virtues of Juice, Effence and Decoction, but acts in a much weaker manner. It cools Inflammations in any part, and may serve as a Vehicle to convey the other preparations in.

## C H A P. CCLXX.

### of FLAXWEED Broad leav'd,

O R,

### T O A D-FL A X, Broad leav'd.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, (if what some Modern Writers say, may be admitted *Ψευδαλινον πλατύφυλλον*; in Latin *Pseudolinum latifolium*, *Linaria latifolia*, *Osyris latifolia*, also *Urinalis*, and *Urinaria*; from the Effects: in English, *Broad-leaved Flax-weed*, or *Toad-flax*.

II. *The Kinds.* Some have taken this to be the *Antirrhinum Plinij*; but it may possibly be the *Osyris Dioscoridis*, *Galenii*, & *Plinii*: Authors make five Kinds of this Broad leaved, viz. 1. *Linaria latifolia*, Sive *Osyris latifolia*, *alba Lobelii*; White flowered broad leaved Flaxweed. 2. *Linaria Americana flore parvo*, American Flaxweed. 3. *Linaria Latifolia Dalmatica*, The Great Dalmatian Flaxweed. 4. *Linaria Latifolia Cretica Major*, The great broad leaved Candy Flaxweed. 5. *Linaria triphylla Cærulea Apula Fabii Columnæ*, The blew three leaved Flaxweed of Naples.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first or white flowered broad leaved, has a Root which is white, long, thick, and great, enduring several Years, and not decaying; from which Root rise up many tough, pliant Stalks, with many Leaves thereon, some broad, cut into many narrow long slips, and some of them long and narrow, without any cut or division, somewhat like those of our Common narrow leaved Flaxweed in Chap. 269. Sect. 4. Set sometimes upon a middle Rib, after a Winged fashion, yet commonly at the end of the rib, broad, and divided into two or three, or more parts. At the tops of the Stalks grow several pale, whitish Flowers, resembling the aforementioned common kind, but with a wider and more open mouth. The Seed is not unlike the other, being very smooth.

IV. *The second, or American kind, has a Root like the former, which shoots forth several small slender, reddish Stalks, spread into many branches, on which grow on both sides of them (but without any order) many dark green Leaves, which are broad, in respect to the narrow leav'd kinds, but narrower than those of Dalmatia or Candy next following, tho' not much shorter, and end in a sharp Point.* The Flowers grow at tops of the Stalks, in the same manner which the Common narrow leaved kind do, at Chap. 269. Sect. 4. and are of a gold yellow color, but much lesser than they.

V. *The third, or Great Dalmatian, has a Root which is white, and spreads it self by several ramifications under Ground, not perishing as the Wild kind does, but abiding in the Winter with both Root and Stalks, shooting forth fresh Leaves every Spring.*

These Leaves are fair, large, and green, spreading upon the Ground, being about 2 inches long, and an Inch broad, ending very sharp pointed, without any foot-stalks at them, but rising up with the Stalk, which is firm, hard and round, about 2 or 3 Feet high, and has like Leaves set thereon, without any order, up to the top, but lesser and lesser, as they grow higher. The Stalk is branched at the top, having at every one of the branches such like spikes of deep, or gold-yellow Flowers as are in the Common Wild Kind at Chap. 269. Sect. 4. with Spurs behind them; but each of them are three or four times larger than the Common aforementioned; and the Seed is also like the same, and enclosed in like heads, but larger.

VI. *The fourth, or Great broad leav'd Candy, has a Root which is hard and white, bigger at the head, and small below, with some Fibres adjoining to it.* This Root sends forth a round thick Stalk, two or three feet high, spreading into many branches, on which are set sometimes two, and sometimes three Leaves together, on a small foot-stalk on each side of them, sometimes one against another, and sometimes not, without keeping any order, each of which is larger and longer than those of the *Dalmatian* kind, and of a greyish green color, with three veins or ribs in every one of them. At the tops of the branches grow Flowers made for the Form, like the other kinds, but of a differing color; for the gaping Mouth is of a pale blew, and more yellow underneath, with a pale or blewish, and sometimes more purplish Spur behind; the Heads and Seed, are also like those of our Common Wild kind at Cap. 269. Sect. 4. aforementioned.

VII. *The fifth, or Blew three leav'd, has a Root which is small and white, which sends forth sometimes but one Stalk, sometimes more than one, which are White: At whose joints is sometimes but one, and sometimes three Leaves set together, divided almost like Rue leaves, but larger, and cut deeper in, and pointed at the ends of a greyish green, or Ash color.* The tops of the Stalks are replenished with such like Flowers, but smaller, and wholly of a blew color, excepting the Mouth which is yellow. They being past away, small round Heads follow, containing large, flat, and blackish Seed.

VIII. *The Places.* Their Names or Title shew their Original, or in what places they are Natives; but being brought to us are Nurst uponly in Gardens: and the first is a peculiar Garden Plant.

IX. *The Times.* They all flower in the Summer Months, from the end of May to the end of August, but with us, scarcely give any ripe Seed; The *American* kind flowers very late, as about the end of August.

X. *The Qualities, Specifications, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with those of the narrow leav'd kind, and in especial with the first of that Species in the last Chapter, that being the most efficacious of them all; after which, these of the broad leav'd kind come next in place.

XI. *An Observation.* The broad leav'd Flaxweed is by much the more powerful opener of Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, and Blader, and the greater provoker of Urine; From which eminent faculty it was, that it obtained the Names of *Urinalis* and *Urinaria*: It gives present ease in the Strangury, heat, pain, sharpness and scalding of Urine, and expels Stones, Gravel, Sand, and Tartarous Mucilage from the Urinary parts, being given the Juice, Effence, Infusion, Decoction, Syrup or Pouder, &c.



## C H A P. CCLXXI.

### of FLAX WEED Creeping,

O R,

### TOAD-FLAX Dwarf.

I. **T**HE Names. It may be called in Greek *Ψευδολινον ἔρπον*, in Latin *Pseudolinum repens*; *Linaria pumila*: and in English Dwarf or Creeping Flaxweed, or Toad Flax.

II. The Kinds. Authors make six or more kinds, most of them strangers to us in England; the chief which we shall take notice of in this place, are the three following, viz. 1. *Linaria cerulea repens*, The Creeping, or Dwarf, blew, or purple Flaxweed, or Toad Flax. 2. *Linaria pumila Hispanica*, Spanish Dwarf Flaxweed, or Toad Flax. This is *Osyris flava Sylvestris Baubini*, and the *Osyris minor Tabern montani*. 3. *Linaria quadrifolia supina*, or *quadrifolia Alpina*; *Linaria Alpina Gesneri*; *Linaria tertia Styriaca Clusii*, Four leav'd Creeping Flaxweed, or blew Mountain Toad Flax.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Creeping Dwarf, blew, or purple Flaxweed, has a Root which is made up of many Fibres, and abides, not perishing in the Winter; this Root sends forth a number of small weak Stalks, leaning down to the Ground, scarcely being able to stand upright; set very full and without order, with little Leaves like those of manured Flax, which are very narrow, and Ashcolored, and are continued up to the tops of the Stalks, where they divide themselves into several other Branches, which have all of them long Heads or Spikes of Flowers, very small, and of a fine blewish purple color, with a yellow Spot in the Mouths of them. The Seed is much like to that of our Common narrow leav'd kind, in Chap. 369. Sect. 4. aforegoing.

IV. The second, or Spanish Dwarf Flaxweed, has a Root small, Fibrous and white, creeping under Ground, and perishing every Year; from which shoot up many weak Branches, not able to stand upright, rising to be about six Inches or more high: on which do grow many long and narrow Leaves, very like unto our Common narrow leav'd kind, as well for form as color; so also the Flowers at tops of the Stalks, and the Heads and Seed are like the same, the Flowers being yellow, and the Seed flat and blackish; only in this the Leaves, Flowers and Seed, are all of them much less than the said Common narrow leaved kind, in which consists the difference.

V. The third, or four leaved creeping Flaxweed, has a Root which is small, or slender, and white, spreading it self under Ground several ways, and perishes not in Winter, but endures many Years. From this Root shoot forth several small weak Stalks, of the length of those last described, lying almost upon the Ground, and severally divided into many smaller branches, even from the bottom; upon which are set a great many small, short, whitish green Leaves, very orderly one above another, that is, at some but two Leaves, at some three, and at others four, not keeping always exactly to the same number, especially below, they growing more exactly upwards: These Leaves are lesser than those of our Common narrow leaved Flaxweed in Chap. 269. Sect. 4. being thick and juicy, growing upon the Stalks at certain spaces, sometimes three, but most usually

four together. The Flowers grow at the tops of the Stalks and Branches, and are in form like those of the Common narrow leaved kind aforementioned, but of a most perfect Violet color: They are somewhat great, and stand not so thick clustering together; the lower lip where it gapes, is of a gold yellow color, to wit, the Spot in the Mouth, the rest of the Flower being of a delicate purple blew. After the Flowers are past, come round Heads, which are somewhat great and thick, and contain within them a flat blackish Seed, in two partitions or Cells.

IV. The Places. The first grows Wild in many places, as upon Stone Walls, gravelly Grounds, barren Fields, and along by Hedge sides. The second is a Native of Spain. The third grows upon the higher Alps: with us they are only Nurst up in Gardens of the Curious.

VII. The Times. They all Flower from the end of May, to the end of August: The Seed ripening in the mean Season.

VIII. The Qualities. Specifications, Preparations, and Virtues are the same with our Common narrow leav'd Flax-weed in Chap. 269. to which we refer you, and therefore shall say no more of them here.

## C H A P. CCLXXII.

### of FLEBANE Greater.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Κονίζα*: in Latin *Conyza*; and in English Flebane.

II. The Kinds. We divide it into four kinds, viz. 1. *Conyza major*, The greater Flebane. 2. *Conyza minor*, The lesser Flebane. 3. *Conyza pumila*, Dwarf Flebane. 4. *Conyza palustris*, Water Flebane.

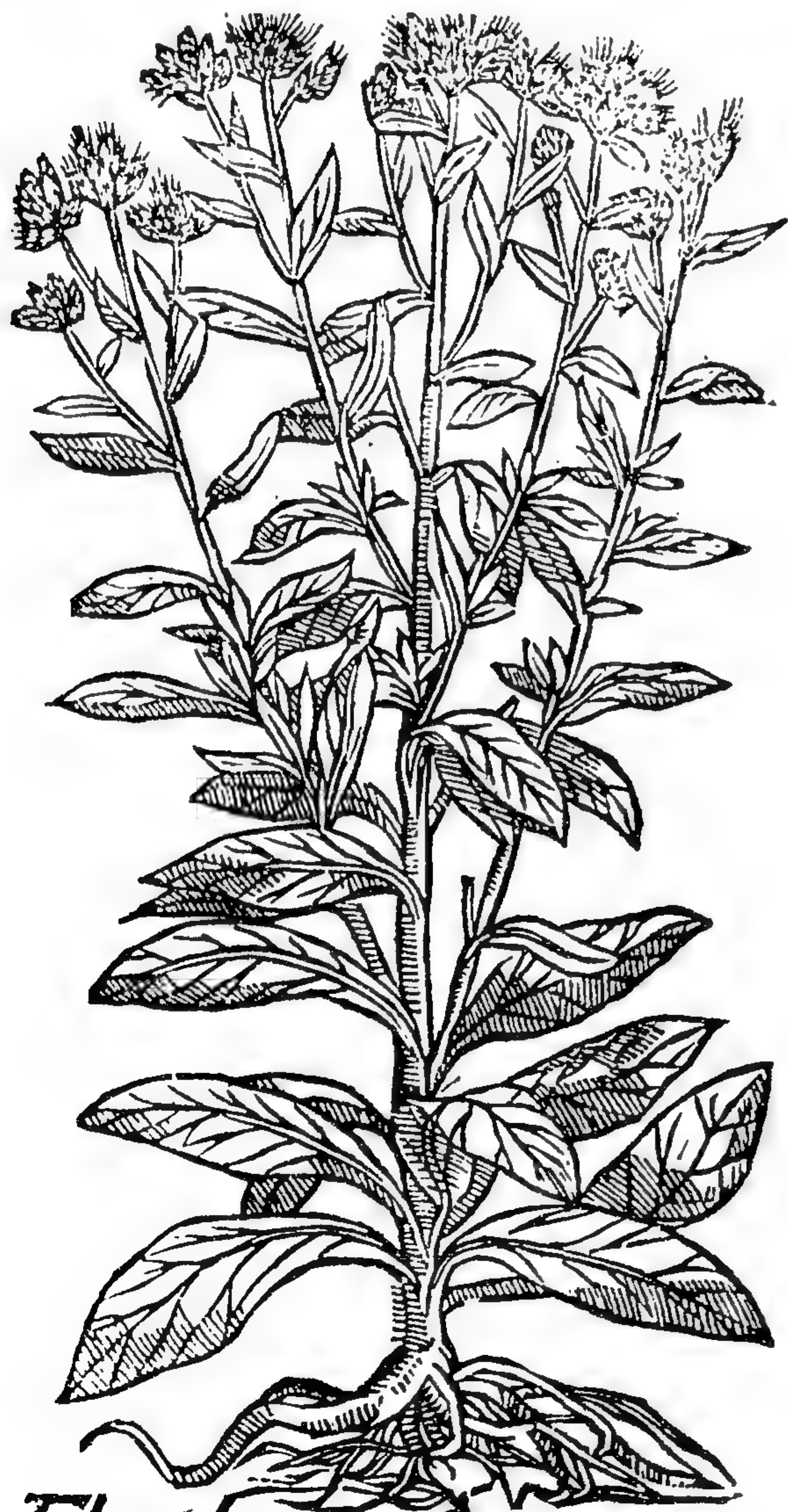


*lebane true Great*



III. Of the greater kinds of Flebane, these offer themselves, viz. 1. *Conyza Major vera Dioscoridis*, The true greater Flebane of Dioscoridis. 2. *Conyza major Montana Germanica*, great Mountain Flebane of Germany. 3. *Conyza Helenitis mellita incana*, Hoary mullet Flebane, with Elecampane Leaves. 4. *Conyza Helenitis foliis laciniatis*, Great jagged Flebane. 5. *Conyza Helenitis pilosa*, Hairy Mullet Flebane. 6. *Conyza media*, The middle kind of Flebane.

IV The Descriptions. The first, or true greater Flebane, has a thick, long, durable and Fibrous Root, which sends forth many Stalks, two or three Feet or more high, which are hard, woody, rough, hairy, fat and of an overcoorn color. The Leaves grow without order, alternately embrace the Stalks, and are many, long, somewhat narrow, and of a yellowish green color, dented a little about the edges, twice as large as those of the Olive-tree, which are rough or hairy, and very fat or clammy, being as it were besmeared with a fattiness or gumminess, which is much more in hot Countries than it is in this of ours; these Leaves are something like unto those of the Italian Star Wort, but larger, and more pointed at the ends. Towards the tops of the Stalks come forth the flowers, at every joint with the leaves a yellow flower, which is somewhat large, and round, almost like the Flower of Hawkweed or Groundsel, which when it is full ripe, turns into Down, and flies away with the Wind. The smell hereof is somewhat strong, but sweet withal, and not unpleasant: It is so glutinous and clammy, that what small thing soever, as Flies, Fleas, &c. shall happen to fall or light thereon, are held fast and caught; and for this reason it was called *Flebane*, not for that it has any quality, of otherwise poisoning or killing them.



*Flebane Common*

V. The second, or Great Mountain, has a Fibrous Root which sends forth several round green Stalks, two feet or more high, but not near so clammy as the former, having many long pointed Leaves

set thereon without order, of a sad, or dark green color, each of which is four or five Inches long, and an Inch and half broad. The Flowers are yellow, somewhat larger than the other, every one standing at the tops of the Branches, upon a long Stalk, in the same manner as the former do, viz. with a Pale or Border of Leaves, and many small thrums in the middle, which pass into Down, and are carried away with the Wind, as the former are. Note. There is another of this sort with longer leaves, and lesser flowers.

VI. The third, or Hoary Mullet Flebane, with Elecampane Leaves, has a Root which is composed of many black Strings or Fibres, by which it takes fast hold of the Ground, which sends up several long, and somewhat broad Leaves, almost in fashion like to Foxglove Leaves, but that these are hoary or grey on the upper side, and of a brownish green on the under side, herein somewhat like to the Leaves of Rha Helenii folio, or Bastard Rhubarb with Elecampane Leaves. The Leaves are very Hoary also, the Plant rising to be two or three Feet high, set with the like Leaves as grow below, but smaller and smaller as they grow towards the tops, where many Flowers stand together, like unto the former Flebanes, and much greater than those of Gromwel, which turn into Down, and fly away with the Wind. The whole Plant is somewhat clammy, yet much less than the first, and much sweeter than it, smelling much like Honey.

*Flebane great Jagged.*



VII. The fourth or Great Jagged Flebane, has a bushy Fibrous Root, from which arise thick, crested, and hollow Stalks, divided towards the tops, into several Branches. The Leaves which encompass the Stalk, are deeply gashed or cut in on the edges, being of a very considerable length, and broad in respect to that length, all of them extended to a sharp point. The Flowers are Star fashion, of a yellow color, turn into Down, and fly away with the Wind. The



The whole Plant is covered over with a soft and tender Down, and smells something like Honey.

VIII. *The fifth, or Hairy Mullet Fleabane, has a bushy Fibrous Root like to the last; but in its Stalks. Leaves and Flowers is so like the third foregoing, that there is no other difference to be found, but that in both Leaves and Stalks, besides the hoariness, this is much more hairy and rough than it, which causes it to be a differing kind from it.*



IX. *The sixth, or Middle kind, has a Root which is pretty large and Fibrous, from whence arises a branched Stalk of about a Foot and half high; encompassed at certain spaces, with thick, rough, greyish, green Leaves. At the tops of the Branches grow pretty fair yellow Flowers, of the largeness of a little Marigold, which being faded away, turn into Down, and are carried away with the Wind.*

X. *The Places.* The first grows in Syria; Clusius found it near Lisbon, and in divers parts of Spain; but with us it grows only in Gardens. The second in Mountainous places in Germany, England, &c. as also in Gardens: Johannes Thalius found it in Hareynia Sylva in Saxony, and we in many places of our own Country, as near Hampstead, &c. The third, fourth, and fifth, are found upon the Hills in Artois, and some Hilly places in our own Land. The sixth is found growing in moist places about Rivers and Ponds sides, &c. and has been found in St. James's Park, Tuttle Fields, &c.

XI. *The Times.* They all flower in the Months of June, July, and August, some earlier, and some later than others; the Seed ripening in the mean season.

XII. *The Qualities.* Fleabane is hot and dry in the third Degree: it is Aperitive, Absterfive, Diuretick, Nephritick, Hystrick, and Alexipharmick.

XIII. *The Specification.* It is singular against the Strangury, Jaundice, griping of the Guts, Epilepsy, green Wounds, bitings of Mad Dogs, and all sorts of Venemous Creatures, &c.

XIV. *The Preparations.* You may prepare therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An

*Infusion or Decoction in Wine.* 4. An Oil by Infusion. 5. A Balsam. 6. A Cataplasim. 7. A Spirituous Tincture. 8. An Oily Tincture.

### *The Virtues.*

XV. *The Liquid Juice of Leaves and Flowers.* It provokes the Terms in Women, and expels the Dead Child and Afterbirth; it cures the Strangury, for it provokes Urine admirably when it is made by drops, by opening the Passages, and expelling the Morbifick Matter, be it what it will. Dose two or three Spoonfuls, Morning and Night, taken in a Glass of fragrant Wine, or other fit Vehicle.

XVI. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues, besides which it opens all Obstructions of Gall, Liver, Spleen, Reins, and Womb; it is good against the Yellow Jaundice, and the Griping pains of the Belly, and being taken to three or four Spoonfuls in Vinegar or Wine, it prevails against the Epilepsy or Falling-Sickness; injected up the Womb it brings away both Birth and Afterbirth, being also at the same time taken inwardly: given in Red Port Wine it stops any Flux of the Belly.

XVII. *The Infusion or Decoction in Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but must be given in larger quantities, as to four, six, or eight Ounces: being given Morning and Evening it admirably warms and strengthens a cold, moist, and weak Stomach, provokes Urine powerfully, and prevails against all sorts of Pains and Grievs of the Womb: if the Decoction is made in Water, it is good for Women to Bath in whose Courses are stoppt, as also to ease all sorts of Pains and Grievs of those parts.

XVIII. *The Oil by Infusion.* Anointed on the Head it eases the Headach and Megrims, coming from a cold Cause; anointed all along the Back Bone, on the Stomach, and on the Pulsers, it is very effectual to take away the shaking Fits of Agues, and those Tremblings which come from cold.

XIX. *The Balsam.* It is an extraordinary thing for curing simple green Wounds, it brings to Digestion, cleanses, dries, and heals after a singular manner; anointed on the Hemorrhoids it gives ease in the extremity of Anguish, and in a little time cures them.

XX. *The Cataplasim.* The green Leaves made into a Pultice, by beating in a Mortar, &c. and applied to any simple green Wound, or Cut, being first well washed or cleansed, heals it in a very short space of time, warms and comforts parts chilled with cold, and applied to the Forehead is a good expedient to cure the Frenzy; so also being applied to the Soles of the Feet, and so applied, it is said to stop any Flux of the Bowels.

XXI. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is good against Vomiting and Nauseousness, expels Wind, and comforts and warms a cold, moist, and weak Stomach; it is good against Poysons, the Bitings of Mad Dogs, Serpents, and all sorts of other Venomous Creatures; it cures all sorts of Fluxes of the Bowels, whether they be of Blood or Humors, and is an extraordinary thing to be taken two, three, or four times a day in any fit Vehicle, (from two to four, or six Drams) by such as are affected with the Palsie.

XXII. *The Oily Tincture.* This used as the Infused Oil foregoing, is much more powerful to warm those parts which are chilled with cold, and to take away the cold and shaking Fits of Agues, as also to cure Tremblings, Numbness of any part, Palsies, Convulsions, Cramps, and the like; anointed on the Piles which are not broken, it presently eases the Pain, dissolves the Tumor, and in two or three times anointing cures them; it is an effectual thing against Punctures, Hurts, and Bruises of the



Nerves and Tealons; and given inwardly from ten to twenty or thirty drops, (dropt first into fine White Sugar) mixed with a Glas of White Port Wine, it facilitates the Birth, brings away the Afterbirth, or Dead Child, opens Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, and brings present Relief in the Strangury, caused by small Stones, Sand, Gravel, or Lanthous Matter lodged in those parts.

## C H A P. CCLXXIII.

## Of FLEABANE the Lesser.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in *Greek* Κοιζα μικρά, in *Latin* *Conyza minor*, and in *English* *Fleabane the lesser*.

**II. The Kinds.** It is the second Species of *Fleabane*, and is twofold, viz. 1. *Conyza famina* Theophrasti, *Conyza minor vera* Dioscoridis, *Pena*, *Clusij*, *Gesneri*, & *aliorum*, The true lesser *Fleabane* of *Dioscoridis*. 2. *Conyza cerulea acris*, *Tinctorius flos albi* Tragi, *Conyza odorata cerulea*, *Erigeron quarantani* *D. Louei*, *Dentclaria Gesneri*, *Conyza muralis*, & *Conyzoides Cerulea* *Gesneri*, *Conyza Carulea Tabernamontani*, *Amellus Montanus Columnæ*; Blew flowered *Fleabane*. There are are some others of this lesser kind, but they are not at all to be met with in *England*.

**III. The Descriptions.** The first, or true small *Fleabane*, has a Root which is single, small and slender, with a few Fibres thereat, which perishes every Year. This Root sends forth seldom more than one Stalk, which is about a Foot and half high, sometimes not above a Foot, and sometimes not a Foot high, according to the goodness of the Soil it is planted in: It is somewhat hairy and glutinous, or clammy, as the true greater *Fleabane*, but greener than that great kind. This Stalk is divided into many branches, which are also rough and glutinous. The Leaves are long and narrow; somewhat like those of *Linarum*, or *Flaxweed*, but three times less than those of the greater *Fleabane* in *Chap. 272. Sect. 4.* foregoing, and are hairy and unctuous or clammy also. With the small Leaves, at the tops of the Branches come forth small pale yellow Flowers, which are lesser, and less shining than in the said greater *Fleabane*, which passing away, the Heads are turned into Down, and are carried away with the Wind, as the others are. This whole Plant smells sweeter than most of the others do, and dies every Year, and raises it self of its own Sowing, or else must be new Sown every Year.

**IV. The second, or Blew flowered Fleabane**, has a small Fibrous and yellow Root, of a very hot and biting taste, which from its Head sends up several longish Leaves, somewhat like those of the *Garden Pottle*, but a little writhed: The Stalk is about half a Yard high, and set alternately with twined longish, narrow, and somewhat rough Leaves, of an ashy green colour. Some Authors say, the Stalk grows sometimes to be about two Feet high, brownish at the bottom, and is set here and there up to the top, with longer and narrower Leaves, where it is divided into small and short Branches; on which grow many Flowers one above another, in small, longish, scaly green Heads or Husks, composed of many small and narrow, blewish purple Leaves, something white at the ends or tips, with a small yellow flat Thrum in the middle; in

which middle, there arises up several white threads, whereby each flower, consisting of three colors, White, Purple, and Yellow; makes it seem the more delectable to behold. After these Flowers pass away, there comes in those Husks or Heads which held them, small, long Seed, lying in the Down, each having some thereof at its Head, which together there (when ripe) is blown away with the Wind, if not gathered. The whole Plant is of a sharp taste, but the Root much more, and is nearly as hot as Pepper, of a strong, but not unpleasant smell.

**V. The Places.** The first grows in *Syria* and *Greece*, also in *Spain* near *Madrid* as *Clusius* says; and in the Woods at *Gramants* near *Mompelier*, as both he and *Lobel* say. The second was found in divers places of the Kingdom of *Naples*, in moist Fields which are in the Mountains, as *Columna* says, as also in Sandy places near the River *Rhosne* by *Lions* in *France*, and upon the *Alps* in *Austria* as *Clusius* says. It grows upon many *Chalky Hills* in *England*; and *Gerard* says, that he in the Company of *George Bowles* and some others, found it near *Farmingham* in *Kent*; and one *William Broad* found it growing at the *Block-house* at *Gravesend*. The first grows with us only in *Gardens*.

**VI. The Times.** The first Flowers in *June* and *July*: the second in *August*, whose Flowers turn quickly into Down, and are carried away with the Wind.

**VII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues** are the same with the True greater *Fleabane* in the former Chapter, to which we now refer you; but with this Observation, that these lesser *Fleabanes*, are much more efficacious to all the purposes aforementioned; and are much more powerful and effectual to help any Flux, or bloody Flux of the Bowels.

**VIII. Nota.** The Root of the Blew flowered, being held in the Mouth, absolutely Cures the Tooth-ach.

## C H A P. CCLXXIV.

## Of FLEABANE Dwarf.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in *Greek*, Κοιζα νάνη, ή νανώδης, ή χαμαικοιζα: in *Latin* *Conyza Pumila*, *Chamaconyza*: in *English* *Dwarf Fleabane*.

**II. The Kinds.** This is the third Species of *Fleabane*: And it is two fold, viz. 1. *Conyza Pumila*, *Conyza minor* Tragi, *Matthioli*, *Conyza minima* *Lobelii* & *Dodonei*; Our *Vulgar Dwarf Fleabane*. 2. *Conyza minor Rauwolfii*, *Conyza minor Syriaca*, *Syrian small Fleabane*.

**III. The Descriptions.** The first, or *Vulgar Dwarf Fleabane*, has a small and Fibrous Root, from whence arises a branched Stalk, about a Foot high, set with small longish Leaves, somewhat roundish pointed, soft also and woolly, with a Smell not unpleasant as some of those going before. The Flowers are replenished with many yellow Threads, like to the middle part of *Camomil* Flowers, or those of *Tansey*; and as the former turn into Down, and are carried away with the Wind

IV. The





Dwarf Fleabane.

IV. The second, or Small Syrian Fleabane, has a small Fibrous Root like the former, whence spring forth many small low Stalks or Branches, about a Foot or more high, whereof but few stand upright, the most of them leaning or lying down upon the Ground, and taking Root again in several places as they lie. The Leaves which grow thereon, are small and long, somewhat like unto the Leaves of the Olive-tree: They are Hairy, Fat, and Clammy, of a strong Smell, yet something sweet withall. At the Tops of the Stalks, grow the Flowers, which are small and yellow like unto those of the first kind in Chap. 273. Sect. 3. aforegoing; which when they are ripe, turn into Down, and fly away with the Wind, as the others do.

V. The Places. The first grows plentifully in such Places as are Plashy, or Wet in Winter. The second *Rauwolfius* found growing about Tripoly in Syria; and here is only Nurst up in Gardens.

VI The Times. The first flowers in July and August, the Seed ripening in the mean Season: The second flowers in August, and with us something alter, if carefully lookt after.

VII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues of these are the same with those of the Greater Fleabane in Chap. 272. aforegoing; so that no more need be said thereof.

for, *Conyza aquatica* Gesneri, *Conyza maxima* Jerrati folia Thalii; *Lingua major* Dalechampii, & *Lugdunensis*; *Consolida palustris* Tabernmontani, The Greater, Water or Marsh Fleabane. 2. *Conyza aquatica minor* Thalii & Baubini, *Conyza palustris minor*, The lesser Water or Marsh Fleabane.

### Water Fleabane



III. The Descriptions. The first, or greater Water Fleabane, has a large Root, replenished with a vast number of Fibres, which sends forth hollow and crested Stalks, a Yard or more high, having several joints as it were, and branched out towards the top. It bears its leaves in an unordered manner, which are long and narrow, sharp pointed, and snipt about the edges like a Saw; hairy, and green on the upper side, and grey or woolly underneath. At the tops of the Stalks and Branches grow many yellow Flowers, pretty large, very like to those of Ragwort, which, when they are ripe, turn into Down, and are quickly carried away with the Wind.

IV. The second, or lesser Water Fleabane, in its Root, Stalks and Flowers, is much like the former, as also in its manner of growing, saving that it is smaller and lower than that is; and the Leaves are sometimes much less dented or jagged on the edges; and the Flowers likewise stand not, but One on a Stalk for the most part; which are like the former, also yellow.

V. The Places. They both grow near Water sides, and in Plashy and Wet Grounds, which are not often dry; but being planted in Gardens where there is a rich Mould, they prosper very well.

VI. The Times. They both of them flower in August and September, and their Seed is ripe not long after, and is suddenly carried away with the Wind.

VII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with those of the Great Fleabane in Chap. 272. aforegoing, to which I refer you

### C H A P. CCLXXV.

#### Of FLEABANE Water.

I. The Names. It is called in Greek *Koviza* ἑλεια, κὶ ἑλεδης: in Latin *Conyza palustris*, *Conyza aquatica*, *Consolida palustris*; and in English Water Fleabane.

II. The Kinds. This is the fourth Species of Fleabane, and is twofold, viz. *Conyza palustris* ma-



Authors say, that this *Water Fleabane* is as effectual and admirable a Wound Herb, as any of those the most admired.

## C H A P. CCLXXVI.

## OF FLEAWORT.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *Arabick* Bazarah *Cathana*, *Bezer* *Cothune* : in *Greek* *Ψύλλιον* : in *Latin* *Psyllium*, *Pulicaria*, & *Pulicaris herba* : in *English* *Fleawort*. This Name is given to it, not because when it is brought green into the House, that it drives away *Fleas*; but because the Seed thereof is very like to them.

II. *The Kinds*. Authors make four kinds of this Plant; but because seldom more than three come to our hands, we shall only describe them. 1. The first of these is called *Ψύλλιον κενόν*, *Psyllium Vulgare*, *Pulicaria Vulgaris*, *Cynops* *Theophrasti*, Common or ordinary Fleawort. 2. *Psyllium majus semper Virens*; *Psyllium alterum Gesneri*; *Psyllium perenne Gesneri* & *Camerarii*; *Psyllium Plinianum forte majus radice perenne Lobelii*; The great evergreen Fleawort. 3. *Psyllium Indicum foliis Crenatis*, *Psyllium Americanum*, vel *floridianum foliis crenatis*, The Indian or American Fleawort with dented Leaves. This is *Psyllium primum Anguillare*, and the *Psyllium verum Dioscoridis* as *Baubinus* thinks.



Fleawort.

III. *The Descriptions*. The first, or Common Fleawort, has a Root which is not long, but white, hard and Woody, perishing every Year, and raising it self again of its own Seed for many Years, if it is suffered to shed it. From this Root comes forth a Stalk about two Feet high or more, full of Joints, and spreading it self out on all sides into many branches, almost from the bottom to the top; and at

every Joint stand two small, long, and narrow whitish green Leaves, something hairy. At the tops of the Stalks and Branches, stand several small, short, scaly or chaffy Heads, out of which come forth, small whitish, yellow Threads, such as Plantane Heads do give, which are the bloomings or flowers. The Seed is enclosed in those Heads, and is small, and shining whilst it is fresh, very like unto Fleas, both for its color and bigness, (from whence came the Name) but turning black when it is old. The whole Plant is somewhat whitish, and hairy; smelling a little like Rosin.

IV. *The second, or Great evergreen Fleawort*, has a long, hard and Woody Root, which perishes not, but lives in Winter, keeping its Leaves Green all that Season, whence came its Epithite of *semper virens*, or *never dying*. From this Root spring forth several long and tough Branches, of a Woody substance like the former, but that they, as also their Branches are somewhat greater, longer, and harder, and do a little more bow down to the Ground. The Leaves which grows forth at the joints, resemble the former, but are much longer and much narrower. At the tops of the Stalks and Branches, and at the Joints come forth chaffy Tufts, standing upon long foot-stalks, which are very like to the Ear of the *Alpisti Phalaris*, or *Canary Seed*; in which Heads or Tufts is contained the Seed, which is like the former.

V. *The third, or American Fleawort*, has a long Woody Root with some Fibres adjoining, which sends forth a Woody, reddish, rough Stalk, next to the Ground, growing to be about a Foot high, and spreading it self out into divers Branches. The Leaves stand at the joints thereof, and are somewhat long, narrow pointed at the end, and a little dented in, or rather torn on the edges, and hairy also like the former. The tops of the Branches are more stored with Heads than the former, but of the same bigness and fashion, with Flowers growing in the same manner, containing within them shining Seed like to the others.

VI. *The Places*. The first grows in Italy and Spain, in Fields, and untilled places, but with us only in Gardens. The second grows plentifully in Fields, near the Sea-shoar or Coast, as also in many of our Gardens. The third is a native of the Indies, and has been found growing in Florida, and in the Southern parts of Carolina: From some parts of which Continent it was brought into the European parts of the World.

VII. *The Times*. They all flower with us in June and July, but in their native places all the Summer long.

VIII. *The Qualities*. The Seed of these Plants is that which is chiefly used in Medicine, and that both *Galen* and *Scrapio* say, is cold in the second Degree, but temperate in respect to moisture or dryness. It is Emollient, Lubrificative, Anodyne, Pectoral, and a little Cathartick. Some Authors have written that the frequent inward use of this Seed is very dangerous, but it is no otherwise true, than as it falls out in other great cooling Herbs, as *Housteek*, *Henbane*, *Lettice*, *Nightshade*, and the like, which are all safe enough, if Wisely and fitly applied: but Ignorance, Rashness, and Indiscretion, in the application of Medicaments, has oftentimes done harm, and brought discredit to those Medicaments which (having been free from any dangerous effects) were in all appearance to Wise Physicians of the greatest Use in the Art of Medicine: The same is to be said in the uses of this Plant, as to its Virtues and Effects. It is an excellent thing, and without any evil Qualities, if applied and used by a Wise and skillful Physician.

IX. *The*



IX. *The Specification.* It is good against burning Fevers, Inflammations, Heartiness, Pleurisy, Hemorrhoids or Piles; causes Expectoration, and quenches the most vehement Thirst.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom,  
1. *A Mucilage of the Seed.* 2. *An Ointment.* 3. *The Seed fried.* 4. *A Cataplasm of the Seed.* 5. *A liquid Juice of the Herb.*

*The Virtues.*

XI. *The Mucilage of the Seed.* It is made with Barley Water, or Damask Rose Water, or with pure Spring Water, by a bare Infusion of the Seed in the Water, without bruising of it, just as you make a Mucilage of Clary Seed. If it is made with Barley Water, and is dulcified with Syrup of Damask Roses or Violets, and so drank to four, six or eight Ounces, it opens the Stomach and Bowels, and evacuates downwards gross Flegm and Melancholy, with other viscous Humors: but withal it heals the Corrosion of the Bowels caused by hot, sharp and choleric Humors, or from the over-working of violent Medicines, such as Scammony, Resin of Fallap, Coliquintida, Esula, &c. If it is made with Spring Water, and dulcified with Syrup of Violets, or Syrup of Corn Poppies, it is good against all hot, burning and malign Fevers and Inflammations of the Viscera: it cools the Heat, quenches Thirst, and lenifies the Dryness of the Mouth, Tongue and Throat. It helps also the Hoarseness of the Voice, and other Diseases of the Breast and Lungs, caused by Heat or salt sharp Humors; and the Pleurisy or Peripneumony, if given in time. If it is made with Damask Rose Water, and sweetned with Syrup of Red Roses, it is good against Heat, Pain and Fluxes of the Bowels; and is a singular Remedy in a Tenasmus.

XII. *The Ointment.* Take the Yolk of one Egg, Unguentum Populeon one Ounce, Mucilage of Fleawort Seed a sufficient quantity; mix and make all into an Ointment. It is an extraordinary thing if it is applied to the Hemorrhoids or Piles, laying it on a Cloth, and binding it on them. It helps also all Inflammations in any part of the Body, and eases the Pains which are caused thereby. Applied to the Head and Forehead, it is good against the Head-ach and Megrin; and it is good against all hot Tumors or Breakings out in the Skin, as Blains, Wheals, Pimples, red Pustles in the Face, Pushes, and the like.

XIII. *The fried or parched Seed.* If it is either eaten, or otherwise reduced to powder, and so taken, it is of excellent Use to stop all sorts of Fluxes of the Belly, and heals the Corrosions of the Bowels, caused by acrid or sharp and malign Humors, or the Corrosiveness of violent and sharp Purgers.

XIV. *The Cataplasm.* Made of the Mucilage with the bruised Seed, Oil of Roses and Vinegar, with a sufficient quantity of Rice or Bean Flower, it is good against Pains of the Joints, and Weakness of the same caused by the Gout, Sciatica, &c. which Pains it eases, as also Ruptures in young Children, and the Swelling out of the Navel, being applied: it heals also sore Nipples and sore Breasts of Women giving Suck.

XV. *The Juice of the Herb.* If it is mixt with a little Honey, and put into the Ears, it helps the Running of them, and kills Worms breeding therein. The same mixt with Hogs Lard, and applied to corrupt and filthy Ulcers, cools them, removes their Inflammation, eases the Pain, cleanses and heals them, by repressing the sharp Humors flowing to them.

C H A P. CCLXXVII.

OF FLIXWEED.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Latin, *Sophia*, and *Sophia Chirurgorum*, by Gerard; also *Pseudonasturtium sylvestre*, and by some *Thalictrum* or *Thalictrum*, (tho' these two last are Names which more properly belong to Meadow Rue:) some will have it to be *Sophia Paracelsi*, by which, it is said, he did such Wonders: also *Scriphium Germanicum*, *Tragi*, *Accipitrina Casalpini*, *Nasturtium sylvestre tenuifolium divisum Bauhini*, *Eruca Gelatina Italarum Lobelii*: in English, *Flixweed*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make two sorts hereof, viz. 1. *Sophia angustifolia*, Narrow-leav'd Flixweed. 2. *Sophia latifolia*, Broad-leav'd Flixweed; which yet Gerard thinks may be both but one kind, the Leaf thereof growing fairer and larger according to the Richness or Goodness of the Soil. Their Descriptions follow.



*Flixweed.*

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Narrow-leav'd Flixweed, has a Root which is long and woody, perishing every Year; yet if it be suffered to seed, and shed its Seed, it will be wonderfully increased the next Year. From this Root it rises up with a round, smooth, hard, upright Stalk, half a yard or two feet high, seldom more, and spreads it self into several Branches, by which it becomes a beautiful (considering the Plant) or pleasant kind of Bush; on which Stalk and Branches do grow many Leaves, of an over-worn greyish green color, finely cut and divided into a number of fine Jaggs, like unto those of Roman Wormwood, or smallest Leaves of Coriander. The Flowers grow upon the Stalk and Branches, Spike fashion, which are very small, and of a dark yellow color; which being pass'd away, small, long Pods succeed, containing much Seed, which when ripe, is of a yellow color.

IV. *The*





IV. *The second, or Broad-leav'd Flixweed, differs not from the former in its Root, Stalk, Branches, Leaves, Flowers, Cods or Seed, or in its Height or Manner of Growing, saving, that the Leaves of this are broader, in which consists the only Difference.* This was found out by *Tabernmontanus*, or first taken notice of by him; but some Botanists are of Opinion, that the former and this are but one and the same Plant, and have this Difference in the Leaves only accidentally, by growing in some more fertile place: however, *Parkinson* seems to admit of the Difference. They are both of them of a strong and unpleasing Smell, and of a drying Taste.

V. *The Places.* *Flixweed* grows in most places of *England*, almost every where, upon *Ash-dunghills*, in the Ruins of old Buildings, by Highways, and in filthy, obscure, base and barren places, also amongst Rubbish.

VI. *The Times.* It flowers and seeds from the beginning of *June* to the end of *September*, the Seed ripening in the mean Season.

VII. *The Qualities.* It is temperate in respect of Heat or Cold, and dry in the first Degree; Anodyne, Astringent, Vulnerary, Arthritick and Analeptick.

VIII. *The Specification.* It stops Fluxes of all sorts, eases Pains of the Joints, consolidates broken Bones, kills Worms, and heals Ulcers.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A liquid Juice of the Herb.* 2. *An Essence of the same.* 3. *A Decoction in Wine or Smiths-forge Water.* 4. *An Ointment or Balsam.* 5. *A Cataplasm.* 6. *A distilled Water.* 7. *The Seed, or Powder of the Seed.*

#### *The Virtues.*

X. *The liquid Juice.* Drunk to two or three Ounces in Wine, it kills Worms in the Stomach or Belly; and outwardly applied, it kills the Worms, which sometimes breed in filthy and putrid Ulcers.

XI. *The Essence.* Drunk to two or three Ounces mixed with Red Wine, it has the Virtues of the liquid Juice; besides which, it stops the Bloody-flux, and all other Fluxes of Blood, and Fluxes of the Belly, and is no less powerful than *Plantane* or *Comfrey* in the aforesaid Cases, as also to consolidate Bones which are broken or out of Joint.

XII. *The Decoction in Smiths-forge Water, or in Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, and performs the same Effects; but ought to be given Morning and Evening for some considerable time, and that to the quantity of six or eight Ounces. It may be used as a Diet-drink by all such as have inveterate and putrid Ulcers, running and ill-conditioned Fistula's; for it alters the Habit of the Body, thickens the Juices, and so induces the healing. Fomented upon the Piles, it eases the Pain, and discusses them.

XIII. *The Ointment or Balsam.* It may be made either of the green Herb or the Juice; and is very beneficial to digest, cleanse, incarnate, dry and heal old fretting and eating Ulcers, how foul and malignant soever they be; and is a good thing to be kept always in a Readiness by rich and able People in the Country, for the Use of their poor Neighbours whenever there may be an occasion.

XIV. *The Cataplasm.* Being applied to green Wounds or recent Ulcers, it performs all that the Ointment or Balsam can do. It is good to be applied to Fractures and Joints lately dislocated; for it eases the Pain, abates the Inflammation, prevents the Flux of Humors, and strengthens the Part afflicted.

XV. *The distilled Water.* It participates of the Virtues of the Plant, but in a much meaner degree, having the Virtues of the Juice, Essence and Decoction: but its chief Use is for a Vehicle, to convey those Internals into the Body. It is cooling, drying, binding and healing.

XVI. *The Seed, or Powder thereof.* Given to a Dram in Red Port Wine, or in Smiths-forge Water, it has been found by Experience to be of excellent Use to stop the Bloody-flux, Spitting, Vomiting or Pissing of Blood; as also other Fluxes of the Belly. It is also good against Nauseating and Vomiting.

## C H A P. CCLXXVIII.

### OF FLOWERGENTLE Great.

O R,

### Great VELVET-FLOWER.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *Greek*, *Ἀμάραντος*: in *Latin*, *Amaranthus*: in *English*, *Flowergentle*, or *Velvet Flower*. The *Greek* is derived from *Ἀμαρῆναι*, *non marcescens, vel non senescens*, from its never fading or waxing old.

II. *The Kinds.* It is divided into two principal kinds, viz. 1. *Ἀμάραντος μέγας*, *Amaranthus magnus*, The great Flowergentle, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Ἀμάραντος μικρός*, *Amaranthus parvus*, Flowergentle the less, of which in the following Chapter.

III. Of the greater Flowergentle, there are two sorts, viz. 1. *Amaranthus purpureus major*, & *major panniculis sparsis*, The greater Flowergentle, or Velvet-flower. 2. *Amaranthus maximus, coccineus elegans maximus*, The greatest Scarlet Flowergentle, or Velvet-flower.

III. The





IV. The Descriptions. *The first, or Greater kind, has a Root which is a great Bush of Strings, spreading in the Ground, whereby it is strongly rooted, yet perishes every Year after it has given its Seed. From this Root springs forth one thick, tall, crested, brown, red Stalk, four or five feet high; from whence spring many great broad Leaves, like to some of the other following kinds for the Form, but much larger, and redder for the most part, especially the lowest, which branches forth into several parts: from between these Leaves and the Stalks or Branches, as also at the tops of them, stand long spiky, round, and somewhat flat Tufts, of a more reddish purple color than the first of the following Chapter; and divided also into divers parts, wherein, when they are full ripe, are to be seen an innumerable company of white Seeds, standing out among the short Thrums, and do easily fall away with a little touching. Every one of these white Seeds has, as it were, a hole half bored thro' therein.*

V. *The second, or Greatest Scarlet Flowergentle, has a pretty thick long Root, with some Fibres adjoining to it, which sends up one or more very great, thick, round, tall Stalk, rather higher and greater than the most ordinary great red Flowergentle, with as large great Leaves on it, or rather greater; but both the Stalks and they are of a fresh yellowish pale green color, with little or no Redness in them at all, (and this is one proper Mark to know this sort from others, before it comes to flower.) The Flowers stand at the tops of the Stalks and Branches, more spread at the bottom into several parts, the middle being longest; and commonly when it is in the Perfection, hanging down like a Tassel; the other parts, like shorter Spikes, compassing it round, which even for the Proportion, is very beautiful, but much more for the color, which is of a more excellent bright, scarlet red; and which being gathered in the prime, will hold the color a great while before it decays, especially if it is kept from*

the Sun and Wind. The Seed enclosed in these Tufts, is almost as white and small as the former, yet a little redder, whereby the Difference may be known.

VI. *The Places.* Both these were brought to us first out of the *West Indies*, the latter from *Brazil*, or some other parts of *America*, where they both are much used, especially the Seed. They are all nurs'd up with us in Gardens; but in backward or cold Years they do not so well thrive, because they love much Heat; yet for the most part they give us every Year ripe Seed.

VII. *The Times.* They bear their spiky Flowers in *July* and *August*, and yield their ripe Seed in *August* or *September*.

VIII. *The Qualities.* They are temperate in respect to Heat or Cold, and dry in the first Degree; Astringent, Repercussive, Hysterick, Arthritick and Antemmenagogick.

IX. *The Specification.* They are peculiar for stopping all sorts of Fluxes, especially Fluxes of Blood.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A Juice or Essence.* 2. *A Decoction in Red Port Wine.* 3. *The Seed, or Powder thereof.* 4. *A Cataplasm of the Leaves.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XI. *The liquid Juice of the Leaves, or Essence of the same.* I have made many Experiments of the Virtues of this Plant upon several of my Patients, who have been troubled with Fluxes of the Bowels, Bloody-fluxes, Spitting and Pissing of Blood, as also the overflowing of the Terms: I have given the Juice or Essence of the same to three or four Spoonfuls at a time in a Glass of Red Port, or some other proper Vehicle, as Smiths-forge Water, &c. and have found it abundantly to answer my Expectation in the Cure of the aforesaid Diseases; and I am satisfied, that sometimes, and upon some Patients, it has done as much as any Vegetable can do: but I gave it Morning and Night, and sometimes also at Noon, and continued the Use thereof for several days.

XII. *The Decoction in Red Port Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice and Essence, but is not full out so efficacious; yet it is somewhat more pleasant to be taken, and may be given from three to six Ounces at a time, Morning, Noon and Night. Given Clysterwise in any vehement Flux of the Belly, as also in a Bloody-flux, and in a Tenalimus, it stops the same, heals the Guts, and strengthens the Part afflicted: but it ought to be several times repeated, according as the Necessity or Occasion may require.

XIII. *The Seed, or Powder thereof.* It may be given from half a Dram to a Dram at a time, in a Glass of Wine, Morning and Night, against Nauseousness or Vomiting, Weakness of the Bowels, Bloody-flux, Hepatick-flux, and all other sorts of Fluxes. If there is any Corrosion of the Guts, it heals it, stops the Flux of Humors to the Part, and restores the Tone thereof, if hurt or depraved.

XIV. *The Cataplasm of the Leaves.* It repercuts Humors, stops Fluxions to any Part, eases Pains, and prevails much against the Gout: but in this last Case it will be so much the better, if an equal quantity of green *Comfrey* Roots be added and beaten up with it.



C H A P. CCLXXIX.

OF FLOWER GENTLE Small,

O R,

The Lesser VELVET-FLOWER.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Αμάραντος*; in Latin, *Amaranthus parvus*; and in English, The lesser Flower gentle, or Lesser Velvet-Flower.

II. The Kinds. Authors make four sorts of this lesser kind, viz. 1. *Amaranthus purpureus minor*, The lesser purple Flower gentle, or Velvet-flower: some do think this to be *Phlox*, vel *Flamma Theophrasti*. 2. *Amaranthus Coccineus minor*, The lesser scarlet Flowergentle. 3. *Amaranthus Tricolor*, *Geleia*, vel *Celestia Tragi*, Variable Flowergentle: this some, as *Spigellus*, think to be *Sophonia Plinii*; others that it is *Theombroton Plinii*; but these Suppositions are doubtful. 4. *Amaranthus Spica Carna*, Carnation Flower gentle, or Velvet-flower.



*Flowergentle.*  
*Purple.*

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Lesser purple Flower gentle, has a Root consisting of a few bready Strings, which soon perish, as the whole Plant does, at the first approach of Winter. From this Root a crested Stalk rises up, two feet or more high, purplish at the bottom, but green to the top, which spreads it self forth into many Branches. The Leaves on the Stalk and Branches are somewhat broad at bottom, and sharp-pointed, of a full green color, and oftentimes a little reddish withal, like in form unto the Leaves of *Blites* (of which this and the rest are accounted Species) or *Small Beets*. The Flowers are long, growing in Spike fashion, soft, and as it were gentle Tufts of Hairs, many growing in a manner together, broad at the bottom, and small up at the top, Pyramid or Steeple fashion, of

so excellent a shining deep purple color, tending to a Murry, that in the most excellent colored Velvet a more orient or bright color cannot be seen; and I suppose from this Respect it is that the *French* give it the Name of out-passing Velvet. It has no Smell at all, but being bruised, gives the same admirable purple color on Paper; and being gathered in its full Strength and Beauty, will abide a great while (if it is kept in a dry place, out of Wind and Sun) in its full Beauty and Fineness. In these Tufts lye the Seed, scattered up and down, which is small, very black and shining.

*Lesser Scarlet Flower gentle.*



IV. The second, or Lesser scarlet Flower gentle, has a slender or small fibrous Root, which perishes the sooner, because it is the more tender. The Leaves of this Plant are longer, and somewhat narrower than the former: the Stalk grows something higher, bearing its long Tufts at several Leaves, as also at the tops of the Stalk and Branches, many being set together, but separate one from another, and each bowing or bending down its Head, like unto a Feather, such as are worn in Gentlemen's Caps and Hats, of an excellent Blood-scarlet color. In these Tufts or Heads is contained the Seed, which is black and bright, like the former.

V. The third, or Variable Flower gentle, has a slender, knobby, fibrous and perishing Root, like the foregoing, which sends up a Stalk, but it is nothing so high as the former, which spreads it self out into many Branches, even from the Root up to the top thereof. The chiefest Beauty of this Plant consists not in the Flowers, but in the Leaves; the Flowers being small Tufts, growing all along the Stalk, and at the Joints with the Leaves. The Leaves hereof are of the same fashion with the former, and pointed also; but every Leaf is to be seen, parted into green, red and yellow, very orient and fresh, (especially if it comes to its full Perfection, which is in hot and dry Weather) yet not divided all alike, but in



in some Leaves where the red or yellow is, there will be green, and so varying, that it becomes pleasant to behold; the Seed hereof is black and shining, and not to be distinguished from the former.

VI. *Gerard* said that it far exceeded his Skill to describe the Beauty and Excellency of this Plant, and that a Painter would be at a stay to depict it in its lively Colors; in few Words (says he) every Leaf resembles in color the most fair and beautiful Feathers of a Parrot, having a stripe of Red, a line of Yellow, a dash of White, and a Rib of green color, not easily in Words to be set forth, the several mixtures of the Colors, which Nature has bestowed hereon, being so excellent and admirable. *Johnson* says the Leaves are commonly of three colors, the lower part next the Stalk is green, the middle red, and the end yellow; or else, the bottom being green, the middle part is yellow, and the end red.

VII. The fourth, or Carnation Flower Gentle, (which is more rare than all the rest) has a Root consisting of a great many Fibres or Strings, from which rise up very thick fat Stalks, crested and streaked, exceeding smooth, and of a shining red color, which begin at the Ground to divide themselves into Branches; upon which do grow many great large Leaves, of a dark green color, tending to redness, in shew like to those of the Red Beet, streaked and dashed here and there with red, mixed with green; the Flowers grow along the Stalks, from the midst thereof, even to the top, in form like *Pannicum*, that is, a great number of Chaffie confused Ears thrust hard together, of a deep purple, or rather of a deep blush, tending to a Carnation color: the form or shape of this cannot be so fitly compared to any thing as to the Velvet Head of a Stag, compact of such like soft feeling substance, in which is contained the Seed, which is white, round, and bored thro' the middle.

VIII. The Places. All these Plants are Natives of the Eastern Countries, as *Persia*, *Arabia*, *Syria*, *Turkey*, &c. from whence they have been brought to us, and here are only nursed up in Gardens.

IX. The Times. They Flower, or bear their gallant Tufts or Spikes in *August*, and continue Flowering until *September*, keeping in some measure their vigor, till Frost overtakes them, at what time they perish. As for the third, or *Variable Flower gentle*, it ought to be Sown in a hot Bed of Horse Dung, with some Earth strewed thereon, in the end of *March*, and so ordered as you do *Musk Melons*, and the like.

X. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with those in the former Chapter, to which you are referred.

C H A P. CCLXXX.

Of F L O W E R of Constantinople,  
O R,

F L O W E R of Bristol.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek *Λυχνίς Βυζαντινή*, or *Λυχνίς Χαλκηδονική*, in Latin *Lychnis Chalcedonica*, *Lychnis Byzantina*, vel *Constantinopolitana*, in English *Flower of Constantinople*, or *Bristol Flower*.

II. The Kinds. It is one of the Kinds of *Lychnides*, or *Campions*, and is twofold, viz. 1. *Lychnis Chalcedonica Flore simplici miniato*, Single Nonesuch, or Flower of *Constantinople*, or *Bristol Flower*. 2. *Lychnis Chalcedonica Flore pleno miniato*, Double Nonesuch, or Double Flower of *Constantinople*, or *Bristol Flower*.



III. The Descriptions. The first, or Single Nonesuch, has a Root which is very Fibrous or Stringy, fastning it self very strongly in the Ground, whereby it much increases it self, from whence spring up many broad and long green Leaves, among which rise up several stiff, round, hairy, jointed Stalks, three Feet high, with two Leaves at every Joint; the Flowers stand at the tops of them, very many together, in a large Tuft or Umbel, consisting of five small long Leaves, broad pointed, and notched in the middle, of a bright red Orange color; which being past, there come in their places small hard whitish Heads, or Seed Vessels, containing black Seed, like to the Seed of *Sweet Williams*, and having but a small smell.

IV. Of this Single Species there are three other sorts, which differ chiefly in the Colors of the Flowers, viz. 1. *Lychnis Chalcedonica Flore simplici albo*, Single *Bristol Flower* with a White Flower. 2. *Lychnis Chalcedonica Flore simplici Carneis*, Single Nonesuch with a Blush or Flesh Color, without variability. 3. *Lychnis Chalcedonica Flore simplici Versicolor*, Single Nonesuch Variable. This at first is of a pale Red, after a while it grows paler, and at last it becomes wholly white; and all these diversities of Flowers it will have to be seen at one and the same time upon the Stalks.

V. The second, or Double Nonesuch, has a Root Fibrous, like the former, and increases in like manner, the Leaves and Stalks being hairy and high, and the Flowers growing in Tufts, altogether like the first Single Kind; but in this consists the chief difference, that this bears a larger Umbel or Tuft of Flowers at top of the Stalk, each Flower consisting of three or



four rows of Leaves, of a deeper Orange Color than it, which adds the more Grace to it, but passes away without bearing Seed, as most other double Flowers do; it is a Glorious Flower, being as Magnificent as it is Beautiful.

VI. *The Places.* They were first brought to us out of *Turkey*, and are now Planted in our Gardens, almost every where.

VII. *The Times.* They Flower all *June* and *July*, but not till the second Year after Planted, and continue Flowering for many Years, having a Root full of Life, and endures long, being able to sustain the cold of our Country.

VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of these Flowers have never been mentioned by any Author, and therefore we have the less to say of them; but doubtless being Kinds of the *Lychnis*, or *Campion*, they may have the same Virtues, and therefore to *Chap. 90.* foregoing we refer you for the same.

## C H A P. CCLXXXI.

### Of F L O W E R D E L U C E Bulbous Unmatchable.

I. *THE Names.* The general Name of all the Plants of this kind is in *Arabick* *Asmeni*, *ani*, & *Aiersa*, in *Greek* *Iris*, in *Latin* *Iris*, and in *English* *Flowerdeluce*.

II. *The Kinds.* Of this Plant there are two principal Kinds, viz. 1. *Iris Colchensis*, *Iris bulbosa*, The bulbous or Onion like Flowerdeluce. 2. *Iris pumilans*, *Iris tuberosa*, The tuberous or buncy Flowerdeluce.

III. *Of the Bulbous Kind* there are several Species, as 1. *Iris bulbosa impar*, *sive incomparabilis*, The unmatchable bulbous Flowerdeluce, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Iris bulbosa Anglica*, The *English* bulbous Flowerdeluce, of which in *Chap. 282.* 3. *Iris bulbosa latifolia*, The broad Leaved bulbous Flowerdeluce, of which in *Chap. 283.* 4. *Iris bulbosa angustifolia major*, The greater narrow Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce, of which in *Chap. 284.* 5. *Iris bulbosa angustifolia minor*, The lesser narrow Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce, of which in *Chap. 285.*

IV. *Of the Tuberous Kind* there are these following Species, viz. 1. *Iris tuberosa Chalcedonia*, The *Turkey* tuberous Orrice or Flowerdeluce, of which in *Chap. 286.* 2. *Iris tuberosa alba Florentina*, The *Florentine* white tuberous Orrice or Flowerdeluce, of which in *Chap. 287.* 3. *Iris tuberosa latifolia*, The broad Leav'd tuberous Orrice or Flowerdeluce, of which in *Chap. 288.* 4. *Iris tuberosa angustifolia*, The narrow Leav'd tuberous Orrice or Flowerdeluce, of which in *Chap. 289. 290.* 5. *Iris tuberosa pumila major*, *Chamaeiris major*, The greater Dwarf Orrice or Flowerdeluce, of which in *Chap. 291.* 6. *Iris tuberosa pumila minor*, *Chamaeiris minor*, The lesser Dwarf Orrice or Flowerdeluce, of which in *Chap. 292.* 7. *Iris Graminea*, The *Grass* Flowerdeluce, of which in *Chap. 293.* 8. *Iris agrostis*, *Ayris*, Wild Flowerdeluce, or Stinking Gladden, of which in *Chap. 294.* 9. *Iris Palustris*, Water Flowerdeluce, or Water Flag, of which we have already Treated in *Chap. 266.* foregoing.

V. *Of the unmatchable Species* there are two kinds, viz. 1. *Iris bulbosa prima latifolia Clusij*, *Clusius* his first great bulbous Flowerdeluce. 2. *Iris bulbosa Persica*, The *Persian* bulbous Flowerdeluce.

VI. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Great bulbous Flowerdeluce, has a reasonable great, round, or Onion like Root, black on its outward Coats, and white within, having many long, thick, white Roots instead of Fibres, which make them look like *Asphodel* Roots. From this Root spring several long and broad Leaves, not stiff, like as all the other, but soft, and greenish on the upper side and whitish underneath; from among which rise up sometimes several small, short, slender Stalks, and sometimes but one, about half a Foot high, bearing at the top one Flower apiece, something like unto a *Flowerdeluce*, consisting of nine Leaves, of which, those three which stand upright are shorter, and more closed together than in the other kinds of *Flowerdeluces*, the other three which fall down turn up their ends a little, and those three which in other *Flowerdeluces* do cover them at the bottom, stand like the upright Leaves of the other kinds, but are parted into two ends, like unto two small Ears; the whole Flower is of a fair Blew, or pale Sky Color in most, with a long stripe in the middle of each of the falling Leaves, and in some white, but more seldom; these Flowers are very sweet of smell.

VII. *The second, or Persian Flowerdeluce*, has a bulbous, or round Onion like Root, with Leaves somewhat like to the former, but that they are shorter, and a little narrower; the Flower is much of the same fashion with the other, and is of a pale blew rufferish Color, each of the three lower falling Leaves are almost wholly of a brown Purple, with a yellow spot in the midst of them; this is a rare Plant, and does not often bear Flowers with us, unless planted in a good Soil, and in a warm place, where it may have much of the presence of the Sun, and be shelter'd from Storms and cold Winds, which always keep it back.

VIII. *The Places.* The first is a Native of *Spain* and *Portugal*, the second of *Persia*, but with us they are only nurst up in Gardens, and being very tender Plants, ought to be Housed in Winter.

IX. *The Times.* The first Flowers with us in *May*, and sometimes sooner, but in *Spain* and *Portugal* it Flowers, as *Clusius* says, in *January* and *February*; the second when it Flowers with us, Flowers also in *April* or *May*.

X. *As to the Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of these, and all the several Kinds of *Bulbous Flowerdeluces*, Authors have said nothing, nor is any thing extant concerning the same; and therefore in the four next Chapters we shall take no further notice of them, this being said here once for all; their cheif use has been, and yet is, to deck up and adorn the Gardens of the Curious.

## C H A P. CCLXXXII.

### Of F L O W E R D E L U C E Bulbous English.

I. *THE Names.* It may be called in *Greek* *Iris Colchensis Britannica*, in *Latin* *Iris bulbosa Anglica*, *Iris bulbosa major*, *Iris bulbosa Anglica cerulea*, in *English* *Blue English bulbous Flowerdeluce*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is one of the greater Kinds of the broad Leav'd bulbous Rooted Plants.

III. *The Description.* The Root of this Kind is greater and longer than any of the smaller Kinds which



which have narrow Leaves, it is round, or Onion like, covered with divers brown Skins, which seem to be repleat with long Threads, like Hairs, especially at the small, or upper end of the Root, which thing you will not find in any of the smaller Kinds. From this Root the Plant springs up early, sometimes in January, with five or six long Leaves, which are broad, yet narrow in comparison of their length, and in respect to the other Kinds, also of a whitish green color, crested or straked on the backside, and half round, being hollow, like a Trough or Gutter, white all along the inside of the Leaf, and blunt at the end; from among which rises up a thick round Stalk, a Foot and half, or two Feet high, at the top whereof, out of a skinny husk, comes forth one, and sometimes two Flowers, consisting of nine Leaves apiece, three of which that are turned downwards are larger and broader than the other, having in each of them a yellow spot, about the middle of the Leaf; other three are small, hollow, ridged, or arched, covering the lower part next the Stalk of those falling Leaves turning up their ends, which are divided into two parts; the other three stand upright, and are very small at the bottom of them, and broader towards the top; the whole Flower is of a fair blew Color: after the Flowers are past, Heads three square come up, which are somewhat long and lank, or loose, containing within them round yellowish Seed, which when it is ripe, will rattle by the shaking of the Wind in the dry Husks.

IV. *The Places.* Lobel says that this Blew broad Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce grows naturally in the West of England, whether this be true or no, I know not, but of this I am certain, that it grows admirably well in our Climate; and as it is a beautiful Flower, so by much Planting it, it is very much increased; and it grows common in most Country Folks Gardens: it has also been found growing in Spain, and in France, by such as have Travelled thro' those Countries.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers usually in the end of May, or beginning of June, and the Seed is ripe in the end of July, or in August.

VI. *Nota.* Lobel calls this Plant *Hyacinthus Potiarum Flore Iridis*, because of its Hyacinth Color, but I think without any reason for the same; it is truly an *Iris* or Flowerdeluce, and is called by some *Iris bulbosa major, sive latifolia*, to difference it from the lesser with narrow Leaves.

## C H A P. CCLXXXIII.

### Of F L O W E R D E L U C E Bulbed broad Leav'd.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *Ἰρις κολλώδης πλατύφυλλον*, in Latin *Iris bulbosa latifolia*, in English Broad Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce.

II. *The Kinds.* There are various sorts hereof, viz. 1. *Iris bulbosa major purpurea* & *purpureo Violacea*, The paler or deeper purple great bulbous Flowerdeluce. 2. *Iris bulbosa major purpurea variegata, sive striata*, The great purple striped bulbous Flowerdeluce. 3. *Iris bulbosa major Flore rubente*, The great Peach colored bulbous Flowerdeluce. 4. *Iris bulbosa major, sive latifolia alba*, The great white bulbous Flowerdeluce. 5. *Iris bulbosa major alba variegata*, The great white striped bulbous Flowerdeluce. 6. *Iris bulbosa major, sive la-*

*tifolia versicolor*, The great party colored bulbous Flowerdeluce.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or paler or deeper purple great Bulb, has a Root like the English in the former Chapter, nor differs from it in the Leaf; the chiefest difference is in the Flowers, which in this are somewhat larger, and in the one of a deep Blew, or Violet Purple Color, in the other of a deep Purple Color, in all other respects it is like to the former English: there is also another, in all things like to this, saving, that the Flower is of a pale Blew, or an Ash Color.

IV. *The second, or Great Purple Striped*, has a purple Flower, but with some Veins or Stripes of a deeper Violet Color, variously running thro' the whole Leaves of the Flower. There is another of this sort, which is of a pale Blew or Ash Color, streaked with Lines and Veins of Purple in the Leaves of the Flowers, some more, some less than other. Another also of a Purple Color, like to the first, but that round about the yellow spot in the middle of each of the three falling Leaves is of a pale Blue or Ash Color, the rest of the Leaf remaining Purple, as the other parts of the Flower are.

V. *The third, or Great Peach Colored*, is more rare than any of the former, and not differing from them in Root, Leaf, or Flower, but only that the Flower in this is of a pale reddish Purple Color, coming something near to the Color of a Peach Blossom.

VI. *The fourth, or Great White*, has a Root not differing from the others, but only greater, it springs not up so early out of the Ground as the Blew and Purple do, but about a Month or more after; the Leaves are something larger and broader than the others; the Stalk is thicker and shorter, bearing usually two very large and great Flowers, one opening a little before the other, yet oftentimes both in Flower together in the end, and of a pale blewish white Color, which is called a Silver Color while they are in the Bud, and before they are blown open, but then of a purer white, yet with an eye or show of the Silver Color remaining in them; the three falling Leaves are very large, having that yellow spot in the middle of them; after the Flowers are past, Heads come forth like unto the Blew or Purple Kinds, but larger, containing Seed of a reddish yellow color like them.

VII. *The fifth, or Great White Striped*, is in Root, Leaf, and Flower, also in its manner of growing, like unto the last Great White Flowerdeluce, it differs only in the marking of the Flower, being various from it, for this has in the White Flower great Veins, Stripes, or Marks, of a Violet Blew, dispersed thro' the Leaves of the Flower variously, which adds a superexcellent beauty thereto.

VIII. *The sixth, or Great Party Colored*, differs not from the last, but in the Flower, which is of a whitish color in the three falling Leaves, having a circle of Ash Color about the yellow spot, the three ridged Leaves being whitish, but ridged and edged with that Ash Color, and the three upright Leaves of a pale blewish white Color, with some Veins therein of a blewish Purple: there are some of this last sort, in which more Varieties are to be seen than can easily be express'd, or remembered, which variety, it is very probable, might come from the Sowing of the Seed in differing Soils, as has been truly observed in other Plants.

IX. *The Places.* They are all planted, and grow in our English Gardens, where they thrive very well.

X. *The Times.* They all Flower in the end of May, and in June, and the Seed is ripe in July and August.



C H A P. CCLXXXIV.

OF FLOWER DELUCE  
Bulbous narrow Leav'd Greater.

I. **THE Names.** It is called in *Greek* Ἰρις ὀκτώφυλλος, in *Latin* *Iris bulbosa angustifolia major*, and in *English* *The greater narrow Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce*.

II. **The Kinds.** There are Twenty Five several Species, whose Names and Descriptions follow in order.

III. **The Descriptions.** 1. *Iris bulbosa angustifolia alba flore majore*, The greater white narrow Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce. This has a Root like to the other Kinds, which is a little bigger and rounder in the middle, and in its springing up and manner of growing is much like to the first described in the next Chapter in all its parts, saving, that it is a little larger and higher, both in Leaf, Stalk, and Flower, and much whiter than any of the mixed Kinds which follow, yet not so white as the small Kind in the next Chapter: in these which follow we shall not make a several and large Description to every Kind, for that would be to make often and many repetitions of one and the same thing, for the first of them being once described, (which we have already done) we will to all the following add only the especial differences, either in Leaf or Flower, in Magnitude, Color, or Form, wherein they may vary from that first, or one from another, these being all of the greater Kind.

IV. 2. *Iris bulbosa angustifolia albescent*, The Milk white narrow Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce. Its falling Leaves have a little shew of yellowness, and so are the middle ridges of the arched Leaves, but the upright Leaves are more white; in Root and Leaf it differs not from the first White.

V. 3. *Argentea*, The Silver Colored narrow Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce. Its falling Leaves are of a yellowish white, like the last, the arched Leaves are whiter, and the upright Leaves of a blewish white, which we call Silver Color, like that of *Silver Weed*, or *Wild Tanfic*.

VI. 4. *Albida*, Whitish. The falling Leaves are yellowish, and sometimes with a little edge of white about them, and sometimes without; the upright Leaves are whitish, as the arched Leaves are, the ridge yellower.

VII. 5. *Albida labris luteis*, White with yellow Falls. The falls are yellow, the upright Leaves white; all these Flowers are of the same bigness with the first.

VIII. 6. *Albida angustior*, The more narrow White, The Flower is smaller, and almost as white as the first, the lower Leaves are small, and do as it were stand outright, not having scarcely any fall at all, so that the yellow spot seems to be the whole Leaf; the arched Leaves are not half so large as in the former, and the upright Leaves bow themselves in the middle, so that the tops do as it were meet together.

IX. 7. *Lutea*, The Yellow. It is like the former, saving, that its falling Leaves are a little more eminent and yellow, with a yellow spot.

X. 8. *Aurea*, sive *Lutea Hispanica*, The Golden, or Spanish Yellow. It rises not up so high as commonly most of the rest do, and is wholly of a Gold yellow Color.

XI. 9. *Pallida Lutea*, The pale Yellow. It usually rises higher than the former yellow, and is wholly of a pale yellow, but deeper at the spot.

XII. 10. *Albida lutea*, Pale Straw Color. It is like unto the last pale yellow, but that the falling Leaves are whiter than all the rest of the Flower.

XIII. 11. *Vericolor Hispanica caerulea labris albis*, The Spanish party colored Blew. Its falling Leaves are white, the arched Leaves of a whitish Silver color, and the upright Leaves of a fine blewish purple.

XIV. 12. *Labris Caeruleis*, The Blew edged. The falling Leaves will have either an edge of blew, circling the white Leaves, the arched Leaves being a little blower, and the upright Leaves more purple, or the falls will be almost wholly blew, edged with a blower color, the arched Leaves pale blew, and the upright Leaves of a purplish blew Violet color.

XV. 13. *Alba pallida*, A pale White. The falls are white, the arched Leaves pale white, so also the upright Leaves; some are a fair blewish purple: some of them will also have larger Flowers than others, and bear more; for the first sort, which is the most ordinary, seldom bears above one Flower on a Stalk, yet sometimes two: and of the others, some will bear two, and three Flowers, others again but one.

XVI. 14. *Caerulea*, sive *Purpurea major*, The greater Purple. The Stalk is higher, Flower purple, and larger the Stalk of a very reddish purple color, a little above the Ground, at the foot or bottom of the Leaves and Stalk; this Flowers with the latter sort of Flowerdeluces.

XVII. 15. *Purpurea serotina*, The late Purple. The Flower is wholly purple, except the yellow spot, and Flowers later than any of the other Purples.

XVIII. 16. *Purpurea rubescens labris caeruleis*, The reddish Purple with blew falls. Its upright Leaves are of a reddish purple, and the falling Leaves of a blew color.

XIX. 17. *Purpurea rubescens labris albido caeruleis*, The reddish Purple with whitish blew falls. It is of a reddish purple, and its falling Leaves of a whitish blew color, in nothing else differing from the last.

XX. 18. *Purpurea labris luteis*, The Purple with yellow falls. Its falling Leaves are of a fair Gold yellow, without any stripe, yet in some there are Veins running thro' the yellow Leaves, and some have an edge of a sad dark color about them; the upright Leaves in every of these are of a Violet Purple.

XXI. 19. *Purpurea labris ex albido caeruleo, & luteo mixtis*, Party colored Purple with striped yellow falls. This is like the last, but that the falling Leaves are of a pale blew and yellow, traversing one the other, and the arched Leaves of a pale purplish color.

XXII. 20. *Subpurpurea labris luteis*, The pale Purple with yellow falls. Its upright Leaves are of a paler purple, and the falling Leaves yellow. There is another Species of this, a little differing from it, in that the arched Leaves are whitish.

XXIII. 21. *Subcaerulea labris luteis*, The Party colored blew and yellow. Its upright Leaves are of a pale blew, and the falling Leaves yellow. There is another of this sort, but of a little paler blew.

XXIV. 22. *Crinis coloris elegantiores*, The fair Hair colored. Its upright Leaves are of a fair brownish yellow, or Hair color, and the falling Leaves yellow.

XXV. 23. *Altera obsoletior*, The dull Hair colored. It is of the same color with the former, but somewhat deader.

XXVI. 24. *Iris bulbosa Africana*, The Purple or Murry Barbary bulbous Flowerdeluce. As to Root.

Leat.



Leaf, and Flower, and for its form, it is in all respects like unto the middle sort of these *Flowerdeluces*, only the lowest part of the Leaves and Stalk, for about an Inch next the Ground, are of a reddish color, spotted with many spots, and the whole Flower being of a mean size, is of a deep purplish Red, or Murry color, excepting the yellow spot in the midst of the three falling Leaves; it is a Flower of much beauty.

XXVII. 25. *Purpurea carulea obsoleta labris suffcis*, *The dusky Party colored Purple*. This is the greatest of all these *narrow Leav'd Flowerdeluces* in all the parts of it, the Root is greater than any of the other, being thick and short, the Leaves are broader and longer, but of the same color, the Stalk is higher and stronger than any of them, bearing two or three Flowers, which are larger than any of the rest, the falling Leaves are of a dusky yellow, sometimes with Veins and Borders about the Brims of another dun color, having the yellow spot in the middle; the arched Leaves are of a sad pale purplish yellow, the upright Leaves are of a dull or dusky blewish Purple, and the Heads or Horns for Seed are also greater, as is likewise the Seed.

XXVIII. *The Places*. All these *Flowerdeluces* came originally out of *Spain* and *Portugal*, and with us they are nourisht up in Gardens, where they prosper very well.

XXIX. *The Times*. They Flower in *June*, and sometimes continue Flowering until *July*, but Flower not commonly so early as the *Latifolia*, or *broad Leav'd Kinds*; they are soon spoiled with Wet in Flowering.

## C H A P. CCLXXXV.

### OF FLOWERDELUCE Bulbous narrow Leav'd Small.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Ἰρις βολβοειδής* *ἡ μικρὴ* in *Latin Iris bulbosa angustifolia minor*, in *English The lesser narrow Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce*.

II. *The Kinds*. There are but three several Species of this sort taken notice of by Authors, viz. 1. *Iris bulbosa angustifolia alba minor*, The small white narrow Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce. 2. *Iris bulbosa angustifolia mauritanica serotina flava minor*, The lesser yellow late narrow Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce of *Barbary*. 3. *Iris bulbosa angustifolia cerulea*, five *Purpurea præcox minor Lusitanica*, The *Portugal* small early Purple, or Blew narrow Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce.

III. *The Descriptions*. The first, or small white narrow Leav'd bulbous Flowerdeluce, has a Root which is smaller and shorter than those of the *Latifolia*, and without any Hairs or Threads, covered with brown thin Skins, and more plentiful in yielding an increase; its Flower is smaller than the first Kind of the former Chapter; it springs out of the Earth always before Winter, which afterwards breaks forth into four or five small and narrow Leaves, a Foot or more long, of a whitish green on the inside, which is hollow and channelled, and of a blewish green color on the outside, and round withal; the Stalk is longer and slenderer than those of the *Latifolia*, with some shorter Leaves upon it, at the top whereof,

out of short skinny Leaves, come forth one or two Flowers, smaller, shorter, and rounder than the Flowers of the last of the *broad Leav'd*, yet made after the same proportion, with nine Leaves, three falling downwards, with a yellow spot in the middle, other three made long, made like a long arch, which cover the lower part, next the Stalk of those falling Leaves, and turn up at the ends of them, where they are divided into two parts; the other three stand upright, between each of the three falling Leaves, being somewhat long and narrow; the Flower is wholly of a pure white color, (saving the yellow spots) yet in some having a show of some blewness throughout, and in others towards the bottom of the three upright Leaves: after the Flowers are past, so many long Cods or Seed Vessels rise up, as there were Flowers, which are longer and smaller than in the last of the *broad Leav'd*, and a little bending, like a Coronet, with three round squares, and round pointed also, which dividing it self (when the Seed is ripe) into three parts, do shew six several Cells or places, wherein is contained such like round reddish yellow Seeds as those of the last *Latifolia*, but something smaller.

IV. *The second, or lesser yellow late narrow Leav'd, is a smaller Plant, or Dwarf Kind, brought from the farther parts of Barbary, near the Sea, like unto the yellow greater narrow Leav'd, viz. the Ninth and Tenth of the former Chapter*, but that this is smaller and lower, and instead of upright Leaves, has small short Leaves like Hairs; it Flowers very late, after all others have yielded their ripe Seed.

V. *The third, or small early Purple Portugal, is smaller in all its parts than the alba pallida at Sect. XIII. of the former Chapter*, the Stalk is slenderer, and not so high, bearing at the top one or two small Flowers, all wholly of a fair blewish Purple, with a yellow spot in the middle of every one of the falling Leaves.

VI. *The Places*. These, also all of them, came first to us from *Spain* and *Portugal*, but are here nurst up in Gardens, where they thrive very well.

VII. *The Times*. The first Flowers in *June*, and sometimes in *July*, but not so early as the former *broad Leav'd Kinds*. The second Flowers very late, after most of the others, and the third usually Flowers very early, even with the first *bulbous Flowerdeluces*.

VIII. *Nota*. It is possible that there may be many more Kinds or Differences of these *bulbous Flowerdeluces*, which may arise from the different goodness of the Seed, also from the Soil, and the time and manner of Sowing it, as many have observed from their own experience, every Year shewing forth some variety which was never seen before.

## C H A P. CCLXXXVI.

### OF FLOWERDELUCE Tuberous Great Turkey,

O R,

### FLAG FLOWERDELUCE.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Ἰρις κυμαίνουσα* *ἡ μεγάλη* in *Latin Iris tuberosa Chalcedonica major*, in *English The great Turkey tuberous Flowerdeluce*.

II. The



II. *The Kinds.* This is the first of the *Tuberous sorts*, of which there are two special Kinds, viz. 1. *Iris Chalcedonica, five Sufiana major*, The great Turkey Flowerdeluce. 2. *Iris Chalcedonica, five Sufiana minor*, The lesser Turkey Flowerdeluce. This latter, tho' it is called *minor*, or *lesser*, yet it is only so in respect to the first *great Kind*, but it is *magnus* or *major*, in respect of the *little Kinds*, which hereafter follow.

III. *The Descriptions.* *The first, or Great Turkey Flowerdeluce, has a Root which is brown on the outside, and is very thick and tuberous, as all others of this sort of Garden Kinds are.* From this Root spring forth several Heads of long and broad fresh green Leaves, yet not so broad as many others of those which follow, one folded within another at the bottom, as all others of these *Flowerdeluces* are; from the middle of some one of these Heads, (for every Head of Leaves bears not a Flower) rises up a round stiff Stalk, about two Feet high, at the top whereof stands one Flower, (it has not yet been observed to bear two) the largest almost, but the most excellent of all the rest, consisting of nine Leaves, like the others which follow, but of the color almost of a Snakes Skin, it is so variously spotted; the three lower falling Leaves are very large, of a deep or dark purple color, almost black, full of greyish spots, streaks and lines thro' the whole Leaves, with a black Thrum or Freez in the midst of each of them; the three arched Leaves which cover them are of the same dark purple color, yet a little paler at the sides; the three upper Leaves are very large, and of the same color with the lower Leaves, but a little more lively and fresh, being speckled and streaked with whiter spots and lines, which Leaves being laid in Water, will tinge the Water of a Violet color, and if a little Alum be put therein, and then they be wrung or pressed out, and the Juice of these Leaves is dried in the shade, it will become a color almost as deep as Indico, and may serve for Shadows in the Art of Limning; the Flower has no smell which can be perceived, but is only commendable for its beauty and the rarity thereof; it seldom bears Seed in our Climate, but when it does, it is contained in great Heads or Cods, being brownish and round, but not so flat as in the other Kinds which follow.

IV. *The second, or Lesser Turkey Kind, differs little from the former, the Leaf is of a more yellowish green color, the Flowers are neither so large nor so fair, nor the spots and marks so perspicuous, nor the Color of that lively lustre.*

V. *The Places.* By some part of the Name, it seems that they might first come from *Sufis* in *Persia* into *Turky*, but from *Turky* they were first brought to us; they grow and thrive very well in our Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* They Flower most commonly in *May*, before any of the other Species.

VII. As to their *Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues*, see them declared at large in *Chap. 288.* following: And here is to be noted that all the *Tuberose Flowerdeluces* (except the *Florentine*, commonly called *Florentine Orrice*) more especially those which have the *Blew or Purple Flower*, have one and the same Virtues; and that our *English Blew Flowerdeluce* exceeds them all.

## C H A P. CCLXXXVII.

OF FLOWER DELUCE  
White Florentine,

O R,

## FLORENTINE ORRICE.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek* *ἰρις λευκή* : in *Latin* *Iris Tuberosa alba, Iris tuberosa Florentina, Iris alba Florentina*: in *English* *White Flowerdeluce, Florentine Flowerdeluce, Florentine White Flowerdeluce, White Orrice, and Florentine Orrice.*

II. *The Kinds.* It is threefold. viz. 1. *Iris alba Florentina*, The White Flowerdeluce, or Florentine Orrice, which is the principal kind, and that of which the *sweet Orrice Powder* is made. 2. *Iris Flore Pallido Florentina*, The yellowish White, or Straw colored Florentine Orrice. 3. *Iris alba major Versicolor*, The White party colored Flowerdeluce.

III. *The Descriptions.* *The first, or Great White Florentine Flowerdeluce, has a Root which is Tuberous or Knobby, thick, irregular, and shooting out from every side such like Tuberous Heads, lying for the most part upon, or above the Ground, and fastened within the Ground with long white Fibres or Strings.* From this Root rise up many Heads of very broad, and flat long Leaves, enclosing or folding one within another at the bottom, and after a little space divided one from another towards the top, thin edged on both sides, like a two edged Sword, and thicker in the middle. From the middle of some of these Heads of Leaves, rises up a round stiff Stalk, two or three Feet high, bearing at the top one, two, or three large Flowers, which break out of several Husks or Skins, consisting of nine Leaves apiece, as all the other *Flowerdeluces* do, and of a fair white color; having in the middle of each of the three falling Leaves a small long yellow Freez or Thrum, as is most usual in all the kinds of the following *Flowerdeluces*, both of the greater and smaller sorts. After the Flowers are past, thick short Cods or Pods come forth filled full with the Seed, which is red, roundish, and flat.

IV. *The second, or yellowish White, is in its Roots, Leaves, Stalks, Flowers, Seed, and manner of growing very like unto the former, or true Florentine Orrice; and differs in nothing from it, but in the color of the Flowers, this being indeed of a more yellowish White, commonly called a Straw color.*

V. *The third, or White party colored, has a Root not so great as the former White Florentine, but a little slenderer and browner.* The Leaves are not so large and broad; but the Flower hereof is nearly as large, and as White as the first *Florentine*; yet it has a fair List or Line, of a blewish purple, down the back of every one of the three upright Leaves, and likewise round about the edges, both of the upper and lower Leaves; and also a little more purplish upon the ridge of the arched Leaves, which cover the falling Leaves. In all other respects this variable *Flowerdeluce* is like to the former.

VI. *The Places.* The Name shews the Original place from whence it came to us, but the best comes



comes from *Illyria* in *Greece* : Here we only Nurse it up in *Gardens*, where it flourisheth as well as any of the *Blw* or *Purple* Kinds.

VII. *The Times.* They flower in *April*, *May*, and *June*, according as care is taken of them.

VIII. *The Qualities.* The *Illyrick Orrice* is accounted the best, but the Roots of both that and the *Florentine* are used, and the latter being most common, bears away the Bell in its Name. It is hot and dry in the second Degree, incides, attenuates, expectorates, digests, opens, mollifies, absterges, and is Pectoral.

IX. *The Specification.* It is good against Tartarous Mucilage in the Brest and Lungs, Coughs, Asthma's, Stinking Breath.

X. *The Preparations.* You may prepare from the Root (for nothing else of the Plant is used)

1. A Powder. 2. *Species Diaireos simplices*, A Species. 3. An Electuary simple. 4. *Diaireos Salomoni*, Electuary of Orrice Roots compound. 5. An Extract. 6. A Spirituous Tincture. 7. An Acid Tincture.

*The Virtues.*

XI. *The Powder*, commonly called *Orrice Powder*. It is used outwardly in making perfumes, and in sweet Powder for the Hair; also in Compositions of *Damask Powders* and *Cypress Powders*. The Root it self is many times chewed in the Mouth, by such who have a Stinking Breath; by which means it draws forth much Rheum, Flegm, and ill digested Humors, which cause the Breath to smell strong. However the simple Powder is given for the same purpose, from half a Dram to a Dram every Morning fasting, and every Night going to Bed, mixed with a sufficient Quantity of double refined Sugar, and so swallowed, and washed down with a Glas of *White Lisbon* or *Port Wine*. It opens obstructions of the Womb, provokes the Terms, expels Wind, eases gripings of the Belly, and pains of the Stomach.

XII. *Species Diaireos simplices*, Powder of Orrice Root simple. See it in our *Pharmacopæia Londinensis*, Lib. 4. Chap. 21. Sect. 10. It is good against Asthma's, breathing obstructed, Colds, Coughs, Hoarseness, Wheezing, Phthisick, shortness of Breath, Pain of the Stomach, &c. Dose from half a Dram to two Drams.

XIII. *The Electuary.* It is made of the simple Powder at Sect. 11. one part mixed with Clarified Honey two parts. It has all the Virtues of the *Species Diaireos simplices* aforementioned; besides which, it causes an admirable expectoration, and withal keeps the Body soluble; it cleanses the Lungs, and heals Ulcers there, expels Wind, gives ease in the Colick, by opening the Bowels, and prevails against a Stinking Breath, Dose half an Ounce or more, Morning and Evening, drinking a Glas of *White Port Wine* after it.

XIV. *Diaireos Salomoni*, Electuary of Orrice Root compound. See it in our *Pharmacopæia Londinensis* Lib. 4. Chap. 22. Sect. 57. It is a very good Pectoral, good against Asthma's, belching up Wind, Coughs, Colds, Hoarseness, Wheezing, Obstructions of the Lungs, Ulcers of the Lungs, spitting of Blood and matter: It cleanses those parts, dries, and heals them; is good against Colicks, Wind, gripings of the Bowels, Worms in Children, pain of the Stomach, weakness thereof, and want of appetite. Dose from half an Ounce to an Ounce, two or three times a day, drinking a Glas of *Hippocras* or generous Wine after it.

XV. *The Extract.* It is given from half a Dram to a Dram in a Glas of *White Port Wine*, *Canary*, *Mallaga*, *Sherry*, or *Madera Wine*, as also in *Mead*

or *Metheglin*. It has all the Virtues of the Simple and Compound Pouders and Electuaries, but is more powerful and effectual to all the purposes and intentions there specified. It warms and comforts a cold moist and depraved Stomach, strengthens the Appetite, causes a good digestion, and powerfully opens obstructions of the Lungs, Liver and Spleen.

XVI. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It restores the tone of the Stomach and other Viscera to a Miracle; and strengthens the Bowels upon the Cure of a Dropsie, making them able to resist the return of the Disease, and so to prevent a Relapse. It is a singular good thing against a Leucophlegmatia, weariness of the Body, Laziness, fainting and swooning Fits, and the Scurvy in a cold habit of Body. Dose two Drams, to three or more, in any proper and specifick Vehicle, Morning, Noon, and Night.

XVII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is highly deobstruative and antiscorbutick, good against all sorts of Fevers which proceed from the corruption of the Juices, and putrefaction of the Humors; and therefore is very prevalent against the Plague, and all sorts of Pestilential and malignant Fevers, for that it strikes against their Root and Essence. It is as well Preservative as Curative; and by reason, that it so powerfully resists putridity, and cleanses, it becomes an extraordinary remedy against a stinking Breath, yea, tho' it has been of many years standing. It incides tough Flegm, dissolves it, and expels all the evil juices of the Stomach, and other Viscera, is good against Stone, Gravel, Sand, and Tartarous Mucilage in the Reins, Ureters and Bladder. Dose so many drops as to make the Liquor pleasantly sharp, and may be taken in all that the Patient drinks.

XVIII. *The Oily Tincture.* Anointed upon the parts affected, it is good against Cramps, Convulsions, Tremblings of the Limbs, Numbness, Palsies, and all sorts of Pains and Aches proceeding from a Cold cause. Given Clisterwise to one Dram or more, it gives ease in Colicks, Tortions of the Bowels, Stone, &c.

C H A P. CCLXXXVIII.

Of FLOWER DELUCE  
Tuberous broad leaved,

O R,  
FLAG FLOWER DELUCE  
broad leaved.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek* *ἰρις πλατύφυλλον* : in *Latin* *Iris tuberosa latifolia* : and in *English* *Broad leaved Tuberous Flowerdeluce*. Some of the *Greeks* call it *ἰεὶς*, quasi *sacra*, for which reason some have given it the name of *Consecratrix*, but is rather called *Iris à celestis Arcus similitudine, quam flores ejus representant*, from the Rainbow, whose diversity of Colors, the Flower thereof doth imitate. Some have called it *Radix marisca*, because it is excellent against the Piles: and some have called it *Naronica*, from the River *Naron*, because by its Banks and Shore it grows in great plenty. Some have made a difference between *Iris* and *Ireos*, according to the *Latin* Verse, *Iris purpuream florem gerit, Ireos album*, making *Iris* to signify the *Blw Flowerdeluce*; and *Ireos* the *White Flowerdeluce*, or *Florentine Orrice*; but this was purely a mistake in the Poet. However



now. when Physicians write *Iris*, the Common Blew or Purple Flowerdeluce is intended; but when *Ireos*, they mean and intend the Florentine Orrice.

II. *The Kinds.* There are fourteen several kinds of this Broad leaved Tuberous, blew or purple Flowerdeluce, viz. 1. *Iris purpurea, five vulgaris*, The Common blew, or purple Flowerdeluce. 2. *Iris purpurea pallidior versicolor*, The various colored paler purple Flowerdeluce. 3. *Iris carulea labris purpureis*, The blew Flowerdeluce with purple stalks. 4. *Iris Dalmatica major*, The great Dalmatian Flowerdeluce. 5. *Iris Asiatica Carulea*, The Blew Asian. 6. *Iris Asiatica purpurea*, The Purple Asian. 7. *Iris Damascena*, The Damasco Iris. 8. *Iris biflora Lusitanica*, The Portugal double flowering. 9. *Iris purpurea versicolor major Camerarii*, The great variable Purple. 10. *Iris purpurea versicolor minor*, The lesser variable Purple. 11. *Iris purpurea altera minus fuliginæa*, Another Purple less smoaky. 12. *Iris Carulea versicolor*, The Blew variable. 13. *Iris lutea variegata*, The Yellow variable. 14. *Iris lutea labris purpureis palladis*, The Yellow with pale purple Lips, or falls.

*Blew Flower de luce*



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common blew or purple Flowerdeluce, has a Tuberous Root, and differs little or nothing from the Great Turkey kind, neither in its Root, Leaf or Flower, nor in its manner or form of growing, only that the Leaves of this are not so large as some of the kinds are; and the Flower it self is of a deep purple, or violet Color, and sometimes a little declining to redness, in some particular places.

IV. *The second, or Various colored, paler Purple*, has Flowers of such a pale Purple color, as that they come near unto a Blew; and sometimes it will have Veins or Stripes of a deeper blew or purple, and sometimes of an Ashcolor, running thro' all the higher and lower Leaves.

V. *The third, or Blew with Purple falls*, is another kind much like unto the former; but this is more purple in the falls, and more pale in the upright Leaves.

VI. *The fourth, or Great Dalmatian*, has its Roots and Leaves as large and broad as any of the Flowerdeluces whatsoever: Its Stalk and Flower do equal its other parts in proportion; saving that the color of the Flowers is differing, this being of a fair Watchet or pale blew color wholly, with the yellow Thrum down the middle of the Flower or falling Leaves, as before is said to be Common to all Flowerdeluces. In all its other parts, it differs little, save only, that it is observed to have a small shew of a purplish red about the bottom of the green Leaves.

VII. *The fifth, or Blew Asian*, is in largeness of Leaves like unto the Dalmatian, but bears a greater store of Flowers on several Branches, which are of a deeper blew color, and the arched Laves, whitish on the side, and purplish on the Ridges, but in other parts like unto it.

VIII. *The sixth, or Purple Asian*, is nearly like to the former, but that the Leaves of this are a little narrower, and its Flowers a little more Purple, especially the upper Leaves.

IX. *The seventh, or Damasco Flowerdeluce*, is altogether like to the Flowerdeluce of Asia, excepting that it has some white Veins in its upright Leaves.

X. *The eighth, or Portugal double flowering*, is very like the first kind of this Chapter, but that it is not so large in its Leaves, nor in its Flowers: It sometimes flowers twice in a Year, viz. in the Spring, and in the Autumn; but this double flowering is not often, unless the Soil in which it grows is very good, the Scituation proper, and the Seasons warm and productive: But the Flowers of this have a better and sweeter Smell than the first kind; and they are of a Purple or Violet Color, and come out of a purplish Skin or Husk.

XI. *The ninth, or Great variable Purple*, has very broad Leaves, like unto the Leaves of the first kind in this Chapter, and so is the Flower also, but differing in Color: For the three lower Leaves, are of a deep Purple, tending to redness: The three arched Leaves, are of the color of the upper Leaves; and the three upper Leaves, are of a pale color, tending to yellowness, shadowed over with a Smoaky purplish color, except the ridges of the arched Leaves, which are of a more lively Purple.

XII. *The tenth, or lesser variable Purple*, differs not in any thing from the last, but only that it has narrower green Leaves, and smaller and narrower Flowers, otherwise if they be both compared together, the Colors will not seem to varie at all one from another.

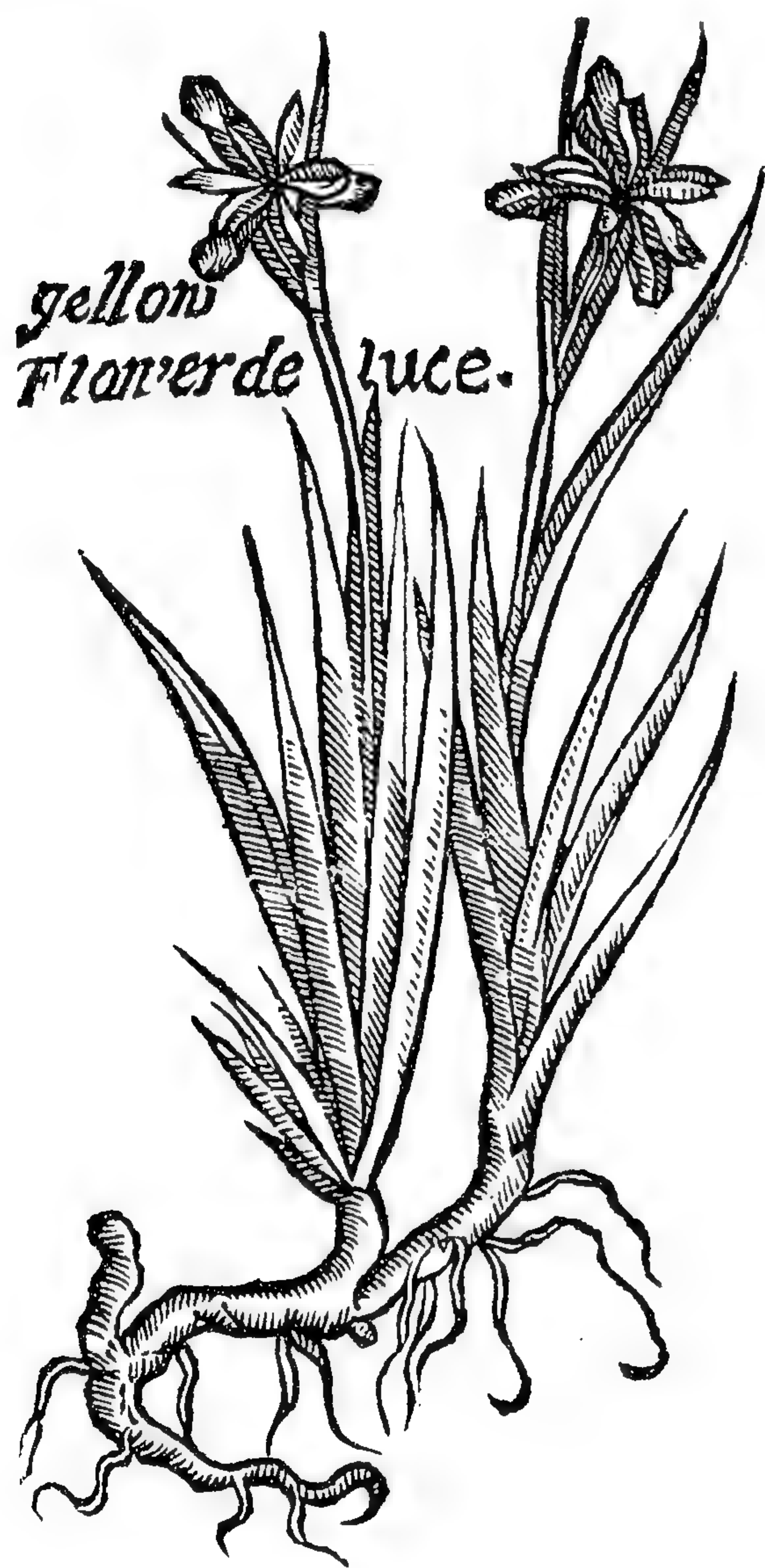
XIII. *The eleventh, or other Purple less smoaky*, comes something near unto the two last Kinds, whose Husks, from whence the Flowers do shoot forth, have purple Veins in them, and so have the falling purplish Leaves; and the three upright Leaves are not so dull or smoaky, yet of a dull purple Color.

XIV. *The twelfth, or Blew variable*, has its Leaves of the same largeness with the lesser Variable, at Sect. 12. above, and its Flowers are as diversly marked: for some have the falling Leaves blew at the edges, and whitish at the bottom of the arched Leaves, which are of a yellowish white; and the upright Leaves are of a whitish blew, with yellowish edges. Some again are of a darker blew, with brownish Spots in them. And some are of so pale a Blew, that it may well be called an Ashcolor. Some also there are whose upright Leaves are of a fair pale blew, with yellowish edges, and the falling Leaves are parted into two colors, sometimes equally in halves, each side differing from the other in color; and sometimes one Leaf



Leaf only is in that manner, and sometimes with a various colored List in them; in the other parts both of Flower and Leaf, it is like to the said lesser variable Purple.

XV. *The thirteenth, or Yellow Variable, has a Root which grows somewhat more slender and long, rather ground, and of a darker color than many of the others:* This Plant loses its Leaves in Winter, which is contrary to all the former *Flowerdeluces*, so that its Root remains under Ground, without any appearance of Leaves upon it: But in the beginning of the Spring, it shoots out fair broad Leaves, falling downwards at their points or ends, but shorter many times than any of the former, and so is the Stalk in like manner, not rising much above a Foot or fifteen Inches high, on which are set two or three large flowers, whose three falling Leaves are of a reddish purple color: The three Leaves which stand upright are of a smoaky yellow; the three arched Leaves, having their Ridges of a pale color, inclining to purple, have their sides or edges of the former smoaky yellow color, with some purplish Veins at the feet or bottoms of all the Leaves.



*Yellow  
Flowerdeluce.*

XVI. *The fourteenth, or Yellow, with pale purple lips, or falls, has its three upright Leaves of a pretty fair yellow, and stand more upright, not bowing down, as most of the others do; the three falling Leaves are purple with pale edges.* Some of these have their green Leaves partly colored, white and green, more or less, and so are the husks of the Flowers. The three arched Leaves are yellow, as the upright Leaves are, with purplish Veins at bottom. Some have both upright and arched Leaves, of so pale a yellow, that we may in a manner call it a Straw color, but yellower at the bottom with purple Veins; and the falling Leaves are purple, with two purple Spots in them.

XVII. *The Places.* They are all Nurst up, and grow in the Gardens of Florists with us in England, but grow also in many other Nations and Countries, according as their several Titles declare; as in Turkey, Hungaria, Dalmatia, Illyria, Spain, Portugal, France, &c.

XVIII. *The Times.* They flower, some in April, some in May, some in June, and the Seed ripens not many Weeks after.

XIX. *The Qualities.* These with the Turkey foregoing, and all the rest following are said to be of one and the same Quality, Property and Effect; when green and full of Juice, they are hot and dry almost in the fourth Degree: but when they are dry, they are then hot and dry in the third Degree, and will yet in some measure burn the mouth and throat of such as Chew them. They are Aperitive, Inciding, Digestive, Absterfive, and Diarrhetic, Stomack, Pectoral and Hyfterick, Cathartick, Emerick and Emmenagogick. They are said to offend the Stomach, and to cause Blood to be voided, if given in too great a Dose, and to weak Persons. Of all these Plants, the first in this Chapter is thought to be most effectual, and of the same the Root is that which is chiefly used. It is not safe to be given to Women with Child, because it forcibly brings down the Courses, and is apt to cause Miscarriage. And when exhibited, it ought to be given with good Correctives, as Mastick, Juice of Liquorice, Extract of Juniper Berries, &c.

XX. *The Specification.* It is famous in Curing the Scurvy, Dropsie, Jaundice and Gout.

XXI. *The Preparations.* You may prepare therefrom, viz. from the Root, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An Infusion. 4. A Decoction. 5. A Syrup. 6. A Powder. 7. An Electuary Simple. 8. An Electuary Compound. 9. An Oil, viz. Oleum Irinum. 10. A Balsam. 11. A Cataplasim. 12. A Pessary. 13. A Spirituous Tincture. 14. An Acid Tincture. 15. An Oily Tincture. 16. A Saline Tincture.

#### *The Virtues.*

XXII. *The Liquid Juice.* Taken from one to three Spoonfuls (according to Age and Strength) mixt with a little Honey, and a Glass of Ale or Wine, it purges and cleanses the Stomach of thick and tough Flegm, and sharp Choler, which are said by Authors to be the causes of Agues and Fevers. It Cures the Jaundice and Dropsie also (for which it is a famous thing) by evacuating the Humors which cause those Diseases, both upwards and downwards. And because it does somewhat bite upon the Stomach, it is not to be given without being corrected with Honey, Spicknard, and aromattick Spices; applied to the Piles, it eases them.

XXIII. *The Essence.* Being taken from one, to three or four Spoonfuls in any proper Vehicle, it performs all the Liquid Juice can do, besides which, it eases the pains and torments of the Bowels, or gripings of the Belly and Hypochonders, evacuates Melancholy, and takes away the shaking Fits of Agues; opens obstructions of the Liver, Spleen, and Womb, kills Worms in the Stomach and Intestines; expels the Stone, Gravel, Sand, or Tartarous matter out of the Reins and Bladder; gives ease and restores in Cramps, Convulsions, and Callicies, which come from cold and moist Humors, by its Anodyne and healing property, whereby it warms and comforts the parts affected, and prevails against a simple Ghonorrhea: It provokes the Terms in Women, and brings away both Birth and After-Birth.

XXIV. *The Infusion in Wine.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but much inferior in Efficacy: it prevails against the Blisters and Injections of Venemous Creatures, repels Apoplexy in Women, and is good against Fits of the Mother: It opens obstructions of the Viscera, and cleanses the Stomach.



XXV. *The Decoction in Wine.* It it is taken to fix Ounces, it provokes Urine, gives ease in the Colick, produces the Terms; used as an Errhine, adding to one part of the Decoction, three parts of the liquid Juice, it purges the Head admirably of Flegm, and tough viscons Humors; and bathed upon the Hemorrhoids or Piles, it gives much ease and discusses them. The Decoction made with Water and Vinegar, and to drink it is a remedy against the bitings of Mad Dogs and Serpents, and the Ringings of Venemous Creatures.

XXVI. *The Syrup.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Infusion and Decoction, but acts more weakly by reason of its being so loaded with Sugar, and therefore may be given from one Ounce to two Ounces or more; but as a Pectoral and Bechick, it is more proper, because it causes a better expectoration, cleansing the Lungs of the Tartarous matter lodging in them. If an Ounce of the Syrup is mixed with four Ounces of the Decoction in Wine, and it be used as a Gargle for the Mouth, it eases the Toothach, cures Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, and abolishes a stinking Breath.

XXVII. *The Powder.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Decoction and Syrup, but acts not with so much facility and speed. Used as an Errhine up the Nostrils, it purges and cleanses the Head of Cold, gross and viscons Humors, and cures vehement and inveterate Headachs, tho' of many Years standing. Taken inwardly from a Scruple to a Dram or more, according to Age and Strength, it purges Pituitous and Watery humors out of the Body, both by Vomit and Stool, expels the Jaundice, and powerfully evacuates the Morbifick cause of the Dropsie, Scurvy and Gout. Applied to Ulcers or Wounds, it cleanses, incarnates, dries, and heals them; and where eating Ulcers have been, which have made the Bone bare of Flesh, it breeds Flesh there, covers the Bone therewith, and causes it so to grow up, as to fill the hollownes of the Ulcer again. It is also very good, to cleanse, resolve the Callus, incarnate, fill up with Flesh, and heal Fistula's, old malign Ulcers and Cankers, which are difficult and hard to be Cured.

XXVIII. *The Elestuary Simple.* Take Powder of *Blew Flowerdeluce* Roots, three Ounces: Juice of the Roots, Clarified Honey, of each two Ounces, mix them. Dose, from two Drams to five or more in the Morning fasting; it works both upwards and downward, and evacuates Flegm, Choler, Melancholy and Watery Humors, and by that means prevails against the Dropsie in an especial manner, as also against the Jaundice, Scurvy, Green-sickness, Kings Evil and Gout. It also kills Worms in Stomach and Belly.

XXIX. *The Elestuary Compound.* It is thus made. Take Powder of the Root four Ounces: Powder of *Galanga*, *Soldanella*, or *Sea bindweed*, two Ounces: Powders of *Galanga* and *Zedoary*, of each one Ounce, Cloves and Cinnamon, of each half an Ounce: Juice of the Roots, Clarified Honey, of each twelve Ounces; mix them for an Elestuary. It is made for the Cure of the Dropsie, being taken to half an Ounce or more every Morning fasting, or according as the strength of the Patient can bear it. It works also upwards and downwards, cleansing the whole Man of all superfluous Humors.

XXX. *Oleum Irinum*, or the Oil. I do not mean here the Compound Oil, called *Oleum Irinum* in our *Pharmacopæia Londinensis*, Lib. 5. Chap. 2. Sect. 49. for that is the Oil of the *Flarentine Orice* Root; but I mean an Oil made of the Flowers and Roots of the *Blew Flowerdeluce* in this Chapter. which is thus done. Take Roots of the

*Blew Flowerdeluce* three Pounds, bruise them well: Choice Oil Olive, Pound twelve, Juice of the Roots, Pound three: mix and boil them till they are Crisp, then press out; repeat the boiling with fresh Roots in like manner, and repeat it the third time: Strain all out, and add to the Oil Flowers of the *Blew Flowerdeluce* a Pound and half, mix and infolate, or digest in a warm Sand Furnace for six or eight Weeks, stirring all with a Spatula once a day; after which, strain out the clear Oil, by a gentle Expression, and keep it for use. It is an effectual thing to warm and comfort feeble and weakned parts, Joints, Nerves, Tendons, and Muscles afflicted with Cold and moist Humors; softens hard Tumors, and gives ease in the Gout and Sciatica: It discusses, dissolves and wastes hard and Kernelly swellings in any part of the Body tho' Scrophulous, or proceeding from the Kings Evil: It softens the hardness of the Spleen and Womb; resolves Cramps and Convulsions of the Nerves and Tendons, warming, comforting and helping their Extension: The hinder parts of the Head and Vertebrae of the Neck being anointed therewith; it prevails against Catarrhs: and the forepart and Temples of the Head being anointed therewith, it eases Megrims and Pains of the Head proceeding from a cold Cause. And dropt into the Ears, it helps against pains and noise in them; and anointed two, three or four times a day upon the Fundament and Hemorrhoidal Veins, it gives present ease and relief as to the Piles.

XXXI. *The Balsam.* It has all the Virtues of the Oil, but is more powerful in Curing green Wounds, old Ulcers and Fistula's: For it powerfully digests, cleanses, incarnates, dries and heals, and raises up Flesh after a very admirable manner in Ulcers that are very hollow. Applied to the Gout, it presently gives ease, and in a short time after Cures it; and after a singular manner softens hard Tumors which happen in the fleshy pars.

XXXII. *The Catapasm.* If it is made of the green Roots (being beaten, and applied) it gives ease in the Gout and Sciatica, and in some few applications is said to Cure them. Another Catapasm, Take of the Powder of the Root, two Ounces, Nutmegs, Dill Seed in Powder, of each one Ounce: Saffron two Drams: Extract of Juniper Berries, enough to make it into a Catapasm. This applied to the Scrotum or Testicles, tho' vehemently Tumified or swelled by a defluxion of Humors, gives present ease to the Pain, and in a short time discusses the Tumor. A Catapasm of the simple green Root, being applied to the Face or other parts of the Skin, as Neck, Arms, Hands, &c. which are Tanned or Sun burnt, or are affected with Scurff, Morpew, black or blew Marks, or Scarrs, or other deformities, it takes them away, and clears the Skin: but they who use it had need to take heed, that they use it not too strong, nor let it lie on too long, but rather wash it off again with fair Water, within two or three hours after it is applied: But it is better after the Root is beaten to a Pulp, to tie it up in a fine thin Linnen Cloth, and to lay it for a day and a night in fair Water, or Damask Rose Water; and then with this Water, you may wet or moisten the Skin of the Face, Neck, Breasts and Hands, which are deformed as aforesaid, which is to be applied so long as need requires; but this Water you must also take heed of, that you use it not too strong, &c.

XXXIII. *The Pessary.* It is made either of the solid green Root, or the Root beaten to a Mass, and so made up with Honey. This being put up into the Womb or Body, brings forth the Dead Child, much more does it facilitate the Birth, and forcibly draws forth the Afterbirth.

XXXIV. *The*



XXXIV. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It expels Wind and is good against the Colick, gripings of the Guts, and obstructions of the Viscera. It provokes the Terms in Women, strengthens the Stomach and Womb, and Corrects those cold and crude Juices which breed the Scurvy, Gout, Jaundice, and King's Evil: Dose, one spoonful or two, first in the Morning fasting, and last at Night, in a Glass of White Port Wine.

XXXV. *The Acid Tincture.* It strengthens the Stomach, causes a good Appetite and Digestion, and powerfully opens all manner of Obstructions whatsoever. It Cures the Scurvy radically; and as it opens in a special manner the Urinary Passages, so it carries off the Morbifick Cause of the Dropie by Urine: Dose, so much as to make the Liquor pleasantly sharp, three, four, or more times a day.

XXXVI. *The Oily Tincture.* Given to thirty or forty Drops in a large Glass of White Port or Lisbon Wine, to a Woman in Labour, it not only hastens, but facilitates the Delivery. Outwardly anointed Morning and Night upon any parts affected with Rheumatick Pains from a cold Cause, or with a Numbness, Trembling, Palsie, Cramps, or Convulsion, it gives relief in a short time, and in some reasonable time afterwards a Cure. It is also good against the Itch, Tettars, Ring-worms and the like.

XXXVII. *The Saline Tincture.* Its use is wholly External, and is applied to Scurffs, Morpew, Leprosie, Sunburnings, Tannings, Freckles, Lentills, Pimples, yellowness of the Skin, and other like defecations thereof; being applied Morning and Evening for some considerable time.

## C H A P. CCLXXXIX.

### OF FLOWERDELUCE Tuberous Narrow-leav'd, Greater.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *ἰρις κυμαδης τριπολιανη μεζων*: in Latin, *Iris tuberosa angustifolia major*: in English, *The greater narrow-leav'd tuberous Flowerdeluce*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are four kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Iris angustifolia aurea Tripolitana*, The Tripoli golden or yellow narrow-leav'd Flowerdeluce. 2. *Iris angustifolia carulea major*, The greater blew narrow-leav'd. 3. *Iris angustifolia purpurea marina*, The Sea purple narrow-leav'd. 4. *Iris angustifolia purpurea versicolor*, The variable purple narrow-leav'd.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Tripoli golden narrow-leav'd, has a Root which is long and blackish, like unto the rest which follow, but greater and fuller: from whence spring up Leaves a Yard long, or thereabouts, and an Inch or more broad, of a sad green color, but not shining. The Stalk rises up to be four or five Feet high, being round and strong, but not very thick, bearing at the top two or three long and narrow Gold-yellow colored Flowers, of the fashion of the *Bulbous Flowerdeluces*, as the next to be described is, without any Mixture or Variation therein. The Heads for Seed are three-square, containing within them many flat cornered Seeds. The Length of the Leaves of this Plant, compared with their Breadth, makes me call

it a *Narrow-leav'd Flowerdeluce*; and yet, as it is broader than some of the foregoing *Broad-leav'd*, and broader than any of the following *Narrow-leav'd*, the Length of them makes them seem narrow; for which Reason I thought good to let its place be in the first of this *Classis*.

#### *Flowerdeluce Tuberous narrow-leav'd Greater.*



IV. *The second, or Greater blew Narrow-leav'd,* has a small tuberous Root, blackish and hard, spreading into many long Heads, and more closely growing or matting together: from which rise up Leaves which are very long and narrow, of a whitish green color, but neither so long nor so broad as the last, yet broader, thicker and stiffer than any of the rest with narrow Leaves which follow. The Stalk rises sometimes no higher than the Leaves, and sometimes a little higher, bearing at its top divers Flowers, successively flowering one after another, and are like unto the Flowers of the *Bulbous Flowerdeluces*, but of a lighter blew color, and sometimes deeper. After the Flowers are past, six cornered Heads rise up, which open into three parts, in which is contained almost round brown Seed.

V. *The third, or Sea purple Narrow-leav'd,* has its Root and Seed like the former: from which spring up many narrow hard Leaves, as long as the last, and of a dark green color, which smell a little strong. The Stalk bears two or three Flowers, like the former, but somewhat less, and of a dark purple or Violet color.

VI. *The fourth, or Variable purple Narrow-leav'd,* has Roots and Seed not differing from the former Sea purple. The Leaves of this are also like those of that Sea kind, and do smell a little strong, like them. The Flowers are differing, in that the upper Leaves are wholly Purple or Violet, and the lower Leaves have white Veins and purple, running one among another.

VII. *The Places.* The Titles shew their several places of Growth, but with us they are only nurst up in Gardens: the Sea kind is found originally in Spain.

VIII. *The Times.* They flower in April and May



and the Seed ripens four Months after-  
wards.

X. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and  
Virtues, are the same with those of the Broad-leav'd  
Iris, as is deliver'd in Chap. 288. foregoing.

### C H A P. CCXC.

## OF FLOWERDELUCE Tuberous Narrow-leav'd, Smaller.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἴρις πυλά-  
κη* *ἰρις πυλάκη*: in Latin, *Iris tuberosa*  
or *Chamaeiris*: in English, The lesser narrow-  
leav'd tuberous Flowerdeluce.

II. The Kinds. There are three several Species  
known, viz. 1. *Iris angustifolia minor Pannonica*,  
common in Chesh. The Hungarian small variable  
Flowerdeluce of Clusius. 2. *Iris angustifolia flore  
dupla candida*. The blew double-flowered narrow-  
leav'd Flowerdeluce. 3. *Iris angustifolia alba mi-  
nor Ch.* The Hungarian small white Flowerde-  
luc.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Hungarian  
small Variable, has a Root which is black and small,  
growing thicker and closer together than any other,  
and being fastned in the Ground, with a number  
of hard fibrous Roots. It springs up with several  
small Tufts of Leaves, very long, narrow and green,  
growing thick together, especially if it abides any  
time in a place: among which rise up many long  
round Stalks, higher than the Leaves, bearing two,  
three or four small Flowers, one above another, like  
the former, but smaller, and of great Beauty. The  
lower Leaves are variably striped with white and  
purple, without any Thrum or Fringe at all. The  
upper Leaves are of a fine blewish purple or Violet  
color: and of the same color are the arched Leaves,  
surrounding the edges a little paler. The Heads for  
Seed are smaller, and not so cornered as others, but  
contains Seed much like to them, which are also  
smaller.

IV. The second, or Blew double-flowered, differs  
not in Root or Leaf from the Greater blew Narrow-  
leav'd in Chap. 289. sect. 4. just foregoing, but only  
in this, that the Leaves of this grow thicker to-  
gether, and that the Flowers of this kind are as it  
were double, with many Leaves confusedly set to-  
gether, with out any distinct parts of a Flowerdeluce,  
and of a fair blew color, with many white Veins  
and Lines or Striaks running in the Leaves. Often-  
times the Stalk of Flowers has but two or three  
small Flowers, distinctly set together, rising as it  
were out of one Husk.

V. The third, or Hungarian small White, differs  
not from the first of this Chapter, save, that  
the Leaves are a little paler green, and the Flower  
is of a fair whitish color, with some purple, which  
shows itself only at the bottom of the Leaves.

VI. The Places. The original Place of these is  
Hungary: with us, they are only nurst up in Gar-  
dens.

VII. The Times. They all flower in the Spring,  
and their Seed is ripe in the Summer Months.

VIII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations  
and Virtues, are the same with those of the  
Broad-leav'd tuberous Flowerdeluce in Chap. 288. a-

foregoing; but these are not so efficacious as those  
be.

### C H A P. CCXCI.

## OF FLOWERDELUCE Dwarf Greater.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Χαυδίρις*,  
*Ἴρις ῥάβη καυδὶς μέζω*: in Latin, *Chamaeiris*  
major, *Iris pumila major*: in English, Dwarf Flow-  
erdeluce the Greater.

II. The Kinds. Of the Dwarf Flowerdeluces  
there are three principal kinds, viz. 1. The Greater,  
of which we shall speak in this Chapter. 2. The  
Lesser, of which we shall discourse in the Chapter  
following.

III. Of the Greater Dwarf kind, there are three  
Species, viz. 1. *Chamaeiris latifolia alba major*, The  
greater white Dwarf Flowerdeluce. 2. *Chamaeiris*  
*latifolia purpurea major*, The greater purple Dwarf  
Flowerdeluce. 3. *Chamaeiris latifolia purpurea ma-  
jor altera*, Another greater purple Flowerdeluce.

IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Greater  
white Dwarf, has a Root which is small, according  
to the Proportion of the Plant above Ground, but  
made after the fashion of the Greater kinds, with tu-  
berous pieces spreading from the sides, and strong  
Fibres or Strings, whereby they are fastned in the  
Ground. This Dwarf Flowerdeluce has its Leaves  
as broad as some of the Lesser kinds foregoing, but  
not shorter: the Stalk is very short, not above six  
or seven Inches high, bearing most commonly but  
one Flower, seldom two, which are in some of a  
pure white color, in others paler, or somewhat yel-  
lowish thro' the whole Flower, except the yellow  
Freez or Thrum in the middle of every one of the  
falling Leaves. After the Flowers are past, come  
forth great Heads, containing round pale Seed.

V. The second, or Greater purple Dwarf, has no  
Difference either in Root, Leaf or Form of the Flow-  
er from the former Dwarf kind, but only in the Co-  
lor of the Flower, which in some is of a very deep  
purple or black Violet purple, both the Tops and the  
Falls. In others the Violet purple is more lively;  
and in some the upper Leaves are blew, and the  
lower Leaves purple, yet all of them have that yel-  
low Freez or Thrum in the middle of the falling  
Leaves, which the other kinds have.

VI. The third, or Other great purple dwarf Flow-  
erdeluce, has the Flowers purple, like the former al-  
most, and may be reckoned, for the Smallness and  
Shortness of the Stalk, the very next Species to the  
last; but in this the Flowers and Leaves are as  
large as any of the former kinds of Flowerdeluces.

VII. The Places. Authors have said nothing of  
their native places; but without doubt they may  
grow in Greece, else Dioscorides had not discoursed  
of them: with us they are nurst up in Gardens.

VIII. The Times. They come up in February and  
March, flower in the Spring Months, and the Seed  
is ripe in August.

IX. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations  
and Virtues, are the same with those of the Com-  
mon blew Flowerdeluce in Chap. 288. foregoing, as De-  
donæus, Pempt. 2. lib. 3. cap. 3. in these words seems  
to inculcate: *Facultate autem & Viribus, hæc quoque  
Iris acris & impensa calida est, aliisque Iridibus si-  
milis.*



C H A P. CCXCII.

Of FLOWERDELUCE  
Dwarf Lesser.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Χαμαίρις μικρότερος*, & *Ἰρις νάνη ἡττω*: in Latin, *Iris pumila minor*, *Chamaeiris minor*: in English, Dwarf Flowerdeluce the lesser.

II. The Kinds. There are seven kinds of these lesser Dwarfs, viz. 1. *Chamaeiris latifolia alba minor*, The lesser white broad-leav'd Dwarf Flowerdeluce. 2. *Chamaeiris latifolia minor Straminea*, The lesser Straw-colored Dwarf. 3. *Chamaeiris latifolia minor purpurea*, The lesser purple Dwarf. 4. *Chamaeiris latifolia minor suave rubens*, The lesser blush-colored Dwarf. 5. *Chamaeiris latifolia minor lutea versicolor*, The lesser yellow variable Dwarf. 6. *Chamaeiris latifolia minor cerulea versicolor*, The lesser blew variable Dwarf. 7. *Chamaeiris Marina purpurea*, The purple Sea Dwarf Flowerdeluce.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Lesser white Dwarf, has a small tuberous Root; from which Leaves, for the most part somewhat smaller, narrower and shorter than the former, spring forth. The Stalk with its Flowers upon it scarcely rises up above the Leaves, so that in most of them it may rather be called a Foot-stalk, (such as the Saffron-Flowers have) and therefore may be said to be *ἀνυψωτός*, without Stalks. The Flowers are like unto the first described in the last Chapter, of a whitish color, with a few purplish Lines at the bottom of the upper Leaves, with a List of Green in the falling Leaves.

IV. The second, or Lesser Straw-colored Dwarf, is in Roots, Leaves, Stalks, Flowers, and Manner of Growing very like the last, excepting, that the Flowers thereof are of a pale yellow, called a Straw color, with whitish Stripes and Veins in the falling Leaves, and purplish Lines at the bottom of the upper Leaves.

V. The third, or Lesser purple, differs not much from the last in its Form, Substance and Manner of Growing; the chief Difference consists mostly in the Color of the Flower, which is of a deep Violet purple, sometimes paler, and sometimes so deep, that it seems almost black: and sometimes the falling Leaves are purplish, and the upper Leaves blew; and some of these have a sweet Smell, and some have none: also some of them are of a fine pale blew color throughout the whole Flower.

VI. The fourth, or Lesser blush-color'd, has its falling Leaves of a reddish color, and the Thrums blew: the upper and arched Leaves, of a fine pale red, or Flesh color, called a blush color: in all other things it differs nothing, and smells very little, or not at all.

VII. The fifth, or Lesser yellow Variable, has its falling Leaves yellowish, with purple Lines from the middle downwards; sometimes of a deeper, and sometimes of a paler color, and white Thrums in the middle: the upper Leaves are also of a yellowish color, with purple Lines in them: sometimes the yellow color is paler, and the Lines in both the upper and lower Leaves of a dull or dead purple color.

VIII. The sixth, or Lesser blew Variable, has the upper Leaves of its Flower of a blewish yellow, spotted with purple in the broad part, and at the bottom very narrow. The falling Leaves are spread over

with pale purplish Lines, and a small shew of blew about the brims or edges. The Thrum is yellow at the bottom, and blewish above. The arched Leaves are of a blewish white, being a little deeper on the ridge: sometimes the upper Leaves are of a paler blew, rather whitish, with the yellow; and both these have no Smell at all.

IX. The seventh, or Purple Sea Dwarf, is like unto the Narrow-leav'd Sea Flowerdeluce in Chap. 289. Sect. 5. *aforegoing*, in its Root, Leaf and Flower, having no other Difference, but in the Smallness and Lowness of its Growth, being of the same purple color with it.

X. The Places. They are only nurs'd up with us in Gardens. The Sea kind have been found originally in Spain, France and other Southern Shoars.

XI. The Times. They flower in April and May, and the Seed is ripe in July.

XII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with the Blew Flowerdeluce in Chap. 288. *aforegoing*.

C H A P. CCXCIII.

Of FLOWERDELUCE  
Grass, or Narrow-leav'd.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Χαμαίρις στενόφυλλον*: in Latin, *Chamaeiris angustifolia*, and *Iris pumila angustifolia*: in English, Narrow-leav'd Dwarf Flowerdeluce, or Grass Flowerdeluce.

II. The Kinds. There are two special kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Chamaeiris angustifolia major*, The greater Narrow-leav'd or Grass Flowerdeluce. 2. *Chamaeiris angustifolia minor*, The lesser Narrow-leav'd or Grass Flowerdeluce.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Greater Grass or Narrow-leav'd, has Roots small, black and hard, growing thick together, fastned in the Ground with small blackish hard Fibres or Strings, which scarcely shoot again, if the Root is removed. From this Root spring forth many long and narrow dark green Leaves, not so stiff as some of the former Smaller Dwarfs in the last Chapter, but pliant, and bending their ends down again: from among which rise up several Stalks, bearing at the top two or three sweet Flowers, as small as any of them set down before, of a reddish purple color, with whitish yellow and purple Strakes down the middle of the falling Leaves. The arched Leaves are of a Horse Flesh color all along the edges, and purple on the ridges and tips which turn up again. Under these appear three brown Aglets, like unto Birds Tongues. The three upper Leaves are small and narrow, of a perfect Purple or Violet color. The Heads for Seed have sharper and harder cornered edges than the former; and the Seeds are something greyish, like those in the last Chapter.

IV. The second, or Lesser Grass or Narrow-leav'd, is in Roots, Leaves and Flowers so like the last described, that it is not to be distinguished therefrom, but only by its Smallness and Lowness; in which it is considerably less, and by which it only differs.

V. The Places. These grow in several Southern Climates of the World, but are only Garden Plants with us.

VI. The Times. They flower sometimes in April, and



and sometimes in May, according to the Warmth or Coldness of the Season.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues*, are the same with those of the *Blew Flowerdeluce* in Chap. 288. foregoing, to which you are referred.

C H A P. CCXCIV.

of FLOWERDELUCE Wild,

O R,

Stinking GLADWIN.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἰρις*, *ἰρις*; in Latin, *Xyris*, *Iris agrestis*, *Spatula*, or *Spathula Fœtida*, (for *Spatha* is taken for *Gladium*, a Sword :) in English, *Gladiol*, *Gladdon*, *Gladwin*, and *Stinking Gladdon* and *Stinking Gladwin*.

II. *The Kinds*. It is the last kind of the *Flowerdeluce*, being the *Wild sort*, and a singular Species, called by the *Arabians*, *Caforas*, by *Theophrastus*, *ἰρις ἀγρία*, *Iris agria*, and is the *Gladiolus Tragi*; but so called by a Mistake, unless he had said *Gladiolus Fœtidus*.

Flowerdeluce Wild, or  
Stinking Gladdon



III. *The Description*. The Root, while it is young, is but small, and full of Strings, but being grown older, it grows greater, and in Form like unto a *Flowerdeluce* Root, but reddish without, and whitish within, very sharp and hot in Taste, and of as ill a Smell as the Leaves. From this Root rise up several Leaves, very like those of an *Iris* or *Flower-*

*deluce*, but that they are sharp-edged on both sides, and thicker in the middle, of a deeper green color, narrower, sharper-pointed, and of a strong ill Scent; if they are bruised between the Fingers. In the middle rises up a pretty strong Stalk, three Feet high at least, bearing three or four Flowers at the top, made somewhat like the Flowers of the *Iris* or *Flowerdeluce*, with three upright Leaves, of a dead purplish Ash color, having some Veins discolored in them; tho' other three do not fall down, nor are the other three small ones so arched, nor do they cover the lower Leaves as those of the *Garden Flowerdeluce* do, but stand loose or asunder from them. The Flowers being past, there come up hard Cods or Husks, three-square, opening wide into three parts when they are ripe; in which are contained reddish Seed, which being perfectly ripe and dry, become black.

IV. *The Places*. It grows in up-land Grounds, as well as in moist places, in Woods and shadowy Groves, as also by the Sea side in many places of this Land; and it is also nursed up in many Countries in Gardens.

V. *The Times*. It flowers not until July, and sometimes in August, and the Seed is ripe in August or September; yet the Husks, after they are ripe, and do open themselves, will hold their Seeds within them for two or three Months, and not shed them.

VI. *The Qualities*. The Root is chiefly used, and it is hot and dry in the third Degree: it is Aperitive, Absterfivè and Astringent; Hysterick, Ptarick, Emmenagogick and Cathartick.

VII. *The Specification*. It is peculiarly effectual against the Strangury, Obstruction of the Courses, and Kings-evil.

VIII. *The Preparations*. You may have therefrom, 1. A Juice of the Roots. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction in Wine. 4. An Infusion in Ale or Wine. 5. A Vinegar. 6. A Pouder of the Root. 7. A Pouder of the Seed. 8. A Cataplasme. 9. A Juice of the Leaves. 10. A Pessary.

*The Virtues.*

IX. *The Juice of the Root*. It purges Choler and Flegm, both upwards and downwards in weak Stomachs and ill Habits of Body, cleansing those Parts very well. Snuffed up the Nose, it causeth Sneezing, and clears the Head from much viscous Water, Flegm and Puffs. Rubbed upon places troubled with the Itch, it is said to cure it.

X. *The Essence*. It has the Virtues of the liquid Juice, but more powerful; and given inwardly two or three Spoonfuls in a Glass of White Lisbon Wine, it provokes the Terms in Women; but it ought not to be given to such as are with Child, for fear of causing Abortion or Miscarriage.

XI. *The Decoction in Wine*. It purges Choler and Flegm, as the Juice and Essence do, provokes the Terms, and has all the other Properties, but operates much more weakly, and therefore is more fit for the weaker Constitutions. It is good for such as are troubled with Cramps or Convulsions, Gout, Sciatica, and the like; and gives ease to such as are troubled with the Colick, Griping of the Guts, &c.

XII. *The Infusion in White Port Wine or Ale*. It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but works much more weakly. It is good against Gripings of the Bowels, Colick, Strangury, and all sorts of Obstructions of Urine, occasioned from Sand, Gravel, tartarous Matter obstructing the Reins and Bladder.

XIII. *The Vinegar*. Taken to four or six Ounces or



or more, it is gently Emericick, and cures Agues, Fevers, Spleen, &c.

XIV. *The Pouder of the Root.* Snuffed up the Nostrils, it is a very good Errhine to purge the Head and Brain of cold, moist and pituitous Humors, drawing them from thence in great quantities. Taken inwardly to one Dram in White Port or Lisbon Wine, it helps such as are troubled with Cramps and Convulsions, Gouts, Sciatica's, griping Pains in the Belly, Strangury, Heat, Pain and Stoppage of Urine. It is given with much profit to such as have had long Fluxes thro' the Acrimony of ill Humors, which it stays, after it has first purged and cleansed the Bowels.

XV. *The Pouder of the Seed.* Given from half a Dram to a Dram in White Port Wine, it helps the Strangury, and causes them to Piss presently, which before could not. If it is taken with Vinegar, it dissolves the Hardness and Swelling of the Spleen, and prevails against Hypochondriack Melancholy.

XVI. *The Cataplasme.* If it is made up into a Pultise with Great Centory Root, Honey and Verdigrise, and applied, it is good against all Wounds of the Head, and draws forth Splinters, Thorns, broken Bones, or any other thing sticking in the Flesh, and that without pain. If the Root is made into a Cataplasme by boiling in Vinegar, and be laid upon any Tumor or Swelling, it very effectually dissolves or consumes it, yea even those Tumors of the Neck and Throat called the King's Evil.

XVII. *The Juice of the Leaves.* It is good against Scabs, Itch, Tettars, Ringworms, Scurf, Morpew, Tanning, Sunburning, Yellowness of the Skin, Leprosie, and other like deformities thereof.

XVIII. *The Pessary.* Being made of the Root, or of the Juice and Pouder of the Root; and put up into the Womb, it brings down the Terms in Women where they have been long stopt; but you must have a care that it be not used to a Woman with Child, because it may cause Abortion.

## C H A P. CCXCV.

### Of F L U E L I N,

O R,

### Female S P E E D W E L L.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Ἑλατίνη*: by the Arabians, *Athin*: in Latin, *Elatine*, *Veronica*, *Fæmina*, *Fuchsi*, *Matthioli*, *Camerarii*, *Dodonæi* *Lobelii*, *Loniceri*: in English, *Fluellin*, or *Female Speedwell*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is one of the sorts of *Speedwell*, and the *Female Species* thereof, of which there are these three following kinds, viz. 1. *Elatine folio subrotundo*, *Veronica Fæmina folio subrotundo*, Round leaved *Fluellin*. 2. *Elatine sive Veronica Fæmina folio acuminate*, *Fluellin* with corner'd Leaves. 3. *Elatine sive Veronica fæmina flore cæruleo folioque acuminate*, Cornered *Fluellin* with Blew Flowers.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or round leav'd *Fluellin*, has a Root which is small and Thready, dying every Year, and raises it self again of its own Sowing. From whence shoot forth many long

Branches, partly lying upon the Ground, and partly standing upright, set with almost round Leaves, yet a little pointed at the ends, and sometimes more long than round, without order thereon, being somewhat hoary, and of an ill greenish white color. At the joints all along the Stalks, and with the Leaves, come forth small Flowers, one at a place, upon a very small Footstalk, gaping something like those of *Snapdragon*, or rather *Flaxweed*, whose upper jaw is of a yellow color, and the lower of a purplish, with a small heel or spur behind, as the *Linaria* has. The Flowers being gone, small round Heads come forth, which contain small black Seed.

*Fluellin round Leav'd.*



IV. *The second, or Cornered leaved Fluellin*, has a Root which is small and Thready like the other, perishing every Year; from which comes forth longer Branches, wholly trailing upon the Ground two or three Feet in length, and sometimes more fully, sometimes more thinly set with Leaves thereon, upon small or short footstalks, which are a little larger, and somewhat round, and cut in or cornered for the most part on the edges in some places: But the lower end or bottom of them, being the broadest part of the Leaf, has on each side a small production, making it seem as if they were Ears, a little hairy withall, but not hoary, and of a better green color than the former. The Flowers come forth at the Joints with the Leaves, upon little long Footstalks; every one by it self, one above another, in form very like unto the other, but the Colors therein are more white than yellow, and the purple is not so fair. It is a larger Flower, and so is the Seed, and Seed Vessels.

V. *The third, or Cornered Fluellin with blew Flowers*, has a Root which is small and thready, taking hold of the upper surface of the Earth, where it spreads it self; from whence rise Stalks or Branches, with Leaves thereon which differ but little from the last, but that the Leaves are not so much cornered about the edges, and less pointed.



also, at the foot or lowest part of them : The Flowers are almost all Blew, with some small matter of White in them, which being past away, small pouches or Seed Vessels succeed, not unlike the former.

*Fluellen with cornered leaves*



*Fluellin cornered with blew Flowers.*



VI. *The Places.* They grow upon Banks and Borders of Fields, in Sandy Grounds and Woods almost every where; as also in Cornfields, and in Borders about them, and in other fertile Grounds, as about Southfleet in Kent, in great abundance; at Blackheath also, Hamerton and Richwerfworth, in Huntingdonshire, and in several other places, both there and elsewhere.

VII. *The Times.* They all flower about May, June and July, and the whole Plant is Withered by the beginning of September.

VIII. *The Qualities.* *Fluellin* is Temperate in respect to heat or coldness, dryness or moisture : is Cleansing, Astringent, Incarnative, Vulnerary, Stomack, Hepatick, Alexipharmick and Restorative.

IX. *The Specification.* It stops Fluxes of all sorts, whether of the Blood or Humors, whether of the Bowels, or defluxions upon any part; it heals also old Ulcers, eating Cankers, Pocky eruptions and the like.

X. *The Preparations.* You may prepare from this Herb, 1. *A Liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Decoction in Water or Wine.* 4. *A Balsam.* 5. *A Cataplasm.*

*The Virtues.*

XI. *The Liquid Juice.* Given to three or four Spoonfuls at a time Morning and Evening in a Glas of Red Port Wine, it stops defluxions from the Head, also other defluxions upon any particular part, all fluxes of Blood or Humors, as a Diarrhoea, Dysenteria, Lienteria, Hepatick Flux, and the overflowing of the Courses in Women.

XII. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues, but more efficacious : It stops all sorts of Bleeding, whether at the Nose, or Spitting, Vomitting or Pissing of Blood; also fluxes of Blood from any other parts, caused by the cutting or breaking of a Vein; and is a singular good thing against Contusions whether inward or outward, strengthening and consolidating the parts which are hurt; and it is no less effectual being used Dietetically to cleanse, dry, and heal old Ulcers which are foul, fretting and eating; and outwardly being applied to dry, conglutinate and heal any simple green Wound. It is of singular use against the *French Pox*, and all fretting and eating Cankers proceeding from the same; so that scarcely any other Vegetable comes up to the height of its excellency in this Case. *Pena* gives a relation of one whose Nose was almost consumed with an eating Canker (I suppose proceeding from the *French Pox*) which was by the Physicians order to have been cut off, to preserve the rest of his Face and Body, now ready to fall into a [Pocky] Leprosie; a simple Barber being in Company, and hearing of it, desired that he might first make tryal of an Herb which he had seen his Master use in like Case; it was granted, and he used only the Juice and Decoction of this Herb, giving of them inwardly, and applied the Herb outwardly: By this only means he recovered the Patient, and not only Cured the [Pocky] eating Ulcer of his Nose, but also the [Pocky] Scabbiness or Leprosie of his whole Body, which he was now fallen into; and by this alone means became perfectly well.

XIII. *The Decoction in Wine or Water.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but less efficacious, and therefore ought to be given in treble or quadruple quantity, two or three times a day.

XIV. *The Balsam.* It is no ways inferior to any Balsam made of any of the Vulnerary Herbs; it digests, cleanses, incarnates, dries, and heals old Ulcers, putrid, fretting and eating Sores, and Cures at once or twice dressing any simple green Wound in what part of the Body so ever.

XV. *The Cataplasm.* It is made of the green Herb, bruised and mixed with Barly Flower; being applied to watering Eyes, occasioned by defluxions from the Heads, where there is Heat and Inflammation withal, it very much helps them, and stops all other Defluxions of Humors, upon any other part whatsoever, wherethere is Pain, Dislocation, Weakness, Wound, or Ulcer, &c.

XVI. *As*



XVI. *An Observation.* The notable use of this Plant in curing some inveterate, malign, and almost supposed incurable Diseases, as is before hinted; makes me believe, that not only this Herb, but many other simple Herbs have been used by the *Ancients*, in curing many deplorable infirmities, of which we have at this day no particular account; by which it appears that they preferred *Simples* before *Compounds*: And were we now, but as industrious in the investigation of the *Virtues* and *Powers* of Herbs, as those of Ancient times were, and made but as many tryals of them as they did; I doubt not but we might be as happy in our pursuit of the same as they were, and do greater things with even simple Medicaments, than even the learned profess to do with their most *pompous Compounds*. But of this enough.

C H A P. CCXCVI.

of FLIE STONES,

O R,

FLIE ORCHIS, or Bee Flower.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *ὄρχις τῆς μύιας*, & *ὄρχις μυϊκή*, & *μύινος*: in Latin, *Orchis muscaria*: and in English Fly Stones, Fly Orchis, and Bee Flower.

II. *The Kinds.* There are four kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Orchis Hermaphroditica Candida*, The White Butterfly Orchis. 2. *Orchis Melittias*, sive *apifera*, Bee Orchis, or Bee Flower. 3. *Orchis Sphegodes*, Gnat Orchis, or Gnat Satyrion. 4. *Orchis Myodes*, Fly Orchis, or Fly Stones.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or White Butterfly, has a Root taking part of both Orchis and Palma Christi, being not altogether round, nor fully banded, from whence it took the Name Hermaphroditica, to signifie both Kinds. The Leaves are two in number, seldom more, being fair and broad, like unto the Leaves of Lillies, without any Spot at all in them. At the Top of the Stalk stands many White Flowers, not so thick set as the *Palmata*, and every one of them being shaped like unto a White Butterfly, with the Wings spread abroad, with a spur behind it full of a honyed Liquor.

IV. *The second, or Bee Orchis or Stones*, has Roots which are two together, round and white, having a certain Mucilaginity or Clamminess within them, without any taste almost at all, as all or most part of these Kinds have. This is a small and low Plant for the most part, with three or four small Leaves at the bottom. The Stalk is seldom above six Inches high, with four or five Flowers thereon, one above another, having round Bodies, and somewhat flat, of a kind of yellowish color, with purple Wings above them, so like unto an Hony Bee, that it might soon deceive one who had never seen such a Flower before.

V. *The third, or Gnat Orchis or Stones*, has Roots which are two round Bulbs or Tubers, like as the others are. The Leaves of this Plant are somewhat larger than of the Beeflower. The Stalk also is somewhat higher. The Flowers are fewer on the Top, but somewhat larger than of the former, or Bee Orchis, and shaped to the resemblance of a Gnat, or great long Fly.

VI. *The fourth, or Fly Orchis or Fly Stones*, is in its Root and Leaf like to the last described, the difference is chiefly in its Flower, which is neither so long as the *Gnat Orchis*, nor so great as the *Bee Orchis*; but the lower part of the Fly is black, with a list of Ashcolor crossing the Back, with a shew of Legs hanging at it. The natural Fly seems to be so in love with it, that you shall seldom come in the heat of the day, but you shall find one sitting thereon.

VII. *The Places.* All these grow in many places of England, some in Woods, as the Butterfly, others on dry Banks and barren Places in Kent, and several other Shires.

VIII. *The Times.* They Flower for the most part in the beginning or middle of May, seldom later.

IX. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues*, are the same with those of the *Cynorchis* or Dog-stones in Chap. 226. foregoing, so that we shall say no more thereof in this place.

C H A P. CCLXXXVII.

of FOOLSTONES.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *ὄρχις μωχέ*: in Latin *Orchis morio*, *Orchis morionis*, *Testiculus morionis*: in English Fool-stones.



II. *The Kinds.* There are many Kinds hereof, as, 1. *Orchis morio mas foliis maculatis*, The greater Male Fool-stones. 2. *Orchis morio altera maculata*, Other Fool-stones with spotted Leaves. 3. *Orchis morio mas foliis non maculosis*, Male Fool-stones not spotted. 4. *Orchis morio femina*, Female Fool-stones. 5. *Orchis morio minor folii maculatis*, small Fool-stones with spotted Leaves. 6. *Orchis Anthropophora oreades mas*, The Male Neopolitan Fool-stones.



III. The Descriptions. *The first, or greater Male Fool-stones, has a double round Tuberos Root like a pair of Man's stones, from whence rise up five or six broad and smooth long Leaves, like to those of Lillies, having black Spots on their upper sides. The Stalk also has some thereon, which compass it at bottom, but smaller: The Flowers grow in a Spike, which are small and purple, each of them having an open hood, or helmet highest, with two small Leaves like Ears, standing upright at the sides of them: the Belly which is lowest is whiter, having on the backside a crooked heel or Horn. The whole Flower is Sweet, and very pleasant to behold.*

IV. *The second, or Other Fool-stones with spotted Leaves, has testicles like the other, but not so large, nor so round, from which spring up five, six, or more Leaves, not altogether so large as the former, but lying on the Ground, and spotted in the same manner, but somewhat rounder pointed. The Stalk of this grows bigger than the other; and the Flowers are not unlike the same for the form, but of a more blewish purple color, with a spur behind.*

V. *The third, or Male Fool-stones not spotted, has a pair of Testicles like those foregoing, from whence spring up a Stalk and Leaves which are large, and very like the last, but not spotted. The Flowers are either of a deeper, or of a paler purple color, or somewhat Blush, or altogether White. The Belly which hangs down, is sometimes spotted with purple Spots, and sometimes it has none, more especially in these Flowers which are all White.*

VI. *The fourth, or Female Fool-stones, has a double Testiculous Root, from whence spring up six or seven Leaves, which are lesser and narrower than those of the Male kind, and Ribbed almost like unto Ribwort Plantane, lying on the Ground, and some of them lifting themselves up higher, encompassing the Stalk, which is shorter than those of the Male sort. The Flowers at top of the Stalk, have gaping or open hoods like the former, but the Ears on each side stand not upright, but lie so close thereon, that they are hardly discerned, with a heel behind them as the others have. This is either of a dark Violet purple color, the middle part whiter and spotted, or of a pale Red, whose Stalk is shorter, and Leaves lesser, or else of a scarlet Red; the scarlet Head being thick and short, and the Flowers smaller.*

VII. *The fifth, or Small Fool-stones with spotted Leaves, has a double Testiculous Root like the others, from whence spring up two or three small, long spotted Leaves, with a Stalk in the middle of them, which they seem to encompass, those up higher being much smaller than they. The Flowers are purple, spotted, and very finely striped.*

VIII. *The sixth, or Male Neapolitan Fool-stones, has a pair of Testicles which are round, but much larger than the other kinds, from which spring up six, seven or more Leaves, the length of ones Hand, and an Inch broad, of a pale fresh green Color, and abut the edges, and at their bottoms encompassing the Stalk. The Stalk is about a Foot high, or a little less, and at its top has a spiked bush of flowers, which are Red before they open, and of a fair Blush color being blown. They are in form like to the others before the hood or helmet opens; having small Leaves like Ears on the sides, with short Arms as it were hanging down by the Body, the lower parts of which are furnished as it were with Thighs and Legs, the Feet being cut off: From this form of the Flowers being so much in the shape of a Man, came the Name *Anthropomorphica*.*

IX. *Of this last sort there is also a Female kind,*

*which has a like Root and Stalk, save that it is higher. The Leaves are larger but not broader than the last, spread on the Ground, with some smaller on the Stalk. The spike of Flowers is not so great, nor so thick; but the Flower it self is like the last in shape, but of a pale color, spotted very thick, as small as Sand, having the hood greenish with purple edges.*

X. *The Places.* The first five grow for the most part in Fields, and by Wood sides in many places of England; but the two last are Natives of Italy: however they are all of them nursed up here with us in Gardens.

XI. *The Times.* The all flower in May, as the rest of the Orchides do.

XII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues,* are the same with those of *Cynosorchis* or *Dog-stones* in Chap. 226. foregoing, to which we shall refer you.

## C H A P. CCXCVIII.

### OF FOX STONES.

I. **T**HE Names. This Plant is called in Greek *Oreos Sægmas*, in Latin *Orchis Serapius*, *Testiculus Vulpinus*, and in English *Fox Stones*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are many sorts of Fox Stones, as 1. *Orchis Serapius Bifolia latissima*, The greatest Twablade Fox Stones. 2. *Orchis Serapius latifolia altera*, Hungarian Twablade Fox Stones. 3. *Orchis Sphegodes major*, The great Bumble Bee Orchis or Fox Stones. 4. *Orchis Myodes major*, The greater Flesh Fly Flower. 5. *Orchis Batrachites*, Frog Orchis or Frog Flower. 6. *Orchis Arachnitis*, The Spider Flower. 7. *Orchis Pfycales Herbacci coloris*, The green Butterfly Orchis. 8. *Orchis Ornithophora folio maculoso*, The White or Purple Birds Flower. 9. *Orchis Macrophyllus Columna*, Long Leav'd Fox Stones of Columna. There are many other Kinds of Fox Stones, but these are the chief.

III. *The Descriptions.* *The first, or Greatest Twablade Fox Stones, has Roots or Testicles which are great and somewhat long, like unto longish Turneps, from whence two very large Leaves only spring up, not much less than those of the White Hellebor, with several Veins running through them, green on the upper side and paler underneath, but shining withal; the Stalk rises to be a Foot and half high, five square, with a few Leaves or Skins thereon, closing it as it were about; the Flowers grow in a spiked Head, like unto others, but great and large, being either Purple, spotted with White, or wholly White.*

IV. *The second, or Hungarian Twablade Fox Stones, this in its Roots, Stalks, Leaves, and Flower, is very like the former, but somewhat lower, and lesser both in Leaves, Stalks, and Flowers, the which are sometimes both Purple and spotted, and sometime White, as the former is.*

V. *The third, or Great Bumble Bee Orchis or Fox Stones. This has Testicles less than the former and rounder, from whence spring five or six long narrow Leaves, Ribbed, like Ribwort Plantane, yet little less; the Stalk is about Nine or Ten Inches high, bearing five or six Flowers at the head thereof the form of which is somewhat like to a Bumble Bee, or Drone Bee, as it is commonly called.*



ving some few small whitish Purple Leaves, like Wings, above, and a brownish Belly or Body below.



VI. The fourth, or Greater Flesh Fly Fox Stones, has Testicles like the other Kinds, from whence spring up three or four somewhat broad and long smooth green Leaves next the Ground; the Stalk rises about five or six Inches high, with a few large Flowers set at top, resembling a great Flesh Fly, made of four Leaves, three above, and one long one below.

VII. The fifth, or Frog Orchis, or Fox Stones, has a pair of Testicles large, and something long, with a String or Strings at the bottom part thereof; from this Root spring two or more broad and short Leaves below, but narrower and longer as they grow up higher on the Stalk, at the top of which grow several yellowish Flowers, resembling the Bodies of Frogs, with the Head and fore parts greenish, from whence it took the Appellation.

VIII. Johnson on Gerard gives us another of the Frog Kind, which he calls *Serapias Batrachitis alba*, or another Frog Orchis; this has a Root shaped between the Orchis rotunda and Palmata, it grows to the height of the former, with short Leaves encompassing the Stalk at their setting on; the Flowers grow on a Spiked Head, and resemble a Frogs with their long Leaves; but if you look upon them in another manner, they will then something resemble Bede Flies, for which reason Lobel calls it as well *Alydes* as *Batrachites*.

IX. The sixth, or Spider Flower, has for its Root a pair of round Testicles, from whence springs forth a Stalk much about the height of the Frog Orchis; upon which grow six, eight or more Leaves, being more in number than grow upon the Stalk of the frog kind, they are also narrower and longer. At the top of the Stalk come forth three or four Flowers, resembling a Spider in the round Belly, and the small Neck or partition, between it and the top Wings.

X. The seventh, or Green Butter-fly, has bulbed Testicles a little pointed at Bottom; from whence spring up several large, smooth, green Leaves next the Ground; and others smaller and longer upon the Stalk. The Flowers are many and great, resembling Butter-flies, with their Wings spread abroad, of a kind of Grass green color, with a Spur behind.

White purple Birds Flower, or



XI. The eighth, or White or Purple Birds Flower, has a large pair of round Testicles, but a little pointed at Bottom; from whence spring up four, six or more Leaves, which are something large, and for the most part Chequered or Spotted (for there is much diversity herein; some having broad, large and pointed; others narrower, lesser, and rounder pointed Leaves: ) there are several other Leaves which grow upon the Stalk, which seem to enclose or embrace it; being long, spotted also and sharp pointed. The Flowers grow towards the top of the Stalk, Spike fashion; which are large, and like the last, with a Spur also behind them; some of them are all White, others are Purple, and some between both, of a purplish White.

XII. The ninth, or Long leav'd Fox-stones, has usually but one sound Testicle (the other as it may seem, being decayed and gone) with some Fibres both at head, and on the sides, which is not usual in any of the other Orchides. From this Root rises up a Stalk about three Feet high, having two very long Leaves at bottom, but of an unequal length; those which grow next on the Stalk are much longer, some being a Foot and half long, and very narrow; but those up higher are shorter and broader. At the top of the Stalk grow the Flowers spike fashion for a Foot in length, each of which stands like a cross hollow Pipe, having a broad and long beard thereat, of a fine blush Color, with a more purplish Leaf like a Tongue, hanging down, broad above, and small below.

XIII. The Places. These grow not all of them in one kind of Soil or Ground, for some are found in



Wood Lands, some in Clay Grounds, some in Fertile Fields, other some in Barren places, dry and Sandy Soils, and some of them in a low, humid or moist Earth.

XIV. *The Times.* These all Flower from almost the middle of April, until the end of May.

XV. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues* of these Fox-stones, see in Chap. 226. before past, these having the same properties with these Cynosorchis or Dog-stones there treated of.

## C H A P. CCLXXXIX.

### OF FOX GLOVE Garden,

O R,

### FOX FINGER, Garden.

I. *THE Names.* This Plant was wholly unknown to the Ancient Greeks and Latins, so far as we know, for which reason it has no Greek Name, nor yet any Latin Name but what is very Modern and noval. Some of the latter Writers have called it *Digitalis*, which is the most common Name, and first so called as some think by *Fuchsius*; others call it *Alicia*, and *Damasonium*; *Tragus* calls it *Campanula Sylvestris*: *Dalechampius* upon *Pliny*, thinks it to be *Viola Calathiana Plinii*: in English it is called Fox Glove, and Fox Finger; also Finger Wort.

II. *The Kinds.* There are two general kinds, viz. 1. *Digitalis Hortensis*, *Digitalis Sativa*, Garden Fox Glove, of which we treat (God willing) in this Chapter. 2. *Digitalis Sylvestris*, *Digitalis agrestis*, *Digitalis vulgaris*, Common Field Fox Glove, or Finger Wort, of which in the next Chapter.

III. Of the Garden kind there are seven (properly but six) several Species, viz. 1. *Digitalis maxima ferruginea*, Dun or Rust colored Fox-glove, or Finger-wort. 2. *Digitalis major flore carneo*, Blush-colored Fox-glove. 3. *Digitalis media flore luteo rubente*, Orange-tawney Fox-glove. 4. *Digitalis major alba*, The greater white Fox-glove. 5. *Digitalis minor alba*, The lesser white Fox-glove. 6. *Digitalis major lutea flore amplo*, The great yellow Fox-glove. 7. *Digitalis minor lutea palida*, The small pale yellow Fox-glove.

IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Dun or Rust colored Fox-glove, has a Root which is fibrous or stringy, (like that of the Common or Field kind) which does usually perish, or seldom out-live its giving Seed. From this Root spring up Leaves which are long and large, of a greyish green color, finely cut or dented about the edges. Among which comes up a tall strong Stalk, which, when it is full grown, and with ripe Seed thereon, has been found to be seven Feet at least in height; on which grow almost an innumerable company (respecting the great abundance) of Flowers, nothing so large as the Common or Field kind, and of a brown or yellowish dun color, with a long Lip at every Flower. They being passed away, then comes the Seed, much like the Common kind, but in smaller Heads.

V. The second, or Blush-colored, has Roots, Stalks, Leaves and Flowers, much like to the Common Field kind, but all less. The Leaves are reasonable large, but not fall out so large as the Common. The

Flowers are also considerably smaller than the Field sort, and of a bluish color.

VI. The third, or Orange Tawney, has a fibrous Root, which perishes always after bearing Seed, which is usually the second Year of its springing up. This Fox-glove is none of the Greatest kinds, nor yet is it any of the Smallest, but a Medium between both. Its Leaves are in some Proportion correspondent to the Lesser yellow, but not so large as the Lesser white. The Flowers are long and narrow, almost as large as the last White, but nothing so large as the first White, and of a fair yellowish brown color, as if the yellow was over-shadowed with a reddish color, and is that we usually call an Orange-tawney color. The Seed of this is very like the former.

VII. The fourth, or Greater White Fox-Glove, is in Root, Stalk, Leaves, Flowers, and Seed, as also in the manner of growing, so like to the Common Field Kind, that it can scarcely be distinguished from it, except in the fresher greenness and largeness of the Leaves; the Flowers are as large as those of the said Common Kind, but they differ in Color, for as those are Purple, these are wholly White, without any spot in them; in the Seed and all other things they agree.

VIII. The fifth, or Lesser White, has a Fibrous Root, enduring as the others do, the Leaves are like unto the last described, but not altogether so long or large, and of a darker green Color; the Stalk grows not so high, not being full three Feet; the Flowers are pure white, fashioned like unto the former, but not so great or large, in all other things alike; the Seed is also like the former.

IX. The sixth, or Greater Yellow, has a Root which is greater at the Head, and more Woody than any of the rest, with many smaller Fibres, spreading themselves in the Ground, and abides almost as well as our Common Purple Kind; the Leaves of this are in form somewhat like unto the Common Kind, but not altogether so large; the Stalk grows to be three or four Feet high, on which grow many long, hollow, pendulous Flowers, in shape like unto the Common Field Purple, but somewhat shorter, and more large and open at the brims, of a fair yellow Color, in which are long Threads, as in the others.

X. The seventh, or Small pale Yellow, has a Root which is Fibrous, or Stringy, but durable, and seldom perishes with the hardship of the extreamest Frost; it has somewhat short, broad, smooth, and dark green Leaves, snipt or dented about the edges very finely; the Stalk is two Feet high, beset with such like Leaves, but lesser; the Flowers are more in number than in any of the rest, except the first and greatest, and grow along the upper part of the Stalk, being long and hollow, like the other, but very small, and of a pale yellow Color, almost white.

XI. *The Places.* All these, except the fourth, or Greater White, are Strangers to us, but are all of them cherished in our Gardens; the said Greater White Kind has been often found growing wild in many places of England, and generally among, or hard by the Common Field Purple Kind in the next Chapter.

XII. *The Times.* They flower in June and July, and some in August, the Seed becoming ripe quickly after.

XIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues*, are the same with the Common Field purple kind in Chap. 300. next following, to which you are referred.



C H A P. CCC.

of FOX GLOVE Common,  
or Field.

O R,

FINGER-WORT Wild or Ordinary.

I. **THE Names.** It has no Greek Name as aforesaid; nor any ancient Latin Name, as being unknown to any of the ancient Greeks or Latins: But our modern Authors have called it *Digitalis*; which we render in English, *Fox Glove*, or *Fox Finger*, or *Finger Wort*.

II. **The Kinds.** This is the second Species, being the common ordinary, or Field kind. *Cæsalpinus* calls it *Virga Regia major flore purpureo*, also *Alisma* and *Damasonium*, and *Fistula Pastoris*. *Tragus* calls it *Campanula Sylvestris flore purpureo*. *Columna* thinks it to be the *Ephemerum* of *Dioscorides*. And *Dalechampius* upon *Pliny* will have it to be *Viola Calathiana Plinii*, as is said before in the former Chapter; but it is generally called *Digitalis purpurea Vulgaris*, Common purple Fox Glove.



III. **The Description.** Its Root consists of many small, busky Fibres, and some greater Strings among them; from whence spring up many long and broad Leaves, lying upon the Ground, dented about the edges, a little soft or Woolly, and of a kind of a heavy green color: Among which rise up several Stalks sometimes, and very often but one, bearing such Leaves thereon from the bottom to the middle; from whence to the top it is replenished with large, and long, hollow, reddish purple Flowers, a little more long and eminent at the lower Edge, with some white Spots within them, one above another

and with some small green Leaves at every one; but all of them turning their Heads one way, and hanging downwards, having some Threads also in the middle; from whence rise round Heads, pointed sharp at the ends, which contain within them small brown Seed. The Flower has no smell, but the Leaves have a bitter hot taste.

IV. **The Places.** It grows in dry Sandy Ground for the most part, and as well on the higher as lower places, under hedge sides, almost in every County of this Kingdom. There is also a *White Wild fort*, described in the former Chapter at Sect. VII. which does grow naturally about *Landisdale* and *Craven*, in a Field called *Cragge Close* in the North of *England*; also by *Colchester* in *Essex*; and near *Exeter* in the West of *England*, and in several other places: Yet this *Wild White kind* is also nursed up in *Gardens*, as in the former Chapter we have declared.

V. **The Times.** They Flower and Flourish in *June* and *July*, but seldom before *July*; and the Seed is Ripe in *August*.

VI. **The Qualities.** *Fox Glove* is hot and dry at least in the second Degree, Sulphureous and Saline; Aperitive, Absterfive, Astringent, Digestive and Vulnerary: Pectoral, Hepatick and Arthritic; Emectick, Cathartick, and Analeptick.

VII. **The Specification.** It Cures Consumption, King's Evil, Green-sicknes and Falling-sicknes; also Wounds, old Sores and running Ulcers.

VIII. **The Preparations.** You may have therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Syrup. 4. A Decoction or Infusion. 5. An Ointment or Balsam. 6. A Cataplasm.

#### The Virtues.

IX. **The Liquid Juice.** It purges and cleanses the Lungs, Stomach and Bowels; but ought to be given not in too great a quantity, because of its violent Operation. It may be given from three Spoonfuls to Six, in Mead or White Port Wine, according to Age and Strength; it works strongly both upwards and downwards, and prevails against the Scurvy, Dropsie, Jaundice, Gout, and Rheumatism; and is found by experience to be an excellent thing against the King's Evil. Outwardly applied, it heals any fresh or green Wound, the Leaves being bruised and applied thereto also. It is frequently used in old and putrid Sores to cleanse them, dry up their moisture, and cause a speedy healing.

X. **The Essence.** It has all the Virtues of the Juice, and more excellent for the same purposes and intentions; besides which it rarifies or attenuates thick tough Flegm, and viscous Humors, affecting the Lungs, Breast and Stomach: It cleanses and purges the Body both upwards and downwards, freeing it both from Viscous and Watery humors: It opens Obstructions of Liver, Spleen, Gall and Womb, and resists those Diseases occasioned thereby. And by late Experience, it has been found effectual against the Falling-sicknes, for that divers have been absolutely Cured thereby. Dose from two to six Spoonfuls or more, according to Age and Strength in the Morning fasting, to be given in any proper Vehicle.

XI. **The Syrup, or Rob of the Juice of the Herb and Flowers made with Honey.** It is a Specifick which transcends all other Vegetable Medicaments for the Cure of Consumptions; cleansing and healing after an admirable manner Ulcers of the Lungs. It opens the Obstructions of all the Viscera, cleanses, carries off, or expels the recrements of the Humors, by which means the daily Nutriment may be conveyed



veyed to all the Parts of the Body. It may be given Morning and Night, four or five Spoonfuls at a time, according to Age and Strength: some advise three Spoonfuls to be given in the Morning fasting in Mead, as much at Ten in the Morning, three Spoonfuls at Four in the Afternoon, and lastly, as much at going to Bed. This Medicine has restored (where the Patient has not been past Cure) beyond all Expectation. It cures a Phthisick or Ulceration of the Lungs, when all other Medicines have failed, and the Sick esteemed past Cure. It opens the Brest and Lungs, frees them from tough Flegm, cleanses the Ulcer, and heals it, when all other Remedies act without Effect. I have known it do Wonders, and speak here from a long Experience. Persons in deep Consumptions, and given over by all Physicians, have by the Use of this Syrup or Rob been strangely recovered, and so perfectly restored as to grow fat again. I commend it as a Secret, and it ought to be kept as a Treasure. These few Lines concerning this Medicament alone are worth ten times the Price of the whole Book. I am very confident of it, the deplorable wasted Patient, who has been long languishing in an inveterate and tedious Consumption, or a Phthisis, if they make use hereof, will give me Thanks for this Notice, whilst they may have Reason enough to Curse even the Memories of Quacking Blood-suckers, Issue-makers, and Blister-drawers, who, as they may have possibly drained them of a fair part of their Estate and Treasures, would, by a Continuance under their Hands, (for all their specious Methods of Cure) have fooll'd them out of their Lives too. But here is to be noted, That this Syrup ought chiefly or only to be made of the Flowers.

XII. *The Infusion or Decoction.* They have the Virtues of the Juice, Essence and Syrup, but much less efficacious, and therefore are to be given in a larger Dose. They powerfully open Obstructions of the Viscera; and may be given Dietetically in the Cure of Consumptions, Kings-evil, Ulcers, Fistula's, &c.

XIII. *The Ointment or Balsam.* The Ointment is said to be one of the best Remedies for a scabby Head that is: it is also good against Pimples, Tetters, Ringworms, Scurff, Morpew, or other Scabiness and Breakings out in any Part of the Body. The Balsam is an excellent Vulnerary, curing simple Wounds at once or twice dressing: it also digests, cleanses, incarnates, dries and heals old and putrid Ulcers, fretting and eating Sores, and such as proceed from the Kings-evil.

XIV. *The Cataplasim.* The Flowers being stamp'd together with fresh Butter or Hogs-Lard, and so made into a Pultise, and applied to any Part affected with the Kings-evil, it has been found by manifold Experience to be very available for the Cure of that Disease. If the Flowers cannot be had, you may use the Leaves in like manner, or make them into an Ointment with Hogs-Lard and Beef-Suet; this will work the same, tho' not altogether so powerfully as that made with the Flowers.

XV. *The discussive Cataplasim.* Take Fox-glove Flowers, or Leaves, if the Flowers are not to be had, a pound, Oat-meal a pint; boil the Oat-meal soft in a sufficient quantity of running Water, then add the Fox-glove, and boil to a Consistence. This applied warm Morning and Evening to a Contusion in a Womans Leg, where the Tumor made it four times as big as the sound Leg, being also in great Anguish, and full of Pain; it eased the Pain, dissolved the Tumor, and in a little time did the Cure; but afterwards a strengthening Cerecloth was applied, to perfect it.

## C H A P. CCCI.

## of FOXTAIL,

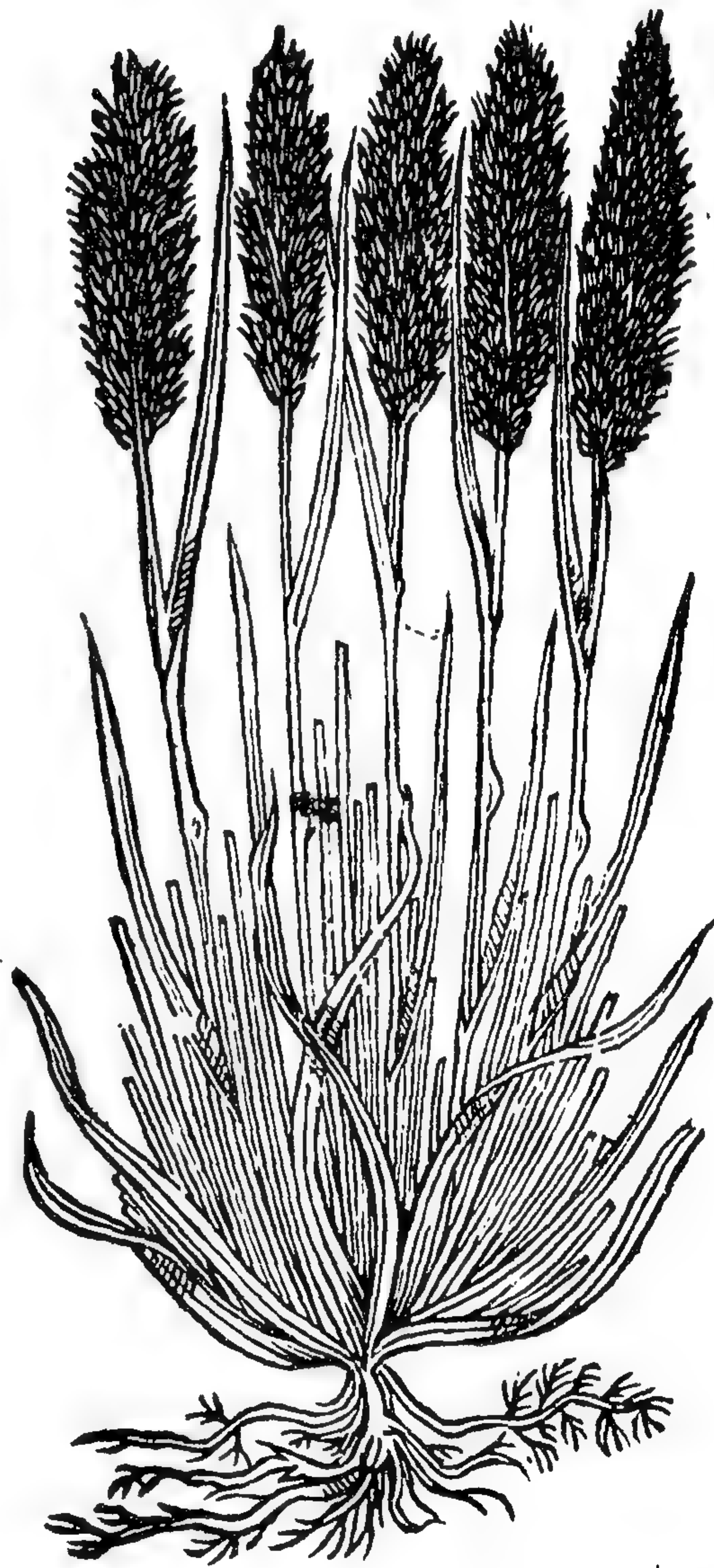
O R,

## FOXTAIL--GRASS.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, Ἀλοπεῦρος; in Latin, *Alopecuros*, *Cauda vulpis*; *Lugdunensis* calls it *Gramen tomentosum Alopecuros vera Plinii* and *Theophrasti*: in English, *Foxtail-grass*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make three several sorts hereof, viz. 1. *Σταλέρος*, *Stelephuros Plinii*, *Gramen Alopecuros vera Plinii*, *Alopecuros genuina*, and *genuina Theophrasti*, The true Foxtail-grass. 2. *Alopecuros Dodonai*, *Alopecuros altera Anglica & Flandrica*, Another Foxtail-grass English and Flemish, so called by *Lobel*, because he found it both in England and Flanders. 3. *Alopecuros maxima Anglica Lobelii*, The greatest English Foxtail-grass.

## True Foxtail-Grass.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or True Foxtail-grass, has a small Root made of a few Fibres, which perishes every Year. This Root sends up two or three, or more, soft hoary Stalks, about a Foot high, with small, long and narrow soft Leaves on them, as hoary as the Stalks; on which stand soft, woolly or hoary Heads, somewhat long and round, beset round with soft Hairs, of a pale straw color, resembling a Foxes Tail, from whence it took its Name.

IV. *The second, or Other Foxtail-grass, has much alike fibrous Root, with Stalks and Leaves much like to the former, saving, that they are longer, the Stalks growing higher. The Heads also are shorter and*



and rounder, and nothing so woolly or hoary as the other are.

## Great English Fox tail Grass



V. The third, or Greatest English Foxtail-grass, has a fibrous Root, from whence spring up Stalks about half a Yard or two Feet high, having sometimes fair large Leaves, like unto Wheat, but larger, set at the Joints, and bearing at their tops great, large, full, soft and woolly Heads, like the first, but that they are much greater and longer, and this is, whether the Stalk is higher or lower.

VI. The Places. The first grows naturally in several places about *Mompelier*; but we have it in our Gardens only for Curiosity. The second *Lobel* found growing Wild in both *England* and *Flanders*. The third *Lobel* found in the West of *England*, between *Portsmouth* and the *Isle of Wight*.

VII. The Times. They flourish with their Heads in *June*, *July* and *August*.

VIII. As to their Qualities, &c. this is said by Authors, That no Medical Property or Virtue has been found in any of them; but they are many times used to be worn as an Ornament or Toy on Womens Hats, Hair, or Heads.

II. The Kinds. It is a singular Plant, and the very least of the *White Water Lillies*. Some would have it to be one of the Kinds of *Pondweed*, but it is no such thing, but of the Kind of *Water Lillies*.



III. The Description. Frog-bit has a Root which is long and creeping, full of Joints, sending down from the said Joints several long Fibres or Strings, and by the encreasing of those Joints, it multiplies it self. From the Joints of this Root, or Heads of those Strings, spring forth several small round Leaves, thick and full of Juice, very like to the *Lesser White Water Lilly*, but much lesser, or the Leaves of *Wall Pennywort*: from among which rise other Stalks, bearing on each Head one small white Flower, consisting of three small and round pointed Leaves, with a certain yellow Thrum or Threads in the middle. This in all its parts more nearly resembles the *Lesser White Water Lilly* than any *Pondweed*, of which some have made it a Species.

IV. The Places. Gerard says it is found floating or swimming almost in every Ditch, Pond, Pool, or standing Water; in all the Ditches about *St. George's Fields*, and in the Ditches by the *Thames side* near *Lambeth Marsh*, and in ten thousand other places of this Land.

V. The Times. It flourishes and flowers the most part of all the Year; but it commonly begins to flower in *May*, and so continues on for some Months; and the Seed is ripening in the mean Season.

VI. The Qualities. It is cold and moist in the second Degree; Anodyne, Relaxive and Arthritic.

VII. The Specification. It is peculiar against *Anthonyes-fire*, Inflammations, and the Gout in a hot Constitution of Body.

VIII. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An Ointment. 4. A Cataplasm.

### The Virtues.

IX. The liquid Juice. It is very cooling, and abates Inflammations. Bathed upon an *Erysipelas*,  
F f f and

C H A P. CCCII.

Of F R O G -- B I T,

O R,

Smallest Water L I L L Y.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, *Νυμφαία ἐλάγην*: in Latin, *Morsus Ranae*, and *Nymphaea minima*, and *alba minima*: in English, *Frog-bit*, and *Smallest Water Lilly*.



and wet Cloths dipt in the Juice, it takes away the Sharpness and Heat thereof, and in a little time cures it. It is also good against sharp Humors breaking out in the Head, and prevails against Scabbiness, Scurf, Morpew, Pimples, Sun-burning, Tanning, Yellowness of the Skin, and other like Disorders.

X. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice; besides which, it may be given inwardly two or three Spoonfuls at a time in a Glass of Wine and Water against any malign or burning Fever. The Whey or Posset-drink made by turning Milk with it, has the same Effect. This Essence bathed upon the Head, for an extream Head-ach, arising from a hot Cause, gives Relief, and by continuing the Use thereof for some time, effects the Cure.

XI. *The Ointment.* Being anointed upon any Part afflicted with vehement Pain, from a violent hot Cause, it eases it. It also allays Inflammations in any Part of the Body; and anointed upon the Back-bone, it eases the Pain, tho' never so extream. I have applied it to Parts extreamly affected with the Gout, and it has given present ease, and in a short time after abated the Tumor.

XII. *The Cataplasme.* Applied to any simple and recent Bruise, it discusses the Tumor, hinders the Afflux of Humors to the Part, and in a little time after cures it: also applied to any old and running Ulcer, and bound to also above the Ulcer, it hinders the Defluxion, cleanses and dries, and in a great measure contributes to its healing. It also gives present Relief in the Gout, being duly applied Morning and Evening for some considerable time. Applied to the Forehead, it hinders Defluxions upon the Eyes, and eases the Megrin, and other Pains of the Head.

### C H A P. CCCIII.

#### OF FRIERS COWLE,

OR,

#### WAKE ROBIN Hooded.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ἀρισάριον*, & *δαισαριον*: in Latin, *Arisarum*, *Arifaris*, and *Aris*: in English, *Friers Cowle*, *Hooded Aron*, or *Hooded Cuckoe-point*, or *Wake Robin*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is of the Family or Stock of the *Arons*, and is twofold, viz. 1. *Arisarum latifolium*, Broad-leav'd Friers Cowle. 2. *Arisarum longifolium*, vel *angustifolium*, Long-leav'd or Narrow-leav'd Friers Cowle. *Dalechampsius* upon *Pliny* calls the *Latifolium*, *Calle alterum genus Plinii*; but *Tragus* thinks it to be rather the *Arum Dioscoridi*, which is indeed a Mistake.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Broad-leav'd, has a Root which is somewhat round and white, and is increased mostly by Off-sets. It grows in all things like unto the *Aron*, having divers fair green Leaves, whose middle Rib on the upper side, as also some other of the Veins; are sometimes white, and somewhat thicker and rounder-pointed than those of *Aron*. The middle Stalk bearing the Flower (which is a crooked or bending Hose at the top, with a small crooked whitish Pestle in the middle, rising out of it) is spotted with red Spots, and rises

not fully so high as the Leaves, which are nothing so sharp in Taste as those of *Aron* or *Wake Robin*, and do always spring up in the end of *Autumn*, abiding green all the Winter. After the Husk or Flower is past, and the green Leaves withered and gone, which will be in the Summer, then the Berries do appear on the tops of the Stalks, green at the first, and of a yellowish red when they are ripe, which abide until the Frosts cause them to wither, and the green Leaves begin again to appear.



IV. *The second, or Narrow-leav'd, has a Root which is round and white, smaller than the former, and increased by Off-sets, tho' not in so plentiful a manner. The Leaves of this Plant are very long, and*



and very narrow, not rising so high as the former, but rather lying on the Ground. It seldom bears any Fruit or Hofs; but when it does, it is whitish, short and long, with a very long and small reddish Pith in the middle, like unto a long Worm, scarce rising above the Ground; and the Berries which follow are white, and not red.

V. The Places. These Plants are Natives of Italy, and are found especially in Tuscany, about Rome, and in Dalmatia, as Anguillara says: they also grow in Spain and Portugal: but in England they are only nurt up in Gardens, where they thrive very well.

VI. The Times. They both shoot forth their green Leaves in Autumn, presently after the first have pulled down the Stalks with the Fruit, and abide green all the Winter, withering in Summer, before which their Husks appear.

VII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with those of the Dragons or Dragon-worts in Chap. 229. aforegoing, so that we need say no more thereof here.

C H A P. CCCIV.

of FUMITORY Common.

THE Names. It is called in Greek, *καπνός*, *καπνίτις*, *Fumulus*, *καπνίτις*, quasi, *Fumus*, Vapor, Nidor; from whence the Latins called it, *Fumaria* and *Fumus Terra*: in English, *Fumitory* and *Fumiterry*. The Arabians call it, *Scheiteregi*. This Herb being of a whitish blew color, as Smoak is, it appears to those who behold it at a distance, as if the Earth was all in a Fume or Smoak; and from hence (as it is supposed) came the Name.

Broad-leav'd Common Fumitory.



II. The Kinds. There are three principal kinds hereof, (if the last sort may be accounted a kind thereof) viz. 1. *Fumaria Anglica*, English Fumitory, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Fumaria Indica, vel Virginiana*, American or Virginian Fumitory, of which in the next Chapter. 3. *Fumaria bulbosa vel tuberosa*, *Radix cava*, Hollow-root, of which in its place.

III. Of Our English Fumitory, there are these following Species, viz. 1. *Fumaria vulgaris*, *Capnos vulgaris Lobelii*, *Fumaria purpurea*, Common or Purple Fumitory. 2. *Fumaria tenuifolia*, *Fumaria minor*, The fine-leav'd, or lesser Fumitory. 3. *Fumaria latifolia alba*, & *alba claviculata*, *Capnos Lobelii*, *Fumaria altera Dodonai*, *Capnos pbragmites Gesneri*, *Corydalis*, & *Corydalion aliorum*, White broad-leav'd Fumitory, or Climbing Fumitory. 4. *Fumaria lutea*, & *lutea Montana Lobelii*, *Fumaria Coridolis Matthioli*, *Fumaria Montana Gesneri* & *Tabernmontani*, *Corydalis Anguillarae* & *Camerarii*, Split vulgo *Casalpini*, Split Illyrica, & *Herba Sclavonica aliorum*, Yellow or Mountain Fumitory.

Common Purple Fumitory.



IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Common purple Fumitory, has a Root which is yellow, small, and not very long, full of Juice while it is green, but quickly perishing after it has given ripe Seed. This Plant is a tender sappy Herb, having Stalks which are square, slender and weak, with many little Knots or Joints, from whence many Branches spring forth, two or three Feet long, leaning downwards on all sides, so that they scarcely grow up from the Ground, without propping, but for the most part grow sidelong. The Leaves grow from the Branches upon long Foot-stalks, which are tender and brittle, and are finely cut or jagged, somewhat like to those of Coriander, being of a whitish, or rather blewish Sea green color. At the tops of the Branches stand many small Flowers, as it were, in a long Spike, one above another, as it were, in Clusters, made like little Birds, of a reddish purplish color, with white Bellies: after which come small round Husks, containing small blackish Seed. Note,



That in the Corn-fields of *Cornwall* this bears white Flowers. And *Johnson* upon *Gerard* says, That it is sometimes found with purple *Violet-colored* Flowers. There is also a *Broader-leav'd* of this kind, not differing from the former Description. See the first Figure in this Chapter.



*Fumitory  
narrow leav'd*

V. The second, or *Fine-leav'd Fumitory*, has a Root small and white, but like the former; from whence spring forth Stalks or Branches, not so long as the first, but standing more upright, being slender and square. The lower Leaves are very like to those of the other *Fumitory*, and of the same color, but smaller; but those which grow above upon the Stalk are smaller, and finer cut in; and the higher, the finer and smaller, the highest being as small as *Fennel*, or *Southernwood*, or *Camomil* Leaves. The Flowers grow in the same manner which the other do, but rather in greater plenty, or more together, of a deeper reddish purple, mixed with white and yellow; which being passed away, Husks or Cods succeed, containing the Seed, which is much like that of the *Common* or *Purple* kind.

VI. The third, or *White Broad-leav'd*, has a Root which is small and long, white, and growing deep into the Ground, abiding all the Winter, and shooting forth new Branches (after the old are perished) every Year. From this Root rise up small slender Stalks, not strong enough to sustain themselves, but catching hold by certain Tendrels which it sends forth at the ends of the smaller Branches of any thing which stands nigh unto it, whether Hedges, Shrubs or large strong Herbs, it climbs up, and spreads it self out many ways, with several Stalks of small Leaves, set two or three, or more together, not dented or divided on the edges at all, but sharp-pointed at their ends, of a blewish green color, very like unto the *Common Fumitory*. At the tops likewise of the small Branches come forth many small whitish Flowers, tipped with blush, set together, but nothing like the former, made like small, long, narrow Husks or Bell-flowers, ending in six small

Points: after which come small Seed, contained in small broad Husks or Cods.



*White broad-  
leaved  
Fumitory.*



*Fumitory yellow.*

VII. The fourth, or *Yellow or Mountain Fumitory*, has a Root which is composed of many white, slender, long Fibres or Strings, bushing thick together, which perishes not as the Roots of the *Common Fumitory* do, but abides many Years, shooting forth new Stalks every Season, after the old ones are perished. This *Yellow* kind grows like the other *Fumitories*.



mitories, about a Foot and half high, with many Leaves, like unto the *Common purple kind*, or like to those of *Fumaria bulbosa*, or *Radix cava*, or *Holba-root*, but smaller, and of the same blewish green color with them. The Flowers are yellow, and in some places white, and grow at the tops of the Branches, like the other, in form of little Birds, as *Matthiolus* sets them forth, both by his Description and Figure: but *Lobel* and *Lugdunensis* say they are Star-fashion, like unto the *Chelidonium minus*, or *Pile-wort*; and yet both of them give *Matthiolus* his Figure, with the Flowers of *Common Fumitory*, like little Birds, and not Star-fashion, like those of *Pile-wort*. After the Flowers are past, small Horns come forth, or long Pods or Cods, like to the *Chelidonium majus* or *Radix cava*, but lesser; in which are contained small, whitish green Seed, somewhat round and flattish.

VIII. *The Places.* The first grows as well in Corn-fields, almost every where, as in Gardens also; and that with white Flowers in the Corn-fields in *Cornwall*: it grows in *Barley-fields*, and among other Grain; also in Vineyards, and other manured places. The second grows in many places in *Spain*, and about *Mompelier*, and other places of *France*. The third grows by Hedge-sides, and among Bushes in several places of *Brabant* in the *Low Countries*, and about *Frontignana* and *Mompelier* in *France*; it is found about *Naples* with a yellow Flower, as some report: and *Gerard* says these second and third kinds grow Wild in a Corn-field between *Charleton* and *Greenwich*; and very probably may be found in several other parts of this Kingdom. The fourth grows in hilly and mountainous places in *Italy*, as on the Hills of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, in the Kingdom of *Naples*, and in *Illyria*, and several other places: but with us it grows in Gardens.

IX. *The Times.* The first three flower from the beginning of *May*, and continue flowering thro' all the Summer Months; and their Seed ripens in the mean Season. But the fourth or *Yellow kind* begins to flower much later, viz. not till *August*, and its Seed ripens quickly after. This is also to be noted, That if you would gather *Fumitory* to dry or distil, it ought to be done whilst it is in flowering, and also in the prime of that time.

X. *The Qualities.* *Fumitory* is cold and dry in the first Degree; Aperitive, Absterfive, Cosmetick and Diuretick; Pectoral, Hepatick, Splenetick and Nephritick; a little Cathartick and Alexipharmick.

XI. *The Specification.* It is singular against all sorts of Scabs, Itch, Wheals, Pimples, Pushees, Scurff, Morphew, Tettars, Ringworms, Herpes and other Defecations of the Skin, arising from salt and sharp Humors. It provokes Urine, helps the Strangury, and opens all Obstructions of the Viscera.

XII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Syrup.* 4. *A Decoction in Water or Wine.* 5. *A Powder of the dried Herb.* 6. *A Collyrium.* 7. *A Cataplasm.* 8. *A distilled Water.* 9. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 10. *An Acid Tincture.* 11. *A Saline Tincture.* 12. *A Powder of the Seed.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XIII. *The liquid Juice.* It opens, cleanses and strengthens, being taken four or five Spoonfuls at a time in the Morning fasting, mixt with a Glass of White Port Wine. It purges a little downwards, but more especially if mixed with an Infusion of *Sena* in Wine. It opens all Obstructions of the

Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Reins and Womb; purifies the Blood from salt, cholerick or viscus Humors, which are the cause of Pimples, Wheals, Pushees, Tettars, Ringworms, Scurff, Morphew, Scabs, Itch, Leprosy, and the like Breakings out. After purging, it strengthens all the Viscera, not leaving any evil Quality behind it.

XIV. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues, but more efficacious, and is accounted a most safe Remedy against all the Diseases arising from the aforesaid Humors, as also from adust Choler and Melancholy, or from Obstructions, which are the cause of cholerick and putrid Fevers, the Jaundice, Strangury or Stoppage of Urine thro' Gravel, Sand or viscus Matter, all which it expels in abundance. Dose five or six Spoonfuls in White Wine or clarified Whey.

XV. *The Syrup.* Whether made of the Juice or green Herb, has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but is weaker in Operation, and therefore ought to be given mixt with a sufficient quantity of Syrup of *Damask Roses*, or Syrup of *Peach Blossoms*, or Tincture of *Sena*, &c. so given, it not only opens all Obstructions, but is very effectual against the Jaundice, Dropsy and Gout; and is a most singular thing against Hypochondriack Melancholy in any Person whatsoever.

XVI. *The Decoction in Water or Wine.* It has the Virtues of all the former Preparations, but is much weaker, and may be given in a Morning fasting to six or eight Ounces. If the Stomach is cold and weak, the Decoction ought to be made in Wine. It is an excellent thing against the Strangury, whether in Old or Young, and effectually cleanses the Reins and Urinary Parts.

XVII. *The Powder of the dried Herb.* A Dram of it being mixed with half a Dram of the Powder of *Esula Root*, and given in five or six Spoonfuls of the Essence or Juice, causes Vomiting and cleanses the Stomach and Bowels, both upwards and downwards, of cold, viscus and tough Humors; and effectually carries off watery Humors from all Parts of the Body; and has been found very effectual against the Dropsy, Scurvy, Jaundice, Gout and Rheumatism: but because this Medicine stirs up much Wind, it may be good to correct it with a few drops of Oil of *Anise* or *Fennel Seed*, or with the Powder of the same.

XVIII. *The Collyrium.* Take of the Juice or Essence of *Fumitory* three Ounces, distilled Water of *Fumitory*, Honey, of each one Ounce, mix them. It is an excellent thing against sore, inflamed, running and watery Eyes. A sore Mouth and Throat also being gargled therewith, it heals them. Dropt into the Eyes, it clears the Sight, and takes away the Redness and other Defects in them. If the Juice is mixed in equal parts with Juice of *Sharp-pointed Docks* and Wine Vinegar, and a contaminated Skin be washed therewith, it cures it of all sorts of Scabs, Itch, Wheals, Pimples, Pushees, Scurff, Morphew, &c. whether in the Face or Hands, or in any other Part of the Body.

XIX. *The Cataplasm.* It is an excellent thing being applied to simple and recent Contusions, dissolving the Tumor, and hindering a farther Afflux of Humors to the Part: and being applied to any Defecation of the Skin, it cleanses it, removes it, and quickly cures the same. Applied to the Gout in Hands or Feet, it eases the Pain, and hinders the farther Afflux of Humors to the Part.

XX. *The distilled Water.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, &c. but very much weaker, and may be used as a *Vehiculum*, to convey any of the other Preparations in, down into the Body. *Tragus* says it conduces much against the Plague, being taken with



with good *Venice Treacle*, driving forth the Malignity by Sweat. If the distilled Water be thus good in this Case, doubtless the Essence must much transcend it.

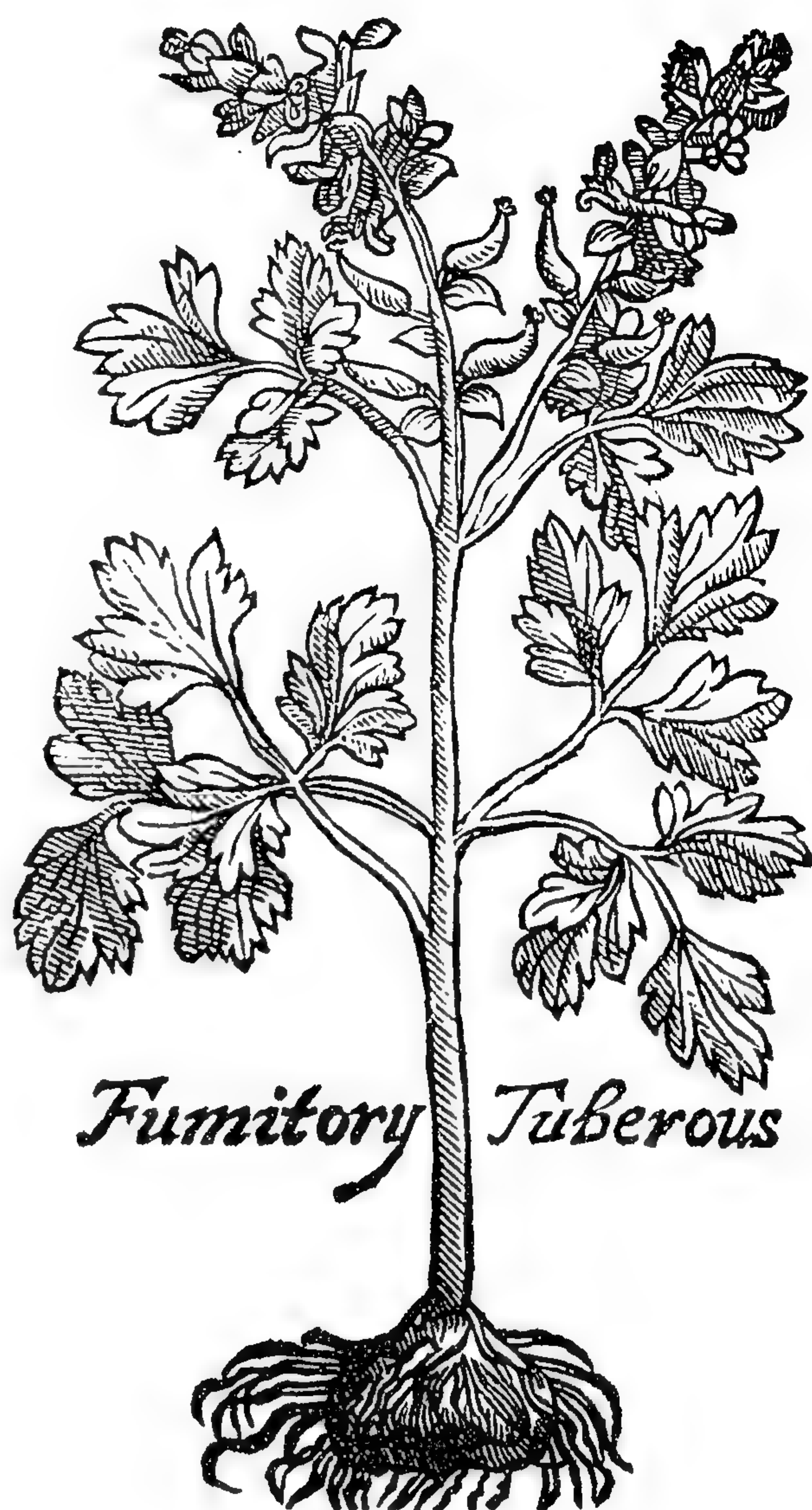
XXI. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is good against the Plague or Pestilence, as also against all malign and Pestilential Fevers, as Spotted Fever, Purples, Calenture, &c. and is an excellent thing against the Colick and Gripping of the Guts, whether in Young or Old. Dose two or three Drams in Canary or other fit Vehicle.

XXII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is an excellent Antiscorbutick, good against Vapors, Fits of the Mother, Hypochondriack Melancholy, and all those ill and sharp Humors which cause fiery Eruptions in the Skin. It corrects Crudities, strengthens the Stomach, causes a good Appetite and a strong Digestion. It is to be given in all the Patient drinks, whether Ale, Beer or Wine, so many drops at a time as may give the Liquor a grateful or pleasant Acidity; and so to be continued for some time.

XXIII. *The Saline Tincture.* It cures Scabs, Itch, Pimples, Scurff, Morpew, Leprosy, and other like Breakings out in the Skin, only by bathing or well washing the Parts affected therewith, as hot as can be conveniently endured, and continuing the Lotion for some considerable time.

XXIV. *The Pouder of the Seed.* It is stronger than the Pouder of the Herb, and is prevalent against the Dropsy, being given daily with about ten or twelve Grains of *Scammony* in Pouder: but the simple Pouder of the Seed being given to a Dram at a time for a Month together, every Morning fasting, and last at Night going to Bed, (in any fit Vehicle) it is said to cure such as are Melancholy: I believe, being given in an Infusion of *Sena*, it may do Wonders of that kind.

Stalk, which spreads it self out into several winged Leaves, two set together at a Joint, and variously divided, and so finally, that they almost resemble *Juniper* Leaves, of a blewish green color. The Flowers have several colors in them, but supposed of some to be but white: and the whole Plant is almost without either Taste or Smell.



## C H A P. CCCV.

### Of FUMITORY American.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Καμνός* *Indica*: in Latin, *Fumaria Indica*, *Fumaria Americana*: in English, *American Fumitory*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the second general Species of *Fumitory*, and contains the two following kinds, viz. 1. *Fumaria filiquosa Americana*, *Fumaria semper vivens Americana*, Indian or American Fumitory Coddled. 2. *Fumaria tuberosa Americana*, Indian or American tuberous Fumitory.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Coddled Indian, has a Root which is thick and fibrous, from whence rises up a Stalk to be about a Foot high or more: the Leaves are like the Common purple kind in the former Chapter, but larger, and enduring green all the Winter. The Flowers grow Spike-like on to the top of the Stalk, formed like to those of the *Radix cava* or *Hollow-root*, whose Bellies are Blush, and Mouths of a Gold color or paler yellow; which being passed away, long Pods or Cods come forth, which are almost round, and in which is contained the Seed, which is round, flat-tish and yellowish.

IV. *The second, or Tuberous American, has a Root which consists of two solid round parts, like Testicles, with several small Fibres springing therefrom, as well from their tops as sides and bottoms. From between these Tubers or Testicles rises up a*

V. *The Places.* The first grows in *Virginia*, and the back-parts thereof, called *Canada*: I found it also in several parts of *South Carolina*. The second grows in *America*, in the *Southern* Provinces of *Carolina*, in the up-land Country towards the Mountains.

VI. *The Times.* They flower from *May* during most of the Summer Months, and the Seed ripens in the mean Season.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with the Common purple *Fumitory* in the former Chapter, to which I refer you: but this is to be noted, That of these *American kinds*, the first is by much the more powerful; and as the whole Plant of this first *American* sort is much bitterer than the first or Common purple kind in the former Chapter, or indeed than any of the other sorts there described, so it is also by much the more effectual.

## C H A P. CCCVI.

### Of FUSS-BALLS,

OR,

### PUCK-FISTS.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Κεφαλή* *καλαί* *της* *γαιας*, *ἢ* *συμα*, *pl. φουματα γήινον*: in Latin, *Caput*, *pl. Capita Terra*, *Tuber*, *pl. Tubera Terra*.

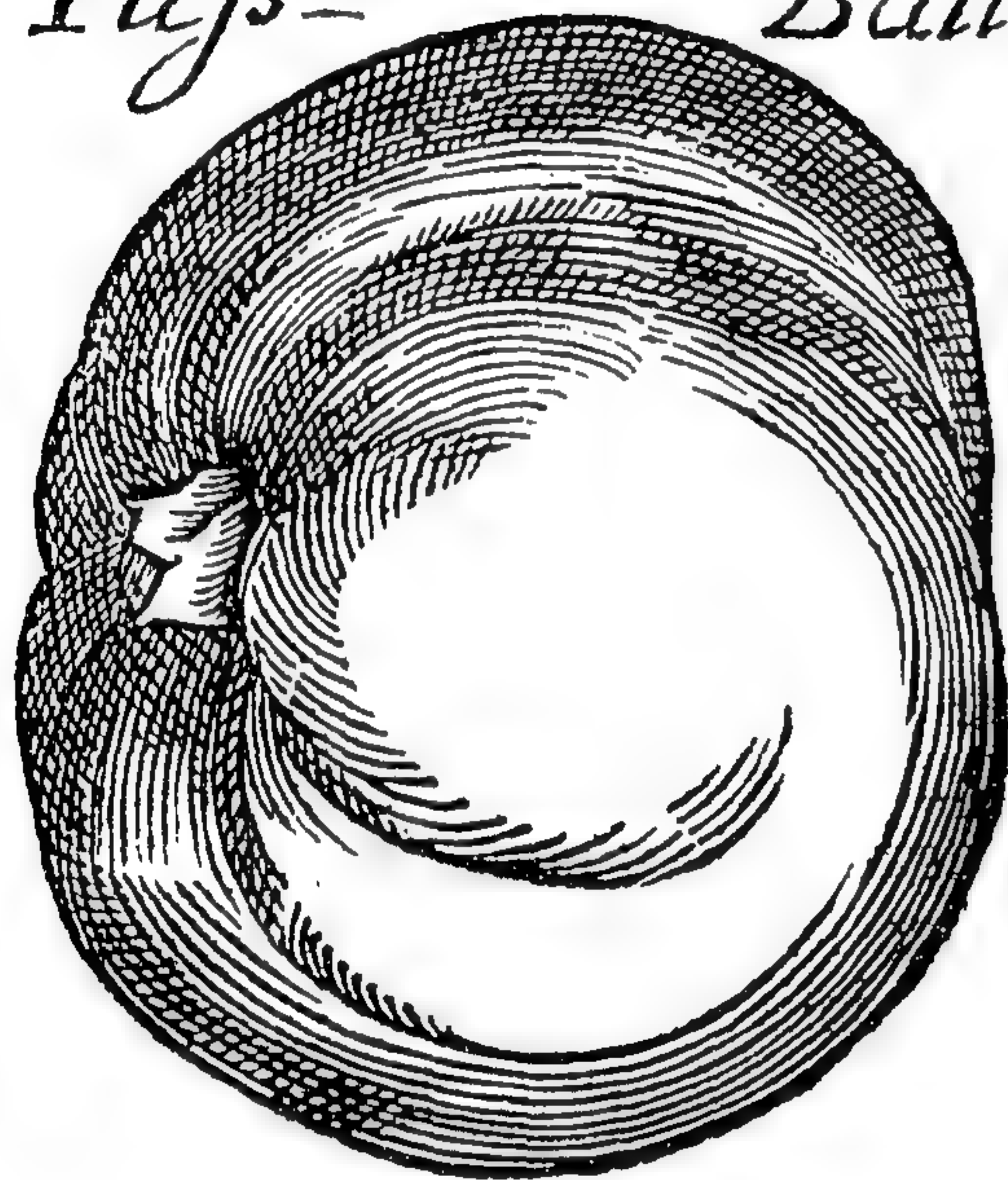


*Terra, Fungus Ovatus, Peziza Plinii, Lupi Crepi-  
tas*: in English, *Fuss-balls*, and *Puck-fists*, and *Fist-  
balls*, taken from the German Word, *Fist*, *quod Cre-  
pitum significat*.

II. *The Kinds*. This is a singular Plant of the  
kind, and differs from the *Earth-balls* in Chap. 238.  
aforegoing very much; for they have a solid Sub-  
stance or Pulp; whereas these are stuffed with no-  
thing but Dust.



*Fuss= Balls.*



III. *The Description*. They are round Balls,  
growing in the Ground, without any Appearance of  
Root or Stem, and are of several sizes, some of the  
Bigness of a Ball or Balloon, some as big as a large  
Cannon Shot, or a young Child's Head, more or less;  
they seem to be very round, smooth and whitish at  
their first rising, but grow in time to be of a dusky  
color, cracking in several places on the outside.  
These, while they are young and white, Children  
and School-boys, commonly in Sport, fling one at  
another; but when they come to their full Bigness  
and Ripeness, they contain within their Skin no-  
thing but a fine, soft, brown, dry Dust or Pouder,  
which, upon breaking of the Ball, is apt to fly all  
about.

IV. *The Places*. They grow in Vineyards plenti-  
fully, and in many dry Meadows and Fields, in fe-  
veral parts of this Kingdom: I have formerly found  
them in several Fields between *White Chappel* and  
*Bromly*, also in Fields near to *Stepney*, and other  
places adjacent.

V. *The Times*. Their growing time is in *March*,  
*April* and *May*, and they come to their just Mag-  
nitude and Maturity in *June*, *July* and *August*;  
after which, with much Wet, they rot and de-  
cay.

VI. *The Qualities*. It seems to be temperate in  
respect to Heat or Coldness, and dry in the second  
Degree.

VII. *The Specification*. It stanches Blood, dries  
up Fluxions and the Humidities of running Ulcers.

VIII. *The Preparations*. You may have there-  
from, 1. *A Pouder*. 2. *Pledgets made of the Balls*.

#### *The Virtues.*

IX. *The Pouder*. Being strewed thick and in  
good quantity upon any bleeding Wound, it stops  
the Blood presently: and being strewed upon any  
old moist Sore or running Ulcer, it dries up the  
Humidities of the said Sore or Ulcer; and being  
used for some time, it stops the Defluxion. If any  
of it should get into the Eyes, it would vehemently  
molest them, and possibly endanger the making the  
Party Blind: it cures also Gallings and Kibed  
Heels.

X. *Pledgets made of the Balls*. It is to be tyed  
round with Thread, and then pressed hard together  
in a Screw-Press, letting it lye there for some few  
days. This, when it comes to be imposed upon a  
Wound, it again dilates it self, and puts a stop to  
the Hæmorrhage or Flux of Blood. Than this,  
there is scarcely any thing to be named which can  
more powerfully and certainly do it; for it being  
of a Nature extremely dry and drying, as it will no  
way admit of the flowing forth of the Blood,  
(which those Medicaments do which are naturally  
moist, and therefore are less useful in stanching of  
Blood) so it will likewise subsist and stick fast in  
the Vessels. Applied also to moist and running  
Sores, and to Ulcers with an Afflux of Humors, it  
dries up the Humidity, and in a short time puts a  
stop to the Fluxion.

## C H A P. CCCVII.

### of G A R L I C K Garden.

I. *THE Names*. It is called by the *Arabians*,  
*Chaum*, and *Cairix*: in *Greek*, *Σκός*: in  
*Latin* *Allium*; and in *English* *Garlick*.

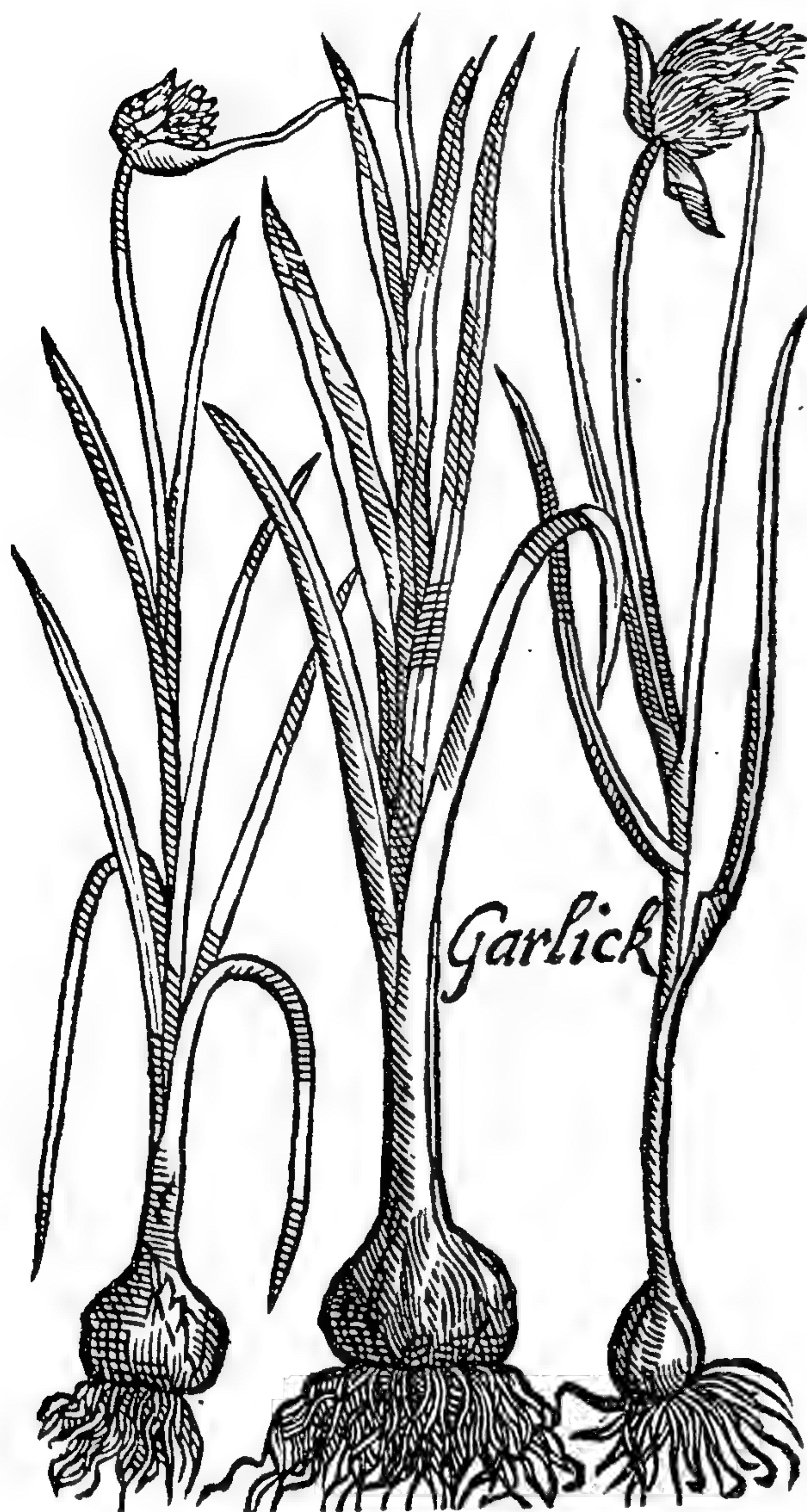
II. *The Kinds*. There are several Kinds of this  
Plant, viz. *Allium Hortense*, Garden Garlick, of  
which in this Chapter. 2. *Allium Anguinum*, seu  
*Viperinum*, Vipers Garlick, of which in Chap. 308.  
3. *Scorodoprassum*, Turkey, Mountain or Leek  
Garlick, of which in Chap. 309. 4. *Allium Sylve-  
stre*, Wild or Crow Garlick, of which in Chap. 310.  
5. *Moly*, Onion Garlick. 6. *Allium Latifolium Ur-  
sinum*, & *Anguinum*, Ramsons, or Bears and Snakes  
Garlick; of which two last in their proper pla-  
ces.

III. *Of the Garden sort*. There are two Species,  
viz. *Allium Hortense commune*, Common Garden  
Garlick. 2. *Allium Hortense minus*, The lesser  
Garden Garlick.

IV. *The Descriptions*. The first, Greater or  
Common Garden kind, has a bulbous Root, which is  
covered with very thin Skins or Films, of a White  
and Purplish color, and consists of many Cloves, se-  
parated one from another, under which in the ground  
below, grows a Tassel of Thready Fibres; these Cloves  
are of a very strong Smell and Taste, very much ex-  
ceeding Onions or Leeks, and serve to set again for  
a new encrease. From this Root spring up long  
green Leaves, almost like unto Onions, but much  
larger or broader, not hollow at all, as those of O-  
nions are, but solid like those of Leeks. Among  
these Leaves rises up a Stalk, at the end of the se-  
cond or third Year about three Feet high, on the



top of which does grow, a Tuft of purplish Flowers, not much unlike those of Onions or Leeks, covered with a white Skin; in which being broken, when it is Ripe, there is found round, black Seed, like to that of Leeks.



V. *The second, or lesser Garden kind, in its Root, as to its Cloves and its Stalk, Leaves, and manner of growing, it much resembles the former greater kind: But the Cloves of the Roots are smaller and redder; and the Flower is of a more dark or dusky Color than the first above described.*

VI. *The Places.* They both grow in Gardens with us in England: But the lesser has been found to grow Wild in some places of France and Germany.

VII. *The Times.* They are seldom sown of Seed, but the Cloves are planted in November and December, and sometimes in February and March. They Flower in the Summer Months, as June and July; and the Seed is ripe in August, or some short time after the flowering.

VIII. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the fourth Degree: Aperitive, Absterfve, Attractive, Carminative, Digestive, Discussive, Anodyn, and Suppurative. It is Stomack, Pectoral, Nephritick and Arthritick: Ptarmick, Emmenagogick, Sudorifick, and Alexipharmick.

IX. *The Specification.* It is good against Plague, Poyson, and biting of all sorts of venomous Creatures; it Cures Coughs, Asthma's, Strangury, Dropfic, and Gout, and powerfully provokes the Terms in Women.

X. *The Preparations.* You may prepare therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An Infusion or Decoction. 4. An Oil by Collion or Infolation. 5. An Ointment. 6. A Cataplasm. 7. A distilled Water. 8. An Acid Tincture. 9. A saline Tincture. 10. An Oily Tincture. 11. A Spirit. 12. An Elixir.

#### The Vertues.

XI. *The Liquid Juice.* Being snuft up the Nostrils, it is an excellent Errhine, and purges the Head and Brain admirably; freeing it from cold, raw, pituitous and viscous Humors; is good against the Lethargy, and eases all pains of the Head proceeding from a cold and moist Cause. A Spoonful or two, being taken inwardly in a Glass of White Port Wine, it kills Worms in the Bodies of Man, Woman or Child, Dropt into the Ears, it eases their Pains, and ripens and breaks Apostemations therein.

XII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, besides which, it provokes Urine, and the Terms in Women; and being given to two or three Spoonfuls in a Glass of Wine, or some of its own distilled Water, it prevails against the bitings of Mad Dogs, Rattle Snakes, Vipers, Spiders, the stinging of Scorpions, &c. fortifying the Heart against the Poyson, and expelling it by Sweating. It expels gross, raw, tough and viscous Humors out of the Stomach, Lungs, Bowels and other Viscera: It expels Wind, opens all Obstructions of Lungs, Liver, Spleen, Womb and Reins; provokes Urine powerfully, helps against the Strangury, carries off the Watery Humors which cause them. It expels Poyson which has been taken inwardly in Meat, Drink or Wine, for in its own nature, it resists all manner of Poysons. It clears the Voice, takes away Hoarseness, Cures an old Cough, and is of excellent use against Asthma's, shortness of Breath, difficulty of breathing, causing an expectoration of the Morbifick Matter. Held in the Mouth, it is good against the Toothach, and dropt into the Ears, it helps against Deafness, and difficulty of hearing. It is good against the Plague or Pestilence, Spotted, and all other Malign or Pestilential Diseases: Facilitates the delivery of Women in Child-birth, forces away the Dead Child, and drives forth the After-birth.

XIII. *The Infusion or Decoction, in Wine, Water, Broth or Milk.* It has all the former Virtues both of Juice and Essence, but less efficacious or powerful, and therefore ought to be given to five, six, or eight Ounces at a time, and that two or three times a day, according as you see the occasion may require.

XIV. *The Oil by Collion.* It is healing and comforting, and therefore may be applied to all cold and moist affections of any part, as Pains, Aches, Lameness, Numbness, besides which, it corroborates or strengthens the Tone of the part, making it able to resist any Fluxion of humors: Anointed on the Head in a Megrim or Cephalœa, from a cold Cause, it gives much relief.

XV. *The Ointment.* It has all the Virtues of the former Oil, and being mixed with Sulphur and Rosin in fine Powder, and applied to putrid and corrupt Ulcers which breed Worms, it kills them, it dissolves strumous Swellings, draws forth the evil humors in Fistula's, and causes them to heal; and anointed upon Lousie Heads, it kills Lice and Nits; and if affected with a Scab or Scald, it dries up the moist Humors, and in a little time heals it: It is also good against Scurff, Dandriff, and falling of the Hair; eases Pains from a cold Cause, and gives relief in the Gout.

XVI. *The Cataplasm made of the green Root.* Being immediately applied to the biting of a Mad Dogs or of a Rattle Snake, Viper, Slow Worm, or other Serpent, the stinging of Scorpions, or of any Venomous Creature, it infallibly attracts to, and draws forth all the Poyson or Venom; and this it does



does so powerfully by reason of its Vehement attractive force, that it perfectly frees the Patient from all manner of Danger. But this will be the more effectually done, if at the same time, the Patient being laid in his Bed takes also a large Dose of the Juice or Essence; and so Sweats upon it. Laid upon a Gout or Sciatica, from what Cause soever, and often renewed, as occasion requires, it draws forth the whole Morbifick Cause and Essence of the Disease; in which Distempers it performs more than most other Vegetables, reputed the most efficacious; it not only eases the Pain at present, but it has made any steps to the Stomach, or has indeed affected it, it recalls back the Humor, and draws it forth thro' the Pores of the Skin. Applied to any place in which there is any Prick, Splinter, Thorn, Bullet, Shot, bits of broken Bones, it powerfully loosens them, attracts and draws them forth. Being applied to any Plague Sore, Bubo, Phlegmon, or other Tumor which is possible to come to Suppuration, it adds Heat, bringing on the Maturation, to Admiration; and after it is broken, being yet applied, it draws forth all the Malignity and Poison of the Plague in a Pestilential Bubo, and in other Apoplexies, the putrid and other offending Matter which repleats them.

XVII. *The distilled Water.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, Essence and Decoction, but in a much inferior degree, and therefore may be used as a *Vehiculum* to convey those Medicines in, to such Persons, and in such Constitutions where Wine would be too hot. But as this Water is drawn off from a very hot, subtil and spirituous Root, full of a volatile Salt, so it contains more of Life, Flame and Spirit in it, than is in most other simple and cold distilled Waters.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* This is more powerfully against the Plague and all pestilential and contagious Distempers than any of the former internal Preparations; for this destroys the Essence of the Poison and Malignity in its Root; and is of great Force and Efficacy against the Bitings of Serpents, mad Dogs, and other venomous Creatures. Dose sixty Drops at a time, two or three times a day, in any proper Vehicle.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture.* Anointed upon any Part full of Aches or Pains from a cold and moist Cause, it gives present ease: it is also good against the Wounds or Punctures of the Nerves and Tendons, for it presently eases the Pain, prevents Convulsions, and induces a speedy Cure. Anointed down the Back-bone, and upon the Parts affected with Trembling, Numbness, Palsies and Convulsions, it suddenly gives Relief, and in a short time after a perfect Cure, if the Medicine is well rubbed into the Parts afflicted for almost half an hour, twice a day, and is continued in like manner for some considerable time, provided the Inveteracy of the Disease, Weakness, and great Age of the Patient hinders not.

XX. *The Saline Tincture.* It is good against Worms in the Skin, Lentils, Freckles, Pimples, and other Breakings out: it kills Lice and Nits in the Head and Hair; and is singular against Tettars, Ringworms, Herpes, Scabbiness, Scurff, Morpew, Black and Blewness of the Skin left after Contusions, the Leprosy, running Ulcers of the Head, commonly called a Scald Head, and all other Manginess whatsoever, the Parts affected being well bathed therewith twice a day.

XXI. *The Spirit.* It is very subtil and full of volatile Particles; of extraordinary Use against fainting and swooning Hysterick Fits, Vapors, Obstructions of the Lungs, Coughs, Colds, Surfeitings, Colicks and Convulsions of the Bowels: it expels

Wind, eases Gripping, heals Excoriations of the Guts, and very much facilitates the Delivery of Women in Labor, forcing away both Birth and After-birth. Dose from two Drams to four in any fit Vehicle.

XXII. *The Elixir.* It has all the Virtues of the Spirit, but more subtil and powerful to all the same Intentions; and may be given twice a day, viz. Morning and Night, or thrice a day, according as the Case may require. Dose half an Ounce, more or less, in any proper Vehicle. It is said to be a Specifick against Jaundice and Dropsy; as also against an inveterate Wheezing and Hoarseness.

## C H A P. CCCVIII.

### Of G A R L I C K Vipers.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek*, *Ὠφιοσκόρδον*, *ἢ Ὠφιοσκόρδον*; in *Latin*, *Ophioscorodum*, *Allium Anguinum*, *Allium Viperinum*: in *English*, *Vipers Garlick*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the second Species of *Garlick*, and is a singular Plant of the kind; called by some Authors, *Scorodoprassum convoluto Capite*, *Leek Garlick*, with a bulbed and twining Head.

III. *The Description.* It has a great and white Root, consisting of many Cloves, much like to Garden Garlick, which smell less strong than Garlick, or partaking somewhat of Leeks, whence came the latter Name of *Scorodoprassum*, as *Dioscorides* says. From this Root springs up a Stalk, three or four Feet high, and sometimes higher, according as the Soil is in Goodness: it has also many Leaves, larger much than those of *Common Garden Garlick*, and almost like those of *Leeks*, which grow from the bottom of the Stalk to the middle thereof, having a Smell between that of *Leeks* and that of *Garlick*. The rest of the Stalk is naked, green, smooth and almost shining, having at the top thereof a large Head, composed of many Bulbs, (not much unlike to the *Indian Moly*) covered with a whitish thin Skin, ending in a long green Point, which grows above it, growing smaller and smaller to the end: which Skin, by the Growth of the Bulbs, being broken, they shew themselves at the first of a purplish color, but afterwards, as they grow riper, of a whitish color; among which are also some Flowers. The Head, with the top of the Stalk, at the first, does wind or twine it self so, that in some sort it represents a Viper, Snake or Serpent; which, when the Bulbs grow to Ripeness, does by little and little untwine it self again, and bears its Head upright.

IV. *The Places.* It grows with us only in Gardens, and is the *Allium Sativum vel Hortense* *Dioscoridis*, and the *Scorodoprassum secundum Clusii*: it is more ready to part into Cloves than the *Common Garden Garlick*; and by planting the same, it is increased.

V. *The Times.* It flowers in *June* and *July*, and the Seed ripens not long after.

VI. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues*, are the same with those of the *Common Garlick*.



## C H A P. CCCIX.

## Of GARLICK Leek,

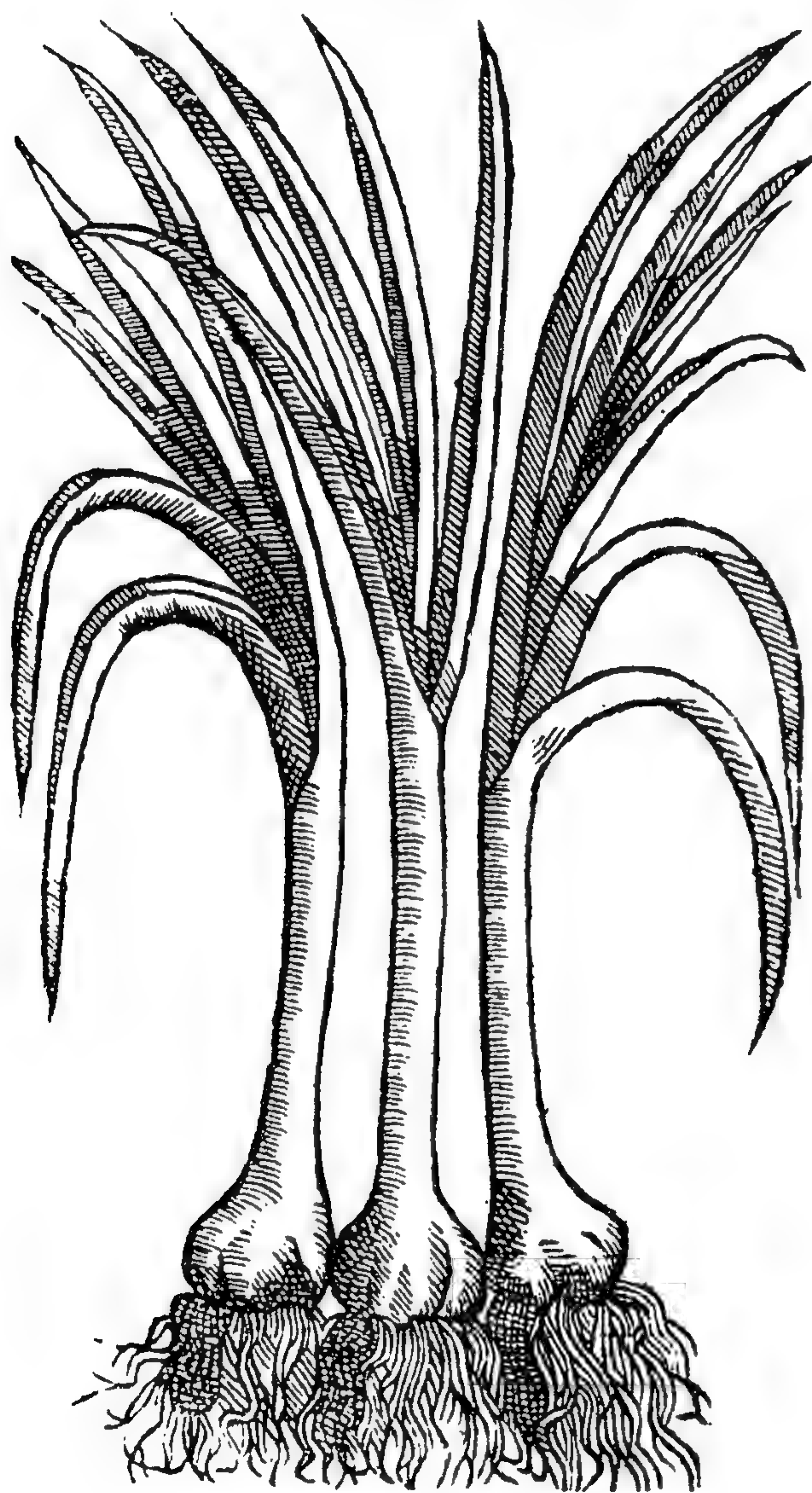
O R,

## Turkey or Mountain GARLICK.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Σκορδοπερατον*: in Latin, *Scorodoprasum*; and in English, Leek Garlick, Turkey Garlick, and Mountain Garlick.

II. The Kinds. There are three sorts hereof, viz. 1. *Scorodoprasum majus*, Greater Leek Garlick, or Turkey Garlick. 2. *Scorodoprasum magnum*, seu *primum Clusii*, vel *alterum Lobelii*, The Great Leek Garlick, or Turkey Garlick. 3. *Scorodoprasum minus*, The lesser Leek-leav'd Garlick; but this is called by Parkinson, Great Turkey Garlick.

## Greater Leek-Garlick.



III. The Descriptions. The first, or Greater Leek Garlick, has a bulbous Root, of the Bigness of a great Onion; from whence rise long and broad Leaves, like those of Leeks, but much greater and longer, embracing or clasping about a great thick Stalk, soft and full of Juice, bigger than a Man's Finger, and bare towards the top; upon which is set a great Head, larger than a Tennis-Ball, covered with a Skin, after the manner of an Onion. This Skin, when it comes to Perfection, breaks and discovers a great multitude of Flowers, which are whitish: they being past, black Seeds follow, inclosed in a triangular Husk. The whole Plant smells very strong, like unto Garlick, and is in shew a Leek, upon which it was called *Scorodoprasum*, Garlick Leek, or Leek Garlick, participating both of the Garlick and Leek, or rather a degenerate Garlick, grown out of Form.

IV. The second, or Great Leek Garlick, has a great white bulbous Root, and almost transparent, at least shining, seldom giving Off-sets for Encrease. From this Root shoot forth several great long Leaves, much bigger than the Common Garlick, and after several Years abiding, there springs up a great long Stalk, three or four Feet high, with some lesser Leaves thereon, and is naked from the middle up to the top, where it bears a large Tuft of Flowers, enclosed at first in a thin Skin, and of a paler color than those of *Homer's Moly*, or rather whitish: which being passed away, three-square Husks, with blackish Seed, like the other, succeed.

V. The third, or Lesser Leek Garlick, has a Root which is set about with longer and slenderer Bulbs, which are enclosed in brownish Skins, looser and more scaly. The Leaves and Flowers are alike, yet smaller than Garlick: and the whole Plant is lesser in all the parts than the former.

VI. The Places. They are Natives of Turkey, and grow about Constantinople; but with us they grow and are nursed up in Gardens only.

VII. The Times. They flower in June and July, and perfect their Seed not long after, or in August.

VIII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues of these Plants, are the same with those of Garlick in Chap. 307. foregoing; but they are much less efficacious than Garlick, as being in a middle degree between Garlick and Leeks, and so partake of both their Tempers and Qualities: they attenuate and incide gross and tough Flegm, and other viscous Humors, and thereby cause easy Expectoration.

## C H A P. CCCX.

## Of GARLICK Crows,

O R,

## Wild GARLICK.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Σκορδοφυλλον*, or *σκορδοφυλλον αγριον*: in Latin, *Allium sylvestre*, *Allium sylvestre tenuifolium*: in English, Wild Garlick, and Crows Garlick.

II. The Kinds. It is the fourth Species of Garlick afore-mentioned in Chap. 307. Sect. 2. Parkinson makes two several kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Allium sylvestre durifolium*, Hard-leav'd Crow Garlick. 2. *Allium sylvestre laevifolium*, Soft-leav'd Crow Garlick.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Hard-leav'd, has a Root with a small Bulb or round Head, long withal, and covered with three several Coats or Peelings, being white on the outside, not bigger than a small Hasle-Nut, without any Cloves at all, having at the bottom thereof a Knot of Fibres or Strings. From this Root spring up small, hard, tough Leaves, almost like unto Rushes, smooth, and hollow within; among which grows up a naked Stalk, round, solid, hard and slippery or smooth, bearing on the top thereof a Tuft of purplish Flowers, which being gone, small blackish Seed follows, made up in a round Cluster, like small Kernels, having the Smell and Taste of Garlick.

IV. The second, or Soft-leav'd, has a long round Root,



Root, in shape like the former, but of the three several Coats, the outwardmost is reddish, and is increased by Off-sets, yet is not parted into Cloves, as the Garden Garlick is. The Plant is of such a strong Garlick Smell, that the Milk of Cows which feed thereof will taste of it. From this Root spring up several narrow Leaves, and long, like *Grass*, softer than the former, and nothing near so stiff; and among these Leaves rise up one or two slender bare Stalks, not so hard and stiff as the first, but bearing at their tops, like Tufts of purplish Flowers, and blackish Seed.

V. *The Places.* Crow Garlick grows in fertile Pastures thro' all England: Gerard found it plentifully in Fields on the backside of *Islington* near London: and I found it in several places by the Way-side, in those Fields or Pastures beyond *Islington*, leading to the *Boarded-River*, or *Hornsey-Wood*.

VI. *The Times.* They spring up in April and May; flower in June and July, and their Seed is ripe in August.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of these, are the same with those of the Common Garden Garlick in Chap. 307. foregoing: but *Galen* says, That Crow Garlick is stronger, and of more Force than the Garden. I can say little to this Opinion of *Galen's*; but this I know, That being bruised and infused in White *Lisbon* or Port Wine, and being drank, it provokes Urine powerfully, gives present Ease in the Strangury, and is said to break the Stone, and drive it out; but this is to be understood when it is made of a friable gritty Substance, not when it is hard and solid, like a Flint. The Leaves of both sorts are gathered and cut or stampd and eaten by several People for Sawce, as we eat green Sawce made with *Sorrel*: and some People, which love Garlick or strong Onions, will eat their Roots in April and May, with fresh Butter and Bread, or new Cheese, just as we eat young Onions in the Spring.

C H A P. CCCXI.

Of GENTIAN Great,  
O R,  
Great FELWORT.

I. *THE Names.* This Plant is called in Arabic, *Gentiana seu Genthiana*: in Greek, Γεντιανη: in Latin, *Gentiana*; and in English, Baldmoney, Baldmoyn, Bitterwort, Felwort, and Gentian. It was called Gentian from *Gentius*, King of Illyria, who was the first Finder of it out, and the first who used it in Physick, and so called it *Gentiana*, after his own Name.

II. *The Kinds.* There are two generick Species of this Plant, viz. 1. Γεντιανη μεγάλη, *Gentiana magnus vel major*, The great or Greater Gentian, of which in this Chapter. 2. Γεντιανη μικρή, *Gentiana parva vel minor*, The lesser Gentian, of which in the next Chapter.

III. *The Kinds of the Greater.* It is, 1. *Gentiana major flore purpureo*, Great purple Gentian. 2. *Gentiana major flore flavo*, Great Gentian with a yellow Flower. 3. *Gentiana major folio Asclepiadis*, Great Swallow-wort Gentian. 4. *Gentiana*

major *Concava*, Great Concave or Hollow Gentian, or English Gentian. There are three other Species of Great Gentians, as, *Flore albo*, White-flowered; *Flore pallido punctato*, Pale yellow-spotted; *Flore ceruleo*, Blew-flowered; all which differ nothing in Root, Stalk, Leaf, Magnitude or Manner of Growing from the first Purple kind, but only in the Color of the Flowers; but by reason they are not so usually found in our Gardens as the other kinds, we shall say no more of them in this place.

Greater Purple Gentian,  
A N D  
Greater Yellow Gentian.



IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Great purple Gentian, is very like to the next Great yellow Gentian in most things, having a great, thick, brownish yellow Root, divided into two or three great Branches, with great Fibres adjoining to them, but a little more hard and woody, of a very bitter Taste, like the other Gentians, which sends forth at the several Heads thereof many fair, broad, three-ribbed, dark, green, shining Leaves, so like unto the following, that it is somewhat hard to distinguish them: many of these Heads among the Leaves shoot forth thick and strong Stalks, three or four Feet high, with several Joints on them, and two Leaves at them, one against another: towards the tops whereof come forth the Flowers, encompassing the Stalks at two or three of the uppermost Joints, with two Leaves apiece under them, like as in the following, which are not laid open Star-fashion, like the Yellow, but keep close and hollow, the brims being only divided into six or more round parts, of a purple color, but paler at the bottom, where they are spotted with purple Spots on the inside, having so many yellowish Threads in the middle as the Flower has corners, standing about a long, green, forked Head, which growing ripe, is the Seed-Vessel, and contains therein such like flat brownish Seed as in the Yellow kind, but somewhat less.



V. *The second, or Great Gentian with a yellow Flower, has a Root which is great, thick and long, yellow, and very bitter. From this Root rises up at first a long, round and pointed Head of Leaves, closing one another, which, after opening themselves, lie upon the Ground, and are fair, long and broad, somewhat plaited or ribbed, like unto the Leaves of White Hellebor, but not so fairly or eminently plaited, nor so stiff, but rather resembling the Leaves of a Great Plantane: from among which rises up a stiff round Stalk, three Feet or more high, and full of Joints, having two such Leaves, but narrower, and smaller at every Joint, so encompassing the Stalk at their lower ends, that they will almost hold Water, if it falls upon them. From the middle of the Stalk to the top it is garnished with many Coronets or Rudles of Flowers, with two such green Leaves likewise at every Joint, and wherein the Flowers do stand, which are yellow, and when laid open like Stars, rising out of small greenish Husks, with some Threads in their middle, but having no Smell at all, yet stately to behold, as well for the Order as for the Height and Proportion of the Plant. The Seed is brown and flat, contained in round Heads, somewhat like unto the Seed of the Fritillary or Chequered Diffodil, but browner.*

*Swallow-wort Gentian.*



VI. *The third, or Great Swallow-wort Gentian, has Roots, but they are nothing so large as the former, but are yellow, small and long, of the Bigness of a Man's Thumb: from this Root spring forth many Stalks, about two Feet high; on which grow many fair, pale, green Leaves, set by couples, with three Ribs in every one of them, resembling somewhat the Leaves of Asclepias or Swallow-wort, which is broad at bottom and sharp at the point. The Flowers grow at the several Joints of the Stalks from the middle upwards, two or three together, which are long and hollow, like unto a Bell-flower, ending in five Corners, or pointed Leaves, and folded before they are open, as the Flowers of the Bindweeds are, of a fair blew color, sometimes deeper, and sometimes paler. The Heads or Seed-Vessels have two Points*

or Horns at the top, and contain within them flat greyish Seed, like unto the former, but lesser.

VII. *The fourth, or Great Concave Gentian, or English Gentian, has many long tough Roots, dispersed hither and thither under the upper Crust of the Earth, with some few Fibres adjoining thereto: from which spring immediately a fat thick Stalk, jointed or kneed by certain Distances, set at every Knot or Joint with one Leaf, and sometimes more, keeping no certain number: which Leaves do at the first enclose the Stalk round about, being one whole and entire Leaf, without any Incisure at all, as it were a hollow Trunk; which, after it is come to its full Growth, breaks on one side or other, where it is thinnest, tenderest and weakest, and becomes a flat ribbed Leaf, like unto the Great yellow Gentian or Plantane aforegoing. The Flowers come forth from the Bosoms of the upper Leaves, set upon tender Foot-stalks, in shape like those of the Small Bindweed, or rather the Flowers of Soapwort, of a whitish color, and toucht about the brims with a little light Carnation; which being past away, the Seed follows, contained in little Cods or Seed-Vessels.*

VIII. *The Places.* The first three grow on mountainous places in Germany; but with us, are only nursed up in Gardens; of which the second or Yellow-flowered is the most usual or common. The fourth or English kind, Gerard says he found in a small Grove of a Wood, called the Spinie, near to Lickbarrow, a small Village in Northamptonshire.

IX. *The Times.* All the first three flower for the most part in June, and in part of July, bringing forth their Seed in August. The fourth springs out of the Ground in April; flowers in the end of July and beginning of August, and perfects its Seed in the end of that Month, or beginning of September.

X. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with those of the Small Gentians in the next Chapter, and thither we refer you.

## C H A P. C C C X I I .

### Of G E N T I A N Small,

O R,

### Small F E L W O R T .

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek, *Gentiana*; in Latin, *Gentiana minor*, *five* *Gentianella*; and in English, *Small or Lesser Gentian*, or the *Lesser Felwort*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three generick kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Gentiana minor*, *seu* *Gentianella vernalis*, The Spring Gentian. 2. *Gentiana minor*, *seu* *Gentianella aestiva*, Small Summer Gentian. 3. *Gentiana minor*, *seu* *Gentianella autumnalis*, Small Autumn Gentian. Of each of these three generick kinds, there are several Species; all of which, it is not our Business to declare in this Work, and therefore we shall only discourse of so many of them as either grow Wild with us, or are to be met withal in our Gardens, and that in the following order.

III. *The various Species.* Of the first or Spring kind, we have these, viz. 1. *Gentianella verna latifolia*, Broad-leav'd Gentian of the Spring. 2. *Gentiana verna angustifolia*, Narrow-leav'd Gentian of the



the Spring. 3. *Gentianella minor Verna*, The smaller Spring Gentian. Of the Summer Kind we have these, viz. 4. *Gentiana minor Crucata*, also *Crucata*, Crosswort, also the lesser Crosswort Gentian. 5. *Gentiana minor, seu Gentianella caerulea punctata Pennai*, Pennys blew spotted Gentian. 6. *Gentiana Anglica pallida punctis distincta*, An English Gentian, which we here place among the smaller Gentians, tho' *Clusius* has enumerated it among the Greater Gentians, but according to its magnitude, it cannot be said to be either a Great or a Small Gentian, but a medium between them both, as is that also of *Penna*, but being both Summer Gentians, we thought good to put them both in this Classis. Of the Autumn Kinds we have these, viz. 7. *Pneumonanthe, Gentiana Autumnalis*, Calathian Violet, or Autumn Gentian. 8. *Gentianella Autumnalis Centaurea minoris folijs*, *Gentianella fugax minor Gerardi*, Autumn Gentian with Small Centory Leaves, Bastard or Dwarf Autumn Gentian of Gerard. 9. *Gentiana fugax Clusij*, *Gentiana decima Clusij*, Small Autumn Gentian, simply so called.

IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Broad Leav'd Gentian of the Spring, has a small yellowish creeping Fibrous Root, from which spring up Leaves pretty large and green, broader than those of the Third Kind following, being about two Inches long, and one Inch broad, and somewhat round pointed, with three Veins or Ribs running through them, as the others have; the Stalk rising from the middle of these Leaves grows about four Inches high, or something better, with a small Leaf or two thereon, bearing at the head or top thereof a large Husk, sustained by two small and long Leaves, from the middle of which shoots forth a very large and great hollow blew Flower, ending in five small points.

V. The second, or Narrow Leav'd Spring Gentian, has a Root which is long and slender, spreading it self much under the Ground, and of a yellowish color, from which spring many Heads of several small, long, and narrow Leaves set together, somewhat longer than the next which follows; from some of these Heads, which Flower not in one and the same Year, those Flowering the Year following which Flowered not the Year before, and those which Flowered the Year before not Flowering again the next Year after) rises up a small slender Stalk, somewhat higher than the former, bearing thereon two such like small Leaves at a Joint, and at the top one Flower, for the most part, (seldom more, unless the Stalk is branched) much smaller than the last, narrow, long, and hollow, like a Hose or Husk, of one entire Leaf at the lower part, but ending above in five Corners, or small pointed Leaves, laid open like a Star, having small pieces of Leaves, like, as it were, Ears, set at the bottom of the divisions of them, both of them of a perfect blew color, but not so deep as the former, having a white Line in the middle of each of them, and the Ground, or bottom of the Flower, whitish also, with a few threads standing about a small head, not to be seen until the Flower be almost or fully past, unless one open it, which, after it is ripe, or full blown, is small and long, containing very small brownish Seed.

VI. The third, or Smaller Spring Gentian, has a Root consisting of small, long, pale, yellow Strings, which shoot forth here and there divers heads of Leaves, and thereby increases reasonably well, if it grows in a fit place, or is nurs'd up in good Ground, (otherwise it will scarcely grow with all the Care and Diligence imaginable.) From this Root spring several small hard green Leaves, lying upon the Ground, as it were in Heads or Tufts, somewhat broad below, and pointed at the end, with five Veins or Ribs

therein, as conspicuous as in the former Gentians; among which rises up a small short Stalk, with some smaller Leaves thereon, at the top whereof stands one fair, large, hollow Flower, made Bell fashion, with wide open Brims, and ending in five Corners or Divisions, of the most excellent deep blew color that can be seen in any Flower, with some white spots in the bottom on the inside; after the Flower is past, long and round Pods or Cods do appear, in which are contained small blackish Seed; the whole Plant is bitter, but not so strong by much as the former.

Crosswort Gentian.



VII. The fourth, or Crosswort Gentian, has Roots which are small and whitish, dispersing themselves many ways in the Ground, of as bitter a taste almost as the rest. From this Root rises up many Branches, which lye upon the Earth, scarcely lifting themselves upright, and are full of Joints, at which grow usually two Leaves, one opposite unto another, in manner of a Cross, from whence it took its Name, in shape very like unto *Saponaria*, or *Soapwort*, but shorter, and of a darker green color; at the tops of the Stalks stand many Flowers thick thrust together, almost like *Sweet Williams*, and likewise at the next Joint underneath, every one of them standing in a dark green Husk, and consisting of five small Leaves, the points or ends of which only appear above the Husks in which they stand, and are hardly to be seen, but that they are of a fine pale blew color, and that many grow together; the Seed is small and brown, hard, and somewhat like unto the Seed of the *Marian Violet*, or *Coventry Bells*.

VIII. The fifth, or Pennys blew spotted Gentian, has a Root which is small and yellow, with many Fibres adjoining to it, from which springs up a jointed Stalk about half a yard high, somewhat reddish towards the bottom next to the Root, with two Leaves, like to the Great Gentian, set at each Joint, but much smaller, and with more Veins or Ribs therein than it, standing each upon a reddish footstalk, greater below than those above, where they do in a manner encompass the Stalk. From the middle of the Stalk upwards come forth the Flowers at the Joints, with the Leaves,



on both sides of the Stalk, three for the most part standing together, except the uppermost of all, where they stand five together, each of them with a short Footstalk under them, consisting of five small sharp pointed Leaves, spread like a Star, of a pale blew color, finely spotted, with many small black specks on the inside, having a small umbone in the middle, and five small Threads tipt with yellow standing about it; the Seed, which follows the Flowers, is small, and enclosed in such Heads or Husks as the *Gentians* usually have.

*English Gentian Small.*



IX. The sixth, or English Gentian, has, according to Clusius, a small Root, replenished with a few Fibres or Strings, of a yellowish color, from which rises up a round stiff Stalk, or Stalks, firm and solid, somewhat reddish at bottom, and jointed or kneed somewhat like unto Crosswort Gentian; the Leaves are broad, smooth, and full of Ribs or Sinews, set about the Stalk by couples, one opposite against another; the Flowers grow upon small slender Stalks, composed of five slender blewish Leaves, very curiously spotted, with many black Spots and small little Lines, having in the midst five small Chives, which passing away, give Seed small like Sand.

X. The seventh, or Autumn Gentian, called the Calathian Violet, has a Root which is small, long, and manifold, running down for the most part deeper into the Ground than most of the former, which Gerard says perishes after it has perfected its Seed, springing up again from the falling of its Seed, which is a mistake, and is rectified by Parkinson, for the Root is truly a stringy, and somewhat creeping, (tho' deep in the Earth) and living Root, abiding after Seed time, and not perishing as the rest; it rises up sometimes with more and sometimes with fewer Stalks, sometimes they also rise higher, as to be two Feet high, and sometimes not above a Foot high, according to the Fertility of the Soil, of a brownish green color, having many long and narrow dark green Leaves, set by couples on them up to the tops, which seldom branch forth, but bear every

one of them a reasonable large Flower, which is hollow, and larger than any other of the *Autumnals*, and is in most of a very deep blewish purple color, but in some a little paler, and ending in five points or corners.

*Small Autumn Gentian,  
Calathian Violet,  
Or  
Autumn Bell Flower.*



XI. The eighth, or Autumn Gentian with small Centory Leaves, has a Root which is small, striking down into the Ground, with several Fibres adjoining to it, from which spring up several Stalks, not a Foot high, divided into several small Branches, on which stand two small Leaves together, as is usual in all the *Gentians*, very like unto those of the Lesser Centory, which are not so long as the former, a little broader, and of a whiter green color; at the tops of the Stalks and Branches grow several Orient Blew Flowers, not so large as those of the last described, but set in small long Husks, half way rising up above the tops of them; after which comes small Seed in long horned Cods or Vessels.

XII. The ninth, or Small Autumn Gentian, simply so called, has a Root like the former, but a little larger, which sends up a pretty stiff round Stalk, of a Span high, or something more, which at certain spaces is set with such Leaves as the last described, but larger, and out of the bosoms of these Leaves, from the bottom to the top of the Stalk, spring forth little Footstalks, which usually carry three Flowers apiece, two set one against another, and the third upon a Stalk somewhat higher, and sometimes there comes forth a single Flower at the Root of these Footstalks; the Flowers in their shape or form, magnitude, and color, are like to those in the last described, as also their Seed and Seed Vessels; the manner of the growing of this is very well represented by the *Gentiana major Flore caruleo*, mentioned in Chap. 111. Sect. 3. foregoing, saving, that that is very large, and this is very small, and of the perishing Kind.

XIII. The



**XIII. The Places.** The first grows upon the *Alps*, near *Switzerland*, as *Baubinns* says, the second grows on the Mountains of *Savoy*, but neither of them grow wild in *England*, being only nurs'd up in Gardens; the third grows upon the Hills of *Austria* and *Hungary*, *Gerard* says he found it on *Salisbury Plane*, as also in some places in *Suffex*, and likewise near *St. Albans*: The fourth, or *Croswort Gentian*, grows in a Pasture at the West End of *Little Rayne* in *Essex*, on the North side of the way leading from *Braintree* to *Much-Dunmow*, and in the Horse way by the same Close: The fifth, *Pæna* says, grows upon *Bockmet*, a Hill of *Switzerland*, and in several places on the *Alps*, with us only in Gardens: The sixth is an *English Plant*, which was found by *Mr. Hasket*, (a Gentleman very skilful in *Botanology*) in the North parts of *England*, viz. in *Lancashire*, but the exact place where he met with it is not named: The seventh, or *Calathian Violet*, grows in many places of *Germany*, and other parts beyond the Seas; it grows also in several places of *England*, as near *Longfield*, by *Gravesend*, near *Greenbith* and *Cobham* in *Kent*, and in the Fields belonging to the House formerly *Sir Percival Harts*, at *Lellingstone* in *Kent*, and in a Chalk Pit, hard by a Paper Mill, not far from *Dartford* in *Kent*; in the West Country also in several places, and that as well in wet Grounds as dry; *Johnson* upon *Gerard* says, that he found it once on a Wet Moorish Ground, two or three Miles on this side *Caster*, in a place called *Nettleton More*, in *Lincolnshire*: The eighth, or *Autumn Gentian* with *Small Centory* Leaves, grows in *Kent* in several places, as about *Southfleet* and *Longfield*, upon the Downs, as also upon *Barton Hills* in *Bedfordshire*, upon a piece of waste Chalky Ground, as you go out of *Dunstable* way towards *Gorkambury*, and not far from the Ruines of the old City *Verulam*, near *St. Albans*: The ninth is found at the Chalk Dale near *Dartford* in *Kent*, in *Waterdown Forest* in *Suffex*, in the way leading from *Charlewood's* Lodge to the Lord *Abergavenie's* House, called *Eridge House*, by a Brook side there, also on a Heath by *Colebrook*, near *London*, and in the way turning off from *Salisbury Plane* to the Earl of *Pembroke's* House at *Wilton*, and upon a Chalky Bank between *Gorkambury* and *St. Albans*.

**XIV. The Times.** As to the times of Flowering, they are in part declared in the Section of the Kinds, the two first Flower in *April*, and the third in *May*, if they Flower at any other time it is but casual; and their Leaves abiding green all the Winter, they increase at the Root, and may be easily parted; the fourth Flowers in *June* and *July*, the fifth Flowers in *July* and *August*, and not before, the Seed growing ripe soon after, which shedding themselves continue their Kinds, but will scarcely endure Transplantation, or rise of the Seed sown in the Garden, as *Camerarius* and others have observed; the seventh Flowers not until about the end of *August*, and in *September*, in which time this Noble Flower is in all its bravery: The eighth and ninth Flower also from the end of *August*, and continue Flowering to the latter end of *October*.

**XV. The Qualities.** All the *Gentians*, both the *Greater* and the *Smaller*, are said to be of one Property, and to have the same Qualities and Virtues, but the *Greater* are more used with us in Physick than the *Smaller*; but in places where the *Greater* are not to be gotten, and where the *Smaller* are in plenty, the *Lesser* may very well be used in their stead. *Gentian* is hot and dry in the end of the second degree, Aperitive, Absterfise, Astringent, Carminative, Diuretick, and Traumatick, Stomatick, Hepatick, Splenetick, Nephritick, and Hysterick, Sudorifick, Alexipharmick, and Analeptick.

**XVI. The Specification.** It is a peculiar thing against the Plague, Poyson, malign Diseases, and all sorts of Agues and Fevers whatsoever, and is a famous thing for the Cure of Wounds and Ulcers of all kinds.

**XVII. The Preparations.** You may have therefrom 1. A Juice of the Herb, and also of the Root. 2. An Essence of the Herb, or rather Root. 3. An Infusion of the Herb. 4. A Decoction of the Root. 5. A Powder of the Root. 6. A Pessary of the Root. 7. A Distilled Water of the Herb and Root. 8. A Spirituous Tincture of the Root. 9. An Acid Tincture of the Root. 10. An Oily Tincture of the Root. 11. A Saline Tincture of the Root. 12. An Ointment or Balsam of the Root.

## The Virtues.

**XVIII. The Liquid Juice of the Root.** It is good against the Stinging or Bitings of Hornets, Scorpions, Vipers, Rattle-Snakes, Mad Dogs, or other Venomous Creatures, taken Morning and Evening, two Ounces at a time, in a Glass of Wine, for a Week together; but in case of the Bitings of Mad Dogs, it ought to be taken for a whole Month round, till the Moon has perfected her revolution, at what time the Poyson for the most part exerts it self, and commonly kills the Patient, and therefore for security sake, it ought to be taken one whole Lunar revolution; the Wound also ought to be kept open all that time, and for the three or four first days nothing but Cloves of raw Garlick a little bruised ought to be applied to it, the Wound it self being wash'd every time with the Juice of *Gentian*, because by this means the Poyson of the Mad Dog, or of any Viper or Serpent will be drawn forth.

**XIX. The Juice of the Herb.** It is given very often to Cattel to drink, to free them from the Bots and Worms, and many other Diseases; as also when they begin to swell, being Poysoned by any Venomous thing, which they often lick up with the Grass; as also when any poysonous or hurtful Creature has bitten a Cow by the Udder, or any other tender part, which presently thereupon swells, and puts the Creature to pain, making them forbear their Meat; with this Juice the place bitten is then to be bathed several times, and five or six Spoonfuls of the Juice to be given inwardly, mixed with a Pint of Ale, by this means the poor Beast is quickly cured, and restored to its Health.

**XX. The Essence of the Root.** It has all the Virtues of the Juices before going, being used in the same manner; besides which, being taken from one Ounce to two Ounces, or more, Morning and Night in Generous Wine, it opens all sorts of Obstructions of Liver, Spleen, Gall, Reins, and Womb, and is profitable for such as are Liver-grown, as the Vulgar call it, or have any Scirrhus breeding there, because the long and constant taking hereof wailes away those Humors which cause the same; it gives ease in the most vehement pains of the Stomach, is good for such who cannot relish their Meat, have a dejected Appetite, and a bad Digestion; it is good likewise against piercing pains of the Sides, Stitches, or the like; it is good for such who are bruised by Blows or Falls, dissolving the congealed Blood, and easing the pain; the same is also very effectual against all sorts of Agues, being taken to three or four Ounces, three Hours before the coming of the Fit, in a Decoction of the same Root; it opens Obstructions of the Womb, provokes the Terms, facilitates the Delivery of Women in Travail, and brings away the Afterbirth; it is effectual against the Strangury, and brings away Sand, Gravel, or Tartarous Matter obstructing the Urinary Passages, and is said



to be very good for such as have a Rupture, or are Bursten; it is good against Coughs, Colds, Hoarseness, Wheezing, shortness of Breath, or any difficulty of Breathing, being made into a Syrup with Honey, and so taken; it is good against the Yellow Jaundice, expels Wind, and is available against all Diseases proceeding of Cold, whether inward or outward, and as *Galen* says, it is most effectual where there is any need to attenuate or make thin thick Flegm, or gross and tartarous Humors; it cleanses filthy running Sores, and putrid Ulcers, carrying off the peccant Humors, and freeing the parts affected from any Diseases affecting them; dropt into the Eyes it takes away inflammation and redness, and clears them from Films growing on them.

XXI. *The Infusion of the Herb or Root.* It has the former Virtues, but much weaker, and may be given Morning and Night for the same purposes from four Ounces to eight, sweetened with Sugar or Honey; it is a very good thing for those sorts of Agues which come by obstructions of Humors, or putrefaction of the Blood.

XXII. *The Decoction of the Root in Wine or Water.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but much less effectual, and may be given from three Ounces to six Morning and Night, being used Dietetically for some time, in the Cure of old running Sores, putrid Ulcers, and inveterate or rebellious Fistula's, &c. It is more powerful for the Cure of Agues than the Infusion of the Herb, tho' less powerful than the Essence; it heals all Wounds which are fresh, by washing them therewith, and this more especially, if it is made with Wine; it is good also to wash therewith all sorts of foul, putrid or rotten Ulcers, yea, tho' they be hollow, or Fistulous, running, and fretting, or Cancrous, for it mightily cleanses and dries, and heals also; and taken inwardly for some time, it very much prevails against the Kings-Evil, speedily and certainly healing those Ulcers up.

XXIII. *The Powder of the Root.* It has all the Virtues of Juice, Essence, and Decoction, but operates not with that celerity or speed which they do; it may be given from half a Dram to a Dram every Morning fasting, and every Night at Bed time, in some convenient Vehicle, and to be continued for some considerable time, as the reason of the thing, or occasion may require; if it is taken, with a small addition of Myrrh, or Rue, or Pepper, it is the more powerful against the Stinging of Scorpions, or Bittings of Serpents or Mad Dogs, the Wound being kept open with Vinegar and Salt Water, and dress'd with the application of *Garlick*, which draws the Venom or Poyson out the most powerfully of all Vegetables: Outwardly applied to foul, putrid, or rotten Sores and Ulcers, it powerfully deterges, or cleanses, and dries them, causing them speedily to heal: Mixt with Honey, and taken in the Morning fasting, and at the usual Medical Hours, it opens Obstructions of the Lungs, and causes easie expectoration of thick tough Flegm, and other gross Humors; it provokes the Terms, and expels the Dead Child and Afterbirth, and is indeed a singular thing for killing Worms in the Belly and Stomach.

XXIV. *The Pessary.* It is made of the solid Root, either green or dry. Being put up into the Womb, and kept there, it induces a flux of the Terms, by opening the Mouth of the Womb; it also attracts in the Birth, and brings away the Child, whether alive or Dead, and also clears the Womb of the Afterbirth.

XXV. *The Distilled Water of Herb and Root.* It has the Virtues of the Infusion or Decoction, but not so efficacious or powerful: Authors say, that being drunk, it has been often proved to cure in a won-

derful manner all sorts of Agues generated of the putrefaction of the Blood and Humors, to kill Worms in the Belly, and to cleanse the Skin from all sorts of Spots, Freckles, Morpew, and other Defecations whatsoever, it being often, viz. five or six times a day bathed therewith.

XXVI. *The Spirituous Tincture of the Root.* It is profitable against the Yellow Jaundice, strengthens and fortifies the Stomach, prevails against the Colick, and other grievous and vehement pains of the Stomach and Belly; it warms, comforts, and strengthens a cold and moist Liver, occasioned by long Sickness, or bad Diet, and is of good use for such who are in a pining Consumption; the Hemorrhoids or Piles being bathed herewith it comforts the part, gives ease in the pain, and discusses the Tumor or Swelling; it is good against Cramps and Convulsions, being often bathed upon the part affected, and prevails against Fainting and Swooning Fits, being inwardly given in any fit Vehicle from one Dram to three, at time of the Paroxysm.

XXVII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is one of the greatest Stomacicks in *Rerum Natura*, for it opens the Obstructions of the Stomach, incides and dissolves Flegm, and all sorts of thick, tough, viscous and tartarous Humors adhering to the Tunics thereof, cleanses it of all its Faculencies, warms and comforts it, restores its Tone, being hurt or depraved, and after a singular manner causes a good Appetite and a strong Digestion, and being constantly taken, it is one of the most absolute Cures that is for the Rickets in Children; it cures Asthma's, causing a free respiration or breathing, and takes away Hoarseness, Wheezings, &c. Dose is so many drops as to make the Vehicle pleasantly sharp, and it is to be given in all that the Patient drinks, whether Ale, Beer, or Wine, and that while they use it they ought to drink nothing without it.

XXVIII. *The Oily Tincture.* Inwardly taken from ten drops to twenty or thirty, first dropt into Sugar, and then mixt with any fit Vehicle, it is of excellent use against the Colick, and pains in the Stomach, proceeding from Wind; it opens Obstructions of the Reins and Ureters, and expels small Stones, Gravel, Sand, and other Tartarous Substances, which cause the Strangury: It is a singular thing against the Palsy and convulsions of the Viscera, being inwardly taken as aforesaid, and morning and night anointed well upon the parts affected, as also along down the Back Bone: It is good also against numbness of Limbs, Trembling of any of the parts of the Body, weakness of the Joints, and the Gout it self proceeding from a cold Cause.

XXIX. *The Saline Tincture.* Being bathed upon the place, it is good against the bitings and stinging of Venomous creatures, for it attracts the Poyson out of the Part: it eases the pain of the Gout after a singular manner; opens the Pores of the Skin, discusses contusions, being applied very hot, by way of Fomentation, and cleanses the face, hands and other parts from spots, freckles, Tanning, Sun burning, yellowness, black and blueness occasioned by Blows, as also scurf, morpew, and other like defecations of the *Cutis* and *Cuticula*.

XXX. *The Ointment or Balsam.* It is an extraordinary Vulnerary, healing simple Wounds at once or twice Dressing. It also heals Wounds and Punctures of the Nerves and Tendons. It is likewise an excellent thing against all running Sores, old and inveterate Ulcers, putrid or malign Fistula's, for in the one it potently digests, cleanses, incarnates if need be, dries and admirably heals; and in the other it takes away the Callous, &c. and in both strengthens the part, being much weakened through the length or continuance of the Disease.



C H A P. CCCXIII.

## Of GERMANDER Garden.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Arabick, *Chamedrys*, *Damedrios* and *Kemadriut*: in Greek, *Χαμαίδρις*, & *χαμαίδρις*, as *Dioscorides* says: in Latin, *Trixago*, *Triffago*, *Herba Februm*, *Febrifuga*, (from the Effects) and *Chamedrys*, *Quercula minor*; *quasi humilis aut parva quercus, a foliorum similitudine*: in English, *Germander*.

**II. The Kinds.** There are many Varieties of this Plant, most of which grow in other Countries, and are unknown in *England*: we make only four generic kinds, viz. 1. *Χαμαίδρις ἡμεσῆς*, *Chamedrys sativa*, Garden Germander, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Χαμαίδρις ἀγρία*, *Chamedrys sylvestris*, Wild Germander, of which in Chap. 314. 3. *Χαμαίδρις δένδρεον*, *Teucrium*, *Quercula major*, Tree Germander, of which in Chap. 315. 4. *Χαμαίδρις ἐλώδης*, & *ἕνυδρος*, *Scordium*, *Chamedrys aquatica*, Water Germander, of which in Chap. 316. following.

**III. The Garden kinds.** Of this there are many Species described in Authors; we shall only enumerate two, which are common with us in our Gardens, viz. 1. *Chamedrys sativa vulgaris*, *Chamedrys vulgaris*, and *Chamedrys mas*, *Febrifuga*, *Trixago*, and *Triffago minor*, The common Germander, or Lesser Garden Germander. 2. *Chamedrys major*, *Trixago*, and *Triffago major*, The greater Germander.



Germander  
Common

**IV. The Descriptions.** The first, or Small Garden Germander, has a Root composed of divers Sprigs, and variously dispersed with many Strings, shooting forth a great way round about, and quickly overspreading a Ground, springing up again in many places. From this Root rises up a little straight Stalk, about a Span long, and sometimes longer, nearly a Foot in Height; (but *Parkinson* says it

springs up with several Stalks) which are woody and hard, like unto a little *Shrub*, which is afterwards divided into very many little small Branches: Upon these Stalks and Branches grow small Leaves, almost round, and a little indented about the edges, lesser than the Leaves of the following *Great Germander*. The Flowers grow at the tops, and also near the Leaves on the upper parts of the Sprigs, of a deeper purple color than the following, and oftentimes tending to Blewness.

**V. An Observation.** This Herb was in former times much used, and is yet still used in several Places, to hedge up, or border Beds in Gardens, because it will grow thick, and may be also kept in some Form and Proportion with cutting, and that the Cuttings are much used as a strewing Herb for Houses, Flores and Chimney-hearths, being pretty, and sweet withal; for which Reason it is much affected: but this is to be taken notice of, That it will often die, and grow out of Form; and besides that, the Stalks will grow too great and hard, and stubby; and the Roots, by far shooting under Ground, will, upon a little continuance thereof, spread into many places within the Knot, which, if they be not continually pluckt up, will spoil the whole Knot it self; and therefore once in three or four Years at most, it must be taken up and new Set, or else it will grow too rank and cumberfom.

**VI. The second, or Greater Germander,** has a Root which is more bushy with Fibres, and creeps less than the former: from this Root rises up greater and harder square Stalks, twelve, fifteen or eighteen Inches high, spreading into several Branches from the very bottom; on which grow two Leaves at a Joint, somewhat larger than those of the Ordinary or Common kind just before described, and more dented about the edges, green above, and somewhat greyish underneath. The Flowers stand in a long spiky Head, and are larger than the former, gaping like them, and of a paler purple color.

**VII. The Places.** They are both found growing Wild in *Germany*, and in many other Countries, as *Clusius* saith; but with us, they are only found in Gardens.

**VIII. The Times.** They flower in *June* or *July*, and the Seed is ripened in some little time after.

**IX. The Qualities.** Germander is hot and dry in the third Degree, and more sharp and bitter than *Teucrium*, as *Dioscorides* says: it is highly Aperitive, Incisive, Absterfise, Astringent, Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomatick, Pectoral, Hepatick, Splenetick, Arthritick, Alexipharmick and Analeptick.

**X. The Specification.** It cures all sorts of Agues and Fevers, and is principal against the Plague or Pestilence: it is good against Diseases of the Lungs; stops all sorts of Fluxes of the Bowels, and is a certain Remedy for the Gout.

**XI. The Preparations.** You may have herefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An Infusion. 4. A Decoffion. 5. A Syrup. 6. A Powder of the Herb. 7. An Ointment or Balsam. 8. A Cataplasm. 9. A Spirituous Tincture. 10. An Acid Tincture. 11. An Oily Tincture. 12. A Saline Tincture. 13. A Spirit of the Herb. 14. A Powder of the Seed.

### The Virtues.

**XII. The liquid Juice.** If it is mixt with Honey and so taken, it is good against Coughs and Colds, Hoarseness, Wheezings, Shortness of Breath, and Pains of the Spleen. It is profitable for such whose Spleens are become hard, and such as have the Strangury, or make their Water difficultly; and helps

H h h



helps those who are falling into a Dropsy, being taken in the beginning of the Disease. Dose two, three or four Spoonfuls Morning and Night.

XIII. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues; besides which, it opens Obstructions of the Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Reins and Womb; provokes the Terms in Women, and helps to expel the dead Child, and the After-birth. If it is mixt with Vinegar, and so taken, it does waste or consume the Spleen, and is very effectual against all sorts of Poison, chiefly the Bitings of Serpents and mad Dogs. Used outwardly with Honey, it cleanses old and running Sores and putrid Ulcers, hindering their spreading and eating: and so mixed with Honey and put into the Eyes, it helps their running and watering, and removes the Dimness of Sight. Taken inwardly, three or four Spoonfuls at a time, it is good against Pains and Stitches of the Side, Colicks, and other the like Disaffections. It cures also *Tertian* and *Quartan* Agues, being taken every day in the Morning fasting, and on the day of the Fit, three hours before the Fit comes: and Experience has found it a most effectual Remedy against the Plague it self.

XIV. *The Infusion.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not full out so effectual: it prevails against Diseases of the Brain, continual Pains of the Head, Melancholy, Epilepsy, Carus, Lethargy and Dulness of Spirits, Palsies, Convulsions, &c. Dose six Ounces Morning, Noon and Night.

XV. *The Decoction.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, Essence and Infusion, but is something more efficacious than the Infusion, but not so pleasant to be drank by the Patient, because it tastes stronger; yet it may be given to six Ounces or more, as the Infusion aforesaid is given. Put into the Ears, it kills Worms in them, and also kills Worms in the Belly, so also the Juice and Essence. A Decoction of the Herb or Root rather, made in Wine, and taken for sixty days continually, four hours before Meat, it is a certain Remedy for the Gout.

XVI. *The Syrup.* *Durantes* makes a Syrup for the Spleen after this manner: Take *Germander*, *Ground Pine*, *Ceterach*, *Madder*, of each a Handful; *Raisins stoned* an Ounce; *Bark of Caper-roots*, *Roots of Smallage*, *Elecampane*, *Blew Flowerdeluce*, *Orrice*, *Liquorice*, of each half an Ounce; *Bark of Tamarisk*, *Cyperus*, *Seeds of Anise*, *Fennel*, *Smallage*, of each two Drams: boil all in a sufficient quantity of a Mixture of equal parts of Water and Vinegar: then strain, and with a sufficient quantity of Honey, make a Syrup, aromatizing it with five or six Ounces of strong Cinnamon-water. The Dose is four Ounces every Morning fasting. It is good also against Coughs, Colds, Asthma's and other Distempers of the Lungs; as also against the Colick, Stitches in the Side, &c.

XVII. *The Powder of the Herb.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, but more astringent, being very good to stop all manner of Fluxes, whether of the Belly or of Blood; as also the Courses in Women, and to stop Vomiting, being given from half a Dram to a Dram and half, in Vinegar or any other proper Vehicle.

XVIII. *The Powder of the Seed.* It may be given from half a Dram to a Dram and half in a Glass of White Port Wine, for some days; and so taken, it expels Choler by the Urinary Passages, and is profitable against the Yellow Jaundice: it also comforts the Stomach, and strengthens all the Viscera, tho' under long Weaknesses.

XIX. *The Ointment or Balsam.* It heals simple green Wounds in a short time; and being applied to foul running Sores, and old putrid Ulcers, it di-

gest them, cleanses, incarnates, dries, and quickly heals them up. Applied to the Gout, it eases the Pain in twenty four hours time; and by the constant Use of it afterwards, in a short time cures it, and that so perfectly, as to return no more again upon that Basis.

XX. *The Cataplasim.* Being beaten and boiled in Vinegar, and brought to a Consistence with a little Leaven, and so applied to the Stomach, it stops and cures all those Vomiting which arise from hot and cholerick Causes: and applied to the Forehead and Temples in case of an Hemorrhage or Bleeding at Nose, it presently stops it.

XXI. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It warms and comforts a cold Stomach, and so strengthens it, as to cause a good Appetite and a strong Digestion. It is cordial and excellent good against fainting and swooning Fits, Fits of the Mother, and a vehement Sickness at Heart, which it eases almost in a moment. It expels Wind powerfully, and gives ease in the Colick; and is a singular thing in resisting even the Violence of Convulsions. Dose two Drams.

XXII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is so powerful an Opener of all Obstructions of the Stomach and other Viscera, that there are but few other things which equal it. It cures and prevents the Rickets in Children; is powerful against a Cachexia in Virgins and other young People; and a singular thing against the Green-sickness in young Women. It excites a good Appetite where it is languid or is wanting; incides, dissolves and expels thick, tough, viscous Flegm, and other tartarous Humors lodged in the Stomach and Bowels, causing Tortions, Gripings, Colicks, &c. let it be given Dietetically in all that the Patient drinks, whether Ale, Beer or Wine, so many Drops at a time as may give the Vehicle a pleasant Acidity, continuing its Use as long as need requires.

XXIII. *The Oily Tincture.* Outwardly bathed upon any Part, or Parts affected with Lameness, Numbedness, Trembling, Palsy, Convulsions, Cramps, from a cold Cause; as also upon Punctures of the Nerves or Tendons, it in a short time gives ease, and by Continuation of the same, (doing it Morning and Night) in no long time a perfect Cure. It eases Pains upon the Shin-bones, as also Pains in the Joints, the Gout and Rheumatism; and is an excellent thing to be bathed upon any Part which has contracted any Weakness by the long Continuance of any Disease: But in Palsies and Convulsions it is to be noted, That the Back-bone must also be anointed with the same in like manner, twice a day, rubbing it very well in.

XXIV. *The Saline Tincture.* Inwardly given from one Dram to two in a Glass of White Port Wine, it opens Obstructions of the Urinary Passages, and provokes Urine powerfully, expelling Gravel, Sand, and slimy or viscous Matter, which stops the Urine and causes Pain. Bathed upon a recent and simple Contusion, it hinders the Aggregation of Humors, dissolves those which are present, and quickly cures the same, taking away also the Blackness and Blewness thereof. It is also good against Pimples, Freckles, Sun-burning, Tanning, Yellowness, Scurff, Morpew, and other like Breakings out of the Skin.

XXV. *The Spirit from the Herb.* It is highly Stomack and Cordial, good against all Diseases of the Head, Brain, Nerves, Heart and Vitals, comforting the Parts affected, resisting the malign Vapors which oppress the Spirits, and reviving the universal Man. Dose from one to two Drams, either alone or in a Glass of choice and generous Wine, as oft as occasion requires, viz. in fainting, swooning, &c.

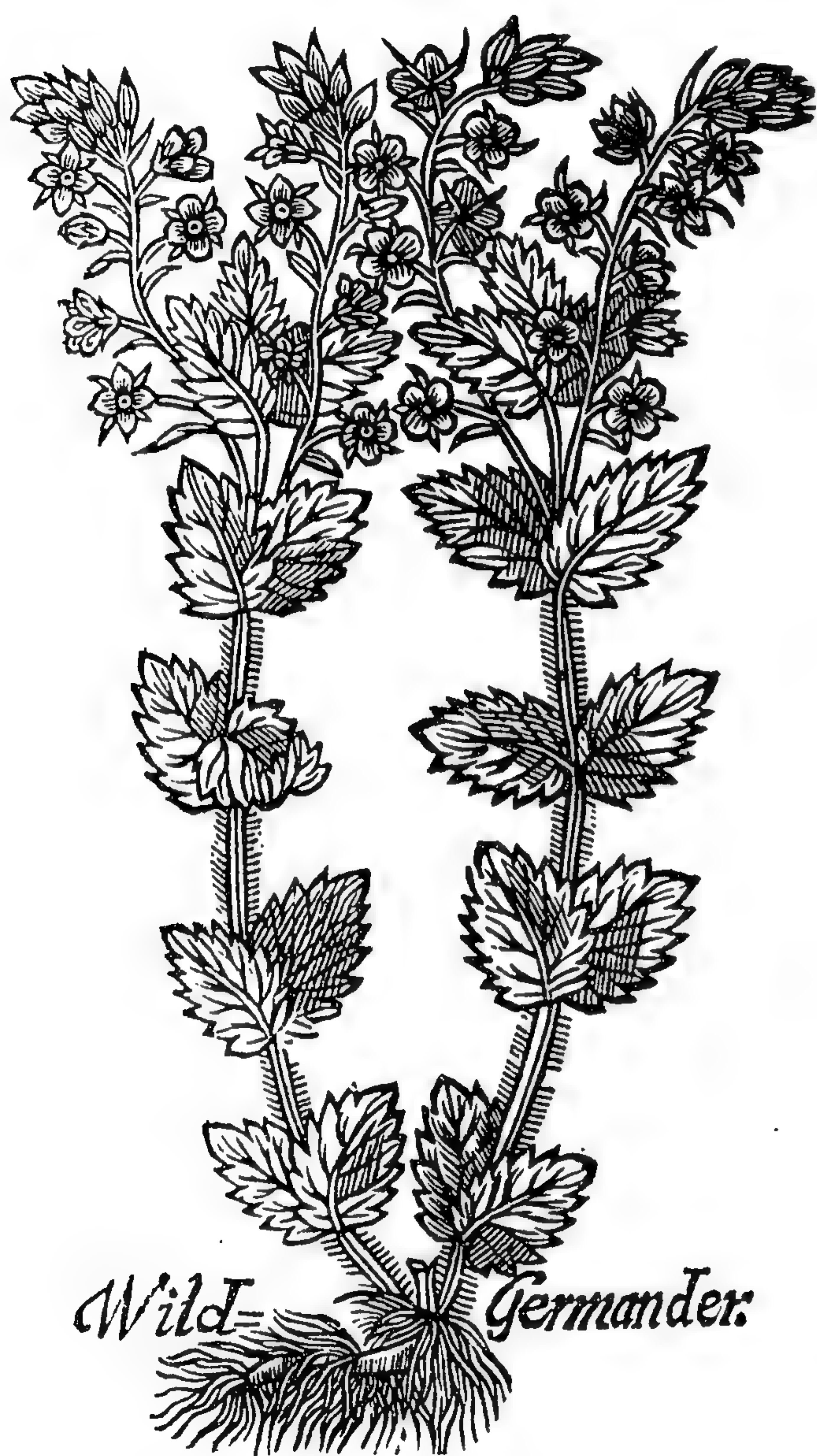


C H A P. CCCXIV.

## of GERMANDER Wild.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek, Χαμαί-δρυς ἄγρια; in Latin, *Chamaedrys sylvestris*: in English, Wild Germander.

**II. The Kinds.** This is twofold, viz. 1. *Chamaedrys sylvestris Clusii*, *Chamaedrys spuria sylvestris*, *Chamaedrys vulgaris femina Fuchsi*, *Turneri*, *Loniceri*, *Lugdunensis*, *Pseudochamaedrys Thalii*, *Teucrium pratense Lobelii*, Common Wild Germander. 2. *Chamaedrys angustifolia*, *Chamaedrys spuria minor angustifolia Baubini*, who takes it to be the third Variety of the fourth kind of *Clusius* his *Teucrium*, Narrow-leav'd Wild Germander.



Wild-Germander

**III. The Descriptions.** The first, or Common Wild Germander, has a Root which is small and breadly, which sends forth several square upright stalks, yet sometimes a little bending, having two Leaves set at each Joint, one against another, the lower ones somewhat large, and almost round, yet pointed at the ends, and dented about the edges, but smaller as they grow up higher. The tops of the Stalks are spiked with several blew Flowers, set about them, made of four small round Leaves apiece, with a little white Eye in the middle, small-pointed, and some Threads also; after which succeed small flat Pouches, containing small Seed.

**IV. The second, or Narrow-leav'd Wild Germander,** has a Root which is blackish, hard and fibrous or stringy; from which spring several round reddish Stalks, somewhat rough, hard and hairy, about an Hand Breadth or something more high, and bending downwards, whose lower Leaves are somewhat long and broad, round at the ends, and not dented at all about the edges; but those which grow up higher

upon the Stalks, are shorter and narrower pointed also at the ends, and snipt about the edges. The Flowers grow towards the tops of the Stalks, Spike-fashion, being either of a pale blew color or bluish; made of four Leaves, like the other; having also like Heads and Seed.

**V. The Places.** The first grows almost in every Meadow thro' the Land, as also by Ditches and Hedge sides: Gerard says it grows in many places about London, in Meadows and fertile Fields, and in every place wheresoever I have travelled (says he) in England. The other grows in like places, but is nothing near so common.

**VI. The Times.** They flower and flourish from the end of May to the latter end of August.

**VII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues,** are the same with those of the Common Garden Germander in the former Chapter, and thither I refer you.

C H A P. CCCXV.

## of GERMANDER Tree.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek, Τεύκειον; in Latin, *Teucrium*, (à Teucro inventore, teste Plinio) also *Quercula major*; and in English, Tree Germander.



Tree Germander

**II. The Kinds.** There are three kinds hereof which grow in our Gardens, viz. 1. *Teucrium majus vulgare*, *Teucrium Matthioli*, *Lobelii*, & *altorum*, *Teucrium vulgare fruticans Clusii*, *Chamaedrys alterum, seu assurgens Dodonci*, Common or vulgar Tree Germander. 2. *Teucrium Creticum Clusii*, *Teucrium Creticum inaequum Bauhini*. Tree Germander.

H h h

der



der of Candia. 2. *Teucrium Baticum*, *Teucrium fruticans Baticum Clusii*, *Lugdunensis*, *Tabernmontani*, & *aliorum*, *Teucrium Perigrinum folio sinuoso Babbini*, Spanish Tree Germander.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Common Tree Germander, has a Root which is somewhat woody, spreading it self about, with many Strings and blackish fibres adjoining to them. From this Root spring up hard, woody, brittle Stalks, (growing much like a little Shrub) a Foot or two, and sometimes a Yard high, where Care is taken of it, and it is preserved and defended from the Injuries of the Winters. These Stalks branch themselves forth on all sides, from the very bottom, bearing always Leaves by couples, smaller, smoother and thicker than those of *Germander*, of a dark shining green color on the upper side, and greyish underneath, and dented also about the edges, like them. The Flowers which are gaping, stand about the tops of the Branches, Spike-fashion, one above another, of a pale whitish color, as *Clusius* says, but of a purple, as *Lobel* says, of both which colors it has been oft seen bearing; but the Flowers are somewhat larger than those of *Germander*, and without any Hood above, having a few Threads standing forth. The Seed is small, blackish and round, contained in small round, but pointed Husks. The whole Plant is of a fine, pleasant, but weak Smell, yet somewhat stronger, if it is a little bruised, holding the Stalks and green Leaves continually, if it is not exposed to the Sharpness of the Winter Season.

IV. The second, or Cretian Tree Germander, has a Root like the former, and springs up and grows like a little Shrub; it rises up with such like woody Stalks, and brittle, as the other, but something smaller and whiter; on which do grow such like Leaves, and in the same manner, but something lesser, less green and shining above, and more hoary underneath, two always set at a Joint, one opposite to the other: with the Leaves towards the tops, come forth five or six Flowers, standing in a Husk, like unto the other, but a little less, and of a purple color, which being past away, small round seed follows like to the former. The whole Plant is a little sweeter than that first described.

V. The third, or Spanish Tree Germander, has a woody Root, branching it self forth under Ground, with many fibres adjoining to it, from whence rises up a shrubby Plant, growing sometimes to be three or four Feet high, and many times lower. It rises up for the most part but with one woody Stalk, which is of a greyish color, and divides it self into several Arms or Branches, but fewer than that of Candy, two always set at a Joint. The Leaves likewise stand two together, something greater, and waved a little at the edges, of a sad green color above, but not shining, and more hoary underneath. The Flowers stand at the Joints with the Leaves, towards the tops of the Stalks, of a white color, without any Hood above, and with several Threads in the middle, the lower Leaves hanging downwards. The Scent hereof is less odoriferous or sweet, and the Taste is more bitter than the former, but abides with its Stalks and Leaves thereon, green, like the rest, but requires a little more Care for its Winter-Security in our Country.

VI. The Places. They all grow with us in Gardens, where they flourish very well, and delight to grow in rough stoney places, which are mountainous and exposed to the Air and Sun. The second was brought to us from Candia; the third from Spain; and therefore are not so hardy Plants as the first of them.

VII. The Times. These Tree Germanders flower somewhat later than the other Germanders do, viz. in July and August; and the Seed is ripe in some little time after.

VIII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues, are the same with those of the Common Germander in Chap. 313. aforegoing, to which we refer you.

IX. An Observation. It is to be noted, That *Galen* makes Tree Germander to be hot in the second Degree, and dry in the third, to be of thin parts, and inciding also, whereby, he says, it is helpful for the Spleen. *Dioscorides* says it is used either green or dry, and is good to consume the Spleen, being inwardly and outwardly applied; it is also used against the Stinging or Biting of poisonous Creatures.

## C H A P. CCCXVI.

### Of GERMANDER Water,

O R,

### S C O R D I U M.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek, Σκόρδιον; some call it Δύσσομον, (from the strong Smell;) and it may also be called Χαμαίδρις ὕδρα: in Latin, *Scordium*, *Trixago palustris*, and *Trixago palustris*, *Chamædrys aquatica*: in English, Water Germander, Garlick Germander, and Scordium.

#### The True Scordium, or Water Germander.



II. The Kinds. *Tabernmontanus* makes two kinds hereof, viz. a Lesser and a Greater. 1. *Scordium legitimum*, *Scordium minus*, *Scordium verum*, *Trixago palustris minor*, The lesser Scordium, The true Scordium, or Water Germander. 2. *Scordium majus*,



*Scordotus Plinii*, *Scordium alterum*, *Scordotus asitum Plinii*, The Greater Scordium, having Leaves almost as large as *Batton*. I know that *John* and *Parkinson* will scarcely allow of this *Greater*, and make no Difference between them, but only in respect to the place of its Growth, making it to be either *Greater* or *Lesser*, according as the Soil is either richer and fatter, or poorer and more lean; but doubtless they were mistaken, for the two differing Species are manifest.

III. The Descriptions. The first, which is the smaller kind, and is the True Scordium or Water Germander, has a small Root, full of white Strings or Fibres, spreading in the Ground, and creeping round about; from whence shoot forth several weak, square, hairy Branches, which take Root in several places, as they lye, and spread; by which means it much encreases. Upon these Stalks or Branches grow many Leaves, two always at a Joint, which are something larger and longer than the Leaves of Garden Germander, of a sad or dark green color, whereon there is yet a shew of Hoariness, somewhat felt in handling, full of Veins, and dented about the edges, of a Scent somewhat strong, and resembling Garlick, whence came the Greek and Latin Name. The Flowers are small, red and gaping, or of a purple color, like the Flowers of dead Nettles, and stand at the Joints with the Leaves, towards the tops of the Branches.

### Water Germander the Greater.



IV. The second, or Greater Scordium, or Water Germander, has a small long Root, and very fibrous, creeping deep into the Ground, and far about, abiding long, and not perishing every Year; from which many square, white, hairy Stalks or Branches spring forth, some rising up higher, and others dwarf like, keeping nearer the Ground. Upon these Stalks or Branches grow Leaves, two at a Joint, broader and rounder than the former Scordium, and all of a hoary white, being somewhat like unto the Leaves of

Horehound or Water Mint, and almost as large as those of *Batton*. From the middle of the Stalks upwards, towards their tops, come forth the Flowers, standing as it were in a long spiky Head, with Leaves at the bottoms of Husks or short Foot-stalks. These Flowers are of a pale purplish color, almost white, like unto Horehound, gaping, and very like to those of dead Nettles; which being passed away, there follows small, round, black Seed. The whole Plant smells of Garlick as much as the former, or True Scordium; and thereby it is known to be of the kind, tho' the Leaves, by being larger, do somewhat differ.

V. The Places. The first grows in many wet Grounds, and by Water-sides in many places of England. *Dioscorides* says, That it grows as well on Hills as by Water-sides; and it will flourish well, if it is transplanted into a Garden: *Camerarius* says, That it is found to be stronger and sharper which grows on high Grounds, than that which grows on low and moist places. It grows near to *Oxenford*, by *Ruley*, on both sides of the Water; and in a Meadow by *Abington*, called *Neitford*: also in great plenty in the Isle of *Ely*, and in a Meadow by *Harwood* in *Lancashire*, and in several other places. The other grows also in low and moist places, but is not so generally to be found as the first is: in *Candia* the People gather it promiscuously with the first sort.

VI. The Times. They flower in June, July and August, in which Months it is best to gather it and keep it dry: it perishes not in Winter, but only looses the Stalks, the Root sending up fresh again in Summer.

VII. The Qualities. Germander is hot and dry in the second Degree: it is Aperitive, Absterfive, Astringent, Carminative, Digestive, Diuretick, Anodyne and Traumatick; Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomatick, Cordial, Hepatick, Nephritick, Sudorifick and Alexipharmick.

VIII. The Specification. It is a counter Poison against all Poisons and Infections of Contagious and Epidemick Diseases, as Stingings or Bitings of Serpents, mad Dogs, &c. all sorts of malign Fevers, the Measles, Small-Pox, Purples, Spotted Fever and Calenture, as also the Plague or Pestilence it self: it is an especial Help against the Strangury, and provokes the Terms in Women.

IX. The Preparations. You may prepare hereof, viz. 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An Infusion in Wine, or Decoction. 4. A Syrup. 5. A Pouder. 6. An Electuary. 7. Diascordium. 8. An Ointment or Balsam. 9. A Cataplasm. 10. A distilled Water. 11. A Spirituous Tincture. 12. An Acid Tincture. 13. An Oily Tincture. 14. A Spirit. 15. An Elixir. The Herb is only used.

### The Virtues.

X. The liquid Juice. It is a little sharp and penetrating, and so is effectual to provoke Urine, and give ease in the Strangury. It opens Obstructions of the Womb, and provokes the Terms in Women, facilitates the Birth, and brings away the After-birth. It is good against the Bitings or Stinging of Vipers, Rattle Snakes, and other Serpents, mad Dogs, Scorpions, Hornets, &c. and resists all other deadly Poisons. Dose two, three or four Spoonfuls in the distilled Water of the same, or in any other fit or proper Vehicle, Morning and Night, to be continued for some time.

XI. The Essence. It has all the former Virtues, and may be given in like manner in the same Dose: and as it is a counter Poison, so it resists all contagious



gious and infectious Diseases, even when Epidemical, as Measles, Small-Pox, Spotted Fever, Purples, the Plague also, and all Pestilential Distempers. It is given with good Success before the Fits of Agues, to divert or hinder the Access, and to drive them away: in this Case it may be given to four, five or six Ounces. It is a most certain Remedy to kill Worms in Old or Young, whether in the Stomach or Belly. And by reason of its Absterfive and Sanative Properties, it is an excellent thing to be used Dietetically against the Poison and Malignity of the French-Pox, and to clear the Patient of the Reliques of the same. It powerfully provokes Sweat, and therefore is good against the Plague, digests Humors, dissolves and discusses Swellings; and is an excellent thing for such who are hurt by Blows, Falls or Bruises, where some inward Vessel may be broken, to dissolve, disperse and expel the congealed Blood, and to consolidate the Vein; and because of its Conglurinating Property, it is good for such as are troubled with any Rupture or Burstness, this being daily drunk inwardly, and the Herb applied outwardly.

XII. *The Infusion in Wine, or Decoction.* These have both of them the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but in a much less degree, for which Reason they ought to be taken in a much larger Dose, and to be oftener repeated. They are good against the gnawing Pains of the Stomach, as also Pains of the Sides and Pleura: and if they are made in Red Wine, are very profitable against the Bloody-flux, and all other Fluxes of the Belly.

XIII. *The Syrup.* It has the Virtues of the Infusion and Decoction, and is available against an old Cough, Hoarseness, Wheezing and Shortness of Breath: it opens Obstructions of the Lungs, and helps to expectorate rough Flegm and other viscous Humors out of those Parts. Mixt with the Powder of *Scordium*, and applied to foul and putrid Ulcers, it absterges them, dries, and very much contributes to their healing.

XIV. *The Powder.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Infusion and Decoction, but operates not so speedily, and may be given in any convenient Vehicle, as in the distilled Water, Infusion, Decoction or Syrup of the same Herb, from half a Dram to a Dram. It facilitates the Labor, provokes the Urine, opens Obstructions of the Urinary Vessels, is good against Ruptures, is an excellent counter-Poison, kills Worms, and prevails powerfully against the Bloody-flux, more especially if it is mixt with Powder of *Tormentil*-Roots a third part. It is very good for moist running Sores and Ulcers in the Legs or other Parts, to cleanse and dry them, and cause them speedily to heal.

XV. *The Electuary.* It is made of the *Powder of Scordium* a Pound, mixed with three Pounds of the Rob of Juice of Cresses made with Honey, adding at the end, Resin in fine Powder half a Pound. It is a noble Electuary for the Lungs; it not only cures Asthma's, Coughs, Colds, Wheezing, &c. but also heals Ulcers of the Lungs, helping to expectorate the rotten and putrid Matter from thence. Dose one Ounce Morning and Night.

XVI. *Diascordium.* It is a compound Confect or Electuary in our *Pharmacopæia Londinensis*, lib. 4. cap. 22. sect. 19. It was composed by *Fracastorius*, and inserted there for its great Virtues and general Use. It is given against Plague, Poison, malign Fevers, Fluxes of all sorts, Catarrhs, Vomiting, Coughs, Watchings, Asthma's, Pleurifies, Consumptions, Whites and Reds in Women, &c. Dose from one to two Drams at Night going to Bed, and as much in the Morning fasting, as the Occasion may require: and it may be given to Children from a

Scruple to half a Dram, in any convenient Vehicle. It is thus made: Take *Scordium* in fine powder one Ounce; fine Bole an Ounce and half; Terra Lemnia, Bistert, Cinnamon, Cassia Ligna, Dittany of Crete, Gentian, Tormentil, (all these in fine powder) Gum Arabick, Galbanum, Storax Culamita, of each half an Ounce; Ginger, long Pepper, Seeds of Sorrel, of each two Drams in fine powder; Opium a Dram and half; Canary eight Ounces; Sugar of Roses a Pound, clarified Honey two Pounds and half: mix and make an Electuary according to Art. The Opium in this Prescript is much too little, being to the whole Composition only as 1. to 310. which is an inconsiderable Proportion. Should Opium one Ounce be the Proportion, it would yet be but as 1. to 58. which is still considerably too little, where any Effects from the Opium are expected.

XVII. *The Ointment or Balsam.* They are excellent Wound-Medicaments, and cure simple green Wounds at two or three times dressing. If to every Pound of the Balsam three Ounces of the Powder of *Scordium* be added, and one Ounce of Powder of Tobacco, it will be one of the best Topicks for digesting, cleansing, incarnating, drying and healing any running old Sore, putrid Ulcer or Fistula, in what Part of the Body soever.

XVIII. *The Cataplasim.* If it is made of the dried Herb mixed with Honey, and applied to simple green Wounds, it heals them. If it is applied to foul and putrid Ulcers, it cleanses, dries and heals them. If it is applied to Excrescencies in the Flesh, as Wens, and the like, it repercusses the Matter, hinders them from encreasing, and prevails against them so as to discuss or disperse them. Applied to the Gout, it eases the Pains thereof.

XIX. *The distilled Water.* It is Cordial and Alexipharmick, and is good against fainting and swooning Fits, Sickness at Heart, caused by any malign or pestilential Miasmata or Vapors, &c. but it is chiefly used as a Vehicle, to convey the other Preparations of this Herb into the Body.

XX. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is highly Cordial, good against all the Deliquiums of the Spirits, Faintings, cold Sweats, Weakness, Poisons and poisonous Vapors, Sickness at Heart, Agues, &c. and has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but is to be given in a much lesser Dose, viz. from one to three Drams, in some fit Vehicle.

XXI. *The Acid Tincture.* There are but few things in the whole Republic of Medicine, which are so powerful against the Plague and all Pestilential Poison, as this Medicament is, because it strikes at the Root of the Malignity and Venom, undoing it in its Principle and Essence. It not only cures the Plague and all Pestilential Diseases, but it is also a noble Prophylactick, or Preserver from the Contagion and Infection. I commend it against the Spotted Fever, the Purples, Calenture, all burning and malign Fevers, the Bitings of mad Dogs, Serpents, Vipers, Rattle Snakes, Stinging of Scorpions; because, if wisely given, and in a due or fit Dose, it will do more in an Hour than many other Medicines will do in a Week: it is to be given in all that the Patient drinks, whether Ale, Beer, Wine, Posset-drink, Grewel or Broth, and so many Drops at a time as to make it pleasantly sharp, resembling the Acidity of a Limon. It is a noble Medicine, and ought to be kept always in a Readiness by one.

XXII. *The Oily Tincture.* Anointed on the Back-Bone, and upon the Parts affected, Morning and Night, it is an excellent thing against Numbness, Trembling of the Limbs, Palsies, Convulsions, &c. it is also of extraordinary Use, being applied to Punctures of the Nerves or Tendons, for it presently eases the Pain, abates the Tumor, prevents Con-

vulsions,



vultions, and induces the Cure almost to a Miracle. Inwardly given from twelve to thirty Drops, being dropt into Sugar, and so mixt with any proper Vehicle, it has not only all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but after a singular manner opens Obstructions of the Reins and Womb, provokes Urine, eases the Strangury, and forces away Stones, Gravel, Sand, Tartar, or any other Fœculency residing in those Parts. It also provokes the Terms in Women, facilitates the Labor, but brings away also the After-birth, and prevents After-pains, &c.

XXIII. *The Spirit.* It is one of the greatest Cordials in the World, it cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, strengthens the *Archeus*, and prevails against fainting Fits, Swooning, Vapors, Fits of the Mother, Convulsions, Palsies, Lethargies, and all other like Diseases proceeding from Cold and Moisture, or from any poisonous or venene Cause. It is also a Preservative from the Infection of the Plague. The Dose is from one Dram to two or three, in any fit Vehicle.

XXIV. *The Elixir.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice, Essence, Tinctures and Spirit exalted, and may be given from one Dram to two, either in a Glass of generous Wine in a Morning fasting, as a Prophylactick against the Plague, or at any other time, when need requires it, as in any fainting Fit, or Paroxysm, to Women in Labor, and to such as labor under any present Sicknes at Heart. 'Tis an excellent Cordial, and an Antidote against all manner of Poison and Infection.

C H A P. CCCXVII.

Of GILLIFLOWER the Greatest,

O R,

Carnation GILLIFLOWER.

**T**HE Names. This Plant, as it was unknown to the Greeks, so it has no Greek Name allotted it; but it is called in Latin, *Caryophyllus hortensis*; the Epithite is added, to distinguish it from *Caryophyllus Indicus*, the Indian Spice called Cloves; these in the Garden being so called in some respect from their Smell, it in some measure being like to that of the Indian Spice; and in another respect from the Form, the Flower it self, in its lower part, being very like to the Indian Clove: in English we call it, *Gilliflower*, (*quasi July-flower*, from its flowering in the Month of July:) but if we will assign it a Greek Name, we may call it *Καρύοφυλλον ἑρτενσις*, *Caryophyllus hortensis*, and so it is distinguished from *Καρύοφυλλον Ἰνδικόν*, *The Indian Clove or Spice*.

II. *The Kinds.* Of the *Gilliflowers* there are three generick kinds, viz. 1. *Caryophyllus hortensis rubrum*, The deep Blood-red Clove-Gilliflower, of which we have already treated in Chap. 139. foregoing. 2. *Caryophyllus hortensis maximus*, The greatest Gilliflower or Carnation Plant, of which in this Chapter. 3. *Caryophyllus hortensis major*, The greater Gilliflower, called simply by the Name of *Gilliflower*, of which there are several Species, which shall be treated of (God willing) in Chap. 318. following. The generick Description of these two latter, see in Chap. 139. sect. 5 and 6.

III. *The Kinds of Carnations.* Of the *Greatest Gilliflower* or *Carnations*, there are many kinds:

Authors account about twenty several Species, which, because of the immediate Repetition, we shall forbear to name here, but give you them each in their own order, as we shall now describe them.

*Gilliflower Greatest.*



IV. *The Descriptions.* 1. *Caryophyllus maximus, dictus, Hulo rubro varius, The grey Hulo.* It has as great Leaves as the *Old Carnation*, (described in Chap. 139. sect. 5.) and as deeply jagged on the edges; it has a great high Stalk, whereon stand the Flowers, of a deep red color, striped and speckled very close together, with a darkish white color.

V. 2. *Caryophyllus maximus, i. e. Hulo ruber non variatus, The red Hulo.* It is a fair large Flower, of a Stamel color, deeply jagged, as the former, and grows very gallantly, without any spot at all in it, so that it seems to be but a *Stamel Gilliflower*, saving, that it is much greater.

VI. 3. *Caryophyllus maximus dictus Hulo ceruleo purpureus, The blew Hulo.* It is a goodly fair Flower, being of a fair purplish Murry color, admirably Marbled with White, but so finely to be discerned, that it seems only Purple, it has so much the Majesty in it; it resembles the *Brazil*, but that it is much bigger.

VII. 4. *Caryophyllus maximus dictus Grimelo, sive Princeps, The Grimelo, or Prince.* It is a fair Flower also, as large as any Crystal, or larger, being of a fair Crimson Color, equally for the most part striped with White, or rather more White than Red, thro' every Leaf from the bottom, and grows beautifully.

VIII. 5. *Caryophyllus maximus Incarnadinus Albus, The White Carnation, or Delicate.* It is a goodly delightful fair Flower when in its Pride and Perfection, that is, when it is both Marbled and Flaked, or striped and speckled with White, upon an Incarnate Crimson Color, being a very sweet and delicate Flower, but abides not constant, changing oftentimes to have no Flakes or Strakes of White, but Marbled or Speckled wholly.

IX. 6.



IX. 6. *Caryophyllus maximus Incarnadinus Gallicus*, *The French Carnation*. It is very like to the *White Carnation*, but that it has more Specks or Spots, and fewer Stripes or Flakes of White in the Red, which has the Mastery of the White.

X. 7. *Caryophyllus maximus Incarnadinus Grandis*, *The Ground Carnation*. It is almost like to the *Grand* or *Old English Carnation* described in Chap. 120. Sect. 5. foregoing, it is a thick Flower, but spreads not its Leaves abroad as others do, having the middle standing higher than the outward Leaves, and turning up their brims or edges, and is a sad Flower, with few Specks or Stripes in it; it is very subject to break its Husk or Pods, so that the Flower seldom comes fair and right; the green Leaves are as great as the *Hulo*, or *Lumbard Red*.

XI. 8. *Caryophyllus maximus Crystallinus*, *The Crystal*, or *Crystalline*. It is a very delicate Flower when it is well marked, but it is inconstant in the marks, being sometimes more striped with White and Crimson Red, and sometimes less; or little or nothing at all, and changing sometimes to be wholly red, or wholly bluish.

XII. 9. *Caryophyllus maximus Flore Rubro*, *The Red Crystal*. The Red hereof, which is changed, is the most Orient Flower of all other *Red Gilliflowers*, because it is both the greatest, as coming from the Crystal, as also, that the Red hereof is a most excellent Crimson.

XIII. 10. *Caryophyllus maximus dictus fragrans*, *The fragrant*. It is a fair Flower, and thought to come from the *Crystal*, being as large, but of a bluish red color, spotted with small specks, no bigger than Pin points, but not so thick as in the *Pageant*.

XIV. 11. *Caryophyllus maximus Subaudicus varius*, *The striped Savoy*. It is for form and bigness equal with the *Crystal*, or *White Carnation*, but as inconstant as either of them, changing into Red or Blush; so that few Branches with Flowers contain their true mixtures, which are a whitish bluish, fairly striped with a Crimson Red Color, thick and short, with some spots also among them.

XV. 12. *Caryophyllus maximus Subaudicus Carneus*, *The Blush*, or *Flesh Colored Savoy*. It is the same with the former, the same Root of the striped Savoy, as aforesaid, yielding one side or part, whose Flowers will be wholly bluish, or having some small spots, or sometimes few or none in them.

XVI. 13. *Caryophyllus maximus Subaudicus ruber*, *The red Savoy*. It is like the bluish when the color of the Flower is wholly red, without the mixtion of any Stripes or Spots, and so abides long, yet it is sometimes seen, that the same side or part, or Root, being separate from the first or Mother Plant, will give striped and well marked Flowers again.

XVII. 14. *Caryophyllus maximus Oxoniensis*, *The Oxford Carnation*. It is very like to the *French Carnation*, as well for form as largeness and color, but that this is of a sadder red color, so finely Marbled with White thereon, that the Red having the Mastery, it shews it like a very sad Flower, not having any Flakes or Stripes at all in it.

XVIII. 15. *Caryophyllus maximus Regius*, sive *Bristolensis major*, *The Kings Carnation*, or *Ordinary Bristol*. It is a reasonable great Flower, deeply jagged of a sad red color, very finely striped and speckled with White; some of the Leaves of the Flower on the one side will turn up their brims or edges; the green Leaf in this is very large.

XIX. 16. *Caryophyllus maximus Granatensis*, *The greatest Granado*. It is a very fair large Flower, bigger than the *Crystal*, and almost as big as the *Eleo Hulo*, it is almost equally divided, and striped with Purple and White, but the Purple is sadder than in the *Ordinary Granado Gilliflower*, else it

might be said to be the same, but greater, several have taken this Flower to be the *Grand Pere*, but the difference will manifestly appear in the description of the next Flower.

XX. 17. *Caryophyllus maximus dictus Camberfine*, *The Camberfine*. It is a fair great Flower, red colored, and well marked or striped with White, somewhat like unto a *Savoy*, as some say, but that the Red is not Crimson, as the *Savoy* is; or something like to the *Dainty*, as others say, but not so gallant and sweet a form; the Leaves of the Flowers are many, clustering together, without any due form of spreading.

XXI. 18. *Caryophyllus maximus dictus Gran Pere*, *The Grand Pere*. It is a fair great Flower, and sweet enough for the form, but of no great beauty for Color, because, although it is striped Red and White, like the *Queens Gilliflower*, yet the Red is so sad, that it takes away all the pleasantness of the Flower.

XXII. 19. *Caryophyllus maximus Longobardicus ruber*, *The great Lombard red*. It is a great sad red Flower, so double and thick of Leaves, that it most commonly breaks its Husk or Pod, and seldom shews or gives one Flower of twenty perfect; the Blades or green Leaves are as large as the *Hulo*.

XXIII. 20. *Caryophyllus maximus Anglicus*, *The greatest English Carnation*, or *Old Carnation*. It is already described at large in Chap. 139. Sect. 5. foregoing of this Book, and is the very Head and Principal, as well as the greatest and largest of all the *Carnations* that are yet known, and to the place now cited I refer you; the Description of this is general, and serves to all the nineteen afore enumerated.

XXIV. *The Places*. These all of them are only Garden Plants, and therefore are under the constant care of Curious and Diligent Florists; they are many times nursed up in Pots, that they may be removed out of the cold.

XXV. *The Times*. They Flower about the end of *June*, and through all *July*, unless the Season is very hot; but if the Weather is temperate, they sometimes continue Flowering till the end of *August*, or later.

XXVI. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues*, are the same with those of the *Clove-gilliflower*, of which we have Treated at large in Chap. 139. from Sect. 9. to Sect. 20. and to that we refer you.

## C H A P. CCCXVIII.

Of GILLIFLOWER the greater,

O R,

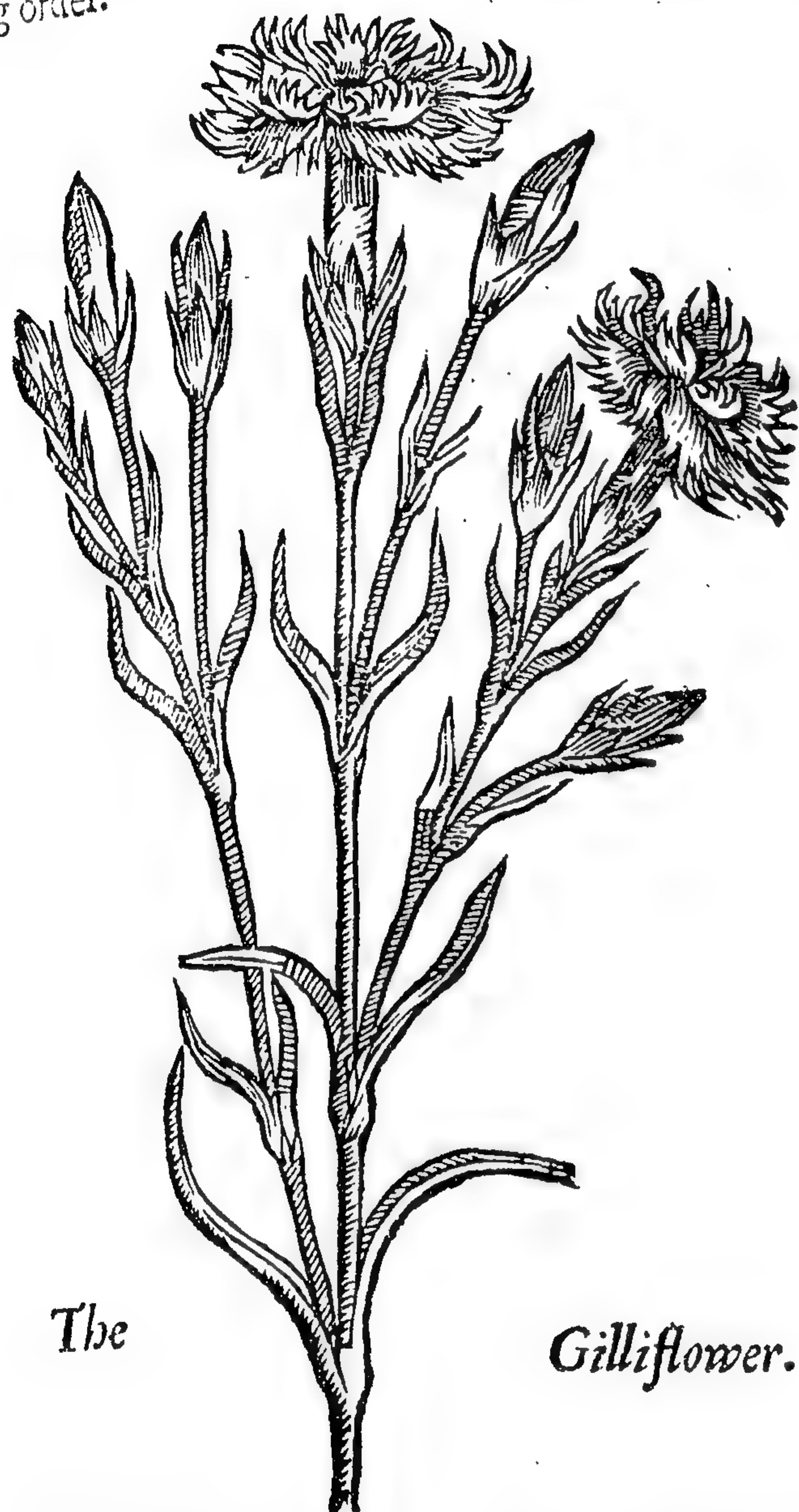
GILLIFLOWER simply so called.

I. **T**HE Names. As we said of the *Great Carnation Gilliflower* in the last Chapter, so we say of this, that it was a Plant wholly unknown to the *Greeks*, though from the *Latin* Name a *Greek* Name, (and very proper in the Language) may easily be derived; we call it in *Latin* *Caryophyllus Hortensis major*; I know that in Chap. 139. Sect. 3. foregoing we have called this *Gilliflower* *Caryophyllus minor*, that is, accounting the *Great Carnation* in the last Chapter to be the *Greater Gilliflower*, viz. *Caryophyllus Hortensis major*, it follows from the reason of the Name, that this being a lesser Gil-  
liflower



lifer than that, that it may very well be called *Caryophyllus Hortensis minor*; but if we allow the *Carnation* in the former Chapter to be *Caryophyllus Hortensis maximus*, then it follows from the same reason, that this must be called *Caryophyllus Hortensis major*, as aforementioned; and in *Greek* it may be called *Καρυόφυλλον ἡμερον μέζον*, *The Greater Garden Clove*, or *Greater Gilliflower*.

II. *The Kinds*. Of the *Gilliflower* there are also many *Kinds*, Authors account about Thirty Four several *Species*, which, because of their great number, and the immediate after repetition of their Names, we shall forbear to enumerate them here, and give you their several Appellations, just going before their singular Descriptions, and that in the following order.



The

Gilliflower.

III. *The Descriptions*. I. *Caryophyllus Hortensis major Flore pleno miniato*, *The yellowish red Gilliflower*, called also *Caryophyllus Silesiacus*, *The Silesian Gilliflower*, but it has been now so long Planted in *England*, that it is become perfectly a Native of our own Country, see its Description at large in Chap. 139. Sect. 6. foregoing, which is also a general Description to all the following enumerated in this Chapter.

IV. 2. *Caryophyllus major Westmonasteriensis*, *The Gallant*, or *Westminster*. Some would make this Flower to be two, one bigger than the other, others again make it but one; it shews at first blowing open of the Flower, to be of a reasonable Size and Beauty, but after it has stood blown some time it shews smaller and thinner, it is of a bright red Color, much striped and speckled with White.

V. 3. *Caryophyllus major Bristolensis Purpureus*, *The Bristol Blew or Purple*. It has large green Leaves, so large, that it would seem to bring forth a greater Flower than it doth, yet the Flower is of an indifferent Size, and very like unto the *Ordinary Grand Gilliflower*, striped and flaked in the same manner, but that the White of this is purer than that, and the Purple is more light, and tending to a Blew; this Flower does not abide constant, but changes into a Purple or Blush.

VI. 4. *Caryophyllus major Bristolensis Carneus*, *The Bristol Blush*. It is very like the last both in Leaf and Flower, the Color only shews the difference, which seldom varies, to be spotted, or to change its Color.

VII. 5. *Caryophyllus major Cantij*, *The fair one of Kent*, or *Ruffling Robin*. It is a very beautiful Flower, and almost as large as the *White Carnation*, the Flower is white, thick powdered with Purple, in which the White has the Mastery by much, which makes it so much the more pleasant and delectable.

VIII. 6. *Caryophyllus Silesiacus magnus*, *Caryophyllus fulvus magnus*, *The great Tawney*. It is for form of growing, in Leaf and Flower altogether like unto the *Ordinary Tawney*, the Flower only, because it is the fairest and greatest, makes the difference, as also that it is of a deep Scarlet Color.

IX. 7. *Caryophyllus fulvus variabilis*, *The variable Tawney*. There are several Tawnies, some lighter some sadder, either less or more double, so as they are scarcely to be numbred, all rising from sowing the Seed of some of them, besides the diversity of other Colors, both simple and mixed, every Year and place yielding some variety not seen before, which I leave to curious Spectators to give proper Names to, as they shall see fit.

X. 8. *Caryophyllus major Carneus variabilis*, *The variable Blush colored*. Of this there are many sorts, as the deep Blush, the pale Blush, the Infants Blush, the great Blush, and the Blush inclining to a Red; but the great Blush is the fairest and most double of all the other Blushes, of which there are many, both single and double.

XI. 9. *Caryophyllus Ruber variabilis*, *The variable Red*. Of Reds there are some varieties, but not so many as of the other Colors, for as they are most dead or deep Reds, and very few of a bright Red, or Stamel Color, so neither Purple nor White rise from this Seed, that any one has observed; they are either single, like Pinks, either striped or speckled; or more double, striped and speckled variably.

XII. 10. *Caryophyllus Heroica*, dictus *Elegans*, *The Lady*, called the *Beautiful* or *Noble*. This may compare for Beauty with most of the *Gilliflowers*, the Flower is very neat and fine, tho' small, with a fine small jag, and of a fine white color on the under side of all the Leaves, as also all the whole jag for a pretty compass, and the bottom or middle part of the Flower on the upper side also, but each Leaf is of a fine bright pale red color on the upper side, from the edge to the middle, which mixture is wonderfully delectable.

XIII. 11. *Caryophyllus major Regineus*, *The Queens Gilliflower*. It is a reasonable fair Flower, altho' very common, and is striped Red and White, some great and some small, with long stripes.

XIV. 12. *Caryophyllus major Carneus*, *The Blush Gilliflower*. It differs not much from the Red colored, or Stamel, as to its magnitude or form, but only in the color of the Flower, which is Blush.

XV. 13. *Caryophyllus Albus Londinensis optimus major*, *The greater and best London White Gilliflower*. It is admirable to look upon, grows upright, and very double; the blades grow upright also, not crawling on the Ground.

XVI. 14. *Caryophyllus Albus Londinensis vulgaris*, *The common White London Gilliflower*. This is greater and whiter than the *Common White Gilliflower*, and is indeed wholly of one color.

XVII. 15. *Caryophyllus major Doroborniensis Ruber*, *The Red Dover*. It is a reasonable large *Gilliflower*, and constant, being of a fair Red, thick powdered with white spots, and shews something like the *Grand Carnation*.

XVIII. 16. *Caryophyllus major Doroborniensis Dilutus*,



*Latus, five Albus, The Light, or White Dover.* It is for form and all other things more beautiful or delectable than the former; the color of the Flower is Blush, thick spotted with very small spots, that it seems all grey, and is very delightful to look on.

XIX. 17. *Caryophyllus major Brasiliensis, The Brasil Gilliflower.* It is but of a middle size, being of a sad purple color, thick powdered and speckled with White, the Purple therein is the chief, which makes it shew the sadder, it is unconstant, varying much, and often to be all purple; the green Leaves lye matting on the Ground.

XX. 18. *Caryophyllus Roseus rotundus, The round Gilliflower.* It is of the Kindred of the Tawnies, being raised from the Seed of some of them, yet it is a different sort from all others, in that its Leaves are round, without any jag at all upon the edges, of a fine Stamel full color, without any spot or stroke therein, very like unto a small Rose, or rather much like unto the Red Rose Campion, both for form, color, and roundness, but larger for its size.

XXI. 19. *Caryophyllus Silesiacus striatus, The striped Tawney.* It is either greater or lesser, deeper or lighter in its Flowers, there being above twenty varieties of them, all striped with smaller or larger stripes, or equally divided, of a deeper or lighter color; and some also for the shape or form will be more near, close and round, others more loose and unequal.

XXII. 20. *Caryophyllus Silesiacus punctatus, The speckled Tawney.* It is of divers sorts, some bigger some less, some more and some less spotted than others, usually it is of a deep Scarlet, speckled or spotted with White, having also some stripes among the Leaves, and some more striped than others.

XXIII. 21. *Caryophyllus major Elegans, The Delicate or Delectable.* It is a noble fine Flower, altho' it be not great, and for the smallness and thinness of the Flower, being red, so finely marked, striped and speckled, that for the liveliness of the Colors, it becomes delectable to the Eye, and much to be desired, being inferior to very few Gilliflowers.

XXIV. 22. *Caryophyllus major Granatensis, The Granada Gilliflower.* It is Purple and White, flaked and striped very much; this is also much subject to change Purple: there is of this Kind a greater and a lesser, besides the greatest, which is formerly described.

XXV. 23. *Caryophyllus Silesiacus Plumatus, The Feathered Tawney.* This is more rare to meet with than many of the others, it is most usually a fair large Flower, and double, equalling the Lombard Red in its perfection, the Color hereof is commonly a Scarlet, a little deeper or paler, very curiously Feathered, and Streamed with White thro' the whole Leaf.

XXVI. 24. *Caryophyllus Silesiacus Marmor emulans, The Marbled Tawney.* This has not so many varieties as the Striped, but is of as great beauty, and as delectable as it, or more, the Flowers are greater or smaller, deeper or lighter colored one than another, and the Veins or Marks more conspicuous, or more frequent in some than in others; but the most beautiful of all is the Princess following.

XXVII. 25. *Heroina Florum Rudolphi Imperatoris, The Princess.* This is the greatest and fairest of all these sorts of Variable Tawnies, or Seed Flowers, being as large fully as the Prince or Crystal, or something greater, standing comly and round, not loose or shaken, or breaking the Pod or Husk, as some other sorts will; the marking of the Flowers is in this manner, it is of a Stamel Color, striped and marbled, with white Stripes and Veins quite thro' every Leaf, which are as deeply jagged as the Huls, sometimes it has more Red than White, and

sometimes more White than Red, and sometimes so equally matched or marked, that you cannot discern which is most; yet which of these has the predominance, the Flower is still very beautiful and delightful to behold.

XXVIII. 26. *Caryophyllus Silesiacus affulosus, The flaked Tawney.* This is another diversity of these variable or mixt colored Flowers, being of a pale reddish color, flaked with White, not always down right, but oftentimes athwart the Leaves, some more or less than others, the marking of them is much like the Crystal; these also, as well as the others, will be greater or smaller, and of greater or lesser beauty than others.

XXIX. 27. *Caryophyllus Turcicus, The Turkey Gilliflower.* This is but a small Flower, but of great delight, by reason of the well marking of the Flower, being most equally striped with Red and White.

XXX. 28. *Caryophyllus purpureo caruleus, The blew Gilliflower.* This is neither very double nor very great, yet round and handfom, with a deep jag at the edge, and is of an exceeding deep Purple Color, tending to a Tawney, it differs from all other sorts, in that the Leaf is as green as Grass, and the Stalks many times Red or Purple; by the green Leaves it may be known in the Winter as well as in the Summer.

XXXI. 29. *Caryophyllus Cambrensis Poole, The Cambrey, or Poole Flower.* It grows naturally upon the Rocks, near Cogshot Castle, in the Isle of Wight, is a small Flower, but very delectable to the Eye, because of the sweet and beautiful proportion thereof; it is of a bright pale Red, thick speckled, and very small, with White, so that it seems to be but one color; the Leaves of the Flower are but small jagged about, and it keeps constant to its form.

XXXII. 30. *Caryophyllus Persico Violaceus, The Gredeline Gilliflower.* It is a very neat and handfom Flower, of the bigness of the Red Clove-Gilliflower, of a fine pale reddish Purple, or Peach Color, enclining to a Blew or Violet, which is that Color which is usually called a Gredeline Color; it has no affinity with either Purple, Granada, or Pageant.

XXXIII. 31. *Caryophyllus Pegma dilutor, The light or pale Pageant.* It is a Flower of a middle size, very pleasant to behold, and is both constant and beautiful, if it was not so common, it would be much more valued than it is; the Flower is of a pale bright Purple, thick powdered, and very equally, with White, which has the Mastery, and makes it much the more pleasant and graceful.

XXXIV. 32. *Caryophyllus Purpureus major & minor, The Purple Gilliflower greater and lesser.* The Stalk of it is so slender, and the Leaves upon it so many and thick, that it lyes and trails on the Ground, the greatest is almost as large as the Crystal, but not so double; the lesser has a smaller Flower.

XXXV. 33. *Caryophyllus Pegma saturator, The sad or deep colored Pageant.* It is the same with the former in Sect. 33. aforegoing as to its form and bigness, the difference is chiefly in the Color, for the Purple in this is the chief, which makes it so sad, that it resembles the Brasil for color, but not so large as it by half.

XXXVI. 34. *Caryophyllus ruber major & minor, The Stamel Gilliflower greater and lesser.* It is well known, almost to every Body, and differs little from the Common Red Clovegilliflower, but only in its being of a brighter or light red color; of this Kind there is both a greater and a lesser.

XXXVII. *The Places.* These all grow in the Gardens of Industrious Florists in many parts of this Kingdom.



Kingdom, and are to be found in the Flower Gardens or most other parts of Europe.

XXXVIII. *The Times.* They begin to Flower about the end of June, and keep on Flowering thro' all July and August, and many times thro' all September, even almost to the latter end of October, if the Weather is mild.

XXXIX. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with those of the *Clovegillflower* in Chap. 139. from Sect. 9. to Sect. 20. to which I refer you; but these wanting that wonderful deep Red, cannot give so admirable a Tincture to a Syrup, as the *Clovegillflower* can do, and therefore (tho' full as Cordial, yet) are less used in Physick.

XL. *Nota.* It is said by our Moderns, that none of these Flowers were in the least known to the Ancients, and yet some will have them to be the *Cantabrica Plinij*, others to be the *Iphium Theophrasti*, mentioned in *Lib. 6. Cap. 6. and 7.* among his Garden and Summer Flowers; others to be his *Dios Anthos*, or *Flos Jovis*, mentioned in the former and other places; we will not determine the Controversie, but leave every one to his Conjectures.

GLADDON Stinking. See FLOWER-DELUCE Wild Chap. 294.  
GLADIOLUS. See CORN-FLAG Chap. 154.

## C H A P. CCCXIX.

### OF GOATS-BEARD,

O R,

### NOON-FLOWER.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek* Τραγοπώγων, & Τραγοπώγων, in *Latin* Tragopogon, Barba Hirci, Barbula Hirci, also Τραγοπώγων, Barba Senis, in *English* Goats-Beard, Noon-Flower, Noon-Tide, Josephs Flower, and Star of Jerusalem.

II. *The Kinds.* There are several Kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Tragopogon luteum*, Garden Yellow Goats-Beard. 2. *Tragopogon purpureum*, Purple Goats-Beard. 3. *Tragopogon luteum angustifolium*, Common Goats-Beard with narrow Leaves. 4. *Tragopogon Flore caruleo*, Blew Goats-Beard. 5. *Tragopogon Apulum suave rubens*, *Tragopogon Americanum*, American or Rose colored Goats-Beard. There are five or six other Kinds, but not being found growing in our Country, or in our Gardens, nor in any of our *American Plantations*, we shall here pass them by.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Garden Yellow Goats-Beard, has a Root which is long and round, somewhat like unto a Parsnep, but far smaller, blackish on the outside and white within, which being broken yields a milky Juice, as all the rest of the Plant does, and of a very good and pleasant taste; from which Root rises up a Stalk, or Stalks, of two or three Feet high, smooth and hollow, bearing many long and narrow Leaves, broader at the bottom, and sharper at the end, with a ridge down the back of the Leaf, and of a pale green color; the higher these Leaves grow on the Stalks, the smaller and shorter they are, and at the tops on every Branch grows a great double yellow Flower, like almost to the Flower of a Dandelion, which turns into a head,

stored with Down, and long whitish Seed therein having on the head of every one some part of the Down, which (if neglected) is carried away with the Wind.

### Goats-Beard Yellow.



IV. *The second, or Purple Goats-Beard, has a Root which is long and single, (much like to the former) with some few Threads thereto adjoining, which perishes when it has perfected its Seed, yielding a great quantity of a milky Juice when it is cut or broken, as does all the rest of the Plant; from whence rises a hollow Stalk, or Stalks, smooth, and of a whitish green color, which spreads it self out into other Branches, on which Stalks and Branches do grow long Leaves, crested down the middle with a swelling Rib, and sharp pointed, yielding a milky Juice when it is broken, and are in shape like those of Garlick; from the bottom of which Leaves small tender Stalks spring forth, set with the like Leaves, but lesser; the Flowers grow at the tops of the Stalks, consisting of a number of Purple Leaves, dashed over, as it were, with a little yellow dust, set about with nine or ten sharp pointed green Leaves; the whole Flower resembles a Star when it is spread abroad, for it shuts its self at Twelve of the Clock, and shews not its open face until the next days Sun doth make it spread its self, or open again, for which reason it was called Noon-Flower, and by some go to Bed at Noon: when these Flowers are come to their full maturity, they grow into a Downy Head, like those of Dandelion, which is carried away with the Wind; the Seed is long, having at its upper end some small portion of that downy matter fastned to it.*

V. *The third, or Common Goats-Beard with narrow Leaves, is very much like to the first Yellow Kind, it has a thick Root full of a milky Sap, from which rises up many Leaves spread upon the Ground, very long, narrow, thin, and like unto those of Grass, saving, that they are thicker and grosser; from among which rise up tender Stalks, on the tops of*



which do stand fair double yellow Flowers, like to the first afore described, but lesser; the whole Plant yields a milky Juice, as the others do; it perishes also as the others do, after it has perfected its Seed; indeed it is very much like to the former *Yellow Kind*, but that it is not so great, nor rises so high, has much narrower Leaves; even like to *Grass*, and almost as long, but not so manifold, the Flower only differing in its magnitude, as aforesaid.

VI. *The fourth, or Blew Goats-Beard, has a Root which is long, and not very great, perishing as soon as it has born Seed, springing up again of the falling Seed, and so remaining green all Winter, and Flowering the next Year following.* From this Root rises up a Stalk greater and stronger than that of *Scorzonera*, or *Vipers-Grass*, it is replenished with long, narrow, and somewhat hollow, whitish green Leaves, with a white Line down the middle of every one, on the upper side; at the top of the Stalk grows a great long Head or Husk, composed of nine or ten long narrow Leaves, the sharp points or ends of which rise up above the Flower in the middle, which is thick and double, somewhat broad and large spread, of a blewish Ash Color, with some whitish Threads among them, shutting or closing it self within the green Husk every day at Noon, (for so long time as the Flowers continue) and not opening again until the next Morning; after the Flower is past, the Head or Husk, the Seed being near ripe, opens it self, the long Leaves thereof, which closed not before now, falling down round about the Stalk, and shewing the Seed, standing at the first close together, and the Down at the top of them, but after a while it spreads it self round, and if not gathered, will be carried away with the Wind; the Seed is long, round, and rough, like the Seed of *Vipers-Grass*, but greater and blacker.

VII. *The fifth, or American, or Rose colored Goats-Beard, has a Root which is long and slender, and is the smallest Root of all the Goats-Beards, white downwards, and somewhat hard, but more reddish at the top, which sends forth many long and narrow Leaves; like unto Grass, with a white Line in the middle of them, smooth and soft if you stroak them upwards, but as rough as Barley Leaves stroaking them downwards, and broadest at their joining to the Stalk; the Stalk is about two Feet high, scarcely dividing it self into any Branches, but bears at the top one great and large head, (which is great in respect to the Plant) parted into eight long Leaves or Beards, in the middle of which is the Flower, consisting of ten or twelve Leaves, of a pale purple, or rather of a blush color, near unto a Damask Rose, having several blackish blew Threads in the middle, with a mealy dust upon them, which being past, the Head or Husk grows somewhat narrow, with a long Neck, containing within it the Seed, which is not fashioned into a round Globe like form, with Down at the heads of the several Seeds, as in all the former, but it has five longer and greater Seeds on the outside, with little or no Down at the ends of them, and some lesser Seeds in the middle, which have a little Down on their heads, being yellowish and smooth, but the least of all others.*

VIII. *An Observation.* These *Goats-Beards* are very like to the *Scorzonera's*, or *Vipers-Grasses*, in their outward form and manner of growing, and therefore are *Species ejusdem generis*, but the *Tragepogon*, or *Goats-Beard*, is the Genus or Standard, and the *Scorzonera's* are *Species* of the *General Kind*, but herein they chiefly differ, that whereas all the sorts of *Tragepogon's* are Annual Plants, perishing every Year, after they have born their Seed; it is certain that all the sorts of *Scorzonera's* are Perenni-

al Plants, enduring after Seed time for many Years, as in their proper place we shall hereafter at large declare.

IX. *The Places.* The first and third grow in Gardens with us, but are also found wild in many places of this Land, Gerard says they grow in Meadows and Fertile Pastures in most places of *England*, they grow plentifully in most of the Fields about *London*, as at *Islington*, and in the Meadows by *Redriff*, *Deptford*, and *Putney*, and in divers other places; the third is found in Meadows (as aforesaid) about *London*, and many other places of the Kingdom, but not so plentifully as the first Kind; the second, or *Purple Kind*, came to us from *Italy*, where it is said to grow wild; it has also been found growing wild in some parts of *Lancashire*, on the Banks of the River *Chalder*, near to the House formerly the Lady *Heskiths*, two Miles from *Whaley*, but it is now Sown in Gardens almost every where, for the beauty of the Flowers; the fourth, or *Blew Kind*, came to us also out of *Italy*, where it is supposed to grow wild, but with us is only nurst up in Gardens, for its pleasant Flowers; the fifth Kind is found growing on the Hills in *Naples*, as *Columna* reports, and I have found it growing wild in several parts of *Florida*, but with us in *England* it is purely a Garden Plant.

X. *The Times.* They all of them Flower from the latter end of *May* thro' all *June* and *July*, and the Seed comes to perfection in the mean time, being ripe in *July* and *August*.

XI. *The Qualities.* *Goats-Beard* is temperate in respect of heat or cold, driness or moisture, a little Astringent, Stomack, Heparick, Alexipharmick, and Analeptick.

XII. *The Specification.* They are all Restoratives in Consumptions, and expel Gravel from the Reins and Bladder.

XIII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *The boiled Roots, or Roots raw.* 2. *A Decoction.* 3. *A distilled Water from the Root.* 4. *Sanguis, or Blood of the Root,* there being no other part of the Plant used.

#### *The Virtues.*

XIV. *The Root it self.* The Roots of any of the Kinds being boiled, but more especially of the first *Yellow Kind*, and of the third also, and dressed as *Parfneps*, are much more delicate and pleasant to the Taste in eating, they comfort the Stomach, are good against Heart-burnings, strengthen the whole Body, and restore in Consumptions; the Roots of the *Yellow Kind* are many times eaten raw, as a Sallet, being sliced, and so eaten with Pepper, Salt, and Vinegar, by which means the Stomach is also strengthened, and they are restored which are going into a Consumption, or are become Spare and Lean by long Sickness; the *Yellow Kinds* are chiefly used as *Parfneps*, and for Sallering; the other Kinds are not altogether so fit for that purpose, being more bitter, astringent, and absterfive, having a more cleansing and binding quality than the others have, and therefore are mostly used in a Medicinal way; the *Yellow Kinds* make a pleasant Dish of Food, far surpassing the *Parfnep*.

XV. *The Decoction.* It is good against the pain of the Stomach, and to expel the malignity of the Plague, and all sorts of Pestilential Diseases; it prevails against Heartburnings, and a dejected Appetite, inciting and stirring it up; and it is good also against Affects of the Breast, Liver, Reins, Ureters and Bladder, expelling Sand, Gravel, Stones, and Tartarous Matter from those parts, for which reason the *Italians* call it *Sassi Frica*, Break-Stone.

XVI. *The*



XVI. *The Distilled Water.* Tragus says it is the most present Remedy that is, to help or break inward Apoplems, and to give Relief in the Pleurisie, and other Pains and Stitches in the Sides, to help the Hentburn, strengthen the Stomach, and stir up Appetite.

XVII. *Sanguis, or, The Blood of the Roots.* It is made as that of *Satyrion*, *Parsnep*, *Comfrey*, &c. and has all the Virtues of the boiled Root, Decoction, or Distilled Water; it is indeed a most excellent thing to restore such as are in deep Consumptions, being constantly taken Morning, Noon, and Night, for some considerable time, with Milk warm from the Cow, and sometimes with a Glass of Generous Wine.

## C H A P. CCCXX. Of G O A T S--R U E, O R, G O A T S--H E R B.

**T**HE Names. It is an Herb which was unknown to the Greeks, but is called by the Latins *Galega*, and *Ruta Capraria*, some have erroneously called it *Grælega*, and *Fracastorius* called it *Herbi Gallica*, and some only *Capraria*, (from the Goats eating it) some call it *Thorina*, or *Taurina*, *Sarracena*, and *Capragina*, also *Giarga*, as *Brassavolus* saith, and by us in English *Goats-Rue*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are two Kinds of this Plant, viz. 1. *Galega vulgaris*, *Ruta Capraria vulgaris*, Our Common Goats-Rue. 2. *Galega Montana* *Polechampi* *Lugdunensis*, Mountain Goats-Rue.



Goates  
Rue

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common Goats-Rue, has a Root which is white and Woolly,

spreading well in the Ground, and abiding several Years; from this Root come forth many round hard Stalks, four or five Feet high, on which grow one above another at several Joints, long winged Leaves, viz. many smaller Leaves set on each side of a middle Rib, which Leaves are small, yet somewhat broad and long, and sharp pointed at the ends, and smooth on the edges, without any dents, something like unto the Leaves of *Vetches* or *Tares*, and of a faint green color; at the tops of the Stalks stand many small Leguminous Flowers, one above another, of a pale blewish purple color, and in some Plants purely white, which being past away, small round Pods or Cods come in their places, about an Inch and half long, a little bunched out in some places, but nothing so much as the *Orobis*, or *Bitter Vetch*, in which lye three, four, or five pale Seeds, like unto those of the *Vetch* or *Tare*.

IV. *The second, or Mountain Kind*, has a Root which is somewhat great and black, sending forth very long Strings, whereby it Roots its self deep in the Ground; from which several round hard Stalks shoot forth, but nothing so high as the former, on which grow such like winged Leaves at every Joint, but broader, and thicker set together, smooth also on the edges, but having the middle Rib of every Leaf raised up a little high; at the tops of the Stalks stand divers such like Flowers as the former, but all on one side, of a pale color, tending to yellow, which afterwards yield small long blackish Pods, in which lye small flatish Seed, like to *Lemils*.

V. *The Places.* The first grows commonly wild by the Way sides of moist Fields and Meadows in Italy, Savoy, and other Southern Climates; it is also found growing wild in England, as in the Meadows by Linton in Cambridgeshire: the second grows on the tops of Mountains, where any Planes are found; and I am informed by a very good Botanist, that he has met with it upon some of the Mountains in Wales.

VI. *The Times.* They Flower about the latter end of June, and thro' all July, and the Seed is ripe in August.

VII. *The Qualities.* It is temperate in respect of heat and cold, driness and moisture; it is Aperitive, Absterfive, and Carminative, Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomatick, and Cardiack, Sudorifick, and Alexipharmick.

VIII. *The Specification.* It cures all sorts of Poysons, whether inwardly taken, or outwardly received, by the Bitings of Serpents, as Vipers, Rattle-Snakes, or other venomous Creatures; or impressed by Contagion, as that of the Plague, Spotted Fever, or any other kind of Pestilential Distemper.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A Sallet of the Herb. 2. A Liquid Juice. 3. An Essence. 4. An Infusion or Decoction in Wine or Water. 5. An Electuary. 6. A Cataplasm. 7. A Distilled Water. 8. An Acid Tincture. 9. An Oily Tincture. 10. A Spirituous Tincture.

### The Virtues.

X. *The Sallet.* The Herb it self is eaten, being boiled with Fleish, as we use to boil and eat Cabbage and Coleworts; it is also eaten as boiled Spinage, and other Sallets, with Pepper, Salt, Vinegar and Oil; and being so eaten, it is said to be excellent against all sorts of Poysons, and the malignity or infection of the Plague or Pestilence, or the Bitings of venomous Creatures, &c.

XI. *The Liquid Juice.* It is effectual against the Biting of Vipers, Rattle-Snakes, or other Serpents, Bitings of Mad Dogs, the Stinging of Scorpions,



or the Poyson of other venomous Creatures; it is also effectual against Vegetable Poysons, as also the malignity of the Plague, or Pestilence it self, and the infection of other Pestilential or Contagious Diseases, as Purples, Measles, Small Pox, Spotted Fever, and Calenture; against all these Diseases it is admirable, for it both preserves from the infection, and perfectly cures such as are infected; Dose two or three Spoonfuls every Morning fasting in a Glass of Generous Wine, and as much at Night going to Bed, by way of prevention; but for Cure, it ought to be given in *Angelica* Water, in the same, or larger Dose, according to the Age and Condition of the Patient, and to be repeated as often as the exigency or vehemency of the Disease requires. This Juice given also in a Morning fasting, kills Worms in Children, or Elder People, and cures the Falling-Sickness if given before it grows too old and strong upon the Patient: when it is given in the Plague, &c. Bitings of Mad Dogs, Vipers, &c. the Patients ought to be in their Naked Bed, and made to Sweat thereupon for two or three Hours or more together.

XII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, but acts more speedily and powerfully, it expels the Poyson and Malignity by Perspiration, and so defends the Heart and Vital Powers; it is an extraordinary thing to cleanse, dry, and heal green Wounds, as also old and running Ulcers, putrid Sores, and virulent Fistula's, destroying the malignity, hindring their eating and spreading, and defending the Principal Parts and Vital Powers from danger; it is a singular good Cordial, suppresses Vapors, resists Melancholy, is good against Tremblings and Convulsions, prevails against Swooning Fits, revives the Spirits, and cheers the Heart, preserving it from Palpitations, and other illnesses which oppress it, Dose one or two Spoonfuls in a Glass of Canary, or other fit Vehicle.

XIII. *The Infusion or Decoction in Wine or Water.* Either of them may be given in all the Cases in which the Juice or Essence are given in, but as they are much weaker in their Effects, so they must be given in much greater Dose, as from a Quarter of a Pint to Half a Pint, and also to be oftener repeated, as the necessity may require.

XIV. *The Electuary.* Take Poulder of Goats-Rue four Ounces, Zedoary in Poulder, Contra-yerva, Virginia Snake-root, all in fine Poulder, of each one Ounce, Saffron, Cochenile, of each two Drams, Rob of Goats-Rue twenty Ounces, mix and make an Electuary. It is good against all sorts of Poysons, both Vegetable and Animal, as also against the Plague, and all other infectious Diseases, and has indeed all the Virtues of the Liquid Essence and Juice; Dose from one Dram to two Drams, in any proper Vehicle.

XV. *The Cataplasm.* It is made of the bruised Herb, fried or made hot with Vinegar, and then brought to a consistence with Mithridate and Poulder of Bay Berries, adding also a little Aloes in fine Poulder; applied to the Region of the Heart, it is good against the infection of the Plague, and other malign Diseases; applied to the Navel, and over the whole Abdomen, it eases the Cholick, and is very effectual to kill Worms in Children; applied to, and bound pretty hard upon the Pulses of the Wrists, it is good against remitting Fevers, and cures Agues of all sorts, hindring their return; applied to putrid and malign Ulcers, it cleanses them, destroys the malignity, stops the flux of Humors, dries them, and in a very great measure induces their healing; applied to Gangreens it stops their proceeding.

XVI. *The Distilled Water.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but in a much lower degree, and therefore must be given in a much larger Dose; however it is used as a *Vehiculum* to convey the for-

mer Preparation in, where the Physician shall judge Wine to be too hot; to nice and delicate Palates the Distilled Water is oftner given than either Juice or Essence.

XVII. *The Acid Tincture.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, whether inwardly taken, or outwardly applied; it is a Specifick against the Plague, as also against all other Malign and Pestilential Diseases, and cures the most violent burning Fevers in a very short time, taking away the violence of their burning heat in the space of an Hour, Dose so many drops as to make the Vehicle pleasantly sharp, and to be given in all that the Patient drinks.

XVIII. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against the Bitings of Venomous Creatures, being taken from ten to twenty drops in any proper Vehicle; it is also good against Convulsions, Palsies, Lameness, Numbedness, Tremblings, weakness of the extrem parts, Gripings of the Bowels, Wind, Stone, Gravel, Sand, and Tartarous Matter obstructing the Urinary parts, as also against the Colick, Gout in Hands, Arms, Hips, Knees, or Feet, being inwardly taken, and outwardly applied to the parts affected, as the Skilful Physician shall direct; in the Palsie, besides giving it inwardly, and applying it to the afflicted parts, it ought also to be anointed upon the Back Bone every Morning and Evening.

XIX. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, and Electuary, and as it is finer and more Spirituous, so it is more subtil and penetrating, and when dulcified with double refined Sugar, more pleasant to be taken, and a more delicate Cordial, and therefore more fit to be given to the more curious and nice Palates; it may be taken a Spoonful or more at a time, (as you may see convenient) either alone by it self, or mixt with some other Vehicle, as Canary, White Lisbon, or other like Generous Wines; it is indeed an excellent thing against Sickness at Heart, as also against Fainting and Swooning Fits; it is indeed good against all cold and moist Diseases of the Head, Brain, Nerves, Joints, Bowels, Reins, and Womb; it rectifies and enlivens the depauperated Juices, revives the Spirits, tho' never so much oppressed, and gives relief in the most profound Melancholy; it is good against a Vertigo, and Megrim, and is excellent against a Coma, Carus, and Lethargy, or where the Patient is inclined to Sleepiness and Drowsiness; and if it is given with a few drops of the Acid Tincture, it represses Vapors, and effectually cures Fits of the Mother.

## C H A P. CCCXXI.

### Of GOATS--STONES,

OR,

### H A R E S--STONES.

I. **T**HE Names. This Plant is called in Greek, *Τρυγών*: in Latin, *Tragorchis*, *Testiculus Hircinus*, *Scincophora*, and *Orchis saurodes*: in English, Goats-stones, and Hares-stones.

II. *The Kinds.* There are two principal kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Tragorchis mas*, *Testiculus Hircinus mas*, *Scincophora mas*, The Male Goats-stones. 2. *Tragorchis femina*, *Scincophora femina*, The Female Goats-stones. These *Orchides* are thus named, not only



only because they have a foul strong Scent, like that of the Goat, but also that most of them have long Tails, like Beards, hanging down from them.

III. Of the *Male kind*, which is the *Greater Goats-stones*, there are two Species, viz. 1. *Tragorchis mas maxima*, The greatest Male Goats-stones. 2. *Tragorchis mas magna*, *Tragorchis vulgaris magna*, The common great Goats-stones.

IV. Of the *Female kind*, which is the *Lesser Goats-stones*, there are three Species, viz. 1. *Tragorchis femina minor*, *Tragorchis minor verior*, The true lesser Goats-stones. 2. *Tragorchis Batavica Clusii*, *Tragorchis minor Batavica*, The Dutch Goats-stones, or Hares-stones. 3. *Tragorchis minor Austriaca*, *Tragorchis altera purpurea*, Austrian Goats-stones, Goats-stones with purple Flowers.

V. The Descriptions. The first, or Greatest Male Goats-stones, has Roots consisting of two Testicles, like to other Orchides, but greater, from whence rise up Leaves, lying upon the Ground, which are broad, large, and ribbed in some sort like to our Plantane, but somewhat shorter. From among these Leaves grows up a Stalk, about half a yard high, set with such like great Leaves, but growing a little narrower as they grow higher, growing up even to the top of the Stalk by equal Distances. The Bush of Flowers grows at top of the Stalk in Spike-fashion: the Flowers are small and flat, open, and wholly of a purple color, set in a Row, and in an excellent Order; each Flower has a long crooked Thread or String proceeding from its middle part, and hanging down, which twine themselves one in another, like to the small Tendrils of the *Vine*, or rather the Laces or Strings which grow upon the Herb *Savory*: both the Hood and the Tail are spotted, and have a strong Scent.

*Great Common Goats-stones.*



VI. The second, or Common great Goats-stones, has a double tuberous or testiculous Root, like the for-

mer, having that the Testicles are something less; from whence spring up Leaves, like to those of the Garden Lilly, with a Stalk a Foot or more long, wrapped about, even to the Tass of the Flowers with those kinds of Leaves: the Flowers which grow in this Bush, shoot forth in a Spike Form, and are very small, in Form like to a Lizard, because of the twisted or writhen Tails, and spotted Heads. Every one of these small Flowers is at first like a round close Husk, of the Bigness of a *Pea*; which, when it opens, there comes out of it a little, long and tender Spur or Tail, white towards the setting of it to the Flower; the rest spotted with red Dashes, having upon each side a small thing adjoining unto it, like to a Leg or Foot: the rest of the said Tail is twisted crookedly about, and hangs downwards. The Leaves of this sort are indeed longer and narrower than the former; the Flowers are smaller, whiter, and spotted with reddish Spots, and the Tails are more twining. The whole Plant is as strong as the first, and has a rank, stinking Smell or Savor, like the Smell of a Goat, from whence this, as well as the former and all the following, have derived their Names.



VII. The third, or True lesser Goats-stones, has its Root or Testicles much less than either of the former, with several narrower and long Leaves (a little ribbed) rising from the same, which do as it were enclose a single Stalk, which is also enclosed about with like but smaller Leaves, to the beginning of the spiked Head of Flowers. These Leaves are much less than those of the two first described, and the Flowers are without Spurs or Tails, and somewhat like in Shape to those Insects called Sows or Wood Lice for their Proportion; and they are somewhat of a brownish color. Gerard says, That the Flowers much resemble our common Flesh Flies. The Smell of the whole Plant does much more resemble the rank Smell of a Goat, than any of the other kinds.

VIII. The



VIII. *The fourth, or Dutch Goats-stones, is a very small Plant, not much above a Span long or in Height, having a small testiculous Root, like the last: from which rises up a Stalk eight or nine Inches high, having three or four Leaves encompassing it. The top of the Stalk ends in a small spiked Head of Flowers, of a fine purplish red color on the inside, and paler without, having a Belly or Lip hanging down, which is terminated in three short and equal parts.*

IX. *The fifth, or Austrian Goats-stones, has, like all the former, a testiculous Root, which sends forth Lilly like Leaves, of a pale green color, with some smaller about the Stalk, which is about a Span high: towards the top it has a spiked Head of Flowers, which are either of a whitish or pale color, without any Spots, or else purple, with some purple Leaves under them, each of which is hooded and eared, with a hanging Belly, notched as it were at the bottom. The whole Plant smells of a rank Goat like Smell, for which Reason it is brought into the Classis or Rank with the four former.*

X. *The Places.* All the sorts grow chiefly in fat Clay Grounds, and are seldom to be found in any other Soil. The fourth has been found not only in England, but also in Holland, about the Hague; as also in other Parts, about their Sea-Coasts. The last is a Native of Austria, and not to be found with us, except in Gardens of the most exact Florists.

XI. *The Times.* They flower in May and June, when other kinds of Orchides flower.

XII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* are the same with the Cynosorchides or Dogs-stones in Chap. 226. foregoing, so that no more need be said thereof in this place: but Lugdunensis from Dodonæus says, That the Roots of these Orchides are preferable to all others.

C H A P. CCCXXII.  
of GOLD--LOCKS,  
O R,  
GOLDEN--TUFTS.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Χρυσοκόμης*; in Latin, *Chrysocome*, and *Coma aurea*; and in English, *Gold-locks*, or *Golden-tufts*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make several sorts hereof, but the following three are chief, viz. 1. *Chrysocome verior, Coma aurea Dioscoridis*, The true Gold-locks of Dioscorides. 2. *Chrysocome lutea, Coma aurea, & Amaranthus luteus Lobelii & Fuchsi*, Yellow Tufts, or Cassidony. 3. *Chrysocome peregrina secunda Clusii, Chrysocome Cretica altera*, Wild Gold-tufts. The first of these is doubtless the True *Chrysocome* of Dioscorides and Pliny; but is called by several other Names by later Authors, as, *Linaria aurea Tragi, Linaria austriaca Camerarii, Oxyris austriaca Clusii, Linosyris nupereorum Lobelii, &c.*

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or True Gold-locks of Dioscorides, has a Root which is hard and woody, at its Head shooting forth many blackish Fibres into the Ground. From this Root spring forth many hard round Stalks, half a Yard high, somewhat thick set, but unorderedly, with narrow, long, green Leaves up to the tops, where they branch forth into

divers small Sprigs, with smaller and shorter Leaves thereon than on those below, and bearing round Heads of Flowers, composed of Gold-yellow Threads, rising from the middle of a few green Leaves, which are as a Husk to each of them, and abiding a long time in Flower, and also in their full Beauty; but Columna says these Flowers, last not full out a Month, at the end of which time, fading, they turn into Down, which, with the small yellow Seed, of a greyish color, flies away with the Wind. The Stalks die and perish yearly, and new ones rise up again in the Spring.

*True Gold-locks of Dioscorides.*



IV. *The second, or Yellow Tufts, or Cassidony, has a small and black Root, with some Fibres adjoining to it; from which spring up one or more Stalks, eight or nine Inches in Height, spread out into several hoary Branches, with long and narrow whitish Leaves, dispersedly growing thereon, up to their tops, where the Flowers appear in Umbles, each Branch bearing a large Tuft of scaly, yellow Flowers, like a loose or sparsed Umble, keeping their color long before they wither; and being gathered in a fit dry time, when they are in their Perfection, will so abide, and be kept a long time after. The Seed is red, smaller than that of Marjoram, and sharper. The whole Plant is of a strong sweet Smell, and very pleasant.*

V. *The third, or Wild Gold-tufts, has a long, small, slender Root, black and woody, with a pretty many Fibres adjoining thereto; from whence springs up sometimes but one Stalk, and sometimes more, growing up to be about half a Yard high, covered over with an hoary Down, having several long and narrow Leaves on them, sometimes dispersedly set, and sometimes more near together, green on the upper side, and hoary underneath; at the tops grow small Branches, bearing one or two scaly long Heads of yellow Flowers, somewhat like to those of Maudlin, and consisting of many Threads or Thrums. The woolly*



woolly Leaf of this Plant resembles *Gnaphalium vulgare*, but that it is somewhat broader in the middle. The Flowers grow clustering together upon the tops of the Branches, of a yellow color, and almost like those of *Maudlin*, as aforesaid.



*Gold  
Locks  
Wild.*

VI. Note 1. These Plants are known also by the Name of *Golden Flower Gentle*; and by reason of the long continuance of its Flower in Perfection, they are also called (but more especially the first and second,) *Yellow Everlasting*, and *Flower Everlasting*; also *Flower Never-fading*, because it scarcely seems to die.

VII. Note 2. *Johnson* upon *Gerard* has another sort of our second kind, having a long slender Root, very full of small Fibres: from the Head of which Root spring forth three, four, or more Stalks, a Foot or more in Height, which are all of them (almost up to the tops) very well replenished with long, white, downy Leaves, like the former, saving that they are somewhat broader. The Flowers are longer, but in larger Umbles, every ways greater, and seem to be of a more shining Gold color. These Flowers being gathered also in their Beauty and Perfection, will be of as long Continuance, and carry their Glory to as late a Date as those at Sect. 4. aforesaid. Whether this be any differing Species from that second kind aforesaid, I can hardly determine, they being so very much like one another, and seem to me to differ chiefly in their Magnitude, which may probably be from the differing Goodness of the Soil in which they may be found growing; which self-same Difference (from the same Reason) may be observed in many other Plants, which Authors will never admit to be various Species or Kinds of the same Plant.

VIII. The Places. They grow in most untilld places of *Greece*, *Spain* and *Italy*; in Meadows where the Soil is barren; as also about the Banks of Rivers. The first grows not only in *Greece* and

*Italy*, but also in several places of *Germany*, in moist sandy Borders of unmanured Fields, as *Tragus* says. They are all Strangers in *England*, and only grow with us in Gardens, being nurs'd up by the Curious. The second and fourth grow in *Candy* and *Spain*. The third *Clusius* found in *Spain* and *Portugal*, and *Lobel* about *Mompelien* in *France*.

IX. The Times. Tho' these Plants in their native Countries may flower earlier than in our colder Climes, as in *April* or *May*; with us in our Gardens they flower much later, viz. not till *July* and *August*, and sometimes later still.

X. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the latter end of the second Degree, or beginning of the third; are both Aperitive and Astringent; Pectoral, Hysterick and Nephritick, and also Alexipharmick.

XI. The Specification. They provoke the Terms, and force away the After-birth; resist Poyson, and prevail against Convulsions.

XII. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. The Herb it self. 2. A Decoction of the Herb and Flowers in Wine. 3. A Powder of the dried Flowers. 4. A Bath of the Herb and Flowers.

#### The Virtues.

XIII. The Herb it self. It is used to be laid in Chests and Wardrobes, to preserve Garments from Moths and Worms.

XIV. The Decoction of the Herb and Flowers in Wine. Being drunk to six or eight Ounces once or twice a day, it is said to expel all sorts of Poysons, help Cramps, Convulsions and Ruptures, dissolve congealed Blood in the Thorax and Bowels, provoke the Terms in Women, and expel the After-birth.

XV. The Powder of the Flowers. It may be given to two Drams in any convenient Vehicle, as in the Tincture of *Catechu* made in Water, or in Red Port Wine, or in a Mixture of Wine and Water. This being taken first in the Morning fasting, and last at Night going to Bed, it thickens a thin Rheum, prevails against Coughs and Colds, and stops Catarrhs, or Distillations of Rheum down the Throat, which sometimes is said to fall upon the Lungs.

XVI. The Bath made of the Herb and Flowers, either in Water or Wine. It is good to sit over the warm Fumes thereof, for so it opens Obstructions of the Womb, and eases Pains thereof: it gives ease also in the Piles, causing them to be dissolved: it eases them also who are afflicted with Pain in the Reins; gives ease in the Sciatica, and is very effectual to draw down Vapors, and prevent Fits of the Mother.

## C H A P. CCCXXIII. of GOLDEN-ROD.

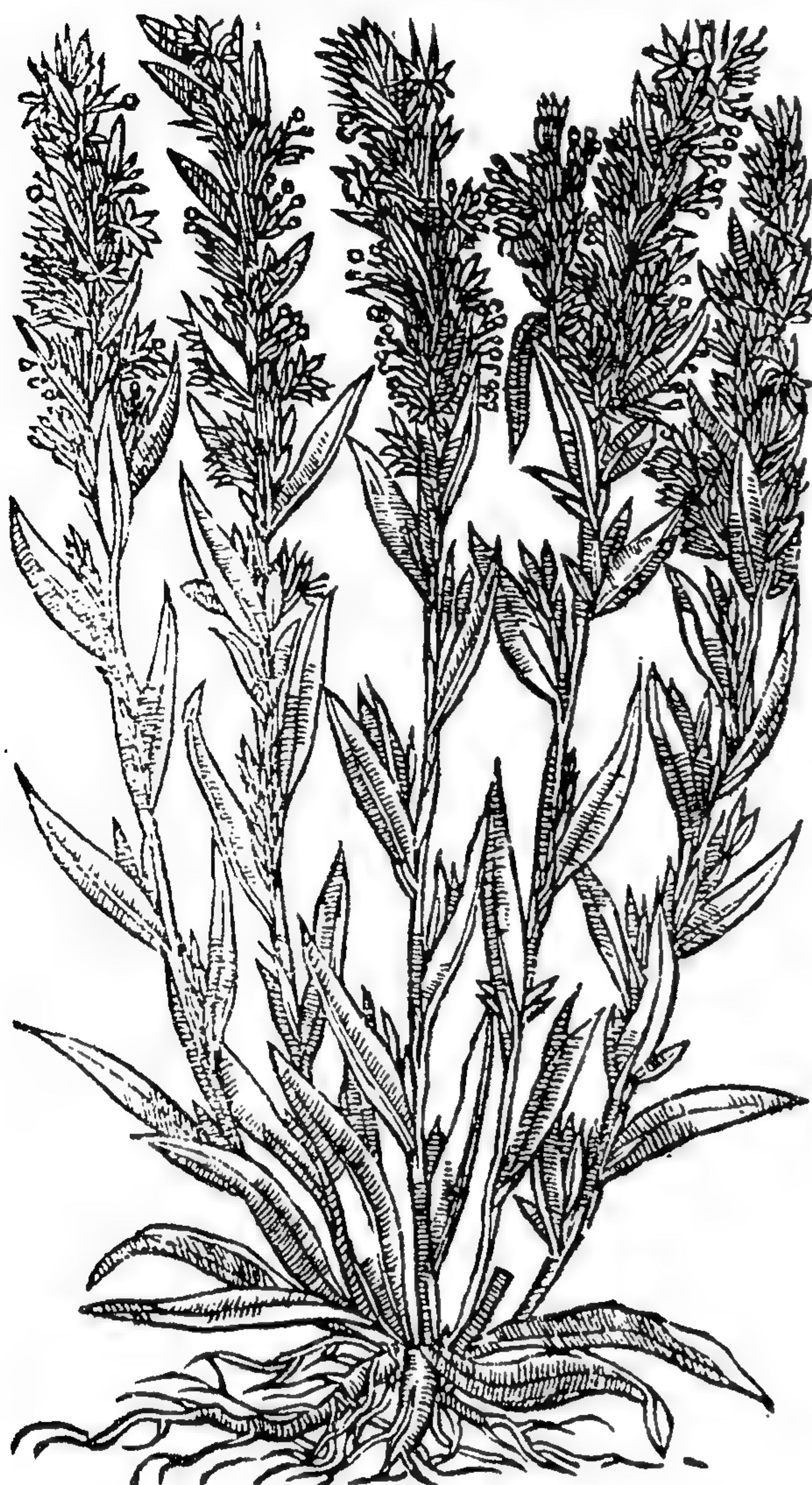
I. THE Names. This is that which is supposed to be the *λευκογερρὶς*, *Plinii*: and is called in *Latin*, *Virga aurea*, (because the Stalks being reddish, make the bushy tops of Flowers seem as if they were of a Gold-yellow;) and in *English* it is called, *Golden-Rod*.

II. The Kinds. There are three several sorts of this Plant, viz. 1. *Virga aurea vulgaris*, *Virga aurea angustifolia*, Our common ordinary Golden Rod, which is the *Virga aurea Villanovani*. and is with  
K k k Leaves



Leaves unshipt or smooth on the edges. 2. *Virga aurea foliis serratis Camerario*, Golden-Rod with dented Leaves. 2. *Virga aurea Americana*, Golden-Rod of America, which is not very much unlike to the second kind.

*Common Golden-Rod.*



III. The Descriptions. The first, or Common Golden-Rod, has a Root consisting of a Bunch of very small Fibres, which run not deep into the Ground, but abide all the Year therein. From this Root spring up several small, round, brownish Stalks, half a Yard or two Feet high, (but higher, if it grows in a fat Soil, or in a Garden well manured) having upon them many narrow and long dark green Leaves, very seldom with any dents about the edges, and as seldom with any Strakes or white Spots upon them; and yet sometimes, and in some places, they are so to be found, divided at the tops into some small Branches, with several small yellow Flowers on every one of them, which are turned one way, and not looking sundry ways at once; which being ripe, do turn into Down, and are carried away with the Wind: the old Stalks die away and perish every Year, and new ones spring up every Spring following.

IV. The second, or Golden-Rod with dented Leaves, has a Root like the other, small, and compacted of many Strings or Threads; from which rise up Stalks, as in the other, not so high as the former, but full as great. The Leaves are small and thin, but broader and shorter than those of the foregoing, smooth, sharp-pointed, and dented about the edges, like a Saw, of a hot and harsh Taste in the Throat, being chewed in the Mouth; which Leaves grow upon a fair reddish Foot-stalk. The Branches bear such like Flowers as the first, facing one side of their Stalks, as the former does. These growing at the tops, are of a Gold-yellow color, from whence the Plant took its Name. The Flowers being passed away, the Heads turn into Down, and are carried away with the Wind, as the other are.

V. The third, or American Golden-Rod, has a Root not much unlike to the former, composed of a

Bunch of Fibres or Strings, which abide under Ground all Winter in the same manner, losing all its old Stalks. From this Root spring up Leaves as large as those of the last, before it runs up to Stalk, being long, but not very broad, yet broadest in the middle, and very sharp-pointed at the ends, and a little dented about the edges, yet not so much as the second; they grow upon Foot-stalks, and are of a dark green color. The Stalk or Stalks are a little hairy, rising higher than the last, not above a Foot and half high at most, bearing on their various tops yellow Flowers, of a Gold-yellow color, facing all on one side, as the others do; which being passed away, turn into Downy Heads, and are carried away with the Wind, as all the others are. This Plant is so like to the second, that the Figure of that may very well serve for this, without any considerable Error.

*Golden-Rod with dented Leaves.*



VI. The Places. The first grows plentifully enough in several places of England, in open places of Woods and Copses, both in moist and dry Grounds. It grows plentifully in Hampsted-Wood, near unto the Gate which leads out of the Wood to Kentish-Town, not far from London; in a Wood by Rayleigh in Essex, near to a House formerly Mr. Leonard's, dwelling upon Daws-Heath; also in Southfleet, and in Swainscomb-Wood near to Gravesend. The second also grows in many places of this Land, but not so plentifully as the former: it is to be found in some places in Hampsted-Wood, but more sparingly than the former. The last has been brought to us from America, but from what parts of the Continent, is not known. It grows with us in Gardens.

VII. The Times. The first flowers later than the second, but they both flower and flourish in July and August. The American kind flowers indeed very late in the Year.

VIII. The Qualities. Golden-Rod is hot and dry in the second Degree; Aperitive, Absterfive, Astringent, Diuretick and Traumatick or Vulnerary, Neurotick.



Neurotick, Stomatick, Nephritick and Analeptick.

IX. *The Specification.* It is one of the most noble Wound-Herbs, cures Wounds and Ulcers after an admirable manner, provokes Urine, prevails against the Stone and Gravel in the Reins and Bladder; stops Fluxes of Blood in the Lungs, Bowels, Reins or Womb, and is prevalent in curing all sorts of Ruptures.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom,  
1. *A Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Decoction in Wine.* 4. *A Pouder.* 5. *An Ointment.* 6. *A Balsam.* 7. *A Cataplasma.*

*The Virtues.*

XI. *The liquid Juice.* It is of good Use to be given against Sand, Gravel, Stone or tartarous Matter in the Reins, Ureters or Bladder, for it provokes Urine in abundance, and so forces away that tartarous Matter which engenders the Stone or Gravel in the Urinary Parts, and causes Sand and Gravel to be voided with the Urine. Dose from two to four Spoonfuls, Morning, Noon and Night, in a Glass of White Port Wine, or other fit Vehicle.

XII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice; it also evacuates all raw and tough viscous or flegmatick Humors, carrying them off by Urine. It is very effectual against all inward Bruises, as also to be outwardly applied to the same. It stops Bleeding in any Part of the Body; and is an excellent thing for the Cure of Wounds. It stops the overflowing of the Terms in Women, the Flux of the Whites, and heals the Bowels in a Diarrhæa, Dysenteria, Lienteria or Hepatick Flux. It stops Catarrhs, and a Flux of Humors falling down upon any Part of the Body; and it is prevalent in curing all sorts of Ruptures in Man or Woman, this being drunk inwardly, and the Cataplasma outwardly applied. It is one of the most sovereign of all Wound-Herbs; and therefore the Essence thereof, for the curing of Wounds inward or outward, will do as much as any other can: green Wounds, it quickly cures them; and old Sores and Ulcers, it digests, cleanses, dries, and speedily induces their healing; drying up, stopping, or removing that Moisture and Flux of Humors which hinders their Cure. Dose two, three or four Spoonfuls in Wine, or any other proper Liquor.

XIII. *The Decoction in Wine.* It is made of either green or dried Herb: it has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, saving that it is not so powerful; and therefore may be given from four to eight Ounces, dulcified with a little white Sugar, and that Morning and Night. It is an excellent thing to wash filthy, foul and running Sores or Ulcers with; and makes a good Lotion for Sores and Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, or Privy Parts of Man or Woman: and being often used, it is said to fasten loose Teeth.

XIV. *The Pouder of the Herb.* Given to one or two Drams in Red Wine, it stops all inward Bleedings; as also all sorts of Fluxes of the Bowels. Strewed upon old, moist Ulcers and running Sores, it cleanses and dries them, strengthens the Part, and if need be, incarnates them, and heals them.

XV. *The Ointment.* It is made as all other Ointments are made, but before it is quite cold, you are to mix with every Pound of the Ointment, two Ounces of the Pouder of the Herb, or an Ounce and half of Tobacco in fine Pouder. It is a famous Vulnerary, curing green Wounds in a very short time: and as for Fistula's, old and inveterate Ulcers, and malign running Sores, it brings them (if need be) to Digestion, cleanses, incarnates, dries and heals

them after an admirable manner, and so strengthens the Part, as to hinder the future Afflux of Humors. It is not inferior to any other Vulnerary Ointment.

XVI. *The Balsam.* It has all the Virtues of the Ointment, but more powerfully cleanses and heals: it ripens Apostems; and is effectual against Ruptures, being externally applied, and renewed as often as need requires. It is also a very excellent thing to heal Wounds and Ulcers of the Head, being applied.

XVII. *The Cataplasma.* It is made of the green Herb, with some Pouder of the same, and a little Red Wine. Outwardly applied, it stops Bleeding, as also the Afflux of Humors upon any Part. It strengthens weak Limbs; and is profitable, being applied to Ruptures.

C H A P. CCCXXIV.

Of GOLD of PLEASURE,

O R,

O I L Y--S E E D.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Μύαρον*, and *μυάγειον*, also *μελάμπυρον*, as Dioscorides says: in Latin, *Myagræum*, *Myagrium* and *Melampyrum*; and in English, *Gold of Pleasure*, and *Oily-Seed*.

*Garden Gold of Pleasure.*



II. *The Kinds.* Authors make about seven kinds hereof, but four of them not being to be met with in England, or in any of our *American English Plantations*, that I know of, I shall say nothing of them in this place: of the other three which grow with



us, two of them only are properly called by this Name: the third is called, *Camelina* and *English Wormseed*, and under the Title of *Wormseed English* you may meet with it, which is its proper place. The two which we shall handle in this Chapter, are, 1. *Myagrum Sativum*, Garden Gold of Pleasure, and this is said to be the *Myagrum verum Dioscoridis*. 2. *Myagrum sylvestre*, *Pseudomyagrum*, Wild Gold of Pleasure, or Wild Oily-feed. There is a great Contest in Authors about the Names of these Plants, which is both troublesome and unprofitable to be read; and therefore, being of no Use to us, I shall wholly decline it.

III. The Descriptions. *The first, or Garden Gold, has a Root which is small and long, perishing every Year after Seed-time: from this Root rises up one or more upright round Stalks, about two Feet high, set with several long and somewhat narrow Leaves, of a whitish green color, and something deeply dented about the edges, or deeply waved, compassing them at the bottom. The Stalk or Stalks are spread from the middle upwards into several Branches, bearing at their tops very small yellow Flowers; which being fallen, there succeed in their places small flat Seed-Vessels, containing within them Seed, which, when ripe, is of a Gold-yellow color, somewhat long in Form, small, and very fat or oily.*

IV. *The second, or Wild Gold, has a small long Root, with some Fibres or Strings adjoining to it; from whence springs up but one Stalk, which is round, and nearly half a Yard high, and is set about with long and somewhat narrow Leaves, much resembling those of Wood, but longer and smaller pointed, broad at the bottom, where they compass the Stalk about, with a point end sticking out on each side, shooting forth many Branches from the very bottom almost: at the tops of the Stalk and Branches come forth divers whitish Flowers, very like unto those of Flax; which being passed away, small round Heads rise up, with a small Point at the top, very like in Fashion to the former, and full of small yellowish Seed, like unto that of Cresses, exceeding bitter when it is green or fresh, (as the green Herb also is) but when dry, sweet in Taste, without any Acrimony, and very fat and oily.*

V. *The Places.* The first grows in some places of Italy Wild, but yet both they and we do sow it in Gardens for Pleasure, and in Fields for the Seeds sake, out of which is pressed an Oil, which serves the Poor to Eat, and the Rich for Lamps; and serves also, with strong Lye of Pot Ashes, to make Soap withal; for which last Purpose, in Germany they sow many whole Fields therewith. The second is frequent in Germany, most usually in all their Flax Grounds, which being in Stalk like it, (tho' not of that Use) is accounted a Weed, and cast away, except of such as save the Seed, to give to small Birds, when it is ripe. This Seed, whilst green, is bitter beyond Expression; but being ripe and dry, it looses its Bitterness, and becomes very sweet and pleasant, and is very acceptable to small Birds, as Larks, Linnets, Finches, &c. to feed on: also by Expression, it yields as sweet an Oil as the former.

VI. *The Times.* They flower in the latter end of May, and thro' June and July, and in August; and the Seed is ripe in August and September.

VII. *The Qualities.* These Plants are hot and dry in the third Degree; the Oil is only hot in the first, and rather moist than dry. The Oil is also Discussive, Emollient and Emplastick; Anodyn, Arthritick and Analeptick.

VIII. *The Specification.* It is peculiar to cure the Colick, and help the Contraction of the Nerves.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *The Decoction of the Herb and Seed.* 3. *The Seed it self.* 3. *The Oil of the Seed by Expression.*

#### The Virtues.

X. *The Decoction of the Herb or Seed, or both, in Wine or Water.* Sweetned with Honey, it is good for those who are troubled with the Cough, Shortness of Breath, Wheezing, Difficulty of Breathing, the Pleurisy or hard Scirrhus Swellings of the Liver. It lenifies the Roughness or Hoarseness of the Throat and Voice, making it clear and easy. The Decoction in Water is good for Women to sit in, whose Wombs are hard or swollen, and to bring down their Courses when stopt; as also to wash their Heads with, who are troubled with Scurff, Dandriff, Morpew or dry Scabs.

XI. *The Seed it self.* If it is bruised and taken in an Egg, it stops Vomiting, and encreases Seed: so also the Pouder of the Herb. If the Seed is used in Bread, it makes it sweet and pleasant, and gives it a good Relish.

XII. *The Oil of the Seed by Expression.* Used in Clysters, it loosens the Belly, and is good against the Colick: taken in by the Mouth, it is very fat, and not very easy of Digestion, (being eaten as Oil Olive) except by Rusticks, and such as are accustomed to it. It yields a gross Nourishment, restores in Consumptions, and quickly makes fat and fleshy. It is good against Coughs, Hoarseness, Shortness of Breath, and Pleurifies or Stitches in the Side, being given from one or two Ounces, to four, six or eight. It breeds Flesh and encreases Seed; and is of great Use to anoint the Face or Hands, or any other Part of the Body, to cleanse the Skin, and to take away Sun-burnings, Morpew, Freckles, Spots, Scars, or any other Defecation of the Skin. It is good also against Burnings with Fire, or Scalding with Water, and causes an Extension or Relaxation of those Nerves or Sinews which are hard, contracted, or shrunk up.

## C H A P. CCCXXV.

### Of G O O S E -- F O O T,

O R,

A R A C H Wild, Broad-leav'd.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ατρεβας* *πεδινη πλατύφυλλα*, & *Χηνόπους*: in Latin, *Atriplex sylvestris latifolia*, *Pes Anseris* & *anserinus*, *Chenopodium Gerardi* & *Tabernamontani*; and in English, *Broad-leav'd Wild Arach*, or *Goose-foot*.

II. *The Kinds.* Gerard makes two sorts of this Plant, viz. 1. *Pes anserinus vulgaris*, The common Goose-foot. 2. *Pes anserinus laciniator*, The more jagged or divided Goose-foot.

III. The Descriptions. *The first, or Common Goose-foot, has a pretty long Root, divided into several Arms or Branches, besides a great many small Fibres or Strings; from whence rises up a Stalk, a Cubit high or more, somewhat chamfered, and branched out on every side. The Leaves are broad, smooth, sharp-pointed and shining, having several deep Cuts about the edges, not much unlike to a Goose-foot: at the tops of the Branches are long Spikes of Flowers,*



ers, which are small, and sometimes enclining to a reddish color. The Seed is small, and grows in Clusters, according to the Disposition of the Spikes, being very like the Seed of other *Wild Araches*.

*Common Goose-foot.*



IV. *The second, or more jagged Goose-foot, has a Root almost like the other, but more fibrous; from whence rises up a Stalk, replenished with Branches and Leaves, not much differing from the Common, saving that the Leaves are sharper cut, and more divided; and the Flowers and Seed (which grow in a spiked Form) are much smaller: the whole Color also of the Plant, is of a darker green.*

V. *The Places.* They grow plentifully in fat, moist and stinking places, as upon Dung-hills, and by Highway-fides.

VI. *The Times.* They spring up and flourish in the Spring Months; flower in *June* and *July*, and their Seed is ripe soon after.

VII. *The Qualities.* They are cold and moist in the third Degree: Anodyne or something Narcotick, Repercussive, Arthritick, and (as some Authors think) Deleterious, or Venefick, I suppose, because it is found certainly (as they say) to kill Swine.

VIII. *The Specification.* It certainly cures *Ignis sacer* or *Anthoniës-fire*, and gives ease in the Gout.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A liquid Juice.* 2. *An Ointment.* 3. *A Cataplasm.*

*The Virtues.*

X. *The Liquid Juice.* Bathed upon the parts afflicted it cools Inflammations, and cures *Anthoniës Fire*; if it is mixed with Vinegar and Nitre, and parts affected with the Gout be bathed therewith warm, it eases the pains thereof, and is very prevalent against *Bloody Falls*, and *Kibed Heels*.

XI. *The Ointment.* It has the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, but not so fit for *Ignis Sacer* as the Juice

is, because of its unctuous body, which that Disease agrees not withal; it eases all Aches or Pains proceeding from a hot and dry cause, and is very beneficial to be applied to hot Apoplems, and Diseases of the Joints, chiefly the Gout and Oedema.

XII. *The Cataplasm.* If it is made with a little Vinegar, and Nitre dissolved therein, it is an excellent thing to be applied to recent Contusions, to prevent the afflux of Humors, as also to any other part where a Fluxion is present; it stops the spreading of *Anthoniës Fire*, cools the inflammation, and disposes it to healing; it is also an excellent thing to give ease in the pains of the Gout, and also to cure it, Universals being first premised.

C H A P. CCCXXVI.  
of GOUTWORT,  
O R,  
H E R B G E R A R D.

I. *THE Names.* It does not appear to have any Greek Name, unless Πυκνόμορον *Dioscoridis* be it, *Brunfelsius* called it *Pycnomos*, *Gesner* *Coroborus quibusdam*, *Cordus* on *Dioscorides* *Elaphobosco similis*, *Tabernamontanus* *Ægopodium*, *Tragus* *Olleritium Sylvestre*, & *Angelica Vitium*, *Camerarius* *Angelica Sylvestris Communis*, *Thalius* *Angelica Erratica*, *Bauhinus* *Angelica Sylvestris minor, sive Erratica*, *Dodonæus* *Herba Gerardi*, because in the Low Countries it is called *Gerarnt*, *Lobel* *Podagraria Germanorum*, & *Herba Podagraria*; in *English* it is called *Ashweed*, *Axweed*, *Gout-Wort*, and *Herb Gerard*, from the Low Country Name.



II. *The Kinds.* There are two several sorts hereof, viz. 1. *Herba Gerardi*, *Podagraria vulgaris*, The Common



Common Herb Gerard, or Goutwort. 2. *Podagraria Hirsuta*, *Herba Podagraria Cognata*, *Angelica Sylvestris Hirsuta inodora*, Hairy Herb Gerard, or Goutwort.

III. The Descriptions. *The first, or Common Herb Gerard, has a Root which runs and creeps in the Ground like Quitchgrass, soon spreading over a great deal of room; this is but a low Plant, seldom rising half a yard high, having several like Leaves standing upon brownish green Stalks by threes, as in Masterwort, but they are smaller and narrower, and not cut deep in, but only snipped about, and of a strong unpleasant Savour; at the tops of the Stalks and Branches grow Umbles of Flowers, which are white, which being past away yields blackish Seed, something like to, but less than that of Masterwort.*

IV. *The second, or Hairy Herb Gerard, has a thick Fibrous Root, of a blackish brown Color on the outside, but white within, enduring many Years, and of a good Smell, from whence springs up a Stalk about a Cubit high, blackish at the bottom, and a little Hairy, spreading into several short Branches, bearing Leaves thereon, much divided, like to Wild Angelica, or the former Herb Gerard, saving, that they are more deeply githed, and of a green Color, and Hairy all over; the Footstalks, as also the Umbles of Flowers, are small and white, and followed with blackish Seed.*

V. *The Places.* The first grows by Hedges and Walls sides, and oftentimes in the Borders or Corners of Fields, and sometimes also in Gardens, if it is not plucked up, or Weeded out, it is so fruitful in its increase, that where it has once taken Root, it will hardly be gotten out again, spoiling the Ground every Year more than other; the other grows in some parts of Germany, and it has been found also upon the Borders of Wales, and other places.

VI. *The Times.* They both Flower from the beginning of June to the end of August, the Seed ripening in the mean Season.

VII. *The Qualities.* It is temperate in respect to heat or cold, and drying in the first degree; it is Anodyne, Astringent, Vulnerary, Discussive, a little Repercussive, Neurotick, Arthritick, and Analeptick.

VIII. *The Specification.* It is said to cure the Gout and Sciatica, Weaknesses, and all other Difficulties of the Nerves and Joints.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. An Acid Tincture. 4. An Oily Tincture. 5. An Ointment or Balsam. 6. A Cataplasm.

#### The Virtues.

X. *The Liquid Juice.* It may be given inwardly as a Wound Drink, for it mightily contributes to the curing of ill conditioned Wounds, old Ulcers, running Sores, and Fistula's; also outwardly washing them therewith it contributes to the same purposes, for it cleanses, incarnates, dries, and heals; Gouty parts also bathed therewith warm two or three times a day it eases the pain, but more especially if it is taken inwardly from three to six Spoonfuls Morning and Night, in any proper Vehicle; Ulcers in the Lungs, Guts, or other Bowels, it likewise cures.

XI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice; but more efficacious, and better to be taken than it, because of its fineness; it cures Diarrhoeas, Dysenteria's, Lienteria's, as also the Hepatick Flux, being timely given in a Glass of Spirit of

*Angelica*, the greater Composition. Dose three or four Spoonfuls Morning and Night.

XII. *The Acid Tincture.* It rectifies the Juices in the Stomach and inferior Viscera, destroying their Tartar and Viscosity, which being thrust forth into the Joints, breeds the Gout and Sciatica; it comforts the Stomach, causing a good Digestion, opens Obstructions, cleanses, and evacuates the slimy matter by Urine. Dose from twenty to forty drops in a Glass of Ale or Wine, as often as the Patient has an occasion of Drinking.

XIII. *The Oily Tincture.* Inwardly taken from ten drops to twenty five, according to Age and Necessity, in a Glass of White Port Wine, or other fit Vehicle, it powerfully opens the Obstructions of the Urinary parts, causing a free Pissing, and thereby carries off the tartarous, viscous, or slimy matter which breeds the Gout, Sciatica, Stone, and Gravel; bathed upon the Puncture of any Nerve, it eases the pain and soon cures it; it is good also against Convulsions, Cramps, Palsies, numbness of any Member, &c. being well bathed upon the Back Bone Morning and Evening, and likewise upon the part affected, rubbing it well in before a good Fire.

XIV. *The Ointment or Balsam.* It cures Simple Green Wounds, and old Ulcers, of what kind soever, it absterges, incarnates, and heals them after an admirable manner, it draws Splinters out of Wounds, and Thorns or Prickles gotten into any part of the Flesh; applied to any part afflicted with vehement pain it presently gives ease, and being continued upon Joints afflicted with the Gout it cures it, and strengthens the part afflicted.

XV. *The Cataplasm.* Applied to Simple Contusions it discusses them, and prevents their Apostematizing, gives ease in the Gout, abates Inflammations, discusses the present matter, and prevents De fluxions of Humors; it is an extraordinary thing to be applied to the Forehead, to cure sore, running and watery Eyes, &c.

## C H A P. CCCXXVII.

### Of GRASS, or HERBAGE.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *ἄγριος, & χέρος*, in Latin *Gramen, Agrostis*, in English *Grass*; it is true that *χέρος* Omne Genus *Herbe comprehendit*, yet *χέρωδης* signifies *Gramineus*, a Grassy place, or Ground over spread with Grass, from whence *Grass* is also called with us *Herbage*.

II. *The Kinds.* They are manifold, and the several sorts of each Species are almost infinite, so that it will be difficult to decipher or describe them all; the chief of the principal Kinds are the thirty five following, viz. 1. Bent-Grass. 2. Canary-Grass. 3. Catstail-Grass. 4. Corn-Grass. 5. Cocksfoot-Grass. 6. Caponstail-Grass. 7. Cotton-Grass. 8. Crested-Grass. 9. Cyperus-Grass. 10. Darnel-Grass. 11. Dogs-Grass. 12. Dwarf-Grass. 13. Feather-Grass. 14. Foxtail-Grass. 15. Fern-Grass. 16. Hairy-Grass. 17. Haver-Grass. 18. Hedgehog-Grass. 19. Knead-Grass. 20. Meadow-Grass. 21. Mountain-Grass. 22. Millet-Grass. 23. Oat-Grass. 24. Pannick-Grass. 25. Quaking-Grass. 26. Rush-Grass. 27. Reed-Grass. 28. Sea-Grass. 29. Silver-Grass. 30. Spiked-Grass. 31. Toad-Grass. 32. Water-Grass. 33. Wood-Grass. 34. Way or Wall-Grass. 35. Woolly-Grass. The Descriptions

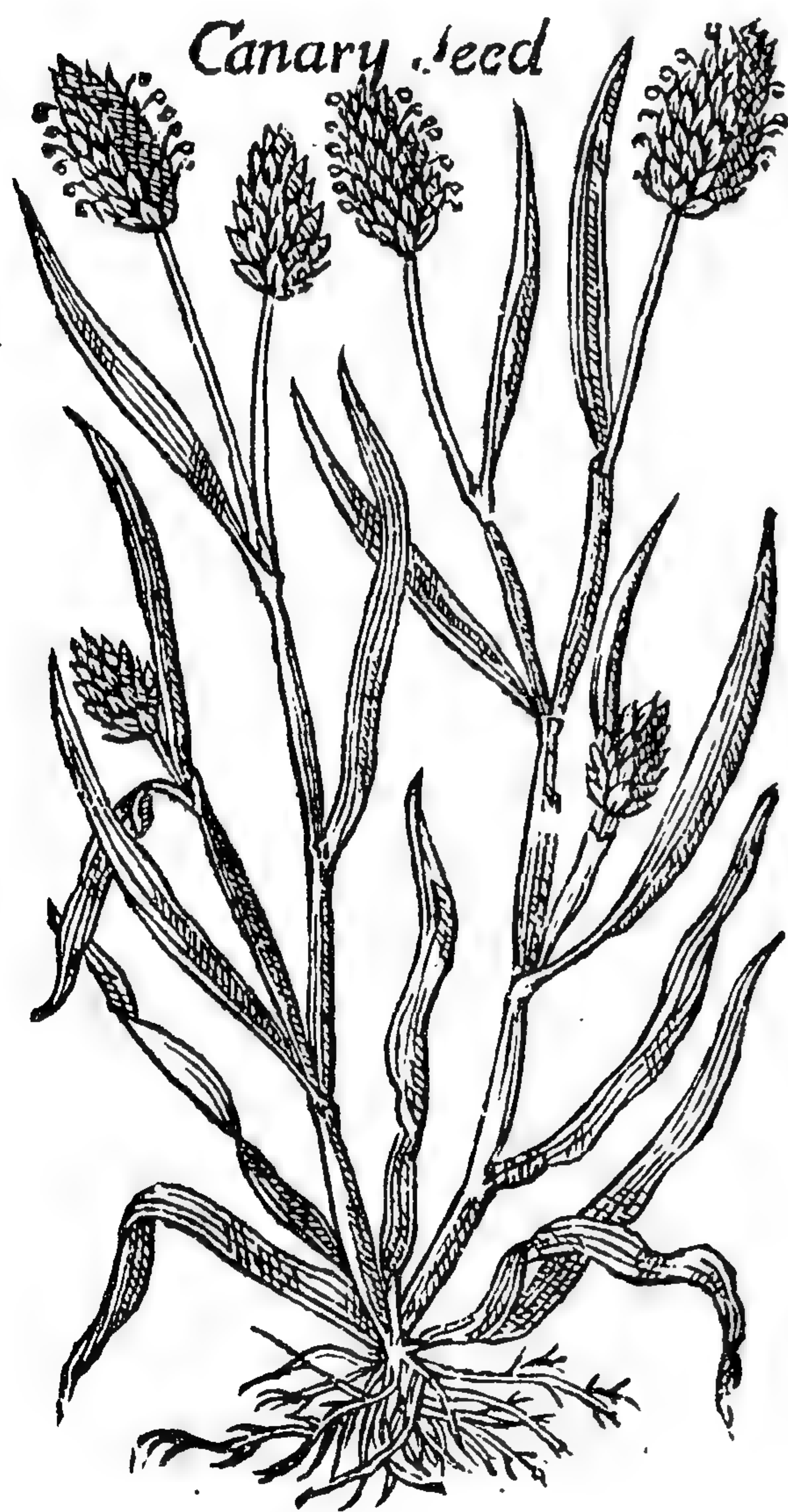


criptions of all which Species, with their various sorts, you shall have in the following Sections.

*Gramen Arvorum venti Spica*, *Gramen Scopule*, vel *Scopularium*, Bent-Grass, or Bents.

III. The Descriptions. This is a singular Plant of its kind, and called by Gerard *Harundinaceum*, because its bushy top has Pannicles resembling those of Common Reed, it has a small and Fibrous Root, and grows up to be a Yard or an Ell high, with many thin Grassy Leaves here and there jointed, and its tufted Heads or Pannicles, spread almost like unto the Sprigs of Feathers, standing for the most part all one way, and hanging down their Heads, of a fine brown shining green Color, which are, being fine and slender, easily shaken with the Wind, from whence some call this in English *Windlegrafs*; this is that Grass which the vulgar commonly call *Bents*, of which many Country People make Besoms, and is many times ty'd in rows together, and serves in Summer time to be set against the backs of Chimneys, to deck up, cool, and refresh the Room; it is *Gramen Pratense tertium Dodonæi*, and *Gramen Arundinaceum arvense Tabernamontani*.

Φαλαρίς, *Phalaris*, Canary-Grass, seven Species, three true and four bastard.



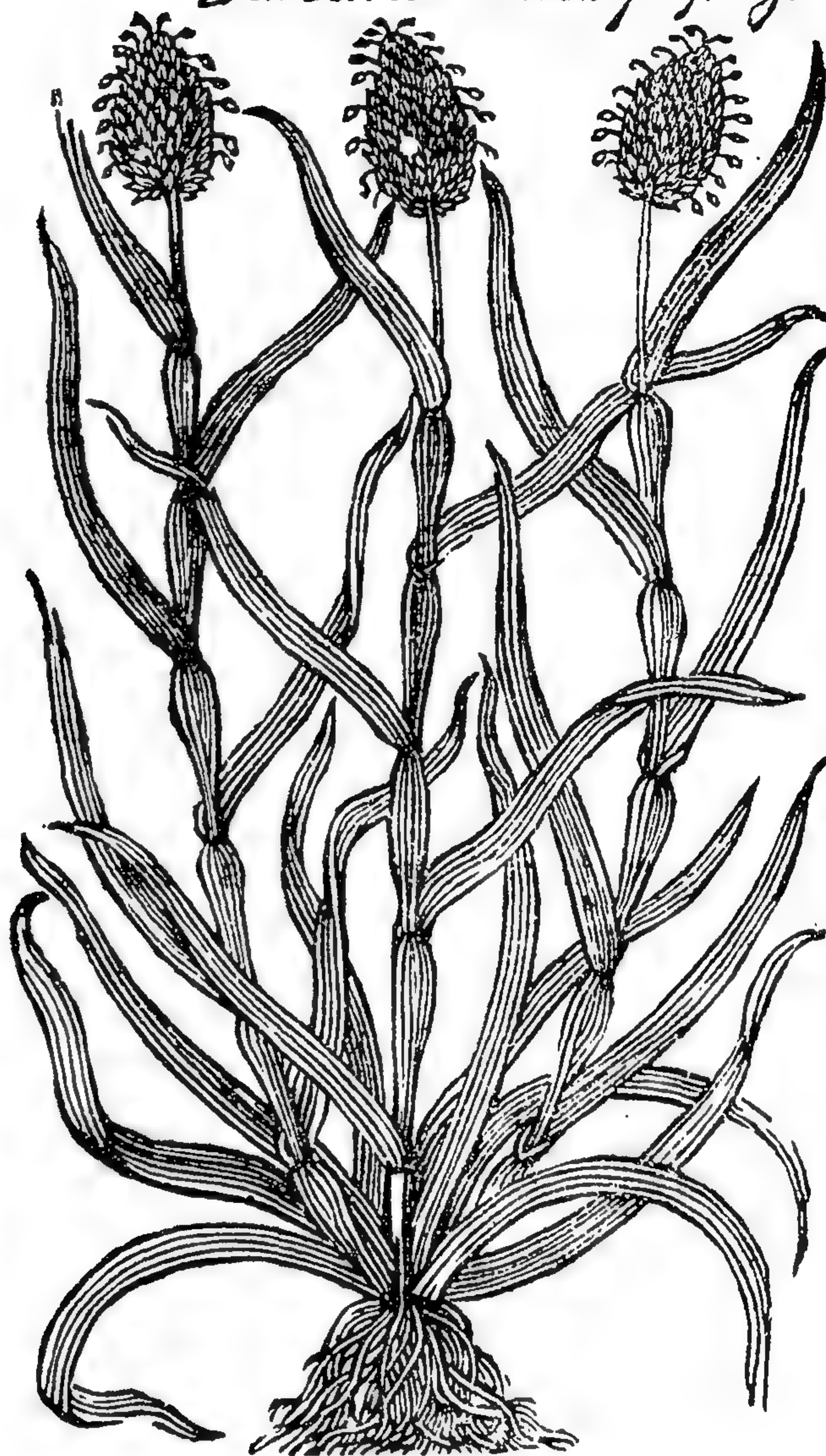
Canary Seed

IV. 1. *Phalaris vulgaris*, Common Canary-Grass, has a Fibrous Root, dying with us every Winter, and therefore is but an Annual Plant, to be new Sown every Year; it has jointed Stalks half a Yard high, with Grassie Leaves on them like *Barley*, and at the top a long round Chaffie Head, somewhat pointed above, whose Bloomings are yellowish, wherein lies flat, round, shining Seed, bigger than *Millet*, and less than *Linseed*, of a yellowish Color, and somewhat like to the Seed of *Sesamum*.

V. 2. *Phalaris Semine nigro*, Canary-Grass with blackish Seed. The Root hereof is like, and perishes as the other, it differs not from the former, but in being somewhat lesser, both in Stalk, Leaf, and Head, but chiefly in the Seed, which is of a pale, blackish, shining Color.

VI. 3. *Phalaris bulbosa Semine Albo*, White bulb-ed Canary-Grass, has a Root consisting of many small white Bulbs, or rather Tubes, growing in Tufts together, with long Fibres descending from them, whereby they are fastened strongly in the Ground, and die not every Year, as the others do, but encrease into great Tufts; the Grass grows very like the former, but with smaller, tenderer, and taller jointed Stalks and Leaves on them, and at the Roots are more soft and gentle; the spiked Heads are smaller, and a little longer, and grow not full out so close together, but are softer in handling, and bring forth smaller and whiter Seed than the others.

Bastard Canary Grass



VII. 4. *Phalaroides majus*, *Gramen Phalaroides*, vel *Alopecuroides*, five *Italicum majus*, The greater Bastard Canary-Grass, has a Root small and Fibrous, perishing every Year, and grows up very like to the true *Phalaris*, or Canary-Grass, both in Stalk, Leaf, and Head, but that the Stalks are single, and with fewer Leaves on them; the Head also or Ear is smaller, hoary, and softer, and the Seed not much unlike.

VIII. 5. *Phalaroides minus*, The lesser Bastard Canary-Grass, is in all things like to the last, but the Ear or Head is smaller and longer, and the Leaves do so encompass the Stalk at bottom, that it seems to run thro' them, as thro' a Trunk.

IX. 6. *Phalaroides Spica molli*, *Gramen Phalaroides Germanicum*, Soft beaded Bastard Canary-Grass, has a Fibrous Root, from which springs a Stalk, or Stalks, of a Foot and half high, somewhat larger than the last, with a Joint or two thereon, and short Leaves at them, encompassing the Stalk at the lower end; the Head is shorter and smaller than the last, of a shining Ash Color, and soft to the feeling.

X. 7. *Phalaroides Spica Hirsutior*, Bastard Canary-Grass with a more hairy Spike or Ear. It has a Perennial Fibrous Root, from whence spring up Stalks and Leaves like the last, but furnished with a greater store of Leaves and Stalks; the Spiked Head



is also longer and narrower, and set with short Hairs.

XI. *The Places.* All the three first sorts have been found growing in *Spain*, and brought to us by *Bael*, with some of the *Bastard* sorts; the first has been known many Years, and was brought from the *Canary Islands* with those sweet Singing Birds called *Canary Birds*, which feed upon this Seed; *Lobel* says that it grows in *Provence* in *France*; the second *Baobinus* says came to us from *Malta*, where those Birds feed on it; all the first three grow with us in our Gardens; the fourth grows as well in our Fields in *England*, as in other Countries; the fifth and sixth grow about *Ulm*s, where they are frequent, and call them *Onocordon*, from their color: where the seventh grows is uncertain.

XII. *The Times.* They all of them flourish in the Summer Months, and their Seeds are ripe in *July* and *August*.

XIII. *The Virtues.* *Canary Seed* in some Places and Islands is made into Bread, which nourishes much like that of *Millet*, or rather less, and therefore to mend it, some mix it with *Wheat*, that the Bread may be the faster, which otherwise would be apt to crumble and dry. *The Liquid Juice, or Essence of the Herb*, are good to ease the pains of the Stone and Gravel, open Obstructions of the Urinary parts, and abate the scalding heat thereof. *The Cataplasm of the Seed* has the Virtues of that of *Millet*, and is good to dry and repress the flux of Humors upon any part.

*Gramen Typhinum*, Catstail-Grass, three sorts.

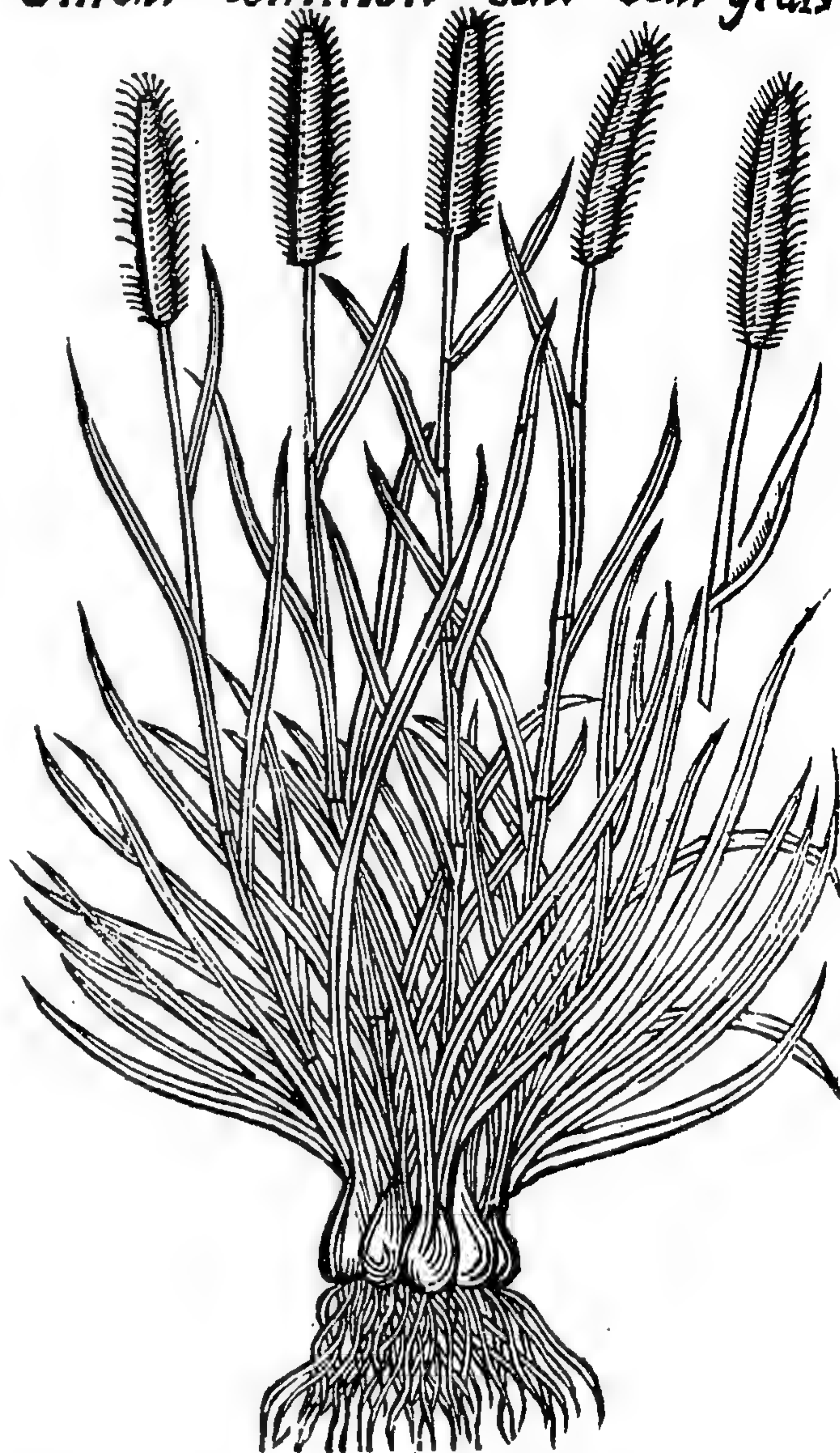
*Cars lane* *Grass*



XIV. 1. *Gramen Typhoides, vel Typhinum maximum*, The greatest Catstail-Grass, has very small Roots, compacted of many small Skins or Threads, which may be easily taken from the whole Root, from which rise up very fair large Leaves, like *Wheat*, and triangular Stalks two Feet high, or more, on which grow long, round, spiked Heads, four times

larger than those of the following Kind, and almost of an equal bigness and roundness from the bottom of the Spike to the top; this Plant is sometimes found with Stalks four or five Feet high, and the Spike somewhat shorter, and smaller at the top.

*Small common Cats tail Grass*



XV. 2. *Gramen Typhinum minus vulgatissimum*, The lesser most common Catstail-Grass, has Roots which have small round Heads, like Tubers or Bulbs, from the Heads of which spring forth the Leaves and Stalks; this is the most common with us, and differs not from the former but in the Roots, this being bulbed, as aforesaid, and in magnitude, the Stalks in this rising not above a Foot high, and the round Spike not being above two or three Inches long.

XVI. 3. *Gramen Typhinum minus*, The small Catstail-Grass, has for its Root a little Bulb, or Bulbs, from whence rises up the Stalk, about two Feet high, set at each Joint with long Grassie Leaves, with a Spike or Ear four or five inches long, closely and handsomely made, like the former; it differs not from the last, but in having a greater store of narrow green Leaves, a longer Stalk, and larger spiked Heads.

XVII. *The Places.* They are all of them found in many places of *England*, but mostly in watery places, and near Water; the third is found growing plentifully in many places about *London*, as by the Bridge entering into *Chelsea Field*, as you go from *St. James's* to little *Chelsea*.

XVIII. *The Times.* They Flourish and Seed in *June* and *July*, keeping the same time with other Grasses.

*Gramen Segetum, vel Segetale, Gramen Triticeum*, Corn-Grass, or Wheat-Grass, six Kinds.

XIX. 1. *Gramen Segetum vel Triticeum latifolium Spica compacta*, Broad Leav'd Wheat-Grass close Ear'd, has from a Fibrous Root a Stalk, or Stalks spring up, about half a yard high, having two or three



three Joints, and fair Wheat-like Leaves at them a Foot long, bearing at the tops a longer Spike or Ear than *Wheat*, and broader, made of several parts, like the Husks of Corn, but separated more asunder, thereby shewing it to be a Grass, and no true Corn, yet the Spike grows closer than the next, and without any shew of Awnes or Beard thereon.

XX. 2. *Gramen segetale, vel Triticeum latifolium Spica divulsa, Broad-leav'd thin-ear'd red Wheat Grass.* It differs little from the former, but in the Spike, which has the small parts thereof more separated, and set on both sides of the Stalk, and armed every one with a small short Awne or Beard.

XXI. 3. *Gramen segetale, vel Triticeum angustifolium Spica compacta, Broad-leav'd close-ear'd red Wheat Grass.* It has a Stalk which is smooth and round, two Feet high, set with long narrower white Leaves, rough and pointed. The Spike is about a Span long, somewhat like unto *Red Wheat*, closely set, but each of the Husks has a sharp rough Awne thereat.

XXII. 4. *Gramen segetum, vel Triticeum angustifolium spica mutica, Narrow-leav'd or Rush-leav'd white-ear'd Wheat Grass, without Awnes.* It has a Root which is white, knotty and creeping, from whence spring up Leaves which are long and round, like *Rushes*, and pointed at the ends, set on round Stalks, a Foot and half high, whose spiked tops are long and slender, without any Awnes at the tops of the Husks, and somewhat like unto *White Wheat* without Beards.

XXIII. 5. *Gramen segetum, vel Triticeum majus spica Brizæ, The greater Spelt Wheat Grass.* Its Roots and Stalks are like unto *Corn*, four or five Feet high, or more, set with narrow Leaves: the tops of the Stalks have several long Spikes, about a Hand breadth long, set on both side of them, one above another, each whereof is very like a small Ear of *Wheat*, armed with small Awnes, but very short.

XXIV. 6. *Gramen segetum, vel Triticeum minus spica Brizæ, The lesser Spelt Wheat Grass.* It grows not above an Hand breadth high, with small, short, soft and hoary Leaves; and at top of the Stalk there is sometimes but one, and sometimes two or three Spikes or Ears, of an Inch long, and bearded.

XXV. *The Places and Times.* They grow in many parts of *England*, in Pastures and Corn Grounds in *Kent*, not far from the *Thames*; and flourish and seed in the Summer Months, when other Grasses do.

V. *Ἰσχαμον, Ischamon & Gramen Ischamon, sive Dactyloides, Cocks-foot or Finger Grass, Six kinds.*

XXVI. 1. *Ischamon sylvestre folio latiore, Common Cocks-foot Grass.* It is called, *Galli Crus Apuleii*, and has a Root consisting of a great many small Fibres; from whence spring forth several clear, reddish, jointed Stalks, with fair Grassie Leaves on them, a little dented on the edges, broad at the bottom, and small at the end, of a harsh or binding Taste. At the tops of the Stalks grow divers long, slender, rough Spikes, of a glistering purple, or rather *Violet* color, but of a brownish color when they are ripe, and are divided into four or five Spikes, which are spread or stretched out abroad, like a Cock's Foot, when it is set down upon the Ground, or the Fingers of a Man's Hand, when they are spread abroad.

XXVII. 2. *Ischamon sylvestre spicis Villosis, Wild Cocks-foot Grass, with a bearded or hairy Spike or Ear.* Its Root is a Bush of Fibres, like the other: it has purplish Stalks, a Cubit high, with fewer

and much narrower Leaves on them. The spiked Heads are more in number than the former, and more hairy, having, as it were, short yellow Beards, set on both sides of the Panicles, in which lye the Seed.

XXVIII. 3. *Ischamon sativum, sive Gramen manna Esculentum, Gramen aculeatum Thalii, Frumentum Germanicum Cordi,* (upon *Dioscorides*) because they account it *Oryza Species*; *Sanguinaria, Sanguinella*, and *Capriola Italica, Dew Grass.* It has a Root greater and more bushy than any of the former, the whole Plant differing from the two foregoing no otherwise almost, than a Manured Plant from a Wild. It has fair jointed purplish Stalks, and large Grassie or Reed like Leaves on them, somewhat hairy or woolly at their bottoms; and about the Joints at the tops of the Stalks stand larger Spikes or Panicles, and more also set together than in the former, which are made of many small, chafy Husks, with long white Seeds in them, somewhat greater than *Millet*, and lesser than *Rice*, standing all, as it were, on one side.

XXIX. 4. *Gramen scoparium Ischami paniculis, Besom or Brush Grass.* It has a Root consisting of many very long hard Fibres or Threads, a Foot and half long, or more, (whereof are made, in *France*, where it grows naturally, those kinds of Brushes with which we usually brush our Heads, &c.) the Stalks are hard, slender, and jointed, about a Cubit high, with small long Leaves on them, like unto the second *Ischamon* foregoing, but sweeter in taste; at the tops of the Stalks stand five or six, or more, bright long Panicles, like unto the *Cocksfoot*, but larger, flatter, and less dented.

XXX. 5. *Gramen Ischamon Canarium, Dogs-Grass like Cocksfoot.* It has running jointed Roots, like to the *Common Quitch-Grass*, and so both Stalks and Leaves somewhat resemble it, so that it might have as well been enumerated among the *Quitch-Grasses*, or *Dogs-Grasses*, as among the *Cocksfoot-Grasses*, because it is, as it were, indifferent between them both; but the Head is dispersed or spread into such like slender long Panicles as the *Cocksfoot-Grass* is, the small Chaffie Husks whereof contain the Seed.

XXXI. 6. *Gramen Dactylon repens, Creeping Cocksfoot-Grass.* It has a sparfed thready Root, which sends forth many long, slender, and weak Branches, trailing or creeping upon the Ground, and shooting forth Roots at the Joints; the Leaves which grow at the Joints are small and Grassie, long and narrow; and at the tops of the Stalks, which rise not much above a Span high, four or five small, slender, blackish Spikes or Ears come forth, within the Husks whereof the Seed is found to lye.

XXXII. *The Place and Time.* The two first Kinds are found growing naturally in several places of *Italy*, as also at *Narbone* in *France*, and in divers places of *England*, but the third is usually Sown in Fields, as *Corn*, in many places of *Germany*, where with the Seed thereof they make Pottage or Broth, as we here in *England* do with *Rice* and *Oatmeal*, and it is sent into *Middleburgh*, and other Towns of the Low Countries in great Quantities for the same purpose, as *Lobel* has affirmed, but with us it only grows in Gardens, tho' should we Sow it as the  *Germans* do, in Fields, it is probable that it might thrive full as well with us as it does with them; the fourth, fifth and sixth grow in *France*, but with us chiefly in Gardens; the fifth has been found growing in *Spain*, and the first *Gerard* says he found growing upon the Hilly Banks near *Greenbith* in *Kent*, and that it grows upon the rough Banks of Fields, &c. They all Flourish and Seed in the Summer Months when the other Grasses do.



*The Virtues.*

XXXIII. 1. *The Liquid Juice.* Put into the Eyes which run and water, or where is a Defluxion of Rheum, causing redness or blearedness, and drunk, chiefly the Juice of the *Dew-Grass*, it discusses the hardness of Womens Breasts, especially being also bathed thereon. 2. *The Cocksfoot Quitch-Grass*, has all the Virtues of *Quitch-Grass*, to be discoursed of in some of the following Chapters of this Book. 3. *The Decoction.* It is of use (made of the Roots in White Port) to expel the Terms, and it drives forth the Measles, Small Pox, and is good in the Purples, Spotted, and other Pestilential Fevers. 4. *The Ointment or Balsam of the Roots and green Grass*, is good for the Bitings of Mad Dogs, dissolves hard Tumors, and not only heals green Wounds, but also old Ulcers. 5. *The Cataplasim of Herb and Roots* applied to any place which bleeds, stops the Blood presently, whether it be from the Nose, or a Wound.

VI. Ἀλεκτρούρα, *Gramen murorum Spica longissima*, *Gramen Spica nutante longissima*, Caponstail-Grass, or Grass with a long bending Spike, a single Species.

XXXIV. This *Gramen murorum Spica nutante* is a singular Plant, which has a fibrous or stringy Root, from which arises Leaves long and narrow, like other Grass Leaves, which by Time and Age growing old, grow somewhat rounder, as those of *Spartum*, or Matweed; from among these Grassie Leaves there grows up a slender Stalk about two Feet high, scarcely standing upright, but oftentimes hanging down its Head, or top of its Ear, after the manner of a Capons Tail; this Stalk has two or three small Leaves at the Joints up to its top, where grows a very long Spike, bending a little downwards, composed of small and hairy Tufts, which grow of a greyish or whitish Color being ripe, containing within them small whitish Seed. This was found out by Mr. Goodyere.

XXXV. *The Place and Time.* This Elegant Grass Mr. Goodyere found growing upon the Walls of the Ancient City of *Winchester*, and was not described by any Author before him, he gave it the Name; Gerard had some of the Seed thereof, which he did Sow, which grew up, took root, and flourished, Seeding in the Summer Months.

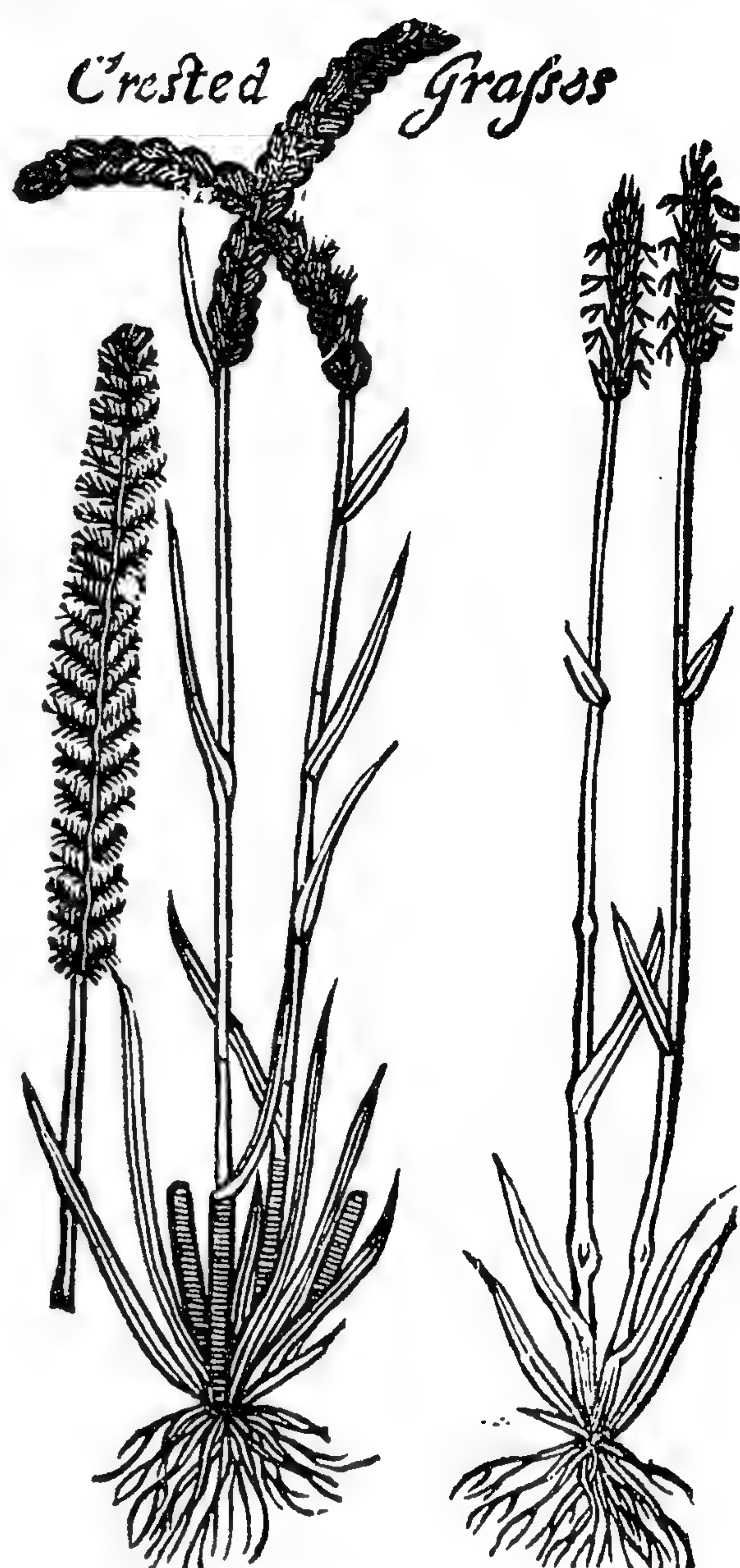
VII. Καλαμώδης quorundam, *Gramen Tomentosum*, vel *Tomentarium*, Cotton-Grass, or Cotton Reed-Grass.

XXXVI. It is a singular Plant of the Kind, having a Root somewhat hard and rough, very tough, small and thready, with many long Fibres issuing from it. This Cotton Reed-Grass is in roughness, dryness, and form of the Leaves, not much unlike to *Foxtail-Grass*, called *Pseudoschenanthum*, but much greater, and not Downy; the Stalks rise up to be three, four, or more Feet high, and but with few Joints, which are rough, garnished with many hard Grassie Leaves, bearing at the top Heads, which are Spiked, set all along a Panicle, reddish for some time, but growing to ripeness, are of a shining Silver like whiteness, and as soft as Wooll in handling, from whence it took the Name. This Description is according to the *Dutch Copy*, translated by *Lobel* himself.

XXXVII. *The Places.* It grows in the borders of dry Fields, and by Hedge sides, in many Coun-

ties of England, especially in *Dorsetshire*; Gerard says it grows upon Boggy and such like Moorish places, and is to be seen in Bogs upon *Hampsted Heath*; it grows likewise in *Highgate Park*, near *London*. This with long spiked Heads is doubtless the *Gramen Tomentosum Arundinaceum* of Gerard, described in *Lib. 1. Cap. 9.*

VIII. Ευλοφύρα, καὶ ἀγρωσις ἑυλοφῆ, *Gramen Cristatum*, Crested-Grass, or Cockscomb-Grass, four Species.



XXXVIII. 1. *Gramen Cristatum lene*, Smooth, Crested, or Cockscomb-Grass, has white Roots, which Mat themselves in the Ground very much, from whence spring up divers smooth slender Stalks, two Feet or more high, with few, or no Joints on them, and with small short green Leaves at them; the tops of the Stalks have slender long spiked Heads, divided into many parts, each whereof is like unto the Crest of a Bird: this Ear, says Gerard, is small, long, of a pale green Color, somewhat bending, so that in some sort it resembles the Comb of a Cock, (whence the Name) or the Seed Vessel of that Plant which is called *Caput Gallinaceum*: the Spike or Ear is of a pale yellowish green, and sometimes of a reddish Color, which made *Bauhinus* to compare it to *Crista Galli*, or *Cocks-Comb*. This is *Gramen Pratense Cristatum*, *Gramen Spica Cristata Bauhini*.

XXXIX. 2. *Gramen Cristatum Sabhirsutum*, Hairy Crested-Grass. This seems to be a Species of the former, and differs from it only in these particulars, the Roots are of a reddish yellow color, the Stalks are lower and smaller, and a little Hairy or Woolly at the bottoms, with longer Leaves, and a more sparfed white Head, not so finely set together, and grows rather among Hedges and Bushes.

XL. 3. *Gramen Cristatum Anglicum*, English Crested-Grass. This has fewer and longer Roots, not matting and increasing in the former manner, the Stalks are straight, with longer and narrower Leaves on them; the Spiked Head differs from the former, in being longer and closer set, and not spread into



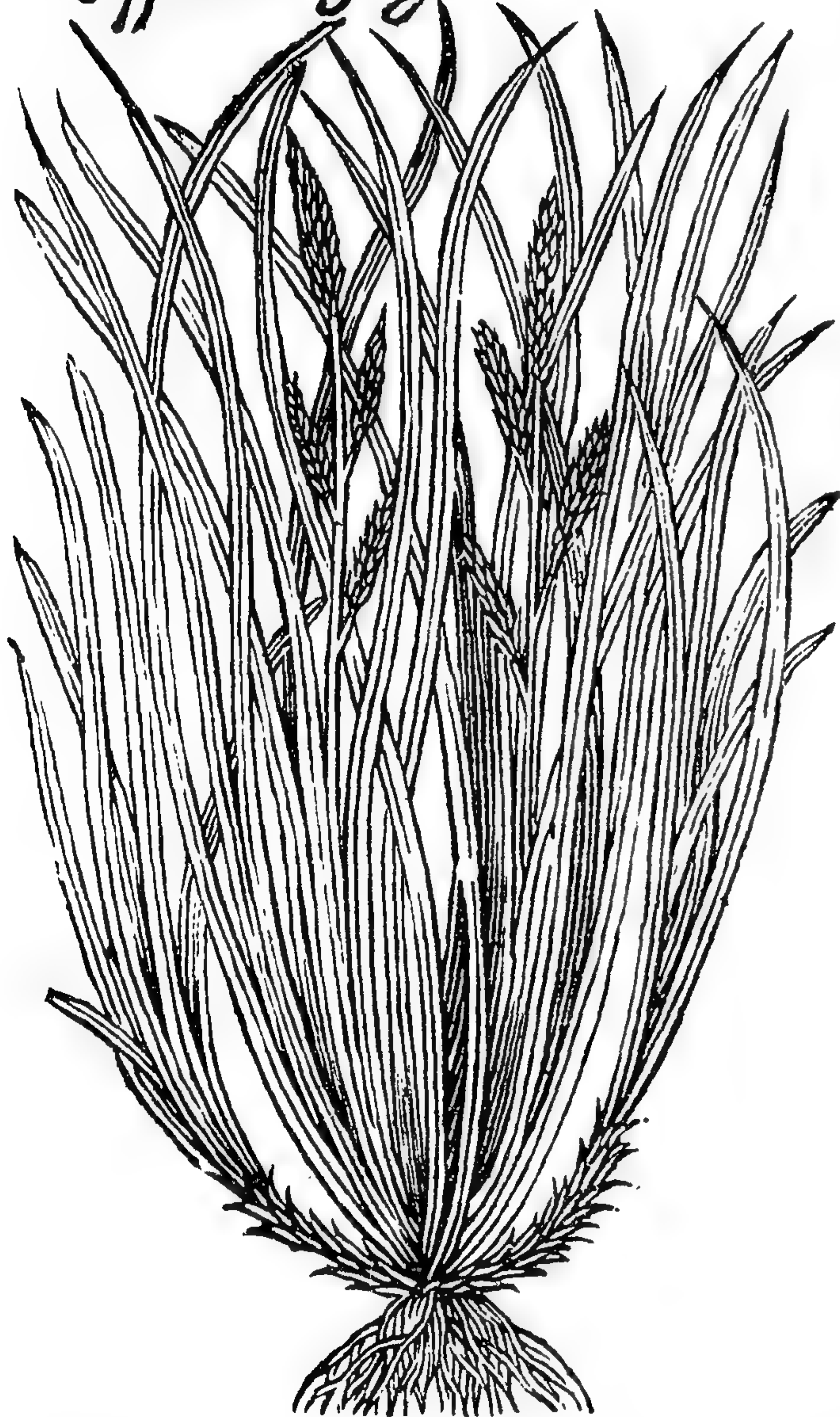
into Tufts, but as it were into close short Husks, the whole Spike somewhat resembling a small long Foxtail-Grass.

XLI. 4. *Gramen Cristatum Spica multiplici*, Double English Crested-Grass. This is very like the last in its Roots, Stalks, and Leaves, and seems to be a variety of the same, but it differs in this, that it is spread out in its top, and parted or divided into several smaller Spikes from the greater main one, otherwise very little differing from it in any thing else.

XLII. The Places and Times. The first of these is ordinarily to be found in Meadows about Midsummer time, that, as also the second, usually growing in Fields and Pastures, and near Hedges and Bushes, and places near them; the third grows plentifully in many By-places near Hackney, not far from London; the fourth being a variety of the last, is found growing always not far from the places where the third grows.

IX. *Κυπερίδες, καὶ ἄλλαι κυπερίδες*, *Gramen Cyperoides*, Cyperus-Grass, twenty two Species.

## Cyperus Grass



XLIII. 1. *Cyperus Typhinus Gerardi*, *Gramen Typhinum Tabernamontani*, *Gramen Typhoides Spica multiplici Bauhini*, Catstail Cyperus-Grass. It has a Bushy Root, from whence spring forth many long, narrow, three square, hard, green Leaves, among which rise up stiff green Stalks, half a yard, or two Feet high, or better, with some Joints and Leaves at them, not much unlike to the Common Reed; at and towards the tops of these Stalks grow two or more long slender rough Heads, growing one above another, Spike fashion, almost resembling a Catstail, very chaffie, rough and rugged, of a dark Green, tending to Purple.

XLIV. 2. *Gramen Cyperoides angustifolium majus*, The greater narrow Leav'd Cyperus-Grass. It has a reasonable strong Fibrous Root, from whence stiff, long, and narrow Leaves, like those of other Cyperus-Grasses spring;

the Stalks also, (as it is proper to all the Plants of this Kindred) are three square, bearing at their tops three brownish Ears, soft and chaffie, like the rest of this Kind, standing upright, and not hanging down, as some others do.

XLV. 3. *Gramen Cyperoides Sylvarum Tenuis Spicatum*, Slender Ear'd Wood Cyperus-Grass. It has a great yellowish and fibrous bushy Root, from whence spring three square Stalks, a Foot or more high, with fair, but hard and rough Grassie Leaves, four or five Inches long; the Spiked Heads which grow at the tops are many, one above another, slender and long, yet some more than others, some one Inch, some two Inches, or less, of a yellowish green color, with long yellowish Seeds in them.

XLVI. 4. *Gramen Cyperoides elegans Spica multifera*, A fine or beautiful Cyperus-Grass with many Heads. It has a thick fibrous Root, which sends up slender triangular Stalks, about two Feet high; the Leaves are long and narrow, with a long pointed Spiked Head, made of many small ones, so close set together, that they seem to be but one Spike or Head.

XLVII. 5. *Gramen Cyperoides echinatum Montanum*, Mountain prickly Cyperus-Grass. It has a thick bushy fibrous Root, as the former, which sends up three square Stalks, about a Span long, or not much more, the Leaves below and on them are very long and narrow, the Heads are short, with many rough Burs on them, some separated and some close.

XLVIII. 6. *Gramen Cyperoides sparsa Panicula*, Land Cyperus-Grass with a disperjed Tuft. It has a Root which is full of Fibres, which sends forth long Leaves, of a brown green color, and somewhat flat, between a Rush and a Grass; the Stalk is also somewhat more flat than square, sometimes but half a yard high, sometimes three, four, or five Feet high, the top whereof is furnished with a large round spread Panicle, made of many parts, and each small prickly Head standing on a slender Footstalk, which is oftentimes bent down with the weight of the Heads.

XLIX. 7. *Gramen Cyperoides parum Lanosum*, Cyperus-Grass a little Woolly. It has a Fibrous Root, which sends forth slender Stalks, about two Spans high, the bottoms of them being a little Woolly, and having at the middle only a Joint with a Leaf; the lower Leaves are set close upon the Ground, three or four Inches long, somewhat like those of the Grass-Crowfoot; the heads of the Stalks have small round shining Spikes or Ears on them, of a pale brown Color, with a small long Leaf under every head: This is *Gramen Cyperoides parvum*.

L. 8. *Gramen Cyperoides Norwegicum*, Norway Cyperus-Grass. It has a number of long narrow Leaves, some three or four Inches, others six or seven Inches long; the Stalks are clear and smooth, half a yard high, bearing at the top many Cone like Heads, set close together.

LI. 9. *Gramen Cyperoides Spicatum Latifolium*, Broad Leav'd Cyperus-Grass. It has long black creeping Roots, with many Fibres at them, very like unto the sweet long Cyperus, and has broad Leaves, almost a Foot long, among which come forth the Stalks, being about a Foot high, which bear three Chaffie Spiked Heads at the top, of an Inch, or Inch and half long, of which the middlemost is the longest, each of them like unto the small Catstail-Grass.

LII. 10. *Gramen Cyperoides latifolium alterum*, The higher broad Leav'd Cyperus-Grass. It has a Root which is somewhat long, but scaly, with many long Fibres adjoining thereto; the Leaves are as long as the last, but the Stalks are much higher, bearing at the tops four or five small long Ears of



Spikes one above another, an Inch or two long, with a small heat at the foot of each of them.

LIII. 11. *Gramen Cyperoides Palustre*, Great Water Cyperus-Grass. The Root is compact of many long and tough Strings, or Threads, the Leaves are long and broad, like unto the Sedge, called *Carex*, from among which rise up several long three-square Stalks, at the top of each of which there is a Spike or Ear, like to a *Plantane* Head, commonly of a yellowish green color, and very prickly.

LIV. 12. *Gramen Cyperoides Miliaceum*, *Cyperus Gramineus Miliaceus*, *Pseudocyperus Gramineus Miliaceus*, Millet Cyperus-Grass, or Bastard Cyperus-Grass Tufted. It has a thick fibrous black bushy Root, from whence rises divers fair, long, and somewhat broad, also shorter green Leaves, paler than those at Sect. 43. above, from among which arise three-square Stalks, like those of *Cyperus*, about half a yard high, set with Leaves from the bottom to about six or seven Inches high of the Stalk, and encompassing the Stalk also at their bottoms; the tops are furnished with a large Tufted Head, (almost like the *True Cyperus*) and greater than is proportional to the Plant, where two or three pretty large Leaves come forth, between which rise up many small Footstalks, very much Branched, which bear many black Seeds, somewhat like *Millet*, or *Rabes*.

LV. 13. *Gramen Cyperoides Palustre Panicula sparsa*, *Aquaticum vulgatius Lobelij*, Marsh Cyperus-Grass with sparsed Heads. It has a Root which spreads somewhat like the *True Cyperus*, but harder, fuller of blackish Fibres, and without smell; the Leaves are long, and somewhat narrow, hard, and cutting on both edges; the Stalk is triangular, tall, without any Leaves thereon to the top, where, between two long Leaves, and very narrow, divers short Footstalks spread forth, bearing each of them four or five small rough Heads.

LVI. 14. *Gramen Cyperoides Palustre majus*, *Gramen junceum triquetrum Thalij*, The greater Marsh Cyperus-Grass. The Root is a bush of many blackish Fibres, like unto *Grass* Roots, it has several long and narrow hard cutting Leaves like the last, and among them divers upright Stalks, without any Leaves at all on them, each of them bearing a long, round, and somewhat large prickly head, in which lies the Seed.

LVII. 15. *Gramen Cyperoides Palustre minus*, The lesser Marsh Cyperus-Grass. The Root of this is like unto the former, but is lesser, as is the whole Plant; the Stalk bears sharp, rough, spiked heads, four or five together, one above another, on both sides thereof, with a long Leaf at the foot of them.

LVIII. 16. *Gramen Cyperoides Palustre spicis minus compactis*, The lesser Marsh Cyperus with more open heads. Its Root is somewhat hard or woody, and full of Fibres, bearing many long and narrow Leaves, like to *Grass*, among which rises up a rough three-square Stalk, bare of Leaves for the most part up to the top, where stand several small rough Heads or Spikes, more loose or open than the former, having sharp pricking Seed within them.

LIX. 17. *Gramen Cyperoides Palustre Subflavescente Panicula sparsa*, *Carex minus Lonicerus*, Yellowish Marsh Cyperus-Grass open headed. The Root is great at the head, with several Fibres thereat, it has smaller and shorter Leaves than any of the former, and naked Stalks, bearing at the tops of the Stalks, between two small long Leaves, a head severed into many small parts or spikes, of a yellowish color. Of this sort there is another, differing very little from it, but in the color of the small Spikes, which are blackish.

LX. 18. *Gramen Cyperoides Palustre majus lati-*

*folium Lobelij & Camerarij*, *Carex Tragi & Lugdunensis*, The greater broad Leav'd Cyperus-Grass. It has a brownish Root, and folding it self one within another, with many Fibres adjoining, it has several large and long Leaves, like unto those of *Reeds*, among which rise up several three-square Stalks, bearing three or four close spiked brownish heads thereon, one above another. There is another of this great broad Leav'd kind, called by *Baubin* *Gramen Cyperoides majus latifolium*, *spica Spodicea viridi*, whose Roots are more bushy and fibrous, and the spiked heads more green, having a long narrow Leaf under the lowest Spike or Head.

LXI. 19. *Gramen Cyperoides Palustre majus angustifolium*, The greater Cyperus-Grass with narrow Leaves. This differs little from the last, but in its growing lower, with narrower Leaves, and spiked heads, which are thinner and longer, but of the same brown greenish color with it.

LXII. 20. *Gramen Cyperoides Palustre minus angustifolium*, The lesser narrow Leav'd Cyperus-Grass. It has a Root with long Strings and Fibres thereat, shooting forth like *Cyperus*, has narrower Leaves, and three-square Stalks, bearing smaller and more spiked long heads, three usually set together, one a little from the other, more stiff also and upright.

LXIII. 21. *Pseudo Cyperus spica brevi pendula*, *Lobelij*, *Gesneri*, *Dodonei*, Bastard Cyperus-Grass with short pendulous heads. The Roots of this do somewhat resemble the *True sweet long Cyperus*, but looser, and not so firm, fuller also of Fibres, and not smelling sweet at all; it grows also somewhat like unto the *True long Cyperus*, having large and long grassie Leaves, in a manner three-square, and so is the Stalk also, at the top whereof, among divers Leaves, come forth great spiked, thick and short heads, hanging downwards, every one by a short Footstalk.

LXIV. 22. *Pseudo-Cyperus*, five *Gramen Cyperoides Palustre spica pendula longiore*, Another Bastard Cyperus-Grass with longer heads. It has a Root like the former, with a triangular striped Stalk, about a yard high, bearing long and narrow Leaves thereon, which encompass the Stalk at bottom with a Skin, or hollow Sheath, having at top several long and narrow pendulous heads, five or six Inches long each, with a long Leaf under each head.

LXV. The Places and Times. They all grow in low, moist, and Moorish Grounds, in many places of this Kingdom, as also in several other Countries, as their Names express, and do all Flourish and Seed in the end of Summer.

X. Φάνιξ ἁγρώδης, *Phanix Graminea*, Darnel-Grass, six kinds.

LXVI. 1. *Phanix simplicis*, & *rarissima Gluma*, The smallest single Darnel-Grass. It is very like to *Red Darnel*, but that it has very few slenderer and shorter Stalks than it, and the Leaves also narrower; the spiked head has a few single Husks set very sparsely.

LXVII. 2. *Phanix altera brevioribus densioribusque spicis*, The greater single Darnel-Grass. The Roots and Leaves hereof are like the *Red Darnel*; the Stalks grow a yard high, jointed and straked, and the Spike is thinly set with chaffie heads, but they are bigger, rounder, and thicker.

LXVIII. 3. *Phanix acerosa aculeata*, Small prickly Darnel-Grass. It has a Root consisting of small white Threads or Fibres, the Stalks hereof are about five, six, or seven Inches high, being rough, hard, full of Joints, pointed or prickly at the ends, and with a few short Leaves on them, and have withal small,



small, short, rough, and chffie like Tongues, sharp at their ends, fet at the Joints.<sup>a</sup>



Grater  
Single  
Darnel  
Grass

LXIX. 4. *Phœnix multiplici spicata Panicula*, Branched Darnel-Grass. It has slender jointed Stalks, half a yard or more high, with narrow Leaves; the spiked head is as it were branched into others, in which consists the chiefest difference.

LXX. 5. *Phœnix multiplici spica nutante*, Double Darnel-Grass with a bowing top. It differs little or nothing from the last, but in the spiked heads, which are thicker set together, and the tops of them bow down, or turn a little round.

LXXI. 6. *Phœnix Palustris & longius spicata*, Branched Marsh Darnel-Grass. It has a Root which is creeping, white, and jointed, with many Fibres adjoining thereto, from which shoot forth two or three jointed Stalks, two Feet or more high; the spiked head is a Foot long, branched as the fourth is, each Branch four or five Inches long, with winged Husks, like unto Oats.

LXXII. *The Places and Times.* All these grow either in Fields of Corn, or in the Borders or Pathways of other Fields which are Fallow, and the last sometimes in Marsh and Wet Grounds, as well as in the edges of Ploughed Grounds.

XI. Ἀγρωσις κυνική, Κυνόγρωσις, *Gramen Caninum*, Dogs-Grass, fourteen kinds, nine Land kinds, five Water.

LXXIII. 1. Κυνόγρωσις, *Gramen Caninum vulgati-*us, Common Dogs-Grass. It creeps far about under Ground, with long white jointed Roots, and small Fibres at every Joint, very sweet in taste, as the rest of the Herb is, and interlacing one another, from whence shoot forth many fair and long grassie Leaves, small at the ends, and sharp or cutting on the edges; the Stalks are Jointed like Corn, with the like Leaves on them, and a long spiked head, with long husks on it, and hard rough Seed in them.



Dogs Grass upright.

LXXIV. 2. *Gramen Caninum longius Radicatum & Paniculatum*, Dogs-Grass with a longer Root and more sparsed Panicles. The Root is fuller, larger, longer, and farther spread, the whole Plant differs but very little from the former, but in the Tuft of Panicle, which is more spread into Branches, with shorter and broader husks.

LXXV. 3. *Gramen Caninum latiore Panicula minus*, The lesser Dogs-Grass with a sparsed Tuft. The Root is small, and jointed, but creeps not so much as the former, and has many more Fibres among them than the others have, and is a little browner, and not so white, but more sweeter; it is a small sort of Grass, and has slender Stalks, about six or seven Inches high, with many very narrow Leaves, both below and on the Stalks; the Tuft or Panicle at the top is small, according to magnitude of the Plant, and spreads into several parts or branches.

Dogs-Grass low bending.



LXXVI. 4. Gra



LXXVI. 4. *Gramen Caninum lupinum arvense*, Low bending Dogs-Grass. It has a Root which creeps much under Ground, but in a differing manner, the Stalks taking Root in several places, and scarcely raising themselves up a Foot high, with such like green Leaves as the first kind, but shorter; the spiked head is bright and sparsed, or spread abroad, much like to the Field-Grass.

*Dogs-Grass lying along.*



LXXVII. 5. *Gramen Murorum Radice repente*, Wall-Grass with a creeping Root. Its Root is blackish, and spreading abroad, from which spring forth many small Stalks, a Foot high, bending or crooking, with a few narrow short Leaves on them, at whose tops stand small white Panicles, of an Inch and half long, consisting of many small chaffie husks.

LXXVIII. 6. *Gramen Caninum bulbosum vel nodosum vulgare*, Common bulbed or knobbed Dogs-Grass. It has for its Roots three, or four, or more round white Bulbs or Knobs, one set upon the head of another, with several Fibres underneath them, from the uppermost of which spring forth several long hard grassie Leaves, sharp at the edges, and in the middle of them a jointed Stalk, with three or four such like Leaves upon them, at the top of which is a long Panicle, spread into many parts, like to that of Oats, whereunto some have compared it. Lobel has another sort hereof, differing little in any part but the Roots, which are small and round, and set at distances all along the Roots, and full as sweet as the other. The first of these is the *Gramen nodosum avenacea pluma Bauhini*, who questions whether it be not the *Ægilops Plinij*, which has a kind of bulbous or tuberous Root.

LXXIX. 7. *Gramen Caninum nodosum spica parva*, Tuberous or Knobbed Grass with a small round spike. It has a small whitish round Bulb or Knob for the Root, with small Fibres under it, shooting forth from the head thereof another, something like unto a Bulb, but much smaller, and like a slender knob, with a small jointed Stalk above it, and a long narrow pointed Leaf at each of them, being

four or five Inches long, and at the top one short soft spiked head, something like to the head of Catstail-Grass.

LXXX. 8. *Gramen Caninum Geniculatum majus*, The greater Kneed Grass. It has a large fibrous bushy Root, from whence spring many long trailing Branches upon the Ground, with several great Joints on them, and shooting out Fibres from those Joints which lye next the Ground, so that it does sometimes run twenty Foot in length, with one long Leaf at each Joint, small at the end, but broadest below, from which, as well as at the top, come forth divers small long spikes of chaffie husks, of an over worn color, which Stalks and Joints are so full of a most pleasant Juice, that it feeds Cattel much better than any other Hay, and therefore those Husbandmen who have it growing in their Grounds do keep the Hay thereof for their chief Winter store, and instead of Provender; this is that which is commonly called Dutch Grass, and grows very plentifully in Plantations in Florida, and other parts of the West Indies.

LXXXI. 9. *Gramen Geniculatum minus*, The lesser Kneed-Grass. The Root is fibrous or thready, like the former, this Grass creeps not so much on the Ground as the greater does, but spreads more upright with its Stalks, whose Joints are not altogether so great as the other, and have at their tops spiked heads, which are somewhat larger than those of the greater Kind, and of a fadder overworn color.



LXXXII. 10. *Gramen Caninum Geniculatum Maritimum spicatum*, Sea Spiked Dogs-Grass. It has a long creeping Root, full of Joints, with many small Fibres running from the Joints, and creeping much under Ground; from several of the Joints of this Root spring up several jointed Stalks, about a Foot high,



high, with hard Leaves thereon a Span long, and like to the other *Dogs-Grass*; the spiked heads are shorter by much, and harder than the *Common Kind* at Sect. 72. aforegoing.

LXXXIII. 11. *Gramen Caninum Maritimum vulgatio Canario simile, Sea Dogs-Grass.* This is a slenderer, harder, and lanker *Grass* than the *Common Kind*, and of a more blewish green color, and differs not in any thing else; but there are two other sorts hereof, the one differing in the Roots, which at the several Joints as it runs does shoot up the like Stalks, Leaves, and spiked Tufts, and will be sometimes twenty Foot in length, with a number of those Stalks and Leaves at them; the other differing in the spikes, which have two orders or rows in them.

LXXXIV. 12. *Gramen Caninum alterum Maritimum longius Radicatum, Sea Dogs-Grass with long Roots.* It has a very long Root, and differs little from the former, either in the hard Leaves or in the running Roots, but that they spread more, and instead of spiked heads at the tops of the Stalks, this has chaffie heads among the Leaves.

LXXXV. 13. *Gramen Caninum Maritimum spicatum Americanum, American Sea spiked Dogs-Grass.* It has slender woody Roots, with but few Fibres adjoining thereto, from whence spring up several trailing Stalks, a Foot or more high, with several Joints and Branches at them, and short narrow Reed like Leaves on them, at the tops whereof grow spiked heads, three Inches long, of a dark Ash color.

LXXXVI. 14. *Gramen Caninum Maritimum asperum, Rough Sea Dogs-Grass.* It has a Root which is a bush of long white Fibres, from whence spring many reddish round small Stalks, about a Foot high, which at first lean downwards; they are encompassed with hard, short, and sharp pointed Leaves, standing as it were in a Tuft together, with hard rough dents about the edges; the spiked heads are somewhat like unto small rough hard Burs, breaking out of a Skin, in which they were first enclosed.

LXXXVII. *The Places and Times.* The first of these is common to be found throughout all *England* in Ploughed Fields, and other like Grounds; the second and third are nothing so frequent as the former, but are more natural to Sandy and Chalky Grounds; the fourth is likewise found in Fields which have been Plowed and do lye Fallow; the fifth is often found growing on old decayed Stone or Brick Walls in several places; the sixth grows not so common as the first kind, or *Creeping Rooted-Grass*, yet sufficiently plentiful in many Plowed Fields of this Kingdom; the seventh is also found in Plowed Fields, and borders of moist Meadows, near Copses, Hedges, or Thickets of Wood, and in some places near *Basil*; the eighth and ninth grow in moist Meadows in several places of this Land, but have been especially observed the eighth to grow about *Wilton*, in a great Meadow lying among the Bridges, at the Towns end, belonging to the Earl of *Pembroke*, and the ninth at *Warminster*, both of them in *Wiltshire*; the tenth, eleventh and twelfth have been observed on our Sea Coasts, especially upon the *Kentish Shoar*; the thirteenth upon our Southern Coasts, in *Florida* also, likewise about *Mompelier* and *Narbone* in *France*; the fourteenth on some of our Shoars, as also on the *Venetian* and *French Shoars*, about *Mompelier*, &c. The first nine Flower and Seed in the beginning and height of the Summer, the last five flourish and perfect their Seed at the latter end of Summer.

*The Virtues.*

LXXXVIII. The first five of these *Grasses* have all one and the same Virtues, but the first of them,

as it is most common, so it is esteemed to be of greatest effect; the Essence, or Decoction of its Roots, opens obstructions of the Liver, Spleen, Gall, Bladder, and Reins, eases Gripings of the Belly, and wastes the Morbifick or Tartarous Matter which breeds the Stone in the Bladder, and heals Ulcers there; being bruised and applied it consolidates Wounds; the Decoction provokes Urine, strengthens the Stomach, and stops Vomiting; the Roots are cold in the first degree, and temperate in respect of moisture and dryness; the Distilled Water is given to Children for the Worms, but it is much more effectual if Worm-Seed be added to it.

LXXXIX. *The Bulbous, Tuberous, or Knobbed Dogs-Grass, viz.* the sixth and seventh, are found by experience to be very effectual to provoke Urine, and more powerful than the first *Dogs-Grass* for the same purpose, as also to break the Stone, and ease those torments of the Belly which come by Fluxes, Bloody Fluxes, crudity of Humors, and obstructions of the Viscera; and may be used in any case to which the other may be applied.

XC. *The Kneed Dogs-Grasses, as also all the Sea Dogs-Grasses,* are generally held to be as effectual as the first, or *Common kind*, but this is to be observed, that the *Sea Kinds* are more effectual for such as live by the Sea side, and Marshy, or Maritime places, and the *Land kinds* for such as live in the Midland, or far from the Sea Shoar, or Salt Water sides.

XII. *Ἀγρωσις νάνον, Gramen Pumilum vel nanum, Dwarf-Grass, three Kinds.*

XCI. 1. *Ξεραμπέλιον, Gramen Xerampelinum, Gramen Pratense rubrum minimum, Red Dwarf-Grass.* It has a Root consisting of many little Bulbs, covered with a reddish Film or Skin, with very many small, hairy, and white Fibres or Threads; the Stalk is short and round, and the Ear is of a reddish color, not much differing from the *Grass* called *Ischemon*, but the Ear is softer, broader, and more beautiful.

XCII. 2. *Gramen minimum Pratense album, White Dwarf-Grass.* This has many Fibrous or Hairy Roots, the Leaves are small and short, as also the Stalk, the top of which bears a Panicle, not much unlike the *Small Meadow-Grass*, but lesser; the color thereof is sometimes white, and sometimes reddish.

XCIII. 3. *Gramen minus duriusculum, Small hard Grass.* It has small Roots, compact of little Strings or Threads, from which spring forth many harsh fowre, or Rushy Leaves, about an Inch and half long; the Tuft or Ear is compact of many Panicles, or very little Ears, which in feeling are very hard or harsh; the *Grass* is unpleasant, and not good Food for Cattel.

XCIV. *The Places and Times.* These all grow in Fields and Meadows, more especially on Heathy, rough, and dry barren Grounds, in most places of *England*; they grow, flourish, and come to perfection in the Summer Months, as other *Meadow-Grasses* do.

XIII. *Ἀγρωσις πολύμηρα, Gramen Plumosum, Feather-Grass, two Species or Kinds.*

XCV. 1. *Gramen Plumosum, Gramen Tomentosum, vel Arundinaceum, Feather-Grass.* It has a Root which is tough and hard, from whence arises a long benty Stalk, three Feet high, or more, naked, without any Blades or Leaves for the most part, at the tops of which grow long spiky Heads or Ears, replenished with Chaffie and Downie Tufts, which make a very pretty show.

XCVI. 2. *Spartum*



XCVI. 2. *Spartum Austriacum Clusij*, *Gramen Pinnatum Dalechampi*, *Gramen Plumosum Hispanicum*, *Spanish Feather-Grass*. It has a Root consisting of many small grassie Fibres, from whence spring small Leaves, a Foot high, round, green, and sharp pointed, and among these Leaves rise up many small Stalks, not exceeding the height of the Leaves, which bear a Spike, having three or four Seeds, ending in, or sending up very fine white Feathers, resembling the smaller sort of Feathers of the Wings of the Bird of Paradise; it is a Native of Spain, but grows with us in our Gardens.

XCVII. *The Places and Times*. The first grows in very Fertile Fields and Pastures, and by their borders near Hedges, and flourishes in Summer.

XIV. *Ἀγρωσις πολυανθη*, *Gramen Polyanthum*, *Grass many Flowered*, *Gramen Filiceum*, *Fern-Grass*.

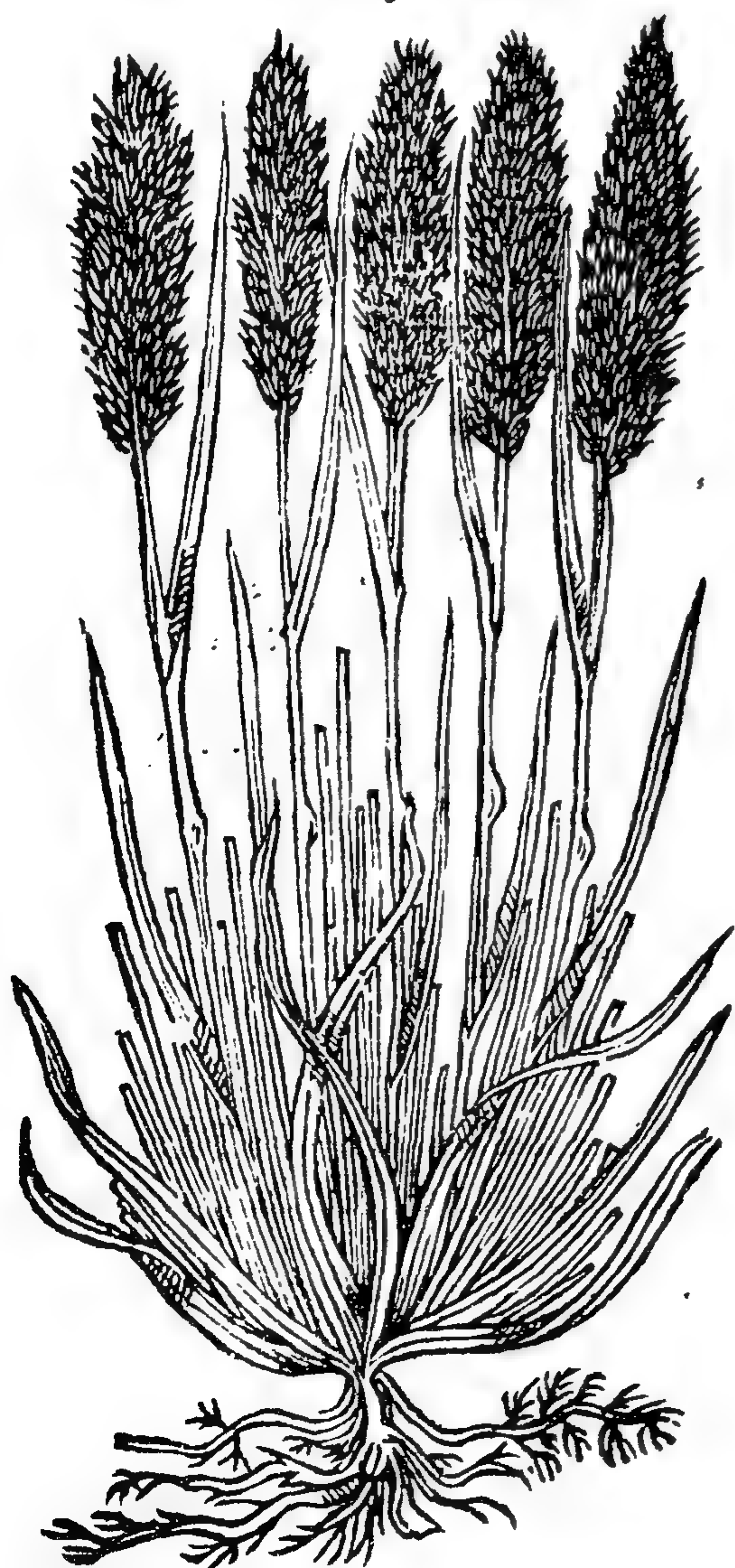
XCVIII. It is also called *Heragrostis Gracè*, *Gramen Paniculatum*, *Gramen Paniculosum Phalaroides Lobelij*, and is a singular Plant. It has Roots and Leaves not much unlike the *Common Meadow-Grass*, the Stalk rises to be about a Foot high, and at top thereof it bears a beautiful Panicle, (for which reason the *Spaniards* and *French* call it the *Lovely-Grass*.) This Head consists of many little Ears, shaped much like those of the *Ordinary Quaking-Grass*, but longer and flatter, being composed of more Scales, so that each of them somewhat resembles the Leaf of a *Small Fern*, whence the Name. These tops when they are ripe and white, are gathered where they naturally grow, to beautify and adorn Garlands.

XCIX. *The Places and Times*. It grows wild in Spain and France, but with us in Gardens, and Flowers in the Summer Months.

XV. *Ἀλοπίκωρ*, *Alopecuros*, *Cauda Vulpis*, *Gramen Tementosum Alopecuros vera Plinij*, *Foxtail-Grass*, three Kinds.

*Ἀγρωσις αλοπεκουροειδης*, *Gramen Alopecuroides*, *Bastard Foxtail-Grass*, nine Kinds.

*Foxtail-Grass true.*



C. 1. *Ἐπικωρ*, *Gramen Alopecuros vero Plinij*, *Alopecuros genuina Theophrasti*, *Stelephuros Plinij*,

*The true Foxtail-Grass*, has a perishing Fibrous Root, grows up with two or three soft hoary Stalks, a Foot high, with small, long, narrow, soft Leaves, as hoary as the Stalks, on the tops of which grow somewhat long, round, soft, woolly or hoary heads, set with soft hairs, of a pale Straw Color, resembling a Fox Tail.

CI. 2. *Alopecuros altera Anglica & Flandrica*, *Another English and Flemish Foxtail-Grass*. In Roots and Leaves it is much like the former, but the Stalks grow not so high, the heads are also shorter and rounder, and not so woolly or hoary.

*Great English Fox tail Grass*



CII. 3. *Alopecuros maxima Anglica*, *The greatest English Foxtail-Grass*. From a like Fibrous Root the Stalks grow up to be half a Yard, or two Feet high, having fair large Wheat like Leaves set at the Joints, and at the tops great, large, full, soft, and woolly heads, like the former, saving that they are much greater and longer, and this whether the Stalk is higher or lower.

CIII. 4. *Gramen Alopecuroides majus*, *The greater Bastard Foxtail-Grass*. It has a Fibrous Root, and rises up with a Stalk three Feet high, with a few Leaves long and narrow thereon, the Spike is somewhat great and long, but not so soft and woolly as the former.

CIV. 5. *Gramen Alopecuroides Cuspidatum maximum Anglicum*, *Our greatest Bastard Foxtail-Grass*. From a bushy fibrous Root spring up many long narrow Leaves, and among them Stalks three Feet high, with few Joints and Leaves on them, at top of which stands the longest spiked head of any other, somewhat pointed at the top, and broad at bottom, with white Hairs on the Husks, somewhat like those of Oats.

CV. 6. *Gramen Alopecuroides Cuspidatum majus*, *The great Spiring or Spiked Bastard Foxtail-Grass*. This is like that at Sect. 103. N°. 4. above, but that



that the spiked head is longer, and tapering upwards, is small at the top, but something broad below, with Oaten like Husks set on them; the Leaves also are more, and much shorter.

CVI. 7. *Gramen Alopecuroides spica aspersa brevis*, Short rough Ear'd Bastard Foxtail-Grass. It has a small white perishing Root, from whence spring up two or three upright small Stalks, with somewhat narrow and soft Leaves on them, at whose tops stand thick short rough heads, an Inch and half long, not fully, but as it were half round the Stalk, the backside being as it were bare, so that they seem to stand but on one side; in these heads is contained the Seed, which is small and white.

CVII. 8. *Gramen Alopecuroides spica longa major & minus*, Bastard Foxtail-Grass long Ear'd great and small. These Grasses are much like one another, one being greater, the other smaller, both in Stalk and Leaf; the spiked heads are long and slender, and of a whitish color.

CVIII. 9. *Gramen Alopecuroides minus spica aspera longa*, Small Bastard Foxtail-Grass long rough Ear'd. It differs from the last, in being greener, more replenished with Stalks and Leaves, the spiked heads being more slender, long also, and rougher.

CIX. 10. *Gramen Alopecuroides cuspidatum minus*, Bastard Foxtail-Grass small sharp pointed. It grows about a Foot high, stord but with few Joints, and short narrow Leaves on them, having a Spike or Ear almost as big as the last, but sharper pointed, with some pieces growing out of the sides.

CX. 11. *Gramen Alopecuroides cuspidatum minimum*, Smallest Bastard Foxtail-Grass pointed. This is lesser than any of those going before, in Stalks and Leaves, but longer in both, as is also the Spike or Ear, which is very small, slender, and pointed at the end.

CXI. 12. *Gramen Alopecuroides alterum radice repente*, five *Pseudoschenanthum*, Another Bastard Foxtail-Grass with a creeping Root, called also Bastard Schenanth. It has a creeping Root, which spreads it self under Ground, shooting forth Leaves and Stalks in several places; the Plant somewhat resembles the greatest English Foxtail-Grass (at Sect. 102. N<sup>o</sup>. 3. above) saving that this has thicker, harder and stiffer Leaves, like unto Rushes; the Head or Spike is long and close, five or six Inches long, of a Silver like shining color, but the Blooms are of a pale red, and the Husks redder, which when it has stood long, begins to open it self, exposing its Downy substance to the Wind.

CXII. The Places and Times. The first and twelfth grow with us only in Gardens, the other ten grow in Fields and Meadows in many places of England, some of them about Hackney, near London, and several others of them in Kent; I have found them all in Fields, Pastures, and Meadows in many parts of Norfolk; and they all keep the times of Flourishing and Seeding with other Meadow-Grasses.

XVI. *Ἀγρὸς ἰσάια*, *Gramen Hirsutum*, & *Hirsutum nemorosum*, Hairy-Grass, and Hairy Wood-Grass, nine Kinds.

CXIII. 1. *Gramen Hirsutum latifolium nemorum majus*, The greater Hairy Wood-Grass broad Leav'd. It has a Root consisting of a tuft of many small long Fibres or Threads, and has several long and somewhat broad Leaves rising from the Root, smaller to the end, greyish underneath, and green above, set about the edges with whitish small long Hairs; the Stalk rises up from among them, and comes to be about two Feet high, with Leaves at the Joints,

having at the top several small greenish Flowers in little Husks, containing within them small Seed.

Hairy Wood-Grass broad Leav'd greater.



Hairy Wood-Grass narrow Leav'd lesser.



CXIV. 2. *Gramen Hirsutum nemorum minus angustifolium*, The lesser narrow Leav'd Hairy Wood-Grass. It has a Root somewhat long, like a Cyperus Root, with a bush of small long Fibres or Threads; the Plant is lesser than the sixth following.

M m m ing,



ing, having many long and narrow Leaves growing at the Root, as hairy as any; the Stalk has two or three Joints, and short Leaves on them, and at the top several small heads standing upright on a small hairy Footstalk.

CXV. 2. *Gramen hirsutum Nemorum praeor majus tuberosa Radice*, A greater early hairy Wood-Grass with a tuberos Root. The Root is thick, somewhat short and brown, almost like a *Tormentil* Root, with a great number of small brownish hairs covering it very thick; the Leaves are larger than the first, of a deeper green color, and as hairy also; at the joints of the Stalks are Leaves, as in the other, and such like heads or knops of Flowers as in the first.

CXVI. 4. *Gramen hirsutum Nemorum latifolium minus Funcea Panicula*, The lesser broad Leav'd hairy Wood-Grass with Rush like Panicles. It is very like in its growing to the first, but that the Leaves hereof are narrower, and the Panicle or tufted head at top of the small Stalks is smaller, and something resembling the tops of *Rushes*.

CXVII. 5. *Gramen hirsutum Nemorum majus angustifolium*, The greater narrow Leav'd hairy Wood-Grass. The Root is small and long, with small Fibres adjoined thereto; this Plant is very like in its manner of growing unto the first broad Leav'd Kind, but that the Leaves are much narrower, shorter, and turning downwards at first; the Stalk is bare, without Joint or Leaf, having at the top three small, rough, and almost round scaly heads set together.

CXVIII. 6. *Gramen hirsutum Nemorum majus angustifolium alterum*, Another great narrow Leav'd hairy Wood-Grass. It has a small reddish fibrous Root, from whence rises up a Stalk, about two Feet high, and smooth, bearing commonly at top a soft white Panicle, somewhat spread abroad, and composed of several small Scales as it were, in every one of which lies a small round blackish Seed; the Leaves are few, a little hairy, and some of them encompassing the Stalk; the whole Panicle has two small Leaves set at bottom thereof, the one rising higher than it, the other lower.

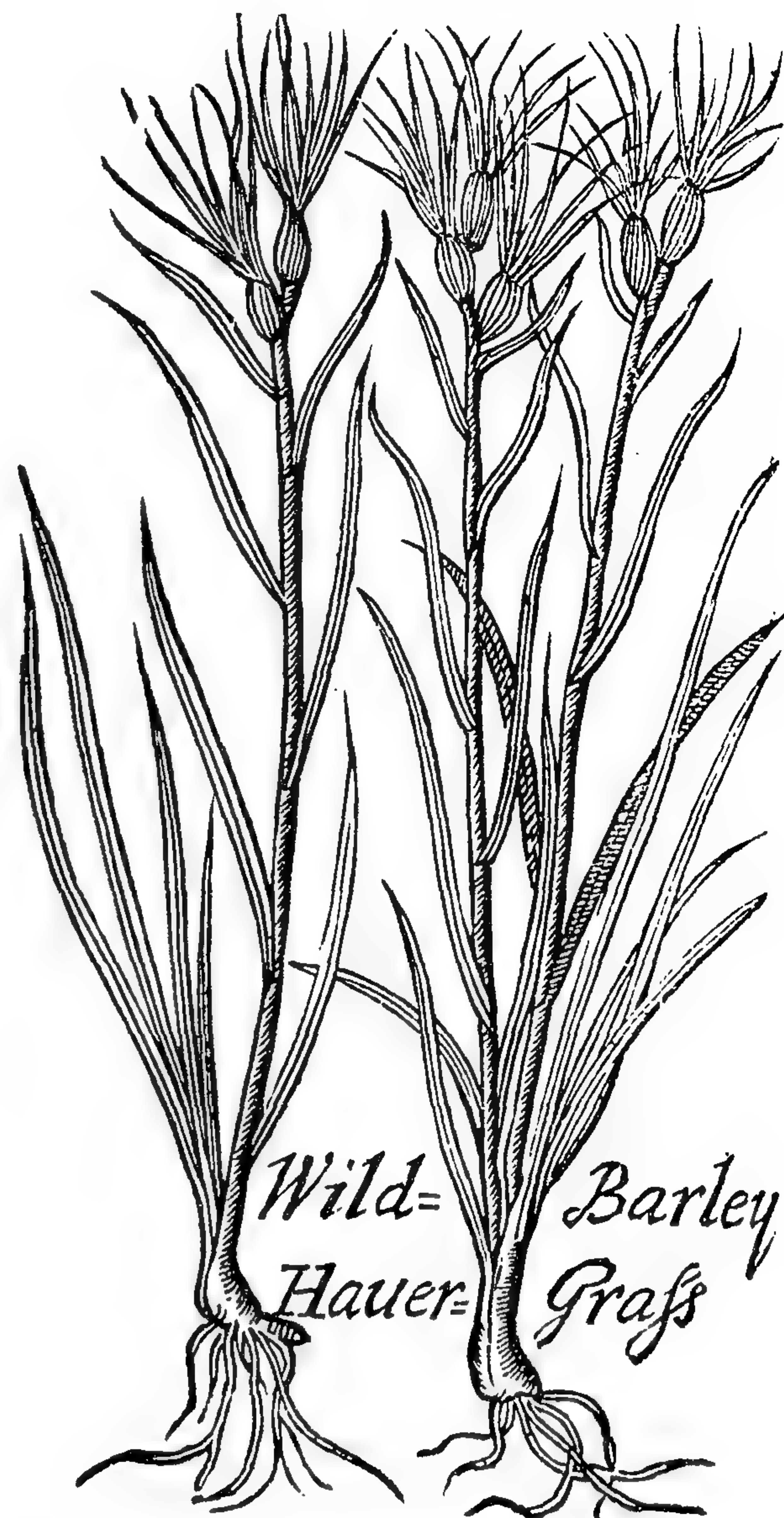
CXIX. 7. *Gramen hirsutum Nemorum minimum*, The smallest hairy Wood-Grass. This has a greater store of long hairy Leaves than the second, but in all things else, as in its Heads and Flowers, it agrees therewith, but is indeed whiter than the rest.

CXX. 8. *Gramen hirsutum Nemorum, sive exile ferrugineum*, Small brown hairy Wood-Grass. It has a Root which is small and fibrous, and the Grass it self is as small as the last, but with lesser store of Leaves; the heads on the Stalks are woolly, and not fully round, but a little flat, and of a yellowish brown color, and the Stalks themselves are about four or five Inches high.

CXXI. 9. *Gramen hirsutum capitulis Globosis*, Globe headed hairy Wood-Grass. The Root is small and thready, from whence rises long Leaves, as broad as the fourth Kind aforegoing, with some small soft hairs about the edges; the Stalks are about a Foot high, with Joints and Leaves on them, the tops being furnished with two or three round, soft, white woolly heads, composed of many small Silver like Threads.

CXXII. The Places and Times. All these grow in many Woods throughout England, some about Highgate, and in Hornsey Wood, and other places, and Flower all of them in the Summer Months, or near the end of Summer, except the third, which Flowers a Month or two earlier than the rest.

XVII. *Aquila, Festuca, Oculis Caprinus*, Haver-Grass, or Peter-Corn, two Kinds.



CXXIII. 1. *Aegilops Italica, Aegilops Narbonensis, Festuca Italica, Aegilops Dioscoridis, Frumentum Sylvestre Sicilie*, Italian Havergrass, or Peter-Corn. It has a Root composed of a small head, with many long Fibres growing from it, from which spring several Grass-like Leaves, of a pale green color; the Stalk is jointed in three or four places, with Leaves at them, and at the tops two or three heads, set one above another, which are round, and somewhat long, hard and striped, having several Beards at the ends of them; the Seeds are a little smaller than Barley, each Seed wrapped up in a crested Skin, out of which the Awnes put themselves forth.

CXXIV. 2. *Aegilops Bromoides Belgarum Lobelij, Festuca prior Dodonæi, Avena Sylvestris, sive nigra Italij*, Dutch Havergrass, or Peter-Corn. It has a Root which is somewhat like the former, but the head from whence the Fibres proceed is not so conspicuous, and indeed the Grass is very like the last both in Stalk and Leaf, the top only is in part like to the Naked Oat, and in part to the former Havergrass, having some Beards set at every husk, within which lye long rough brown Seed.

CXXV. The Places and Times. The first is frequent in Italy and France, where it is found among their Corn, being a degenerate kind of Barley, and in some places the Poorer People use it to make Bread of, with us it is only Sown in Gardens; the second is found as plentifully in England as the Low Countries, and they are both ripe in July and August.

The Virtues.

CXXVI. Lobel says that he had often tryed the *Aegilops* to be effectual in curing that hollow Ulcer in the Eyes called *Aegilops*, or *Fistula Lachrymalis*, for it has a drying quality without sharpness; he also says that the Seed put into Drink causes a kind of Drunkenness, and that the burnt Ashes of the Stalks



Stalks are good against Pituious Tumors, and the Gout, bathing with the Lye made thereof; and that it dissolves hard Tumors and Kernels in the Flesh, discussing Swellings of the Joints. For the Fistula Lachrymalis. Take the whole Plant, Root and green Seed three parts, Roots of Wild Oats one part, boil in a sufficient quantity of Water till a third part is consumed, strain, and add an equal quantity of Honey, and boil to the thickness of a Syrup, to every Quart of which add fine Aloes in fine Powder one Ounce, mix and dissolve, in which wet Tents, and put them up the Nostrils. Dodonæus. Also the Juice of the Plant mixed with Barley Meal to a soft Paste and inspissated, is good for the same purpose; mix a little of it with Damask Rose Water to a thickness, and apply it Plaisterwise to the Ægilops or Fistula, and it will cure it; it also softens and discusses hard Tumors in other parts of the Body.

XVIII. \*Αγρωσις ἐχινωδὴν, *Gramen Echinatum*, Hedge-Hog-Grass, or prickly headed Grass, four kinds.  
*Hedge-Hog Grass.*



CXXVII. 1. *Gramen Echinatum vulgare*, Common Hedge-Hog, or prickly headed Grass, *Gramen Palustre Echinatum Lobelij*, *Gramen aculeatum Dalechampij*. It has a fibrous or thready Root, which sends up divers Grassie Leaves, and among them several slender Stalks, leaning this way and that way, on which are set short spiked heads, very rough and sharp, made of many husks, in which lies the Seed.

CXXVIII. 2. *Gramen Echinatum Italicum aculeatum Matthioli*, Matthiolus his Hedge-Hog, or prickly headed Grass. It has a fibrous Root, which sends up small Grass Leaves and Stalks, much like the Small common Grass, but at the Joints with the Leaves come forth small prickly heads, folded in husks, and ending in three points, in which lye small long pointed Seed.

CXXIX. 3. *Gramen Echinatum planum*, *Gramen Spica plana Echinata Baubini*, Flat Hedge-Hog, or prickly headed Grass. It rises up not much higher than a Palm or Hand breadth, and from a white Root, made of many Fibres, it sends forth a few small hairy Leaves, an Inch long, as also a fine and small Stalk, with a flat spiked head, and very sharp Awnes at the ends of the Husks.

CXXX. 4. *Gramen Echinatum Montanum Tribuloides Echinata Baubini*, *Gramen Spica subrotunda*

*Echinata Columæ*, *Gramen Echinato Capitulo*, and *Capitulato*, Hedge-Hog, or round prickly headed Grass. It has a Root composed of many white Threads, sending forth some few narrow rough Leaves, two or three Inches long, among which rise up slender Stalks, some higher some lower, with one or two Joints, and Leaves at them, each having at the top a small round head, set with very sharp prickles, within the husks whereof lyes clear white Seed.

CXXXI. The Places and Times. The first grows in Watery Meadows and Fields, as in St. Georges Fields, near London, and such other like places; the other three grow in dry places, and old Mud Walls, they all Flourishing and Seeding at the usual times with other Grasses.

XIX. \*Αγρωσις γνατάδης, ἢ πολυγόνατη, *Gramen Geniculatum*, Kneed-Grass, two Kinds.

CXXXII. 1. *Gramen Geniculatum Pratense* has a fibrous and hairy Root, from whence come straight upright strawy Stalks, with manifold Joints, like to those of Corn, which are very large and conspicuous, having thereat many small Grassie Leaves, and bearing at their tops spiky rough Panicles, of a dark brown color.

CXXXIII. 2. *Gramen Geniculatum Aquaticum*, Water Kneed-Grass. It has a thready Root like the former, from which rise many long and slender Stalks, jointed with many large, knobbed and gouty Knees, almost like unto Reed, set with broad flaggy Leaves, something sharp pointed, bearing at their tops Tufts or Panicles, divided into several small Branches, of a duskyish color.

CXXXIV. The Places and Times. The first grows in fertile and moist Meadows, the other in moist and plashy Fields, and places apt to retain much Wet, also at the bottoms of Banks, by Ditch and Hedge side, and flourish when the other Grasses do.

XX. \*Αγρωσις λειμώνια, *Gramen Pratense*, Meadow-Grass, five kinds.

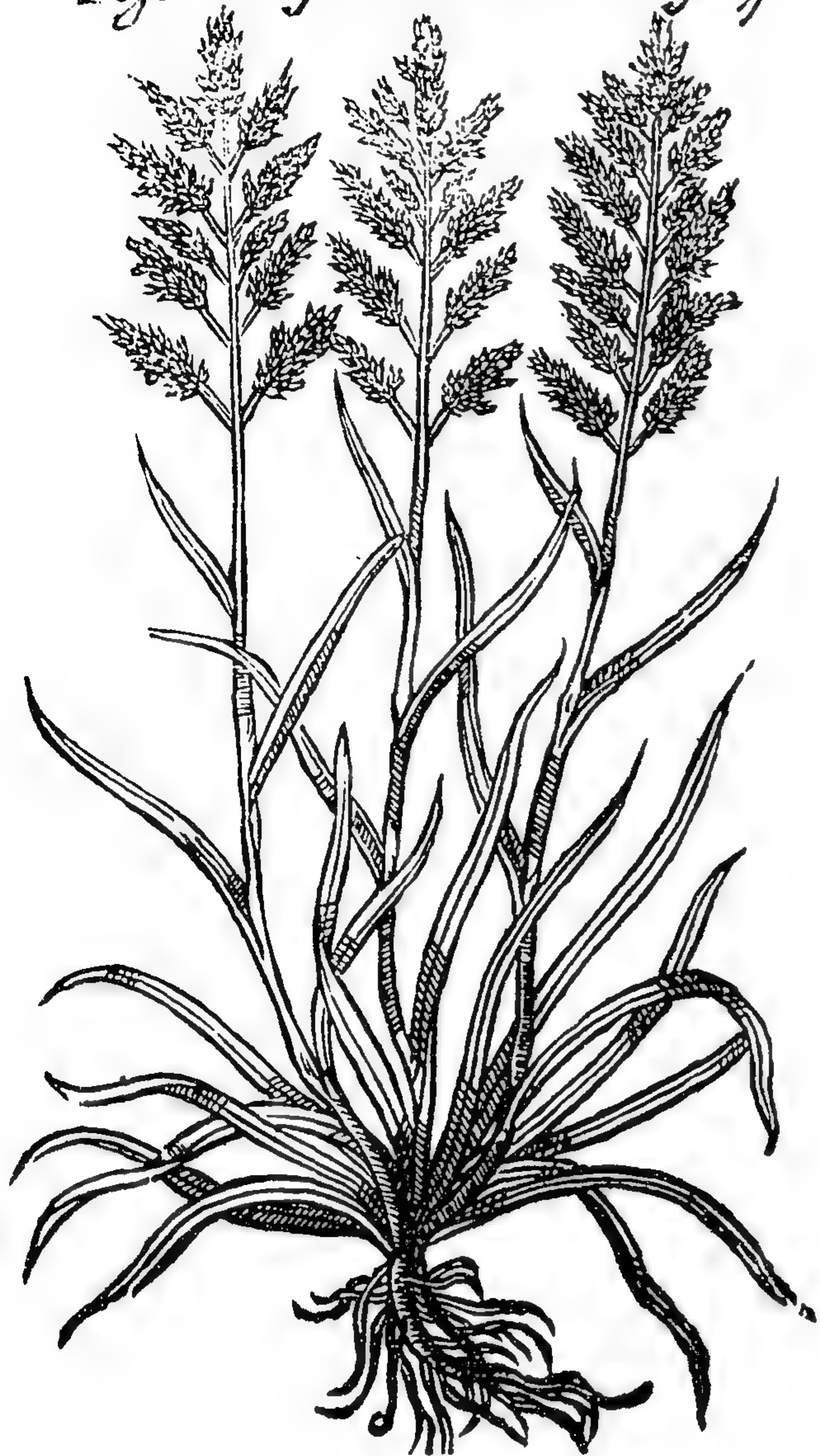


CXXXV. 1. *Gramen Pratense vulgatius majus*, The greater common Meadow-Grass. It has a bushy  
M m m 2 fibrous



fibrous Root, from whence rise up many Grassie Leaves, and among them several Stalks, half a yard high, bearing a sparfed Tuft at the top of them, somewhat resembling the Feather like heads of the Water Reed.

*Lesser tufted Meadow Grass*



CXXXVI. 2. *Gramen Pratense minus*, The small Meadow-Grass. This in its Roots, Leaves and Stalks is not much unlike the former, saving that it is every way something less, and its spiked Panicles are manifold, growing upon the Stalk less and less, till they come to the very top. Of this kind there are two other sorts, both smaller than this, the one with white tufted tops, and the other with reddish tufted tops, the first more sparfed, the last more close together.

CXXXVII. 3. *Gramen multiplici Panicula Pratense*, Meadow-Grass with manifold Tufts. The Root is a thick bush of white Fibres, from whence rise up divers Stalks, a Span long, jointed, and a little bending downwards; the Leaves are small Grass Leaves, and the Tufted Head or Panicle is manifold, and much divided, which when ripe grows hard, and is of a sad reddish color.

CXXXVIII. 4. *Gramen Pratense Paniculatum melle*, Soft Tufted Meadow-Grass. It has a short bushy fibrous Root, from whence several long and somewhat broad, soft, or woolly Grass Leaves spring, from among these Leaves rise up two or three Stalks, a Cubit high, with some Leaves upon it, and at top comes forth a soft woolly spiked head, much divided, whose Bloomings are reddish.

CXXXIX. 5. *Gramen odoratum Paniculatum Germanicum*, Sweet Dutch-Grass with tufted heads. It has a Root which creeps in the Ground, which is white, and full of Joints, shooting out Fibres at every one of them; the Stalks are two or three Feet high, with but few Joints on them, whose Leaves are almost as long, and some of them exceed the height of the Stalks, being narrow, and small at the ends; at the top of each Stalk grows a Panicle, but nothing near so much spread as the for-

mer, the which for their sweetness some use to lay among Garments, or Linnen, to perfume it.

XXI. *Ἀγρῶσις ὄρειον, ὄρειόγρῶσις*, *Gramen Paniculatum Montanum*, Mountain Tufted-Grass, five Kinds.

CXL. 1. *Gramen Montanum Panicula spadicea delicatior*, Soft Mountain-Grass with a reddish or bright bay Panicle. It has a small white Root, with short Fibres, which sends up three or four jointed Stalks, a Foot high, having a few small and short Leaves on them, and such likewise at the foot of the Stalks, but few in number; at the top stands a brownish or bay colored Panicle, three Inches long, composed of many very small husks: this is sometimes found growing higher, and with larger Panicles.

CXLI. 2. *Gramen Montanum Paniculatum altissimum*, Tall Tufted Mountain-Grass. It has a Root which creeps in the Ground, and furnished with several Fibres, whence rise two or three very tall Reed like Stalks, two or three Feet or more high, bearing fair broad green Leaves on them, like unto *Cyperus*, and at the tops of the Stalks many small tufted Panicles; both Stalks and Leaves are so tough, that some Country People make them Coats or Garments thereof, to defend them against the Weather, and Husbandmen make Ropes and Traces thereof for their Horses, wherewith to draw their Ploughs.

CXLII. 3. *Gramen Montanum avenaceum*, Mountain Havergrass, or Out Grass. It has small creeping Roots: the Stalks are about a Foot and half high, slender, jointed, and set with short narrow Leaves. At the tops of the Stalks grow the Ears, which are long, slender and bending, composed of Downy Husks, containing a Seed like to a naked Out.

CXLIII. 4. *Gramen Montanum spicatum Clusii*, Mountain spiked Grass. It has a Root of about a Fingers thickness, parted sometimes into two or three Strings, with many Fibres thereat, and somewhat hairy at top, which shoots forth several Heads of Leaves, each containing five or six, somewhat long, thick, and half hollow, like a Gutter, very like to those of the greater Thrift, compassing one another at the bottom, a little bitter and sharp in Taste; from the middle of which spring up stiff, smooth, bare and knotless Stalks, about a Foot high, bearing at the tops several small Flowers, set Spike-fashion, and of a greenish color.

CXLIV. 5. *Gramen Montanum spicatum angustifolium*, Spiked Mountain Grass with narrow Leaves. It has a Root which runs under the upper Crust of the Ground, full of small brownish Fibres, running one within another: its Leaves are long and narrow, and its Stalks long and slender; at the tops of which are spiked Heads, not much unlike the former.

CXLV. The Places and Times. They all grow upon Hills and Mountains in many places of England, as also in other Countries; and they flourish and seed when other Grasses do. The Seed of the third is ripe in July.

XXII. *Ἀγρῶσις κερχελία*, *Gramen Miliare*, vel *Miliarium*, vel *Miliaceum*; Millet-Grass, six Kinds.

CXLVI. 1. *Gramen Miliaceum vulgare*, Common Millet Grass. It has a bushy and fibrous Root; from whence rise up slender jointed Stalks, with two or three somewhat large Leaves thereon: at the top of each Stalk is a bushy spreading Tuft, of many



many long Feather-like Sprigs, consisting of many small chaffy Husks ; within which is contained small Seed, which Birds greedily eat.



CXLVII. 2. *Gramen Miliaceum Panicula speciosa*, *Gramen segetum Panicula sparsa*, Millet Grass with a fair Panicle, or Corn Grass with a sparsed Panicle. It has a bushy fibrous Root, like the former ; and grows up with a few long, soft, green Leaves, like to those of *Millet*, some below, and others upon a stiff, tall, round, smooth, green, jointed Stalk, a Yard and half high, bearing on its top a bushy, large, spreading Tuft, spread round into many slender Branches, very like in its Form, Parts and manner of Growing to the former *Millet Grass*, saving that it is not only larger, but also more beautiful.

CXLVIII. 3. *Gramen Miliaceum alterum*, Another Millet Grass. The Root is fibrous and reddish ; it has but a small weak Stalk, not much above a Foot and half high, with a few narrow Leaves, four or five Inches long, growing at the bottom, and two or three thereon at the Joints. The Feather-like Tuft at the top is spread abroad, like the former, but the chaffy Husks are much smaller and finer.

CXLIX. 4. *Gramen Miliacea Panicula arundinaceum*, A Reedy Grass with Millet like Panicles. It has a white fibrous Root, which sends forth several Reed like Leaves, yet shorter than the last ; among which rises up a Stalk or two, about a Foot and half high, with two Joints thereon towards the tops, and narrower and longer Leaves growing at them : at the top spreads forth a Feather like Tuft, not much unlike the first, and of about three Inches long.

CL. 5. *Gramen Miliaceum Indicum*, vel *Gramen Sorghinum*, Indian Millet Grass, or Pipe Grass. It has a fibrous Root ; from whence spring up Reed like Stalks, half a Yard high, or something more, with fair long Lilly like Leaves thereon, and a spread

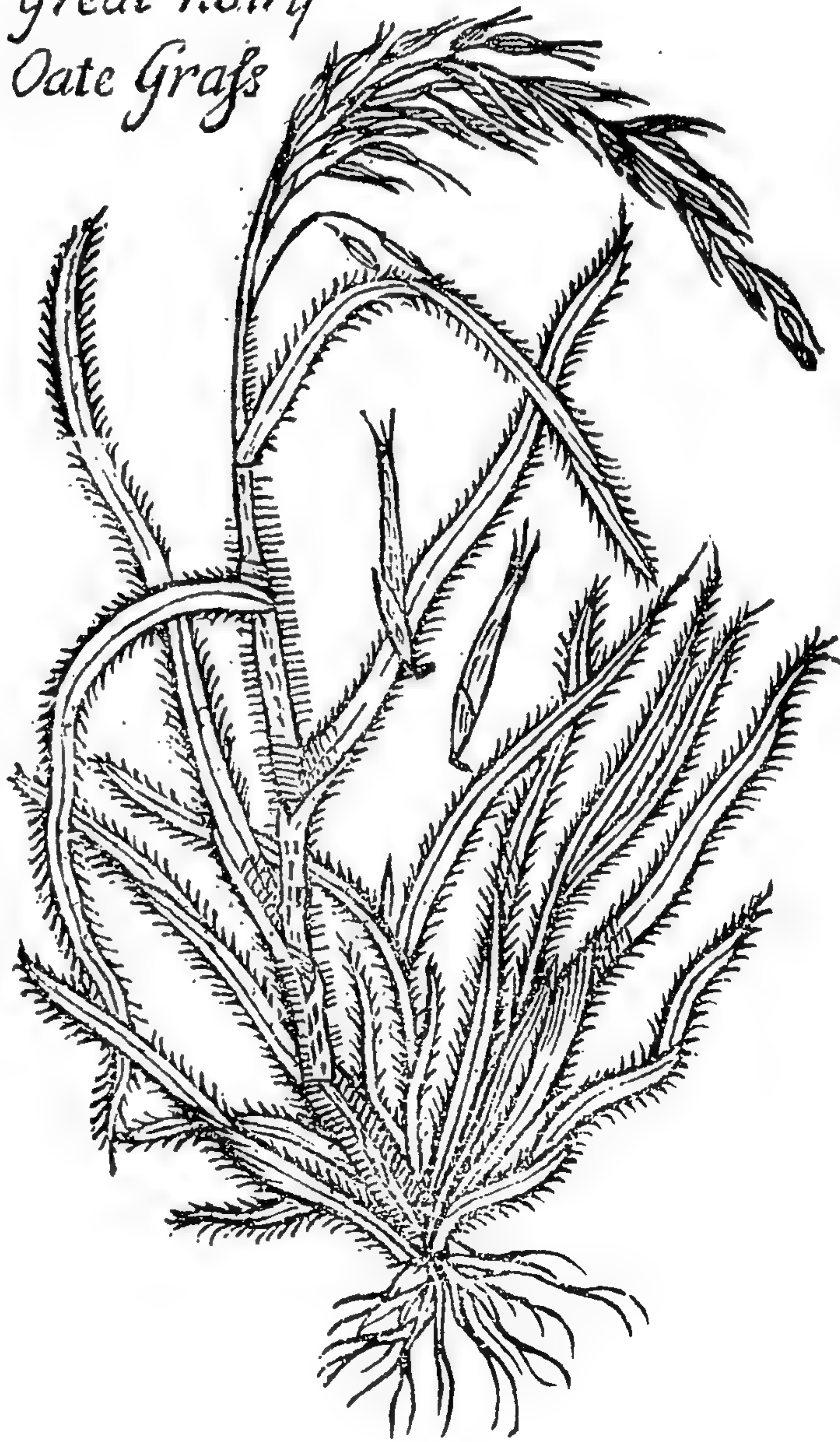
spiked Top, consisting of many Panicles or Parts above, somewhat like unto the *Indian Millet*, but with larger Seeds therein than in the *Millet*. *Lobel* calls it *Gramen sonarum Flandrorum*, because Boys there make Pipes of its Stalks.

CLI. 6. *Gramen Miliaceum Indicum alterum*, vel *Gramen sorghinum alterum*, Another Indian Millet Grass. It has hollow Stalks, like the last, but they are weak, bending down to the Ground, and shoot out Fibres at their Joints, whereby it roots it self afresh ; having narrow long Leaves on them, the Stalk seeming, as it were, to run thro' them, like to a Pipe ; and at the top such alike spread spiked Head as the former, whose Husks in the several parts of it are smaller.

CLII. The Places and Times. The second grows in the Borders of Corn-fields, and Grounds which have been Plowed, and flourishes chiefly in the beginning of Summer. All the other grow also in Fields, and by Hedge-sides, as well in *England* as in other Countries, tho' observed but by few who are curious in Herbarism, and flourish in *June*, *July* and *August*.

XXIII. *Ἀγρωσις Βεβηλεια, & Σεραφιδος*, *Gramen Avenaceum*, Oat Grass. Twenty two Kinds.

Great hairy  
Oate Grass



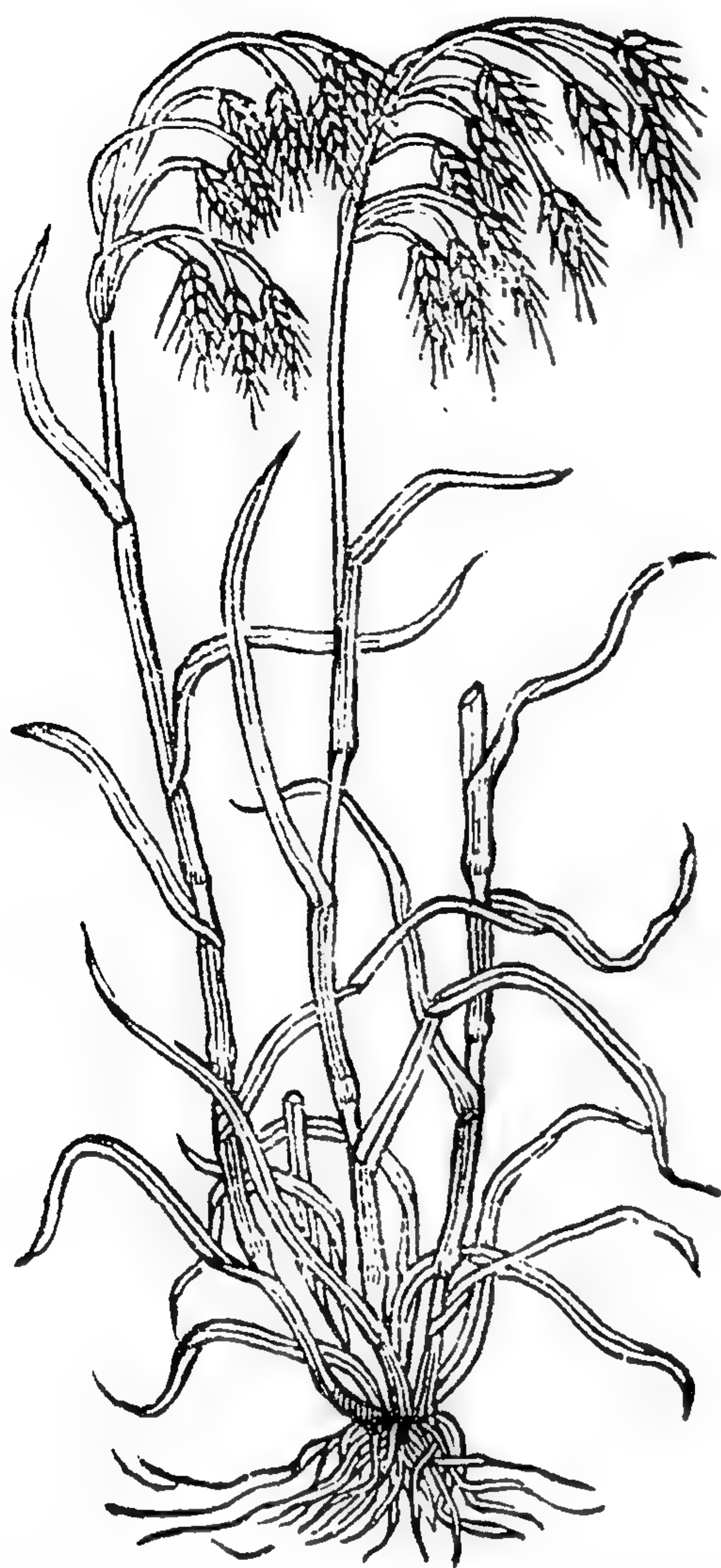
CLIII. 1. *Gramen Bromoides maximum hirsutum*, The greatest hairy Oat Grass. It has a bushy fibrous Root, and the Plant is all hairy : the Stalks and Leaves are greater than those of *Oats*, being four, five, six or seven Feet high sometimes, whose Panicle at top spreads into many chaffy bearded Ears, hanging down their Heads. It is found in Pastures about *London*, as also in *Essex*.

CLIV. 2. *Gramen Bromoides segetum Panicula latiore*, Great Corn Oat Grass. It has Oat like Stalks, four,



four, five or six Feet long; the Leaves are shorter and narrower; the top is much spread, having divers Ramifications, with many branched chaffy Ears coming forth at a Joint, broadest below, and springing small upwards.

### Great Corn Oat-Grass.



CLV. 3. *Gramen Avenaceum incanum*, Great hoary Oat Grass. It has short narrow Leaves, somewhat hairy, and a little hoary withal. The Stalk has but few Joints. The Panicle is spread, like the last, but lesser, and is somewhat hoary. This is sometimes found lesser; and grow both of them in the Borders of Corn-fields, both in *Essex* and *Kent*.

CLVI. 4. *Gramen Avenaceum Pratense*, Meadow Oaten Grass. It has many Leaves growing next the Root, which are long and narrow; and the Stalk is lesser and lower than any of the former, but the Panicles or Ears stand at top, lesser spread, and not hoary, every one upon its own Foot-stalk.

CLVII. 5. *Gramen Avenaceum squamosa gluma*, Scaley-ear'd Oaten Grass. It has narrow Leaves, eight or nine Inches long, a little hairy. The Stalk is slender, and has such alike Panicle as the last; but that the scaley Ears stand single, every one upon its own Thread like Foot-stalk.

CLVIII. 6. *Gramen Avenaceum pinnata longiuscula spica*, Winged Oaten Grass. It has a slender Stalk, higher or lower, according to the Place and Goodness of the Soil. The Leaves are narrower than the last. The Panicle is somewhat long, but small, and not much spread, each Part being, as it were, winged or divided into several pieces, upon one Rib or Foot-stalk.

CLIX. 7. *Gramen Avenaceum filicea Panicula Xerampelina*, Red Fern like Grass. It has red shining Stalks, a Foot high. The Leaves are soft and narrow. The Panicle at the top is three or four Inches long, of a whitish green color, divided into many winged Branches, many Parts being set on both sides the Branch, and each Part divided, like a Fern Leaf.

CLX. 8. *Gramen Avenaceum murorum erectum*, Upright Wall Oat Grass. It grows upright, sometimes a Span, and sometimes a Foot high. It has

as many Leaves almost as any Grass. The spiked Head is three or four Inches long, and sparsely divided, each small Ear being bearded. It is often found upon old Mud-walls which commonly enclose Fields.

CLXI. 9. *Gramen Avenaceum supinum Arvense*, Low Meadow Oat Grass. Its Leaves are as small as the last, an Inch or Inch and half long. The Stalks are slender and weak, leaning downwards, with a few bearded Husks, and Spike-fashioned at top.

CLXII. 10. *Gramen Avenaceum supinum flosculis secalinis*, Long-winged Oat Grass with Rie like Flowers. It springs with many Stalks, but they seldom rise up to be a Foot and half high; are full of Joints, and have small short Leaves on them, of a whitish green color. The tops are replenished with four or five Oat like Heads, but more winged, and with short Awnes, somewhat hard, and flowering like Rie.

CLXIII. 11. *Gramen Avenaceum exile, foliis mollicellis*, Small soft-leav'd Oat Grass. It is very like the *Gramen exile durum*, so that it may be easily mistaken for it, and differs therefrom only in the Leaves, these being longer, and soft, as the whole Plant is, and not above half a Foot high, and spiked at its top, its parts being also winged.

CLXIV. 12. *Gramen Avenaceum altero alteri innatum*, Small Oat-Grass one head set on another. It is a fine small Grass, and much resembles the *Gramen Britannicum Maritimum*, having divers hard Hair like Leaves, with very small Stalks, a Span, or eight or nine Inches high, some of which bear their small sharp Husks at their tops only, as some others do, and others of them out of a Tuft of Leaves in the middle of the Stalk send forth another short Stalk, with such like sharp Husks on them as on the other.

CLXV. 13. *Gramen Avenaceum Montanum Clusij*, Mountain Oat-Grass with hoary husks. It has a Root consisting of several long Fibres, the Stalks are slender and jointed, a Foot and half high, with very narrow and long Leaves, and at the tops a long spiked head, bowing the head close, with woolly short husks, containing Seed like to those of Naked Oats.

CLXVI. 14. *Gramen Avenaceum Montanum alterum*, Another Mountain Oat-Grass without hoary husks. It differs not in any thing from the former, but in the spiked head, whose husks are not hoary, as those others are.

CLXVII. 15. *Gramen Avenaceum gluma variore spicatum*, Spiked Oat-Grass with a sparsely, loose, chaffy Ear. It has a fibrous or stringy Root, and hairy, running under Ground, it has slender, weak, clear Stalks, a Foot high, with long Leaves on them, and at their tops weak, bending, spiky heads, thinly or sparsely set with small husks, containing Oat-like Seed or Grain.

CLXVIII. 16. *Gramen Avenaceum Xerampelinum*, Red Oat-Grass. This is somewhat like the last, but with much lower Stalks, clear and reddish, the husks at the top of them are more upright and longer, having the like Oat Seed in them. A lesser sort hereof has been found about *Greenwich*, in a hungry Soil.

CLXIX. 17. *Gramen Avenaceum locustis rubris*, Oat-Grass with red husks. It has a Root which is long and white, like unto Dogs-Grass, or Quitch-Grass, creeping in the Ground, having next to the Earth narrow short Leaves, where the Stalk is reddish, but they are longer up higher; the husks are set sparsely at the tops, all on one side for the most part, and are of a dark reddish Purple color, but white within, with small Grains within them.

CLXX. 18. *Gramen*



CLXX. 18. *Gramen Avenaceum glumis varijs*, *Oat-Grass with party colored husks*. It has a Root which is thick, and is covered with a rough white Bark, the Leaves are green, long and narrow, from among which rise up two or three smooth and brittle naked Stalks, a Foot high, bearing a short spike of small husks, of divers colors.

CLXXI. 19. *Gramen Bromoides, five Avenaceum pauci Granum Coma nutante spicata*, *Oat-Grass with few Seeds*. It is somewhat hairy all over, the Leaves are of a sad green color, set on Stalks three, four, or five Feet high, at whose tops is a spiked bending head, having seven or eight small long husks, with few Seeds in them: this grows near Woods sides in many places.

CLXXII. 20. *Gramen Avenaceum Sylvarum*, *Wood Oat-Grass*. It has a Root which runs creeping under the Earth, the Stalks are small in all the parts, and weak, being not above half a Yard high, with long, narrow, soft Leaves on them, and at their tops a few short husks, and open, like unto some of the *Oat-Grasses* before.

CLXXIII. 21. *Gramen Avenaceum exile*, *Small Wood Oat-Grass*. This has a fibrous Root, and the Stalks are slender and smaller in all their parts, yet notwithstanding stand a little more upright; the husky tops are like the former.

CLXXIV. 22. *Gramen Avenaceum gluma villosa Sylvestre*, *Hairy Wood Oat-Grass*. It has fibrous and yellowish Roots, the Stalks hereof are three Feet high, with small narrow Leaves, four or five Inches long, the spiked heads have somewhat long and hairy husks, distinctly set one above another, and is often found less by the half than the other.

CLXXV. *The Places and Times*. The first twelve of these grow in many Fields throughout *England*, some in one place, some in another, some in Meadow Land, some in Plowed Grounds, and some in Fallow; the thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth and eighteenth grow upon Mountains, and on Hilly Grounds; the fifteenth and sixteenth have also been found growing in *Denmark*; the last four grow in Woods, and by Wood sides, in Mountainous Woods, and other Woody places: they all flourish in the Summer Months.

XXIV. \**Ἀγρωσις μελινώδης*, *Gramen Melinoides*, *Gramen Panicum*, *Panick-Grass*, six Kinds.

CLXXVI. 1. *Gramen Panicum*, *Panicum Sylvestre Herbariorum*, *Wild Panick*, or *Panick-Grass*. It has a fibrous Root, like unto *Panick*, it has some near resemblance also unto *Millet* in the spreading of the tufted head, being composed of several parts, each part by it self near resembling a *Panick* head; the jointed Stalk, with the Leaves thereon, are very like unto *Panick*, yet much less in all, for which reason it is rather referred to *Panick* than to *Millet*.

CLXXVII. 2. *Gramen Panicum Spica simplici*, *Panick-Grass with single Ears*. It has weaker and smaller Stalks than the former, and scarcely rising upright, with shorter Leaves on them; the tops of the Stalks are severally furnished with a spiked rough head, sticking to any Garment it touches; it is small at the top, and full of small whitish Seed.

CLXXVIII. 3. *Gramen Panicum Sylvestre*, *Panicum Sylvestre Dalechampij*, *Wild Panick-Grass of Dalechampius*. This differs from the last, in that it grows more upright, and about two Feet high, the Stalks have several *Grass* like Leaves on them, but longer and broader, with one usually under the hairy spiked head, which sticks so fast to their Garments which touch it, that it is difficultly plucked off.

There is another of this sort, which is found with us in *England*, which is smaller, else but very little differing.

CLXXIX. 4. *Gramen Panicum cristis longis armatum*, *Panick-Grass bearded*. It has a Root consisting of many long Fibres, the Stalks and Leaves are not much unlike to the second sort of *Panick-Grass* aforegoing, but larger and taller, having divers brown heads at the tops, one above another, armed with long and sharp Beards or Awnes, like unto *Wheat* or *Barley*.

CLXXX. 5. *Gramen Panicum minus*, *Panick-Grass the lesser*. This is lesser than any of the others going before, having low bending Stalks, eight, nine, or ten Inches long, and sharp long Leaves thereon, with small, long, chaffie Ears, like *Cocksfoot-Grass*, set sparsedly at the tops.

CLXXXI. 6. *Gramen Panicum Sylvestre Anglicum & Africum*, *Panick-Grass Wild of England and Barbary*. It is a kind of *Wild Panick Grass*, growing in several Woods with us, whose Spike resembles *Panick*: the like hereof has been brought to us out of *Barbary*, having like Leaf and Head, and differs from ours only in largeness.

CLXXXII. *The Places and Times*. These *Grasses* grow all of them in *England*, and the first of them in *France*, usually among Rubbish, and in waste Grounds, as also in good and Manured Fields, and bear their Heads and Spikes in the Summer Months, as other *Grasses* do.

XXV. \**Ἀγρωσις φαλαρώδης, ἢ φαλαγγιδίης*, *Gramen Phalaroides*, \**ἄγρωσις ἄντερον, ἢ παρότερον*, *Gramen Tremulum*, vel *Tremulentum*, *Quaking-Grass*, *Maiden hair-Grass*, five Kinds.

## Quaking-Grass Greater.

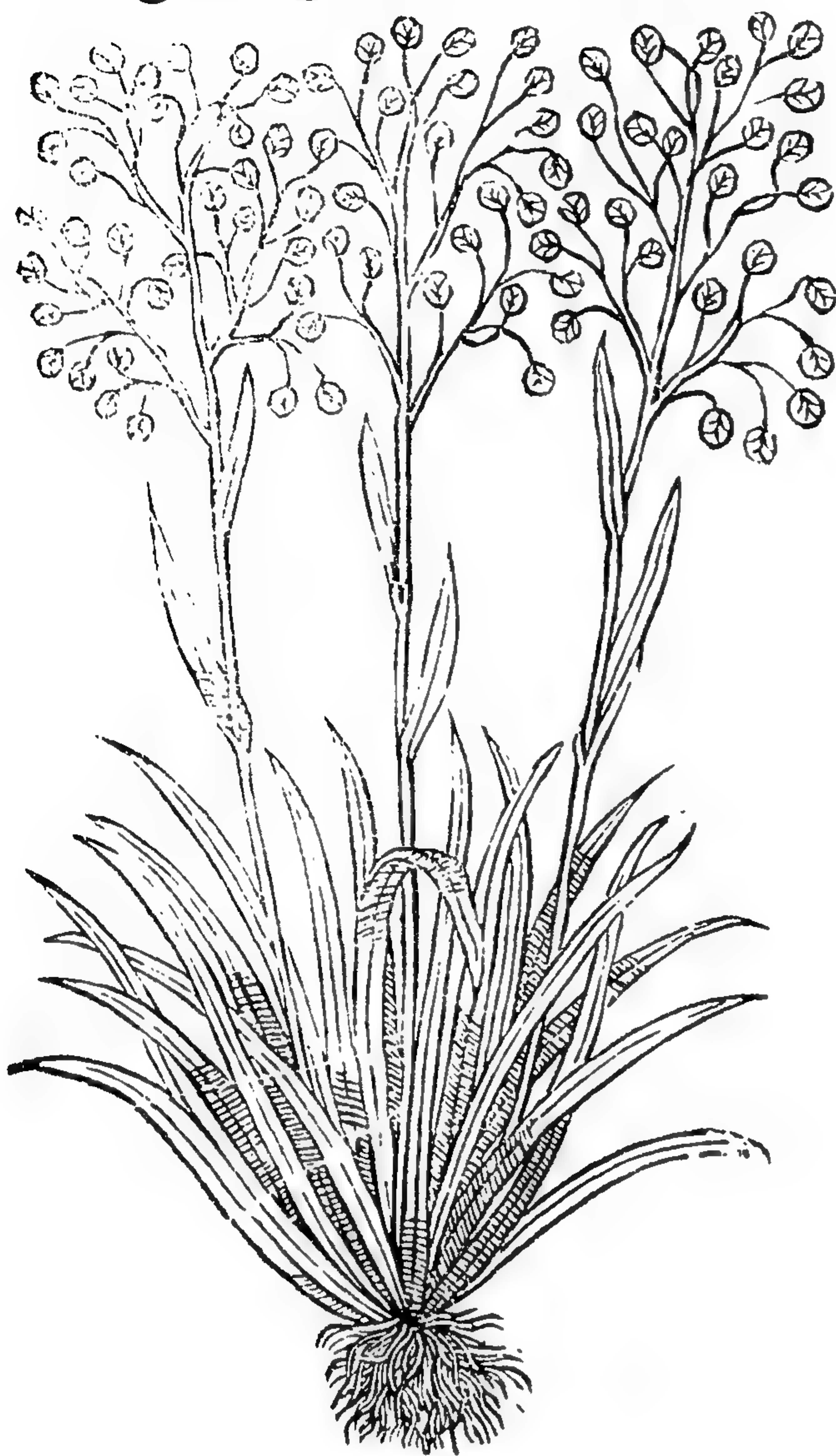


CLXXXIII. 1. *Gramen Tremulum maximum*, *Phalaris Pratenfis major*, *Gramen Phalaroides Paniculifolium*, *Gramen Paniculis Elegantissimis*, vel \**ἄγρωσις majus Baubini*, *The greatest Quaking-Grass*, or *Maidenhair-Grass*. It has many narrow *Grass* like



like leaves both below and upon the jointed Stalks, which are a Foot high and better; on the tops of the Stalks grow a number of small, flat, and long scaly like heads, greater than the following, and each of them on a fine hairy Footstalk, and pendulous, which are sometimes of a whitish color when they are ripe, and sometimes of a brownish green color, and are to be shaken with the least Wind imaginable.

### *Quaking-Grass Lesser.*



CLXXXIV. 2. *Gramen Tremulum medium*, *Phalaris Pratensis minor* Lobelij, *Ægilops Tragi* & *Gefneri* in *Hortis*, *Gramen Polyanthos Lugdunensis*, *The middle or lesser Maidenhair, or Quaking-Grass*. It has a fibrous Root like the other, and grows something like it in form, but with fewer Leaves and Stalks, and a large Panicle or tufted head of greener, shorter, and rounder Scale like pointed Ears, standing on smaller or finer hairy Footstalks than the former, which are in such continual motion, that the most steady Hand cannot hold them still, or from stirring. Of this sort *Boel* has another, which is somewhat larger, and of a dull or brown black color.

CLXXXV. 3. *Gramen Tremulum parvum*, *Small Maidenhair, or Quaking-Grass*. Of this there are two sorts, little differing in Leaves or Stalks from the last, the heads only are a little lesser, and so is the whole Panicle also, the one of which is Party Colored, of Purplish and Green, the other is of a Straw Color and White.

CLXXXVI. 4. *Gramen Tremulum minus*, vel *minimum Panicula parva* *Baubini*, *The small or smallest Maidenhair, or Quaking Grass*. The Roots are reddish, creeping here and there, from whence rise up two or three short Stalks, with few Joints and smooth, narrow, green Leaves at them, as the many which grow below are; but out of the uppermost Joint and the Leaf, as it were out of a Hose, breaks forth a small, long, single Spike of small scaly heads, of a brownish color, with yellowish Bloomings, at their Season.

CLXXXVII. 5. *Gramen Tremulum maximum album* *Baubini*, *Gramen elegans* *Lupuli glumis* *Clusij*, *The white greatest Maidenhair, or Quaking-Grass*. It has a small and fibrous Root, perishing every Year with us, it is a small *Grass*, with slender Stalks, and a few soft green Leaves on them, at the tops whereof stand flattish, soft, scaly heads, greater by much than any of the foregoing, and of a Silver shining white color, very beautiful to behold, each of them much like to the head of an Hop, hanging upon a small Thread-like Footstalk, as the others do, and are almost as moving and stirring as they are.

CLXXXVIII. *The Places and Times*. All these sorts of *Grasses* grow in Corn Fields, and in Lay Grounds, which have been formerly Plowed, and some of them in dry Meadows and Pastures; the first, second, third, and fourth kinds grow not only in *England*, but also in *Spain*, *Italy*, *West Indies*, and other Countries; the third sort is found growing in Upland Corn Fields, as at *Hatfield*, &c. on the Grassie Banks there; the fifth kind is a Native of *Spain*, and grows with us only in Gardens, which tho' it perishes every Year, yet seldom rises again of its own Sowing, but of the Sowing thereof in the Spring; but in *Spain* it Sows it self, and abides all Winter, in regard they have there no Frosts; the fourth sort flourishes, and is in Bloom with us in *May* and *June*.

XXVI. *Καλαμώγρασις*, *Calamogrostis*, *Ἀγρωσις καλαμώδης*, *Gramen Arundinaceum*, *Reed-Grass*, thirteen Kinds, of which seven are of the *Land Kind*, three of the *Marsh Kind*, and three of the *Water Kinds*.

CLXXXIX. 1. *Calamogrostis*, sive *Gramen Arundinaceum majus*, *Gramen Arundinaceum Spica multiplici* *Baubini*, *The greater Reed-Grass*. It has a Root full of white Strings or Threads, and some jointed ones, which spread in the Ground, from whence rise up many jointed Stalks, also large, sharp, cutting Leaves on them, like to those of the *Water-Red*, but lesser; the tops of the Stalks are furnished with several hard long Spikes or Heads, somewhat like to the *Common Reed*, which when they have stood long do open, and having a flocky substance in them, are carried away with the Wind. Another Kind is lesser, and not having above one or two Spikes thereon.

CXC. 2. *Calamogrostis altera minor*, sive *Gramen Arundinaceum minus* *Norwegicum*, *The lesser Reed-Grass*. The Root consists of many long Strings, from which rise up Stalks, not so high as the former, which, as well as the Leaves, are somewhat harder or rougher than the former, (which yet in *Norway* are much more hard and rough) the spokie Tuft at the top is larger, more spread into several Panicles, sharper also, and a little rougher in handling.

CXCI. 3. *Calamogrostis nostras Sylva Joannis*, *Reed-Grass of John's Wood*. It has a white Root, with thick Strings, which sometimes spread under the Ground, it is in its Stalks and Leaves a little like the next *Woolly Reed-Grass*, but the Stalks are jointed in two or three places to the height of three or four Feet, or more, with narrower Leaves, sharper, and almost three Feet long, being a little striped withal; the top Panicles are sometimes a Foot or more long, parted into many long Spikes, which are as soft as Silk, and of a shining, overworn, Murry color.

CXCII. 4. *Calamogrostis*, sive *Gramen Tormentum*, *Woolly Reed-Grass*. It has a Root which is somewhat



somewhat hard and rough at top, with several long Fibres proceeding from it; the Stalks are three or four Feet high, or more, having but few Joints; these Stalks are rough, and bear large spiked heads, set up a long Panicle, which are reddish for some time, but growing to ripeness are of a shining Silver like whiteness, and as soft as Wooll in handling; this Plant in its roughness, dryness, and form of Leaves, is not much unlike to that *Bastard Foxtail-Grass* called *Pseudoschœnanthum*, or *Bastard Squinanth*, at Sect. 111. foregoing, but much greater.

CXCIII. 5. *Calamogrostis Panicula Torosa*, Large, round, Tufted Reed-Grass. Its Root is small and stringy, it has narrow Leaves, something softer and gentler in handling than the others before, yet not eaten by any Cattel except Goats; the Tuft or Panicle it self is more round and thicker, with shorter heads, set close together like small Knots or Knobs, but somewhat flat on one side; its Bloomings are of a yellowish purple color, and some of its Panicles are found to be more long than round.

CXCIV. 6. *Calamogrostis Montana Enodis*, *Scirpus primus Tragi*, The greater Mountain Reed-Grass. It has a Root of some small substance, hard, and having many Fibres adjoining to it, it grows up with strong Stalks as high as a Man, without any Joints on them, or having but one at the most, having thereat not hard, but soft long Leaves; at the tops of the Stalks are many long, slender, chaffie Spikes, growing more sparsely than the others, each of which is of a bright reddish yellow color, and standing upright.

CXCV. 7. *Calamogrostis Montana Enodis minor*, The lesser Mountain Reed-Grass. The Root is like the former, but the rest of the Plant is much lower and smaller; the Spikes are also smaller and shorter, and not standing so upright.

CXCVI. 8. *Calamogrostis Palustris maxima*, *Gramen Arundinaceum Palustre maximum*, Great Marsh Reed-Grass. It has a Root which creeps far about in Wet Marshy places, from which it shoots forth great, thick, and very tall Stalks, four, five, or six Feet high, jointed up to the tops, with long and somewhat broad, hard, rough, and straked Leaves set thereon, but less than those below; towards the tops of the Stalks with the Leaves come forth many sparsely Tufts of chaffie heads, standing on small long Footstalks, the whole Panicle being at least a Foot long, and sometimes more.

CXCVII. 9. *Calamogrostis nostras gluma Acerosa Palustris*, Our great Marsh Reed-Grass with chaffie heads. It has a jointed reddish Root, from whence spring many fair large Reed like Leaves, not much unlike to those of *Millet-Grass*, but harder, rougher, and straked all the length of them, having great Reed like Stalks, three, four, or five Feet high, jointed also and branched, and towards the tops having large and somewhat hard Panicles of spiky chaffie heads, each of them about seven, eight, or nine Inches long, of a whitish color in some places, and reddish in others, in which chaffie or husky Heads there lyes small Seed.

CXCVIII. 10. *Calamogrostis*, vel *Gramen Arundinaceum Palustre Sericca molliore spica*, Soft headed Marsh Reed-Grass. The Root is composed of several small Fibres or Strings set together at a head, it grows something like the last, but lesser, with narrower and shorter Leaves, and lower Stalks, having but few Joints and Leaves on them; the tufted Heads which stand at the tops are something like to the *Rush* which is called *Bastard Schœnanthum*, and turn into Down, which is carried away with the Wind.

CXCIX. 11. *Calamogrostis Aquatica major*, *Gramen Arundinaceum Aquaticum majus*, Great Water

*Reed-Grass*. It has Roots which run and spread themselves far, shooting up in several places, the Stalks are great and tall, full of Joints, with large Reed like Leaves at them, striped with White and Green, like Ladies Laces, but not so evidently to be seen, up to the top almost, where stands a large and soft tufted Panicle; consisting of many Branches and parts, almost like to the *Vulgar* or *Common Reed*.

CC. 12. *Calamogrostis*, seu *Gramen Arundinaceum Aquaticum magnum*, The great Water Reed-Grass. The Root is almost like, but creeps not so much as the former, the Stalks are great and high, having broader and longer Leaves than the former, and something harder also; the Joints likewise are fewer, and the tufted Panicle is much more spread, and soft in handling, and of a purplish green color, and its Bloomings are white.

CCI. 13. *Calamogrostis*, seu *Gramen Arundinaceum Aquaticum Panicula speciosa*, Fair headed Water Reed-Grass. It rises to be three Feet or more high, the Leaves are broad, and a Foot long, but slenderly set on the Stalks, a little rough on the edges, some of which will be hollow, like a Trunk, that the Stalk will go thro' it half way; the top Panicle is made of many fine, soft, scaly Tufts, very beautiful to behold.

CCII. The Places and Times. The first and second grow in moist Meadows, which are Sandy, and rather Barren than Fertile; the second also is found growing in some moist Fields near *Hackney*; the third is expressed in its Title; the fourth in the borders of dry Fields, and by Hedge sides, in many Countries of this Kingdom, especially in *Dorsetshire*; the fifth grows in the like places; the sixth and seventh grow in moist Woods which are on Mountains and Hills; the eighth grows in Marshy places, and Ditches overflowed with the Tide, I have found it growing in some parts of *Carolina*; the ninth and tenth grow in low moist Grounds by *Ratcliff*, near *London*; the eleventh, twelfth, and thirteenth grow in Ditches, Ponds, and Lakes in several places of *England*, as also in other Countries; the first seven, as also the other six, flourish in the Summer Months, and their Stalks perish before Winter.

XXVII. Σχœνογροστis, *Schœnogrostis*, "Αγρωστis σχœνογροστis, & σχœνογροστis, *Gramen Funceum*, Rush-Grass, seventeen Kinds, viz. seven of the Land, six Marsh Kinds, and four Water Kinds, of all which in order.

CCIII. 1. *Schœnogrostis communis*, vel *Gramen Funceum vulgare*, The common Rush-Grass. Its Root consists of brownish yellow Fibres or Threads, the Leaves are almost round, seven or eight Inches long, from among which spring up the Stalks, which are about eight or nine Inches high, which bear at their heads several small Panicles Spike fashion, one above another.

CCIV. 2. *Schœnogrostis Montanum spica Subcærulea Cambro Britanicum*, Welsh Mountain Rush-Grass. From a fibrous or stringy Root spring up a great many fine, slender, Rush like Leaves, nearly a Foot and half long, from among which rise up two or three slender small Stalks, eight or nine Inches long, and much lower than the Leaves, bearing at their tops, from between two Leaves, which are rather like Skins, being broad below and small towards their ends, yet always the one longer than the other, a small, spiked, scaly head, of a fine blewish color.

CCV. 3. *Schœnogrostis*, seu *Gramen Funceum Speciosum minus*, Another Noble or Excellent small



*Rush-Grass*. It is very like the former, but has much smaller *Rush* like Leaves, not above three or four Inches long, rising out of a hard brown Husk or Hufe, set at the top of a small Fibrous Root, from among which spring up several jointed Stalks, with such like Leaves on them, and a small head at the top, like unto the former, but of a brown, clear, Chestnut color, and smaller, as the whole Plant is, having two small Leaves thereat, as in the second foregoing.

CCVI. 4. *Schænogrostis, sive Gramen Junceum Dalechampij, Dalechampius his Rush-Grass*. It has a very long, white, and fibrous Root, from which rise up a very great number of small, round, *Rush* like green Leaves, and among which spring up divers jointed Stalks, with some few Leaves on them, and at the top a sparsed spiked head, something like unto the *Holosteum Salamanticum Clusij*, or *Spanish Sea Plantane*, consisting of many purplish Husks.

*Wood Rush-Grass with jointed Leaves.*



CCVII. 5. *Schænogrostis Sylvarum, seu Gramen Junceum Sylvestre articulato folio majus, The greater jointed Wood Rush-Grass*. It has a Root which creeps a little, repleat with many small Fibres, the Stalks are somewhat flat, and very green, the Leaves are almost round, with many several cross Joints on them, the tufted heads at the tops of the Stalks, which are near three Feet high, are spread into many *Rush* like Panicles, and also somewhat flat.

CCVIII. 6. *Schænogrostis Sylvarum, sive Gramen Junceum Sylvarum articulato folio minus, The lesser jointed Wood Rush-Grass*. It has a Root which is hard, spreading abroad, with many Fibres adjoining to it, from whence spring up many Stalks, which take Root again in the Ground, and bear such like jointed Leaves (as in the last) at the tops of the Stalks are small, spread, Panicle Heads, very like to the former, but smaller by half in each: there is another of this kind which is yet smaller, whose Leaves are small and slender, but not jointed, the

Panicle of which is smaller, and sparsed in like manner.

CCIX. 7. *Schænogrostis, seu Gramen Juncoides sparsa Junci Panicula, Rush-Grass with Rush like sparsed heads*. It has a Root which is yellowish, spreading it self under the Ground, with long Fibres; the Stalks are slender, something flat, and near two Feet high; the Leaves are smaller than the common sort, being about fifteen or sixteen Inches long; the tops are also smaller, and spread with whitish heads.

CCX. 8. *Schænogrostis, sive Gramen Junceum Palustre racemoso Semine, Marsh Rush-Grass with Seeds in clusters*. It has a blackish thready Root, from which rise a few small *Rush* like Leaves, and from among them spring up several Stalks, a Foot and half high, bearing at their tops, between small long Leaves, a small head, much like to a Bunch of Grapes, in which the Seed lyes.

CCXI. 9. *Schænogrostis, seu Gramen Junceum Maritimum majus, The greater Sea Rush-Grass*. It has a tufted fibrous Root, from which spring many hard smooth Leaves, something like *Rushes*, and from among them several slender naked Stalks, about a Foot high, with *Rush* like heads growing at their tops, but much smaller.

CCXII. 10. *Schænogrostis, vel Gramen Junceum Maritimum dense stipatum, Sea Rush-Grass thick set*. It has a *Rush* like Root, and long hard Leaves, like *Rushes*, growing thick and close together; the Stalks are slender, and not much longer than the Leaves, every one of them bearing at their tops a small Head, something like to those of *Rushes*.

CCXIII. 11. *Schænogrostis, sive Gramen Junceum Maritimum minimum Zelandicum, The least Sea Rush-Grass of Zeland*. It has a fibrous Root, from whence rises a small bush of Leaves; the whole Plant scarcely exceeds eight or nine Inches in height; from among this well spread bush of Leaves rises up the Stalks, with small hairy like Leaves, and a small thick head at its top.

CCXIV. 12. *Schænogrostis, seu Gramen Junceum Maritimum exile Plimostij, Small Sea Rush-Grass of Plimouth*. It has a Root consisting of many small long Fibres, coming from one Head; the Leaves are many, growing thick together, and as fine almost as Hairs or Threads, from among which rise up several slender unjointed Stalks, bearing exceeding small sharp pointed heads thereon, the Stalks being continued, and appearing above them, and pointed. This *Grass* has been found as well at *Dover* as *Plimouth*, in their Wet Marsh Grounds.

CCXV. 13. *Schænogrostis, seu Gramen Junceum Maritimum magis exile pauci folium, A lesser Marsh Rush-Grass with fewer Leaves*. It has a small and slender Root, and fewer and shorter Stalks and Leaves than the last, more soft and delicate in feeling, and whose Heads are a little bigger, and prickly, the Stalk rising above them, as in the other.

CCXVI. 14. *Schænogrostis, sive Gramen Junceum Aquaticum minimum capitulo squamoso, A very small Water Rush-Grass*. It has as few, but smaller Leaves than the Eighth Kind foregoing, being about two Inches long; the Stalks are about four or five Inches high, each of them bearing a small, reddish, scaly head, with the top of the Stalk growing up above it.

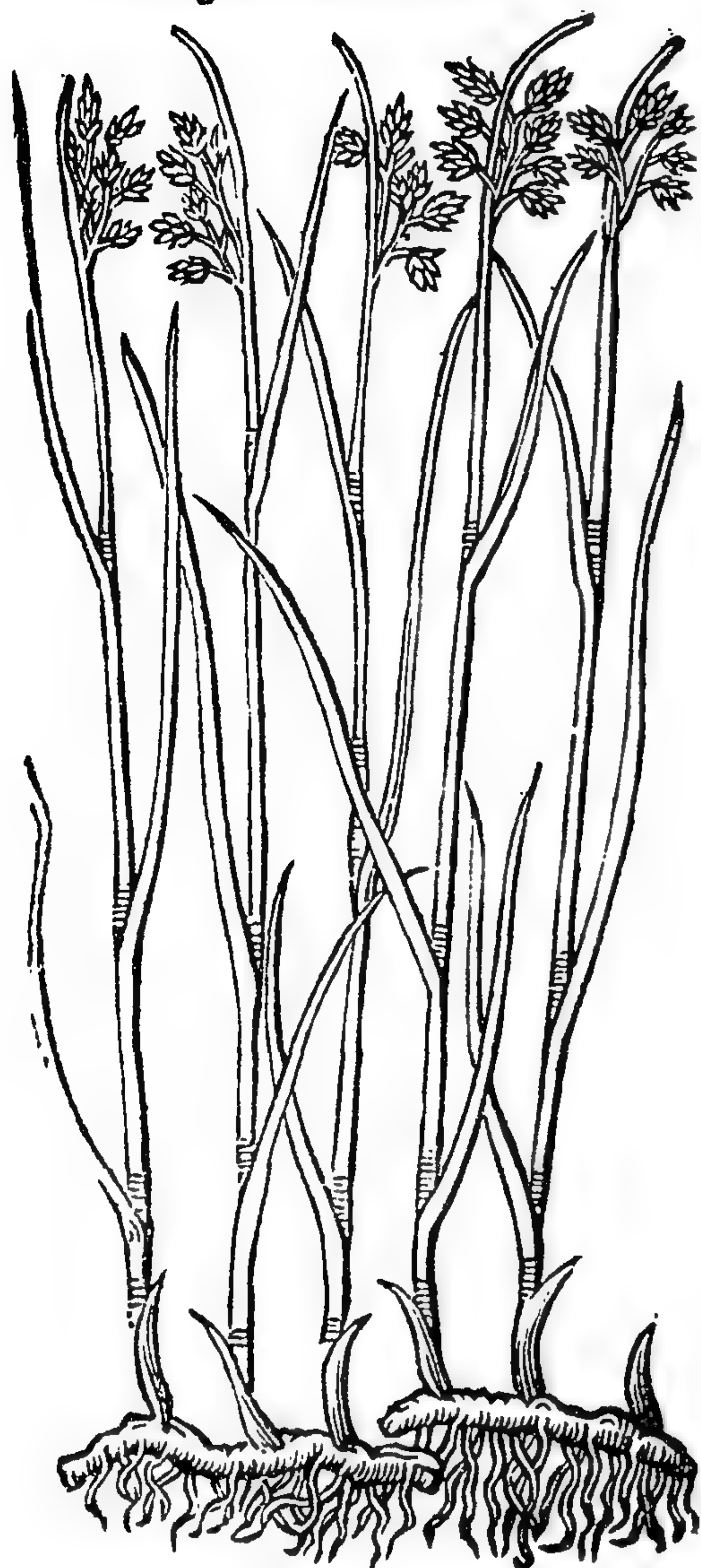
CCXVII. 15. *Schænogrostis, vel Gramen Junceum Aquaticum magis sparsa Panicula, Water Rush-Grass with a more sparsed Panicle*. It is very like the last in growing, the chiefest differences are in the Stalks, for they are greater and rise higher; and in the Leaves, for they are Jointed, like to the *Wood Rush-Grass*; and in the Heads, these being smaller, and more dispersed.

CCXVIII. 16. *Schæ-*



CCXVIII. 16. *Schœnogrostis*, *five Gramen Fun-  
ceum Aquaticum Baubini*, *Baubin his Water Rush-  
Grass*. It has jointed Leaves, from among which  
rise up Stalks, a Hand high, or more, with certain  
chaffie Heads, parted into many Threads.

## Rushy Water Grass



CCXIX. 17. *Schœnogrostis*, *seu Gramen Fun-  
ceum Aquaticum vulgare*, *The common Water Rush-  
Grass*. It has a long, thick, spreading Root, which  
sends up several jointed Stalks, and at each Joint  
a narrow *Rush* like Leaf; at the tops of the Stalks  
stand several, somewhat like unto those of *Rushes*.

CCXX. *The Places and Times*. The first seven  
of these *Grasses* grow upon dry Land, and in dry  
places, some of them upon Hills, some on Moun-  
tains, and others in Woods; the second grows on a  
high Hill in *Wales* called *Berwin*, continually cover-  
ed with Clouds and Mists, and Watered with Show-  
ers, whilst at the same time the Sun shines fair in  
the Valleys below it; others of them grow in the  
Woods near *Highgate*, in *Hornsey Wood*, and in ma-  
ny other Woods of this Kingdom, as also in Mea-  
dows adjacent to the same, and do all of them flour-  
ish in the Summer Months, *viz.* in *June* and *July*;  
the next six *Marsh Rush-Grasses* grow in Salt  
Marshes, and near the Sea side, and other like pla-  
ces, in many parts of this Kingdom; the last four  
grow in Watery places, and in or near Waters, whe-  
ther standing or running, and flourish in the Sum-  
mer time, as all the rest do.

XXVIII. *Θαλασσίχλωσις*, *Ἀργύρις ἐλαδης*, *Gramen  
Marinum, vel Maritimum*, *Sea-Grass*, Eight  
Kinds.

CCXXI. 1. *Ὀξύαγρος ἐλαδης*, *Oxyagrostis Mari-  
tima Dalechampij*, *Sharp pointed Sea-Grass*. The  
Stalks are bushy, and about two Feet long, full of  
Joints, and narrow *Grass* like Leaves at every one  
of them, of a dark green color, and so sharp at the  
points, that they are ready to prick their Legs who  
pass by them unawares.

CCXXII. 2. *Gramen Maritimum asperum*, *Rough  
Sea-Grass*. Its Root is a bush of long white Fibres,  
which sends up several reddish, round, small Stalks,  
a Foot or more high, leaning at first downwards,  
encompassed with hard, short, and sharp pointed  
Leaves, standing as it were in a Tuft together, with  
hard rough dents about the edges; the spiked heads  
are like rough hard Burs, breaking out of a Skin  
which enclosed them.

CCXXIII. 3. *Gramen Maritimum, vel Marinum  
exile vicinorum aggerum*, *A very small Sea Down-  
Grass*. It has a Root which is small and thready;  
which shoots forth divers short Stalks, two Inches  
long, full of small long Leaves like Hairs set close  
together, and among them at the tops small Heads,  
like to the *Catkins* of the *Dwarf Willow*.

CCXXIV. 4. *Gramen Maritimum, vel Marinum  
Spicatum*, *Spiked Sea-Grass*. It has a Root compo-  
sed of a bush of many long Fibres or Strings, from  
whence rise up many long, hollowed, or Gutter  
Leaves, encompassing one another at the bottom,  
from among which spring up two or three Stalks,  
bare of Leaves unto their tops, where they bear long  
spiked Heads of greenish Flowers, set close toge-  
ther.

CCXXV. 5. *Gramen Marinum spicatum alterum*,  
*Another spiked Sea-Grass*. It has long, slender,  
narrow, hard, and sharp pointed Leaves, growing  
often on low places so near the Sea, that sometimes  
it washes over it; the Stalks are many and low;  
with small, long, and round Heads thereon.

CCXXVI. 6. *Gramen Marinum majus Statice  
quibusdam*, *Great Sea-Grass, or Sea-Thrift*. called  
by some *Σταπυλὴ*. It has a pretty large long Root;  
with some Fibres adjoined, which sends up many  
fair, long, and somewhat broad, and whitish green  
Leaves, lying close together upon the Ground, from  
which rise up slender Stalks, naked to their tops,  
except in one place towards their middle, where  
they have two small Leaves turning downwards,  
contrary to almost all other Herbs, and at their tops  
a Tuft of bluish colored Flowers, opening by de-  
grees.

CCXXVII. 7. *Gramen Marinum Americanum*,  
*Σταπυλὴ Statice Americana major*, *Great Sea Thrift of  
America*. It has a long Root, with but few Fibres  
thereat, from whence spring up a vast number of  
Leaves, almost like the last, but they are narrower,  
of a sadder green color, and somewhat shining, with  
two Ribs in each, and blunt at the ends; it has slen-  
der Stalks, which bear also such a Tuft of Flowers,  
but of a white color, and break out of a Skin, which  
falls down about the Stalk.

CCXXVIII. 8. *Gramen Marinum minus*, *Small  
Sea-Grass, Sea-Thrift, or Sea-Cushion*. It has many  
small, hard, short, green Leaves, growing thick to-  
gether, and spreading on the Ground; the Stalks  
are many, of a Span high, without any Leaves on  
them, but at their tops, where grow small round  
Tufts of bluish colored Flowers.

CCXXIX. *The Places and Times*. They all of  
them have been observed to grow upon our Sea  
Coasts, especially on the *Kentish* and *Sussex* Shoars;  
the sixth grows on the *Mediterranean* Shoars, the  
seventh on the *American*; and they all Flower and  
Seed in the end of Summer.

XXIX. *Ἀργύρις ἀργύρεα*, *Gramen Argenteum*, *Sil-  
ver-Grass*, three Kinds.

CCXXX. 1. *Gramen Argenteum capitalis globosis*,  
*Silver-Grass round headed*. It is the *Gramen Luci-  
dum Tabernamontani*, and is thought to be the *Com-  
bretum*



*bretum Plinij*; it has a small, bushy, and fibrous Root, which sends up long Leaves, like those of *Wheat*, which have some small, long, white Hairs upon them, and about their edges; from among these Leaves rise up several Stalks, about a Foot high, with Joints and Leaves on them; at the tops of these Stalks on each Stalk grow two or three round Heads, which are soft, white, and woolly, consisting of many small Silver like Threads, which are said to shine in the Night, and therefore called by the *Italians* *Luciola*.

CCXXXI. 2. *Gramen Argenteum striatum*, *Silver-Grass streaked*, called by some *Lady-Laces*, *Lady-Lace-Grass*, and *Painted-Grass*. Its Root is small and hairy, and of a white color, like unto *Meadow-Grass*; it has Leaves like to *Millet* in form, and rough or sharp pointed, like to the *Reed*, with many white Veins or Ribs, and Silver Streaks running along thro' the midst of the Leaves, fashioning them like to Ribbons or Laces made of white and green Silk, very beautiful and delectable to behold; it grows to the height of *Wild Panick*, with a spiky top, not very much unlike, but more compact, soft, and chaffie.

CCXXXII. 3. *Gramen Argenteum Spicis Tomentosis*, *Silver-Grass with Cotton Spikes or Heads*. It has a hard, long, thready Root, from whence proceed many soft, downy, grassie Leaves, of a mean length, seldom exceeding two Feet, or two Feet and half in height, from among which rise up several Stalks, a Yard or Yard and half high, having but few Joints on them, not above one or two, with like grassie Leaves growing up from them; at the tops of these Stalks are long spiky Heads, set upon a long Panicle, which are a kind of chaffie and downy Tufts, regularly placed, from the bottom to the top, commonly at first of a reddish, or Murry like color, which when they come to ripeness are of a shining Silver like whiteness, and as soft as Cotton or Wooll in handling.

CCXXXIII. *The Places and Times*. The first of these grows in Woods, Copfes, Groves, and other like Woody places, in many places of this Land; the second grows in borders of Woods, and upon Woody and Hilly places in *Savoy*, but with us only in Gardens; the third in borders of dry Fields, and by Hedge sides, in many parts of *England*, and all flourish with the *Common Meadow-Grass*, or in the middle and end of Summer.

XXX. Ἀγρωσις σαχυνέη, ἡ σαχυνή, *Gramen Spicatum*, Spiked or Eared Grass, eleven Kinds.

CCXXXIV. 1. *Gramen spicatum purpureum Pratense Dalechampij*, *Purple spiked Meadow-Grass*. Its Root is a bush of white Fibres, from whence rise many Grass like Leaves, but narrower, softer, and greener, having several short Stalks, not a Foot high, with two or three Joints on them, set with Leaves, at the tops of which, out of a round Skin or Husk, picked at the end, being the uppermost Leaf, breaks forth a thick, short, and somewhat flat Spike, of a delicate reddish purple color.

CCXXXV. 2. Ἀνθοζάνθη Ἀγρωσις, *Gramen Anthoxanthum Lugdunensis*, (*i. e.* Yellow Flowered) *Gramen spicatum flavescens Pratense*, *Yellow spiked Meadow-Grass*. It differs little from the last, either in Roots, Leaves, Taste, or Quality, so that some Authors have called the one the Male, the other the Female, the only difference is, that the Head or Spike of this is of a pale yellow color, and in some higher Grounds of a more reddish and shining color, and not enclosed in any Skin or Leaf, as the

other, but standing naked or bare, being also slender and longer.

CCXXXVI. 3. *Gramen Spicatum, Spica multiplici rubra Pratense*, *Red Spiked Meadow-Grass*. It has a small Root, made of a few Hair like Fibres, whence rise long and narrow Leaves, Ribbed thro' their whole length, and so composed as is scarcely to be seen in any other Herb, for some of them are so jointed, as if one Leaf grew out of another; on the top of the Stalk stands a very long Head, consisting of a good number of reddish Spikes set together one above another, which are somewhat rough in handling.

CCXXXVII. 4. *Gramen Spicatum Folijs Caryophyllis Pratense*, *Spiked Meadow-Grass with Gilliflower Leaves*. Its Roots run under the upper Crust of the Ground, folding one within and over another, its Leaves are somewhat hard, thick and short, and greener than those of *Gilliflowers* or *Pinks*, but so hard and Sapless, that Cattel will not eat thereof; the Stalks are six Inches high, at the tops of which stand small Spikes, sometimes more, sometimes fewer, brownish at first, and afterwards somewhat reddish, with many yellow Threads mixt among them.

CCXXXVIII. 5. *Gramen Spicatum Folijs Caryophyllis spica squamata*, *Spiked-Grass with Gilliflower Leaves and a scaly Spike*. Its Roots are small blackish Threads, it has small long Leaves, narrow, and bowing, the Stalks are small, about eight or nine Inches high, bearing a short scaly Head.

CCXXXIX. 6. *Gramen Spicatum album angustifolium Sylvaticum*, *White Spiked narrow Leaved Wood-Grass*. This differs from the foregoing, in that its Root is yellowish, with small Fibres, growing aslope in the Ground, the Leaves are many, but very short and narrow, scarcely four or five Inches long; the Stalks many times exceed not the length of the Leaves, having small spiked Heads, beset with short Hairs, scarcely an Inch long.

CCXL. 7. *Gramen Spicatum Caryophylleum Spica multiplici*, *Double Spiked-Grass with Gilliflower Leaves*. Its Root is a bush of many reddish hairy Fibres, whence rise several short narrow Leaves, like those of *Gilliflowers*, among which spring up very many slender Stalks, naked, without Joints or Leaves, scarcely growing higher than the Leaves, which bear short reddish Spikes, many set together.

CCXLI. 8. *Gramen Spicatum Caryophylleum Spica varia*, *Variable Spiked-Grass*. It Roots are small, long, and fibrous, bushing thick together, whence spring long, narrow, *Gilliflower* like Leaves, from among which grow up several small naked Stalks, bearing a slender, long, spiked Head, sometimes single, and sometimes divided or branched into several long parts, made of many Husks.

CCXLII. 9. *Gramen Spicatum Caryophylleum Rabinum Bauhini*, *Gramen Rabinum Gesneri*, *The chief or principal Gilliflower-Grass*. It has a fibrous Root, proceeding from one Head, from which rise up many thick, firm, or fleshy, and long pointed Leaves, like to those of *Gilliflowers*, lying in a round compass at the head of the Root, not having any Nerves or Veins in them to be seen, and of which Cattel will very well Feed.

CCXLIII. 10. *Gramen Spicatum, Spica Gemina Columnæ*, *Double Spiked-Grass of Columna*. It has a small, whitish, fibrous Root, which sends up several weak and leaning jointed Stalks, with small Grass like Leaves upon them; at the top of each Stalk grows two several Spikes, jointed together at their Feet, dented on their edges, with a middle Rib between, and consisting of three or four rows of Leaves like Scales, containing small, brown, cornered Seed.

CCXLIV. 11. *Gra-*



CCXLIV. 11. *Gramen Spicatum Virginianum Spica articulata*, Spiked Virginia-Grass having a jointed Spike. It has a bushy Root, which lives long, and is a goodly Grass, growing great, with many fair, large, and broad Grassie Leaves, very small pointed, and something hard in handling; the Stalk is also great and tall, bearing a long Spike at the top, jointed in several parts, each of them almost half an Inch a piece, being almost round, yet a little flat.

CCXLV. *The Places and Times.* The first five grow in Fields, Meadows, or Pastures, or near to them; the next five grow on Hills, Mountains, Woods, and Woody places, in many parts of England, as also in other Foreign Countries; the eleventh grows particularly in Virginia, and they all Flourish much about the same times when other Grasses do.

XXXI. *Μοχόβρυσις*, *Gramen Bufonum*, vel *Bufonis Flandrorum*, *Gramen Funceum parvum*, *Holostium Matthioli*, Toad-Grass, three Kinds.

Toad Grass



CCXLVI. 1. *Gramen Bufonum*, vel *Gramen Funceum parvum*, The greater Toad-Grass. It has a fibrous reddish Root, and grows not to be above eight or nine Inches high, the Leaves are very small, and those on the slender Stalks and Branches from the Joints lesser, whereat, and likewise at the tops, come forth small, yellowish, chaffie Heads or Husks, with short Awnes at the ends, each upon a short Footstalk, one above another.

CCXLVII. 2. *Gramen Bufonum medium*, The middle sized Toad-Grass. It differs from the former only in its magnitude, this being of a middle size between the former and the least; there is also one something smaller than this, whose Heads are closer or thicker set together.

CCXLVIII. 3. *Gramen Bufonum minimum*, *Gramen Funceum minimum Holostium Matthioli* Congener, The smallest Toad-Grass, or smallest Rush-Grass, like the former Toad-Grass at Sect. 246 above. It has a very small and fibrous Root, and grows with several small and Thread like Leaves, scarcely an Inch and half long, with yet smaller Leaves on the Stalks, which are not above three or four Inches high, at whose tops stand two or three small Heads, like to those of Rushes, but with rounder Grains or Seeds therein, and set closer together.

CCXLIX. *The Places and Times.* The first grows in moist and wet Grounds, the second in moist or wet places near Highgate, the third in low, moist, and Marshy Land; they all Flourish and Seed in the Summer Months, viz. in June and July.

XXXII. *Ἀγρωσις ὕδρεα, καὶ ὑδατῶδης*, *Gramen Aquaticum*, Water-Grass, seven Kinds.

CCL. 1. *Gramen Aquaticum Paniculatum minus*, Small Bearded Water-Grass. It has a thick, hard, fibrous Root, which sends forth a round straked Stalk, about two Feet high, encompassed with several broad, rough, pale green Leaves, nearly a Foot long; the top Panicle is a Span long, sparsely or thinly placed, composed of many whitish Heads, having long Awnes or Beards.

CCLI. 2. *Gramen Aquaticum aculeatum majus*, The greater prickly headed Water-Grass. It has a small Root, which runs deep into the Mud, and sends up a Stalk or Stalks two Feet high or more above the Water in Ditches where it grows; the Leaves are long and narrow, bearing at the tops of the Stalks several small prickly Heads, with long Leaves at them.

CCLII. 3. *Gramen Aquaticum aculeatum minus*, The lesser prickly headed Water-Grass. This is like to the last both in Stalks, Leaves, and prickly heads, but smaller, nor has it any Leaves growing with them as the others have.

CCLIII. 4. *Gramen Aquaticum aculeatum alterum*, Another prickly headed or Bur headed Water-Grass. It has long, smooth, and tender Leaves, among which rises up a Stalk, about half a Yard high, with a few Leaves set thereon, and at the top many small rough Heads like Burs.

CCLIV. 5. *Gramen Aquaticum*, vel *Fluviatile Cornutum*, Horned Water-Grass. It has a small and fibrous Root, which sends up a slender Stalk, about two Feet high, jointed at several places, and two small Rushy Leaves for the most part set at each of them, growing something broad, and compassing it at the bottom with a large Skin, from whence also rise one or two Stalks, ending in a skinny Head, which has at the end three or four narrow Leaves, turning downwards, and seeming like Horns.

CCLV. 6. *Gramen Fluviatile Spicatum*, vel *Aquaticum Spicatum*, Spiked Water or Float-Grass. It has a Root compact and Tufted, or bushy in the Mud, composed of many Strings and Fibres, it has several weak Stalks, leaning every way, full of crooked Joints, which are knobby, or round, taking Root again in divers places, having long and narrow Leaves upon them, which lye floating under and upon the Water; that part which grows up has some Leaves likewise thereon, and a long, slender, brown spiked Head at the top.

CCLVI. 7. *Gramen Fluviatile*, vel *Aquaticum Spica multiplici*, Many Spiked Water or Float-Grass. It has a long and round Root, somewhat thick, like unto Dogs-Grass, set on even Joints, with small Strings and Fibres, from which rise up long and crooked Stalks, crossing and winding, and folding one within another, with many flaggy Leaves on them, more in number than the former, which Horses and other Cattel eat greedily; at the tops of these Stalks, and somewhat lower down upon them, come forth very many little Spikes or Ears, of a whitish color, composed of two ranks of small chaffie Seeds, set alternately on the Stalks, each of these small Ears being almost an Inch in length.

CCLVII. *The Places and Times.* They all grow in watery Ditches and Ponds in many parts of this Land,



Land, but the two last grow mostly in shallow Rivers, Brooks, and Rills, where the Water runs softly, smoothly and easily; they are also found sometimes growing in standing Waters, and many times by fresh Rivers sides; they all Flourish and Seed in June, July, and August, according to the kindness of the Season.

XXXIII. ὄστρον, ἄλυσος τετραῖν, ἄλυσος τῆς ὀδῆς, ἑταῖα, *Haleus Plinij, Gramen de via, Gramen Muriale, Gramen Semitale, vel Semitale, Way or Wall-Grass, four Kinds.*

### Way or Wall-Grass Greater.

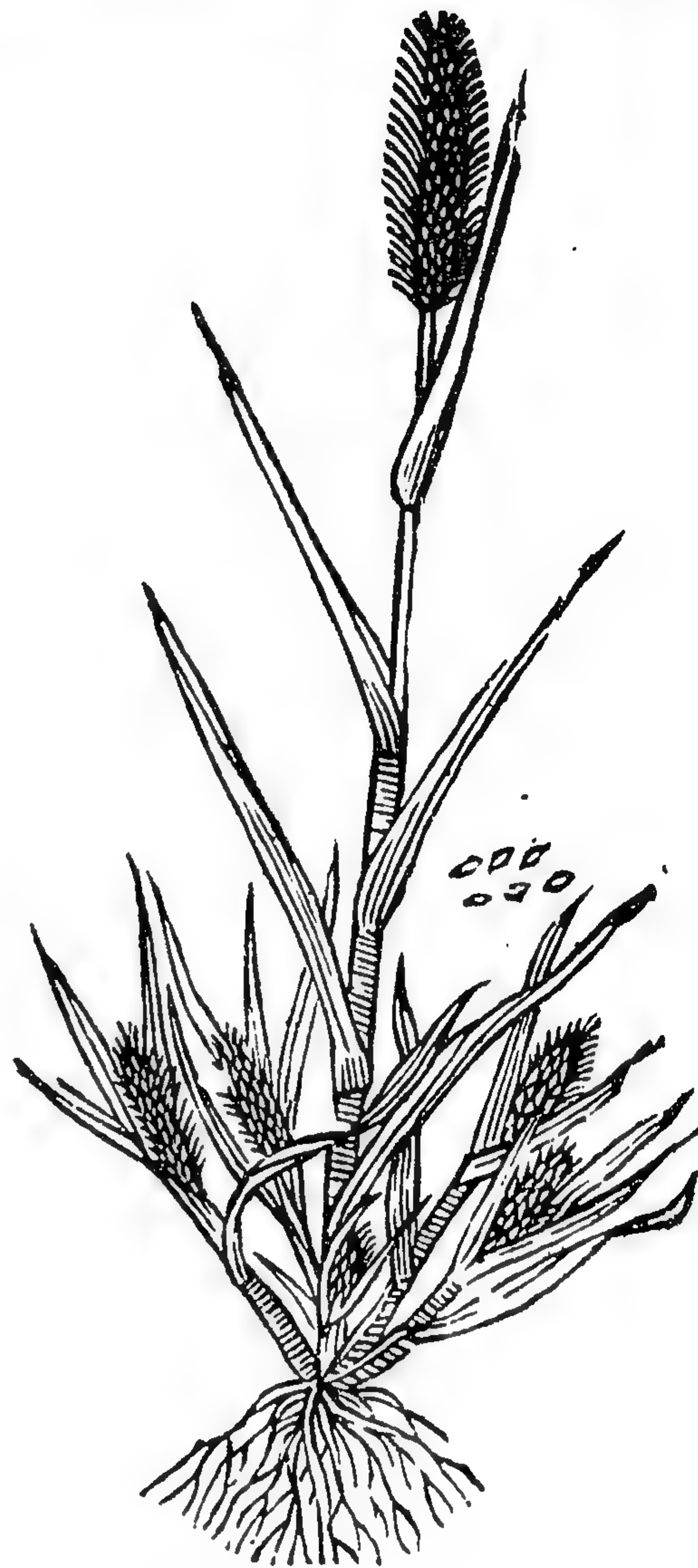


CCLVIII. 1. *Gramen Semitale, vel Muriale majus, Gramen Hordeium, vel magis Secalinum majus, The greater Way Grass or Wall-Grass, Barley-like-Grass, or rather Rye-Grass.* It has a bushy and fibrous Root, which perishes not in Winter, tho' never so cold, from which spring up many Grass Leaves, but somewhat harder in feeling, and not altogether so juicy; from among these green Leaves spring up several Benty Stalks, a Foot or more high, having some few Joints on them, with Leaves thereat, every one of which bears at the top a small, long, whitish, yellow Ear, an Inch and half, two or three Inches long, having some Awnes or Beards, within which are contained small, long, lank Seeds or Grain: This Ear Authors think has some resemblance of Barley, but it much more resembles Rye, and therefore may not improperly be called Rye-Grass.

CCLIX. 2. *Gramen Semitale, vel Muriale minus, Gramen Hordeium, vel Secalinum minus, The lesser Way or Wall, Barley or Rye-Grass.* It is in its Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Ears, and manner of growing very like the former, but it is shorter and lower, and looks as if it was a Dwarf-Grass of the same kind; I know many have taken it to be the same, but it does really differ, the Stalk is seldom above nine or

ten Inches high, whereas the former comes to be sometimes sixteen or seventeen Inches, if in good Ground; the Ear is also much less, and shorter, and almost without Awnes, or else they are very short ones.

### Way or Wall-Grass Lesser.



CCLX. 3. *Gramen Semitale maximum, vel Gramen Secalinum maximum, The greatest Way or Rye-Grass.* It has a running and jointed Root, with many Fibres adjoining, the Stalks rise up to be sometimes two Feet high, and better, having but few and short Leaves thereon; the Spike is sometimes two, three, or four Inches long, bearded, and very like unto an Ear of Rye.

CCLXI. 4. *Gramen Semitale magnum, vel Gramen Secalinum minus, The great, or rather lesser Rye-Grass.* The Root in this is wholly Fibrous, but otherwise it differs not from the former, saving that it is every ways less, and the Ear (very like to Rye) is many times not above half the length of the former.

CCLXII. *The Places and Times.* They grow upon waste and untilld Grounds, by Ways and Path sides, and the second of them by Walls sides, and upon Walls, especially upon Mud Walls, in almost all places of this Kingdom; they Flourish and Seed in the Summer Months, viz. in June, July, and August.

XXXIV. ἄλυσος ὕδατος, *Gramen Nemorale, vel Nemorosum, Wood-Grass, four Kinds.*

CCLXIII. 1. *Gramen Nemorale, vel Nemorosum majus Spica rufescente, The greater brown Wood-Grass.* The Root is a bush of very small Strings or Fibres, from whence spring up many narrow grassie Leaves, and among which rise up many smooth round Stalks, without any Joint or Leaf on them, at the tops whereof stand loose, smooth, brownish



brownish spiked Heads, separated a little one from another, and as it were a little Bearded.

## Wood-Grass Greater.



CCLXIV. 2. *Gramen Nemorosum, vel Sylvaticum Capillaceum Panicula alba*, White Tufted Wood Grass. It has a tufted or bushy fibrous Root, as small as Hairs, from the head of which bush of Fibres spring small Grass Leaves, which grow thick and close together in a Tuft in a great number, and rising to be about a Foot long; the Stalks come up from among the Leaves, about a Foot and half or more high, smooth, and bare, almost without Joint or Leaf on them, the tops of which end in a white Panicle, two or three Inches long, composed of small Husks with Beards.

CCLXV. 3. *Gramen Sylvaticum, vel Nemorale minus*, The lesser Wood-Grass. This differs not from the first or greater, but that it is in all its parts lesser and lower, the small, chaffie, bearded Ears being smaller, and nothing so soft, but rather hard, and a little more sparsed.

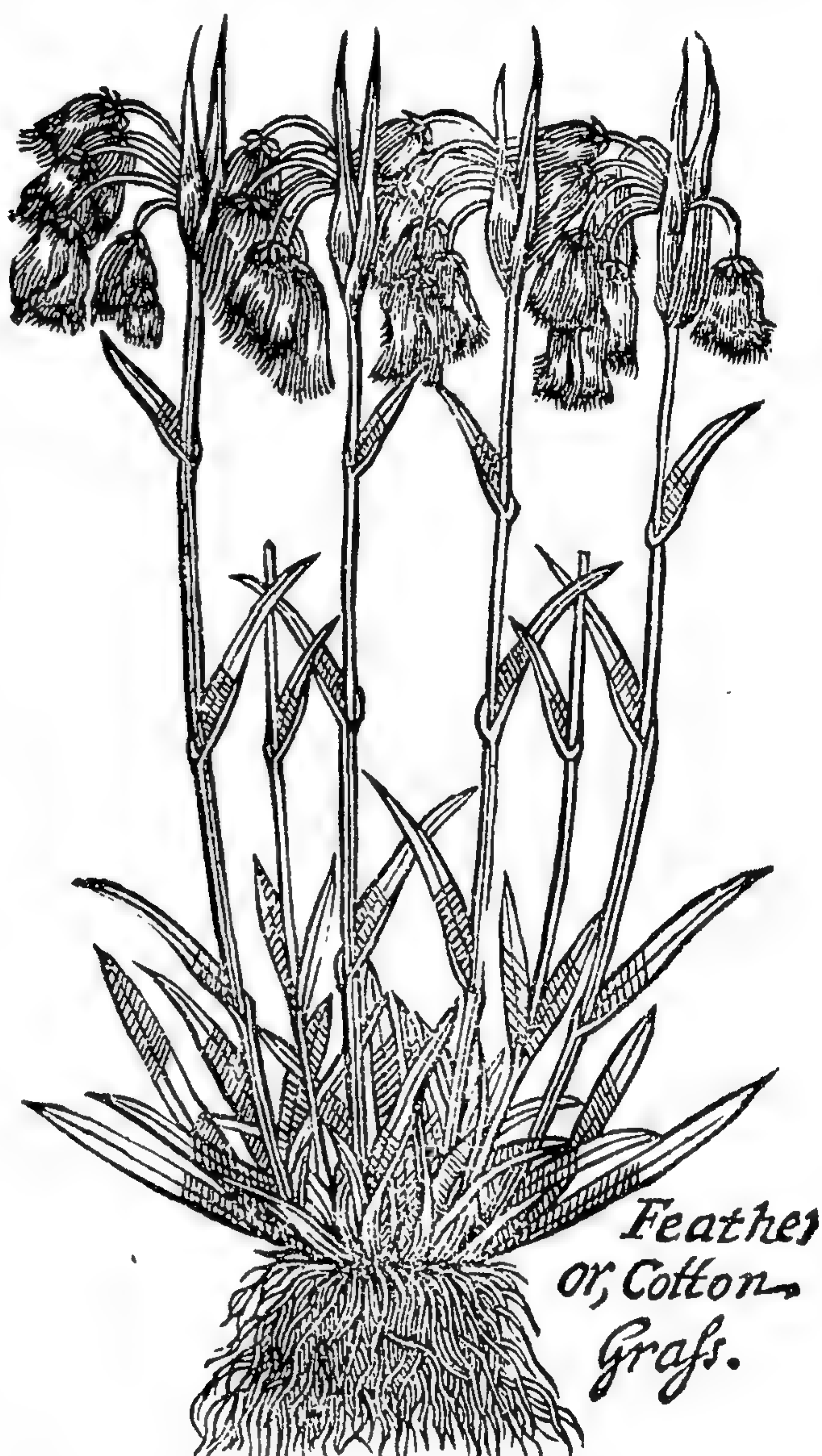
CCLXVI. 4. *Gramen Nemorosum, vel Sylvaticum exile durum*, Small hard Wood-Grass. The Roots are small and fibrous, being in a bush, from whence rise up many small hard Leaves, about a Span long, or a Span and half; the Stalks are slender, with very few Joints and Leaves on them, at which Joints, and at the tops also, come forth small, long, chaffie Spiked Heads.

CCLXVII. The Places and Times. These all grow in Woods, almost every where throughout England, and they flourish when other Grasses do, viz. in the Summer Months; they are never used in Physick, nor are they good Fodder for Cattel, but Goats will grow fat therewith.

XXXV. 'Ελεῖος, ἡ Ἀγρῶσις ἐλεῖος, καὶ ἐλεῖος, *Gramen Lanatum, vel Bombycinum*, Woolly-Grass, two Kinds.

CCLXVIII. 1. *Gramen Lanatum, five Bombycinum, Gramen Funicoides Lanatum vulgaris*, Common Woolly or Cotton-Grass. It has a Root very bushy, small, and fibrous, thrusting its Fibres somewhat deep into the Moorish Ground in which it grows,

from whence rise up many long, slender, and Grassie Leaves, almost like unto *Rushes*, whence the Name *Funicoides Lanatum*, or *Funcus Bombycinus*; from among these Leaves rise up a small, slender, hard Rushy Stalk, about a Foot high, sometimes with a few Grassie Leaves thereon, and sometimes without either Leaf or Joint, bearing at their tops a Bush or Tuft, sometimes one, sometimes two, three, four, or more, of most pleasant, fine, soft white Down, Wooll, or Cotton, as fine and soft and white as fine White Silk, so that they seem to be rather fine soft White Silk like Heads, finer than the finest whitest Wooll that is, and usually about the bigness of a Walnut, with its outward green Husk, which are so eminent in ones Eye a far off, that they give much Delight and Admiration to the Beholders; these being full ripe pass away with the Wind.



CCLXIX. 2. *Gramen Lanatum, seu Bombycinum minus, Gramen Funicoides Lanatum minus*, Small Woolly or Cotton-Grass. The Root is somewhat black, and not much unlike the former, but this has many more Rushy Leaves than that, but the Stalks rise not much higher, they bear at their Heads Tufts of Woolly or Cottony Heads, not so large as the former, but are small, and somewhat long, which being ripe fly away with the Wind, leaving a small Head of Seed, like a *Crowfoot* Head, behind it.

CCLXX. The Places and Times. They grow in moist, wet, Boggy, and Moorish places, the first on the Bog on *Hampstead Heath*, near *London*, as also in *Highgate Park*, not far from the same; the second has been found about *Mompelier* in *France*; they Flower in *July*.

The Virtues.

CCLXXI. *Cordus* says, that the Decoction of the first in Wine, being taken warm, gives ease in the griping pains of the Belly. The Woolly Heads are gathered by some to stuff Pillows, Bolsters, and Cushions with, far excelling in softness and goodness any *Thistle Down*. Thus have we given you a short History of Grasses, which we think is enough, tho'



tho' possibly not the half of what are known, and yet in this Chapter we have Named and Described Two Hundred Twenty Six.

# C H A P. CCCXXVIII.

## Of G R O M E L the Greater.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in *Arabick* Kilb, *Cult*, *Colt*, and *Calab*, in *Greek* Λιθόσπερμον, i. e. *Lapilem Semen obduritum*, in *Latin* *Lithospermum*, & *Milium Solis*, also *Granum Solis*, but *Serapio* says, from the Authority of *Aben Julia*, that it should be called *Milium Soler*, from the form of the Seed, being small, as *Milium*, and the *Mountain Soler*, upon which it grew; it is the *Gorgonium Aginobos*, & *Heraclea Plinij*; in *English* it is called *Gromel*, also *Pear-Plant*, and *Litchwale*.

**II. The Kinds.** It is twofold, viz. greater, of which we shall Treat in this Chapter, and lesser, of which in the next.

**III. The greater Kind.** Of this there are two singular Species, viz. 1. *Lithospermum majus erectum*, vel *majus Legitimum*, *Lithospermum Hortense*, Great Garden Gromel, or Great upright Gromel. *Saxifraga tertia Brunfelsij*, *Milium Solis Sativum Tragi*, vel *Legitimum Clusij*, *Lithospermum alterum Fruticetum Johannis Thalij*. 2. *Lithospermum majus repens*, *Lithospermum majus vulgare*, The Greater creeping Gromel, or Greater common Gromel.

### Greater Grommel.



**IV. The Descriptions.** The first, or Great upright Garden Gromel, has a Root which is long and hard, or something Woody, with divers Branches and Fibres thereat, which perishes not, altho' the Stalks die away and perish every Year; from this Root rise up several upright, slender, woody, hairy, brown, and crested Stalks, very little, or not branched at all, on which do grow, without order, long, hard,

rough, and dark green Leaves, sharper pointed, and somewhat longer and narrower than the next; at the tops of the Stalks grow several small white Flowers, in rough brown Husks, wherein, after they are past, is contained a white, hard, round, stony, shining Seed, greater than that of the following, and almost like unto Pearls.



**V. The second, or Greater creeping Gromel.** It has a Root like the foregoing, abiding all the Winter, and shooting forth Stalks fresh in the Spring, which Stalks grow up slender, hard, and hairy, trailing, and taking Root in the Ground as they lye thereon, being also divided or parted into many other smaller Branches, with such like hairy, dark, green Leaves, but shorter and broader than the former; at the Joints with the Leaves come forth very small blew Flowers, and after them such like hard, roundish, stony Seed, but smaller, and not fully so white and shining.

**VI. The Places.** The first grows with us in Gardens only, but Wild in some places of *Italy*, and *France* next to it; the second grows Wild in many places of *England*, in barren or untilld places, and by the Way sides.

**VII. The Times.** They Flower from the beginning or middle of *June* until *September*, the Seed ripening in the mean while.

**VIII. The Qualities.** They are hot and dry in the second Degree, Incisive, Diuretick, Absterfise, and Nephritick.

**IX. The Specification.** They are peculiar in curing the Strangury, provoking of Urine, and in breaking and expelling the Stone.

**X. The Preparations.** You may have therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice of the Herb. 2. An Essence of the Herb. 3. A Decoction of the Seed. 4. A Powder of the Seed. 5. A Compositum of the Seed.

### The Virtues.

**XI. The Liquid Juice of the Herb.** It provokes Urine, helps the Strangury, and is good against the Stone



Stone and Gravel in Reins or Bladder, but is not so effectual as the Seed; you may give it Morning and Night, two or three Ounces for a Dose, in a Glass of White Port Wine.

XII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, and of the Seed, being used in the same manner and Dose, but is not so powerful or speedy in its Effects as the Pouder of the Seed is.

XIII. *The Decoction of the Seed.* It is to be bruised, and then to be boiled in Broth, or Posset-Drink, or rather in White Wine: Dose from four to eight, or ten Ounces, according to the Age of the Patient, two or three times a day, against Strangury, Stone, Gravel, and Tartarous Mucilage impacted in the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder; where note, it is to be used for some considerable time.

XIV. *The Pouder of the Seed.* It is found to be of singular force to break the Stone and expel it, whether it be in the Reins or Bladder, it also provokes Urine being stopt, and helps the Strangury, or making Water by drops, caused by Sand, Slime, or Tartarous Mucilage obstructing those parts; it is indeed a pleasant, safe, and effectual Medicine for the Stone and Gravel, being taken every Night going to Bed, and every Morning fasting, for several days together; when the Patient is troubled with a Paroxysm of the Stone it quickly gives relief, *probatum est.* Dose from two Scruples to a Dram and half in White Port Wine, or in Broth, or in Barley Cream, or in Almond Milk, or in an Emulsion of the four greater cold Seeds; if it is given to two Drams in Womens Breast Milk, or in White Wine, or in Parsly Water, it is very effectual to cause speedy Delivery to Women in Travail, who are not easie to be delivered.

XV. *The Compositum.* Take Pouder of the Seed three Drams, White Amber in Pouder one Dram, Ceterach or Spleenwort in Pouder half a Dram, mix them. This being taken a Dram at a time, or more, in the Morning fasting, and last at Night going to Bed, in the Juices of Plantane, Purslane, and Lettice, and that for several days together, it certainly cleanses, heals, and cures a Gonorrhœa, or running of the Reins.

*rina Tabernamontani, Lithospermum Germanicum Dodonai, Passerina Linaria Gerardi, Lithospermum Linaria folio Germanicum Bauhini, Small German Gromel, or Sparrow Wort. 6. Lithospermum Linaria folio Monspeliense Lobelij & Lugdunensis, Small French Gromel with Flax Leaves.*

*Lesser Gromwell.*



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common small Wild Gromel, has a Root which is not very long, but is replenished with many Fibres or small Strings, which sends forth several upright, hard, branched Stalks, full of Joints, two or three Feet high, at every of which Joints grow small, long, hard, and rough Leaves, lesser than the second of the former, and of a dark green color, among which Leaves come forth small white Flowers, and in their places, when they are past, greyish round Seed, like the other.

IV. *The second, or Narrow Leav'd Umbelliferous Gromel, has a Root which is hard and woody, covered with a brownish red Bark, from which rise up several woody rough Stalks, yet easie to break, spread into several Branches, about six, seven, or eight Inches high, with very many narrow rough Leaves growing on them, without any order, the middle Rib in them being something great; the Flowers stand at the tops of the Branches, and sometimes from the upper Joints, divers being set together, as it were in an Umbel, which consist of five small round pointed Leaves, of a blew color; or rather, being long and hollow, are parted, and cut into five parts, set in rough green Husks, in which, after the Flowers are past, there usually grow two white and hard long pointed Seeds, set together.*

V. *The third, or Small Gromel with Tufted tops, or Alkanet like Gromel. Its Root is long and woody, spreading under Ground, and covered with a rough brownish red Bark, from which rise many hard, brittle, woody, low, and hairy Stalks, rising little above six, seven, or eight Inches high, dividing themselves, even from the Ground, into many smaller Branches, on which are set dispersedly small, long, and narrow, rough green Leaves, whose middle*

C H A P. CCCXXIX.

of G R O M E L the Lesser.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *Λιθόσπερμον μινός*, in Latine *Lithospermum minus*, or *Milium Solis minus*, and in English *Gromel the lesser*, and *Wild Gromel*.

II. *The Kinds.* Of this there are six Kinds, viz. 1. *Lithospermum minus vulgare Matthioli, Dodonai, Camerarij, Gesneri, Lobelij, & aliorum*, Our common small Wild Gromel. 2. *Lithospermum angustifolium Umbellatum Bauhini, vel angustifolium frutescens Matthioli*, Narrow Leav'd Umbelliferous Gromel. 3. *Lithospermum Anchusæ facie Lobelij, Lithospermum erectum minus Bauhini*, Small Gromel with tufted tops, or Alkanet like Gromel. 4. *Lithospermum Arvense Radice rubente, Lithospermum Sylvestre Tragi, Fuchsi, & Camerarij, & tertium Dodonai, Echium minus Lithospermum congener Gesneri, Anchusa degener facie Milij Solis Lobelij, Anchusa Arvensis alba Thalij, Lithospermum Arvense Radice rubra Bauhini*, The small red Rooted Corn Gromel. 5. *Lithospermum minimum Germanicum, Passerina Tragi & Camerarij, Lingua Passe-*



the Rib rises up somewhat high; the Flowers for the most part stand at the tops of the Branches in a Tuft or Umbel, many making a Tuft together, and sometimes also at the Joints with the Leaves, standing in rough Husks, which are somewhat larger than any of the other, and of a fine blew color in some, and white or reddish in others, which being past away, small, and something long, pointed, hard and white Seed follows, two for the most part joined together.



VI. The fourth, or Small red Rooted Corn Gromel. It has a Root which is somewhat reddish, but little or nothing coloring the Fingers of such who touch it; from this Root shoot forth three or four rough Branches or Stalks, divided into other smaller ones, having many small, long, narrow, hairy, dark green Leaves growing on them, very like those of the former Gromels, but not so hard or long, but set without order in like manner; the Flowers grow at the tops, with many small Leaves among them, consisting of five small white Leaves, which being past away, small blackish Seed succeeds, two, three, or four, set together in the same Husk.

VII. The fifth, or Small German Gromel, or Sparrow Wort, has a Root which is small and thready, and perishes every Year; from this Root rises up for the most part but one slender Stalk, spreading it self out into one, or two Branches at the most, scarcely a Foot high, and set here and there with small, long, and narrow Leaves, something like unto *Line* or *Flax*, upon which, up towards the top, stand small white Flowers, which being past away, there comes in their places small, smooth, round, blackish Seed, very like unto Gromel Seed.

VIII. The sixth, or Small French Gromel. It has a Root which is small and fibrous, or stringy, from which rises up but one Stalk, branched out into two or three parts at the top thereof, on which grow

long and narrow Leaves, somewhat larger than the former, and not rough, as the other Gromels are; the Flowers are small, of a pale whitish yellow color, like unto the former, but stand many together at the tops of the Branches, where, after they are past, small round Heads, like *Coriander Seed* arise, in which are contained round, hard, blackish Seed, like unto that of Gromel.

IX. The Places. The four first grow Wild in many places of *England*, in barren or untilled places, and by the Way sides; the two first of them are said to grow upon the Sea Shoar and Beeches in the Isle of *Thanet*, near *Reculvers*, among the Kinds of *Wild Bugloss* there growing; the fourth has been found growing in Corn Grounds, as also in the way from *Bristol* to *Bath*, as *Lobel* says.

X. The Times. They all Flower from Midsummer to September, the Seed ripening in the mean while.

XI. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues of these are the same with those in the foregoing Chapter, saving that those in the former Chapter are much the more effectual; and of those in this Chapter the first is only used in Physick.

C H A P. CCCXXX.  
of GROUND-PINE,  
O R,  
G O U T-I V Y,  
O R,  
F I E L D C Y P R E S S.

I. THE Names. It is called by the *Arabians* *Hamafitees*, & *Chamafithios*, in *Greek* *Xaμaφιτιος*, in *Latine* *Chamapitys*, (*quasi* *Humi Pinus*, vel *Picea*;) it is called also *Ajuga*, & *Abiga*, (*ab Abietis odore*, as *Pena* thinks, but as most think, *ab Abigenda partu* & *procurando Abortu*; *Pliny* says, *dicitur propter Abortus*, & *ab alijs Thus Terræ*.) Some call it *Iva Arithritica*, (because of its Virtues in curing the Gout, and other Joint Diseases.) We in *English* call it *Ground Pine*, also *Gout Ivy*, and *Field Cypress*.

II. The Kinds. There are several Species, as 1. Of the *Field Kind*, of which in this Chapter. 2. Of the *Heath Kind*, of which in Chap. 331. 3. The *Sea Kind*, of which in Chap. 332. of all which in order, as follows.

III. The vulgar Field Kinds. Of these we make five several Species, viz. 1. *Chamapitys vulgaris*, which *Matthioli* takes to be the first of *Dioscorides*, Our Common Ground Pine. 2. *Chamapitys odoratior*, *Chamapitys minor*; The lesser Ground Pine. 3. *Chamapitys Mas*, which I take to be the third of *Dioscorides*, and is his Male Ground Pine. 4. *Chamapitys Austriaca Clusij*, *Chamapitys cerulea Bauhini*, The Austrian Ground Pine. 5. *Chamapitys Adulterina*, *Pseudochamapitys Lobelij* & *Clusij*, *Chamapitys Spuria Dodonæi*, Bastard Ground Pine.

IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Common Ground Pine, has a Root which is woody, and perishing every Year; the Herb grows low, and seldom rises above an Hand breadth high, shooting forth several small Branches, set with slender, small, long, narrow,



narrow, greyish, or whitish Leaves, somewhat hairy, and divided into three parts oftentimes, many bushing together at a Joint, and some of them growing sometimes also scatteredly upon the Stalks, smelling something strong, like unto Rosin, or the smell of the Pine Tree; the Flowers are very small, and of a pale yellow color, growing from the Joints of the Stalks all along among the Leaves; after which come small, long, and round Husks.

tish, spotted with red Spots; after which come black, shining, longish, and cornered Seed, four for the most part enclosed in every of those rough Husks, in which the Flowers stood before.

*Common Ground Pine.*



V. The second, or Lesser Ground Pine, has a Root which is somewhat long and fleshy, like the Root of Succory, or Dandelion, with many Fibres thereat, but smaller; it is also a small Herb, growing up with many hairy and hoary white slender Branches, not above a Hand breadth high, on which are set many small long Leaves, yet shorter than the former, hairy also and hoary white, not in Tufts or Bushes, but growing by couples, close together all along the Stalks, cut in, or divided into some parts, of a strong but sweet scent, much sweeter than the former; at the tops of the Branches grow the Flowers, many together, of a pale yellowish white color.

VI. The third, or Austrian Ground Pine, has a Root composed of many black Strings, and hard, growing deep into the Ground, and springing again fresh every Year; from this Root rise up several square, strong, hairy Stalks, a Foot long, with many Joints on them, at which grow two something long and hard Leaves, a little like unto the first, but broader, green, and shining on the upper side, but somewhat hoary and full of Veins on the under side, divided into three or four parts, and sometimes into more, a little hot in taste, but not unpleasant, nor of any displeasing scent; from the Joints spring forth smaller Branches, with the like Leaves on them, but lesser divided, and towards the tops nothing at all, but smooth and long, like unto Rosemary Leaves; from the upper Joints, and ends of the Stalks and Branches, grow several gaping Flowers, like unto Germander, of a deep Purple or Violet Color for the most part, but sometimes of a lively Red Color, and sometimes of a bleaker Blue, or Sky Color, the lower Leaves or Chaps of the Flowers being whi-

*Small Ground Pine.*



*Male Ground Pine.*



VII. The fourth, or Male Ground Pine, has a small single Root, of a woody substance, which strikes pretty deep into the Ground, with some few Fibres shooting from it. It is a small Herb, and very tender,



der, creeping upon the Ground, having small and crooked Branches, full of Joints; at every Joint from the bottom comes forth two long Leaves, one on each side the Joint, which are long, narrow, and slender at the bottom, but as they proceed in length are hairy, and cut or jagged deeply, almost to the middle Rib, into two, three, or four deep Jags, not much unlike to a Bucks Horn, saving that the ends of these Jags are rounder pointed, or broader; at every of these Joints, with the Leaves, at their bottoms grow the Flowers, without any Footstalk, one at the foot of each Leaf, and spring out of a little rough Husk, being small, and of a pale yellow color, and sometimes also white; the Leaves growing on the upper Joints, as they approach the top, are for the most part divided into three long parts, not very much unlike to *Rosemary* Leaves.

VIII. *The fifth, or Bastard Ground Pine, has a Root which is somewhat thick and white, abiding all the Winter.* It grows like a small bushy Herb, very like unto the *Common Kind*, having small hairy Stalks, set full of long hairy Leaves all along them, parted into three long parts, of almost no scent, but an unpleasant Herby one; the Flowers stand at the Joints with the Leaves at the tops of the Branches, very like to those of the *Common Ground Pine*, but somewhat greater, and of a white color; after the Flower the Seed follows, which is greyish, greater and rounder than the *Common Kind*, four for the most part contained in every one of those brownish rough Husks.

IX. *The Places.* The first grows Wild in *England*, chiefly in *Kent*, (not growing in many other Shires that we know of) very much about *Dartford*, along to *Southfleet*, *Gravesend*, *Cobham*, *Rochester*, *Horton*, and *Sutton*, and upon *Chatham Down*, hard by the *Beacon*, and half a Mile from *Rochester*, nigh a House called *Selfey*; the other four are chiefly nursed up in Gardens, but grow Wild in *Italy*, *Savoy*, *Genova*, *Spain*, and *Austria*.

X. *The Times.* They all Flower in *June*, *July*, and sometimes in *August*, and give their ripe Seed in the mean time, or not long after.

XI. *The Qualities.* *Ground Pine* is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first, it is Inciding, Aperitive, Absterfive, Diuretick, Hepatick, Splenetick, Nephritick, Hyfterick, and Arthritick, Emmenagogick, a little Sudorifick, Chylifick, Spermatogenetick, and Alexipharmick.

XII. *The Specification.* It is peculiar against the Strangury, and Hyfterick Fits, provokes the Terms, facilitates the Labour, and expels the Dead Child and Afterbirth.

XIII. *The Preparations.* You may prepare therefrom, 1. *A Liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Decoction.* 4. *A Diet Drink.* 5. *A Conserve of the Tops and Flowers.* 6. *Pills.* 7. *An Ointment or Balsam.* 8. *A Cataplasm.* 9. *A Lotion.* 10. *A Distilled Water.* 11. *A Spirit.* 12. *An Acid Tincture.* 13. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 14. *An Oily Tincture.*

#### The Virtues.

XIV. *The Liquid Juice.* It does admirably prevail against the Strangury, and all stoppages of Urine, or any inward pain arising from those Diseases of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder; it may be given Morning and Night, from two to four Spoonfuls, in a Glass of White Port Wine.

XV. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues, besides which it singularly opens obstructions of Liver and Spleen, cleanses the Blood, removing its grossness and impurities, it expels that which is

congealed in the Stomach, or other Bowels, and gently opens the Body; it also wonderfully helps all Diseases of the Mother, taken inwardly, and outwardly used, by injection; it provokes the Terms, facilitates the Delivery of Women in Travail, and expels the Dead Child and Afterbirth; yea, it is so powerful upon those parts, that it is forbidden to Women with Child, for that it is apt to induce Abortion, or Delivery before the time; it is powerful and effectual also in all Pains and Diseases of the Joints, as Gouts, Sciatica, Rheumatism, Cramps, Convulsions of the Nerves, Palsies, Falling-Sickness, and other Distempers of like kind, being used both inwardly, and outwardly applied, or bathed upon the parts affected; it is also an especial good help against the Jaundice, griping pains of the Belly, or any pains in the other *Viscera*, proceeding from Cold and Flegmatick Humors. Dose four, five, or six Spoonfuls, mixt with some Generous Wine, Morning, Noon, and Night, according as the weakness of the Patient, and necessity of the occasion may require.

XVI. *The Decoction in Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice and Essence, and may be given Morning, Noon, and Night, half a Pint at a time; it ought to be made of the Plant or Herb, when it is in Flower chiefly, for then it is strongest and most powerful; it provokes Sweat, if taken when the Patient is in a naked Bed, and covered warm down upon it; it prevails also against the Poyson of the *Aconites* of all sorts, and of other Poysonous Herbs, as also against the Biting of Mad Dogs, and other Venomous Creatures, the Stinging of Scorpions, Hornets, Wasps, Bees, &c. and is a singular good thing against a Cough, especially in the beginning, before it is grown inveterate.

XVII. *The Diet Drink.* It is made by Tunning it up in new Ale or Beer when it is first set on working, four Handfuls to a Gallon, and may be drunk after four or five days, Dietetically, against all those Diseases for which the Juice, Essence, or Decoction are given, and is more pleasant for queasie Stomachs.

XVIII. *The Conserve.* The Conserve of the Flowers participates of all the former Virtues, but in a much weaker degree, however *Matthiolus* commends it against the Palsie; it may be taken to the quantity of a Walnut every Morning fasting, and last at Night going to Bed, for some time.

XIX. *The Pills.* There are three sorts of Pills made with this Herb. 1. *Pilula Chamapityos Simples*, Simple Pills of Ground Pine. They are made of the Powder of the Herb, and Mucilage or Pulp of Figs, and have the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, and Decoction, given Morning and Night, from one Dram to two Drams, washing them down with a Draught of the Decoction of Ground Pine in Wine aforementioned. 2. *Pilula Chamapityos Compositae*, Pills of Ground Pine Compound. Take Powder of Ground Pine five Ounces, fine Powder of *Hermadaits* three Ounces, *Sal Nitre* two Ounces, *Scammony* in fine Powder one Ounce, *Venice or Strasburgh Turpentine* a sufficient quantity, mix, and make a Mass of Pills. Dose one Dram, or more, in the Morning fasting. They cure the Dropsie, Jaundice, Gout, Sciatica, Kings-Evil, Strangury, and all stoppages and heat of Urine. 3. *Pilula Chamapityos Matthioli*, *Matthiolus* his Pills of Ground Pine. Take Ground Pine, *Betony*, *Rosemary Flowers*, *Stachas*, all in fine Powder, of each one Ounce, of *Agarick* in Powder two Ounces, of *Rhubarb*, *Turbit* in Powder, of each an Ounce and half, *Colocynthis* in Powder half an Ounce, *Diagredium*, or rather *Scammony* in Powder, one Ounce, *Hiera Picra simplex* four Ounces, *Ginger*, *Spicknard*, *Sal Gem*, of each in



in Powder two Drams, mix them, and with Juice, or rather Syrup of Ground Pine, make a Mass of Pills. Dose one Dram, or Dram and half, at Bed time. These Pills he commends against the Palsie, and says they will give a present and speedy help; I have several times used them against the Scurvy, Dropsie, Jaundice, Gout, Rheumatism, Kings-Evil, Obstructions of the Lungs, and in malignant and putrid Ulcers, Fistula's, &c. with admirable success.

XX. *The Ointment or Balsam.* Anointed on the Fundament it prevails against the Piles, tho' ulcerated, it discusses hard Tumors, as well in Womens Breasts as in other parts of the Body, but for this purpose the Ointment is only to be used; the Ointment or Balsam do not only cleanse putrid, stinking, foul, malignant and virulent Sores and Ulcers of all sorts, but they also conglutinate the Lips of Green Simple Wounds in any part, and quickly heal the same; the Balsam is an excellent thing against the Gout and Sciatica, being often and long applied.

XXI. *The Cataplasme.* Made of the Green Herb, with Pulp of Figs, or Honey, and being applied to Womens Breasts, it dissolves the hardness of them, as also other hard Tumors in any other part of the Body; it cleanses also putrid, malign, and virulent Ulcers and old Sores in what part soever.

XXII. *The Distilled Water.* It is a good thing against Sand and Gravel, the Strangury, and other Distempers of the Urinary parts and Womb, but it is much more effectual if it is drank six Ounces at a time, mixt with one or two Ounces of the Liquid Juice or Essence of the Herb.

XXIII. *The Lotion.* Take of the Juice or Essence four Ounces, of the Distilled Water six Ounces, Madder in fine Powder three Drams, Alum two Drams, Honey four Ounces, mix, digest over a simpering heat for an Hour, then use it as a Gargarism; it cures a sore Mouth or a sore Throat in a very little time, after an admirable manner, and that when many other things have failed.

XXIV. *The Spirit.* It comforts the Head, Brain, and Nerves admirably, and is prevalent against Lethargies, Palsies, Convulsions, Numbness, and other like Distempers, given from one to two, three, or four Drams, either alone dulcified, or mixt with any other proper Vehicle; it also is singularly good against Sickness at Heart, Fainting and Swooning Fits, and other Disaffections of like kind.

XXV. *The Acid Tincture.* It powerfully opens Obstructions of the Reins and Bladder, represses Vapours from the Spleen and Womb, is good against Sand, Gravel, and Stone, and of excellent use against the Scurvy; it rectifies the obliquity of the Stomach, causes a good Appetite and Digestion and opens Obstructions of the Lungs, helps Wheezings, Hoarseness, difficulty of breathing, shortness of Breath, Coughs, Colds, and the like. Dose so many drops as to give the Vehicle a pleasing acidity, and to be used in all that the Patient drinks.

XXVI. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is good against Heart Qualms, Palsies, Convulsions, Lethargies, and other Diseases of the Nerves; it strengthens the Stomach, and being given to three or four Drams it provokes Sweating, and is good against the Bittings of Mad Dogs, Serpents, and other Venomous Creatures. Dose ordinarily two Drams, in a Glass of Wine, or any other convenient Vehicle, twice or thrice a day.

XXVII. *The Oily Tincture.* Inwardly taken it prevails against the Stone and Gravel, or Tartarous Matter in the Reins or Bladder, and by fortifying the Stomach and Head, as also the Original of the Nerves, it is found by experience powerfully to restore in the Palsie; outwardly applied, (by well anointing upon the part) it eases all Pains and Aches

proceeding from Cold, strengthens weak Limbs and Joints, gives ease in the Gout and Sciatica proceeding from a cold Cause, prevails against Cramps and Convulsions of the Nerves, and is a singular thing against the Palsie, the *Spina Dorsi* being well anointed therewith Morning and Night, together with the parts affected.

## C H A P. CCCXXXI.

### Of GROUND-PINE Sea,

O R,

### Sea GOUT-IVY.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *Χαμαίπυτος θαλάσσιος*, *Ἀνθυλλίς ἐλαδίνης*, in Latin *Chamaepitys Maritima*, *Anthyllis Herbariorum*, *Anthyllis altera Dioscoridis*, *Anthyllis Chamaepityoides*, also *Iva Moschata* by some, in English *Sea Ground Pine*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the second generick Species of *Ground Pine*, mentioned in Chap. 330. *Secl.* 2. a-foregoing, and a singular Plant of the Kind; it is the *Anthyllis altera Clusij*, who says it is very like unto *Chamaepitys*; but *Bauhinus* refuses to Name this with the *Anthyllides* in his *Pinax*, and theretore puts it among his *Chamaepityoides*.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root which is somewhat thick and white, which sends forth several hard hairy Stalks, without Branches upon them, upon which do grow many somewhat long and narrow Leaves, without order, one above another, bushing thick at the top, somewhat like unto those of *Chamaepity*, or *Ajuga*, but dented about the edges, and hairy also, something of a warming hot taste, and strong unpleasant savour; the Flowers grow among the Leaves upon the Branches, like unto the Flowers of *Chamaepitys*, or *Ground Pine*, but of a purple reddish color, after which come small, greyish, rough Seed, a little long, and four for the most part in every Husk.

IV. *The Places.* It grows upon the Sea Coast in several Countries and Kingdoms, I found it in several places on the Sea Coast of *Florida*.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers in *July* and *August*, and the Seed is ripe in *September*.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the second degree, Aperitive, Absterfive, and Diuretick, Nephritick, Hysterick, and Alexipharmick.

VII. *The Specification.* It is prevalent against Sand, Gravel, and Tartarous Matter in the Reins and Bladder, and to cure the Scurvy.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A Liquid Juice, or Essence.* 2. *An Oil by Cotion in Oil Olive.*

IX. *The Liquid Juice, or Essence.* It powerfully provokes Urine, and cleanses the Reins and Bladder of small Stones, Gravel, Sand, and Tartarous Matter, thereby giving a Cure in the Strangury; if it is given to one or two Ounces, according to Age and Strength, in the Morning fasting, and last at Night going to Bed, in a Glass of *Oxymel*, or White Port Wine, it does much good against the Falling-Sickness, and taken daily for some time, a Spoonful at a time, in a Glass of Wine, it represses Vapours, and Fits of the Mother.

X. *The Oil by Insolation or Cotion in Oil Olive.* Injected



Injected into the Womb it softens the hardness thereof, and by anointing discusses hard Tumors in other parts of the Body.

## C H A P. CCCXXXII.

Of GROUND-PINE Heath,  
O R,  
GOUT-IVY Wild.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in *Greek* *Kōēs*, *ob pulchritudinem*, *verum* Hippocrates & *Antiqui* *Kōēs*, i. e. *Pupillam*, vocarunt propter *Semen*, *Oculi Pupillæ*, seu *anteriori Humeri Crystallino*, *ambitu Sphærico*, *haud absimile cernitur*; in *Latine* *Coris*, and in *English* *Heath Ground-Pine*, and *Fair Heath Ground-Pine*.

**II. The Kinds.** It is the third Generick Species of *Ground-Pine* mentioned in *Cap. 330. Sect. 2.* and of this Species Authors have enumerated three several Kinds, viz. 1. *Coris Matthioli*, so called by *Camerarius*, *Gesner*, *Lacuna*, *Lonicerus*, *Lobel*, *Lugdunensis*, *Tabernamontanus*, & *alijs*; *Coris lutea Baubini*, The Common, or most vulgar Fair Heath Ground-Pine. 2. *Coris Legitima Erica similis Belli*, *Coris Legitima Cretica Belli*, Fair Heath Ground-Pine of *Candia*. 3. *Coris Monspeliensium*, *Coris Monspeliaca Pena* & *Lobelij*, *Camerarij* & *Tabernamontani*, *Coris quorundam Clusij*, *Coris cerulea Maritima Baubini*, *Coris Purpurea*, Purple Fair Heath Ground-Pine.



*Heath Ground-Pine.*

**III. The Descriptions.** The first, or Common Heath Ground-Pine, has a Root which is somewhat long and woody, with many fibrous Threads thereto adjoining, from which spring up several hard, woody, reddish Stalks, full of Joints, rising up to the height of a Foot, or more, and having also on them many small and long, thick and fat Leaves, set together

at every Joint, something like unto *Spergula*, or *Frank Spurry*; at the tops of the Stalks grow several Flowers, each of them upon a short Footstalk, consisting of five or six Leaves, not much unlike to *Hypericon*, or *Ornithogalum*, *Star of Bethlem*, as *Lobel* compares them, but of a whitish red color, with yellow Threads in the middle, yet *Matthiolus* and others say the Flowers are all yellow, like *Hypericon*, smelling a little sweet, which being past away, the Seed is found enclosed in round Heads. This Plant keeps its green Leaves all the Winter, but turn of a somewhat yellowish red color towards *Autumn*.

**IV. The second, or Fair Heath Ground-Pine** of *Candy*, has a Root which is long, spreading, and woody, abiding with green Leaves thereon all the Winter. This Plant, as *Bellus* saith, grows in good Ground to be a Cubit and half high, Branching forth many ways, and bearing many small Leaves, like unto *Heath*, on woody Stalks and Branches; the Flowers grow at the tops of the Branches, and are much like to those of *Hypericon*, and of a yellow color, which being past away the Seed follows, being enclosed in Husks like the former.

**V. The third, or Purple fair Heath Ground-Pine**, has a Root which is reddish, hard, and woody, greater than the proportion of the Plant should seem to require, giving a Dye or Color, not only to the Fingers of them which touch it, but serves also to Dye *Linnen Cloth* withal, among those People where it grows naturally; it abides all Winter, altho' the Leaves are then more reddish than in Summer, but requires some care to preserve it with us. From this Root rise up many round, woody, and reddish Stalks, not so high as the former, having many small, long, thick, and roundish Leaves set thereon, most commonly without order, and yet sometimes conformable one to another, somewhat like unto the greater Kind of *Heath*; the tops of the Stalks are furnished with a great Spiked Tuft or Bush of Purplish Blew Flowers, (but of a pale Red with us) smelling something sweet, each consisting of four Leaves apiece, double forked as it were at the ends, two whereof which stand uppermost are greater than the other two which are lower, which will continue long in their perfect color, being gathered in their prime, and each of them standing in a brownish Husk, parted at their tops into five points, and spotted with five blackish spots on the outside, wherein afterwards grows the Seed, which is small, round, and blackish, wrapped up as it were in many Coats or Films, whose Husks then do grow somewhat hard, and sharp at the ends, when as before, while the Flower lasted, they were not so.

**VI. The Places.** The first *Matthiolus* says grows in many places in *Italy* in dry and Hilly Grounds, which *Pena* confirms; it grows by *Carara*, a Village in *Liguria*: the second grows in *Candy*; the last, as *Pena* says, about *Mompelier*, also near the Sea in *Valentia*, and in dry Grounds about *Salamanca* in *Spain*, as *Clusius* says; with us in *England* they only grow in Gardens, but I have found them all growing in dry Hilly Ground in several parts of *Florida*.

**VII. The Times.** They Flower early in all those hot Countries, even in *March* in some places, and in others in *April* and *May*, but with us in *England* later, as in *June* and *July*, but do seldom perfect their Seed with us.

**VIII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses,** are fully the same with the Common Ground-Pine in *Chap. 330. Sect. 11. to Sect. 26.* and therefore to the same we refer you.

**IX. Note, 1.** The Seed of Heath Ground-Pine, either bruised and drunk, or made into a Decoction in



in White Port Wine, powerfully provokes Urine, and the Terms in Women where they are stopped, and also cures the Strangury, if the Bladder is not exulcerated; it is also a Remedy for those who are bitten with the *Phalangium*, and for those troubled with the Gout and Sciatica, if bathed therewith; and taken with Pepper in substance, it represses the shaking Fits of Agues: the same things do the Juice, Effence, or Decoction of the Herb.

X. Note, 2. An Oil, Ointment, or Balsam, made of the Seed or Herb, ease the Gout and Sciatica, anointing therewith; they also heal any old or running Sore or Ulcer, and dry up that superfluous moisture, which by an afflux upon the part, hinders the Cure.

## C H A P. CCCXXXIII.

### of GROUNDSEL Common.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Ἐρίγωνα*, *Erigeron*, *quia vere Senescit*, in Latine *Erigerum*, *Senetio*, & *Senescio*, *quia cito Senescit*; and in English *Groundsel*, and *Grunsel*.

II. The Kinds. There are two several sorts of Groundsel, 1. The Common Kind, of which in this Chapter. 2. The Cotton Groundsel, of which in Chap. 334. following. Of the Common Kind there are also two sorts, 1. *Senescio*, *vel Senetio vulgaris*, (called by some Authors *Senecio minor*, because they call *Jacoea*, or *Ragwort*, *Senecio major*) and *Erigerum*, from the Greek Name, Common or Vulgar Groundsel. 2. *Senecio*, *vel Erigerum Montanum*, *Senetio Montanus*, *Senecio secundus Tabernamontani*, Mountain Groundsel.



III. The Descriptions, The first, or Common Groundsel, has a Root which is small and thready, and soon perishes, from whence rises a round, green,

and somewhat brownish Stalk, spreading it self towards the top into some Branches, set with long, and somewhat narrow green Leaves, very much jagged, or cut in on the edges, something like unto Rocket, or rather an Oaken Leaf, but lesser, and round at the ends; at the tops of the Stalks and Branches grow many small green Heads, out of which grow small yellow Threads or Thrums, which are the Flowers, which continue many days blown in that manner before they pass away into Down, and with the Seed, (which is long) is carried away with the Wind; but from this Seed which is thus shed it soon rises again, so that it may be seen many Months in the Year young and green, and in Flower, and in Seed, for it will spring up and Seed twice in a Year at least, if it is suffered to grow in a Garden.

IV. The second, or Mountain Groundsel, has a Root like unto the former, and rises up with a like round and green Stalk, which is branched in the same manner; it is almost wholly like the other, but it grows not altogether so high, and its Leaves are greater, and more cut in on the edges.

V. The Places. The first is found every where almost, as well on the tops of Walls as on the Ground amongst Rubbish, and in untilled Grounds, but more especially in Gardens; the other grows upon Hills and Mountains, both in England and places beyond the Sea.

VI. The Times. The first is found to Flower almost in every Month of the Year, perfecting its Seed in the mean season; the second comes somewhat near unto the first, but its Flowers do not so suddenly decay.

VII. The Qualities. It is cold and moist in the first degree, is Digestive, Absterfive, Diuretick, and Emetick.

VIII. The Specification. It is a peculiar Remedy against the Yellow Jaundice, stoppage of Urine, Diseases of the Eyes, and the Falling-Sickness.

IX. The Preparations. You may make therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Effence. 3. A Decoction in Ale, Beer, Wine, or Water. 4. A Powder of the Herb. 5. A Balsam or Ointment. 6. A Cataplasm. 7. A Distilled Water.

#### The Virtues.

X. The Liquid Juice. If it is drunk from one Ounce to two Ounces, mixed in any proper Vehicle, it cleanses the Stomach from all corrupt and crude Humors by Vomiting, whereby it eases the Pains of the Stomach caused from the abounding of Choler; it is also good against the Jaundice and Falling-Sickness, in which two Cases it ought to be several times repeated; it also takes away the heat, scalding, sharpness, and stoppage of Urine, and the pain in making Water, expelling Sand, Gravel, Stones, and Tartarous Matter from the Reins and Bladder.

XI. The Effence. It has all the former Virtues, and is much more pleasant to take; it prevails against the Colick, and Gripping of the Guts, as also the Gout, Sciatica, and Rheumatism, it purges the Liver of its Recrements, and provokes the Terms in Women, giving it from two Spoonfuls to four in White Port Wine; it Vomits as the Juice does, and therefore must be given with the same caution.

XII. The Decoction in Ale, Beer, Wine, or Water. It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Effence, and works in the same manner, but not all out so strongly, and therefore may be given from four to eight, or ten Ounces, according to Age and Strength.

XIII. The Powder of the Herb. It may be given to a Dram or more in Oxymel, proportioning the Dose



Dose according to Age and Strength of the Patient; it effectually cleanses the Stomach, and prevails against Gout, Sciatica, Rheumatism, Jaundice, Dropsie, and Epilepsie; it is also said to expel Sand and Gravel from the Urinary parts; it dries up also Humidities in Wounds and Ulcers.

XIV. *The Balsam or Ointment.* It may be made with the green Herb, or with the juice of the Leaves, adding some fine Frankincense, or Olibanum in Powder; it cleanses and heals Ulcers and old Sores, and cures Wounds, whether in the Flethy or Nervous parts, strengthens the Joints, gives ease in the Gout, dissolves hard Tumors, and prevails against the Hemorrhoids or Piles in Man or Woman.

XV. *The Cataplasme.* Made of the fresh Herb by boiling, &c. and applied to Womens Breasts which are swoln with heat and pain, as also to the Privy Parts of Man or Woman, and to the Hemorrhoids, or *Ficus in Ano*, tho' much swelled and inflamed, it gives present relief; if Salt is added to it it dissolves Knots or Kernels in any part of the Body, yea tho' proceeding from the Kings-Evil.

XVI. *The Distilled Water.* It is said to be effectual against all the aforementioned Diseases, besides which it is especially good against Inflammations of the Eyes, and to help the watering of them, proceeding from a defluxion of Rheum, and weakness of the part.

XVII. *Note.* Pliny has a Relation for the Cure of the Toothach, which, tho' it seems Fabulous, we shall here relate. *You must dig up the Plant without any Iron Tool, and then touch the aking Tooth therewith five times, Spitting three times after every such touch, which done, Plant or Set the Herb again in the same place, so that it may grow, and the Toothach shall presently cease and be perfectly cured.*

## C H A P. CCCXXXIV.

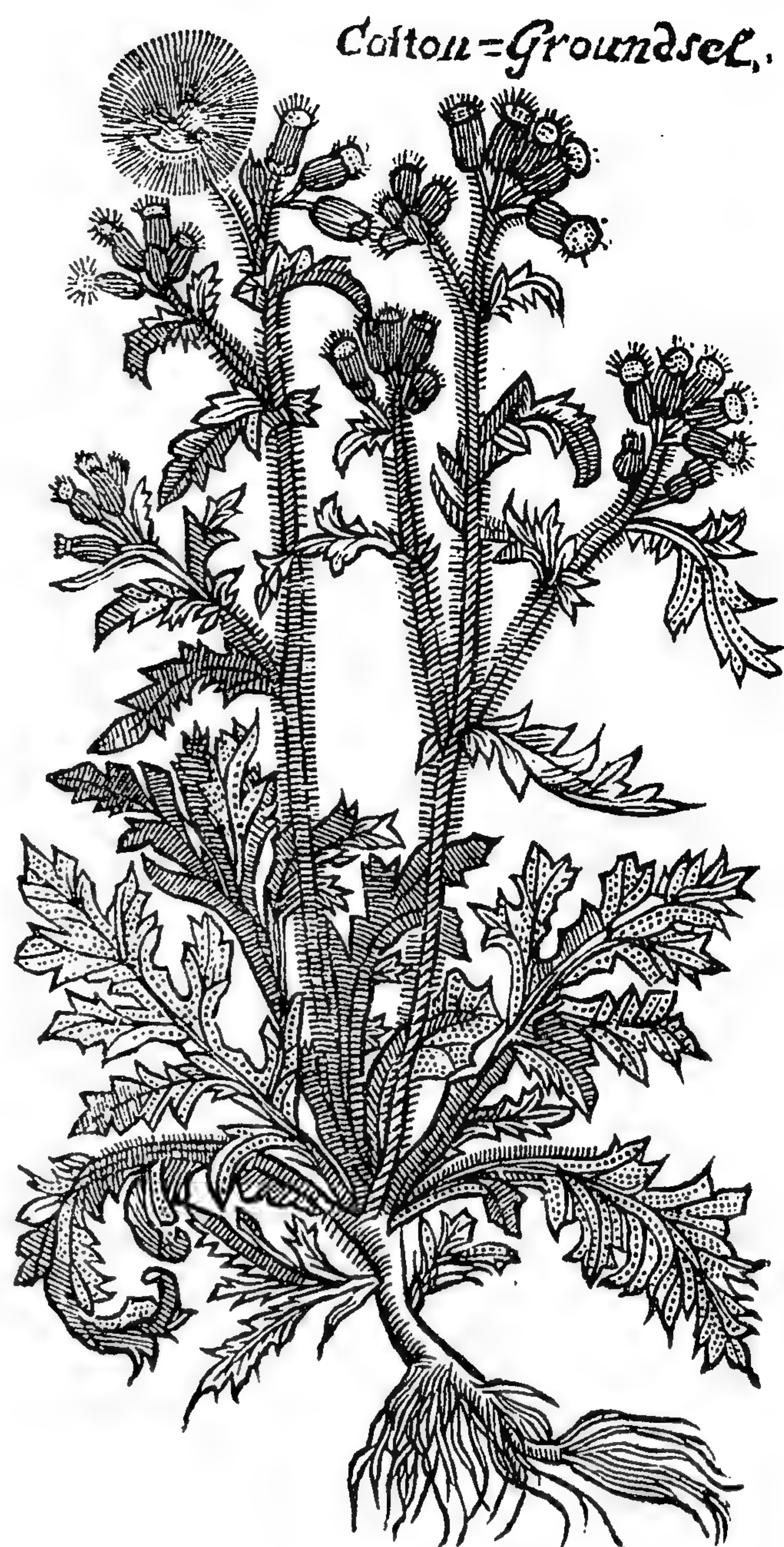
### Of GROUNDSEL Cotton.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *Ἡεργω* *ἡεργω*, in Latine *Erigeron Tomentosum*, *Senecio Tomentosus*, *Senecio Tragi*, and in English Cotton Groundsel, or Woolly Groundsel, also Clammy Groundsel, from the Leaves sticking as it were unto ones Fingers.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three several Species of this Kind, viz. 1. *Sentio incanus*, *Erigeron Tomentosum*, *Senecio Tragi*, Cotton Groundsel. 2. *Erigeron Tomentosum alterum*, *Senecio fatidus*, *Erigeron fatidum Thalij*, *Senecio incanus pinguis Bauhinii*, *Jacobaea Pannonica prima Clusij*, Stinking Cotton Groundsel. 3. *Senecio odoratus*, *Senecio Flore odorata Camerarij*, Sweet smelling Cotton Groundsel.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common Cotton Groundsel, has a Root which is small, and full of Fibres; it has much larger Leaves, and more jagged or torn in on the edges than the former Common sort, and of a greyish or Ash Color, soft and hairy, or rather hoary all over; the Stalks are higher and greater, but with such like yellow Flowers upon them, and as soon fading and turning into Down as the other: this differs chiefly from the for-

mer Common sort in the hoariness and largeness, as well of the whole Plant as of the Leaves.



IV. *The second, or Stinking Cotton Groundsel,* has a Root which is very fibrous, yet lasteth not after Seed time, but perishes as the Common does, and springs again of the shed or fallen Seed: It has many fair, large and long Leaves lying next the Ground, very much jagged or torn in on the edges, whereby they consist of many divisions, somewhat like unto those of *Mugwort*, for which reason some have called it *Arthemisia foetida*, but it is soft, and in handling very hairy, being also bedewed with a fatty clamminess, so much that the Leaves will stick to the Fingers of those that touch them, and one Leaf will also stick unto another, so as with some difficulty to be taken asunder; it smells somewhat strong, and of an ill scent, (tho' not unpleasantly to some) as *Clusius* says, but like *Scrophularia*, or *Ebulus*, as others say; from among which Leaves rise up hairy crested Stalks, half a Yard high, spread out into several Ramifications or Branches, but bearing at their tops fewer Flowers, lesser, and of a paler yellow color than the Common Groundsel, and upon longer Footstalks, which quickly fade, and turn into Down, as the others do.

V. *The third, or Sweet smelling Cotton Groundsel,* has a fibrous perishing Root, as the others have, from which rise up Leaves and Stalks, like the others; and indeed this Groundsel is somewhat like the last kind in the soft and woolly Leaves, but not so much jagged or torn on the edges as it; its smell is sweet, something like unto *Ambrosia*, or *Oak of Cappadocia*, or the middle *Coniza*, or *Fleabane*; the Flowers are like the rest, and as soon growing old and Downy, as the others do.

VI. *The Places.* The first grows by Wood sides, and borders of Fields, as also upon old Walls, in many



many places; the second grows also in woody, barren, and untilld places; the third was sent by *Josephus de Casabona*, Herbarist to the Great Duke of *Tuscany*, to *Camerarius* out of *Italy*.

VII. *The Times.* The first Flowers almost every Month, as the *Common Kind* does, the two last Flower in *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*.

VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of these are the same with those of the *Common Kind*, delivered in the former Chapter from Sect. 7. to Sect. 18. and therefore we shall say no more thereof in this place.

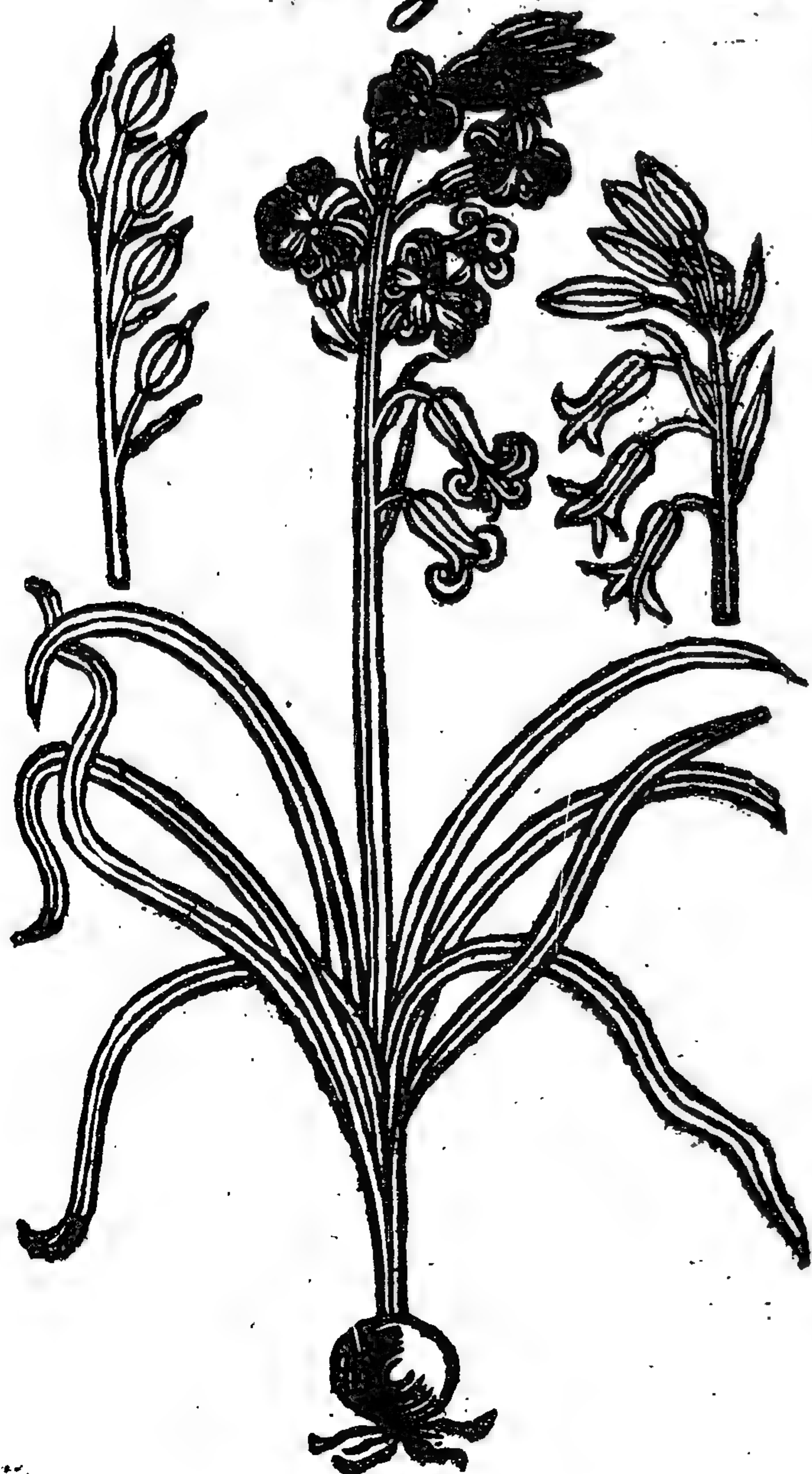
C H A P. CCCXXXV.

Of H A R E S--B E L L S English,  
O R,  
English H Y A C I N T H.

I. *THE Names.* It has no known *Greek Name*, but in *Latine* it is called *Hyacinthus Anglicus*, *Hyacinthus Belgicus*, and *Hyacinthus Hispanicus*, in *English Hares-Bells*, or *English Hyacinth*.

II. *The Kinds.* Of this Plant there are four Kinds, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Anglicus Ceruleus*, *Hyacinthus non scriptus Dodonai*, (because none wrote of it before him) *Blew English Hares-Bell*, and *Blew English Hyacinth*; but it is as well called *Belgicus*, and *Hispanicus*. 2. *Hyacinthus Anglicus Albus*, *Hyacinthus Belgicus Candidus*, *White English* or *Dutch Hares-Bells*, or *White English* or *Dutch Hyacinth*. 3. *Hyacinthus Anglicus*, aut *Belgicus Flore Incarnato*, *Carnation English* or *Dutch Hares-Bells*, or *Hyacinth*. 4. *Hyacinthus Hispanicus major*, *Flore Campanula instar*, *The greater Spanish Hares-Bells*, or *Bell-Flowered Hyacinth*.

*Blew English Hare Bell*



III. *The Descriptions.* *The first*, or *Blew English Hares-Bells.* *The Roots of all these sorts agree, and are alike, being white, and very slimy, some of which will be great and round, others longer and slender, and those which lye near the top of the Earth bare, will be of a green color.* From this Root rises up several long and narrow green Leaves, not standing upright, nor yet fully lying upon the Ground, among which springs up the Stalk, bearing at the top many long and hollow Flowers, hanging down their Heads; all forwards for the most part, and divided at the brims into six Leaves or Divisions, turning up their points a little again, of a sweetish but heady scent, somewhat like unto the Grassie Flower; the Heads for Seed are long and square, in which are contained much black Seed; the color of the Flowers are in some a deeper Blew, tending to a Purple, in others of a paler Blew, or of a bleak Blew, tending to an Ash Color; and some are Party Colored.

IV. *The second*, or *White English Hares-Bells*, has Roots, Leaves, Stalks and Flowers very like the former, saving, that the Leaves in this are somewhat broader, and the Flowers more open, and of a very white color, yet sometimes they are White and Blew mixt together.

V. *The third*, or *Carnation English Hares-Bells.* These in their bulbous Roots, Leaves, Stalks, Flowers, and Seed, as also in their magnitude and form of growing, are very like to the first and second Kinds, saving that the Flowers in this are of a fine Carnation Color for the most part, or of a fine delayed purplish Red, or bluish Color, which some call a Peach Color.

VI. *The fourth*, or *Greater Spanish Hares-Bells.* It has a bulbous Root, from whence spring up several long and narrow green Leaves, which have not strength enough in themselves to stand upright, but a little incline or bend downwards. This Plant is very like to the first aforegoing; but that it is greater in all its parts, as well of Leaves as Flowers, many growing together at the top of the Stalk, with many short green Leaves among them, hanging down their Heads, with larger, greater, and wider open Mouths, like unto Bells, of a dark Blew Color, and of no pleasing smell.

VII. *The Places.* The first *Parkinson* says is so common every where, that it scarcely needed any Description, and that it is more frequent in *England* than in the Low Countries; or in *Spain*; it grows in Woods, Coppes, and in the borders of Fields, every where throughout *England*; the second and third are not so common, but they grow in the Woods by *Colchester*, in *Essex*, in the Fields and Woods by *Southfleet*, near unto *Gravesend*, in *Kent*, as also in a piece of Ground by *Canterbury* called the *Clapper*, also in the Fields by *Bath*, and in the Woods by *Warrington*, in *Lancashire*, and in other places.

VIII. *The Times.* They Flower from the beginning of *May* to the end of *June*, and the Seed ripens in the mean Season, and in some little time after.

IX. *As to their Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* Authors have said nothing, nor do we know any thing by Experience concerning the same, saving, that an Ointment being made of the Roots hereof, is of singular use to strengthen weak Joints.

X. *Note.* The Root of *Hares-Bells*, as it is generally bulbous, so it is full of a thick, slimy, Emplastick Juice, which is of so strong a body, that it will serve to set Feathers upon Arrows, instead of Glew, or to paste Books with; and hereof was formerly made the best Starch, next to that of *Aron*, or *Water-Robin* Roots.



C H A P. CCCXXXVI.

## OF H A R E S--E A R S.

**I.** *THE Names.* This Plant is called in *Greek* Βύπλευρον, *Bupleurum Plinij*, ἰσχυλλον *Cordi*, in *Latine* *Bupleurum*, *Auricula Leporis*, *Herba Vulneraria Tragi*, who takes it to be *Panax Chironium Theophrasti*, in *English* *Hares-Ears*. It is doubtless the *Bupleurum Hippocratis*, mentioned by *Pliny Lib. 22. Cap. 22.* and by *Nicander in Theriacis*. *Gesner* says that the *French* call it *Elaphoboscum*, and *Gratia Dei*. Some take it to be *Panax Chironium Dioscoridis*, but falsely. Some will have it to be *Ammi vulgatum*, others to be *Sanamunda*. *Cordus* in his *History of Plants* calls it *Isophyllum*, so that there is great difference of *Opinions* among *Herbarists* in judging to what *Plant* of the *Ancients* it ought to be assigned; however, as long as we know what *Plant* it is to which we give the present *Names* it is sufficient.

**II. The Kinds.** There are three *Kinds* hereof, viz. 1. *Bupleurum Angustifolium*, *Auricula Leporis Angustifolia*, *Hares-Ears narrow Leav'd*. 2. *Bupleurum Latifolium*, *Auricula Leporis*, *Herba Vulneraria*, *Isophyllum*, *Hares-Ears broad Leav'd*. 3. *Bupleurum Angustifolium Montanum*, *Sedum petreum Bupleuri Folio*, vel potius *Bupleurum petreum Gramineo Folio* *Penz.*, *Perfoliata Alpina Gramineo Folio*, sive *Bupleurum Angustifolium Alpinum*, *Bupleurum Angustissimo Folio Bauhini*, *Narrow Leav'd Mountain Hares-Ears*.



Hares Ears narrow leaved

**III. The Descriptions.** The first, or *Common narrow Leav'd Hares-Ears*, has a *Root* which is somewhat long, but small, and white on the outside, much like to a *Parfly Root*, with divers *Fibres* adjoining, which with us in *England* perishes every *Year*. This *Plant* rises up with a round, stiff, green *Stalk*, two

Feet high, at the several *Joints* whereof grow several long and narrow, very dark, green, smooth, shining *Leaves*, broadest at the bottom, and narrower gradatim unto the ends, with divers *Ribs* running thro' them, the middlemost whereof is greatest, yet nothing so narrow as *Grass Leaves*, tho' some *Authors* do compare them with them; these *Leaves* stand one above another up to the top, growing smaller and smaller, being placed likewise at the *Joints*; from the middle of the *Stalks*, at the least, upwards (if it grows in any good *Ground*) come forth small *Branches*, (and sometimes with few or no *Branches* at all) at the tops whereof stand many small *Tufts* or *Umbles* of yellowish *Flowers*, which turn into small *Seed*, not much unlike to *Parfly Seed*, but of a darker color, and somewhat longer.



Hares Ears broad leaved.

**IV. The second, or Broad Leav'd Hares-Ears**, has a *Root* like the former, and grows in the same manner, with like *Stalks*, *Branches*, *Flowers*, and *Seed*; but herein this chiefly differs from that, viz. that this bears broader but shorter *Leaves*, smallest at the foot, broadest in the middle, and ending in a small sharp point, somewhat hollow, and bowing downwards, with several long *Nerves* or *Ribs* therein, as in the former, and the middle *Ribs* most eminent, or raised highest.

**V. The third, or Narrow Leav'd Mountain Hares-Ears**, has a round thick *Root*, about a *Foot* long, set with *Knobs* or *Bunches* instead of *Branches*, which has a thick *Bark*, of a dark red on the outside, and pale within, and divided at the head into many parts; from these *Knobs* or *Heads* arise several long and narrow green *Leaves*, lying on the *Ground*, compassing one another at the bottom, like a *Star*, for the form of them like to the first *Hares-Ears*, but narrower; from divers of these *Tufts* of *Leaves* rise up dark round *Stalks*, about an *Hand* breadth high, bearing at the tops many pale yellow *Flowers*, made of seven pointed *Leaves* apiece, and in the middle of them several small *Seeds* set thick together, something like unto *Thorow-Wax*, or as the former

Hares-Ears,



*Hares-Ears*, which smell very strong, the whole Plant else tastes like an *Artichoke*.

VI. *The Places*. The two first *Lobel* says grew about *Mompelier* in *France*, and *Tragus* says in dry stony places in *Germany*, and are both of them found in several places of *England*; the third *Pena* says grows upon *Mount Baldus*, and has been found upon Mountainous places in *Florida*, near the *English* Plantations.

VII. *The Times*. They all Flower late, viz. not until the end of *July*, and in *August*, and their Seed is ripe in *September*.

VIII. *The Qualities*. They are temperate in respect to the first Qualities, as to heat and cold, dryness and moisture, are Absterfivè, Vulnerary, Diuretick, Cardiack, Nephritick, Hysterick, and Alexipharmick.

IX. *The Specification*. They are peculiar for healing of Wounds in any part, whether inward or outward.

X. *The Preparations*. You may have therefrom, 1. A Juice or Essence of the Leaves. 2. A Decoction in Wine. 3. A Pouder of the Root or Seed. 4. An Ointment or Balsam. 5. A Cataplasme.

## The Virtues.

XI. *The Juice or Essence*. Taken to three or four Spoonfuls, either alone, or mixt with Wine, it is good against the Bittings or Stinging of Serpents, or other Venomous Creatures, the place also outwardly bathed with the same; it also provokes Urine, and prevails against the Strangury, and is of good use to bring down Womens Courses when stoppt, being taken Morning and Night in White Port Wine; taken also inwardly Dietetically it singularly contributes to the Curing of Wounds, old running Sores, and rebellious Ulcers.

XII. *The Decoction in Wine*. It has all the Virtues of the Juice or Essence, but not full out so powerful, yet it more excellently cheats the Heart and revives the Spirits, and is prevalent against Fainting and Swooning Fits in Men or Women.

XIII. *The Pouder of the Seed*. Being given to one Dram in a Glass of White Port Wine, it resists the Poyson of Vipers, Rattle-Snakes, and other Venomous Beasts, is also Diuretick, cleanses the Reins and Bladder of Tartarous Matter, and prevails against the Strangury.

XIV. *The Ointment or Balsam*. It heals simple Wounds at once or twice dressing, and is good against all sorts of Sores, whether they be fresh and green, or old and malign, when rebellious and difficult to be Cured.

XV. *The Cataplasme*. Applied to the Biting of Serpents, Mad Dogs, and other Poysonous Animals, it attracts and draws forth the Venom.

*ris hirsuto* *Pede*, from the hairy root of an Hare, also *Lagopyron*, by *Hippocrates*, quasi *Triticum Leporinum*, because it grew among Corn, and in *English* it is called *Hares-Foot*, *Spike Trefoil*, and *Corn Trefoil*.

II. *The Kinds*. Authors make six several Species of this Plant, but we shall take notice only of three, as being those chiefly which are to be found with us, or in some of our Plantations beyond the Seas. They are, 1. *Lagopus vulgaris*, *Lagopus minor*, *Lotus Campestris* *Tragi*, Our common Hares-Foot. 2. *Lagopus maximus* *Flöre rubro* *Lobelij* & *Clusij*, *Lagopus major* *Folio Trifolij* *Lobelij* & *Dodonæi*, The greatest Hares-Foot. 3. *Lagopus major* *Folio Pinnato*, *Lagopus altera* *Folio Pinnato* *Lobelij*, *Trifolium majus tertium* *Clusij*, *Trifolium magnum* *Loniceri* & *Cordi*, *Cytisus* *Tragi* & *Columella*, *Trifolium Spicatum* *Thalij*, The longer headed Hares-Foot.



III. *The Descriptions*. The first, or Our Common Hares-Foot. It has a small, long, stringy Root, which sends forth Stalks, with small, whitish, woolly, Trefoil Leaves set upon them, with short Footstalks; the Heads at the tops are with their roundness somewhat long, and composed, as it were, all of a hairy or hoary Downiness, whose Flowers in some are of a White, in others of a Blush Color; it is an Annual Plant, as are the two following, but this is especially to be noted in this Stock of *Hares-Foot*, or *Spiked Trefoil*, that these perish Yearly, whereas most of the other sorts of *Trefoils* do not: This *Common Hares-Foot* is well known to be a small Plant, but it grows greater and higher in some places, and smaller and lower in others, according to the goodness of the Soil or Ground it is found in.

IV. *The second, or Greatest Hares-Foot*, has an Annual, small, long, thready Root also, which sends forth several Trefoil Leaves, each standing on a long Footstalk, being almost round, and dented about the edges, very like to the Meadow Trefoil, as well in bigness as form, very soft, and of a pale green color; from among these rise up weak bending Stalks, a Foot or more high, branched out, and bearing the like, but somewhat longer Leaves on them, and at their tops close Spiked Heads, with many small Flowers round about them, each in a five cornered Cup, of a delicate Crimson Color, in which Husks,

C H A P. CCCXXXVII.

Of H A R E S - F O O T,

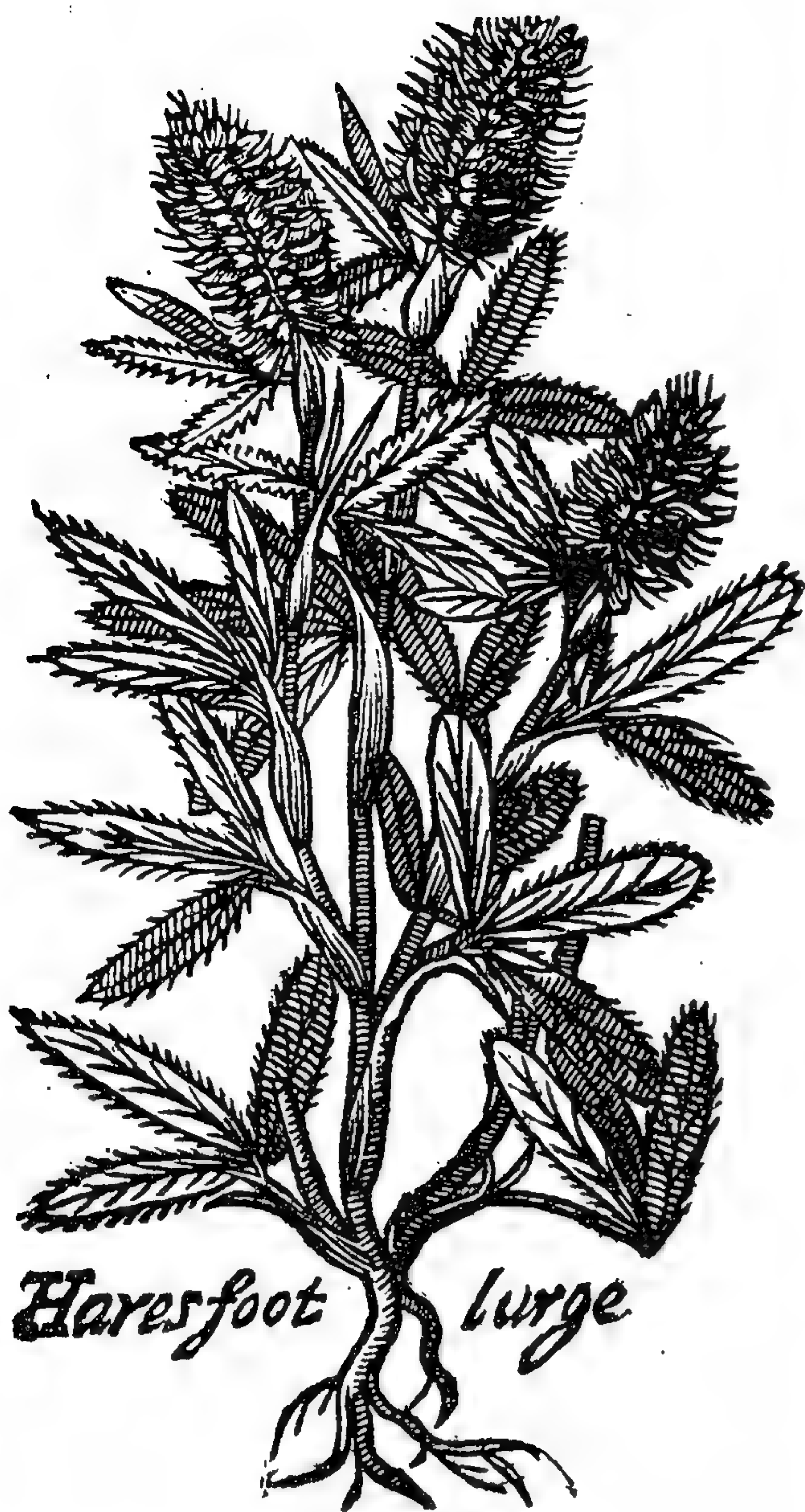
O R,

T R E F O I L Spiked.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *Greek* *Λαγώπυρος*, in *Latine* *Lagopus*, *Lagopodium*, *Trifolium Humile*, *Leporis Cuminum*, & *Pes Leporis*, a *Lepo-*



after the Flowers are past, grow small yellowish round Seed, one only in a Husk, whose brims or corners then stand displayed, something like unto a Star.



V. *The third, or Longer headed Hares-Foot, has a Root much like the former, its Leaves are hoary, large, and longer than the former, with several conspicuous Veins in them, making them shew like Wings, the middle Rib on the back of them being somewhat great also; the Flowers are like the second above, both in form and color, but the whole Head is longer and larger.*

VI. *The Places.* The first grows with us almost every where throughout England in dry Grounds; the two latter grow chiefly with us in Gardens, but are found growing wild in many places of Italy, France, and Germany.

VII. *The Times.* They Flourish and Flower in the Summer Months only, and their Seed is ripe in August and September.

VIII. *The Qualities.* They are temperate in respect to heat or cold, and dry in the first degree, Astringent, Vulnerary, and Stomachick.

IX. *The Specification.* They are peculiar against Fluxes of the Bowels, chiefly the Bloody Flux, and other Fluxes of Blood, as Spitting Blood.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *An Essence.* 2. *A Decoction of the Herb in Wine.* 3. *A Powder of the Heads and Seed.* 4. *Ashes of the Heads.* 5. *An Ointment or Balsam.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XI. *The Essence of Leaves, Stalks, Spiked Heads.* It dries and binds admirably, and it is known by most certain Experience to stop a Looseness, and other Fluxes of the Bowels, chiefly the Bloody Flux, being taken two, three, or four Spoonfuls at a time

in a Glass of Red Port Wine; but if a Fever is present, it may be given in a Decoction of the Herb in Water; it is good against Cholerick Belchings of the Stomach, and griping pains of the Belly, and is profitable to be given to such as have foul and hollow Ulcers, which are stubborn and of difficult Cure.

XII. *The Decoction in Wine.* It has all the former Virtues, but not full out so powerful; being mixt and taken with Juice or Essence of *Mallows*, or *Marsh Mallows*, it eases the pains of the Bladder and *Urethra*, and abates the scalding and heat of Urine; and this Decoction, as also the Essence, is said to be admirably good against the Running of the Reins in Men or Women, and may be used as a Vulnerary Diet-Drink.

XIII. *The Powder of the Heads and Seed.* Taken to one Dram Morning and Night in a Glass of Red Port Wine, or in a Decoction of the Plant in Wine or Water, (according as the Nature of the Distemper and Habit of the Patient may require) it helps Spitting or Pissing Blood, prevails against the Bloody Flux, and is singular good in the Cure of a Gonorrhœa, (Universals being premised) it is an Absterfive, and not only cleanses foul and hollow Ulcers, but also incarnates, or fills them up with Flesh, and Cicatrizes them.

XIV. *The Ashes of the Heads, &c.* Being applied to the Hemorrhoids or Piles, it stops their bleeding, eases their pain, and heals them.

XV. *The Ointment or Balsam.* It is Vulnerary, cleanses, incarnates, dries, and heals old running Sores, and rebellious Ulcers, &c.

### HARES--STONES, See GOATS--STONES, Chap. 321. foregoing.

## C H A P. CCCXXXVIII.

### OF HARTICHOKE Garden,

O R,

### A R T I C H O K E.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Κυνάρια*, also *Κάρτις*, in Latine *Cinara*, and *Cynara*, (from *Cinus*, as being of an Ash Color) and in English *Artichoke*, and *Hartichoke*.

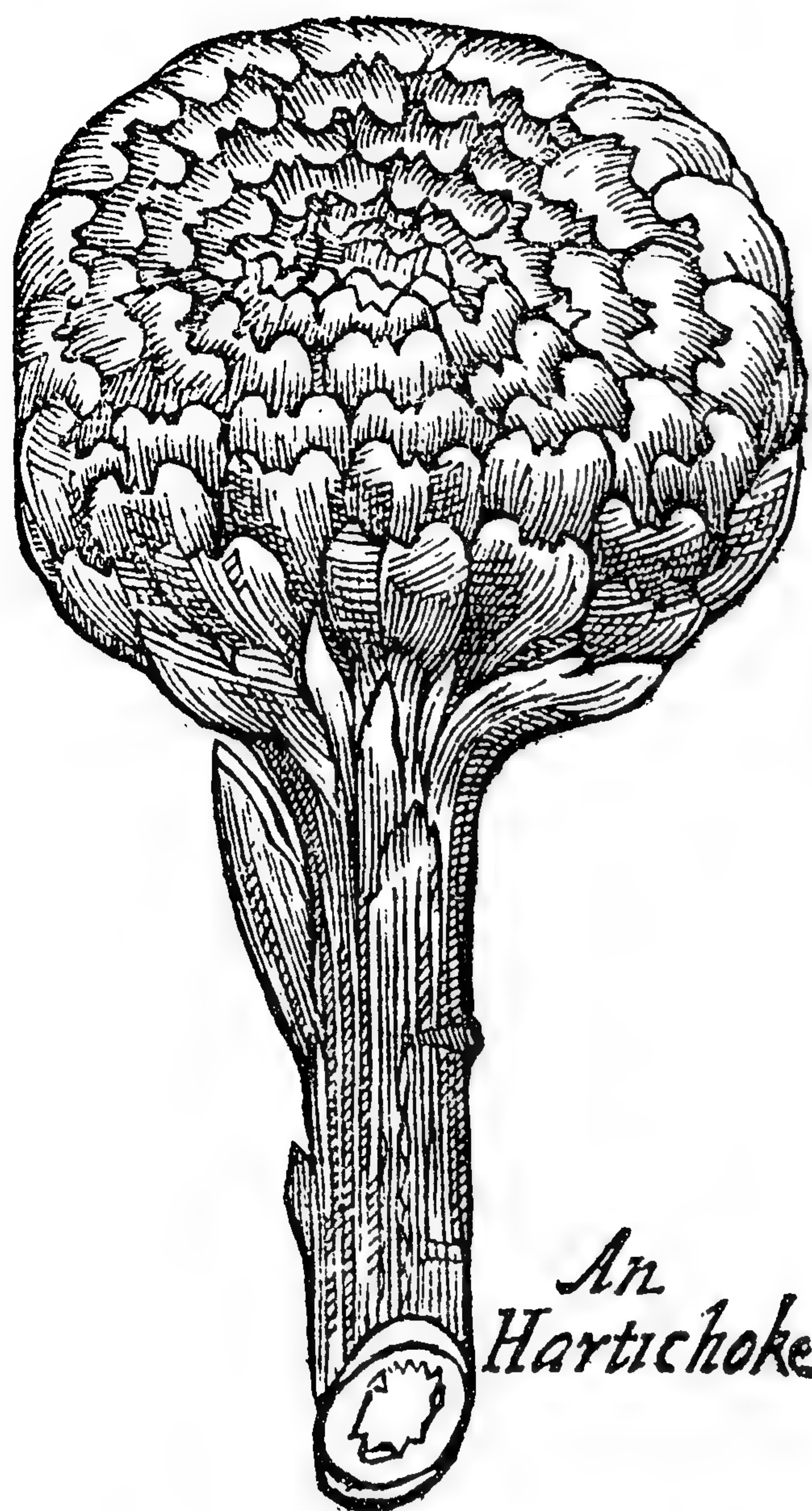
II. *The Kinds.* There are three principal Kinds, viz. 1. *Cinara Hortensis*, Garden Hartichokes, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Cinara Sylvestris*, vel *Spinosa*, Wild Hartichokes, of which in the next Chapter. 3. *Helianthum Canadense*, Jerusalem Hartichokes, of which in Chap. 340. following.

III. *The Garden Kinds.* They are manifold, as 1. *Cinara Rubra*, The Common Great Red Hartichoke. 2. *Alba*, The White Hartichoke. 3. *Viridis*, The Green Hartichoke. 4. *Procera*, The Tall Hartichoke. 5. *Pumila*, The Dwarf or Low Hartichoke. 6. *Gallica*, The French Hartichoke. 7. *Moschata*, The Musk'd Hartichoke. 8. *Spinosa*, The



The Thistle like Hartichoke. 9. *Aculeata*, The Prickly Hartichoke, of all which in order.

not being so closely compacted together, in which it also differs from the first Kind.



*An  
Hartichoke*

IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Common Great Red Kind, has a Root which spreads it self in the Ground pretty largely, whereby it yields divers heads of Leaves, or rather Suckers, by which it is multiplied or increased; from this Root spring up several great, large, and long hollowed Leaves, much cut in or torn on both edges, without any great shew of prickles on them, of a kind of whitish green, like unto an Ash Color, from whence it took the Latin Name *Cinara*; the Stalk is thick, round, and strong, with some Skins as it were down all the length of them, bearing at the top one scaly Head, made at first like a Pine-Apple, but after, growing greater, the said Scales are more separate, yet in the best Kinds lying close, and not staring, as some other Kinds do, which are either of a reddish brown, whitish, or greenish color, and in some broad at the ends, and in others sharp or prickly; the Stalk, Leaves, and Skins which inclose the Stalk, are extremely bitter in taste, beyond expression; after the Head has stood a great while, if it is suffered, and the Summer proves hot and kindly, in some there will break forth at top a Tuft of blewish purple Thrums, or Threads, under which grow the Seed, wrapped in a great deal of Downy substance, but that Root which yields Flowers will hardly abide the next Winter, but else, being cut off when it is well grown, that Downy substance abides close in the middle of the Head, having the bottom thereof flat and round, which is that matter or part which is usually eaten.

V. The second, or Great White Hartichoke, is in all things like to the former Red Kind, but that the head thereof is of a whitish Ash color, like the Leaves, whereas the former is reddish. The head of this is more apt to dilate or spread it self farther abroad,



*Hartichoke: common.*

VI. The third, or Green Kind. It is not much unlike the two former Kinds, saving, that the head of this is green, and very sharp upwards, and is found very common in many places; nor does it differ much in goodness from the former Kinds, but it is not altogether so sweet in taste.

VII. The fourth, or Tall Kind. It grows to a Mans height, and is branched into divers Stalks or Arms, every one bearing a head thereon, almost as large as those of the first Kind. This, though common formerly, is more rare to be met withal now.

VIII. The fifth, or Dwarf or Low Hartichoke. This is a French Kind, and grows much about Paris, and which the French esteem more than any other. It is lower than the following French Kind, the head of which, as well as the Leaves, are of a lighter green Color, almost yellowish.

IX. The sixth, or French Hartichoke. It has a white head, the scales of which stand staring far asunder one from another at the ends, which are sharp: it is well known by this Quality, that whilst it is hot, after it is boiled, it smells so strong, that one would verily think that it had been boiled in stinking Water: this Kind was brought over to us in England after a great Frost, which had almost destroyed our best Kinds, but we have now almost lost them again, not being willing they should take up the room or place of better.

X. The seventh, or Muskied Hartichoke. It is a Kind which grows much like the former French, but it is much better in spending, though it has a lesser bottom.

XI. The eighth, or Thistle like Hartichoke. It is almost like the Wild Kind in its manner of growing, but it grows smaller, and with a more open and prickly head than any of the former.

XII. The ninth, or Prickly Hartichoke, which the French call Chardon, or Cardon, because it is almost of the form and nature of a Thistle, or Wild Hartichoke; it grows high, and full of sharp prickles, of



a greyish color; *John Tradescant* said that he saw Three Acres of Land about *Brussels* Planted with this Kind, which the owner whited like *Endive*, and then sold them in Winter for Winter Salleting.

XIII. *The Places.* These all grow in Gardens, but the first two or three are the most common with us; we find by daily experience that our *English Red Hartichoke* is the most delicious of them all; they have been sent from us to *France, Holland, Italy*, and other Countries, where they have grown well for a Season, but they have not in these places retained their excellency and goodness for above Two Years, but have much degenerated, whereas with us they daily improve, so that it seems our Soil and Climate has the preheminance, and is the most natural to this Plant in exalting it to its highest perfection.

XIV. *The Times.* All these Kinds are increased by slipping the young Shoots from the Roots, which being replanted in *February, March, or April*, have many times the same Year, but the next at furthest, born very good Heads: The *Hartichoke* is to be Planted in a very fat and fruitful Soil, and they love Water, and a moist Ground; it is a great Error to cut away the side, or superfluous Leaves which grow by the sides, thinking thereby to increase the greatness of the Heads, when as in truth they deprive the Root of much Water by that means, which would nourish it, to the feeding and enlarging of the Heads; for if you mark the Trough or hollow Channel which is in every Leaf, it will appear very evidently, that those Furrows were designed, even from the extreame point of the Leaf to the Ground, where it is fastned to the Root, for no other purpose, but to guide that Water which falls far off unto the Root, for that without such store of Water the whole Plant would wither, and the Heads pine away and come to nothing; they are Planted for the most part about *October*, or somewhat sooner, the Plant must be set, and nourished with good store of Ashes, for that kind of Manure is thought to be best for the Planting thereof, and every Year the Slips must be taken or flipt off from the Root, and are to be set in *April*, as aforesaid, which will be fruitful about *August* following, as *Columella, Palladius*, and others, as also daily experience teaches.

XV. *The Qualities.* They are, *viz.* the nails or bottoms of the Scales or Flakes, as also the bottoms, on which Down and Seed stand, hot and moist in the first degree, Diuretick, Analeptick, and Spermatogenetick.

XVI. *The Specification.* Being much eaten, they are said to be singular in stopping the involuntary course of the Seed in Man or Woman.

XVII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *An Essence, or Blood of the Heads.* 2. *A Decoction of the Root in Wine, the Pith being first taken away.* 3. *A Pouder of the Seed.* 4. *The Sallet.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XVIII. *The Essence, Sanguis, or Blood.* It is made of the bottoms, as the Blood of *Parsneps*; it is Diuretick, nourishes much; and restores in Consumptions, tho' of the Lungs; and being taken from two to four Drams in Red Wine Morning, Noon, and Night, it stops the involuntary flux of Seed, commonly called *Gonorrhœa simplex*, yet it provokes Lust extremely, for it strengthens the whole Body.

XIX. *The Decoction of the Root in Wine.* Being drank liberally, it takes away the rank smell of the Arm Holes, for it sends forth plenty of stinking Urine, whereby the rank and rammish favour of not

only the Armpits, but of the whole Body is much amended.

XX. *The Pouder of the Seed.* It opens obstructions of the Urinary parts, provokes Urine, and cleanses those Vessels from Sand, Gravel, small Stones, and other Tartarous Matter, and much amends the evil smell of the Body, carrying off the foetidness by Urine.

XXI. *The Sallet.* It is manifold, 1. Made of the Heads, by boiling them soft, after which they are eaten with melted Butter, Vinegar, Salt, and Pepper; this being much and often eaten nourishes very much, and restores in deep Consumptions; it also very much increases Seed, and stirs up Bodily Lust. 2. The Leaves of the heads and their bottoms pickled; eaten with Meat they are very pleasing and grateful to the Stomach. 3. The raw Sallet. It is made of the Ninth Kind, being whitened like *Endive*, and so used as a Winter Sallet; being eaten raw, with Pepper, Salt, Vinegar, and Oil, as you dress whitened *Endive, Sallary, &c.*

## C H A P. CCCXXXIX.

### Of HARTICHOKE Wild, O R, Wild ARTICHOKE.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Σκολύμα* Dioscoridis, and is doubtless *Κάκτι* Theophrasti, in Latine *Cynara*, and *Cinara Sylvestris*, and *Scolymus*, in English *Wild Artichoke*, or *Hartichoke*.



*Wild Artichoke.*

II. *The Kinds.* There are two several Kinds, *viz.* 1. *Scolymus Dioscoridis, Cynara Sylvestris Lobelij,* (because it so nearly resembles the *Cinara aculeata, Scolymus*



*Scolymus Sylvestris*, *Cynara Sylvestris Latifolia* Bauhin. The Wild Hartichoke, or Artichoke Thistle.  
2. *Cynara Sylvestris Cretica* Honorij Belli, *Agriocinara Cretica* Pena, in his *Italian Baldus*, The Candy Wild Hartichoke. To which Authors add. 2. *Scolymus Theophrasti*, *Eryngium luteum*, *Carduus Chrysanthemus*, The Golden Thistle.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Wild Hartichoke, has a great Root, which spreads much, and sends forth several thick, long, hard, but narrow Leaves, ending in long points, very considerably scolloped in on the edges, set with strong great prickles, and very sharp, which growing on the Stalks encompass them at the bottom, and are of a dark green color; at the tops of each Stalk and Branch grows one scaly and prickly Head, lesser than those of the Ninth Kind in the former Chapter, which are kept to be eaten, from the middle of which put forth several bright, purplish, Crimson Threads, which compose the Flower, which, after they have stood some time, pass away, the Seed in their Heads being flat, and like other Thistles.

IV. The second, or Candy Wild Hartichoke. It has a very long Root, which grows deep, which sends up long and hoary white Leaves, something broader than the former, very much indented or cut in on the edges, and thick armed with long and sharp prickles; from among which Leaves rise up several round Stalks, set with but few Leaves, and branched sometimes into two or three parts, bearing at their tops small, scaly, sharp, prickly Heads, which are eaten by the Peasants of the Country both green and boiled, with Pepper, Salt, Vinegar, and Oil, and are as pleasant to them as the best Hartichoke is to us.

V. The third, or Golden Thistle, has a Root which is long, of the bigness of a Finger, very sweet and pleasant to eat, like unto *Eryngium*, or Sea-Holly, which sends forth several skinny and prickly Stalks, which in some Countries, as in Spain, Italy, &c. stand upright, but in other Countries, as in France and England, bends with them unto the Ground, bearing at every Joint both a Branch and a Leaf, which is long, and somewhat narrow, smaller at bottom than any where else, much cut in on the edges, and set with small white prickles, in some places marked with white spots on the deep green Leaves, but in other places none at all; at the Joints, between the Leaves and the Stalks, and at the tops also, come forth several small Heads, smaller than any of the former, composed of small Scales, with very sharp prickles at the ends, out of the middle of which come forth many Gold yellow Threads, which abide not long, and are the Flower, in which, when they are past, is contained the Seed, being small and thin Scales lying close together.

VI. The Places. The first grows in France, Germany, and Italy, the second is natural to Candy, the third is a native of Spain and Italy, but they all grow with us here in England in Gardens.

VII. The Times. They all Flower in July and August, or in the end of Summer, and their Seed ripens in September, or quickly after.

VIII. The Qualities. They are temperate in respect to heat or cold, dryness or moisture, are Appetitive, Absterfive, and Diuretick.

IX. The Specification. The Wild Hartichoke is found to be of singular use to take away the stinking or rank smell of the Armpits.

X. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A Juice or Essence. 2. A Decoction in Wine. 3. A Milky Juice. 4. The Flowers. 5. A Sallet.

## The Virtues.

XI. The Juice or Essence. It opens the obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, and is very Diuretick; thereby expelling much strong and stinking Urine; and by that means amends the strong, rank, or stinking smell of the Armpits, and of the whole Body. Dose three or four Spoonfuls Morning, Noon, and Night, in a Glass of Generous Wine, or other fit Vehicle.

XII. The Decoction in Wine. It has the same Virtues, but not altogether so powerful; if it is made in Red Port Wine, it is a singular good thing to prevent Abortion, and so to strengthen the Womb, as to cause a Woman to go out her time.

XIII. The Milky Juice. *Clusius* says, that with this the People in some parts of Spain do coagulate, or curdle their Milk, in order to the making of Cheese, but this is to be understood chiefly of the Juice of the third Kind.

XIV. The Flowers of the first Kind. They are used by the Italians, as *Pena* and *Label* say, to curdle Milk, of which they make Cheese; and that the said Flowers, being given to Women with Child, in their Broth, or Drink, do hinder Abortion, and cause them to go out well their whole time; they are also very good for such Women as are barren, and to cause Fruitfulness.

XV. The Sallet. The young Shoots of the first are eaten like *Asparagus*, as also the young Heads, (in Spain) before they Flower, but they use to raise the Earth over the young Shoots till they are risen a good height, which are then white, and very tender and delicate to be eaten raw with Pepper, Salt, Vinegar, and Oil, or else boiled, as you eat *Asparagus*. *Theophrastus* says, that his *Scolymus*, viz. the Golden Thistle, is very pleasant eaten raw, or boiled, but chiefly when in Flower, and that the inner substance of the Heads is eaten; and with the Flowers they counterfeit Saffron, as we do with the Bastard Saffron, or Safflower.

## C H A P. CCCXL.

### OF HARTICHOKE Jerusalem,

O R,

### Canada P O T A T O.

I. THE Names. It was unknown to the Greeks, but has variety of Names given to it by the Latine Writers: *Pelleterius* calls it *Heliotropium Indicum Tuberosum*, *Columna* in the second Part of his *Phytobasanos* calls it *Flos Solis Farnesianus*, (because growing in the Cardinal's Garden) also *Aster Peruanus Tuberosus*; *Bauhinus* in his *Prodromus* calls it *Chrysanthemum Latifolium Brasilianum*, but in his *Pinax*, *Helianthemum Indicum Tuberosum*; but our *Parkinson* in his *Paradise*, as also in his *Theater of Plants*, calls it *Battatas de Canada*, which he Englishes, *Potato's of Canada*; but our usual English Name is *Jerusalem Hartichoke*. *Bauhinus* also in his *Pinax* calls it *Aristochi sub Terra*.

II. The Kinds. It is a singular Plant of the Kind, but how it should be accounted among the Species of Hartichoke is difficult to conceive, because it has no resemblance to any of these Plants in any of its parts, but the vulgar seldom give Names to Plants according to Judgment, and therefore it is not to be wondered



wonder'd at; all that can be said for the Name is, that when it is boiled and dress'd, it has a little likeness in taste to the bottom of an *Hartichoke*; but why it should be called *Jerusalem*, is more to be admir'd at, for that it came not out of *Asia*, or *Europe*, but from *America* to us, with whom it grows as well and as naturally and plentifully as ever it grew in its Original Native Clime.

III. The Description. *This admirable Plant has at first but one small Tuberous Root, which sends up sometimes one or more stiff round Stalks, which grow in our Country to be eight or ten Feet high, but scarcely blow or shew their Flowers, whereas the Head of Flowers in their Native Countries, (as Columna says) being of a Pyramis or Sugar-Loaf fashion, spreading broad below, and growing smaller upwards, almost to a point, is nearly of the same length, on which are set large and broad, rough, green Leaves, very like unto the Leaves of the Sun-Flower, but smaller, and growing in the very same manner round about the Stalks; at the very latter end of Summer, or beginning of Autumn, if the Root is well planted and defended, it will give a shew of a few small yellow Flowers at the tops, like to the Flowers of Aster, or Starwort, and much smaller than any Sun-Flower, which come to no perfection with us; the Root, while the Plant is growing above Ground, increases not to its full growth, but when the Summer is well spent, and the springing of the Stalks is past, which is about the end of August, or in September, then the Root is perceived to be increased in the Earth, and will (before Autumn is spent) in October, swell like a Mountain or Hillock round about the feet of the Stalks, and will not have its Roots fit to be taken up, until the Stalks be half withered at soonest, but after they are withered, and so all the Winter long, until the Spring again, they are good and fit to be taken up and used, which are a number of almost roundish Tuberous Roots, growing close together, so that it has been observed, that from one Root, being set in the Spring, there has been forty or more taken up again, and to have done more than to have filled a Peck Measure, which Roots are of a pleasant good taste, much like to the bottoms of the Heads of the Common Red Hartichokes.*

IV. Another Description from Gerard. *Flos Solis Pyramidalis parvo Flore, Radice Tuberosa.* This wonderful Plant has growing up from one Root one, sometimes two, three, or more round, green, rough, hairy, straked Stalks, commonly about twelve Feet high, sometimes sixteen Feet, or higher, as big as a Childs Arm, full of a white spongy Pith within; the Leaves grow all along the Stalks, out of order, of a light green color, rough, sharp pointed, about eight Inches broad, and ten or eleven Inches long, deeply notched or indented about the edges, very like the Leaves of *Flos Solis Peruanus*, but nothing crumpled, nor so broad as they; the Stalks divide themselves into many long Branches, even from the Roots to their very tops, bearing smaller Leaves and smaller towards the tops of the Plant, making the Plant appear like a little Tree; narrower and slenderer towards the top, in fashion of a Steeple or Pyramid; the Flowers with us grow only at the tops of the Stalks and Branches, like those of the said *Flos Solis*, but no bigger than *Our Common single Marigold*, consisting of twelve or thirteen straked, sharp pointed, bright, yellow, bordering Leaves, growing forth of a scaly, small, hairy Head, with a small yellow thrummy substance within; these Flowers, by reason of their late Flowering, which is commonly two or three Weeks after *Michaelmas*, never with us bring their Seed to perfection, and it makes

a shew of abundance of small Heads near the tops of the Stalks and Branches, forth of the bosoms of the Leaves, which never open and Flower in our Clime, by reason they are prevented with the Frosts, which otherwise might possibly be a noble Sight; the Stalks send forth many small creeping Roots, by which the nourishment is received, which are full of hairy Threads, even from the upper part of the Earth, spreading far abroad, among which, from the main Root, grow forth many Tuberous Roots, clustering together, sometimes fastned to the great Root itself, sometimes growing on long Strings, a Foot or more from the main Root, raising or heaving up the Earth above them, and sometimes appearing above the Earth, producing from the increase of one Root thirty, forty, or fifty in number, or more, making in all commonly about a Peck, and many times near half a Bushel, if the Soil or Earth be good; these Tuberous Roots are of a dirty reddish color without, and of a soft white substance within, bunching out many ways, sometimes as large as a Mans Fist, or not so big, with white protuberances, whence they will sprout out or grow up again the next Year; the Stalks are bowed down, and sometimes some part of them covered over with Earth, and send forth small creeping thready Roots, and also Tuberous Roots, like the former, as by experience has been found; these Tuberous Roots will abide and live in the Earth all Winter, tho' the Stalks and Roots by which they were nourished do absolutely rot and perish away, and will begin to spring up again at the beginning of May following, seldom sooner.

V. The Places. It is a native of *Brazil, Canada*, and *Peru*, and several other parts of *America*, and now it grows as plentifully with us in *England* as in any of the places where it grew naturally; Mr. Goodyer says that he received two small Roots of this Plant from one *Franquevill* of *London*, no bigger than Hens Eggs, the one he gave to a Friend, and the other he Planted, and it brought him forth a Peck of Roots, wherewith he stored *Hampshire*; and now it grows in great plenty in many other parts of this Kingdom.

VI. The Times. It Flowers generally in *October*, but Seeds not with us, and its Roots are in perfection all the Winter Months.

VII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparation, Virtues and Uses, are the same with those of *Hartichokes* in Chap. 338. foregoing, save, that whereas in these the Heads of the *Hartichoke* were only used and eaten, in these the Tuberous Roots only are taken.

VIII. Note. They are boiled in Water till they are tender, after which they are peeled, sliced, and Stewed with Butter, Salt, Pepper, and a little Red Port Wine, by which means they become an Excellent Dish, and more pleasant than the bottom of an *Hartichoke*; being now very plentiful and cheap, they may become good Food for Poor People, and keep Thousands from Starving, which might otherwise perish.

---

HARTSHORN, See BUCKSHORN,  
Chap. 91. foregoing.

---



C H A P. CCCXLI.

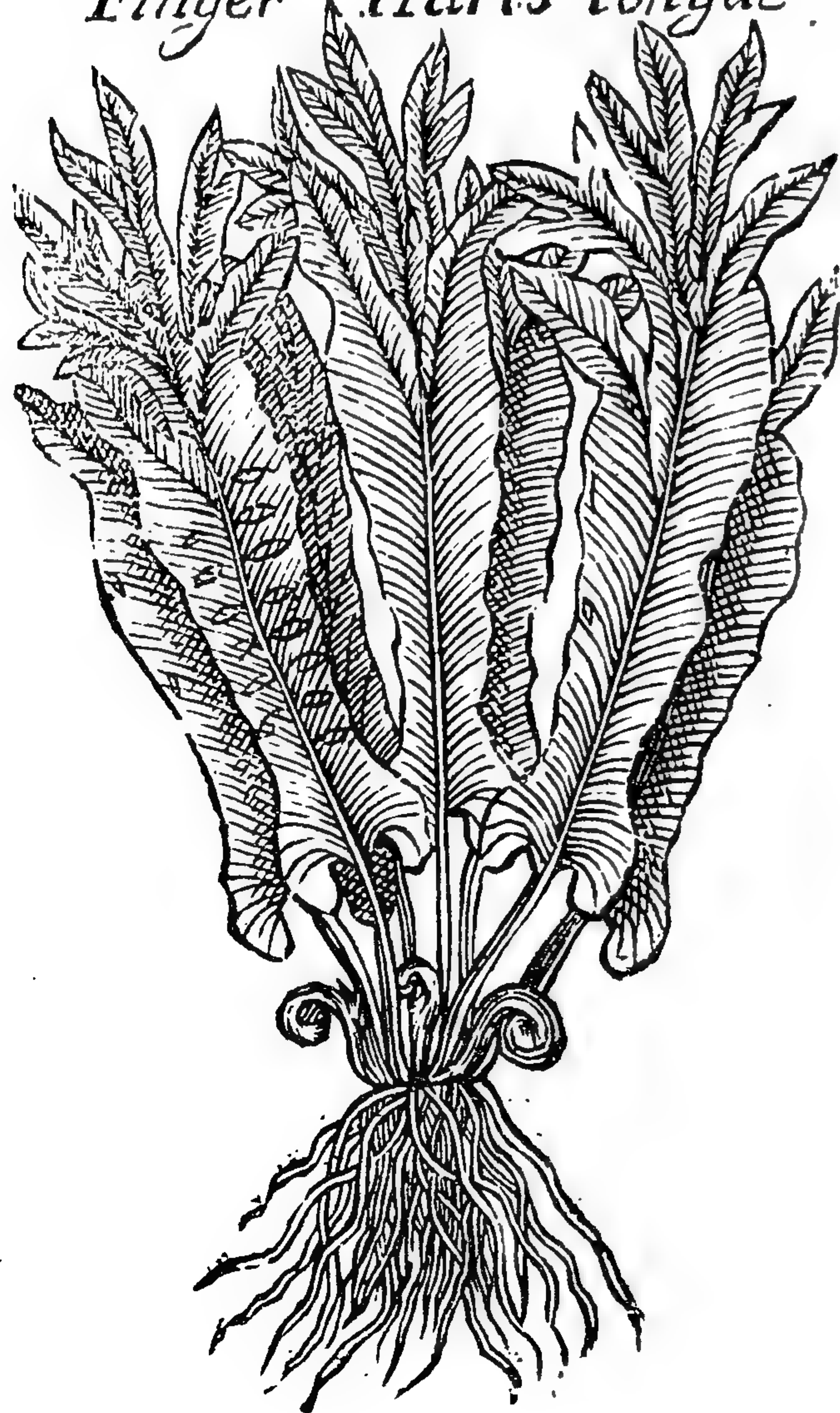
## of HARTS-TONGUE True, O R, DEERS-TONGUE.

**I.** *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *φυλλίτις*, *Phyllitis quasi foliosa*, in Latine also *Phyllitis*, and *Lingua Cervina*, in English *Deers-Tongue*, and *Harts-Tongue*, I suppose from the form of the Leaf.

**II.** *The Kinds.* It is either, 1. *Phyllitis vera*, of which in this Chapter, or 2. *Phyllitis Notha*, *Bastard Harts-Tongue*, of which in the next. The *Phyllitis vera*, or *True Harts-Tongue*, is also threefold, viz. 1. *Phyllitis*, *sive Lingua Cervina vulgaris*, Our Common or Ordinary *Harts-Tongue*. 2. *Phyllitis laciniata* *Jagged Harts-Tongue*, or *Finger Harts-Tongue*. 3. *Phyllitis ramosa Alpini*, *Branch-ed Harts-Tongue of Alpini*, which he has notified in *Libro de Exoticis*.

**III.** *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common *True Harts-Tongue*. It has a Root which is a bunch of many black Fibres or Threads, folded or interlaced together, which sends up several Leaves, every one of them rising up singly from the same Root, which, as other Ferns, fold themselves in their first springing and spreading; these Leaves when they are full grown are about a Foot long, smooth and green above, but hard, or with little Sap in them, and straked on the back athwart on both sides of the middle Rib with small and somewhat brownish marks; the bottoms of the Leaves are a little bowed on each side of the middle Rib, somewhat narrow with the length, and something small at the end. Some do make two sorts hereof, and distinguish them by the Epithets of *Latifolia* and *Angustifolia*.

*Finger Harts tongue*



**IV.** *The second, or Jagged Harts-Tongue*, differs nothing from the former neither in Root, Leaf, nor manner of growing, but only in the division of the tops of the Leaves, which in this are diversly torn or jagged, some Leaves much and some little, according to the place of growing and time of abiding: Now it is to be observed, that neither of these Plants have either Stalk, Flower, or Seed.

**V.** *The third, or Branched Harts-Tongue.* It has a Root which is something woody, with black Fibres thereat, shooting forth many slender broad Stalks of Leaves, of two or three Feet long, a little Downy at bottom, divided into many long and narrow Leaves, dented about the edges, and set one against another, with an odd one at the end, each resembling the Head of a Javelin, marked thick with straight Lines on both sides unto the middle Rib; the whole Plant is without smell, but of an austere taste, containing some heat, which is not presently felt, but continues long.

**VI.** *The Places.* The first, or Common *Harts-Tongue*, grows by the way sides in great plenty as you go from London to Exeter, in shadowy places; and in moist stony Vallies and Wells, and is much planted in Gardens; the second grew in the Garden formerly one *Cranwich's*, a Chirurgeon, living at *Much Dunmow* in Essex; the third is purely a stranger with us.

**VII.** *The Times.* They are green all the Year long, but less green in Winter, and in Spring and Summer they sometimes bring forth new Leaves.

**VIII.** *The Qualities.* They are drying and binding in the first degree, Aperitive, Astringent, Hepatick, Splenetick, and Alexipharmick.

**IX.** *The Specification.* They ease the Spleen; stop Fluxes of the Bowels, and Bloody Fluxes, and wonderfully strengthen the Viscera.

### *The Virtues.*

**X.** *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom; 1. A Decoction in Wine or Water. 2. An Acid Tincture. 3. A Spirituous Tincture. 4. A Distilled Water.

**XI.** *The Decoction in Wine or Water.* It opens obstructions of Liver and Spleen, taking away also the pain and hardness of the Spleen, and it is a singular good thing against the Rickets in Children, and the Cachexia in Virgins and Young Women; it stops all sorts of Fluxes of the Belly, more especially the Bloody Flux, strengthens the Stomach, and restores the Tone of the Bowels, being depraved or hurt; made in Water it abates the heat of the Liver and Stomach, and is good against the falling of the Pallate. Dose four or six Ounces.

**XII.** *The Acid Tincture.* It more powerfully opens obstructions of Stomach, Liver and Spleen than the former, and therefore is a singular thing to cure the Cachexia and Green-Sickness in Virgins; and being continued to be given to Children troubled with the Rickets, it perfectly cures them; give it to them in all that they drink, so many drops at a time as may make their Drink be gratefully pleasant; it opens the obstructions of the Lungs and Stomach in little Ones, and makes them breath freely; it is good against the bleeding of the Gums, and a singular thing against the Bitings of Serpents; or other Venomous Beasts.

**XIII.** *The Spirituous Tincture.* It strengthens the Stomach, Liver, and Spleen, and more powerfully stops Fluxes of the Belly, and in especial Bloody Fluxes, than the Decoction in Wine, or any other Preparation of the Herb; it is good to resist the force of Poyson, and restores the Tone of the Bowels being hurt, strengthening them to admiration. Dose from one Dram to three Drams, in any



proper Vehicle, Morning, Noon, and Night, for some time.

XIV. *The Distilled Water.* Taken with some of the Spirituous Tincture it is good against Faintings, Swoonings, and other Passions of the Heart; and so mixed it stops the bleeding of the Gums, and fastens the Teeth if loose.

## C H A P. CCCXLII.

### Of HARTS-TONGUE Bastard,

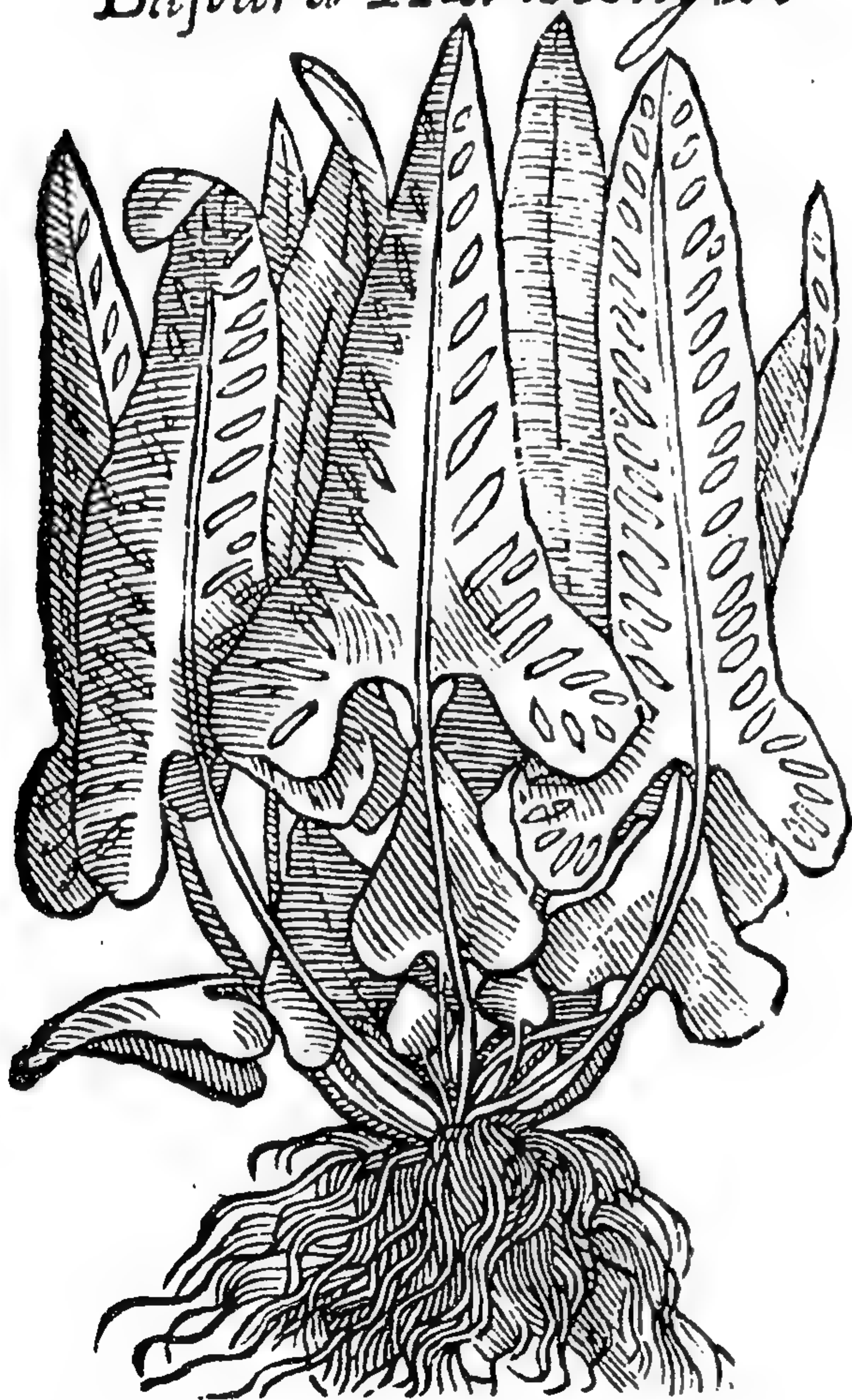
O R,

### M U L E S--F E R N.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Ἡμενίτις*, & *Σπλάντιον*, in Latine *Hemionitis*, and *Splenium*, the former *quasi Malaria*, the latter *Splenium*, *ex Splen*, & *Splenis figura*; in English it is called *Bastard Harts-Tongue*, *Mules-Fern*, and *Moon-Fern*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is threefold, viz. 1. *Hemionitis major*, *Hemionitis vulgaris* *Baubini*, *Hemionitis vera* *Clusij*, The Common, True, or Greater Bastard Harts-Tongue. 2. *Hemionitis minor* *Pencæ*, seu *altera*, *Hemionitis sterilis* *Lobelij*, The lesser, or barren Harts-Tongue. 3. *Hemionitis peregrina* *Clusij*, *Lobelij*, *Dodonæi*, Strange Bastard Harts-Tongue.

### Bastard Hartstongue



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common Bastard Harts-Tongue, in its Roots, Leaves, and manner of growing, does very much resemble the former first, or True Harts-Tongue, both in form and color, but that the Leaf is somewhat broader or larger, and that the Leaves, being broadest below, have a large hollow bowing, like unto an Half Moon, on each side of the middle Rib, and the strakes on the backs of them are more sloping.

IV. *The second, lesser, or Barren Bastard Harts-*

*Tongue*, has a small thready Root like the former, quickly withering; its Leaves exceed not the breadth of three Fingers, not hard, nor rough, but smooth and gentle, and without any marks on the back sides of them, yet with a hollow roundness at the bottom of them, as in the former, and besides somewhat unevenly dented about the edges: *Clusius* says, that *Lobel* having sent him some Plants of this Species, after that he had kept them in a Pot, because of their tenderness, in two Years time they changed their form into the *Jagged Hartshorn*, at which he much wonder'd, for afterwards, (as he says) when he came into *England*, he gathered with his own Hands in the same place the like Plants, which there held the form of *Hemionitis*, or *Bastard Harts-Tongue*.

V. *The third, or Strange Bastard Harts-Tongue*, differs in nothing from the first of these three kinds, but in the bottoms of the Leaves, which have a small Ear, or piece of Leaf, set on each side of the arched or hollowed bottoms.

VI. *The Places.* These all grow upon shadowy Rocks, and moist hollow places, where little heat of the Sun comes, and are green all the Year, as is the True Harts-Tongue in the former Chapter: The second of these *Lobel* says he found on *St. Vincent's* Rock, not far from *Bristol*, in a hollow Cave or Hole.

VII. *The Times.* They are in their perfection in the advance of the Spring, but keep their greenness all the Year long.

VIII. *Their Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues*, are the same with the True Harts-Tongue in the former Chapter; they are specially good against Diseases of the Spleen, and may be used instead of the true *Lingua Cervina* to all Intentions and Purposes.

## C H A P. CCCXLIII.

### Of HARTWORT.

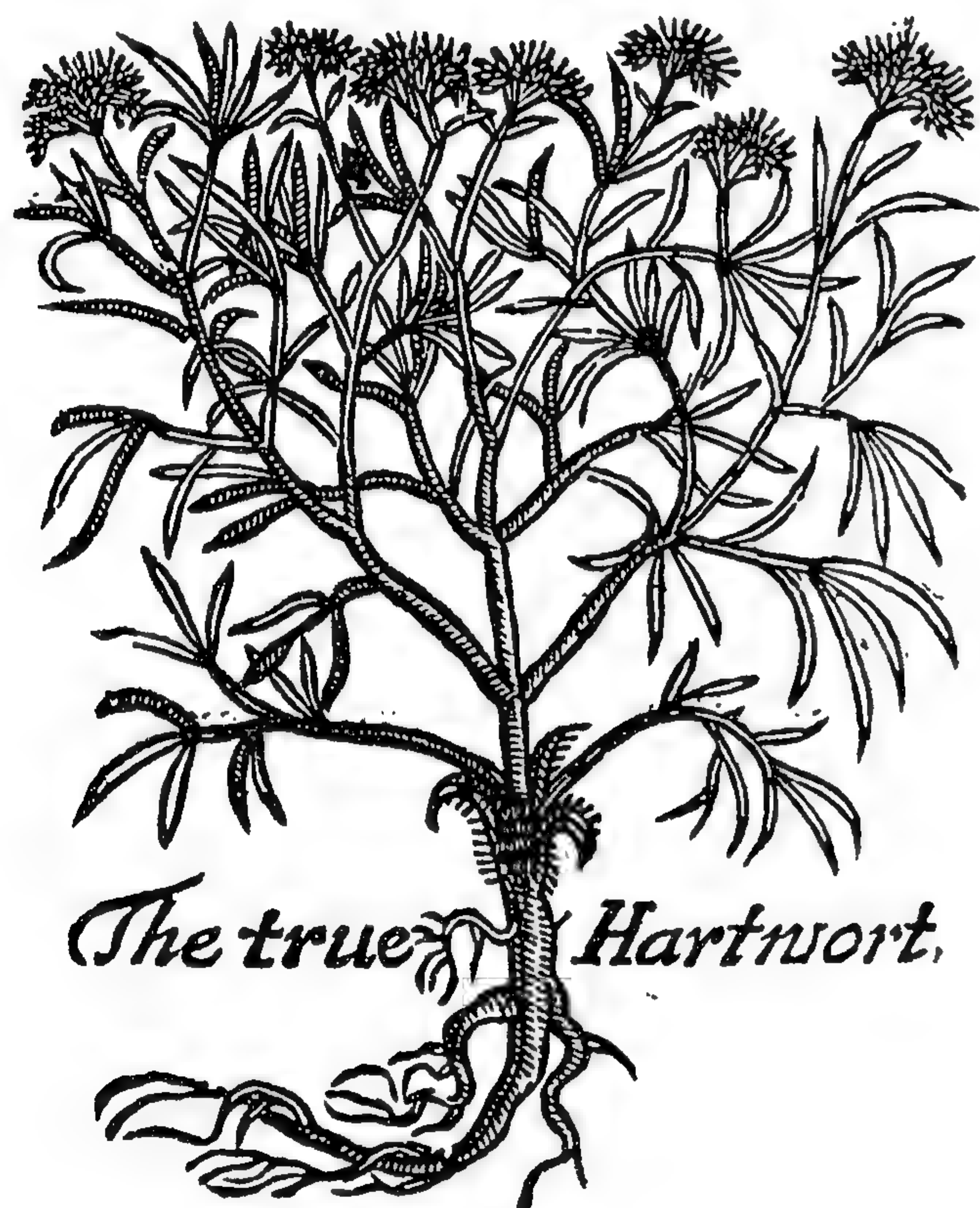
I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Σέσλι*, in Latine *Seseli*, and of some *Sile*, and in English *Hartwort*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make many Kinds hereof, but the following fourteen are chief, viz. 1. *Seseli verum*, quod *Dioscoridis* censetur, *Seseli Massiliense* *Folio Fanculo* *Lobelij* & *Clusij*, The True *Seseli* or *Hartwort* of *Dioscorides*. 2. *Seseli Creticum*, *Seseli Massiliense* *Lobelij* *Ferule* aut *Dauci* *Cretici* *facie*, *Seseli Massiliense* *Matthioli*, *Seseli Massiliense* *nonnullorum* *Camerarij*, Candy *Hartwort*, or another *Hartwort* of *Marselles*. 3. *Seseli Massiliense* *Pratense*, *Seseli* *Pratense* *Monspeliensium*, *Hippomarathrum* *Tabernamontani*, Meadow *Hartwort* of *Marselles* or *Mompelier*. This *Gesner* in *Horto* thinks to be *Ligusticum* *Matthioli*. *Dodonaus* calls it *Siler alterum* *Pratense*, and *Baubinus* thinks it to be *Silva* *Plinij*, in *Lib.* 26. *Cap.* 8. and says it is *Passinaca nigra* *Cordi*, but that of *Cordus* has divided Leaves, like *Wild Carrots*, and has yellow Flowers, whereas this is more like *Fennel*, and has white Flowers. 4. *Seseli Peloponesiacum recentiorum*, *Seseli Peloponese verum*, *Seseli Peloponese* *Folio* *Cicutæ* *Dioscoridis*, as *Lobel* says, The Common or True *Hartwort* of *Peloponessus* of *Dioscoridis*. 5. *Seseli* *Pratense* *tenuifolium* *Baubini*, sive *Daucoides* *Pratensis* *tenuifolius*, which is the true *Passinaca nigra* *Cordi*, Nar-



row Leav'd Meadow Hartwort of Germany. 6. *Seseli Palustre Lactescens Camerarij & Baubini*, Milky Marsh Hartwort. 7. *Seseli Creticum majus Lobelij & Lugdunensis*, & *Camerarij*, *Tordylion Lobelij*, *Pimpinella Romanae alterum genus Sylvestre Cæsalpini*, The Greater Candy Hartwort. 8. *Seseli Creticum minus*, *Ordilion Nicandri*, *Tordylion Dioscoridis*, as *Angularia* says, *Tordylion* and *Gordilion Dodonæi*, *Gesneri*, & *aliorum*, *Caucalis Cretica*, & *Græcorum Belli*, *Pimpinella Romana*, *Cascalitra Belonij*, The small Candy Hartwort. 9. *Seseli Creticum majus luteum*, *Tordylion majus alterum luteum Columnæ*, Great yellow Hartwort of Candy. 10. *Seseli Apulum Creticum minimum*, *Tordylium minimum Apulum alterum Columnæ*, The smallest Candy Hartwort. 11. *Seseli Montanum Folio Cicutæ glabrum*, *Seseli primum Montanum Clusij*, Mountain Hartwort with smooth Hemlock like Leaves. This *Baubinus* thought to be *Levisticum alterum Lobelij & Lugdunensis*, and *Ligusticum secundum Herbariorum Tabernamontani*, also the *Seseli Peloponnetiacum Dioscoridis*. 12. *Seseli Montanum Folio Cicutæ sub hirsutum*, Hairy Mountain Hemlock Leav'd Hartwort. 13. *Seseli Æthiopicum frutex*, *Seseli Æthiopicum verum Dioscoridis*, as *Lobel* says, Shrub Ethiopian Hartwort. 14. *Seseli cretense nodosum*, Great jointed Hartwort of Candy.

Fingers thickness, crested, jointed, and spread forth into several Branches, and other smaller parts; the Leaves are *Fennel* like, but thicker, and shorter divided, green, and hard, with white points; its winged Stalks or Branches are large, and more spread out than *Fennel*; at the top of each Stalk and Branch is an Umbel of white Flowers, which turn into flat Seed, not much unlike to *Angelica* Seed, but larger than *Dill* Seed, hot, and very Aromaticall.



*The true Hartwort.*

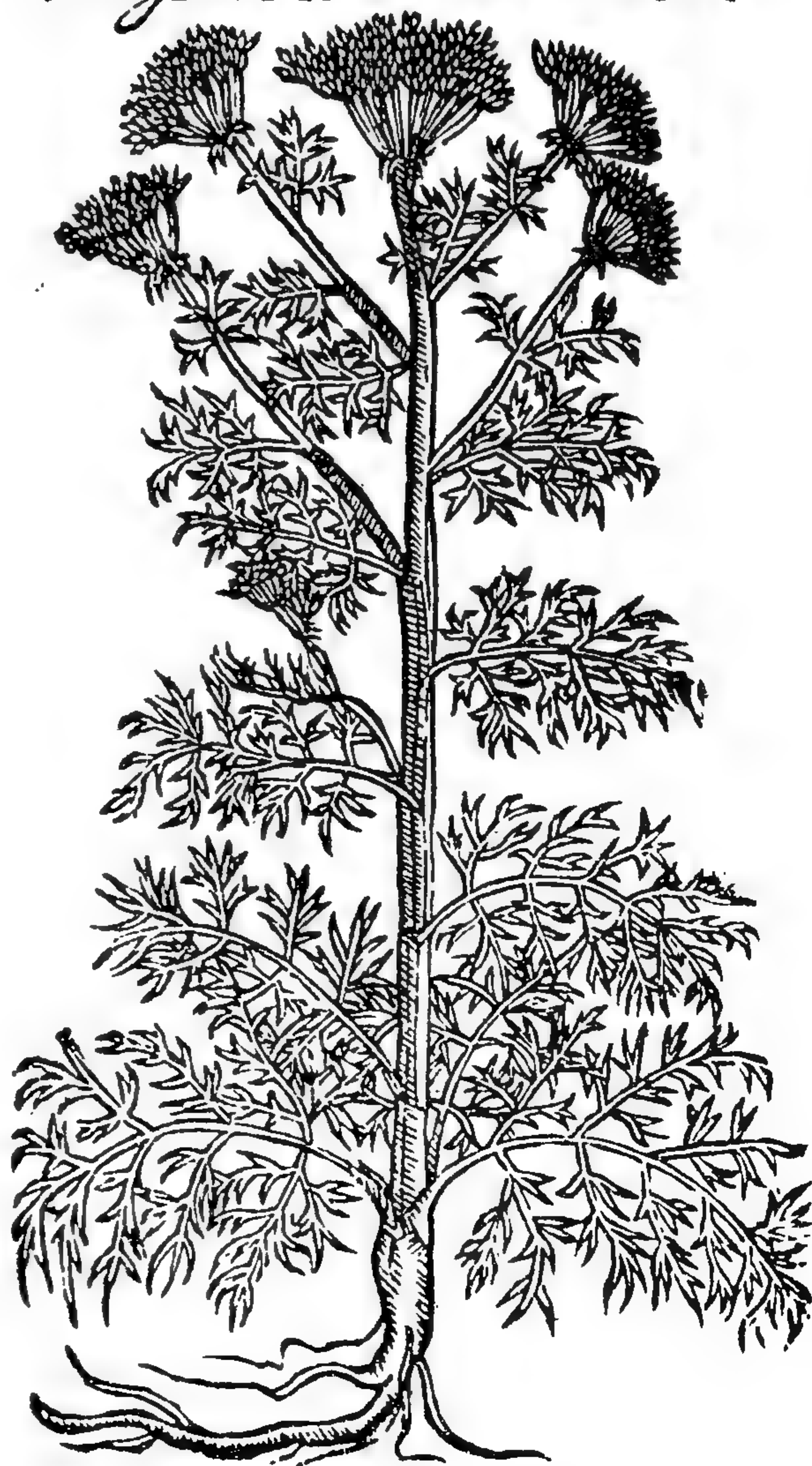
III. The Descriptions. The first, or True Hartwort of *Dioscorides*, has a very white, long, slender Root, like unto *Fennel*, but smelling better, and tasting hotter and sharper, having a few Fibres adjoining thereto; from whence rise one or more Stalks, having but few Leaves, thinly set thereon, which are thicker and shorter and harder than *Fennel* Leaves, turning downwards, of a greyish Ash color, as all the rest of the Plant is, more especially in the hotter Countries, for in some places they are thicker, or longer, or shorter than they are in others, as *Baubinus* has observed. the middle Stalk seldom rises up above a Foot high, bowing to and fro sometimes, having many Branches from its bottom, with the like Leaves on them, and each bearing Umbels of white Flowers, but sometimes purplish, though seldom; after the Flowers are gone, small long Seed follows, more like to *Aniseed* than *Fennel* Seed, pretty pleasing in taste, yet sharp and hot.

IV. The second, or Candy Hartwort, being another Hartwort of *Marfelles*. It has a thick, long, and white Root, with several Strings and Fibres adjoining thereto, from whence rise up several Stalks, the middlemost of which is about a Yard or more high, of a



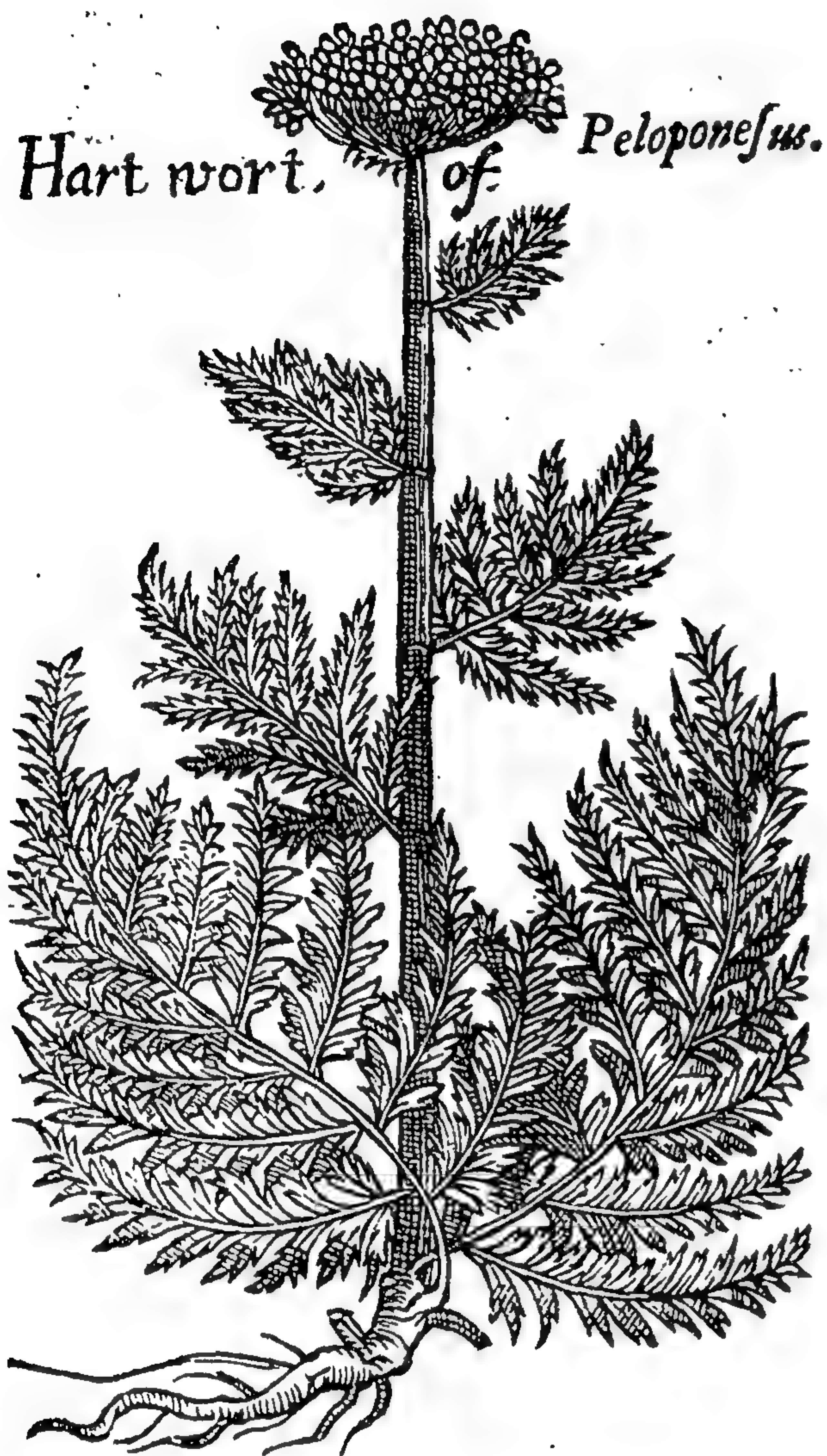
*Hartwort of Candia*

*Massilien Hartwort.*





V. *The third, or Meadow Hartwort*, has a Root which is black without and white within, divided into several Branches; with Fibres adjoining to them; from this Root rise several Stalks of Leaves, as also one main Stalk, two or three Feet high, with several large spread Stalks of winged Leaves, very finely cut into many parts, each being like unto Fennel, but larger, harder, and of a dark green color, set at the Joints, and branching forth towards the tops, bearing Umbles of white Flowers, which being past, small, long, and somewhat flat Seed comes in their place, which is larger and blacker than Fennel Seed, and near unto Meum, or Spignel, of little smell, and a small sharp taste.



VI. *The fourth, or Common or True Hartwort of Peloponessus of Dioscorides*. This *Græcian Hartwort* has a great Root, blackish on the outside, and white within, growing deep into the Ground, like *Ferula*, or *Thapsia*, something sweet in smell, and hot in taste; the Stalk grows to be about two Feet high, or more, as thick as ones Finger, with several large spread Leaves at the bottom, as great as *Hemlock*, but crumpled, rough, and hairy; the Stalk and Branches bear large Tufts or Umbles of yellow Flowers, which being past away yield broad, flat, winged Seed, of a pale yellow color, somewhat like unto *Angelica*, but greater, and nothing so thick, of a very sweet smell, as sweet as the *Seseli Æthiopicum*; this, says *Lobel*, the most Learned and Judicious Herbarists of *Mompelien* acknowledge to be the true *Seseli Peloponessæ Dioscoridis*, though formerly they took it to be a kind of *Thapsia*, but the true *Thapsia* is much differing from it both in form and color, as those who please to observe may find.

VII. *The fifth, or Narrow Leav'd Meadow Hartwort of Germany*, has a Root as thick as ones Finger, and very long, black without, and white within, of a sharp and somewhat bitter taste; from this Root springs up a round, crested, or straked Stalk, three Feet or more high, with several Joints and Leaves at them, very like for their form and divisions unto *Wild Carrot* Leaves, but smooth, and not rough, and of a deep green color, spreading it self forth in-

to several Branches, bearing at their tops Umbles of whitish yellow Flowers, after which follow small long Seed, somewhat like to those of *Fennel* or *Caraway*, or between them both, and a little Aromatic in taste.

VIII. *The sixth, or Milky Marsh Hartwort*. It has a long Root, which is brown on the outside, white within, and of an unpleasant taste, joined with much heat, by which it inflames the Throat; but being Planted in a Garden it looses much of that evil taste and burning quality, becoming much more mild; this Root sends up a Stem or Stalk four or five Feet high, with Joints, and long Stalks, or Branches of well spread Leaves set at them, the divisions of which are small, and much cut in, almost like to those of *Caraways*, or between them and *Fennel*; at the top of the Stalks it spreads forth into Branches, which bears at their tops small Umbles of white Flowers, which being past away, flat, thin, winged Seed follows; the whole Plant, or any part thereof being broken, there flows from it a certain Milk like Juice, as there likewise does from many other Umbelliferous Plants.

IX. *The seventh, or Greater Candy Hartwort*. It has a Root which is white, somewhat long, and woody after it has Seeded, and then perishes, rising again plentifully from the Sowing of its own Seed: This Root sends forth rough, hairy, round Stalks, about two or three Feet high, set with long Stalks of winged Leaves, much resembling *Parsnep* Leaves, both in form and magnitude, yet somewhat longer and narrower, dented about the edges, and pointed at the ends, being rough and hairy likewise, and turning themselves a little backwards to the Stalk; towards the tops of the Stalks they spread themselves forth into Branches, and have smaller Leaves set at the Joints than grow below, bearing Heads or Umbles of purplish white Flowers, whereon, after they are gone, grow whitish, flat, round Seed, circled about, as it were, with a border, and cut in round about it also with round dents, of little or no smell or taste.

X. *The eighth, or Small Candy Hartwort*. It has a Root which is unprofitable, and as perishing as the last, which sends up such like Stalks of winged Leaves as the former, but smaller, rounder, and shorter, a little hairy, and whitish; the Stalks are lesser and lower, fuller of Branches, bearing paler purplish Flowers in Umbles, and Seed after them, of the same form or shape, but quicker, as the Herb also is, and therefore the more accepted, and used as a Sallet Herb in *Italy*, and other Southern and hot Climates.

XI. *The ninth, or Great yellow Candy Hartwort*. This has a like Root, and grows very like the seventh, or Greater Candy Hartwort, having the like Leaves on the Stalks, but somewhat broader and shorter, a little sharp in taste, and not above two or three pairs together, set on the like Stalks, but smaller on the Branches, and bearing Umbles of yellow Flowers, like *Dill*, without any Leaves under them, as the others have, which being past away the like whitish, flat, round, Buckler like Seeds, ringed and dented about the edges follow, but they are larger and smoother, and divided in the middle, with a brownish stroke or line, making the Seed seem like unto a kind of *Thlapsi*, or *Treacle Mustard Seed*: *Columna* says that this Flowers and Seeds at *Naples* in *May*, and grows only in Gardens there.

XII. *The tenth, or Smallest Candy Hartwort*. It has a Root which is small, white, hard, and a little hot in taste; this Plant is very like unto the Lesser Candy aforegoing at Sect. X. above, but it has Leaves like to the lower Leaves of *Coriander*, soft, but a little hairy, the first Leaves being of an Inch and half



half long, and an Inch broad, and dented about the edges with round dents; the second Leaf is of two Inches long, the third has a longer Stalk, with two Leaves set thereon, smaller and rounder than the other, about half an Inch broad, and a bigger Leaf at the end, yet smaller and longer than the first Leaf; the next are lesser and longer, and the Stalk is naked of Leaves below, being small, hairy, hard, and straked, and carrying thick Umbles of white Flowers, with yellow Threads in the middle, and underfet with long hairy Leaves, the outward Flowers being larger than the inner, thereby making the Umble resemble that of the *Wild Carrot*; after which come such like Seed as the former, but not half so large, the middle part being of a darker color; before they are ripe they look of a purplish green, but when they are full ripe white, of an aromattick taste, somewhat bitter, and a little sweet in smell.

XIII. *The eleventh, or Mountain Hartwort* with smooth Hemlock like Leaves. *It has a long Root, divided into two or three Arms or Branches, of a brownish black on the outside, and white within, from whence springs up a Stalk, which is hollow, and rises up to the height of two Feet, or two Feet and a half, from which Stalk comes forth (at Joints) large spread Leaves, divided into many smaller parts, like unto Hemlock, or Sefeli Peloponese, the higher up the Stalk the smaller and longer the Leaves, which are smooth, and more finely divided; at the top of the Stalk comes forth larger Umbles of white Flowers, which turn into yellowish crested Seed, two joined together, of a hot and aromattick taste.*

XIV. *The twelfth, or Mountain Hartwort* with hairy Hemlock Leaves. *It has a long, thick, dark colored Root, which sends forth broad Hemlock like Leaves, or like to the Greater Sweet Chervil, of a dark green color, and something rough and hairy, especially the footstalks of the Leaves, from the midst of vvhich rises up a thick, hollow, crested, hairy, and jointed Stalks, about two Feet high, divided into several Branches, vvhith some few Leaves thereon, but much lesser, and in like manner divided; near the top of the Stalk it shoots it self forth into many Arms or Branches, at the tops of every one of vvhich grows a pretty large Umble of vvhite Flowers, succeeded by long sharp pointed Seed, two joined together.*

XV. *The thirteenth, or Shrub Æthiopian Hartwort.* *It has a Root which is great and woody, spreading it self out into several Arms or Branches, with several Fibres issuing therefrom, and which abides many Years, if it is defended from the cold; from this Root shoot forth several woody rough Stems, covered with a blackish Bark, divided into many Branches, two, three, or four Feet, or more long, beset with many fair, large, thick, hard, smooth, pale green Leaves, being long, and somewhat like unto Woodbind Leaves, but not so broad, smooth or even on the edges, and not snipt or dented at all; on the tops of the Branches stand small Tufts of yellow Flowers, which afterwards bear brownish, round, and long Seed, bigger than Sweet Fennel Seed; the whole Plant smells very fragrant, and the Seed best, being of an Aromattick taste, somewhat bitter, and sharp withal: This is commended by *Dioscorides* to be the best of all the *Hartworts*, beyond that of *Candy* or *Marselles*.*

XVI. *The fourteenth, or Great Jointed Hartwort* of *Candy*. *It has a Root which is composed of several slender, long, white, woody Strings, which perishes yearly, which Root sends up four or five hard, round, rough, or rather prickly Stalks, about two Feet high, whose Joints are great, and bunched out like Knees, with a rough, large, winged Leaf or two at each of them, some consisting of three, and*

some of five parts, and every one of them also divided into several parts, of a sad green color, changing reddish at Seed time; the Stalk is rough and crested, and the several Branches hereof do carry several small Tufts or Umbles of white Flowers, which being past away, there comes in their places great, long, round, and rough Seed.

XVII. *The Places.* Most of these *Sefeli's* or *Hartworts* grow about *Mompelier*, *Marselles*, and *Narbone* in *France*, as also in *Italy* and *Candy*, some in the *Morea* in *Greece*, and some in *Æthiopia*, and some of them in *Germany*, and almost all of them grow with us in *England*, where they thrive well, but are with us nurled up only in Gardens.

XVIII. *The Times.* They Flower most of them in *June* and *July* in their native places, but with us in *July* and *August*, and do bear ripe Seed in *September*, or before the end of Summer, if care be had in ordering and keeping them, so as they be Planted in the warmest places, and in a Southern Sun.

XIX. *The Qualities.* They are all of them hot and dry in the second degree, Aperitive, Absterfive, Carminative, and Diuretick; Stomatick, Pectoral; Nephritick, Neurotick, and Hysterick, Antiemetick, and Alexipharmick.

XX. *The Specification.* *Hartwort* opens Obstructions of the Lungs and Urinary parts, helps Coughs, and the Strangury, Asthma's, Colick, obstruction of the Terms, and Hysterick Fits, and facilitates the Delivery of Women in Travail.

XXI. *The Preparations.* Of all these Kinds the four first are chiefly used in Physick, (tho' it is possible all the rest may have as excellent Virtues, and be fully as efficacious) but the *Æthiopian* is preferred for its singular Virtues beyond all the other sorts, and is doubtless that which ought to be put into the Compositions of *Mithridate* and *Venice Treacle*; and this *Lobel* gathered in great plenty about *Mompelier* in *France*: As to the parts of the Plant, the Roots, the Herb, and the Seed, are all used, and from them the following Preparations are made, viz. 1. *A Juice of the Herb.* 2. *An Essence of the Herb and Root.* 3. *A Decoction in Wine or Water of the Herb, Root, and Seed.* 4. *A Pouder of the Seed.* 5. *A Cataplasm of Root, Herb, or Seed.* 6. *An Acid Tincture of Root or Seed.* 7. *A Spirituous Tincture of Root or Seed.* 8. *An Oily Tincture of Root or Seed.* 9. *A Distilled Water from Root, Herb, or Seed, or from all of them.*

#### The Virtues.

XXII. *The Juice of the Herb.* It is commended by *Dioscorides* to help the Strangury, and difficulty of breathing, as also the Suffocation of the Womb, to provoke the Terms, and expel the dead Child; it is prevalent also against the Falling-Sickness, and pains of the Kidnies. Dose three or four Spoonfuls, twice or thrice a day, mixed with a Glass of White Port Wine; mixed with Honey and taken, it is good against Coughs, Colds, Wheezings, and Obstructions of the Lungs.

XXIII. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues, being given in like manner and Dose, besides which it facilitates the Delivery of Women in Travail; the Essence or Juice taken with the Pouder of the Seed for ten days together in White Wine, gives ease in the pains of the Reins, and is said to expel the Stone lodged in those parts; if the Stone is great I am confident it can do nothing at all, but if it is Tartarous Matter, Sand, Gravel, or small Stones, then possibly it may expel them, and clear the parts of those Recrements: The Essence made of the Root is powerful in heating, and opening Obstructions, by



by reason of its thin parts, for which reason it powerfully provokes Urine, and helps the Epilepsie, and this *Galen* speaks of all the *Hartworts* in general; and *Dioscorides* says they have the same Faculties and Operations.

XXIV. *The Decoction of Root, Herb, or Seed, in Wine or Water.* It has the Virtues of both the former Preparations, but in a much lower degree, however it is often given against the Strangury, stoppage of Courses, and to facilitate the Delivery of Women, &c.

XXV. *The Pouder of the Seed.* It is said to prevail against the Stone, Gravel, Strangury, Colick, obstructions of the *Viscera*, &c. Made into an Electuary with Honey, it is good against Asthma's, Coughs, Colds, obstructions of Flegm, and causes easie Expectoration. Dose of the Pouder is one Dram, Morning, Noon, and Night, in any proper Vehicle, as White Wine, Parsly Water, *Arsmart* Water, &c.

XXVI. *The Cataplasim of the Root.* If it is beaten into a Pulp, or boiled soft, and then beaten, and brought into a consistence with *Terra Samia*, or to two parts of the Root, one part of *Terra Samia*, and an eighth part of Honey, being then applied, it is of good use to disperse simple Contusions, or Bruises, and to take away the black and blew marks or spots of the same, coming by Blows, Pinching, or otherwise.

XXVII. *The Acid Tincture of Root or Seed.* It is good against all sorts of malign and burning Fevers, the Small Pox, Spotted Fever, Calenture, and the Plague or Pestilence it self; it is also prevalent against the Bitings of Serpents, or Mad Dogs, or the Stinging of Scorpions, Hornets, or other Venomous Creatures; it cleanses powerfully the Urinary passages, is good against Stone and Strangury, as also shortness of Breath, difficulty of breathing, Hoarseness, Wheezing, and the like. Dose twenty, thirty, or forty drops at a time, (more or less, according to the quantity of the Vehicle) in Ale, Wine, or other Liquor, three or four times a day.

XXVIII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It powerfully provokes the Terms, resists Vapors, and gives ease in the Colick, and is good against the Poyson of any Venomous Creature; it is good against the Epilepsie, and other Diseases of the Nerves, Head, and Brain, proceeding from cold and moisture; it strengthens the Stomach, causes a good Appetite and a strong Digestion, cleanses and strengthens the Womb, and causes Conception. Dose from one Dram to three, Morning and Night, in Ale, Beer, or Wine, or in any other fit Vehicle, as Decoction, Distilled Water, &c.

XXIX. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against weakness of the Nerves, Palsies, numbedness of any part, Pains or Aches, whether external or internal, proceeding from cold and moisture, or any overstraining of the part; it facilitates the Birth, and causes a speedy and safe Delivery; it gives ease in the Gout, alleviating the pain in a short time; it causes an evacuation of Sand, Gravel, and Tarrarous Matter from the Reins, and other Urinary parts, and prevents the breeding of the Stone; it also gives ease in the Colick. Dose from twelve to thirty drops in any fit Vehicle, or in the Distilled Water of the same Plant; it allays itching in any place, by allaying the ferment of the Humors.

XXX. *The Distilled Water.* It is good for all Distempers abovenamed, but is much weaker, and is therefore used as a Vehicle; outwardly applied to the Skin, it takes away its discolorings, as yellowness, Tanning, Sunburning, black and blew spots, redness from Pimples, &c.

## C H A P. CCCXLIV.

## Of H A W K W E E D Common.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Ἱεράκιον*, ab *Ἱεραξ*, Accipiter, An Hawk, (sic dictum volunt quod Accipitres sibi huius succo aciem Oculorum acuere dicuntur) in Latine *Hieracium*, and by some Authors *Accipitrina*, in English *Hawkweed*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make a vast number of the Kinds of this Plant, many of which grow not with us in England; *Parkinson* divides so many as he Treats of into nine general Heads, making them in all Fifty Five several Species, viz. 1. *Sharp pointed Dandelion like Hawkweeds*, Seven Kinds. 2. *Blunt pointed Dandelion like Hawkweeds*, Ten Kinds. 3. *Gum Succory like Hawkweeds*, Four Kinds. 4. *Garden Succory like Hawkweeds*, Three Kinds. 5. *Wild Succory like Hawkweeds*, Four Kinds. 6. *Smooth Mountain Hawkweeds*, Five Kinds. 7. *Hairy Mountain Hawkweeds*, Thirteen Kinds. 8. *Meadow Hawkweeds*, Three Kinds. 9. *Bushy Hawkweeds*, Six Kinds. We shall not follow this Division, nor yet Treat of all those several Species, but only of so many as are to be found growing in England, and therefore we divide them but into two principal Kinds, viz. 1. *Of the more common Kinds of Hawkweed*, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Of the less common Kinds*, of which in Chapter 345 following.

III. *The more common Kinds.* These are in number Eleven, viz. 1. *Hieracium majus Sonchites*, *Hieracium majus Matthioli*, *Fuchsi*, *Dodonai*, *Lobelij*, & *aliorum*; *Taraxacon majus Loniceri*, *Intubus secundus Tragi*, *Hieracium Sonchi Folio variorum*, *Hieracium minus Lugdunensis*, (because he makes the *Chondrilla* prior *Dioscoridis* to be his *Hieracium magnum*) Common Great Hawkweed with Sow-Thistle Leaves. 2. *Hieracium Dentis Leonis Folio asperum*, and *hirsute asperum*, and *magis laciniatum Lobelij*, *Hieracium alterum Saxatile Montanum Columnæ*, Rough Dandelion like Hawkweed. 3. *Hieracium Dentis Leonis Folio obtuso minus Flore magno*, Dandelion like Hawkweed. 4. *Hieracium Dentis Leonis Folio Floribus parvis*, Dandelion Hawkweed with small Flowers. 5. *Hieracium asperum Hypocharis*, sive *Porcellia dictum Tabernamontani*, *Hieracium minus Dentis Leonis Folio sub aspero*, Swines Hawkweed with rough Leaves. 6. *Hieracium Folijs*, & *facia Chondrilla Lobelij*, Gum Succory like Hawkweed of Lobel. 7. *Hieracium Chondrilla Folio glabrum*, Smooth deep jagged Hawkweed. 8. *Hieracium minus Radice premorsa Lobelij*, *Hieracium minus Matthioli*, *Tragi*, *Fuchsi*, *Gesneri*, *Tabernamontani*, *Gerardi*, & *aliorum*, *Hieracium Leporinum*, *Succisa Tertia Tragi*, & *Lactuca Leporina*, *Picris Dalechampijs* & *Lugdunensis*, (because of its bitterness) *Hieracium Chondrilla Folio Radice Succisa Bauhini*, Hares Hawkweed, or Yellow Devils-bit. 9. *Hieracium sinuatum profunde Pratense*, Meadow Hawkweed with deep cut Leaves. 10. *Hieracium Pratense non sinuatum majus*, Greater undented Meadow Hawkweed. 11. *Hieracium Pratense non sinuatum minus*, The lesser undented Meadow Hawkweed. This being said, it is to be understood, that the *Hawkweeds* stand as in a medium between the *Succories* and the *Sow-Thistles*, as in some measure partaking of them both.

IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Great Hawkweed, has a Root which is long, and somewhat great, with many small Fibres thereat, from whence spring



up many large hairy Leaves, lying on the Ground, much rent or torn on the sides into several gashes and jags, somewhat like unto *Dandelion*, but with greater parts, more like unto those of the *Smooth Sore-Thistle*, the whole Plant being full of a bitter Milk; from among which rises up a hollow rough Stalk, two or three Feet high, Branched forth from the middle upwards, on which are set, at every Joint where it Brancheth, longer Leaves, little or nothing rent or cut in, bearing at their tops several pale yellow Flowers, consisting of many small narrow Leaves, broad pointed, and notched in at the ends, set in a double row, or more, the outermost being larger than the inner, which form most of the *Hawkweeds* do keep in all their Sorts or Varieties, which being past away turn into Down, and with its small brownish Seed is blown away with the Wind.



V. The second, or Rough Dandelion like Hawkweed. It has a Root which is small, somewhat like a Finger, with a few Fibres adjoining thereto, from whence spring up several long and narrow hairy Leaves, reddish at the bottom next the Root, deeply waved or torn in on the edges, being about two Inches long, from among which rise up one, or two, or more bare or naked Stalks, rough or hairy, bearing each of them a double yellow Flower, like unto the *Hawkweeds*, which being past away turns into Down, as the former does.

VI. The third, or Dandelion like Hawkweed, has a small and fibrous Root, which sends forth six or seven thick rough Leaves, lying on the Ground, about two Inches long, and half an Inch broad, round pointed, and jagged about the edges, as other *Hawkweeds* are; the Stalk is hoary also, and Branched, about a Span, or eight or nine Inches high, having smaller Leaves thereon, with smaller divisions; at the tops stand very yellow Flowers on very short Footstalks, shooting out very fine hoary Husks, pointed at the brims with many points.

VII. The fourth, or Dandelion Hawkweed with small Flowers, has a Root which is small, white, woody, and fibrous; the Stalk is round, a Foot high,

and somewhat hoary, at the bottom of which grow a few rough Leaves, bitten in (as it were) about the edges, and about three Inches long, and half an Inch broad, having but few Leaves thereon, and those about the middle, which are but only dented, and encompass it at the bottom, bearing very many small yellow Flowers together at the tops thereof, which grow upon very short Footstalks.

VIII. The fifth, or Swines Hawkweed with rough Leaves. It has a small and long Root, and is but a small Plant, having several somewhat long and rough Leaves lying on the Ground, smaller at the bottoms, and broader towards their ends, unevenly waved about the edges; the Stalks are a little rough, slender, and bare of Leaves, Branching into several long Stalks, about half a Foot in length, bearing every one a large yellow Flower, like unto the *Hawkweeds*. There is another Plant of this sort, whose Leaves are smooth and narrower, but differing little in any thing else.

IX. The sixth, or Gum Succory like Hawkweed. This grows not so high as some others, and has its Leaves thicker jagged, but not so large, each jag something dented also, and something hairy; the Flowers are yellow, but not so thick or double, but growing in a Tuft together, which being ripe, and turned into Down, are, with its Seed at bottom, blown away with the Wind, as the Down of other *Hawkweeds* are.

X. The seventh, or Smooth deep jagged Hawkweed. This differs not much from the last, but that the Leaves hereof are smooth, and very much and very deeply jagged, even to the middle Rib, each jag being small, narrow, and pointed; its Stalks, Flowers, Down, and Seeds are like unto the former.

### Small Hares Hawkweed.



XI. The eighth, or Hares Hawkweed, or Yellow Devils-Bit. Its Root is made up of many Strings, like a Plantane Root, but the middlemost part, which is greatest, is short, as if it had been bitten off, like the Root of Devils-Bit: This Root sends up many Leaves, of which those which lye next the Ground are somewhat long and narrow, cut in on the edges into small and



and short pointed gashes; the Stalks are small, and scarcely grow to be a Foot high, spread out into a few Branches, with some Leaves here and there upon them, which have no division or dents on the sides; at the tops of the Branches stand the Flowers, which are much separated one from another, each upon a long Footstalk, consisting of fewer Leaves, or being less double, of a Gold yellow Color, which being past away, are succeeded with Down, like the other *Hawkweeds*; the whole Plant, and every part thereof is very bitter, rather more bitter than any of the others.

XII. *The ninth, or Meadow Hawkweed* with deep cut Leaves. *The Root is blackish and woody*; the Leaves lying next the Ground are many, long, and narrow, and deeply cut or torn in on the edges, and pointed at the ends, each Leaf standing upon a long Footstalk, and covered with a Downy hairiness, as the whole Plant besides is; the Stalk is hollow, round, and about a Yard high, having a few such like deep cut Leaves thereon; it is spread forth into several Branches, at the tops of which stand Gold yellow Flowers on several long Footstalks, succeeded by Down, as the others are.

XIII. *The tenth, or Greater undented Meadow Hawkweed*, has a small and black Root, with several long Strings adjoining to it, from whence rise up several rough Leaves, lying upon the Ground, each about five Inches long, and an Inch and half broad, without any gash or dent on the edges, being very green, and ending in a round point, from among which rises up one single, straight, and crested Stalk, about a Foot and half high, wholly naked, or destitute of Leaves, bearing at the top a number of small yellow Flowers, set close together, as it were in a Tuft, every one upon a short Footstalk, which being past away, do, like the rest, turn into Down, and pass away with the Wind.

XIV. *The eleventh, or Lesser undented Meadow Hawkweed*. Its Root is something long, and of a mean thickness; the Plant is lesser than the former, and has many lesser Leaves undented lying upon the Ground, of an Inch and half long, and an Inch broad, being almost round, and rough; the Stalk which rises from the middle of them stands upright, and is crested, bearing at the top a few such like Flowers as the former, which being past away turn into Down, which is also carried away with the Wind.

XV. *The Places*. The first and second grow in several places about Fields and Pathways in dry Grounds; the third, fourth and fifth grow also in Fields, waste Grounds, Lanes, and By-Ways in many places of *England*; the sixth, seventh and eighth grow also plentifully enough in many places of our Land, and sometimes in Gardens; the ninth, tenth and eleventh grow in Fields and Meadows, and by Wood sides which lye open to the Sun.

XVI. *The Times*. They all Flower, and the Down flies away in the Summer Months, viz. in *June, July, and August*, and rise again of their own Sowing.

XVII. *The Qualities*. They are all cold and dry in the first degree, Absterfve, Astringent, Anodyn, Diuretick, Pectoral, Stomatick, and Alexipharmick.

XVIII. *The Specification*. It eases pains of Liver and Spleen, and opens obstructions of the Lungs.

XIX. *The Preparations*. You may have therefrom, 1. *An Inspissate Juice*. 2. *An Essence*. 3. *A Decoction in Wine*. 4. *A Collyrium*. 5. *A Cataplasm*. 6. *A Distilled Water*. 7. *An Acid Tincture*. 8. *A Saline Tincture*.

### The Virtues.

XX. *The Inspissate Juice*. A Dram thereof dissolved in White Port Wine, adding a little Vinegar when it is given, opens the obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, provokes Urine, and prevails against the Dropfie; it is also good against the Stinging of Scorpions, and Biting of Serpents, or other Venomous Beasts; it is also good against the pain and hardness of the Spleen, and procures Rest and Sleep.

XXI. *The Essence and Liquid Juice*. It is cooling, drying, and binding, and therefore good for the heat of the Stomach, and gnawing thereof, for Inflammations, and the hot Fits of Agues; the Juice given to two or three Spoonfuls in Wine helps Digestion, discusses Wind, hinders Crudities, helps the depraved Tone of the Stomach, is good against the Strangury, or stoppage of Urine, and prevails against all the Diseases for which the Inspissate Juice is given.

XXII. *The Decoction in Wine*. It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not full out so powerful; made with *Wild Succory* and taken, it helps the Wind Colick, pains and hardness of the Spleen, procures Rest and Sleep, hinders Venery, and Nocturnal Pollutions, cools and purifies the Blood, opens obstructions, and cleanses the Stomach, Reins, and Bladder: The Decoction mixed with Honey and taken, it digests thin Flegm in the *Thorax* or Lungs; helps the Cough, Hoarseness, Wheezings, obstructions of the *Viscera*, and causes Expectoration. Dose six or eight Ounces twice a day, viz. Morning and Night.

XXIII. *The Collyrium*. It is thus made. Take clarified juice of Hawkweed eight Ounces, Honey four Ounces, Roch Alum six Drums, mix, melt, and make a Collyrium. It is singular good for all Defects and Diseases of the Eyes, in tender Sighted People it may be mixed with Womens Breast Milk, or with Cows Milk, and so used; it is also used with good success in curing fretting and eating Ulcers in any part, especially in their beginning.

XXIV. *The Cataplasm*. Outwardly applied it is good for hot Distempers of the Eyes; if it is made of the green Herb bruised, and with a little Salt applied to any place burn'd with Fire, before Blisters do arise, it takes out the Fire, and gives ease; it also allays Inflammations, and St. *Antonies-Fire*, cures Pusches and Eruptions in the Skin, abates heat, and draws forth salt virulent Humors; if it is made by boiling with a little Milk and Barley Flower, or White Bread, and applied to any place affected with Convulsions, or the Cramp, or where there is a simple Contusion, it resolves the Tumor, and eases the pain.

XXV. *The Distilled Water*. It is said to cleanse the Skin, and take away Freckles, Spots, Morpew, or Wrinkles in the Face and Skin.

XXVI. *The Acid Tincture*. It removes the preternatural heat of the Stomach, cools the heat of Fevers, and helps a hot and dry Liver. Dose so many drops as to make the Ale, Beer, or Wine pleasantly acid, and to be drunk in all that the Patient drinks; it cures also a hot Scurvy.

XXVII. *The Saline Tincture*. It is good against the Gout, whether in Hands or Feet, the parts affected being well bathed therewith as hot as can be endured; it is also good against Tanning, Sunburning, yellowness of the Skin, black and blue spots thro' Blows, or Bruises, Freckles, Lentils, Scurff, Morpew, Pimples, and other hot, salt, and fiery breakings out of the Skin, in what part of the Body soever, being skilfully applied.



C H A P. CCCXLV.

## Of H A W K W E E D Less Common.

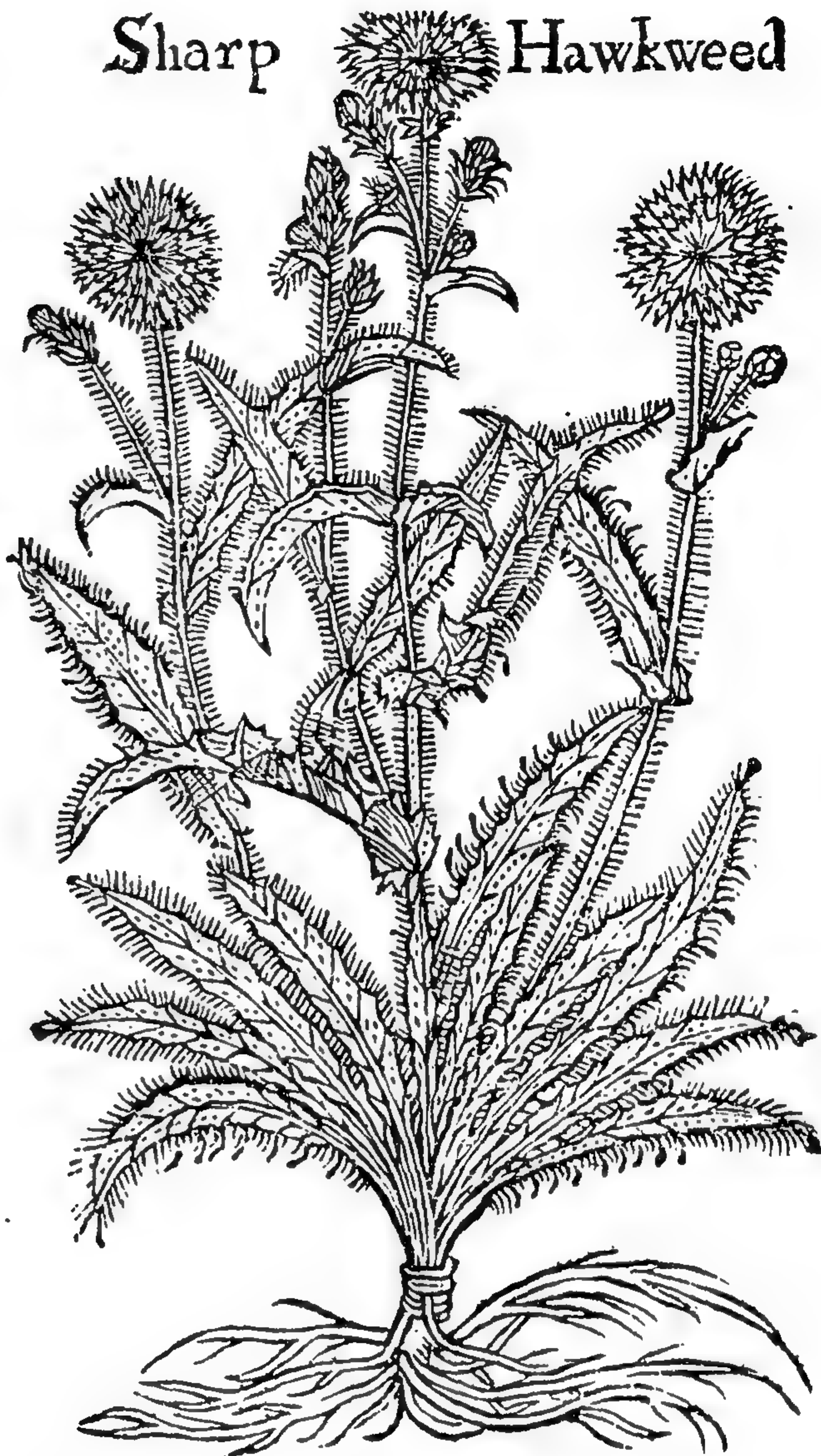
**I. T H E Names.** It is called in Greek *ἱεράκων* *μακρόν*, & *ἱεράκων ἀθήρις*, in Latine *Hieracium incommune*, vel *rarum*, *Hieracium minus commune*, in English *Hawkweed less common*, or not so easie to be met with, as being either rare, or otherwise, Exotics, and so only Garden Plants with us.

**II. The Kinds.** All the various Kinds enumerated in Authors, as aforementioned, we shall not trouble you withal here, many of them being absolutely Foreign, and so never to be seen with us, some of them only various, or degenerated, or otherwise altered, from the poorness or richness of the Soil, or other qualifications of the Ground, and so never to be met withal again in Nature; those which we shall now describe are the twenty following, viz. 1. *Hieracium asperum*, *Hieracium Intubaceum asperum* *Tabernamontani*, Sharp, or Sharp pointed Hawkweed. 2. *Hieracium majus alterum*, The other Great Hawkweed. 3. *Hieracium longius Radicatum* *Lobelij*, and *Microphyllon Tabernamontani*, *Hieracium minus primum* *Dodonei*, *Apargia Dalechampi*, of which *Theophrastus* speaks Lib. 7. Cap. 9. *Hieracium Dentis Leonis Folio obtuso majus* *Baubini*, Long Rooted Hawkweed. 4. *Hieracium Intubaceum Flore luteo* *Baubini*, Garden Succory like Hawkweed with yellow Flowers. 5. *Hieracium Intubaceum Flore magno albido*, Garden Succory like Hawkweed with white Flowers. 6. *Hieracium Intubaceum Flore Carne*, *Hieracium Ramosum* *Pena*, *Hieracium Apulum Flore suave rubente* *Columnæ*, Garden Succory like Hawkweed with blush Flowers. 7. *Hieracium Folio Hedypnoidis*, Wild Succory like Hawkweed with yellow Flowers; it is called *Rbagadiolus* by *Cesalpinus*. 8. *Hieracium Montanum Latifolium glabrum majus* *Tabernamontani*, Great broad Leav'd smooth Mountain Hawkweed. 9. *Hieracium Montanum Latifolium glabrum minus* *Tabernamontani*, Small broad Leav'd smooth Mountain Hawkweed. 10. *Hieracium Montanum Rapifolium*, Turnep Leav'd Hawkweed. 11. *Hieracium Montanum Folijs dentatis Flore magno*, Dented Mountain Hawkweed with a great Flower. 12. *Hieracium Ramosum Flore magno*, Great Flowered Hawkweed. 13. *Hieracium Montanum Latifolium villosum magno Flore Clusij*, Hairy broad Leav'd Mountain Hawkweed with a large Flower. 14. *Hieracium Montanum Dentis Leonis Folio incano*, *Hieracium Folio Hedypnoidis Clusij*, *Hieracium Montanum Angustifolium Folijs Cichoraceis* *Tabernamontani*, Mountain hoary Dandelion like Hawkweed. 15. *Hieracium Britanicum Conyza Folio Clusij*, English Fleabane like Hawkweed. 16. *Hieracium Latifolium Clusij*, *Hieracium Phlomoideis* *Tabernamontani*, *Hieracium Latifolium Pannonicum Camerarij Flore magno luteo*, Broad Leav'd Hawkweed with a great yellow Flower, which is the *Primum Clusij*. 17. *Hieracium fruticosum Folio sub rotundo* *Baubini*, Round Leav'd bushy Hawkweed. 18. *Hieracium fruticosum Latifolium hirsutum*, Rough broad Leav'd bushy Hawkweed. 19. *Hieracium fruticosum Angustifolium majus*, The Greater narrow Leav'd bushy Hawkweed. 20. *Hieracium fruticosum minus*, The Lesser bushy Hawkweed.

**III. The Descriptions.** The first, or Sharp pointed Hawkweed. It has a Root which is tough, and fibrous, or thready, from whence rise up many Leaves, which are long and narrow, like those of

*Languebeef*, or *Ox-Tongue*, but much narrower, which are sharp about the edges, rough in the middle, and withal sharp pointed; the Stalks are long and slender, set with the like Leaves, but lesser; the Flowers grow at the tops, which are yellow colored and double, which being past, are succeeded by Down, which is carried away with the Wind.

Sharp Hawkweed



**IV. The second, or other Great Hawkweed.** The whole Plant is bitter, and perishes at the first approach of Winter, being but Annual, and to be new Sown every Year; its first Leaves are little or nothing dented, but something like *Endive*, yet those which follow are cut in on the sides, not so much as the *Sow-Thistle*, else not much unlike, which are more tender, yet larger than the first in the former Chapter, as the Stalks are likewise, bearing on the Branches greater Husks, wherein the Flowers grow, which pass into Down, with rough crooked Seed lying therein, and are both dispersed and blown away with the Wind.

**V. The third, or Long Rooted Hawkweed.** Its Root is white, small, and long, running down as deep into the Ground says *Lobel* as the Stalk is high, yet some of it has been observed with more and shorter Roots; the Leaves which lye upon the Ground are long and narrow, much torn and jagged on the edges, somewhat like unto *Dandelion*, but cut into many short round pointed pieces, of a dark green color; the Stalks which arise from among the Leaves are smooth and blackish, scarcely a Foot high, bare, or without Leaves on them unto the tops, but at the upper Joint, from whence spring several Flowers, each standing upon a long foot-stalk, which are of a yellow color, like unto other *Hawkweeds*, and being once past away, the Heads are filled with Seeds covered with Down, which is carried away with the Wind.

**VI. The fourth, or Garden Succory like Hawkweed** with yellow Flowers. It has a long down right Root, of a mean size for thickness, and some Fibres adjoining to it, which tends forth a slender smooth Stalk, about a Foot high, yet somewhat leaning  
R r r down-



downwards, spread into many Branches, at the foot of which grow long, smooth, dark green Leaves, about four Inches in length, and an Inch and half in breadth, some of them without divisions, and others very much rent, torn, or jagged, very irregularly, almost (in some places) to the middle Rib, as are all those especially which grow higher and upward on the Stalk and Branches, each of the Branches and Stalk being about an Hand breadth below the tops, bare of Leaves, and at the tops of each of which grows a yellow Flower, of a middle size, which turns into Down, and is carried away with the Wind.

VII. *The fifth, or Garden Succory like Hawkweed* with White Flowers. This Plant in its Root, Stalk, Branches, Leaves, and Flowers, is very like unto the former fourth Kind, but that the Leaves in this are something larger and broader, and more cut in, or jagged and torn on the sides, even to the middle Rib, (tho' they can hardly be more irregularly torn or jagged than the former) the Flowers also in this Plant are of a whitish color, and more yellow in the middle, also somewhat reddish underneath, which passing away turn into Down.

VIII. *The sixth, or Garden Succory like Hawkweed* with bluish Flowers. It has a Root which is composed of a down right Stem, with several Fibres adjoining thereto, which always perish after Seed time; from this Root spring up several long and somewhat narrow rough Leaves, lying next the Ground, very much rent or torn in on the edges, and from among these Leaves rise five, or six, or more, slender, short, brown, and hairy Stalks, about a Foot or more high, shooting forth into one or two Branches, with lesser Leaves, and less divided, up to the tops, where are several large Flowers, consisting of two or three rows of Leaves, of a deep bluish color, and of a somewhat strong *Opium* like smell, which Leaves of Flowers are broad pointed, and nicked at the ends, the outwardmost row being larger than the inner, standing in rough scaly Husks, in which afterwards the slender, long, brown Seed is contained, which lying among much Down, are carried away together with the Wind.

IX. *The seventh, or Wild Succory like Hawkweed* with yellow Flowers. It has a Root which is long and white, with some small Fibres adjoining thereto, which sends up some few Leaves, lying next the Ground, something long and narrow, waved, or unevenly dented about the edges, in some more, in others less, and sometimes hairy withal, yet when Planted in Gardens has little or none at all; it also sends forth many slender Stalks, with a few Leaves set dispersedly upon them, which are smaller than those below, and sharp pointed; these Stalks branch forth at their tops, on which stand several green scaly Husks, with yellow Flowers in them, a little bending their Heads before they are blown, in which grow crooked Seed, lying in the Down, which after the Flowers are past away, are both carried away with the Wind.

X. *The eighth, or Great broad Leav'd smooth Mountain Hawkweed*. It has a bushy Root, wholly made up of a great number of Fibres or Strings, which sends forth several fair great Leaves, something narrow at the lower ends, and broader to the middle, where they are broadest, then declining in their breadth, and ending in a point, being unevenly dented or waved about the edges, and encompassing the Stalk or Branches as they rise up, the Stalk and Branches bear every one of them three or four Flowers, yet not in an Umbel like manner; these Flowers seldom appear open, but when they do they are yellow, like unto others, which afterwards pass into Down, and are also carried away with the Wind.

XI. *The ninth, or Small broad Leav'd smooth Mountain Hawkweed*. This Plant in its Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Branches, Flowers, and Seed, as also in its manner of growing, differs not from the former great Kind, but only in its magnitude, this being in all respects smaller, and the whole Plant lower and lesser.

XII. *The tenth, or Turnep Leav'd Hawkweed*. The Root is something long and stringy, of a reddish yellow color, which sends forth a few Leaves, standing upon long and rough reddish Footstalks next the Ground, something like unto *Turnep* Leaves, being rough, and torn in on the sides into round pointed jags, from among which rises up a rough, reddish, straked Stalk, a Foot and half or more high, with one or two small short Leaves thereon, divided towards the top into many small Branches, on each whereof stands one Flower for the most part, and sometimes two, of a middle size, and a yellow color, which being past away turn into Down, which, (as the rest) is carried away with the Wind.

XIII. *The eleventh, or Dented Hawkweed* with a great Flower. The Root is much like the former, which sends forth Leaves, lying for the most part all on the Ground, being four or five Inches long, and an Inch broad, a little woolly or hoary, and finely dented about the edges, of a sad green color; the Stalk rises up to be about a Foot high, and is in a manner bare of Leaves, rough, and hollow, bearing one reasonable large deep yellow Flower at the top, standing in a fine scaly Husk, which turns into Down, as the rest do, and is blown away with the Wind.

XIV. *The twelfth, or Great Flowered Hawkweed*. This is a large *Hawkweed*, and has a round rough Stalk, three Feet high, spread out into many Branches, on every one of which stands a large Gold yellow Flower, like unto *Dandelion*; the Leaves are three or four Inches long, and two or three Inches broad, with a great Rib in the middle, and many Veins running thro' them, of a pale green color, something rough, waved about the edges, and set about with small Hairs, and many Veins running from the said Rib.

XV. *The thirteenth, or Hairy broad Leav'd Mountain Hawkweed* with a large Flower. It has a pretty thick Root, with many Fibres springing from it; and tho' it is a *Broad Leav'd Hawkweed*, yet its lower Leaves are long, and something narrow, covered with a long hairy Down, almost hoary, but those which grow up higher upon the hairy Stalk, which is about a Foot high, are something shorter, but three times broader, pointed at the ends, and less hairy; the Stalk spreads it self out into two or three Branches, every one bearing commonly one Flower, and sometimes two or three, out of woolly or very hoary Husks, of the form and color of other *Hawkweeds*, turning also in like manner into Down.

XVI. *The fourteenth, or Mountain hoary Dandelion like Hawkweed*. The Roots of this Plant lie spreading themselves under the upper Crust of the Earth, sending forth several Fibres, shooting downwards; from this Root come up divers heads of Leaves, which are not all of an equal length, but some longer, and some shorter than others, as being one, two, or more Inches long, and half an Inch broad, with a great or thick middle Rib, covered over with a soft hairy Down or Cotton, the lower parts of them being narrower, and much torn in on the sides, and the upper part broader, and but only dented, from among which rise up two or three Stalks of a Foot long without any Leaves, and bearing at top one large Flower, of a deeper yellow color than in many others.

XVII. *The fifteenth, or English Fleabane like Hawkweed*. It has a Root which is composed of

many



many black Strings, which perish not, but abide many Years; this Plant rises up with round, straked, reddish, green Stalks, a Foot and half high, set with somewhat large rough Leaves, like unto those of *Heabane*, without any order, but not so fat or thick, and dented about the edges, encompassing them at the bottom, and pointed at the ends; the Flowers are yellow, like to other *Hawkweeds*, set in hairy Husks upon long Footstalks, which turn into Down, and with the whitish long Seed is blown away with the Wind.

XVIII. *The sixteenth, or Broad Leav'd Hawkweed* with a great yellow Flower. It has divers large hoary Leaves lying next the Ground, sometimes a little waved, sometimes again torn on the edges, sometimes with black spots on them, and sometimes without any, from among which rises up an hairy Stalk, with very few Leaves thereon, spread out at the top into two or three other Branches, at the tops of each of which is a large yellow Flower, like to the *Great Hawkweeds*.

XIX. *The seventeenth, or Round Leav'd bushy Hawkweed*. It grows about a Foot and half high, the Stalk being straked, round, and somewhat rough, spread out at top into several Branches, three or four Inches long apiece, every one having at its head a pale yellow Flower; the Leaves encompass the Stalk at their lower ends, and are somewhat round, about an Inch and half broad, yet ending in a little point, dented about the edges, hoary, and of a light green color.

XX. *The eighteenth, or Rough broad Leav'd bushy Hawkweed*, has a Root wholly composed of Strings and small Fibres, which being cut or broken yield a Milk like Juice, as most of the *Hawkweeds* do; it has broad and something long, hard, rough, dark green Leaves lying on the Ground, without any incisures or dents on the edges; the Stalk which rises up among them is two or three Feet high, thick set with such Leaves unto the top, but less, and growing lesser and lesser; at the tops stand a few yellow Flowers, composed of fewer Leaves than the Flower of the other Kinds, consisting but of one row, which are as the border to the middle Thrum, and being past away turn into Down; sometimes this is found to vary, with less rough, or rather with soft Leaves, sometimes broader and shorter.

XXI. *The nineteenth, or Greater narrow Leav'd bushy Hawkweed*. It has a Root which is whitish, very long, and deeply spreading into the Earth, quickly over running a great deal of Ground, for every little piece being broken off will grow, and so is not easie to be rooted out of that place where it has once taken possession; this *Hawkweed* grows very like the last, but has longer and narrower Leaves, somewhat rough, and dented or waved about the edges; the Stalk is more Branched at the top, where the Flowers are more and thicker, the Leaves of which are of a fair yellow color.

XXII. *The twentieth, or Lesser bushy Hawkweed*. It has a Root which is short, and as it were bitten off, without any Fibres at it; this lesser bushy Kind rises up with a single Stalk, about a Foot and half high, set about with several short and smooth Leaves in some places, and with almost round rough Leaves in others, dented about the edges, and at the top bearing several yellow Flowers upon short Footstalks, much like the last.

XXIII. *The Places*. The first six are Planted for the most part in Gardens, having been first brought to us out of *Italy*, yet the second of them has been found growing Wild in *England*; the seventh is a native of *France*, but transplanted hither; the eighth and ninth only grow with us in Gardens; the tenth,

eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, and sixteenth, grow upon Mountains and Hills in several parts of *England*, are also Natives of *Italy* and *Germany*, and are many of them transplanted also into our Gardens; the four last Kinds grow with us in Gardens, as also naturally Wild in several places of *England* and *Germany*; the eighteenth and nineteenth have been found growing in the way going from *London* to *Hampsted Heath*, as also in several other places.

XXIV. *The Times*. They all Flower, and their Down flies away in the Summer Months, and rise again of their own Seed, but some of them will abide until the cold of *Autumn* causes them to perish, but the most tender of them will Flower with us till the end of *August*, the Seed ripening in the mean time.

XXV. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of all these are the very same with the *Common Kinds* in the former Chapter, and are thought to be no less effectual than they in all the Effects and Properties pertaining to them, to which you are referred.

XXVI. *An Observation*. It is to be noted, that tho' the properties and force of all these Plants may be said to be one and the same with the former *Common Kinds*, both from their form and their bitter taste, which indicates in a great measure their Qualities and Virtues, yet the *sixteenth, or Broad Leav'd Hawkweed* aforegoing, is particularly commended by *Camerarius* as a thing singularly good for the Phthisick, or Consumption of the Lungs, being made into a Conserve or Syrup, or the Pouder of the Herb being taken with Honey; he says that in *Mysia* they put it into their Sallets, Broth, and Meats, for the same purpose; and that it is available for the Pleurisie also, being so affirmed by several Authorities, and that without any help of Blood letting: If the Pouder, Conserve, or Syrup, be so effectual as *Camerarius* says, then without doubt the Liquid Juice or Essence must very much transcend any of those Preparations: The Essence may be given three or four Spoonfuls at a time, Morning, Noon, and Night, either alone, or else mixed with any proper Vehicle, and so to be continued till the Ulceration of the Lungs is digested, cleansed, and healed, which you may easily know by the fresh Countenance of the Diseased Patient, and by his getting a new production of Flesh upon his Back, as also by his ceasing to spit Matter and Corruption.

## C H A P. CCCXLVI.

### Of HEARTS--EASE Garden,

O R,

P A N S I E.

I. *THE Names*. It is called in *Greek* *Ἰνδία* *χέρον*, it seems to be the *Viola Flammea*, which *Gaza* will have to be *φάξ*, or *φλόξεν*, in *Theophrastus Lib. 6. Cap. 6.* in *Latine* *Viola Tricolor*, *Herba Trinitatis*, *Herba Clavellata*, and of some *Jacea*, but this last Name is most proper to *Knapsweed*, of which in its place; in *English* *Hearts-Ease*, *Herb Trinity*, and *Pansie*.

II. *The Kinds*. It is of three principal Kinds, viz. 1. *Viola Tricolor*, *Viola Trinitatis*, or *Flos Trinitatis Hortensis*, Garden Hearts-Ease, of which in



this Chapter. 2. *Flos Trinitatis Sylvestris*, Wild Hearts-Ease, of which in Chap. 347.

III. The Garden Kinds. There are three sorts of the Garden Kinds, viz. 1. *Flos*, seu *Viola Tricolor Hortensis communis*, *Viola Flammea major & minus*, The Greater, or Common Garden Hearts-Ease. 2. *Flos*, seu *Viola Tricolor Hortensis*, *Viola Flammea Hortensis Flore duplici*, Hearts-Ease with double Flowers. 3. *Viola Flammea lutea maxima*, The Great yellow Hearts-Ease.



IV. The Descriptions. The first Greater or Common Garden Hearts-Ease. It has a Root composed of

nothing else but a bunch or knot of fibrous Strings, and perishes every Year, the Plant raising it self up plentifully by its own Sowing, where it is suffered; its Leaves are longer, and more indented or cut in on the edges than those of the Violet; the Stalks are upright, yet weak, and ready to fall down and lye upon the Ground, set here and there with the like Leaves, from whence come forth the Flowers, having little or no smell, and made in form like unto a Violet, yet more open, and with larger Leaves, but so variably mixed with Blew, or Purple, White and Yellow, that it is difficult to set down all the varieties; for some Flowers will be more White, and but some spots of Purple or Blew in the two upper Leaves, and the lower Leaves with some stripes of yellow in the middle; others will have more Purple in them than any other color, both in the upright and lower Leaves, the side Leaves Blew, and the middle Yellow; and others White and Blew, with yellow stripes, as Nature is pleased to vary the Colors: The Seed is small, whitish, and round, and contained in small round Heads. The lesser is like to this.

V. The second, or Hearts-Ease with double Flowers. This is a very pleasing Plant, and bears Flowers with more Leaves than the former, making it seem to be twice double, and that only in Autumn, for the first Flowers, which come in Summer, are single; this is of that sort which bears Purple Flowers, and it is to be noted, that the Seed of this Kind will not all bring double Flowers, but only some of them, where the Ground is fit, and the Plant thrives and takes a liking to it; so that if you have once had of this Double Kind, you shall seldom miss to have double Flowers again every Year of its own growing or sowing.

VI. The third, or Great yellow Hearts-Ease. This is another Species which decks and adorns our Gardens, and therefore is not to be left out; its Leaves and Flowers are like the former, but more plentiful in Stalks and Branches, and better abides our Winters; the Flowers are larger than any of the former, of a fair pale yellow color, with some yellow stripes now and then about the middle, for it is sometimes without any stripes, and also of a little deeper yellow color; this Plant is to be encreased by slips, which will soon multiply in a fertil and moist Ground, for it has scarcely ever been observed to bear Seed.

VII. The Places. All these Plants were first Wild, and by being brought into the Garden, and Manuring, they have been brought to a very great fairness of color, and the beauty which they now possess, and also to a better smell than when they grew Wild; and in the same manner I believe many other Wild Plants might have been improved, even to a kind of perfection.

VIII. The Times. Hearts-Ease seldom Flowers until May, but then some will abide to Flower until the end of Autumn almost, if Frosts, by their being too early, hinder not, as those of the Double Kind.

IX. The Qualities. Hearts-Ease seems to be temperate as to its first Qualities, it is Emollient and Glutinous, in all its Parts and Qualities like unto Violets, but in its glutinous quality more like to Mallows; it is Cosmetick, Vulnerary, Pectoral, and Alexipharmick.

X. The Specification. It is said to be good against Ulcers of the Lungs, and the Epilepsie.

XI. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A Juice or Essence. 2. A Decoction in Water or Wine. 3. A Syrup. 4. A Cataplasm. 5. An Ointment or Balsam. 6. A Powder of the Herb and Flowers.



Flowers. 7. A Distilled Water. 8. An Acid Tincture.

The Virtues.

XII. *The Juice or Essence.* They are very viscous, and emollient, good against hot Diseases of the Breast and Lungs, and against Agues; being taken three Hours before the coming of the Fit, as also against Convulsions, and the Falling-Sickness in Children; it is also good to bath the places troubled with the Itch, Tettars, Scabs, or other breakings out in the Skin, and to cleanse old Sores and foetid Ulcers, being washed therewith: You may take from three to six Spoonfuls at a time in the Morning fasting, and last at Night going to Bed, either alone by it self, or mixed with some fit Vehicle.

XIII. *The Decoction in Water or Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice or Essence, but not altogether so powerful, but is something better to wash old Sores and Ulcers withal, because it cleanses more, dries and heals; inwardly it may be given from four to eight, or ten Ounces, according to the Age and Condition of the Patient. *Lugdunensis* says that many Sacks full of the Herb and Flowers are Yearly Transported from *Marseilles* in France unto *Alexandria*, and other parts of *Ægypt*, where they use them boiled in Water, which only (by their Religion) they are enjoined to drink; and this they do, not only thereby to make the Water the more wholsom to be drunk, but are also perswaded that it helps against Diseases of the Breast and Lungs.

XIV. *The Syrup.* It may be made of the Juice or Essence, with Honey, or of the Flowers, exactly in the same manner as you make Syrup of Violets. They are both admirable Pectorals, cause easie Expectoration, and cleanse the Thorax, or Breast, Lungs, and Stomach, from crude salt Flegm, frothy and viscous Humors, and other like Tartarous Matter, which causes Coughs, Wheezing, Hoarseness, shortness of Breath, difficulty of Breathing, and other like Diseases of those parts; it is also said to heal a *Phthisis*, or Ulceration of the Lungs, being timely and assiduously taken. The Syrup of the Flowers mixed with fair Water, and the Juice of Limons, and so made as it may be freely potable, being largely drank, it quenches Thirst, abates præternatural heat, and extinguishes burning Fevers.

XV. *The Cataplasme.* It is good to be applied to simple Contusions, as also to places broken out with the Itch, Scabs, Tettars, Pimples, Scurff, Morpew, &c. for it discusses, opens the Pores, cleanses, and absorbs the sharpness of the Humor.

XVI. *The Ointment or Balsam.* They may be made of the Liquid Juice, or Green Herb, according to the usual Method; they digest, cleanse, dry and heal Wounds, and ill conditioned Ulcers; the Balsam many times heals a simple green Wound at once or twice dressing; it is also a very good thing to be applied in the extremities of the Gout, giving ease in a very short time.

XVII. *The Powder of Herb and Flowers.* It is Vulnerary, being applied dry upon Ulcers, it sucks up their moisture, cleanses, incarnates, and dries, thereby inducing a speedy healing, more especially if the Sore or Ulcer be every time, before it is applied, well washed with the Juice or Essence.

XVIII. *The Distilled Water.* *Costeus* in his Book of the Nature of Plants says, that the Distilled Water of *Hearts-Ease* is commended in the French Disease to be profitable, being taken for nine days, or more, and Sweating upon it; how true this is I will not say, but wish that by Experience it might be confirmed; if the Distilled Water can have such Virtues, what may the Liquid Juice or Essence be able

to do in the same Case? I doubt not but they exceed the Distilled Water ten times at least in their Power and Effects; but the Distilled Water mixed with the Juice Liquid, or Inspissate, becomes an excellent thing for the conglutinating and healing of simple green Wounds.

XIX. *The Acid Tincture.* It is a singular thing to abate the burning Fit of Agues, and extinguish the most vehement heat, even of malign Fevers; it is good against all malign Diseases, and resists the Plague or Pestilence it self. Dose so many drops as to make the Vehicle gratefully sharp and pleasant, and to be taken in all that the Patient drinks; it also quenches Thirst admirably.

C H A P. CCCXLVII.

Of HEARTS-EASE Wild,

O R,

HERB TRINITY Wild.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *Ἰὸν φλόγιον*, in Latine *Viola Flammea Sylvestris*, *Herba Trinitatis Nemoralis*, *Flos Trinitatis Nemorosus*, *vel Sylvestris*, and in English *Wild Hearts-Ease*, *Wild Pansies*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are four Species of this Plant, viz. 1. *Viola Tricolor Sylvestris communis*, The Common Wild Hearts-Ease. 2. *Viola Tricolor affurgens*, Upright Wild Hearts-Ease. 3. *Viola Tricolor lutea Sylvestris*, Wild yellow Hearts-Ease. 4. *Viola Tricolor Petraea*, Stoney Hearts-Ease.

Hearts-Ease Wild.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common Wild Hearts-Ease. It has a fibrous Root, which sends



\**p* at first many round Leaves, afterwards they grow something longer, and are slightly cut about the edges, and by their weakness lye upon the Earth; the Stalks are weak and tender, and tho' they seem to grow a little upright, yet they seem to trail, or lean towards the Ground, upon which grow several like Leaves, as also Flowers, like to *Violets*, upon long Footstalks; the chief difference between these *Wild* and the former first *Garden Kind* is in the color, and largeness of the Flowers, (for in the Leaves and form of growing there is but little variation) the Flowers in this being for the most part smaller than those of the *Garden*, and of as little smell; but as to the Colors they are various, yet there is scarcely a Flower among many which has three colors, for they are chiefly White, and pale Blue, more or less marked or spotted, and sometimes yellow in the bottom; the Flowers being past away, little round Heads succeed, something less than a Tare, about the bigness of a large great Pins head, which being ripe, do open themselves, and in a little time after let their Seed fall forth.

IV. *The second, or Upright Wild Hearts-Ease.* It has a Root composed of Fibres or Strings, which perish after Seed time, the Plant rising again of the fallen Seed: This *Hearts-Ease* grows to be about a Foot high, or more, with hard upright Stalks, which yet at their tops bend a little again, they have two Leaves set at each Joint, but longer, and more dented about the edges than the first *Garden Kind* in the former Chapter; at these Joints with the Leaves, on both sides of the Stalks, comes forth a larger Flower, and more spread open than those of the first *Garden Kind*, yet very like to them, of a pale purplish color, and almost as sweet as a *Violet*, as *Matthioli* says, but without smell, as *Lobel* says, *Dodonæus* describes this Kind with variety of Colors, and therefore calls it *Viola assurgens Tricolor*, whereas *Matthioli* declares his to be only Purple; after the Flowers are past, longer Seed Vessels follow than those of the *Garden Kind*, in which is contained finall whitish Seed.

V. *Gerard* has this Description of it. The upright *Pansie*, or *Hearts-Ease*, brings forth long Leaves, deeply cut in on the edges, sharp pointed, of a bleak or pale green Color, set upon slender upright Stalks, cornered, jointed, or kneed, about a Foot high, or higher, upon which grow very fair Flowers, of three colors, viz. Purple, Blue, and Yellow, in form or shape like unto the first *Common Garden Hearts-Ease*, but greater and fairer, which Colors are so excellently and orderly placed, that they bring great delight to the beholders, tho' at the same time they have little or no smell at all in them; for it happens oftentimes that the uppermost Flowers are differing from those which grow upon the middle of the Plant, and those again vary from the lowermost, as Nature is pleased to play with things of such beauty.

VI. *The third, or Wild Yellow Hearts-Ease.* This in its Root, Stalk, Leaves, and manner of growing, is much like to the first *asoregoing*, and has been taken by some young Herbarists to be the *Yellow Violet*; the Flowers are of a faint yellow color, without mixture of any other color, yet having a deeper yellow spot in the lowest Leaf, with four or five blackish purple Lines, in which it differs from the first *Wild Kind*.

VII. *The fourth, or Stoney Hearts-Ease, is a mean and low Plant, the Leaves are rounder, and not so much cut about the edges as the first is; the Stalks or Branches are weak and feeble, trailing upon the Ground; the Flowers are likewise of three Colors, viz. White, Blue, and Yellow, but void of smell; and the Root perishes having perfected the Seed.*

VIII. *The Places.* They grow in waste and Corn Fields, about their borders, and in Fallow Grounds, and borders of Groves and Forrests; the first and second, tho' they grow Wild in the Fields, yet they sometimes also grow in Gardens; the second, or *Upright Kind*, grows on Mount *Baldus* in *Italy*; *Lobel* says it grows in *Languedock* in *France*, and on the tops of some Hills in *England*; the third, with yellow Flowers, has been found by a Village in *Lancashire* called *Latham*, about four Miles from *Kircham*; the last grows only in Rocky, Stoney, Gravelly, and barren Grounds, and other like places.

IX. *The Times.* They Flower not only in the Spring, but for the most part all Summer long, thro' April, May, June, and July, even to August.

X. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues*, are the same with those of the *Garden Kind* in the former Chapter, so that no more need be said concerning the same in this place.

## C H A P. CCCXLVIII.

### Of HELLEBOR BLACK True,

O R,

### CHRISTMAS FLOWER.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Arabick* *Cherbachem*, and *Charbach asued*, in *Greek* *Ἑλλέβορος*, and sometimes without the Asperate *Ἑλλέβορος*, in *Latine* *Elleborus*, and *Helleborus*, also *Helleborum*, and *Veratrum*, quod *Mentem vertat*, in *English* also *Hellebor*, and *Christmas Flower*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are two principal Kinds, viz. I. *Ἑλλέβορος μέλας*, & *Ἑλλέβορον μελαμπίδον*, *Helleborum nigrum*, *Veratrum nigrum*, Black Hellebor, of which we shall Treat in this Chapter, and in Chap. 349. and 350. *Ἑλλέβορος λευκός*, *Helleborus albus*, vel *Helleborum album*, *Veratrum album*, *Sanguis Herculeus*, *Consiligo vegetij*, *Abisyrii Columella* & *Plynij*, White Hellebor, and Sneeze-Root, of which we shall (God willing) Discourse in Chap. 351. and 352. following.

III. *The Kinds of Black Hellebor.* There are several Kinds of this Plant, as 1. *Helleborus niger verus*, The true Black Hellebor, called also *Veratrum nigrum verum*, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Helleborus niger nothus maximus*, *Helleboraster maximus*, *Consiligo*, Bastard Black Hellebor, or Bears-Foot, called by some Country People *Setterwort*, quasi *Setonwort*, being applied to the Ears, Neck, and other parts, after the manner, or in place of a *Seton*. 3. *Helleborus niger nothus minor*, *Helleboraster minor*, The lesser Bastard Black Hellebor, which is also called *The lesser Bears-Foot*, of both these we shall Treat in Chap. 349. 4. *Elleborine*, vel *Helleborine nigra Sanicula Folio major*, Wild Black Hellebor with Sanicle Leaves the Greater; it is called also *Astrantia nigra* by *Lobel* and *Gesner*, *Osteritium Montanum Tragi*, *Imperatoria nigra Tabernamontani*, but *Dodonæus* takes it to be *Elleborus niger*, or *Veratrum nigrum Dioscoridis*, and *Bauhinus* calls it *Elleborus niger Sanicula Folio major*. 5. *Elleborine nigra Sanicula Folio minor*, *Helleborus niger Sanicula Folio minor*, Wild Black Hellebor with Sanicle Leaves the Lesser, or The Lesser Sanicle like Hellebor. 6. *Elleborine Ferulacea*, *Helleborus niger Ferulaceus*, *Pseudohelleborum Matthioli*, *Raphanatum majus Anguillarae Clusij*, & aliorum, Wild Bastard



Hard Black Hellebor Fennel Leav'd, of which three last in Chap. 350. following.



Hellebor  
Black

IV. The Description. *The first, or True Black Hellebor, called Christmas Flower. It has a Root which consists of a great number of brownish black Strings, which run down deep into the Ground, and are fastned to a thick head, of the bigness of ones Finger, growing smaller from its top or head downwards; from this Root rise several fair green Leaves, each of them standing upon a thick, round, stiff, green Stalk, about a Hand breadth high from the Ground, divided into seven, eight, or nine parts, or Leaves, and each of them nicked or dented from the middle of the Leaf to the pointward on both sides, abiding green all the Winter, at which time the Flowers rise on the like short Stalks as the Leaves grow on, without any Leaf thereon for the most part, yet sometimes having a small, short, pale green Leaf, resembling rather a Skin than a Leaf, a little under the Flower, and grow but little higher than the Leaves; each Stalk also bears usually but one Flower, very rarely two, consisting of five large, round, white Leaves apiece, like unto a great single White Rose, chancing sometimes to be either dashed with a Purple about the edges, or to be wholly Purple, without any White in them, as the Season, Weather, or time of continuance does contribute to effect the same; this Flower has many pale yellow Thrums in the middle, standing about a green Head, which afterwards grows to be the Seed Vessel, divided into several Cells or Pods, like unto a Columbine Head, or Aconitum Hymale, but greater and thicker, in which is contained somewhat long and round blackish Seed, like to the Seeds of the Bastard Kinds, or Bears-Ecots.*

V. The Places. It grows in Greece, Italy, England, France, and Germany, in many places of those Countries, as also in Anticyra, an Island over against the Hill Oeta in Thessaly, where it is said to grow in an extraordinary plenty, whence came the Proverb (speaking to a Melancholy or Mad Man, as to

his Cure) *Naviga ad Anticyras*; but with us in England it only grows in Gardens.

VI. The Times. It Flowers in December, and January, if the Season or Weather be any thing temperate, if the Air is mild and warm, it generally Flowers about Christmas time, from whence with us came the Name of Christmas Flower.

VII. The Qualities. It is hot and dry in the third degree, Aperitive, Absterfive, Cosmetick, Hepatick, Splenetick, Arthritick, Cathartick, Emetick, and it given by an unskilful Hand *Διανθήει*, or Venefick.

VIII. The Specification. It is peculiar against Madnes and Melancholy, Quartan Agues, Scabbiness, and Leprosie, kills Worms, and cures the Kings-Evil, Dropsie, Yellow Jaundice, and Gout.

IX. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. The Liquid Juice of the Leaves. 2. An Essence of the same. 3. An Infusion or Decoction of the green Leaves. 4. An Infusion or Decoction of the Root. 5. A Syrup. 6. A Powder of the Leaves or Root. 7. A Seton of the Root. 8. An Extract of the Root. 9. A Pessary of the Root. 10. A Lotion of Herb or Root. 11. An Ointment of the Herb. 12. A Distilled Water of the Green Herb. 13. An Acid Tincture of Herb or Root. 14. A Spirituous Tincture. 15. An Oily Tincture. 16. A Saline Tincture.

## The Virtues.

X. The Liquid Juice of the Leaves. It is used for most Diseases in which White Hellebor is available, but it is nothing so violent or dangerous; the Juice of the Leaves made up with Flower into small Cakes and baked, has been used to good purpose against the Dropsie, Jaundice, Cachexia, and other evil dispositions of Liver, Spleen, and Gall; it may be given from half a Dram to two Drams, according to Strength and Age.

XI. The Essence. It is used to open and purge the Body in several Cases (as well as the Extract of the Roots) and is of great use and effects against all Melancholy Diseases, long and tedious Agues, as the Quartan, and the like; it eases the Megrims, and Cephalæa, or old inveterate Headach, Yellow and Black Jaundice, Leprosie, Falling-Sickness, Consumption, either of the Lungs or whole Body, pains of the Belly, Sciatica, Cramps, Convulsions, or shrinking of the Nerves, as also all other Griets and Pains of the Joints or Nerves, as Gout, Inflammation, and the like, it being taken Morning and Evening, half a Dram at a time, in any convenient Vehicle, always increasing or diminishing the Dose, according to the Age and Strength of the Patient, and as you find it by observation to work.

XII. The Infusion or Decoction. It may be made with Water (if for hot Diseases) or Wine (if for cold Distempers) but Authors advise, that the Herb or Root be first corrected, by steeping it in Vinegar, (because of its dangerous and obnoxious Qualities) a day and a night, and then dried again; yet our English Kind seems not to be so violent as that which grows in hotter Countries, nor has it such a violent operation in working, for which reason that previous correction of it may be forborn; these have all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but work with more moderation, and are much safer to be taken, and may be used in all the Cases aforementioned. Dose from half an Ounce to two, three, or four Ounces, according to Age, &c.

XIII. An Infusion or Decoction of the Root. It has all the Virtues of those of the Leaves, but it yet operates more moderately, and therefore is the more safe to be taken; Country People give the Infusion or Decoction of either Leaves or Roots to kill Worms in Children, I confess they may be given to such



such as are come to Mans strength and growth, but to Children it ought to be given with a great deal of caution, or else forbore, since there are many other things which will do the same safely, and fully as effectually as these can.

XIV. *A Syrup.* It is made of the Infusion or Decoction of Herb or Root, boiled up to a consistency with Honey, or as some will have it, with Honey and Vinegar, which is indeed better; it is both Emetick and Cathartick, and evacuates Tartarous Matter from the Lungs; it cleanses also the Tunics of the Stomach and Guts from evil juices adhering to the same. Dose from one Spoonful to two, or three.

XV. *The Pouder of the Leaves or Root.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, Essence, Infusion, Decoction, or Extract, but it works much more churlishly, causing Gripings, Fainting, vehement Sickness at Heart, and sometimes Swooning away; it kills Worms, and is good to give in Madness, and to such as are troubled with a Hypochondriack Melancholy; if an Issue is cut in any fleshy part, yea, in the Neck, or upon the Shoulder, or brawn of the Arm, or Thigh, or Leg, and a Pea be put into it for a day or two, and then the hole of the Issue be stopped up with the Pouder of *Hellebor* Leaves, and left there for one, two, three, or more days, it will make a Tumor nearly as large as an Egg, and draw all the ill Humors from all, yea, the most remote parts of the Body to that place, and expel them there, and by this means the Kings-Evil, Leprosie, Gout, Sciatica, and Pocky Symptoms, have been cured, yea, after that a number of Purgings, Vomittings, Bleedings, and Salivations, have all been used in vain, and had no effect upon the Patient.

XVI. *The Seton of the Root.* It is used to Rowel Cattel withal, as Country People call it. *Pliny Lib. 25. Cap. 5.* says, that a piece of the Root of *Black Hellebor* being drawn through a hole made in the Ear of a Beast troubled with the Cough, or having taken any poysonous thing, cures it, if it be taken out the next day at the same Hour: *Absyrtes* and *Hierocles* say the same thing, as also *Columella*. This manner of Curing is used with us, but the place is changed from the Ear to the Dew-lap in Oxen, and to the fore Leg or hinder Leg of an Horse above the Pastern.

XVII. *The Pessary.* Being applied to the Womb, it mightily prevails to bring down Womens Courses, and if there is any callous or hard flesh grown in the Vagina, leading to the Womb, or in a Fistula, the Root being left therein for two or three days, it will totally consume it; *Galen Lib. 6. de Simp. Med.* affirms this, and *Julius Alexandrinus* says he often tried it to be true.

XVIII. *The Extract of the Root.* This has all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Infusion, Decoction, and Syrup aforegoing, and is more mild and fit to be taken than any of them, and as it may be always ready at Hand, so it may be given in all those Distempers for which those Preparations are to be exhibited. Dose from a Scruple to a Dram, or Dram and half, in the Morning fasting.

XIX. *The Lotion of Herb or Root.* It is made by Infusion or Decoction in Wine Vinegar, or in half Vinegar half Wine; it is good to wash any place troubled with Scabs, Wheals, or Pusles, Leprosie, or any other like breaking out, yea, altho' it be a Gangrenous or Phagedenick Sore or Ulcer, it stays their spreading or eating, and preserves the Flesh from putrifaction; this same Lotion helps also the Toothach, if the Mouth be gargled therewith, and it be held some small time therein; also dropped into the Ears, it eases the pain, helps against the noise of the Ears, and removes the deafness; if any

foul or callous Ulcer or Fistula be washed with this Lotion, and then the Pouder of the Root be strewed thereupon, it dries, heals, and suddenly cures them.

XX. *The Ointment of the Herb.* If People afflicted with Lice be often washed with the Decoction of *Hellebor* hot, and then the Head or other parts anointed with this Ointment, it kills them, and perfectly destroys the breed.

XXI. *The Distilled Water.* It is of good use to remove black and blew spots or marks from the Skin, and to take away the yellowness thereof, as also Tanning by the Air, Sunburning, Pimples, Morpew, and other like deformities of the same.

XXII. *The Acid Tincture.* Given to a grateful acidity in any proper Vehicle, it kills Worms in Old or Young, it gently Purges, and prevails against all the Diseases the Herb or its Root is good for; it also overcomes Poyson, if the Patient takes it soon after the receiving of the Poyson; mixed with Damask Rose Water, it is good to wash Pimples in the Face and Skin, as also Lentils, Freckles, &c. it soon takes them away, and restores the Skin to its true and natural color.

XXIII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is an extraordinary thing to bath hot withal in a Gangreen, preventing and curing the same; it may be given inwardly from half a Dram to two Drams, and more, according to Age and Strength, against the Kings-Evil, Jaundice, Dropsie, Gout, Leprosie, French Pox, and other Diseases of like kind; if something troubles the Stomach, otherwise it works well enough.

XXIV. *The Oily Tincture.* It is very good against the Sciatica, Gout, and weaknesses and pains of the Joints and Nerves, it resolves Convulsions, and yet strengthens the Nerves, and restores in a Palsie; it is good also to anoint withal upon any straining of the Nerves, or when the Bones are out of Joint, because it warms and comforts the part, and restores the Tone thereof being hurt.

XXV. *The Saline Tincture.* It is to be used as hot as can be endured upon the part or parts afflicted with Scabbiness, Tettars, Ringworms, Pimples, or other breakings out, as also against yellowness, blackness and blewness of the Skin, Lentils, Freckles, Sunburning, Tanning, Scurff, Morpew, Leprosie, or any other like defædation; if it is constantly used two or three times a day for some time, it certainly cures those deformities, and leaves behind it a pleasing smoothness and beauty.

C H A P. CCCXLIX.

Of HELLEBOR BLACK Bastard.

O R,

B E A R S--F O O T.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *Ἑλλεβορίς*, in Latine *Helleborus nothus*, and *Elleborum nothum*, in English *Bastard Black Hellebor*, and *Bears-Foot*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are two Kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Helleboraster*, *Helleborastrum maximum*, *Helleborus nothus maximus*, *Consiligo*, The Greater Bastard Black Hellebor, or Bears-Foot, called also *Set wor*, and *Setterwort*. 2. *Helleboraster*, *Helleborastrum minus*, *Helleborus niger nothus minor*, The Lesser Bastard Black Hellebor, or Lesser Bears-Foot. *Fuchs-*



*sius* calls this *Helleborus adulterinus Hortensis*, and *Confiligo minor Lugdunensis*, but the *Helleborus niger vulgaris* Gesneri.



III. The Descriptions. *The first, or Greater Bastard Black Hellebor.* It has a single Root, with nothing so many Strings growing to it as the True in the former Chapter has, and oftentimes perishes after it has given Seed, yet not always, nor in all places; from this Root proceed several sad green Leaves, each upon a long Footstalk, which are divided into seven or nine Leaves, each of which are narrower than those of the Lesser Bastard Hellebor in the next Section, a little dented about the edges, but not so deeply as the Lesser, and abiding above Ground green all the Winter, whereas the following perishes every Year, and rises again in the spring; from among these Leaves shoots up a reasonable large and tall Stalk, higher by half than the Small following, with such like Leaves thereon as grow below, but smaller up to the top, where it spreads it self out into divers Branches, bearing many hollow Cup-like Flowers, divided at the brims into five parts, but do seldom spread themselves open, of a whitish yellow green color, somewhat like the next Bastard Kind, and sometimes purplish about the brims or edges, with a green Head in the middle, and a few white Threads about it, by which it seems to be *Veratrum nigrum quantum peregrinum Clusij*: This green Head growing to be the Vessel, wherein the black Seed is contained, shoots forth into four, five, or six Horns, fashioned like the following Bastard Kind, saving, that it is smaller, as the Seed also is for the most part; the whole Plant, and every part thereof, is of a worse smell than the following; the Root of this, with the lower part of the Stalk next to it, is of that Bears-Foot, or Setterwort, which Country People use to Rowel their Cattel with.

IV. *The second, or Lesser Bastard Black Hellebor.* It has Roots which are more stringy, black and hard than the former in Chap. 348. it is in most things like unto that True Black Hellebor, for it bears also many Leaves, as seven, eight, or nine, upon short

Stalks, divided into many parts, but each of them are longer and narrower, of a darker green color, and dented on both sides, feeling something hard, these perish every Year, but rise again the next Spring; the Flowers hereof stand on higher Stalks than the True, with some Leaves on them also, yet very few, and are of a pale green color, like the True in the former Chapter, but smaller by half at least, having likewise many greenish yellow Threads or Thrums in the middle, and such like Seed Vessels, and blackish Seed in them.

V. *The Places.* The first grows, as *Tragus* says, in the borders of Stoney Fields and Grounds, also on Rocky Hills, as by the *Mosella* and *Rhine*, also in *Sylva Hircynia*, and as *Pena* says, in *Aquitane* in France, and by the River *Lanus* at *Mompelior*; it grows Wild in many Woods and shadowy places in England, as also in almost all our Gardens about London, and several other parts of the Kingdom; the second has been found in some Woods in *Northamptonshire*, and in other places of this Land, as also in some places within Eight or Ten Miles of London.

VI. *The Times.* They both Flower in February or March, according as the preceeding Winter and Spring Season are in mildness, and their Seed is ripe in May, or towards June.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of these Bastard Black Hellebors are the same with those of the True in the former Chapter, so that no other declaration need be made thereof.

VIII. *Observat.* 1. That the Greater Bastard Black Hellebor, Bears-Foot, or Setterwort, was held by *Dodonæus* to be a kind of venomous *Aconite*, or *Woolfsbane*, not to be used; and that it would kill Woolves, Foxes, Dogs, &c. I have known it used in Decoction to kill Worms in the Belly, which it would effectually do, but it had a deleterious or poysonous quality, which some Bodies could not overcome, where it killed not the Patient, it would indeed kill the Worms; but it is so dangerous a Medicine, that it ought not to be internally used, but by a very Skilful and Prudent Hand, and yet nothing scarcely is more common to be used by Women in the Country than the Decoction of this Herb for the purpose aforesaid; I knew a little Youth take it to kill Worms, but it killed him first; also a Woman between Forty and Fifty Years of Age, whom it killed in about three Hours time; at the same time, by a Womans Advice, the Decoction was given to my self, being then about Eight Years of Age, but I met with a better Fate in the use thereof, yet my danger was great, it vehemently Vomited me, and made me Heart-sick, to swooning away; the Vomiting being over, I revived, but it had such an effect upon me, that it made me loose my Hair, and Nails both of Fingers and Toes, and all the Skin of my whole Body peeled off, from Head to Foot; whether my good hap was from the strength of my Constitution, or the small Dose of the Medicine, I leave others to determine, but from these bad effects it is manifest that it is not very safe to be given, no not to very strong Bodies, but outwardly applied it may be of good use.

IX. *Observat.* 2. That the Pouders of the Leaves of this is much more effectual than the Pouders of the Leaves of the True in Chap. 348. *Scit.* 15. to all the external Intentions and Purposes there mentioned, and that the Leaves of this ought rather to be chosen than the Leaves of that, especially being applied or put into the hole of an Issue, as is there directed; it is a wonderful thing to see what a vast quantity



of Humor it will draw away from all parts of the Body for many days together, doing therein what a Salivation it self could never be able to perform, and that in the most deplorable, stubborn and rebellious Diseases; indeed it is beyond what Words can speak. The Root also of this used as a Pessary, is much more effectual than the Root of the *True*, especially being put into a Fistula, or part where there is any callosity, because it so admirably dissolves the same.

X. *Observat.* 3. That the *second Kind*, or *Lesser Bullard Black Hellebor*, or *Smaller Bears-Foot*, (from the great Experience which I have had thereof) is much more violent and churlish in working, whether by Vomit or Stool, than the *True Black Hellebor* described in the former Chapter, you may adventure to give the Infusion of a Dram of the Root, being infused all Night in Poudre in White Wine or Canary, to be drunk the next Morning fasting, so exhibited it powerfully prevails against all the Diseases which the *True Hellebor* is said to be good against, for which reason there is no need in this place to repeat those things again, and the use of the Poudre of the Leaves or Root are in like manner useful in all outward Cases for Scabs, old running Sores, foul Ulcers, Fistula's, &c.

## C H A P. CCCL.

### Of HELLEBOR BLACK Wild.

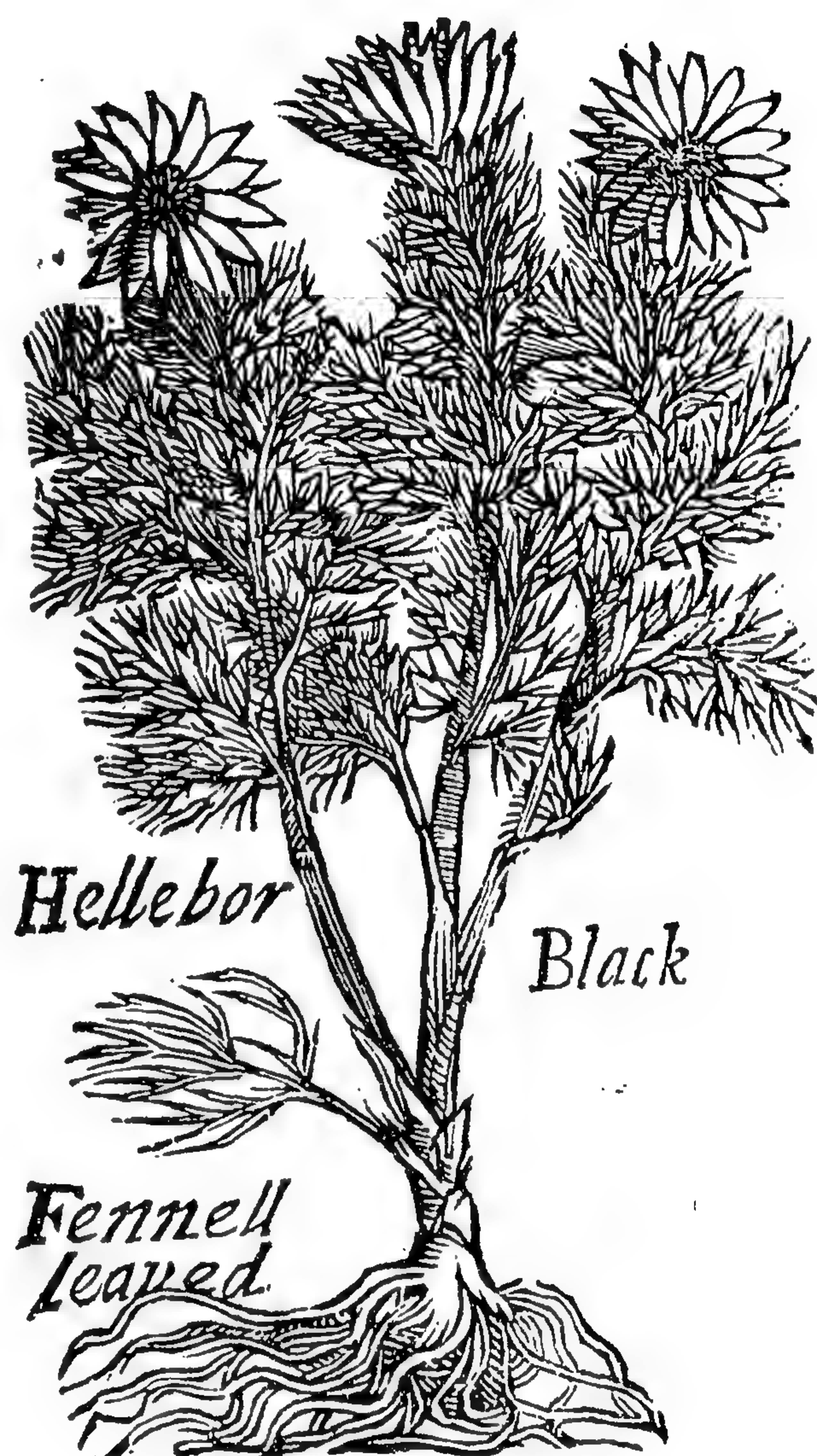
I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Ἑλλέβορος μέλας ἄγριος*, in Latine *Helleborine nigras*, *Helleborus niger Sylvestris*, and in English *Wild Black Hellebor*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three Kinds of *Helleborine nigras*, viz. 1. *Helleborine nigras Saniculae Folio major*, *Helleborus niger Saniculae Folio major Sylvestris*, *Sanicula femina Fuchsi*, *Astrantia nigra Gesneri*, *Osteritium Montanum Tragi*, *Imperatoria nigra Tabernamontani*, *Elleborus niger*, vel *Vera-trum nigrum Dioscoridis*, as *Dodoneus* thinks, The Greater Wild Black Hellebor, or The Greater Helleborine with Sanicle Leaves. 2. *Elleborine nigras minor*, *Helleborus niger Saniculae Folio minor Sylvestris*, The Lesser Sanicle Leav'd Wild Black Hellebor, The Lesser Black Helleborine, or Wild Black Hellebor. 3. *Helleborine nigras Ferulacea*, *Buphtalmum majus Anguillarae Clusii*, & *aliorum*, *Helleborum nigrum Farniculae Folio*, *Pseudohelleborus niger Matthioli*, Fennel Leav'd Wild Black Hellebor.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Greater Wild Black Hellebor Sanicle Leav'd. It has a Root composed of small black Strings, shooting forth from a top head, like unto the Root of Bears-Foot; from this head of a Root come forth several broad dark green Leaves, each of them growing upon a long Footstalk, which are cut in on the edges into five divisions for the most part, and dented about besides, something resembling the Leaves of the *Common Sanicle*, but more truly the Leaves of the *Field Ranunculus*, or *Crowfoot*, or *Geranium Batrachoides*, or *Crowfoot Cranes-bill*; from among which rise up several slender, smooth, green Stalks, having some Leaves up on them, and at the tops of them two, or three, or more Flowers together, each of them consisting of many small, hard, whitish Leaves, as a pale border, encompassing many Threads in the middle, which being fallen, there rise up many flat, whitish, and

long Seed, somewhat like unto *Sweet Fennel Seed*, but not altogether so big, nor so yellow.

IV. *The second, or The Lesser Wild Black Hellebor Sanicle Leav'd.* It has a small black fibrous Root, like the former, from the head of which rise up several small and somewhat round Leaves, every one of them upon a long Footstalk, being not much broader than the Nail of a Mans Thumb, yet divided, even to the middle Rib, into seven parts, every one of them being short, narrow, and dented about the edges; the Stalks are many, and small, not above an Hand breadth high, with one or two Leaves on them, more cut in and divided than the lower are, at the tops of them stand several small Flowers, very thick set together in Tufts or Umbles, like unto the last, but smaller, after which come small flat Seed, something like the former, but lesser by much, as it is also in all the other parts thereof.



V. *The third, or Fennel Leav'd Wild Black Hellebor.* Its Root consists of many long and blackish Strings set together, and proceeding from one head, very like unto the Lesser Black Hellebor, or Bears-Foot, in Chap. 349. Sect. 4. foregoing, but harder, stiffer, or more brittle, and seeming to be without any moisture in them, but abide and encrease every Year, tho' the Stalks with green Leaves do annually perish: This Kind of Wild Black Hellebor shoots forth many green Stalks, sometimes lying or leaning to the Ground, and sometimes standing a little upright, beset very thick with small Leaves, finer and shorter than *Fennel*, some of them ending in a Tuft of such like fine green Leaves, and some having at their tops one large Flower apiece, somewhat reddish or brownish on the outside while they are in bud, and a while after, which being open consist of twelve or fourteen long and narrow Leaves, of a fair shining yellow color, set in order round about a green Head, with yellow Thrums in the middle, laying themselves open in the Sun, or a fair day, but else remaining close; after the Flower is past, the Head growing greater, shews it self, compact of many round whitish



rish Seed, very like unto the Head of *Adonis Flower*, but much greater.

VI. *The Places.* The first and second grow upon Hills in *Germany*, and Mountains in *Italy*, on the *Alps*, and *Pyrænean Hills*; the third grows, as *Clusius* says, near *Vienna* in *Austria*, and in both the Upper and Lower *Hungary*; but they all three grow with us here in *England* only in Gardens, where they flourish very well.

VII. *The Times.* The two first flower not in Winter, but in Summer Months, as in *May* and *June*, and they abide green all the Year through; the third Flowers in *April*, if the Weather is warm, and its Seed ripens in the Month following.

VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* agree exactly with those of the *True Black Hellebor* in Chap. 348. aforegoing, and therefore need not be repeated again in this place.

IX. *Observat.* 1. *Astrantia nigra*, the first of the aforegoing, is doubtless no *Masterwort*, as the purging faculty does shew, and it is certain, and several Experienced Physicians can testify, that the Roots hereof do purge Melancholy, and other Humors, and that they have perfectly cured Melancholy Mad People therewith; and that it has this Purging Faculty, *Gesner* does likewise testify in a certain Epistle written to *Adolphus Occo*, in which he shews that *Astrantia nigra*, or *Greater Wild Black Hellebor* with *Sanicle Leaves*, is almost as strong as *White Hellebor*, and that he himself had made Experiment of the Purging Faculty thereof by Stool, which thing bespeaks it to be a *Black Hellebor*, if not the *True* of *Dioscorides*.

X. *Observat.* 2. *Dodonaus* supposes this *Greater Sanicle Leav'd Black Hellebor* to be *Helleborus verus* *Dioscoridis*, (in which I am of Opinion he was deceived) and therefore ascribes all the Virtues of the *True Black Hellebor* which grows in *Anticyra* to it; but in a word, this may be said of it, that it has been found by often and good Experience to open and Purge the Body of Melancholy Humors, and that safely, without such perturbation and trouble as is said to be in the use of the other *Black Hellebors*.

Common White Hellebor. 2. *Helleborus albus præcox*, *Elleborum Flore atro rubente*, *Veratrum album præcox purpura nigricante*, The early Flowering White Hellebor, or Early Sneezeroot with dark red Flowers.

Hellebor.  
White.



IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common White Hellebor. It has a Root which is great, and reasonable thick at the head, having a number of great white Strings, running down deep into the Ground, by which it is strongly fastned; this Plant rises at first out of the Ground with a great, round, whitish green Head, which growing up opens it self into many goodly, fair, large, green Leaves, plaited as it were with eminent Ribs all along the Leaves, compassing one another at the bottom, from the middle whereof rises up a strong round Stalk, with several such like Leaves, but smaller, to the middle thereof, from whence to the top it is divided into many Branches, having many small yellowish or whitish green Star like Flowers all along upon them, which being past away turn into small, long, three-square, whitish Seed, standing naked, without any Head or Husk to contain them, tho' some Authors have wrote to the contrary.

V. *The second, or Early Flowering White Hellebor.* It has no such tuberous headed Root as the former, but as it were a long bulbous fleshy head, from whence shoot as many long white Strings as the other: This Hellebor is very like that just now described, but that it springs up a Month at least before it, and that the Leaves are broader, longer, thinner, and less plaited, folding themselves backwards oftentimes, and sooner perish, falling away from the Plant; the Stalk hereof is higher than the other with fewer Leaves thereon, bearing such like Starry Flowers, but of so dark or blackish a red color, that they are scarcely discernable, but at a near distance, after which come small Seed, very like the former; both these Plants lose their Leaves wholly, fresh springing up again every Year.

C H A P. CCCLI.

Of HELLEBOR White,

O R,

SNEEZE--ROOT.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Arabick* Charbachem, in *Greek* Ἑλλέβορος λευκός, in *Latine* *Helleborus albus*, *Veratrum album*, and *Sanguis Heraculi*, in *English* *White Hellebor*, and *Sneezeroot*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold, viz. 1. *Garden or True*, called simply *Helleborus albus*, *Elleborum album*, and *Veratrum album*, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Helleborine*, vel *Elleborine alba*, *Wild White Hellebor*, of which in Chap. 352.

III. *The Kinds of the Garden or True.* Its twofold, viz. 1. *Helleborus albus*, *Helleborus albus verus*, *Helleborus albus vulgaris*, *Veratrum album vulgaris*, *Helleborus Candidus*, and *Baubinus* adds for distinction sake *Flore sub viridi*; and it is certainly the *Consiligo Vegetij*, *Abisyrti*, *Columellæ* & *Plinij*, The



VI. *The Places.* Both these grow in several places of Germany and Austria, as *Clusius* says, as also in some of the Islands about Russia, where a large Ship might be Fraighted with the Roots of the first or vulgar sort, as *Tradescant* the Elder affirmed; it also is said to grow on the Alps, and such like Mountains where *Gentian* grows: *Gerard* says that the Bishop of Norwich told him that *White Hellebor* grows in a Wood of his own, near to his House at Norwich: Some say likewise (says he) that it grows upon the Mountains in Wales; this, tho' he said it upon report, yet he thought it might be true, but they both are generally nursed up in Gardens in England.

VII. *The Times.* The first Flowers before the second, tho' the second springs earlier out of the Ground; the first Flowers in May, the second in June.

VIII. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the third degree, Aperitive, Absterfive, Splenetick, Arthritick, Cathartick, Emetick, and Venefick.

IX. *The Specification.* *White Hellebor* is peculiar for curing the Kings Evil, Dropsie, Scurvy, Jaundice, Gout, Sciatica, Rheumatism, Frenzy, Melancholy, Madness, Falling-Sickness, old running Sores, Ulcers, and Fistula's.

X. *The Preparations.* Neither Leaves, Flowers, nor Seed of this Plant have been in use at any time, but the Root only, so far as ever I could learn by Reading of Authors, or from the Practices of other Men; and from the Root the following Preparations may be made. 1. *A Pouder of the Root unprepared.* 2. *A Pouder of the Root prepared.* 3. *The Juice of the Root.* 4. *Mel Elleboratum.* 5. *Oxymel Elleboratum.* 6. *Elleborismus.* 7. *A Lotion.* 8. *A Venefick.* 9. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 10. *An Oily Tincture.* 11. *A Saline Tincture.* 12. *A Pessary, or Tent.* 13. *A Sternutatory.*

#### The Virtues.

XI. *The simple Pouder of the Root.* It works very strongly and churlishly with any that shall take it, provoking strong Vomiting, not much inferior to Poyson, yet being given to very strong Constitutions, and with convenient preparations of the Body before hand, and Dieted by advice, as *Dioscorides* directs, it may do much good; it causes an evacuation of much tough, viscous, clammy, and corrupt Humors which offend the Stomach, it provokes Womens Courses, but is to be forbore by Women with Child, for it will kill the Fetus; it removes a deep Melancholy, even Fury, or Madness, abating the peccant Humors, and giving ease to the Patient; it prevails also against the Falling-Sickness, Lethargy, Megrim, Cephalæa, or old Headach, Scabs, Itch, Tettars, Ringworms, Pusles, Herpes, Leprosie, Scurf, Morpew, or any other deformities of the Skin, Quartan Agues, Phthificks, old Coughs, Dropsies, Jaundice, Sciatica, Gout, Rheumatism, Vertigo, and other Diseases of like kind. Dose from eight Grains to twelve, or sixteen, in Syrup of Quinces, or Juice of the same mixed with White Wine; it is not to be given fasting, but a little after eating, and always to robust and very strong Bodies, with direction to drink five, six, or more Quarts of Posset-Drink, Water-Gruel, or Mutton Broth in the time of its working, and after Vomiting still to drink a hearty draught of Posset-Drink, &c. thereby to keep the Stomach always full, for by this means it works so much the easier; but because of the extraordinary danger of it, I should never advise the unskilful or unlearned to give it thus crude and unprepared, but rather to make use of the following Pre-

paration, which will do full as well, and operate much more safely.

XII. *The Pouder of the Root prepared.* It is done by affusion of Water, impregnated with Spirit or Oil of Vitriol, (after the dissolution of Coral) upon the Root reduced to Pouder, digesting for twenty four Hours, and drying it, and repeating the Work the second and third time. Dose from half a Scruple to half a Dram. It is the nature of Acids to destroy the power of any mixture whatsoever, and if they will do it in Antimonial Preparations, as in the correction of Flowers of Antimony, *Vitrum Antimonij*, *Mercurius Vita*, &c. much more may it be supposed to be done in Vegetable productions; and therefore as Vegetables are more porous and apt for penetration than Metals or Minerals, so a weaker Acid may be employed in the performance of that Work; for if the strongest Acids, as Oils of Vitriol, Salt, Sulphur, &c. were made use of, they would totally enervate and destroy all the faculties and operation of the Vegetable they should be applied to or mixed withal. This Preparation is safe enough, and in many will work only downwards, but in weak Stomachs, and where the Tone of the Viscera is debilitated or much weakened it will (notwithstanding all this Preparation) work upwards; in this case the Dose ought to be a little larger, for the former Dose will only make Sick, and scarcely induce Vomiting, whereby the Patient will truly be made more Sick and out of order (for want of its due operation) than if a larger Dose had been given; it is designed against Melancholy, and all the efforts of a Manical disposition of the Mind; it removes Vapors, and helps obstructions of the Spleen and Hypochonders, restoring the Imagination and Reason to their right stations and habitudes; in a word, it has all the Virtues of the crude Pouder mentioned in the last Section, and may be given to all those purposes and intentions, but with much more safety.

XIII. If you give it only as Cathartick, you may give it thus. Take Jalap, Scammony, of each six Grains, of this prepared Hellebor from ten Grains to twenty, mix them for a Dose. Or thus. Make an Infusion of Sena half an Ounce in half a Pint of White Wine, strain out, then add the prepared Pouder of Hellebor from half a Scruple to half a Dram, (according to Age and Strength) and let it be taken in the Morning fasting, against Melancholy, Madness, Gout, Sciatica, &c.

XIV. If you design it for a Vomit, you may give it either *per se* in any proper Vehicle, from fifteen Grains to two Scruples, or you may compound it as follows. Take the prepared Pouder of Hellebor as foregoing from half a Scruple to half a Dram, Tartar Emetick from one Grain to two, mix for a Dose, to be given in the Morning fasting, with all the precautions of a Vomit.

XV. *Another Preparation of the Root.* Most Authors prepare it by slicing it very thin, or beating it into Pouder, and infusing it in juice of Quinces, (which is said to be a true corrector of its venene quality) for twenty four Hours, drying of it, and repeating the Infusion again the second or third time; being thus prepared, it may be given from ten Grains to twenty Grains in any proper Vehicle to all the purposes and intentions before specified: You may also prepare it by steeping it twenty four Hours in Wine Vinegar, it will be pretty well corrected by a single Infusion, and may be given from half a Scruple to half a Dram.

XVI. *The Juice of the Root.* If it is mixed with Juice of Quinces, or with Wine Vinegar, it may be inspissated, and afterwards given inwardly to all the intentions and purposes aforesaid. The Liquid Juice mixed with Flower and Honey, and set where Flies,

Grains,



Gnats, &c. come, it kills them upon the spot; mixed with Crumbs of Bread, Cheese, and Butter, and set in proper places, it kills Rats, Mice, and the like; if Hens, Ducks, or Geese should chance to eat it, it would quickly kill them; being made up into a Mass with Meal and Butter, and put into Mole Holes, or their Burrows, it will quickly destroy them: The Liquid Juice dropt into the Ears takes away the noise and ringing in them, and kills Worms in that Organ, if any be, which is known by their extraordinary itching, and sometimes by a pain in the Ear; mixed with White Wine in equal quantities it is good to cleanse the Hands, or other parts of the Skin troubled with Scurf, Morpew, Leprosie, Tetters, Ringworms, Herpes, Scabs, Itch, Freckles, Lentils, and other like deformities thereof.

XVII. *Mel Elleboratum*. Honey Helleborated, or impregnated with the Virtues of Hellebor. Take Roots of White Hellebor dried and cut a Pound, fair Water fourteen Ounces, digest three days, then boil gently till the half be consumed, strain it carefully out, and with clarified Honey three Pounds boil again to the consistence of Honey. It is a strong Medicament, and to be given but in a small Dose, viz. from one Dram to two, or but three at most; it is prevalent against Melancholy, Dotage, Frenzy, Madness, Gout, Sciatica, Rheumatism, Dropsie, Lethargy, Vertigo, Palsie, Apoplexy, Epilepsie, and such like desperate disaffections; you may mix it with clarified Whey, or Decoction of Sena, or Epirhymum.

XVIII. *Oxymel Elleboratum*. Honey and Vinegar impregnated with Hellebor. Take Leaves of Rue, tops of Tyme, Dittany of Crete, tops of Hyssop, Pennyroyal, Horehound, Carduus, Roots of Celtick Nard, of each a handful, Calamint two Pugils, Seeds of Anise, Basil, Dill, Fennel, Roman Nettles, of each two Drams, Roots of Angelica, Aron, Squills prepared, Birthwort long, round, and climbing, Costus, Flowerdeluce, Polypody, Turbith, Limon Peels, of each an Ounce, Strings of Black Hellebor, Spurge, Agrick, (added towards the end of the boiling) of each two Drams, Strings of the Roots of White Hellebor four Drams, all being dried and bruised digest in a Glass or glazed Vessel close stopt in the heat of the Sun, or of a Furnace, in Posca, (which is a mixture made of equal parts of Wine Vinegar and Water) eight Pounds, Rob or Sapa two Ounces, three days digestion being past, boil it gently till it is wasted a little more than half away, strain it, pressing it gently, and to the strained Liquor add Honey of Roses, (in which Citron Peels two Ounces have been infused) a Pound and half, boil to the thickness of Honey, and with Cloves, Saffron, Ginger, Galangal, Mace, of each a Dram, aromatize it according to Art. It is Emetick, and ought to be given after other general Remedies, being then profitable against Madness, Frenzy, Epilepsie, Apoplexy, Convulsions, Melancholy, Vertigo, Lethargy, Megrim, obstructions of the Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Mesentery, Reins, and Womb, it provokes Urine and the Courses, and is prevalent against Agues. Dose four or six Drams to an Ounce in a Glass of White Wine.

XIX. Another *Oxymel Helleboratum*. Take Strings of Black Hellebor well bruised half an Ounce, Strings of White Hellebor well bruised an Ounce, Wine Vinegar, Juice of Quinces, Parsly Water, of each three Pints and half, Winters Cinnamon, Jamaica Pepper, both in Powder, of each two Ounces, mix, digest in a Glass Vessel in a gentle Sand heat for four days, then boil gently in Balneo till almost half is wasted away, strain out, and to the Liquor add clarified Honey three Pounds, Cremor Tartar in fine Powder one Pound, boil to the consistence of Honey, being cold add Chymical Oil of Limons one Ounce, mix

well, and keep it in a Vessel close stopt for use. This Preparation has not the tenth part of the trouble and difficulty of the former, yet is double in its effects and operations, having all the Virtues ascribed to the former; you may give it from half an Ounce to an Ounce, or more, according to Age and Strength.

XX. *Elleborismus*, or an Electuary of White Hellebor. Take White Hellebor Root cut thin one Pound, Spring Water twelve Pounds, digest warm three whole days, then boil to the consumption of the half, strain out, pressing it strongly, adding Honey three Pounds, boil it again to the consistence of Honey; this Electuary put into a Glass or glazed Vessel and keep it for use. This is no Electuary, but rather a Lohoch; it cures Melancholy, Frenzy, and Madness, and is appropriated to all the Diseases the two former Preparations are applied to; it may be given from two Drams to four, or more, in a Glass of White Port Wine.

XXI. *The Lotion*. The Root very thinly sliced, or in gross Powder boiled in Vinegar, or in Juice of Quinces, or in an equal mixture of both, makes an excellent Gargle for a Canker in the Mouth, as also to ease the pains of the Toothach; it is also good against Tanning of the Skin, Sunburning, yellowness of the Skin, Scurf, Morpew, Scabs, Itch, Leprosie, Freckles, Lentils, and other like detestations of the Cutis; it also cleanses and dries old running Sores, foul Ulcers, callous Fistula's, and the like, in the Legs, Thighs, Feet, Arms, Hands, &c. and is also of good use against Kings-Evil Sores; if it is boiled in Lye made of Pot Ashes it kills Lice in the Head, being washed therewith Morning and Evening, and heals running Sores and Scabs of the Head, Scald Heads, Kings-Evil Sores, &c. being often washed therewith, and a little kind of Cataplasim be also laid thereon made in this manner. Take fine Powder of White Hellebor Root two Ounces, Wheat or Barley Flower six Ounces, Honey enough to make it up into a Cataplasim, mix and apply it; some instead of the Honey use fresh Butter, some Hogs Lard, others White Bread softened with Milk, &c.

XXII. *The Venefick*. Take the Juice of White Hellebor Roots, put it into a Horn, or some wooden Cup, and let it ferment for some little time. Take a Needle and Thread and wet them therein, and draw it thro' a Frog, or Chicken, and if it die presently it is good and ready, if not, you must ferment it for some little time longer, till it will upon tryal exquisitely perform that Work. This is the Poyson the Spaniards use in poysoning their Arrow heads, they dip their Arrow heads therein, and then what Beast soever shall be Wounded therewith shall suddenly die. This thing Matthiolus says he tried on Dogs and on Chickens, which died presently after they were Wounded. This Poyson is only used while it is fresh, for if the juice dries upon the Arrow head it loses its strength, and therefore to keep them the better they use to keep them in a Case, the Iron heads being wrapped in Wool, and Cloths dipt therein. But this is very admirable, as it is related, that this Poyson being drank gives almost no harm to them that drink it, unless they take too much; and it is said that Hunters often take it themselves, to purge them from evil Humors, and preserve their Healths. This is also remarkable, that the Flesh of those Beasts killed by this Poyson is not in the least hurtful, but is more tender and pleasant in eating than the Flesh of other Beasts not killed therewith, more especially that part about the Wound.

XXIII. *The Spirituous Tincture*. It ought to be corrected with Vinegar, or Juice of Quinces, added in equal quantity after the Tincture is made, and kept in Digestion in a gentle Sand heat for one whole Month.



*North or more.* Being thus prepared, it may be given inwardly for all those Diseases the Pouder it self is good for; it works much gentler, and may be given from half a Dram to two, three or four Drams, mixt with any convenient Vehicle, as sharp Wine mixt with Water, &c. Outwardly, it is good against Freckles, Lentils, Pimples, Scurff, Morpew, and other Breakings out in the Skin.

XXIV. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against Constrictures of the Nerves, Pains of the Joints, Gout, Sciatica, &c. being anointed upon the Parts afflicted Morning and Night for some time. Anointed upon the Reins, it gives Ease in Pains of the Back, proceeding either from Weakness or Obstructions of those Parts. It digests and hastens the Maturation of Tumors which Nature determines to break.

XXV. *The Saline Tincture.* It is a peculiar thing against Scurff, Morpew, Dropsy, Elephantiasis, Pusthes, Pimples, Tettars, Ring-worms, Kings-evil Sores, Pocky-eruptions, Herpes, Itch, Scabbiness, Freckles, Lentils, Yellowness and other Vices of the Skin. It may be used either simply of it self, or mixt with Vinegar, sharp Wine or Water, according to the Nature and Condition of the Part to which it is applied. It also eases the Gout and Sciatica, being bathed hot upon the Parts affected Morning and Night for some time.

XXVI. *The Pessary or Tent.* Being put into any Callous Fistula, or up the Womb, where the Uterus is Callous, it softens and resolves the Callosity, mends the Fistula or Ulcer, and takes away the Callous Matter which hinders Curation; after which the Ulcer may be healed with some incarnative Balsam or Ointment fit for the purpose. I have been told, that if it is put up the Womb as a Pessary, it provokes the Terms, and brings away the dead Child; but it ought to be used with Caution and good Advice.

XXVII. *The Sternutatory.* 1. Some make it of the fine Pouder or Flower of the Root alone; but so used, it is much too strong. 2. Some make it thus: *R fine Flower or Pouder of White Hellebor Roots, Pouder of Rosemary, of Sweet Marjoram, and of Winter Savory, of each equal parts; mix them.* 3. Some make it thus: *R fine Pouder of Tobacco, or rather of Tobacco Stalks, three Ounces; Pouder of Rosemary Flowers an Ounce and half; Pouder of Cloves one Ounce; fine Pouder of White Hellebor Root six Drams; mix and keep them for Use.* Being snufft up the Nostrils, it causes much Sneezing, and evacuates the Head and Brain of cold, moist, viscous Humors and Reculencies, and is very good against Vertigo's, Megrims, Head-aches, Lethargies, Apoplexies, Falling-sickness, and other cold and moist Diseases of those Parts.

XXVIII. *Conradus his Vomit.* Take Roots of White Hellebor one Ounce, wash, dry and pouder them; Roots of Bryony and Sackbread in pouder, of each two Drams; add Spirit of Wine so much as to overtop them two Inches or more: digest in Balneo for twenty-four hours, then distil by an Alembick, take out the dregs, heat them, and add the Spirit drawn off: set it a Week in a close Vessel, then decant the clear, filter and keep it for Use. Dip a Feather in it, and put it into a Glass of Sack, and drink it; repeating it as you see occasion.

XXIX. *Hieronymus his Vomiting-Wine.* Take fresh Pouder of White Hellebor Roots a Scruple; Camomile one Pint: mix, and infuse in the Sun for a Week. One Spoonful of it will Vomit; but half a Spoonful, with other Laxatives, will purge downwards, and evacuate cold, viscous, slimy and griping Humors out of the Bowels, Hypochonders and Parts adjacent.

XXX. *An Observation.* That the Black and White Hellebors much sympathize together, with relation to their Virtues; and what the one will do, the other will do also; but the latter much more powerfully, and with far greater Violence, inasmuch that by reason of its Violence, and dangerous Use, the Internal Practice with the Root of White Hellebor uncorrected, is wholly almost given over, and left off: otherwise, as to the Virtues and several Preparations of the True black Hellebor in Chap. 348. foregoing, the same things in a manner may be said of the True White, with Advantage.

## C H A P. CCCLII.

### Of HELLEBOR White Wild.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek, *Ελληβορις λευκή ἀγροῦ*: in Latin, *Helleborus albus sylvestris*, *Elleborine alba agrestis*; and in English, *Wild White Hellebor*.

II. The Kinds. 1. *Elleborine recentiorum Clusii*; *Elleborine alba major*, *Calceolus maris*, *Calceolus Marianus*; *Elleborine ferruginea Lugdunensis*, *Dalechampi*; *Alismatis Species Gesneri* & *Thalij*; *Damasonium nothum*, and *Pseudodamasonium aliorum*; The great wild white Hellebor, called also Ladies Slipper. 2. *Elleborine minor flore albo*, *Elleborine alba minor*; *Alisma*; *Damasonium*, and *Epipactis aliorum*; The lesser wild white Hellebor with a white Flower. 3. *Elleborine alba minor purpurante flore*, The lesser wild white Hellebor with blush Flowers. 4. *Elleborine alba flore Viridante*, Wild white Hellebor with whitish-green Flowers. 5. *Elleborine alba Americana*, American wild white Hellebor.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Great wild white Hellebor, or Ladies Slipper. It has a Root composed of a number of Strings, interlacing themselves one within another, lying within the upper Crust of the Earth, and not spreading deep, of a dark brownish color. This Root sends up one, two, or more Stalks, a Foot and half high, bearing broad green Leaves on each side, one by one, somewhat like those of the *Vulgar true white Hellebor*, but smaller, and not so ribbed, and each compassing the Stalk at the lower end. At the top of the Stalks stands sometimes but one Flower, and sometimes two, or but three at most, one above another, upon small short Foot-stalks, with a small Leaf at the foot of every one. Each of these Flowers are of a long oval Form, and hollow within, especially at the upper part, the lower being round, and swelling like a Belly: at the hollow part there are pieces like Ears or Flippers, which at first do cover that hollow place, and afterwards stand apart one from another, all which are of a fine pale yellow color in most Plants; but some have been found of a brownish color, as tending to purple. There are also four long, narrow and dark colored Leaves, at the setting on of the Flower upon the Stalk, wherein the Flower, as it were, at the first was enclosed. The whole Flower is of a pretty sweet Smell: the Seed is very small, and like unto that of the *Orchides* or *Dog-stones*, and is contained in the like kind of Pods.

IV. The second, or Lesser wild white Hellebor with a white Flower. It has Roots like the former, but smaller: and this small Plant grows up in like manner,



manner, and not much lower, bearing the like Leaves, but smaller, and of a white green color, much like those of *Lilly Convally*. The top of the Stalk has many more Flowers, but lesser, growing together Spike-fashion, with small short Leaves at the Stalk of each Flower, which consists of five small white Leaves, with a small close Hood in the middle, without any Smell, and having also like Seed.



V. The third, or Small wild white Hellebor with bluish Flowers. The Roots, Stalk, Leaves, Flowers and Seed, as also its Manner of Growing, are all much like the last; but herein this differs from that, that the Leaves hereof are narrower than those, and the Stalk and Flowers are smaller, the Flowers in this being of a pale purplish or bluish color, with very small dusty Seed.

VI. The fourth, or Wild white Hellebor with whitish green Flowers. This is also one of the small kinds of the Wild white, and differs not much from the last, either in its Root, Stalk, Leaves, Flowers or Seed, but only in the Color of its Flower; for whereas that was of a bluish color, this is greenish-colored on the outside, and of a whitish color within, with like small Seed.

VII. The fifth, or American wild white Hellebor. This is a Species of the first Great kind of Wild white Hellebor, or Ladies Slipper; which sort has been brought to us from the Northern parts of America, and differs in this only, That it is greater in its Stalks, Leaves and Flowers, which are not yellow, but white, with reddish Strakes thro' their Bellies.

VIII. The Places. The first four grow not only beyond Sea, as in Germany, Austria, Hungaria; but also are found Wild in many places of England. The fourth particularly in a Wood called the *Helks* in Lancashire, near the Borders of Yorkshire. The fifth grows in the Northern parts of America, as New-England, New-York, Maryland. The second

was found in the Woods by *Digwell-Pattures*, half a Mile from *Welwen* in Hertfordshire; it grows also in a Wood five Miles from London, near a Bridge called *Lock-bridge*; and by *Robin Hood's Well*; in the Woods by *Dunmore* in Essex; by *Southfleet* in Kent, in a little Grove of *Juniter*; and in a Wood by *Clare* in Essex.

IX. The Times. The first flowers about the middle of June; the other four in the Month of May, and if the Weather proves cold, in the beginning of June: some earlier and some later than others, according to the Richness of the Soil, and Warmth of the Situation; and perfect their Seed in August.

X. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues of these, are the very same with those of the True black and True white Hellebors in Chap. 348. and Chap. 351. aforegoing, tho' possibly not full out so strong, and therefore the more fit, and the rather to be chosen for the more vulgar Use.

XI. An Observation. The second of these is supposed to be the *Epipactis* of *Dioscorides*; but if either that or any of the two following be it, he says it is good against the Distempers of the Liver, and against Poison, and to procure Vomiting, which *Theophrastus* also affirms: and *Gerard* says, that the Decoction of Wild white Hellebor being drunk, opens the Obstructions of the Liver, and helps any Imperfections of the same. This is certain, That the Juice, or a very strong Decoction of any of them is good to wash and bathe the Skin withal, in order to the taking away of Scurff, Morpew, Scabs, Itch, Leprosy, Herpes, Pimples, Freckles, Lentils, Yellowness of the Skin, or any other Detedation thereof.

## C H A P. CCCLIII.

### Of HELMET-FLOWER, O R, MONKS-HOOD.

I. THE Names. It may be called in Greek, *Θάμνος*: in Latin, *Napellus*, *Thora*, and *Cappa*; also *Cappa Monachi*, and *Luparia*: in English, *Helmet-flower* and *Monks-hood*.

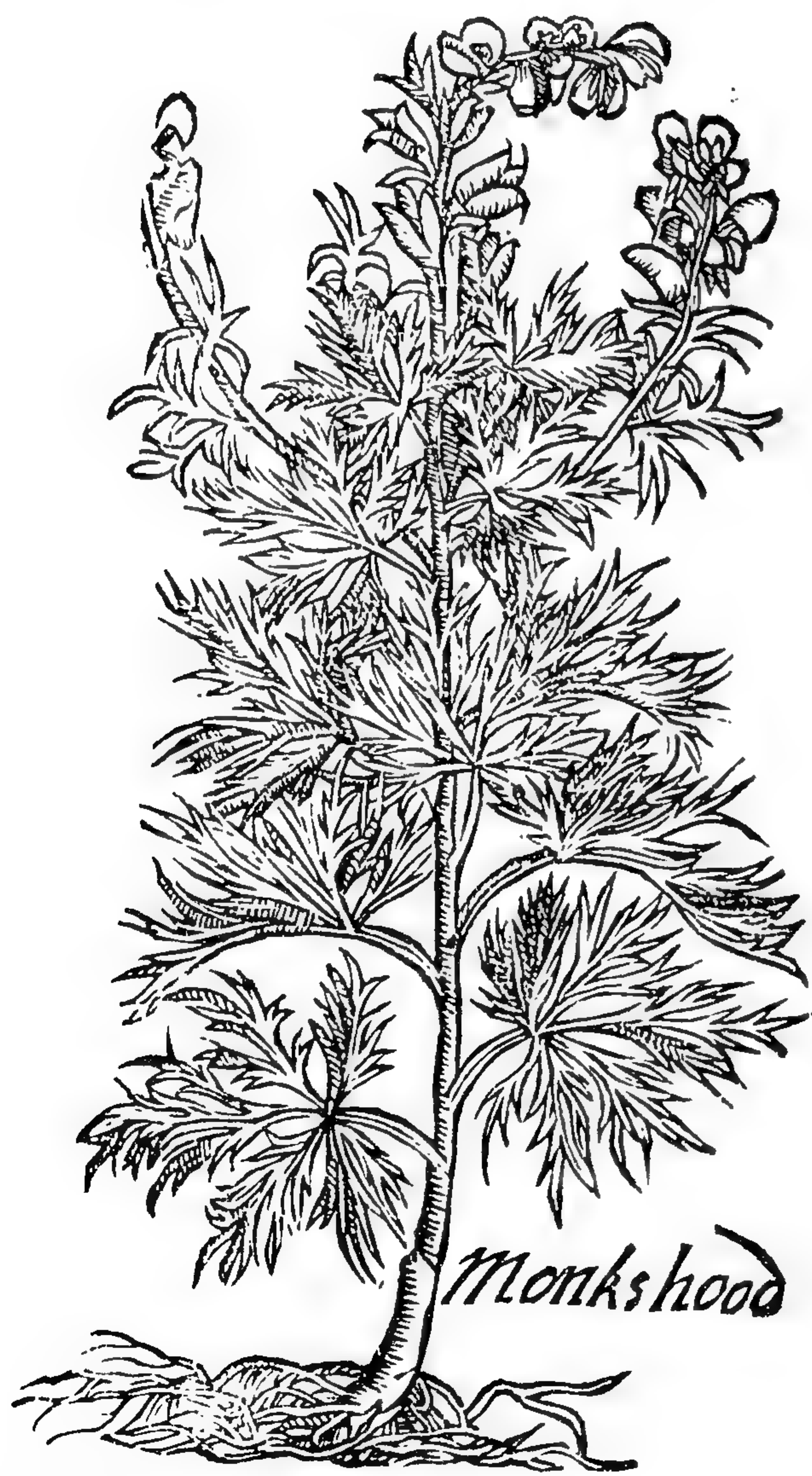
II. The Kinds. It is a Species, or of the Stock of the *Aconita* or *Wolfs-bane*; and is manifold; but those which we shall take notice of, are only the three following, viz. 1. *Napellus Verus*, (*Verus* is added because it is the True *Napellus* of the Ancients, which they so termed from the Form of a long Turnep, called *Napus* in Latin:) *Cappa*, & *Cappa Monachi*, The true *Helmet-flower*, or *Monks-hood*. 2. *Napellus minor*, *Lycostonum ceruleum parvum*, *facie Napelli Lobelij*, *Thora Italica Gesneri* & *Baubini*; *Aconitum Lycostonum tertium ceruleum parvum Dodonæi*; *Aconitum decimum Clusij*, The small blew *Helmet-flower*, or *Monks-hood*. 3. *Napellus tertius Baubini*, *Napellus purpureus*; *Aconitum neubergense Clusij*, The purple *Helmet-flower*, or *Monks-hood*.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or True *Helmet-flower*, or *Monks-hood*: its Roots are brownish on the outside, and white within, somewhat big, and round above, and small downwards, something like



to a small Carrot Root, or not much unlike to a long Turnep; and sometimes two of them are joined at the Head together. This Root sends forth divers Leaves of a fresh green color on the upper side, and greyish underneath, much spread abroad, and cut into many Slices and Norches, more than any of the *Wolfs-banes*. The Stalk rises up two or three Feet high, beset to the top with the like Leaves, but smaller. The top is sometimes divided into two or three Branches, but more usually without, on which stand many large Flowers, one above another, in Form very like unto a Hood or open Helmet, being composed of five Leaves, the uppermost of which, and the greatest below is like unto an Helmet or Head-piece; two other small Leaves are at the sides of the Helmet, closing it like Cheeks, and come somewhat under; and two others, which are the smallest, hang down like Labels, or as if a close Helmet was opened, and some pieces hung by, of a perfect or fair blew color, (but grow darker, having stood long) which causes it to be nursed up in Gardens, that their Flowers, as was usual in former Times, and yet is in many Country Places, may be laid up among green Herbs in Windows, and put in Pots to stand in Chimneys, in the Summer time. But tho' they may be thus entertained for their Beauty, and put to the Uses aforesaid, yet you must beware that they come not near your Tongue or Lips, lest they discover, to your Cost and Peril, their virulent, poisonous and dangerous Qualities. In the middle of the Flower, when it is open, and gapes wide, are seen certain small Threads, like Beards, standing about a middle Head; which, when the Flower is past, grows into three or four or more small blackish Pods, containing black Seed within them.

### Helmet-Flower.



IV. The second, or Small blew Helmet-flower, has a kind of round bulbous Root, big below, and small above, and encreases thereby, giving such like Roots, with smaller Fibres thereat than at the greater Roots. From this Root rises up a round green Stalk, two or three Feet high, whercon grow several dark,

green, shining Leaves, cut into five Partitions very deeply, each of them somewhat cut in on the edges, very like unto the Leaves of the Greater or True Helmet-flower, but that these are not so finely divided, and the Divisions are somewhat broader. The top of the Stalk is divided into two or three Branches, each whereof bears one Flower, and sometimes (tho' seldom) two or three, of a very fair deep blewish purple color, very like in Form unto the former Helmet-flower, but that this is smaller, and the Crest of the Helmet rises higher than in that; after which come small Pods, much like to the other, giving also such like Seed.

V. The third, or Purple Helmet-flower. It has Roots much like to the first, or True kind: it has larger Leaves than the other, of a sadder green color, and shining withal, incised or cut in after the same manner: the Stalk also grows very high, and often spreads it self out into several Branches, bearing large purple blew Flowers, in longer Spikes than the first; which being passed away, like Seed comes in their places, not much differing from the former.

VI. The Places. They all grow naturally Wild on Mountains, and in Woods and shadowy places in Italy, Germany and other places: and it is said, that they grow upon some Hills in England: however, with us they are chiefly nursed up in Gardens, where they flourish extraordinarily well.

VII. The Times. They all flower in the principal Summer Months, viz. in June and July; and their Seed is generally ripe in August.

VIII. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the Ultimate of the fourth Degree; Deleterious, and a most mortal Poison both to Man and Beast; and therefore they are called *Wolfs-bane*, because they kill Wolves, Dogs, Rats, Mice, &c. whether the Juice of the Herb or Root, or the Herb or Root it self, being mixed with their Food or Flesh, and so given them to eat. And that this *Monks-hood* as well as *Wolfs-bane* is as destructive to Mankind also, is manifest from that accidental Tryal had thereof at Antwerp, at a Treat there, where certain ignorant Persons gathering of a Sallet in the Garden, among the Variety of Herbs, gathered also *Napellus* or *Luparia*, which with the other things was served up at Table; where all who did eat thereof, were taken with most cruel Symtoms; and after the violent Tortures which they endured for some considerable time, died miserably.

IX. The Specification. *Helmet-flower* (as also *Wolfs-bane*) is a peculiar thing to kill Lice and Nits in the Head, and to cure the same of Scurff, Dandriff, Scabs, &c. to cleanse old and fretting Sores, running Ulcers, take away dead Flesh, (provided these Sores, Ulcers, &c. be not in the Mouth, Nose, Eyes or Privy Parts, by reason of their Vicinity to the principal or more noble Parts:) as also to cure Diseases of the Eyes by a special Application.

X. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. A Pouder of the Herb or Root. 3. An Oil or Ointment of the Juice, green Herb or Root. 4. A Decoction or Lye of Roots, Leaves or Seed. 5. A distilled Water.

### The Virtues.

XI. The Juice. It is a deadly Poison taken inwardly any way: it is also as deadly to Wolves, Dogs or other Creatures who shall take thereof, or eat in any manner of ways of the Herb or Root. The Juice of the Roots especially Hunters of Wild Beasts do use, dipping the Heads of their Arrows into the same; by which means they quickly kill the Beast



Beast which is wounded with the same : yet it is certain, that the Flesh of the Beast so killed is not at all poisonous, but very safe, and eats more tender than if it had been otherwise killed, more especially if it be kept for a Day and Night.

XII. *The Powder of the Herb or Root.* Mixt with Cheese or Bacon-fat, and put in proper places for Rats and Mice, it kills them, if they eat it. Mixt with Powder of *Liquorice*, and strewed upon foul filthy Ulcers, it cleanses them, dries in some measure, (if skilfully applied) and disposes them for healing, which may afterwards with proper Incarnatives and Ulceratives, be perfected.

XIII. *The Oil or Ointment of the Juice, or green Herb, or Root.* It kills Lice and Vermine, if the Head or any part of the Body, in which Lice and Vermine breed, be anointed therewith, it quickly kills them, and frees the Patient from the same.

XIV. *The Decoction or Lye of the Roots, Leaves or Seed.* If it is a simple Decoction, it is then made in simple fair Water only : but if it is a Lye, it is made in a small *Lixivium* of Pot-ashes. It cleanses the Head and other Parts from Morpew, Scurff, Dandriff, Scabs, Itch, Pimples, Tettars, Ringworms, Leprosy, and other like Breakings out, the Parts affected being bathed therewith.

XV. *The distilled Water.* Being dropped into the Eyes, it takes away the Inflammation or Redness in them ; also clears them from any Haw, or Pin and Web, growing in or upon them. The same thing is said of the Juice ; but I fear it is dangerous, and if it is used to the Eyes, it must be done with much Caution, and by such as have Judgment and Skill, and not by Fools. It ought to be mixt with a sufficient quantity of *Damask-Rose Water*, both to allay its Heat, and to take off the Violence of its Operation.

XVI. *To Cure such as are Poisoned herewith.* The first thing you are to do, is to give an Emetick, as two, three, four, five or six Grains of *Emetick Tartar* ; from half an Ounce to an Ounce or Ounce and half of *Infusion of Crocus Metallorum*, or *Vinum Benedictum*, or *Vinum Antimoniale*, or a Dose of any other proper Emetick which you have at hand, proportioning the Dose according to Age and Strength. The next thing you are to do, is to exhibit *Cathartick Clysters* ; or this following, if the Patient is weak : Take *Posset-drink* or *Mutton-broth* a Pint, *brown Sugar* four Ounces : mix, melt or dissolve, and exhibit it warm. This is to be done, that the Body be effectually, and as soon as may be, discharged of the Poison : which being performed, *Cordials* and *Antidotes* are to be given, the one to defend the Heart, preserve and keep up the Vital and Animal Spirits ; the other to enervate and destroy the force and power of the Poison ; for the first of these, we commend our *Aqua Bezoartica*, *Tinctura Bezoartica*, or some other like Cordial Water, Spirit or Tincture, to be mixt and given with some noble and generous Wine. The Antidotes we commend in this Case, are, *Mithridate*, *Venice Treacle*, the Antidote in our *Phylaxa* ; or for want of them, to drink a *Decoction in Wine of Origanum*, *Pennyroyal*, *Savory*, *Sage*, *Southernwood*, *Wormwood*, *Gentian*, *Winters Cinnamon* ; *Elect. Diatesfaron* is good, so also is a mixture of *Castoreum*, *Pepper*, *Cubebs* and *Rue*, of each a like quantity, being in fine Powder, and mixt up with *Honey* into a *Bolus*. *Petrus Aponensis* commends a Dram or two of *Terra Lemnia* to be taken in warm Drink or Wine ; but above all he says, that *Aristolochia longa* is the most especial Antidote or Remedy against all *Aconites*. *Avicenna* has an Antidote against this Poison, which is made of the Fly which feeds upon this Poisonous Plant, which he found to be very effectual, not on-

ly against other Poisons, but chiefly against that of *Napellus* or *Helmet-flower*, and Poison of the *Tarantula*. It is thus made : Take *Aristolochia longa*, fine Bole, each in fine powder, a Dram ; Flies which feed upon the *Napellus* number twenty : make a fine Powder, and mix them : Dose a Dram at a time in a Glass of Wine. *Guainerius* his Antidote is this : Take *Bay-berries*, *Terra Lemnia*, both in fine powder, *Mithridate*, of each two Ounces ; Flies which have fed upon *Napellus* number twenty four in powder : mix them, and with a sufficient quantity of *Honey* and *Oil*, make an *Electuary*. Dose from a Dram to two Drams at a time, with a Glass of generous Wine. But the true Antidote against this Poison is the *Anthora* or *Antithora* in the Chapter following, of which we shall there speak more largely.

## C H A P. CCCLIV.

### OF HELMET-FLOWER Alexi-pharmick,

O R,

### M O N K S--H O O D Antidotal.

**T**HE Names. It is called in *Greek*, *Ανθόρα* ; in *Latin*, *Antiphthora* or *Antithora*, but most commonly, for Shortness sake, *Anthora*, (as being the Opposite or Antidote to *αθηρα*, *Helmet-flower* or *Woolfs-bane* : ) in *English*, *Helmet-flower Alexipharmick*.



II. *The Kinds.* It is a singular Plant of the Kind, and is called by the *Piemontoise*, *Anthora*, quasi *Antithora*, that is, the Remedy against the Poisonful Herb *Thora* : *Avicenna*, the *Arabian* calls it *Napellus Moysis* in lib. 2. cap. 500. and in cap. 745. calls it *Zedoaria*, by which it is manifest that this *Zedoaria Avicennæ* is not our Common *Zedoaria* or



*Zerumbeth* of the Shops: it is also called *Aconitum Solutiferum*, *Napellus Alexipharmicus*, and *Antora*. *Thora* and *Anthora*, or *Tura* and *Antura*, seem to be new Words, and yet they are used in *Marcellus Empiricus*, an old Writer, who teaches us a Medicine to be made of *Tura* and *Antura* against the Pin and Web in the Eyes.

III. The Description. *The Roots hereof are small and tuberosus, round, and somewhat long, ending for the most part in a long Fibre, and with some other small Threads from the Head downwards: from the Head whereof rise up several green Leaves, every one severally upon a Stalk, which Leaves are very much divided, as finely almost as the Leaves of Larks beells or Larks-spurs: among which rises up a hard round Stalk, a Foot or more high, with some such Leaves thereon as grow below; at the top of which stand many small yellowish Flowers, formed very like unto the Whitish Wolfs-bane; bearing many black Seeds in Pods afterwards in like manner.*

IV. The Places. It grows on the *Alps*, and on Mountains and Hills near the Lake *Lemane*, and in some places in *Germany*: with us it is nursed up only in Gardens.

V. The Times. It flowers at the latter end of *June*, thro' all *July*, also in *August*, and the Seed is ripe in *August* and *September*.

VI. The Qualities. It is hot and dry in the third Degree; and is Cardiack, Emetick, Cathartick and Alexipharmick.

VII. The Specification. Its chief Designation is for the enervating or destroying and expelling of Poysons of all sorts, chiefly those of *Helmet-flower* or *Monks-hood*, *Wolfs-bane* and *Leopards-bane*.

VIII. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A Pouder of the Root. 2. A Decoction thereof in Wine. 3. A Spirituous Tincture. 4. An Acid Tincture.

#### The Virtues.

IX. The Pouder of the Root. *Hugo Solerius* says, that it will purge the Body very strongly of vicious and watery Humours, both by Vomit and Stool, the quantity of a *Bean* being taken in Broth or Wine. And by reason of the exceeding Bitterness of the Root, it kills all sorts of Worms in the Body. *Guainerius* says, that by his own Experience and Sight, he found it to be as effectual as *Dictamnus* unto all the Purposes unto which that serves. The Pouder of the Root taken in Wine, (from half a Dram to a Dram) is a speedy and special Remedy against the Wind-Colick, which the *Savoyards* about *Diam* (where it grows in great plenty) familiarly use with great Success, and call it the *Wind-Colick Herb*. This same Root also used inwardly, is not only the chief and principal Antidote or Remedy against the Poison of *Monks-hood* or *Helmet-flower*, and *Wolfs-bane*, but also of *Leopards-bane*, or any other Poisonous Herb whatsoever, being given first and last Morning and Night.

X. The Decoction in Wine. It has all the former Virtues, but not full out so efficacious as the Root in Substance. If you so please, the Pouder of the Root may be given in this Vehicle for the same Purposes.

XI. The Spirituous Tincture. It has the Virtues of the Pouder and Decoction; besides which, it is good against Surfeits, the Measles and Small-Pox; for by gently provoking Sweat, it expels the Malignity to the Surface of the Skin, and so defends the Heart and Vital Spirits from the Poison and Force

of those Diseases, causing them orderly to come forth: you may give from one Dram to two Drams, (according to Age and Strength) in any proper Vehicle. It defends the Heart, and strengthens the Spirits as a most Sovereign Cordial.

XII. The Acid Tincture. It has the Virtues of the Root, Decoction and Spirit; besides which, it is more effectual than any of them against the Plague or Pestilence, and all sorts of Malign or Pestilential Diseases, as also against all malign and burning Fevers, destroying the Malignity, and extinguishing the burning Heat of the Disease. It is also good against the Venom and Poison of Mad Dogs, Serpents of all kinds, as Viper, Rattle-snake, Slow-worm, &c. and the Stinging of Scorpions, Hornets, Wasps, Bees, &c. Let the Patient take it in all that they drink, so many Drops at a time as may make the Vehicle pleasant, and continuing the Use of it for some days. The Figure which we have given you in this place, is from *Matthiolus* his *Epitome*.

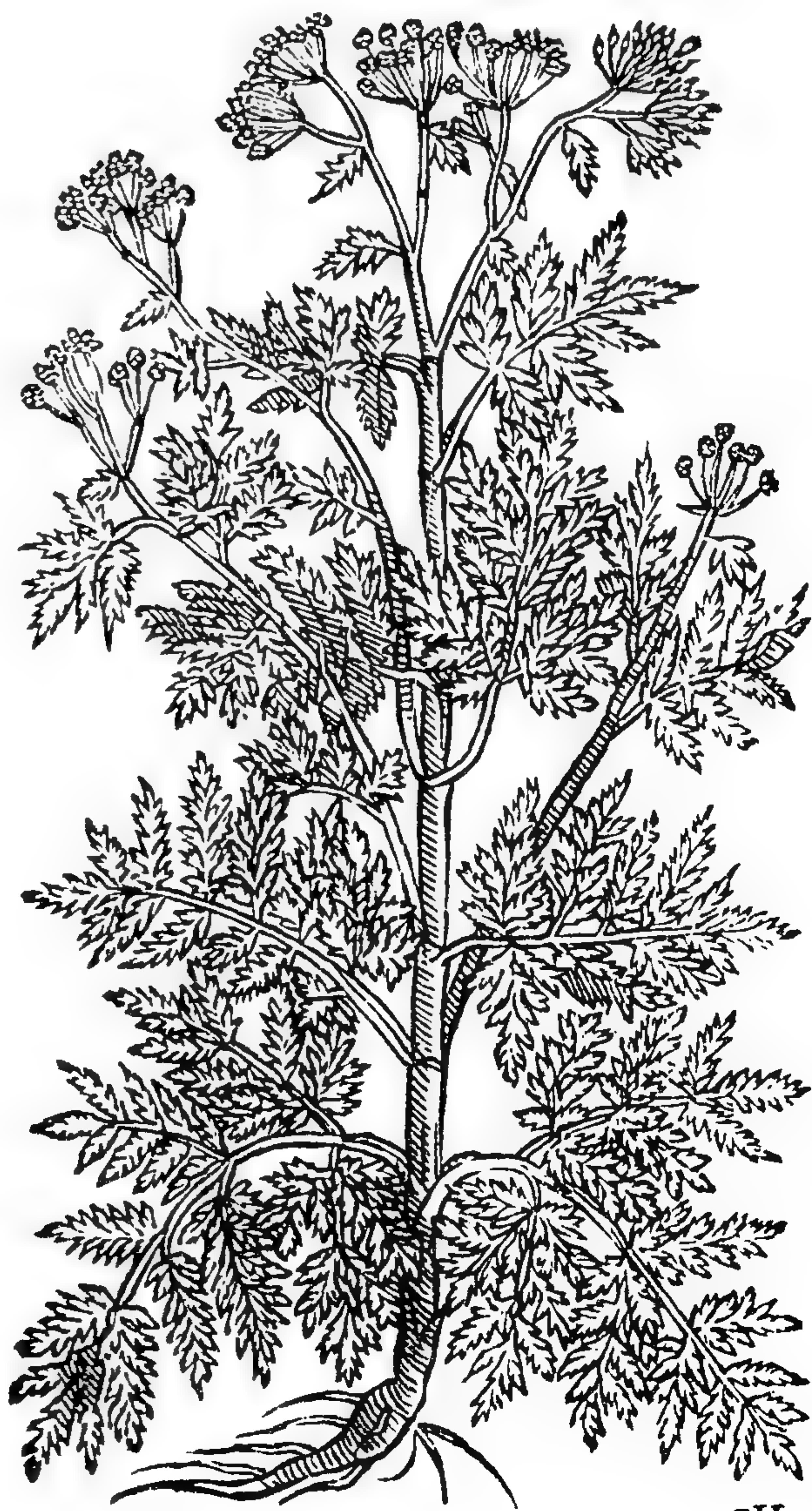
## C H A P. CCCLV.

### Of H E M L O C K Common.

I. THE Names. It is called in *Arabick*, *Sucarum*: in *Greek*, *Κόρυμβος, παρὰ το κανὼν, ἢ circum vertendo, quod Vertiginem, ἢ imaginem earum rerum quæ aspiciuntur, tanquam circumagantur ac in tenebras inducat ijs quæ eam biberunt*: in *Latine*, *Cicuta*; and in *English*, *Hemlock*.

II. The Kinds. There are three principal kinds, viz. 1. *Cicuta vulgaris*, The Common Hemlock. 2. *Cicuta minor*, *Cicuta fatua*, *Cicuta Apifolia*, The lesser or Parsley-leav'd Hemlock, in Cap. 356. 3. *Cicuta palustris*, *Cicuta aquatica*, Water or Marsh Hemlock, in Cap. 357. following.

#### Common Hemlock.



III. The



III. *The Common Kinds.* Of this there are two several sorts, viz. 1. *Κάκιστος κοινόν*, *Cicuta vulgaris*, *Cicuta major*, (by almost all Writers) *Cicutaria Clusij*, Our Common Hemlock. 2. *Κάκιστος μέγα, & μέγιστον*, *Cicuta magna, vel maxima*, *Cicutaria latifolia foetidissima*, *Cicutaria maxima Brancionis* by Lobel, *Cicutaria Myrrhis Thalij*; *Seseli Peloponese Matthioli*, *Gesneri* and *Lugdunensis*, which Lobel contradicts; The great or greatest Hemlock. That this is a Hemlock, and no *Seseli* or *Hartwort*, no doubt is to be made of it.

IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common Hemlock, has a Root which is long, white, and sometimes crooked, and hollow within: from the Head of which Root it grows up with a hollow green Stalk, three or four Feet high or more, full of red Spots sometimes, and having at the Joints very large winged Leaves, one set against another, dented about the edges, of a sad green color, branched towards the top, where it is full of Umbles of white Flowers; which being passed away, give white, flat-tish, long Seed. The whole Plant and every part has a strong, heady, ill-conditioned Smell, offending the Senses.



V. *The second, or Great or greatest Hemlock.* It has a Root which is very great and white, growing as well deep into the Ground, as spreading many great Branches therein, which sometimes dies after it has given Seed, and sometimes not, abiding all Winter in some Seasons, and in some Places. This Hemlock has much larger winged Leaves than the former, thicker set, more spread, and of a sadder green color, having a Smell which Lobel calls *Fœtidissima*: yet Parkinson says, that tho' he had it growing many Years in his Garden, he never found any offensive Smell it had. The Stalk is great, but rises not so high as the Common sort does; but bears as large Umbles of white Flowers; where, afterwards grow large and thick white crooked Seed, of no evil Smell.

VI. *The Places.* The first grows in all Countries throughout England by Walls and Hedge-sides, and in waste Grounds and untilled Places, as also in Gardens of a fat and rich Soil. The second I have found in moist and fertil Meadows abounding with other Weeds near their Borders, but grows with us mostly in Gardens, where it is generally weeded out.

VII. *The Times.* They both flower in July and August, and seed in August and September.

VIII. *The Qualities.* Hemlock is cold in the fourth Degree, and dry in the second; Repercussive, Anodyne, Astringent, Arthritick and Venefick.

IX. *The Specification.* It is chiefly of External Use, for the Cure of the Gout, Scirrhus Tumors, Erysipelas, Inflammations, Wheals, Puthes, creeping Ulcers.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. A Cataplasm of the Leaves. 3. A Cataplasm of the Root. 4. A Venefick. 5. An Emplaster.

## The Virtues.

XI. *The liquid Juice.* It is applied outwardly to the Testicles of such as have Venereous Dreams, or the like, to suppress them: also to Maidens and Womens Breasts, to repress their Swellings, and repel their Milk: yet by reason those places are so principal, and full of Vital Spirits, it sometimes happens that the Remedy is worse than the Disease. It may safely be applied to an Inflammation, an Erysipelas, Pains of the Gout, arising from hot or fiery Humors; and to Wheals, Puthes and creeping Ulcers, accompanied with a hot and sharp Matter, for by cooling and repelling the Heat, it puts a stop to the Humor.

XII. *The Cataplasm of the Leaves.* A Cataplasm being made of the raw Leaves by only bruising, and so laid to the Brows and Forehead, is good to stop Defluxions of Rheums falling into swollen and red Eyes, so as quickly to ease the Pain, and take away the Swelling and Redness. And being applied with a mixture of Bay Salt in fine powder to the Wrist, (renewing it twice a day for three or four days) it takes away a Pin and Web growing in the Eye; but it ought to be applied (as they say) to the contrary Wrist. Applied in Pains of the Joints, it eases them.

XIII. *The Cataplasm of the Root.* It is to be roasted under the Embers, wrapped in double wet Papers, until it becomes soft and tender; then to be beaten in a Mortar to a Pulp, and applied: it prevails admirably against the Gout in Hands or Fingers, as also in other Parts, quickly easing the Pain.

XIV. *The Venefick.* The Juice mixed with Wine, if it is given to any one, is present Death, as *Tragus* says. And this possibly might be the Venefick which the Athenians adjudged the Wise *Socrates* to die by, for not thinking respectfully of their Gods, or rather Devils, being accused by *Aristus* and *Melitus*. *The Cure.* If any one has taken the Juice of Hemlock, or this Venefick, or by mischance has eaten this Herb instead of Parsley, or its Root instead of Parsneps, which causes a Frensy, or Perturbation of the Senses, as if stupified or drunk: the first thing I say in this Case which is to be done, (if it is soon enough) is to give the Patient a Vomit of *Vinum Benedictum*, *Vinum Antimoniale*, or *Tartar Emetick*: which being effected, a good Draught of Wine (in which *Gentian* has been infused) is to be drunk, as *Pliny* advises. *Tragus* says, he cured a Woman who had eaten the Root, by giving her a Draught of good Vinegar: and this may be probable,



ble, because, for that if the Vinegar was given in a good large quantity it would cause plentiful Vomiting, to evacuate the poysonous matter, and withal, by reason of its acidity, it would enervate and destroy the force of the Poyson, making it of no effect.

XV. *The Emplaster, called Emplastrum à Cicuta cum Ammoniaco.* Take juice of Hemlock four Ounces, Vinegar of Squills, Gum Ammoniacum, of each eight Ounces, dissolve the Gum in the Juice and Vinegar, by a gentle infusion in a warm Sand heat, then strain, and reduce it to the consistence of an Emplaster. Here note, that if the quantity of the Juice was doubled it would be so much the better; it was invented to ease pains, chiefly of the Spleen and Gout, my Experience has confirmed it, and such as shall use it upon my Word may have cause to return me Thanks for this Recommendation; it is also an excellent thing to dissolve Scirrhus, and other like hard Tumors in any part of the Body, chiefly Tumors of the Liver, Spleen, Hypochonders, and Joints.

XVI. *Nota.* It has been found by observation that some Countries bring it forth in greater strength than other some do, and where it is produced in greater strength it is a greater Poyson; and tho' it is a kind of Poyson with us here in England, yet it seems not to be so great a Poyson as in Greece, and other hot Countries, nor attended with such violent effects.

## C H A P. CCCLVI.

### Of H E M L O C K the Lesser,

O R,

### H E M L O C K Parsly Leav'd.

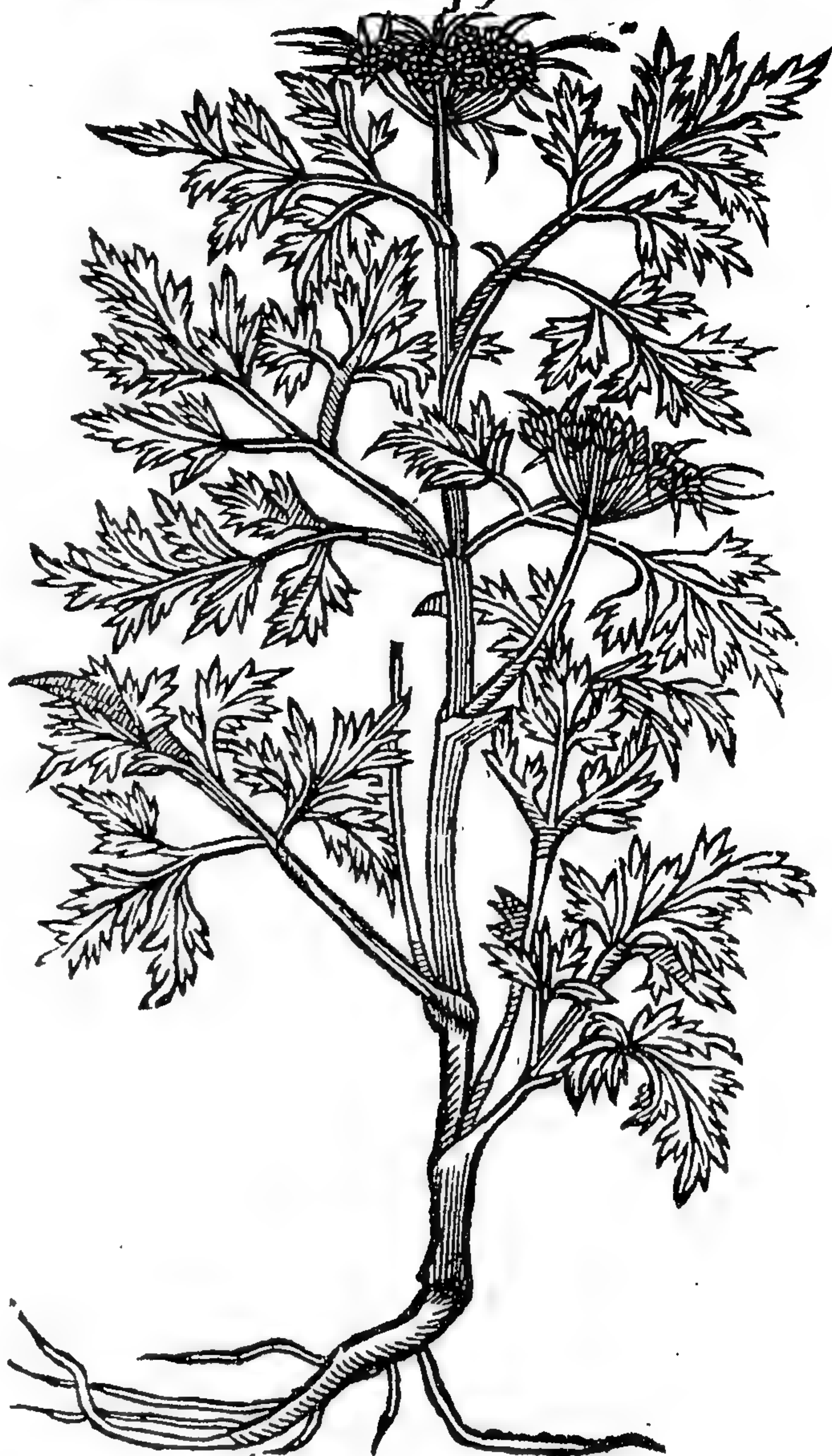
I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Κάκιστος μινός*, in Latine *Cicuta parva, vel minor*, and in English *The Small or Lesser Hemlock*.

II. *The Kinds.* This is the second general Species of this Plant, and tho' it is a singular one of its Kind, yet Authors have given it a plurality of Names, as *Cicuta minor Cordi & Camerarij*, *Cicutaria Fatua Lobelij*, *Cicuta Fatua*, *Apium Cicutarium Thalij*, *Petroselinum Caninum Tabernamontani*, *Petroselinum Tragium*, and *Apium Comes Cicutarium Gesneri in Hortis*, Fools Hemlock, Parsly Leav'd Hemlock, &c.

III. *The Description.* This Smaller Hemlock has a small, tough, white Root, which perishes every Year, from which rise up divers stiff Stalks, scarcely a Yard high, hollow, somewhat reddish towards the Sun, otherwise they are whiter than the former, smaller, and not spotted at all, and jointed or kneed at certain distances, from which Joints spring forth long Leaves, very green, and finely jagged, like the Common Chervil, or Parsly; indeed as the Leaves are much smaller than the Common Hemlock, so they come so near unto Parsly, that many are mistaken, in gathering one for another, being often found (tho' a Wild Weed) in Gardens, of a paler green color, and with few Branches; the Flowers are white, and grow at the tops of the Stalks in small spoky Umbles, with small, longish, green Leaves about them; the Seed follows, like that of the Common Hemlock, of a white color, or as they grow together on the

tops of the Stalks, resembling Coriander Seed, but lesser; the whole Plant seems not to me to be of any evil smell.

### Hemlock Parsly Leav'd.



IV. *The Places.* It grows amongst Stones and Rubbish by old Walls and ruinous places, by the Walls of Cities and Towns, and on Banks sides, and by Hedges, almost every where, as also in Gardens very plentifully.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers in July and August, and its Seed is ripe in August and September, and in warm and seasonable Years much sooner.

VI. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of this are the same with those of the Common Kinds, saving, that it is found by experience that this is not full out so Venefick as they are, yet doubtless is dangerous to be taken inwardly.

## C H A P. CCCLVII.

### Of H E M L O C K Water or Marsh.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Κάκιστος ύδατος*, in Latine *Cicuta Aquatica, vel Palustris*, in English *Water or Marsh Hemlock*.

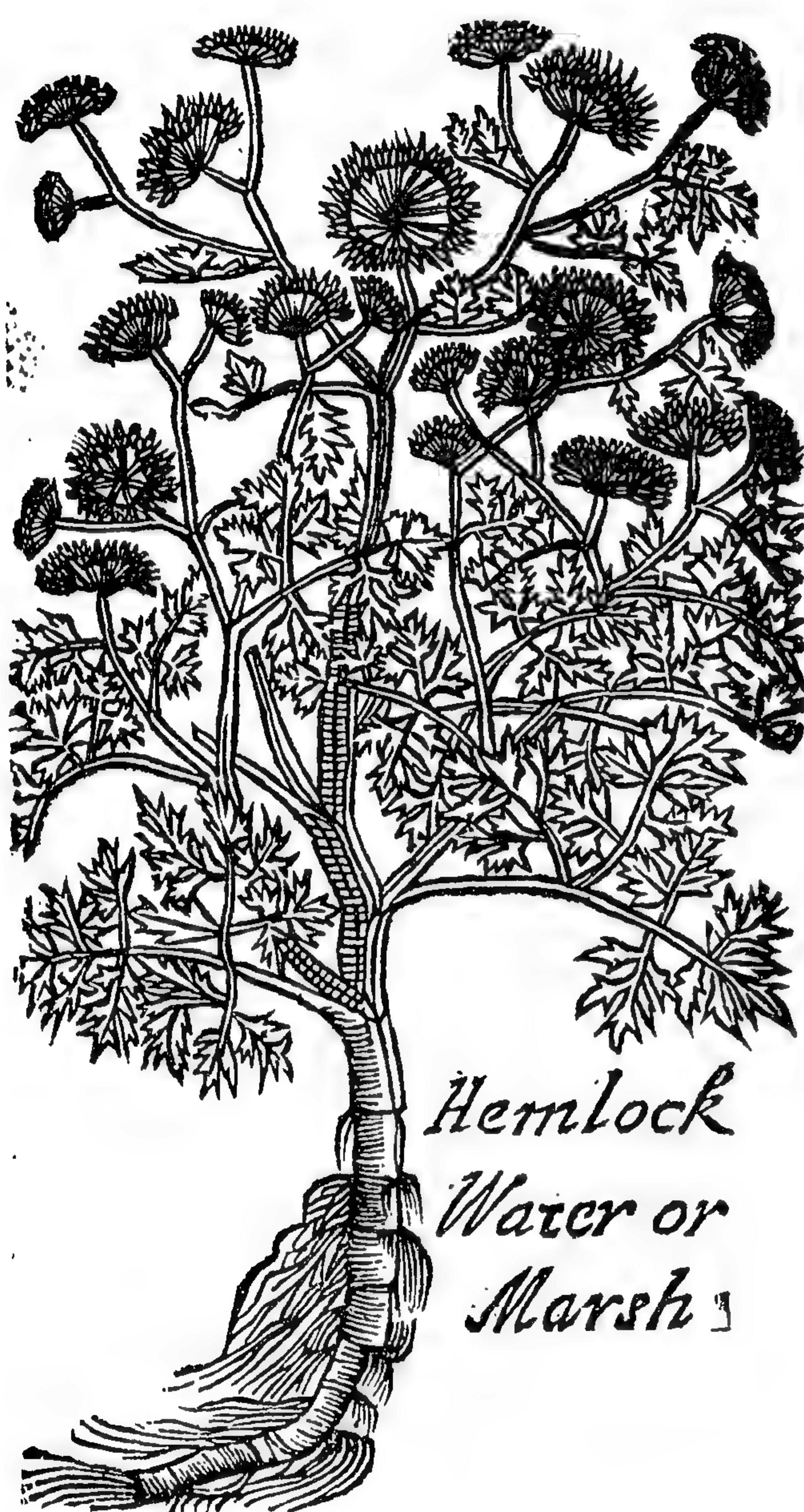
II. *The Kinds.* There are three Kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Cicutaria Palustris alba*, *Cicutaria Palustris Flore albo*, *Cicutaria albo Lugdunensis*, White Water Hemlock. 2. *Cicutaria Palustris rubra*, *Cicutaria rubra*, *Cicutaria Palustris Flore purpureo Baubini & Camerarij*, Red Water Hemlock. 3. *Cicutaria Palustris Tenuifolia Lobelij*, *Cicuta Palustris & Aquatica Cordi*, *Gesneri*, & *Thalij*, Marsh or Water Hemlock.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or White Water



ter Hemlock. It has a white, thick, long Root, like that of Fennel, but divided into many parts, being of a sweet scent, and an hot sharp taste; from this Root rise up several Stalks of winged Leaves, much cut in on the edges, from among which rises up a slender crumpled Stalk, and Branched a Foot and half or more high; bearing Umbles of white Flowers, and long, black, well smelling Seed, and when ripe tasting sharp, two always joined together, with a small Thread between them.

IV. The second, or Red Water Hemlock. It has a thick, black, and jointed Root, with several Fibres thereat; the Leaves are in form like the former, but larger, and not so much cut into parts, and paler of color; the Stalk is round, and jointed, about a Foot in height, bearing at its tops flat Umbles, with pale red, or blush Flowers, and long black Seed after them, sweet in smell, and sharp in taste.



V. The third, or Marsh or Water Hemlock. It has a long and blackish Root, with several Joints and Fibres growing from them; from this Root springs up a great, thick, and hollow Stalk, three, four, and sometimes almost five Feet high, full of Joints, and Leaves at them; at the Joints with the Leaves, which are cut into divers parts, somewhat like unto Parsly, but smaller, come forth the Branches up to the top, bearing small Umbles of White Flowers; the Seed is sweet in smell, and black, somewhat greater than Aniseed: This is that Plant which Dodonaeus and Lugdunensis take to be Phellandrium Plinij, and they make it to be Sium, or Laver, the Ligusticum Sylvestre Thalij, which Casalpinus and others think to be the Silaus Plinij.

VI. The Places. They all grow in moist and watery places in several Countries of Europe, the third, or last of them, grows by many Rivers sides in many parts of England, in several places by the Thames side, also in the midst of Water Ditches, and standing Pools and Ponds, in most places of this Land; it grows very plentifully in the Ditches by a Causey

going from Redriff to Deptford, near London, and in many other places.

VII. The Times. They Flower thro' all July and August, and perfect their Seed in August and September, as other Hemlocks do.

VIII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, Virtues and Uses are the same (as Authors think) with the Common Hemlock in Chap. 355. aforegoing, but of this I confess I very much doubt, seeing these are cold in the fourth degree, and these on the contrary are hot, at least in the second degree, and aromatick, as the hot and spicy taste of the Seed seems to indicate, however, since Authors have said nothing in particular of the matter, nor we have had any experience of our own concerning the same, we shall cease any farther declaration thereof.

## C H A P. CCCLVIII.

### Of H E M P Manured.

I. THE Names. It is called in Arabick Canab, and Schehedenegi, in Greek Κάναβις, in Latine Cannabis, and in English Hemp.

II. The Kinds. It is twofold, viz. 1. κάναβις σπινθηρ, Cannabis Sativa, Manured Hemp. 2. κάναβις ύπώλανθη, Cannabis Sylvestris, Cannabis Spuria, Wild or Bastard Hemp.

III. The Manured Kinds. The Manured is also twofold, viz. 1. Cannabis Mas, The Male Hemp, or that which bears Seed. 2. Cannabis Femina, The Female Hemp, or that which bears Flowers and no Seed.



IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Male Kind, has generally one downright Root, six or seven Inches long, with many strong Strings, which take fast hold in the Ground, but die and perish every Year; from this Root rises up one Stalk, four, five, six, or seven Feet



Feet high, according to the goodness of the Soil, with many Leaves set thereon at distances; this Stalk is rough and bushy, with many Leaves also on the Branches, every one of them standing upon a long Footstalk, and divided into five, six, or seven several Leaves, joined together at the bottom of them, and dented about the edges, something like unto the form of the Leaves *Palma Christi*, or *Bastard Black Hellebor*, of a dark green color, and of a strong smell, but not unpleasing; towards the tops, from the bottoms of the Wings and Leaves, comes forth the Seed on long Branches, without any shew of Flowers, which is round, somewhat hard, and full of an oily Nut like white substance, and contained in round Heads; every particular Leaf is narrow, long, and sharp pointed, finely notched in about the edges; this is called *Winter Hemp*.



V. The second, or Female Kind, has like Root and Stalk as the former, but the Leaves are lesser, and of a lighter green color, yet like in form and shape; the Stalk is single for the most part, with few or no Branches, having a like strong smell as the other, it bears a great number of Flowers, which are small, and of a whitish yellow color, standing many together upon long Branches, which turn into dust, and are carried away with the Wind, not leaving any Seed after them, for which reason it is called *Barren Hemp*, and by reason of its bearing no Seed it comes to ripeness sooner than the other by a Month, or more, being the tenderer and weaker Plant, the Stalk being hollower, and not so strong, for which reason it is usually called *Summer Hemp*.

VI. An Observation. These two sorts *Male* and *Female* are not originally two differing Kinds, but both rise from one and the self same Seed, that is, they both spring from the Seed, growing upon one and the same Stalk or Plant, being herein somewhat like unto the *French Mercury*; but how this change in Nature should be, or how it is brought to pass, is very hard to determine: The *Summer Hemp*, as it is the tenderer and weaker Plant, so it makes the finer Stuff or Tare, and that makes the finer Thread,

and by consequence the finer and softer Linnen Cloth. The *Winter Hemp*, as it is the stronger Plant, and harder peeling, so it makes the courser and harder Thread and Cloth, and of this sort it is they usually make their Cordage. As for the way and manner of steeping or watering of *Hemp*, and how it is dried, picked, cleansed, and beaten, &c. so as to be made into Cloth or Cordage, as it is not pertinent to, or the business of this Work, so it is pretermitted, and you are referred to the proper place in my *Agriculture*, which, if it shall please God to Bless me with Life, shall in due season be emitted into the World, for the general Benefit of Mankind.

VII. There is also a third Kind of *Hemp* growing in *Virginia*, and other of our *Floridian* Plantations, which in Roots, Stalks, Leaves and Seed differ not much from our *Manured Kind*, saving, that the whole Plant is much bigger, the Stalks are greater, and the Leaves and Flowers much larger.

VIII. The Places. *Pliny Lib. 20. Chap. 23.* says that *Hemp* was formerly found growing Wild, but we in our days can find no such thing, for in all places of the World it is now Sown in enclosed Fields chosen on purpose for the same; *Columella* says it delights to grow in a Fat, Dunged, and Watery Soil, or in plain and moist Grounds deeply Ploughed.

IX. The Times. It is Sown in the end of *March*, or beginning of *April*, and is ripe in *August* or *September*, according as the two sorts grow ripe and fit to be gathered; the second of these, or *Summer Hemp* is ripe and fit to be gathered in the end of *July*, and beginning of *August*; the first, or *Winter Hemp*, is gathered a full Month after, viz. in the end of *August*, or beginning of *September*.

X. The Qualities. It is hot and dry in the end of the first degree, it is Astringent, Carminative, Diffusive, opening Obstructions of the Gall Bladder, and is Anodyne, Neurotick, and Arthritick.

XI. The Specification. It is a peculiar thing in curing the Jaundice and Colick, in killing Worms, and easing pains of the Gout.

XII. The Preparations. You may prepare therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice of the Leaves. 2. A Decoction of the Leaves. 3. A Decoction of the Root. 4. A Decoction or Emulsion of the Seed. 5. A Distilled Water of Root and Herb. 6. An Oil by Infusion. 7. The Leaves fried.

#### The Virtues.

XIII. The Liquid Juice of the Leaves. Taken to an Ounce or two in a Glass of Wine it is an extraordinary thing to kill Worms, whether in Man or Beast; dropt into the Ears it kills Worms in the Ears, and draws forth any other living Creature which has crept into them: And to shew the strength hereof for this purpose, *Matthiolus* says, that if it is poured, (yea but the Decoction of the Herb) into the holes of Earth-Worms, it will drive them forth, and that Fishermen and Anglers have used this Feat to get Worms to bait their Hooks.

XIV. The Decoction of the Leaves. It has the former Virtues, but not altogether so strong, and may be given from three to eight Ounces, according to Age and Strength, but is no very agreeable thing for the Stomach.

XV. The Decoction of the Root. It has the same Virtues also, but this in especial it is said to be good against, viz. to allay Inflammations in the Head, or any other part, to ease the pains of the Gout, to help hard Tumors or Knots in the Joints, Cramps, and shrinking of the Sinews, and to ease the pains of the Hip, or Sciatica, being applied thereto by Fomentation,



ration, and afterwards mixed applied made up into a Cataplasma with Barley Flower, renewing of it every day.

XVI. *A Decoction or Emulsion of the Seed.* The Decoction in Water or Wine is hot and dry, and consumes Wind, and by the much use thereof it does disperse it so much, that it consumes and dries up the Natural Seed of Generation. The Emulsion of the Seed in Water or Milk stops continual Fluxes of the Bowels, and is good against a Gonorrhœa, it eases the pains of the Colick, and quiets and allays troublesome and griping Humors in Stomach and Belly, it is good against a Bloody Flux, and stops bleedings, whether at Mouth, Nose, Yard, or Womb. The Emulsion made in Milk, by boiling the Seed so long in it till it is perfectly broken, and then strained out, as *Sylvius de Le Boe Prax. Med. Lib. 1. Cap. 47. Sect. 74. Pag. 306. b. quarto Edition Printed 1680.* has taught, if it is taken five or six Ounces at a time twice or thrice in a day, it will, as he says (from great Experience) cure the Jaundice; it is also good for such as have a hot and dry Cough, opens obstructions of the Lungs, and obstructions of the Gall Bladder, and causes a digestion of Choler.

XVII. *The Distilled Water of the Herb.* It allays Inflammations, and has all the Virtues of the Juice and Decoction of the Leaves, and may be used to be mixed with some other Preparations, as a Vehicle.

XVIII. *The Oil by Insolation, Infusion, or Decoction.* It is good to be applied to any place which is burn'd with Fire, and to remove inflammations in any part; so also if an Oil or Ointment is made, by mixing the fresh Juice with Oil Olive, or Hogs Lard, or fresh Butter, it heals Burnings or Scaldings after an admirable manner.

XIX. *The Leaves fried.* In a Hamorrhage if some of the Blood which comes from the Patient be taken, and the fresh Leaves of *Hemp* be fried therein, and then given to the Sick to eat, it stops the bleeding presently, and if they be so fried as that the Leaves may be crumbled into Powder, this Powder blowed up the Nostrils, or put upon any Wound where there is a flux of Blood, it presently stops it, and given to a Dram or more inwardly in a Spitting of Blood, Vomiting Blood, Pissing Blood, Bloody Flux, or flux of the Terms, it quickly stops it, and by repeating the exhibition quickly cures it; and given to such as are troubled with Worms in the Bowels it kills them.

XX. *Nota.* *Matthiolus* says that *Hempseed* given to Hens in the Winter, when they lay fewest Eggs, will make them lay more plentifully.

*liss ferratis altera Bauhini*, who thinks it to be the *Sideritis Cordi*, The second Bastard or Wild Hemp, 3. *Cannabis Spuria tertia*, *Cannabis Spuria facie Urtice Lobelij*, *Urtica aculeata Folijs non ferratis Bauhini*, *Sideritis altera Matthioli*, The third Bastard or Wild Hemp.



Hemp  
Bastard

III. The Descriptions. *The first, or First Bastard Hemp*, has a Root which is hard and white, and a little spreading, but dying before Winter; from the head of which rises up a reasonable great, hairy, square Stalk, not very strong, nor upright, but as it were leaning down, with several Joints bunching out like Knees, and two Leaves set at every one of them, somewhat long, hairy, and pointed, of a fresher green color than the Leaves of the *Manured Kind*, and dented about the edges; at the Joints also come forth several Branches, jointed and set with Leaves in like manner, whereabout, towards the tops, grow several hooded and gaping Flowers, like those of the *Dead Nettle*, but larger and greater, of a pale purplish color, standing in small, green, prickly Husks, in which, after the Flowers are past, grows the Seed, which is small and round, three or four growing together.

IV. *The second, or Second Bastard Hemp*, differs not much in Root or Stalk from the former, but the Leaves are shorter and rounder; the Flowers hereof are of the same fashion, but not so great as they, the uppermost part or hood whereof is of a pale color, tending to yellow, and the lower part of a deeper Red, or Purple Color; the Husks of the Flowers are somewhat more prickly also than the other.

V. *The Third, or Third Bastard Hemp*, is in its growing much like the last, but its Root is a bush of Fibres and Strings, from whose head comes forth one short body of a Stalk, which quickly divides it self into two, three, or four others, which growing up with several Joints, spread themselves out into many Arms or Branches, two and two at every Joint, but

## C H A P. CCCLIX.

### Of H E M P Bastard or Wild.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Kδννασις ὑπέρλιτη, καὶ νόθη*, in Latine *Cannabis Spuria*, vel *Notha*, and *Cannabis Sylvestris*, in English *Bastard Hemp*, and *Wild Hemp*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make three several sorts hereof, viz. 1. *Cannabis Spuria prima*, *Cannabis Sylvestris Tragi & Lugdunensis*, & *Spuria altera Lobelij*, *Cannabina alba Tabernamontani*, *Urtica aculeata Folijs ferratis Bauhini*, The first Bastard Hemp, or White Bastard Hemp. 2. *Cannabis Spuria secunda*, *Cannabis Sylvestris Spuria tertia Lobelij*, *Alyssum Arvense album Tabernamontani*, *Urtica aculeata Fo-*



but the Leaves at the Joints are somewhat long and narrow, a little fadder, and not dented about the edges in most of them; the Flowers hereof are hooded and gaping, but they are wholly of a pale yellowish color, with little or no shadow or spot in them, and stand thicker about the Joints, whose Husks have longer and sharper points than the rest.



VI. *Nota.* You are to take notice that there is another variety of the first of these Kinds, whose Flower is for the most part of a perfect white color, or a little pale whitish, which does manifestly express the difference, and therefore is called in *Latine* *Cannabis Spuria prima Flore albo*, Bastard Hemp of the first sort with a white Flower.

VII. *The Places.* These Kinds of Bastard or Wild Hemp do all grow as well in moist Grounds as dry, by Ditch sides, and by Pathways, and under Walls, and some of them will be found in Gardens, whence they are continually plucked up as Weeds; the first Kind with a white Flower mentioned at Sect. VI. above has been found by the Pathways near Clapham, and in the Ditches by Redriff, or Rotherhithe, as it was formerly written; they all grow also upon barren Hills and Mountains, as Gerard says, and especially on Earable Land; and they have been oftentimes found in the Corn Fields of Kent, near Gravesend and Southfleet, and in all the way from thence to Canterbury, and in many places about London.

VIII. *The Times.* They all Flower for the most part in July, and from July to the end of August, the Seed ripening in the mean time.

IX. *As to their Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* they are thought to be nearly the same with those of the Common Hemp in the former Chapter, as some Authors are of Opinion, but they are seldom used in Physick, either inwardly or outwardly, when and where the others are to be had.

X. But Lobel says they are used as an assured Remedy against Nodes and Wens, and other like hard Tumors in the Flesh, and that after other things have

failed and done no good, 'tis very possible that they may be of extraordinary use in curing the Kings-Evil, if prudently prepared and applied, and by a Wise and Skilful Hand.

HEMP Water. See AGRIMONY Water.

## C H A P. CCCLX.

### Of HENBANE Common or Black.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Arabick* *Altercum*, and *Altercangenum*, and by the *Arabian* Physicians *Bengi*, which differs but little from the *Indian* and *Persian* Name *Bangue*, as *Garcias ab Orto*, and *Christopher Acosta* declare, in *Greek* *ῥοσκνός*, *μ* & *quasi Faba Porcina*, in *Latine* also *Hyoscyamus*, and corruptly *Jusquiamus*, also *Apollinaris*, ab *Apol-line* *Medicinæ inventore*, *vel quia opplet Cerebrum vitioso & fetido halitu, eoque Mentem percellit, quasi Apollinis Æstro*. *Scribonius* says that the *Latines* also call it *Altercum*, ab *Altercando*, *quia cum Verborum Altercatione rixaque se torquent Hyosciamo dementati*. *Camerarius* saith it is also called *Priapcia*, *quia Itali Seminē utuntur ad Priapismum sedandum*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are several sorts of this Plant, but the principal Kinds are, 1. *ῥοσκνός μίλας*, *Hyoscyamus niger*, called also *Hyoscyamus vulgaris*, and by *Fuchsius* *Hyoscyamus Flavus*, Our Common Henbane, which is the Black Henbane, and is a singular Plant, of which in this Chapter. 2. *ῥοσκνός λευκός*, *Hyoscyamus albus*, so called by all Authors, *White Henbane*, of which in Chap. 361. following.



III. *The Description.* It has a Root which is great, white, and thick, branching or spreading it self several



ral ways under Ground, so like unto a Parlinep Root, (but that it is not so white) that it has deceived several; from this Root spring up several very large, thick, soft, woolly Leaves, lying upon the Ground, much cut in or torn on the edges, of a dark or very dull grayish green color; among these Leaves rise up divers thick and soft Stalks, two or three Feet high, and sometimes higher, which spread themselves out into several smaller Branches, with some smaller Leaves on them, and many hollow Flowers Bell fashion scarcely appearing above the Husks, and commonly torn on the one side, ending in five round points, growing one above another, of a deadish, faint, yellow, white color, somewhat paler towards the edges, with many purplish Veins therein, and of a brownish color, or dark yellowish purple in the bottom of the Flower, with a small Pointel of the same color in the middle, each of them standing in a hard close Husk, which, after the Flower is past, grows very like the Husk of a *Pomgranet* Flower, or the Flower or Husk of *Asarabacca*, and somewhat sharp at the top points, in which is contained much small Seed, very like unto *Poppy* Seed, but of a dusky grayish color, almost enclining unto black, whence came the Name *Black Henbane*.

IV. *The Egyptian Henbane.* I shall put this Plant into this Chapter, and describe it here, tho' an Exotick, because Parkinson says it is, or will have it to be, a Species of the Black, and withal it is not a very great stranger in some of our English Gardens, it has a small white Root, with some Fibres adjoining to it, which perishes every Year; this Root sends up a strong woolly Stalk, about two Feet high, on which are growing lesser Leaves than those of the Common Kind afore described, and almost as much torn on the edges, especially those towards the bottom, but those which grow up higher towards the top are little or nothing indented on the edges, and the higher the smoother edged, all of them being very white and hoary; the Flowers stand every one of them at the Joints with the Leaves, and at the tops likewise, in such like Husks as the Common does, and of the same pale yellow color, with purple Veins therein, at the first blowing of them, but afterwards, as they grow larger, so the color changes to be of a dark reddish color, with Veins of a deeper Dye, and a whitish bottom, with a Purple Pointel, encompassed with yellow Threads in the middle, which being past away, there succeeds such like prickly Heads as the Common Kind has, and also such like Seed.

V. *The Places.* The first is commonly found growing by the Way sides, and under Hedge sides, and old Walls, about the borders of Fields, on old Dunghills which have lain long, and in other rude and untilled places; the other is an Exotick, common to be had in *Aegypt*, as the first is with us, but by transportation of the Seed to us, is now to be found in several of our Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* They spring out of the Ground all April, and in May, and do both Flower in July, and in August, the Seed being perfected in October, when growing ripe, if it is suffered to shed or fall, it springs up again every Year.

VII. *The Qualities.* They are cold in the fourth degree, and dry in the second or third, they are Anodyne, Astringent, Emphractive, Repercussive, Arthritick, and Venefick.

VIII. *The Specification.* They are good against inflammations of the Eyes, Sciatica, Gout, Rheumatism, Kings-Evil, hot Tumors of the Cods, and of Womens Breasts, noise, deafness, and pains in the Ears, it prevails against Coughs, and Fits of the Mother.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have, 1. The Leaves whole and in substance. 2. A Juice of the Leaves and Roots. 3. An Essence of the same. 4. A Juice or Emulsion of the Seed. 5. An Oil of the Seed by Insolation or Expression. 6. The Seed in substance. 7. A Decoction of Root, Herb, and Seed. 8. A Vinegar of the Root or Herb, or green Husks of the Flowers. 9. An Extract of the Juice of the Roots and Leaves. 10. An Oil or Ointment of the Root, or Leaves, or of their Juice. 11. A Cataplasm of the Roots or Leaves boiled in Red Port Wine. 12. A Fomentation. 13. Fumes of the Herb or Seed. 14. A Distilled Water of Root, Herb, Flowers. 15. A Venefick. 16. The Cure of the Poyson of *Henbane*. 17. A History.

## *The Virtues.*

X. *The green Leaves in substance.* Applied they cool all inflammations, either in the Eyes, or in any other part of the Body, and are good to assuage all manner of swellings, whether of the Cods, or of Womens Breasts, or in any other part; the same applied to the Joints give ease in pains of the Gout, and Sciatica, and to the Forehead and Temples they ease a vehement Headach, proceeding from a hot cause, or for want of Sleep in Fevers, and are very good against simple Contusions while recent.

XI. *The Liquid Juice of the Leaves.* It has all the former Virtues, being bathed warm or fomented upon the parts affected, and seems to me to be the more powerful of the two, but after bathing it will be necessary to lay Linnen Cloths four, six, or eight times doubled dipped in the same Juice upon the disaffection; dropped into the Ears it takes away any noise therein, deafness, thickness of hearing, or pain there; held often in the Mouth of one who has the Toothach it gives relief and ease, and if there is Worms in the Teeth or Gums it kills them.

XII. *The Essence of the Roots and Leaves.* It has all the Virtues of the green Leaves and Juice aforegoing, and for the excellent use which may be made hereof it ought always to be kept in a readiness in the House; if it is mixed with Wine, or Wine and Water in equal quantities, and a lousie Head bathed therewith, it will kill Nits and Lice, and this it will do in Man and Beast; the same thing the Liquid Juice will do also.

XIII. *The Juice or Emulsion of the Seed.* An Ounce of the Seed will make twenty or twenty four Doses for a Man or Woman, it is an excellent thing against hot, salt, and sharp defluxions of Rheum falling upon the Lungs, eases Coughs, tho' never so extreme, and is good against pains of the Spleen, and Womb, and Hysterick Fits, or Fits of the Mother; it stops all sorts of Fluxes of the Bowels, as Diarrhoea's, Disenteria's, Lienteria's, and Hepatick Flux, as also the overflowing of the Terms, and the Whites in Women.

XIV. *The Oil of the Seed by Insolation or Expression.* Dropped into the Ears it is good against noise and pain there, as also against thickness of hearing, and kills Worms in the Ears; anointed on the Joints of Gouty People, it gives ease to the pain and assuages the swelling of the part: The Oil by Insolation is good for all the aforementioned things, but the Expresed Oil is five times more powerful and efficacious, and therefore the rather to be chosen.

XV. *The Seed in substance.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice or Emulsion of the Seed at Sect. XIII. above, besides which it is a most excellent thing to be given about ten or fifteen Grains at a time (according to the Age of the Person) to such as Piss a Bed, or cannot hold their Water, being continued for some time; and by this Remedy alone I have



cured several Young Persons, (even Women kind, which are the most difficult) who had been troubled with the same many Years, the Cure succeeding beyond expectation: The Emulsion of the Seed will also do the same thing, but whether it is so powerful as the Seed in substance I will not determine, because a great Virtue may reside in the Hulls or Husks of the Seed, which in the Emulsion are all cast away; but if the Emulsion be made with all the Husks of the Seed in it, I know not but then it may do as well as the Seed in substance it self; if the Seed is given in substance, it ought first to be all bruised in a Stone or Glass Mortar, and then mixed with the pulp of a roasted Apple, or other proper Vehicle, and so given (for some time) every Night going to Bed.

XVI. *The Decoction of Roots, Herb, or Seed.* If the Feet are washed herewith it causes Sleep, and given in a Clyster it does the same, so also bathed upon the Temples and Forehead, and a little snuffed up the Nostrils also; it has all the Virtues of the green Leaves, Liquid Juice and Essence at Sect. X. XI. XII. if in like manner applied, but the Decoction is much the weaker Preparation, and ought therefore to be the oftner used: The Decoction of the green Husks of the Flowers has also the same Virtues.

XVII. *The Vinegar of the Root, green Herb, or green Husks.* It is made by Infusion in sharp White Wine Vinegar, either by Insolation, Digestion in a Sand heat, or gentle boiling, or digesting in a boiling *Balneo*; if it is held in the Mouth it eases the pains of the Teeth, given inwardly in a small Dose, as from half a Dram to a Dram, or more, in some fit Vehicle, it causes Rest and Sleep, more especially if it is also bathed upon the Nostrils, Forehead, and Temples, and a Rose Cake dipped in the same be applied to the Temples; bathed upon places inflamed, tumified, or pained, or affected with the Gout, it eases them; it also asswages the swelling of the Spleen, and eases its pain.

XVIII. *The Extract of the Juice of the Roots and Leaves.* The Juice being produced by expression is to be inspissated in a gentle Sand heat, or in the Sun, till it comes to perfect dryness of a Gum, which done, it is to be reduced, by beating in a Mortar, to a gross Powder, and then it is fit for extraction; this is done two ways, viz. either with fair Water, or with Spirit of Wine; you must dissolve it in either the one or the other Menstruum in a gentle *Balneo*, or in a gentle Sand heat, and keep it in that digestion forty eight Hours, shaking it two or three times a day; then being settled till it is perfectly fine, decant off the clear Tincture, which reserve, put more, either fair Water, or Spirit of Wine, and extract again as before, till no more Tincture will arise; decant this clear Tincture, which put to the former reserved Tincture, casting the faces away; this Tincture, whether Aqueous or Vinous, put into a proper Vessel, if it is an Aqueous Tincture, you may put it into a Glass Basin, or well glazed Earthen Basin, and in a gentle Sand heat evaporate to dryness, and then it is done; but if it is a Spirituous Tincture, put it into a Glass Body or Vesica, which fit with a Glass Head, and in a gentle Sand heat, or in *Balneo*, draw off the Spirit, till the Magma remaining is of the thickness of new Honey, or something thicker; the Spirit you may keep for the like use again, the Extract you may take out, (by breaking the Glass Body) and keep it in a Pot or Box close covered from the Air. It is Soporiferous and Narcotick, dissolved in Water or Vinegar, and used outwardly, it will do all that the green Leaves, Liquid Juice, Essence, or Decoction can do; if it is dissolved in Canary, or other Wine, it is good a-

gainst Deafness, or dulness of hearing, noise and pains in the Ears, and held in the Mouth it gives ease in the Toothach; and so dissolved in Wine, or otherwise in Spirit of Wine, it may be given from twenty to thirty, or forty drops, or more, in any convenient Vehicle, to cause Rest and Sleep, and to ease the pains of the Spleen and Bowels, or pains in other parts of the Body, it operating not much different from an Opiate; and this Extract is that Juice of *Henbane* which you ought to put into the Composition when you Confect the *Laudanum Opiatum Paracelsi*.

XIX. *The Oil or Ointment of the Roots, or green Leaves, or of their Juice.* It is made by a trebble addition of the Vegetable matter to the Oil Olive, or Hogs Lard, or mixture of Oil and Sheeps Suet, every time insulating and boiling till the aqueous particles are all consumed. It is good to cool inflammations, and ease pain proceeding from a hot cause; if it is made (instead of the Hogs Lard, or mixture, &c.) with *Unguentum Populeon*, it will give admirable ease in the Gout, assuage the pain and swelling of the Testicles, and the Inflammations and Tumors in Womens Breasts; it eases all pains of the Joints, and in any other part, and will perform what the Leaves, Juice or Essence can do.

XX. *The Cataplasim of the Roots or Leaves.* If applied to simple recent Contusions it dissipates the Tumor, or prevents its rising, and quickly cures it; if made by boiling them soft in Red Port Wine, and applied to Womens Breasts, or to the Testicles, or other like painful Tumors, it eases the pain and asswages the swelling; applied to the Temples and Forehead it eases the Headach, gives Rest, and induces Sleep; that made without Wine is good to be applied to pains in the Reins, and to the brawny parts of the Arms and Legs, but it ought to be applied hot; that made with Wine is an excellent thing against the Sciatica, and the Gout in Hands or Feet.

XXI. *The Fomentation.* It is made of the Wine in which the former Cataplasim was boiled, adding to every Pint thereof a Dram or two of *Oleum Tartari per deliquium*; it allays Inflammations, discusses Tumors or Swellings proceeding from heat, and eases any pain proceeding from a hot cause, or hot and sharp Humors; it is good also to bath therewith Hands and Feet which are apt to be hard and dry; it is also good to hold in the Mouth for the Toothach, and to foment that side of the Cheek and Jaw therewith, it giving present ease to the pain.

XXII. *The Fumes of the dried Root, Herb, or Seed.* The Fume of dried Root, Herb, Stalks, or Seed, being burned, and the Hands held over the Fume thereof, will quickly cure such as are troubled with Swellings or Chilblains in the Winter, the same done to such as have Kibes in their Heels it will quickly heal them, tho' inveterate and very bad; it also cures the Toothach.

XXIII. *The Distilled Water of the Root, Herb, Flowers.* It is effectual to all the purposes for which the green Leaves, Juice, Essence, Infusion, Decoction, &c. are used, but is much weaker than they; it clears the Skin, being washed with it, of heat, Pimples, hot eruptions, or breakings out, Herpes, Scurf, Morpew, Yellowness, and other Deformities, &c.

XXIV. *The Venefick.* It is made of the expressed Juice of Root or Herb, digested in a Glass Body in a very gentle Sand heat for a Week; mixed with any proper matter, as Paste, Bread, Meat, &c. it kills Rats and Mice, or other Vermine: this Venefick mixed with some of the Distilled Water kills Nits and Lice, the Head and parts affected being washed therewith; it also asswages Tumors, cool-

inflama



inflammations, alleviates pain, and gives ease in the Gout, the parts affected being often bathed therewith.

XXV. *The Cure of such as are Poysoned with Henbane.* If it is recent, the first and only thing which is to be done is, to give an Emetick, which may be *Tartar Emetick*, *Vinum Antimoniale*, *Vinum Benedictum*, or some such Antimonial Vomit, which, when it has almost done working, its force downwards ought to be encouraged, by giving this Clyster. Take *Mutton Broth* or *Posset-Drink* a Pint, *brown Sugar* four Ounces, mix, melt, and exhibit it warm; by this means all the Viscera or Bowels will be effectually cleared of the Poyson, then give to the Patient Goats Milk, or Mead, or Honied Water, or Pine Kernels with sweet Wine, or if these be not at Hand, give *Fennel*, or *Dill*, or *Caraway Seed* in Pouder, *Nettle Seed*, or *Seed of Mustard* or *Radishes* in Wine; also Onions or Garlick taken in Wine do all help to free them from the danger, and restore them to their due Temper again; lastly, being put to Bed give two or three Drams of *Mithridate* or *Venice Treacle* in a Glass of Canary, cover them down warm, and let them rest upon it.

XXVI. *A History.* *Parkinson* gives a Relation of one who digging up some *Parsnep* Roots in a Garden, by chance also dug up some *Henbane* Roots which grew among them, they being both very like one another, as is before related; these *Henbane* Roots were boiled with the *Parsneps*, and dressed with them, and they were eaten at Supper; the Person who gave the relation hereof said that he eat of them, and was presently after very dry, and the drought was so great, that nothing he could take would quench it, his Taste was depraved, and his relish of things was taken away; suddenly also his Sight was troubled, so that he could not discern things as they were, but as if they were three or four fold; his Urine was also quite stopped, so that notwithstanding he had a great desire to make Water, yet it was wholly obstructed; in this said Condition he continued for most part of the Night, neither could he rest or sleep being in Bed, but his Urine, by the stoppage thereof, grew so hot within him, that it added much to his Grief; at length he bethought himself of a Medicine, which was good against the Stone, it was a Pouder, he presently took it, and it caused him to make Water, and thereby he felt incredible ease in his whole Body, for all things which he had taken before did him no good; but by this means he quickly recovered his Sight, and the other Symptoms vanish'd, and by Morning he was very well: The Servants also who did eat of this Mefs were Distemper'd, some more, some less, according to their feeding, and the strength of their habit of Body, or Constitution, operating together.

XXVII. *An Observation.* Mountebanks and Quack-Salvers pretend to cure the Toothach with the Fumes of the burned Seed, and to bring many Worms out of the Teeth and Gums therewith, it is true that the Fumes of the Seed will give ease in that pain, but the pretence of Worms falling out of the Teeth is a Cheat which they put upon the by-standers, for these Vile Fellows, to deceive those from whom they would get Money, cause the Patients to hold their Mouths over a Basen or Bowl of fair warm Water, they receive the Fumes of the burning Seeds up a Funnel; these Seeds are stuck fast upon a stick, with a great many small bits of very fine Lute String, which being mixed with the Rosin, and fixed on the stick, with the Seeds afterwards, while the Rosin is hot, as the Rosiny stick is then kindled and burns, melting the Rosin, and as

the Rosin burns the Fumes go up the Funnel into the Mouth, and the Seeds burst, and the very small bits of the Lute String fall into the Water, which seem to move or stir themselves, whereby the lookers on think them to be live Worms come out from the Teeth and Gums, whereas in truth they are nothing but these bits of Lute String mixed and blended with the Rosin just fallen down by means of the Fire, for it is the property of those Lute Strings, that feeling the heat of the Fire, and also falling into warm Water, to seem to stir and to move about in the Water as if they were alive.

## C H A P. CCCLXI.

## Of H E N B A N E White.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *Greek*, *ῥοσναυθ-λεονος*; in *Latin*, *Hyoscyamus albus*; and in *English*, *White Henbane*.



II. *The Kinds.* There are several sorts, as 1. *Hyoscyamus albus*, (so called by all Authors) White Henbane, and this is *major*, the greater kind, for *Bauhinus* makes two of them. 2. *Hyoscyamus albus minor*, The lesser white Henbane: whether they be one and the same Plant (as *Parkinson* says they are) is hard to determine, since difference in Soil may make a very sensible difference both in Growth and Magnitude: however with *Bauhinus* we shall here admit them to be two; and so *Johnson* upon *Gerard* allows them. 3. *Hyoscyamus Creticus*; *Hyoscyamus albus Creticus*, White Henbane of Candy; and this *Clusius* makes to be twofold, as also does *Bauhinus*, which are a greater and a lesser, tho' *Parkinson* will have them to be but one, and this larger sort is that which he thinks to be the *Hyoscyamus Luteus Dioscoridis*: but these in their Figure and



Description are much different. 4. *Hyoscyamus albus Creticus Clusij*, *Hyoscyamus albus Creticus alter*, The other white Henbane of Candy; and this is that which is described by *Johnson* in his *Gerard*.

III. The Descriptions. *The first, or White Henbane, (which is the greater kind) has a Root which is not much unlike to that of the Common Henbane, but lesser, and perishes every Year after it has given Seed: this has divers large Leaves, but not so large as the Common, yet more soft and woolly; and tho' very much torn in or jagged on the edges, yet not so much as the former, something rounder also, and of a paler green color: the Stalks grow higher, and with fewer Branches on them. The Flowers are in Form like to the Vulgar, but smaller, and of a pale color, enclining to a whitish yellow: the Seed likewise grows in such like hard Husks, but less prickly, and is whiter; but the Smell of the whole Plant is nothing so soporiferous, offensive and heady as the first kind in the former Chapter.*

IV. *The second, or Lesser white Henbane. This differs not much in the Root, Stalk, Branches, or manner of Growing from the former White Henbane, but that it seems to be every ways less: the Leaves also, as they are smaller, so they are much rounder, having indented Scallops upon them, and hanging upon pretty long Foot-stalks. The Flowers and Seed-Vessels are very like to those last described in the former Section.*

V. *The third, or White Henbane of Candy, has a Root which is somewhat thick and short, like a Navew Root, dying with us every Year. It has lesser and thinner Leaves than the first White, more white and woolly, and much more cut in on the edges, dented also, and standing upon longer Foot-stalks. The Stalks are more tender and short, having such like Flowers, ending in full round Leaves, standing higher above the Husks, of a fair yellow, and sometimes of a pale yellow color, and purple at the bottom. After which (being passed away) there comes forth Heads of Seed much like the Common kind, but somewhat yellower, or of a lighter color, and in rounder Heads or Husks.*

VI. *The fourth, or Other white Henbane of Candy. It has a Root which is sufficiently thick and large, with many Fibres or Strings adjoining to it. This is a softer and tenderer Plant than the second or third before described; the Leaves also hang upon long Foot-stalks, and are covered over with a soft Downiness, and they are somewhat broader than the second above, and more sinuated, and somewhat resemble the Form of a Fine Leaf, being also snipped or notched about the edges. The Stalks are also covered with a white color. The Flowers are of a Gold yellow, with a Velvet kind of Circle in their middle. This is the Description of that which *Clusius* had from his Friend *Jaques Plateau*, who had the Plant in his Garden, growing from the Seed which he received from Candy.*

VII. *The Places.* The first of these grow in *Narbonne* in *France*, near the Sea side. The second grows also in hot Climes, and where the first of these grows. The third and fourth are Natives of *Candy*, and grow also in *Spain*: but all these kinds grow with us here in *England* only in Gardens.

VIII. *The Times.* They all flower towards the latter part of *July*, and also in *August*; and their Seed is ripe in *October*; but it does not often come to Perfection with us, by reason of the Coldness of our Cline.

IX. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of these are exactly the same with those of

the *Black Henbane*, saving that these are not so cold as those, as not exceeding the third Degree.

X. *Nota.* The *Black Henbanes* are both accounted to be more dangerous than the *White*, and therefore to be avoided as much in inward Medicines as may be, unless administered by a skilful Hand, or except in the case of Necessity, when the *White* is not to be had. The *White* is chiefly to be used in internal Physick; and is very available for all the good Intentions which the *Black* are said to be useful for, and therefore to be chosen.

## C H A P. CCCLXII.

### Of H E N B I T,

O R,

### C H I C K W E E D Ivy-leaved.

I. **T**HE Names. It has no known Greek Name; but it is called in Latin, *Hederacea*, *Alfine Hederula*, *Morsus Gallinae*; and in English, *Henbit*, or *Ivy-leav'd Chickweed*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are two Kinds hereof, viz.  
1. *Hederacea major*, *Alfine Hederula major*, *Alfine Hederula folio major*, *Alfine folio Hederula major Lobelij*, *Morsus Gallinae major*, The greater Henbit.  
2. *Hederacea minor*, *Alfine folio hederula minor*, *Elatine prior Thalij & Lugdunensis*, *Alfine spuria prior Dodonaei*, *Alfine Hirsuta Camerarij*, *Centunculus hirsutior Casalpini*, *Alfine Hederacea minor*, *Morsus Gallinae minor*, and *Morsus Gallinae hederula folio Lobelij*, The lesser Henbit.

### Hen bit or Ground Ivy leaved Chickweed



III. The Descriptions. *The first, or Great Henbit. It has a bunched fibrous Root, which is tough, striking*



striking straight into the Ground, and perishes every Year. From this Root spring forth several feeble Stalks, growing almost upright, or a little enclining towards the Ground, having at certain distances several Joints thereon. The Leaves are of an *Alchoof* or *Ground Ivy* Form, almost round, and not much unlike those of the *Dead Nettle*, they are a little dented in on the edges, of a dull green color, and somewhat hairy, as the Stalks also are, which have at every Joint such round dented Leaves as grow below; but whereas those which grow below, grow upon pretty long Foot-stalks, these which grow higher at the Joints of the Leaves, are without Foot-stalks, and encompass the Stalk at their bottoms. From the Bosoms of these Leaves, from the middle of the Stalk upwards, come forth slender blew Flowers, tending to purple, and hooded, not much unlike to those of *Germander*, or like those of the *Small Dead Nettle*, which being past away small Seed follows after them in their places.



IV. The second, or Small Henbit. It has a Root which is small, and fibrous or thready: This Plant grows lower, and more leaning upon the Ground with its Stalks and Branches, which are somewhat hairy, also small, and more tender than the former, with several Joints thereon; the Leaves are thin and hairy, something broad, yet nothing so large as those of the *Greater*, which very much resemble a *Dead Nettle*, or *Ground-Ivy* Leaf, whereas the Leaves of these are dented in with two gashes in the sides, which makes them a little represent the *Climbing Ivy*, whence the Name in both of them, and in some sort these Leaves resemble the back of a Bee when she flies; the Joints of the Stalks and Branches are set also with two Leaves of like form at a Joint, even up to the tops of the same; the Flowers grow at the tops, and come forth also from the bottoms of the Leaves, at the Joints, upon long Footstalks, consisting of five small, blew, round pointed Leaves; and the Seed is small, contained in little round Heads.

V. The Places. These Plants grow upon Hills and Mountains in several parts of *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, and *England*, and I have found them growing also in the Hilly and Mountainous parts of *Florida*; they grow in Fields also after the Corn is off, and in some Gardens.

VI. The Times. They both Flower in *June* and *July*, and the Seed ripens in *August*.

VII. The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues of these are probably the same with the other *Chickweeds* in Chap. 127. foregoing, but otherwise Authors have said nothing of them from Experience of what they may possibly perform, but it is very likely, that being in taste very much agreeing unto the common sorts of *Chickweed*, their Qualities and Virtues may not be much differing.

HERBAGE. See *Grafs*. Chap. 327.

HERB GERARD. See *Goutwort*. Chap. 326.

HERB CARPENTER. See *Self-heal*. Chap.

HERB BENNET. See *Avens*. Chap. 41.

HERB GRACE. See *Rue*. Chap.

HERB IVY. See *Groundpine*. Chap. 330.

HERB PARIS. See *Oneberry*. Chap.

HERB TRINITY. See *Hearts-Ease*. Chap. 346.

HERB TRUE-LOVE. See *Oneberry*. Chap.

HERB TWO-PENCE. See *Moneywort*. Chap.

HERB WILLIAM. See *Bishopsweed*. Chap. 74.

HERB WILLOW. See *Loofstrife*. Chap.

HERCULES ALLHEAL. See *Woundwort Hercules*. Chap.

## C H A P. CCCLXIII.

### OF HERB CHRISTOPHER.

I. THE Names. It has no known *Greek* Name, nor scarce any good *Latine* Name, but it is called by most Authors *Christophoriana*, also *Herba Christophori*, & *Sancti Christophori*, but for what cause or respect is not known, and in *English* *Herb Christopher*.

II. The Kinds. Gerard says, that tho' this Plant be none of the *Bindweeds*, or of those which have need of supporting, so as it might climb up upon any thing, yet because it bears Grapes, or clusters of Berries, it might have been numbred among the *Ἀμπελοι*, or Vine like Plants: There are two Kinds of this Herb, viz. 1. *Christophoriana vulgaris*, Our Common Herb Christopher. *Lugdunensis* calls it *Napellus Leucanthemos*, some *Aconitum Bacciferum*, others *Napellus Racemosus*, some call it *Costus niger*, but that is a vain Name; *Pena* and *Lobel* almost make it *Aëta Plinij* Lib. 7. Cap. 7. because his *Aëta* bears black Berries, but doubtless *Pliny's Aëta* is *Ebulus*, which has a rough Stalk, whereas this has a smooth; but *Paulus Aegineta* interprets the Root of *Aëta* to be the Root of *Sambucus*: *Bauhinus* calls it *Aconitum Racemosum*; some call it *Scrophularia Christophori*: *Camerarius* calls it *Luparia*, which is a kind of *Wolfsbane*, but *Parkinson* not finding therein by the taste any pernicious quality, could not judge it to be any of these dangerous and pernicious Herbs. 2. *Christophoriana Americana*, *Christophoriana Canadensis*, *Christophoriana Americana vel Floridiana* *Baccis niveis* & *rubris*; *Jacobus Cornutus* in his *Canadensium Plantarum Historia* calls it by the Name *Panaces ῥακινος*, sive *Racemosum Canadense*;



*nadenſe*; but why he calls it *Panax* is very obſcure, ſince it is not manifeſt that it is any Wound Herb; we in *Engliſh* call it *Herb Chriſtopher of America*.

III. The Descriptions. *The firſt, or Our Common Herb Chriſtopher, has a thick long Root, black without and yellowiſh within, like Box, with ſeveral great Fibres or blackiſh Strings adjoining thereunto, trailing and creeping far abroad in the Earth, by which it greatly increaſes, not perishing in the Winter, altho' the Stalks and Leaves die away every Year, freſh ſpringing up again from the ſame Root the next Spring;* it firſt ſhoots forth divers green Stalks of Leaves half a Foot long, which are divided or made into three parts, and ſometimes into five, the lower parts ſtanding for the moſt part one againſt another, or not much diſtant, and the other at the end of the Stalk, each of theſe parts conſiſts of three Leaves, ſeparate aſunder, ſtanding upon ſmall Footſtalks, which Leaves are ſomething broad, and ending in a point, ſome of them cut in on the edges more deeply, and all of them dented about the edges, of a ſad green color; from among theſe Leaves riſe up ſeveral ſomewhat weak, ſmooth, and round Stalks, half a Yard or two Feet high, yet not bending, but ſtanding upright, having three or four ſuch like Leaves thereon as grew below, but with ſhorter Footſtalks; at the tops of the Stalks ſtand a Tuft or Buſh of white Flowers, every one conſiſting of five ſmall Leaves, with many whitish Threads in the middle, after which, when fallen, come ſmall round Berries, green at the firſt, and afterwards black when they are ripe, having upon one ſide a ſtreaked furrow or hollowneſs, and growing near together, after the manner of a Cluſter or Bunch of Grapes: where note, that *Gerard* in his Deſcription ſays, 1. That the Stalks are not much above a Foot long or high. 2. That the Leaves are of a light green color. 3. That the Flowers growing at the tops of the Stalks in ſpokie Tufts, conſiſt but of four little white Leaves apiece. 4. That the Berries, or Fruit, tho' they are round, yet they are alſo ſomewhat long withal.

IV. *The ſecond, or Herb Chriſtopher of America. It has a thick, ſhort, crooked, black Root, not growing downwards, nor creeping, but having many Fibres adjoining to it; it ſhoots forth in the Spring many reddiſh Stalks, about a Foot high, with ſeveral Leaves thereon, divided into many parts, ſomewhat reſembling the former, but larger, rougher, and of a ſadder green color, at the tops whereof ſtand a large Tuft of white Flowers, compoſed in a manner wholly of Threads, yet if they be more nearly viewed, there will appear for every Flower fix ſmall white Leaves, with their Threads in the middle, encompassing a round green Button, which coming to maturity is either white, with a purpliſh tip, ſtanding on a ſhort Footſtalk, or wholly reddiſh; I found many of them in Carolina, but the Berries were of ſo deep a red as they ſeem'd to be black, and when dead ripe were indeed perfectly black.*

V. *The Places.* The firſt grows generally in the Woods or Mountains which are ſomewhat open, and not too much ſhadowed, and other like places, as well in *England* as other Countries; it grows in the North parts of this Land, near unto the Houſe formerly *Sir William Bowes*; alſo *Gerard* ſays he had it growing and flouriſhing in his Garden, being Plants which he received from *Robinus of Paris*; I alſo once found it growing near Forty Years ago in *Hornſey-Wood*: The ſecond grows both in ours and the *French* Plantations in *Florida*, as thoſe of *Carolina*, and *Canada*, and that in much plenty.

VI. *The Times.* They Flourish and Flower in the end of *May*, alſo in *June* and *July*, and the Fruit is ripe in *July* and *Auguſt*.

VII. As to the *Qualities, Specification, Preparations or Virtues* of the firſt we can ſay little or nothing, having had no experience thereof, and Authors are not agreed about them, ſome, as *Camerarius*, *Lugdunensis*, and *Gerard*, taking it to be a kind of *Aconitum*, or *Wolfsbane*, will have it to be of a pernicious, poiſonous, and deadly quality, whereas *Pena* and *Lobel* ſeem to think otherwiſe; and *Par- kinſon* ſays, that tho' many good Authors held it dangerous, yet he in his Judgment could not think ſo, not finding therein by the taſte any pernicious quality, as is before noted; and whereas it is reported that the Inhabitants of the Mountains and places where it grows do generally hold it to be a moſt dangerous and deadly Poiſon, both to Man and Beaſt, and that they uſe to kill Wolves herewith, yet *Par- kinſon* does think that the Herb which thoſe Inhabitants do think to be ſo dangerous and Mortal, is the *Aconitum Lycoſtonum*, or *Lupicida*, which grows in thoſe places, and that it is not this Our *Herb Chriſtopher*, but that theſe dangerous Qualities are put upon it purely by a miſtake.

VIII. As to the *Qualities and Virtues* of the ſecond, or *American Herb Chriſtopher*, the ſaid *Jacobus Cornutus* ſays that it is eaten familiarly both by the Natives and by the *French* which inhabit in thoſe parts as a Sallet Herb, and I my ſelf who have been in thoſe parts for ſome Years, have ſeveral times eaten of the Fruit without any danger.

## C H A P. CCCLXIV.

### Of HERB FRANKINCENSE Narrow Leav'd,

O R,

### A L L H E A L Fennel Leav'd.

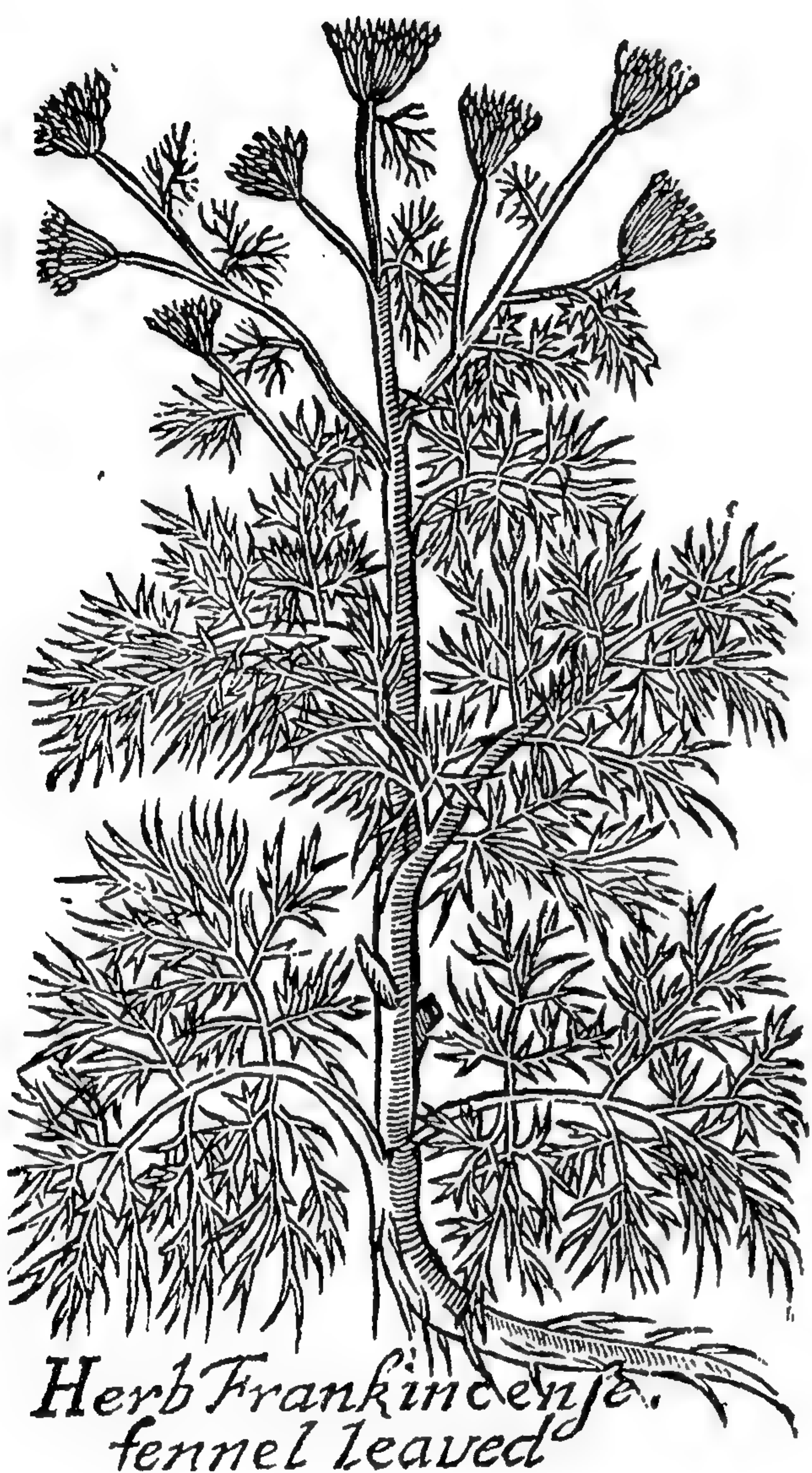
I. **T**H E Names. It is called in *Greek* *Λιβανός στενόφυλλος*, in *Latine* *Libanotis Anguſtifolia*, in *Engliſh* *Herb Frankincenſe narrow Leav'd*, or *Fennel Leav'd Allheal*. The *Arabians* call it *Xair Almari- ani*, *Aspinalſach*, *Calchata*, or *Cachola*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are many Kinds of *Herb Frankincenſe* in Authors, we ſhall only deſcribe the following principal Kinds, viz. 1. *Libanotis Anguſtifolia*, Narrow Leav'd Herb Frankincenſe, of which in this preſent Chapter. 2. *Libanotis Latifolia*, Broad Leav'd Herb Frankincenſe, or Frankincenſe Allheal, of which in the next Chapter.

III. *The Kinds of the Narrow Leav'd Herb Frankincenſe, or Fennel Leav'd Frankincenſe Allheal.* Authors make ſeveral varieties of this Plant, we ſhall only Treat of the following Seven Kinds, as being chief, viz. 1. *Libanotis Ferula Folio Dioſcoridis*, *Theophraſti*, *Galen*, (whoſe Seed is called *Cachrys*, or *Canchrys*, as it is in ſome Copies, becauſe of its fiery taſte) It is the *Libanotis Cachryfera Camerarij*, *Cachrys vera vel verior Lobelij*, *Libanotis Galeni*, *Libanotis Candida Ceſalpini*, Fennel Leav'd Herb Frankincenſe. As for *Κάχρυς*, vel *Κάρχρυς*, it is ſaid by *Dioſcorides Lib. 3. Cap. 87.* to be *Fruſtus vel Semen Libanotidis*, and ſo we take it, ſee *Theophraſtus Lib. 9. Cap. 12.* 2. *Libanotis Ferula Folio & Semine Bauhini*, *Panax Aſclepium Ferula facie Lobelij*, *Panaces Aſclepium Dodonæi*, *Lobel* his Fennel Leav'd Herb Frankincenſe, Allheal, or Wound- Wort of *Eſculapius*. 3. *Panax Aſclepium Matthioli*, *Panaces Aſclepium Lugdunensis*, & aliorum, *Panax Aſclepium*



*Asclepium primum Libanotidi secunda similis Bauhin*, Matthiolus his Esculapius Allheal, or Woundwort. 4. *Panax Asclepium Apulum Columnæ*, *Panax Semine Foliofo Bauhini*, Columna his Esculapius Allheal, or Woundwort of Naples. 5. *Panax Asclepium Anguilare & Camerarij*, *Libanotis secunda Tabernamontani*, *Libanotis nigra Cesalpini*, Cameraarius his Herb Frankincense Fennel Leav'd, or Esculapius his Allheal of Candy. 6. *Libanotis minor Umbella candida*, *Libanotis Septentrionalium Herbariorum Lobelij*, *Libanotis minima Lugdunensis*, Small Fennel Leav'd Herb Frankincense, or Allheal. 7. *Libanotis Ferulacea Germanica*, *Thalius* in his *Har-cynia Sylva* calls it *Libanotis vassnabensis*, German Fennel Leav'd Herb Frankincense, or Allheal.



*Herb Frankincense.  
fennel leaved*

IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Fennel Leav'd Herb Frankincense. It has a Root which grows deep, and spreads much, and with many Branches fixes it self in the Ground, larger than a great Parsnep at the top, and white both on the outside and on the inside, with a Pith in the middle, but it is so brittle, that you must handle it very tenderly if you desire not to break it, and when cut or broken it sends forth a clammy pale Juice, of an odoriferous, sharp, piercing smell, not much unlike to that of Limons, and endures in the Earth many Years; from the head of this Root shoot several bushy, great, reddish Stalks of Leaves, of a fresh green color, being something thicker and longer than those of the *Ferula*, and shorter than those of *Peucedanum*, or *Hog-Fennel*, yet often and in many places set three together, of a quick aromatick smell, coming somewhat near to that of a *Limon*; from among these Leaves rises up (sometimes, but not every Year with us in England) a good large Stalk, but neither so great nor half so high as the *Ferula*, not much exceeding a Yard in height, nor much higher than the Stalks with Leaves, spreading it self out into very many Ramifications or Branches, which at their tops bear Umbles of yellow Flowers, which being past away are followed by a good large sort of whitish yellow Seed, round, and a little long withal, somewhat crested on the outside, being join-

ed two and two together, as is very usual in most Ferulous Plants, which makes one side flat, the small Footstalk of the Leaves running up between, and is said to be Caultick, or burning, for which reason the Name *Κάρυκτος*, *Canchrys*, is given to it: This, as it is a rare, so it is a most excellent, goodly, and noble Plant, of a vast value in many Cases.

V. The second, or Lobel his Fennel Leav'd Herb Frankincense. It has a Root which is small, and not growing deep into the Ground, nor abides after it has given Seed, its smell and taste not being much resinous or sharp; this Plant grows nothing so high or great as the *Ferula*, but with fine Leaves like unto it, and at the tops of all the Branches Umbles of yellow Flowers, but the Seed which follows is broad, not so small as *Fennel*, but more like to that of the *Ferula*, of a little quick or brisk taste and smell.

VI. The third, or Matthiolus his Esculapius Allheal. Its Root like to the last is small, but no ways answerable to a *Ferula*; the whole Plant is less than *Ferula*, the Stalks are not so large nor so tall, the Leaves are finer, smaller, and shorter than those of that Plant, the Umble of Flowers is smaller also, and the Seed lesser in proportion to all the rest of its parts.

VII. The fourth, or Columna his Esculapius or Woundwort of Naples. It has a small slender Root, with a bush of hairs at the top, of the bigness of ones Thumb, with a thick rugged Bark, of a whitish yellow color on the outside, and a spongy, white, and woody Pith within, full of a clammy white Milk, hardning quickly into a Gum, which is bitter and sharp in taste, and unpleasant, but yet aromatical; the Stalks of Leaves which are spread next the Ground in a round form at head of the Root are cut into several long hairs, as it were thick set together, somewhat like unto *Common Yarrow*, and hairy withal, which is not seen in the other Kinds, or rather like unto *Fennel* Leaves, but bigger, having seven winged Leaves set on a pretty large Stalk, five bigger and two smaller, which are next the hairy Stalk, being green at the first, but changing yellow when it grows towards Flowering, which with the Leaves is about half a Yard long; from among these Stalks of Leaves rises up but one main Stalk, which is slender, and about two or three Feet high sometimes, having some Joints, but no Leaves thereon to the very top, where usually grow but one or two small Tufts or Umbles of yellow Flowers, but spread a little largely, and growing closer and rounder as it turns to Seed, which are flat, and winged on both sides, two growing together, as is usual in all other Umbelliferous Plants, whereon, as also on the Stalk, is often found a sweet smelling Gum, as clear as *Turpentine*, or *Gum Arabic*, which will scarcely dissolve in Water without heat; the like also is taken from the Root cut in pieces, but it is yellower, because it must be forced out by the Fire. Columna says that this *Panax Asclepium* is the truest of any which has been described by any other Author, and that it grows frequently in *Apulia*, answering in every part the Descriptions thereof in *Dioscorides* and *Theophrastus*.

VIII. The fifth, or Cameraarius his Herb Frankincense Fennel Leav'd, or Esculapius his Allheal of Candy. It has Roots like the former, and rises up with a round Fennel like Stalk six or seven Feet high, or more, with several Joints thereon, divided into Branches of Leaves, larger than *Fennel*, and smaller than *Ferula*, of a dark green color on the upper side, and of a blewish green underneath, with large Umbles of yellow Flowers at the tops, which being past away will turn into broad, flat, winged Seed, of a resinous smell and taste, the Leaves being much more mild, and yielding a whitish Milk, nothing so hot or strong in smell as *Ferula*.

IX. The



IX. *The sixth, or Small Fennel Leav'd Herb* Frankincense, or Allheal. *It has a great and white Root, divided into several Branches, and with a bush of hairs above; it is a small Herb, and has divers Leaves lying upon the Ground, much cut and divided into longer parts than Peucedanum, or Hogs-Fennel, and narrower than Our green English Saxifrage; the Stalk has but few Joints, and Leaves on them, bearing small Umbles of white Flowers, like Meum, or Spignel, which being past away leave small Seed after them, almost like the Seed of Ammi, or Bishopsweed.*

X. *The seventh, or German Fennel Leav'd Herb* Frankincense. *It has a blackish long Root, as thick as ones Finger, full of a resinous Juice, sharp, and well smelling, set with a bush of hairs at the top, from whence spring Stalks of fine Fennel like Leaves, but shorter than they, the Stalk rises to be a Foot and half high, on the tops of which stand bowing white sweet smelling Flowers. There is of this a lesser sort also, differing nothing from it but in its universal smallness.*

XI. *The Places.* The first six Kinds have been found growing in many Countries, as *Italy, Sicily, Candy, France, Florida, &c.* the seventh in some places in *Germany*; I know not that they grow wild in *England*, but with us are only nurs'd up in Gardens.

XII. *The Times.* They all Flower in *July* and *August* if the Year is seasonable, and their Seed comes to ripeness in *August* and *September*.

XIII. *The Qualities.* They are said to be hot and dry in the second degree, Aperitive, Absterfive, Digestive, Discussive, Diuretick, Traumatick, Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomatick, Arthritick, Sudorifick, and Alexipharmick.

XIV. *The Specification.* They conglutinate simple green Wounds, digest, cleanse, incarnate, and heal old Ulcers and running Sores, and ease pain in any part, proceeding from Blows, Falls, Strains, or cold and moist Humors.

XV. *The Preparations.* You may have herefrom, 1. *The green Leaves bruised.* 2. *Green Root bruised.* 3. *Juice of the Herb and Root.* 4. *An Essence of the same.* 5. *A Decoction or Infusion in Wine of Herb and Root.* 6. *A Vinegar of the Seed.* 7. *A Pouder of the Root.* 8. *A Pouder of the Seed.* 9. *A Pouder of the Seed Canchrys.* 10. *An Electuary.* 11. *An Oil of the Seed by Infusion.* 12. *An Ointment of Root and Herb.* 13. *A Balsam of Root and Herb.* 14. *A Cataplasm of the Seed.* 15. *A Distilled Water.* 16. *An Acid Tincture of Root and Herb.* 17. *An Acid Tincture of the Seed Canchrys.* 18. *A Spirituous Tincture of Root and Herb.* 19. *An Oily Tincture of Root and Herb.* 20. *A Saline Tincture of the same.*

#### The Virtues.

XVI. *The green Leaves bruised.* Being applied *Dioscorides* says that they stay the bleedings of the Hemorrhoidal Veins, and ease the heat and inflammation and swelling of the Fundament; they do also digest the Kernels of the Kings-Evil, and Apostems in any part of the Body, tho' hard to be cured.

XVII. *The green Root bruised.* If it is applied to Wounds of any kind, especially to simple green Wounds, it quickly heals them; if it is not presently applied it then causes digestion, then cleanses and heals.

XVIII. *The Juice of the Herb or Root.* Taken inwardly to two, three, or four Spoonfuls in Wine or other proper Vehicle twice a day, it heals all inward Wounds and Bruises; mixed with Honey and

anointed on the Eyes, it clears and sharpens the Sight, takes away Mists, Clouds, or any thing which is growing over the Eyes, and heals Wounds and Ulcers in the same.

XIX. *The Essence of the same.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, besides which, being taken inwardly, it disposes ill conditioned Wounds, old Ulcers and Fistula's to a speedy healing, let them be in what part of the Body soever; Wounds and old Ulcers being also outwardly wash'd with the same it cleanses, incarnates, dries, and heals them.

XX. *The Decoction.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, if it is made in Wine and sweeten'd with Honey, it makes a good Gargle to heal a sore or ulcerated Mouth and Throat, also sore and ulcerated Eyes.

XXI. *The Vinegar of the Seed.* Used as a Lotion it cleanses the Skin from Pimples, Freckles, Scurf, Morpew, Leprosie, Tettars, Ringworms, Scabbiness, and other like deformities of the same.

XXII. *The Pouder of the Root.* If it is mixed with Honey and applied, or anointed, or put into the Eyes, it clears from any thing which may grow on them or offend them, heals Wounds or Ulcers in them, and quickens or sharpens the Sight; being taken also inwardly in a Glass of Wine from half a Dram to a Dram, Morning and Night for some considerable time, it does the same thing, it provokes Urine and Womens Courses, and it helps also those who have the Falling-Sickness, or have an old pain in the Stomach, Liver, or Spleen; and if it is given with an equal quantity of Pepper in Wine, it is found profitable against the Kings-Evil.

XXIII. *The Pouder of the Seed.* Given to a Dram in White Port Wine it opens obstructions of the Reins and Ureters, and provokes Urine and the Terms, it expels Wind, strengthens and fortifies the Stomach, resists Poyson, and is good against the deleterious quality of the Biting of Mad Dogs, Serpents, &c. being put into Ulcers it cleanses, dries, and heals them.

XXIV. *The Pouder of the Seed Canchrys or Canchrys.* By reason of its burning property Authors do not advise to give it inwardly, for they say it is too sharp, and will exasperate the Throat: *Dioscorides* says it is of a heating and mighty drying faculty, and therefore is good to be put into Washbalks, or such things as cleanse the Skin; but if the whole Seed is infused twenty four Hours in Vinegar, and dried again, and then beaten into Pouder, it then may be given inwardly, and has all the Virtues of the former, exhibited in the same Dose and manner.

XXV. *The Electuary.* It is made of equal parts of the Pouder of the Root and Seed, mixed with a half part of Nutmegs in Pouder, and eighth part of Cloves, and a sixteenth part of Pepper in fine Pouder, and made up with a treble proportion of clarified Honey. It is a good Stomatick, prevalent against the Scurvy in a cold habit of Body, strengthens the Tone of the Stomach, causes a good Appetite and Digestion, strengthens the Head and Brain, clears and sharpens the Eyesight, and provokes the Terms in Women. Dose one or two Drams in a Glass of Wine Morning and Night.

XXVI. *The Oil of the Seed by infusion or boiling.* Being anointed upon the parts affected it is said to help such as are Bursten, and to cure Cramps, Convulsions, Pains, Aches, Lameness, and the Gout.

XXVII. *The Ointment of the Root and Herb.* It digests and ripens Tumors, cleanses, incarnates, dries, and heals Wounds and Ulcers, consolidates Fractures, and strengthens the Nerves, Tendons, and Ligaments in Dislocations; it also eases pain in any part being anointed on the place.

XXVIII. *The*



XXVIII. *The Balsam of Root and Herb.* It is a most admirable Vulnerary, not inferior to any made of *Prunella*, or *Self-heal*, *All-heal*, or any of the *Woundworts*, it digests contused or otherwise complicated green Wounds and Phagedenick or eating Ulcers, and cleanses them, and if there is a want of Flesh it admirably incarnates, dries, and heals them; it is good also against fretting and running Cankers, Wheals, Pusles, and the like breakings out of the Skin.

XXIX. *The Cataplasm of the Seed.* Take Powder of the Seed, Darnel Flower, of each a like quantity, Vinegar a sufficient quantity, to make it into a Cataplasm. Being applied it discusses simple Contusions, and prevails against Scabs, Pimples, Wheals, Herpes, Scurf, Morpew, Leprosie, discolorings of the Skin, and other defœdations.

XXX. *The Distilled Water.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Decoction, or Infusion of the Herb and Root, but much less efficacious, and is chiefly used as a Vehicle to convey some of the foregoing or following internal Preparations down into the Body.

XXXI. *The Acid Tincture of Root and Herb.* It resists Poyson, and the Plague, and all sorts of Malign and Pestilential Diseases, it prevails against the bitings of Spiders, as the *Tarantula*, of Mad Dogs, Vipers, Rattle-Snakes, and other Serpents, as also the biting or stinging of any venomous Creature; it is prevalent also against all hot and burning Fevers, it quenches Thirst, extinguishes the heat, and destroys the Febricitick Ferment. Dose from ten drops to forty, fifty, or sixty, in any proper Vehicle, and according to the quantity of the Liquor it is taken in.

XXXII. *The Acid Tincture of the Seed Canchrys.* It is Stomachick, causes good Appetite and Digestion, resists Plague and Poyson, opens obstructions of Stomach and Lungs, takes away Hoarseness and Wheezing, and thereby causes free respiration or breathing; it has all the Virtues of the Tincture in the former Section, and is to be taken in the same Dose and manner.

XXXIII. *The Spirituous Tincture of Root and Herb.* It is prevalent against Poyson, expels Wind, and gives present ease in the Colick and Gripings of the Guts from cold, crude, and sharp Humors, it provokes Sweat, and is good against the Plague or Pestilence, expelling the malignity thro' the Pores of the Skin; being taken in Wine it is good against the bitings of poysonous Serpents, provokes Urine, and facilitates the Birth of Women in Labor. Dose from one Dram to two or three Drams in Wine.

XXXIV. *The Oily Tincture of Root and Herb.* Outwardly applied it eases the Gout, and all external pains proceeding from cold, straining of the part, Blows, Falls, or the like; it gives ease in Cramps and Convulsions, and very much strengthens the parts weaken'd by those Diseases; it is also prevalent against the Palsie, being anointed upon the *Vertebrae* of the Back, and also upon the part afflicted.

XXXV. *The Saline Tincture.* It is of great use against Freckles, Lentils, Sunburning, Tanning of the Skin, black and blew Marks, Scurf, Morpew, and other like defilements thereof.

C H A P. CCCLXV.

## Of HERB FRANKINCENSE Broad Leav'd,

O R,

Frankincense A L L H E A L.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Λιβανός* πλατύφυλλον, in Latine *Libanotis Latifolia*, and in English Broad Leav'd Herb Frankincense, or Broad Leav'd Frankincense Allheal.

II. *The Kinds.* This is the second Species of the Generick Kind, and is fourfold, viz. 1. *Libanotis major Theophrasti*, *Libanotis fertilis prima Theophrasti Lib. 9. Cap. 2.* *Seseli Æthiopicum Herba Dodonæi*, *Seseli prima Tragi*, *Dauci alterum genus Fuchsj*, *Turneri*, *Lugdunensis*, The Greater White Herb Frankincense. 2. *Libanotis Theophrasti minor*, *Libanotis fertilis secunda Theophrasti*, The Lesser White Herb Frankincense. 3. *Libanotis Apij Folia Cretica Theophrasti*, *Siler Creticum*, & *Libanotis vera Theophrasti*, *Camerarij*, The truest Herb Frankincense of Theophrastus. 4. *Libanotis Aquilegie Folia Latifolia*, *Seseli Æthiopicum alterum*, Columbine Leav'd Herb Frankincense.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Greater White Herb Frankincense, has a Root which grows great and long, whitish on the outside, with a Tuft of hair at the top, abiding long, and having a strong smell and taste, like the Roots of many other Umbelliferous Plants; from this Root spring forth many great long Stalks, with wings of large broad Leaves; some eight Inches long apiece, and almost four Inches broad, five being set together, two and two, one against another, and one at the end, three or four Inches broad below, and smaller to the end, being somewhat hard in handling, of an overworn greenish color, and a little dented about the edges, among which rises up a round strong Stalk, oftentimes four or five Feet high, having such like Leaves on the Joints, but fewer, and lesser than grow below, and a few Branches rising from the upper Joints, bearing large spread Umbles of whitish Flowers, after which comes somewhat flat and round light Seed, two of them joined together, white on that side where it is joined, and straked with rough crumpled strakes on the back or round side, and of a pale brown color when it is ripe, but a little purplish below.

IV. *The second, or Lesser White Herb Frankincense*, has a Root not much unlike the former, white, but more bitter than it; this agrees with the former in the shape or form of the Leaves, Flowers, Seeds, and shape of the Root, but that they are all less, and the number of the Leaves are more, set together on every Stalk, being also more deeply dented about the edges: There is another sort of this Plant, which *Baubinus* calls *Libanotis Latifolia minor Semine crispato*, which differs only in having fewer Leaves on the Stalks, altho' as small, and but one or two deep cuts on the edges.

V. *The third, or Truest Herb Frankincense of Theophrastus*, has a Root which is covered with a blackish Bark, and very white underneath, smelling strong, like Frankincense, from which springs up a Stalk about a Foot and half high, divided into some Branches, with Leaves set sparingly both below and above, something resembling *Smillage* for the largeness of the Leaves, and dented about the edges, bear-



ing white Flowers, and large, rough, crooked, brownish Seed, having a pretty strong smell.

VI. *The fourth, or Columbine Leav'd Herb Frankincense*, has a thick, rough, fibrous, brown Root, with a white Pith in the middle, smelling somewhat sweet, but bitter in taste, having a Tuft of blackish Hairs at the top; from this rise several Leaves upon long Footstalks, broad, and hollow at the bottom, like a skinny Husk, compassing one another, as those do also on the upper Stalks, they are hard in handling, yet of a shining dark green color above, and whitish underneath, with several purplish Veins running thro' them, not all of them divided like unto Columbine Leaves, but many of them parted into five Leaves, with three divisions apiece, others into three Leaves, each standing on a Stalk, straked with purple, rising up above four, or almost five Feet high, with several Joints thereon, and branched towards the tops, bearing every one a large Umbel of small white Flowers, and after them long and broad striped Seed, of a purplish color, a little bitter, hot, and drawing Water into the Mouth if it is a little chewed therein, being also somewhat sweet of smell.

VII. *The Places*. The first two sorts are found in many places in Germany, and parts near adjoining, the third is a Native of Candia, and the last is said to come out of Æthiopia, but they are all of them now made free Denizens of England, by being planted and nurs'd up in our British Gardens.

VIII. *The Times*. The two first Seed with us Yearly after they are well grown, viz. about July and August, but the two last very seldom, unless the Year proves hot and very kindly.

IX. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of these are the same with those of the *Angustifolia*, or *Narrow Leav'd* in the former Chapter, to which we refer you, yet these being extraordinary Traumaticks or Vulneraries, and of an extremely molifying and digesting power, we shall make these following farther Observations concerning the same.

X. *The Liquid Juice, or Essence*. They are good against Chronick Diseases of the Breast and Lungs, and prevail against the Epilepsie and Jaundice, more especially if a little Pepper in fine Pouder is added, and so given in Wine; given in Posset-Drink they increase Milk in Nurses Breasts, and ease pains in the Stomach and Belly proceeding from sharp Humors, or Wind; they are also good against Poyson, and the bitings of Mad Dogs, Venomous Beasts, and Serpents, or the stinging of Scorpions, they provoke Urine powerfully, and the Courses, being stop't; the juice of the Leaves and Roots clears the Eyesight, and sharpens it, and diverts the Rheum which falls into the Eyes, by strengthening the parts, being dropt into the Eyes, and Cloths dipt therein and applied over the Forehead and Eyebrows.

XI. *The Decoction in Wine*. It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but much weaker, and therefore may be given in a greater Dose, as from four to six Ounces; it is highly Traumatick or Vulnerary, and may be used Dietetically, as well as outwardly to wash any Sore, Wound, or Ulcer therewith.

XII. *The Balsam or Ointment*. They cure Wounds and Ulcers after an admirable manner, and if a little Pouder of Birthwort Root, or of Tobacco be added to them, they do wonders in these kinds of Cures, beyond expression.

XIII. *The Cataplasm of the bruised Leaves*. Being applied it stops bleeding in any part, and cures the Hemorrhoids or Piles, removes the heat, and discusses the tumor or swelling of the Fundament, bringing the same (if Nature intends it) to a speedy maturity or ripeness; the Cataplasm being made

with Darnel Meal and a little Vinegar, and applied, gives ease in the Gout, Cramps, and Convulsions, and takes away Scurf or Morpew, Leprosie, and any discoloring of the Skin.

XIV. *The Pouder of the Root*. Used either alone by it self, or mixed with Honey and applied, it thoroughly cleanses foul Ulcers, and heals them, and is of extraordinary use in curing Fistula's, more especially if Pouder of Tobacco about a third part be added thereto.

## C H A P. CCCLXVI.

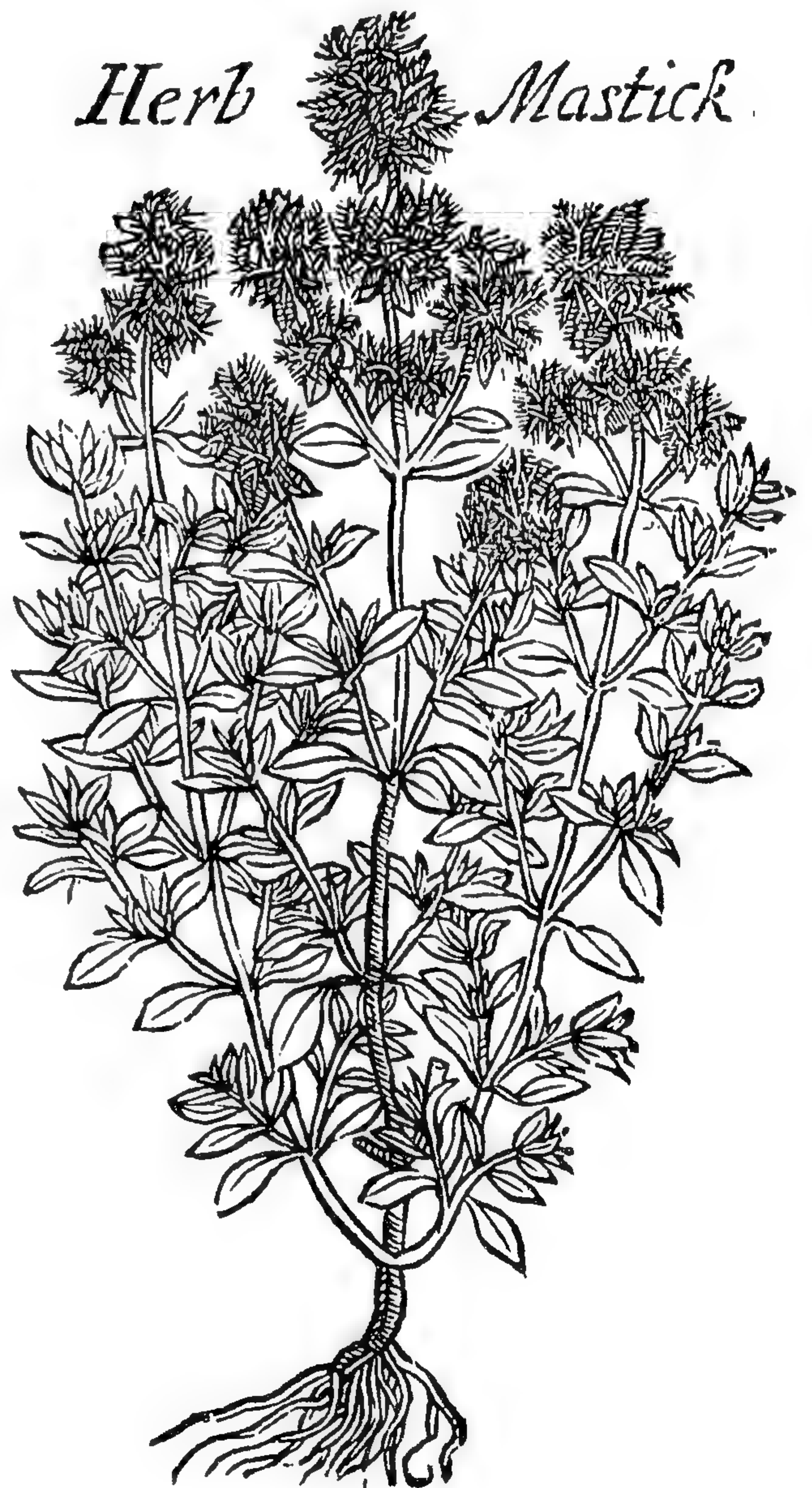
### Of HERB MASTICH,

O R,

M A R U M.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Μαρι*, in Latine *Marum*, from *Maron*, a certain King of Thracia, who is said to have found it out, *vel ab Amaraco per Apocopen, utpote cum Amaraci Species videatur Marum*, in English *Herb Mastick*, or *Mastich*, also *Marum*.

*Herb Mastick*



II. *The Kinds*. Some Authors will have it to be a Species of *Marjoram*, others a Species of *Thyme*, others again make it a middle Plant between them both, it seems to me to be rather a particular of its own Kind; there are three Species hereof, viz. 1. *Marum vulgare*, *Clinopodium Camerarij*, *Podonci*, *Gesneri*, *Tragoriganum primum Clusij*, *Sampsuchus Dioscoridis Clusij*, *Helenium odorum Theophrasti*, Common Herb Mastich. 2. *Marum supinum Lobelij*, *Marum ex Sicilia allatum Casalpini*, *Marum repens verticillatum Baubini*, *Amaracus serpens*, Creeping



ing Herb Mastich. 3. *Marum Syriacum* Lobelij, *Dodonæi*, *Tabernamontani*, *Marum Cretense Alpini*, *Majorana Syriaca*, vel *Cretica Baubini*, Syrian or Candy Marum, or Herb Mastich.

III. The Descriptions. *The first, or Common Herb Mastich, has a fibrous or thready Root, which sends up greater and more woody Stalks than any of the Marjorams, it rises up to be two Feet or more high in some places, where the Ground is agreeable to it, and the Air warm and clear, it branches it self out on all sides towards the upper parts, leaving the Stem bare below; if it is old, otherwise if it is young, thinly furnishing the Branches from the bottom with small green Leaves, larger than the Leaves of any Thyme, and near to the largeness of the Leaves of Marjoram Gentle; at the tops of the Branches stand small Flowers on a Head, which afterwards turn into a loose Tuft of a long, white, hoary substance, like unto soft down, with some Leaves under and about them, which abide not long on the Stalks, but are blown away with the Wind; the Seed is so very small, that it is scarcely to be observed; the whole Plant is of a sweet resinous smell, stronger than Marjoram, and abides our Winters if it is carefully planted and look'd after.*

IV. *The second, or Creeping Herb Mastich, has a long slender Root, and fibrous withal, from whence spring up several slender weak Stalks, not standing upright, but lying upon the Ground, therein resembling Wild Thyme rather than Sweet Marjoram or Herb Mastich; the Leaves are many, and smaller than those of Mother of Thyme, growing at several distances upon the Branches; the Flowers are small and purplish, growing at the tops, with Leaves among them, the smell of which is very sweet and strong, coming nearest unto Sweet Marjoram, and of a hot and bitter taste.*



V. *The third, or Syrian, or Candy Herb Mastich, has a very fibrous or thready Root, like unto the first, from whence spring up several upright Stalks, about half a Yard high, not so woody as the first Herb*

*Mastich, but more tender and slender, on which grow many small whitish green Leaves, very like to the Small fine Sweet Marjoram, but somewhat rougher up to the very tops, which bear smaller Heads or Knots than those of Sweet Marjoram, and white Flowers out of them; all the Herb is of a most fragrant sweet smell, which endures a long time after it has been dried; it is very tender to keep, and will not endure our cold Nights, which come in August, or September, but is quickly destroyed by them.*

VI. *The Places.* They all grow Wild on the Mountains of *Spain, Candia, and Syria*, but with us they are all nurs'd up in Gardens, the last indeed with some difficulty.

VII. *The Times.* They Flower about *August* with us, and sometimes later, if the Summer Season proves cold, and the Seed is perfected not long after.

VIII. *The Qualities.* *Herb Mastich* is hot and dry in the beginning of the fourth degree, it attenuates, opens, is Absterfive, Astringent, Anodyn, Carminative, Digestive, Discussive, and Strengthening; it is Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomatick, Hysterick, Arthritick, Emmenagogick, and Alexipharmick.

IX. *The Specification.* It is good against Poyson, the bitings of Mad Dogs, Serpents, and other Venomous Beasts, Convulsions, Cramps, Lethargies, Palsies, Epilepsies, Hysterick Fits, Vapors, and other Distempers of the Womb.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A Liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *An Infusion or Decoction in Wine.* 4. *A Decoiled or Infused Oil.* 5. *A Distilled Water.* 6. *A Spirit.* 7. *A Chymical Oil.* 8. *An Acid Tincture.* 9. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 10. *An Oily Tincture.* 11. *A Pouder.* 12. *A Compound Decoction.*

#### The Virtues.

XI. *The Liquid Juice.* Given from one Spoonful to two in a Glass of Wine, or other proper Vehicle, it prevails against Convulsions, Epilepsies, Lethargies, Headachs, Palsies, and disaffections of the Womb, it attenuates tough Flegm, opens obstructions of the Womb and Reins, provokes Urine and the Terms, and digests crude Humors.

XII. *The Essence.* It is good against Coughs, Colds, Wheezings, Hoarseness, shortness of Breath, difficulty of breathing, and other Diseases of the *Thorax*, it opens obstructions of Liver and Spleen, and frees them from the morbidick matter which offends them, it has indeed all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice aforesaid, besides which it opens, cleanses, strengthens, and confirms the Womb, corrects the windiness thereof, or of any other part, which are commonly called Vapors, and is beneficial for such as are falling into a Dropsie, and helps the loss of Speech, by the resolution of the Tongue; it provokes Urine, and eases the Colick.

XIII. *The Infusion or Decoction in Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice and Essence, it is very Stomatick, powerfully provokes Urine, eases the Strangury, and all pains and torments of the Belly. Dose to six Ounces.

XIV. *The Oil by Infusion or Decoction.* It warms and comforts the outward parts, being Morning and Evening anointed upon the same, it is good against the Gout, eases pains of the Joints, Nerves, Tendons, and Muscles, discusses Tumors, is good against Convulsions, Cramps, Lameness, Numbness, and the Palsie, and anointed upon the lower Region of the Belly it helps cold griefs of the Womb, and gives ease to pains of those parts.



XV. *The Distilled Water.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Effence, but very much weaker in all respects, but it may be used as a Vehicle, to convey some of the other Preparations in; sweetned with Sugar and given to Children troubled with Convulsions it cures them.

XVI. *The Spirit.* It is Cephalick, Neurotick, Hysterick, and Cordial, and therefore is good against Apoplexies, Epilepsies, Lethargies, Convulsions, Palsies, Vapors, Fits of the Mother, palpitation of the Heart, Fainting and Swooning Fits, sickness at Stomach, Colick, and other like disaffections of those parts. Dose from one Dram to four Drams, either in the Distilled Water, or in Wine, or some Neurotick, Cordial, or Hysterick Syrup, it may be given in the Morning fasting, and last at Night going to Bed, and also two or three times besides in the day time if need requires.

XVII. *The Chymical Oil.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, Effence, and Spirit atforegoing, but operates in a more ample and powerful manner; inwardly it may be given from five drops to ten, or twelve, and that Morning and Evening, you must first drop it into White Sugar, or into Honey, or some proper Syrup, and mix them well together, then mix it with the Vehicle you intend to take it in, for all cold and moist Diseases, as Palsies, Cramps, Gouts, Numbedness, Trembling, weakness of the Nerves, &c. it ought to be taken in a Glass of Generous Wine; in Vapors, Fits of the Mother, &c. it may be given in the Distilled Water, or Barley Water, or Black Cherry Water; in the Colick it may be given in Juniper Water; outwardly for the Palsie it is to be anointed on the Back Bone, as also the parts affected; so also for Convulsions, Cramps, defluxions of Humors, &c.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is a powerful Medicament against the Plague, and all sorts of Malign and Pestilential Fevers, it destroys the putrefactive ferment in the Blood and Juices, allays Vapors, and rising up of the Mother, cools preternatural heats, and resists malignity in its Root, &c. Dose from fifteen drops to thirty, forty, or more, according to the quantity of the *Vehiculum* in which it is taken.

XIX. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is a kind of Heavenly Medicament, and a Noble Cordial, it cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, strengthens Nature, resists Vapors, Faintings, Swoonings, sickness at Heart, and other Diseases of like kind, it takes away sickness at Stomach, pains there, restores its Tone being hurt or depraved, and admirably strengthens it. Dose from one Dram to two, or three Drams, in the Morning fasting, an Hour before Noon, and at Bed time, in a Glass of Generous Wine, or in Syrup, or other proper Vehicle, it causes a good Appetite and a strong Digestion.

XX. *The Oily Tincture.* Inwardly given from ten drops to twenty, or more, in some proper Vehicle, it prevails against the Palsie, Convulsions, pains and weaknesses of the Back, the Stone, Sand, Gravel, and Tartarous matter in the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, &c. for Palsies it ought also to be anointed on the Back Bone and parts affected twice a day, and to be applied upon the part and well rubbed in in Convulsions, Cramps, &c.

XXI. *The Pouder of the Herb.* If it is snuffed up the Nose it provokes sneezing, and thereby purges the Head and Brain of cold pituitous Humors; the Herb being chewed in the Mouth it draws forth much Rheum and Flegm, causing pains and aches in the Head, Jaws, Throat, &c. given inwardly from half a Dram to a Dram in any proper Vehicle it strengthens the Stomach, expels Wind, eases the Colick, and facilitates the Birth of Women

in Labor, bringing away also the Afterbirth.

XXII. *The Compound Decoction.* Take Herb *Ma- stick* two Ounces, *Origanum*, *Pellitory of Spain*, of each six Drams, *Acorus*, *Long Pepper*, of each three Drams, *White Port Wine* twenty Ounces, put all into a Tinn'd Copper Vesica, or Glass Body, which cover with a Blind Head, and let it simmer over a gentle Fire for an Hour, then let it cool, and decant the clear for use. Dose two or three Ounces at a time for the Palsie, Epilepsie, Lethargy, &c. two or three times a day; it is good also to gargle the Mouth for a Palsie of the Tongue; when it is taken inwardly it may be dulcified with Syrup of Clovegilliflowers, or other proper Syrup.

## C H A P. CCCLXVII.

### Of HERB ROBERT,

O R,

### Robin's CRANESBILL.

I. **T**HE Names. We cannot learn that it has any Greek Name, the Latines call it *Herba Roberti*, and *Geranium Robertianum*, and we in England *Herb Robert*, and *Robin's Cranesbill*.



II. *The Kinds.* It is certainly a Species of *Geranium* or *Cranesbill*, and hereof there is two special Kinds, viz. 1. *Geranium Robertianum vulgare*, *Geranium Rupertianum commune*, *Herba Roberti*, vel *Ruperti communis*, *Panax Heracleum Anguillare*, *Sideritis tertia Dioscoridis*, which most of our modern Authors take it to be, and it is easily to be perceived that they are both one, for *Dioscorides* has three sorts of *Sideritis*, viz. one with a *Herb* Leaf,



Leaf, one with a Fern Leaf, and one with a Chervil or Coriander Leaf, which is this present Herb; it is also called *Herba Roberti*, *vel Ruperti minor*, *Geranium Robertianum minus*, The Vulgar, Common, or Lesser Herb Robert. 2. *Geranium Robertianum majus*, *Herba Roberti*, *vel Ruperti altera*, *Herba Roberta major*, *Gerani Robertiani altera Species Lobelij*, *Geranium Gruinale Dodonæi*, *Geranium Violaceum Tabernamontani*, *Sanguinaria Radix Germanorum*, The Greater Herb Robert.

III. The Descriptions. The first, Common, or Small Herb Robert, has a small and thready Root, which smells as the whole Plant does, very strong, and almost stinking, which sends up a reddish Stalk, commonly two Feet high, having several Leaves thereon, upon very long and reddish Footstalks, divided at the ends into three or five divisions, and each of them cut in on the edges, some with deeper cuts than others, and all dented likewise about the edges, which oftentimes turn reddish; at the tops of the Stalks come forth several Flowers made of five Leaves, much less than those of *Musk Cranesbill*, or *Dovesfoot*, these Flowers Lobel says are larger in some than in others, and of a more reddish color, which being past away, there come in their places Beakheads, as in other *Cranesbills*, which are not very small nor very great; the Stalks are slender, weak, and brittle, somewhat hairy, and reddish; the Leaves are also jagged, reddish, stalked, and deeply cut, like to those of *Chervil*, and the Flowers are many times of a bright purple color.



IV. The second, or Greater Herb Robert, has a Root which is wholly red, both within and without, not smelling so strong as the former, and it sends up several slender hairy Stalks, three Feet high, at the Joints of which stand Leaves upon shorter yet redder Footstalks, divided at the ends most commonly but into three parts, as large or rather larger than the former, and turning red likewise; the Flowers are purplish red, and of the same magnitude, and so also are the Beakheads and Seed.

V. The Places. They both grow almost every where by Way sides, upon Ditch Banks, and waste Ground, wheresoever one goes, but the second is not so frequent as the other, yet often seen and found; the first grows also upon old Walls, as well those made of Brick and Stone, as those made of Mud or Earth; it grows too among Rubbish, and in the bodies of Trees sometimes which are cut down, and other like ruined places.

VI. The Times. They Flower all May, June, July, and August, and the Seed is ripe soon after; they are hardy Plants, being green generally all Winter, nor are they easily hurt by cold.

VII. Their Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues are the same with *Field Cranesbill* in Chap. 162. aforegoing, and to that you are referred.

VIII. Nota. *Herb Robert* is not only commended against the Stone, but also to stay Blood, where or howsoever flowing, as also speedily to heal all green Wounds; it cures likewise Wounds and Ulcers of the Dugs, or Womens Breasts, and in the secret parts.

## C H A P. CCCLXVIII.

### Of HERB TERRIBLE, O R, GUTWORT.

I. THE Names. It is called in Greek *ἄλυνον*, *ab α*, privativa, and *λύπη*, *Tristitia*, quasi *indolens inoffensumque Remedium*, but this seems to be spoken *καὶ ἀντίρρονον*, *per contrarium*, some think it may be derived from *ἄλκων*, *Salsum*, *vel Maritimum*, because it grows near the Sea; in Latine it is called *Alypum*, and *Herba Terribilis*, also *Alypias* by *Aëturius*; the Root hereof is called by the same *Aëturius Turpetum album*, as the Root of *Esula minor* is called *Turpetum nigrum*; and in English *Herb Terrible*, or *Gutwort*, because *Dioscorides* says it lightly exulcerates the Guts.

II. The Kinds. Some Authors will have this Plant to be of the Kind of *Tithymals*, because of its most violent purging and sharp exulcerating quality, but without doubt it is rather a Plant of its own Kind, there are three several sorts hereof, viz. 1. *Alypum*, *Alypum Monspeliensium*, *Herba Terribilis*, *Thymelæa Folijs acutis*, *Capitula Succisæ*, *Herb Terrible of Mompelier*. 2. *Tartonnaire*, *Herba Terribilis Massiliensium Lobelij & Lugdunensis*, *Gutwort*, or *Herb Terrible of Marseilles*, *Alphonfus Pontius* of *Ferraria* took it to be *Cneorum Theophrasti*, the Root of which, as *Pena* says, is like unto the *Turbith* of *Alexandria*, not having so much heat and bitterness therein, nor other evil tastes, as the others have; *Bauhinus* calls it *Thymelæa Folijs canaliculatis Serici instar mollibus*. 3. *Alypum Montis Ceti*, which the People of *Valentia* call *Hippoglossum*, and is *Hippoglossum Valentinum Clusij*, *Herb Terrible*, or *Gutwort of Valentia*.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Herb Terrible of Mompelier, has a Root which is of a Fingers thickness, long, woolly, and of a brownish color, somewhat Salt if it grows near the Sea Shore, where it may receive as its Pabulum some of the Sea Water, or else not salt at all, but bitter, if it grows farther off, the Leaves tasting also after the same manner; from



from this Root rises up many woody Stalks, two or three Feet high, dividing themselves into smaller Branches, covered with a thin Bark, the elder Branches being of a dark purplish color, and the younger more red, thick set with small, hard, dry Leaves, without order from the bottom to the top, which are somewhat long, and small at the setting on, broader in the middle, and sharp pointed, somewhat like unto *Small Myrtle* Leaves, of a greenish color on the upper side, and whitish underneath; at the top of every Branch stands a round Flower in a scaly Head, consisting of many purplish Thrums or Threads, paler in the middle than round about, something like unto the Head of a *Scabious*, or rather *Knapweed*.



Herb  
Terrible

IV. The second, or Gutwort, or Herb Terrible of Marseilles, has a Root which is also small, long, and woody, with many Fibres at it, it is yellowish on the outside and white within, nothing so hot, bitter, or unpleasant as the Leaves or Seed, yet leaving a small hot taste at the end, without any smell, and not giving any Milk, it is, as *Pena* says, very like unto the Turbith of Alexandria, or of the Shops, and in the form thereof; from this Root spring forth very many hoary, or Silver white, slender, and very tough Branches, two Feet high, divided into many other smaller, on which grow many small, white, hoary Leaves round about them, smaller than those of the former; the Flowers are white and small, set close together in a long Tuft, but so covered with the white wooliness, that they can scarcely be perceived, which being past away, small black Seed come in their places, bitter and unpleasant, and so fiery hot, that if any one should chew the same, or the Leaves of the Plant in their Mouth, they will so heat the Mouth, Lips, and Jaws, that no washing will for a long time remove it or take it away.

V. The third, or Herb Terrible of Valentia, is a small Shrub, three or four Feet or more high, its Root is two Fingers thick, brown of color, and of a woody substance; from this Root springs forth one or more Stalks, which spread themselves forth into

many other small Branches, having a thin Rind, which is first brown, then purple, with many little and thin Leaves thereon, not much unlike to those of the *Myrtle*; the Flowers grow at the tops of the Stalk and Branches, and are as it were scaly and rough, like *Scabious* Flowers, of a blew purple color; the whole Plant is very bitter, and of an unpleasant taste, like *Chamaelea*, but somewhat stronger.

VI. The Places. The first grows on the Mountain or Hill *Cestius*, called *Cap de Ceste*, and on other Rocky and Stony places in France; the second grows near *Marseilles*, by the Sea side, on a small Hill near thereunto called *Mondrond*, as *Pena* says, and all along the Coast of *Liguria*, and the Isles of *Corfica* and *Sardinia*; the third grows about *Valentia* in Spain, as *Clusius* declares; they all grow on Mountains and Hills, as also in other places which are Gravelly Grounds; with us they are only nurs'd up in Gardens.

VII. The Times. They Flower not until it is late with us, as in *August* and *September*; *Clusius* found some of them in Spain Flowering in the Months of *February* and *March*.

VIII. The Qualities. They are all of them hot and dry in the fourth degree, Attractive, almost Pyrotick, and vehemently Cathartick, its purging faculty being much like the *Tithymals*; but the second of these is far more powerful or violent than the others, and comes nearly to the quality of *Mezereon*, so that by reason of its great heat and violence it is very dangerous.

IX. The Specification. They expel Watery, Flegmatick, and Cholerick Humors in abundance, and *Clusius* says that the Landlopers in Spain do exhibit it with good success for the Cure of the French Pox.

X. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A Powder of the dried Leaves or Root. 2. A Decoction of Leaves or Root. 3. A Powder of the Seed.

#### The Virtues.

XI. The Powder of the dried Leaves or Root. It is given in Broth to purge Choler and Flegm, also watery Humors in Dropsies, which it evacuates in abundance, and prevails also against the French Disease: *Pena* says that Empericks, tho' they find it to purge with such violence, do often give it with Wine or Broth: *Pliny* says the smallest quantity to be taken at a time in Chicken Broth is two Drams, a mean quantity is four Drams, and the greatest Dose to be given at once is six Drams; but in proportioning the Doses the Physician ought to act warily, and to begin with a smaller Dose at first, as half a Dram, to see the operation, and then to increase it to larger proportions as he shall see needful, to perfect its operation.

XII. The Decoction. *Clusius* says the Spaniards give the Decoction of the Root, Leaves, Flowers and Seed, to those who are troubled with the French Disease, and that with great success.

XIII. The Powder of the Seed. It purges downwards black Choler or Melancholy if taken with a little Salt and Vinegar, and in like quantity with *Epithymum*, but it is said a little to exulcerate the Bowels; it prevails against the Dropsie, Pox, Kings-Evil, and Gout. These Preparations of this Plant, if skilfully corrected, and given in a fit Dose, agreeing with the strength of the Patient and violence of the Disease, (the Body being before hand prepared) may be admitted of, where better and safer things are not at hand to be had.



C H A P. CCCLXIX.

OF HOLLIHOCK,

O R,

TREE MALLOW.

**I.** *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek* Δενδρομαλάχη, in *Latine* *Malva Arborea*, *Malva Rosea*, *Malva Hortensis*, *Malva major*, in *English* *Hollihock*, or *Garden Mallow*, also *Tree Mallow*; this is the *μωσχευτον*, *Mosceuton* *Plinij Lib. 21. Cap. 4.* so called I suppose à *suavitate odoris*, or from *μωσχεύειν*, *quòd avulsis furculis plantetur*.

**II.** *The Kinds.* There are two principal Kinds hereof, viz. 1. Δενδρομαλάχη κοινή, *Malva Hortensis vulgaris*, The Common Hollihock. 2. Δενδρομαλάχη μεγάλη, *Malva Rosea magna*, *Malva Rosea Arborea*, The Great or Tree Hollihock.

**III.** *Of the Common Garden Kind* there are two Species, viz. 1. *Malva Hortensis vulgaris simplex*, *Malva Rosea Hortensis simplex*, Single Flowered Hollihock. 2. *Malva Hortensis vulgaris multiplex*, *Malva Rosea communis multiplex*, The Double Flowered Hollihock. *Of the Great or Tree Hollihock* there are likewise two Species, viz. 3. *Malva Arborea*, *Malva Rosea magna Arborea*, *Malva Arborea magna peregrina*, The Outlandish Tree Hollihock. 4. *Malva Arborea Marina nostras*, *Malva Rosea Arborea Marina nostras*, Our English Sea Tree Hollihock.



**IV.** *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common single Flowered Hollihock. It has a long, white, tough Root, easily bowed, and grows deep into the Ground, not much unlike to the Root of the Common Mallow, but greater, and generally abides all the Winter, rising up again the next Spring; the Stalk grows up straight, almost like a Tree, of five, six, seven, or eight Feet high, according as the Ground is in good-

ness, the lower Leaves growing upon which are almost round, and somewhat large, with many corners, but not cut in or divided, and soft in handling, but those which grow up higher are much more produced into corners; from the middle of this Stalk upwards to the top grow the Flowers upon slender Footstalks, where they stand and make as it were a long Spike of small Leaves and Buds for Flowers together; the Flowers are single, and consist of five broad and round Leaves, standing round, like unto single Roses, with a middle long Stile, and some Chives about them; these Flowers are of divers Colors, as pure White, or Reddish, some are of a pale Blush, almost like a White, some are more bluish, fresh and lively, of a Rose Color, some are Scarlet, and of a deeper Red, like Crimson, some of a dark Red, like black Blood, some of a deep Purple, varying in their Colors, as Nature is pleased to play with them; after the Flowers are past, there grows up round Knobs or Heads, but flattish withal, being round about the bottoms, and compact or made up with a multitude of round, flat, whitish Seed, in form of a Cheese.

**V.** *The second, or Double Flowered Hollihock*, in its Roots, Stalks, Leaves, magnitude, manner and form of growing, and Seed, is exactly like the former, so that those parts need no other description than what we have already just now given, the difference between the former and this is only in the Flower, for whereas the former are single, these are manifoldly double, and are like unto double Roses, set very thick with Leaves, so that no Stile or Pointel is seen in the middle, the outwardmost row of Leaves in the Flowers are largest, the innermost being smaller, and thick set together, the Colors of which are manifold and various, according as we have described them in the former Section.

**VI.** *The third, or Outlandish Tree Hollihock.* It has a pretty large long Root, with some Fibres adjoining to it, which, tho' the Stalk perishes every Year, yet endures with us for about two Winters, and then decays: This Tree Hollihock grows with us to be a great tall Tree, more likely than an Herb, having its Stalk or Body something woody, and oftentimes so great in compass, that no Man can grasp it round with both his Hands; the Leaves are twice as large as any Common Mallow, and as soft and woolly in handling as the Marsh Mallow, but not so white and downy, and many times crumpled about the edges; its Flowers not in the first Year of its springing up with us, but in the second Summer, if a preceeding sharp Winter has not killed its Stalk in the first Year, (not then being grown to its full strength) being then more tender than afterwards; this main Stalk spreads it self out into several Branches, with Leaves on them, but smaller, among which stand fair, great, and large deep purple Flowers, with Stripes and Veins in them, like to the Common Mallow, after which come forth such like round Cases, with blackish Seed in them, but larger, according to the proportion of the Plant, which seldom comes to maturity in our Country.

**VII.** *The fourth, or English Sea Tree Hollihock.* It has a Root which is white, great, and woolly, with many long Fibres or Strings adjoined to it, and in its Stem, Leaves, and manner of growing, is very like to the last described; its Stalk is woody, and as great as a Mans Arm, of a ruflet or hoary Color, upon which grow soft, whitish, woolly Leaves, almost as large as the other, and as soft and smooth as Velvet; the Flowers hereof are large, and of a whitish or diluted purple color, like in form to the Flower of a Wild Mallow, but much larger, yet not so large as the last.

VIII. The



VIII. *The Places.* The first two grow only in Gardens, and are almost every where to be met with; the third grows near *Venice*, all along the *Tirrhene Shoar*, as also on the *African Shoar*, where the Root lives many Years, tho' with us it scarcely ever out lives two Years; the fourth and last grows in an Island called *Dinnie*, three Miles from *Kings-Road*, and five Miles from *Bristol*, as also about the Cottages near *Hurst Castle*, over against the *Isle of Wight*.

IX. *The Times.* The two first Flower thro' all the Summer Months, even till the approach of Winter, but the *Tree Holliboeks* begin to Flower later, so that the first of them does not often perfect its Seed with us, but the last of them brings forth its ripe Seed in a little time after its Flowering.

X. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues of Holliboeks* are the same with those of *Common Mallow*, *Marsh Mallow*, and *Vervain Mallow*, hereafter in their proper places to be declared, and to which we refer you.

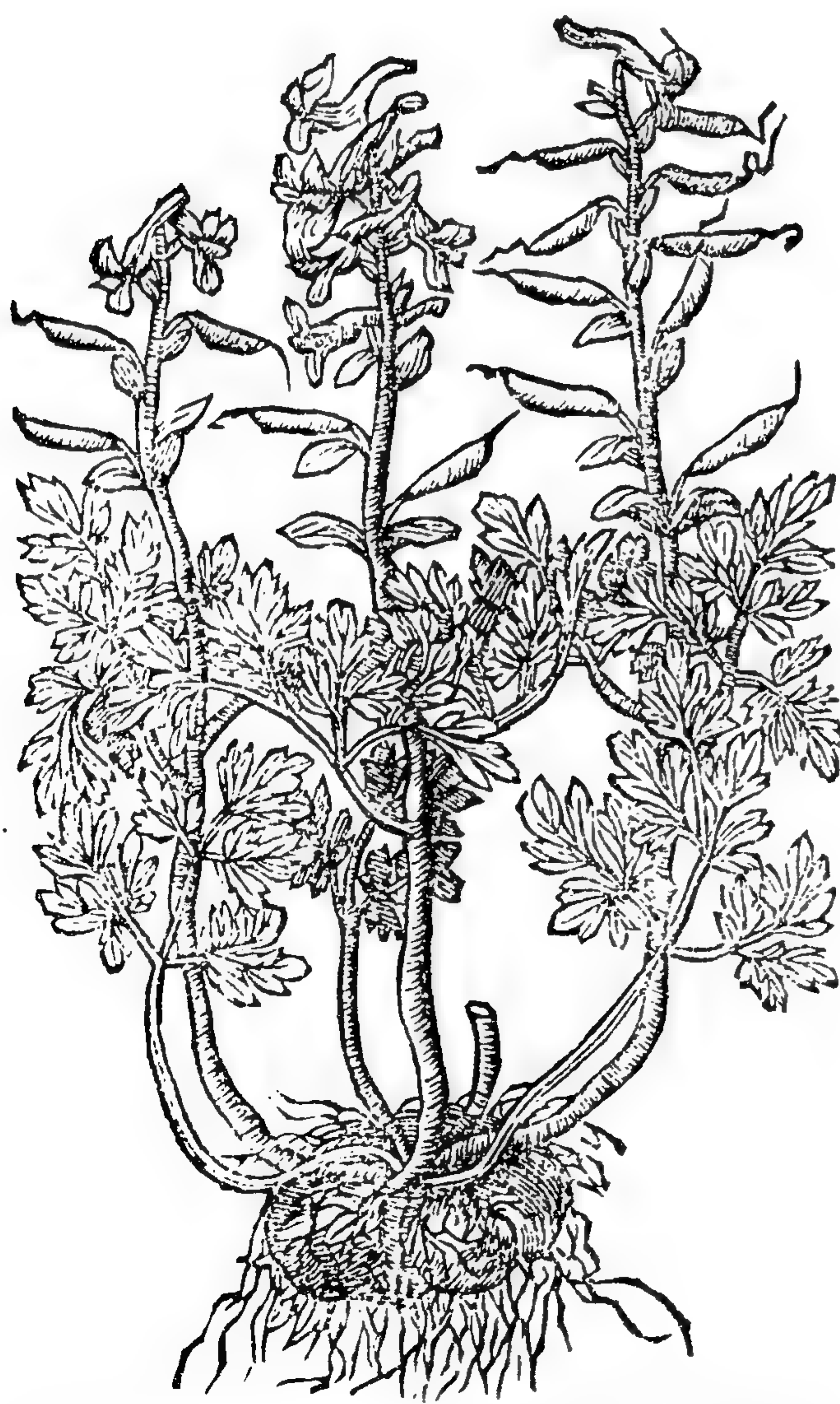
C H A P. CCCLXX.

OF HOLLOW ROOT,

O R,

Caveous FUMITERRY.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *Κάπνος κούρις*, *Πίζα κούρις*, in Latine *Radix cava*, *Fumaria Radice cavata*, in English *Hollow Root*, *Caveous Fumiterry*, and *Hollow Rooted Fumiterry*.



*Fumiterry hollowrooted*

II. *The Kinds.* It is the third general Species of *Fumiterry* Cap. 324. Sett. 2. of which we have three

special Kinds, viz. 1. *Radix cava major Flore albo*, Great White Flowered Hollow Root. 2. *Radix cava major Flore Carne*, Great Blush Flowered Hollow Root. 3. *Radix Cava minor, Capnos Radice Fabacea*, Small Hollow Root, Bean fashioned Hollow Root.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Great White Flowered Hollow Root, has a Root which is round and great, of a yellowish brown color on the outside, and more yellow within, and hollow underneath, so that it seems but a Shell, yet being broken every part of it will grow; this Root sends forth Leaves, but they break not out of the Ground until the end of March, very seldom before, and are, both for proportion and color, somewhat like unto the Leaves of *Columbines*, divided into five parts, indented about the edges, standing on small long Footstalks, of a whitish green color, among which rise up the Stalks, without any Leaves from the bottom to the middle, where the Flowers shoot forth one above another, with every one a small short Leaf at the foot thereof, which are long and hollow, with a spur behind it, somewhat like unto the Flowers of *Larkspurs*, but having their bellies somewhat bigger, and the mouth not so open, being all of a pure white color; when the Flowers are past small, long, and round Cods spring forth, containing round blackish Seed.

IV. *The second, or Great Blush Flowered Hollow Root.* The Root is said to be bulbous, or rather tuberous, and hollow within, or underneath, on the upper part pressed down somewhat flat, covered over with a dark yellow Skin or Bark, with several strings adjoining thereto, and of a bitter and austere taste; the Leaves hereof are jagged, and cut asunder, almost like those of *Coriander*, of a light greenish color, like the gray color of *Columbine* Leaves, to which they are also something like in form, but lesser; the Stalks are smooth, round, and slender, about which on the upper part stand little Flowers, orderly placed, long, with a little Horn at the end, like the Flowers of *Toad-Flax*, of a light red, tending to a purple color; the Seed lies in flat Cods, very soft and greenish when it is ready to yield forth its ripe black shining Seed; this Plant is very much like to the former almost in all respects, saving that the Flowers are of a light red, tending to a purplish color; both these Plants abide above Ground but a very small time.

V. *The third, or Small Hollow Root.* It has a Root which is solid or firm, round, and a little long withal, two being usually joined together, after the manner of a Bean, being yellowish both within and without; the Leaves are of a blewish green color, yet greener and smaller than any of the former, and growing more thick together, the Flowers are like in proportion to the foregoing in all respects, but lesser, having purplish backs, and white bellies, standing closer and thicker together upon short Footstalks: But *Gerard* describes his *Small Purple Hollow Root*, that it has Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Flowers, and Seed, altogether like the first described, the especial difference being, that this Plant is every ways somewhat less.

VI. *To the former three Kinds add a fourth, which is a Small Hollow Root with a green Flower, called Radix Cava minima Flore viridi, described by Johnson upon Gerard; the Root hereof is small and toothed, made of little bulbs, resembling Teeth, and ending in white hairy Fibres; it sends up several little Branches, about three Inches high, and the Leaves are somewhat like those of the Yellow Fumiterry, or of the Radix Cava, but much lesser; the Flowers grow clustering on the top of the Stalk, commonly five or seven together, each of them composed of four*



four yellowish green Leaves, with some Threads in them.

VII. *The Places.* These Plants grow about Hedges among Brambles and Briers, and in the borders of Fields and Vineyards in low and fertile Grounds in Germany and the Low Countries, but the three first of them grow with us only in Gardens; the fourth is found in its times of flourishing among Bushes in several parts of England, as about Chislehurst in Kent, especially in a Wood formerly belonging to one Pits, and at the farther end of Cray Heath on the Left Hand under a Hedge among Briers and Brambles, which is its proper seat.

VIII. *The Times.* The three first, as also the fourth, may be accounted Vernal Plants, for they rise not out of the Ground till the Spring comes in, and are gone likewise before it is past, remaining under Ground all the rest of the Year, yet the lesser abides longer above Ground than the greater; the fourth Flowers in April, the other three Flower in March, and their Seed is ripe in April, and the Leaves and Stalks are gone in May, nothing remaining save only the Roots, so small a time do they continue.

IX. *The Qualities.* Hollow Root is hot in the second degree and dry in the third, Aperitive, Absterfive, Astringent, and Diuretick, Pectoral, Hepatick, Arthritick, and Alexipharmick.

X. *Their Specification, Preparations and Virtues* are the same with those of Fumitory in Chap. 304. *Sett. II. ad 24.* to which for the particulars you are referred, there being little or no difference in their operations and effects; but with them you may take these following Notes.

XI. *Nota. 1. The Powder of the Roots.* Given to a Dram or more in Wine, or any Alexipharmick Vehicle, it is very effectual against Poyson, the bitings of Mad Dogs, and of venomous Serpents, as also against the Plague or Pestilence, the Patient being laid down to sweat upon the same; it also provokes Urine, and helps against the Jaundice, and being strewed upon putrid and running Ulcers it cleanses, dries up, and heals the same.

XII. *Nota. 2. The Powder of the Seed.* Drunk from one to two Drams in Red Port Wine, or in our Aqua Bezoartica, it stops Vomiting, stops all sorts of Lasks or Fluxes of the Belly, and strengthens all the Viscera.

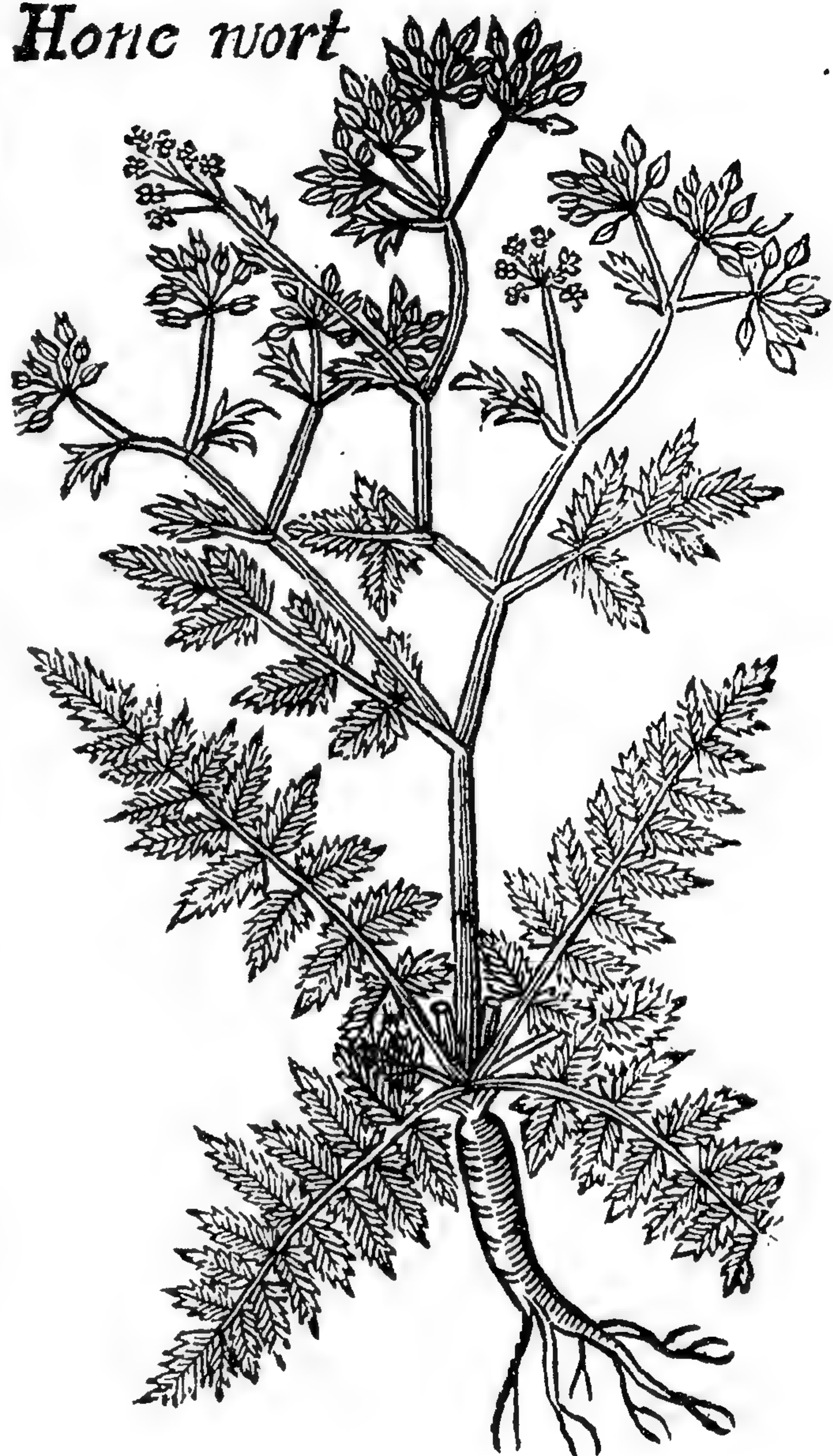
XIII. *Nota. 3. The Decoction of the Roots in Wine.* It is good against Tumors in the Throat, and the long continued swellings of the Almonds, it prevails against stumous productions, and the pain of the Jaws with an afflux of Humors.

XIV. *Nota. 4. The Oil or Ointment of the Roots.* Anointed on the Fundament it is good against the swelling and pain of the Hemorrhoids, or Piles, discussing the one and easing the other; it discusses also scrophulous Tumors of the Throat.

is called in Latine *Selinum Segetale*; Goodier called it first *Sium Terrestre*, afterwards it was called *Apium Sij Folijs*, and from the compofure of the Leaves *Sium odoratum Tragi*; Gerard called it *Sium Segetum*, and *Sium Agrorum*, but at length the first Latine Name *Selinum Segetale* obtained above the rest, from whence it is Named in English *Corn Parsly*, but the Country People call it *Honewort*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is accounted among the Umbelliferous Plants, for such it is, and is certainly one of the Stock of *Selina*, or *Apia*, for which reason it was called *Apium Sij Folijs*, but with us *Corn Parsly*, as aforesaid.

## Hone wort



III. *The Description.* It has a Root which is small, long, and white, which perishes every Year after it has Seeded, and rises again of its own Sowing; it is a small low Herb, having several long winged Leaves lying on the Ground, many being set one against another, finely dented about the edges, with one single Leaf at the end, which are each of them longer than Burnet Leaves, and pointed at the ends, from among which rise up several round Stalks, half a Yard high, with the like, but lesser Leaves on them, branching forth likewise from the Joints, and all of them bearing small Umbles of white Flowers, which turn into small blackish Seed, less than Parsly Seed, but as hot and sharp in taste as it. Gerard has a more ample Description of this Plant, which take in the following Words.

IV. *Gerard's Description.* The Root is small, and whitish, with many Threads adjoining to it, but not so big as Parsly Roots; the Herb comes up at first from Seed, like Parsly, with two small, long, narrow Leaves, the next which spring up are two small round Leaves, smooth, but nick'd about the edges, and so for two or three couples of Leaves of the next growth there are such round Leaves, growing on a middle Rib by couples, and one round one also at the top or end of the Wing; afterwards, as more Leaves spring up, so the fashion of them also

Y y y change,

C H A P. CCCLXXI.

OF HONEWORT,

O R,

Corn PARSLY.

THE Names. It is an English Plant, and has no known Greek Name belonging to it, but



change, that is to say, every winged Leaf has about eight or nine small, smooth, green Leaves, finely thipt or indented about the edges, growing on each side of a middle Rib, one opposite to another, and one growing by it self at the top or end, in form resembling those of *Sium odoratum Tragi*, but not so large or long, or at all brownish, from among which rise up many small, round, straked Stalks or Branches, about two Feet in height, sometimes above twenty Stalks from one Root, sometimes growing upright, sometimes creeping not far from the Ground, jointed or kneed, and dividing themselves into very many Branches; at every Joint grows one Leaf, smaller than the former, which, together with the lowermost, perish berimes, so that seldom one green Leaf is to be seen on this Plant when the Seed is ripe; the Flowers are white, and grow most commonly at the tops of the Stalks and Branches, sometimes at most of the Joints, even from the Ground, in uneven or unordered Umbles, every Flower having five exceeding small Leaves, flat and broad at the top, and in the middle very small Chives with purple tops, the whole Flower not much exceeding the bigness of a small Pins head, which being past away, there comes up in the place of each Flower two small, grey, crooked, straked Seeds, like *Parfly* Seed, but larger, in taste hot and aromatical.

V. *The Places.* It grows in Corn Fields among Corn, or where Corn has been Sown, in several places of *England*; it grows in Clay Grounds, and has been found in Wheat Lands about *Maple Durham* in *Hampshire*, and several other places.

VI. *The Times.* It begins to Flower about the beginning of *July*, and so continues Flowering a long time; *Parkinson* says it Flowered not with him till *August*, and that the Seed ripened about a Month after, but part of the Seed is many times ripe in *August*, and some other parts of it scarcely in the beginning of *October*, in the mean season some of it falls, whereby it renews it self, and grows with flourishing green Leaves all the Winter.

VII. *As to the Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues,* they come very near, or are the same with those of Our *Common Parfly*, for the Seed is in form and taste almost like *Parfly* Seed, and therefore to that you are referred.

VIII. *Nota. The Liquid Juice.* *Goodyere* related that the juice of a Handful of the Leaves being drunk in a draught of Ale or Beer every Morning fasting for a Fortnight, did cure one that had a swelling in her Cheek, Yearly there arising, but its original cause was unknown, yet it was attended with great heat, redness, and itching, by the use of this Herb it was perfectly cured, and rose no more; it is possible it may be an excellent thing against stumous Tumors, or the Kings-Evil in any part of the Body.

C H A P. CCCLXXII.

Of HONEYWORT,

O R,

WAX-FLOWER.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek* *Κνέινθος* by *Theophrastus* Lib. 6. Cap. 7. in *Latine* *Cerinthe*, and in *English* *Honeywort*, and *Wax Flower*.

II. *The Kinds.* Some will have it to be *Telephium maculosum*, or *Telephium Dioscoridis*, and as such they nurse it up in their Gardens in *Paris*; *Dodonæus* and *Clusius* say that many took it to be *Maru*, or *Almara Avicennæ*, in Cap. 464. of which he makes five sorts, but *Clusius* takes *Avicen* to mean either our *Borage* or *Bugloss*, and that this Plant is rather the *Leucographis Plinij* in Lib. 27. Cap. 11. because of the white spots of the Leaves; *Gesner* says it was called by some *Cynoglossus Montana*, and *Bauhinus* thereupon calls it *Cynoglossum Montanum*; *Dalechampi* took *Calendula* to be *Cerinthe*, à *Cerco ipsius Flore sic appellata*; but *Clusius* refers it rather to the Kinds of *Borage* or *Bugloss*, to which in temperature he says it is nearest. Authors make at least six Kinds thereof, but we shall describe no more than grow in our Gardens, which are the following, viz. 1. *Cerinthe major Flore luteo & rubro Lobelij & Camerarij*, *Cerinthe quorundum major Flore versicolore Clusij*, *Cerinthe*, seu *Cynoglossum Montanum majus Bauhini*, The Greater Yellow and Red Honeywort. 2. *Cerinthe minor Flore luteo & rubro*, *Cerinthe quinta Clusij*, *Cerinthe Folia non maculato viridi Bauhini*, The Lesser Yellow and Red Honeywort. 3. *Cerinthe major flavo Flore*, *Cerinthe Flore flavo asperior Bauhini*, *Cerinthe quorundam major flavo Flore Clusij*, The Greater Yellow Honeywort. 4. *Cerinthe minor flavo Flore*, *Cerinthe quorundam minor flavo Flore*, *Cerinthe minor Lobelij*, *Camerarij*, & *Tabernamontani*, *Cerinthe Plinij*, The Lesser Yellow Honeywort. 5. *Cerinthe major Flore purpurante*, *Cerinthe tertia Clusij*, *Cerinthe Flore rubro purpurascente Bauhini*, Purple Honeywort.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Greater Yellow and Red Honeywort, has a Root which is somewhat great and thick, sending therefrom many Fibres within the Earth, but perishes every Year after Seed time; this partly colored Plant rises up with divers thick hairy Stalks, almost two Feet high, on which are set long large Leaves, of a blewish green color, spotted with great white spots, round at their farther ends, and so much encompassing the Stalk at the lower ends, that it seems to go thro' them, set with some small Pricks or Thorns thereon, and a little hairy withal; the Stalks are branched toward the tops in other smaller ones, and full of Leaves, but much lesser, whose ends do turn inwards, like the *Turnsole* Heads, at every Leaf whereof comes forth a long hollow Flower, like unto a *Comfrey* Flower, and as large, which in some are all yellow, with a reddish circle about the middle thereof, but in others from the middle forwards is of a yellow color, the other part next the Stalk being of a purplish red color, with some Threads in the middle, tasting sweet like Honey, wherewith Bees are much delighted, each Flower standing in a green Husk, divided into five parts at the tops, in which, after they are past, grow the Seed, which is blackish, a little cornered, and flat at bottom, where it is joined to the Husk.

IV. *Gerard* describes it thus. The Root perishes at the first approach of Winter; it rises forth of the Ground after the falling of its Seed, with two small Leaves, like those of *Basil*, between the which Leaves comes forth a thick, fat, smooth, tender, and brittle Stalk, full of Juice, dividing it self into many other Arms, which are also divided into many other Branches, bowing or leaning towards the Ground, being not able without props to sustain it self, by reason of the great weight of Leaves, Branches, and much Juice, with which the whole Plant is surcharged; upon these Arms or Branches are placed many thick rough Leaves, set with very sharp prickles, like the rough Skin of a Thornback, of



of a blewish green color, spotted very notably with white strakes and spots, like the Leaves of the *True Pulmonaria*, or *Cowslip of Jerusalem*, and in shape like those of the *Coddled Thorowax*, which Leaves do embrace or encompass the Stalk round about, from the bosom whereof comes forth small clusters of yellow Flowers, with a circle or band of bright Purple round about the midst of the yellow Flower; the Flower is hollow fashioned, like a little Box, and of a sweet or Honey taste when it is suck'd, in the hollowiness whereof are many small Chives or Threads, which being past away, round black Seed does come in place, contained in soft skinny Husks; the Flowers are very various in color, which are of yellow or purple, and sometimes of both mixed together.

V. *The second, or Lesser Red and Yellow Honeywort*, has a long Root, full of Fibres, perishing every Year; its Branches are both shorter and leaning downwards, not standing upright, on which grow long green Leaves, without any spots on them, and lesser than the former; the tops of the Branches are as full of Leaves and Flowers as the foregoing, but turn not in the same manner; the Stalks which sustain the Flowers, and so likewise the small Leaves at the foot of every Stalk, are somewhat purplish, but the Husk in which the Flower grows is green, and cut into five divisions; the Flower is long and hollow, like the former, and almost as great, of a Gold yellow color, dented at the ends, and with a Red or deep Crimson circle about the middle thereof; and the Seed which follows is like the other, but somewhat lesser.

VI. *The third, or Greater Yellow Honeywort*. It has a Root like the others, which perishes after Seed time in the same manner; it rises up with a reasonable great Stalk, Branched on all sides from the bottom to the top, many of the lowermost lying upon the Ground, and the other standing more upright, on which grow long and large blewish green Leaves, spotted as the first is, but not so large at bottom, where they encompass the Stalks, and having some prickles thereon in the middle, as the first has, and a little hoary about the brim or edges; the tops of the Branches do bend downwards, set with small Leaves, and Flowers at them, as the first, and as large as they, but without any circle or bottom of Purple, being wholly of a fair yellow color, with such like Threads as the rest have, and Seed also much the same; the Leaves of this seem to be rougher than the Leaves of the first, but narrower at their setting on, as aforesaid.

VII. *The fourth, or Lesser Yellow Honeywort*. It has a Root which is white also, and long, and abides in more Southern Climes all the Year long, but with it perishes in Winter; it has a slenderer Stalk than the former, near two Feet high, set with smaller, narrower, and spotted Leaves thereon, without order, one above another, on both sides the Stalks, which spreads it self out into many small but longer Branches, from the middle thereof, thick set with Leaves and Flowers, which are like the last, all yellow, but smaller, and dented about their brims; after which come such like Seed as the last, but smaller.

VIII. *The fifth, or Purple Honeywort*, has a white long Root, which perishes every Year, and therefore must be new sown every Spring; it grows very like the *Great Yellow Kind*, with low bending Branches, and somewhat large blewish green spotted Leaves, like as the rest have; the Flowers grow in the same manner as the others do, and as large, wholly of a dark purplish color, on the superficies whereof a little whiteness is perceived; the Seed which follows is like the others, but greater than any of them, and

two for the most part standing together in a Husk.

IX. *The Places*. The first, third, and fifth, grow wild in Spain, the first in *Batavia* and *Portugal*, the third in *Valentia*, also in *Monte Palatino* at *Rome*; and in *Germany* in *Austria*, *Stiria*, *Bohemia*, and *Hungary*: the Originals of the second and fourth are unknown, they none of them grow wild in *England*, but are only nursed up in Gardens.

X. *The Times*. They Flower all *June*, *July*, and *August*, and sometimes so late, that we do not gather good Seed from any of them, but from the *Red*, if the Year proves not warm enough, and wet withal to ripen them, or if they be not well watered when it is a dry Summer, to bring them the faster forward; they perish at the first approach of Winter, and must be sown the next Spring.

XI. *The Qualities*. They are temperate in respect to heat or cold, and dry in the first degree, *Astringent* and *Vulnerary*.

XII. *The Specification*. They are peculiar to stop Bleedings of all sorts, the overflowing of the Terms, Bloody Flux, Hepatick Flux, &c.

XIII. *The Preparations*. You may have therefrom, 1. *A Liquid Juice or Essence of the Herb*. 2. *A Decoction thereof in Wine*. 3. *A Powder*.

#### *The Virtues.*

XIV. *The Juice or Essence of the Herb*. Taken inwardly from one Ounce to two, or three, it is good to stop inward bleeding, whether of any Vessel broken in the Lungs, or Pissing Blood, or the Bloody Flux; it stops also bleeding at Mouth and Nose, the overflowing of the Terms in Women, and other Fluxes of the Bowels; if it is mixed with a little Saffron, it is good for bleared and watering Eyes, and being used in foul Ulcers after they are cleansed, it helps to incarnate them, especially such as are in the more nice and tender parts of the Body.

XV. *The Decoction in Wine*. It has all the Virtues of the Juice or Essence before related, and does the same things, but not so effectually, nor so speedily, and therefore is to be given or used oftner, and in a greater quantity or Dose.

XVI. *The Powder*. It stops inward Bleedings and Fluxes, as the Juice, &c. does, and being applied outwardly to any flux of Blood, it presently stops it; strewed also upon moist and running Sores, or putrid Ulcers, it cleanses and dries them, and disposes them to healing.

XVII. *Nota*. *Pliny* and *Virgil* affirm, that Bees are much delighted with the Flowers of these Plants, being sweet, or abounding with Honey, and that they gather from them more Honey and Wax than from many other Flowers; and from thence doubtless it obtained the Name of *Cerinth*.

## C H A P. CCCLXXIII.

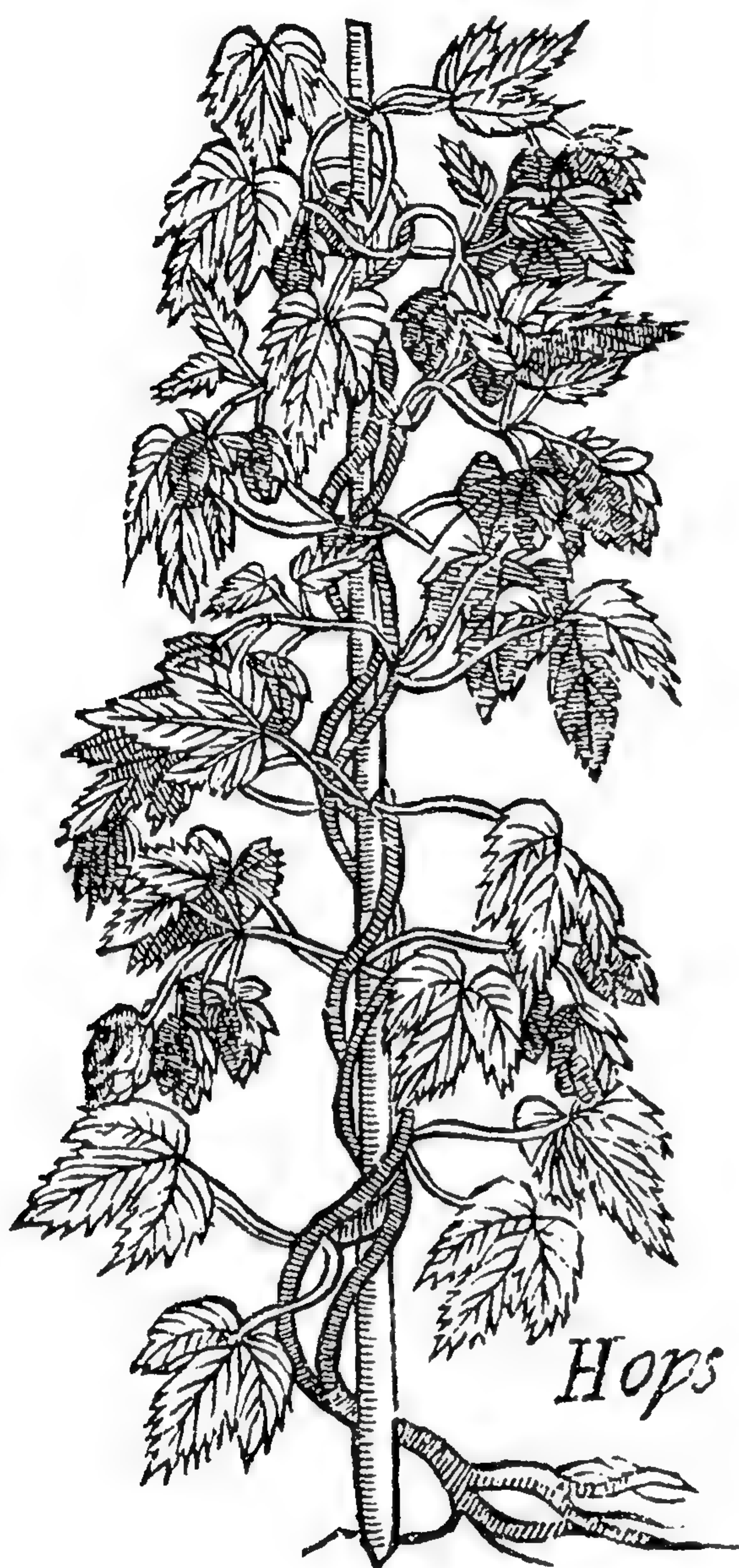
### Of H O P S Garden and Wild.

I. **T**HE Names. *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, nor any of the Ancient Greek Writers make any mention of this Plant, nor yet any of the Ancient Latine Authors, except *Pliny* only, who *Lib. 21. Cap. 17.* does but only name it, and number it among those Herbs which grow of themselves, and are used for Meat with divers Nations. The *Arabians* have not only



only remembered it, but commended it highly for many Diseases. The Greeks at this day call it *Βρύον*, & *Βρύονια*, *Bryon* and *Bryonia*, it is likely for the form of the Leaves, and running of the Branches. The Latines call it *Lupulus*, *Lupus Salictarius*, *Lupulus Salictarius* (*qui ad Salices assurgit, vel qui Salictum curat, vel quia salit & reptat per Arbores, aut quia scandit Salices*) Mesue makes it his third kind of *Volubilis*, Lobel calls it *Vitis Septentrionalis*, (The Northern Vine) and *Tragus Smilax aspera*, which it is not; we in English call it Hop, or Hops.

II. The Kinds. It is twofold, viz. 1. *Lupulus Hortensis*, The Garden or Manured Hop. 2. *Lupulus Sylvestris*, *Lupulus Fœmina*, The Wild Hop.



III. The Descriptions. The first, or Garden Hop, has a Root which is great at the head, shooting forth many blackish strings, taking fast hold of the Ground; it rises up at first with several great brown heads, like unto *Asparagus*, but larger, which afterwards spreading it self out into rough Branches, climb up upon great, long, or high Poles, which are set on purpose for them to run upon; it has many hard and rough dark green Leaves, cut into three or five divisions, somewhat like unto *Bramble* Leaves, and dented also about the edges; at the tops of the Branches, which hang down again for the most part, come forth many scaly heads, being as it were a number of small yellowish green Leaves growing thick together, from among which come forth the Flowers, of a whitish yellow color, which being past, and the heads changing their color to a more brownish yellow, they are then fit to be gathered to keep; in this Flower at the bottom thereof is contained the Seed, which is brown, or of a reddish brown color, small and round.

IV. Gerard describes the Hop thus. The Roots are slender, and diversly folded one within another; it lives and flourishes by embracing and taking hold of Poles, Pearches, and other things upon which it may climb; it brings forth very long Stalks, rough and

hairy, also rugged Leaves, like those of the Vine, or rather of *Briony*, but yet blacker, and with fewer dented divisions; the Flowers hang down by clusters from the tops of the Branches, puffed up, and set as it were with Scales, like little Canes, or Scaled Pine Apples, of a whitish color, tending to yellowness, and of a strong smell.



V. The second, Wild, or Female Hop, has a Root like the former, and grows up in the same manner, form, or fashion, climbing upon Trees or Hedges, or what stands next unto it, with rough Branches and Leaves like the former, but this bears much smaller Heads, and in far less plenty or number than the Manured does, and sometimes in some Years there are but few Heads to be seen upon some Plants, and herein consists the especial difference.

VI. The Places. These Plants grow more frequently in our colder Climates, than in the hotter or more Southern, they delight to grow in low moist Grounds, where they may have moisture enough, and yet not too much, for which cause they are planted on Hillocks as it were, and Trenches are made to receive or carry off any great quantity of Water, that the Plants may not stand drowned, by which it appears they delight to grow in a fat and fruitful Soil: The Wild Kind grows among Briers and Thorns about the borders of Fields; these by being transplanted into Gardens, and being manured as the Garden Kind is, much alters it self, and becomes little inferior to that of the Garden, and in process of time comes to the same goodness and perfection.

VII. The Times. They spring not up till April, when from the old Roots, which remain all the Winter, new Shoots or Buds come forth; they flower not till the latter end of June, and the Hops themselves are not gathered till the middle of August, and the beginning and middle of September, when they are dried, and so kept all the Year for use.

VIII. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the third degree, Inciding, Aperitive, Absterfive, Subastringent, Digestive, Discussive, and Diuretick, Neurotick,



Neurotick, Stomack, Hepatick, Nephritick, Hyfterick, and Arthritick, Emmenagogick, Sudorifick, Alexipharmick, and Lithonriptick.

IX. *The Specification.* They are of special use to cleanse the Blood, provoke Urine, help the Strangury, break and expel the Stone, Gravel, Sand, and Tartarous Mucilage from the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, kill Worms, expel Poyson, and provoke the Terms in Women: The *Garden* and *Wild* are equal in virtue.

X. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom,  
1. *A Sallet.* 2. *A Liquid Juice of the Leaves, Roots, and green Hops.* 3. *An Essence of the same.* 4. *An Infusion in Wine or Water.* 5. *A Syrup of the Juice.* 6. *A Decoction of the Roots.* 7. *A Powder of the Seed.* 8. *A Spirituous Tincture of the Flowers or Hops.* 9. *An Acid Tincture.* 10. *An Oily Tincture of the same.* 11. *A Saline Tincture.* 12. *A Spirit from the Hops.* 13. *The Bath.*

#### The Virtues.

XI. *The Sallet.* The first Buds of the *Hops* being laid a while in Sand will make them tenderer, and being boiled are used to be eaten after the same manner as the Buds of *Asparagus* are, and with as great delight to the taste; they open the obstructions of Liver and Spleen, cleanse the Blood, loosen the Belly, expel Gravel and Sand from the Reins, and give ease in the Strangury.

XII. *The Liquid Juice of the tops of Hops.* It has all the former Virtues, but much more powerful, it effectually cleanses the Blood, and is a good expedient for the cure of the *French Disease*, as also all sorts of Scabs, Itch, Pimples, Herpes, Tettars, Ringworms, Morpew, Scurf, spreading Sores, and all sorts of discolorings of the Skin, being taken daily Morning and Night, from two Ounces to four, in any fit Vehicle; it is found by experience to expel Poyson.

XIII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, but much more powerful to the Intentions; besides which, being taken two or three Hours before the coming of the Fit of an Ague, it is said to cure it at some few times taking; it kills Worms in the Body, provokes the Terms, and powerfully expels Urine; dropt into sore and ulcerated Ears, cleanses them from their Corruption, takes away their stinking smell, and heals them; it purges Choler, but more effectually if given in Whey of Goats Milk; if the use of it is continued for some time, Spring and Fall, it has been found to cure the Kings-Evil, and the Scurvy.

XIV. *The Infusion of Hops in Wine or Water.* It cures the Strangury, or such as make their Water with heat and difficulty, and brings away Stones, Sand, Gravel, or Tartarous Mucilage, obstructing the passages of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder; if Decoction of *Hops* is used in making of Bread, it is said to make the Dough to rise better, and the Bread to be the lighter; it has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not full out so powerful, and therefore may be given to six or eight Ounces Morning and Night.

XV. *The Decoction of the Roots.* *Clusius* says, that the Women in *Spain* use it to cure the falling of the Hair, caused by the *French Disease*. Take fair Water a Gallon, *Hop* Roots cleansed and bruised a Pound, or more, boil them together to the consumption of a third part, or better, strain out, and give half a Pint of it to drink every Morning fasting, letting the Patient sweat upon it; some add to the Decoction Roots of *Parsly* and *Quitchgrass*, with a few Raisons of the Sun.

XVI. *The Syrup of the Juice.* It has all the Vir-

tues of Juice, Essence, and Infusion, but must be given in three times a larger quantity, because the Medicament is so much clogged with Sugar; it cures such as have the Yellow Jaundice, eases the Headach which comes of heat, attemperates the calidity of Stomach and Liver, and is very profitably given in long and hot Agues, arising from inflamed Blood and Choler; it loosens the Belly, and effectually cures the Scurvy, Dropsie, Gout, and Kings-Evil.

XVII. *The Powder of the Seed.* Being given to the quantity of a Dram in the Morning fasting, and last at Night going to Bed, it kills Worms in Children, or elder People, provokes Urine powerfully, and brings down Womens Courses.

XVIII. *The Spirituous Tincture of Hops.* It is not inferior to any Diet-Drink which can be given to such as labour under the Scurvy, Gout, Dropsie, Pox, and Kings-Evil; it singularly purifies the Blood after a Salivation, but it is best to be given to such as are of a cold and moist habit of Body, fat and corpulent, and not to such as are thin, hollow, and seem to be emaciated or consumed; it may be given from a Dram to two Drams, or more, in Ale, Beer, Wine, or other proper Vehicle.

XIX. *The Acid Tincture of Hops.* It has the Virtues of the Spirituous Tincture, but much more fit to be given to such as are of hot habits of Body, because it cools and refreshes; it exterminates all malignity of the Pox, Plague, or Poyson, and is singularly good against the Bitings of Mad Dogs, Vipers, and other venomous Serpents, &c. it eradicates the Scurvy, Gout, and Kings-Evil, and after an admirable manner cures Agues and Fevers, and kills Worms in Old or Young.

XX. *The Oily Tincture of Hops.* As a Topick it gives ease in the Gout and Sciatica, and eases all pains of the Joints and Limbs coming of cold and moisture; it is an excellent thing against the Palfie, being anointed upon the Back Bone, and upon the parts affected, giving it inwardly also at the same time; you may give from ten to twenty, or thirty drops for a dose, being dropt into White Sugar, and then mixed with a Glas of White Wine, and so taken it gives ease in the Strangury, provokes Urine and the Terms, and effectually cures the Colick, and cleanses the Reins, Ureters and Bladder from small Stones, Gravel, Sand, and Tartarous Matter lodging therein; if the Dose is doubled or trebled, and given two hours before the Fit of an Ague, it commonly cures it at three or four times taking.

XXI. *The Saline Tincture of Hops.* It cures by bathing therewith Scurf, Morpew, Leprosie, Tettars, Ringworms, Herpes, and other like breakings out, and clears the Skin of Tanning, Sunburning, black and blew Spots, Yellowness, and other like discolorings thereof.

XXII. *The Spirit of Hops.* It is truly Cordial, cheers the Heart, and refreshes the Animal and Vital Spirits; it is good in Fainting and Swooning Fits, represses Vapors, and other Hyfterick Diseases, and after a singular manner prevails against Convulsions, whether in Old or Young, and is helpful against Paralytick Distempers.

XXIII. *The Bath.* It is made of the *Hops*, by boiling in fair Water; if Women sit in it, and continue the use of it for some time, it brings down the Terms, tho' long stopt, provokes Urine, eases pains of the Joints and Limbs, as also the exquisite tortures of the Strangury, and takes away the swelling and hardness of the Womb.

XXIV. *Nota.* *Hops* are now very much used to put into Ale, for thereby it not only makes it keep longer, and makes it finer, but also more wholesom, and gratefuller to the Stomach and Palate; but this



is to be observed, that because *Hops* have an admirable fragrantcy and subtil odor, and abound wonderfully with volatile parts, they are never to be boiled in making of Beer, (for so all their volatile parts will be lost) but only scalded and infused in the same, by which means you will extract into the Liquor all their volatile and excellent substance, leaving the earthy or devilish parts behind, which the way by boiling only extracts; and this Truth all such as are accustomed to make Tea can demonstrate, who, if they boil their Tea, always spoil their Liquor, for which reason they only scald, and infuse it in the same, if they would have it admirable: The same thing is to be understood of *Hops*, and of all other Vegetable substances, which consist of fragrant, odoriferous, and volatile parts, if so be you would preserve them.

## C H A P. CCCLXXIV.

## OF HOREHOUND White.

**I. THE Names.** This kind of Plant is called in *Greek Horeon*, in *Latine Prasum*, and *Marrubium*, in *English Horehound*.

**II. The Kinds.** There are four generick Kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Prasum*, vel *Marrubium Album*, White Horehound. 2. *Prasum Nigrum*, Black Horehound. 3. *Prasum Aquaticum*, Water Horehound. 4. *Prasum Fetidum*, *Prasum Silvestre*, Wild Horehound, or *Stachys*.

**III. The Kinds of the White.** Of this there are five Species, viz. 1. *Marrubium Album Vulgare*, *Prasum Album Commune*, *Prasum Angulare*, Our Common White Horehound. 2. *Marrubium Candidum alterum*, *Marrubium Candidum Hispanicum*, vel *Paniculum Lobelij* & *Clusij*, *Marrubium Candidum Gerardi*, *Marrubium Creticum Camerarij*, *Marrubium Album Lufolium Peregrinum Baubini*, White Spanish Horehound. 3. *Marrubium Creticum Angustifolium Lobelij*, *Marrubium Creticum Camerarij*, *Polanci*, *Lugdunensis*, & *aliorum*, *Marrubium Album Angustifolium Peregrinum Baubini*, Sweet Candy Horehound. There is another Species of this, which is unsavory, or without smell, called *Marrubium Creticum Angustifolium inodorum* by *Elytenfis*, which is *Marrubium Album Peregrinum brevibus* & *obtusis Folijs Baubini*. 4. *Marrubium Album Vilosum Baubini*, thought to be *Prasum Dioscoridis*, White Hairy Horehound, called by some French Horehound. 5. *Marrubium Crispum*, and *Marrubium Album Crispum*, White Curled Horehound.

**IV. The Descriptions.** The first, or Common White Horehound, has a Root which is blackish, hard, and woody, with many Fibres or Strings thereat, which dies not every Winter, but abides many Years; from this Root spring up several square hoary Stalks, half a Yard or two Feet high, set at the Joints with two crumpled, or as it were rough Leaves, of a dull, hoary, green color, and of an agreeable good smell, but of a very bitter taste; the Flowers are small, white, and gaping, set in rough, hard, prickly Husks round about the Joints with the Leaves, from the middle of the Stalk upwards, in which afterwards is found small, round, blackish Seed.

**V. The second, or White Spanish Horehound, has** Roots like the former Common Kind, which sends forth several foursquare Stalks, more white and ho-

ry than it, on which Stalks are set by couples Leaves somewhat longer, thicker, whiter, and more woolly than it, and somewhat dented about the edges; the Flowers grow at the tops of the Stalks in rundles, at the several Joints with the Leaves, which are of a pale purplish color, like the *Common sort*, and standing in the like rough Husks: *Gerard* calls this *Snow white Horehound*.

## Horehound White Common.



**VI. The third, or Sweet Candy Horehound.** It has a long slender Root, furnished with a great bush of Fibres, from which spring up several crooked, or not very straight Stalks, which are round, and not square, and slenderer than the last; on these Stalks grow sometimes broader, and at some times and in some places smaller, longer, and narrower Leaves than those of the second Kind, (of which in my opinion this is a Species) these Leaves are set by couples at the Joints, more dented about the edges, and more white or hoary than the former *Horebonds*, as the Stalks also are, which branch forth into many slender Branches, having Flowers at the Joints like the former, but smaller, and purplish, and set in smaller and sharper Husks, the Seed being also like it: The *Unsavory* or *smell less Kind* has only these differences, that the Leaves are shorter, narrower, and rounder pointed, and in a manner without any smell.

**VII. The fourth, or White Hairy Horehound, called by some French Horehound.** It has a woody fibrous Root, which sends forth Stalks, rising up not above a foot high, round, and of a hard woody substance, white and hoary, spreading into divers Branches, on which grow thick Leaves, in the same manner as the former, but smaller and rounder, and a little dented at the edges, and so white, smooth, and woolly underneath, as no *Cottonweed* is more, but somewhat blackish and rugged on the upper side; the Flowers stand at distances at the tops of the Branches, of a pale purplish color, and in the like rough Husks.

VIII. The



VIII. *The fifth, or White Curled Horehound.* It has hard, round, white, woolly, or downy Stalks; the Leaves are smaller than the last, and a little crumpled and curled at the edges, and a little dented also; they are of a greyish color on both sides, but not so woolly as the last; the Flowers stand in the same manner as the rest, in prickly Husks, but whiter than any of the former.

IX. *The Places.* The first, being the *Common Kind*, grows plentifully in all places of *England*, in dry Grounds, and waste Greens, also near unto old Walls, Banks, Ditch sides, High Ways, and beaten Paths, in untilled places; it grows in all other Countries also, where it alters something, according to the situation and nature of the Countries, for commonly that which grows in *Candia* and *Hungaria* is much whiter, and of a sweeter smell, and the Leaves oftentimes narrower and lesser than that which grows in *England*, and other Northern Countries; the second grows naturally in *Spain*, the third in *Candia*, the fourth about *Paris* in *France*, the fifth in *Germany*, all which four latter grow with us only in Gardens, being first raised of Seed brought from those places.

X. *The Times.* They all Flower in *July* and *August*, (and that in the second Year after the sowing of them) and their Seed is ripe not long after.

XI. *The Qualities.* *White Horehound* is hot in the second degree, and dry in the third, bitter in taste, Aperitive, Digestive, Absterfive, Pectoral, Hepatick, Splenetick, Hysterick, Sudorifick, Emmenagogick, Alexipharmick, and Analeptick.

XII. *The Specification.* It is good against Coughs and shortness of Breath, cures Ulcers of the Lungs, eases pains of Liver and Spleen, expels Poyson, and heals old filthy Ulcers.

XIII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A Liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *Prasimel.* 4. *A Decoction.* 5. *A Syrup.* 6. *A Wine.* 7. *A Vinegar.* 8. *A Powder.* 9. *An Ointment or Balsam.* 10. *A Cataplasim.* 11. *An Acid Tincture.* 12. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 13. *An Oily Tincture.* 14. *A Saline Tincture.* 15. *A Decoction Compound.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XIV. *The Liquid Juice.* Being given to two or three Spoonfuls, and repeated twice a day, in a Glass of White Port Wine, to Women whose Courses are obstructed, it brings them down; being dropt into the Ears it eases their pain, and taken in a Glass of Wine it helps Stitches and Pains in the Sides; snuff up the Nostrils it is a good Errhine to purge the Head and Brain of mucous Humors and filthiness obstructing that Ventricle; it opens obstructions of Liver and Spleen, as *Galen* says: *Matthiolus* says it is available for such as have bad Livers, and have an Itch, or running Tettars upon them.

XV. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, besides which it is good for such as are purdie and wheaze, or are short winded, for such as are weakned by long Sickness, and are wasted and fallen into a Consumption; it brings forth both Birth and Afterbirth, and is good to facilitate the Birth of such who have long and hard Labor; it expels Poyson of any Vegetable, and cures such as are bitten by mad Dogs, Serpents, or other venomous Beasts; it kills Worms in Children, and prevails against the Yellow Jaundice. Dose two or three Spoonfuls Morning and Night in a Glass of Wine.

XVI. *Prasimel, or Honey of Horehound.* It is made by mixing a Quart of the Juice with a Pint of Honey, and clarifying it with the White of Eggs. It is good for Coughs, Colds, Consumptions, or Ul-

cers of the Lungs, Hoarseness, Wheezing, shortness of Breath; it expectorates rough Flegm out of the Thorax, but all this it does more effectually if it is mixt with a proportionable quantity of the Pouder of *Florentine Orrice Root*; if old, foul, and running Ulcers be drest with it, it cleanses and heals them; dropt into the Eyes it mightily clears the Eyesight, and dropt into the Ears kills Worms, and heals Ulcers therein; snuff up the Nostrils it purges the Head admirably; taken ordinarily Morning, Noon, and Night, it is excellent good for Old Men, and others, whose Lungs are afflicted with thin, salt, cold Rheum, causing it to be expectorated, for which reason it is singularly good against Asthma's.

XVII. *The Decoction.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, Essence, and Prasimel, but nothing near so powerful, for which reason it may be given in double or trebble quantity, Morning, Noon, and Night; it is an excellent Lotion to wash old Sores withal, and to make an Injection of to cleanse the Womb.

XVIII. *The Syrup.* It is an extraordinary Pectoral, very good for old Coughs, and to ripen tough Flegm; it is also good for such as are Asthmatick, or short Winded, and breath difficultly, it has all the Virtues of the Prasimel, and nearly as good as it to all those Intentions. Dose one or two Spoonfuls Morning and Night, to be given alone by it self.

XIX. *The Wine.* It has the Virtues of all the former Preparations, but not so powerful as the Essence; it is good against the Plague or Pestilence, as also for old People, and cold Constitutions.

XX. *The Vinegar.* It is good against the Plague, given a Spoonful or two at a time in any proper Vehicle, and prevails against any Vegetable or Animal Poyson; outwardly used it clears the Skin of Morpew, Scurf, Pimples, Redness, Tettars, Ringworms, Herpes, and other like salt eruptions.

XXI. *The Powder.* Given to a Dram in the Morning fasting, and last at Night going to Bed, it kills Worms in Children, strengthens the Stomach, and provokes Sweat in elder People, resists Poyson, provokes the Terms, and educeth the Birth; used as an Errhine it purges the Head and Brain of cold, moist, viscous and pituitous Humors; if it is strewed thick upon old, rotten, putrid, and filthy Ulcers, it cleanses them, dries up the humidity, and induces their healing.

XXII. *The Ointment or Balsam.* It is a singular Vulnerary, curing green Wounds in a short time; it is good also for running Sores, old Ulcers, and the like, for if need be it digests, cleanses, incarnates, dries, and heals; it is good against Pushes, Pimples, Boils, Scabs, and other like breakings out, being applied.

XXIII. *The Cataplasim.* The Leaves being made into a Cataplasim with Honey do cleanse foul Ulcers, and put a stop to running and spreading Sores, which are eating and rebellious; if the Cataplasim is made of the green Leaves boiled with Hogs Lard, and applied to the birings of mad Dogs presently, it draws forth the Venom or Poyson, it discusses the swellings of Womens Breasts, eases pains, and draws forth Thorns, or any other thing out of the Flesh; it heals also any sort of Scab, whether dry or moist.

XXIV. *The Acid Tincture.* It is a singular Antidote against the Plague or Pestilence, and all sorts of pestilential and malign Diseases, it opens all sorts of obstructions of the Viscera, chiefly of the Lungs, strengthens and fortifys the Stomach, causes a good Appetite and a strong Digestion, and possibly it may be one of the best things against the Rickets in Children in the World; let it be given in all that the Patient drinks, so many drops at a time, to make the Vehicle pleasantly sharp.

XXV. *The*



XXV. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is Cordial and Hyfterick, it provokes the Terms, resists Poyson, warms and comforts the Stomach, stops Fluxes, and gives ease in the Colick, and gripings of the Guts; as it expels Wind, so it resists Vapors; and being sweetned well with Honey, is an extraordinary restorative in Consumptions. Dose half a Spoonful Morning, Noon, and Night, in any convenient Vehicle.

XXVI. *The Oily Tincture.* It provokes the Terms as powerfully as any of the former Preparations, gives ease to pains in the Back, and opens obstructions of the Reins and Bladder; it is good against pain and sickness of Stomach, and any external pain of the Nerves in any part of the Body; it is a singular thing against the Palfie, being inwardly taken, and outwardly applied to the parts affected, being also bathed along down the Back Bone Mornings and Evenings; anointed upon hurts or punctures of the Nerves, it eases the pain and cures them; it gives ease also in stitches and pains of the Side, and in the Colick, as also in pains of the Gout, proceeding from what cause soever. Dose from ten drops to twenty, or more, dropping them first into Sugar, and then mixing the Sugar with a Glass of White Port Wine, and so drinking it Morning and Night as long as need requires.

XXVII. *The Saline Tincture.* It is good against the Itch, and all sorts of itching of the Body, prevails against Ringworms, Tettars, Herpes, Scurf, Morpew, Pimples, Scabs, and all other breakings out of the Body; it is also said to clear the Skin of Yellowness, Redness, Tanning, Sunburning, Freckles, Lentils, and the like, in what place soever they happen in, by washing the parts affected therewith Morning and Evening, and letting it dry in.

XXVIII. *The Decoction Compound.* Take fresh Horehound two Ounces, Roots of Agrimony, of Bugloss, and of Elecampane, of each half an Ounce, Lignum Aloes, Rhubarb, of each three Drams, choice White Port Wine three Pints, or two Quarts, boil covered till half be consumed, then strain out, and dulcify it with White Sugar. It is an excellent Medicine to open obstructions of the Lungs, Liver, Spleen, Gall, and Womb. Dose two Ounces every Morning fasting, as much at Two after Noon, and the like at Bed time, for fourteen or twenty days together, for the Cure of the Yellow Jaundice.

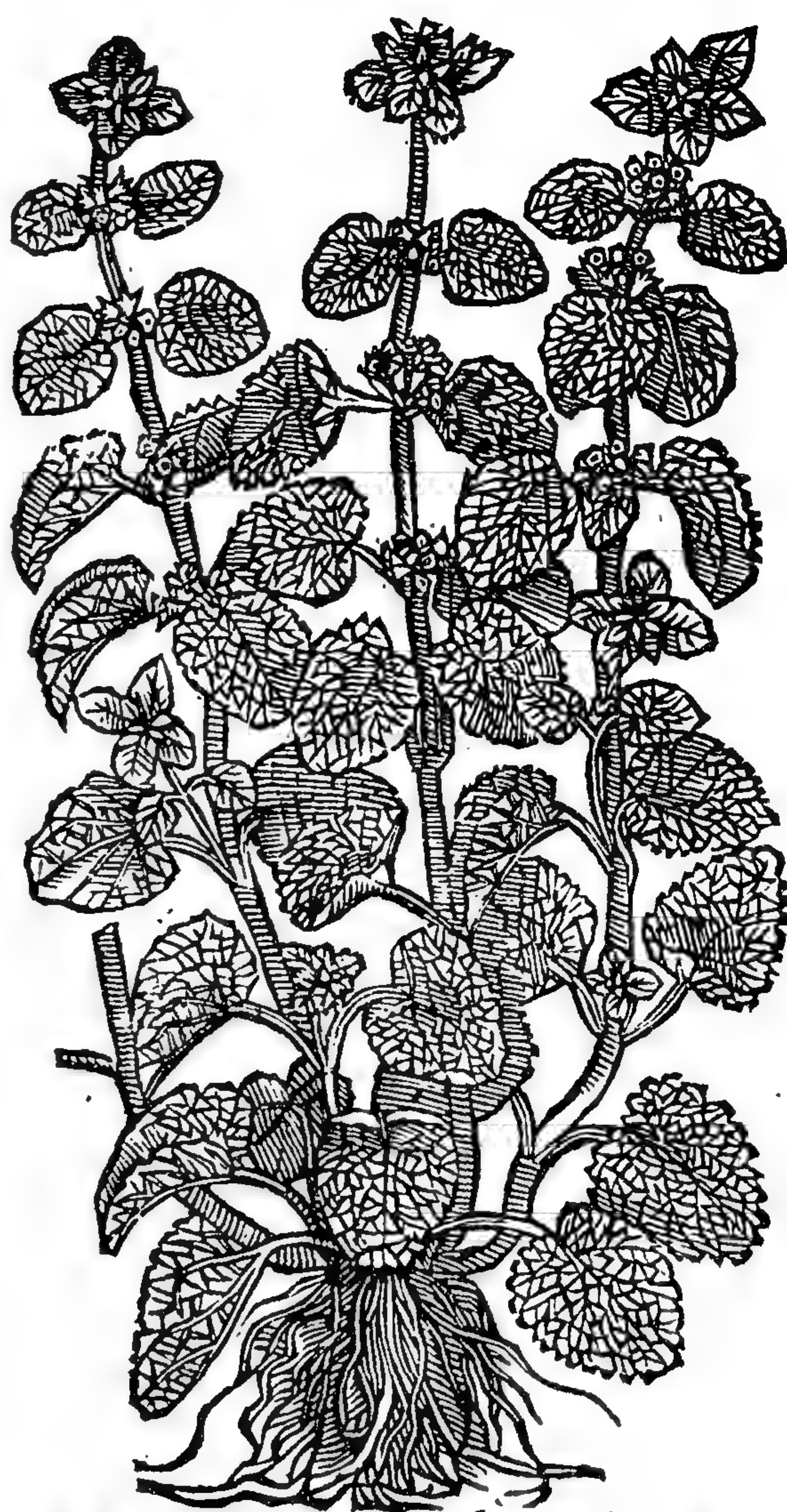
C H A P. CCCLXXV.

## Of HOREHOUND Black.

I. *The Names.* It is called in Greek *πράσιον μέλαν*, Plinij Lib. 27. Cap. 8. in Latine *Prasium*, vel *Marrubium Nigrum*, and in English *Black Horehound*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is the second of the Generick Kinds, and comprehends these following Species, viz. 1. *Marrubium Nigrum Latifolium Baubini*, *Marrubium Hispanicum Tabernamontani & Gerardi*, *Marrubium Nigrum Hispanicum Parkinsoni*, *Marrubium Hispanicum odore Stachadis Lobelij*, *Ocimum Valentinum Clusij*, (because so called at Valentia in Spain) *Black Horehound*, and *Spanish Horehound*. 2. *Marrubium Nigrum Longifolium Baubini*, *Sideritis Monspelienisum*, & *Parietaria Monspelienisum Cordi & Lugdunensis*, *Herba Venti & Rondeletij aliorum*, *Long Leav'd Black Horehound*, and *Black French Horehound*. This *Lobel* questions

whether it be not the *Othonna Dioscoridis*, rather than the *Flos Africanus*, which wears that Title.



*Horehound Black.*

III. *The Descriptions.* It has a Root which is small, and without any long Fibres or Strings, and sends up square hairy Stalks, about a Foot high; the Leaves grow on the Stalks by pairs or couples at the Joints, which are somewhat long, and round pointed, thinner, and fuller of Veins than the *Wild Black Horehound*, like unto the middle sort of *Basil*, as *Clusius* says, but longer, and of no scent at all, as *Clusius* says, but *Lobel* says it has the smell of *Stachas*, or *Cassidony*; the Flowers grow at the tops of the Stalks in prickly Husks, in Wharls or Rundles, of a white color, as *Clusius* says, but of a purplish color according to *Lobel*; after which comes black Seed, like the other Kinds, and growing in like prickly Husks.

IV. *The second, or Long Leav'd Black Horehound.* It has a thick Root, which spreads it self with many blackish Strings, by which it takes hold and fixes it self in the Earth, and keeps it self alive from Year to Year, shooting out fresh Stalks every Spring; these Stalks are square, and rough, rising up a Foot and half, or two Feet, and spreading themselves into divers Branches, set with two long and somewhat broad Leaves at every Joint, longer and broader than *Sage* Leaves, and longer pointed, dented about the edges, and of a sad overworn green color, which in the Winter time remaining withered on the Branches, without falling off, are to be seen full of holes, as if they had been eaten with Worms, all the Ribs and Veins abiding as they grew, till Frost comes and causes their Stalks to fall away; the Flowers are of a purplish color, greater than any of the *Horehounds*, and more gaping; after which, (being past away) comes the Seed in hard prickly Husks, like unto *Horehound*: This Plant has no smell, good or bad, to be found in it, but is as it were smell-less.

V. *Nota.* These two Plants some Authors will have to be no *Horehounds*, but yet for their likeness sake they are referred by others to this Stock, nor can



can I tell to what other Family they can be so well joined, for as much as they have the very same Virtues with the former *White Horebonds*.

VI. *The Places*. The first of them is a native of *Spain*, the second of *France*, and grows about *Mompelier* in fat Grounds, and sometimes in Wheat Fields, with us they grow in Gardens, being produced from Seed brought to us from thence.

VII. *The Times*. They both Flower in *July* and *August*, and their Seed is ripe within a Month after.

VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues*, are the same with those of the *White Horehound*, declared in the former Chapter, so that no more need be said of them in this place.

IX. *A Catapasm*. *Dioscorides* says, that the Leaves being stamped with Salt and applied, it cures the biting of a mad Dog, against which it is of great efficacy; a Catapasm being made also of the Leaves roasted in hot Embers, and applied, does waste or consume away hard lumps or knots (*Ficus*) in the Fundament; it also cleanses foul and filthy Ulcers, as the same Author affirms.

put it also for *Sideritis secunda Dioscoridis*, but *Anguilara*, *Gesner*, *Camerarius*, *Lacuna*, *Lugdunensis*, *Thalius*, and *Matthiolus*, puts it for *Sideritis prima Dioscoridis*; it is also *Lancea Christi Gesneri*, *Marrubium Palustre glabrum Bauhini*, *Marrubium Palustre aliorum*, Our Common or Ordinary Water Horehound. 2. Βαλλωτη, *Ballote*, *Marrubium Nigrum Fœtidum Bauhini*, Πρασον μέλαν ἐνυδρον, Black Water Horehound, or Stinking Water Horehound, also *Marrubium Nigrum*, as most Authors call it; but some call it *Marrubastrum*, and *Lobel* *Marrubium Spurius*. 3. *Marrubium Aquaticum Hirsutum Bauhini*, *Marrubium Aquaticum alterum*, Hoary or Hairy Marsh or Water Horehound. 4. *Marrubium Nigrum*, *Marrubium Nigrum Creticum Alpini*, Candy Black Horehound.

III. *The Descriptions*. The first, or Common Water Horehound, has a Root which consists of a bush of blackish Fibres or Strings, which sends forth Stalks which are something great and high, square and strong, having two somewhat large and long Leaves set at every Joint, deeply dented or cut in about the edges, not hairy or rough at all, but smooth and green; at the Joints with the Leaves, towards the tops, grow small whitish Flowers in rough green Husks, encompassing the Stalk about; which being past away the Seed follows, which is round, and of a blackish color, four usually set together in the Husk.

## C H A P. CCCLXXVI.

### of HOREHOUND Water.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek Πρασον ἐνυδρον, in Latine *Prasum Aquaticum*, *Marrubium Aquatile*, in English *Water Horehound*, and *Marsh Horehound*.

#### Horehound Water.



II. *The Kinds*. There are several sorts hereof, viz. 1. *Marrubium Aquaticum Vulgare Lobelij*, *Lugdunensis*, *Dodonæi*, & *Tragi*; *Lobel* and *Lonicerus*

### Black Water Horehound.



IV. *The second, or Black Water Horehound*, has a black thready Root, from whence rise up several square, blackish, hairy, green Stalks, on which grow upon long footstalks somewhat roundish dark green Leaves, full of veins, a little hairy, and indented about the edges, two always at a Joint, and of a strong smell; the Flowers are gaping, and of a purplish



plish color, somewhat like the *Red Archangel*, or *Dead Nettle*, growing in greenish Husks, and encompassing the Stalk, as the others do; the Seed also is black and round, four set together, as in the other: This Plant *Parkinson* says he has found sometimes with white Flowers.

V. *The third, or Hairy Marsh or Water Horehound.* It has square hoary Stalks, a little hairy and rough, on which grow Leaves by pairs or couples, as in the former, which are hairy, hard, and hoary, much more cut in on the edges than the first at Sect. 3. above, cut in so deep, as to reach sometimes even to the middle Rib, making them seem like the Leaves of the *Great Mountain Scabious*, the ends being pointed and sharp; the Flowers are small and whitish, standing in rough green Husks, encompassing the Stalk about, which being past away the Seed follows, which is blackish and round at the bottom of the Husk.

VI. *The fourth, or Candy Black Horehound,* has a fibrous or stringy Root, which sends forth its first Leaves somewhat like to those of a *Primrose*, being many, larger and longer than those of the *White Horehound*, dented about the edges, and sharp pointed, as large as those of *Broom*, and of so black a color, as it may seem to be so colored or dyed by Art; from among these Leaves springs up a square Stalk, or Stalks, upon which, as it were at Joints, grow many such like Leaves together, but lesser, up to the tops, where the Flowers stand encompassing them, being in form like to those of *Horehound*, but blackish also, the Plant being wholly without smell or taste.

VII. *The Places.* They all grow in moist and wet Grounds, the two first in several places of *England*, the second has been found in the way to *Rochester*, about half a Mile from *Gravesend*, the third grows in *Austria*, the fourth in *Candy*, but the two last not with us, unless planted in Gardens.

VIII. *The Times.* They all Flower in the Summer Months, as in the latter end of *June*, in *July*, and *August*, and give their Seed soon after.

IX. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of the three last are the same with those of *White Horehound* in Chap. 374. foregoing, and the second of these are said to have the Virtues of the *Black Horehounds* in Chap. 375. Sect. 9. being used and applied in the same manner.

X. As to the Qualities and Virtues of the first of these in this Chapter Authors have said nothing, but this I have found by experience, that it is an excellent Vulnerary, whether inwardly taken in Juice, Effence, Decoction, Wine, or Tincture, or outwardly applied in Oil, Balsam, Ointment, Cerate, or Cataplain, &c.

*England*, we shall only treat of the three following, viz. 1. *Stachys Gerardi, Dodonæi, Lugdunensis, Tabernamontani, Matthioli, Stachys minor Camerarij, Stachys Fleribus gratioris odoris Gesneri, Stachys Lychnitis, Stachys Spuria Flandrorum Lobelij, Stachys Italica minor Baubini, Salvia Sylvestris tertia Cesalpini, Wild Horehound, Base Horehound, Lesser Horehound, and Italian Horehound.* 2. *Stachys Fuchsi, Stachys Germanica Gesneri, Stachys Germanica major Camerarij, Pseudostachys Matthioli, & Lugdunensis, Stachys minor Germanica Baubini, Marrubium Montanum Album Thalij, Sideritis Heraclea Columnæ, Fabij, Salvia Sylvestris Cesalpini, Great Wild Horehound, or Great Base Horehound.* 3. *Stachys Palustris Gesneri & Camerarij, Marrubium Aquaticum acutum Gerardi, Betonica fatida Gesneri, in Collatione Stirpium, Sideritis prima gravis odoris Dalechampij & Thalij, Clymenum minus Lugdunensis, Terziola Cesalpini, (because it cures Tertian Agues) Lysimachia Galericulata Adulterina Besleri in his Hortus Eystetensis, Marsh Wild Horehound, or Base Horehound.*



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Wild Horehound, which is thought to be the *Stachys vera Dioscoridis*, has a Root which is woody and durable, made of divers blackish Strings, which perishes not after it has given Seed; from this Root rise up several soft, woolly, green Leaves, lying upon the Ground, and abiding all the Winter, somewhat broad and long, of about two Inches in breadth, and three in length, smooth, and not dented at all, or very little about the edges; from the middle of these Leaves arises sometimes but one Stalk, and sometimes divers Stalks, bearing divers such like Leaves thereon, but lesser, and set by pairs or couples one opposite to another at the Joints, somewhat hard, and a little longer and whiter than those of *Common Horehound*, (to which the whole Plant is very like) the Stalks also are high and jointed, and set with soft hairs; from the middle of the Stalks, and so upwards, come forth several Flowers, of a yellow color, as *Lobel, Camerarius, and Gerard* say, but of a purplish color as *Parkinson* says, (he having never seen

C H A P. CCCLXXVII.

Of HOREHOUND Wild,

O R,

STACHYS.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek* *σταχύς*, in *Latine* also *Stachys*, and in *English* *Wild Horehound, Base Horehound, and Stachys*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make about seven Kinds, but by reason the most of them are not to be had in



seen any of the *Yellow*) these Flowers stand in softer Husks than those of the former, or *Common Horebonds*, and with a narrower Wharle encompass the Stalk, after which come blackish round Seed; the tops are small and long, and end as it were in a Spike, being of a sweet smell, as *Gerard* says, but *Parkinson* says the smell is small with us, and not so pleasant as others say it is, for any thing that ever he could observe.

IV. *The second, or Great Wild Horehound, (which is the Great Dutch Base Horehound.) It has a Root which is hard, and somewhat yellow; the Stalks hereof are thick, foursquare, and hoary, sometimes two or three Feet high; the Leaves are broad, long, hoary, nicked in the edges, and hairy, as also are the Stalks; these Leaves are indeed somewhat like unto great Sage Leaves for the color on both sides, but larger, and much broader than those of the Common Horehound, and a little dented about the edges; the joints of the Stalks are set with such like Leaves, but somewhat lesser than those below, two at each Joint, encompassing the Stalk; the Flowers grow at the Joints also in Wharls, which encompass the Stalk likewise about with Flowers of a purplish color towards the tops of the Stalks, which are greater than those of the Common Horebonds, as indeed all the rest of the Plant is, and which has a much stronger smell than the others have; the Flowers being past away, the Seed follows at the bottoms of the Husks, which is round, and of a blackish color.*

V. *The third, or Marsh Wild Horehound. It has a Root which is somewhat long and thick, jointed at several spaces, with Fibres at them, which sends up square, round, and hairy Stalk or Stalks, about two feet high, with two somewhat long and narrow dark green Leaves, but grey underneath, and pointed at the ends, dented about the edges with round dents, like to Betony, set at every Joint, and having somewhat a strong unfavory smell; at the upper Joints with the Leaves come forth several pale reddish Flowers, set in ranks, like unto Betony; after which comes small, roundish, blackish, or brown Seed.*

VI. *The Places.* The first grows plentifully in Italy, in the Fields about Rome, as *Matthiolus* and *Castor Durantus* say, and also in Germany, as others affirm, with us it grows only in Gardens; the second is a native of Germany, as *Camerarius*, *Lonicus*, *Tbalius* and *Gesner* set down; it is also a native of England, and has been found growing wild in Oxfordshire, in the Field adjoining to Whitney Park, about a Mile from the Town: the third grows in plashy places in low Grounds in several Countries, and in divers places in England.

VII. *The Times.* They all of them flower in the Month of July, from the beginning to the end, and the Seed is ripe in August, or not many Weeks after the flowering.

VIII. *The Qualities.* The two first are hot and dry in the third degree, a little bitter, opening, digesting, and cleansing, Pectoral, Hepatick, Splenetick, Hysterick, Sudorifick, Emmenagogick, Alexipharmick, and Analeptick.

IX. *The Specification, Preparations, and Virtues,* are the same with those of the *White Horehound* in Chap. 374. Sect. 12. ad 28. foregoing, so that no more need be said thereof.

X. *Nota.* But these things in particular has been observed of these *Wild Kinds*, that their Juice, Essence, Decoction, Wine or Tincture, have been powerful in provoking Womens Courses, and to expel both Birth and Afterbirth, for which reason they are dangerous to be given to Women with Child, because they are apt to cause Abortion, or Miscarriage; they also provoke Urine being stopped, given inwardly,

and the parts also being fomented with the Decoction in Water, and the Patient sitting over the warm fumes of the same.

XI. *The third, or Marsh Wild Horehound*, is a singular good Wound Herb, serving both to heal green Wounds, running Sores, and old filthy Ulcers, the Juice, Essence, Decoction, or Wine thereof being given inwardly, and an Oil, Ointment, Balm, Cataplasim, or Pouder thereof being also outwardly applied.

## C H A P. CCCLXXVIII.

### Of HORSEFOOT,

O R,

### COLTSFOOT Strange.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *Greek* *Καρχλία*, *καρχλιον* *Dioscoridis*, *Καρχιον* *Galen*, in *Latine* *Cacalia*, and *Cacanum*, (not *Cancanum*, as some write it) in *English* *Horsefoot*, and *Strange Coltsfoot*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make three Species hereof, viz. 1. *Cacalia incana folio rotundo*, Hoary Horsefoot. 2. *Cacalia folio glabro acuminato*, *Tussilago Alpina vel Montana Dalechampi*, Smooth Leav'd sharp pointed Horsefoot. 3. *Cacalia Americana, vel Virginiana*, Horsefoot of Virginia.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Hoary Horsefoot, has a long white Root, divided into many heads, with many long Strings and Fibres thereat, of a glutinous or clammy taste, like unto Gum Tragacanth, encreasing thereby very much; from these Heads shoot up striped reddish Stalks, with large round Leaves on them, larger and thicker than *Coltsfoot*, and more woolly also on the upper side, yet with a greenness to be seen in them, but very woolly and white underneath, with some Ribs and Veins in them, of a little bitterish unpleasant taste; from among these Leaves rise up striped, woolly, and reddish Stalks, two or three Feet high, having several lesser Leaves on them, and all of them dented about the edges, branching forth at the top into several small Sprigs of pale purplish Flowers, made of four small Leaves apiece, with some Threads in the middle, which after they have been a while blown do turn into Down, which is carried away with the Wind: *Dalechampi* says, that in the middle of the Flowers are found hanging down small white Grains like Pearls, to make it answer *Pliny's* Description.

IV. *The second, or Smooth Horsefoot, has a Root like the former, and has Leaves as large, but thicker, harder, smoother, and greener, not hoary or woolly at all, but dented or waved about the edges; and pointed also with the roundness, but not open at the Stalks, as the other is; the Stalks are in like manner striped, but smooth, bearing the like Flowers at the tops, but somewhat paler.*

V. *The third, or Horsefoot of Virginia, has a Root consisting of a bush of blackish Fibres or Threads, which abides the extremity of Winter, the Stalks and Leaves both perishing yearly, but growing brownish towards the end; it rises up with many round Stalks, about a yard high, and two somewhat round, but pointed Leaves, a little dented about the edges, at each joint of them, the upper Leaves being smaller, and little or nothing dented; at the tops of the Stalks come forth several Branches, with pure white*

Z z z 2

Flowers,



Flowers, divers small ones growing almost together, and consisting of five Leaves apiece, each Flower rising out of a small Husk, which being past small Seed follows, each sticking to a little Down, which are carried away together with the Wind; this Plant has no smell neither in its Root, Leaf, nor Flower, tho' *Cornutus* seems to affirm it.



VI. *The Places.* The first and second Kinds grow in the Vallies of Mountains, by Baths, and places abounding with moisture, in many Countries of Europe, but very rarely in England, unless planted in Gardens; the third grows in America, as in Canada, Virginia, New-England, Maryland, and Carolina, in which last place I have found much of it.

VII. *The Times.* They all Flower and Seed in the Summer Months, much about the time (as Authors suppose) when Coltsfoot Flowers and Seeds.

VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues,* are the same with Coltsfoot aforegoing, to which you are referred; I have had experience of that which grows in America, and I found it to have the same Qualities and Virtues with our English Coltsfoot, and to be fully as effectual.

IX. *Nota.* 1. Authors say, that the Root steeped in Wine and eaten prevails against Coughs and Hoarseness, (for that it is a Plant without any sharpness) and the same things Galen affirms of his *Cacanium*; the Root moderately dries, is without any biting quality, and is of a gross and emplastick substance; being beaten raw, and applied as a Cataplasim to the Gout, it eases the pain thereof, stops the afflux of Humors, and strengthens the parts: Gerard says, that if you chew the Root and swallow down the juice, it is no less available than the Juice of Liquorice in all the Cases to which that Root and Juice is ordinarily applied.

X. *Nota.* 2. Dioscorides says, that the Pearl like Grains which are found in his *Cacalia* being made into a Pouder, and mixed with some proper Ointment or Cerate, will make the Skin smooth, and as Pliny says, will stay the falling of the Hair.

C H A P. CCCLXXIX.

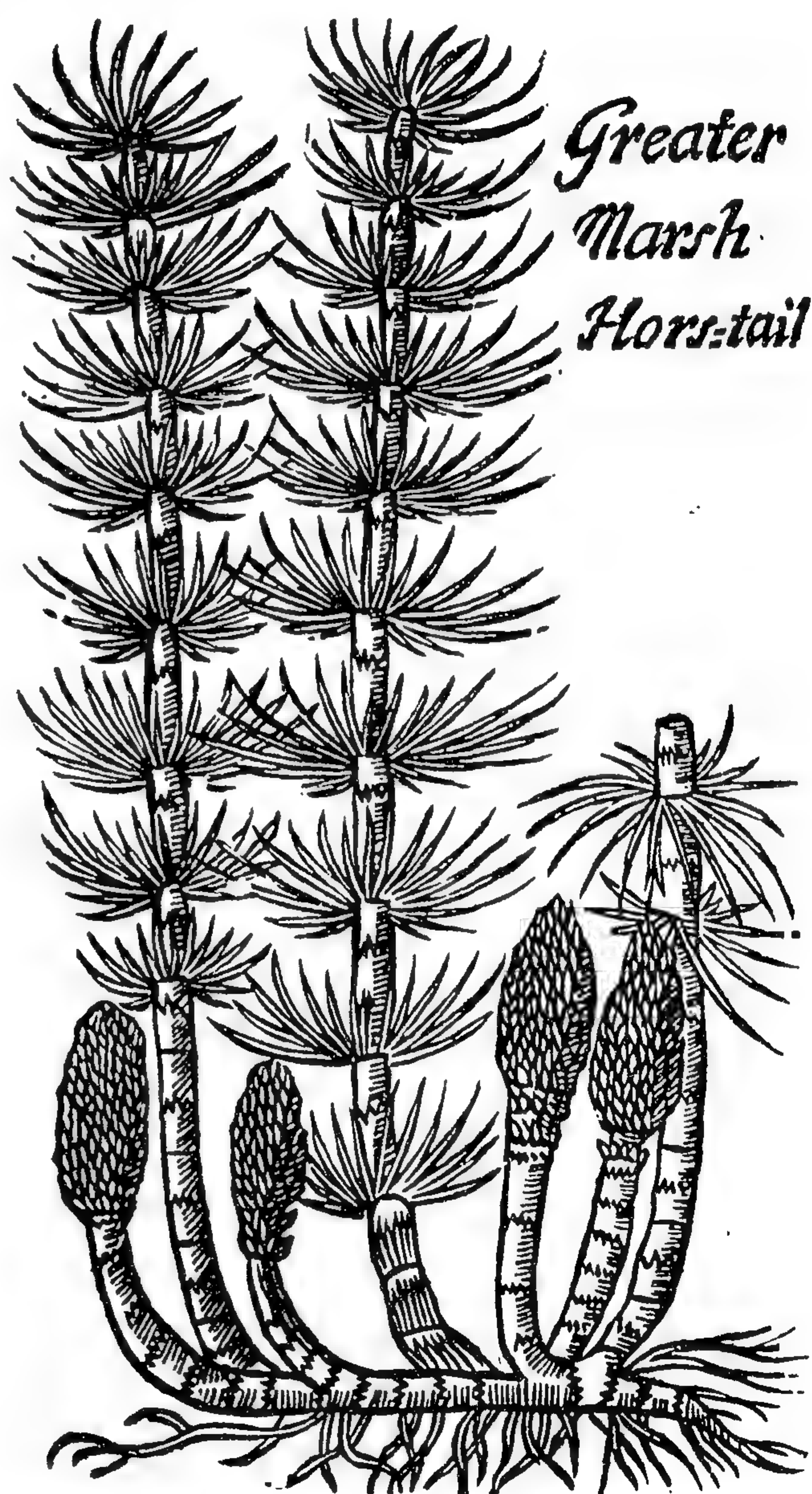
Of HORSE TAIL Meadow,

O R,

SHAVE GRASS.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Arabick *Dhenben Alcail*, *Dhemb Alchi*, and *Dhaneb Alcail*, in Greek *ἵππεις*, *ἡ ἵππεις*, in Latine *Hippuris*, *Equisetum*, *Canda Equina*, *Equinalis*, (from the form of a Horse Tail) and by Pliny *Equisetis*, by some *Salix Equina*, and *Sanguinalis*, from its effects of stopping of Blood; in English *Horsetail*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors have made several sorts hereof, and very much multiplied the Species, we shall in this Work divide them into three principal Kinds, and under each give you the chief of those sorts which are useful in Physick, and commonly grow with us in England; you shall have then, 1. *Equisetum Palustre*, Marsh or Water Horsetail, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Equisetum Pratense*, Meadow Horsetail, of which in Chap. 380. 3. *Equisetum Nudum*, Naked Horsetail, of which in Chap. 381. following.



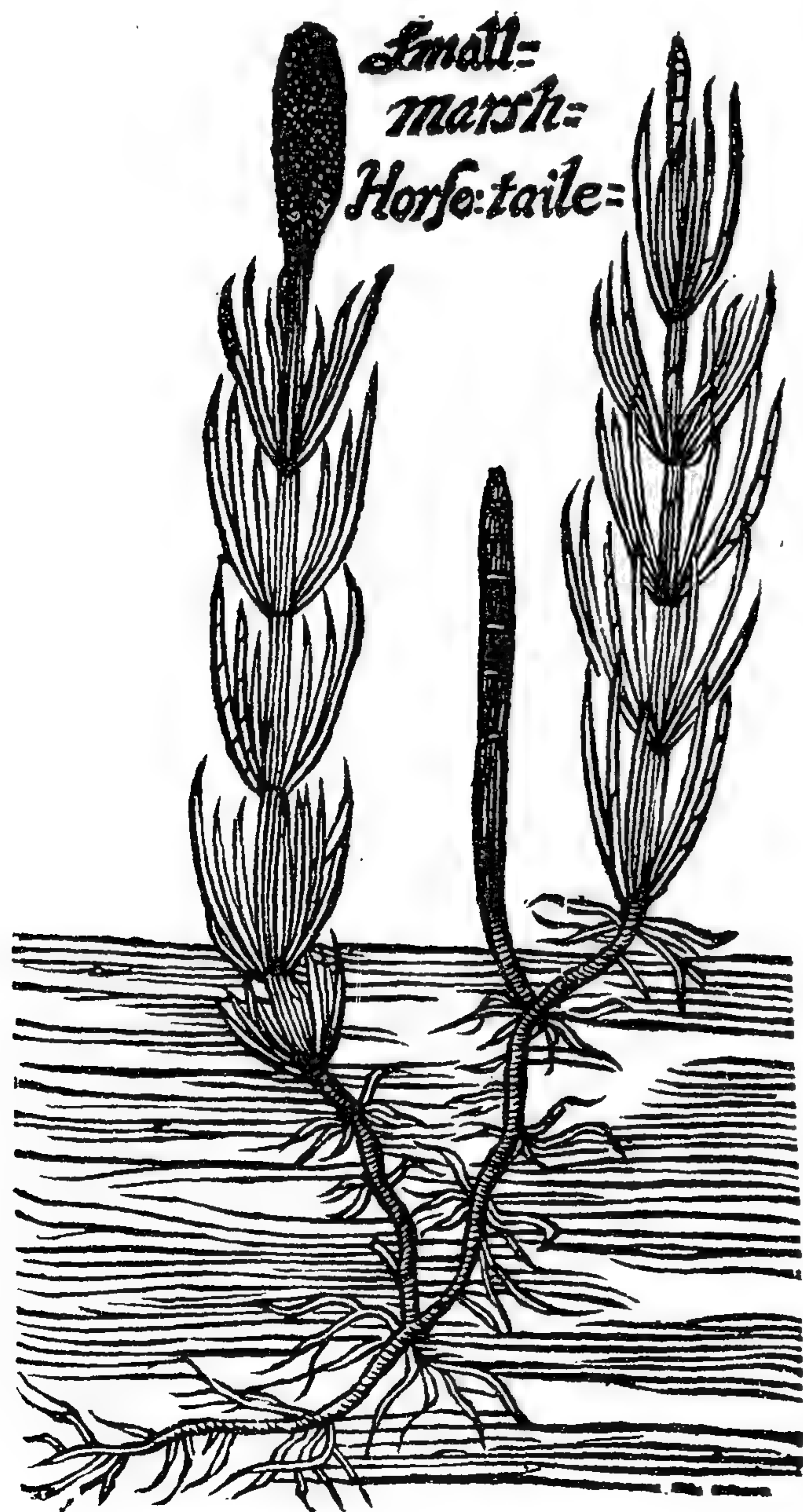
III. *The Kinds of the Marsh or Water Horsetail.* It is fivefold, viz. 1. *Equisetum majus Palustre Lobelij*, *Hippuris major Dodonaei*, which Anguilara thought to be *Caucan Plinij*, The Greater Marsh Horsetail. 2. *Equisetum Palustre Linariae Scopariae Folio*, Broad Leav'd Marsh Horsetail. 3. *Equisetum Palustre minus*, *Equisetum Palustre Lobelij*, The Lesser Marsh Horsetail. 4. *Equisetum Palustre alterum*, *Equisetum alterum brevioribus Folijs*, *Cauda Equina Femina Gerardi*, which is taken by many to be the *Polygonum Femina Dioscoridis*, and *Polygonum tertium*.



*tertium Plinij* (from the many joints it has) of *Matthiolus*, *Gesner*, and others, *Polygonum Fœmina Semine Vidua Lobelij*, *Sanguinalis Fœmina Cordi*, Barren Marsh Horsetail, Marsh Horsetail with shorter Leaves. 5. *Equisetum minus tenuifolium*, which is the smallest and finest Leav'd Horsetail, and is very like to *Equisetum tenuissimis* & *longissimis Folijs Bauhini*. 6. *Equisetum fatidum*, Stinking Horsetail.

IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Greater Marsh Horsetail. It has a pretty thick Root, which creeps under Ground, having Joints at several places, and Fibres springing therefrom; at its first springing up it has Heads, something like to those of *Asparagus*, which afterwards grow to be hard, rough, hollow Stalks, jointed at several places up to the top, growing to be a foot high, so made as if the lower part were put into the upper, at which grow on each side a bush of small, long, hard, Rush-like Leaves, each part resembling a Horse Tail, (from which it came to be so called, (as is above hinted) at the tops of the Stalks come forth small Catkins, like to those of Trees.

V. The second, or Broad Leav'd Marsh Horsetail, has a Root which is creeping, and jointed, like the former; the Stalks are about a Foot and half high, hollow, and jointed in the same manner, set with Leaves after the same fashion, but that they are broader than those of *Toad-Flux*, green, rough, long, and easie to break; what Julie or Catkin it bears has not been observed.



VI. The third, or Lesser Marsh Horsetail. It has a very long Root, according to the depth of the Water, gross, thick, and jointed, with some few Fibres or Threads adjoining thereto; from the heads of this Root rise up great, thick, jointed Stalks, on which grow long, rough, Rushy Leaves, Pyramid or Steeple fashion; the whole Plant is also rough, hard,

and fit to rub, shave or smooth wooden things, as some of the others; it differs not much in the manner of growing from the former, the chiefest difference is, in that it is smaller, and the Leaves or Bristles, (as some call them) which are set at the Joints, are fewer and shorter.

VII. The fourth, or Barren Marsh Horsetail. It has a long Root, like that of Couch, or Quitch-Grass, from which, as from a kind of Joints, come forth many Fibres or Threads; and from which Root at certain distances rise up several hollow Stalks, which at several spaces are set with small Leaves in rundles, like to those of *Woodroof*, altogether barren of Flowers and Seed, for which reason *Lobel* called it *Polygonum Fœmina Semine Vidua*; but *Johnson* says, that it is sometimes found with ten or more Seeds at each joint, for which reason *Bauhin* called it *Equisetum Palustre brevioribus Folijs Polyspermon*; this differs little from the last, saving that it is often found to bear no Seed, as the others do.

VIII. The fifth, or Smallest and finest Leav'd Horsetail. It has a kind of jointed and fibrous Root, from whence rises up one pretty thick Stalk, and very full of Joints, spreading it self out into many long Branches, and making of the whole a kind of Bush, every of which Branches are repleat with very small and fine Leaves, and growing much after the same manner as the others do.

IX. The sixth, or Stinking Horsetail. It has a long jointed Root, set with Fibres, and the Stalk grows to be many times about a yard long, growing sometimes wholly under Water, and sometimes both in and out of the Water; the Stalks are replenished with several Branches, but striped athwart, and set with short Leaves at every joint, as in the other Horsetails, but they are somewhat jagged or divided towards the tops, and at the joints under Water come forth several small Fibres or Threads; the Plant is green whilst it is in the Water, but taken forth and dried it becomes grey and brittle, easily to be rubbed into powder with ones Fingers, and falling also into powder of its self by lying; it smells somewhat like to *Brimstone*, whence came the Epithet *fatidum*.

X. The Places. They all grow in wet and moist places, and some of them in standing Waters, in many parts of this Kingdom; the first and second in moist or wet Grounds, the third and fourth in standing Waters, the fifth in low wet Grounds in Woods, as near *Highgate*, not far from *London*, &c. the sixth *Gerard* says may be found towards the latter end of the Year in several Ditches on the back side of *Southwark*, near *St. George's Fields*, covered over with Water, as also in the standing Waters of *St. James's Park*; and this is that which is taken to be *Bauhinus's Equisetum fatidum sub Aqua repens*.

XI. The Times. They spring up with their blackish Heads in *April*, their blooming Catkins appear in *July*, and their Seeding time is for the most part in *August*, after which they perish and fall to the Earth, springing up afresh again the next Spring.

XII. The Qualities. It is temperate in respect to heat or coldness, and dry in the third degree, it has some bitterness, and mightily dries without biting; it is Astringent, Diuretick, and Traumatick, Nephritick, Arthritick, and Pectoral.

XIII. The Specification. It stops all sorts of Fluxes, and fluxes of Blood, whether inward or outward, heals Ulcers and Excoriations, and cures Catarrhs, Coughs, and Colds, and prevails against the Strangury.

XIV. The Preparations. You may prepare therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction



*Decoction in Water.* 4. *A Decoction in Wine.* 5. *A Powder.* 6. *A Distilled Water.* 7. *A Sallet.*

*The Virtues.*

XV. *The Liquid Juice.* It is of a binding quality, and dries without sharpness, and is very powerful to stop bleeding in any part, inward or outward, being drank from one Ounce to two, or three, or outwardly applied, if the bleeding is external.

XVI. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues, besides which it stops all fluxes of the Bowels whatsoever, fluxes of Seed in Man or Woman, and also spitting, vomiting, or pissing of Blood; it heals also not only the inward Excoriations and Ulcers of the Guts, Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, &c. but all other kinds of inveterate, moist, running, and foul Ulcers, whether internal or external; it is also an extraordinary good Vulnerary, for it quickly and easily conglutinates the lips of simple green Wounds, not suffering them to come to digestion; it is an excellent thing to cure Ruptures in Children, for by insinuating it self into the Mass of Blood and other Juices, it disposes them for conglutination, and by circulation the edges of the *Peritoneum* become consolidated; it is said to cure Ruptures in elder Persons, being used with a long *continuando*, according as the Habit of the Patient may be, the Disease being recent; being drunk to one, two, or three Ounces, mixed in a Glass of White Port Wine, it gives ease in the Strangury, Stone, and Gravel, opens the obstructions of the Urinary parts, provoking the Urine, and expelling the tartarous Mucilage; it ought in this Case to be given Morning, Noon, and Night; it gives ease in the Colick, and mixed with Honey into a Lohoch, it is effectual against Coughs, Colds, and Catarrhs; being externally used warm to hot Pustules, red Wheals, inflammations of the Skin, and other like Eruptions, it eases the pain, dissolves the tumor, and allays the inflammation.

XVII. *The Decoction in Water.* Outwardly used in Baths it abates the heat of inflammations, and being fomented upon excoriations in the privy parts of Man or Woman, or used as an Injection in a Gonorrhoea, it cleanses, dries, and heals the same.

XVIII. *The Decoction in Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice and Essence, but ought to be used in a larger Dose, as from two Ounces to four, or six; it strengthens the Stomach wonderfully, and is good against Vomiting, foreness of the Ventricle, and other disaffections of the same.

XIX. *The Powder.* Given inwardly to one Dram in any proper Vehicle, it has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but operates not altogether so effectually, nor so speedily; outwardly applied to any Hemorrhage, it presently stops it, it cleanses, dries up the humidity, and heals old Ulcers, and causes the lips of green Wounds to consolidate, &c.

XX. *The Distilled Water.* It has the same Virtues with the Juice, Essence, and Decoctions, but is much inferior to them, yet it is very good to wash foul Ulcers with to cleanse them, and to be used as a Vehicle for the other Preparations, as also to make an Eye Water with, and Injections for the Yard, Womb, Fistula's, &c.

XXI. *The Sallet.* It is made of the young buds or heads a while after they are sprung out of the Ground, you are to boil them as *Asparagus*, and to dress them up in like manner, or being first boiled, they may then be strewed with Flower, then fried, and so eaten.

XXII. *Nota.* Many Country Women make use of the rough sorts of *Horsetail* for to rub and scower their Pewter and wooden Vessels, and sometimes to polish and smooth things which are rough and une-

ven; but the Leaved and smoother Kinds are rather to be chosen for Medicinal uses, and are most commonly used in Physick.

C H A P. CCCLXXX.

of HORSE TAIL Meadow,

O R,

Meadow SHAVEGRASS.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *ἵππειος λεῖων*, in Latine *Equisetum Pratense*, and in English *Meadow Horsetail*, or *Meadow Shavegrass*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold, viz. 1. *Equisetum Pratense majus*, *Equisetum alterum Matthioli*, *Lugdunensis*, *aliorumque*, *Hippuris altera Tragi*, *Hippuris Fontalis Lobelij*, *Equisetum Pratense setis longissimis Bauhini*, The Greater Meadow Horsetail. 2. *Equisetum Pratense minus*, The Lesser Meadow Horsetail.



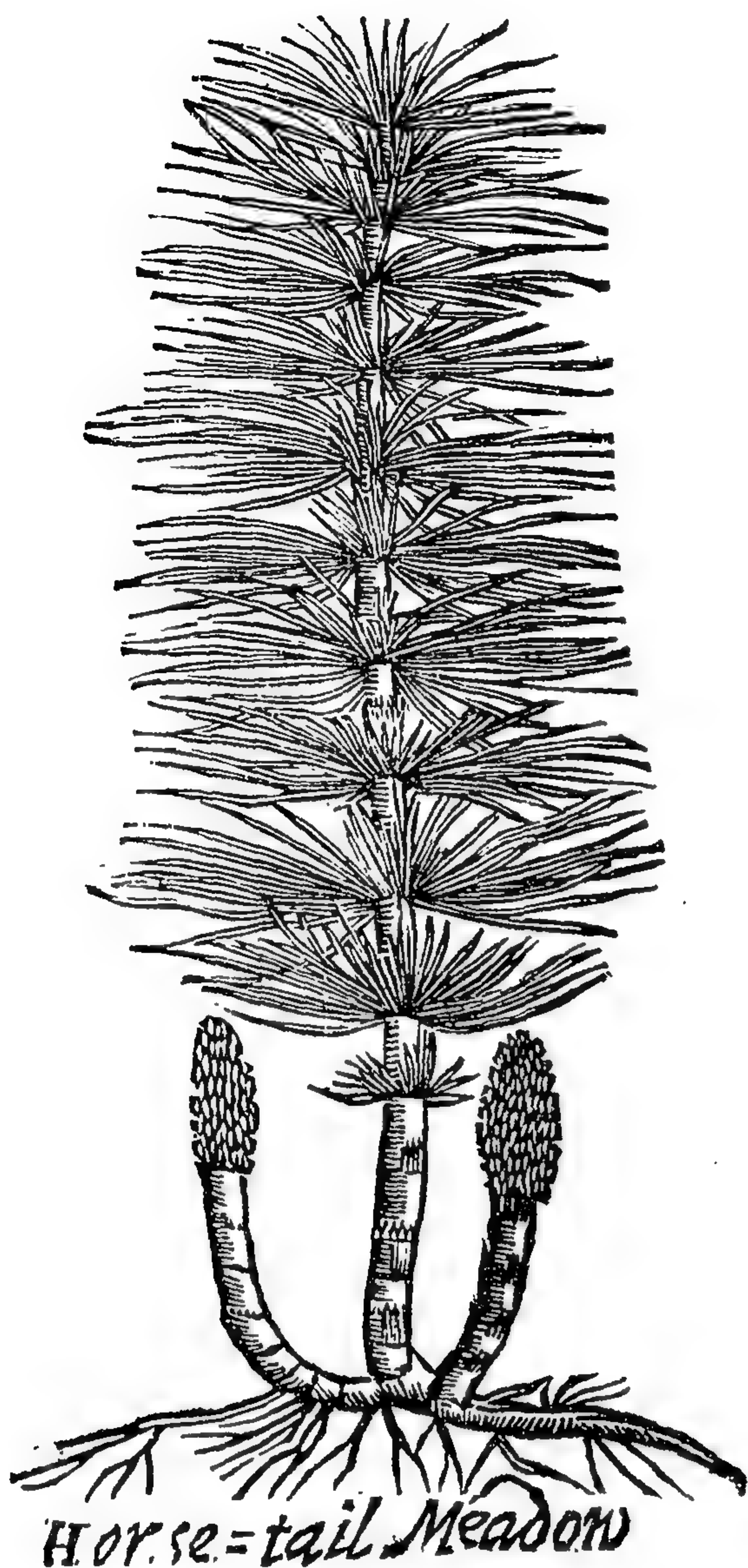
Greater  
Meadow  
Horse tail

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Great Meadow Horsetail, has a small Root, and single, with some few fibres or strings adjoining to it, from which rises up a rough chamfered Stalk, jointed at certain spaces, having at each joint two bushes of rough bristly Leaves, set one against another; in the form and manner of growing it differs but little from some of the former, save that it grows greater, and bushy, with more store and longer Leaves than any at the joints, each Leaf for the most part being jointed also with little, but scarcely discernable joints.

IV. *The second, or Lesser Meadow Horsetail,* has a Root not much unlike to the Greater Marsh Horsetail, with several Fibres or Strings adjoining to it, creeping under Ground, with joints as it were; from which Root first spring up scaly heads, like those of



of *Broom Rape*, or rather *Asparagus* heads, which afterwards grow up to be hollow, rough, jointed Stalks, eight or ten Inches high, these Stalks are jointed up to the top, and at those joints come forth as it were a bush of small, long, hard Leaves, much longer and more in number than those of the *Greater Marsh Horsetail* aforementioned, with Catkins not much differing therefrom.



V. *The Places.* They both grow in Meadows, near Hedges, and Groves, and by Wood sides in moist Grounds, in many places of this Land; they are also oftentimes to be found in dry Lands, and by the borders of Land Ground where it adjoins to Fenny Ground.

VI. *The Times.* Their Heads spring up early in the Spring, and grow up in the Summer Months, the Catkins blooming in July, and Seeding for the most part in August.

VII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues,* are the same with those in Chap. 379. last foregoing, so that we shall say no more of them in this place.

## C H A P. CCCLXXXI.

### Of HORSE TAIL Naked,

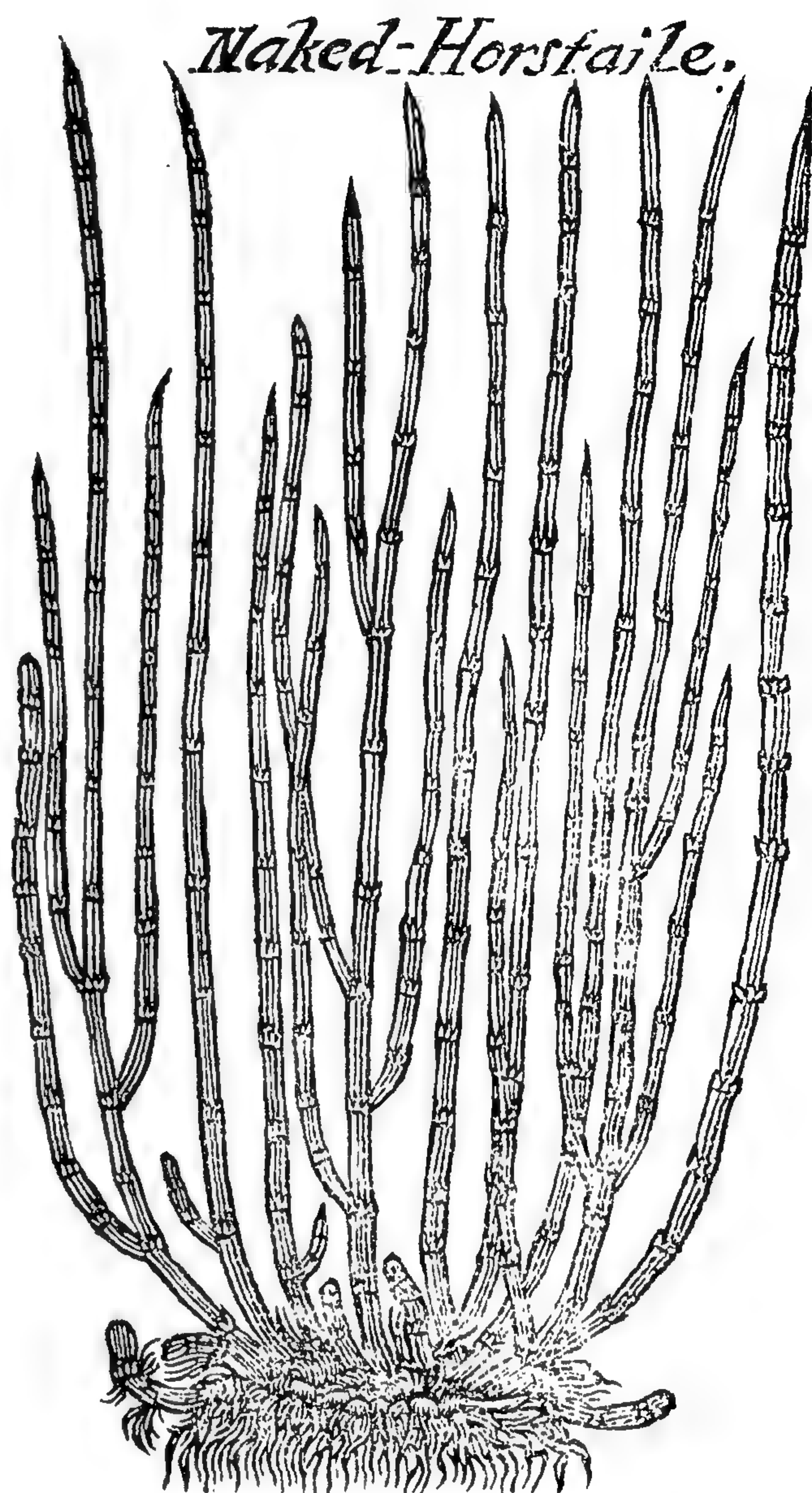
O R,

### Naked SHAVEGRASS.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek ἵππεϊς γυμνὴ, in Latine *Hippuris Nuda*, *Equisetum Nudum*, and in English *Naked Horsetail*, or *Naked Shavegrass*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three Kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Hippuris Tragi*, *Equisetum Funceum Tragi*,

*Lugdunensis*, *Sanguinalis* *Jamne* *jumilis* *Cordi*, ἵππεϊς ἀγυλλῶ, five *Equisetum Folijs Nudum non ramosum*, five *Funceum Baubini*, *Equisetum Nudum*, *Naked Horsetail*. 2. *Equisetum Funceum ramosum*, *Equisetum Matthioli* & *Lugdunensis*, *Hippuris minor Lobelij* & *Dodonai*, *Branched Horsetail*, and *Branched Naked Horsetail*. 3. *Equisetum Nudum minus variegatum Baubini*, *Small Naked Horsetail* variegated or party colored.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or *Naked Horsetail*, has a Root which is jointed, and creeps, like the others, from whence rise up many straight naked Stalks, jointed, but without any Leaves at the joints; sometimes the Stalks are single, and sometimes with one or two other like Stalks springing out of their sides, which are likewise jointed, naked, and growing straight upright; these Stalks are of a rough and Rush like substance, growing to be a Foot or more high, sometimes to two or three Feet high, according to the goodness of the Ground; by its nakedness of Leaves it is known from all the other Kinds of *Horsetail*, and is more used by several Workmen to smooth and polish their Works of Wood, Bone, Varnish, and Japan, than any of the others.

IV. *The second, or Branched Rush Horsetail*, has Roots like the former, and differs only from it in its growing with many Stalks from the top of one that first rises out of the Ground, and that many of those Stalks do branch themselves forth into others, all of them full of joints, and without Leaves, so that the whole seems to be a kind of Bush.

V. *The third, or Small Naked Horsetail* variegated. It has a small, blackish, creeping Root, from which spring up several small, hollow, pale green Stalks, of a Foot high, and sometimes not so much, and full of joints, the lower joints of which are blackish, and the upper whitish, without Leaves, (which is probable to be the same which *Johnson* on *Gerard* says he found with small Leaves, and called *Horsetail Coralline*, tho' this may sometimes seem to differ both from his and that of *Gesner*) at the tops whereof



whereof stand small red Heads, resembling a small Catkin, the Crown of which, being white, has eight or ten very small sharp pointed Leaves under it, which being trodden on will crack and make a noise.

VI. *The Places.* They grow in moist Grounds, in the furrows and borders of Corn Lands, near Ditch sides in Woods, and in the Fens, in several places of *England, Holland, and Flanders.*

VII. *The Times.* They come out of the Ground early in the Spring Time, and flourish all the Summer Months to Autumn.

VIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* of these are the same with those of the *Marsh Kinds* Treated of in Chap. 379. foregoing, to which you are referred.

IX. *Nota. The Pouder.* It is one of the most powerful driers that is, and being strewed upon old, moist, and running Sores and Ulcers, it presently dries them up and heals them.

C H A P. CCCLXXXII.  
OF HORSE TONGUE,  
OR,  
DOUBLE TONGUE.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek* ἵππογλωσσον, and ὑπόγλωσσον, in *Latine* Hippoglossum, i. e. *Lingua Equina*, *Lingua magna*, also *Hypoglossum*, i. e. *Bislingua*, Tongue upon Tongue; *Victoriola Apuleij*, *Lingua Pagana aliorum*, *Bonifacia Angulata*, *Uularia Brunfelsij*, *Loniceri*, *Tabernamontani*, *aliorumque*; in *English* Horsetongue, and Doubletongue, also Tongue upon Tongue.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make but two Kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Hippoglossum*, *Hypoglossum*, *Bislingua*, *Caula Equina minor*, The Lesser Horsetongue, or Doubletongue. 2. *Hippoglossum*, *Bislingua major*, The Greater Horsetongue, &c.

*Horse = Tongue small.*



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Lesser Horsetongue, has a Root which is white and tough, and of

a sweet and pleasant smell, which consists of many long, hard, whitish strings, growing from a Head. The Plant is very like unto the *Chamadaphne vera Dioscoridis* for the manner of its growing, for this from the head of the Root aforementioned shoots forth several hard Stalks, with Leaves on them, one above another, as that Plant does, and much about the same length; the Leaves are long, narrow at the lower part next the Stalk, broad in the middle, like a Belly, and very sharp pointed, having Ribs running thro' their whole length, sometimes three or four, and sometimes five Ribs; upon each Leaf grows another smaller Leaf or Tongue, which grows out of the greater Leaf from the middle Rib, on the upper side, and about the middle of the Leaf, which makes it to differ from all other Plants which grow upon the Earth, from which double Leaf came the Name of *Doubletongue*; under the smaller Leaf, at the bottom where it joins unto the greater, comes forth one small, whitish, green Flower, and sometimes two, standing upon short footstalks, where afterwards stand the Berries, which when they are ripe are very red, very like unto the Yew Tree Berries, and in which is contained a white hard Seed.



IV. *The second, or Greater Horsetongue.* It is in all respects very like to the former; saving that the Stalks are somewhat higher, the Leaves longer, and having longer Tongues upon them than the former; but this says *Fabius Columna* is much more rare to find.

V. *The Places.* They both grow upon Hills and in Woods in several places of *Italy* and *Germany*, the first more common to be met withal, and with us is only nurs'd up in Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* They flower in *June* in the natural places where they grow, viz. in warm Countries, and the Berries are ripe in *September*, or fall of the Leaf.

VII. *The Qualities.* Horsetongue is hot and dry in the second degree, it is Aperitive, Hysterick, Emmenagogick, and Traumatick.

VIII. *The Specification.* It is an absolute thing against the suffocation of the Womb, provokes the Terms,



Terms, causes a speedy delivery to Women in Labor, drives forth the Afterbirth, helps the Strangury, and expels Stones, Sand, Gravel, and Tartarous Matter out of the Reins and Bladder, and opens all obstructions of the Viscera.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. *A Liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Decoction in Wine.* 4. *A Pouder of Leaves or Roots.* 5. *An Acid Tincture.* 6. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 7. *An Oily Tincture.*

## The Virtues.

X. *The Liquid Juice.* It is one of the most powerful things against Hysterick Fits, or the suffocation of the Womb, and other Diseases of that Bowel, it suppresses Vapors, represses the Fits, and gives sudden ease; it provokes Urine, opens the obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladders, gives ease in the Strangury, provokes the Terms, facilitates the delivery of Women in Labor, and forces away the Afterbirth. Dose two or three Spoonfuls at a time in a Glass of Wine, or other fit Vehicle, in the Morning fasting, and last at Night going to Bed; as also at the time of a Paroxysm, or when the Patient is in extremity.

XI. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues of the Liquid Juice, and is very good to expel the Stone, Gravel, Sand, or Tartarous Mucilage, out of the Urinary parts, being given two or three Spoonfuls at a time in any proper Vehicle for several days together; it is said also to be good for such as have a Rupture, for which Disease it is thought that there is no better Remedy, for that by the continuance of its use it will knit and heal the part, provided also that the Patient be accommodated with a convenient Truss for a good while after as well as during the whole time of the Cure.

XII. *The Decoction in Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but much less powerful in its operation or effects, for which reason it is the oftner to be given, and that from four to six Ounces at a time; it is good for such as have an imperfection in their Speech, it not being natural, or from the conformation of the parts; it is profitable also against Sores and Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, and so strengthens the Ulvula, as to confirm and fix it in its natural state, drying up the humidities, which many times relax it, and hurt its Tone.

XIII. *The Pouder of the Leaves or Roots.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, Essence, and Decoction, and may be given from a Dram to two Drams, repeating a Dram at a time till three or four Drams are given, if need so require, being given to a Woman in Labor; it may be given in Canary, Malaga, or Tent, or any other proper Wine or Vehicle, as the Physician shall think most fit, &c. it cures old and filthy Ulcers in any part of the Body.

XIV. *The Acid Tincture.* It opens obstructions powerfully, suppresses Vapors, cures Fits of the Mother, and is one of the best things in the World to cure the Rickets in Children, kill Worms in their Stomach and Bowels, cause in them a good Appetite, and restore them in Consumptions. Dose so many drops (in any Ale, Beer, or Wine) as to make it pleasantly and gratefully sharp.

XV. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, and Pouder, but is much more Cordial and refreshing; it is good against Convulsions, Palsies, Fainting and Swooning Fits, strengthens the Stomach, eases pains and gripings in the Bowels, as also after pains of Women in Childbed, and is a good thing to be given with a *continuando* to Childbed Women, to cause a compleat cleansing,

and to restore the Tone of the Womb. Dose from one Dram to two, or three, Morning and Night in any proper Vehicle; it may also be given at any other time upon an exigency, or in any extremity of pain, or fainting.

XVI. *The Oily Tincture.* This is a powerful thing against the Colick, or any oppression of Wind in any of the Bowels, it opens powerfully the Urinary passages, and gives ease in the Strangury, Stone, or suppression of Urine by reason of Gravel, or any Tartarous Matter lodged in any of the Urinary parts; it is an excellent thing also against the Palsie, being inwardly given, and also outwardly anointed along upon the *Spina Dorsi*, and the parts affected with the same; outwardly anointed with in any Ach or Pain, in what part of the Body soever, as also upon parts affected with the Gout from a cold cause, it gives ease and relief. Dose from ten drops to thirty drops, first dropt into Sugar, and then mixt with any fit Vehicle for the purpose you intend it; it may be given Morning and Night so long as need requires.

## C H A P. CCCLXXXIII. OF HOUNDSTONGUE, OR, DOGSTONGUE.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Κυνόγλωσσον*, or *Κυνόγλωσσος*, in Latine *Cynoglossum*, and *Cynoglossos*, i. e. *Canina Lingua*, à *Folij Caninam Linguam imitantibus*, in English *Houndstongue*, and *Dogstongue*; but Gérard says it is rather to be called *Hounds-Piss*, because there is nothing in the World which smells so like to *Dogs Piss* as the Leaves of this Plant.

### Common Houndstongue





II. The Kinds. Authors make many Kinds of this Herb, but we shall in this Discourse take notice of no more than the six following Kinds, viz. 1. *Cynoglossum*, *Cynoglossum vulgare*, *Cynoglossum majus vulgare*, *Cynoglossa vulgaris*, Our Common Houndstongue, and Common Great Houndstongue. 2. *Cynoglossum maximum Lobelij*, The Greatest Houndstongue. 3. *Cynoglossum maximum Montanum*, *Cynoglossa maxima Montana Regionum frigidarum Fabij Columne*, *Cynoglossum Sylvaticum Caule rubente Bauhini*, which he thinks to be the same with the *Cynoglossum Sylvaticum Harcynicum Thalij*, and the *Cynoglossum Montanum Casalpini*, The Great Mountain Houndstongue. 4. *Cynoglossum semper virens Bauhini*, *Cynoglossa media folio virente Columne*, Ever green Houndstongue. 5. *Cynoglossum minus*, five *pusillum*, *Cynoglossum pusillum Narbonense Lobelij*, Small Houndstongue. 6. *Cynoglossum minus Flore ceruleo*, *Cynoglossa minor Cordi*, *Cynoglossum Italicum Cimerarij*, *Cynoglossum pusillum Narbonense Lugdunensis & Eystetenfis*, Small Houndstongue with blew Flowers.

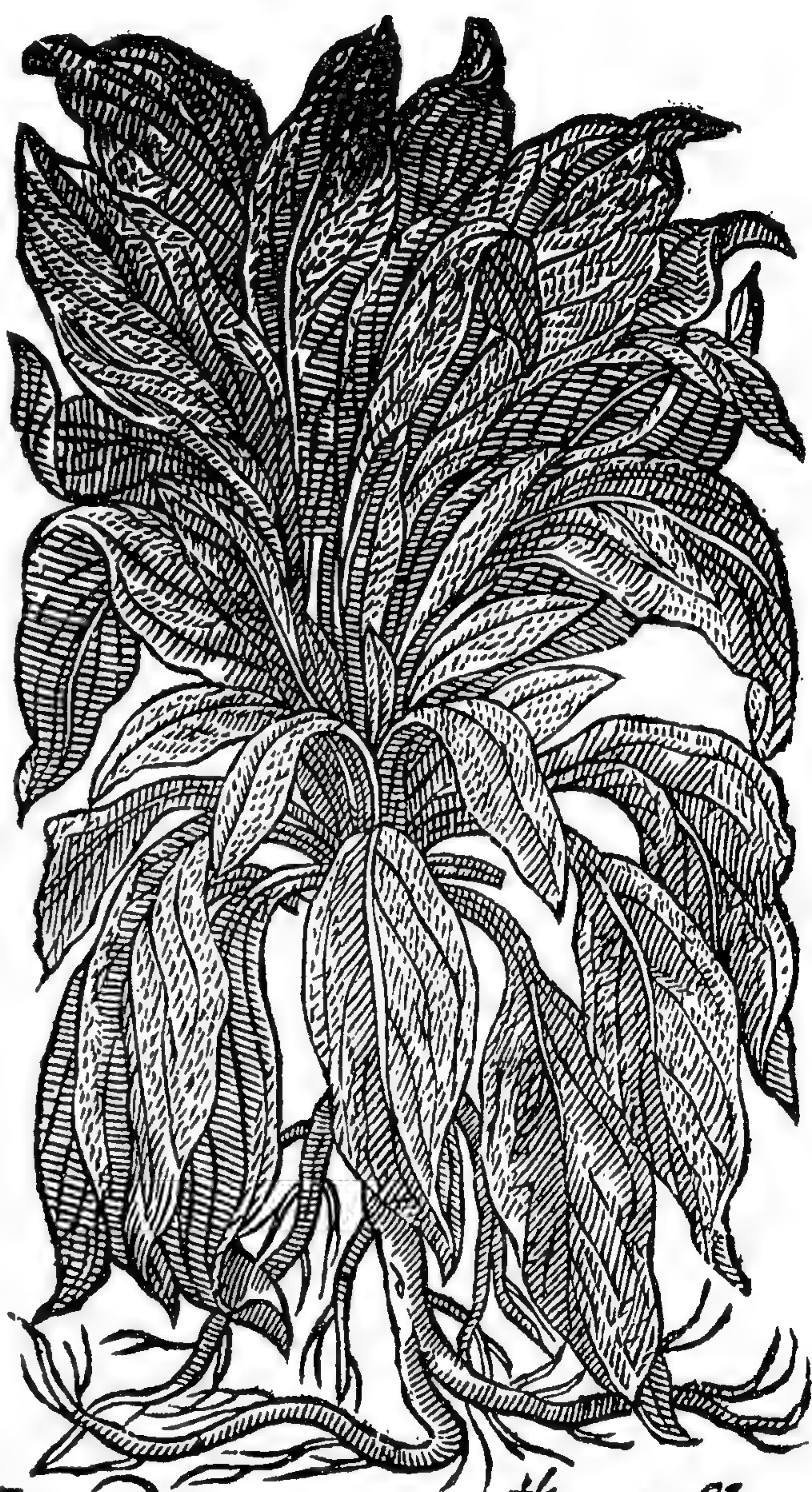


*Houndstongue in flowers.*

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Common Houndstongue. It has a black, thick, and long Root, which is tough, or difficult to break, and full of a viscid or clammy juice, smelling of a strong ill scent, much like to Dogs Piss, as the Leaves also do, which some call a soporiferous smell; from this Root spring up many long and something narrow, soft, and as it were hairy, darkish green Leaves, lying on the Ground, somewhat like unto the Leaves of Bugloss, but not altogether so harsh in feeling to, from among which rises up a rough hairy Stalk, about two Feet high, with some smaller Leaves thereon than those which grow below, and branched at the top into several parts, with a small Leaf at the foot of every Branch, which is something long, with many Flowers set along those Branches, which are crooked, or

turn inwards, before it flowers, and gradually opens as the Flowers blow, which Flowers consist of four small, purplish, red Leaves, something of a sad or dead color, scarcely rising or shewing themselves out of the rough green Husks in which they stand, with some Threads in their middle; this Plant has sometimes been found with a white Flower; after the Flowers are past, flat rough Seed come in their places, which has a small Thread or Pointel in the middle, and by reason of its roughness easily cleaves to any Garment which it touches, not being readily pulled off again.

IV. The second, or Greatest Houndstongue. This differs not either in its Root, Stalk, Branches, Leaves, Flowers, Seed, smell, or manner of growing, from the first Common Kind but now described, but only in its magnitude, this being twice as large, which is indeed the only difference.



*Houndstong com: in out flow.*

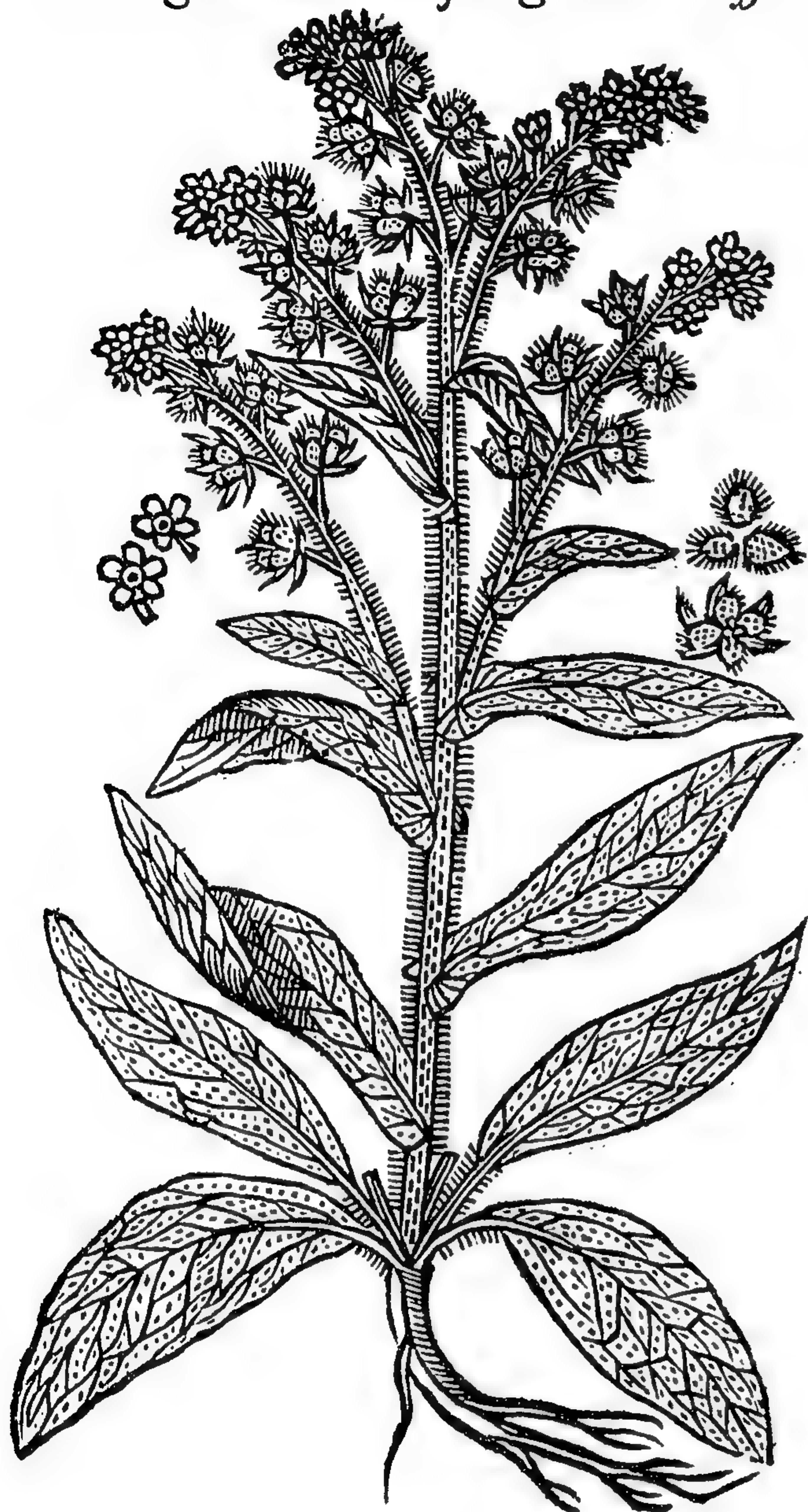
V. The third, or Great Mountain Houndstongue. The Root is blackish on the outside, and whitish within, being something like the former; it has also springing from the Root many large, but hairy and soft Leaves, lying on the Ground, above a Foot long, and an Hand breadth broad, of a whitish green color, having in every one of them the middle Rib reddish, with many green Veins running thro' them. and reddish Footstalks to sustain them, those which are in the middle of them standing more upright. from among which rises up a thick, hollow, crested, reddish, woolly, or hairy Stalk, two Feet or more high, replenished on all sides with such like Leaves, but lesser and lesser up to the top, where it spreads it self out into four or five branches of Flowers, standing all on one side, yet forming at first a round Head, very pleasant to behold for the variety of colors therein, the hairy stalks of the Flowers being green, and ending in five points, the Flowers being also hollow and long, and consisting of five purplish

red



red Leaves, somewhat sweet, standing above the Husks and green Leaves which grow among them, with red Ribs in them, which in the shadow, where it delights to grow, is the more conspicuous and beautiful; after which in the said Husks come longer Seed than in the *Common Kind*, four usually together; which on the upper side are flat, and circled about with a few short prickles, whereby it commonly cleaves fast to Peoples Garments if it touches them.

*Ever green Houndstongue the lesser.*



VI. *The fourth, or Ever green Houndstongue.* It has a Root which is thick, and blackish on the outside, like the others going before; nor does it much differ from the *Common* or *Ordinary* sort of *Houndstongue* first described, but that the Leaves are always fresh and green, somewhat long and narrow, with a great whitish green Rib in the middle, smooth on the upper side, and more hoary underneath; the Stalk at first is but low, with many narrow long Leaves compassing it about, but more thinly than in some other Kinds; the Flowers are red, but somewhat larger than the *Ordinary*, standing in like manner upon small Branches, which are writhed or turned like the *Heliotropium*, or the first Kind; the Seed which follows stands all on the one side, and is smaller, and less rough, but the Stalk will then be grown much higher; this has no manner of hoariness, nor has it so strong or rank a smell as the former have; it does also spring forth with fresh Leaves, before the old Stalk with its Seed is quite dry and wither'd away.

VII. *The fifth, or Small Houndstongue.* It has a small black Root, not much differing from Our *Common Kind*, but it is every ways smaller in all its particulars, having such like Leaves, but smaller and shorter, yet greener, and more shining, the Flowers being small, are also of a pale red color; the whole Plant has not so strong or rank a smell as have some of the former, but this smallness may be thought by

some to be from the barrenness of the Soil in which it grows, which is not so, because it is oftentimes found in the same Ground where the greater grows, and besides, being either transplanted, or the Seed sown in Gardens, it will continue much smaller than the other.

VIII. *The sixth, or Small Houndstongue with blew Flowers.* It has a small long Root, but annual, which sends forth one round, small, hairy Stalk, sometimes but a Foot, and sometimes two Feet high, brownish below, and green above, on which are set on both sides without order several small, and something long, but narrow Leaves, of a blewish green color, covered with a long hairy down, which is tough and sticking, the middle Rib is somewhat great and eminent, and the whole Plant of a hot bitter taste; from the bottom of these Leaves, especially upwards, come forth sometimes other smaller Leaves in a Tuft together, and is parted into divers Branches, the tops of which are bended, as in several other sorts, bringing forth very small Flowers, of a fair blew color, with a yellow Star in the bottom, standing in such like Husks, in which after they are past is contained very small roundish Seed, without any prick in the middle, as some others have, but very rough or prickly, and ready to stick upon Garments or Cloaths, as the others will.

IX. *An Observation.* There has been a great Controversie amongst Botanists whether the *Cynoglossum* here first described, which is our *Ordinary* and *Common*, and is the most common in all Countries, be the *Cynoglossum verum Dioscoridis*, because he says it bears neither Stalk nor Flowers, which this does, which Plant, wanting Stalks and Flowers, *Matthioli* says he found in some sandy Grounds in Rome, behind or beyond *Mount Adrianus*, but both *Pena* and *Lobel* tax him with want of knowledge, for say they it will in the same and other places bear both Stalk and Flowers, altho' in divers Years and places it does not bear, yet will after some respite of time in any place, as not only they, but several other good Authors have acknowledged, as well in this as in other Plants; I confess I my self have oftentimes found the first described Plant, viz. Our *Common Houndstongue*, in several parts of *England* without either Flowers or Stalk, and that at the same time, and near the same places, where other Plants of the same Species have had both, and therefore without all doubt Our *Common Kind* is the true Plant which *Dioscoridis* has described under that Name so defectively.

X. *The Places.* The first grows in most places of *England*, in waste and untilled Grounds, also by high Ways, Lanes, and Hedge sides; the second grows in the Low Countries, but chiefly in their and our Gardens; the third grows on Mountains near *Naples*, with us only as it is manured in Gardens; the fourth in shadowy Woods in *Germany*, &c. the fifth grows in many places of *England*, as also in *Germany*, discoursed of by *Cordus* upon *Dioscorides*, and possibly is that same Kind, which in the *Adversaria* is said to grow about *Mompelien*, and called *Pusillum Narbonense*; the sixth grows in *Austria*, as *Clusius* says, and in other parts of *Germany*, as *Tragus* says, and at *Naples*, as *Columna* says, also very plentifully in *England*, by high Way sides, as you go from *London* towards *Colchester*, between *Esterford* and *Wittam* in *Essex*, as *Gerard* says.

XI. *The Times.* They all Flower about *May* and *June*, and some in *July*, if the Season and place be cold, and the Seed is ripe not long after.

XII. *The Qualities.* *Houndstongue* is temperate in respect to heat and cold, and dry in the first degree,



gree, Astringent, Anodyne, Emphractive or Obstru-  
ctive, (and yet some Authors will have it to have  
an Emollient property) Traumatick or Vulnerary,  
Arthritick, Hysterick, and Alexipharmick.

XIII. *The Specification.* It is prevalent against  
Catarrhs, Coughs, Asthma's, green Wounds, old  
Ulcers, and Sores arising from the French Pox.

XIV. *The Preparations.* You may have there-  
from, 1. *The green Leaves.* 2. *The Root.* 3. *A*  
*Juice.* 4. *An Essence.* 5. *A Decoction in Water*  
*or Wine.* 6. *A Powder.* 7. *Pills.* 8. *A Balsam.*  
9. *An Ointment.* 10. *A Cataplasma.* 11. *A Lotion.*  
12. *A Distilled Water.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XV. *The green Leaves.* Bruised and applied  
they cure the falling away of the Hair, which comes  
of hot and sharp Humors, they are good also to be  
applied to any place scalded, or burn'd with Fire,  
and laid to any green Wound they heal it quickly;  
the same is profitable also against *Anthones* Fire,  
and other Inflammations.

XVI. *The Root.* Being roasted under Embers,  
wrapped up either in Paste, or double wet Papers,  
and then a Suppository made thereof, and applied  
to, or put up the Fundament, it is effectually good  
against the Hemorrhoids, or Piles; and applied as  
a Cataplasma to the Gout it eases the same.

XVII. *The Juice of Roots or Leaves.* Made into  
a Syrup with Honey it is good against vehement salt  
Catarrhs, old Coughs, Colds, Asthma's, and all  
sharp and thin defluxions of Rheum which fall up-  
on the Eyes, Nose, Ears, Stomach, or Lungs, cau-  
sing wheezing, shortness of Breath, &c. Dose one  
or two Spoonfuls, (according to Age, &c.) Morn-  
ing and Night.

XVIII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the  
Juice, and more powerful, and may be given in the  
same Dose in a Glass of generous Wine; it is good  
also (inwardly taken and outwardly applied) against  
the bitings of mad Dogs.

XIX. *The Powder of Roots or Leaves.* It has all  
the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, and may be gi-  
ven from a Scruple to a Dram, or Dram and half,  
in any convenient Vehicle; outwardly applied to  
green Wounds it quickly heals them, and strewed  
very thick upon old moist Sores and running Ulcers,  
it admirably cleanses them, dries up the flux of hu-  
mors, and disposes them to healing.

XX. *The Decoction in Wine or Water.* It has all  
the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, and Powder, but  
must be given in larger quantities, as from an Ounce  
to two, three, or four, as the Patient is in Age and  
Condition; it cleanses, dries, and heals Wounds and  
Ulcers; if the Patient is of a hot Constitution, the  
Decoction ought to be made in Water, after which,  
(if you think fit) a little Wine may be added.

XXI. *Pilule de Cynoglossa, Pills of Houndstongue.*  
Take the dried Bark of Houndstongue Roots, White  
Henbane Seed, Opium prepared, (i. e. extracted with  
fair Water, and reduced to powder) of each one Ounce,  
Myrrh an Ounce and half, Olibanum ten Drams, Sa-  
ffron, Castoreum, Storax Calamita, of each three  
Drams; let the Roots of Houndstongue and Henbane  
Seeds be powdered together, the Myrrh, Olibanum,  
and Saffron, each by themselves, then mix altogether,  
and with Syrup of Stachas, (or any other proper Sy-  
rup) make a Mass for Pills. They were designed  
to stop Catarrhs, or defluxions of Rheum upon the  
Lungs, Stomach, or other parts, to alleviate Coughs,  
cure Asthma's and Pleurifies, which they perform  
beyond other Medicines; they stop Loosnesses, all  
sorts of Fluxes of the Bowels, and fluxes of Blood  
or Humors in what part of the Body soever; they

cure the overflowing of the Terms in Women, as al-  
so fluxes of the Whites, and a Gonorrhœa in Men,  
(Universals being premised) they give ease in and  
cure pains and stiches of the Side, Pleurifies, the  
Colick, and all manner of internal pains; ease and  
cure the Toothach, and are one of the most absolute  
things against the Gout in the World. Dose from  
six Grains to fifteen Grains, every Night going to  
Bed.

XXII. *The Balsam.* The green Leaves and Roots,  
or Juice, made into a Balsam with Beef Suer and  
Turpentine, and applied, is good against an *Alopecia*,  
draws out the fire in any place which is burn'd, and  
applied to the biting of a mad Dog, draws out the  
poyson, and heals it; it digests and cleanses old Ul-  
cers, and is profitably applied to Venereal Sores, as  
also the Gout in Hands or Feet.

XXIII. *The Ointment.* It has the Virtues of the  
Balsam, but does not draw nor cleanse so powerfully;  
it is excellent for such Ulcers as are old, and  
deep, or spread much in the Legs, or other parts of  
the Body, and takes away the inflammation, which  
may any ways by accident happen to them.

XXIV. *The Cataplasma.* Applied to the Piles,  
whether broken or not, it gives ease to the pain, and  
in a short time discusses the Tumor; it eases also  
the Gout arising from a hot cause, and allays infla-  
mations in what part of the Body soever.

XXV. *The Lotion.* It is the same with the Sa-  
line Tincture, and is of excellent use against Scabs,  
Scurf, Morpew, Dandriff, Pimples, or other break-  
ings out in the Head and other parts of the Body;  
it also takes away Tanning, Sunburning, Yellowness,  
black and blew spots, and other discolorings of the  
Skin.

XXVI. *The Distilled Water of Herb and Roots.* It  
is good for all the purposes aforesaid, to be used as  
well inwardly to drink, as outwardly to wash any  
sore place, for it heals all manner of Wounds and  
Punctures, as also foul Ulcers arising from the  
French Pox.

## C H A P. CCCLXXXIV.

### Of H O U S L E E K,

O R,

### S E N G R E E N.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *Arabick* *Bejabu-*  
*lalem*, and *Hajalalez*, in *Greek* *Ἀείζων*, in  
*Latine* *Sedum*, *Sempervivum*, and as *Pliny* says,  
*Bupthalmum*, *Zoophthalmum*, *Steigethron*, and *Hy-*  
*pogeson*; some call it *Oculus*, and *Digitellus*; and  
*Apuleius* calls it *Vitalis*, and *Jovis Barba*, but *Sedum*  
and *Sempervivum* are the usual *Latine* Names; in  
*English* *Housleek*, and *Sengreen*, or *Evergreen*.

II. *The Kinds.* It is divided into three principal  
sorts, viz. 1. *Ἀείζων το μέγα*, *Aizoon magnum*, or  
*majus*, *Sedum majus*, The Great or Greater Housleek.  
2. *Sedum minimum*, The Smallest Housleek. 3. *Ai-*  
*zoon*, vel *Sedum minus*, The Smaller Housleek,  
which is *Prickmadam*, and *Stonecrop*, of which we  
shall Treat (God willing) hereafter in their proper  
places.

III. *The Kinds of the Greater Housleek.* There  
are three sorts hereof, viz. 1. *Sedum majus vulgare*,  
*Sempervivum Theophrasti*, *Aizoon magnum*, *Καταάνθος*  
*altera Dioscorides*, as *Clusius* has it, *Sempervivum*  
*majus*.



*majus*, & *majus vulgare*, *Umbilici Veneris Species altera Angularis*, Our Common or Vulgar Houfleeke. 2. *Sedum majus legitimum Clusij*, *Aizoon magnum verum Dioscoridis*, *Sempervivum majus*, *Sempervivum Arborefcens Matthioli*, *Sedum Arborefcens*, *Aizoon Arborefcens*, The True Great Houfleeke, or Tree Houfleeke. 3. *Sedum majus Marinum Anglicum*, *Sedum Portulicicum Lobelij*, Great English Sea Houfleeke. This *Lobel* makes to be a fort or kind of the fecond abovenamed, or Tree Houfleeke.



compass, like the Heads of the former *Common Houfleeke*, but nothing so close, every Leaf being formed somewhat like a Tongue, small at the bottom, and broader towards the end, where it is broadest, roundish at each side of the end, and a little dented in about the middle of the said end, not much unlike the form of a Heart, they are also finely dented about the edges, and as it were a little hollow, like a Spoon, and full of juice, and of a pale green color; from the tops of some of the Branches thrusts forth a long Stalk, divided into many lesser Branches or Twigs, with some few small Leaves on them, and at the ends of them several Star like Flowers, consisting of many small Leaves, of a pale yellowish color, with sundry small Threads in their middles; the greater Stalk becomes dry and smooth, as the Heads, which have small black Seed in them, which being ripe they utterly perish after Seed time, but the other Heads of green Leaves abide fresh all the Year, which send forth Flowers the next Year after, and may be taken before hand from the main Stock to be planted, and will take root being put into the Ground; in the warmer Climates it spreads it self much more into Branches than in these our colder Countries.

VI. *Gerard* describes it thus. It rises up with a Stalk a Foot and half, and sometimes three Feet high, which is thick, hard, woody, and so rough, that it can hardly be broken, parted into divers Branches, and covered with a thick gross Bark, which in the lower part resembles certain prints, or impress'd marks of the Leaves which are fallen away; the Leaves are fat, well bodied, full of juice, an Inch long, and somewhat more, almost like little Tongues, very curiously minced or nipt on the edges, standing upon the tops of the Branches, having in them the shape of an Eye; the Flowers grow out of the Branches, which are divided into many Sprigs, which Flowers are slender, yellow, and spread like a Star, which being past away, there comes up in their places very fine Seed, the Sprigs withering away; the Root is parted into many off-springs, and the Plant is always green, nor in its native Soil is it hurt by the cold of Winter, for which reason it obtained the Name of *Sempervivum*.

IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Our Common Houfleeke, has a small fibrous Root, creeping all about, and from small strings multiplies into many heads of Leaves, round the original Root, taking up thereby a large compass of Earth; and as this Root sends forth on all sides several heads of pale, green, thick, fat, broad Leaves, pointed at the ends, lying circlewise one unto, and as it were upon another, and upon the Ground, from the middle of each head of Leaves rises up a straight Stalk, two Feet high, all covered with smaller and longer green, thick, fat Leaves, (than those below) which often dry and fall away before the top thereof has perfected its Flowers, which grow on long Branches, bending their ends or tops downwards, with a single Leaf at the foot of every one of them, which consist of many Leaves, Star fashion, of a dark reddish color, after which come Heads, with small blackish Seed in them.

V. The second, or True Great Houfleeke. It has a Root consisting of strings, like the former, which divides it self into several off-springs; this Herb grows great, to the form of a Shrub, or woody Plant, of two or three Feet, or more high, in its native places, which are warm, and its Stem or Trunk below is of the bigness of four Fingers, and the other Branches are the thickness of ones Thumb, of a greyish color on the outside, and spotted as it were round about, but they are the marks of the old Leaves which are fallen, the like of which may be seen in *Wood Spurge*, and some other Plants; it spreads it self out into several limber smaller Branches on all sides, and Leaves at the ends of them, standing in a

VII. The third, or Great English Sea Houfleeke: It has a long slender Root, or Roots, with some few Fibres adjoining, from whence spring up one or two, or more Heads, which at length become Leaves and Stalks; the Leaves imitate *Laureola*, growing among the *Tithymals*, but thicker, shorter, more fat, and tender; the Stalk is of a woody substance, like *Laureola*, participating of the Kinds of *Sempervivum*, *Crassula*, and *Tithymal*, of which last some Authors have thought it to be a Kind; others have thought it to be a Shrub, degenerating from all those Plants: *Pena* and *Lobel*, who first discovered it and set it forth, knew not what to think of it; others since them have been as uncertain; however, its something like to our second Kind, or *Tree Houfleeke*, above described, its Stem is woody, but it grows neither so high, nor with so many Branches, the Leaves also, although something like to them, yet are not so thick or sappy, in its other parts it differs not much from the said *Tree Houfleeke*.

VIII. The Places. The first grows naturally both in *England* and *Germany*, as also in the Low Countries, *France*, &c. it grows upon Stones or Mountains, upon old Walls and ancient Buildings, as also upon the tops of Houses, and more especially being planted in Clay, or in Clay Ground; its form does sometimes differ, according to the nature of the Soil, for in some places the Leaves are narrower and lesser, but more in number, and have one only circle; in some places they are fewer, thicker, and



and broader, they are green, and of a deeper green in some places than in others, in some places of a lighter green, &c. the second grows in *Greece, Italy, Portugal, Spain, France, Illyria, Slavonia, Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica, England, &c.* in divers places of *Italy, Spain, and Portugal*, it is kept in Pots, as *Clusius* says, and carefully preserved in Winter; and in *Lisbon* it grows on the tops of Houses, as our *Common Kind* does with us, but it does not very well endure the cold of the more Northern Countries of *Europe*, with all the care that can be, unless kept in a Room with a Stove in it; yet *Lobel* says he found it growing in the Island of *Holmes*, near *Bristol*; it grows in the Islands of the *Mediterranean Sea*, as aforesaid, as also in *Zant, Rhodes, Candia*, and in many Provinces of the East, and of *Greece, &c.* the third grows by the Sea side in many places of *England*, and in the Island of *Holmes*, not far from *Bristol*; it grows also in the Isle of *Portland*, for which reason it has obtained the Name of *Sedum Portlandicum*.

IX. *The Times.* The first Flowers in the Summer Solstice, which is in *June*, about the eleventh day, and generally Flowers from that time thro' all *June* and *July*, and now and then in the Month of *August*; it spreads it self into Heads from several Sprigs of the Root in *April*, which Sprigs or Strings of the Root are the Ground Work of the great Circle, and of other Circles, by which it multiplies it self, and by which, being at length full grown, it spreads it self into many other Circles; the second Flowers, as *Clusius* says, in the warmer Climes, as *Spain, Portugal, &c.* in *November* and *December*, but scarcely ever with us; the third, or *Sedum Portlandicum*, which grows by the Sea side, Flowers in *July* and *August*, whilst the Weather is warm.

X. *The Qualities.* *Housleek* is cold in the third degree, and drying in the first, it is Anodyn, Astringent, Repercussive, and Arthritick.

XI. *The Specification.* It cures an Erysipelas, or *Anthionies Fire*, so called, and allays the heat of all Inflammations, Burnings, Scaldings, &c.

XII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom,  
1. The green Leaves. 2. A Juice. 3. A Posset.  
4. An Oil. 5. A Cataplasme. 6. A Distilled Water.

#### *The Virtues.*

XIII. *The green Leaves.* Applied twice a day upon Corns and Warts in the Hands and Feet, it dissolves or consumes them, and takes them away; the Leaves bruised and laid upon the Crown or fore part of the Head, stops the bleeding at Nose very quickly; and being applied to the Temples and Forehead it eases the Headach, and allays the heat and distemper of the Brain thro' Fevers, Frenzies, or want of Sleep.

XIV. *The Liquid Juice.* It is good against all heats and inflammations, as well inward as outward; dropped into the Ears or Eyes, stops all hot defluxions of sharp salt Rheum into those parts, and being taken inwardly it is good to stop all fluxes of humors upon the Viscera, and the immoderate flux of the Terms in Women; it kills also Worms in Young or Old, and is profitable against the biting of the *Phalangium*; being often bathed upon Warts and Corns, it is said to take them away, the more especially if the green Leaves be applied also over the same; outwardly it abates and allays all sorts of inflammations in any part of the Body, as in an Erysipelas, or *Anthionies Fire*, and all other hot Eruptions of the Flesh and Skin, Shingles, Pimples, Ringworms, Tettars, Pusches, Cankers, fretting Ulcers, Burning, Scalding, Morphew, Scurf, and other the like defœdations of the Flesh and Skin; and bathed upon the part

warm it eases the pain, and is very profitable against the Gout.

XV. *The Posset.* It is made with the Juice, and has all the Virtues of the Juice, being inwardly given; it is also singularly good against the hot Fits of Agues, for it cools and attemperates the Blood and Spirits, quenches thirst, and stops Catarrhs; it may be given in a fourfold quantity to the Juice, for as the Juice may be given from a Spoonful to two Spoonfuls in a Glass of Wine, or other fit Vehicle, so the Posset may be given from four Spoonfuls to eight, a little sweetned with Sugar, for all the aforesaid Intentions.

XVI. *The Oil.* It is thus made. Take juice of *Housleek*, choice thick Cream, of each a Quart, boil them over a gentle Fire till a separation is made, and the Oil swims on the top, of a yellow or greenish color, which when cold take off, and keep it for use. In all external Cases, (excepting an Erysipelas) it has the Virtues of the Juice, and is good to anoint Pimples, Shingles, Tettars, Ringworms, Scurf, Morphew, &c. with, as also places pained with the Gout; given inwardly from half an Ounce to an Ounce in any convenient Vehicle it gives ease in the Strangury, Stone, Gravel, heat and scalding of Urine, and cleanses the Urinary passages from tartarous mucilage.

XVII. *The Cataplasme.* Being made with Hogs Lard and Barley Flower it is good against all the Diseases the Liquid Juice is used against, except an Erysipelas, because experience has taught us that all greasie or oily bodies rather exasperate than abate that Disease; applied in the Gout it gives sudden ease and cure.

XVIII. *The Distilled Water.* It is profitable for all the purposes aforesaid, being in outward Distempers bathed upon the parts affected, and in inward Diseases given from two to four Ounces, sweetned with Syrup of Clovegilliflowers; if it is bathed upon any place stung with Nettles or Bees it presently takes away the pain, so also the Juice, being used in like manner, as also the green Leaves, being rubbed upon the parts wounded or affected.

XIX. *Nota.* If the Cataplasme of the Leaves is made with Vinegar and Barley Flower (instead of Hogs Lard) it may profitably be applied to an Erysipelas, or *Anthionies Fire*.

## C H A P. CCCLXXXV.

### Of HOUSLEEK Small.

I. *THE Names.* It has no *Greek* Name that we know of, but it is called by *Clusius* in *Latine* *Sedum Alpinum ajugæ Folio*, and in his *History of Plants* *Sedum decimum tertium*, also *Sedum laciniatis Folijs*, in *English* *Jagged Housleek*, *Housleek with Jagged Leaves*, and *Small Mountain Housleek with jagged Leaves*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make two Kinds hereof, viz. *Sedum Alpinum laciniatis ajugæ Folijs*, Small Mountain Housleek with jagged Leaves, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Sedum Monspeliense* & *Pyreneum laciniatum*, French jagged Mountain Housleek, the which not growing in *England* we shall say nothing of it in this Work.

III. *The Description.* It has a small blackish Root, which spreads much, from which Root it shoots forth



on all sides with many small heads of Leaves from small Strings, as is usual with the *Housleeks*, each Leaf whereof is long and narrow, cut in deeply into three divisions, one on each side, and the end longest, something like to the Leaves of the *Sweet Groundpine*, but smaller and greener, not having any hoariness on them, astringent and drying also in taste, as much as any of the others; the Stalks are reddish, very slender, and not above two Inches high, as *Clusius* says, but they grow three Inches or more high with us, which is spread out at top into some few Branches, bearing every one of them one small Flower, (but with us it is large, with respect to the bigness of the Plant) which consists of five Leaves apiece, of a pale green color, says *Clusius*, but with us as on that Plant which came from one Mr. *Hesket* out of *Lancashire*, of a pale whitish color, with some yellow threads encompassing a middle round Head.

the tops of the Stalks and Branches grow blewish purple gaping Flowers in spiked Heads, one row above another, after which follows the Seed, which is small and blackish; the whole Plant is of a vigorous or strong, sweet, pleasant smell.



IV. *The Places.* *Clusius* says it grows on the Mountains called *Sneberg*, or *Snowhill*, among the Stones, with us it grows on Mountains in *Lancashire*, as the aforementioned *Hesket* reported.

V. *The Times.* *Clusius* says that it Flowers in those Months which are presently after the Snow is dissolved, but with us towards the latter end of *April*, or in *May*, but yet somewhat later on those Mountains before named.

VI. *As for the Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues*, they are much the same with those of *Our Common Housleek* in the former Chapter, so that no more need be said of them in this place.

HYACINTH *English*, See *Hares-Bells*, Ch. 335.

## C H A P. CCCLXXXVI.

### Of H Y S S O P Common.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Arabick* *Cyfe*, *Javes*, *Jufa*, in *Greek* *ῥωσσιν*, in *Latine* *Hyssopus*, in *English* *Hyssop*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are two principal Kinds hereof, viz. 1. *ῥωσσιν κοινὴ, ἢ συνδύς*, *Hyssopus Vulgaris*, *Our Common Hyssop*. 2. *ῥωσσιν σπάνιος*, *Hyssopus infrequens*, *Hyssopus incelebris*, *vel insolitus*, *Hyssop Strange*, and not *Vulgar* or *Common*, of which in the next Chapter.

III. *The Kinds.* Of *Our Common Garden Hyssop* there are only two Kinds, viz. 1. *Hyssopus Vulgaris*, *Hyssopus Arabum*, *Our Vulgar or Ordinary Hyssop*. This *Hyssop* is not the *Hyssop* of *Dioscorides* and other *Greek* Authors, as all our modern Botanists do acknowledge, except *Matthioli*, who earnestly contends that *Our Garden Hyssop* is it against all reason; nor do any of our Herbarists know (as far as I can find) what the true *Hyssop* of the *Greeks* was. As for *Our Common Garden Hyssop*, it is certainly the true *Hyssop* of the *Arabians*, and so we take it. 2. *Hyssopus Arabum Floribus rubris vel albis*, *White or Red Flowered Hyssop*.

IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or *Our Vulgar Ordinary Hyssop*, has a Root which is somewhat woody, with many thready strings thereat; it is a small bushy Plant, which rises up with many woody but tender Branches, something more than 2 Foot high, on the Stalks and Branches whereof are set at certain distances several small, narrow, and long green Leaves, not dented at all on the edges; at

V. *The second, or White or Red Flowered Hyssop.* They have a Root like the former, but are scarcely to be distinguished in their form and manner of growing from the *Common Garden Kind*, (of which this is a sort) the chief difference is, that they do both usually bear white or red Flowers, all on one side of the Spike, yet continue not constant in that form, but change into the form of the former *Common Kind*, and so become (as it were) the same Plant, and after that change not to be discerned therefrom.

VI. *The Places.* They grow with us only in Gardens, and that thro' the whole Kingdoms of *England* and *Ireland*, but they grow wild in *Arabia*, and other hot Countries, as also on the Hills of *Romania*, about *Verona*, and near unto *Mount Baldus*.

VII. *The Times.* They Flower in the Summer Months, viz. in *June* and *July*, and their Seed is ripe in the beginning or middle of *August*.

VIII. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the third degree, *Aperitive*, *Absterfive*, *Astringent*, *Anodyn*, *Carminative*, *Digestive*, *Diuretick*, it incides, rarifies, and makes thin; it is *Stomackick*, *Pectoral*, *Cordial*, *Splenetick*, *Nephritick*, and *Arthritick*, *Emmenagogick*, *Alexipharmick*, and *Analeptick*.

IX. *The Specification.* It is peculiar against *Asthma's*, *Coughs*, *Colds*, *Catarrhs*, *Wheezing*, *Hoarseness*, *shortness of Breath*, *difficulty of breathing*, cures *Consumptions*, *Strangury*, *Falling-Sickness*, and green Wounds.

X. *The Preparations.* You may prepare therefrom, 1. *A Liquid Juice*. 2. *An Essence*. 3. *A Decoction in Wine or Water*. 4. *A Lohoch, or Syrup*. 5. *A Poudre*. 6. *Pills*. 7. *A Lotion or Gargarism*. 8. *An Oil by Decoction*. 9. *A Balsam or Ointment*. 10. *A Cataplasim*. 11. *A Distilled Water*. 12. *A Spirituous Tincture*. 13. *An Acid Tincture*. 14. *An Oily Tincture*. 15. *A Saline Tincture*. 16. *A Spirit*.



*Spir.* 17. *An Oil Distilled.* 18. *Powers.* 19.  
*An Elixir.* 20. *A fixed and volatile Salt.* 21. *A Wine.*

*The Virtues.*

XI. *The Liquid Juice.* Mixed with Honey and taken it kills Worms in the Belly, and helps Asthma's, Coughs, Colds, Wheezing, shortness of Breath, and other Distempers of the Lungs, caused by a plenitude of Humors. Dose from one Spoonful to three, Morning and Night.

XII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, besides which it is excellent against the Falling-Sickness, Agues, Catarrhs, or distillations of Rheum upon the Lungs, and other parts; it amends and cherishes the native heat, and color of the Body, &c. and is a powerful Remedy against the Colick, Strangury, obstruction of the Terms in Women, Poyson, the bitings of mad Dogs, Serpents, and other venomous Creatures; it cuts tough Flegm, and causes expectoration. Dose two or three Spoonfuls in the Distilled Water, or some other proper Vehicle.

XIII. *The Decoction in Wine or Water.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but nothing near so powerful, and therefore may be given Morning, Noon, and Night to six or eight Ounces, sweetened with new Honey; if Rue and Honey is boiled with it, and so drunk, it stops Catarrhs upon the Lungs, and has the other Virtues of the Juice and Essence; if the Decoction, Juice, or Essence, is mixed with *Oxymel* it purges gross Humors by Stool, and kills Worms in Children; if any of these three Preparations are mixed with pulp of Figs and *Sal Nitre* it loosens the Belly, and works downwards also; if either of them are mixed with juice of *Garden Cress* and *Blew Flowerdeluce* Roots, or powder of the said *Flowerdeluce* Roots, in a fit proportion, this mixture will purge the Bowels yet more forcibly, carry off the causes of the Colick, cure the Yellow Jaundice, Dropsie, obstructions of Liver, Spleen, and Womb, and restore the true color of the Skin, this more especially if it is taken twice or thrice a Week, as the Body can bear it.

XIV. *The Lohoch or Syrup.* Take of the clarified Juice two Pounds, of choice Honey four Pounds, mix, and boil to the consistence of a Rob or Quiddony. It has the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, and Decoction, and may be taken three, four, five, or six times a day, or more, as the nature and reason of the Disease requires; it causes an admirable expectoration of the morbid matter out of the *Bronchia* of the Lungs; take a little of it at a time with a small little Spoon, and let it distill down the Throat gradually.

XV. *The Powder.* It is made of the Leaves, Heads, and Flowers; strewed upon green Wounds it presently heals them, upon old running Ulcers it cleanses, dries, and heals them also; applied with powder of *Cumin Seed*, Salt, and Honey, it is good against the bitings of Vipers, Rattle-Snakes, mad Dogs, and other venomous Creatures; given inwardly to one Dram, or Dram and half, it gives ease in the Colick, provokes the Terms, and opens the obstructions of the Urinary parts; it causes to break Wind, and prevails against the cold fits of Agues.

XVI. *The Pills.* Take Hyssop in powder, Male Peony Roots in powder, of each two Drams, Castoreum in powder one Dram, Horehound in powder, *Assa fatida*, of each half a Dram, Crystals of *Luna* in powder a Scruple, with Rob of Hyssop (made per se without Honey) q. s. mix, and make a mass of Pills, for seven Doses, to be given every Night at Bed time: This is said to be a specifick and effectual Remedy against the Falling-Sickness, to be repeated every

New and Full Moon so long till the Cure is completed: These Pills cure also a vehement Headach, tho' of very long standing, and are prevalent against a Vertigo.

XVII. *The Lotion or Gargarism.* Take Hyssop four good handfals, White or Red Port Wine three Pints, *Sal Nitre* an Ounce, mix, and boil for a quarter of an hour, then strain off the clear. It is a singular good thing against the Quinsie, or any soreness of Throat or Mouth, it abates the inflammation of the Throat, and discusses the swelling thereof, being often gargled therewith; it takes away inflammations in other parts of the Body, as also black and blew spots and marks, which are occasioned by Falls, Blows, or Bruises; if Wine Vinegar is used to make the Lotion with instead of the Wine, it will ease the Toothach, and the fumes thereof being received thro' a Funnel into the Ears eases their pains, and abates an inflammation if any is present, and also takes away their ringing noise.

XVIII. *The Oil by Decoction or Insolation.* Being anointed upon the Head it is said to kill Lice and Nits therein, and take away the itching; taken inwardly to one or two Ounces mixed with Honey it opens obstructions of Stomach and Lungs, and causes the pituitous matter to pass off thro' the Guts; anointed upon any part swollen and pained thro' cold, it eases the pain and discusses the swelling.

XIX. *The Balsam or Ointment.* Being applied they quickly heal any simple green Wound in the Hand, or other parts of the Body; applied also to old running Sores and foul Ulcers they cleanse, dry, and heal them quickly, more especially if the Powder of the Herb afore named be also strewed upon the same; the Balsam applied upon any part pained with the Gout gives ease in the pain, and by continuing the application in a short time cures it.

XX. *The Cataplasm.* Made of the green Herb by bruising, adding also thereto Sugar and Salt, with a few Crumbs of White Bread, and applied, it is admirable to discuss any recent simple Contusion, or heal any simple green Wound, in what part of the Body soever.

XXI. *The Distilled Water.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, and Decoction, sweetened with Sugar or Honey, and so taken from two Ounces to four Ounces, but it is mostly used as a Vehicle to convey the other Preparations down in; outwardly used sweetened with Honey it is of good use to cure sore and running Eyes.

XXII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomack, and Pectoral, it is good against Wind in the Stomach, gives ease in the Colick and gripings of the Guts, and sweetened with Honey it eases the vehemency of the Cough, and causes expectoration; it is good against Vapors from the Womb, Fits of the Mother, and the Falling-Sickness. Dose one Spoonful in the Morning fasting, another an Hour before Dinner, and the like at Night going to Bed, in the Distilled Water.

XXIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is good against the Plague, all sorts of malign and pestilential Diseases, it resists Poyson, and is efficacious against the bitings of mad Dogs, Vipers, and all other kinds of venomous Creatures; it cleanses the Stomach, strengthens it, and causes a good Appetite and Digestion, suppresses Vapors, and resists Hysterick Fits; it powerfully opens obstructions, and attenuates thick and gross Humors which clog and stuff the Viscera, causing the same to be carried off by Stool and Urine. Dose so many drops as to make the Vehicle pleasantly sharp.

XXIV. *The Oily Tincture.* It opens the obstructions of the Urinary parts, as also of the Womb, provokes Urine and the Terms, expels Wind powerfully.



erfully, and gives ease in the Colick, gripings of the Guts, Stone, Gravel, Strangury, &c. Dose from ten to twenty drops in any proper Vehicle Morning and Night; it gives ease in the vehement pains of the Back, and outwardly used is good against Convulsions, Cramps in any particular part of the Body, as also the Palsie and Gout, &c.

XXV. *The Saline Tincture.* Inwardly taken in a Glass of White Port Wine from half a Dram to a Dram, or Dram and half, it is prevalent against the Strangury; and causes a Pissing freely; outwardly used it is good against Scabs, Pimples, breakings out, Tettars, Ringworms, Scurf, Morpew, Tanning of the Skin, Sunburning, Yellowness, and other deformities thereof, the Skin (after being first wash'd clean with warm Water) being well bathed therewith Morning, Noon, and Night.

XXVI. *The Spirit.* Being dulcified with double refined Sugar it is a most excellent Stomack and Cordial, it expels Wind, gives ease in the Colick and gripings of the Guts, it prevails against fainting and swooning Fits, sickness at Heart, and other Distempers of the Stomach and *Præcordia*. Dose from half to one Spoonful in Canary, or some other Wine or proper Vehicle.

XXVII. *The Distilled Oil.* It is a Specifick against an old inveterate Cough, Catarrh, and Asthma, it cures the Colick to a Miracle, expels Wind powerfully, and cures Convulsions, Lethargies, Vertigo, and the Palsie after a singular manner; it admirably strengthens the Nerves and Brain, and is good against all cold and moist Diseases affecting those parts, let them come from what cause soever; it eases the Headach coming by reason of cold, and is a singular Antidote against the Gout, being both inwardly taken and outwardly applied; it is powerful against Agues, as also against the Headach, Megrin, Vertigo, Carus, Lethargy, and other Diseases proceeding from cold and moisture, but more especially it is said to be a peculiar Remedy for the Falling-Sickness, tho' in Persons past their Minority, and who are advancing towards their middle Age; in the Palsie the Back Bone is to be anointed therewith Morning and Night, rubbing it well in, and inwardly it is to be given from four drops to ten, fifteen, or twenty, according as the Patient is in Age and Strength, and the Dose to be repeated Morning and Evening so long as need requires, let it be dropp'd into White Sugar, with which it is to be well mixed, then add to it the Vehicle you design to give it in, and so let the Patient drink it.

XXVIII. *The Potestates or Powers.* They have all the Virtues of the Distilled Oil, and are much more thin and penetrating, sinking into the Flesh as fast as they are put on, they are to be outwardly used in the same manner as the Oil, and to the same parts in the same cases, and likewise to be inwardly given Morning, Noon, and Night, from thirty to eighty, or an hundred drops, in a Glass of Wine, or other proper Vehicle.

XXIX. *The Elixir.* The Virtues hereof are just the same with the Distilled Oil and Powers, and to be used also outwardly and inwardly in the same manner, saying that the Dose of the Elixir is only from twenty drops to sixty in Wine, or some fit Vehicle; given in Sherry or Madera Wine to sixty drops or more in a Pleurisie it gives present ease, and in a little time after a perfect cure; in particular also it is a very excellent thing to kill Worms in Children.

XXX. *The Salt Fixed and Volatile.* They are both Alcalies, and so absorb Acids, infallibly cure the pain of the Stomach, tho' inveterate and never so vehement, they have been given with good success in all sorts of Colicks, they open obstructions

of all the Viscera, but more particularly of the Spleen, Reins, and Womb; they suppress Vapors, prevail against Hysterick Fits, conquer Hypochondriack Melancholly, deobstruct the Urinary passages, and give present ease in the Strangury, causing the Patient to piss plentifully and easily; and being continued for some convenient time cure the Yellow Jaundice. Dose from ten to twenty grains, or more, in a Glass of generous White Port Wine Morning and Night, or oftner, in the day time, if need so require.

XXXI. *The Wine.* Take Hyssop chopped small a handful, choice ripe Figs slit three Ounces, White Sugarcandy an Ounce and half, Muscadine a Quart, boil all together till half a Pint is consumed, then strain out and keep it for use. Dose three Spoonfuls Morning and Evening against an old Cough, it causes the tough Flegm to be the more easily expectorated, gives ease in the Strangury, by opening the passages of the Urine when they are stopped; it is also Carminative, helps to break Wind, and provokes the Terms in Women when preternaturally stopped.

## C H A P. CCCLXXXVII.

### Of H Y S S O P Rare or Strange.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek ὕσσωπος, ὕσσωπος ἁγία, in Latine *Hyssopus In-frequens*, *Hyssopus Incelebris*, vel *Insolita*, in English *Strange*, or *Rare*, or *Uncommon Hyssop*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are no less than Thirteen Kinds of this *Strange Hyssop*, viz. 1. *Hyssopus Folijs Niveis*, White Leav'd Hyssop. 2. *Hyssopus Folijs Aureis*, Yellow Hyssop. 3. *Hyssopus Folijs Cinerijs*, Ruffet Leav'd Hyssop. 4. *Hyssopus Surculis Densis*, Double Hyssop. 5. *Hyssopus Latifolia*, Broad Leaved Hyssop. 6. *Hyssopus Folijs Crenatis*, Jagged or Dented Hyssop. 7. *Hyssopus Moschata*, vel *de Clissa*, Musk'd Hyssop. 8. *Hyssopus Coronata*, vel *Comosa Clusij*, Tufted Hyssop. 9. *Hyssopus Folijs Crispis*, Curled Hyssop. 10. *Hyssopus Angustifolia Spicata*, Narrow Leav'd Spiked Hyssop. 11. *Hyssopus Folijs Origani*, Round Leav'd Hyssop. 12. *Hyssopus minor*, sive *Hispanica*, Dwarf Spanish Hyssop. 13. *Hyssopus Montana*, Mountain Wild Hyssop.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or White Leaved Hyssop, seems to me to be one of the sorts of the first Common Kind in the former Chapter, and to differ only in the party coloring of the Leaves, this having several Leaves parted white and green in the midst, and some or all for the most part white, and some wholly green, or with some stripes in the green.

IV. *The second, or Yellow Hyssop*, is without doubt one of the sorts also of the first Kind in the former Chapter, it has several Leaves parted yellow and green in the midst, and come all or most part yellow; the uppermost Leaves are usually wholly yellow in the Summer time, parted with green, but the lower Leaves often abide without discoloring.

V. *The third, or Ruffet Leav'd Hyssop.* This also differs from the former scarcely in any thing else but in the color of the Leaves, which are of a greyish or Ash color, called by some Ruffet; and this seems to be that very sort which Bauhinus says was sent him from England, it growing very freely in some of our Gardens.



VI. *The fourth, or Double Hyssop.* This Hyssop grows lower and thicker than the former Kinds, being thicker set with slender and not so woody Branches, bending their Heads somewhat downwards, and much more thick set with Leaves of a dark green color; in the Flower and other particulars it differs not from the first Kind described in the former Chapter.

VII. *The fifth, or Broad Leav'd Hyssop.* This differs very little from the first Common Hyssop in the former Chapter, neither in Root, Stalk, Leaves, nor Flowers, saving that in this the green Leaves are larger and broader, and the Stalks are more woody than it, keeping the same form and substance.

VIII. *The sixth, or Jagged or Dented Hyssop.* In its tops and top Branches it differs not much from Our Common Garden Hyssop, but otherwise the Stalks are somewhat bigger and higher, and the Leaves a pretty deal larger and longer, and regularly cut in or dented on the edges, which makes it another or differing Species of the same Plant.

IX. *The seventh, or Musk'd Hyssop.* This differs scarcely any thing from Our Common Garden Hyssop, as Gesner in Hortis Germaniæ has declared, but in the smell, which is so fragrant, grateful and pleasant, that it comes very near to the smell of Musk.

X. *The eighth, or Tufted Hyssop.* It is in Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Flowers, and manner of growing, something like unto the Garden Kind first described in the former Chapter, but a little smaller and lower, the Leaves being of a paler green color, and the top Branches spreading a little broader, having shorter Spikes of Leaves and Flowers, growing as it were in Tufts, which has caused the Name, and is indeed the principal difference.

XI. *The ninth, or Curled Hyssop.* In its Roots, Stalks, Branches, and manner of growing, it differs not much from the Common Garden Kind, having also much the same smell; but herein consists the chief difference, that the Leaves thereof are curled or crumpled at or about the edges, and that each Leaf seems to be composed of many.

XII. *The tenth, or Narrow Leav'd Spiked Hyssop.* Its Root is like that of the Common Hyssop, it is a fine sort, and has many slender hard Stalks, on which are set at distances, (as in the Common Hyssop) many small green Leaves, but longer and narrower than they, and ending in a longer point; the Flowers likewise grow at several distances, as it were in Roundles, almost from the middle of the Stalks up to the tops, of a blewish purple color, like the Common Kind, but much smaller, and so is the Seed also; the Branches hereof will take root and grow being laid into the Ground, the Root spreading much in the Earth.

XIII. *The eleventh, or Round Leav'd Hyssop.* It has a hard, woody, and fibrous Root, also hard woody Stalks, on which grow several small and almost round Leaves, one against another, but pointed at the ends; the Heads or Spikes of Flowers are like unto Our Ordinary Garden Sort in the former Chapter, and the Flowers themselves are of a blewish purple color; the smell is also much the same with the Common Kind.

XIV. *The twelfth, or Dwarf Spanish Hyssop,* which Lobel calls Hyssopus Parva Angustis Folijs. This has a small, woody, fibrous Root, which sends forth Stalks smaller and lower than the Common Kind, nor do its Branches rise so high as the Vulgar Garden Sort, but bend a little downwards, the Leaves also being smaller and thicker, and of a sadder green color, and the Heads or Spikes shorter; but the Flowers are purple, like the Garden Kind.

XV. *The thirteenth, or Mountain Wild Hyssop.*

Its Root is small, woody, and with many fibres or strings; in its manner of growing it is very like unto the Common Garden Sort, but the Leaves are not so many at a joint, and are somewhat harder and rougher, and a little hairy, and something narrower withal, which, as Matthioli says, being brought into Gardens, and there nursed up, will in length of time put off that roughness, and become more smooth and soft; the taste of this is much more bitter, and nothing so hot or sweet as the Common Kind; the Flowers and Seed are like to the Garden Sort both for form and color.

XVI. *The Places.* They are all of them nursed up with us only in the Gardens of the Curious, and grow as well as the Common Kind, but the Dwarf or Spanish Hyssop, as also the Mountain Hyssop, grow naturally on the Hills in many places of Spain and Germany, and on the Hill Salvatin in the Country of Geritia.

XVII. *The Times.* They all Flower in the Summer Months, viz. thro' June and July, and beginning of August, and their Seed is ripe in the beginning or middle of August.

XVIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues,* are fully and exactly the same with those of the Garden Kind declared at large in the former Chapter, so that nothing more need be said thereof in this place.

## C H A P. CCCLXXXVIII.

### Of H Y S S O P Hedge True,

O R,

### H Y S S O P Marsh.

**T**HE Names. It was unknown to the Ancient Greeks, the Arabians call the Seed thereof Gelbenech, the Latines call the Plant Gratiola, so it is named by Dodoneus, Gesner, Lobel, Lugdunensis, Matthioli, and others; by some it is called Gratia Dei, and some call it Gratia Dei altera, because there is another Herb among the Gerania so called; Cordus calls it Limnesium, or Centauroides, because many for the bitterness thereof did think it a Species of Centaurium minus; Gesner calls it Gratiola, five Centaurium Aquaticum, also Sesamoides; Columna says that it is usually called Gratiola, yet says it is thought of some more truly to be taken for a Common Hyssop; Bauhinus in his Pinax calls it Gratiola Centauroides, and we in English call it Hedge Hyssop, for distinction sake, not that it grows by any Hedge side, but usually in moist and watery places, for which reason it might more properly be called Marsh Hyssop.

II. *The Kinds.* It is twofold, viz. 1. Gratiola Vera, The True Hedge Hyssop, which is a singular Plant, and of which we treat in this Chapter. 2. Gratiola Notha, Bastard Hedge Hyssop, of which we shall treat in the next Chapter following.

III. *The Description.* It has a Root which shoots forth to and fro under Ground very much, with many joints and small fibres at them, thereby increasing and quickly spreading very far about, especially if it stands in any moist place, because it will scarcely endure long in any dry Ground; it is but a small low Plant, seldom growing above a Foot high, its Branches



Branches are slender, bending, and foursquare, having several small Leaves set thereon, very like to those of the *Ordinary Garden Hyssop*, but a little shorter and broader, and of a pale green color, of a very bitter unpleasant taste; from about the middle of these Branches, at the joints of the Leaves, up to the tops of them, come forth the Flowers every one at a place, standing upon very short footstalks, which are somewhat long and hollow, ending in four Leaves, two of the lowest standing out, as it were Lips, and the other two above, shorter by the half, of a whitish yellow color, tending to a black blew, and sometimes more blewish or purple; after which come small round Heads, in which is contained small Seed.



IV. *Nota.* *Camerarius* says that (not far from *Geneva*) he has found another Kind of this Plant, viz. *Gratiola Flore luteo*, Hedge Hyssop with a yellow Flower, but not differing from the former in any other particular.

V. *The Places.* It delights to grow in moist, watery, and Marsh Grounds, if you would have it to live and flourish, it grows naturally in many places of *Italy*, and near *Padua* plentifully, but with us it is only nursed up in Gardens.

VI. *The Times.* It Flowers in *June* and *July*, and its Seed is ripe not long after, but it seldom gives ripe Seed in *England*.

VII. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry probably in the third degree, Incisive, Attractive, Absterfive, Aperitive, Traumatick, Hepatick, Splenetick, Arthritick, and Cathartick.

VIII. *The Specification.* It is a good Antifebricitick, and peculiar for the curing of the Dropsie, Scurvy, and Gout, kill Worms, and heal all simple green Wounds, running Sores, and putrid Ulcers.

IX. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice of the Herb. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction in Water or Wine. 4. A Pouder. 5. An Extract. 6. A Balsam or Ointment.

## *The Virtues.*

X. *The Liquid Juice.* It works very strongly and churlishly both upwards and downwards, expelling much viscous and gross Flegm, also Choler, and watery Humors, for which reason it is profitable for such as are troubled with a *Sarcites*, or Dropsie *Anasarca*, as also the *Ascites* or *Tympanites* in beginning, and for such as are affected with the Gout or Sciatica; it cures both Tertian and Quartan Agues, and kills Worms in the Belly, whether in Old or Young, but by reason of its churlishness it ought to be corrected with Aniseeds, Caraways, Cloves, Cinnamon, &c. Dose half a Spoonful, increasing it according to Age and Strength gradually to two, three, or four Spoonfuls; it may be given mixed with Posset-drink, Sack-Whey, or Mutton Broth, &c.

XI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the former, but nothing near so churlish, but ought to be corrected with Powers of Angelica, Pennyroyal, Aniseeds, Caraways, &c. it cures Quotidian and Tertian Agues, opens obstructions of Liver and Spleen, resists putrefaction, kills Worms, and evacuates peccant Humors; the Dose is the same with the Liquid Juice, and to be given in the same manner.

XII. *The Decoction or Infusion in Water or Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but is to be given in a greater quantity, it cleanses the Stomach and other Viscera, opening their obstructions, it also induces old running Sores and filthy Ulcers to a speedy healing, it works both upwards and downwards, but much more gently than either Juice or Essence.

XIII. *The Pouder.* It has all the Virtues of Liquid Juice, Essence, or Decoction, but operates not so speedily, it kills Worms effectually in Old or Young, and prevails wonderfully against the Scurvy and Jaundice, as also obstructions of the Womb, but it ought to be corrected with Camphir, Pouder of Aniseeds, &c. Dose from a Scruple to a Dram, or more, according to the Age of the Patient, Strength, and other Circumstances; outwardly strewed upon old running Sores, or putrid Ulcers, it cleanses and dries them, and induces their speedy healing; it also admirably consolidates green Wounds, &c.

XIV. *The Extract.* It may be made into Pills with Pouders of Aniseed, or Cinnamon; *Camerarius* commends it not only to be available against the Dropsie, but against all sorts of Agues, and so much the more if a little of the Inspissate Juice of Calamint be added; it has all the Virtues of Juice, Essence, Decoction, and Pouder, but works with much more safety and gentleness. Dose from a Scruple to a Dram in any fit Vehicle.

XV. *The Balsam or Ointment.* It is excellent good against the Gout or Sciatica being applied to the parts affected, it also digests green Wounds, or malign Ulcers, cleanses, dries, and heals them in a very short time, but this more especially if the pouder of Tobacco, be mixed with the same.

C H A P. CCCLXXXIX.

of H Y S S O P Hedge Bastard.

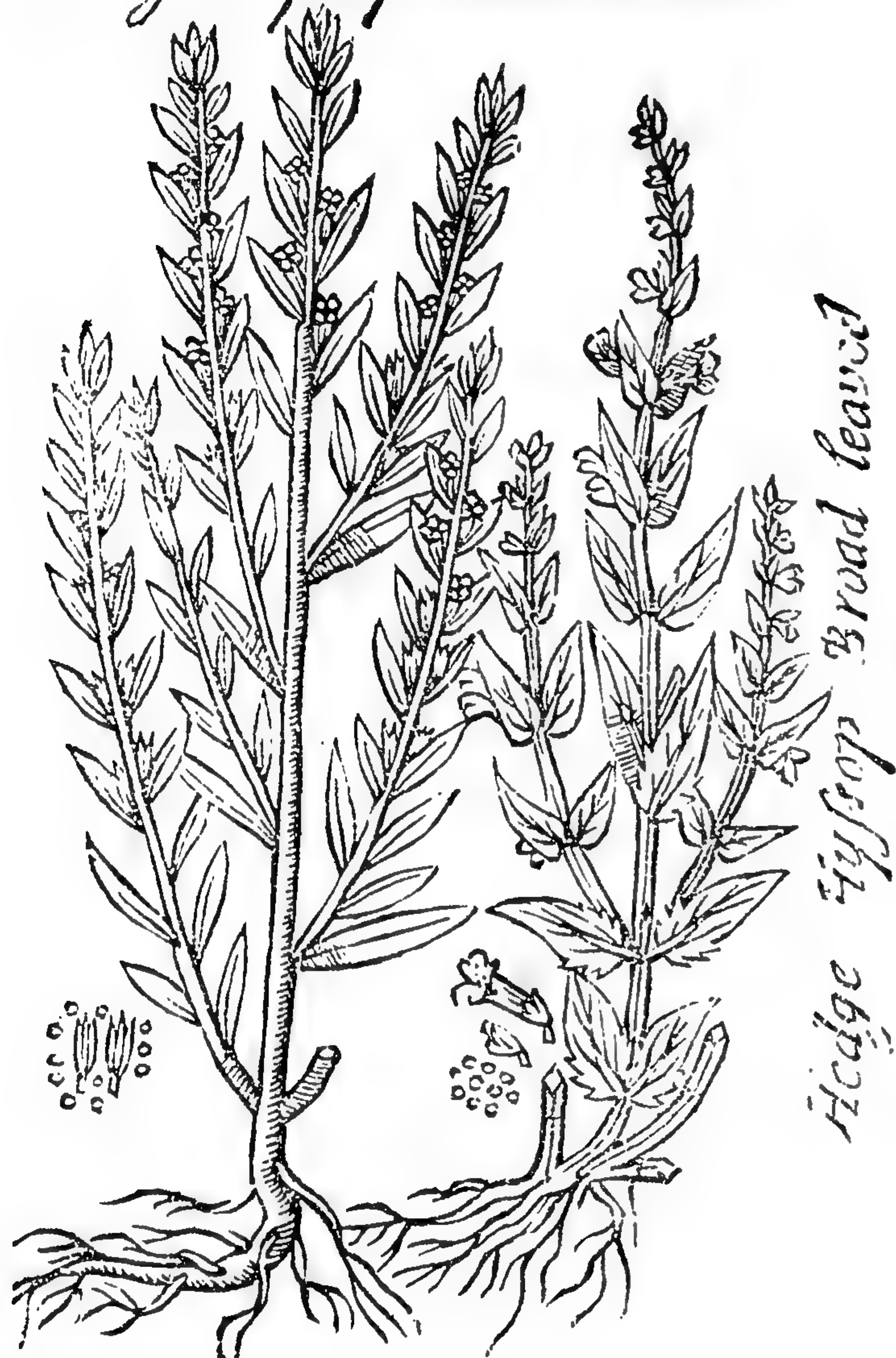
I. **T**HE Names. This can have no *Greek* Name, any more than the former, in *Latine* it is called



called *Gratiola Nerba*, and in *Englifo* *Baslard Hedge Hyssop*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three sorts hereof, viz.  
1. *Gratiola Angustifolia*, and *Angustifolia minor*, *Gratiola minor Gesneri*, also *Hyssopoides* by *Camerrinus*, *Hyssopi Folia Cordi & Bauhini*, Small Hedge Hyssop, also Small Narrow Leav'd Hedge Hyssop.  
2. *Gratiola Cerulea*, *Gratia Dei Cesalpini*, *Tertianaria Taternamontani*, *Herba Judaica altera Dodonaei*, *Sideritis Cerulea Thalij*, *Lyfimachia Flore Ceruleae Camerarii*, *Lyfimachia Galericalata Lobelij*, *Gratiola Latifolia*, and *Latifolia major*, The Greater Broad Leav'd, or Blew Flowered Hedge Hyssop.  
3. *Gratiola Latifolia minor*, and *Latifolia nostras minor Parkinsoni*, The Lesser Broad Leav'd Hedge Hyssop.

*Hedge Hyssop narrow leaved*



III. *The Descriptions.* *The first, or Small Narrow Leav'd Hedge Hyssop.* It has a Root which is white, and shoots forth many Fibres, whereby it takes good rooting and hold in the Earth; from this Root shoot forth sometimes many, and sometimes but one or two round reddish Stalks, half a Yard high, which are branched towards the tops, on which are set one above another, and sometimes one against another, divers small and somewhat long Leaves, something smaller than those in the former Chapter, and nearly resembling *Hyssop* Leaves, of a pale green color, and joining close to the Stalks and Branches, without any Footstalk at all; at the Joints with the Leaves come forth Flowers, every one by it self, standing in a long Husk, and consisting of four Leaves, of an excellent blew color, after which comes in their places small brown Seed, contained in long round Pods; the Herb and every part thereof is without any the least smell, and almost without any taste, tho' some will have it to be of a little nitrous, others of a little sweetish taste; sometimes in the moister Grounds this is found with larger Leaves, and growing higher, and sometimes in dry Grounds with smaller and longer Leaves, scarcely growing a Span high.

IV. *The second, or Greater Broad Leav'd Hedge Hyssop.* It has a Root which spreads much, and

with many Branches under Ground, quickly thereby possessing a large circuit or compass; it is a smooth low Plant, rising about a Foot high, with many square Stalks variously branched from the bottom to the top, having thereon several Joints, and two small Leaves at every one, which stand upon short Footstalks, being broad at the bottom, and smaller towards the end, a little dented about the edges, and full of Veins, of a sadder green color than the former, longer also, and broader; the Flowers are gaping, something like unto those of *Dead Nettles*, of a fair blewish purple color, with some white spots in them, every one standing at the Joints with the Leaves, up to the tops, after which come forth small Seed Vessels, formed something like unto the top of the Thigh Bone of a Man or Beast, in which the small Nut or Huckle Bone is placed, the upper part of which does first open when the Seed is ripe, and falls away when it is touched, thereby shewing within it small yellow Seed: There is a lesser sort hereof, differing only in the smallness of the Plant, which I am apt to believe arises only from the different goodness of the Soil; this Herb is referred to *Gratiola*, not only from its place and manner of growing, but especially for its bitterness, in which it is so like to it.

V. *The third, or Lesser Broad Leav'd Hedge Hyssop.* It has a Root which is small, long, and white, spreading it self under Ground several ways, which perishes not in Winter, nor runs like the last, but spreads forth new Branches every Year; from this Root springs up one or more small Stalks, about half a Foot high, round, but crested as it were all the length, which spread forth other smaller Branches, on which do grow many small Leaves, set by couples one against another, being something broad, but very short withal, seeming almost round, and ending in a sharp point, a little dented about the edges; at the Joints with the Leaves come forth the Flowers, every one by it self, on a small Footstalk, being in form somewhat like unto the last, a gaping Flower, but shorter, of a pale reddish color, spotted in the middle of the lower Leaf with many small white spots; after the Flowers are fallen come in their places Seed Vessels, in shape something like unto the Nut of a Cross-Bow, in which is contained small yellowish Seed; the taste of this Plant is as extremely bitter as the last; this Herb is also referred to the *Gratiola Latifolia*, as well for the resemblance of the Flower to the last before described, as for the bitterness thereof.

VI. *The Places.* The first has been found growing naturally in several places of *England* in moist and wet Grounds, as at *Dorchester* in *Oxfordshire*, at the back side of the enclosed Grounds, on the Left Hand of the Town, as you go from thence to *Oxford*, in the Grassie places of the *Champion Corn Fields*; the second grows likewise in several places of this Land, in wet low Grounds, and by Water sides; the third is not known to grow in any other Country but in *England*, so far as we can yet hear or learn; and it was first found out by *Gerard*, who called it simply *Gratiola Latifolia*, in wet boggy Grounds among the Grass; I found it (says he) growing on the Bog or Marsh Ground at the farther end of *Hampstead Heath*, and upon the same Heath towards *London*, near unto the Head of the Springs that were digged Anno 1590. for Water to be conveyed to that City.

VII. *The Times.* The two first Flower in *June* and *July*, the third in *July* and *August*, their Seeds ripening in a short time after their Flowers are past.

VIII. *As to their Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues,* Authors have said nothing; the



the first of these has never yet been applied to any Medicinal use by any Author that I could ever yet see, nor yet the second or third Kinds, but their bitterness coming so near to that of the *Gratiola Vera*, or *True Hedge Hyssop*, induces me to think that they must have some of the Virtues of the *True Hedge Hyssop*, and if they be not full out so effectual to Purge, yet by their bitterness they may be Aperitive, and have a virtue to open the obstructions of the Viscera, and cleanse them from their pituitous and viscous Excrements; they may also by the same bitterness be Analeptick, and so strengthen the Stomach, and other Bowels, restoring their depraved Tone, &c.

C H A P. CCCXC.

Of JACK-by-HEDGE,

O R,

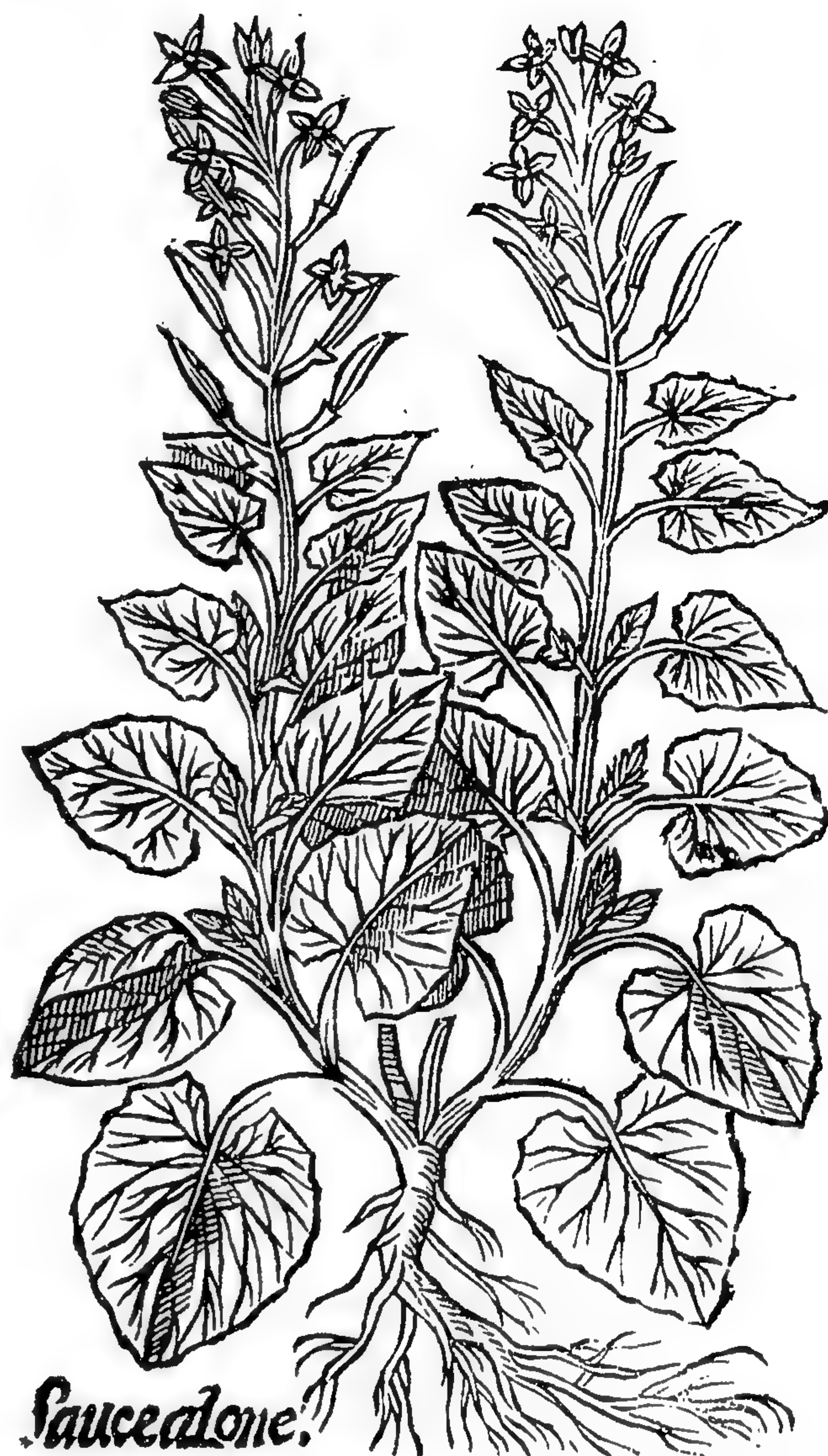
SAUCE-ALONE.

**I. THE Names.** This seems to be a Novel Plant, not known to the Greeks, and therefore has no Greek Name, the Latines call it *Alliaria*, Gesner in *Hortus Alliastrum*, and *Ericius Cordus Rima Marina*, which is the *Rima Marina Anguilare*, and *Alethorolophus Plinij*, as Dalechampius and Lobel thought; some take it to be *Tblaspidium Crateva*, as also *Tblaspidium Cornutum Tragi*, because they answer to its description; we in English call it *Jack-by-Hedge*, and *Sawce-alone*, because it serves of it self for Sawce, instead of many others.

**II. The Kinds.** Some would have it to be *Scordium*, but that it is not, others *Scordij Species*, a Kind of *Scordium*, or *Water Germander*, but indeed it has no relation to any of those Plants, that being a real mistake of former Authors; it is a singular Plant of its Kind, which Gerard says is Named of some *Pes Asininus*, Asses Foot, and may be called (says he) in Latine *Allium non bulbosum*, a Kind of *Garlick*, so esteemed from its smell; it seems to be, 1. *Alliaria Communis, vel minor*, The Common Jack-by-Hedge. 2. *Alliaria major*, The Greater Kind.

**III. The Descriptions.** The first, or Common Jack-by-Hedge. It has a long slender Root, which is fibrous or stringy, and thready, perishing every Year after it has given Seed; from this Root rise up several slender Stalks, about a Foot and half high, the Leaves are broad, of a light green color, nicked round about, and sharp pointed; the lower Leaves are rounder than those which grow upward towards the tops of the Stalks, and are set singly one at a Joint, being longish round the higher they grow, and also pointed at the ends, and dented about the edges, tho' somewhat less dented than those growing below, they somewhat resemble *Nettle Leaves* for the form, but are of a fresher green color, and not rough or pricking; upon the Branches of the Stalks near the tops grow very small white Flowers, one above another, like *Rocket*, which being past come small, slender, and round long Pods, not very much unlike to those of *Flixweed*, saving that these are rougher, and grow somewhat closer to the Stalk, in these Pods are contained small, round, and somewhat blackish Seed; this Plant raises it self every Year again of its own sowing, and it has affinity to

*Garlick* in its Name, yet not in Name only, but in its smell, for any part of it being bruised smells of *Garlick*, but more pleasantly, and tastes something hot, sharp, and biting, almost like unto *Rocket*, for which reason it becomes an admirable Sawce, to such as love that taste.



**IV. The second, or Greater Kind of Jack-by-Hedge,** has like Roots, Stalks, Leaves, Branches, Flowers, and Seed, and the same manner of growing, and differs only in this, that the Leaves grow larger and rounder.

**V. The Places.** It grows of it self by Garden Hedges, by old Walls, by high Way sides, and sometimes in the borders of Fields, in most places of this Kingdom.

**VI. The Times.** It Flowers chiefly in June and July, and the Seed grows ripe in the mean season, or not long after the Flowers are gone; the Leaves are used for Sawce in March and April.

**VII. The Qualities.** It is hot and dry in the third degree, and is repleat with much Salt, Sulphur, and Mercury, it is Incisive, Aperitive, Attractive, Absterfitive, Carminative, Digestive, Discussive, and Diuretick, Neurotick, Stomack, Pectoral, Nephritick, and Hyfterick, Ptarmick, Emmenagogick, and Alexipharmick.

**VIII. The Specification.** It is peculiar against the Scurvy, Coughs, Colds, Wheezing, shortness of Breath, Stone, Strangury, Colick, and Fits of the Mother.

**IX. The Preparations.** You may have therefrom, 1. A Juice of the Leaves and Roots. 2. An Essence of the same. 3. An Infusion or Decoction in Water or Wine. 4. A Syrup. 5. The Root. 6. The Seed bruised, or infused in Wine. 7. A Cataplasim. 8. An Acid Tincture. 9. A Spirituous Tincture. 10. An Oily Tincture. 11. A Saline Tincture. 12. A Spirit. 13. A Sawce.

The Virtues.

**X. The Liquid Juice.** Taken from a Spoonful to two or three Spoonfuls in a Glass of White Port, Madera,



Madera, or Canary Wines, it provokes Urine, helps the Strangury, expels Gravel, Sand, Tartarous Mucilage, eases the Colick, and suppresses Vapors and Fits of the Mother.

XI. *The Essence.* It has all the former Virtues, besides which it potently resists the Scurvy, Dropsie, Jaundice, and Gout, resists Vomiting, strengthens the Stomach, causes a good Appetite and a strong Digestion; it admirably corrects Crudities, warms the Stomach, and restores the Tone thereof being hurt or weakened. Dose one, two, or three Spoonfuls Morning and Night, (and sometimes at Noon) in a Glass of generous Wine.

XII. *The Infusion or Decoction.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but much weaker, and therefore may be given to six or eight Ounces Morning and Night; but the Infusion is better than the Decoction, because consisting mostly of volatile parts, those by boiling will evaporate away in a great measure, whereas by a close infusion they may be all preserved.

XIII. *The Syrup.* It ought to be made with clarified Honey, and then it will be as good as *Erysimum*, or *Hedge-Mustard*, to warm the Stomach, and ease Coughs, Colds, help Wheezings, shortness of Breath, and difficulty of breathing, as also to help Catarrhs, and to cause expectoration of thick rough Flegm and putrid Humors out of the Breast and Lungs.

XIV. *The Root.* It tastes sharp, like unto *Radish* Roots, and therefore may be used in the same manner and to the same purposes; if it is scraped thin, and the scrapings are put into Wine Vinegar, with a little Salt, it makes a very good Sauce for Meat: The Juice of the Root given in White Wine is excellent against the Colick, Strangury, Stone, &c. it gives ease also in all those Cases if exhibited in a Clyster, &c.

XV. *The Seed bruised, or infused in Wine.* It is a present Remedy for a vehement pain in the Stomach, as also for the Colick, Strangury, Stone, Gravel, or any Tartarous Matter obstructing the Urinary passages; it suppresses Vapors, abates Melancholy, and cures Hysterick Fits. Dose of the Seed from half a Dram to a Dram and half, either in substance (mixed with Honey) or in infusion in Wine.

XVI. *The Cataplasm.* Made of the green Leaves, or of Leaves and Root, and applied to old running Sores and foul Ulcers, whether in the Legs, Arms, or other parts, it abates the pain (if any) cleanses the Sore or Ulcer, dries them, and induces a speedy healing.

XVII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is possibly one of the greatest Medicines in the World against the Scurvy, it restores the Tone of the Stomach, strengthens it, causes a good Appetite and Digestion, suppresses Vapors, and has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice and Essence above declared; it is also Antifebrile, and Alexipharmick, it cures all sorts of hot, burning, and putrid Fevers, and all such as are pestilential, and is powerful even against the Plague itself; it resists Poyson internally taken, or otherwise given by the bitings of mad Dogs, Vipers, or other Serpents, or other venomous Creatures, being inwardly taken, and outwardly applied to the parts wounded, by bathing. Dose so many drops as may make a Glass of generous Wine, or other proper Vehicle, pleasantly acid or sharp, and to be repeated three or four times a day, or as oft as need requires.

XVIII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It is Cephalick, Neurotick, Stomack, Cardiack, and Hysterick; it warms and comforts the Head, Brain, Nerves, and Stomach, cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, and is powerful against fainting and swooning Fits, Convulsions, Palsies, Vertigo, Lethargy, Carus, Coma,

Epilepsie, Hysterick Passion, and other Diseases of like kind affecting any of those parts; it causes a good Appetite and Digestion, gives present ease in the Colick, and alleviates pains of the Stomach and gripings of the Guts arising from cold, crude, and undigested Humors. Dose from half a Spoonful to a Spoonful, or more, two or three times a day, in a Glass of generous Wine.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Infusion, and Tinctures, and may be given from eight drops to twenty drops, or more, being first dropped into and mixed with White Sugar, and then mixed with a Glass of Wine, or other proper Vehicle; it is a potent thing against the Stone, Gravel, Sand, or Tartarous Matter obstructing the Reins or Urinary passages, it gives ease in the Colick and Strangury, and is a present Remedy against the Pleurisie, Stitches in the Side, and other like pains of the *Thorax* and Stomach; it cures Cramps by anointing therewith, and is of excellent use against Convulsion Fits in Elder Persons, as also against Vapors, and obstructions of the Womb; it provokes the Terms, and facilitates the Birth of Women in Labor, bringing away the Afterbirth or dead Child; it gives present ease in after pains anointed upon the lower parts of the Belly, and taken inwardly in a Glass of Canary; it prevails against the Palsie taken daily in Wine, bathing the Back Bone therewith, together with the parts affected, and continuing the use thereof for some considerable time; it also gives ease in the Gout.

XX. *The Saline Tincture.* It seems to be a Specifick against Arthritick pains, proceeding either from a hot or cold cause; it is good against Spots, Marks, Tanning, Sunburning, black and blewness, and other discolorings of the Skin, it removes yellowness of the Scarf Skin, Freckles, Lentils, Scurf, Morpew, and other like deformities of the *Cutis*, but it must be made pretty strong, and applied two or three times a day, and suffered to dry on, for by that means the fuliginous matter will be drawn forth, and the Skin will peel off in manner of Scurf, leaving a fine, young, tender, pure, clear Skin underneath.

XXI. *The Spirit.* It is truly Cordial, Neurotick, Cephalick, and Hysterick, it revives the Spirits, cheers the Heart, and refreshes the whole Universal Man; it is good against Convulsions in Children and Elder People, prevails against Palsies, Apoplexies, Lethargies, Epilepsies, and Pleurisies, giving in those Diseases present relief; it is singular against Vapors and Fits of the Mother, and wonderfully resists and restores out of Fainting and Swooning Fits; it is strongly Aperitive, and removes the obstructions of the Lungs, Liver, Spleen, Reins, and Womb, dissolving the congelation of Humors causing the same. Dose from one Dram to two or three Drams in Wine, or any other fit Vehicle.

XXII. *The Sauce.* It is made of the Leaves shred small, or of the Root scraped, or of their Juice expressed, adding a proportional quantity of White Sugar, Wine Vinegar, and Salt. Being thus compounded it is eaten in the Spring Time with Meat, as Mutton, Lamb, Beef, Veal, &c. either boiled or roasted; it corrects Crudities, expels Wind, strengthens the Stomach, creates a good Appetite, and causes a good Digestion.

---

JACINTH *English*, See *Haresbells English* Ch. 335.

---



C H A P. CCCXCI.

## Of JACINTH American.

**I.** *THE Names.* This Plant its general Name is called in *Greek* *ῥάκινθος*, in *Latine* *Hyacinthus*, in *English* *Jacynth*, and *Hyacinth*; the *Spaniards* call it *Maios Flores*.

**II.** *The Kinds.* There are various Species of this Plant, and several sorts of each generick Kind, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Anglicus*, English Hyacinth, of which there are four Species, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Anglicus Ceruleus*, Blew English Jacinth. 2. *Hyacinthus Anglicus Albus*, White English Jacinth. 3. *Hyacinthus Anglicus Incarnato Flore*, Carnation English Jacinth. 4. *Hyacinthus Anglicus vel Hispanicus major Flore Campanulae instar*, Greater English or Spanish Jacinth; all these growing in *England* are commonly called *Haresbells*, and of which we have already treated in the foregoing part of this Book, viz. in Chap. 335. and therefore shall now overpass them in this succinct Discourse of Jacinths. 2. *Hyacinthus Americanus*, American or West Indian Jacinth, of which there are two Kinds, which are the peculiar Subject of this present Chapter. 3. *Hyacinthus Botroides*, Grape Flowered Jacinth, of which there are six Species, Treated of in Chap. 392. 4. *Hyacinthus Botroides Muscatus*, Musk'd Grape Flowered Jacinth, of which there are four Species, which are Treated of in Chap. 393. 5. *Hyacinthus Comosus*, The Haired Jacinth, of which there are five Species, which are Treated of in Chap. 394. 6. *Hyacinthus Orientalis*, The Oriental Jacinth, of which there are eight Species, which are Treated of in Chap. 395. 7. *Hyacinthus Orientalis Flore duplici*, Double Oriental Jacinth, of which there are three Species, and are Treated of in Chap. 396. 8. *Hyacinthus Aestivus*, The Summer Jacinth, of which there are five Species, and are Treated of in Chap. 397. 9. *Hyacinthus Fuscus*, The Brown or Dun Colored Jacinth, of which there are three Species, and are Treated of in Chap. 398. 10. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Peruanus*, West Indian Starry Jacinth, of which are four Species, and are Treated of in Chap. 399. 11. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Vulgaris*, The Common Starry Jacinth, of which there are seven Kinds, and are Treated of in Chap. 400. 12. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Byzantinus*, The Turkey Starry Jacinth, of which are four Species, and are Treated of in Chap. 401. 13. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Autumnalis*, The Autumn Jacinth, of which there are three Species, and are Treated of in Chap. 402. 14. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Lilifolius*, The Lilly Leav'd Starry Jacinth, of which there are three Species, and are Treated of in Chap. 403. I know some Authors account the *Squill* or *Sea Onion* in the Classis of Jacinths, making it a Marsh or Sea Kind, but I am of a contrary Opinion, and therefore shall not rank it with those aforegoing, but Treat of it hereafter in its proper place of the Alphabet.

**III.** *The Kinds of the American Jacinth.* There are only two Species of this, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Indicus vel Americanus major Radice Tuberosa*, The Greater American Tuberosé Rooted or Knobbed Jacinth. 2. *Hyacinthus Indicus vel Americanus minor Radice Tuberosa*, The Lesser American Tuberosé Rooted or Knobbed Jacinth. *Clusius* leaves out the Word *minor* in the Name of the second, because, as it is thought, he never knew or heard of the first; some would have these *Hyacinths* to be *Hyacinthi Eriophori Indici*, The Indian Woolly Jacinth, be-

cause when they are broken they have much Wooll in them, which I think to be a mistake; and some think that these two Plants are not two severals, as greater and lesser, but that the greatness of the one is caused by the goodness or richness of the Soil where it grows, but whoso shall consider the particular Description of each, and compare them, will soon become of another Mind.

**IV.** *The Descriptions.* The first, or Greater American Tuberosé Rooted Jacinth. It has a thick knobbed Root, (yet formed into several Heads, somewhat like unto bulbous Roots) with many thick Fibres at the bottoms of them; from the divers Heads of which Root rise up several strong and very tall Stalks, beset with divers fair, long, and broad Leaves, joined at the bottom close unto the Stalk, where they are greatest, and grow smaller to the very end, and those which grow higher to the top being smaller and smaller, which being broken many fine Threads appear like Wooll in them; the tops of the Stalks are beautified with many fair, large, white Flowers, each of which does consist of six Leaves, lying spread open, as the Flowers of the *White Daffodil*, with some short Threads in the middle, and of a very sweet smell, so sweet as some account it strong and heady; this is the greatest and tallest of all the *Jacinths*, and the Flowers are something near in resemblance unto those of the *Daffodil*, but its Root is tuberosé, as aforesaid, and not bulbous, as all the rest are.

**V.** *The second, or Lesser American Tuberosé Rooted Jacinth.* The Root of this Jacinth is knobbed, like the Root of *Arum*, or *Wake-Robin*, or like the Root of the *Carolina Eddo*, from whence many Fibres spring forth; from this Root come forth many Leaves, lying upon the Ground, and encompassing one another at bottom, being long and narrow, and hollow guttered to the ends, which are small and pointed, and no less woolly and full of Threads than the former; from the middle of these Leaves rises up a Stalk, which is very long and slender, three or four Feet in height, which, unless it is propped up, will bend down, and lie upon the Ground, on which are set at certain distances many short Leaves, being broad at the bottom, where they do almost encompass the Stalk, and are smaller towards the end, where it is sharp pointed; at the top of the Stalk stand many Flowers, with a small piece of a green Leaf at the bottom of every footstalk, which seem to be so many *White Oriental Jacinths*, being composed of six Leaves, which are much thicker than the former, with six Chives or Threads in the middle, tipped with pale yellow Pendants.

**VI.** *The Places.* They both grow naturally in the *West Indies*, from whence they were first brought into *Spain*, and from thence have been brought to us, and into several other parts of *Europe*.

**VII.** *The Times.* They Flower not in *England* and other like cold Countries till the middle of *August*, and sometimes not at all, unless they be carefully preserved from the injuries of our cold Winters, and then if the precedent Summer has been hot they may Flower a Month sooner.

**VIII.** *The Qualities.* They are cold and drying in the first degree, or beginning of the second, Astringent and Diuretick.

**IX.** *The Specification.* They stop fluxes of the Bowels, give ease and relief in the Strangury, and are profitable against the Jaundice and Kings-Evil; the Roots are only of use in Medicine, but being often used are thought to cause Barrenness; but 'tis certain, that being taken inwardly by Young Persons it keeps them from growing ripe too soon.

X. The



X. *The Preparations.* There are but few Preparations from these Plants, viz. about five, 1. *A Liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Decoction or Infusion.* 4. *A Powder.* 5. *An Ointment.*

*The Virtues.*

XI. *The Liquid Juice.* It cools and abates Fevers, and given in Red Florence or Port Wine stops fluxes of the Bowels; given in White Port Wine, or Parsly, or Arsmart Water, it cleanses all the Urinary passages, provokes Urine, and cures the Strangury; given in Milk of Hempseed made with Parsly Water it prevails against the Jaundice, and daily taken in Mutton Broth, or a gentle Infusion of Sena, it eradicates the Kings-Evil. Dose from one Spoonful to two, or more, increasing the Dose gradually, as you find the Patients Body does agree with it.

XII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, and is something more prevalent than it, for which reason it is to be given in a lesser Dose, but in the same manner, and in the same Vehicles, and may be given twice a day, as you see need requires, or the Constitution of Body will bear it.

XIII. *The Decoction or Infusion.* It may be made in Arsmart Water, or Parsly Water, in which a Scruple or half a Dram of Salt of Tartar is dissolved, or in White or Red Port Wine, (according to the Intention) or in a mixture of the former Waters with those Wines, as the Physician in Prudence shall direct; they have all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but must be given in a much larger Dose, viz. from three Ounces to eight Ounces, according to Age, &c.

XIV. *The Powder.* It may be given for all the Purposes that any of the foregoing Preparations are given for. Dose from half a Dram to a Dram, or Dram and half, once or twice a day in any proper Vehicle, it does not so speedily pass off as those liquid things do, but commonly lies longer in the Stomach, and if the Stomach is weak, or foul, will be apt sometimes to make it sick; outwardly applied to old running Sores, or putrid Ulcers, also Ulcers of the Kings-Evil, it cleanses them and dries up their humidities, and induces them to a speedy healing.

XV. *The Ointment.* It is good to heal old Sores and Ulcers, but is chiefly good against Tumors and Ulcers of the Kings-Evil, for by anointing them first therewith Morning and Evening, chafing the Ointment well in, it insensibly consumes those Kernels or Swellings, and in time perfectly dissolves them; and if you mix therewith Pouders of Scammony and Tobacco, *ana*, and apply it to strumous Ulcers, it cleanses, takes away dead or proud Flesh, dries them up, and quickly heals them.

XVI. *Nota.* What we have said of the Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues of these *Tuberose Jacinths*, the same is to be understood of all the *Bulbous Jacinths* hereafter following, (excepting only the *Musk Grape Flowered Jacinth* in Chap. 393. which is said to be the *Bulbus Vomitorius Dioscoridis*, and the *Lilly Leav'd Starry Jacinth* in Chap. 422.) and this I thought good to give notice of here once for all, that in the following Chapters of this Plant we might not often repeat the same in vain.

C H A P. CCCXCII.

Of J A C I N T H Grape Flowered.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *ῥαυδάς* *Coruadns*, in Latine *Hyacinthus Botroides*, and in English *Grape Flowered Jacinth*.

II. *The Kinds.* The *Grape Flowered Jacinth* has two principal or generick Kinds, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Botroides vel Racematus non Moschatus*, The *Grape Flowered Jacinth* not Musk'd, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Hyacinthus Botroides vel Racematus Moschatus*, The Musk'd *Grape Flowered Jacinth*, of which in the Chapter following.

III. *The Kinds of the Grape Flowered Jacinth not Musk'd.* Of this there are these six varieties, 1. *Hyacinthus Botroides vel Racematus minor Ceruleus obscurus*, The Lesser dark Blew Colored *Grape Flowered Jacinth*. 2. *Hyacinthus Racematus major Ceruleus*, The Greater dark Blew Colored *Grape Flowered Jacinth*. 3. *Hyacinthus Botroides Ceruleus Amanus*, The Pleasant Sky Colored *Grape Flowered Jacinth*. 4. *Hyacinthus Botroides Ramosus*, The Branched *Grape Flowered Jacinth*. 5. *Hyacinthus Botroides Flore albo*, The White *Grape Flowered Jacinth*. 6. *Hyacinthus Botroides Flore albo rubente*, The Blush *Grape Flowered Jacinth*.



IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Lesser dark Blew Colored *Grape Flowered Jacinth*. It has a Root which is round, and blackish without, being encompassed with a number of small Roots or Off-sets round about it, so that it will quickly choak a Ground if it is suffered long in it, for which cause many do cast it out into some by corner, if they intend to preserve it, or else cast it out of the Garden quite; it has many small and fat weak Leaves, lying upon the Ground, which are somewhat brownish at their first coming.



coming up, and of a sad green afterwards, hollow on the upper side and round underneath, from among which rise up round, smooth, weak Stalks, bearing at the top many small, heavy, Bottle-like Flowers, in shape like to the *Muscari* (in the following Chapter) but very thick thrust together, smaller, and of a very dark or blackish blew color, of a very strong smell, like unto *Starch* when it is new made and hot.



*Jacinth* *Grape*  
=*flowered* *great.*

V. The second, or Greater dark Blew Colored Grape Flowered Jacinth. This Plant in its Root, Leaves, Stalk, Flowers, Color, and manner of growing, is in all respects like unto the Lesser before described, and differs nothing from it but in the magnitude, this in its Stalk, Leaves, and Flowers, being greater than them.

VI. The third, or Sky Colored Grape Flowered Jacinth. The Root of this is whiter than the former, but does not increase so much as it, yet produces plenty enough of Plants; it springs up with fewer Leaves than the first, and not reddish, but green at its first appearing; the Leaves when they are full grown are long and hollow, like the first, but greener, shorter, and broader, standing upright, and not lying along upon the Ground as they do; the Flowers grow at the top of the Stalk, more sparsely set thereon, and not so thick together, but like a thin Bunch of Grapes, and Bottle like, as the former, of a perfect Blew, or Sky Color, every Flower having some white spots about their brims, this has a very sweet smell, yet nothing like the foregoing.

VII. The fourth, or Branched Grape Flowered Jacinth. This is a true Species of the former Kinds, and is found to grow with many Branches of Flowers, breaking out from the sides of the greater Stalks or Branches; the Leaves, as is all the rest of this Plant, are greater than the former.

VIII. The fifth, or White Grape Flowered Jacinth. It has a bulbous Root, as the others, its Leaves are green, but a little whiter than the Blew or Sky Colored Jacinth; its Flowers are purely white, and

alike sparsely set on the Stalks, but a little lower and smaller than it; in all other things there is no difference.

IX. The sixth, or Blush Grape Flowered Jacinth. The bulbous Root of this Grape Flower is greater than either of the Roots of the Sky Colored or White foregoing, and has seldom any small Roots or Off-sets as the others have; its Leaves also are larger, and somewhat broader, the Flowers are of a pale, or bleak blush Color out of a white, and are a little larger, and grow a little higher, and fuller of Flowers than the White.

X. The Places. They are Natives of many places of Germany and Hungary, and grow also in Spain, and on Mount Baldus in Italy, and near Narbone in France, about the borders of Fields, with us they grow only in Gardens.

XI. The Times. They Flower from the beginning of March, and sometimes sooner if the Weather is mild, and continue Flowering till the beginning of May.

## C H A P. CCCXCIII.

### Of JACINTH Grape Flower Musked.

I. THE Names. It is called in Arabick *Zir*, in the Turkish Language *Dipcadi*, and *Moschoromi*, by which Names they were sent to us from Turkey, in Greek *ῥάκινθος κοτρυβάδης μοσχάδης*, in Latine *Hyacinthus Botroides Moschatus*, and in English The Musked Grape Flowered Jacinth.

II. The Kinds. There are four several sorts of this Musked Plant, viz. 1. *Βόλβοι ἐμετικὸς*, *Bulbus Emeticus*, *Hyacinthus Botroides Moschatus major*, *Hyacinthus Moschatus Baubini*, *Muscari*, and *Muscari Flore flavo*, The Greater Yellow Musked Grape Flowered Jacinth, or Yellow Muscari. 2. *Hyacinthus Botroides Moschatus major*, seu *Muscari Flore Cineritio*, The Great Ash Colored Musked Grape Flowered Jacinth. 3. *Hyacinthus Botroides Moschatus major*, seu *Muscari Flore rubro*, The Great Red Musked Grape Flowered Jacinth. 4. *Hyacinthus Botroides Moschatus major*, seu *Muscari Flore albo*, The Great White Musked Grape Flowered Jacinth.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Greater Yellow Musked Grape Flowered Jacinth. It has a Root which is long, round, and very thick, and white on the outside, with a little woolliness thereon when broken, and full of a slimy juice, to which are adjoined thick, fat, and long Fibres, which perish not, as in most of the other Jacinths, and therefore need not to be often removed, as some of the other sorts are: This Musked Jacinth, or Grape Flower, has five or six Leaves spread upon the Ground in two or three Heads, which at the first budding or shooting forth out of the Ground are of a reddish purple color, and afterwards become long, thick, hollow, or guttered on the upper side, of a whitish green color, and round, and dark colored underneath; in the middle of these Heads of Leaves rise up one or two hollow, weak, brownish Stalks, sometimes lying on the Ground with the weight of the Flowers, (but especially of the Seed) yet for the most part standing upright when they are laden towards the top with many Bottle like Flowers, which at their first appearing, and until the Flowers begin to blow open, are of a brown red color, and when they are blown of a



fair yellow, flowering first below, and so upwards by degrees; every one of these Flowers is made like unto a little Pitcher or Bottle, being big in the belly and small at the mouth, which is round, and a little turned up, very sweet in smell, like unto Musk, from whence it took the Name *Muscari*; after the Flowers are past there come threesquare thick Heads, puffed up, like as it were Bladders, made of a spongy substance, in which are here and there placed black round Seed.

IV. *The second, or Great Ash Colored Musk Grape Flowered Jacinth.* It has a Root like the former, but yields more increase, and will better endure our cold Climate, altho' it does more seldom give ripe Seed: This *Muscari* differs not in Roots or form of Leaves or Flowers from the former, excepting in these following particulars, the Leaves do not appear so red at first budding out of the Ground, nor are so dark when they are fully grown, the Stalk also has commonly more store of Flowers thereon, the color of which at their first budding is a little dusky, and when they are full blown are of a bleak, yet bright Ash color, with a little shew of purple in them, and by long standing change a little more grey, being full as sweet, or sweeter, as some think, than the former.

V. *The third, or Great Red Musk Grape Flowered Jacinth.* This Plant in its Root, Leaves, Stalk, Flowers, Seed, and manner of growing, is absolutely like to the first, excepting only in the color of the Flowers, for that this when its Flowers are blown are of a red color, tending to a yellow.

VI. *The fourth, or Great White Musk Grape Flowered Jacinth.* The Root of this (as well as the Root of the third foregoing) does not usually grow so large as the Root of either of the first two, in all other respects it is like to them; the Leaves are like unto the second kind, but they are of a little whiter green, the Flowers also are like in form and manner of growing, but of a pale color, tending to a white.

VII. *The Places.* The Roots of the two first have often been brought from *Constantinople* to us, and possibly may come thither from beyond the *Bosphorus* in *Asia*, but with us they are nursed up only in Gardens; the latter two sorts are thought to be degenerates from the first two Kinds, to wit, from their Seed coming to ripeness in our Country, and so sown here.

VIII. *The Times.* They Flower in *March* and *April*, according to the warmth or temperature of the Season, but the first of them springs first out of the Ground.

IX. *The Qualities and Virtues.* *Galen Lib. 8. Simp. Med.* says its temperature is hotter than that of the *Bulbus Esculentus*, or *Ornithogalum luteum*, and *Dioscorides* says that the Root eaten, or the Decoction thereof drunk, cures Diseases of the Bladder, but that it causes Vomiting, without doubt it ought to be applied by a Wise and Prudent Hand; outwardly, made into an Ointment, it is good against the Kings-Evil, for by daily anointing therewith it dissolves and consumes those scrophulous Tumors, Kernels, or Swellings.

II. *The Kinds.* There are five several sorts of the Haired Kind, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Comosus albus*, The White Haired Jacinth. 2. *Hyacinthus Comosus Byzantinus*, The Turkey Fair Haired Jacinth. 3. *Hyacinthus Comosus major purpureus*, of some its called only *Hyacinthus major*, and of others *Hyacinthus Comosus major*, but we in English call it The Purple, or Great Purple Fair Haired Jacinth, because of its Tufts or Tassels of purple Threads like Hairs at the top. 4. *Hyacinthus Comosus Ramosus purpureus*, some call it only *Hyacinthus Comosus Ramosus*, others *Hyacinthus Calamistratus*, others *Hyacinthus Comosus Parnassi*, The Fair Haired Branched Jacinth. 5. *Hyacinthus Comosus Elegantior*, *Hyacinthus Comosus Ramosus Elegantior*, *Hyacinthus Pennatus*, and *Hyacinthus Comosus Parnassi*, Fair Curled Haired Jacinth; some will have it to be called also *Hyacinthus Calamistratus*, others think *Cincinnatus* more fit and proper, for that the curled Threads which seem like Hairs are better expressed by the Word *Cicinnus*, which signifies the curled bush of Hair it self, than by the Word *Calamistrum*, which signifies only the Crisping-Pin or Instrument, wherewith of Old they used to frizze or curl the Hair.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or White Haired Jacinth. It has a bulbous blackish Root, a little long and round, from whence rise up three or four Leaves, smooth and whitish, long, narrow, and hollow, like a Trough or Gutter on the upper side; from among which springs up the Stalk, about a Foot or more high, bearing at the top several Flowers, small, and somewhat like to the Grape Flower, but not so thick set together, being a little longer and larger, and wider at the mouth, and as it were divided into six edges, of a dark whitish color, with some blacker spots about the brims on the inside; the Heads or Seed Vessels are threesquare, and somewhat larger than the Heads of any of the former Lesser Grape Flowers in Chap. 392. in which are contained round black Seed; this Jacinth does more nearly resemble

C H A P. CCCXCIV.

Of J A C I N T H Haired.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *ῥάινθος*, in Latine *Hyacinthus Comosus*, in English The Haired Jacinth.



seem the *Grape Flowered Jacinths* just above named than the *Hair Flowered Jacinths* which follow, and which Name it bears for that it has no Hairs or Threads at the top of the Stalk, or sides, as they have; but because Authors have given it this Name we thought not fit to change it, and therefore have put it into the Classis of *Haired Jacinths*, as some others have done.

## *Jacinth Haired Fair White, or Turkey.*



IV. *The second, or Turkey Fair Haired Jacinth.* It has a bulbous Root, like the former, but it is bigger, and larger also in its Leaf and Flower, and bears greater store of Flowers on the head of the Stalk; the lower Flowers, altho' they have short Stalks at their first flowering, yet afterwards the Stalks grow longer, and those which are lower stand out farther than those which are highest, whose footstalks are short, and almost close to the Stem, and of a more perfect Purple than any below, which are of a dusky, greenish, Purple Color; the whole Stalk of Flowers does sometimes seem like a *Pyramis*, broad below and small above, yet neither of these *Jacinths* have any Threads at the tops of the Stalks, as the others following have; this *Jacinth* came from *Constantinople*, and is something like to that before described, saving that it is every way bigger.

V. *The third, or Great Purple Fair Haired Jacinth.* It has a great bulbed white Root, with some redness on the outside; it is a Fair Haired *Jacinth*, whose Leaves are softer, longer, broader, and less hollow than the former, lying for the most part upon the Ground; the Stalk rises up from amidst the Leaves, being stronger, higher, and bearing a greater and longer Head of Flowers also than they; the Flowers of this stand not upon such very long Footstalks, but are shorter below, and close almost to the Stalk above, having many bright, purplish, blew Threads, growing highest above the Flowers, as it were in a bush together, every one of these Threads having a little Head at its end, somewhat like unto one of the Flowers, but much smaller; the rest of the Flowers below this Bush are of a sadder or deader Purple, and not of so bright a Color, and the lowest worst of all, rather inclining to a green, like unto the last Turkey Kind; the whole Stalk with the Flowers up-

on it does somewhat resemble a long Purse Tassel, and therefore several Persons have so Named it; the Heads and Seeds are like to that just aforegoing, but greater.

VI. *The fourth, or Fair Haired Branched Jacinth.* Its Root is greater and shorter than that of the next, and encreases faster; the Leaves hereof are broader, shorter, and greener than of the last, not lying so weakly on the Ground, but standing something more upright; the Stalk rises up as high as the former, but branched out on every side into many Tufts of Threads, with Knops, as it were Heads of Flowers, at the ends of them, like unto the Head of Threads at the top of the former *Jacinth*, but of a little darker, and not so fair a blewish purple color; this *Jacinth* does sometimes resemble the next *Curl'd Hair'd Jacinth*, but that the Branches are not so fairly composed altogether of curled Threads, nor of so excellent a fair Purple, or Dove Color, but of a much more dusky hue.

VII. *The fifth, or Fair Curl'd Hair'd Jacinth.* It has a bulbous Root, not so great as the last, but white on the outside; it is an admirable *Jacinth*, and rises up with three or four Leaves, something like unto the Leaves of the *Musked Grape Flowered Jacinth*, but lesser, from between which Leaves rises up the Stalk, about a Foot high, or somewhat more, bearing at the top a Bush or Tuft of Flowers, which at the first appearing is like unto a *Cone*, or *Pine-Apple*, and afterwards opening it self spreads into many Branches, yet still retaining the form of a *Pyramis*, being broad spread below and narrow above; each of these Branches are again divided into many Tufts of Threads or Strings, twisted or curled at the ends, and of an excellent Purple or Dove Color, both Stalks and Hairs; this continues a great while in its beauty, but afterwards all these Flowers (if you will so call them) do fall away without any Seed at all, spending it self as it were in its abundance of Flowers.

VIII. *The Places.* The two first have been sent to us from *Constantinople*, the third is found wild in many places of *Europe*, as well in *Germany* as in *Italy*; the native places of the two last are as yet unknown; they all grow and are nursed up with us in Gardens only.

IX. *The Times.* The three first Species do Flower in *April*, the two last Kinds in *May*.

## C H A P. CCCXCV.

### Of J A C I N T H Oriental Single.

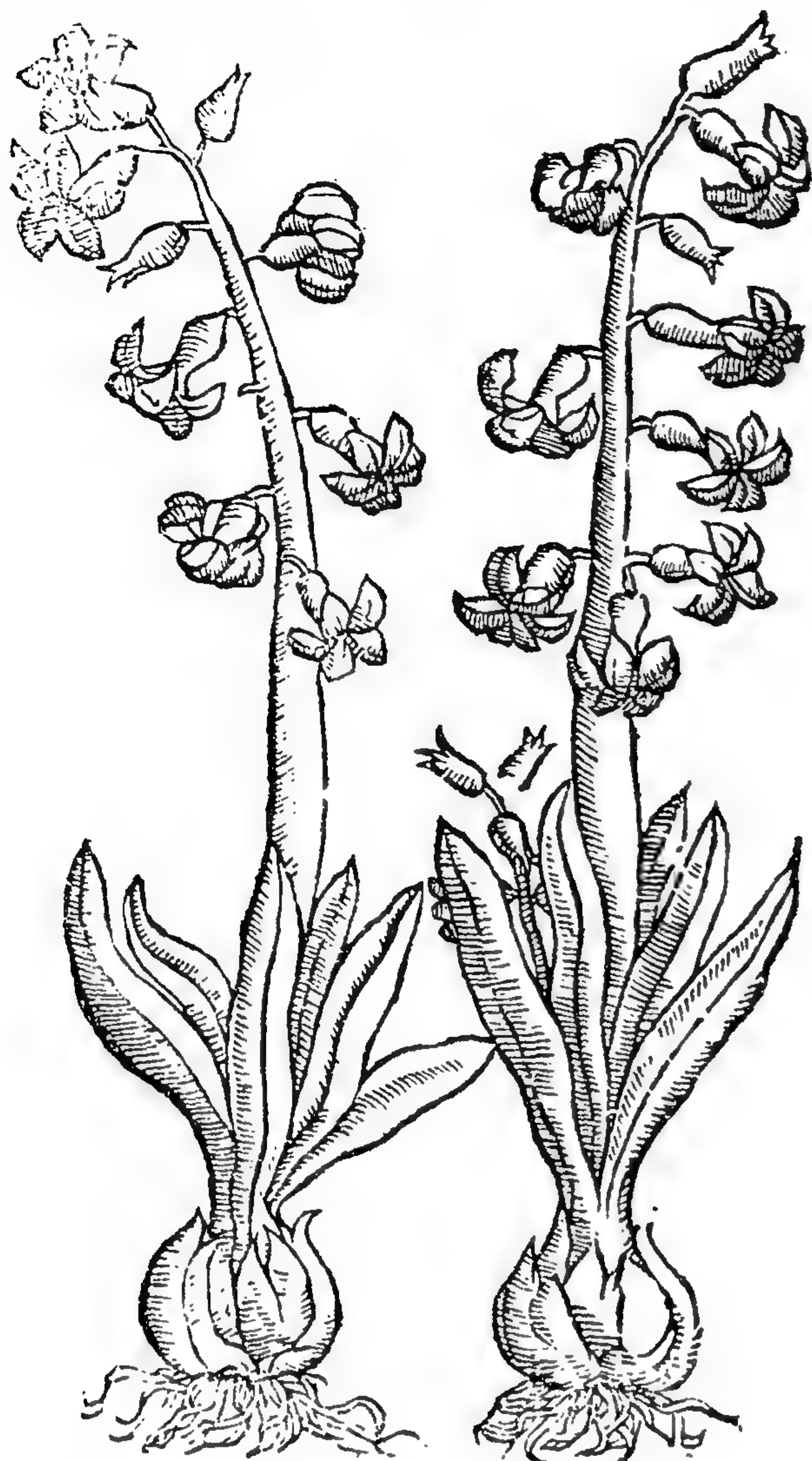
I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *ῥαζωθῆς ἀνατολικός*, in Latine *Hyacinthus Orientalis*, in English *The Oriental Jacinth*.

II. *The Kinds.* Of this there are eight several Species, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Orientalis Brumalis*, sive *Præcox Flore albo*, The White Winter Oriental Jacinth. 2. *Hyacinthus Orientalis Brumalis*, sive *Præcox Flore Purpureo vel Caruleo*, The Purple Winter Oriental Jacinth. 3. *Hyacinthus Orientalis major præcox*, distus *Zumbul Indi*, & *Indicum*, also corruptly *Simboline*; the Turks call all *Jacinths* *Zumbul*, and by adding the Title of *Arabi*, or *Indi*, shew from what place they originally came, The Greatest Oriental Jacinth. 4. *Hyacinthus Orientalis vulgaris diversorum Colorum*, The Ordinary Oriental Jacinth. 5. *Hyacinthus Orientalis Flore Purpureo Violaceo Lineis albicantis in dorso*, The Purplish Violet Oriental Jacinth. 6. *Hyacinthus Orientalis Floribus antrosum respicientibus*, The Oriental Jacinth whose Flow-

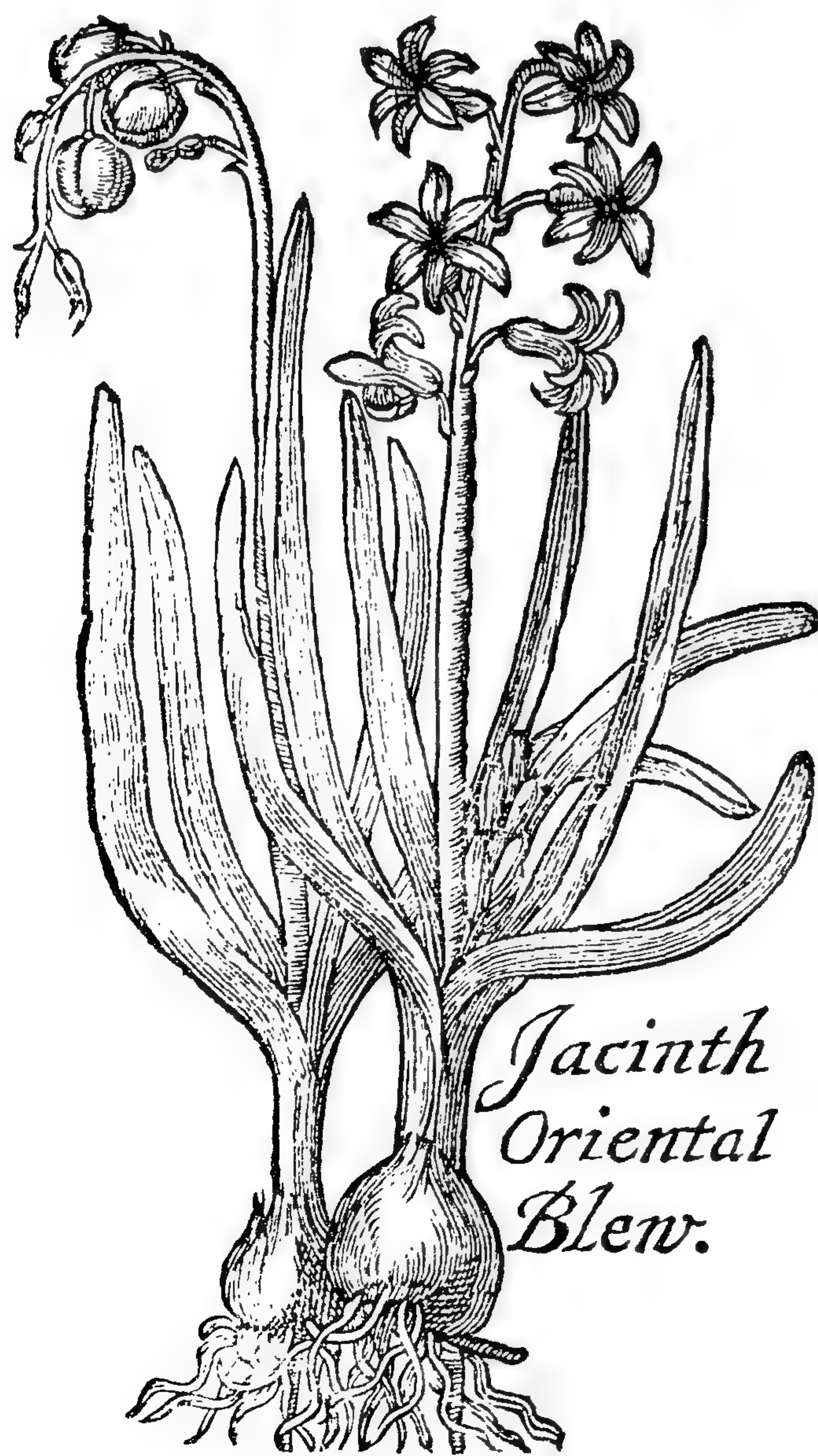


ers open all one way. 7. *Hyacinthus Orientalis serotinus Floribus erectis diversorum colorum*, The late Flowering Oriental Jacinth. 8. *Hyacinthus Orientalis Folioso Caule*, The Bushy or Leafy Stalked Oriental Jacinth.

*Jacinth Oriental Winter White.*



*Jacinth Oriental Winter Purple or Blew.*



III. The Descriptions. The first, or White Winter Oriental Jacinth. It has a bulbous Root, which

sends forth green Leaves, (which are in all respects like to the Ordinary Oriental Jacinths, but something narrower) before Winter, and sometimes is in its Flower also in the middle or beginning of Winter, and is in form and color a plain *White Oriental Jacinth*, but somewhat lesser, differing in no other particulars, but in the time of its Flowering, which is always certain to be long before the other Kinds.

IV. The second, or Purple Winter Oriental Jacinth. In its Root, Stalk, Leaf, and Flower, it is like to, and shews it self to be of the Stock or Kindred of Oriental Jacinths; the difference of color in this Flower makes it to be distinguished chiefly, and it is, as the former, more early than the rest which follow; this seems to be the very self same Kind with the former, saving that this has fine blewish purple Flowers, whereas that has white.

V. The third, or Greatest Oriental Jacinth. The Root of this Jacinth is usually greater than any other of its Kind, and most commonly white on the outside, from which rise up one or two great round Stalks, spotted from within the Ground, with the lower part of the Leaves also upward to the middle of the Stalks, or rather higher, like unto the Stalks of *Dragons*, but darker, being set among a number of broad, long, and somewhat hollow green Leaves, almost as large as the Leaves of the *White Lilly*; at the tops of the Stalks stand more store of Flowers than in any other of this Kind, every Flower being as great as the greatest sort of *Oriental Jacinths*, ending in six Leaves, which turn at the points, of a fair blewish purple color, and all standing many times on one side of the Stalks, and many times on both sides.

VI. The fourth, or Ordinary Oriental Jacinth. It has a Root which is great, and white on the outside, and oftentimes purplish also, flat at the bottom and small at the head; it has many green Leaves, long, somewhat broad, and hollow, from among which rises up a long, green, round Stalk, beset from the middle thereof almost with several Flowers, standing on both sides of the Stalks one above another unto the top, each of which next unto the Footstalk is long, hollow, round, and close, ending in six small Leaves, laid open, and a little turning at the points, of a very sweet smell; the Colors of these Flowers are divers, for some are pure white, without a shew of any other color in them, another is almost white, having a shew of blewness, especially at the brims and bottoms of the Flowers, others are again of a very faint blush, tending towards a white, some are of as deep a purple as a *Violet*, others of a purple, tending to redness, and some so pale a blew, as it were more white than blew; after the Flowers are past threesquare Heads appear, bearing round black Seed, great and shining; this is called the *Common Oriental Jacinth*, because it is now so plentifully to be found in all Gardens, that it is not very much esteemed; of this Species are the three next following sorts.

VII. The fifth, or Purple Violet Oriental Jacinth. It is very much like the fourth Kind, but its Flowers are of a deep purplish Violet color, having whitish lines down the back of every Leaf of the Flower, which turn themselves a little backwards at the points.

VIII. The sixth, or Oriental Jacinth whose Flowers open all one way. This in its Root, Stalk, and Leaves, is like the fourth Species foregoing, but in this it differs, viz. that its Flowers stand and open all one way, and not on all sides, as several other *Jacinths* do, and are therefore herein like to the *Great Zumbul Indi* before described.

IX. The seventh, or Late Flowering Oriental Jacinth. This, which seems to be a Species also of the fourth Kind, Flowers later than all the rest of them, and



and the Flowers are smaller, and stand more upright, and they are either white or blew, or mix'd with white and purple.

X. *The eighth, or Bushy or Leafy Stalked Oriental Jacinth.* This strange Jacinth has its Roots, Leaves, and Flowers, like unto the former Oriental Jacinths, but the chief difference is in this, that its Stalk is not bare or naked, but has very narrow long Leaves, growing upon it dispersedly and without order, with the Flowers thereon, which are blew, and having for the most part one Leaf, and sometimes two at the foot, or setting on of every Flower, yet sometimes it chancs some Flowers to be without any Leaf at the bottom, as it pleases Nature, which in this Plant is very variable; the Heads and Seed are black and round, like to those of the other Jacinths.

XI. *The Places.* All these Plants have been brought to us out of Turkey, and from Constantinople, but the place of their true original is scarcely known, with us they grow only in Gardens.

XII. *The Times.* The two first Flower the earliest, sometimes before Christmas, but more usually after, and thro' the whole Month of January, and later sometimes, they abide a great while in Flower, and in great beauty, more especially if the Weather is mild, when few or scarcely any other Flowers are able to appear; the third Kind Flowers also earlier than any of those which follow; the other Ordinary Kinds Flower some from the middle to the end of February, some in March, and some in April.

## C H A P. CCCXCVI.

### Of J A C I N T H Oriental Double.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *ῥάκινθος ἀνθηλός διπλός*, in Latine *Hyacinthus Orientalis duplex*, *Hyacinthus Orientalis Flore duplici*, in English *The Double Oriental Jacinth*.

II. *The Kinds.* This Double Kind is threefold, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Orientalis Flore duplici*, The Once Double Bleak Oriental Jacinth. 2. *Hyacinthus Orientalis Flore pleno Cæruleo vel Purpureo Violaceo*, The Fair Double Blew or Purple Oriental Jacinth. 3. *Hyacinthus Orientalis Flore pleno candidissimus*, The Pure White Double Oriental Jacinth.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Once Double Oriental Jacinth, has a bulbous Root, like the former Single Kinds, it has several long Leaves, like unto the other Oriental Jacinths almost, standing upright, among which rises up a Stalk, brownish at first, but growing green afterwards, bearing many Flowers at the top, made like the Flowers of the former Jacinths, and ending in six Leaves, green at the first, and of a blewish white when they are open, yet retaining some shew of greenness in them, the brims of the Leaves being white; from the midst of each Flower stands forth another small Flower, consisting of three Leaves, of the same color with the other Flower, but with a green line on the back of each of these inner Leaves; in the middle of this little Flower some Threads stand, which are tipped with black; the smell of this Flower is not so sweet as those of the former Single Kinds, but the Heads and Seed are very like to them.

IV. *The second, or Fair Double Blew or Purple Oriental Jacinth.* The Leaves of these Jacinths are

smaller than the Leaves of most of the other Oriental Sorts, whether Single or Double, the Stalks are shorter and smaller, bearing but three or four Flowers on the Heads of them for the most part, which are not composed like the last, but are more fair, full, and double of Leaves, where they shew out their full beauties, and of a fair blew color in some, and purple in others, smelling pretty sweet, but these do seldom bear out their Flowers fair, and besides have several other Flowers, which will be either single or very little double upon the very same Stalk.

V. *The third, or Pure White Double Oriental Jacinth.* This Double White Flower or Plant has its Leaves like unto the Single White Oriental Jacinth in the former Chapter, its Stalk is likewise long, slender, and green, bearing at the top two or three Flowers at most, very double, and full of Leaves, of a pure white color, without any other mixture therein, hanging down their Heads a little, and of a reasonable sweet smell.

VI. *The Places.* They came hither from Constantinople, but which is their native place of growth is uncertain, with us they are only nursed up in Gardens.

VII. *The Times.* Some of them Flower in March, and some in April, and some sooner, like as some of the latter Single Kinds do.

## C H A P. CCCXCVII.

### Of J A C I N T H Summer.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *ῥάκινθος θερινός*, in Latine *Hyacinthus Æstivus*, and in English *Summer Jacinth*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are five Kinds of the Summer Jacinth, viz. three Small Oriental Summer Jacinths, and two Starry Summer Jacinths. 1. *Hyacinthus Hispanicus minor Orientalis facie*, *Hyacinthus Orientalis serotinus minor*, The Little Summer Oriental Jacinth. 2. *Hyacinthus Hispanicus minor Flore albo*, The Small White Summer Oriental Jacinth. 3. *Hyacinthus Hispanicus minor Flore rubente*, The Small reddish Colored Oriental Jacinth. 4. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Æstivus major*, *Hyacinthus Lusitanicus major*, The Greater Summer Starry Jacinth. 5. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Æstivus minor*, *Hyacinthus Lusitanicus minor*, The Lesser Summer Starry Jacinth.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Little Summer Oriental Jacinth. It has a bulbous Root, which is small and white, from which rises up four or five long, narrow, green Leaves, lying upon the Ground, among which rises up a slender smooth Stalk, about a Span high, or more, bearing at the top many slender bleak blew Flowers, with some white stripes and edges to be seen in most of them, fashioned very like unto the Flowers of the Oriental Jacinth, but much smaller; the Flowers have no smell at all, and the Seed is like the Seed of the English Jacinth, or Haresbells.

IV. *The second, or Small White Summer Oriental Jacinth.* This seems to be of the same Kind with the former, being in Root, Leaf, Stalk, Flower, and manner of growing, the same with it, and differs nothing therefrom but in the color of the Flower, which is purely white.

V. The



V. *The third, or Small reddish Colored Oriental Jacinth.* It is another of the same Kind, whose Flowers are of a fine delayed color, with some deeper colored Veins running along the three outward Leaves of the Flower, and differing in no other particulars from the first of these *Summer Jacinths*.

VI. *The fourth, or Greater Summer Starry Jacinth.* It has a Root which is round and white, having some long thick Roots under it, besides the Fibres, as is usual in many other Jacinths; from this Root rises up several narrow green Leaves, lying upon the Ground, somewhat like the Leaves of the *English Jacinth*, or *Haresbells*, but stiffer and stronger, among which rises up a round stiff Stalk, bearing many Flowers at the top thereof, and at every footstalk of the Flowers a small short Leaf, of a purplish color; the Flowers are Star-like, of a fine delayed purplish color, tending to a pale Blew, or Ash Color, striped on the back of every Leaf, and having a pointed Umbone in the middle, with some whitish purple Threads about it tipped with blew; the Seed is black, round, and shining, like unto the Seed of the *English Jacinth*, or *Haresbells*, but not full out so big.

VII. *The fifth, or Lesser Summer Starry Jacinth.* It has a small bulbous Root, and white, covered with a brown Coat, and having some such thick Roots among the Fibres as are among the others; this *Lesser Jacinth* has several very long, narrow, and shining green Leaves, spread upon the Ground round about the Root, from among which rises a very short round Stalk, not above two or three Inches high, bearing six or seven small Flowers thereon on each side of the Stalk, like both in form and color unto the *Greater Summer Jacinth* before described, but lesser by far; the Seed is black, and contained in three cornered Heads or Husks.

VIII. *The Places.* The first three have been gathered on the *Pyrenean Mountains*, on those sides next to *Spain*, from whence they have been brought to us; the fourth and fifth grow naturally in *Portugal*, and from thence have been transplanted into our Gardens.

IX. *The Times.* The first three Flower very late in respect to the *Early Flowering Jacinths*, viz. in *May* or *June* for the most part; the two latter Flower also in *May*, towards the latter end of it, and sometimes also in *June*, and their Seed is ripe in *July*.

### C H A P. CCCXCVIII.

#### Of J A C I N T H Dun or Brown.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *ῥάκινθος*, in *Latine Hyacinthus fuscus vel obsoletus*, in *English The Dun or Brown Colored Jacinth*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are three Species of this Plant, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Hispanicus Coloris obsoletioris*, *Hyacinthus Hispanicus obsoletus vel fuscus*, The *Spanish Dun or Brown Colored Jacinth*. 2. *Hyacinthus Mauritanicus fuscus vel obsoletus*, The *Barbary Brown Colored Jacinth*. 3. *Hyacinthus Æthiopicus fuscus vel obsoletus*, *Hyacinthus Æthiopicus maximus*, The *Æthiopian Dun or Dusky Colored Jacinth*.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or *Spanish Dun or Brown Colored Jacinth*, has a bulbous Root, which

is reasonable great, and white on the outside, with many strong white Fibres at it, which perish not Yearly as the Fibres of many other Jacinths do; it springs late out of the Ground, bearing four or five short, hollow, and soft, whitish green Leaves, with a white line in the middle of every one of them, from among which rise up one or more Stalks, bearing several Flowers at their tops, all looking one way, or standing on one side, hanging down their heads, consisting of six Leaves, three of which, being the outwardmost, lay open their Leaves and turn back their ends a little, the other three Leaves, which are innermost, do as it were close together in the middle of the Flower, without laying themselves open at all, being a little whitish on the edges; the whole Flower is of a purplish yellow color, with some white and green as it were mixed amongst it, of no smell at all; after the Flowers are past great three cornered and bunched out Heads or Husks come in their places, which contain black and flat Seed; this Plant as it springs up late, so it keeps its green Leaves almost until Winter.

IV. *The second, or Barbary Brown Colored Jacinth.* This Plant in its Root, Leaves, Stalks, Flowers, Seed, and manner of its growing, and in all other respects (except its magnitude) is very like the former, nor does it differ at all from it, but that this is every ways much greater.

V. *The third, or Æthiopian Dun or Dusky Colored Jacinth.* Its Root is bulbous, and like the former, its Leaves are stronger and greener than it, and the Stalk also thicker, bearing divers Flowers, confusedly standing upon longer footstalks, yet made after the same fashion, but that the three inner Leaves are whitish, and dented about the edges, otherwise the Flowers are greenish on the inside.

VI. *The Places.* The native Country of the first of these is *Spain*, the second is a native of *Barbary*, growing about *Fez* and *Morocco*, the third is a native of *Æthiopia*, and was brought hither from the *Cape of Goodhope*; with us they are only nursed up in Gardens.

VII. *The Times.* The first Flowers not until *June*, because it springs late out of the Ground, as aforesaid, holding its green Leaves all *September*, the Seed ripening in the mean season; and much about the same times the other two Flower and Seed.

### C H A P. CCCXCIX.

#### Of J A C I N T H Starry Common.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in Greek *ῥάκινθος*, in *Latine Hyacinthus Stellatus*, and in *English The Starry Jacinth*.

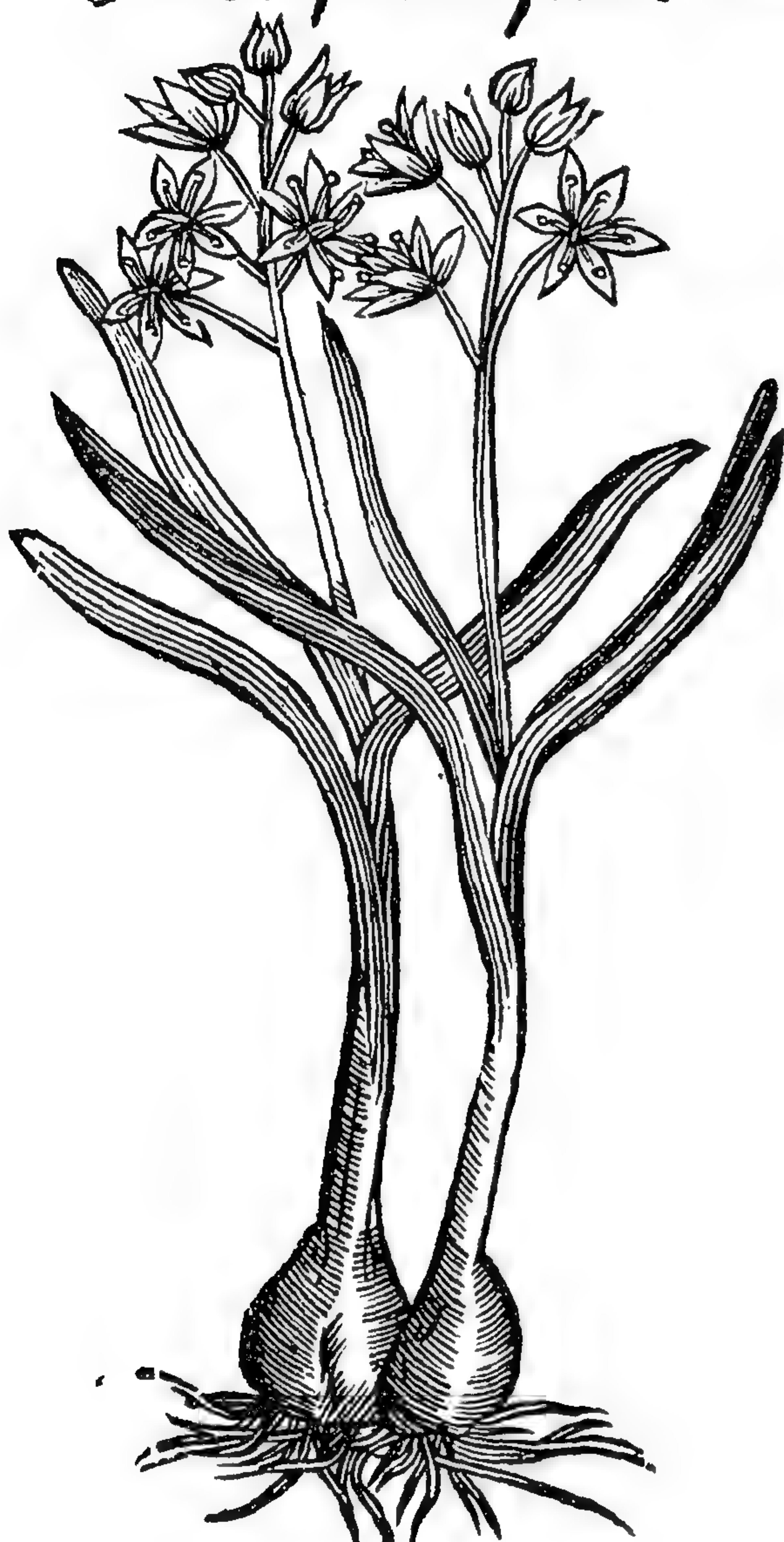
II. *The Kinds.* There are six generick Species of the *Starry Jacinths*, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Æstivus*, three Species of which we have already Treated of among the *Summer Jacinths* in Chap. 397. aforegoing. 2. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Communis*, The *Common Starry Jacinth*, of which in this Chapter. 3. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Americanus*, The *American Starry Jacinth*, of which in Chap. 400. 4. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Byzantinus*, The *Turky Starry Jacinth*, of which in Chap. 401. 5. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Autumnalis*, The *Autumn Starry Jacinth*, of which in Chap. 402. 6. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Lilifolius*, The *Lilly Leav'd Starry Jacinth*, of which we shall Treat in Chap. 403. following.

III. *The*



III. *The Kinds of the Common Starry Jacinth.* Of this there are seven Species or Sorts, viz. 1. *ῥάκινθος ἀσπρὸς ἀνυδρὸς*, *Hyacinthus Stellatus Communis vel Vulgaris*, *sive Bisolius Fuchsj*, *Hyacinthus Stellatus Fuchsj*, *Hyacinthus Stellatus Germanicus*, The Common Blew Starry Jacinth. 2. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Flore albo*, The White Flowered Starry Jacinth. 3. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Flore rubente*, The Blush Colored Starry Jacinth. 4. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Martius*, *sive Præcox Ceruleus*, The Early Blew Starry Jacinth. 5. *Hyacinthus Stellatus præcox Flore albo*, The White Early Starry Jacinth. 6. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Flore Niveo, vel albissimo*, The Purely White Starry Jacinth. 7. *Hyacinthus Stellatus præcox Flore suave rubente*, The Early Blush Colored Starry Jacinth.

*Starry Jacinth Common*



IV. *The Descriptions.* *The first, or Common Blew Starry Jacinth.* Its Root is bulbous, somewhat long, and covered with a yellowish Coat; it rises out of the Ground commonly with but two brown Leaves, yet sometimes with three, inclosing within them the Stalk of Flowers, the Buds appearing of a dark whitish color as soon as the Leaves open themselves, which Leaves being grown are long and hollow, of a whitish green on the upper side, and brown on the under side, and half round, the brown Stalk rising up higher, bearing five or six small Star like Flowers, consisting of six Leaves, of a fair deep blew, tending to a purple; the Seed is yellowish and round, contained in round pointed Heads or Husks, which by reason of their heaviness and the weakness of the Stalk lie upon the Ground, and often perish with Wet and Frost; this *Starry Jacinth* has been longest known, and is the most common.

V. *The second, or White Flowered Starry Jacinth.* This White Kind has its Leaves like the former, but green and fresh, not brown, and also a little narrower; the Buds for the Flowers appear at first a little bluish, but when they are blown they are white, but yet retain in them a small shew of that bluish color.

VI. *The third, or Blush Colored Starry Jacinth.* This in its Root, Leaves, and Stalk, is exactly like the former, and differs nothing therefrom but in the Flowers, which are of a fair bluish color, much more eminent than in the others, in all other particulars it is exactly alike.

VII. *The fourth, or Early Blew Starry Jacinth.* Its Root is bulbous, and a little whiter than the others on the outside; its Leaves are also a little broader, of a fresher green, and not brown at all, as the first *Blew Jacinth* aforegoing is; the Buds of the Flowers while they are inclosed within the Leaves, and after when the Stalk is grown up, do remain more blew than the Buds of the former; the Flowers when they are blown open are like the former, but something larger, and of a more lively blew color; this Kind of *Jacinth* does more seldom bear Seed than the others aforegoing.

VIII. *The fifth, or White Early Starry Jacinth.* This is also one other of the fourth Kind, the green Leaves whereof are a little narrower than the former, and its Flowers are purely white, in any other respect there is no difference from it at all.

IX. *The sixth, or Purely White Starry Jacinth.* This seems to be a Species of the second Kind aforegoing, its Leaves are of a pale fresh green, and a little narrower than those, and its Flowers are smaller than them, and of a pure Snow white color.

X. *The seventh, or Early Blush Colored Starry Jacinth.* The Root is bulbous, and like to the other *Starry Jacinths*; the Leaves differ not from the fifth Kind, or *White Early Starry Jacinth*, and its Flowers are bluish colored, and as large as those of the fifth Kind, and somewhat larger than the Flowers of the fourth Kind; this *Blush Colored Jacinth* is very rare, but it is very pleasant.

XI. *The Places.* All these *Jacinths* have been found in the Woods and Mountains of *Austria*, *Bohemia*, *Germany*, &c. as *Fuchsius* and *Gesner* affirm, and in *Italy*, near *Naples*, as *Imperatus* and others say, but with us they are all of them nursed up in Gardens, more especially the *White* and *Blush* Kinds, for that they are more tender, and therefore require the more care to keep them from perishing.

XII. *The Times.* The first, second, and sixth Kinds Flower much about the middle of *February*, if the Weather is mild and gentle, the other Kinds about fourteen or twenty days after, viz. in *March*, but many times as early as the first three.

C H A P. CCCC.

## Of JACINTH Starry Peruvian.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *ῥάκινθος ἀσπρὸς ἐριόφωρος*, in Latine *Hyacinthus Eriophorus*, *vel Hyacinthus Laniferus*, *Eriophorus Peruanus*, *Hyacinthus Stellatus Peruanus vel Americanus*, *Hyacinthus Peruanus*, *Hyacinthus Stellatus Baticus*, in English *The American or Peruvian Starry Jacinth*, and *The Spanish Starry Jacinth*.

II. *The Kinds.* We make four several Species of this Plant, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Ceruleus Peruanus major*, *Hyacinthus Ceruleus Stellatus Baticus major*, *Hyacinthus Ceruleus Americanus major*, The Greater Blew Starry American or Peruvian Jacinth, The Greater Blew Starry Spanish Jacinth. 2. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Peruanus Flore albo*, *Hyacinthus Stellatus Albus Baticus*, The Great White Pe-



uvian Starry Jacinth, The Great Spanish White Starry Jacinth. 3. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Peruanus* *Flore Carneæ*, *Hyacinthus Stellatus Baticus Flore Carneæ*, The Great Blush Colored Starry American or Peruvian Jacinth, The Great Blush Colored Starry Spanish Jacinth. 4. *Hyacinthus Eriophorus sive Laniferus*, *Bulbus Eriophorus vel Laniferus*, The Woolly Jacinth.

*Great Blew Starry Jacinth of Peru.*



III. The Descriptions. *The first, or Greater Blew Starry American or Peruvian or Spanish Jacinth. It has a great bulbous Root, and somewhat yellowish on the outside, with a knob or bunch at the lower end of the Root, (which is called the seat of the Root) like unto that of the Muscari, or Scylla, and many other bulbous Roots, from which hang down several white, thick, and long Fibres, by which it is fastened into the Ground, which perish not every Year, but abide continually, and therefore does not desire much removing; from this Root spring up five or six or more very broad and very long green Leaves, spread upon the Ground round about the Root, which being broken are woolly, or full of very fine Fibres, (whence came part of the Greek Name) from the middle of these Leaves rises up a round short Stalk, (in comparison of the greatness of the Plant, (for the Stalk of the Oriental Jacinth is sometimes twice as high, whose Root is not so great) bearing at the top a great Head or Bush of Flowers, fashioned in the beginning, before they are blown or separated, very like to a Cone, or Pine-Apple; they begin to Flower below, and so upwards by degrees, every Flower standing upon a long blackish blew footstalk, which when they are blown open are of a perfect blew color, tending to a Violet, and made of six small Leaves laid open like a Star; the Threads likewise are blewish, tipped with yellow Pendants, standing about the middle Head, which is of a deep blew, not having any pleasant smell to be perceived in it, being valuable only for the beauty of the Flowers.*

*The Flowers are past three-square or cornered in their places, containing round seeds. The fourth is the greatest of those in the garden, and is shaped like a Star, except the*

two first *American* ones described in Chap. 391. foregoing.

IV. *The second, or Great White Peruvian Jacinth. The Roots and Seed of this are like unto the former, so it is also in most of its other parts, but that its Leaves are not so large, nor of so deep a green, the Stalks of Flowers likewise have not such thick Heads or Bushes on it, but the Flowers are fewer and thinner set; the Flowers themselves also are whitish, yet having a small dash of blush in them, and the Threads are whitish, tipped with yellow Pendants, these are the chief particulars in which it differs from the former.*

V. *The third, or Great Blush Colored Starry American or Peruvian Jacinth. This is found growing among the other, and differs but little from the two former, but only in the color of the Flowers, for this has its Head of Flowers as great and large as the first, but the Buds of its Flowers before they are open are of a deep blush color, which being completely opened are more delayed, and of a pleasant pale purple or blush color, standing upon purplish Footstalks; the Heads in the middle are whitish, and so are the Threads encompassing it, tipped with yellow.*

VI. *The fourth, or Woolly Jacinth. Its Root is bulbous and white, somewhat like to the Root of a Muscari, which is as full of Wooll or fine Fibres as the Leaves, or rather more than they, or any other part of it; this Woolly Jacinth has many broad, long, and fair green Leaves, very like unto some of the Jacinths, but stiffer, or standing more upright, which being broken do yield a multitude of small, fine, soft Fibres, as if a little fine Cotton Wooll was drawn out, from among these Leaves rises up a long, round, green Stalk, a Foot and half high, or more, on which is set a great long Bush of Flowers, which blowing open by degrees, first below, and so upwards, are very long in flowering; the top of the Stalk with the Flowers, and their little small Footstalks, are all blew, every Flower standing outright with its Stalk, and spreading like a Star, divided into six Leaves, having many small blew Threads standing about the middle Head, which, as far as is yet discovered, never yet gave ripe Seed.*

VII. *The Places. The first has been formerly Named Eriophorus Peruanus, and Hyacinthus Stellatus Peruanus, The Starry Jacinth of Peru, and the three first are generally known and received by the Name of Hyacinthus Peruanus, for which reason we also have retained it; but all the first three grow naturally in Spain, in the Meadows not far from the Sea, as also in the Island of Gades, commonly called Cales, as likewise in other parts along the Sea side going from thence to Port St. Maria, which when they are in Flower grow so thick together, that they seem to cover the Ground, as Guil. Boel affirms, who says that himself gathered these and many others in the places named with his own Hands, but saying withal that the White and Blush Colored are far more rare than the Blew, or first Kind; yet notwithstanding all that has been hitherto said, it is very probable that they have been found growing also in Peru, otherwise they could never have so generally obtained that Name, with us they are only nursed up in Gardens; the fourth has many times been sent out of Turkey into England, where in our Gardens it has flourished for a long time, as well as several others; 'tis possible that that in Theophrastus Lib. 7. Cap. 13. is this very Plant, where he declares that Garments were made of the woolly substance of a bulbous Root taken from between the Core or Heart of the Root and the outermost Coats or Peelings; but Clusius will have this Bulbus Eriophorus.*



*phorus*, or *Laniferus*, or *Woolly Jacinth*, to be a Species of the first Kind in this Chapter, for which reason we have put it in this place among the *Peruvian* Kinds, it being a *Jacinth* both in its Root, Leaf, and Flower.

VIII. *The Times.* The first three Flower in *May*, and the Seed is ripe in *July*; the fourth Flowers not often, and is rare to be seen Flowering with us, but when it does Flower it Flowers also in the Month of *May*, as the others do.

C H A P. CCCCI.

## Of J A C I N T H Starry Turkey.

I. *THE Names.* It is called in *Greek* *ῥάκινθος*, in *Latine* *Hyacinthus Stellatus Byzantinus*, and in *English* *The Turkey Starry Jacinth*, *The Starry Jacinth of Constantinople*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are four Species of this Plant, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Byzantinus Radice nigra*, The Turkey Starry Jacinth with a black Root. 2. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Byzantinus major*, The Greater Starry Jacinth of Constantinople. 3. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Byzantinus alter*, *Hyacinthus Flore Boraginis*, The other Turkey Starry Jacinth, or Starry Jacinth of Constantinople. 4. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Constantinopolitanus Flore Cinereo*, *Hyacinthus Stellaris Someri*, The Turkey Ash Colored Starry Jacinth, or *Somer's Starry Jacinth*.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Turkey Starry Jacinth with a black Root. It has a Root which for the most part does run downwards, something deep into the Ground, from which rise up several fresh, green, thin, and long Leaves, of the bigness of the *English Jacinth*, but not so long, between which rises up a slender low Stalk, bearing five or six Flowers, dispersedly set thereon, spreading open like a Star, of a pale or bleak blew color; the Leaves of the Flowers are somewhat long, and stand as it were somewhat loosely, one off from another, and not so compactedly together as the Flowers of other Kinds; it seldom bears with us ripe Seed, because the Heads

are so heavy, that lying upon the Ground they rot with the Wet, or are bitten with the Frosts, or both, so that they seldom come to good; the Root is small in some, and reasonable big in others, round and long, white within, but covered with deep reddish or purplish peelings next unto it, and darker and blacker purple on the outside, with some long and thick white Fibres like Fingers hanging at the bottom of them, as is to be seen in many other *Jacinths*.

IV. *The second, or Greater Starry Jacinth of Constantinople.* The Root of this is like the former, saving that it is not black on the outside, as the other, but three times bigger; this Jacinth may truly be referred to the former *Jacinth of Constantinople*, and called the *Greater*, it is so very like thereunto, that any one who knows that cannot but know or think that this is another of that sort, but greater, as it is in all its parts, bearing larger Leaves by much, and more store, lying upon the Ground round about the Root; it bears many low Stalks of Flowers, as bleak and standing as loosely as the former.

V. *The third, or Other Turkey Starry Jacinth, or Starry Jacinth of Constantinople.* Its Root is of a dark whitish color on the outside, and sometimes a little reddish withal; it has for the most part only four Leaves, broader and greener than the first, but not so large or so long as the second; the Stalk has five or six Flowers upon it, bigger and rounder set, like other *Starry Jacinths*, of a more perfect or deeper blew than either of the former, having a whitish green Umbone or Head in the middle, beset with six blew Chives or Threads tipt with black, so closely encompassing the Umbone or Head, that the Threads seem to be so many pricks stuck into a Club or Head, some have therefore liken'd it to a *Borage* Flower, and so have called it; after the Flowers are past come up round white Heads, in which is contained round and white Seed.

VI. *The fourth, or Turkey Ash Colored Starry Jacinth, or Somer's Starry Jacinth.* Its Root is like to that of the *English Jacinth*, or *Haresbells*, being great, round, and white, so like that it is hard to know the one from the other; its Leaves are also very like to the Leaves of the *English Jacinth*, and spread themselves upon the Ground in the same manner, from among which rise up one or two Stalks, replenished at top with a number of small Star like Flowers, bushing out more below than above, of a very pale or white Blew, tending to an Ash Color, and very sweet in smell; the Seed is black and round, like unto the Seed of the *English Jacinth*, or *Haresbells*.

VII. *The Places.* The Titles of the three first shew you their native places, the third of them, as *Lobel* says, was brought to *England* from *Constantinople* by the Lord *Zauth*; the fourth *Somer's* brought from *Constantinople*, or out of *Italy*, as *Lobel* says, into the Low Countries, from whence it has been brought to us, but they all flourish admirably well in our Gardens.

VIII. *The Times.* The first of these Flower earlier than the other three, and presently after the *Early Starry Jacinth*; the three last Flower all of them in *April*.



## C H A P. CCCCII.

## Of J A C I N T H Starry Autumn.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *ῥάκινθος ἀστέρις ὁπωρινός*, in Latine *Hyacinthus Stellatus Autumnalis*, and in English *The Autumn Starry Jacinth*.

II. The Kinds. There are three Species of this Plant, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Autumnalis major*, The Greater Autumn Starry Jacinth. 2. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Autumnalis minor*, The Lesser Autumn Starry Jacinth. 3. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Autumnalis Flore albo minor*, The Lesser Autumn Starry Jacinth with white Flowers.

III. An Observation. Dalechampi<sup>us</sup> with many Words would have us to believe that these Plants can be no *Jacinths*, because their Flowers appear before their Leaves in *Autumn*, contrary to the true *Jacinth*, as he says, and therefore will have it to be the *Bulbus* of Theophrast<sup>us</sup> Lib. I. Cap. 12. which he calls his *Tiphyum* (there mentioned) as also *Bulbus Æstivus Dalechampi*; this may carry some probability with it, yet the likeness of both Roots, Leaves, and Flowers, have perswaded very Learned Botanists to believe them to be true *Jacinths*, and so we take them in this place.



IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Greater Autumn Starry Jacinth. It has a Root which is great, bulbous, and white on the outside; from this Root spring up five or six or more very long and narrow green Leaves, lying upon the Ground; the Stalks are furnished at top with many Star like Flowers, of a pale bluish purple color, with some pale colored Threads tipped with blew standing about the

Head in the middle, which in time growing ripe contain therein small, black, and roundish Seed.

V. The second, or Lesser Autumn Starry Jacinth. This Lesser Jacinth has a bulbous Root like others, which sends forth such like long and small Leaves as the former, but narrower, the Stalk is not full out so high, but bears as many Flowers on it as the other, which are of a pale or bleak purple color, very like to it also, as is the Seed too, but that it is smaller; both these for the most part bear their Flowers and Seed before the green Leaves rise up much above the Ground.

VI. The third, or Lesser Autumn Starry Jacinth with white Flowers. This in its Root, Stalk, Flowers, and Seed, as also in its manner of growing, differs nothing from the former Lesser Purple Kind last described, excepting in the color of the Flowers, which in this Plant are always white.

VII. The Places. The native places of the first and third are as yet unknown to us, where possibly they may grow wild, here they are only nursed up in Gardens; the second grows wild in many places of England, as on the foot of a high Bank by the Thames side at the hither end of Chelsea, before you come at the Barge-House, and other places, from whence Plants have been taken for Gardens.

VIII. The Times. The first or greatest Flowers in the end of July, and in August, the other two in August and September; you shall rarely see any of these Plants with Flowers and green Leaves together at one time.

## C H A P. CCCCIII.

## Of J A C I N T H Starry Lilly Leaved.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *ῥάκινθος ἀστέρις λειοφύλλινος*, in Latine *Hyacinthus Stellatus Lilifolius*, and in English *Lilly Leaved Starry Jacinth*.

II. The Kinds. There are three several Species of this Plant, viz. 1. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Lilifolius Flore Cæruleo*, *Hyacinthus Stellatus Cæruleus Lilifolio & Radice*, The Blew Flowered Lilly Leaved and Lilly Rooted Starry Jacinth, (its Root being as like to a Lilly Root as its Leaves to Lilly Leaves.) 2. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Lilifolius albus*, vel *Lilifolius Flore albo*, The White Flowered Lilly Leaved Starry Jacinth. 3. *Hyacinthus Stellatus Lilifolius Flore Carne*, The Blush Colored Lilly Leaved Starry Jacinth. Now because the Roots of these Plants as well as the Leaves are so very like to a Lilly, they have been called *Hyacinthus Stellatus Lilifolio & Radice*, but for brevity sake *Hyacinthus Stellatus Lilifolius*, The Lilly Leaved Starry Jacinth. Clusius says that the People who Dwell near its native place of growth call it *Sarahug*.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or Blew Flowered Lilly Leaved Starry Jacinth. It has a Root which is bulbous, longish, big below and small above, like unto the small Root of a Lilly, and composed of yellow Scales, as a Lilly, but the Scales are greater and fewer in number; from this Root rise up six or seven broad green Leaves, somewhat like unto Lilly Leaves, (from whence it took part of its Name, as well as from the Root) spread upon the Ground, and



and lying close and round; before the Stalk rises out from the middle of these Leaves there does appear a deep hollow place, like a hole, to be seen a good while, which at length is filled up with the Stalk, rising up to a Foot or more in height, bearing many Star like Flowers at top, of a perfect blew color, near unto a *Violet*, and sometimes of a paler or bleak blew color, having as it were a small Cup in the middle, divided into six pieces, without any Threads therein; the Seed is black and round, but not shining.

IV. *The second, or White Flowered Lilly Leaved Starry Jacinth.* This Plant in its Root, Leaves, Stalk, Flower, Seed, and manner of growing, is wholly like the former, (so that all the aforesaid description may here be avoided) that we may not say the same thing over again; but there is something in which it varies, and that is in the color of the Flowers, which in this is white, whereas the former is blew, and that is all the difference.

V. *The third, or Blush Colored Lilly Leaved Starry Jacinth.* This Plant is like also to the first and second before described in all the parts of the same, and in the magnitude and manner of its growing, varying only in the color of the Flowers, for whereas they are blew in the first and white in the second, these are of a blush color, which is the whole of the observed difference.

VI. *The Places.* These *Jacincts* have been found Natives of the *Pyrenean Hills*, in that part of *France* called *Aquitane*, and in several other places; I have found them to grow plentifully in many Plantations in *Carolina*, and other parts of the *West Indies*; but that with the white Flower is most usual or common.

VII. *The Times.* They Flower in *April*, and sometimes later, I have found them Flowering in *Carolina* in *March*, and in *April*, as also in *May*, and sometimes later if the Weather prove hard or cold.

VIII. *The Virtues.* Authors have assigned to them no Medical Virtues, but account them rather as Poysons, for that by Experience it has been found, that Cattel who have eaten of the Leaves hereof have presently swelled and so died; this I know, that in *Carolina* if their Calves, young *Bullocks*, or *Cows* eat thereof they are presently taken with a swimming, and in a short time turn round with a *Vertigo*, and then in a little time after it die, and all this without Remedy, this I have seen; nor could I find that they had any Cure for it, their Death being so sudden: An Ointment or Balsam made of the Roots is an excellent thing against scrophulous Sores and Ulcers, and being duly applied cures them to a Wonder.

JAMES WORT, See Ragwort.

C H A P. CCCCIV.

of J E W S E A R S.

I. *THE Names.* This Plant is called in *Greek* Μύκη Ἀκτῖς, & μύκη ἀκτινῶ, in *Latine* *Fungus Sambuci*, and *Fungus Sambucinus*, *Gummi Sambuci*, and of some *Auricula Jude*, in *English* *Jewsears*, also *Mushroom of the Elder Tree*.

II. *The Kinds.* It may well be accounted of the Stock of *Mushrooms*, as is also *Agarick*, but this growing upon the *Alder Tree* is a singular Species.

III. *The Description.* It is an Excrecence, which is soft, blackish, covered with a Skin, or otherwise like a thick Skin, somewhat like now and then to a Mans Ear, which being plucked off and dried shrivels together and becomes hard.



IV. *The Places.* It is found growing only upon Elder Trees, and generally such as are old, in most places of this Kingdom.

V. *The Times.* They ought to be gathered when they are come to their largeness, or perfection, in the fore part of the day, in a fair and dry Season, and in the Months of *August* or *September*, when they have participated of the full ascending Virtues and Juices of the Tree.

VI. *The Qualities.* They are temperate in respect of heat or cold, and dry in the beginning of the second degree, they are Anodyn, Astringent, and Diffusive, a little Repercussive, and Vulnerary.

VII. *The Specification.* They are peculiar for curing the Quinsie, and other Tumors of the Throat, Almonds, and Jaws.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom 1. A Decoction in Wine or Water. 2. A Compound Decoction. 3. A Cataplasme.

The Virtues.

IX. *The Decoction in Wine or Water.* It is used as a Gargle to heal all Tumors or Swellings, and Sores or Ulcers in the Mouth, Gums, Throat, Almonds, &c. those parts being washed or gargled therewith three, four, five, or six times a day as hot as can be endured, by this means exquisite Quinsies have been cured therewith, but in case of a Quinsie the Decoction will be best to be made in Vinegar, adding thereto after it is boiled a fitting proportion of Wine.

X. *The Compound Decoction in Wine or Water.* Take Wine or Water three Pints, Jewsears, Elm Bark bruised, of each six Drams, Columbine Leaves half an Ounce, Madder three Drams, Cremor Tartari in powder five Drams, Black Pepper in powder half



half a Dram, boil to the consumption of three quarters of a Pint, strain out, and keep the Decoction for a Gargle, which you may dulcify, or not, as the occasion requires. It is an excellent Remedy for the cure of a Quinsie, being used as hot as can be endured, as also for any other Tumor of the Almonds, or parts adjacent, and cures all sorts of Sores and Ulcers of the Mouth, Jaws, Gums, Throat, or Almonds of the Ears; it so strengthens the *Uvula*, or Palate of the Mouth, that when it is down it restores it to its proper tone and state; it also takes away vehement inflammations of those parts, they being often gargled therewith.

XI. *The Cataplasm.* It is made by cutting the Auricle or Fungi into very small bits, and then boiling them in Wine, or in Vinegar, adding a little Barley Flower to bring it to a consistency. Applied outwardly to the Throat as hot as can be endured in a Quinsie, (whilst the Decoctions are used inwardly as a Gargarism) it much contributes to the abating of the Inflammation and discharging of the Tumor; applied to any other recent Inflammation or Tumor whilst in beginning, in what part of the Body soever, it cools, abates the inflammation, alleviates the pain, and dissolves the swelling.

C H A P. CCCC.V.

of JOHNSWORT Great Common,

O R,

H Y P E R I C O N.

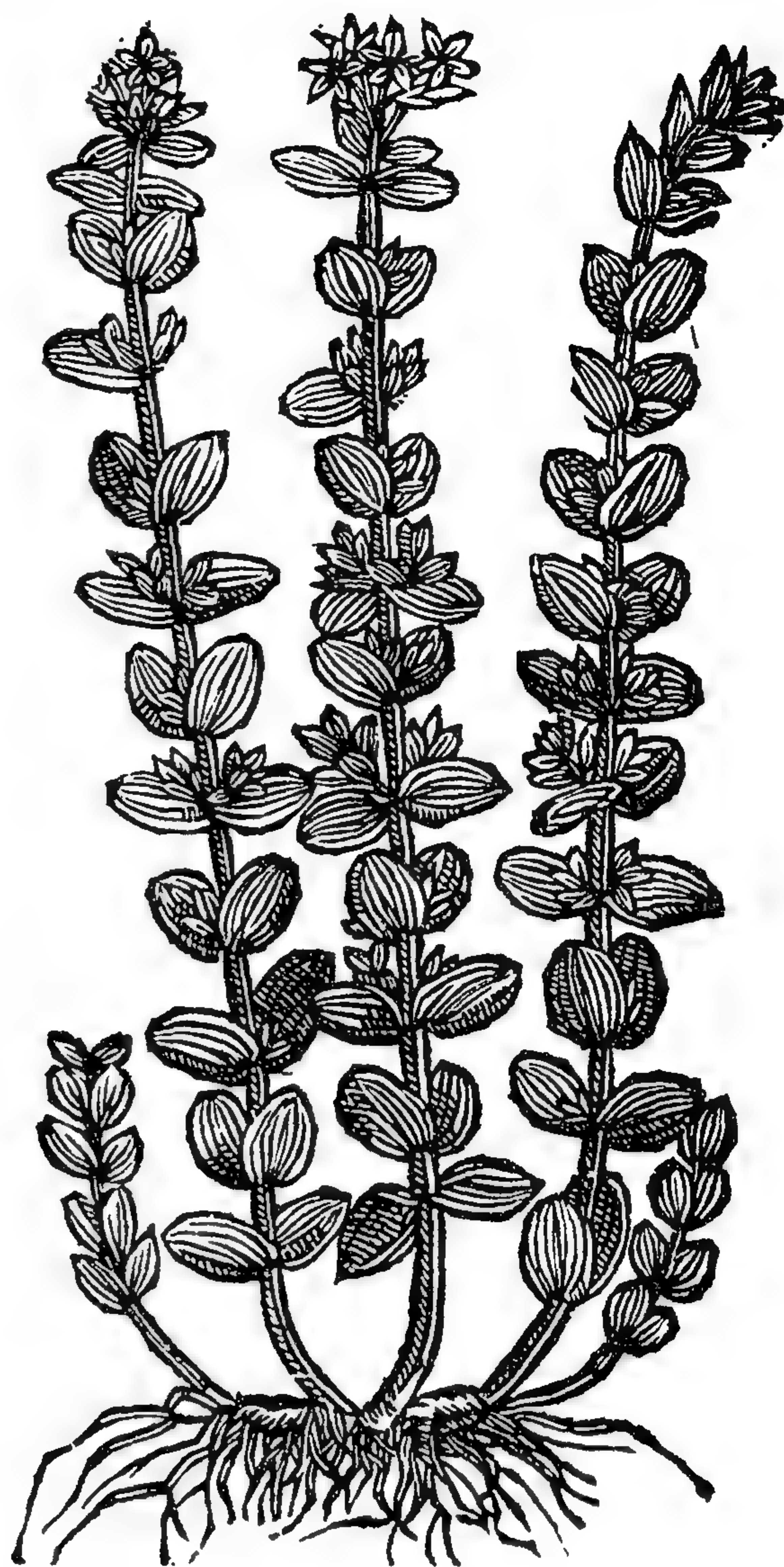
**T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *ὑπερικόν*, in Latine *Hypericon*, in English *Hypericon* also, and *Johnswort*; the Arabians call it *Reaficon*, *Reifaricon*, *Henfericon*, *Nelifericon*,

II. *The Kinds.* There are two generick Kinds of *Hypericon*, or *Johnswort*, viz. 1. *Hypericon vulgare*, which some have called *Fuga Daemonum*, i. e. Drive Devil, and some *Androsenum*, because the Flowers yield a bloody color, and others *Chamæpyris*, because of the resinous smell of the Seed, but these are the proper Names of other Plants, this our *Hypericon* (Treated of in this Chapter) is the True *Hypericon* of *Dioscorides*, or Common Great *Johnswort*, as both the bloody color of the Flowers and resinous smell of the Heads and Seed do declare, which are two principal Notes thereof. 2. *Hypericum minus*, The Lesser *Hypericon*, or *Johnswort*, of which in Chap. 406. following.

III. *The Description.* Common Great *Johnswort*, or Common *Hypericon*, has a Root which is hard and woody, with divers Strings and Fibres at it, and of a brownish color, which abides in the Ground many Years, shooting forth afresh every Spring; from this Root shoots forth brownish, hard, upright, round Stalks, about two Feet high, spreading many Branches from the sides up to their tops, having two small Leaves set one against another at every place, which are of a deep green color, something like to the Leaves of the Lesser *Centory*, but narrower, and full of small holes in every Leaf, which cannot be so well perceived as when they are held up to the light; at the tops of the Stalks and Branches stand yellow Flowers, consisting of five Leaves apiece, with many yellow Threads in the middle, which being bruised do yield a reddish Juice, like Blood,

after which do come small round Heads, in which is contained small blackish Seed, smelling like Rosin.

### *Johnswort the Greater.*



IV. *The Places.* It grows in Woods, Groves, and Copses, as well in shady places as in such as are open to the Sun, in many parts of this Kingdom.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers about the latter end of June, as also in July, and the Seed is ripe towards the end of the same Month, or the beginning of August.

VI. *The Qualities.* It is hot and dry in the first degree, thin, and of subtil parts, Anodyn, Digestive, Aperitive, Absterfive, Diuretick, Discussive, Traumatick or Vulnerary, Neurotick, Stomack, Nephritick, Hysterick, Arthritick, and Alexipharmick.

VII. *The Specification.* It is peculiar for curing Wounds and Ulcers, Spitting, Vomiting, and Pissing Blood, Bitings of Venomous Creatures, Stone and Gravel in the Reins, Strangury, and heat of Urine, stoppage of the Terms in Women, Tertian and Quartan Agues, the Sciatica, Palsie, Epilepsie, and other Diseases of like kind.

VIII. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom these following Medicaments, viz. 1. A Juice of Leaves and Flowers. 2. An Essence. 3. An Infusion or Decoction in Wine of Herb, Flowers, and Seed. 4. A Pouder of Herb or Flowers. 5. A Pouder of the Seed. 6. An Oil Simple. 7. An Oil Compounded. 8. An Oil Magistral. 9. A Distilled Water. 10. An Acid Tincture. 11. A Spirituous Tincture. 12. An Oily Tincture.

### *The Virtues.*

IX. *The Juice.* It is a good Vulnerary, whether inwardly taken or outwardly applied, and given to two, three, or four Spoonfuls at a time mixed with a Glas of Wine it heals inward Wounds, Hurts, or Bruises; it is of subtil parts, opens obstructions of the *Viscera*, dissolves Tumors, consolidates the lips of



of Wounds, strengthening the parts which are weak and feeble.

X. *The Essence.* This is yet more effectual to all the aforesaid Intentions, besides which it is good against all manner of Spitting and Vomiting Blood, occasioned by the rupture of any Vein, or by Bruises, Falls, or any other means whatsoever; it is an Antidote against Poyson, and prevails against the stinging or biting of any Venomous Creature; it has been found effectual by experience to give ease in the Strangury, to expel Sand, Gravel, and small Stones out of the Reins and Bladder, and to provoke the Terms in Women, taken to three or four Spoonfuls, (according to Age) warm, mixed with a Glass of Wine, before the Fits of Agues, for some days, it helps them and alters the Fits, whether they be *Tertian*s or *Quartan*s, and by continuing the use of it for some time perfectly cures them.

XI. *The Infusion or Decoction in Wine of Herb and Flowers, as also of the Seed.* They have the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but must be given two or three times a day, and in a much larger Dose, viz. from four Ounces to eight Ounces, according to Age and Necessity; they open obstructions of Reins and Womb, and kill Worms in the Belly or Stomach.

XII. *The Powder of Herb and Flowers.* It is an effectual thing for Wounds and Sores, to cleanse dry, conglutinate, and heal them, being strewed thick upon the same, and dressed therewith Morning and Evening.

XIII. *The Powder of the Seed.* It has the Virtues of Juice, Essence, and Decoction, but not altogether so effectual; if it is taken to a Dram in Juice or Essence of *Knotgrass* it cures Spitting, Vomiting, and Pissing of Blood, as also Bloody Fluxes, and consolidates any Vein which is inwardly broken; if it is taken to the quantity of two Drams in some Broth it does gently purge Choler, cleanses the Vessels of the Mesentery, and expels congealed Blood out of the Stomach; it is also much commended, being drank for forty days together, for the Cure of the Epilepsie, Palsie, Gout, and Sciatica, as also to remove and ease Rheumatick Pains in any part of the Body.

XIV. *The Simple Oil.* Take Expressed Oil of the Seeds of *Hypericon*, or for want thereof Expressed Oil of *Ben*, or choice Oil Olive, a Gallon, Red Port or Lisbon Wine a Pint and half, Flowers of *Hypericon* thirty two Ounces, insolate, or digest in an equivalent Sand heat for fourteen days, then boil in Balneo to the consumption of the Wine, strain out by Expression, and repeat the Infusion with like quantity of Flowers, Boiling and Expressing, as aforesaid, adding also more fresh Wine, repeating the same Work the third time with fresh Flowers, then straining out, keep it for use; some add to the aforesaid Oil Venice, Strasburgh, or rather Scio Turpentine, one Pound, dissolving it therein, and so keep it for use. Or thus. Take Oil Olive eight Pounds, Leaves, Flowers, and Seeds of *Hypericon* bruised, of each four Ounces, insolate, or digest in an equivalent Sand heat fourteen days, boil a little in Balneo, and strain out, which Work repeat the second and third times with fresh Herbs, Flowers, &c. till the Oil becomes of a Blood red color. Gerard makes it thus. Take Oil Olive six Pounds, fine Turpentine, White Wine, of each three Pounds, Leaves, Flowers, and Seeds of *Hypericon* bruised, of each twenty four Ounces, insolate, or digest in a Sand heat ten days, boil in Balneo, and strain out, and with fresh Herbs, Flowers, &c. repeat this Work the second and third times, which at last being hot strain out, and keep it for use. This Oil being used hot cures Punctures of the Nerves, and Contusions of the same, as also Burnings, Scald-

ings, all Wounds and Ulcers, tho' made with poysoned Weapons, Gout, Sciatica, and Rheumatick Pains; it is said to heal green and deep Wounds which run into the Body, it strengthens and refreshes the Joints, comforts the Nerves and Tendons, helps Tremblings, Cramps, Convulsions, and Palsies, is Emollient, Digestive, and Discussive; I have found it by Experience to be an excellent thing to dissolve Strumous Tumors, and to digest, cleanse, dry up, and heal Kings-Evil Sores and Ulcers.

XV. *The Compound Oil.* Take White, or rather Red Port, or Lisbon Wine, three Pints, fresh Flowers of *Hypericon*, with the Seeds or Heads, four handfuls, beat or bruise them, and digest in a Glass Vessel close stopped for two days, boil them in Balneo, and press them out strongly; to this straining put new Flowers and Tops of the Herb, as before, and repeat it the third time, and then strongly press out by straining; to every Pound hereof add of pure Florence Oil four Pounds, of choice Venice or Scio Turpentine six Ounces, Oil of Wormwood three Ounces, Dittany, Gentian, Carduus, Tormentil, Calamus Aromaticus, Carline, or Carduus Mariae, all of them in powder, of each two Drams, Earth Worms slit and often washed in White Wine two Ounces, set them to insolate for five or six Weeks, or else digest as long in a moderate Sand heat, and keep the Oil for use. Or thus. Take of either of the Simple Oils in the former Section four Pounds, Oil of Juniper Berries rectified half a Pound, Chymical Oil of Nutmegs a quarter of a Pound, Balsam Copaybe two Ounces and half, Camphir one Ounce, mix, dissolve, and keep it for use. This has all the Virtues of the Simple Oil with advantage, being more comfortable to the Nerves, drawing and cleansing than it, is a most excellent Vulnerary, discusses Tumors, eases Pain, heals Contusions, Punctures, or other Hurts and Wounds of the Nerves and Tendons, and is admirable for old Aches, Rheumatisms, Bruises, Strains, Palsies, Numbness, Cramps, Convulsions, Headach, Megrims, Lethargy, Burnings, Scaldings, &c.

XVI. *The Magistral Oil.* Take of the Simple Oil of *Hypericon* made with Oil of *Ben* at Sect. 14. aforesaid four Pounds, Balsam of Peru a Pound and half, Balsam of Tolu, Storax Calamita strained, Tincture of Saffron and Cochenele abstracted to the thickness of new Honey, of each half a Pound, Chymical Oils of Angelica, Lavender, Limons, Mint, Nutmegs, Oranges, and Sassafras, of each three Ounces, mix, digest in a warm Balneo or Sand heat for a Week, shaking altogether once a day, and keep it for use. This has all the Virtues of the Simple and Compound Oils aforesaid, but for any extream or inveterate Pain in any part of the Body, or for any Contusion, Puncture, or any other Wound or Hurt of the Nerves or Tendons, there is nothing superior to it in the World; esteem it as a Jewel.

XVII. *The Distilled Water.* Take the Flowers, Leaves, and Tops of *Hypericon* twelve good handfuls, White Port Wine three Quarts, mix, digest two days in a warm Balneo, then in Balneo draw off the Water to dryness. It may serve as a Vehicle to convey the Juice or Essence in, being good for all the same purposes; if it is dulcified with White Sugar and drank, it is thought to be as effectual as the Infusion or Decoction, besides it is said to kill Worms in the Stomach and Belly.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is good against Poyson inwardly or outwardly received, being given from twenty to sixty drops at a time in any proper Vehicle, as the Distilled Water, &c. it is Aperitive, Absterfve, and Stomachical, comforts and fortifies the Ventricle, and restores its Tone being hurt or depraved; it causes a good Appetite and strong Digestion, and allays the fermentation of the Humors



or Juices in the Body; it prevails also against the Plague or Pestilence, and all sorts of malign and pestilential Diseases.

XIX. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It warms and comforts the Stomach, is good against Crudities, and expels Wind; a green Wound washed with it it cleanses it, comforts it, restores its heat, and presently consolidates or heals it, and is profitable for such as are affected with a *Vertigo*, Lethargy, Epilepsie, Palsie, Convulsions, or other like Diseases of the Head, Brain, and Nerves. Dose from one to two Drums in any fit Vehicle.

XX. *The Oily Tincture.* It opens obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, expels Sand, Gravel, small Stones, or other Tartarous Mucilage out of those parts, and gives present ease in the Strangury; it gives instant relief in the Colick, and gripings of the Guts, alleviates the pain in the Back, tho' never so extream, and restores and strengthens the Tone of any or all the *Viscera*, tho' very much hurt and depraved; outwardly it eases Aches and Pains in the Limbs, proceeding from a cold Cause, and gives present help to Contusions and Punctures of the Nerves and Tendons, tho' the extremity is so great as to cause Convulsions, performing the Cure in a short time after. Dose of this Oily Tincture is from eight to twenty drops, according to Age and Strength, first dropped into Sugar, and then mixed with the Vehicle you intend to give it in.

C H A P. CCCCVI.

of JOHNSWORT Small,

O R,

Lesser HYPERICON.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *ὑπερικόν* *Hypericon* in Latine *Hypericum minus*, and in English *The Smaller Johnswort*, or *Lesser Hypericon*.

II. *The Kinds.* We shall take notice but of five Species of this Plant, being all that are yet known to grow in our Countries, viz. 1. *Hypericum minus erectum* *Bauhini*, *Hypericum pulchrum* *Tragi*, (as it is thought) *Hypericum minus Thalij*, *Hypericum Syriacum* *Lobelij*, Small Upright Hypericon, or Johnswort. 2. *Hypericum minus Supinum*, vel *Supinum glabrum* *Bauhini*, *Hypericum Exiguum* *Tragi*, *Hypericum minus Dodonæi* & *Gesneri*, *Hypericum minimum* *Supinum Septentrionale* *Lobelij*, *Hypericum Supinum tertium minimum* *Clusij*, Small Creeping Hypericon, or Johnswort. 3. *Hypericum Numulariaefolio*, *Hypericum tertium* *Tragi*, *Hypericum minus secundi* *Bauhini*, Round Leav'd Hypericon, or Johnswort. 4. *Hypericum minus Supinum Tomentosum* *Bauhini*, *Hypericum alterum Tomentosum* *Lobelij*, *Hypericum minus Supinum Monspeliacum*, *Androsæmum album* *Dalechampij*, The Small Creeping Woolly Hypericon, or Johnswort. 5. *Hypericum Americanum*, *Hypericum Frutescens Americanum* *Flore albæ*, American Hypericon, or Johnswort, White Flowered American Johnswort.

III. *An Observation.* Altho' what I have to say here ought to have been put in the former Chapter, yet it is better to have a place out of its order than no where; it is the Opinion of some Authors concerning the Generick Kinds of *Hypericon* that they are fourfold, viz. 1. *Hypericon vulgare*, Hypericon,

or Johnswort, properly so called, of which we discourse in the former and this present Chapter. 2. *Ἀσσυρίον*, and *Ἀσσυρίδης*, *Ascyrum*, and *Ascyroides*, *Hypericon magnum*, Peterswort. 3. *Ἀνδροσέμουρον*, *Androsæmum*, *Hypericum maximum*, Tutstan, or Parkleaves, of both which we shall speak (God willing) in their proper places of the Alphabet or Book. 4. *Κόρις*, *Koris* and *Coris*, Heath Groundpine, of which we have already spoken Chap. 332. aforegoing. It is true that the second, or *Peterswort*, may very well be admitted to be a great or large Kind of *Hypericon*, because not only the Flowers, but the whole form of the Plant bespeak it, but how far *Tutstan* or *Parkleaves* will admit of being a Kind we shall leave to the Readers Judgment, I confess one of the Species thereof, viz. *Androsæmum Matthioli*, very much resembles *Hypericon* in its manner of growing, Leaves, and Flowers, but that it is very much larger, and so may be accounted the greatest Kind of *Johnswort*; but the chief thing which enforces the Argument of *Tutstan* to be a Species of *Hypericon* is the form of the Flowers, and their yielding a bloody Juice: As to *Coris*, or *Heath Groundpine*, I cannot see how it has any relation to *Johnswort*, farther than what the form and color of its Flowers may induce.

Johnswort Lesser.



IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Small Upright Hypericon, or Johnswort. It has a small and long Root, and fibrous withal, enduring all the Winter in the Ground; this Plant is very rare to meet with, but it is very like that in the former Chapter, saving that it is smaller, yet the Leaves do not fully answer the form of the other, but are a little broader, and not so sharp pointed; the Stalks are reddish, and the Flowers lesser, not fully so yellow, nor do they give full out so bloody a Color when they are bruised between the Fingers, and sometimes they stand in Circles at the joints of the Stalks as well as at the tops; the Seed is also resinous, as the former.

V. The



V. *The second, or Small Creeping Hypericon, or Johnswort. Its Root is very like the former, nor does the whole Plant differ much from it; its Stalks are reddish, and not much above an Hand breadth high, yet stand not fully upright, but leaning downwards; the Leaves are small, narrow, and smooth, and the small Flowers are yellow.*

VI. *The third, or Round Leav'd Hypericon, or Johnswort. The Root is small and long, and fibrous, as the others foregoing; this Plant is as small as the last, and its small, reddish, square Stalks or Branches rise no higher than it, having two Leaves set one against another at every Joint up to the tops, and are almost round, like unto Moneywort, or Herb Twopence, of a dark or sad green on the upper side, and whitish underneath, spotted sometimes with reddish spots, and strakes; the Flowers are of a paler yellow color than the former, but somewhat large in comparison to the smallness of the Plant, with several yellow Threads in the middle.*

VII. *The fourth, or Small Creeping Woolly Hypericon, or Johnswort. It has a small, slender, long, woody, and fibrous Root, from which spring up several hairy, whitish, small, woolly Branches, lying upon the Ground and shooting forth Fibres, set with woolly Leaves, but not very close together, much like to those of the Common Hypericon in the former Chapter, but hoary and white, and a little rounder; at the joints towards the tops stand the Flowers, which are smaller than those of the Common Hypericon, and of a paler yellow; the Seed Vessels are like unto the other Kinds, as is also the Seed it self.*

VIII. *The fifth, or White Flowered American Hypericon, or Johnswort. It has a long, slender, woody, fibrous Root, which abides all the Winter; from this Root arise Yearly several woody Stalks, almost to a Mans height, covered with a whitish Bark, from whence are thrust forth on all sides various Branches set with thick green Leaves, narrow below, broad about the middle, and round at ends, sometimes two or three at a place, from which joints also arise divers white Flowers, consisting of four Leaves apiece, the Leaves fall away every Year, and appear again in the Spring.*

IX. *The Places. The three first Kinds grow in Woods and Copfes as well in those which are shady as those which are open to the Sun; the fourth grows in Moorish and Wet Fields, as also on dry barren Ground; the last grows with us, but is nourished up in Gardens, being brought hither from the North West parts of America.*

X. *The Times. They all Flower about the middle or latter end of June, and in July, and the Seed is ripe in the end of July, or in the beginning of August.*

XI. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues of the first four are the same with those of the Common Hypericon in the former Chapter, but scarcely or not altogether so powerful and effectual to all those Intentions: The Qualities and Virtues of the American are not yet well known, or but only guesst at.*

## C H A P. CCCCXVII.

### of IRONWORT,

O R,

### SOLDIERS HERB.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Arabick *Sidrachis*, in Greek *Σιδνεϊς*, *ἢ Στεγνώρης*, *Dioscoridis Lib. 4. Cap. 102. in Latine Sideritis, sive Ferrum inatrix, sic dicto à Ferro, quod Vulneribus Ferro factis fuit Medela*, for that it did cure Wounds made by the Sword, or with Iron; it was also called *Stratiotes*, as *Dioscorides* and *Pliny* say, and *Militaris*, because *Milites*, Soldiers, had usually great need of the same; in English *Ironwort*, and *Soldiers Herb*.

II. *The Kinds. Authors make many Species of this Plant, viz. 1. Sideritis vulgaris Clusij, Sideritis prima Clusij; this is without doubt Sideritis secunda Matthioli, others that of Dioscoridis, which some Authors, as Anguillara, Columna, Tragus, and Parkinson, will have to be Burnet, tho' it is plainly manifest by the Descriptions of each Plant and by their Heads of Flowers that they are differing Plants, Vulgar or Common Ironwort. 2. Sideritis Arvensis rubra, Tetrabit Angustifolium, Sideritis Arvensis Flore rubro Camerarij & Thalij, Sideritis alia in Vineis Casalpini, Alyssum Galeni Flore purpureo, Sideritis Arvensis Latifolia glabra Baubini, Meadow Ironwort with red Flowers. 3. Sideritis prima vel Herculea, Herba Judaica, Tetrabit, Tetrabit, Sideritis procumbens Ramosa Gerardi, Creeping Branched Ironwort, called also Jews Ironwort, because the Jews which Practised Physick in Italy made much use of it. 4. Sideritis parva procumbens, Sideritis quarta Clusij, Sideritis procumbens non Ramosa, Small Creeping Ironwort not Branched, or Small Jews Ironwort. 5. Sideritis altera parva, vel Sideritis quinta Clusij, Another Small Jews Ironwort. 6. Sideritis Montana parva Flore nigro purpureo Columnae, Sideritis Montana Apula versicolor, Mountain Ironwort with a small black purple Flower, or Mountain Ironwort of Naples. 7. Sideritis Folijs Alfinis Triffaginis Baubini, Ironwort with German-der Chickweed Leaves. 8. Sideritis Germanica parva, Sideritis sexta Clusij, Small Germany Ironwort, this says Clusius is common at Vienna in Austria. 9. Sideritis Hedercula Folio, Sideritis Anglica, English Ironwort, or Ironwort with Alehoof Leaves. 10. Sideritis Folio splendente oblongo glabra, Ironwort with smooth long Leaves. 11. Sideritis Arvensis Latifolia glabra Baubini, Sideritis Herculea altera Casalpini, Sideritis Arvensis Flore palido Camerarij, Sideritis Arvensis Species altera Thalij, Alyssum Germanicum aliorum, Broad Leav'd Meadow Ironwort, this Baubinus would have to be Sideritis secunda Matthioli, which it is not, and Lobel would have it to be a Species of Cannabis Spuria, others that it is Marrubium Pannonicum Clusij, all which are much to be doubted. To the former Eleven Kinds may be added the two following, viz. 12. Sideritis Anglica Radice strumosa, Panax Coloni Gerardi, Sideritis primi Thalij, Betonica fetida Gesneri, Clowns Woundwort, or English Ironwort with strumous Roots, of which we have Treated at large in Chap. 9. foregoing. 13. Sideritis Arvensis gravis odoris, Pimpinella Sanguisorba, Ironwort having a pleasant smell, or Our Common Burnet, whether greater or lesser; and this we have here added to the*

number,



number, because several Authors will have it to be a Species of the *Sideritides*, or *Ironworts*, of which we have Treated also at large in Chap. 101. foregoing of this Work.



*Ironwort*

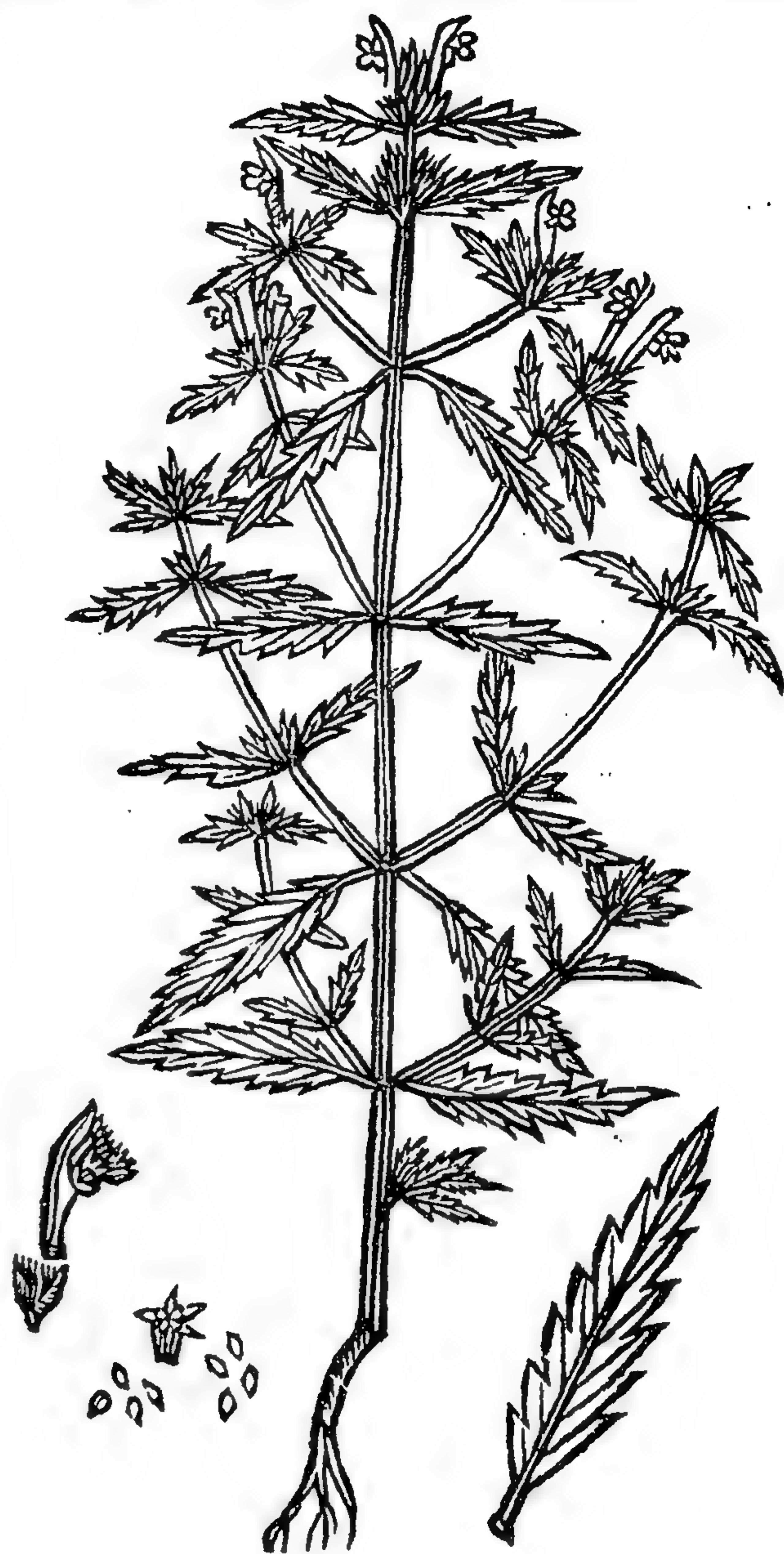
III. The Descriptions. The first, or Vulgar or Common Ironwort. It has a Root which is white and woody, continuing all Winter, and shooting forth new Stalks every Year; it grows greater and higher than the other Ironworts, as *Clusius* says, with larger hairy rough pointed Leaves set by couples one against another at the joints of the square hairy Stalks, dented about the edges, but set at somewhat farther distances, which branching themselves forth are set from the middle upwards with many Wharls of gaping white Flowers at the joints with the Leaves, spotted with Blood red spots in the upper parts of them, ending in a long Spike; the Seed which follows is small, uneven and black, contained in fine square Heads.

IV. Nota. This our first *Sideritis* I take to be truly the *Sideritis secunda Matthioli*, which very much appears from his description of it, tho' it is very short, in his Epitome, and is in these Words, *Exit in hac Caule quadrato, dodrantali, aut majori, Ramosque, Folijs Marrubio longioribus, ad Salviae faciem accedentibus, crispis, albicantibus, & per ambitum laciniatis, sapore haud ingrato, Floribus verticillatis in Caule, & Ramis prodeuntibus Marrubij modo.*

V. The second, or Meadow Ironwort with red Flowers. The Root of this Herb is very fibrous, or full of Threads, from whence rises up a square brown Stalk, full of Branches, and thereon several narrow, long, and pointed, rough Leaves, somewhat dented about the edges, set by pairs or couples, at the tops of which stand the Flowers, encompassing them, as the others do, of a dark red color, and sometimes of a white color; the whole Plant is of an austere

or harsh binding taste, without smell, and perishes every Year.

*Ironwort Meadow Red Flowered.*



VI. The third, or Creeping Branched Ironwort, called also Jews Ironwort. It has a Root which is small and woody, yet living all Winter, and shooting forth afresh every Spring; it is a small low Herb, neither wholly standing upright, nor wholly leaning down to the Ground, but has several weak, rough, hoary, square Stalks, not much above a Foot high, full of joints, at the several distances whereof grow two small Leaves, somewhat long, rough, or as it were crumpled, hard and hairy, not half so broad as *Horehound* Leaves, dented about the edges, smelling and tasting somewhat strong, which spread abroad into divers Branches, the upper parts whereof are replenished with many rough small Wharls of pale purplish gaping Flowers, with hoary Leaves at the joints under them also, where after they are past come small blackish Seed, contained in those Husks wherein the Flowers stood before.

VII. The fourth, or Small Creeping Ironwort not Branched, or Small Jews Ironwort. The Root of this Plant is small, and perishes every Year; the Herb is also small, and somewhat like the former in the hairy square Branches, but more trailing or leaning; the Leaves also are hairy, somewhat larger, and less snipt about the edges, that is, they are dented only from the middle to their ends; the Flowers grow in the bosoms of those Leaves, and encompass the Stalks or Branches of the Plant in Rundles at certain distances, as the others do, from their bottoms to their very tops, being of a whitish color, and shaped like the other Kinds.

VIII. The fifth, or Other Small Jews Ironwort. The Root is much like the beforegoing, and perishes every Year; it is a small Ironwort, and has the middle Stalk upright, square, and something hairy; spreading it self into many smaller Branches, even from



from the bottom upwards, which in a manner lye upon the Ground, with two such like Leaves at the Joints as in the last, but little or nothing dented at all; the Flowers are white, without spots, but gaping in like manner.

IX. *The sixth, or Mountain Ironwort* with a small black purple Flower. *It has a Root which is small, hard, and yellowish, from which rises up a reddish, hoary, hard, hairy, square Stalk, about half a Yard high, divided into two Branches, about the middle thereof, on which are set at the joints two small and long pale green Leaves one against another, covered with an hoary Down, and having three dents or notches on each side at the ends of them, which at the lower end of the Stalk next the Ground stand upon long footstalks, but up higher towards the top are without any; the Flowers stand in sharp pointed Husks, and are gaping, or hooded, as the rest are, but very small, whose head and jaws are of a dark purplish color, the middle of the Flower is yellow, and the long neck of the Flower which rises out of the Husk is whitish; after the Flowers are past there come four blackish Ash Colored Seed, somewhat cornered, which are contained in the hairy or hoary Husks.*

X. *The seventh, or Ironwort with Germander Chickweed Leaves.* *It has a Root which is small and thready, which sends forth a Stalk a Foot long, spread out into Branches from the bottom, and those again sending forth other smaller ones, all of them inclining to the Ground, like the Germander Chickweed, but much greater, on which stand a few hairy Leaves by pairs or couples, in form like unto that Chickweed, but larger, and dented about the edges, the Flowers grow at the joints with the Leaves towards the tops, and like unto the others in fashion, but somewhat longer, and of a blewish color, standing in sharp and rough Husks, in which is contained small round Seed.*

XI. *The eighth, or Small Germany Ironwort.* *The Root is white and woody, and perishes every Year; it is a small Plant, and has low square Stalks, of about a Foot high, Branched out almost from the very Ground, being soft and hoary, as the Leaves also are, which stand at the joints by couples, being long, and somewhat narrow, without any dents at all about the edges, yet larger at or near the bottom of the Stalks and Branches than towards their tops; the Branches have Flowers growing about them upwards as soon almost as they shoot out, in shape as the other sorts are, but they are so small that they scarcely appear out of the Husks, of a dusky color, the jaws and lower parts on the inside being whitish, after which follows blackish Seed, smaller than in the others.*

XII. *The ninth, or English Ironwort, or Ironwort with Alehoof Leaves,* *It has a Root which is small and thready, perishing every Year, but abundantly raising it self from its own sowing, in any Garden where it has once taken possession; it is a small Herb, not much above an Hand breadth, or four or five Inches high, having small, broad, and roundish green Leaves, with round dents about the edges, like to Alehoof, or rather like to Red Archangel Leaves; the Flowers are hooded, small, and purplish, and the Seed small and blackish.*

XIII. *The tenth, or Ironwort with smooth long Leaves.* *Its Root is whitish, fibrous, woody, and perishing every Year, from whence rise up square and jointed Stalks, smooth below, but with some small kind of hairiness at their tops; the Leaves are smooth and thin, set by couples, the lowermost three Inches long, and one broad, not dented at all about the edges; the Flowers are hooded, like the Common sort, but white, larger than they, and longer also,*

standing in rough Husks about the Stalks, even from the bottom almost, after which come small, blackish, uneven Seed, in Heads like those of *Plantane*, but shorter.

XIV. *The eleventh, or Broad Leaved Meadow Ironwort.* *The Root of this is like the second Kind aforegoing; and it has larger smooth green Leaves below than those above, a little dented about the edges; the Stalks are square, about a Foot and half in height, and Branched out; the Flowers grow in Roundles at the tops of the Branches, being hooded, and of a pale yellow color, and in some purplish, tending to white, without any smell at all.*

XV. *The Places.* Some of these grow wild in England, in Meadows, and on Mountains, in many places, being most of them natural to our Country; the second of these Gerard says grows frequently in the Corn Fields in Kent, and by Purfleet in Essex; the seventh Gerard also found in Flower and Seed among Corn in a Field joining to a Wood side not far from Greenhivie in Kent; the ninth Parkinson says he found growing wild in the Fields, from whence he transplanted it into his Garden, where it continued to encrease and flourish.

XVI. *The Times.* They all Flower in June and July, and their Seed is ripe soon after.

XVII. *The Qualities.* Ironwort is temperate in respect to heat or cold, and dry in the first degree, or begining of the second; it is Anodyn, Astringent, Incarnative, and Vulnerary.

XVIII. *The Specification.* It is very powerful to stop all fluxes of Blood, Catarrhs, the Reds and Whites in Women, and speedily to heal all simple green Wounds, and that, (as Authors say) without suppuration; it dries up also fluxes of Humors in old fretting Ulcers, cleanses the Ulcer, incarnates, and quickly heals it.

XIX. *The Preparations.* You may prepare therefrom, 1. *A Liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Syrup.* 4. *A Decoction.* 5. *A Powder of the Herb.* 6. *A Balsam or Ointment.* 7. *A Cataplasme.*

## *The Virtues.*

XX. *The Liquid Juice.* Given inwardly two, three, four, or five Spoonfuls at a time, either alone by it self, or mixed with rough Red Wine, it is prevalent against all internal fluxes of Blood, as Spitting or Vomiting Blood, Pissing Blood, the Bloody or Hepatick Flux, and the overflowing of the Terms in Women.

XXI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, besides which it is powerful against Catarrhs, or fluxes of Rheum falling down the Throat upon the Lungs; it prevails against four and Cholerick Belchings of the Stomach, is said to cure Ruptures or Burstenness, and the Whites in Women, as also a simple Gonorrhœa in Men, being taken inwardly, and outwardly injected into those parts with a Syringe, for being very drying and binding, and strengthening withal, it not only restores those parts, but preserves their Tone intire; it is admirably good also to wash all green Wounds and old running Sores or Ulcers, healing the first, (if simple) without suppuration, and cleansing, stopping the defluxion of Humors, and drying the other, in order to its speedy healing; and if there be any Inflammation, or begining of a Gangreen about the parts, it prevents it, and soon secures it against any dangerous Accident. Dose two, three, or four Spoonfuls in any convenient Vehicle Morning and Night.

XXII. *The Syrup.* It helps Coughs, Colds, Catarrhs, and Asthma's, prevails against obstructions



of the Lungs, thickens the pituitous matter, and causes expectoration; mixed with Gargarisms it heals Sores and Ulcers of the Mouth and Throat.

XXIII. *The Decoction in Wine, or Wine and Water.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice and Essence, but ought to be given in a greater quantity, and that Morning, Noon, and Night: Gerard says it is no less available in the stopping a flux of Blood, or flux of Humors, than the Herb or Juice.

XXIV. *The Pouder of the Herb.* Given inwardly to a Dram, or more, it stops inward fluxes of Blood, whether by the Mouth, Anus, or Bladder; it cures fluxes of the Bowels, and is good against Catarrhs; outwardly applied to any green or fresh simple Wound it presently conglutinates the lips thereof, and heals it, and applied to any inveterate running Sore, or old Ulcer, it (in some little time) stops the fluxion, cleanses it from its fordes, incarnates where Flesh is wanting, dries, and in a little time heals it.

XXV. *The Balsam or Ointment.* If to every Pound of the Ointment or Balsam three or four Ounces of the Pouder of Tobacco be added, they will become most admirable Medicaments or Topicks for the curing of old running Sores, inveterate and putrid Ulcers, and malign Fistula's, being first wash'd by injection or otherwise with the Juice, Essence, or Decoction, and then (twice a day) dressed up with one of these Preparations; they are also profitable against the Gout, or other Aches and Pains in any part of the Body.

XXVI. *The Cataplasim.* It may be made of the Herb alone, or of the Juice mixed with the Pouder of the Herb, or with Barley Flower, &c. applied to fluxes of Blood in Wounds it stops the bleeding, it strengthens parts weakened by any Disease, as the Joints by the Gout, the Nerves by Palsies, &c. and hinders the afflux of any Humor to the weakened parts; applied also to a simple recent Contusion it discusses the Tumor, and restores the part hurt.

## CHAP. CCCCVIII.

### Of IVY Tree or Wall.

**T**HE Names. It is called in Arabick *Cissus*, in Greek *Κισσός*, *ἡ Κισσός*, in Latine *Cissus*, and *Cittus*, and *Hedera*; the first of these Names some have thought to be derived from *Κισσόνειος*, *Pumex*, *sive Lapis porosus*, *quia ut ille Aquam, ita hoc Lignum textura porosa, & spiraculis innumeris pervia Vinum transmittit, unde Catoni & Varroni Cissimibion Poculum Hederaceum est.* And probably it might be that from this *Costus* might say, *That a Cup made of Ivy Wood will not hold any Wine therein.* The latter Name, *Hederam vero Pompeius dictum censat, quod hareat, vel potius edita petat, vel quia id cui adhaerit edit & enecat*; and in English it is called Ivy.

II. *The Kinds.* There are five several sorts of Ivy, viz. 1. *Hedera Arborea, sive Scandens, Hedera Corymbosa nigra, Orthocissos, Hedera recta, Hedera rigens Plinij*, Common Ivy, Tree Ivy, or Wall Ivy, and this is that which all Authors call *Hedera* simply, which is *Our Vulgar Tree Ivy*, called also *Hedera nigra*, Black Ivy, because it bears black Berries. 2. *Hedera Corymbosa alba, Hedera Corymbia*, White Berry bearing Ivy. 3. *Hedera Helix, Hedera Sterilis, Hedera Helix provoluta*, which is thought to be the *Helix Dioscoridis, Theophrasti & Plinij*, which

they make to be the third Species of their *Climbing Kinds*, yet it is seldom seen to climb up in the manner of the former, but lyes for the most part on the Ground; but *Johannes Thalius* in his *Hercynia Sylva* says he found it climbing as well upon Trees as creeping upon old Walls and Stones; this some say is barren, as not bringing forth any Fruit, yet others say this is rather for want of Age, for that in time it would bear, and change into the other sort, as *Theophrastus* and *Pliny* say; this is that we call *Barren Ivy*. 4. *Hedera Virginiana, Hedera Trifolia Virginensis*, Three Leav'd Virginian Ivy. 5. *Hedera Quinquefolia Virginiana, vel Virginensis*, Five Leav'd Virginian Ivy.

III. *Hederula Tragi, Bauhinus* makes to be a differing sort from *Hedera Helix, vel Sterilis*, Our third sort, or Barren Ivy above mentioned, and calls it *Hedera Humi repens*, which yet *Tragus* himself distinguishes not, but says, that that Ivy, which whilst it is young brings forth no Fruit, when it is grown older does, and that there is no difference in his two Kinds of *Hedera* and *Hederula* but in the Age; this *Barren Kind*, says *Parkinson*, which creeps upon the Ground, will yet with its clasping Branches take hold of whatever is next unto it.

### Ivy Tree or Wall.



IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Our Common Ivy, Tree Ivy, or Wall Ivy. The Root hereof is woody and fibrous, running under the upper Crust of the Earth; from this Root it grows up with a thick woody Trunk or Body, which is sometimes, (tho' rarely) found as big as ones Arm, shooting forth on all sides many woody Branches, and grows sometimes alone by it self into a pretty Bush, as *Lobel* says he saw in our Country, but it usually climbs up upon Trees or Walls, and as the Branches rise it sends forth several small Roots into the Body or Branches of the Tree upon which it clammers, whereby it climbs up almost into all parts of the Tree, or if it clammers upon a Wall it climbs up and lays it self in the Chinks or Joints of the said Wall, whether



ther Brick or Stone, on which Trees it runs up so strongly, fastning its Claws or Roots therein, that it draws the nourishment out of the Tree, and thereby in time kills it, by consuming the life and moisture thereof, and by choaking it with the abundance of shadow and humidity of its Leaves and Branches, which are ever green, (and serves as an Ornament thereto when it is Leafless, but in the end is its destruction and utter ruin) these Branches having thus fastned themselves by their Claws or Roots in a Tree or Wall will live thereby upwards, tho' the Trunk or Body of the Shrub is cut off from the Root below, and it will live as well as if it was not cut away from its said Root at all, only by the fastning of its little Claws or *Radiculae* into the said Tree or Wall, and there growing great they will oftentimes so crack it, that it will in time utterly ruin it, as is said before; while the Plant is young the Leaves of most of it will be cornered, but when it grows older it has no corners on the sides, but grows only round, or somewhat long, and pointed at the end, the young Leaves which spring forth from the Branches keeping oftentimes the same order, and are of a dark shining green color above, and somewhat of a yellowish green underneath, striped with white, and sometimes with red spots, abiding fresh and green Winter and Summer; from the joints of the Stalks and tops of the Branches grow forth upon short Stalks small mossie yellow Flowers, standing in an Umbel, or close round Tuft; after the Flowers are past small round Berries come in their places, which are green until they grow ripe, and then turn black, with a small point at the end of each Berry, in each of which are usually contained four Seeds, three-square in a manner, but round on the one side; this Shrub or Bush yields either voluntarily or by being bruised in hot Countries a kind of reddish hard Gum, called *Κισσὸς ῥόμμι*, *Hederæ Gummi*, The Gum of Ivy, which is said by Authors to be dangerous being inwardly used in Physick, because say they it has a caustick or burning faculty.

### *Tree Ivy, or Wall.*



V. The second, or White Berry bearing Ivy. This in its Roots, Stalks, Branches, Claws, or *Radiculae*,

*Leaves, Flowers, Berries, and manner of growing, differs very little from the former, and is chiefly distinguished in these things, viz. that the Leaves are thinner and finer, and of a lighter green color, and that the Berries are of a whitish or greyish color when they are ripe, and not black, as the Berries of the Common Sort are.*

VI. The third, or Barren Ivy. From a woody stringy Root, as the former, it sends forth several slender and woody Branches, trailing upon the Ground, and for the most part lying thereon, but sometimes it is found to wind it self and climb up the Trees, Bushes and Hedges under which it grows; with the small Tendrels or Claws it shoots forth at the several joints of the Branches, where the Leaves come forth, being somewhat lesser than the first *Common Kind*, and of a dark shining green color, usually formed into three corners, and sometimes into five; at the Joints with the Leaves there thrusts forth underneath small white Fibres, Claws, or *Radiculae*, by which it takes hold as it creeps; this very rarely has been seen to bear either Seed or Flowers.

VII. The fourth, or Three Leav'd Virginian Ivy. The Roots of this Plant do shoot under Ground, and send forth young woody Stalks, some whereof will stand upright, others lye down, and take root again as they spread, as also on any Wall they stand nigh unto, like unto our former *Barren Ivy*; the Leaves are broad and large, three always set together upon a long footstalk; at the Joints with the Leaves come forth pale Flowers in a loose Tuft or Cluster, which turn into pale yellow Berries, with small, hard, round, Ash Colored Seed in the dry wrinkled Skins or Husks, without any moisture at all in them; this Plant yields a white Milk, without any taste in it, being broken in any part thereof, which Milk after it has lain a while will change to be as black as Ink, and therefore is thought to be a good Material to color Hair or any other thing Black.

VIII. The fifth, or Five Leav'd Virginian Ivy. This Slender, but Tall Climbing Virginian Ivy, has a Root which spreads here and there under the Ground, but not very deep, from whence rise up several Stems or Stalks, none much bigger than a Mans Thumb, many less, from whence shoot forth several and many long weak Branches, not able to stand upright unless they be sustained, yet being planted near unto a Wall or Pale, or House side, the Branches at several distances of the Leaves will shoot forth small short Tendrels or Claws, not twining themselves about any thing, but ending in four, five, or six, or more, short and somewhat broad Claws, which will fasten like a Hand with Fingers so close thereunto, that it will bring part of the Wall, Mortar, Board, Glass, Brick, or Stone, away with it if it is pulled from it; and by these Claws it stays it self, and climbs up to the top of the highest Tree, Wall, House, or Chimney, being planted by them: the Leaves are crumpled, or rather folded together, at their first coming forth, and very red, which afterwards growing forth are very fair, large, and green, divided into four, five, six, or seven Leaves, (not regular to a certain number) standing or growing together upon a small footstalk, and set without order on the Branches, at the ends whereof, as also at other places sometimes, come forth several short Tufts of Buds for Flowers, which here in *England* never come to that perfection, as to open themselves and shew what kind of form they would be of, much less what Berries or Seed would follow; the use of this is chiefly to furnish a Garden, and to be an Ornament to the place it is planted in.

IX. Or thus, according to Gerard. There is kept for Novelties sake in divers Gardens a Virginian Vine, but which is indeed an Ivy; the Stalks hereof



grow to a great height if they be planted nigh any thing which may sustain them, or bear them up, and they take fast hold by certain small Tendrels, (or Claws) upon what Body soever they grow near, whether Trees, Wood, Brick, Stone, or Glass, and that so firmly, that oftentimes when you pluck them off from the same they will bring pieces of the matter they cling to off with their Claws, (or Radiculae) it puts forth its Leaves in April, which are large, and consisting of four, five, or more particular Leaves, each of them being long, and deeply cut, so that they somewhat resemble the Leaves of the Chestnut Tree; the Stalks with the Rudiments of Flowers are to be seen in August, which Flowers grow clustering together after the manner of Ivy, but never with us shew themselves open, so that we can say little or nothing of their Color or Fruit which succeeds them.

X. *The Places*. The first is known almost to every Child to grow and climb up upon Trees, Hedges, Bushes, Brick or Stone Walls, Houses, Churches, &c. in most parts of this Kingdom; the second has been brought to us out of *Turky, Italy, and France*; the third grows almost as common as the first, in woody, shady, and moist places, under Hedges, and in corners of waste Grounds, Lanes, and the like; the fourth and fifth are Natives of *Florida*, and North West parts of *America*, where our *English Colonies* are planted, as in *New England, Maryland, Pensilvania, New York, Virginia, and Carolina*, but being transplanted grow very well with us in *England*.

XI. *The Times*. Our Ivy Flowers not till *July*, and the Berries are not ripe till about the latter end of *December*, after they have felt the Winter Frosts, and the *American sorts* Flower very late with us, if at all.

XII. *The Qualities*. Ivy is hot and dry in the end of the second degree, Astringent, Biting, Cosmetick, Vulnerary, and Ptarmick, as the juice of the Leaves, &c. The Berries are also hot and dry in the second degree, Astringent, Diuretick, and Alexipharmick.

XIII. *The Specification*. It stops Fluxes, and heals Bloody Fluxes, Jaundice, provokes the Terms, resists Poyson, and the Bitings of Venomous Creatures, cures the Plague, and heals running Sores and old Ulcers, in what part of the Body, and of what kind soever.

XIV. *The Preparations*. You may have therefrom these following things, 1. *The Leaves*. 2. *The Wood*. 3. *A Gum*. 4. *A Liquid Juice of Roots, Leaves, and Berries*. 5. *An Essence of the same*. 6. *A Decoction of Leaves and Berries*. 7. *A Powder of the Flowers*. 8. *A Powder of the Berries*. 9. *A Bath of the Leaves and Berries*. 10. *A Pectorary of Leaves and Berries*. 11. *A Fume of the Branches*. 12. *An Acid Tincture of the Berries*. 13. *A Spirituous Tincture of the Berries*. 14. *An Oily Tincture of the Berries*.

#### *The Virtues.*

XV. *The Leaves*. The fresh Leaves are commonly used to be laid upon Issues wheresoever, in Arms, Legs, &c. to keep them open, and to draw forth the Humors which fall upon the same parts.

XVI. *The Wood*. It is of use to make little round Balls of, about the bigness of high Swan Shot, or white or grey Pease, which are used for Issues instead of Pease, drawing forth the Humor easier, and keeping the Sore better open, and this they do by reason of their sponginess or porosity, being much more porous than Pease, and so more apt to be filled with the serosities of the Issue; if the Wood is made into a Cup, and Ale, Beer, or Wine be put into it,

so as to stand in it for some time, and then drunk off, and this continually done for some days, it is said to help such as are troubled with the Spleen, and to give ease in the pains thereof. *Cato* says that the Deceits of Vintners may be found out by one of these Cups, if they mix any Water with their Wine, for the said mix'd Wine being put into one of these Cups of Ivy Wood, the Wine will soak thro' the Wood and leave the Water behind; for *Cato* and *Varro* both say it is the nature of Ivy Wood not to hold any Wine, so great an Antipathy there is between them.

XVII. *The Gum*. That which is gathered in hot Countries from the Body and Branches of the Ivy, (either by a voluntary issuing therefrom, or by bruising thereof) is exceeding sharp and hot, burning and exulcerating the Skin, yet is used, being dissolved, to take away superfluous Hair in any place, and to destroy Nits and Lice, also Crab-Lice, in what parts soever; being dissolved in Vinegar and put into a hollow aking Tooth eases the pain, and being often used will cause it to fall out; some use this Gum with other things as a Bait to kill Fish; see more hereof in my *Seplusium, or Druggists Shop, Lib. 9. Cap. 29.* where you may find the farther Uses thereof, and also the Signs how to know it, and to distinguish the true from the false, that sold in the Druggists Shops being for the most part counterfeit, having neither the form or appearance, nor the Virtues of the true Gum, the false being for the most part full of sticks, dross, and filth, brittle, and of an insipid taste, whereas the true is of a yellowish red color, clean, of a strong smell, and of a sharp, biting, and exulcerating taste.

XVIII. *The Liquid Juice of Roots, Leaves, and Berries*. If it is much taken inwardly it is apt to cause Barrenness in Man or Woman, it also causes a weakness and trouble in the Brain or Understanding, and affects the other Senses, for which reason Authors say used much inwardly it is an Enemy to the Nerves, but much strengthens them being outwardly applied; the juice of the Root is said to be good against the biting of the *Phalangium*, or poysonous Spider; the juice of the Leaves or Berries taken inwardly provoke the Terms in Women, facilitate the Birth, and bring away the Afterbirth; the juice of Leaves or Berries used as an Errhine, by snuffing it up the Nose, purges the Head and Brain of thin Rheum, which causes Catarrhs or Defluxions into the Glandules of the Throat, Jaws, Eyes, Nose, or other parts adjacent, and cures stinking Ulcers in the same; dropped also into the Ears it cures old and running Sores and Ulcers in them. Dose one or two Spoonfuls inwardly in a Glass of Wine, or other fit Vehicle.

XIX. *The Essence of Roots, Leaves, or Berries*. It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, but is more powerful as being depurated, and so is to be given in lesser quantity, as from three quarters of a Spoonful to a Spoonful and half, increasing the Dose as the Age and Strength of the Patient will bear; it is very good against the Yellow Jaundice, provokes Urine, and is said to be good to break the Stone, and expel Sand, Gravel, and small Stones from the Urinary parts; taken also Morning, Noon, and Night in a Glass of Wine it is a good preservative against the Plague, or any other infectious Disease, and is of singular use to cure the same after infection.

XX. *The Decoction of Leaves or Berries*. It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but nothing near so powerful, and therefore may be given from three to six Spoonfuls sweetned with White Sugar; a Decoction in Vinegar mixed with Damask Rose Water and Oil of Roses, and applied to the Fore-



head and Temples gives ease in the Headach, tho' it be of long continuance, and applied warm to the Sides of such as are troubled with the Spleen, Aches, or Stitches in the Side, resolves the *Coagulum* if any be, and gives present ease; the Decoction of Leaves or Berries in Wine is of excellent use to cure old running Sores and filthy Ulcers, which are difficult to be healed, it admirably cleanses, dries, and heals them; and it is also effectual for the speedy cure of green simple Wounds, by uniting the Flesh and consolidating their lips; the same is good to heal Scaldings with Water and Burnings with Fire, and the Exulcerations which happen thereby, occasioned by the saltness, heat, or sharpness of Humors flowing thereto.

XXI. *The Powder of the Flowers.* A Dram of the Flowers (being dried carefully and reduced to powder) being drank twice a day in Red Wine cures a Diarrhoea, or Looseness, yea a Bloody Flux, as *Dioscorides* saith.

XXII. *The Powder of the Berries.* It is good against the Jaundice, kills Worms in Old or Young, and prevails against the biting of the *Phalangium*; it is a singular Remedy both to prevent the Plague or Pestilence before infection, and to cure the same after it has seized the Patient, by drinking the Powder from half a Dram to a Dram, (according to Age and Strength) in any fit Prophylactick Vehicle, or proper Antidotal Liquor, Morning, Noon, and Night, for two, three, or four days together; and being taken in White Port Wine for some certain time it opens the obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, gives ease in the Strangury, provokes Urine, and breaks the Stone, expelling Sand, Gravel, and Tartarous Mucilage from the Urinary parts and passages: *Tragus* says that it provokes the Terms in Women, and is so powerful in its operation on those parts, in driving forth the dead Child and Afterbirth, that it ought to be cautiously used, and not but upon necessity.

XXIII. *The Bath of the Leaves and Berries.* It is a strong Decoction of them made in Water; if a Woman which has a dead Child sit therein as hot as she can conveniently bear it, it forces away the Child and Afterbirth, and being once or twice repeated causes a due cleansing; if a Woman whose Courses are stopp'd sit therein, and repeat it for some few times, it effectually brings them down, but a Woman with Child ought cautiously to forbear the use thereof, because it will endanger Abortion.

XXIV. *A Pessary of Leaves and Berries.* It has all the Virtues and Operations of the Bath in the former Section, but not altogether so powerful, yet it very much prevails to bring down the Terms when stopp'd, and being often repeated forces away the dead Child, &c. as is before expressed.

XXV. *The Fume made of the Branches being burnt.* It expels pestilential and infectious Vapors, corrects a putrid Air, which causes malignity and putrefaction, and drives away Bats, Gnats, and other troublesome Insects of that kind.

XXVI. *The Acid Tincture of the Berries.* It opens all obstructions of the Urinary parts, breaks and expels the Stone, resists Vomiting, strengthens the Stomach, and is a good Prophylactick and Curative of the Plague or Pestilence; it destroys the malignity and putrefactive heat of all Fevers, cools, and allays Thirst. Dose so many drops as to give the *Vehiculum* a pleasing acidity, which may be repeated two, three, or four times a day, or more, as need requires.

XXVII. *The Spirituous Tincture of the Berries.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Decoction, and Powder, but a much more pleasing Medicament,

because finer, purer, consisting of more subtil parts, and given in a much smaller Dose, and by reason of its preparation with Spirit of Wine is also more Cordial and Stomack. Dose fifty or sixty drops Morning and Night in a Glass of Wine, but it is not long to be continued lest it induces Barrenness; outwardly bathed upon Nervous and Tendonous parts it comforts and strengthens them, and alleviates aches and pains coming from a cold and moist cause.

XXVIII. *The Oily Tincture.* Inwardly given it prevails against the Palsie and Lethargy, gives ease in the Strangury, provokes Urine, breaks and expels the Stone and Gravel in Reins or Bladder, and alleviates the pains of the Colick; outwardly applied in the Gout, (a little Camphir being dissolved therein) it gives ease in pains and stitches of the Side and Spleen, dissolves cold Tumors, and gives relief in a Gout proceeding from a cold cause. Dose inwardly from ten to twenty, or twenty five drops, dropp'd first into Sugar, and then the Sugar mixed with the *Vehiculum* you design to give it in.

## C H A P. CCCCIX.

### Of I V Y Water,

O R

### Ivy Leav'd C R O W F O O T.

I. **T**HE Names. I know not of any Greek Name it has, but it is called in Latine *Hederula Aquatica* by Gerard and Lobel, also *Ranunculus Hederaceus Dalechampij* & *Lugdunensis*, *Lenticula Aquatica trifulca Bauhini*, *Ranunculus Hederaceus Aquaticus*, in English Water Ivy, or Ivy Leav'd Crowfoot.

II. *The Kinds.* It is certain it is no Species of Ivy, properly so called, but a singular Plant of its Kind, obtaining the Name *Hederula* meerly from the form of its Leaf, and seems from the nature and qualities of the Herb to be more allied to the Stock of the *Crowfeet* than any other Plant.

*Water=Ivie.*



III. *The Description.* This *Hederula Aquatica*, or Water Ivy, has small thready Strings instead of Roots



Roots or Stalks, which spread themselves very much under the Water; from this stringy Root grow forth several slender trailing Stalks, rising from the bottom of the Water to the top; these Stalks shoot forth at the lower Joints and with the Leaves under the Water several other small Fibres, which serve as Roots also with the former: from the Stalks likewise at the Joints come forth divers triangular Leaves, in form of an Ivy Leaf, which Leaves, those which grow near the tops of the Stalks, float upon the top of the Water, and are many, each of their three parts, formed also in a triangular or three cornered manner, like those of *Barren Ivy*, or *Noble Liverwort*, and are sometimes marked with a black spot; and with these Leaves from the Joints come forth small knots of yellow Flowers, standing upon indifferent long footstalks, but *Gerard* says it is barren of Flowers or Seed.

IV. *The Places.* *Gerard* says it is very rare to find, and that he found it once in a Ditch by *Bermondsey House*, near *London*, and never elsewhere; but *Parkinson* says it is found plentifully enough in divers places of this Land; I have found it in Ditches, Pools of standing Water, and other like wet and plashy Grounds in several places of *Cambridgeshire*; but it always grows in Water.

V. *The Times.* It Flowers in *May* and *June*, and gives its Seed in some small time after.

VI. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* are exactly the same with those of *Common Crowfoot*, and therefore I refer you thither, where they are handled at large in *Chap. 176. Sect. 24. ad 24.* so that no more need be said thereof in this place.

JUNOE'S TEARS, see *Vervain Chap. (§. 1.*  
JUPITER'S BEARD, see *Housleek Great Ch. 384.*  
JUPITER'S DISTAFF, see *Clary Chap. 137. Sect. 2.*  
JUREY, see *Darnel Chap. 211.*

C H A P. CCCCX.

## OF KATHERINE-FLOWER, OR

Roman NIGELLA.

**T**HE Names. It is called in *Arabick Xanim*, *Sunis*, *Sunici*, seu *Sunizi*, in *Greek Melanthion*, and *Μελανθιον*, in *Latine Melanthium*, and *Nigella*, in *English Katherine-Flower*, *Fennel-Flower*, and *Roman Nigella*.

II. *The Kinds.* There are several sorts of *Nigella*, *Gith*, or *Fennel-Flower*, viz. 1. *Melanthium*, five *Nigella Romana*, *Roman Nigella*, or *Katherine-Flower*, properly so called, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Nigella Cretica*, *Gith*, *Fennel-Flower*, or *Nigella of Candia*. 3. *Nigella Hispanica* & *Damaſcena Flore ſimplici* & *multiplici*, *Spanish Gith*, *Fennel-Flower*, or *Nigella Single and Double*, of which we Treat under the Title of *Nigella* in some of the following Chapters of this Book.

III. *The Kinds of Roman Nigella, or Katherine-Flower.* Of this there are the three following sorts, 1. *Nigella Romana, five Sativa*, *Roman Nigella*, *Sweet smelling Nigella*, or *Sweet scented Katherine-Flower*. 2. *Nigella Romana Silvestris inodora*,

*Wild Fennel-Flower*, or *Katherine-Flower*. 3. *Nigella Romana Arvensis*, *Field Fennel-Flower*, or *Field Katherine-Flower*.



Katherine  
Flower

IV. *The Descriptions.* The first, or *Roman sweet smelling Nigella*, or *Katherine-Flower*, has a Root which is small, thready, yellow, and perishing every Year; this sweet Plant grows up to be two Feet high, more or less, with several slender Branches, and many finely cut and divided Leaves on them, nearly as fine or small as *Fennel*, (whence one of the Names) and very like unto those of the *Larkshells*; at the top of every Branch stands one Flower, made of five blew Leaves, laid abroad like a Star, without any green Leaves under the Flower, as in some *Single*, and another *Double blew sort*, with a green Head in the middle, compassed with some few Threads, which Head grows to be the Seed Vessel, being a little long and round, with five small short Tops, like Horns, standing at the tops of the Heads, in which lye in several Cells small, black, and very sharp, sweet, strong smelling Seed.

V. *The second, or Wild Fennel-Flower*, or *Katherine-Flower*. This grows very like the former for its green Leaves, but a little smaller and shorter; the Flowers are blew, and like the former, but the Head with its Seed is larger, and the Horns longer; the Seed within is usually black, sometimes a little whitish, and sometimes yellowish, without any smell at all: there is another likewise of this sort, differing in nothing from this, but only that its single Flowers are white, and its black Seed without scent.

VI. *The third, or Field Fennel-Flower*, or *Katherine-Flower*. This Field Sort is very like the last, but it grows thinner of Branches and Leaves, and they also shorter; the Heads are smaller and longer, as the Flowers also are, but of a pale blew color, the Seed being black likewise, and without scent: there is another of this sort, differing little from that now described, but in the Flowers, which being single and blew like it, have green Leaves under them, and the Seed being black is somewhat sweet.

VII. The



VII. *The Places.* The first is usually Sown in Gardens, even in *Italy*, and other Countries, the others grow wild, and in Corn Fields of *Italy*, and other Southern Countries, with us they all grow in Gardens only.

VIII. *The Times.* They are all Annually to be Sown in the Spring, if they do not Sow themselves, and they Flower in *June* and *July*, giving their ripe Seed in *July* and *August*.

IX. *The Qualities.* The Seed, (which is chiefly used) is hot and dry in the third degree, it is Appetitive, Absterfive, Carminative, Digestive, Diuretick, Pectoral, Nephritick, Alexipharmick, and of thin and subtil parts; where note, the first Kind is only used in Physick.

X. *The Specification.* It wonderfully prevails against thin and salt Catarrhs, expels Wind, kills Worms, helps shortness of Breath, provokes the Terms, eases the Strangury, expels Stone and Gravel, and is an Antidote against Poyson.

XI. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom  
1. *A Liquid Juice of the Herb.* 2. *An Essence of the same.* 3. *An Infusion of Herb or Seed in Wine.* 4. *The Seed whole.* 5. *A Pouder of the Seed.* 6. *An Oil of the Seed by Expression.* 7. *An Acid Tincture of Leaves or Seed.* 8. *A Spirituous Tincture.* 9. *An Oily Tincture.* 10. *A Decoction of the Seed in Vinegar.* 11. *A Fume of Herb or Seed.* 12. *A Spirit from Herb or Seed.*

## *The Virtues.*

XII. *The Liquid Juice.* It opens obstructions of the *Viscera*, chiefly of the Lungs, Reins, and Womb; mix'd with equal parts of Honey, and so taken, it helps against Asthma's, causes free breathing, removes Hoarseness and Wheezing, provokes Urine, eases the Strangury, expels Sand, Gravel, and Tartarous Matter out of the Urinary parts, gives ease in the Colick, and forces down the Terms in Women, kills Worms, and dries up Catarrhs. Dose one Spoonful to two Morning and Night for some considerable time; it may also be mix'd with White Port Wine, and so taken.

XIII. *The Essence of the Herb.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, is something more pleasant to be taken, and more powerful in its operation, and therefore ought to be given in somewhat a lesser quantity; taken with Honey it is a Remedy against Poyson, the Stinging of Scorpions, and the Biting of the Spider *Phalangium*; given mixed with a simple distilled Water of *Angelica*, *Aniseeds*, or *Fennel*, it is said to increase Milk in Nurser's Breasts.

XIV. *The Infusion of Herb or Seed in Wine.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but must be given in larger quantities, viz. from four to six, or eight Ounces; it helps shortness of Breath, provokes Urine, and is good against the Bitings of Venomous Creatures, &c.

XV. *The whole Seed.* It is said that it was eaten familiarly in former Times, being strewed upon their Bread, or rather put into their Bread in making, and so put in as Poppy Seed was; tied in a Cloth and smelled to, being of hot, dry, and thin parts, it helps to dry up Rheums and Distillations from the Head, as *Galen* says, and being put into a Cap among other things for that purpose it does much good; being often smelled to it is said to restore the Sense of Smelling to those who have lost it; it serves well to put into odoriferous Pouders and sweet Bags among other sweet things.

XVI. *The Pouder of the Seed.* Being taken from half a Dram to a Dram in Wine it is a Remedy against shortness of Breath, and difficulty of breathing, discusses and expels Wind, provokes Urine and

the Terms in Women, increases Milk in the Breasts of Nurser's, not being too much taken; it kills and drives forth Worms in the Stomach and Belly, whether taken in Wine or Water, and this it does the more effectually if it is applied Plasterwise, or in a Cataplasim, to Stomach and Navel; it is an excellent Remedy (as *Galen* says) where there is need of heating, cleansing, and drying.

XVII. *The Oil of the Seed by Expression.* It has all the self same Virtues of the Seed, expressed in the former Section, and may be given from twenty to forty drops, first mixed with Honey, or Syrup of Clovegilliflowers, or other proper Syrup, and then taken in a Glass of Wine, Sack-Whey, Barley-Broth, or other proper Vehicle, Morning, Noon, and Night.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It is good against burning and malign Fevers, the Plague or Pestilence, and other contagious Diseases, it resists Poyson, is good against the Stinging of Scorpions, the Biting of Mad Dogs, and other Venomous Creatures, and has all the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, Decoction, or Infusion and Pouder of the Seed aforegoing. Dose so many drops as to give the Vehicle a pleasing acidity, several times a day.

XIX. *The Spirituous Tincture.* It cheers the Heart, revives the Spirits, resists Fainting and Swooning Fits, prevails against palpitation of the Heart, dries up Catarrhs and Rheums, discusses and expels Wind, strengthens the Stomach, causes a good Digestion, provokes Urine, and is profitable against Gravel and Stone; given to a Woman in Labor from one to three Drams in a proper Vehicle it facilitates the Delivery, and brings away the Afterbirth.

XX. *The Oily Tincture.* It is good against the Colick and inward Convulsions of the Bowels, opens obstructions of the Womb, Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, gives ease in the Strangury, and expels Sand, Gravel, Stones, and other Calculous or Tartarous Mucilage out of the Urinary parts. Dose from ten to twenty, or thirty drops, first dropped into White Sugar, and well mixed therewith, and then given in a Glass of White Port Wine; it gives ease in the Gout outwardly applied, is excellent against the Wounds or Punctures of Nerves and Tendons, and hastens the Birth of Women in Labor.

XXI. *The Decoction of the Seed in Vinegar.* If it is held in the Mouth of such as are troubled with the Toothach it eases the pain, bathed upon hard Swellings it softens and discusses them, it cleanses the Eyes of filth, and being daily applied to the deformities of the Skin, as Tettars, Ringworms, Scurf, Morpew, Yellowness, Spots, Freckles, &c. it is said to cure them.

XXII. *The Fume from the Herb or Seed being burnt.* It drives away Flies, Gnats, Musketoes, &c. out of the Room in which it is used in Summer time.

XXIII. *The Spirit from Herb or Seed.* It is Cordial, expels Wind, eases the Colick, prevails against Convulsions in Children or Elder People, and cures Fainting and Swooning Fits.

## C H A P. CCCCXI.

Of KALI, or GLASSWORT,  
Called also SALTWORT.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *Arabick* Kali, it knows no *Greek* Name, but in *Latine* it is called



called *Kali* also, and *Salicornia*, *Salsicornia*, and *Salsola* genus, in English *Kali*, *Glaswort*, and *Saltwort*. The Ashes hereof are called *Soda*, and *Rochetta*, and the Salt *Alkali*, or *Sal Alkali*, the Salt of *Kali*, or *Glaswort*; *Kal* is an *Arabick* Word, and in that Language signifies Salt.

II. *The Kinds*. There are four Kinds of *Kali*, or *Glaswort*, viz. 1. *Kali Geniculatum*, *Salicornia*, *Salsola* genus aliud *Cesalpini*, *Salsicornia*, Jointed *Glaswort*, or *Saltwort*. 2. *Kali majus Cochleatum*, *Kali magnum Sedi medij Folijs Semine Cochleato Lobelij*, *Kali Cochleatum majus Camerarij*, *Anthyllis Salsa majoris*, *Kali majus Cochleato Semine*, *Salsola* genus *Cesalpini*, Great *Glaswort*, or *Kali* with Snail like Seed. 3. *Kali minus album*, *Kali minus villosum Baubini*, *Anthylloides Thalij*, Small White *Glaswort*. 4. *Kali Ægyptiacum Folijs valde longis hirsutis Baubini*, *Kali Ægyptium Alpini*, *Ægyptian Kali*, *Glaswort*, or *Saltwort*.

III. *The Descriptions*. *The first*, or Jointed *Kali*, *Glaswort*, or *Saltwort*, has a Root which is small, long, and thready; it rises up usually with but one Stalk, upright, round, thick, and almost transparent, a Foot, or Foot and half high, thick set, and full of Joints, or Knots, without any Leaves at all on them, but shooting forth Joints one out of another, or one at the end of another, with short Cods at the heads of them, and also such like smaller Branches on all sides, and they are also divided into other smaller ones; this is thought to bear neither Flower nor Seed: there are some other Kinds hereof, as *Kali Geniculatum breve*, differing a little in the form of the Joints one from another, and *Kali Geniculatum rubrum*, one which is wholly reddish, not differing in any thing else from any of the other Jointed ones.

IV. *The second*, or Great *Glaswort*, or *Kali* with Snail like Seed. It has a Root which is somewhat long, with many fibres adjoining to it, and perishes every Year for the most part after it has given Seed; it rises up with a big, round, reddish, fleshy Stalk, very like unto *Purslain*, about two Feet high, divided into many Branches, on which do grow many thick, long, round, fleshy Leaves, pointed at the ends, growing without order, sometimes but one or two, and oftentimes more standing at a place; here and there dispersed upon the Branches come forth also small yellowish Flowers, and after them small brownish Heads, turned round like Snails, in which lye small round Seed; this Plant has an ill taste, but saltilh.

V. *The third*, or Small White *Glaswort*, or *Kali*. It has a Root likewise which is small and woody, which perishes after it has given Seed; it springs up from the Root with several whitish green Stalks, or Branches, nothing so high as the former, and bending or leaning down to the Ground, spreading it self into other smaller Branches full of Joints, whereon grow more store of smaller and shorter, round and pointed Leaves, nothing so fleshy as the former, and of the same pale green color with the Stalks; the Flowers are white, and stand singly on the tops of the Branches, after which come small Husks, in which lies the Seed, which is small, black, and shining, like unto *Sorrel* Seed.

VI. *The fourth*, or *Ægyptian Kali*, *Glaswort*, or *Saltwort*. It has a Root like the others, and grows up with one slender Stalk, bending it self downwards, and branching forth at the Joints into other small ones, which for the most part stand more upright, and at every of the joints two very long and somewhat fleshy Leaves, bowing themselves downwards because of their length; the small Branches are bare, without leaves unto the tops or ends of them, where grow many small and long Leaves, hairy, like to the for-

mer, but nothing so long, from among which grow small, whitish, purple Flowers, with many small Threads in their middle; of this sort there are some with shorter Leaves, differing in little else.

VII. *The Places*. The first as well as the fourth grows in *Ægypt*, and it generally grows among other Sea Plants on the Sea Coasts in all Countries; I found it growing plentifully in the Salt Marshes in South Carolina, as up *Wadmalaw* River, and on the Sands and Marshes of *Wando* River, not far from the Sea side, and in other Salt Marshes of the same Country; it grows also on our Coasts of *England*, &c. in many places, in *Saxony*, and other parts of *Germany*, where there are Lakes of Salt Water; the second grows by the Sea sides in several places of *Syria*, *Africa*, *Italy*, and *Spain*, as also in *Provence* and *Aquitane*, where they Sow large Fields thereof, for the Profit they make of the Salt or Ashes of the Plant in making Glas and Soap; the third grows not only in the aforementioned places, but in other colder Climates likewise, not by the Sea only, but by the Salt Pits in *Saxony*, as *Camerarius* says, and is found also on the Sea Coasts of *England* and *Ireland*; the fourth, as *Alpinus* says, is more peculiar to *Ægypt*, but *Columna* says it is frequent on the Western *Neapolitan* Shoar.

VIII. *The Times*. They all flourish in the Summer, and they which perish give their Seed in *August*, or something later; the first of them abides all the Winter.

IX. *An Observation*. Out of this Herb is made the *Alkali* of the *Arabians*, *Levant*, *Ægypt*, &c. or Pot Ashes, as we in *England* call them, called also by other Names, as *Polverine*, *Pulverine*, *Rochetta*, and *Soda*, which are all the same thing, made of the same Matter, but do each differ in goodness, according to the place the Matter comes from, and the Method or Order of making of it; the Matter is the Herb *Kali*, (also *Alga*, or *Kelp*, which is *Sea-Girdles*, *Sea-Weed*, *Sea-Thongs*, or *Sea-Laces*) the goodness of the Herb is taken from the places of its growth, that which grows on the Coasts and Banks of *Syria*, *Ægypt*, the *Levant*, &c. is the best, that which grows on the Coasts of *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Venice*, is the next best, that which grows on the Coasts of *France* is worse, but that which grows on the mouth of the *Thames*, and other Maritime places of *England*, is the worst of all, as making Ashes, which yield the least Salt, or *Sal Alkali*, of any of them.

X. *The Qualities*. The Herb is hot and dry in the end of the first degree, the Ashes or Salt is hot and dry in the fourth degree, Aperitive, Absterfive, Digestive, Diuretick, Pyrotick, or Caustick, Nephritick, Hysterick, Arthritick, Emmenagogick, Sudorifick, and Alexipharmick.

XI. *The Specification*. *Kali* purges pituitous, watery, and melancholy Humors, provokes Urine, is good against the Dropsie, opens obstructions of Liver and Spleen, brings down the Terms, and expels the dead Child.

XII. *The Preparations*. You may have therefrom 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. A Pouder of the Herb. 3. The Ashes, called Pot Ashes. 4. A Salt called *Sal Alkali*. 5. Soap. 6. Sandiver.

#### The Virtues.

XIII. *The Liquid Juice*. Taken in Drink or Wine from one Spoonful to two, or more, it purges downwards superfluous Humors, and therefore is often used for the Dropsie, to provoke Urine and the Terms, facilitate the Birth, and to expel a dead Child.



Child; it opens obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and dissolves the hardness thereof; it gives ease in the Strangury, and expels Sand, Gravel, Stones, &c.

XIV. *The Powder of the Herb.* It has all the former Virtues of the Juice, but not full out so effectual as it, and may be given from half a Dram to a Dram and half in White Port Wine, or other proper Vehicle, it is sometimes mixed with those things which are used as Corrosives, to consume superfluous, proud, or spongy Flesh, which grows in foul and virulent Ulcers, if it is taken in too great a quantity it is mischievous and deadly, as Gerard says.

XV. *Pot Ashes.* They have all the Virtues of the Juice and Powder, and are equivalent in operation to the Ashes of Tartar; they are powerfully aperient, provoke Urine in the last degree, and carry off a Dropsie by Urine, being made into a *Lixivium* with Water, and given in Wine; they are very sharp and biting, like a Caustick, and the Lye which is made thereof is so strong, that it will fetch off the Skin from the Hands, or any other parts of the Body it is applied to, and therefore if any use it to cleanse the Skin from Spots, Freckles, Lentils, Yellowness, Sunburning, Tanning, Scurf, or Morpew, or other like Defilements, they ought to be cautious in using of it, and apply it very sparingly, or use it not made too strong, and so it may do much good. How these Ashes are made see in our *Seplafium*, or *Druggists Shop*, Lib. 2. Cap. 4. Sect. 11. and 12. where, and in the other Sections of the same Chapter, you may find abundant satisfaction, and you may also see to what Mechanick Uses they are to be applied, as also in Sect. 22. of the same the rest of their Medical Uses; so also our *Polygraphice* Lib. 10. Cap. 1. of the Eighth Edition.

XVI. *The Salt, or Sal Alkali.* This Salt is made out of the Pot Ashes, and has all the Virtues of Salt of Tartar, and almost in the same degree of goodness: how this Salt is made in perfection see in our *Polygraphice* Lib. 10. Cap. 1. Sect. 12, 13, 14, 15, 16. Those Ashes which come from Spain and the Levant are good, where, by reason of the heat of the Climate, Kali grows in great quantities, and is green all the Winter; but those Ashes which come from Egypt, where there is never any Rain, are the strongest, and make the strongest and sharpest Salt. The Ashes coming from the Levant are called *Pulverine*, because they are in Powder, and have no such Preparation as *Soda* and *Rochetta* have, for the Herb is only burn'd on Iron Grates, and afterwards when cold the Ashes are gathered up and kept in proper Vessels for use; these Ashes have indeed less Salt than *Rochetta* and *Soda*, but for the quantity it is nothing inferior in virtue and goodness. Our Dutch Pot Ashes, which are purely white, and in great hard lumps, are the best in the World, yield most and purest Salt, and of the strongest kind, and therefore of excellent use in making Soap, Glass, &c. This Salt prevails against the Jaundice, Dropsie, Scurvy, and Gout. Dose a Scruple or half a Dram in a Glass of White Port Wine.

XVII. *The Soap.* If it is spread upon a piece of course thick brown Paper and applied to the Soles of the Feet of those who are taken Speechless, it brings them to their Speech again in a little time, if there be any hopes of restoration; anointed over the Face of one who has Lentils or Freckles thereon it obliterates or takes them away, but it is by a gentle taking away of the Skin, after the manner of a Scurf as it were; spread upon Leather and applied to the Hips in a Sciatica it cures it, being renewed as need requires; the same it does being applied to places pained with the Gout, and repeated accordingly.

XVIII. *The Sandiver, or Glass-Salt.* It is used often being made into Powder to be blown into the Eyes thro' a Quill, or being dissolved in Water and squirted into them, to take away the Skin which grows over the Sight; it takes away also Scabs and Manginess, if the parts affected be often bathed therewith, and serves to dry up running Sores and Scabs, helps against the Itch, and kill Tettars, Ringworms, and the like, being often washed therewith, and suffered to dry on; it serves to make Metals run, and a little thereof put into Antimony and Nitre for making *Crocus Metallorum*, increases the quantity of the *Crocus*, and it will therewith the better separate from the *Scoria*. Glass being made with Pot Ashes and other Materials, as Sand, Crystal, &c. this *Sandiver* is that Salt which is scummed off from the top of the Glass in the making thereof; see more of it in my *Seplafium*, or *Druggists Shop*, Lib. 2. Cap. 15. where you may have farther satisfaction.

XIX. To find out the quantity of Sal Alkali which is contained in any quantity of Pot Ashes. Take a Pound of Pot Ashes, dissolve them, by boiling in eight or ten Pounds of fair Water, more or less, then being well settled decant off the clear Lixivium from the Fæces, the Fæces dry either in the Sun or before a Fire, or in an Oven, or over a Sand heat, and then weigh them, for so much as they want of a Pound, so much Salt is contained in each Pound of Ashes, and so many Ounces of Salt you have in your Lixivium. In some of your Oriental Pot Ashes coming from Syria, Egypt, &c. you may have about ten Ounces in a Pound, and in some again not above nine, or eight Ounces, and some of the worse sorts of Ashes do not contain above seven or six Ounces in a Pound, so great a difference is there in the goodness of the Ashes, but out of a Pound of the best, strongest, and whitest Dutch Pot Ashes we have obtained several times thirteen and fourteen Ounces of pure Salt, very rarely so little as twelve Ounces; the strongest and best Ashes are those which are in greatest lumps, very hard, and white, as it were of a blewish white, (which color arises from the well burning) and such contain the greatest plenty of Salt.

## C H A P. CCCCXII.

### Of K E L P, S E A-L A C E S,

O R,

### S E A-T H O N G S.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek *Φύκη θαλάσσιον*, and *Φύκη θαλάσσιον*, in Latine *Alga*, and *Alga Marina*, also *Alga Maris*, and *Phycos*, or *Phycus*, or *Fucus Marinus*, *Marinus* being added thereto to distinguish it from *Fucus Herba*, which is *Anchusa*, in English *Kelp*, and *Seaweed*.

II. *The Kinds.* Of *Seaweeds* there are several Kinds, viz. I. *Alga Marina*, *Fucus Marinus*, *Kelp*, *Sea-Laces*, *Sea-Thongs*, or *Sea-Girdles*, of which in this Chapter. II. *Muscus Marinus*, *Lichen Marinus*, *Sea Liverwort*, and this is twofold, viz. 1. *Lactuca Marina*, *Lichen Marinus*, *Oyster green*. 2. *Opuntia Marina*, *Lichen Marinus rotundifolius*, *Round Leaved Oyster green*, or *Round Leaved Sea Liverwort*. III. *Alga Quercina*, *Fucus Quercinus*, *Sea-Wrack*, and this is sixfold, viz. 1. *Quercus Alarina major*, The Greater Sea-Oak, or Sea-Wrack.

FFFF

2. *Quercus*



2. *Quercus Marina minor*, The Lesser Sea-Oak, or Sea-Wrack. 3. *Quercus Marina Tertia*, The Third Kind of Sea-Oak, or Sea-Wrack. 4. *Quercus Marina quarta*, Jagged Sea-Wrack. 5. *Fucus*, five *Alga intubacea*, Sea Curled Endive. 6. *Fucus spongiosus nodosus*, Sea Raggedstaff. These two last generick Species see in their proper places under the Titles *Oyster green*, and *Sea-Wrack*.

III. The Kinds of the first of the three foregoing Heads. *Alga Marina*, *Fucus Marinus*, or Kelp, called also *Sea-Girdles*, *Sea-Laces*, and *Sea-Thongs*, is fiventfold, viz. 1. *Alga Marina*, (properly so called) *Fucus Marinus*, *Alga Marina Grammea Lugdunensis*, *Fucus Marinus alter Dodonai*, *Alga Angustifolia Vitrariorum Baubini*, the broader sort of which is called *Imperatus*, *Fucus Giganteus*, and *Palmifolium Giganteum*, Kelp, peculiarly so called, *Sea-Girdles*, *Sea-Laces*, *Sea-Thongs*. 2. *Fucus Marinus crassus Latifolius*, Thick Broad Leaved Alga, Kelp, or *Sea-Girdles*. 3. *Fucus Marinus Latissimus Tenuifolio*, Broad and Thin Leaved Alga, Kelp, or *Sea-Thongs*. 4. *Fucus Alatas*, five *Phosganoides*, Winged Alga, Kelp, or *Sea-Girdles*. 5. *Alga*, seu *Fucus maximus Polyschides*, Great Alga, or Kelp, or *Sea-Girdles* with many Labels, or *Sea-Girdles* with Hangers. 6. *Fucus Marinus secundus Dodonai*, *Fucus longo, angusto, & crasso Folio*, Long, Narrow, and Thick Alga, Kelp, or *Sea-Girdles*. 7. *Fucus Membranaceus Ceranoides*, *Alga Marina Membranacea*, Kelp, or Seaweed with skinny Horns.

IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Kelp peculiarly so called, *Sea-Girdles*, *Sea-Laces*, or *Sea-Thongs*. It has roundish Roots, which are hairy and blackish on the outside, from whence rise up small, round, long, white, hairy Heads, breaking out at the sides as it were into Branches, on the tops whereof stand or grow three or four very long and narrow soft green Leaves, some being an Ell or more long, and about an Inch broad; this has neither Seed nor Stalk, but lies on the Ground, until the Tide raise it to float on the Water, which being broken by the force of the Waves is carried to the Shoar, where it is gathered and kept for many uses.

V. The second, or Thick Broad Leaved Alga, Kelp, or *Sea-Girdles*. This differs from the former, in that the Root is wholly fibrous, the Stalk rising from thence thick and round, two or three Inches high, and the Leaf, which is sometimes but one, and seldom two, of a very great length, even divers Feet, or rather Yards or Ells long, and above four Inches broad, equal from a little above the setting on to the end, but somewhat waved and crumpled on the edges, being thick, and of a deep green color, so soft and moist while it is fresh, that it is like unto moist Glew or Gelly, and will hardly dry, unless it lies long in the Sun, and will not be fit to be kept without rotting until after it has been many days dried.

VI. The third, or Broad and Thin Leaved Alga, Kelp, or *Sea-Thongs*. This is in all respects like unto the last, but that the Leaves are thinner, broader, and shorter, yet crumpled on the edges, and of a paler green color, and like unto thin Parchment.

VII. The fourth, or Winged Alga, Kelp, or *Sea-Girdle*. This grows fast upon Stones, and Shells of Fishes, both in the deeper and shallower places of the Sea, having a round, dark, reddish Stalk, of the bigness of a Goose Quill, which being grown to the full length is very weak, lying on the Ground, unless the Water raise it, and about four Feet long, on each side of which grows a Wing all the whole length of it, like unto a Skin or Parchment, with Veins therein, which being like the Feathers of an Arrow, is small below and broader above, equally to the top,

of two or three Inches breadth; the Leaves which grow next the Ground are many, (and some grow also on the Stalk) of a yellower greenish color, and of an Hand breadth, being four, six, or eight Inches long, tough and pliable, or of a skinny substance, like unto the other *Girdles*; the Stalk does very well resemble a two edged Sword: this Kind of *Alga* or *Kelp* is used to be dressed and eaten by the Inhabitants of the Sea Coasts where it grows, after it is cleared from the skinny Wings, and has a little sweet taste with its saltness, which makes it the more acceptable to the Palate.

VIII. The fifth, or Great Alga, or Kelp, or *Sea-Girdles* with Labels or Hangers on. The manner of growing of this with its use is like the last, but this is the greatest of all these Seaweeds, having a Stalk as thick as that of Angelica, of a brown Chestnut Color on the outside, and so are the round Leaves likewise, which are sometimes four, five, or six Feet long, not being so thick as ones little Finger, and ending in several broad and short skinny Labels, in like manner as the lower part of the Sword Hangers, which are of a yellowish color.

IX. These fourth and fifth Kinds Johnson upon Gerard has thus described. This Seaweed has a various Face, for sometimes from a fibrous Root, which commonly grows to a Pibble Stone, or is fastned to a Rock, it sends forth a round Stalk, seldom so thick as ones little Finger, and about half a Foot in length, at the top of which grows out a single Leaf, sometimes an Ell long, and then it is about the breadth of ones Hand, ending in a sharp point, so that it very well resembles a two edged Sword; sometimes from the same Root come forth two such fashioned Leaves, but then commonly they are lesser; sometimes at the top of the Stalk it divides it self into eight, nine, ten, or twelve parts, more or less, and that just at the top of the Stalk, which lesser divisions never come to that length which the single Leaves do; this I judge to be the *Fucus Polyschides Baubini*: now that these two Varieties are not several Kinds I am certain; at Margate in Kent, where they grow, they call them *Sea-Girdles*, which Name well befits the single one, and the divided they call *Sea-Hangers*, for if you hang the tops downwards they do reasonably well resemble the old fashioned Sword Hangers; thus much for their Shape: now for their Color, which is not the same in all, some are more green, and these can scarcely be dried, others are whitish, and they do quickly dry, and then both in Color and Substance are so like Parchment, that such as know them not would at the first view take them to be nothing else; this is of a glutinous substance, and of a little saltish taste, and are said to be good Meat being boiled tender, and so eaten with Butter, Vinegar, and Pepper.

X. The sixth, or Long, Narrow, and Thick Alga, Kelp, or *Sea-Girdles*. The Root hereof is round and flat, from whence spring two or three narrow thick Leaves, about a Foot and half long, divided into several flat thick Thongs, like Leather, some long, and some shorter, and they again divided into smaller ones, with no swoln Knots or Bladders thereon; but there is another sort of this, which has shorter and narrower Leaves, the Stalks ending all in swoln points. Johnson upon Gerard has a better Description hereof, viz. This grows to the length of five or six Feet, is smooth and membranous, being about half a Fingers breadth, and variously divided, like to wet Parchment, or Leather cut into Thongs, without any swoln Knots or Bladders; but the other sort has long and flat Stalks, like the other, but the Stalks are thick, and set with swoln Knots or Bladders, out of which grow sometimes little Leaves, but in other respects it is not unlike the former; these



these two Kinds are the *Fucus Marinus secundus* & *tertius Dodonæi*.

XI. The seventh, or Kelp, or Seaweed with skinny Horns. It has a Stalk a little above an Hand breadth long, an Inch and half broad, divided into several Branches, some broader, and others narrower, varying wonderfully, each of which ends in short parts, like unto small Horns; of this there are divers sorts, differing somewhat, tho' not much one from another: these are said to cure the longing of Women with Child.

XII. The eighth, or Dying Red Sea Alga, Kelp, or Moss. It grows unto some Rock or Stone, without any appearance of a Root, unless it is a flat kind of Skin, from whence rise up several Stalks, which are soft, and not above four or five Inches high, from each Stalk of which shoot forth several Branches on both sides, and some of them again divided into lesser, all of them stored with fine small Leaves, as small as Camomil Leaves, or rather like unto Fennel Leaves, of a substance much like to that of the Stalks, soft in handling at first, easie to be bended, and almost transparent, if they be interposed to the Light, of a reddish or purplish Color, but with some whiteness mixed together; this is not so brittle as Coralline when it is dried, but grows more tough thereby, and being put into Water and steeped a while therein it grows soft again; it is used by several Mechanicks to strike a deep Crimson, or reddish Purple Color, which will last long; and out of this a Red Lake may be made, as well as out of Kermes Berries, Brasil, Madder, Corn Poppies, Red Roses, Carnations, Sun-Flower, Saffron, Broom-Flowers, and other things of like kind.

XIII. The Places. These are all of them found on many of our English, Scottish, and Irish Shoars, on the Coasts of Holland and France, as also on the Shoars of warmer Countries; the fourth and fifth were found at Margate.

XIV. The Times. They flourish in the Summer, and end of Summer, those being the chief times of their beauty and use.

XV. Their Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues are much the same with those of Kali in the foregoing Chapter, and out of these as good Pot Ashes are made as out of any of the Kali's, or Glassworts.

KIDNEYWORT, See Navelwort Chap.

KIK, See Spurge Great Indian Chap.

KINGCOB, See Crowfoot Chap. 172.

KINGSCROWN, See Melilote Chap.

C H A P. CCCCXIII.

OF KINGSSPEAR,

O R,

Small Yellow ASPHODIL.

I. THE Names. It has no known Greek Name, the Latines call it *Asphodelus luteus minor*, *Hastula Regia*, and *Færmini Dionysij Dodonæi*, in English Kings-Spear, or Small Yellow Asphodil.

II. The Kinds. It is the fourth Species of the *Asphodil* Treated of in Chap. 35. Sect. 2. foregoing, and a singular Plant of the Species.

III. The Description. It has Roots proceeding from one Head, which are many, long and slender, smaller than those of the other Yellow sort, and by its long slender Strings spreading in the Ground it does much increase: This Small Yellow Asphodil, or Kings-Spear, has many long, narrow, edged Leaves, which are chamfered, or furrowed, which makes them seem threesquare, of a blewish or whitish green color; the Stalk is round, and rises up to be sometimes two or three Feet high, beset with small long Leaves up unto the very Flowers; the Flowers which grow thereon from the middle to the top are very many, in shape like to the Flowers of the other Kinds, they grow thick together, and Spike fashion, one above another, for a great length, and wholly yellow, laid open like a Star, somewhat smaller than the Great White Asphodil, and somewhat greater than the Lesser Asphodil, which when they are past small round Heads or Seed Vessels come in their places, in which is contained small, black, cornered Seed, almost threesquare.



IV. The Cut which we have exhibited in the third place in Chap. 35. Sect. 6. foregoing is that which Gerard has given us for Kings-Spear, and the Cut for Gerard's fourth Kind of *Asphodil* is that which Parkinson has exhibited for Kings-Spear in his *Theatrum Botanicum* Pag. 1218. but that which *Matthioli* has set forth in his *Compendium* Pag. 342. is much more like the true Plant, excepting in its Head of Flowers, which is the true form of the Head before it shoots up into its long Spike, for afterwards when it grows up and dilates it self it differs not much from the spikedness of the other *Asphodils*; and this Figure of *Matthioli* is that which we have given you in this place.

V. The Places. It grows naturally in Italy, Spain, Southern parts of France, and other hot Countries, from whence it has been brought to us, and is only nursed up in our Gardens.

VI. The Times. It Flowers in the latter part of Summer, as in July, and August, and the Seed is ripe about a Month after.

FFFF

VII. As



VII. As to the *Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* hereof, they are much the same with those of the *Common Asphodil* in Chap. 35. Sect. 9. ad 23. foregoing.

## C H A P. CCCCXIV.

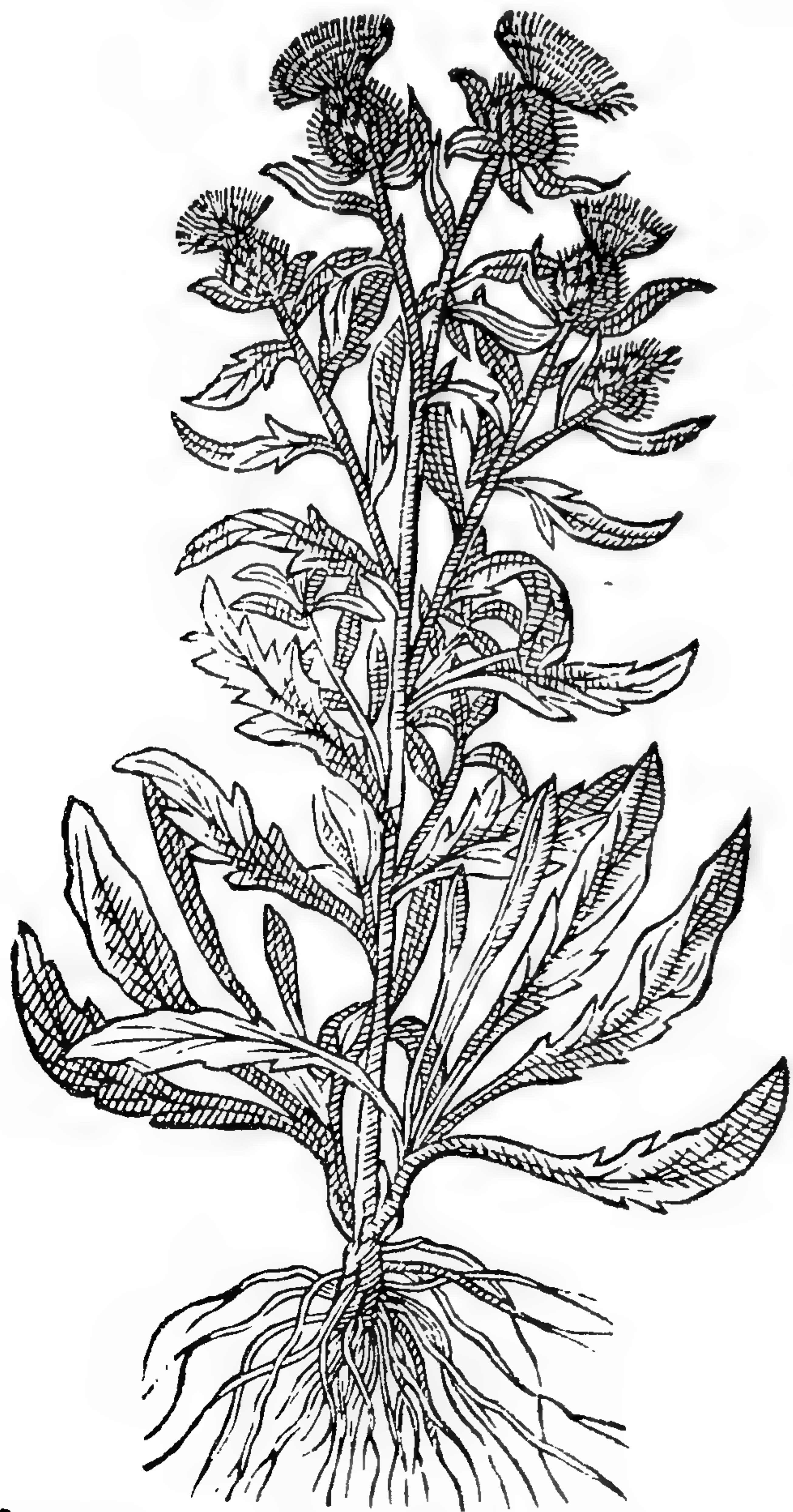
## OF KNAPWEED Common,

O R

## MATFELLON.

**T**HE Names. It has no *Greek* Name, nor any ancient *Latine* Name that I know of, but by the modern *Latines* it is called *Jacea*, and in *English* *Knapweed*, or *Matfellow*.

II. The Kinds. *Knapweed* is agreed upon by all Authors to be a kind of *Scabious*, and therefore *Tragus* makes it to be *Scabiosa Quarta*; *Gesner* in *Hortus* takes it for a Kind of *Great Centory* of the *Meadow*, and thinks it to be that Plant which *Scaliger* calls *Gethea nigra*; *Thalys* in *Harcynia* calls it *Cyanus Sylvestris Angustifolius*, but generally it is called *Jacea*. (à *lambino Colore Florum*) We have divided the Productions hereof into three Species, viz. 1. *Jacea vulgaris*, Our *Vulgar* or *Common Knapweed*, of which in this Chapter. 2. *Stabe*, *Silver Knapweed*, of which in Chap. 415. next following. 3. *Jacea Spinosa*, *Thorny Knapweed*, which third Species, because it is not found growing in *England*, nor in any of our *Foreign* or *West Indian* Plantations beyond Sea, we shall say no more of it in this Work.



Knapweed black common

III. The Kinds of the first or *Common Knapweed*. Authors make sixteen or eighteen Kinds or Varieties

hereof, of which not above five or six grow in *England*, of which we shall only speak in this Chapter, letting the others alone for a more general Work.

1. *Jacea nigra vulgaris*, *Jacea nigra Pratenfis Latifolia Baubini*, Our *Common Knapweed*, or *Matfellow*; this *Baubine* doubts whether it may not be *Solidago Saracenica Loniceri*. 2. *Jacea nigra vulgaris laciniata Baubini*, *Jacea major Lobelij*, *Jacea sexta Clusij*, *Jacea hirsuto capite Camerarij*, Our other *Common Wild Knapweed*, or *Great Knapweed*. 3. *Jacea laciniata alba*, *White Jagged Knapweed*. 4. *Jacea nigra Angustifolia Baubini*, *Jacea nigra Lithospermi Arvensis Folij*, *Narrow Leaved Knapweed*. 5. *Jacea Montana Narbonensis Lobelij*, *Jacea Muscata*, & quinta *Tabernamontani*, *Jacea Montana incana odora Baubini*, *Narbone* or *French Mountain Knapweed*. 6. *Jacea Montana candidissima Baubini*, *Jacea Montana laciniata*, *Hoary White Mountain Knapweed*.

IV. The Descriptions. The first, or Our *Common Knapweed*, has a *Root* which is *white*, *hard*, and *woody*, with several *Fibres* annexed thereto, which perishes not, but abides with *Leaves* thereon all the *Winter*, and shoots out fresh again every *Spring*; from this *Root* rise up many long and somewhat broad dark green *Leaves*, something deeply dented about the edges, and sometimes a little rent or torn as it were on both sides in two or three places, and a little hairy withal, from among which rises up a strong round *Stalk*, four or five *Feet* high, divided into many small *Branches*, at the tops whereof stand great scaly green *Heads*, from whose middle there is thrust forth a great number of dark, purplish, red *Thrums* or *Threads*, (and sometimes tho' but rarely, *white*) in which after they are withered and past away several black *Seeds* are found, lying in a great deal of *Down*, somewhat like unto *Thistle Seed*, but smaller.



Great Knapweed

V. The second, or Our other *Common Wild Knapweed*, or *Great Knapweed*. The *Roots* are like



like the former, blackish, and hard, with many Fibres; this Other Wild Knapweed grows with us among Corn very much, as well as in Meadows, and it grows with greater and taller Stalks than the former; the Leaves both below and above upon them are much divided on both sides, even to the middle Rib, almost like the Great Scabious of Matthiolus, but of a dark green color, and as rough, or rougher than the former, or first Common Kind, the scaly Heads on the tops of the Branches are greater, and the Flowers larger, and of a deeper red color; the Seed is also like to the first aforegoing.

### **Knapweed white flowered**



VI. The third, or White Jagged Knapweed. It has long creeping Roots, which are fibrous, or thready, and spread themselves somewhat under Ground; from this Root rise up several Stalks, furnished with pretty large whitish green Leaves, very much jagged, divided or cut in on each side to the middle Rib; these Stalks rise up to be sometimes about two Feet high, replenished with like Leaves from the bottom almost to their tops, and they likewise branch out almost from the Ground on all sides with lesser Branches, which are also beset with like Leaves, but lesser and less jagged as they approach near the tops; at the tops of the Stalks and Branches grow such like scaly Heads as on the former, and with the like pleasant Flowers, made of fine Threads, as the others are, rising out of them, saving that these are purely of a white color.

VII. The fourth, or Narrow Leaved Knapweed. Its Root is long, hard, and blackish, and repleat with many small Fibres; from this rises up a round, rough, green Stalk, about a Foot and half high, on each side of which are set narrow, rough, short, and somewhat hoary green Leaves, compassing it at the bottom, and divided into some other Branches above, on the top of each of which stands a scaly, whitish, green Head, out of the middle of which rise many small long Threads, like unto the former, but smaller, and of a pale reddish color, after which follows small black

Seed, like the other; of this sort also there is one whose Stalk and Leaves are longer, and smooth, all over hairy, soft, and woolly.

VIII. The fifth, or French Mountain Knapweed. It has a Root which is long, slender, with some Fibres adjoining to it, and of a bitter taste, from which Root spring forth several long winged Leaves, very much divided on both sides into other small, long, and narrower ones, but they little or nothing again divided, of a light green color on the upper side, and hoary white underneath, and a little rough or hard withal, somewhat like unto the Yellow Knapweed with prickly Heads; from among these Leaves rises up a round Stalk, something rough also, and about a Foot high, without many Branches, but bearing three or four scaly Heads at the tops, with each of them a long, narrow, divided Leaf at the foot, and thrusting forth for a Flower many purple Threads in the middle, smelling sweet, after which comes the Seed, not unlike the other Knapweeds, but lesser.

IX. The sixth, or Hoary White Mountain Knapweed. It has a thick woody Root, which sends forth divers winged Leaves, lying upon the Ground round about it, very much jagged, rent or torn on both sides into many small Leaves, which are each of them deeply dented on the edges, somewhat like unto the Leaves of the false Stoebe in the next Chapter, all covered over with a hoary white Cotton or Wooll, or as it were sprinkled with fine Wheat Flower, or Meal, from among which rises up a crested, white, hoary Stalk, a Foot, or Foot and half high, scarcely having any Leaves thereon to the top, where it bears only two or three scaly Heads of Flowers, like the others, with purple Threads rising out of their middle, which being past away leave Seed like the rest.

X. The Places. The first grows with us in most Fields and Meadows, and about their borders, and near Hedge sides, and in many waste Grounds, almost every where; the second grows in many places of this Land, also among Corn, as well as in other Fields, and grows in an especial manner about Coventry; the third is also found growing wild in several places of England, Johnson says he found it growing wild in a Field near Martin Abby in Surry, as also in the Isle of Tenet; the fourth grows about Padua in Italy, and Mompelien in France, and other like warm Countries; the fifth upon the Hills of Castrum novum, near Mompelien; the sixth about Capua in Italy, but with us these three last grow only in Gardens.

XI. The Times. They all Flower in June and July, and their Seed is ripe in July, or August, or September, according as their Flowering is, either early or late.

XII. The Qualities. Knapweed is temperate in respect of heat, and dry in the beginning of the second degree, Astringent, Absterfive, Traumatick or Vulnerary, Antiemmenagogick, and Analeptick.

XIII. The Specification. It is a peculiar Cure for all fluxes of Blood, whether internal or external, whether in the Stomach or other Bowels, whether by ruptures of any Blood Vessel or opening of their Mouths; it is good also to stop the flux of Humors to any Wound, Sore, Ulcer, or Fistula, to dry up the moisture, and gently to heal the same, without any sharpness or biting.

XIV. The Preparations. You may have these from 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction or Infusion in Wine or Water of Herb and Roots. 4. A Powder of Herb and Roots. 5. A Gar-  
garism. 6. A Balsom. 7. A Cataplasm.



## The Virtues.

XV. *The Liquid Juice.* It is a very good astringent, and helps to stay fluxes both of Blood and Matter, as spitting or vomiting Blood, bleeding at Nose, and other outward parts, pissing of Blood, also the violent overflowing of the Courses in Women; it heals inward Wounds, also those Veins which are inwardly broken, and cures fluxes of the Bowels, as Diarrhoea's, Lienteria's, and Dysenteria's, or Bloody Fluxes. Dose three, or four, or more Spoonfuls in Red Port Wine two or three times a day, or as oft as need requires.

XVI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, but is much more powerful for Fluxes of the Belly; it strengthens the Stomach, and stops Vomiting, it prevails against Catarrhs, or distillations of thin and sharp Humors falling upon the Lungs, and is good for such as are bruised by Falls, Blows, or other Accidents. Dose two or three Spoonfuls in a Glass of Wine Morning, Noon, and Night.

XVII. *The Decoction of Herb and Roots in Wine or Water.* It has all the Virtues of Juice and Essence, but much less powerful; it is good to wash green Wounds, old running Sores, putrid Ulcers, Fistula's, and the like, for it washes off, and cleanses them of their putrid matter and sinies, dries and heals them, without any sharpness or biting; it does the like in running Sores and Scabs of the Head and other parts. Dose inwardly is five, six, or eight Ounces, sweetened with a little Sugar.

XVIII. *The Powder of Herb and Roots.* It is admirably drying and astringent, for being strewed thick upon any bleeding part it presently stops the afflux of Blood, and conglutinates the lips of a simple green Wound; strewed thick upon old and putrid running Sores and Ulcers it cleanses them, dries up the Humors flowing, and disposes them to healing; a Dram of the Powder given inwardly in Red Port Wine Morning and Evening stops all inward fluxes of the Bowels.

XIX. *The Gargarism.* Take of the Essence two Ounces, of the Decoction four Ounces, Alum two Drams. If now an Ounce, mix and dissolve. It heals soreness of Mouth, Gums, and Throat, and allvages the swellings of the Uvula and Jaws; it is also good for green Wounds, to stop the bleeding, and conglutinate the lips of the Wound.

XX. *The Balsam.* It digests, cleanses, incarnates, dries, and heals all sorts of Wounds, Ulcers, and putrid running Sores in what part of the Body soever, and put scalding hot into Fistula's it dissolves the callous, and causes them in a short time to be cured.

XXI. *The Cataplasm.* Made of the Herb and Roots boiled soft, and brought to a thickness with Powder of Comfrey Roots, and applied, it is said to be available for the Cure of Ruptures, the Decoction in Wine being also taken inwardly for some considerable time.

XXII. Lastly, it is to be noted, that the *Qualities, Specifications and Virtues* of this Herb are in a manner the same with those of *Scabious*, this being a Species thereof, and therefore for a more full account thereof we shall refer you thither.

## C H A P. CCCCXV.

## of K N A P W E E D Silver,

O R

## False S T O E B E.

I. **T**HE Names. This Plant was doubtless unknown to the Ancient Greeks, as also to the Ancient Latines, but the Moderns call it *Stæbe*, which is not the true *Stæbe* of Dioscorides and Theophrastus, that being the *Pimpinella Spinosa*, or *Thorney Burnet*, whereas this *False Stæbe* seems truly to be of the Stock of the *Knapweeds*, and therefore may more properly be called in Latine *Stæbe Natha vel Spuria*, and in English *Bastard or False Stæbe*, or *Silver Knapweed*.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors have made many sorts of this *Silver Knapweed*, but the chief which we shall take notice of are these following, viz. 1. *Stæbe Salamantica prima Clusij*, *Aphyllanthus prima Dodonæi*, *Stæbe major Folijs Cichoraceis mollihus languinosi Bauhini*, Clusius his first Spanish Silver Knapweed. 2. *Stæbe Salamantica secunda Clusij*, also *Stæbes Salamantica primæ altera Species ejusdem Authoris*, *Stæbe Argentea incana Lobelij*, *Aphyllanthus tertia Dodonæi*, *Stæbe major Folijs Erucae mollihus languinosi Bauhini*, Clusius his second Spanish Silver Knapweed. 3. *Stæbe Salamantica Argentea Lobelij*, also *Stæbe Salamantica Argentea minor*, *Stæbe Salamantica tertia Clusij*, *Aphyllanthus quarta Dodonæi*, *Stæbe Calyculis Argenteis Bauhini*, Lobel's Silver Headed Knapweed. 4. *Stæbe Austriaca elatior Clusij*, *Stæbe Gallica*, *Stæbe Calyculis Argenteis major Bauhini*, The Greater Silver Knapweed of Austria. 5. *Stæbe Austriaca humilior & humilis Clusij*, *Centaureij majoris Species minor Gesneri* in *Collectione Stirpium*, *Stæbe incana Cyano similis tenuifolia Bauhini*, Silver Knapweed of Austria the Lesser. 6. *Stæbe Argentea Flore albo minor*, *Stæbe Calyculis Argenteis minor Bauhini*, *Jacea Flore albo Gerardi & Tabernamontani*, The Lesser Silver Knapweed with a white Flower. 7. *Stæbe Plantaginifolia Alpini* (in *Lib. de Plantis exoticis*) Narrow Leaved Silver Knapweed of Candy.

III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Clusius his first Spanish Silver Knapweed. It has a Root which is white, long, and woody, when it is grown above two Years old, and then oftentimes perishes in the Winter, otherwise it abides well, and will usually Flower and Seed two Winters, if they be not too extremely cold, or do not stand too much in the Weather; from this Root rise up several large winged Leaves, lying on the Ground, very much cut in on both sides into large pieces, but each of them set closer together than the next, of a sad green Color on the upper side, and somewhat whitish underneath, very hairy all over, as also the strait strong Stalks, which rise up to be three or four Feet high, or more, with several such like divided Leaves on them as grow below, but much lesser, and every one sharp at the points, divided in the top into divers Branches, bearing upon long, bare, or naked Stalks, and somewhat long, small, scaly, smooth, round, green Heads, but seeming more neatly contrived together than any of the Heads of the former *Knapweeds*, from the small tops whereof rise many fine Purplish or Crimson Threads or Thrums, or of a Color between both, standing round together, and something whiter



whiter at the bottoms of them, which so stand in the Flower near a Month before they fade, in the mean season the Seed ripens in the Heads, which is small, not much bigger than the *Cyanus*, but not so great as the *Ordinary Knapweed*.

IV. *The second, or Clusius his second Silver Knapweed.* It has a Root which is white and long, not enduring after Seed time; it has many divided hairy and somewhat hoary Leaves, lying on the Ground, divided into several parts on both sides, but more separate one from another than the former; the Stalks are somewhat hairy or hoary also, but stand not so upright as the former, rather leaning downwards, by reason of their weakness; these Stalks are divided into many Branches, bearing at their tops scaly Heads, a little larger, from whence shoot forth larger Flowers also than the former, whose outward Leaves are made like those of the *Cyanus*, or *Cornflower*, of a fair purplish red Color, with such like colored Threads or Thrums in their middles as are in that just foregoing, with whitish and yellowish bottoms; the Seed ripens in the time of Flowering, and is like the former.

V. *The third, or Lobel's Silver Headed Knapweed, which is the third Kind of Clusius.* The Root is something thick and long, and abides sometimes after Seed time, it has many Leaves rising from the Root, but they are much more divided, and into smaller parts than either of the foregoing, being more hoary, or of a whiter green Color than they, the Stalks are in the same manner hoary, and rises up as high as the first, with thin, cut, or divided Leaves upon them, sharp at the points, but smaller and smaller up to the tops, where they are much divided into Branches, and bearing at their ends scaly green Heads, but more white edged Leaves, seeming as if they were Silvered, out of which come forth small purple Flowers, like the rest, but smaller, the Seed hereof lying in the Downy Heads, as the others do, but are something blacker than they, each having an hairy top on them.

VI. *The fourth, or Greater Silver Knapweed of Austria.* This does not much differ from the last neither in its manner of growing, nor in its form of the Leaves, nor in its height, nor in its Stalk, but only in its scaly Heads, which are not of such a shining white Silver like Color, and in this consists the whole difference.

VII. *The fifth, or Silver Knapweed of Austria the lesser.* There is likewise but very little difference in any particulars between this and the last, its chief variation is in the lowness of its growing and slenderness of the Stalk, by which it is made a diminutive Plant of the kind.

VIII. *The sixth, or Lesser Silver Knapweed with a white Flower.* Nor is there much difference or variety between this and the last, but only in the Flower, which consists wholly of white Threads or Thrums, without having any other Color joined or mixed with it.

IX. *The seventh, or Narrow Leav'd Silver Knapweed of Candy.* It has a white Root, and of a Fingers thickness in magnitude, it is but a small Plant, and has divers long, soft, fat, and narrow Leaves, lying next the Ground, a little dented on the edges, but those which grow up upon slender Stalks, of about a handful long, are not dented at all, but resemble Ribwort Plantane Leaves, and are of a yellowish green Color, the tops of the Stalks are replenished with small long Husks or Heads, out of which grow yellow Flowers, and after them small long Seed, like unto that of *Scabious*.

X. *Nota.* *Clusius* says that the Spaniards call the first by the Name of *Cabesuela*, id est *Capitulum*,

a little Head, and they usually make Brooms or Besoms thereof to sweep their Houses, and that the Learned Physicians there do use the third Kind instead of *Scabious* for all the Purposes thereof.

XI. *The Places.* The first three Kinds do grow in several places of *Spain*, especially about *Salamanca*, as *Clusius* says; the fourth, fifth and sixth grow in *Austria*, and the seventh, (as its Title testifies) in *Candy*, but by transplantation they are nursed up in several Gardens of the Curious here in *England*.

XII. *The Times.* The first six do all Flower in the Summer Months of *June* and *July*, that of *Candy* Flowers something later, viz. in *August*, if any early Frost takes them they immediately wither, altho' in their own natural places, which are the warm Countries, and where they continue many Years.

XIII. *The Qualities, Specification, Preparations and Virtues* are the same with those of the *Vulgar* or *Common Knapweeds* in the former Chapter, and to that I refer you; Authors say that all the sorts of *Knapweed* come somewhat nigh unto the Qualities of *Scabious*, to which for their full Virtues you ought to be directed, and know that what Remedies may be had from and what Diseases *Scabious* may be applied to, the same the *Knapweeds* are productive of and equally efficacious in.

## C H A P. CCCCXVI.

### Of K N A W E L,

O R,

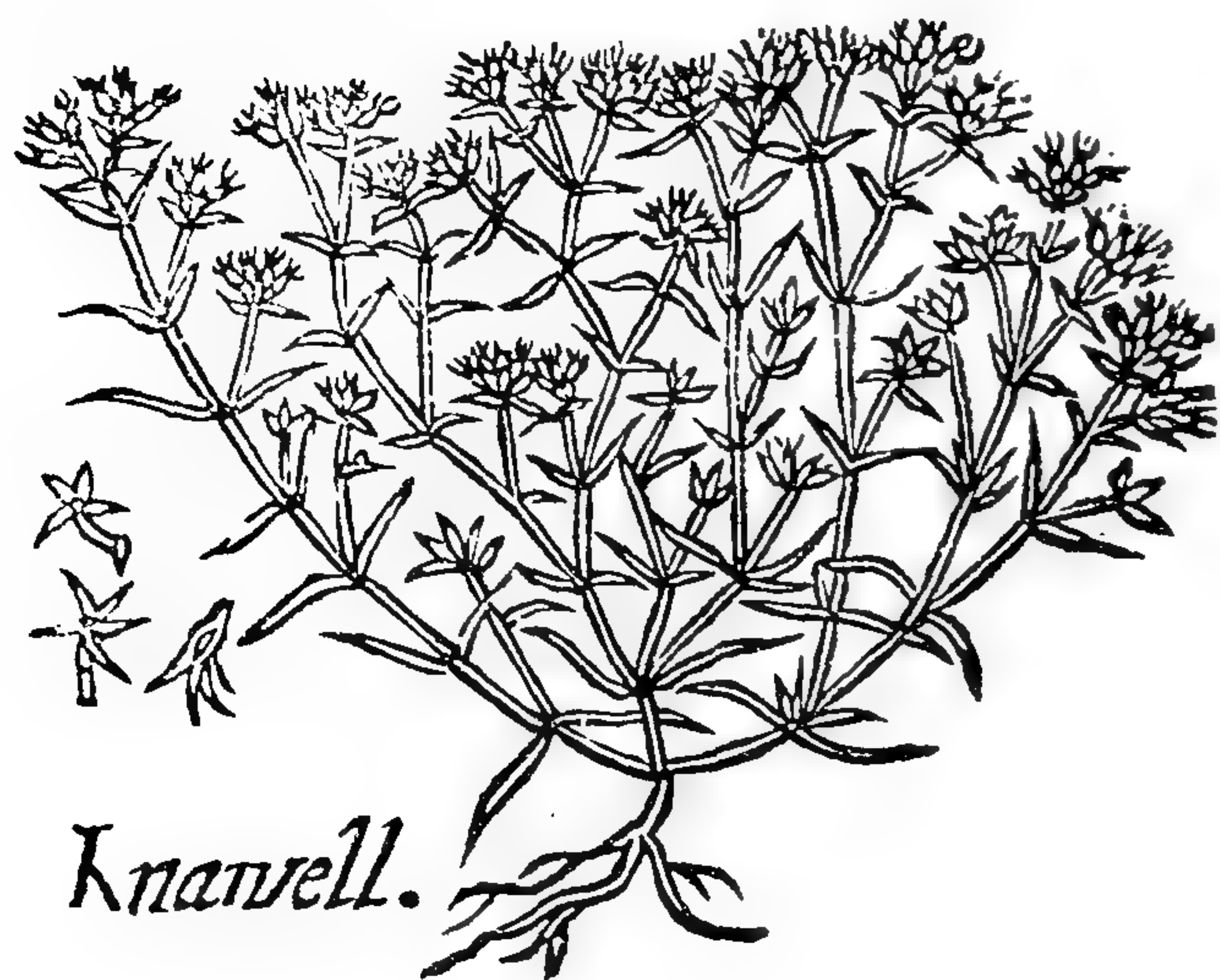
### German K N O T G R A S S.

I. **T**HE Names. It has neither *Greek* nor Ancient *Latine* Names that I know of, our Moderns call it *Polygonum Germanicum*, and we in *English* *Knawel*, or *German Knotgrafs*.

II. *The Kinds.* We have two Kinds hereof, viz. 1. *Polygonum Germanicum*, *Knawel Germanorum*, *Polygoni Species Tragi*, *Polycarpon*, (from the abundance of Seed) and *Polycnemon*, (from its many Virtues) *Polycarpon Lugdunensis*, *Polygonum exiguum Dodonæi*, in his *Pemptades*, *Polygonum Selinoides Gerardi*, but this is an improper Name, for it has no Leaves like *Selinum*, or *Parsly*, *Common Knawel*, or *German Knotgrafs*; I know some would have this Plant to be *Saxifraga Anglicana Lobelij*, but I think it may be a Species thereof, the form and strong sweet smell which *Tragus* says it has inducing me to think so, (this being the *Knawel Tragi*) but the small green Flowers and Seed in them are much differing from the Pink-like white Flowers in that. 2. *Polygonum Germanicum alterum*, *Polygonum Litereum minus Flosculis spadiceo albicantibus*, The second *Knawel*, or other *German Knotgrafs*; *Bauhinus* says that there is several Varieties of this *German Knawel*, of which this second Kind is one of them, and the two following are also thought to be Species of the same Plant, viz. 3. *Polygonum Montanum Niveum Lobelij*, *Polygonum Montanum minus Nivum & Scriceum*, *Polygoni Hispanici genus Clusij*, *Paronychia Hispanica Clusij*, *Polygonum Montanum Tabernamentani & Gerardi*, *Polygonum minus candicans Bauhini*, *White Mountain Knotgrafs*, or *Knawel*. 4. *Polygonum Valentinum*, *Polygonum Montanum*, *Anthyllidis Species*, *Anthyllis Valentina Clusij*, *Spanish Mountain Knotgrafs*, or *Knawel*; tho'



that this may be accounted a Kind of *Anthyllis*, (*Barbatus* accounting it among his *Anthyllides*) yet it cannot be the *Anthyllis quinta Dioscoridis*, because that has upright Stalks, which this has not.



III. The Descriptions. *The first, or Common Knawel, or German Knotgrafs. It has a Root which is small, slender, and fibrous or thready, from whence come forth several small Branches, not fully lying down on the Ground, half a Foot long, or more, and full of Joints, thickly set together, at every one of which stand many very small and long pointed Leaves, of a greyish green, or Ash Color, which are of an unequal length, two for the most part longer than the other; at these Joints with the Leaves come forth divers small, Herby, or green Star-like Flowers, thick set together, which being fallen away there appears in very small Husks, no bigger than Millet Seed, a great store of very small Seed, like Dust, of the Seed of Herniaria, or Rupturewort, which are of a quick hot sinell, and somewhat sweet.*

IV. The second Knawel, or other German Knotgrafs. *It has a Root which is small, long, and white, the whole Plant very much resembling the former, both in its manner of growing and in its slender trailing Branches, which have small, long, hoary or grayish green Leaves, many set together at a Joint, but that they are longer than they, some of these being two Inches long, especially of those next the Root; the Flowers hereof stand or grow not at the Joints with the Leaves, but at the tops of the Stalks and Branches, many clustering together, which are very small, and white on the inside, but of a brownish red Color on the outside, which afterwards turn into a plentiful Crop of very small Seed.*

V. *The third, or White Mountain Knotgrafs, or Knawel. It has a Root which is small, long, and white, not perishing in Winter in its native Clime or place of growth, no not so much as its Branches or Leaves, but it will not endure our cold Nights and piercing Blasts, and therefore dies with us, unless preserved with great Care and Circumspection.* This Herb is a fine, white, and Silver like Plant, especially growing in the hotter Climates, and when it is grown old, so that it gives much delight to the beholders; it spreads many weak trailing Branches upon the Ground, in some places not past a Hands breadth, in others a Foot long, as full or fuller of Joints than any of the Kinds of *Knotgrafs* in Chap. 12. following, which are thick set also with smaller Branches, on which are placed very small long Leaves, lying almost like Scales upon the whitish hard Stalks; these Leaves are green at the first, and tender, but when they are grown old they will be of a shining Silver Color, and hard, like Skins or Parchment; the tops of the Stalks and Branches are thick set with small, white, Silver like Leaves, and at the Joints come forth very small white Flowers, scarcely to be discerned, which being past away are followed by exceeding small Seed.

VI. *The fourth, or Spanish Mountain Knotgrafs, or Knawel. Its Root is small, long, and blackish on the outside, it is a small Plant, and by some referred to the Anthyllides, but by others accounted a small kind of Knotgrafs, or Knawel, it shoots forth many small, weak, reddish Branches, lying upon the Ground, and not able to stand upright, about a Foot long, parted into many other smaller Branches, on which grow at several joints and spaces many small Leaves together, like unto those of Time Spurge, on which, as well as on the Stalk, there appears a shew of mealiness, as many Sea Plants have; with the Leaves come forth small, purplish, white Flowers, consisting of four Leaves apiece.*

VII. *The Places.* The two first grow in several places of England, the first of them about Chipnam, in the West Country, and the second in dry, Sandy, and Rocky places; the third grows in Spain, and the Southern parts of France, and the fourth about the Castle of Valentia in Spain, and other places, with us they are only nursed up in Gardens.

VIII. *The Times.* They all flourish and are fresh and green in the Summer Months, and continue their verdure till cold Weather comes in, which causes them to wither and dry, in the mean season they Flower and perfect their Seed.

IX. *The Qualities.* They are Aperitive, Absterfive, Vulnerary, Diuretick, Nephritick, and Lithontripectick.

X. *The Specification.* They are powerful to break the Stone, and give ease in the Strangury, especially the first and second Kinds.

XI. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction in Wine. 4. A Pouder. 5. A Mixture.

#### The Virtues.

XII. *The Liquid Juice.* *Tragus* says that *Knawel* has the same Properties which *Knotgrafs* has, and may serve to all Intentions instead thereof, as well for inward as outward Remedies; it opens obstructions of the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, gives ease in the Strangury, and is said to be very powerful to break the Stone. Dose three, four, or six Spoonfuls, mix'd with any proper Wine, or other Vehicle.

XIII. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Juice, but much more powerful to the Intentions. Dose three or four Spoonfuls in some fit Vehicle in the Morning fasting, and at Night; outwardly used to Wounds and Ulcers it cleanses, dries, and heals them admirably, by only washing therewith, and applying Stuphs dipt therein, it conglutinates the lips of green Wounds in a very short time.

XIV. *The Decoction in Wine.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not altogether so powerful, it cleanses the Reins, Bladder, and Womb very forcibly, and is a good Lotion for the cleansing and drying of foul and running Ulcers.

XV. *The Pouder.* It provokes Urine, expels Sand, Gravel, and Tartarous Matter from the Urinary parts, and strewed upon simple Wounds it conglutinates and heals them, it stops a flux of Blood in green Wounds, and a flux of Humors in Ulcers, being strewed thick thereon. Dose inwardly a Dram at a time, Morning and Night, in a Glass of White Port Wine.

XVI. *The Mixture.* By washing a simple green Wound herewith it conglutinates the lips thereof upon the spot, it cleanses Ulcers, represses fluxions of Humors upon the same, the part and parts adjacent being fomented warm therewith, it dries up their humidities, and disposes them to a speedy healing. *This Mixture is made by mixing the Liquid*



quid Juice or Essence three parts, with choice Brandy one part, and digesting them together twenty four Hours.

C H A P. CCCCXVII.

OF KNEEHOLM,

O R

BUTCHERS-BROOM.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek *Ὀξύμυρρον*, *Oxymyr sine*, i. e. *Myrtus acuta*, *Μυρτὸν ἀγρία*, *Myrtus Sylvestris*, (but there is another *Myrtus Sylvestris* among the Ancients, which is like the Tame or Manured Kind, which *Pliny Lib. 15. Cap. 7.* confounds together) *Μυρτακανθα*, *Myrtacantha*, *Myrtus Spinosa*, *Μυρκανθα*, *Murina Spina*, and by *Theophrastus Κεντρομυρρίνη*, *Centromyrrhine*, in Latine *Ruscus*, and *Ruscum*, and by the Apothecaries *Bruscus*, and of some, as *Marcellus* says, *Scopa Regia*; *Pliny* says it is called *Chamemyrsine*, and *Acaron*, or rather *Aceron*, which is one of their bastard Names, in English *Kneeholm*, and *Butchers-Broom*.

**II. The Kinds.** Authors have not yet found out more than one singular Species of this Plant.

*Knee holm or Butchers Broome*



**III. The Description.** It has a Root which is thick, white, and great at the head, and from which spring forth several thick, long, and tough white strings; the first Shoots which sprout from the Root are thick, whitish, and short, somewhat like unto those of *Asparagus*, but greater, which in some places are eaten in the same manner as we eat *Asparagus*; these rising up to be a Foot and half high are spread into divers Branches, green, and somewhat crested

with the roundness, which are rough, pliant, and flexible, on which are set somewhat broad and almost round hard Leaves, sharp and prickly pointed at their ends, of a dark green Color, and somewhat like unto *Myrtle* Leaves, two for the most part set at a place, very close or near together; about the middle of the Leaf, on the back or lower side, from the middle Rib, comes forth a small whitish green Flower, consisting of four small round pointed Leaves, standing upon a very short or no footstalk, in whose place, (being past away) comes a small round Berry, green at the first, but when it is ripe red, much like to an *Asparagus* Berry, but greater, in which are contained two or three white, hard, round Seeds.

**IV. The Places.** It grows generally in most places throughout England, in Copses, and upon Heaths, and on rough, barren, and waste Grounds, and oft times under or near Holly Bushes; it grows upon *Hampsted Heath*, not far from London, and in many places in Kent, Essex, and Berkshire, almost in every Copse and low Wood.

**V. The Times.** It shoots forth its young Buds in the begining of the Spring, which are eaten in some places (as aforesaid) as our young *Asparagus*; the Berries are ripe in August and September, the Branches and Leaves abiding green all the Winter.

**VI. The Qualities.** The whole Plant, Roots, Leaves, and Berries are powerfully Aperitive, Absterfive, Diuretick, and Vulnerary, Pectoral, Nephritick, Hyfterick, and Arthritick.

**VII. The Specification.** It is a peculiar thing against the Dropsie, especially that called an *Ascites*, opens Obstructions of the Urinary passages, and consolidates broken Bones.

**VIII. The Preparations.** The Root is chiefly made use of to all the Intentions for which the Plant is used, and the same is accounted one of the five opening Roots; therefrom you may make, 1. A Juice or Essence. 2. A Decoction in Wine. 3. Of the young Sprouts a Sallet. 4. Of the Branches, Brooms or Besoms. 5. A Decoction of Leaves and Berries.

*The Virtues.*

**IX. The Juice or Essence.** It powerfully opens Obstructions of Liver, Spleen, Gall Bladder, Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, provokes Urine, and amends the ill smell thereof, it helps to expel Gravel and the Stone, gives ease in the Strangury, and provokes Womens Monthly Courses, it helps the Yellow Jaundice, and the Headach, and made into a Lohoch with Honey it expectorates Flegm, and cleanses the Thorax, or Lungs, and Stomach of Flegm and clammy Humors gathered together therein. Dose from one Spoonful to two, three, or four, in a Glas of White Port Wine twice a day.

**X. The Decoction in Wine.** It has all the former Virtues, tho' not altogether so powerful, and may be given Morning and Evening from four to eight Ounces, or ten in Dose, besides which it is effectual in knitting and consolidating of broken Bones, and strengthening parts out of joint, and other weak Limbs, for which it is not much inferior to *Comfrey*, or *Solomon's-Seal*, drinking this Decoction, and applying the said Roots Pultice-wise unto the parts affected. *Riverius* in his Observations says, that a Beggar-Man was affected with the Dropsie three Months, whereby his Belly grew exceeding big, and because his Poverty would not afford him the choicer Medicaments, he used, by the Advice of a Country Woman, a Decoction of the Roots of *Kneeholm*, or *Butchers-Broom*, and was purged twice or thrice with an Infusion of *Scorz.* and with these Remedies

G g g g alone



alone he was perfectly cured; a strong Decoction or Infusion also of it in Water having been plentifully used Morning and Night by it self, also boiled in Wine or Broth, and eaten as Food with the Wine or Broth for a Month or five Weeks space, has been found by Experience to cure an *Ascites*, and it cured this kind of Dropsie in two Young Maidens, the one of which lived in good Health many Years after it; another Woman was cured of a Dropsie of the Womb, as was supposed, with this Medicament, from whom it brought away with a kind of *impetus* or violence about ten Gallons of Water; a Decoction of this Root, Roots of the *Blue Flowerdeluce*, and *Fennel* Roots in Water or Wine being used for some time has been found of admirable use for the cure of these kind of Dropsies of the Belly, and *Dodonæus* is not sparing in its Praises for this purpose.

XI. *The Sallet made of the young Sprouts.* It is prepared as are those of *Asparagus*, and eaten in the same manner, and so eaten the said Sprouts open Obstructions of Liver, Spleen, Reins, Ureters, and Bladder, cleansing those parts of Feculencies, but they are nothing near so effectual as are the Juice, Essence, or Decoction of the Roots in Sect. 9. and 10. foregoing.

XII. *Brooms or Besoms.* Formerly Huswives made use of this Plant to make Besoms of to sweep the House, from whence came the Name *Scopa Regia*, as being used also in Kings Chambers, but now thro' the Revolution of Times they are changed to Brushes, for cleansing Butchers Stalls, from whence came the Name of *Butchers-Broom*.

XIII. *The Decoction of Leaves and Berries in Wine.* This, according to *Dioscorides*, has all the same Effects with the Decoction of the Roots, but in my Opinion the Preparation of the Roots is much the more powerful.

## C H A P. CCCCXVIII.

### Of KNOTGRASS,

O R,

### SWINESGRASS.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in Greek Πόδινον, *quod multis genibus crescit*, in Arabick *Ba-hia Tridagi*, in Latine *Polygonum*, *Sanguinaria*, *Sanguinalis*, *Seminalis*, *Proserpinaca*, in English Knotgrass, Swinesgrass, and Birdstongue.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make seven several sorts of this Plant, viz. 1. Πόδινον ἀπὸν, *Polygonum Mas*, *Polygonum vulgare majus*, *Polygonum Masculum*, Our Greater or Common Knotgrass. 2. *Polygonum vulgare minus*, The Lesser Common Knotgrass. 3. *Polygonum minus brevifolium*, Small short Leaved Knotgrass, this *Baibinus* in his *Pinax* takes to be *Polygonum Masculum Fruticosum Thalij* in his *Har-cynia Sylva*, also the *Sedum minimum Arborescens Vermiculatum Lobelij*. 4. *Polygonum Saxatile Bauhini*, Stone or Rock Knotgrass. 5. *Polygonum Marinum majus & maximum Lobelij*, *Polygonum Marinum primum Lugdunensis & Dalechampij*, *Polygonum Marinum Latifolium Bauhini*, The Greater or Broad Leaved Sea Knotgrass. 6. *Polygonum Marinum minus*, *Polygonum Marinum alterum Dalechampij*, *Polygonum Maritimum Angustifolium Bauhini*, The Lesser or Narrow Leaved Sea Knotgrass. 7. Poly-

gonum Germanicum Bauhini, Knawel, of which we have already discoursed in Chap. 416. foregoing.



III. *The Descriptions.* The first, or Common Knotgrass. It has a Root which is reddish, small, short, and round, abiding all Winter, and putting forth anew every Year; it comes up with many long slender Branches, full of Joints, lying upon the Ground, with many long and narrow Leaves set thereon, one for the most part at a Joint, on which Branches, especially from the middle upwards, come forth Flowers, which are so small, that for the most part they are not seen or discerned, but in some they are white, in others of a whitish Purple Color, which afterwards turn into very small square Seed, like unto *Sarcel* Seed, where note, that the Joints have commonly a small white Skin, which covers them.

IV. *The second, or Lesser Common Knotgrass.* This in its Roots, Stalks, Joints, Leaves, Flowers, and Seed, grows like the former, saving that they are less, chiefly the Leaves, being neither so broad nor so long, and the Flowers hereof are always white.

V. *The third, or Small short Leaved Knotgrass.* It has a Root like to the former, from whence rise up many slender jointed Branches, but more woody than the other, spread also into some other smaller ones, on which grow small short Leaves, lesser than those of the Small Johnswort, the Flowers are small and white, like the other.

VI. *The fourth, or Stone or Rock Knotgrass.* It has small, white, fibrous Roots, from whence spring up many weak trailing Branches, lying upon the Ground round about it, on which grow Leaves which are somewhat round, being an Inch in length, and about half an Inch in breadth, but growing smaller to the Stalkward, green on the upper side, and of a whitish mealy Color underneath, at the Joints come forth small, pale, reddish Flowers, like unto the other, and after them follows such like small Seed.

VII. *The fifth, or Greater broad Leaved Sea Knotgrass.* It has a Root which is somewhat great, thick, black, long, and something woody, it runs out into many and much larger Branches than the first, full of Joints, and lying on the Ground, the Joints set very



close together, with Leaves thereon, something like to the Common Kind, but thicker, a little shorter, and broader, and of a dark green color above, and whiter underneath; the Flowers stand at the Joints in the same manner, having small white Skins, which cover the Joints, which in some are also of a white, in others of a purplish color, after which come small Seed, inclosed in whitish shining Skins; the taste of the Plant, and of every part thereof, is astringent, but somewhat salt withal.

VIII. *The sixth, or Lesser or Narrow Leaved Sea Knotgrass.* It has a Root which is long, black, and woody, with a few Fibres adjoining thereto: This lesser Kind has longer Stalks than the last, and covered with a reddish Bark, also more divided into smaller Branches, having fewer Joints on the greater Stalks, but the Branches are thick, and set with smaller Leaves than the former, which are something fat, and thick, long, and narrow, like the first Common Kind; the Flowers are small and whitish, and the Seed is much like that of the fifth Kind.

IX. *Nota.* Whereas the first great sort is called before in this Chapter *Mas*, or the *Male Kind*, that seems to bespeak a *Female Kind* also, but there is indeed no *Female Species* of *Knotgrass*, for that which some Authors call *Polygonum Femina*, or *Femineum*, is one of the Kinds of *Equiseta*, or *Horse-tails*, as being likest unto them, although not rough, but differing totally in form from *Polygonum*, or *Knotgrass*, for which reason we take no farther notice of it in this Chapter.

X. *The Places.* The first, or great Kind, as also the second, or lesser, grow almost every where, and in every County in *England*, as well by the Foot Ways in Fields as on the sides of High Ways which are green, by the sides of old Walls, and on the borders of Fields, where in some places it even overspreads them; the third and fourth grow on higher Grounds, on Gravelly, Stony, and Rocky places, upon Hills and Mountains; the two last grow in Salt Marshy Grounds, and by the Sea side in many places.

XI. *The Times.* They come forth late in the Spring, and continue all the Summer, Flowering and Seeding in the mean season, and so endure till Winter, in which Season all their Branches perish.

XII. *The Qualities.* They are cold in the first degree, and dry in the second, Astringent, Absterfive, Diuretick, Traumatick, Nephritick, and Alexipharmick.

XIII. *The Specification.* *Knotgrass* is a peculiar thing against spitting of Blood, and all Fluxes of Blood in any part, Bloody Flux, and other Fluxes of the Bowels, the Gonorrhœa in Men and Whites in Women, (Universals being premised) heat and sharpness of Urine, also the Strangury, or stoppage of Urine, cools Inflammations, cures Wounds, and cleanses and heals old and filthy Ulcers, &c.

XIV. *The Preparations.* You may have therefrom 1. *A Liquid Juice.* 2. *An Essence.* 3. *A Decoction in Wine or Water.* 4. *A Pouder of the Herb.* 5. *A Distilled Water.* 6. *A Balsam.*

#### *The Virtues.*

XV. *The Liquid Juice.* It is cooling, drying, and binding, and is very effectual to stay any bleeding at Mouth or Nose being drank in Steeled or Red Port Wine, and being applied to the Forehead or Temples, as also squirted up the Nostrils with a Syringe; it is no less effectual to cool and temper the heat of Blood, or of the Stomach, and to stop any flux of Blood or Humors, either of the Belly,

as Lasks, or Bloody Fluxes, Fluxes of cholerick and sharp Humors, or of the Womb, as the overflowing of the Terms in Women, and the Whites, or of the Spermatick parts, as the running of the Reins, &c. Dose four Spoonfuls; it cures running Ulcers of the Ears.

XVI. *The Essence.* It has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice, besides which, if it is given before the Fit of an Ague comes, whether Tertian or Quartan it is said to determine it, and cure the same; it is also singular good to provoke Urine when it is stopped, as also when it passes away by drops and with pain, which is called the Strangury, it takes away the heat and sharpness thereof, and is said powerfully to expel the Stone, Gravel, Sand, Urine, and other Tartarous Matter from the Reins, Ureters, and Bladder; it is a Sovereign Remedy to cool all manner of Inflammations, to stop the progress of *Azthonics-Fire*, or any other breakings forth of heat, and gives ease in all hot Swellings and Apostems, and prevents the future burning, fretting and eating of dangerous, old, running and gangrenous Sores and Ulcers, yea, tho' in the Privy parts of Men or Women, resisting the Humors for falling into them, cooling them, and drying up the hot, sharp, and moist matter which causes them to be inflamed. Dose two or three Spoonfuls in some proper Vehicle Morning and Night.

XVII. *The Decoction in Water or Wine.* It has the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, but not altogether so strong or effectual, and therefore is to be given in larger Doses, as from a quarter of a Pint to half a Pint, or more. The Vinous Decoction is good for those who are stung or bitten by Scorpions, Serpents, or other Venomous Creatures; and the same is very effectual to stop all defluxions of Rheum falling upon the Stomach or Lungs; it kills also Worms in Stomach or Belly, and eases all inward pains of the Bowels arising from heat, sharpness, and corruption of Humors, as the Colick, &c.

XVIII. *The Pouder of the Herb or Seed.* It is good against the Stone, Gravel, Sand, and Tartarous Matter in the Urinary parts, being drank to a Dram or more Morning and Night in Wine for many days together; applied outwardly to bleeding Wounds, or other fluxes of Blood, it presently stops it, and if it is a simple Wound conduces to its speedy healing.

XIX. *The Distilled Water.* It has the Virtues of the Juice, Essence, and Decoction, but nothing near so powerful as either of them; being taken by it self to four or five Ounces it is effectual to all the Purposes aforesaid, and is a very excellent thing to cool all sorts of Inflammations, proceeding from what cause or in what part of the Body soever.

XX. *The Balsam.* It speedily cures all simple green Wounds, by resisting the flux of Blood, and consolidating their lips; it strengthens weak Joints, comforts the Nerves and Tendons, and is prevalent against the Gout, being duly and rightly applied Morning and Evening.

XXI. *Nota.* It has been observed that the Sea Kinds of *Knotgrass* have not been so cooling and operative in the above enumerated Diseases as the Common Kinds, by reason of their abundant saline substance, yet effectual in several Cases where there is need of greater penetration, and therefore a Cataplasm made thereof and applied has been found much more effectual against the Gout.



C H A P. CCCCXIX.

## Of LADIES-BEDSTRAW,

OR,

## CHEESE-RENNET.

**I. THE Names.** It is called in Greek *Γάλλιον*, and *Γάλλον*, and, as *Dioscorides* says, of some *γαλέιον*, and *γαλλέιον*, and was so called from *γάλα*, Milk, from the effect, which was to make Milk turn into a Curd when they set it to make Cheese, for which it serves very well; in *Latine* *Gallium*, and in *English* *Ladies-Bedstraw*, *Cheese-Rennet*, and *Maidshair*.

**II. The Kinds.** Authors make six or seven Kinds of this Plant, or more, but because several of them are not to be met withal in *England* or our Plantations abroad, we shall only describe the five following, viz. 1. *Gallium*, & *Gallium luteum*, Our Common *Ladies-Bedstraw*. 2. *Gallium album Camerarij* & *Pena*, *Mollugo*, *Mollugo vulgatio* *Lobelij*, *Gallium tertium Tragi*, *Mollugo prima Dodonaei*, *Lugdunensis*, & *Tabernamontani*, Our Common white Flowered *Ladies-Bedstraw*. 3. *Mollugo Montana Dodonaei*, *Clusij*, *Lobelij*, *Lugdunensis*, *Thalij*, & *Tabernamontani*, *Rubia Sylvatica altera Gesneri*, White Flowered Mountain *Ladies-Bedstraw*. 4. *Gallium Flore rubro*, *Gallium Flore nigro purpureum Montanum Tenuifolium Clusij* & *Columna*, Red Flowered *Ladies-Bedstraw*. 5. *Gallium Montanum Creticum*, *Gallium Americanum* vel *Floridianum*, *Candia* or *American Ladies-Bedstraw*.



**III. The Descriptions.** The first, or Our Common *Ladies-Bedstraw*. It has a Root which is reddish, having many small Fibres or Threads fastned to it, which take strong hold of the Ground, and creep a little also; from this Root rise up several

small, brown, square, upright Stalks, three Feet or more high, sometimes branched forth into divers parts, full of Joints, and with several very fine small Leaves at every one of them, little or nothing rough at all; at the tops of the Branches grow many long Tufts of yellow Flowers, very thick set together, one above another, from the several Joints, which consist of four small Leaves apiece, and smell somewhat strong or resinous, but not unpleasant; the Seed is small and black, like Poppy Seed, two for the most part joined together; some of the Branches leaning down to the Ground take root at their Joints, whereby it much increases.

**IV.** Gerard thus describes it. It has a small and thready Root, from which come forth small, round, even Stalks, weak and tender, creeping hither and thither upon the Ground, on which do grow very fine Leaves, cut into small parts, finer than those of Dill, set at certain spaces, as those of Woodrooff, among which come forth Flowers of a yellow color in clusters or bunches, thick thrust together, of a strong sweet smell, but not unpleasant.

**V.** The second, or Our Common white Flowered *Ladies-Bedstraw*. It has a Root which is fibrous or thready, and abiding all Winter, and the whole Plant is in all things like to that next to be described, saving, that the Branches are so weak, that unless they be sustained by Trees, Bushes, Hedges, or other things near which it grows, it will lye down upon the Ground, and the Leaves are smaller and narrower, yet not so small as the first with yellow Flowers; the Flowers are also small and white, but not plentifully abounding: Some Authors make a smaller sort hereof, which is not a proper Species, for upon transplanting it will grow as great as the other.

**VI.** Gerard describes this second sort thus. *Ladies-Bedstraw* with white Flowers is like unto *Cleavers* or *Goosegrasses* in Leaves, Stalks, and manner of growing, yet nothing at all rough, but smooth and soft; the Flowers are white, the Seed round, the Roots slender, creeping within the Ground; the whole Plant climbs upon Bushes, Shrubs, and all other like things which are near unto it, otherwise it grows not upright, but falls to the Ground.

**VII.** The third, or White Flowered Mountain *Ladies-Bedstraw*. It has a Root which is black, and very fibrous or thready, from whence shoot forth a number of slender and weak Stalks, which yet stand upright of themselves, directly branching forth into many parts, so that it seems to be a pretty well spread Bush, having many shorter and broader smooth green Leaves set at the Joints than any of the former, or the next which follows; the Flowers are very small and white, standing at the tops of the Branches, more thick or plentifully set than the following with red Flowers, which being past away turn into small, black, round Seed.

**VIII.** This Gerard says that it is called *Mollugo*, and has Stalks which need not be propped up, but of it self stands upright, and is like unto our second Species, or Common White Flowered *Ladies-Bedstraw*, but that it has a smoother Leaf.

**IX.** The fourth, or Red Flowered *Ladies-Bedstraw*. Its Root is of a reddish color, but greater than the first Common Kind, creeps not, abiding many Years and not perishing: The Plant is small, and has slenderer and lower Stalks than the first Kind, yet divided into many Branches, at whose Joints stand four, five, or six long Leaves, and not of so dark a green Color as the first; the Flowers are of a red color, not so thick clustering or set together as those of the first Kind, and consist of four small pointed Leaves, with a yellow Pointel in the middle, but five or six or more growing together at the tops of the Branches, which afterwards turn into small



small black Seed, like the first. *Columna* will have *Gallium nigra purpureum Montanum*, &c. to be a differing Species from this now described, but they seem to me to be all one Kind, the Flower being in some places only a little darker, but in all other particulars alike.

X. *Gerard* says this fourth or Red Flowered Ladies-Bedstraw has been taken for a Kind of Wild Madder, but it is truly a Kind or Species of Ladies-Bedstraw, or Cheese-Rennet, as appears both by its Qualities of turning Milk into Curds, as also by its form, being in each respect like unto the *Gallium luteum*, or Our Common Ladies-Bedstraw, and differs in the color of the Flowers, which are of a dark red color, with a yellow Pointel in the middle consisting of four small Leaves.

XI. The fifth, or Candy or American Ladies-Bedstraw. It grows like the first, or Common, or Yellow Ladies-Bedstraw, but much lesser, yet with greater Roots and Branches. It is a more effectual Rennet than any of the former, hot and astringent, stopping Fluxes of Blood.

XII. The Places. The first and second grow frequently in many places in this Land, in Meadows and Pastures both wet and dry, as also by Hedge sides; the first grows also upon Sunnie Banks near the borders of Fields, in fruitful Soils almost every where; the second grows in Marsh Grounds, and other moist places; the third grows on Hills and Mountains and in Hedges among Bushes in moist places; the fourth grows on Mountainous and Hilly places in Germany, and was sent to us from *Strasburgh*, since which it is nursed up with us in Gardens; the fifth grows in Candy, and in several parts of *America* upon the *Floridian* Continent, in several places of which I have often found it.

XIII. The Times. They all Flower early, viz. in May, except the Red Flowered, which Flowers in June, and the Seeds are ripe in June, July, and August; but *Gerard* says they Flower most of the Summer Months.

XIV. The Qualities. They are hot and dry in the first degree, Astringent, Absterfive, and Traumatick or Vulnerary; they are also Nephritick, Lithontrip-tick, and Arthritick.

XV. The Specification. Ladies-Bedstraw is a peculiar thing to stop bleeding inwardly, or at Nose, to heal inward or outward Wounds, to help burning with Fire and scalding with Water, to strengthen the Nerves, Tendons, and Joints, give ease in the Gout, to help the Strangury, and to flet and break the Stone.

XVI. The Preparations. You may have therefrom, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. A Decoction. 3. A Pouder of the Root. 4. A Nasale of Herb and Flowers. 5. An Ointment. 6. Cheese Rennet.

## The Virtues.

XVII. The liquid Juice. It is powerful to provoke Urine, to help the Strangury, to break the Stone, and to expel Gravel, Sand and Tartarous Matter from the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, being taken two or three Ounces at a time, two or three times a Day, in a Glass of pure White Port Wine. The same drank helps to stop inward Bleeding and the overflowing of the Terms in Women, as also to heal inward Wounds, by its heating and drying Qualities.

XVIII. The Decoction of Herb and Flowers in Wine or Water. It has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice, but is much weaker. It is good to bathe the Feet of Travellers in, who are wearied and tired with Travel, and whose Feet are swoln, or bruised,

or galled thereby; and for such whose much and long Running causes not only Weariness, but Stiffness in the Nerves and Joints; for all which things this Decoction used as hot as it can be well endured, is very available. It is also good against Scurff, Morpew, Dandriff, dry Scabs, Itchings, and other like Defoedations of the Skin, chiefly in Infants.

XIX. The Pouder of the Root. It may be taken to one Dram in choice Canary, Madera, or other like generous Wines; and as *Dioscorides* writes, it provokes Venery or Bodily Lust, as do also the Pouder of the Flowers, taken in the same Dose and Manner Morning and Night, or two or three times a Day.

XX. The Nasale of the Herb and Flowers. They being bruised, and put up the Nostrils, are said to stop a vehement Hamorrhage in those Parts; and it may be so much the better, if some of their Juice be first snuff up, or syringed in.

XXI. The Ointment. It is made by boiling the bruised Herb and Flowers in Oil Olive to Crispness; and straining out, and so repeating this Work three or four times, then adding a little Bees-wax to bring it to a Consistency: But some advise it to be made with Hogs-Lard. Or you may make an Oil thus: Put the bruised Herb and Flowers into pure Oil Olive, and insolate till the Oil becomes white: press all out, and repeat this Work three or four times, and strain out for Use: but it is sooner done by boiling the bruised Herbs and Flowers in the Oil to Crispness, straining out by pressing, and repeating the Work three times more; then straining out the clear Oil, keep it for Use. It is good against Burnings with Fire, and Scalding with Water, and is good to be anointed upon Limbs and Joints, which are weak, and become stiff with Walking, for it strengthens the Nerves, Tendons and Joints. It prevails also against Scurff, Morpew, Mange, dry Scabs, and the Itchings and Gallings of Children, and other Deformities of the Skin. Applied also to the Parts affected, it gives Ease in the Gout, and other like Pains; and by Continuation of the Application, cures the same.

XXII. The Cheese-Rennet. It is made of the bruised Herb, by squeezing out its Juice, being first moistened with a little choice Canary or Sherry, to which a quarter part of Spirit of Wine is first added. Or thus: Take the expressed Juice, defecate it by settling, or clarify it with Whites of Eggs: to a quart of this prepared Juice, put Sherry Wine four ounces, first mixt with Spirit of Wine two ounces: mix them, digest some Days, then decant the clear, and keep it for Use. But many Country People make use of the simple Juice only. *Matthiolus* says, That the People of *Tuscany* do use to Turn their Milk with it, that the Cheese which they make of Sheep and Goats Milk, may be the sweeter, and the more pleasant in Taste, and also more wholesome, as to break the Stone, &c. And the *Cheshire* Women, especially those about *Nantwich*, where the best Cheese is made, do use it in their Rennet, (viz. by putting the bruised Herb into their Rennet-bags;) much more esteeming of that Cheese which is made with it, than of that which is made without it.

XXIII. Nota. The Ancients thought the *Gallium album*, or White-flowered Ladies Bed-straw, to have no Virtues, or to be of no Use. But *Clusius* says, That in *Austria*, *Hungaria*, and other places of Germany, the People have found it by Experience to be good to strengthen the Arteries, Nerves, Tendons and Joints, those Parts being bathed either with the Juice, Decoction or Rennet made thereof; and that it takes away Weariness and Weakness after Traveling, and eases Pains cause by Cold, Over-walking, Blows,



Blows, or Over-straining. Parts affected with the Gout, being well bathed with the Rennet made thereof, Morning and Night, as hot as it can be endured, cures the Pain, and in a short time eases the Disease; but it is much more effectual, if after Bathing, a Cataplasim be applied, made of the Juice or Rennet, (of any of the Kinds of *Ladies Bed-straw*) by bringing it to a Consistence with fine Barley-flower, or Crums of White-bread, mixed with a little Oil of Peppy-seed, or Oil of *Ben*, the Application being made as hot as the Patient can well endure.

C H A P. CCCCXX.

Of LADIES--BOWER,

O R,

C L I M E R S.

**T**HE Names. It is called in *Greek*, *Κλήμας*: in *Latin*, *Clematis*; and in *English*, *Ladies-Bower*, *Virgins-Bower*, and *Climer*.

II. The Kinds. Authors make many sorts hereof, some of which grow not in *England*, nor in any of our *English* Plantations: those which are to be had with us, are the following. 1. *Clematis urens*, *Clematis altera flore albo*, *Clematis altera Dioscoridis*, *Clematis peregrina*; *Ladies-Bower*, or *Virgins-Bower Burning*, *Burning Climer*, or *Caustick Climer*. 2. *Clematis peregrina*, vel *Clematis altera Dioscoridis flore simplici rubro*; *Red Ladies-Bower*, or *Virgins-Bower*, or *Single red-flowered Climer*. 3. *Clematis peregrina flore simplici purpureo*; *Single purple Ladies-Bower*, or *Single purple-flowered Climer*. 4. *Clematis peregrina flore purpureo pleno*; *Double purple-flowered Ladies or Virgins Bower*, *Double purple-flowered Climer*. 5. *Clematis Maritima repens Bauhini*, *Creeping fiery Sea Climer*. 6. *Clematis Virginiana*; *The Virginian Ladies-Bower*, or *Climer*, which the Natives call *Maracoc*. 7. *Flammula Jovis surrecta* or *erecta*, *Flammula frutex*, *Clematis erecta* or *surrecta*; *Upright Ladies-Bower*, or *Virgins Bower*. Here is to be noted, That the *Sixth* or *Virginian* Kind, is called by the *Spaniards* in the *West Indies*, *Granadillus*, or *Granadillo*, because the Fruit is in some sort like a small *Pomgrate* on the outside, yet the Seed within is flattish, round and blackish.

III. The Descriptions. The first, or *Ladies-Bower*, or *Virgins-Bower Burning*, or *Burning Climer*. The Root is white and thick, fleshy and tender, or easy to be broken, insomuch that one can scarcely handle it (tho' very tenderly) without danger of breaking it. This *Caustick* or *Burning Climer*, has very long and tender climbing Branches, yet something woody below, which wind about those things which stand near it, covered with a brownish green Bark; from the Joints of which shoot forth many winged Leaves, consisting for the most part of five single Leaves, viz. two and two together, and one at the end, which are a little cut in, or notched on the edges here and there; but every part of them is lesser than the Leaves of the next following *Climer*, without any clasping Tendrels, to wind about any next adjacent thing. Towards the upper part of the Branches, with the said Leaves, come forth long Stalks, on which stand many white Flowers cluster-

ing together, opening the Brims into six or eight small Leaves, spreading like a Star, very sweet of Smell, or rather of a strong heady Scent, which after turn in blackish flattish Seed, plumed at the Head, which Plume or Feather flies away with the Wind, after it has stood long, and leaves the Seed naked or bare.



IV. The second, or *Red Ladies or Virgins Bower*, or *Single red-flowered Climer*. Its Roots are a Bundle of strong brownish yellow Strings, running down deep into the Earth from a large Head above. This *Climer* has many limber and weak climbing Branches, like the former, covered with a brown thin outward Bark, and green underneath. The Leaves stand at the Joints, consisting but of three Leaves or Parts, whereof some are notched on one side, and some on both, without any clasping Tendrel, as the former, but winding with its Branches about any thing which stands next it. The Flowers in like manner come from the same Joints with the Leaves, but not so many together as the former, upon long Footstalks, consisting of four Leaves apiece, standing like a Cross, of a dark red Colour. The Seed is flat and round, and pointed at the end; three or four or more standing close together upon one Stalk, without any down upon them at all, as in the former.

V. The third, or *Single purple Ladies-Bower*, or *Single purple-flowered Climer*. This is like to the former in its Roots, Stalks, Branches, Leaves, Flowers and Seed, and differs from the former in this only, that the Color hereof is of a sad bluish purple: So that the one is not possible to be known from the other, till they come to the Season of Flowering.

VI. The fourth, or *Double purple-flowered Ladies or Virgins Bower*, or *Double purple-flowered Climer*. This in its Root, Branches and Leaves, does so near resemble the Single Kinds, that no Difference can be known between them, but in these Particulars, viz. that this grows more bold and

great



great, and yields both more store of Branches from the Ground, and more spreading above : also that the Flower in this is very thick and double, consisting of a number of smaller Leaves, set close together, in order, in the middle, the four outermost Leaves which encompass them, being much broader and larger than any of the inward, but all of a dull or sad bluish purple Color ; the Points or Ends of the Leaves seeming a little darker than the middle of them. This bears no Seed, so far as has yet been seen or heard of from any Person of Credit, notwithstanding the Affirmations of some false and ignorant Gardeners, which affirm the contrary.

VII. *The fifth, or Creeping fiery Sea Climer.* It spreads abroad many creeping, pliant, jointed and crested Branches, about two feet long, covered with a very dark green Bark ; from whence shoot forth many winged Leaves, a little dented about the edges, very like unto the *Flammula Jovis erecta* in Sect. 9. following, consisting of five Leaves, but most commonly of three upon a Stalk, being narrower, harder and longer pointed : at the ends whereof comes forth a small clasping Tendrel ; but those which grow up higher upon the Stalks, and nearer unto the tops, where the Flowers do stand, are much smaller and narrower. The Flowers come forth many together, as in the other, set upon long Footstalks, which are white and with many hairy Threads in their middle. After they are passed away, many round, flat, reddish Seed are produced, smaller than in some others, three or four upon a Stalk together, plumed with a white Feather at the Head of each of them. The whole Plant is hot and sharp, like unto the others.

VIII. *The sixth, or The Virginian Ladies-Bower or Climer.* Its Root is composed of a number of exceeding long and round, yellowish brown Strings, spreading far abroad under the Ground, sometimes as long as any Roots of Sarsaparilla, and a great deal bigger, which to be conveniently and cleverly laid in the Ground, must be coiled up like a Cable : and these Roots, by shooting up in several places, a good distance one from another, make a great Encrease of the Species. This noble and much desired Plant rises out of the Ground very late in the Year, about the beginning of May, if it is a Plant which has sprung up from the Seed of our own Sowing ; but if it is an old one, such as has been brought to us from Virginia, not till the end of May. It springs up with a round Stalk, not above a Yard and half high, or thereabouts with us, but in hotter Countries, as some Authors say, much higher ; bearing one Leaf at every Joint, which from the Ground to the middle thereof, has no Claspers ; but from thence upwards, has at the same Joint with the Leaf, both a small twining Clasper, like unto a Vine, and a Flower also. Every Leaf is broad at the Stalk thereof, and divided about the middle on both sides, making it somewhat resemble a Fig-Leaf, ending in three Points, of which the middlemost is longest. The Bud of the Flower, before it does open, is very like unto the Head or Seed-Vessel of the Ordinary single *Nigella*, having at the Head or Top five small crooked Horns, which when this Bud opens, are the Ends or Points of five Leaves, which are white on the inside, and lay themselves flat, like unto an *Anemone* or *Wind-flower*, and are a little hollow, like a Scoop, at the end, with five other smaller Leaves, and whiter than they, lying between them, which were hid in the Bud before it opened ; so that this Flower, being full blown open, consists of ten white Leaves, laid in order, round, one by another : from the bottom of these Leaves on the inside, rise up several twined Threads, which spread and lay themselves all over these white Leaves, reaching beyond

the Points of them a little, and are of a reddish Peach Color : towards the bottoms likewise of these white Leaves, there are two red Circles, about the Breadth of an Oaten Straw, one something distant from another, which add a great Grace to the Flower ; (but in some Flowers there is but one of these Circles seen.) By their means the white Leaves shew their Color thro' the Peach-colored Threads ; and these red Circles or Rings upon them being perspicuous, make a tripartite Shew of Colors very delightful. The middle part of this Flower is hollow, and yellowish ; in the bottom of which rises up an Umbone, or round Stile, somewhat big, of a whitish green Color, spotted with reddish Spots, like the Stalks of *Dragons*, with five round Threads or Chives, spotted in like manner, and tipt at the ends with yellow Pendants, standing about the middle part of the said Umbone or Stile, and from thence rising higher, ends in three long crooked Horns most usually, (and sometimes in four, as *Aldinus* in his *Farnesian Garden* observed at Rome) spotted like the rest, having three round Buttons at their ends. These Flowers are of a comfortable, pleasant, sweet Smell, and very acceptable, but perish without yielding Fruit with us, because of the so late Flowering : but in the natural place, and in hot Countries, it bears a small round whitish Fruit, with a Crown at the top thereof, in which is contained (whilst it is fresh, or not over-dried) a sweet Liquor ; but when it is dry, the Seed within it is small, flat, black, and somewhat rough, and will make a rattling Noise.



IX. *The seventh, or Upright Ladies-Bower, or Virgins-Bower.* Its Root spreads in the Ground from a thick Head, into many long Strings, and fastens it self strongly in the Earth. From this Head of Roots spring more upright Stalks than in any of the former, which grow to be sometimes four or five Feet high or more, yet leaning or bending a little, so that it has some need of sustaining, which are covered with a brownish Bark ; from whence come forth



forth on all sides, divers winged Leaves, consisting of five or seven Leaves, set on both sides of a middle Rib, of which the odd one is always at the end. The tops of the Stalks are divided into many Branches, bearing many white, sweet-smelling Flowers on them, like in Fashion to the *White Virgins-Bower*: after which come such like Feather-topt Seed, which remain and shew themselves, being flat like the other, when the Plumes or Down is blown abroad. The Stalks die away every Year, and spring again afresh in the beginning of the next.



X. *The Places.* These Plants delight to grow in the Sun, and prosper better in a fruitful Soil than in a barren. The first four grow in our *English* Gardens, where they flourish much. The fifth, *Baubine* says, grows in many places of the *Adriatick* Sea Shore, and in Islands thereabouts belonging to the *Venetians*. The sixth grows not wild in *England*, but flourishes well in our Gardens. The seventh, which is the surpassing Delight of all Flowers, came to us from *Virginia*, and now is become a free Denizen of *England*, by being planted in our Nurseries or Gardens.

XI. *The Times.* They all flower in the end of *June* or *July*, and sometimes in *August*, and perfect their Seed in *September*. The *Virginian Climber* flowers in *August*, yet sometimes, tho' not often in *July*, but perfects no Seed here.

XII. *The Qualities.* They are all hot and dry in the fourth Degree; Caustick and Burning, or Blistering the Skin.

XIII. *The Specification.* Authors say they are peculiar against Scurff, Morpew, Scabs, Leprosy, and other Defœdations of the Skin, but are not safe to be taken inwardly, unless to purge Water in Dropsies.

XIV. *The Preparations.* Altho' these Plants are never or very seldom used in Physick, unless in outward Application; yet these following Preparations have been made of them, viz. 1. A Powder of the Seed of the first or Burning Ladies-Bower, and of the seventh or Upright Ladies-Bower. 2. An Oil by Infolation or Boiling of the same Plants. 3. A

distilled Water of the same. 4. The Liquor of the *Virginian Climber*. 5. A Cataplasm of the Climbers.

#### The Virtues.

XV. *The Powder of the Seed.* Given to a Scruple or half a Dram, more or less, in fair Water or in Mead, it is said to purge Choler, Flegm, and watery Humors.

XVI. *The Oil by Infolation or Boiling.* It cures Aches and Cramps, Sciatica's, and other Pains coming of Cold: it is also good against the Stone, and provokes Urine, some small quantity of it being taken inwardly in any proper Vehicle. It also takes away Scurff, Morpew, Scabs, Leprosy, and other Deformities of the Skin, by anointing therewith.

XVII. *The distilled Water of the Upright Ladies-Bower.* It clears the Skin of Defœdations, and is effectual against any cold Grievs in any part of the Body.

XVIII. *The Liquor of the Virginian Climber.* This Liquor within the Fruit, is very pleasant to the Taste, as if *Musk* or *Ambergrise* were mixed with it: and having a little Acidity with it, it does not cloy the Stomach, tho' it be taken in large quantity, nor gives any bad Symptom, but is said rather to move the Belly downwards, and make it soluble. *Aldinus* gives us many Virtues of it, which seem to me to be spoken Hyperbolically, for by Experience nothing has yet been observed thereof. But he says, that the Leaves of the Plant have a somniferous Property, and finell like to *Nightshade*, having (as he thinks) some deleterious or deadly Quality in them, because it kills Flies which rest thereon.

XIX. *The Cataplasm of the Leaves of the other Burning Climbers.* Being applied to the Sciatica or Gout, or any Pain in other Parts proceeding from Cold, it cures them, being cautiously used; for it quickly Blisters.

XX. *Nota.* *Matthiolus* says, that the Powder of the Leaves of the Upright Ladies-Bower, being prepared and given, helps against a Quartan Ague. However, all the other Climbers may serve very well to make Arbors in Gardens and Orchards, or other like places for Pleasure; for to those Purposes they are most fit, if any please to Plant them.

LADIES--COMB, see Shepherds-Needle, Chap.  
LADIES--HAIR, see Maiden-Hair, Chap.  
LADIES--LACE, see Grass, Chap. 327. Sect. 231.  
LADIES--GLASS, see Violet Corn, Chap.

C H A P. CCCCXXI.

Of LADIES--MANTLE,

O R,

LIONS--FOOT.

Called also, Great SANICLE.

I. **T**HE Names. It does not appear that this was known to the ancient *Greeks*: but *Brunfelsius* says it is *Λεοντοπιδιον*, *Leontopodium*, Lions-Foot: yet others say it is not that which *Dioscori-*



des speaks of. It is called in *Latine*, *Alchimilla*, by most Writers; *Stellaria Matthioli*, *Lugdunensis*, &c. *Pes Leonis*, and *Pata Leonis*; *Drosera*, and *Drosium Cordi*; *Sanicula major*, (as much resembling *Sanicle*;) and in *English*, *Ladies-Mantle*, *Lions-Foot*, and *Great Sanicle*.

II. *The Kinds*. Authors make two sorts hereof, viz. 1. *Alchimilla major vulgaris*, *Stellaria*, *Sanicula major*, Common Ladies-Mantle. 2. *Alchimilla minor*, vel *Alpina quinquefolia*, Five-leaved Ladies-Mantle, or Ladies-Mantle cinkfoil-leaved.

### Ladies= Mantle.



III. *The Descriptions*. The first, or Common Ladies-Mantle, has a Root which is somewhat long and black, with many Fibres, and Strings thereat. It is something like to our Common *Sanicle*, having many Leaves rising from the Root, standing upon long hairy Foot-stalks, being almost round, but a little cut in on the edges into eight or ten parts, more or less, making it seem like a Star, (whence the Name *Stellaria*) with so many Corners and Points, and dented round about, of a light green Color; something hard in handling, and as if it was folded or plaited at first, and then crumpled in divers places, and a little hairy, as the Stalk is also, which rises up among them, which grows to the Height of two or three Feet, with a few such Leaves thereon, but smaller, and being weak, is not able to stand upright, but bends sometimes down to the Ground, divided at the top into two or three small Branches, with small yellowish green Heads, and Flowers of a whitish green Color, breaking out of them, which being past, there comes small yellowish Seed, like unto *Poppy Seed*.

IV. *The second*, or Five-leaved Ladies-Mantle. It has a small black fibrous Root, from which spring a few smaller and smoother green Leaves, set upon long Foot-stalks, but divided at the edges into five Corners or Points, and something more deeply dented about the Brims than the former: from among which come forth two or three small weak bending

Stalks, about six or seven Inches high. The Flowers which grow at tops, are smaller, but like to the other, according to the Bigness of the Plant, and of the same Herby or green Color.

V. *The Places*. The first grows naturally in many Pastures and Wood-sides, both in *Hartfordshire* and *Wiltshire*; as also in *Kent*, as in *Kingwood* near *Feverham*, in the Pastures nigh *Tidnam* and *Chepstow*, and in other places of this Land. *Gerard* says it grows of it self Wild in divers places, in the Pastures at *Andover*, and in other parts of *Hampshire* and *Barkshire*, in their Clofes and Copfes, or low Woods; as also upon the Bank of a Moat which encloses a House in *Bushy*, called *Bourn-Hall*, fourteen Miles from *London*; and in the Highway from thence to *Watford*, a small Mile distant from it. The second grows on *Bernards-Hill* in *Switzerland*, but is to be found with us only in Gardens.

VI. *The Times*. The first flowers in *May* and *June*. The second not till *August*: but they both abide after Seed-time, and flourish and keep green all Winter after, as well as in Summer.

VII. *The Qualities*. It is hot and dry in the second Degree; Absterfive, Astringent, Strengthening and Vulnerary.

VIII. *The Specification*. It is peculiar to stop Bleeding, whether inward or outward, all Fluxes of the Bowels in Man or Woman; and the Whites, or Weakness of the Womb. It cures Wounds after a most singular manner, being one of the most noble Wound-Herbs, being extolled by the *Germans* with exceeding great Praise, who never cure any Wound, whether inward or outward, but they give of the Decoction hereof to drink.

IX. *The Preparations*. You may make hereof, 1. A liquid Juice. 2. An Essence. 3. A Decoction or Infusion. 4. A Powder of the Leaves. 5. A Balsam or Ointment. 6. A Cataplasm. 7. A distilled Water. 8. A Spirituous Tincture. 9. An Acid Tincture. 10. An Oily Tincture.

### The Virtues.

X. *The liquid Juice*. It is not so hot as that of *Sanicle*, and therefore more fit for those Wounds, which are accompanied with Inflammation, and so is more drying, astringent, or binding and cleansing. It is effectual against all sorts of Bleedings, both inward and outward, stops the Over-flowing of the Terms in Women, and cures the Bloody-flux, as also all other Fluxes of the Bowels. Dose from two to four or six Spoonfuls Morning and Night in a Glass of the distilled Water, or in Ale or Wine.

XI. *The Essence*. It has all the Virtues of the former; besides which, it cures Bruises by Falls or otherwise, whether inwards or outwards: it heals Ruptures of the *Peritoneum*, as also Ruptures of the Blood-Vessels, which cause Spitting or Pissing of Blood; and is a peculiar thing to stop the Whites in Women, being esteemed more powerful for this Purpose than most other things; for which Intention it is not only to be given inwardly by the Mouth, but is also outwardly to be applied as an Injection up the Womb, with a Womb-Syringe. Dose three or four Spoonfuls in Red Port Wine, or some other proper Vehicle, two or three times a Day. Inwardly also taken, and outwardly applied to Womens Breasts, which are great and over-much flag, it causes them to grow lesser and hard. This Essence being taken for twenty or thirty Days together, by such Women as are Barren, or have a Slipperiness of the Womb, it is said to cause them to Conceive, and to retain the Birth after Conception; for that it dries up the too great Humidity, and stops



the Flux of Humors to the Matrix, and so strengthens the Womb, as to prevent Abortion, reducing it to a perfect State of Health: but the Patient ought as well as to take it inwardly by the Mouth, to sit in a strong Decoction thereof Bathwise.

XII. *The Decoction or Infusion.* This has all the Virtues of the Liquid Juice and Essence, but weaker in its Effects: however, it may serve as a Vehicle to convey other Preparations of this Herb in, and may be given from four Ounces to eight Ounces or half a Pint. It makes a good Injection for hollow Wounds and Ulcers, cleanses them, makes them breed Flesh, and brings them to a speedy Healing.

XIII. *The Powder of the Leaves or Root.* It is an excellent Styptick, and stops Bleeding in any Part it is applied to. Inwardly given from half a Dram to a Dram and half, in the Decoction, Infusion, or distilled Water, or in Red Port Wine, it has all the Virtues of the liquid Juice, Essence, &c. provided it is given Morning and Night for some considerable time. Tents may be dipt into the Juice or Infusion, and then rouled in this Powder, and so put into any hollow Sore or Ulcer; by which means it wonderfully dries up all Humidities of the Ulcer, incarnates it, and induces a speedy Healing, yea, altho' it be fistulous, with a Flux of Humors appending; and abates also Inflammations, if any be present.

XIV. *The Balsam or Ointment.* It is one of the best of Vulneraries, for it digests if need be, absterges or cleanses, incarnates, dries and heals, almost to a Miracle: and in simple green Wounds or Cuts, it has such an exquisite Faculty of speedy Healing, that it cures it at the first Intention, consolidating the Lips thereof, without the breeding Matter, or any Danger of breaking out again, by suffering any Corruption to remain behind. Outwardly applied to the Gout, Sciatica, or other like Pains of the Joints, proceeding from Blows, Over-straining, or the like, it gives Ease, and speedily cures them, adding also Strength to the Part.

XV. *The Cataplasim.* It is an excellent thing to be presently applied to a simple green Wound; for it stops the Afflux of Blood, and consolidates the Lips thereof by the first Intention of Curing. It also allays Inflammations coming upon the Joints in the Gout, and gives Ease in the Pain. Applied to a recent simple Contusion, it prevents the Afflux of Humors; dissolves those which are present, if any be, and safely restores the Part.

XVI. *The distilled Water.* Authors say, that if it is taken continually for twenty Days together, that it cures Barrenness in Women, viz. such as cannot Conceive, or such as cannot retain the Conception. But doubtless the liquid Juice or Essence is much better than this, and therefore either of them may be given in this as a Vehicle, for which it is very proper, and may be given Morning and Night, from four to eight Ounces.

XVII. *The Spirituous Tincture.* Inwardly taken, it warms and comforts the Bowels, strengthens the inward Parts, expels Wind, and is an excellent Traumatick, is drying and astringent, and therefore good against all Fluxes of the Bowels, Over-flowing of the Terms, and other Weaknesses of the Generative Parts. It is good to be used Dietetically in the Cure of Wounds, old Sores, running Ulcers, and Fistula's accompanied with Fluxion of Humors: it has all the Virtues of the Juice and Essence, and may be given Morning and Night, from two Drams to three or four, in the distilled Water, or in Red Wine.

XVIII. *The Acid Tincture.* It has all the Virtues of the Spirituous Tincture, but is more Traumatick or Vulnerary, and more Stomatick, whereby it ef-

fectually stops Vomiting, strengthens the Stomach, and causes a good Appetite and a strong Digestion: but it stops not Fluxes of the Bowels so well as some of the former Preparations; but it therefore opens the more, and removes Obstructions of Stomach, Liver, Spleen, and other Bowels. It is a most excellent thing against a virulent Gonorrhea in Men, being taken every Day in all that the Patient drinks, whether Ale, Beer, Wine or Water, so much at a time as to give the Vehicle a pleasing Acidity; and it ought to be so often taken in a Day that the whole quantity taken may amount to at least four or five Spoonfuls.

XIX. *The Oily Tincture.* It is a famous thing against a cold Gout, and all Pains or Aches proceeding from a cold Cause in any Part of the Body, being twice a Day anointed upon the Part for some time. It is an excellent thing also against Bruises, Cuts or Punctures of the Nerves and Tendons; for it suddenly eases the Pain, and alleviates the Inflammation, and thereby induces the Cure, a Plaister of the Balsam being also laid thereon. Inwardly given, it gives Ease in the Colick, expels Wind; and opens Obstructions of the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, expelling Gravel, Stones and Sand from those Parts, and cleansing them from any Tartarous Mucilage lodged therein.

LADIES-NAVEL, *see* Navel-Wort, Chap.

LADIES-SEAL, *see* Bryony Black, Chap. 90.

LADIES-SLIPPER, *see* Hellebor Wild, Chap. 352.

DANG de BEIF, *see* Bugloss Wild, Chap. 94.

## C H A P. CCCCXXII.

### of L A R K S--S P U R,

O R,

### L A R K S--H E E L.

*Called also,* K N I G H T S--S P U R.

I. **T**HE Names. It is called in *Latine*, *Delphinium*, but whether it be the *Delphinium Dioscoridis*, is very doubtful: it is also called, *Flos Regius*; *Buccinus*, *Buccinum Romanorum*; *Cuminum Sylvestre alterum Matthioli*; *Cuminum Sylvestre alterum Dioscoridis*; *Calcaris Flos*; *Consolida Regalis Sylvestris*; *Consolida Regalis peregrina parvo flore Baubini*: in *English*, *Larks-Spurs*, *Larks-Heels*, *Knights-Spurs*; and *Monks-Hood*. It has no *Greek* Name yet known.

II. *The Kinds.* Authors make six Kinds of this Plant, viz. 1. *Delphinium majus, sive vulgare*, Ordinary or Common Larks Heels or Spurs. 2. *Delphinium vulgare flore pleno*, Double Common Larks-Spur. 3. *Delphinium arvense*, Wild Larks-Spur. 4. *Delphinium Hispanicum parvum*, *Delphinium latifolium trigonum*, (so called from the Division of the Leaves, or from the Pods, which usually come three together) Spanish Wild Larks-Spur. 5. *Delphinium elatius flore simplici diversorum Colorum*, Single upright bearing Larks-Heel of many Colors. 6. *Delphinium elatius flore pleno diversorum Colorum*, Double upright Larks-Spur of many Colors.

III. The



*Larks-Spur Common.*

III. The Descriptions. *The first, or Ordinary or Common Larks Heel or Spur, has a Root which is hard after it is run up to Seed, spreading both abroad and deep, yet perishes every Year, raising it self usually from its own Sowing, as well as from the Seed sown in the Spring time. From this Root rise many Branches, which spread much more Ground than the others, rather leaning or bending down to the Ground, than standing upright; on which are set many long green Leaves, finely cut, almost like to Fennel Leaves. The Branches end in a long Spike of hollow Flowers, with a long Spur or Heel behind them, (whence the Name) very like unto the Flowers of Hollow-Root, (before described) and are of several and various Colours, as of a blewish purple Color, or white, or Ash-color, or red, paler or deeper, as also party-colored, of two Colors in a Flower. After the Flowers are past, (which in this Kind abide longer than in the other) long round Cods come forth, containing very black Seed.*

IV. *The second, or Double Common Larks-Spur. Of this Common Kind, there is some Difference in the Flower, altho' in nothing else: the Flowers grow many upon a Stalk, like the former, but every one of them are as if three or four small Flowers were joined together, with every one his Spur behind, the greatest Flower being outermost, and as it were containing the rest, which are of a pale red or deep blush Color. Another of the Kind will bear its Flowers with three or four Rows of Leaves in the middle, making a double Flower, with one Spur only behind: and of this Kind there is with purple, blew, blush and white Flowers, as also party-colored. And these all bear Seed like the Single, whereby they are increased every Year.*

V. *The third, or Wild Larks-Spur. Its Root is much like the former, whence rise up smaller and lower Branches, with smaller and shorter Leaves, and more spersedly or thinly growing upon them, than upon any of the former. The Flowers likewise are neither so large as any of the foregoing, nor so many growing together: the Cods likewise have smaller Seed, and is harder to grow in Gardens*

than any of the others. The most usual Color hereof, is a pale reddish or blush Color, yet sometimes they are found both white and blew, and sometimes mixt of blew and blush, variably disposed, as Nature sometimes pleases; but these are much more rare.



*Larks Spur Red flowered*  
*Wild.*

VI. *The fourth, or Spanish Wild Larks-Spur. It has a Root which is small and thready, suddenly perishing with the first Cold which overtakes the Plant. It has several long and broad Leaves next the Ground, cut in on both sides, something like to a Scabious Leaf, but it is smooth on the edges, and not indented besides the Cuts; it is of a whitish green Color, and something smooth and soft in handling. From among the Leaves rises up a whitish green Stalk, having many smaller Leaves upon it, which grow below, and not divided; branching out into many small Stalks or Arms, bearing Flowers like unto the Wild Larks-Spur, but smaller, and of a bleak blewish Color; which being past, there comes forth two or three small Cods, joined together, in which is black Seed, and smaller and rounder than any of the former.*

VII. *The fifth, or Single upright bearing Larks-Spur of many Colors. The Difference between this and the third, or Wild Larks-Spur foregoing, is, that the Leaves of this are not fully so green, nor so large: the Stalks grow upright to the Height of a Man, and sometimes higher, having some Branches thereon, but fewer than the former, and standing likewise upright, and not leaning down as the others. The tops of the Stalks are better stored with Flowers than the other, being sometimes two Feet long, and above, of the same Fashion, but not altogether so large, and of several and more various Colors, as white, pale, blush, red, deeper and paler, ash-colored, purple or violet, and of an over-worn blewish purple, or Iron Color. For all these we have simple without any Mixture or Spot. We have also other sorts among the simple Colors, which rise from the same Seed, and will have*



Flowers which will be half white, and half blush or purple; or one Leaf white, and another blush or purple, or else variably mixt and spotted. The Seed and Seed-Vessels are like those of the three first Kinds, but larger and harder.

VIII. *The sixth, or Double upright Larks-Spur* of many Colors. *These Double Larks-Spurs cannot be known from the Single of the same Kind just afore described, until they come towards Flowering;* for there appear many Flowers upon the Stalks, in the same manner, and of as many Colors almost as the *Single*, except the party-colored, which stand like little *Double Roses*, laid or spread open, as the *Rose Columbine*, without any Spurs or Heels behind them very delightful to behold, consisting of many small Leaves growing together; which after they are fallen, three or four small Cods set together come up in their places, wherein is contained here and there (for all are not full of Seed as the *Single Kinds*, black Seed, like unto all the rest, but smaller, which being sown, will bring Plants, which will bear both single and double Flowers again. And it often happens, that it variably alters in Colors from its own Sowing; for none of them hold constantly its own Color, (so far as has yet been observed) but change into others as Nature pleases.

IX. *An Observation.* This last Plant Mr. Rea, in his *Ceres Chap. 10.* says is only worth the preferring; and he describes it thus. *Double upright Larks-Heel, from a Root which perishes in Winter sends forth small jagged Leaves, tall upright Stalks, branched at top, and bearing many fine double Flowers, in Form like to the Rose Columbine, in several Plants of as many several entire Colors, as Blew, Purple, Ash, White, pale Blush, Rose-color; these are the most usual Colors, yet sometimes some Roots will bring Flowers which are striped, and variegated with blew and white, and often with some Leaves blew, and others purple; after the Flowers are past, come forth small horned Pods, which contain Seed black and round, and which being sowed, will bring some Plants with single, but most with double Flowers.*

X. *The Places.* The first, or *Greatest Wild Kinds*, grow among Corn in many Countries beyond Sea, but for its Beauty, is brought to us, and nourished in our Gardens. The third, or *Lesser Wild Kind*, grows in several Fields of our own Country. The *Spanish Kind* was brought to us in Seeds, and grow also in our Gardens. The first *Double* and *Single* have been common for many Years in all Counties of *England*; but the tall *Upright single Kinds* have been made Natives but of late Years: and of them all, the *Double Kinds* are the most rare.

XI. *The Times.* The *Spanish Kind* flowers very late, so that many times in *England* the Winter takes it before it can give ripe Seed. The other Kinds flower in the Summer Months only. The *Double Kinds*, as well the *Upright*, as the *Wild* or *Common*, are very choice and tender, many times not yielding good Seed. The sixth Kind flowers according to the time of sowing it, sooner or later, in *July* or *August*; and many times Plants come up of themselves from the Seeds fallen out of the Pods before Winter, which have continued and born fair double Flowers in *June* following, which have brought again much good Seed. The usual time to Sow these Seeds in, is the beginning of *April*: but to get good Seed, (which is a chief Consideration in these Plants) you ought to sow them as soon as they are ripe, in some place where they may be defended from long Frosts in Winter; and one of these Winter Plants is worth ten of those raised in the Spring, and will yield more good Seed; yet in some kindly

Summers those of the Spring will feed reasonably well.

XII. *Yellow Larks-Heels*, called *Delphinium luteum*, which is *Nasturtium Indicum*, Mr. Rea, in his *Ceres*, puts into the Classis of *Larks-Spurs*, and describes them in the following Words. *The Root, which perishes in Winter, sends forth many spreading long trailing Branches, four or five Feet long, which unless supported, lye on the Ground, and take up much Room.* The Leaves are smooth and round; the Flowers of a fair yellow Color, in Fashion something like to a *Single Larks-Heel*, but the Leaves stand plainer, and some of them are streaked with red. The Flower is so well known, that it is needless to be over-curious in describing it, for few Gardens of any Note are without it. The Seeds are rough and uneven, falling of themselves, which are gathered off the Ground and preserved.

XIII. *Place and Time.* They were first brought by *Monardus* from the *West Indies*; now they grow in almost all our Gardens throughout *England*. It flowers in *July*, and the Plant continues flowering till it is checkt by Frosts. The Seed is sown in *April*, and if it is ripe and good, will be apt enough to come up: and the trailing Branches, as they grow, may be laid upon a Pack-thread fastned upon Sticks, into what Form you please; or they may be bound unto Rods stuck in the Earth, that they may not lye upon the Ground. But we shall say no more of this *Indian Plant*, because we have already discoursed of it in a Chapter by it self, viz. *Chap. 164.* aforegoing.

XIV. To these Mr. Rea, in the place cited, adds another *Larks-Spur*, which is *Balsamina famina*, and describes it in these Words. *It has a Root which dies at the first approach of Winter. The Stalks are thick and reddish, like Purslane, bunched, and set with Leaves, like those of the Peach-Tree.* About the Stalk, from the middle upwards, come the Flowers on short Foot-stalks, which are of two or three Shadows of Purples, with Spurs behind, like *Single Larks-Heels*, but bending downwards. These Flowers are succeeded by round rough Heads, pointed at the end, in which are contained small round blackish Seeds. The Flowers come forth in *July* and *August*, but rarely yield any good Seed in *England*. The Plant is tender, and must be sowed in a hot Bed, and removed into good Ground, and carefully attended with Watering in the Heat of Summer, else it will quickly perish. Of this we have also wrote before, in a Chapter by it self, viz. *Chap. 52. Sect. 3.* where there is a Discourse of it at large, so that we shall say no more of it in this place.

XV. *As to the Qualities, Specification, Preparations, and Virtues of Larks-Spur*, those six first Plants which are properly so called, Authors have said nothing. But *Gerard* says, they are temperate and warm of Nature: and he says, that the Seed of *Larks-Spur* drank, (I suppose he means it to be in Poulder) is good against the Stinging of Scorpions: and that some make it to be one of the Kinds of *Confounders* or *Comfries*.

XVI. It is also to be noted, That tho' some have given to *Larks-Spur*, the Name of *Monks-Hood*; yet it is not that poysonous *Monks-Hood* or *Helmet-Flower*, of which we fully discoursed in its place, in *Chap. 353.* aforegoing.

XVII. *Flowers of Larks-Spur.* *Crollius* says, That three or more of the Flowers eaten, are good against Pains and Stitches of the Side. And *Brunfelsius* says, That the Flowers help the Redness of the Eyes, Heat of the Body, Coughs, Strangury, Stoppage of Urine by Gravel and Sand, and give Ease in the Sciatica.

CHAP.